

Intel[®] 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual

Documentation Changes

November 2018

Notice: The Intel[®] 64 and IA-32 architectures may contain design defects or errors known as errata that may cause the product to deviate from published specifications. Current characterized errata are documented in the specification updates.

Document Number: 252046-060



Intel technologies features and benefits depend on system configuration and may require enabled hardware, software, or service activation. Learn more at intel.com, or from the OEM or retailer.

No computer system can be absolutely secure. Intel does not assume any liability for lost or stolen data or systems or any damages resulting from such losses.

You may not use or facilitate the use of this document in connection with any infringement or other legal analysis concerning Intel products described herein. You agree to grant Intel a non-exclusive, royalty-free license to any patent claim thereafter drafted which includes subject matter disclosed herein.

No license (express or implied, by estoppel or otherwise) to any intellectual property rights is granted by this document.

The products described may contain design defects or errors known as errata which may cause the product to deviate from published specifications. Current characterized errata are available on request.

This document contains information on products, services and/or processes in development. All information provided here is subject to change without notice. Contact your Intel representative to obtain the latest Intel product specifications and roadmaps

Copies of documents which have an order number and are referenced in this document, or other Intel literature, may be obtained by calling 1-800-548-4725, or by visiting <http://www.intel.com/design/literature.htm>.

Intel, the Intel logo, Intel Atom, Intel Core, Intel SpeedStep, MMX, Pentium, VTune, and Xeon are trademarks of Intel Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries.

*Other names and brands may be claimed as the property of others.

Copyright © 1997-2018, Intel Corporation. All Rights Reserved.



Contents

Revision History	4
Preface	7
Summary Tables of Changes	8
Documentation Changes	9



Revision History

Revision	Description	Date
-001	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Initial release	November 2002
-002	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Added 1-10 Documentation Changes.Removed old Documentation Changes items that already have been incorporated in the published Software Developer's manual	December 2002
-003	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Added 9 -17 Documentation Changes.Removed Documentation Change #6 - References to bits Gen and Len Deleted.Removed Documentation Change #4 - VIF Information Added to CLI Discussion	February 2003
-004	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Removed Documentation changes 1-17.Added Documentation changes 1-24.	June 2003
-005	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Removed Documentation Changes 1-24.Added Documentation Changes 1-15.	September 2003
-006	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Added Documentation Changes 16- 34.	November 2003
-007	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Updated Documentation changes 14, 16, 17, and 28.Added Documentation Changes 35-45.	January 2004
-008	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Removed Documentation Changes 1-45.Added Documentation Changes 1-5.	March 2004
-009	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Added Documentation Changes 7-27.	May 2004
-010	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Removed Documentation Changes 1-27.Added Documentation Changes 1.	August 2004
-011	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Added Documentation Changes 2-28.	November 2004
-012	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Removed Documentation Changes 1-28.Added Documentation Changes 1-16.	March 2005
-013	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Updated title.There are no Documentation Changes for this revision of the document.	July 2005
-014	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Added Documentation Changes 1-21.	September 2005
-015	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Removed Documentation Changes 1-21.Added Documentation Changes 1-20.	March 9, 2006
-016	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Added Documentation changes 21-23.	March 27, 2006
-017	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Removed Documentation Changes 1-23.Added Documentation Changes 1-36.	September 2006
-018	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Added Documentation Changes 37-42.	October 2006
-019	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Removed Documentation Changes 1-42.Added Documentation Changes 1-19.	March 2007
-020	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Added Documentation Changes 20-27.	May 2007
-021	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Removed Documentation Changes 1-27.Added Documentation Changes 1-6	November 2007
-022	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Removed Documentation Changes 1-6Added Documentation Changes 1-6	August 2008
-023	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Removed Documentation Changes 1-6Added Documentation Changes 1-21	March 2009



Revision	Description	Date
-024	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Removed Documentation Changes 1-21 Added Documentation Changes 1-16 	June 2009
-025	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Removed Documentation Changes 1-16 Added Documentation Changes 1-18 	September 2009
-026	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Removed Documentation Changes 1-18 Added Documentation Changes 1-15 	December 2009
-027	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Removed Documentation Changes 1-15 Added Documentation Changes 1-24 	March 2010
-028	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Removed Documentation Changes 1-24 Added Documentation Changes 1-29 	June 2010
-029	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Removed Documentation Changes 1-29 Added Documentation Changes 1-29 	September 2010
-030	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Removed Documentation Changes 1-29 Added Documentation Changes 1-29 	January 2011
-031	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Removed Documentation Changes 1-29 Added Documentation Changes 1-29 	April 2011
-032	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Removed Documentation Changes 1-29 Added Documentation Changes 1-14 	May 2011
-033	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Removed Documentation Changes 1-14 Added Documentation Changes 1-38 	October 2011
-034	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Removed Documentation Changes 1-38 Added Documentation Changes 1-16 	December 2011
-035	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Removed Documentation Changes 1-16 Added Documentation Changes 1-18 	March 2012
-036	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Removed Documentation Changes 1-18 Added Documentation Changes 1-17 	May 2012
-037	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Removed Documentation Changes 1-17 Added Documentation Changes 1-28 	August 2012
-038	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Removed Documentation Changes 1-28 Add Documentation Changes 1-22 	January 2013
-039	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Removed Documentation Changes 1-22 Add Documentation Changes 1-17 	June 2013
-040	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Removed Documentation Changes 1-17 Add Documentation Changes 1-24 	September 2013
-041	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Removed Documentation Changes 1-24 Add Documentation Changes 1-20 	February 2014
-042	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Removed Documentation Changes 1-20 Add Documentation Changes 1-8 	February 2014
-043	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Removed Documentation Changes 1-8 Add Documentation Changes 1-43 	June 2014
-044	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Removed Documentation Changes 1-43 Add Documentation Changes 1-12 	September 2014
-045	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Removed Documentation Changes 1-12 Add Documentation Changes 1-22 	January 2015
-046	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Removed Documentation Changes 1-22 Add Documentation Changes 1-25 	April 2015
-047	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Removed Documentation Changes 1-25 Add Documentation Changes 1-19 	June 2015



Revision	Description	Date
-048	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Removed Documentation Changes 1-19Add Documentation Changes 1-33	September 2015
-049	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Removed Documentation Changes 1-33Add Documentation Changes 1-33	December 2015
-050	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Removed Documentation Changes 1-33Add Documentation Changes 1-9	April 2016
-051	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Removed Documentation Changes 1-9Add Documentation Changes 1-20	June 2016
-052	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Removed Documentation Changes 1-20Add Documentation Changes 1-22	September 2016
-053	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Removed Documentation Changes 1-22Add Documentation Changes 1-26	December 2016
-054	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Removed Documentation Changes 1-26Add Documentation Changes 1-20	March 2017
-055	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Removed Documentation Changes 1-20Add Documentation Changes 1-28	July 2017
-056	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Removed Documentation Changes 1-28Add Documentation Changes 1-18	October 2017
-057	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Removed Documentation Changes 1-18Add Documentation Changes 1-29	December 2017
-058	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Removed Documentation Changes 1-29Add Documentation Changes 1-17	March 2018
-059	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Removed Documentation Changes 1-17Add Documentation Changes 1-24	May 2018
-060	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Removed Documentation Changes 1-24Add Documentation Changes 1-23	November 2018

§

Preface

This document is an update to the specifications contained in the [Affected Documents](#) table below. This document is a compilation of device and documentation errata, specification clarifications and changes. It is intended for hardware system manufacturers and software developers of applications, operating systems, or tools.

Affected Documents

Document Title	Document Number/ Location
<i>Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 1: Basic Architecture</i>	253665
<i>Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 2A: Instruction Set Reference, A-L</i>	253666
<i>Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 2B: Instruction Set Reference, M-U</i>	253667
<i>Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 2C: Instruction Set Reference, V-Z</i>	326018
<i>Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 2D: Instruction Set Reference</i>	334569
<i>Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3A: System Programming Guide, Part 1</i>	253668
<i>Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3B: System Programming Guide, Part 2</i>	253669
<i>Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3C: System Programming Guide, Part 3</i>	326019
<i>Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3D: System Programming Guide, Part 4</i>	332831
<i>Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 4: Model Specific Registers</i>	335592

Nomenclature

Documentation Changes include typos, errors, or omissions from the current published specifications. These will be incorporated in any new release of the specification.

Summary Tables of Changes

The following table indicates documentation changes which apply to the Intel® 64 and IA-32 architectures. This table uses the following notations:

Codes Used in Summary Tables

Change bar to left of table row indicates this erratum is either new or modified from the previous version of the document.

Documentation Changes

No.	DOCUMENTATION CHANGES
1	Updates to Chapter 13, Volume 1
2	Updates to Chapter 14, Volume 1
3	Updates to Chapter 2, Volume 2A
4	Updates to Chapter 3, Volume 2A
5	Updates to Chapter 4, Volume 2B
6	Updates to Chapter 5, Volume 2C
7	Updates to Chapter 6, Volume 2D
8	Updates to Chapter 7, Volume 2D
9	Updates to Chapter 4, Volume 3A
10	Updates to Chapter 8, Volume 3A
11	Updates to Chapter 18, Volume 3B
12	Updates to Chapter 24, Volume 3B
13	Updates to Chapter 25, Volume 3C
14	Updates to Chapter 27, Volume 3C
15	Updates to Chapter 29, Volume 3C
16	Updates to Chapter 35, Volume 3C
17	Updates to Chapter 36, Volume 3D
18	Updates to Chapter 37, Volume 3D
19	Updates to Chapter 38, Volume 3D
20	Updates to Chapter 40, Volume 3D
21	Updates to Chapter 41, Volume 3D
22	Updates to Appendix C, Volume 3D
23	Updates to Chapter 2, Volume 4

Documentation Changes

Changes to the Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual volumes follow, and are listed by chapter. Only chapters with changes are included in this document.

1. Updates to Chapter 13, Volume 1

Change bars show changes to Chapter 13 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 1: Basic Architecture*.

Changes to this chapter: Typo corrections.

CHAPTER 13

MANAGING STATE USING THE XSAVE FEATURE SET

The XSAVE feature set extends the functionality of the FXSAVE and FXRSTOR instructions (see Section 10.5, “FXSAVE and FXRSTOR Instructions”) by supporting the saving and restoring of processor state in addition to the x87 execution environment (**x87 state**) and the registers used by the streaming SIMD extensions (**SSE state**).

The **XSAVE feature set** comprises eight instructions. XGETBV and XSETBV allow software to read and write the extended control register XCR0, which controls the operation of the XSAVE feature set. XSAVE, XSAVEOPT, XSAVEC, and XSAVES are four instructions that save processor state to memory; XRSTOR and XRSTORS are corresponding instructions that load processor state from memory. XGETBV, XSAVE, XSAVEOPT, XSAVEC, and XRSTOR can be executed at any privilege level; XSETBV, XSAVES, and XRSTORS can be executed only if CPL = 0. In addition to XCR0, the XSAVES and XRSTORS instructions are controlled also by the IA32_XSS MSR (index DA0H).

The XSAVE feature set organizes the state that manages into **state components**. Operation of the instructions is based on **state-component bitmaps** that have the same format as XCR0 and as the IA32_XSS MSR: each bit corresponds to a state component. Section 13.1 discusses these state components and bitmaps in more detail.

Section 13.2 describes how the processor enumerates support for the XSAVE feature set and for **XSAVE-enabled features** (those features that require use of the XSAVE feature set for their enabling). Section 13.3 explains how software can enable the XSAVE feature set and XSAVE-enabled features.

The XSAVE feature set allows saving and loading processor state from a region of memory called an **XSAVE area**. Section 13.4 presents details of the XSAVE area and its organization. Each XSAVE-managed state component is associated with a section of the XSAVE area. Section 13.5 describes in detail each of the XSAVE-managed state components.

Section 13.7 through Section 13.12 describe the operation of XSAVE, XRSTOR, XSAVEOPT, XSAVEC, XSAVES, and XRSTORS, respectively.

13.1 XSAVE-SUPPORTED FEATURES AND STATE-COMPONENT BITMAPS

The XSAVE feature set supports the saving and restoring of **state components**, each of which is a discrete set of processor registers (or parts of registers). In general, each such state component corresponds to a particular CPU feature. Such a feature is **XSAVE-supported**. Some XSAVE-supported features use registers in multiple XSAVE-managed state components.

The XSAVE feature set organizes the state components of the XSAVE-supported features using **state-component bitmaps**. A state-component bitmap comprises 64 bits; each bit in such a bitmap corresponds to a single state component. The following bits are defined in state-component bitmaps:

- Bit 0 corresponds to the state component used for the x87 FPU execution environment (**x87 state**). See Section 13.5.1.
- Bit 1 corresponds to the state component used for registers used by the streaming SIMD extensions (**SSE state**). See Section 13.5.2.
- Bit 2 corresponds to the state component used for the additional register state used by the Intel® Advanced Vector Extensions (**AVX state**). See Section 13.5.3.
- Bits 4:3 correspond to the two state components used for the additional register state used by Intel® Memory Protection Extensions (**MPX state**):
 - State component 3 is used for the 4 128-bit bounds registers BND0–BND3 (**BNDREGS state**).
 - State component 4 is used for the 64-bit user-mode MPX configuration register BNDCFGU and the 64-bit MPX status register BNDSTATUS (**BNDCSR state**).
- Bits 7:5 correspond to the three state components used for the additional register state used by Intel® Advanced Vector Extensions 512 (**AVX-512 state**):
 - State component 5 is used for the 8 64-bit opmask registers k0–k7 (**opmask state**).

- State component 6 is used for the upper 256 bits of the registers ZMM0–ZMM15. These 16 256-bit values are denoted ZMM0_H–ZMM15_H (**ZMM_Hi256 state**).
- State component 7 is used for the 16 512-bit registers ZMM16–ZMM31 (**Hi16_ZMM state**).
- Bit 8 corresponds to the state component used for the Intel Processor Trace MSRs (**PT state**).
- Bit 9 corresponds to the state component used for the protection-key feature’s register PKRU (**PKRU state**). See Section 13.5.7.
- Bit 13 corresponds to the state component used for an MSR used to control hardware duty cycling (**HDC state**). See Section 13.5.8.

Bits in the ranges 62:14 and 12:10 are not currently defined in state-component bitmaps and are reserved for future expansion. As individual state component is defined within bits 62:11, additional sub-sections are updated within Section 13.5 over time. Bit 63 is used for special functionality in some bitmaps and does not correspond to any state component.

The state component corresponding to bit *i* of state-component bitmaps is called **state component *i***. Thus, x87 state is state component 0; SSE state is state component 1; AVX state is state component 2; MPX state comprises state components 3–4; AVX-512 state comprises state components 5–7; PT state is state component 8; PKRU state is state component 9; and HDC state is state component 13.

The XSAVE feature set uses state-component bitmaps in multiple ways. Most of the instructions use an implicit operand (in EDX:EAX), called the **instruction mask**, which is the state-component bitmap that specifies the state components on which the instruction operates.

Some state components are **user state components**, and they can be managed by the entire XSAVE feature set. Other state components are **supervisor state components**, and they can be managed only by XSAVES and XRSTORS. The state components corresponding to bit 9 and to bits in the range 7:0 are user state components, PT state (corresponding to bit 8) and HDC state (corresponding to bit 13) are supervisor state components.

Extended control register XCR0 contains a state-component bitmap that specifies the user state components that software has enabled the XSAVE feature set to manage. If the bit corresponding to a state component is clear in XCR0, instructions in the XSAVE feature set will not operate on that state component, regardless of the value of the instruction mask.

The IA32_XSS MSR (index DA0H) contains a state-component bitmap that specifies the supervisor state components that software has enabled XSAVES and XRSTORS to manage (XSAVE, XSAVEC, XSAVEOPT, and XRSTOR cannot manage supervisor state components). If the bit corresponding to a state component is clear in the IA32_XSS MSR, XSAVES and XRSTORS will not operate on that state component, regardless of the value of the instruction mask.

Some XSAVE-supported features can be used only if XCR0 has been configured so that the features’ state components can be managed by the XSAVE feature set. (This applies only to features with user state components.) Such state components and features are **XSAVE-enabled**. In general, the processor will not modify (or allow modification of) the registers of a state component of an XSAVE-enabled feature if the bit corresponding to that state component is clear in XCR0. (If software clears such a bit in XCR0, the processor preserves the corresponding state component.) If an XSAVE-enabled feature has not been fully enabled in XCR0, execution of any instruction defined for that feature causes an invalid-opcode exception (#UD).

As will be explained in Section 13.3, the XSAVE feature set is enabled only if CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18] = 1. If CR4.OSXSAVE = 0, the processor treats XSAVE-enabled state features and their state components as if all bits in XCR0 were clear; the state components cannot be modified and the features’ instructions cannot be executed.

The state components for x87 state, for SSE state, for PT state, for PKRU state, and for HDC state are XSAVE-managed but the corresponding features are not XSAVE-enabled. Processors allow modification of this state, as well as execution of x87 FPU instructions and SSE instructions and use of Intel Processor Trace, protection keys, and hardware duty cycling regardless of the value of CR4.OSXSAVE and XCR0.

13.2 ENUMERATION OF CPU SUPPORT FOR XSAVE INSTRUCTIONS AND XSAVE-SUPPORTED FEATURES

A processor enumerates support for the XSAVE feature set and for features supported by that feature set using the CPUID instruction. The following items provide specific details:

- CPUID.1:ECX.XSAVE[bit 26] enumerates general support for the XSAVE feature set:
 - If this bit is 0, the processor does not support any of the following instructions: XGETBV, XRSTOR, XRSTORS, XSAVE, XSAVEC, XSAVEOPT, XSAVES, and XSETBV; the processor provides no further enumeration through CPUID function 0DH (see below).
 - If this bit is 1, the processor supports the following instructions: XGETBV, XRSTOR, XSAVE, and XSETBV.¹ Further enumeration is provided through CPUID function 0DH.
- CP4.OSXSAVE can be set to 1 if and only if CPUID.1:ECX.XSAVE[bit 26] is enumerated as 1.
- CPUID function 0DH enumerates details of CPU support through a set of sub-functions. Software selects a specific sub-function by the value placed in the ECX register. The following items provide specific details:
 - CPUID function 0DH, sub-function 0.
 - EDX:EAX is a bitmap of all the user state components that can be managed using the XSAVE feature set. A bit can be set in XCR0 if and only if the corresponding bit is set in this bitmap. Every processor that supports the XSAVE feature set will set EAX[0] (x87 state) and EAX[1] (SSE state).
If $EAX[i] = 1$ (for $1 < i < 32$) or $EDX[i-32] = 1$ (for $32 \leq i < 63$), sub-function i enumerates details for state component i (see below).
 - ECX enumerates the size (in bytes) required by the XSAVE instruction for an XSAVE area containing all the user state components supported by this processor.
 - EBX enumerates the size (in bytes) required by the XSAVE instruction for an XSAVE area containing all the user state components corresponding to bits currently set in XCR0.
 - CPUID function 0DH, sub-function 1.
 - EAX[0] enumerates support for the XSAVEOPT instruction. The instruction is supported if and only if this bit is 1. If $EAX[0] = 0$, execution of XSAVEOPT causes an invalid-opcode exception (#UD).
 - EAX[1] enumerates support for **compaction extensions** to the XSAVE feature set. The following are supported if this bit is 1:
 - The compacted format of the extended region of XSAVE areas (see Section 13.4.3).
 - The XSAVEC instruction. If $EAX[1] = 0$, execution of XSAVEC causes a #UD.
 - Execution of the compacted form of XRSTOR (see Section 13.8).
 - EAX[2] enumerates support for execution of XGETBV with $ECX = 1$. This allows software to determine the state of the init optimization. See Section 13.6.
 - EAX[3] enumerates support for XSAVES, XRSTORS, and the IA32_XSS MSR. If $EAX[3] = 0$, execution of XSAVES or XRSTORS causes a #UD; an attempt to access the IA32_XSS MSR using RDMSR or WRMSR causes a general-protection exception (#GP). Every processor that supports a supervisor state component sets EAX[3]. Every processor that sets EAX[3] (XSAVES, XRSTORS, IA32_XSS) will also set EAX[1] (the compaction extensions).
 - EAX[31:4] are reserved.
 - EBX enumerates the size (in bytes) required by the XSAVES instruction for an XSAVE area containing all the state components corresponding to bits currently set in XCR0 | IA32_XSS.
 - EDX:ECX is a bitmap of all the supervisor state components that can be managed by XSAVES and XRSTORS. A bit can be set in the IA32_XSS MSR if and only if the corresponding bit is set in this bitmap.

1. If CPUID.1:ECX.XSAVE[bit 26] = 1, XGETBV and XSETBV may be executed with $ECX = 0$ (to read and write XCR0). Any support for execution of these instructions with other values of ECX is enumerated separately.

NOTE

In summary, the XSAVE feature set supports state component i ($0 \leq i < 63$) if one of the following is true: (1) $i < 32$ and $\text{CPUID}.\text{(EAX=0DH,ECX=0):EAX}[i] = 1$; (2) $i \geq 32$ and $\text{CPUID}.\text{(EAX=0DH,ECX=0):EAX}[i-32] = 1$; (3) $i < 32$ and $\text{CPUID}.\text{(EAX=0DH,ECX=1):ECX}[i] = 1$; or (4) $i \geq 32$ and $\text{CPUID}.\text{(EAX=0DH,ECX=1):EDX}[i-32] = 1$. The XSAVE feature set supports user state component i if (1) or (2) holds; if (3) or (4) holds, state component i is a supervisor state component and support is limited to XSAVES and XRSTORS.

- CPUID function 0DH, sub-function i ($i > 1$). This sub-function enumerates details for state component i . If the XSAVE feature set supports state component i (see note above), the following items provide specific details:
 - EAX enumerates the size (in bytes) required for state component i .
 - If state component i is a user state component, EBX enumerates the offset (in bytes, from the base of the XSAVE area) of the section used for state component i . (This offset applies only when the standard format for the extended region of the XSAVE area is being used; see Section 13.4.3.)
 - If state component i is a supervisor state component, EBX returns 0.
 - If state component i is a user state component, $\text{ECX}[0]$ return 0; if state component i is a supervisor state component, $\text{ECX}[0]$ returns 1.
 - The value returned by $\text{ECX}[1]$ indicates the alignment of state component i when the compacted format of the extended region of an XSAVE area is used (see Section 13.4.3). If $\text{ECX}[1]$ returns 0, state component i is located immediately following the preceding state component; if $\text{ECX}[1]$ returns 1, state component i is located on the next 64-byte boundary following the preceding state component.
 - $\text{ECX}[31:2]$ and EDX return 0.

If the XSAVE feature set does not support state component i , sub-function i returns 0 in EAX, EBX, ECX, and EDX.

13.3 ENABLING THE XSAVE FEATURE SET AND XSAVE-ENABLED FEATURES

Software enables the XSAVE feature set by setting $\text{CR4.OSXSAVE}[\text{bit } 18]$ to 1 (e.g., with the MOV to CR4 instruction). If this bit is 0, execution of any of XGETBV, XRSTOR, XRSTORS, XSAVE, XSAVEC, XSAVEOPT, XSAVES, and XSETBV causes an invalid-opcode exception (#UD).

When $\text{CR4.OSXSAVE} = 1$ and $\text{CPL} = 0$, executing the XSETBV instruction with $\text{ECX} = 0$ writes the 64-bit value in EDX:EAX to XCR0 (EAX is written to $\text{XCR0}[31:0]$ and EDX to $\text{XCR0}[63:32]$). (Execution of the XSETBV instruction causes a general-protection fault — #GP — if $\text{CPL} > 0$.) The following items provide details regarding individual bits in XCR0:

- $\text{XCR0}[0]$ is associated with x87 state (see Section 13.5.1). $\text{XCR0}[0]$ is always 1. It has that value coming out of RESET. Executing the XSETBV instruction causes a general-protection fault (#GP) if $\text{ECX} = 0$ and $\text{EAX}[0]$ is 0.
- $\text{XCR0}[1]$ is associated with SSE state (see Section 13.5.2). Software can use the XSAVE feature set to manage SSE state only if $\text{XCR0}[1] = 1$. The value of $\text{XCR0}[1]$ in no way determines whether software can execute SSE instructions (these instructions can be executed even if $\text{XCR0}[1] = 0$).

$\text{XCR0}[1]$ is 0 coming out of RESET. As noted in Section 13.2, every processor that supports the XSAVE feature set allows software to set $\text{XCR0}[1]$.

- $\text{XCR0}[2]$ is associated with AVX state (see Section 13.5.3). Software can use the XSAVE feature set to manage AVX state only if $\text{XCR0}[2] = 1$. In addition, software can execute AVX instructions only if $\text{CR4.OSXSAVE} = \text{XCR0}[2] = 1$. Otherwise, any execution of an AVX instruction causes an invalid-opcode exception (#UD).

$\text{XCR0}[2]$ is 0 coming out of RESET. As noted in Section 13.2, a processor allows software to set $\text{XCR0}[2]$ if and only if $\text{CPUID}.\text{(EAX=0DH,ECX=0):EAX}[2] = 1$. In addition, executing the XSETBV instruction causes a general-protection fault (#GP) if $\text{ECX} = 0$ and $\text{EAX}[2:1]$ has the value 10b; that is, software cannot enable the XSAVE feature set for AVX state but not for SSE state.

As noted in Section 13.1, the processor will preserve AVX state unmodified if software clears $\text{XCR0}[2]$.

However, clearing $\text{XCR0}[2]$ while AVX state is not in its initial configuration may cause SSE instructions to incur a power and performance penalty. See Section 13.5.3, "Enable the Use Of XSAVE Feature Set And XSAVE State

Components” of *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*, for how system software can avoid this penalty.

- XCR0[4:3] are associated with MPX state (see Section 13.5.4). Software can use the XSAVE feature set to manage MPX state only if XCR0[4:3] = 11b. In addition, software can execute MPX instructions only if CR4.OSXSAVE = 1 and XCR0[4:3] = 11b. Otherwise, any execution of an MPX instruction causes an invalid-opcode exception (#UD).¹

XCR0[4:3] have value 00b coming out of RESET. As noted in Section 13.2, a processor allows software to set XCR0[4:3] to 11b if and only if CPUID.(EAX=0DH,ECX=0):EAX[4:3] = 11b. In addition, executing the XSETBV instruction causes a general-protection fault (#GP) if ECX = 0, EAX[4:3] is neither 00b nor 11b; that is, software can enable the XSAVE feature set for MPX state only if it does so for both state components.

As noted in Section 13.1, the processor will preserve MPX state unmodified if software clears XCR0[4:3].

- XCR0[7:5] are associated with AVX-512 state (see Section 13.5.5). Software can use the XSAVE feature set to manage AVX-512 state only if XCR0[7:5] = 111b. In addition, software can execute AVX-512 instructions only if CR4.OSXSAVE = 1 and XCR0[7:5] = 111b. Otherwise, any execution of an AVX-512 instruction causes an invalid-opcode exception (#UD).

XCR0[7:5] have value 000b coming out of RESET. As noted in Section 13.2, a processor allows software to set XCR0[7:5] to 111b if and only if CPUID.(EAX=0DH,ECX=0):EAX[7:5] = 111b. In addition, executing the XSETBV instruction causes a general-protection fault (#GP) if ECX = 0, EAX[7:5] is not 000b, and any bit is clear in EAX[2:1] or EAX[7:5]; that is, software can enable the XSAVE feature set for AVX-512 state only if it does so for all three state components, and only if it also does so for AVX state and SSE state. This implies that the value of XCR0[7:5] is always either 000b or 111b.

As noted in Section 13.1, the processor will preserve AVX-512 state unmodified if software clears XCR0[7:5]. However, clearing XCR0[7:5] while AVX-512 state is not in its initial configuration may cause SSE and AVX instructions to incur a power and performance penalty. See Section 13.5.3, “Enable the Use Of XSAVE Feature Set And XSAVE State Components” of *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*, for how system software can avoid this penalty.

- XCR0[9] is associated with PKRU state (see Section 13.5.7). Software can use the XSAVE feature set to manage PKRU state only if XCR0[9] = 1. The value of XCR0[9] in no way determines whether software can use protection keys or execute other instructions that access PKRU state (these instructions can be executed even if XCR0[9] = 0).

XCR0[9] is 0 coming out of RESET. As noted in Section 13.2, a processor allows software to set XCR0[9] if and only if CPUID.(EAX=0DH,ECX=0):EAX[9] = 1.

- XCR0[63:10] and XCR0[8] are reserved.² Executing the XSETBV instruction causes a general-protection fault (#GP) if ECX = 0 and any corresponding bit in EDX:EAX is not 0. These bits in XCR0 are all 0 coming out of RESET.

Software operating with CPL > 0 may need to determine whether the XSAVE feature set and certain XSAVE-enabled features have been enabled. If CPL > 0, execution of the MOV from CR4 instruction causes a general-protection fault (#GP). The following alternative mechanisms allow software to discover the enabling of the XSAVE feature set regardless of CPL:

- The value of CR4.OSXSAVE is returned in CPUID.1:ECX.OSXSAVE[bit 27]. If software determines that CPUID.1:ECX.OSXSAVE = 1, the processor supports the XSAVE feature set and the feature set has been enabled in CR4.
- Executing the XGETBV instruction with ECX = 0 returns the value of XCR0 in EDX:EAX. XGETBV can be executed if CR4.OSXSAVE = 1 (if CPUID.1:ECX.OSXSAVE = 1), regardless of CPL.

Thus, software can use the following algorithm to determine the support and enabling for the XSAVE feature set:

1. Use CPUID to discover the value of CPUID.1:ECX.OSXSAVE.
 - If the bit is 0, either the XSAVE feature set is not supported by the processor or has not been enabled by software. Either way, the XSAVE feature set is not available, nor are XSAVE-enabled features such as AVX.

1. If XCR0[3] = 0, executions of CALL, RET, JMP, and Jcc do not initialize the bounds registers.

2. Bit 8 and bit 13 correspond to supervisor state components. Since bits can be set in XCR0 only for user state components, those bits of XCR0 must be 0.

- If the bit is 1, the processor supports the XSAVE feature set — including the XGETBV instruction — and it has been enabled by software. The XSAVE feature set can be used to manage x87 state (because XCR0[0] is always 1). Software requiring more detailed information can go on to the next step.
2. Execute XGETBV with ECX = 0 to discover the value of XCR0. If XCR0[1] = 1, the XSAVE feature set can be used to manage SSE state. If XCR0[2] = 1, the XSAVE feature set can be used to manage AVX state and software can execute AVX instructions. If XCR0[4:3] is 11b, the XSAVE feature set can be used to manage MPX state and software can execute MPX instructions. If XCR0[7:5] is 111b, the XSAVE feature set can be used to manage AVX-512 state and software can execute AVX-512 instructions. If XCR0[9] = 1, the XSAVE feature set can be used to manage PKRU state.

The IA32_XSS MSR (with MSR index DA0H) is zero coming out of RESET. If CR4.OSXSAVE = 1, CPUID.(EAX=0DH,ECX=1):EAX[3] = 1, and CPL = 0, executing the WRMSR instruction with ECX = DA0H writes the 64-bit value in EDX:EAX to the IA32_XSS MSR (EAX is written to IA32_XSS[31:0] and EDX to IA32_XSS[63:32]). The following items provide details regarding individual bits in the IA32_XSS MSR:

- IA32_XSS[8] is associated with PT state (see Section 13.5.6). Software can use XSAVES and XRSTORS to manage PT state only if IA32_XSS[8] = 1. The value of IA32_XSS[8] does not determine whether software can use Intel Processor Trace (the feature can be used even if IA32_XSS[8] = 0).
- IA32_XSS[13] is associated with HDC state (see Section 13.5.8). Software can use XSAVES and XRSTORS to manage HDC state only if IA32_XSS[13] = 1. The value of IA32_XSS[13] does not determine whether software can use hardware duty cycling (the feature can be used even if IA32_XSS[13] = 0).
- IA32_XSS[63:14], IA32_XSS[12:9] and IA32_XSS[7:0] are reserved.¹ Executing the WRMSR instruction causes a general-protection fault (#GP) if ECX = DA0H and any corresponding bit in EDX:EAX is not 0. These bits in XCR0 are all 0 coming out of RESET.

The IA32_XSS MSR is 0 coming out of RESET.

There is no mechanism by which software operating with CPL > 0 can discover the value of the IA32_XSS MSR.

13.4 XSAVE AREA

The XSAVE feature set includes instructions that save and restore the XSAVE-managed state components to and from memory: XSAVE, XSAVEOPT, XSAVEC, and XSAVES (for saving); and XRSTOR and XRSTORS (for restoring). The processor organizes the state components in a region of memory called an **XSAVE area**. Each of the save and restore instructions takes a memory operand that specifies the 64-byte aligned base address of the XSAVE area on which it operates.

Every XSAVE area has the following format:

- The **legacy region**. The legacy region of an XSAVE area comprises the 512 bytes starting at the area's base address. It is used to manage the state components for x87 state and SSE state. The legacy region is described in more detail in Section 13.4.1.
- The **XSAVE header**. The XSAVE header of an XSAVE area comprises the 64 bytes starting at an offset of 512 bytes from the area's base address. The XSAVE header is described in more detail in Section 13.4.2.
- The **extended region**. The extended region of an XSAVE area starts at an offset of 576 bytes from the area's base address. It is used to manage the state components other than those for x87 state and SSE state. The extended region is described in more detail in Section 13.4.3. The size of the extended region is determined by which state components the processor supports and which bits have been set in XCR0 and IA32_XSS (see Section 13.3).

13.4.1 Legacy Region of an XSAVE Area

The legacy region of an XSAVE area comprises the 512 bytes starting at the area's base address. It has the same format as the FXSAVE area (see Section 10.5.1). The XSAVE feature set uses the legacy area for x87 state (state

1. Bit 9 and bits 7:0 correspond to user state components. Since bits can be set in the IA32_XSS MSR only for supervisor state components, those bits of the MSR must be 0.

component 0) and SSE state (state component 1). Table 13-1 illustrates the format of the first 416 bytes of the legacy region of an XSAVE area.

Table 13-1. Format of the Legacy Region of an XSAVE Area

15 14	13 12	11 10	9 8	7 6	5	4	3 2	1 0	
FIP[63:48] or reserved	FCS or FIP[47:32]	FIP[31:0]		FOP	Rsvd.	FTW	FSW	FCW	0
MXCSR_MASK		MXCSR		FDP[63:48] or reserved	FDS or FDP[47:32]		FDP[31:0]		16
Reserved			Reserved			ST0/MM0			32
Reserved			Reserved			ST1/MM1			48
Reserved			Reserved			ST2/MM2			64
Reserved			Reserved			ST3/MM3			80
Reserved			Reserved			ST4/MM4			96
Reserved			Reserved			ST5/MM5			112
Reserved			Reserved			ST6/MM6			128
Reserved			Reserved			ST7/MM7			144
			XMM0						160
			XMM1						176
			XMM2						192
			XMM3						208
			XMM4						224
			XMM5						240
			XMM6						256
			XMM7						272
			XMM8						288
			XMM9						304
			XMM10						320
			XMM11						336
			XMM12						352
			XMM13						368
			XMM14						384
			XMM15						400

The x87 state component comprises bytes 23:0 and bytes 159:32. The SSE state component comprises bytes 31:24 and bytes 415:160. The XSAVE feature set does not use bytes 511:416; bytes 463:416 are reserved.

Section 13.7 through Section 13.9 provide details of how instructions in the XSAVE feature set use the legacy region of an XSAVE area.

13.4.2 XSAVE Header

The XSAVE header of an XSAVE area comprises the 64 bytes starting at offset 512 from the area's base address:

- Bytes 7:0 of the XSAVE header is a state-component bitmap (see Section 13.1) called **XSTATE_BV**. It identifies the state components in the XSAVE area.

- Bytes 15:8 of the XSAVE header is a state-component bitmap called **XCOMP_BV**. It is used as follows:
 - XCOMP_BV[63] indicates the format of the extended region of the XSAVE area (see Section 13.4.3). If it is clear, the standard format is used. If it is set, the compacted format is used; XCOMP_BV[62:0] provide format specifics as specified in Section 13.4.3.
 - XCOMP_BV[63] determines which form of the XRSTOR instruction is used. If the bit is set, the compacted form is used; otherwise, the standard form is used. See Section 13.8.
 - All bits in XCOMP_BV should be 0 if the processor does not support the compaction extensions to the XSAVE feature set.
- Bytes 63:16 of the XSAVE header are reserved.

Section 13.7 through Section 13.9 provide details of how instructions in the XSAVE feature set use the XSAVE header of an XSAVE area.

13.4.3 Extended Region of an XSAVE Area

The extended region of an XSAVE area starts at byte offset 576 from the area's base address. The size of the extended region is determined by which state components the processor supports and which bits have been set in XCR0 | IA32_XSS (see Section 13.3).

The XSAVE feature set uses the extended area for each state component i , where $i \geq 2$. The following state components are currently supported in the extended area: state component 2 contains AVX state; state components 5–7 contain AVX-512 state; and state component 9 contains PKRU state.

The extended region of the an XSAVE area may have one of two formats. The **standard format** is supported by all processors that support the XSAVE feature set; the **compacted format** is supported by those processors that support the compaction extensions to the XSAVE feature set (see Section 13.2). Bit 63 of the XCOMP_BV field in the XSAVE header (see Section 13.4.2) indicates which format is used.

The following items describe the two possible formats of the extended region:

- **Standard format.** Each state component i ($i \geq 2$) is located at the byte offset from the base address of the XSAVE area enumerated in CPUID.(EAX=0DH,ECX=i):EBX. (CPUID.(EAX=0DH,ECX=i):EAX enumerates the number of bytes required for state component i .)
- **Compacted format.** Each state component i ($i \geq 2$) is located at a byte offset from the base address of the XSAVE area based on the XCOMP_BV field in the XSAVE header:
 - If XCOMP_BV[i] = 0, state component i is not in the XSAVE area.
 - If XCOMP_BV[i] = 1, state component i is located at a byte offset $location_I$ from the base address of the XSAVE area, where $location_I$ is determined by the following items:
 - If XCOMP_BV[j] = 0 for every j , $2 \leq j < i$, $location_I$ is 576. (This item applies if i is the first bit set in bits 62:2 of the XCOMP_BV; it implies that state component i is located at the beginning of the extended region.)
 - Otherwise, let j , $2 \leq j < i$, be the greatest value such that XCOMP_BV[j] = 1. Then $location_I$ is determined by the following values: $location_j$; $size_j$, as enumerated in CPUID.(EAX=0DH,ECX=j):EAX; and the value of $align_I$, as enumerated in CPUID.(EAX=0DH,ECX=i):ECX[1]:
 - If $align_I = 0$, $location_I = location_j + size_j$. (This item implies that state component i is located immediately following the preceding state component whose bit is set in XCOMP_BV.)
 - If $align_I = 1$, $location_I = \text{ceiling}(location_j + size_j, 64)$. (This item implies that state component i is located on the next 64-byte boundary following the preceding state component whose bit is set in XCOMP_BV.)

13.5 XSAVE-MANAGED STATE

The section provides details regarding how the XSAVE feature set interacts with the various XSAVE-managed state components.

Unless otherwise stated, the state pertaining to a particular state component is saved beginning at byte 0 of the section of the XSAVE area corresponding to that state component.

13.5.1 x87 State

Instructions in the XSAVE feature set can manage the same state of the x87 FPU execution environment (**x87 state**) that can be managed using the FXSAVE and FXRSTOR instructions. They organize all x87 state as a user state component in the legacy region of the XSAVE area (see Section 13.4.1). This region is illustrated in Table 13-1; the x87 state is listed below, along with details of its interactions with the XSAVE feature set:

- Bytes 1:0, 3:2, 7:6. These are used for the x87 FPU Control Word (FCW), the x87 FPU Status Word (FSW), and the x87 FPU Opcode (FOP), respectively.
- Byte 4 is used for an abridged version of the x87 FPU Tag Word (FTW). The following items describe its usage:
 - For each j , $0 \leq j \leq 7$, XSAVE, XSAVEOPT, XSAVEC, and XSAVES save a 0 into bit j of byte 4 if x87 FPU data register ST_j has an empty tag; otherwise, XSAVE, XSAVEOPT, XSAVEC, and XSAVES save a 1 into bit j of byte 4.
 - For each j , $0 \leq j \leq 7$, XRSTOR and XRSTORS establish the tag value for x87 FPU data register ST_j as follows. If bit j of byte 4 is 0, the tag for ST_j in the tag register for that data register is marked empty (11B); otherwise, the x87 FPU sets the tag for ST_j based on the value being loaded into that register (see below).
- Bytes 15:8 are used as follows:
 - If the instruction has no REX prefix, or if $REX.W = 0$:
 - Bytes 11:8 are used for bits 31:0 of the x87 FPU Instruction Pointer Offset (FIP).
 - If $CPUID.(EAX=07H,ECX=0H):EBX[\text{bit } 13] = 0$, bytes 13:12 are used for x87 FPU Instruction Pointer Selector (FCS). Otherwise, XSAVE, XSAVEOPT, XSAVEC, and XSAVES save these bytes as 0000H, and XRSTOR and XRSTORS ignore them.
 - Bytes 15:14 are not used.
 - If the instruction has a REX prefix with $REX.W = 1$, bytes 15:8 are used for the full 64 bits of FIP.
- Bytes 23:16 are used as follows:
 - If the instruction has no REX prefix, or if $REX.W = 0$:
 - Bytes 19:16 are used for bits 31:0 of the x87 FPU Data Pointer Offset (FDP).
 - If $CPUID.(EAX=07H,ECX=0H):EBX[\text{bit } 13] = 0$, bytes 21:20 are used for x87 FPU Data Pointer Selector (FDS). Otherwise, XSAVE, XSAVEOPT, XSAVEC, and XSAVES save these bytes as 0000H; and XRSTOR and XRSTORS ignore them.
 - Bytes 23:22 are not used.
 - If the instruction has a REX prefix with $REX.W = 1$, bytes 23:16 are used for the full 64 bits of FDP.
- Bytes 31:24 are used for SSE state (see Section 13.5.2).
- Bytes 159:32 are used for the registers ST_0 – ST_7 (MM_0 – MM_7). Each of the 8 registers is allocated a 128-bit region, with the low 80 bits used for the register and the upper 48 bits unused.

x87 state is XSAVE-managed but the x87 FPU feature is not XSAVE-enabled. The XSAVE feature set can operate on x87 state only if the feature set is enabled ($CR_4.OSXSAVE = 1$).¹ Software can otherwise use x87 state even if the XSAVE feature set is not enabled.

13.5.2 SSE State

Instructions in the XSAVE feature set can manage the registers used by the streaming SIMD extensions (**SSE state**) just as the FXSAVE and FXRSTOR instructions do. They organize all SSE state as a user state component in the legacy region of the XSAVE area (see Section 13.4.1). This region is illustrated in Table 13-1; the SSE state is listed below, along with details of its interactions with the XSAVE feature set:

1. The processor ensures that $XCRO[0]$ is always 1.

- Bytes 23:0 are used for x87 state (see Section 13.5.1).
- Bytes 27:24 are used for the MXCSR register. XRSTOR and XRSTORS generate general-protection faults (#GP) in response to attempts to set any of the reserved bits of the MXCSR register.¹
- Bytes 31:28 are used for the MXCSR_MASK value. XRSTOR and XRSTORS ignore this field.
- Bytes 159:32 are used for x87 state.
- Bytes 287:160 are used for the registers XMM0–XMM7.
- Bytes 415:288 are used for the registers XMM8–XMM15. These fields are used only in 64-bit mode. Executions of XSAVE, XSAVEOPT, XSAVEC, and XSAVES outside 64-bit mode do not modify these bytes; executions of XRSTOR and XRSTORS outside 64-bit mode do not update XMM8–XMM15. See Section 13.13.

SSE state is XSAVE-managed but the SSE feature is not XSAVE-enabled. The XSAVE feature set can operate on SSE state only if the feature set is enabled (CR4.OSXSAVE = 1) and has been configured to manage SSE state (XCR0[1] = 1). Software can otherwise use SSE state even if the XSAVE feature set is not enabled or has not been configured to manage SSE state.

13.5.3 AVX State

The register state used by the Intel[®] Advanced Vector Extensions (AVX) comprises the MXCSR register and 16 256-bit vector registers called YMM0–YMM15. The low 128 bits of each register YMM i is identical to the SSE register XMM i . Thus, the new state register state added by AVX comprises the upper 128 bits of the registers YMM0–YMM15. These 16 128-bit values are denoted YMM0_H–YMM15_H and are collectively called **AVX state**.

As noted in Section 13.1, the XSAVE feature set manages AVX state as user state component 2. Thus, AVX state is located in the extended region of the XSAVE area (see Section 13.4.3).

As noted in Section 13.2, CPUID.(EAX=0DH,ECX=2):EBX enumerates the offset (in bytes, from the base of the XSAVE area) of the section of the extended region of the XSAVE area used for AVX state (when the standard format of the extended region is used). CPUID.(EAX=0DH,ECX=2):EAX enumerates the size (in bytes) required for AVX state.

The XSAVE feature set partitions YMM0_H–YMM15_H in a manner similar to that used for the XMM registers (see Section 13.5.2). Bytes 127:0 of the AVX-state section are used for YMM0_H–YMM7_H. Bytes 255:128 are used for YMM8_H–YMM15_H, but they are used only in 64-bit mode. Executions of XSAVE, XSAVEOPT, XSAVEC, and XSAVES outside 64-bit mode do not modify bytes 255:128; executions of XRSTOR and XRSTORS outside 64-bit mode do not update YMM8_H–YMM15_H. See Section 13.13. In general, bytes 16 i +15:16 i are used for YMM i _H (for 0 ≤ i ≤ 15).

AVX state is XSAVE-managed and the AVX feature is XSAVE-enabled. The XSAVE feature set can operate on AVX state only if the feature set is enabled (CR4.OSXSAVE = 1) and has been configured to manage AVX state (XCR0[2] = 1). AVX instructions cannot be used unless the XSAVE feature set is enabled and has been configured to manage AVX state.

13.5.4 MPX State

The register state used by the Intel[®] Memory Protection Extensions (MPX) comprises the 4 128-bit bounds registers BND0–BND3 (**BNDREGS state**); and the 64-bit user-mode configuration register BNDCFGU and the 64-bit MPX status register BNDSTATUS (collectively, **BNDCSR state**). Together, these two user state components compose **MPX state**.

As noted in Section 13.1, the XSAVE feature set manages MPX state as state components 3–4. Thus, MPX state is located in the extended region of the XSAVE area (see Section 13.4.3). The following items detail how these state components are organized in this region:

- **BNDREGS state.**

As noted in Section 13.2, CPUID.(EAX=0DH,ECX=3):EBX enumerates the offset (in bytes, from the base of the XSAVE area) of the section of the extended region of the XSAVE area used for BNDREGS state (when the

1. While MXCSR and MXCSR_MASK are part of SSE state, their treatment by the XSAVE feature set is not the same as that of the XMM registers. See Section 13.7 through Section 13.11 for details.

standard format of the extended region is used). CPUID.(EAX=0DH,ECX=3):EAX enumerates the size (in bytes) required for BNDREGS state. The BNDREGS section is used for the 4 128-bit bound registers BND0–BND3, with bytes $16i+15:16i$ being used for BND*i*.

- **BNDCSR state.**

As noted in Section 13.2, CPUID.(EAX=0DH,ECX=4):EBX enumerates the offset of the section of the extended region of the XSAVE area used for BNDCSR state (when the standard format of the extended region is used). CPUID.(EAX=0DH,ECX=4):EAX enumerates the size (in bytes) required for BNDCSR state. In the BNDSCR section, bytes 7:0 are used for BNDCFGU and bytes 15:8 are used for BNDSTATUS.

Both components of MPX state are XSAVE-managed and the MPX feature is XSAVE-enabled. The XSAVE feature set can operate on MPX state only if the feature set is enabled (CR4.OSXSAVE = 1) and has been configured to manage MPX state (XCR0[4:3] = 11b). MPX instructions cannot be used unless the XSAVE feature set is enabled and has been configured to manage MPX state.

13.5.5 AVX-512 State

The register state used by the Intel® Advanced Vector Extensions 512 (AVX-512) comprises the MXCSR register, the 8 64-bit opmask registers k0–k7, and 32 512-bit vector registers called ZMM0–ZMM31. For each i , $0 \leq i \leq 15$, the low 256 bits of register ZMM*i* is identical to the AVX register YMM*i*. Thus, the new state register state added by AVX comprises the following user state components:

- The opmask registers, collectively called **opmask state**.
- The upper 256 bits of the registers ZMM0–ZMM15. These 16 256-bit values are denoted ZMM0_H–ZMM15_H and are collectively called **ZMM_Hi256 state**.
- The 16 512-bit registers ZMM16–ZMM31, collectively called **Hi16_ZMM state**.

Together, these three state components compose **AVX-512 state**.

As noted in Section 13.1, the XSAVE feature set manages AVX-512 state as state components 5–7. Thus, AVX-512 state is located in the extended region of the XSAVE area (see Section 13.4.3). The following items detail how these state components are organized in this region:

- **Opmask state.**

As noted in Section 13.2, CPUID.(EAX=0DH,ECX=5):EBX enumerates the offset (in bytes, from the base of the XSAVE area) of the section of the extended region of the XSAVE area used for opmask state (when the standard format of the extended region is used). CPUID.(EAX=0DH,ECX=5):EAX enumerates the size (in bytes) required for opmask state. The opmask section is used for the 8 64-bit opmask registers k0–k7, with bytes $8i+7:8i$ being used for k_i .

- **ZMM_Hi256 state.**

As noted in Section 13.2, CPUID.(EAX=0DH,ECX=6):EBX enumerates the offset of the section of the extended region of the XSAVE area used for ZMM_Hi256 state (when the standard format of the extended region is used). CPUID.(EAX=0DH,ECX=6):EAX enumerates the size (in bytes) required for ZMM_Hi256 state.

The XSAVE feature set partitions ZMM0_H–ZMM15_H in a manner similar to that used for the XMM registers (see Section 13.5.2). Bytes 255:0 of the ZMM_Hi256-state section are used for ZMM0_H–ZMM7_H. Bytes 511:256 are used for ZMM8_H–ZMM15_H, but they are used only in 64-bit mode. Executions of XSAVE, XSAVEOPT, XSAVEC, and XSAVES outside 64-bit mode do not modify bytes 511:256; executions of XRSTOR and XRSTORS outside 64-bit mode do not update ZMM8_H–ZMM15_H. See Section 13.13. In general, bytes $32i+31:32i$ are used for ZMM*i*_H (for $0 \leq i \leq 15$).

- **Hi16_ZMM state.**

As noted in Section 13.2, CPUID.(EAX=0DH,ECX=7):EBX enumerates the offset of the section of the extended region of the XSAVE area used for Hi16_ZMM state (when the standard format of the extended region is used). CPUID.(EAX=0DH,ECX=7):EAX enumerates the size (in bytes) required for Hi16_ZMM state.

The XSAVE feature set accesses Hi16_ZMM state only in 64-bit mode. Executions of XSAVE, XSAVEOPT, XSAVEC, and XSAVES outside 64-bit mode do not modify the Hi16_ZMM section; executions of XRSTOR and XRSTORS outside 64-bit mode do not update ZMM16–ZMM31. See Section 13.13. In general, bytes $64(i-16)+63:64(i-16)$ are used for ZMM*i* (for $16 \leq i \leq 31$).

All three components of AVX-512 state are XSAVE-managed and the AVX-512 feature is XSAVE-enabled. The XSAVE feature set can operate on AVX-512 state only if the feature set is enabled (CR4.OSXSAVE = 1) and has

been configured to manage AVX-512 state (XCR0[7:5] = 111b). AVX-512 instructions cannot be used unless the XSAVE feature set is enabled and has been configured to manage AVX-512 state.

13.5.6 PT State

The register state used by Intel Processor Trace (**PT state**) comprises the following 9 MSRs: IA32_RTIT_CTL, IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_BASE, IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS, IA32_RTIT_STATUS, IA32_RTIT_CR3_MATCH, IA32_RTIT_ADDR0_A, IA32_RTIT_ADDR0_B, IA32_RTIT_ADDR1_A, and IA32_RTIT_ADDR1_B.¹

As noted in Section 13.1, the XSAVE feature set manages PT state as supervisor state component 8. Thus, PT state is located in the extended region of the XSAVE area (see Section 13.4.3). As noted in Section 13.2, CPUID.(EAX=0DH,ECX=8):EAX enumerates the size (in bytes) required for PT state. The MSRs are each allocated 8 bytes in the state component in the order given above. Thus, IA32_RTIT_CTL is at byte offset 0, IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_BASE at byte offset 8, etc. Any locations in the state component at or beyond byte offset 72 are reserved.

PT state is XSAVE-managed but Intel Processor Trace is not XSAVE-enabled. The XSAVE feature set can operate on PT state only if the feature set is enabled (CR4.OSXSAVE = 1) and has been configured to manage PT state (IA32_XSS[8] = 1). Software can otherwise use Intel Processor Trace and access its MSRs (using RDMSR and WRMSR) even if the XSAVE feature set is not enabled or has not been configured to manage PT state.

The following items describe special treatment of PT state by the XSAVES and XRSTORS instructions:

- If XSAVES saves PT state, the instruction clears IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn (bit 0) after saving the value of the IA32_RTIT_CTL MSR and before saving any other PT state. If XSAVES causes a fault or a VM exit, it restores IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn to its original value.
- If XSAVES saves PT state, the instruction saves zeroes in the reserved portions of the state component.
- If XRSTORS would restore (or initialize) PT state and IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn = 1, the instruction causes a general-protection exception (#GP) before modifying PT state.
- If XRSTORS causes an exception or a VM exit, it does so before any modification to IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn (even if it has loaded other PT state).

13.5.7 PKRU State

The register state used by the protection-key feature (**PKRU state**) is the 32-bit PKRU register. As noted in Section 13.1, the XSAVE feature set manages PKRU state as user state component 9. Thus, PKRU state is located in the extended region of the XSAVE area (see Section 13.4.3).

As noted in Section 13.2, CPUID.(EAX=0DH,ECX=9):EBX enumerates the offset (in bytes, from the base of the XSAVE area) of the section of the extended region of the XSAVE area used for PKRU state (when the standard format of the extended region is used). CPUID.(EAX=0DH,ECX=9):EAX enumerates the size (in bytes) required for PKRU state. The XSAVE feature set uses bytes 3:0 of the PK-state section for the PKRU register.

PKRU state is XSAVE-managed but the protection-key feature is not XSAVE-enabled. The XSAVE feature set can operate on PKRU state only if the feature set is enabled (CR4.OSXSAVE = 1) and has been configured to manage PKRU state (XCR0[9] = 1). Software can otherwise use protection keys and access PKRU state even if the XSAVE feature set is not enabled or has not been configured to manage PKRU state.

The value of the PKRU register determines the access rights for user-mode linear addresses. (See Section 4.6, "Access Rights," of *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3A*.) The access rights that pertain to an execution of the XRSTOR and XRSTORS instructions are determined by the value of the register before the execution and not by any value that the execution might load into the PKRU register.

1. These MSRs might not be supported by every processor that supports Intel Processor Trace. Software can use the CPUID instruction to discover which are supported; see Section 35.3.1, "Detection of Intel Processor Trace and Capability Enumeration," of *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3C*.

13.5.8 HDC State

The register state used by hardware duty cycling (**HDC state**) comprises the IA32_PM_CTL1 MSR.

As noted in Section 13.1, the XSAVE feature set manages HDC state as supervisor state component 13. Thus, HDC state is located in the extended region of the XSAVE area (see Section 13.4.3). As noted in Section 13.2, CPUID.(EAX=0DH,ECX=13):EAX enumerates the size (in bytes) required for PT state. The IA32_PM_CTL1 MSR is allocated 8 bytes at byte offset 0 in the state component.

HDC state is XSAVE-managed but hardware duty cycling is not XSAVE-enabled. The XSAVE feature set can operate on HDC state only if the feature set is enabled (CR4.OSXSAVE = 1) and has been configured to manage HDC state (IA32_XSS[13] = 1). Software can otherwise use hardware duty cycle and access the IA32_PM_CTL1 MSR (using RDMSR and WRMSR) even if the XSAVE feature set is not enabled or has not been configured to manage HDC state.

13.6 PROCESSOR TRACKING OF XSAVE-MANAGED STATE

The XSAVEOPT, XSAVEC, and XSAVES instructions use two optimizations to reduce the amount of data that they write to memory. They avoid writing data for any state component known to be in its initial configuration (the **init optimization**). In addition, if either XSAVEOPT or XSAVES is using the same XSAVE area as that used by the most recent execution of XRSTOR or XRSTORS, it may avoid writing data for any state component whose configuration is known not to have been modified since then (the **modified optimization**). (XSAVE does not use these optimizations, and XSAVEC does not use the modified optimization.) The operation of XSAVEOPT, XSAVEC, and XSAVES are described in more detail in Section 13.9 through Section 13.11.

A processor can support the init and modified optimizations with special hardware that tracks the state components that might benefit from those optimizations. Other implementations might not include such hardware; such a processor would always consider each such state component as not in its initial configuration and as modified since the last execution of XRSTOR or XRSTORS.

The following notation describes the state of the init and modified optimizations:

- XINUSE denotes the state-component bitmap corresponding to the init optimization. If $XINUSE[i] = 0$, state component i is known to be in its initial configuration; otherwise $XINUSE[i] = 1$. It is possible for $XINUSE[i]$ to be 1 even when state component i is in its initial configuration. On a processor that does not support the init optimization, $XINUSE[i]$ is always 1 for every value of i .

Executing XGETBV with ECX = 1 returns in EDX:EAX the logical-AND of XCR0 and the current value of the XINUSE state-component bitmap. Such an execution of XGETBV always sets EAX[1] to 1 if XCR0[1] = 1 and MXCSR does not have its RESET value of 1F80H. Section 13.2 explains how software can determine whether a processor supports this use of XGETBV.

- XMODIFIED denotes the state-component bitmap corresponding to the modified optimization. If $XMODIFIED[i] = 0$, state component i is known not to have been modified since the most recent execution of XRSTOR or XRSTORS; otherwise $XMODIFIED[i] = 1$. It is possible for $XMODIFIED[i]$ to be 1 even when state component i has not been modified since the most recent execution of XRSTOR or XRSTORS. On a processor that does not support the modified optimization, $XMODIFIED[i]$ is always 1 for every value of i .

A processor that implements the modified optimization saves information about the most recent execution of XRSTOR or XRSTORS in a quantity called **XRSTOR_INFO**, a 4-tuple containing the following: (1) the CPL; (2) whether the logical processor was in VMX non-root operation; (3) the linear address of the XSAVE area; and (4) the XCOMP_BV field in the XSAVE area. An execution of XSAVEOPT or XSAVES uses the modified optimization only if that execution corresponds to XRSTOR_INFO on these four parameters.

This mechanism implies that, depending on details of the operating system, the processor might determine that an execution of XSAVEOPT by one user application corresponds to an earlier execution of XRSTOR by a different application. For this reason, Intel recommends the application software not use the XSAVEOPT instruction.

The following items specify the initial configuration each state component (for the purposes of defining the XINUSE bitmap):

- **x87 state.** x87 state is in its initial configuration if the following all hold: FCW is 037FH; FSW is 0000H; FTW is FFFFH; FCS and FDS are each 0000H; FIP and FDP are each 00000000_00000000H; each of ST0–ST7 is 0000_00000000_00000000H.

- **SSE state.** In 64-bit mode, SSE state is in its initial configuration if each of XMM0–XMM15 is 0. Outside 64-bit mode, SSE state is in its initial configuration if each of XMM0–XMM7 is 0. XINUSE[1] pertains only to the state of the XMM registers and not to MXCSR. An execution of XRSTOR or XRSTORS outside 64-bit mode does not update XMM8–XMM15. (See Section 13.13.)
- **AVX state.** In 64-bit mode, AVX state is in its initial configuration if each of YMM0_H–YMM15_H is 0. Outside 64-bit mode, AVX state is in its initial configuration if each of YMM0_H–YMM7_H is 0. An execution of XRSTOR or XRSTORS outside 64-bit mode does not update YMM8_H–YMM15_H. (See Section 13.13.)
- **BNDREGS state.** BNDREGS state is in its initial configuration if the value of each of BND0–BND3 is 0.
- **BNDCSR state.** BNDCSR state is in its initial configuration if BNDCFGU and BNDCSR each has value 0.
- **Opmask state.** Opmask state is in its initial configuration if each of the opmask registers k0–k7 is 0.
- **ZMM_Hi256 state.** In 64-bit mode, ZMM_Hi256 state is in its initial configuration if each of ZMM0_H–ZMM15_H is 0. Outside 64-bit mode, ZMM_Hi256 state is in its initial configuration if each of ZMM0_H–ZMM7_H is 0. An execution of XRSTOR or XRSTORS outside 64-bit mode does not update ZMM8_H–ZMM15_H. (See Section 13.13.)
- **Hi16_ZMM state.** In 64-bit mode, Hi16_ZMM state is in its initial configuration if each of ZMM16–ZMM31 is 0. Outside 64-bit mode, Hi16_ZMM state is always in its initial configuration. An execution of XRSTOR or XRSTORS outside 64-bit mode does not update ZMM31–ZMM31. (See Section 13.13.)
- **PT state.** PT state is in its initial configuration if each of the 9 MSRs is 0.
- **PKRU state.** PKRU state is in its initial configuration if the value of the PKRU is 0.
- **HDC state.** HDC state is in its initial configuration if the value of the IA32_PM_CTL1 MSR is 1.

13.7 OPERATION OF XSAVE

The XSAVE instruction takes a single memory operand, which is an XSAVE area. In addition, the register pair EDX:EAX is an implicit operand used as a state-component bitmap (see Section 13.1) called the **instruction mask**. The logical-AND of XCR0 and the instruction mask is the **requested-feature bitmap (RFBM)** of the user state components to be saved.

The following conditions cause execution of the XSAVE instruction to generate a fault:

- If the XSAVE feature set is not enabled (CR4.OSXSAVE = 0), an invalid-opcode exception (#UD) occurs.
- If CR0.TS[bit 3] is 1, a device-not-available exception (#NM) occurs.
- If the address of the XSAVE area is not 64-byte aligned, a general-protection exception (#GP) occurs.¹

If none of these conditions cause a fault, execution of XSAVE reads the XSTATE_BV field of the XSAVE header (see Section 13.4.2) and writes it back to memory, setting XSTATE_BV[*i*] ($0 \leq i \leq 63$) as follows:

- If RFBM[*i*] = 0, XSTATE_BV[*i*] is not changed.
- If RFBM[*i*] = 1, XSTATE_BV[*i*] is set to the value of XINUSE[*i*]. Section 13.6 defines XINUSE to describe the processor init optimization and specifies the initial configuration of each state component. The nature of that optimization implies the following:
 - If state component *i* is in its initial configuration, XINUSE[*i*] may be either 0 or 1, and XSTATE_BV[*i*] may be written with either 0 or 1.
 XINUSE[1] pertains only to the state of the XMM registers and not to MXCSR. Thus, XSTATE_BV[1] may be written with 0 even if MXCSR does not have its RESET value of 1F80H.
 - If state component *i* is not in its initial configuration, XINUSE[*i*] = 1 and XSTATE_BV[*i*] is written with 1.
 (As explained in Section 13.6, the initial configurations of some state components may depend on whether the processor is in 64-bit mode.)

The XSAVE instruction does not write any part of the XSAVE header other than the XSTATE_BV field; in particular, it does **not** write to the XCOMP_BV field.

1. If CR0.AM = 1, CPL = 3, and EFLAGS.AC = 1, an alignment-check exception (#AC) may occur instead of #GP.

Execution of XSAVE saves into the XSAVE area those state components corresponding to bits that are set in RFBM. State components 0 and 1 are located in the legacy region of the XSAVE area (see Section 13.4.1). Each state component i , $2 \leq i \leq 62$, is located in the extended region; the XSAVE instruction always uses the standard format for the extended region (see Section 13.4.3).

The MXCSR register and MXCSR_MASK are part of SSE state (see Section 13.5.2) and are thus associated with RFBM[1]. However, the XSAVE instruction also saves these values when RFBM[2] = 1 (even if RFBM[1] = 0).

See Section 13.5 for specifics for each state component and for details regarding mode-specific operation and operation determined by instruction prefixes. See Section 13.13 for details regarding faults caused by memory accesses.

13.8 OPERATION OF XRSTOR

The XRSTOR instruction takes a single memory operand, which is an XSAVE area. In addition, the register pair EDX:EAX is an implicit operand used as a state-component bitmap (see Section 13.1) called the **instruction mask**. The logical-AND of XCR0 and the instruction mask is the **requested-feature bitmap (RFBM)** of the user state components to be restored.

The following conditions cause execution of the XRSTOR instruction to generate a fault:

- If the XSAVE feature set is not enabled (CR4.OSXSAVE = 0), an invalid-opcode exception (#UD) occurs.
- If CR0.TS[bit 3] is 1, a device-not-available exception (#NM) occurs.
- If the address of the XSAVE area is not 64-byte aligned, a general-protection exception (#GP) occurs.¹

After checking for these faults, the XRSTOR instruction reads the XCOMP_BV field in the XSAVE area's XSAVE header (see Section 13.4.2). If XCOMP_BV[63] = 0, the **standard form of XRSTOR** is executed (see Section 13.8.1); otherwise, the **compacted form of XRSTOR** is executed (see Section 13.8.2).²

See Section 13.2 for details of how to determine whether the compacted form of XRSTOR is supported.

13.8.1 Standard Form of XRSTOR

The standard form of XRSTOR performs additional fault checking. Either of the following conditions causes a general-protection exception (#GP):

- The XSTATE_BV field of the XSAVE header sets a bit that is not set in XCR0.
- Bytes 23:8 of the XSAVE header are not all 0 (this implies that all bits in XCOMP_BV are 0).³

If none of these conditions cause a fault, the processor updates each state component i for which RFBM[i] = 1. XRSTOR updates state component i based on the value of bit i in the XSTATE_BV field of the XSAVE header:

- If XSTATE_BV[i] = 0, the state component is set to its initial configuration. Section 13.6 specifies the initial configuration of each state component.

The initial configuration of state component 1 pertains only to the XMM registers and not to MXCSR. See below for the treatment of MXCSR

- If XSTATE_BV[i] = 1, the state component is loaded with data from the XSAVE area. See Section 13.5 for specifics for each state component and for details regarding mode-specific operation and operation determined by instruction prefixes. See Section 13.13 for details regarding faults caused by memory accesses.

1. If CR0.AM = 1, CPL = 3, and EFLAGS.AC = 1, an alignment-check exception (#AC) may occur instead of #GP.
 2. If the processor does not support the compacted form of XRSTOR, it may execute the standard form of XRSTOR without first reading the XCOMP_BV field. A processor supports the compacted form of XRSTOR only if it enumerates CPUID.(EAX=0DH,ECX=1):EAX[1] as 1.
 3. Bytes 63:24 of the XSAVE header are also reserved. Software should ensure that bytes 63:16 of the XSAVE header are all 0 in any XSAVE area. (Bytes 15:8 should also be 0 if the XSAVE area is to be used on a processor that does not support the compaction extensions to the XSAVE feature set.)

State components 0 and 1 are located in the legacy region of the XSAVE area (see Section 13.4.1). Each state component i , $2 \leq i \leq 62$, is located in the extended region; the standard form of XRSTOR uses the standard format for the extended region (see Section 13.4.3).

The MXCSR register is part of state component 1, SSE state (see Section 13.5.2). However, the standard form of XRSTOR loads the MXCSR register from memory whenever the RFBM[1] (SSE) or RFBM[2] (AVX) is set, regardless of the values of XSTATE_BV[1] and XSTATE_BV[2]. The standard form of XRSTOR causes a general-protection exception (#GP) if it would load MXCSR with an illegal value.

13.8.2 Compacted Form of XRSTOR

The compacted form of XRSTOR performs additional fault checking. Any of the following conditions causes a #GP:

- The XCOMP_BV field of the XSAVE header sets a bit in the range 62:0 that is not set in XCR0.
- The XSTATE_BV field of the XSAVE header sets a bit (including bit 63) that is not set in XCOMP_BV.
- Bytes 63:16 of the XSAVE header are not all 0.

If none of these conditions cause a fault, the processor updates each state component i for which RFBM[i] = 1. XRSTOR updates state component i based on the value of bit i in the XSTATE_BV field of the XSAVE header:

- If XSTATE_BV[i] = 0, the state component is set to its initial configuration. Section 13.6 specifies the initial configuration of each state component.

If XSTATE_BV[1] = 0, the compacted form XRSTOR initializes MXCSR to 1F80H. (This differs from the standard form of XRSTOR, which loads MXCSR from the XSAVE area whenever either RFBM[1] or RFBM[2] is set.)

State component i is set to its initial configuration as indicated above if RFBM[i] = 1 and XSTATE_BV[i] = 0 — **even if XCOMP_BV[i] = 0**. This is true for all values of i , including 0 (x87 state) and 1 (SSE state).

- If XSTATE_BV[i] = 1, the state component is loaded with data from the XSAVE area.¹ See Section 13.5 for specifics for each state component and for details regarding mode-specific operation and operation determined by instruction prefixes. See Section 13.13 for details regarding faults caused by memory accesses.

State components 0 and 1 are located in the legacy region of the XSAVE area (see Section 13.4.1). Each state component i , $2 \leq i \leq 62$, is located in the extended region; the compacted form of the XRSTOR instruction uses the compacted format for the extended region (see Section 13.4.3).

The MXCSR register is part of SSE state (see Section 13.5.2) and is thus loaded from memory if RFBM[1] = XSTATE_BV[1] = 1. The compacted form of XRSTOR does not consider RFBM[2] (AVX) when determining whether to update MXCSR. (This is a difference from the standard form of XRSTOR.) The compacted form of XRSTOR causes a general-protection exception (#GP) if it would load MXCSR with an illegal value.

13.8.3 XRSTOR and the Init and Modified Optimizations

Execution of the XRSTOR instruction causes the processor to update its tracking for the init and modified optimizations (see Section 13.6). The following items provide details:

- The processor updates its tracking for the init optimization as follows:
 - If RFBM[i] = 0, XINUSE[i] is not changed.
 - If RFBM[i] = 1 and XSTATE_BV[i] = 0, state component i may be tracked as init; XINUSE[i] may be set to 0 or 1. (As noted in Section 13.6, a processor need not implement the init optimization for state component i ; a processor that does not do so implicitly maintains XINUSE[i] = 1 at all times.)
 - If RFBM[i] = 1 and XSTATE_BV[i] = 1, state component i is tracked as not init; XINUSE[i] is set to 1.
- The processor updates its tracking for the modified optimization and records information about the XRSTOR execution for future interaction with the XSAVEOPT and XSAVES instructions (see Section 13.9 and Section 13.11) as follows:
 - If RFBM[i] = 0, state component i is tracked as modified; XMODIFIED[i] is set to 1.

1. Earlier fault checking ensured that, if the instruction has reached this point in execution and XSTATE_BV[i] is 1, then XCOMP_BV[i] is also 1.

- If $RFBM[i] = 1$, state component i may be tracked as unmodified; $XMODIFIED[i]$ may be set to 0 or 1. (As noted in Section 13.6, a processor need not implement the modified optimization for state component i ; a processor that does not do so implicitly maintains $XMODIFIED[i] = 1$ at all times.)
- $XRSTOR_INFO$ is set to the 4-tuple $\langle w, x, y, z \rangle$, where w is the CPL (0); x is 1 if the logical processor is in VMX non-root operation and 0 otherwise; y is the linear address of the XSAVE area; and z is $XCOMP_BV$. In particular, the standard form of $XRSTOR$ always sets z to all zeroes, while the compacted form of $XRSTORS$ never does so (because it sets at least bit 63 to 1).

13.9 OPERATION OF XSAVEOPT

The operation of $XSAVEOPT$ is similar to that of $XSAVE$. Unlike $XSAVE$, $XSAVEOPT$ uses the init optimization (by which it may omit saving state components that are in their initial configuration) and the modified optimization (by which it may omit saving state components that have not been modified since the last execution of $XRSTOR$); see Section 13.6. See Section 13.2 for details of how to determine whether $XSAVEOPT$ is supported.

The $XSAVEOPT$ instruction takes a single memory operand, which is an XSAVE area. In addition, the register pair $EDX:EAX$ is an implicit operand used as a state-component bitmap (see Section 13.1) called the **instruction mask**. The logical (bitwise) AND of $XCR0$ and the instruction mask is the **requested-feature bitmap (RFBM)** of the user state components to be saved.

The following conditions cause execution of the $XSAVEOPT$ instruction to generate a fault:

- If the XSAVE feature set is not enabled ($CR4.OSXSAVE = 0$), an invalid-opcode exception ($\#UD$) occurs.
- If $CR0.TS[\text{bit } 3]$ is 1, a device-not-available exception ($\#NM$) occurs.
- If the address of the XSAVE area is not 64-byte aligned, a general-protection exception ($\#GP$) occurs.¹

If none of these conditions cause a fault, execution of $XSAVEOPT$ reads the $XSTATE_BV$ field of the XSAVE header (see Section 13.4.2) and writes it back to memory, setting $XSTATE_BV[i]$ ($0 \leq i \leq 63$) as follows:

- If $RFBM[i] = 0$, $XSTATE_BV[i]$ is not changed.
- If $RFBM[i] = 1$, $XSTATE_BV[i]$ is set to the value of $XINUSE[i]$. Section 13.6 defines $XINUSE$ to describe the processor init optimization and specifies the initial configuration of each state component. The nature of that optimization implies the following:
 - If the state component is in its initial configuration, $XINUSE[i]$ may be either 0 or 1, and $XSTATE_BV[i]$ may be written with either 0 or 1.

$XINUSE[1]$ pertains only to the state of the XMM registers and not to $MXCSR$. Thus, $XSTATE_BV[1]$ may be written with 0 even if $MXCSR$ does not have its $RESET$ value of $1F80H$.
 - If the state component is not in its initial configuration, $XSTATE_BV[i]$ is written with 1.

(As explained in Section 13.6, the initial configurations of some state components may depend on whether the processor is in 64-bit mode.)

The $XSAVEOPT$ instruction does not write any part of the XSAVE header other than the $XSTATE_BV$ field; in particular, it does not write to the $XCOMP_BV$ field.

Execution of $XSAVEOPT$ saves into the XSAVE area those state components corresponding to bits that are set in $RFBM$ (subject to the optimizations described below). State components 0 and 1 are located in the legacy region of the XSAVE area (see Section 13.4.1). Each state component i , $2 \leq i \leq 62$, is located in the extended region; the $XSAVEOPT$ instruction always uses the standard format for the extended region (see Section 13.4.3).

See Section 13.5 for specifics for each state component and for details regarding mode-specific operation and operation determined by instruction prefixes. See Section 13.13 for details regarding faults caused by memory accesses.

Execution of $XSAVEOPT$ performs two optimizations that reduce the amount of data written to memory:

1. If $CR0.AM = 1$, $CPL = 3$, and $EFLAGS.AC = 1$, an alignment-check exception ($\#AC$) may occur instead of $\#GP$.

- **Init optimization.**

If $XINUSE[i] = 0$, state component i is not saved to the XSAVE area (even if $RFBM[i] = 1$). (See below for exceptions made for MXCSR.)

- **Modified optimization.**

Each execution of XRSTOR and XRSTORS establishes XRSTOR_INFO as a 4-tuple $\langle w, x, y, z \rangle$ (see Section 13.8.3 and Section 13.12). Execution of XSAVEOPT uses the modified optimization only if the following all hold for the current value of XRSTOR_INFO:

- $w = \text{CPL}$;
- $x = 1$ if and only if the logical processor is in VMX non-root operation;
- y is the linear address of the XSAVE area being used by XSAVEOPT; and
- z is 00000000_00000000H. (This last item implies that XSAVEOPT does not use the modified optimization if the last execution of XRSTOR used the compacted form, or if an execution of XRSTORS followed the last execution of XRSTOR.)

If XSAVEOPT uses the modified optimization and $XMODIFIED[i] = 0$ (see Section 13.6), state component i is not saved to the XSAVE area.

(In practice, the benefit of the modified optimization for state component i depends on how the processor is tracking state component i ; see Section 13.6. Limitations on the tracking ability may result in state component i being saved even though it is in the same configuration that was loaded by the previous execution of XRSTOR.)

Depending on details of the operating system, an execution of XSAVEOPT by a user application might use the modified optimization when the most recent execution of XRSTOR was by a different application. Because of this, Intel recommends the application software not use the XSAVEOPT instruction.

The MXCSR register and MXCSR_MASK are part of SSE state (see Section 13.5.2) and are thus associated with bit 1 of RFBM. However, the XSAVEOPT instruction also saves these values when $RFBM[2] = 1$ (even if $RFBM[1] = 0$). The init and modified optimizations do not apply to the MXCSR register and MXCSR_MASK.

13.10 OPERATION OF XSAVEC

The operation of XSAVEC is similar to that of XSAVE. Two main differences are (1) XSAVEC uses the compacted format for the extended region of the XSAVE area; and (2) XSAVEC uses the init optimization (see Section 13.6). Unlike XSAVEOPT, XSAVEC does not use the modified optimization. See Section 13.2 for details of how to determine whether XSAVEC is supported.

The XSAVEC instruction takes a single memory operand, which is an XSAVE area. In addition, the register pair EDX:EAX is an implicit operand used as a state-component bitmap (see Section 13.1) called the **instruction mask**. The logical (bitwise) AND of XCR0 and the instruction mask is the **requested-feature bitmap (RFBM)** of the user state components to be saved.

The following conditions cause execution of the XSAVEC instruction to generate a fault:

- If the XSAVE feature set is not enabled ($CR4.OSXSAVE = 0$), an invalid-opcode exception (#UD) occurs.
- If $CR0.TS[\text{bit } 3] = 1$, a device-not-available exception (#NM) occurs.
- If the address of the XSAVE area is not 64-byte aligned, a general-protection exception (#GP) occurs.¹

If none of these conditions cause a fault, execution of XSAVEC writes the XSTATE_BV field of the XSAVE header (see Section 13.4.2), setting $XSTATE_BV[i]$ ($0 \leq i \leq 63$) as follows:²

- If $RFBM[i] = 0$, $XSTATE_BV[i]$ is written as 0.
- If $RFBM[i] = 1$, $XSTATE_BV[i]$ is set to the value of $XINUSE[i]$ (see below for an exception made for $XSTATE_BV[1]$). Section 13.6 defines XINUSE to describe the processor init optimization and specifies the initial configuration of each state component. The nature of that optimization implies the following:
 - If state component i is in its initial configuration, $XSTATE_BV[i]$ may be written with either 0 or 1.

1. If $CR0.AM = 1$, $CPL = 3$, and $EFLAGS.AC = 1$, an alignment-check exception (#AC) may occur instead of #GP.

2. Unlike the XSAVE and XSAVEOPT instructions, the XSAVEC instruction does **not** read the XSTATE_BV field of the XSAVE header.

— If state component i is not in its initial configuration, `XSTATE_BV[i]` is written with 1.

`XINUSE[1]` pertains only to the state of the XMM registers and not to MXCSR. However, if `RFBM[1] = 1` and MXCSR does not have the value 1F80H, XSAVEC writes `XSTATE_BV[1]` as 1 even if `XINUSE[1] = 0`.

(As explained in Section 13.6, the initial configurations of some state components may depend on whether the processor is in 64-bit mode.)

The XSAVEC instruction sets bit 63 of the `XCOMP_BV` field of the XSAVE header while writing `RFBM[62:0]` to `XCOMP_BV[62:0]`. The XSAVEC instruction does not write any part of the XSAVE header other than the `XSTATE_BV` and `XCOMP_BV` fields.

Execution of XSAVEC saves into the XSAVE area those state components corresponding to bits that are set in `RFBM` (subject to the init optimization described below). State components 0 and 1 are located in the legacy region of the XSAVE area (see Section 13.4.1). Each state component i , $2 \leq i \leq 62$, is located in the extended region; the XSAVEC instruction always uses the compacted format for the extended region (see Section 13.4.3).

See Section 13.5 for specifics for each state component and for details regarding mode-specific operation and operation determined by instruction prefixes. See Section 13.13 for details regarding faults caused by memory accesses.

Execution of XSAVEC performs the init optimization to reduce the amount of data written to memory. If `XINUSE[i] = 0`, state component i is not saved to the XSAVE area (even if `RFBM[i] = 1`). However, if `RFBM[1] = 1` and MXCSR does not have the value 1F80H, XSAVEC saves all of state component 1 (SSE — including the XMM registers) even if `XINUSE[1] = 0`. Unlike the XSAVE instruction, `RFBM[2]` does not determine whether XSAVEC saves MXCSR and `MXCSR_MASK`.

13.11 OPERATION OF XSAVES

The operation of XSAVES is similar to that of XSAVEC. The main differences are (1) XSAVES can be executed only if `CPL = 0`; (2) XSAVES can operate on the state components whose bits are set in `XCR0 | IA32_XSS` and can thus operate on supervisor state components; and (3) XSAVES uses the modified optimization (see Section 13.6). See Section 13.2 for details of how to determine whether XSAVES is supported.

The XSAVES instruction takes a single memory operand, which is an XSAVE area. In addition, the register pair `EDX:EAX` is an implicit operand used as a state-component bitmap (see Section 13.1) called the **instruction mask**. `EDX:EAX & (XCR0 | IA32_XSS)` (the logical AND the instruction mask with the logical OR of `XCR0` and `IA32_XSS`) is the **requested-feature bitmap (RFBM)** of the state components to be saved.

The following conditions cause execution of the XSAVES instruction to generate a fault:

- If the XSAVE feature set is not enabled (`CR4.OSXSAVE = 0`), an invalid-opcode exception (`#UD`) occurs.
- If `CR0.TS[bit 3]` is 1, a device-not-available exception (`#NM`) occurs.
- If `CPL > 0` or if the address of the XSAVE area is not 64-byte aligned, a general-protection exception (`#GP`) occurs.¹

If none of these conditions cause a fault, execution of XSAVES writes the `XSTATE_BV` field of the XSAVE header (see Section 13.4.2), setting `XSTATE_BV[i]` ($0 \leq i \leq 63$) as follows:

- If `RFBM[i] = 0`, `XSTATE_BV[i]` is written as 0.
- If `RFBM[i] = 1`, `XSTATE_BV[i]` is set to the value of `XINUSE[i]` (see below for an exception made for `XSTATE_BV[1]`). Section 13.6 defines `XINUSE` to describe the processor init optimization and specifies the initial configuration of each state component. The nature of that optimization implies the following:
 - If state component i is in its initial configuration, `XSTATE_BV[i]` may be written with either 0 or 1.
 - If state component i is not in its initial configuration, `XSTATE_BV[i]` is written with 1.

`XINUSE[1]` pertains only to the state of the XMM registers and not to MXCSR. However, if `RFBM[1] = 1` and MXCSR does not have the value 1F80H, XSAVES writes `XSTATE_BV[1]` as 1 even if `XINUSE[1] = 0`.

(As explained in Section 13.6, the initial configurations of some state components may depend on whether the processor is in 64-bit mode.)

1. If `CR0.AM = 1`, `CPL = 3`, and `EFLAGS.AC = 1`, an alignment-check exception (`#AC`) may occur instead of `#GP`.

The XSAVES instructions sets bit 63 of the XCOMP_BV field of the XSAVE header while writing RFBM[62:0] to XCOMP_BV[62:0]. The XSAVES instruction does not write any part of the XSAVE header other than the XSTATE_BV and XCOMP_BV fields.

Execution of XSAVES saves into the XSAVE area those state components corresponding to bits that are set in RFBM (subject to the optimizations described below). State components 0 and 1 are located in the legacy region of the XSAVE area (see Section 13.4.1). Each state component i , $2 \leq i \leq 62$, is located in the extended region; the XSAVES instruction always uses the compacted format for the extended region (see Section 13.4.3).

See Section 13.5 for specifics for each state component and for details regarding mode-specific operation and operation determined by instruction prefixes; in particular, see Section 13.5.6 for some special treatment of PT state by XSAVES. See Section 13.13 for details regarding faults caused by memory accesses.

Execution of XSAVES performs the init optimization to reduce the amount of data written to memory. If $XINUSE[i] = 0$, state component i is not saved to the XSAVE area (even if $RFBM[i] = 1$). However, if $RFBM[1] = 1$ and MXCSR does not have the value 1F80H, XSAVES saves all of state component 1 (SSE — including the XMM registers) even if $XINUSE[1] = 0$.

Like XSAVEOPT, XSAVES may perform the modified optimization. Each execution of XRSTOR and XRSTORS establishes XRSTOR_INFO as a 4-tuple $\langle w, x, y, z \rangle$ (see Section 13.8.3 and Section 13.12). Execution of XSAVES uses the modified optimization only if the following all hold:

- $w = \text{CPL}$;
- $x = 1$ if and only if the logical processor is in VMX non-root operation;
- y is the linear address of the XSAVE area being used by XSAVEOPT; and
- $z[63]$ is 1 and $z[62:0] = \text{RFBM}[62:0]$. (This last item implies that XSAVES does not use the modified optimization if the last execution of XRSTOR used the standard form and followed the last execution of XRSTORS.)

If XSAVES uses the modified optimization and $XMODIFIED[i] = 0$ (see Section 13.6), state component i is not saved to the XSAVE area.

13.12 OPERATION OF XRSTORS

The operation of XRSTORS is similar to that of XRSTOR. Three main differences are (1) XRSTORS can be executed only if $\text{CPL} = 0$; (2) XRSTORS can operate on the state components whose bits are set in $\text{XCR0} \mid \text{IA32_XSS}$ and can thus operate on supervisor state components; and (3) XRSTORS has only a compacted form (no standard form; see Section 13.8). See Section 13.2 for details of how to determine whether XRSTORS is supported.

The XRSTORS instruction takes a single memory operand, which is an XSAVE area. In addition, the register pair EDX:EAX is an implicit operand used as a state-component bitmap (see Section 13.1) called the **instruction mask**. $\text{EDX:EAX} \& (\text{XCR0} \mid \text{IA32_XSS})$ (the logical AND the instruction mask with the logical OR of XCR0 and IA32_XSS) is the **requested-feature bitmap (RFBM)** of the state components to be restored.

The following conditions cause execution of the XRSTOR instruction to generate a fault:

- If the XSAVE feature set is not enabled ($\text{CR4.OSXSAVE} = 0$), an invalid-opcode exception (#UD) occurs.
- If $\text{CR0.TS}[\text{bit } 3]$ is 1, a device-not-available exception (#NM) occurs.
- If $\text{CPL} > 0$ or if the address of the XSAVE area is not 64-byte aligned, a general-protection exception (#GP) occurs.¹

After checking for these faults, the XRSTORS instruction reads the first 64 bytes of the XSAVE header, including the XSTATE_BV and XCOMP_BV fields (see Section 13.4.2). A #GP occurs if any of the following conditions hold for the values read:

- $\text{XCOMP_BV}[63] = 0$.
- XCOMP_BV sets a bit in the range 62:0 that is not set in $\text{XCR0} \mid \text{IA32_XSS}$.
- XSTATE_BV sets a bit (including bit 63) that is not set in XCOMP_BV.
- Bytes 63:16 of the XSAVE header are not all 0.

1. If $\text{CR0.AM} = 1$, $\text{CPL} = 3$, and $\text{EFLAGS.AC} = 1$, an alignment-check exception (#AC) may occur instead of #GP.

If none of these conditions cause a fault, the processor updates each state component i for which $RFBM[i] = 1$. XRSTORS updates state component i based on the value of bit i in the $XSTATE_BV$ field of the XSAVE header:

- If $XSTATE_BV[i] = 0$, the state component is set to its initial configuration. Section 13.6 specifies the initial configuration of each state component. If $XSTATE_BV[1] = 0$, XRSTORS initializes MXCSR to 1F80H.
State component i is set to its initial configuration as indicated above if $RFBM[i] = 1$ and $XSTATE_BV[i] = 0$ — **even if $XCOMP_BV[i] = 0$** . This is true for all values of i , including 0 (x87 state) and 1 (SSE state).
- If $XSTATE_BV[i] = 1$, the state component is loaded with data from the XSAVE area.¹ See Section 13.5 for specifics for each state component and for details regarding mode-specific operation and operation determined by instruction prefixes; in particular, see Section 13.5.6 for some special treatment of PT state by XRSTORS. See Section 13.13 for details regarding faults caused by memory accesses.

If XRSTORS is restoring a supervisor state component, the instruction causes a general-protection exception (#GP) if it would load any element of that component with an unsupported value (e.g., by setting a reserved bit in an MSR) or if a bit is set in any reserved portion of the state component in the XSAVE area.

State components 0 and 1 are located in the legacy region of the XSAVE area (see Section 13.4.1). Each state component i , $2 \leq i \leq 62$, is located in the extended region; XRSTORS uses the compacted format for the extended region (see Section 13.4.3).

The MXCSR register is part of SSE state (see Section 13.5.2) and is thus loaded from memory if $RFBM[1] = XSTATE_BV[1] = 1$. XRSTORS causes a general-protection exception (#GP) if it would load MXCSR with an illegal value.

If an execution of XRSTORS causes an exception or a VM exit during or after restoring a supervisor state component, each element of that state component may have the value it held before the XRSTORS execution, the value loaded from the XSAVE area, or the element's initial value (as defined in Section 13.6). See Section 13.5.6 for some special treatment of PT state for the case in which XRSTORS causes an exception or a VM exit.

Like XRSTOR, execution of XRSTORS causes the processor to update its tracking for the init and modified optimizations (see Section 13.6 and Section 13.8.3). The following items provide details:

- The processor updates its tracking for the init optimization as follows:
 - If $RFBM[i] = 0$, $XINUSE[i]$ is not changed.
 - If $RFBM[i] = 1$ and $XSTATE_BV[i] = 0$, state component i may be tracked as init; $XINUSE[i]$ may be set to 0 or 1.
 - If $RFBM[i] = 1$ and $XSTATE_BV[i] = 1$, state component i is tracked as not init; $XINUSE[i]$ is set to 1.
- The processor updates its tracking for the modified optimization and records information about the XRSTORS execution for future interaction with the XSAVEOPT and XSAVES instructions as follows:
 - If $RFBM[i] = 0$, state component i is tracked as modified; $XMODIFIED[i]$ is set to 1.
 - If $RFBM[i] = 1$, state component i may be tracked as unmodified; $XMODIFIED[i]$ may be set to 0 or 1.
 - $XRSTOR_INFO$ is set to the 4-tuple $\langle w, x, y, z \rangle$, where w is the CPL; x is 1 if the logical processor is in VMX non-root operation and 0 otherwise; y is the linear address of the XSAVE area; and z is $XCOMP_BV$ (this implies that $z[63] = 1$).

13.13 MEMORY ACCESSSES BY THE XSAVE FEATURE SET

Each instruction in the XSAVE feature set operates on a set of XSAVE-managed state components. The specific set of components on which an instruction operates is determined by the values of XCR0, the IA32_XSS MSR, EDX:EAX, and (for XRSTOR and XRSTORS) the XSAVE header.

Section 13.4 provides the details necessary to determine the location of each state component for any execution of an instruction in the XSAVE feature set. An execution of an instruction in the XSAVE feature set may access any byte of any state component on which that execution operates.

1. Earlier fault checking ensured that, if the instruction has reached this point in execution and $XSTATE_BV[i]$ is 1, then $XCOMP_BV[i]$ is also 1.

Section 13.5 provides details of the different XSAVE-managed state components. Some portions of some of these components are accessible only in 64-bit mode. Executions of XRSTOR and XRSTORS outside 64-bit mode will not update those portions; executions of XSAVE, XSAVEC, XSAVEOPT, and XSAVES will not modify the corresponding locations in memory.

Despite this fact, any execution of these instructions outside 64-bit mode may access any byte in any state component on which that execution operates — even those at addresses corresponding to registers that are accessible only in 64-bit mode. As result, such an execution may incur a fault due to an attempt to access such an address.

For example, an execution of XSAVE outside 64-bit mode may incur a page fault if paging does not map as read/write the section of the XSAVE area containing state component 7 (Hi16_ZMM state) — despite the fact that state component 7 can be accessed only in 64-bit mode.

2. Updates to Chapter 14, Volume 1

Change bars show changes to Chapter 14 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 1: Basic Architecture*.

Changes to this chapter: Typo corrections.

Intel® Advanced Vector Extensions (Intel® AVX) introduces 256-bit vector processing capability. The Intel AVX instruction set extends 128-bit SIMD instruction sets by employing a new instruction encoding scheme via a vector extension prefix (VEX). Intel AVX also offers several enhanced features beyond those available in prior generations of 128-bit SIMD extensions.

FMA (Fused Multiply Add) extensions enhances Intel AVX further in floating-point numeric computations. FMA provides high-throughput, arithmetic operations cover fused multiply-add, fused multiply-subtract, fused multiply add/subtract interleave, signed-reversed multiply on fused multiply-add and multiply-subtract.

Intel AVX2 provides 256-bit integer SIMD extensions that accelerate computation across integer and floating-point domains using 256-bit vector registers.

This chapter summarizes the key features of Intel AVX, FMA and AVX2.

14.1 INTEL AVX OVERVIEW

Intel AVX introduces the following architectural enhancements:

- Support for 256-bit wide vectors with the YMM vector register set.
- 256-bit floating-point instruction set enhancement with up to 2X performance gain relative to 128-bit Streaming SIMD extensions.
- Enhancement of legacy 128-bit SIMD instruction extensions to support three-operand syntax and to simplify compiler vectorization of high-level language expressions.
- VEX prefix-encoded instruction syntax support for generalized three-operand syntax to improve instruction programming flexibility and efficient encoding of new instruction extensions.
- Most VEX-encoded 128-bit and 256-bit AVX instructions (with both load and computational operation semantics) are not restricted to 16-byte or 32-byte memory alignment.
- Support flexible deployment of 256-bit AVX code, 128-bit AVX code, legacy 128-bit code and scalar code.

With the exception of SIMD instructions operating on MMX registers, almost all legacy 128-bit SIMD instructions have AVX equivalents that support three operand syntax. 256-bit AVX instructions employ three-operand syntax and some with 4-operand syntax.

14.1.1 256-Bit Wide SIMD Register Support

Intel AVX introduces support for 256-bit wide SIMD registers (YMM0-YMM7 in operating modes that are 32-bit or less, YMM0-YMM15 in 64-bit mode). The lower 128-bits of the YMM registers are aliased to the respective 128-bit XMM registers.

Legacy SSE instructions (i.e. SIMD instructions operating on XMM state but not using the VEX prefix, also referred to non-VEX encoded SIMD instructions) will not access the upper bits beyond bit 128 of the YMM registers. AVX instructions with a VEX prefix and vector length of 128-bits zeroes the upper bits (above bit 128) of the YMM register.

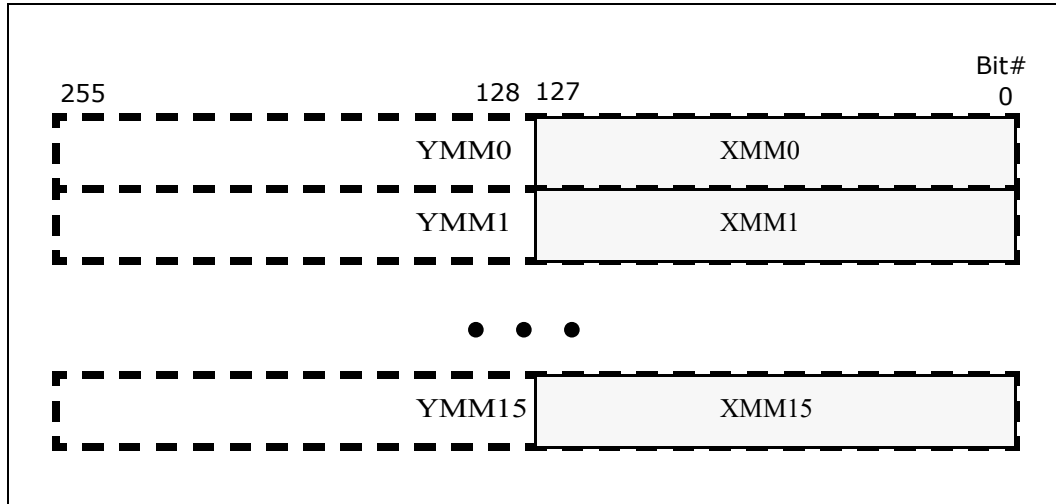


Figure 14-1. 256-Bit Wide SIMD Register

14.1.2 Instruction Syntax Enhancements

Intel AVX employs an instruction encoding scheme using a new prefix (known as “VEX” prefix). Instruction encoding using the VEX prefix can directly encode a register operand within the VEX prefix. This support two new instruction syntax in Intel 64 architecture:

- A non-destructive operand (in a three-operand instruction syntax): The non-destructive source reduces the number of registers, register-register copies and explicit load operations required in typical SSE loops, reduces code size, and improves micro-fusion opportunities.
- A third source operand (in a four-operand instruction syntax) via the upper 4 bits in an 8-bit immediate field. Support for the third source operand is defined for selected instructions (e.g. VBLENDVPD, VBLENDVPS, PBLENDVB).

Two-operand instruction syntax previously expressed in legacy SSE instruction as

```
ADDPS xmm1, xmm2/m128
```

128-bit AVX equivalent can be expressed in three-operand syntax as

```
VADDPS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128
```

In four-operand syntax, the extra register operand is encoded in the immediate byte.

Note SIMD instructions supporting three-operand syntax but processing only 128-bits of data are considered part of the 256-bit SIMD instruction set extensions of AVX, because bits 255:128 of the destination register are zeroed by the processor.

14.1.3 VEX Prefix Instruction Encoding Support

Intel AVX introduces a new prefix, referred to as VEX, in the Intel 64 and IA-32 instruction encoding format. Instruction encoding using the VEX prefix provides the following capabilities:

- Direct encoding of a register operand within VEX. This provides instruction syntax support for non-destructive source operand.
- Efficient encoding of instruction syntax operating on 128-bit and 256-bit register sets.

- Compaction of REX prefix functionality: The equivalent functionality of the REX prefix is encoded within VEX.
- Compaction of SIMD prefix functionality and escape byte encoding: The functionality of SIMD prefix (66H, F2H, F3H) on opcode is equivalent to an opcode extension field to introduce new processing primitives. This functionality is replaced by a more compact representation of opcode extension within the VEX prefix. Similarly, the functionality of the escape opcode byte (0FH) and two-byte escape (0F38H, 0F3AH) are also compacted within the VEX prefix encoding.
- Most VEX-encoded SIMD numeric and data processing instruction semantics with memory operand have relaxed memory alignment requirements than instructions encoded using SIMD prefixes (see Section 14.9).

VEX prefix encoding applies to SIMD instructions operating on YMM registers, XMM registers, and in some cases with a general-purpose register as one of the operand. VEX prefix is not supported for instructions operating on MMX or x87 registers. Details of VEX prefix and instruction encoding are discussed in Chapter 2, “Instruction Format,” of *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A*.

14.2 FUNCTIONAL OVERVIEW

Intel AVX provide comprehensive functional improvements over previous generations of SIMD instruction extensions. The functional improvements include:

- 256-bit floating-point arithmetic primitives: AVX enhances existing 128-bit floating-point arithmetic instructions with 256-bit capabilities for floating-point processing. Table 14-1 lists SIMD instructions promoted to AVX.
- Enhancements for flexible SIMD data movements: AVX provides a number of new data movement primitives to enable efficient SIMD programming in relation to loading non-unit-strided data into SIMD registers, intra-register SIMD data manipulation, conditional expression and branch handling, etc. Enhancements for SIMD data movement primitives cover 256-bit and 128-bit vector floating-point data, and across 128-bit integer SIMD data processing using VEX-encoded instructions.

Table 14-1. Promoted SSE/SSE2/SSE3/SSSE3/SSE4 Instructions

VEX.256 Encoding	VEX.128 Encoding	Group	Instruction	If No, Reason?
yes	yes	YY OF 1X	MOVUPS	
no	yes		MOVSS	scalar
yes	yes		MOVUPD	
no	yes		MOVSD	scalar
no	yes		MOVLPS	Note 1
no	yes		MOVLPD	Note 1
no	yes		MOVLHPS	Redundant with VPERMILPS
yes	yes		MOVDDUP	
yes	yes		MOVSLDUP	
yes	yes		UNPCKLPS	
yes	yes		UNPCKLPD	
yes	yes		UNPCKHPS	
yes	yes		UNPCKHPD	
no	yes		MOVHPS	Note 1
no	yes		MOVHPD	Note 1
no	yes		MOVHLPS	Redundant with VPERMILPS
yes	yes		MOVAPS	
yes	yes		MOVSHDUP	
yes	yes		MOVAPD	

VEX.256 Encoding	VEX.128 Encoding	Group	Instruction	If No, Reason?
no	no		CVTPI2PS	MMX
no	yes		CVTSI2SS	scalar
no	no		CVTPI2PD	MMX
no	yes		CVTSI2SD	scalar
no	yes		MOVNTPS	
no	yes		MOVNTPD	
no	no		CVTTPS2PI	MMX
no	yes		CVTTSS2SI	scalar
no	no		CVTTPD2PI	MMX
no	yes		CVTTSD2SI	scalar
no	no		CVTPS2PI	MMX
no	yes		CVTSS2SI	scalar
no	no		CVTPD2PI	MMX
no	yes		CVTSD2SI	scalar
no	yes		UCOMISS	scalar
no	yes		UCOMISD	scalar
no	yes		COMISS	scalar
no	yes		COMISD	scalar
yes	yes	YY OF 5X	MOVMSKPS	
yes	yes		MOVMSKPD	
yes	yes		SQRTPS	
no	yes		SQRTSS	scalar
yes	yes		SQRTPD	
no	yes		SQRTSD	scalar
yes	yes		RSQRTPS	
no	yes		RSQRTSS	scalar
yes	yes		RCPPS	
no	yes		RCPSS	scalar
yes	yes		ANDPS	
yes	yes		ANDPD	
yes	yes		ANDNPS	
yes	yes		ANDNPD	
yes	yes		ORPS	
yes	yes		ORPD	
yes	yes		XORPS	
yes	yes		XORPD	
yes	yes		ADDPS	
no	yes		ADDSS	scalar
yes	yes		ADDPD	
no	yes		ADDSD	scalar
yes	yes		MULPS	
no	yes		MULSS	scalar
yes	yes		MULPD	
no	yes		MULSD	scalar

VEX.256 Encoding	VEX.128 Encoding	Group	Instruction	If No, Reason?
yes	yes		CVTPS2PD	
no	yes		CVTSS2SD	scalar
yes	yes		CVTPD2PS	
no	yes		CVTSD2SS	scalar
yes	yes		CVTDQ2PS	
yes	yes		CVTPS2DQ	
yes	yes		CVTTPS2DQ	
yes	yes		SUBPS	
no	yes		SUBSS	scalar
yes	yes		SUBPD	
no	yes		SUBSD	scalar
yes	yes		MINPS	
no	yes		MINSS	scalar
yes	yes		MINPD	
no	yes		MINSD	scalar
yes	yes		DIVPS	
no	yes		DIVSS	scalar
yes	yes		DIVPD	
no	yes		DIVSD	scalar
yes	yes		MAXPS	
no	yes		MAXSS	scalar
yes	yes		MAXPD	
no	yes		MAXSD	scalar
no	yes	YY OF 6X	PUNPCKLBW	VI
no	yes		PUNPCKLWD	VI
no	yes		PUNPCKLDQ	VI
no	yes		PACKSSWB	VI
no	yes		PCMPGTB	VI
no	yes		PCMPGTW	VI
no	yes		PCMPGTD	VI
no	yes		PACKUSWB	VI
no	yes		PUNPCKHBW	VI
no	yes		PUNPCKHWD	VI
no	yes		PUNPCKHDQ	VI
no	yes		PACKSSDW	VI
no	yes		PUNPCKLQDQ	VI
no	yes		PUNPCKHQDQ	VI
no	yes		MOVD	scalar
no	yes		MOVQ	scalar
yes	yes		MOVDQA	
yes	yes		MOVDQU	
no	yes	YY OF 7X	PSHUFD	VI
no	yes		PSHUFHW	VI
no	yes		PSHUFLW	VI

VEX.256 Encoding	VEX.128 Encoding	Group	Instruction	If No, Reason?
no	yes		PCMPEQB	VI
no	yes		PCMPEQW	VI
no	yes		PCMPEQD	VI
yes	yes		HADDPD	
yes	yes		HADDPS	
yes	yes		HSUBPD	
yes	yes		HSUBPS	
no	yes		MOVD	VI
no	yes		MOVQ	VI
yes	yes		MOVDQA	
yes	yes		MOVDQU	
no	yes	YY OF AX	LDMXCSR	
no	yes		STMXCSR	
yes	yes	YY OF CX	CMPPS	
no	yes		CMPSS	scalar
yes	yes		CMPPD	
no	yes		CMPSD	scalar
no	yes		PINSRW	VI
no	yes		PEXTRW	VI
yes	yes		SHUFPS	
yes	yes		SHUFPD	
yes	yes	YY OF DX	ADDSUBPD	
yes	yes		ADDSUBPS	
no	yes		PSRLW	VI
no	yes		PSRLD	VI
no	yes		PSRLQ	VI
no	yes		PADDQ	VI
no	yes		PMULLW	VI
no	no		MOVQ2DQ	MMX
no	no		MOVDQ2Q	MMX
no	yes		PMOVMASKB	VI
no	yes		PSUBUSB	VI
no	yes		PSUBUSW	VI
no	yes		PMINUB	VI
no	yes		PAND	VI
no	yes		PADDUSB	VI
no	yes		PADDUSW	VI
no	yes		PMAXUB	VI
no	yes		PANDN	VI
no	yes	YY OF EX	PAVGB	VI
no	yes		PSRAW	VI
no	yes		PSRAD	VI
no	yes		PAVGW	VI
no	yes		PMULHUW	VI

VEX.256 Encoding	VEX.128 Encoding	Group	Instruction	If No, Reason?
no	yes		PMULHW	VI
yes	yes		CVTPD2DQ	
yes	yes		CVTTPD2DQ	
yes	yes		CVTDQ2PD	
no	yes		MOVNTDQ	VI
no	yes		PSUBSB	VI
no	yes		PSUBSW	VI
no	yes		PMINSW	VI
no	yes		POR	VI
no	yes		PADDSB	VI
no	yes		PADDSW	VI
no	yes		PMAXSW	VI
no	yes		PXOR	VI
yes	yes	YY OF FX	LDDQU	VI
no	yes		PSLLW	VI
no	yes		PSLLD	VI
no	yes		PSLLQ	VI
no	yes		PMULUDQ	VI
no	yes		PMADDWD	VI
no	yes		PSADBW	VI
no	yes		MASKMOVDQU	
no	yes		PSUBB	VI
no	yes		PSUBW	VI
no	yes		PSUBD	VI
no	yes		PSUBQ	VI
no	yes		PADDB	VI
no	yes		PADDW	VI
no	yes		PADDQ	VI
no	yes	SSSE3	PHADDW	VI
no	yes		PHADDSW	VI
no	yes		PHADDQ	VI
no	yes		PHSUBW	VI
no	yes		PHSUBSW	VI
no	yes		PHSUBD	VI
no	yes		PMADDUBSW	VI
no	yes		PALIGNR	VI
no	yes		PSHUFB	VI
no	yes		PMULHRSW	VI
no	yes		PSIGNB	VI
no	yes		PSIGNW	VI
no	yes		PSIGND	VI
no	yes		PABSB	VI
no	yes		PABSW	VI
no	yes		PABSD	VI

VEX.256 Encoding	VEX.128 Encoding	Group	Instruction	If No, Reason?
yes	yes	SSE4.1	BLENDPS	
yes	yes		BLENDPD	
yes	yes		BLENDVPS	Note 2
yes	yes		BLENDVPD	Note 2
no	yes		DPPD	
yes	yes		DPSS	
no	yes		EXTRACTPS	Note 3
no	yes		INSERTPS	Note 3
no	yes		MOVNTDQA	
no	yes		MPSADBW	VI
no	yes		PACKUSDW	VI
no	yes		PBLENDVB	VI
no	yes		PBLENDW	VI
no	yes		PCMPEQQ	VI
no	yes		PEXTRD	VI
no	yes		PEXTRQ	VI
no	yes		PEXTRB	VI
no	yes		PEXTRW	VI
no	yes		PHMINPOSUW	VI
no	yes		PINSRB	VI
no	yes		PINSRD	VI
no	yes		PINSRQ	VI
no	yes		PMAXSB	VI
no	yes		PMAXSD	VI
no	yes		PMAXUD	VI
no	yes		PMAXUW	VI
no	yes		PMINSB	VI
no	yes		PMINSD	VI
no	yes		PMINUD	VI
no	yes		PMINUW	VI
no	yes		PMOVSXxx	VI
no	yes		PMOVZXxx	VI
no	yes		PMULDQ	VI
no	yes	PMULLD	VI	
yes	yes	PTEST		
yes	yes	ROUNDPD		
yes	yes	ROUNDPS		
no	yes	ROUNDSD	scalar	
no	yes	ROUNDSS	scalar	
no	yes	PCMPGTQ	VI	
no	no	SSE4.2	CRC32c	integer
no	yes	PCMPESTRI	VI	
no	yes	PCMPESTRM	VI	

VEX.256 Encoding	VEX.128 Encoding	Group	Instruction	If No, Reason?
no	yes		PCMPISTRI	VI
no	yes		PCMPISTRM	VI
no	no	SSE4.2	POPCNT	integer

14.2.1 256-bit Floating-Point Arithmetic Processing Enhancements

Intel AVX provides 35 256-bit floating-point arithmetic instructions, see Table 14-2. The arithmetic operations cover add, subtract, multiply, divide, square-root, compare, max, min, round, etc., on single-precision and double-precision floating-point data.

The enhancement in AVX on floating-point compare operation provides 32 conditional predicates to improve programming flexibility in evaluating conditional expressions.

Table 14-2. Promoted 256-Bit and 128-bit Arithmetic AVX Instructions

VEX.256 Encoding	VEX.128 Encoding	Legacy Instruction Mnemonic
yes	yes	SQRTPS, SQRTPD, RSQRTPS, RCPPS
yes	yes	ADDPS, ADDPD, SUBPS, SUBPD
yes	yes	MULPS, MULPD, DIVPS, DIVPD
yes	yes	CVTTPS2PD, CVTPD2PS
yes	yes	CVTDQ2PS, CVTPS2DQ
yes	yes	CVTTPS2DQ, CVTTPD2DQ
yes	yes	CVTPD2DQ, CVTDQ2PD
yes	yes	MINPS, MINPD, MAXPS, MAXPD
yes	yes	HADDPD, HADDPS, HSUBPD, HSUBPS
yes	yes	CMPPS, CMPPD
yes	yes	ADDSUBPD, ADDSUBPS, DPPS
yes	yes	ROUNDPD, ROUNDPS

14.2.2 256-bit Non-Arithmetic Instruction Enhancements

Intel AVX provides new primitives for handling data movement within 256-bit floating-point vectors and promotes many 128-bit floating data processing instructions to handle 256-bit floating-point vectors.

AVX includes 39 256-bit data movement and processing instructions that are promoted from previous generations of SIMD instruction extensions, ranging from logical, blend, convert, test, unpacking, shuffling, load and stores (see Table 14-3).

Table 14-3. Promoted 256-bit and 128-bit Data Movement AVX Instructions

VEX.256 Encoding	VEX.128 Encoding	Legacy Instruction Mnemonic
yes	yes	MOVAPS, MOVAPD, MOVDQA
yes	yes	MOVUPS, MOVUPD, MOVDQU
yes	yes	MOVMSKPS, MOVMSKPD
yes	yes	LDDQU, MOVNTPS, MOVNTPD, MOVNTDQ, MOVNTDQA
yes	yes	MOVSHDUP, MOVSLDUP, MOVDDUP

Table 14-3. Promoted 256-bit and 128-bit Data Movement AVX Instructions

VEX.256 Encoding	VEX.128 Encoding	Legacy Instruction Mnemonic
yes	yes	UNPCKHPD, UNPCKHPS, UNPCKLPD
yes	yes	BLENDPS, BLENDPD
yes	yes	SHUFPS, SHUFPS, UNPCKLPS
yes	yes	BLENDVPS, BLENDVPD
yes	yes	PTEST, MOVMSKPD, MOVMSKPS
yes	yes	XORPS, XORPD, ORPS, ORPD
yes	yes	ANDNPD, ANDNPS, ANDPD, ANDPS

AVX introduces 18 new data processing instructions that operate on 256-bit vectors, Table 14-4. These new primitives cover the following operations:

- Non-unit-strided fetching of SIMD data. AVX provides several flexible SIMD floating-point data fetching primitives:
 - broadcast of single or multiple data elements into a 256-bit destination,
 - masked move primitives to load or store SIMD data elements conditionally,
- Intra-register manipulation of SIMD data elements. AVX provides several flexible SIMD floating-point data manipulation primitives:
 - insert/extract multiple SIMD floating-point data elements to/from 256-bit SIMD registers
 - permute primitives to facilitate efficient manipulation of floating-point data elements in 256-bit SIMD registers
- Branch handling. AVX provides several primitives to enable handling of branches in SIMD programming:
 - new variable blend instructions supports four-operand syntax with non-destructive source syntax. This is more flexible than the equivalent SSE4 instruction syntax which uses the XMM0 register as the implied mask for blend selection.
 - Packed TEST instructions for floating-point data.

Table 14-4. 256-bit AVX Instruction Enhancement

Instruction	Description
VBROADCASTF128 ymm1, m128	Broadcast 128-bit floating-point values in mem to low and high 128-bits in ymm1.
VBROADCASTSD ymm1, m64	Broadcast double-precision floating-point element in mem to four locations in ymm1.
VBROADCASTSS ymm1, m32	Broadcast single-precision floating-point element in mem to eight locations in ymm1.
VEXTRACTF128 xmm1/m128, ymm2, imm8	Extracts 128-bits of packed floating-point values from ymm2 and store results in xmm1/mem.
VINSERTF128 ymm1, ymm2, xmm3/m128, imm8	Insert 128-bits of packed floating-point values from xmm3/mem and the remaining values from ymm2 into ymm1
VMASKMOVPS ymm1, ymm2, m256	Load packed single-precision values from mem using mask in ymm2 and store in ymm1
VMASKMOVDPD ymm1, ymm2, m256	Load packed double-precision values from mem using mask in ymm2 and store in ymm1
VMASKMOVPS m256, ymm1, ymm2	Store packed single-precision values from ymm2 mask in ymm1
VMASKMOVDPD m256, ymm1, ymm2	Store packed double-precision values from ymm2 using mask in ymm1
VPERMILPD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	Permute Double-Precision Floating-Point values in ymm2 using controls from xmm3/mem and store result in ymm1

Table 14-4. 256-bit AVX Instruction Enhancement

Instruction	Description
VPERMILPD ymm1, ymm2/m256 imm8	Permute Double-Precision Floating-Point values in ymm2/mem using controls from imm8 and store result in ymm1
VPERMILPS ymm1, ymm2, ymm/m256	Permute Single-Precision Floating-Point values in ymm2 using controls from ymm3/mem and store result in ymm1
VPERMILPS ymm1, ymm2/m256, imm8	Permute Single-Precision Floating-Point values in ymm2/mem using controls from imm8 and store result in ymm1
VPERM2F128 ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256, imm8	Permute 128-bit floating-point fields in ymm2 and ymm3/mem using controls from imm8 and store result in ymm1
VTESTPS ymm1, ymm2/m256	Set ZF if ymm2/mem AND ymm1 result is all 0s in packed single-precision sign bits. Set CF if ymm2/mem AND NOT ymm1 result is all 0s in packed single-precision sign bits.
VTESTPD ymm1, ymm2/m256	Set ZF if ymm2/mem AND ymm1 result is all 0s in packed double-precision sign bits. Set CF if ymm2/mem AND NOT ymm1 result is all 0s in packed double-precision sign bits.
VZEROALL	Zero all YMM registers
VZERoupper	Zero upper 128 bits of all YMM registers

14.2.3 Arithmetic Primitives for 128-bit Vector and Scalar processing

Intel AVX provides a full complement of 128-bit numeric processing instructions that employ VEX-prefix encoding. These VEX-encoded instructions generally provide the same functionality over instructions operating on XMM register that are encoded using SIMD prefixes. The 128-bit numeric processing instructions in AVX cover floating-point and integer data processing; across 128-bit vector and scalar processing. Table 14-5 lists the state of promotion of legacy SIMD arithmetic ISA to VEX-128 encoding. Legacy SIMD floating-point arithmetic ISA promoted to VEX-256 encoding also support VEX-128 encoding (see Table 14-2).

The enhancement in AVX on 128-bit floating-point compare operation provides 32 conditional predicates to improve programming flexibility in evaluating conditional expressions. This contrasts with floating-point SIMD compare instructions in SSE and SSE2 supporting only 8 conditional predicates.

Table 14-5. Promotion of Legacy SIMD ISA to 128-bit Arithmetic AVX instruction

VEX.256 Encoding	VEX.128 Encoding	Instruction	Reason Not Promoted
no	no	CVTPI2PS, CVTPI2PD, CVTPD2PI	MMX
no	no	CVTTPS2PI, CVTTPD2PI, CVTPS2PI	MMX
no	yes	CVTSI2SS, CVTSI2SD, CVTSD2SI	scalar
no	yes	CVTSS2SI, CVTSS2SD, CVTSS2SI	scalar
no	yes	COMISD, RSQRTSS, RCPSS	scalar
no	yes	UCOMISS, UCOMISD, COMISS,	scalar
no	yes	ADDSS, ADDSD, SUBSS, SUBSD	scalar
no	yes	MULSS, MULSD, DIVSS, DIVSD	scalar
no	yes	SQRTSS, SQRTSD	scalar
no	yes	CVTSS2SD, CVTSD2SS	scalar
no	yes	MINSS, MINS, MAXSS, MAXSD	scalar
no	yes	PAND, PANDN, POR, PXOR	VI
no	yes	PCMPGTB, PCMPGTW, PCMPGTD	VI

Table 14-5. Promotion of Legacy SIMD ISA to 128-bit Arithmetic AVX instruction

VEX.256 Encoding	VEX.128 Encoding	Instruction	Reason Not Promoted
no	yes	PMADDWD, PMADDUBSW	VI
no	yes	PAVGB, PAVGW, PMULUDQ	VI
no	yes	PCMPEQB, PCMPEQW, PCMPEQD	VI
no	yes	PMULLW, PMULHUW, PMULHW	VI
no	yes	PSUBSW, PADDsw, PSADBw	VI
no	yes	PADDUSB, PADDUSW, PADDsB	VI
no	yes	PSUBUSB, PSUBUSW, PSUBsB	VI
no	yes	PMINUB, PMINSW	VI
no	yes	PMAXUB, PMAxSW	VI
no	yes	PADDB, PADDW, PADDD, PADDQ	VI
no	yes	PSUBB, PSUBW, PSUBD, PSUBQ	VI
no	yes	PSLLW, PSLLD, PSLLQ, PSRAW	VI
no	yes	PSRLW, PSRLD, PSRLQ, PSRAD	VI
CPUID.SSSE3			
no	yes	PHSUBW, PHSUBD, PHSUBSW	VI
no	yes	PHADDW, PHADDD, PHADDsW	VI
no	yes	PMULHRSW	VI
no	yes	PSIGNB, PSIGNW, PSIGND	VI
no	yes	PABsB, PABsW, PABsD	VI
CPUID.SSE4_1			
no	yes	DPPD	
no	yes	PHMINPOSUW, MPSADBw	VI
no	yes	PMAxSB, PMAxSD, PMAxUD	VI
no	yes	PMINSB, PMINSD, PMINUD	VI
no	yes	PMAxUW, PMINUW	VI
no	yes	PMOVSXxx, PMOVZXxx	VI
no	yes	PMULDQ, PMULLD	VI
no	yes	ROUNDSD, ROUNDSS	scalar
CPUID.POPCNT			
no	yes	POPCNT	integer
CPUID.SSE4_2			
no	yes	PCMPGTQ	VI
no	no	CRC32	integer
no	yes	PCMPESTRI, PCMPESTRM	VI
no	yes	PCMPISTRi, PCMPISTRM	VI
CPUID.CLMUL			
no	yes	PCLMULQDQ	VI
CPUID.AESNI			

Table 14-5. Promotion of Legacy SIMD ISA to 128-bit Arithmetic AVX instruction

VEX.256 Encoding	VEX.128 Encoding	Instruction	Reason Not Promoted
no	yes	AESDEC, AESDECLAST	VI
no	yes	AESENC, AESENCLAST	VI
no	yes	AESIMX, AESKEYGENASSIST	VI

Description of Column “Reason not promoted?”

MMX: Instructions referencing MMX registers do not support VEX

Scalar: Scalar instructions are not promoted to 256-bit

integer: integer instructions are not promoted.

VI: “Vector Integer” instructions are not promoted to 256-bit

14.2.4 Non-Arithmetic Primitives for 128-bit Vector and Scalar Processing

Intel AVX provides a full complement of data processing instructions that employ VEX-prefix encoding. These VEX-encoded instructions generally provide the same functionality over instructions operating on XMM register that are encoded using SIMD prefixes.

A subset of new functionalities listed in Table 14-4 is also extended via VEX.128 encoding. These enhancements in AVX on 128-bit data processing primitives include 11 new instructions (see Table 14-6) with the following capabilities:

- Non-unit-strided fetching of SIMD data. AVX provides several flexible SIMD floating-point data fetching primitives:
 - broadcast of single data element into a 128-bit destination,
 - masked move primitives to load or store SIMD data elements conditionally,
- Intra-register manipulation of SIMD data elements. AVX provides several flexible SIMD floating-point data manipulation primitives:
 - permute primitives to facilitate efficient manipulation of floating-point data elements in 128-bit SIMD registers
- Branch handling. AVX provides several primitives to enable handling of branches in SIMD programming:
 - new variable blend instructions supports four-operand syntax with non-destructive source syntax. Branching conditions dependent on floating-point data or integer data can benefit from Intel AVX. This is more flexible than non-VEX encoded instruction syntax that uses the XMM0 register as implied mask for blend selection. While variable blend with implied XMM0 syntax is supported in SSE4 using SIMD prefix encoding, VEX-encoded 128-bit variable blend instructions only support the more flexible four-operand syntax.
 - Packed TEST instructions for floating-point data.

Table 14-6. 128-bit AVX Instruction Enhancement

Instruction	Description
VBROADCASTSS xmm1, m32	Broadcast single-precision floating-point element in mem to four locations in xmm1.
VMASKMOVPS xmm1, xmm2, m128	Load packed single-precision values from mem using mask in xmm2 and store in xmm1
VMASKMOVPSD xmm1, xmm2, m128	Load packed double-precision values from mem using mask in xmm2 and store in xmm1
VMASKMOVPS m128, xmm1, xmm2	Store packed single-precision values from xmm2 using mask in xmm1
VMASKMOVPSD m128, xmm1, xmm2	Store packed double-precision values from xmm2 using mask in xmm1

Table 14-6. 128-bit AVX Instruction Enhancement

Instruction	Description
VPERMILPD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	Permute Double-Precision Floating-Point values in xmm2 using controls from xmm3/mem and store result in xmm1
VPERMILPD xmm1, xmm2/m128, imm8	Permute Double-Precision Floating-Point values in xmm2/mem using controls from imm8 and store result in xmm1
VPERMILPS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	Permute Single-Precision Floating-Point values in xmm2 using controls from xmm3/mem and store result in xmm1
VPERMILPS xmm1, xmm2/m128, imm8	Permute Single-Precision Floating-Point values in xmm2/mem using controls from imm8 and store result in xmm1
VTESTPS xmm1, xmm2/m128	Set ZF if xmm2/mem AND xmm1 result is all 0s in packed single-precision sign bits. Set CF if xmm2/mem AND NOT xmm1 result is all 0s in packed single-precision sign bits.
VTESTPD xmm1, xmm2/m128	Set ZF if xmm2/mem AND xmm1 result is all 0s in packed single precision sign bits. Set CF if xmm2/mem AND NOT xmm1 result is all 0s in packed double-precision sign bits.

The 128-bit data processing instructions in AVX cover floating-point and integer data movement primitives. Legacy SIMD non-arithmetic ISA promoted to VEX-256 encoding also support VEX-128 encoding (see Table 14-3). Table 14-7 lists the state of promotion of the remaining legacy SIMD non-arithmetic ISA to VEX-128 encoding.

Table 14-7. Promotion of Legacy SIMD ISA to 128-bit Non-Arithmetic AVX instruction

VEX.256 Encoding	VEX.128 Encoding	Instruction	Reason Not Promoted
no	no	MOVQ2DQ, MOVDQ2Q	MMX
no	yes	LDMXCSR, STMXCSR	
no	yes	MOVSS, MOVSD, CMPSS, CMPSD	scalar
no	yes	MOVHPS, MOVHPD	Note 1
no	yes	MOVLPS, MOVLPD	Note 1
no	yes	MOVLHPS, MOVHLPS	Redundant with VPERMILPS
no	yes	MOVQ, MOVD	scalar
no	yes	PACKUSWB, PACKSSDW, PACKSSWB	VI
no	yes	PUNPCKHBW, PUNPCKHWD	VI
no	yes	PUNPCKLBW, PUNPCKLWD	VI
no	yes	PUNPCKHDQ, PUNPCKLDQ	VI
no	yes	PUNPCKLQDQ, PUNPCKHQDQ	VI
no	yes	PSHUFB, PSHUFLW, PSHUFD	VI
no	yes	PMOVBQTB, MASKMOVBQTB	VI
no	yes	PAND, PANDN, POR, PXOR	VI
no	yes	PINSRB, PEXTRB,	VI
CPUID.SSSE3			
no	yes	PALIGNR, PSHUFB	VI
CPUID.SSE4_1			
no	yes	EXTRACTPS, INSERTPS	Note 3
no	yes	PACKUSDW, PCMPEQB	VI

Table 14-7. Promotion of Legacy SIMD ISA to 128-bit Non-Arithmetic AVX instruction

VEX.256 Encoding	VEX.128 Encoding	Instruction	Reason Not Promoted
no	yes	PBLENDVB, PBLENDW	VI
no	yes	PEXTRW, PEXTRB, PEXTRD, PEXTRQ	VI
no	yes	PINSRB, PINSRD, PINSRQ	VI

Description of Column "Reason not promoted?"

MMX: Instructions referencing MMX registers do not support VEX

Scalar: Scalar instructions are not promoted to 256-bit

VI: "Vector Integer" instructions are not promoted to 256-bit

Note 1: MOVLDP/PS and MOVHPD/PS are not promoted to 256-bit. The equivalent functionality are provided by VINSERTF128 and VEXTRACTF128 instructions as the existing instructions have no natural 256b extension

Note 3: It is expected that using 128-bit INSERTPS followed by a VINSERTF128 would be better than promoting INSERTPS to 256-bit (for example).

14.3 DETECTION OF AVX INSTRUCTIONS

Intel AVX instructions operate on the 256-bit YMM register state. Application detection of new instruction extensions operating on the YMM state follows the general procedural flow in Figure 14-2.

Prior to using AVX, the application must identify that the operating system supports the XGETBV instruction, the YMM register state, in addition to processor's support for YMM state management using XSAVE/XRSTOR and AVX instructions. The following simplified sequence accomplishes both and is strongly recommended.

- 1) Detect CPUID.1:ECX.OSXSAVE[bit 27] = 1 (XGETBV enabled for application use¹)
- 2) Issue XGETBV and verify that XCR0[2:1] = '11b' (XMM state and YMM state are enabled by OS).
- 3) detect CPUID.1:ECX.AVX[bit 28] = 1 (AVX instructions supported).

(Step 3 can be done in any order relative to 1 and 2)

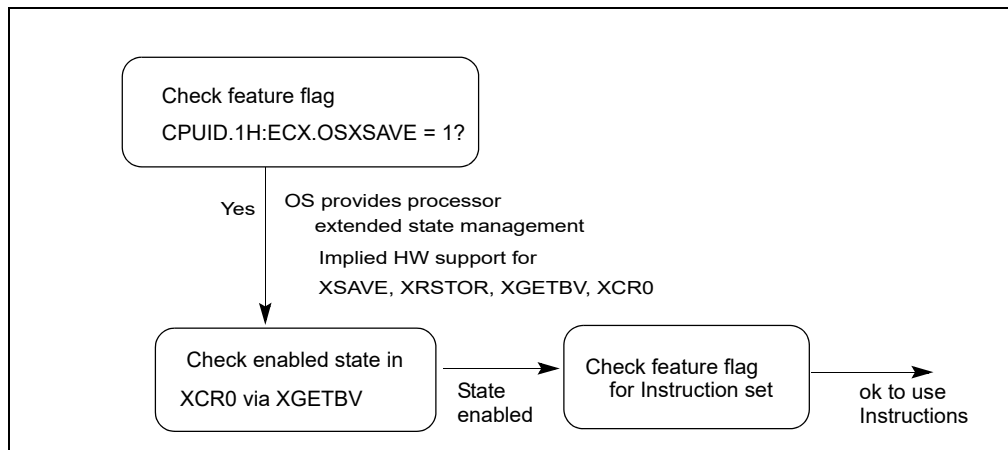


Figure 14-2. General Procedural Flow of Application Detection of AVX

1. If CPUID.01H:ECX.OSXSAVE reports 1, it also indirectly implies the processor supports XSAVE, XRSTOR, XGETBV, processor extended state bit vector XCR0. Thus an application may streamline the checking of CPUID feature flags for XSAVE and OSXSAVE. XSETBV is a privileged instruction.

The following pseudocode illustrates this recommended application AVX detection process:

Example 14-1. Detection of AVX Instruction

```

INT supports_AVX()
{
    mov     eax, 1
    cpuid
    and     ecx, 018000000H
    cmp     ecx, 018000000H; check both OSXSAVE and AVX feature flags
    jne     not_supported
    ; processor supports AVX instructions and XGETBV is enabled by OS
    mov     ecx, 0; specify 0 for XCRO register
    XGETBV     ; result in EDX:EAX
    and     eax, 06H
    cmp     eax, 06H; check OS has enabled both XMM and YMM state support
    jne     not_supported
    mov     eax, 1
    jmp     done
NOT_SUPPORTED:
    mov     eax, 0
done:
}

```

Note: It is unwise for an application to rely exclusively on CPUID.1:ECX.AVX[bit 28] or at all on CPUID.1:ECX.XSAVE[bit 26]: These indicate hardware support but not operating system support. If YMM state management is not enabled by an operating systems, AVX instructions will #UD regardless of CPUID.1:ECX.AVX[bit 28]. "CPUID.1:ECX.XSAVE[bit 26] = 1" does not guarantee the OS actually uses the XSAVE process for state management.

These steps above also apply to enhanced 128-bit SIMD floating-pointing instructions in AVX (using VEX prefix-encoding) that operate on the YMM states.

14.3.1 Detection of VEX-Encoded AES and VPCLMULQDQ

VAESDEC/VAESDECLAST/VAESENC/VAESENCLAST/VAESIMC/VAESKEYGENASSIST instructions operate on YMM states. The detection sequence must combine checking for CPUID.1:ECX.AES[bit 25] = 1 and the sequence for detection application support for AVX.

Example 14-2. Detection of VEX-Encoded AESNI Instructions

```

INT supports_VAESNI()
{
    mov     eax, 1
    cpuid
    and     ecx, 01A000000H
    cmp     ecx, 01A000000H; check OSXSAVE AVX and AESNI feature flags
    jne     not_supported
    ; processor supports AVX and VEX-encoded AESNI and XGETBV is enabled by OS
    mov     ecx, 0; specify 0 for XCRO register
    XGETBV     ; result in EDX:EAX
    and     eax, 06H
    cmp     eax, 06H; check OS has enabled both XMM and YMM state support
    jne     not_supported
    mov     eax, 1
    jmp     done
NOT_SUPPORTED:
    mov     eax, 0
done:

```

Similarly, the detection sequence for VPCLMULQDQ must combine checking for CPUID.1:ECX.PCLMULQDQ[bit 1] = 1 and the sequence for detection application support for AVX.

This is shown in the pseudocode:

Example 14-3. Detection of VEX-Encoded AESNI Instructions

```

INT supports_VPCLMULQDQ()
{
    mov     eax, 1
    cpuid
    and     ecx, 018000002H
    cmp     ecx, 018000002H; check OSXSAVE AVX and PCLMULQDQ feature flags
    jne     not_supported
    ; processor supports AVX and VEX-encoded PCLMULQDQ and XGETBV is enabled by OS
    mov     ecx, 0; specify 0 for XCRO register
    XGETBV     ; result in EDX:EAX
    and     eax, 06H
    cmp     eax, 06H; check OS has enabled both XMM and YMM state support
    jne     not_supported

    mov     eax, 1
    jmp     done
NOT_SUPPORTED:
    mov     eax, 0
done:

```

14.4 HALF-PRECISION FLOATING-POINT CONVERSION

VCVTPH2PS and VCVTPS2PH are two instructions supporting half-precision floating-point data type conversion to and from single-precision floating-point data types.

Half-precision floating-point values are not used by the processor directly for arithmetic operations. But the conversion operation are subject to SIMD floating-point exceptions.

Additionally, The conversion operations of VCVTPS2PH allow programmer to specify rounding control using control fields in an immediate byte. The effects of the immediate byte are listed in Table 14-8.

Rounding control can use Imm[2] to select an override RC field specified in Imm[1:0] or use MXCSR setting.

Table 14-8. Immediate Byte Encoding for 16-bit Floating-Point Conversion Instructions

Bits	Field Name/value	Description	Comment
Imm[1:0]	RC=00B	Round to nearest even	If Imm[2] = 0
	RC=01B	Round down	
	RC=10B	Round up	
	RC=11B	Truncate	
Imm[2]	MS1=0	Use imm[1:0] for rounding	Ignore MXCSR.RC
	MS1=1	Use MXCSR.RC for rounding	
Imm[7:3]	Ignored	Ignored by processor	

Specific SIMD floating-point exceptions that can occur in conversion operations are shown in Table 14-9 and Table 14-10.

Table 14-9. Non-Numerical Behavior for VCVTPH2PS, VCVTPS2PH

Source Operands	Masked Result	Unmasked Result
QNaN	QNaN ¹	QNaN ¹ (not an exception)
SNaN	QNaN ²	None

NOTES:

1. The half precision output QNaN1 is created from the single precision input QNaN as follows: the sign bit is preserved, the 8-bit exponent FFH is replaced by the 5-bit exponent 1FH, and the 24-bit significand is truncated to an 11-bit significand by removing its 14 least significant bits.
2. The half precision output QNaN1 is created from the single precision input SNaN as follows: the sign bit is preserved, the 8-bit exponent FFH is replaced by the 5-bit exponent 1FH, and the 24-bit significand is truncated to an 11-bit significand by removing its 14 least significant bits. The second most significant bit of the significand is changed from 0 to 1 to convert the signaling NaN into a quiet NaN.

Table 14-10. Invalid Operation for VCVTPH2PS, VCVTPS2PH

Instruction	Condition	Masked Result	Unmasked Result
VCVTPH2PS	SRC = NaN	See Table 14-9	#I=1
VCVTPS2PH	SRC = NaN	See Table 14-9	#I=1

VCVTPS2PH can cause denormal exceptions if the value of the source operand is denormal relative to the numerical range represented by the source format (see Table 14-11).

Table 14-11. Denormal Condition Summary

Instruction	Condition	Masked Result	Unmasked Result
VCVTPH2PS	SRC is denormal relative to input format	res = Result rounded to the destination precision and using the bounded exponent, but only if no unmasked post-computation exception occurs. #DE unchanged	Same as masked result.
VCVTPS2PH	SRC is denormal relative to input format	res = Result rounded to the destination precision and using the bounded exponent, but only if no unmasked post-computation exception occurs. #DE=1	#DE=1

VCVTPS2PH can cause an underflow exception if the result of the conversion is less than the underflow threshold for half-precision floating-point data type, i.e. $|x| < 1.0 * 2^{-14}$.

Table 14-12. Underflow Condition for VCVTPS2PH

Instruction	Condition	Masked Result ¹	Unmasked Result
VCVTPS2PH	Result < smallest destination precision final normal value ²	Result = +0 or -0, denormal, normal. #UE = 1. #PE = 1 if the result is inexact.	#UE=1, #PE = 1 if the result is inexact.

NOTES:

1. Masked and unmasked results are shown in Table 14-11.
2. MXCSR.FTZ is ignored, the processor behaves as if MXCSR.FTZ = 0.

VCVTPS2PH can cause an overflow exception if the result of the conversion is greater than the maximum representable value for half-precision floating-point data type, i.e. $|x| \geq 1.0 * 2^{16}$.

Table 14-13. Overflow Condition for VCVTPS2PH

Instruction	Condition	Masked Result	Unmasked Result
VCVTPS2PH	Result \geq largest destination precision final normal value ¹	Result = +Inf or -Inf. #OE=1.	#OE=1.

VCVTPS2PH can cause an inexact exception if the result of the conversion is not exactly representable in the destination format.

Table 14-14. Inexact Condition for VCVTPS2PH

Instruction	Condition	Masked Result ¹	Unmasked Result
VCVTPS2PH	The result is not representable in the destination format	res = Result rounded to the destination precision and using the bounded exponent, but only if no unmasked underflow or overflow conditions occur (this exception can occur in the presence of a masked underflow or overflow). #PE=1.	Only if no underflow/overflow condition occurred, or if the corresponding exceptions are masked: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Set #OE if masked overflow and set result as described above for masked overflow. ▪ Set #UE if masked underflow and set result as described above for masked underflow. If neither underflow nor overflow, result equals the result rounded to the destination precision and using the bounded exponent set #PE = 1.

NOTES:

1. If a source is denormal relative to input format with DM masked and at least one of PM or UM unmasked, then an exception will be raised with DE, UE and PE set.

14.4.1 Detection of F16C Instructions

Application using float 16 instruction must follow a detection sequence similar to AVX to ensure:

- The OS has enabled YMM state management support,
- The processor support AVX as indicated by the CPUID feature flag, i.e. CPUID.01H:ECX.AVX[bit 28] = 1.
- The processor support 16-bit floating-point conversion instructions via a CPUID feature flag (CPUID.01H:ECX.F16C[bit 29] = 1).

Application detection of Float-16 conversion instructions follow the general procedural flow in Figure 14-3.

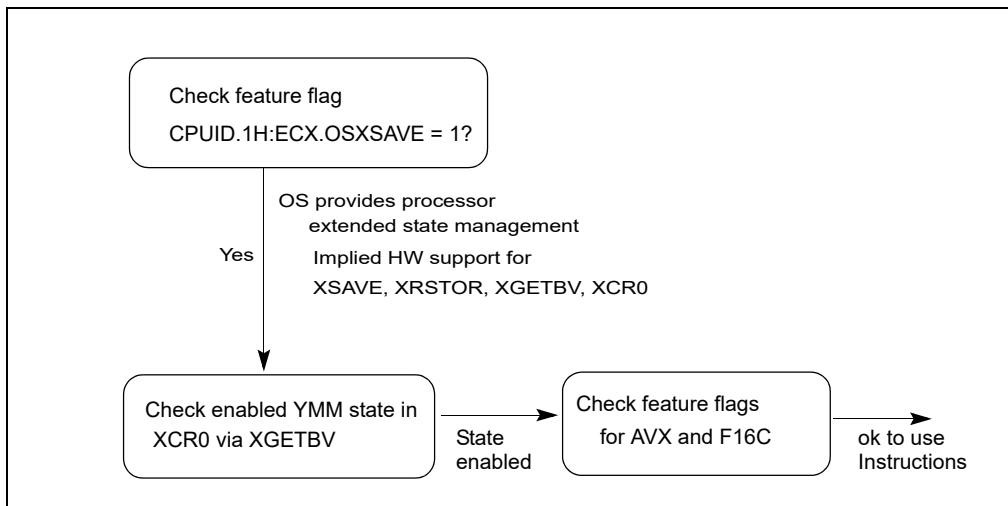


Figure 14-3. General Procedural Flow of Application Detection of Float-16

```

-----
INT supports_f16c()
{
    ; result in eax
    mov eax, 1
    cpuid
    and ecx, 038000000H
    cmp ecx, 038000000H; check OSXSAVE, AVX, F16C feature flags
    jne not_supported
    ; processor supports AVX,F16C instructions and XGETBV is enabled by OS
    mov ecx, 0; specify 0 for XCR0 register
    XGETBV; result in EDX:EAX
    and eax, 06H
    cmp eax, 06H; check OS has enabled both XMM and YMM state support
    jne not_supported
    mov eax, 1
    jmp done
NOT_SUPPORTED:
    mov eax, 0
done:
}
-----
  
```

14.5 FUSED-MULTIPLY-ADD (FMA) EXTENSIONS

FMA extensions enhances Intel AVX with high-throughput, arithmetic capabilities covering fused multiply-add, fused multiply-subtract, fused multiply add/subtract interleave, signed-reversed multiply on fused multiply-add and multiply-subtract. FMA extensions provide 36 256-bit floating-point instructions to perform computation on 256-bit vectors and additional 128-bit and scalar FMA instructions.

FMA extensions also provide 60 128-bit floating-point instructions to process 128-bit vector and scalar data. The arithmetic operations cover fused multiply-add, fused multiply-subtract, signed-reversed multiply on fused multiply-add and multiply-subtract.

Table 14-15. FMA Instructions

Instruction	Description
VFMADD132PD/VFMADD213PD/VFMADD231PD xmm0, xmm1, xmm2/m128; ymm0, ymm1, ymm2/m256	Fused Multiply-Add of Packed Double-Precision Floating-Point Values
VFMADD132PS/VFMADD213PS/VFMADD231PS xmm0, xmm1, xmm2/m128; ymm0, ymm1, ymm2/m256	Fused Multiply-Add of Packed Single-Precision Floating-Point Values
VFMADD132SD/VFMADD213SD/VFMADD231SD xmm0, xmm1, xmm2/m64	Fused Multiply-Add of Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point Values
VFMADD132SS/VFMADD213SS/VFMADD231SS xmm0, xmm1, xmm2/m32	Fused Multiply-Add of Scalar Single-Precision Floating-Point Values
VFMADDSUB132PD/VFMADDSUB213PD/VFMADDSUB231PD xmm0, xmm1, xmm2/m128; ymm0, ymm1, ymm2/m256	Fused Multiply-Alternating Add/Subtract of Packed Double-Precision Floating-Point Values
VFMADDSUB132PS/VFMADDSUB213PS/VFMADDSUB231PS xmm0, xmm1, xmm2/m128; ymm0, ymm1, ymm2/m256	Fused Multiply-Alternating Add/Subtract of Packed Single-Precision Floating-Point Values
VFMSUBADD132PD/VFMSUBADD213PD/VFMSUBADD231PD xmm0, xmm1, xmm2/m128; ymm0, ymm1, ymm2/m256	Fused Multiply-Alternating Subtract/Add of Packed Double-Precision Floating-Point Values
VFMSUBADD132PS/VFMSUBADD213PS/VFMSUBADD231PS xmm0, xmm1, xmm2/m128; ymm0, ymm1, ymm2/m256	Fused Multiply-Alternating Subtract/Add of Packed Single-Precision Floating-Point Values
VFMSUB132PD/VFMSUB213PD/VFMSUB231PD xmm0, xmm1, xmm2/m128; ymm0, ymm1, ymm2/m256	Fused Multiply-Subtract of Packed Double-Precision Floating-Point Values
VFMSUB132PS/VFMSUB213PS/VFMSUB231PS xmm0, xmm1, xmm2/m128; ymm0, ymm1, ymm2/m256	Fused Multiply-Subtract of Packed Single-Precision Floating-Point Values
VFMSUB132SD/VFMSUB213SD/VFMSUB231SD xmm0, xmm1, xmm2/m64	Fused Multiply-Subtract of Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point Values
VFMSUB132SS/VFMSUB213SS/VFMSUB231SS xmm0, xmm1, xmm2/m32	Fused Multiply-Subtract of Scalar Single-Precision Floating-Point Values
VFNMADD132PD/VFNMADD213PD/VFNMADD231PD xmm0, xmm1, xmm2/m128; ymm0, ymm1, ymm2/m256	Fused Negative Multiply-Add of Packed Double-Precision Floating-Point Values
VFNMADD132PS/VFNMADD213PS/VFNMADD231PS xmm0, xmm1, xmm2/m128; ymm0, ymm1, ymm2/m256	Fused Negative Multiply-Add of Packed Single-Precision Floating-Point Values
VFNMADD132SD/VFNMADD213SD/VFNMADD231SD xmm0, xmm1, xmm2/m64	Fused Negative Multiply-Add of Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point Values
VFNMADD132SS/VFNMADD213SS/VFNMADD231SS xmm0, xmm1, xmm2/m32	Fused Negative Multiply-Add of Scalar Single-Precision Floating-Point Values
VFNMSUB132PD/VFNMSUB213PD/VFNMSUB231PD xmm0, xmm1, xmm2/m128; ymm0, ymm1, ymm2/m256	Fused Negative Multiply-Subtract of Packed Double-Precision Floating-Point Values
VFNMSUB132PS/VFNMSUB213PS/VFNMSUB231PS xmm0, xmm1, xmm2/m128; ymm0, ymm1, ymm2/m256	Fused Negative Multiply-Subtract of Packed Single-Precision Floating-Point Values

Table 14-15. FMA Instructions

Instruction	Description
VFNMSUB132SD/VFNMSUB213SD/VFNMSUB231SD xmm0, xmm1, xmm2/m64	Fused Negative Multiply-Subtract of Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point Values
VFNMSUB132SS/VFNMSUB213SS/VFNMSUB231SS xmm0, xmm1, xmm2/m32	Fused Negative Multiply-Subtract of Scalar Single-Precision Floating-Point Values

14.5.1 FMA Instruction Operand Order and Arithmetic Behavior

FMA instruction mnemonics are defined explicitly with an ordered three digits, e.g. VFMADD132PD. The value of each digit refers to the ordering of the three source operand as defined by instruction encoding specification:

- '1': The first source operand (also the destination operand) in the syntactical order listed in this specification.
- '2': The second source operand in the syntactical order. This is a YMM/XMM register, encoded using VEX prefix.
- '3': The third source operand in the syntactical order. The first and third operand are encoded following ModR/M encoding rules.

The ordering of each digit within the mnemonic refers to the floating-point data listed on the right-hand side of the arithmetic equation of each FMA operation (see Table 14-17):

- The first position in the three digits of a FMA mnemonic refers to the operand position of the first FP data expressed in the arithmetic equation of FMA operation, the multiplicand.
- The second position in the three digits of a FMA mnemonic refers to the operand position of the second FP data expressed in the arithmetic equation of FMA operation, the multiplier.
- The third position in the three digits of a FMA mnemonic refers to the operand position of the FP data being added/subtracted to the multiplication result.

Note the non-numerical result of an FMA operation does not resemble the mathematically-defined commutative property between the multiplicand and the multiplier values (see Table 14-17). Consequently, software tools (such as an assembler) may support a complementary set of FMA mnemonics for each FMA instruction for ease of programming to take advantage of the mathematical property of commutative multiplications. For example, an assembler may optionally support the complementary mnemonic "VFMADD312PD" in addition to the true mnemonic "VFMADD132PD". The assembler will generate the same instruction opcode sequence corresponding to VFMADD132PD. The processor executes VFMADD132PD and report any NAN conditions based on the definition of VFMADD132PD. Similarly, if the complementary mnemonic VFMADD123PD is supported by an assembler at source level, it must generate the opcode sequence corresponding to VFMADD213PD; the complementary mnemonic VFMADD321PD must produce the opcode sequence defined by VFMADD231PD. In the absence of FMA operations reporting a NAN result, the numerical results of using either mnemonic with an assembler supporting both mnemonics will match the behavior defined in Table 14-17. Support for the complementary FMA mnemonics by software tools is optional.

14.5.2 Fused-Multiply-ADD (FMA) Numeric Behavior

FMA instructions can perform fused-multiply-add operations (including fused-multiply-subtract, and other varieties) on packed and scalar data elements in the instruction operands. Separate FMA instructions are provided to handle different types of arithmetic operations on the three source operands.

FMA instruction syntax is defined using three source operands and the first source operand is updated based on the result of the arithmetic operations of the data elements of 128-bit or 256-bit operands, i.e. The first source operand is also the destination operand.

The arithmetic FMA operation performed in an FMA instruction takes one of several forms, $r=(x*y)+z$, $r=(x*y)-z$, $r=-(x*y)+z$, or $r=-(x*y)-z$. Packed FMA instructions can perform eight single-precision FMA operations or four double-precision FMA operations with 256-bit vectors.

Scalar FMA instructions only perform one arithmetic operation on the low order data element. The content of the rest of the data elements in the lower 128-bits of the destination operand is preserved. the upper 128bits of the destination operand are filled with zero.

An arithmetic FMA operation of the form, $r=(x*y)+z$, takes two IEEE-754-2008 single (double) precision values and multiplies them to form an infinite precision intermediate value. This intermediate value is added to a third single (double) precision value (also at infinite precision) and rounded to produce a single (double) precision result.

Table 14-17 describes the numerical behavior of the FMA operation, $r=(x*y)+z$, $r=(x*y)-z$, $r=-(x*y)+z$, $r=-(x*y)-z$ for various input values. The input values can be 0, finite non-zero (F in Table 14-17), infinity of either sign (INF in Table 14-17), positive infinity (+INF in Table 14-17), negative infinity (-INF in Table 14-17), or NaN (including QNaN or SNaN). If any one of the input values is a NaN, the result of FMA operation, r, may be a quietized NaN. The result can be either Q(x), Q(y), or Q(z), see Table 14-17. If x is a NaN, then:

- $Q(x) = x$ if x is QNaN or
- $Q(x) =$ the quietized NaN obtained from x if x is SNaN

The notation for the output value in Table 14-17 are:

- “+INF”: positive infinity, “-INF”: negative infinity. When the result depends on a conditional expression, both values are listed in the result column and the condition is described in the comment column.
- QNaNIndefinite represents the QNaN which has the sign bit equal to 1, the most significant field equal to 1, and the remaining significant field bits equal to 0.
- The summation or subtraction of 0s or identical values in FMA operation can lead to the following situations shown in Table 14-16
- If the FMA computation represents an invalid operation (e.g. when adding two INF with opposite signs), the invalid exception is signaled, and the MXCSR.IE flag is set.

Table 14-16. Rounding Behavior of Zero Result in FMA Operation

$x*y$	z	$(x*y) + z$	$(x*y) - z$	$-(x*y) + z$	$-(x*y) - z$
(+0)	(+0)	+0 in all rounding modes	- 0 when rounding down, and +0 otherwise	- 0 when rounding down, and +0 otherwise	- 0 in all rounding modes
(+0)	(-0)	- 0 when rounding down, and +0 otherwise	+0 in all rounding modes	- 0 in all rounding modes	- 0 when rounding down, and +0 otherwise
(-0)	(+0)	- 0 when rounding down, and +0 otherwise	- 0 in all rounding modes	+ 0 in all rounding modes	- 0 when rounding down, and +0 otherwise
(-0)	(-0)	- 0 in all rounding modes	- 0 when rounding down, and +0 otherwise	- 0 when rounding down, and +0 otherwise	+ 0 in all rounding modes
F	-F	- 0 when rounding down, and +0 otherwise	2^*F	-2^*F	- 0 when rounding down, and +0 otherwise
F	F	2^*F	- 0 when rounding down, and +0 otherwise	- 0 when rounding down, and +0 otherwise	-2^*F

Table 14-17. FMA Numeric Behavior

x (multiplicand)	y (multiplier)	z	$r=(x*y)+z$	$r=(x*y)-z$	$r = -(x*y)+z$	$r= -(x*y)-z$	Comment
NaN	0, F, INF, NaN	0, F, INF, NaN	Q(x)	Q(x)	Q(x)	Q(x)	Signal invalid exception if x or y or z is SNaN
0, F, INF	NaN	0, F, INF, NaN	Q(y)	Q(y)	Q(y)	Q(y)	Signal invalid exception if y or z is SNaN
0, F, INF	0, F, INF	NaN	Q(z)	Q(z)	Q(z)	Q(z)	Signal invalid exception if z is SNaN
INF	F, INF	+INF F	+INF	QNaNIn definite	QNaNIndefinite	-INF	if $x*y$ and z have the same sign
			QNaNIn definite	-INF	+INF	QNaNIndefinite	if $x*y$ and z have opposite signs

x (multiplicand)	y (multiplier)	z	$r=(x*y)+z$	$r=(x*y)-z$	$r = -(x*y)+z$	$r = -(x*y)-z$	Comment
INF	F, INF	-INF	-INF	QNaNIn definite	QNaNInd efinite	+INF	if $x*y$ and z have the same sign
			QNaNIn definite	+INF	-INF	QNaNInd efinite	if $x*y$ and z have opposite signs
INF	F, INF	0, F	+INF	+INF	-INF	-INF	if x and y have the same sign
			-INF	-INF	+INF	+INF	if x and y have opposite signs
INF	0	0, F, INF	QNaNIn definite	QNaNIn definite	QNaNInd efinite	QNaNInd efinite	Signal invalid exception
0	INF	0, F, INF	QNaNIn definite	QNaNIn definite	QNaNInd efinite	QNaNInd efinite	Signal invalid exception
F	INF	+INF, F	+INF	QNaNIn definite	QNaNInd efinite	-INF	if $x*y$ and z have the same sign
			QNaNIn definite	-INF	+INF	QNaNInd efinite	if $x*y$ and z have opposite signs
F	INF	-INF	-INF	QNaNIn definite	QNaNInd efinite	+INF	if $x*y$ and z have the same sign
			QNaNIn definite	+INF	-INF	QNaNInd efinite	if $x*y$ and z have opposite signs
F	INF	0, F	+INF	+INF	-INF	-INF	if $x * y > 0$
			-INF	-INF	+INF	+INF	if $x * y < 0$
0, F	0, F	INF	+INF	-INF	+INF	-INF	if $z > 0$
			-INF	+INF	-INF	+INF	if $z < 0$
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	The sign of the result depends on the sign of the operands and on the rounding mode. The product $x*y$ is +0 or -0, depending on the signs of x and y . The summation/subtraction of the zero representing $(x*y)$ and the zero representing z can lead to one of the four cases shown in Table 14-16.
0	F	0	0	0	0	0	
F	0	0	0	0	0	0	
F	F	0	0	0	0	0	
0	0	F	z	$-z$	z	$-z$	
0	F	F	z	$-z$	z	$-z$	
F	0	F	z	$-z$	z	$-z$	
F	F	0	$x*y$	$x*y$	$-x*y$	$-x*y$	Rounded to the destination precision, with bounded exponent
F	F	F	$(x*y)+z$	$(x*y)-z$	$-(x*y)+z$	$-(x*y)-z$	Rounded to the destination precision, with bounded exponent; however, if the exact values of $x*y$ and z are equal in magnitude with signs resulting in the FMA operation producing 0, the rounding behavior described in Table 14-16.

If unmasked floating-point exceptions are signaled (invalid operation, denormal operand, overflow, underflow, or inexact result) the result register is left unchanged and a floating-point exception handler is invoked.

14.5.3 Detection of FMA

Hardware support for FMA is indicated by `CPUID.1:ECX.FMA[bit 12]=1`.

Application Software must identify that hardware supports AVX, after that it must also detect support for FMA by `CPUID.1:ECX.FMA[bit 12]`. The recommended pseudocode sequence for detection of FMA is:

```

-----
INT supports_fma()
{
    ; result in eax
    mov eax, 1
    cpuid
    and ecx, 018001000H
    cmp ecx, 018001000H; check OSXSAVE, AVX, FMA feature flags
    jne not_supported
    ; processor supports AVX,FMA instructions and XGETBV is enabled by OS
    mov ecx, 0; specify 0 for XCR0 register
    XGETBV; result in EDX:EAX
    and eax, 06H
    cmp eax, 06H; check OS has enabled both XMM and YMM state support
    jne not_supported
    mov eax, 1
    jmp done
NOT_SUPPORTED:
    mov eax, 0
done:
}
-----

```

Note that FMA comprises 256-bit and 128-bit SIMD instructions operating on YMM states.

14.6 OVERVIEW OF INTEL® ADVANCED VECTOR EXTENSIONS 2 (INTEL® AVX2)

Intel® AVX2 extends Intel AVX by promoting most of the 128-bit SIMD integer instructions with 256-bit numeric processing capabilities. AVX2 instructions follow the same programming model as AVX instructions.

In addition, AVX2 provide enhanced functionalities for broadcast/permute operations on data elements, vector shift instructions with variable-shift count per data element, and instructions to fetch non-contiguous data elements from memory.

14.6.1 AVX2 and 256-bit Vector Integer Processing

AVX2 promotes the vast majority of 128-bit integer SIMD instruction sets to operate with 256-bit wide YMM registers. AVX2 instructions are encoded using the VEX prefix and require the same operating system support as AVX. Generally, most of the promoted 256-bit vector integer instructions follow the 128-bit lane operation, similar to the promoted 256-bit floating-point SIMD instructions in AVX.

Newer functionalities in AVX2 generally fall into the following categories:

- Fetching non-contiguous data elements from memory using vector-index memory addressing. These “gather” instructions introduce a new memory-addressing form, consisting of a base register and multiple indices specified by a vector register (either XMM or YMM). Data elements sizes of 32 and 64-bits are supported, and data types for floating-point and integer elements are also supported.
- Cross-lane functionalities are provided with several new instructions for broadcast and permute operations. Some of the 256-bit vector integer instructions promoted from legacy SSE instruction sets also exhibit cross-lane behavior, e.g. VPMOVS/VPPOVS family.
- AVX2 complements the AVX instructions that are typed for floating-point operation with a full compliment of equivalent set for operating with 32/64-bit integer data elements.

- Vector shift instructions with per-element shift count. Data elements sizes of 32 and 64-bits are supported.

14.7 PROMOTED VECTOR INTEGER INSTRUCTIONS IN AVX2

In AVX2, most SSE/SSE2/SSE3/SSSE3/SSE4 vector integer instructions have been promoted to support VEX.256 encodings. Table 14-18 summarizes the promotion status for existing instructions. The column “VEX.128” indicates whether the instruction using VEX.128 prefix encoding is supported.

The column “VEX.256” indicates whether 256-bit vector form of the instruction using the VEX.256 prefix encoding is supported, and under which feature flag.

Table 14-18. Promoted Vector Integer SIMD Instructions in AVX2

VEX.256 Encoding	VEX.128 Encoding	Group	Instruction
AVX2	AVX	YY OF 6X	PUNPCKLBW
AVX2	AVX		PUNPCKLWD
AVX2	AVX		PUNPCKLDQ
AVX2	AVX		PACKSSWB
AVX2	AVX		PCMPGTB
AVX2	AVX		PCMPGTW
AVX2	AVX		PCMPGTD
AVX2	AVX		PACKUSWB
AVX2	AVX		PUNPCKHBW
AVX2	AVX		PUNPCKHWD
AVX2	AVX		PUNPCKHDQ
AVX2	AVX		PACKSSDW
AVX2	AVX		PUNPCKLQDQ
AVX2	AVX		PUNPCKHQDQ
no	AVX		MOVD
no	AVX		MOVQ
AVX	AVX		MOVDQA
AVX	AVX		MOVDQU
AVX2	AVX	YY OF 7X	PSHUFD
AVX2	AVX		PSHUFW
AVX2	AVX		PSHUFLW
AVX2	AVX		PCMPEQB
AVX2	AVX		PCMPEQW
AVX2	AVX		PCMPEQD
AVX	AVX		MOVDQA
AVX	AVX		MOVDQU
no	AVX		PINSRW
no	AVX		PEXTRW
AVX2	AVX		PSRLW
AVX2	AVX		PSRLD

Table 14-18. Promoted Vector Integer SIMD Instructions in AVX2

VEX.256 Encoding	VEX.128 Encoding	Group	Instruction
AVX2	AVX		PSRLQ
AVX2	AVX		PADDQ
AVX2	AVX		PMULLW
AVX2	AVX		PMOVBMSKB
AVX2	AVX		PSUBUSB
AVX2	AVX		PSUBUSW
AVX2	AVX		PMINUB
AVX2	AVX		PAND
AVX2	AVX		PADDUSB
AVX2	AVX		PADDUSW
AVX2	AVX		PMAXUB
AVX2	AVX		PANDN
AVX2	AVX	YY OF EX	PAVGB
AVX2	AVX		PSRAW
AVX2	AVX		PSRAD
AVX2	AVX		PAVGW
AVX2	AVX		PMULHUW
AVX2	AVX		PMULHW
AVX	AVX		MOVNTDQ
AVX2	AVX		PSUBSB
AVX2	AVX		PSUBSW
AVX2	AVX		PMINSW
AVX2	AVX		POR
AVX2	AVX		PADDSB
AVX2	AVX		PADDSW
AVX2	AVX		PMAXSW
AVX2	AVX		PXOR
AVX	AVX	YY OF FX	LDDQU
AVX2	AVX		PSLLW
AVX2	AVX		PSLLD
AVX2	AVX		PSLLQ
AVX2	AVX		PMULUDQ
AVX2	AVX		PMADDWD
AVX2	AVX		PSADBW
AVX2	AVX		PSUBB
AVX2	AVX		PSUBW
AVX2	AVX		PSUBD
AVX2	AVX		PSUBQ

Table 14-18. Promoted Vector Integer SIMD Instructions in AVX2

VEX.256 Encoding	VEX.128 Encoding	Group	Instruction
AVX2	AVX		PADDB
AVX2	AVX		PADDW
AVX2	AVX		PADDD
AVX2	AVX	SSSE3	PHADDW
AVX2	AVX		PHADDSW
AVX2	AVX		PHADDD
AVX2	AVX		PHSUBW
AVX2	AVX		PHSUBSW
AVX2	AVX		PHSUBD
AVX2	AVX		PMADDUBSW
AVX2	AVX		PALIGNR
AVX2	AVX		PSHUFB
AVX2	AVX		PMULHRSW
AVX2	AVX		PSIGNB
AVX2	AVX		PSIGNW
AVX2	AVX		PSIGND
AVX2	AVX		PABSB
AVX2	AVX		PABSW
AVX2	AVX		PABSD
AVX2	AVX		MOVNTDQA
AVX2	AVX		MPSADBW
AVX2	AVX		PACKUSDW
AVX2	AVX		PBLENDVB
AVX2	AVX		PBLENDW
AVX2	AVX		PCMPEQQ
no	AVX		PEXTRD
no	AVX		PEXTRQ
no	AVX		PEXTRB
no	AVX		PEXTRW
no	AVX		PHMINPOSUW
no	AVX		PINSRB
no	AVX		PINSRD
no	AVX		PINSRQ
AVX2	AVX		PMAXSB
AVX2	AVX		PMAXSD
AVX2	AVX		PMAXUD
AVX2	AVX		PMAXUW
AVX2	AVX		PMINSB

Table 14-18. Promoted Vector Integer SIMD Instructions in AVX2

VEX.256 Encoding	VEX.128 Encoding	Group	Instruction
AVX2	AVX		PMINSD
AVX2	AVX		PMINUD
AVX2	AVX		PMINUW
AVX2	AVX		PMOVSXxx
AVX2	AVX		PMOVZXxx
AVX2	AVX		PMULDQ
AVX2	AVX		PMULLD
AVX	AVX		PTEST
AVX2	AVX	SSE4.2	PCMPGTQ
no	AVX		PCMPSTR
no	AVX		PCMPSTRM
no	AVX		PCMPISTR
no	AVX		PCMPISTRM
no	AVX	AESNI	AESDEC
no	AVX		AESDECLAST
no	AVX		AESENC
no	AVX		AESECNLAST
no	AVX		AESIMC
no	AVX		AESKEYGENASSIST
no	AVX	CLMUL	PCLMULQDQ

Table 14-19 compares complementary SIMD functionalities introduced in AVX and AVX2. instructions.

Table 14-19. VEX-Only SIMD Instructions in AVX and AVX2

AVX2	AVX	Comment
VBROADCASTI128	VBROADCASTF128	256-bit only
VBROADCASTSD ymm1, xmm	VBROADCASTSD ymm1, m64	256-bit only
VBROADCASTSS (from xmm)	VBROADCASTSS (from m32)	
VEXTRACTI128	VEXTRACTF128	256-bit only
VINSERTI128	VINSERTF128	256-bit only
VPMASKMOVD	VMASKMOVPS	
VPMASKMOVQ!	VMASKMOVPD	
	VPERMILPD	in-lane
	VPERMILPS	in-lane
VPERM2I128	VPERM2F128	256-bit only
VPERMD		cross-lane
VPERMPS		cross-lane
VPERMQ		cross-lane
VPERMPD		cross-lane

Table 14-19. VEX-Only SIMD Instructions in AVX and AVX2

AVX2	AVX	Comment
	VTESTPD	
	VTESTPS	
VPBLENDQ		
VPSLLVD/Q		
VPSRAVD		
VPSRLVD/Q		
VGATHERDPD/QPD		
VGATHERDPS/QPS		
VPGATHERDD/QD		
VPGATHERDQ/QQ		

Table 14-20. New Primitive in AVX2 Instructions

Instruction	Description
VPERMD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	Permute doublewords in ymm3/m256 using indexes in ymm2 and store the result in ymm1.
VPERMPD ymm1, ymm2/m256, imm8	Permute double-precision FP elements in ymm2/m256 using indexes in imm8 and store the result in ymm1.
VPERMPS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	Permute single-precision FP elements in ymm3/m256 using indexes in ymm2 and store the result in ymm1.
VPERMQ ymm1, ymm2/m256, imm8	Permute quadwords in ymm2/m256 using indexes in imm8 and store the result in ymm1.
VPSLLVD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	Shift doublewords in xmm2 left by amount specified in the corresponding element of xmm3/m128 while shifting in 0s.
VPSLLVQ xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	Shift quadwords in xmm2 left by amount specified in the corresponding element of xmm3/m128 while shifting in 0s.
VPSLLVD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	Shift doublewords in ymm2 left by amount specified in the corresponding element of ymm3/m256 while shifting in 0s.
VPSLLVQ ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	Shift quadwords in ymm2 left by amount specified in the corresponding element of ymm3/m256 while shifting in 0s.
VPSRAVD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	Shift doublewords in xmm2 right by amount specified in the corresponding element of xmm3/m128 while shifting in the sign bits.
VPSRLVD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	Shift doublewords in xmm2 right by amount specified in the corresponding element of xmm3/m128 while shifting in 0s.
VPSRLVQ xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	Shift quadwords in xmm2 right by amount specified in the corresponding element of xmm3/m128 while shifting in 0s.
VPSRLVD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	Shift doublewords in ymm2 right by amount specified in the corresponding element of ymm3/m256 while shifting in 0s.
VPSRLVQ ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	Shift quadwords in ymm2 right by amount specified in the corresponding element of ymm3/m256 while shifting in 0s.
VGATHERDD xmm1, vm32x, xmm2	Using dword indices specified in vm32x, gather dword values from memory conditioned on mask specified by xmm2. Conditionally gathered elements are merged into xmm1.
VGATHERQD xmm1, vm64x, xmm2	Using qword indices specified in vm64x, gather dword values from memory conditioned on mask specified by xmm2. Conditionally gathered elements are merged into xmm1.
VGATHERDD ymm1, vm32y, ymm2	Using dword indices specified in vm32y, gather dword values from memory conditioned on mask specified by ymm2. Conditionally gathered elements are merged into ymm1.
VGATHERQD ymm1, vm64y, ymm2	Using qword indices specified in vm64y, gather dword values from memory conditioned on mask specified by ymm2. Conditionally gathered elements are merged into ymm1.

Instruction	Description
VGATHERDPD xmm1, vm32x, xmm2	Using dword indices specified in vm32x, gather double-precision FP values from memory conditioned on mask specified by xmm2. Conditionally gathered elements are merged into xmm1.
VGATHERQPD xmm1, vm64x, xmm2	Using qword indices specified in vm64x, gather double-precision FP values from memory conditioned on mask specified by xmm2. Conditionally gathered elements are merged into xmm1.
VGATHERDPD ymm1, vm32x, ymm2	Using dword indices specified in vm32x, gather double-precision FP values from memory conditioned on mask specified by ymm2. Conditionally gathered elements are merged into ymm1.
VGATHERQPD ymm1, vm64y ymm2	Using qword indices specified in vm64y, gather double-precision FP values from memory conditioned on mask specified by ymm2. Conditionally gathered elements are merged into ymm1.
VGATHERDPS xmm1, vm32x, xmm2	Using dword indices specified in vm32x, gather single-precision FP values from memory conditioned on mask specified by xmm2. Conditionally gathered elements are merged into xmm1.
VGATHERQPS xmm1, vm64x, xmm2	Using qword indices specified in vm64x, gather single-precision FP values from memory conditioned on mask specified by xmm2. Conditionally gathered elements are merged into xmm1.
VGATHERDPS ymm1, vm32y, ymm2	Using dword indices specified in vm32y, gather single-precision FP values from memory conditioned on mask specified by ymm2. Conditionally gathered elements are merged into ymm1.
VGATHERQPS xmm1, vm64y, xmm2	Using qword indices specified in vm64y, gather single-precision FP values from memory conditioned on mask specified by xmm2. Conditionally gathered elements are merged into xmm1.
VGATHERDQ xmm1, vm32x, xmm2	Using dword indices specified in vm32x, gather qword values from memory conditioned on mask specified by xmm2. Conditionally gathered elements are merged into xmm1.
VGATHERQQ xmm1, vm64x, xmm2	Using qword indices specified in vm64x, gather qword values from memory conditioned on mask specified by xmm2. Conditionally gathered elements are merged into xmm1.
VGATHERDQ ymm1, vm32x, ymm2	Using dword indices specified in vm32x, gather qword values from memory conditioned on mask specified by ymm2. Conditionally gathered elements are merged into ymm1.
VGATHERQQ ymm1, vm64y, ymm2	Using qword indices specified in vm64y, gather qword values from memory conditioned on mask specified by ymm2. Conditionally gathered elements are merged into ymm1.

14.7.1 Detection of AVX2

Hardware support for AVX2 is indicated by CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0H):EBX.AVX2[bit 5]=1.

Application Software must identify that hardware supports AVX, after that it must also detect support for AVX2 by checking CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0H):EBX.AVX2[bit 5]. The recommended pseudocode sequence for detection of AVX2 is:

```

-----
INT supports_avx2()
{
    ; result in eax
    mov eax, 1
    cpuid
    and ecx, 018000000H
    cmp ecx, 018000000H; check both OSXSAVE and AVX feature flags
    jne not_supported
    ; processor supports AVX instructions and XGETBV is enabled by OS
    mov eax, 7

```

```

mov ecx, 0
cpuid
and ebx, 20H
cmp ebx, 20H; check AVX2 feature flags
jne not_supported
mov ecx, 0; specify 0 for XCR0 register
XGETBV; result in EDX:EAX
and eax, 06H
cmp eax, 06H; check OS has enabled both XMM and YMM state support
jne not_supported
mov eax, 1
jmp done
NOT_SUPPORTED:
mov eax, 0
done:
}

```

14.8 ACCESSING YMM REGISTERS

The lower 128 bits of a YMM register is aliased to the corresponding XMM register. Legacy SSE instructions (i.e. SIMD instructions operating on XMM state but not using the VEX prefix, also referred to non-VEX encoded SIMD instructions) will not access the upper bits (255:128) of the YMM registers. AVX and FMA instructions with a VEX prefix and vector length of 128-bits zeroes the upper 128 bits of the YMM register.

Upper bits of YMM registers (255:128) can be read and written by many instructions with a VEX.256 prefix.

XSAVE and XRSTOR may be used to save and restore the upper bits of the YMM registers.

14.9 MEMORY ALIGNMENT

Memory alignment requirements on VEX-encoded instruction differs from non-VEX-encoded instructions. Memory alignment applies to non-VEX-encoded SIMD instructions in three categories:

- Explicitly-aligned SIMD load and store instructions accessing 16 bytes of memory (e.g. MOVAPD, MOVAPS, MOVDQA, etc.). These instructions always require memory address to be aligned on 16-byte boundary.
- Explicitly-unaligned SIMD load and store instructions accessing 16 bytes or less of data from memory (e.g. MOVUPD, MOVUPS, MOVDQU, MOVQ, MOVD, etc.). These instructions do not require memory address to be aligned on 16-byte boundary.
- The vast majority of arithmetic and data processing instructions in legacy SSE instructions (non-VEX-encoded SIMD instructions) support memory access semantics. When these instructions access 16 bytes of data from memory, the memory address must be aligned on 16-byte boundary.

Most arithmetic and data processing instructions encoded using the VEX prefix and performing memory accesses have more flexible memory alignment requirements than instructions that are encoded without the VEX prefix. Specifically,

- With the exception of explicitly aligned 16 or 32 byte SIMD load/store instructions, most VEX-encoded, arithmetic and data processing instructions operate in a flexible environment regarding memory address alignment, i.e. VEX-encoded instruction with 32-byte or 16-byte load semantics will support unaligned load operation by default. Memory arguments for most instructions with VEX prefix operate normally without

causing #GP(0) on any byte-granularity alignment (unlike Legacy SSE instructions). The instructions that require explicit memory alignment requirements are listed in Table 14-22.

Software may see performance penalties when unaligned accesses cross cacheline boundaries, so reasonable attempts to align commonly used data sets should continue to be pursued.

Atomic memory operation in Intel 64 and IA-32 architecture is guaranteed only for a subset of memory operand sizes and alignment scenarios. The list of guaranteed atomic operations are described in Section 8.1.1 of *IA-32 Intel® Architecture Software Developer’s Manual, Volumes 3A*. AVX and FMA instructions do not introduce any new guaranteed atomic memory operations.

AVX instructions can generate an #AC(0) fault on misaligned 4 or 8-byte memory references in Ring-3 when CR0.AM=1. 16 and 32-byte memory references will not generate #AC(0) fault. See Table 14-21 for details.

Certain AVX instructions always require 16- or 32-byte alignment (see the complete list of such instructions in Table 14-22). These instructions will #GP(0) if not aligned to 16-byte boundaries (for 16-byte granularity loads and stores) or 32-byte boundaries (for 32-byte loads and stores).

Table 14-21. Alignment Faulting Conditions when Memory Access is Not Aligned

EFLAGS.AC==1 && Ring-3 && CR0.AM == 1			0	1
Instruction Type	AVX, FMA,	16- or 32-byte “explicitly unaligned” loads and stores (see Table 14-23)	no fault	no fault
		VEX op YMM, m256	no fault	no fault
		VEX op XMM, m128	no fault	no fault
		“explicitly aligned” loads and stores (see Table 14-22)	#GP(0)	#GP(0)
		2, 4, or 8-byte loads and stores	no fault	#AC(0)
	SSE	16 byte “explicitly unaligned” loads and stores (see Table 14-23)	no fault	no fault
		op XMM, m128	#GP(0)	#GP(0)
		“explicitly aligned” loads and stores (see Table 14-22)	#GP(0)	#GP(0)
		2, 4, or 8-byte loads and stores	no fault	#AC(0)

Table 14-22. Instructions Requiring Explicitly Aligned Memory

Require 16-byte alignment	Require 32-byte alignment
(V)MOVDQA xmm, m128	VMOVDQA ymm, m256
(V)MOVDQA m128, xmm	VMOVDQA m256, ymm
(V)MOVAPS xmm, m128	VMOVAPS ymm, m256
(V)MOVAPS m128, xmm	VMOVAPS m256, ymm
(V)MOVAPD xmm, m128	VMOVAPD ymm, m256
(V)MOVAPD m128, xmm	VMOVAPD m256, ymm
(V)MOVNTPS m128, xmm	VMOVNTPS m256, ymm
(V)MOVNTPD m128, xmm	VMOVNTPD m256, ymm
(V)MOVNTDQ m128, xmm	VMOVNTDQ m256, ymm
(V)MOVNTDQA xmm, m128	VMOVNTDQA ymm, m256

Table 14-23. Instructions Not Requiring Explicit Memory Alignment

(V)MOVDQU xmm, m128
(V)MOVDQU m128, m128
(V)MOVUPS xmm, m128
(V)MOVUPS m128, xmm
(V)MOVUPD xmm, m128
(V)MOVUPD m128, xmm
VMOVDQU ymm, m256
VMOVDQU m256, ymm
VMOVUPS ymm, m256
VMOVUPS m256, ymm
VMOVUPD ymm, m256
VMOVUPD m256, ymm

14.10 SIMD FLOATING-POINT EXCEPTIONS

AVX instructions can generate SIMD floating-point exceptions (#XM) and respond to exception masks in the same way as Legacy SSE instructions. When CR4.OSXMMEXCPT=0 any unmasked FP exceptions generate an Undefined Opcode exception (#UD).

AVX FP exceptions are created in a similar fashion (differing only in number of elements) to Legacy SSE and SSE2 instructions capable of generating SIMD floating-point exceptions.

AVX introduces no new arithmetic operations (AVX floating-point are analogues of existing Legacy SSE instructions).

F16C, FMA instructions can generate SIMD floating-point exceptions (#XM). The requirements that apply to AVX also apply to F16C and FMA.

The subset of AVX2 instructions that operate on floating-point data do not generate #XM.

The detailed exception conditions for AVX instructions and legacy SIMD instructions (excluding instructions that operate on MMX registers) are described in a number of exception class types, depending on the operand syntax and memory operation characteristics. The complete list of SIMD instruction exception class types are defined in Chapter 2, "Instruction Format," of *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 2A*.

14.11 EMULATION

Setting the CR0.EMbit to 1 provides a technique to emulate Legacy SSE floating-point instruction sets in software. This technique is not supported with AVX instructions.

If an operating system wishes to emulate AVX instructions, set XCR0[2:1] to zero. This will cause AVX instructions to #UD. Emulation of F16C, AVX2, and FMA by operating system can be done similarly as with emulating AVX instructions.

14.12 WRITING AVX FLOATING-POINT EXCEPTION HANDLERS

AVX and FMA floating-point exceptions are handled in an entirely analogous way to Legacy SSE floating-point exceptions. To handle unmasked SIMD floating-point exceptions, the operating system or executive must provide an exception handler. The section titled "SSE and SSE2 SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions" in Chapter 11, "Programming with Streaming SIMD Extensions 2 (SSE2)," describes the SIMD floating-point exception classes and gives suggestions for writing an exception handler to handle them.

To indicate that the operating system provides a handler for SIMD floating-point exceptions (`#XM`), the `CR4.OSXMMEXCPT` flag (bit 10) must be set.

The guidelines for writing AVX floating-point exception handlers also apply to F16C and FMA.

14.13 GENERAL PURPOSE INSTRUCTION SET ENHANCEMENTS

Enhancements in the general-purpose instruction set consist of several categories:

- A rich collection of instructions to manipulate integer data at bit-granularity. Most of the bit-manipulation instructions employ VEX-prefix encoding to support three-operand syntax with non-destructive source operands. Two of the bit-manipulating instructions (`LZCNT`, `TZCNT`) are not encoded using VEX. The VEX-encoded bit-manipulation instructions include: `ANDN`, `BEXTR`, `BLSI`, `BLSMSK`, `BLSR`, `BZHI`, `PEXT`, `PDEP`, `SARX`, `SHLX`, `SHRX`, and `RORX`.
- Enhanced integer multiply instruction (`MULX`) in conjunctions with some of the bit-manipulation instructions allow software to accelerate calculation of large integer numerics (wider than 128-bits).
- `INVPCID` instruction targets system software that manages processor context IDs.

3. Updates to Chapter 2, Volume 2A

Change bars show changes to Chapter 2 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A: Instruction Set Reference, A-L*.

Changes to this chapter: Addition of #UD exception lines to Exception Definition (VEX-Encoded GPR Instructions) table. Removal of NDS/NDD/DDS terms resulting in updates to Table 2-9 “Instructions with a VEX.vvvv destination”, Table 2-30 “EVEX Prefix Bit Field Functional Grouping”, Table 2-31 “32-Register Support in 64-bit Mode Using EVEX with Embedded REX Bits”, Table 2-32 “EVEX Encoding Register Specifiers in 32-bit Mode”, and Table 2-33 “Opmask Register Specifier Encoding”.

This chapter describes the instruction format for all Intel 64 and IA-32 processors. The instruction format for protected mode, real-address mode and virtual-8086 mode is described in Section 2.1. Increments provided for IA-32e mode and its sub-modes are described in Section 2.2.

2.1 INSTRUCTION FORMAT FOR PROTECTED MODE, REAL-ADDRESS MODE, AND VIRTUAL-8086 MODE

The Intel 64 and IA-32 architectures instruction encodings are subsets of the format shown in Figure 2-1. Instructions consist of optional instruction prefixes (in any order), primary opcode bytes (up to three bytes), an addressing-form specifier (if required) consisting of the ModR/M byte and sometimes the SIB (Scale-Index-Base) byte, a displacement (if required), and an immediate data field (if required).

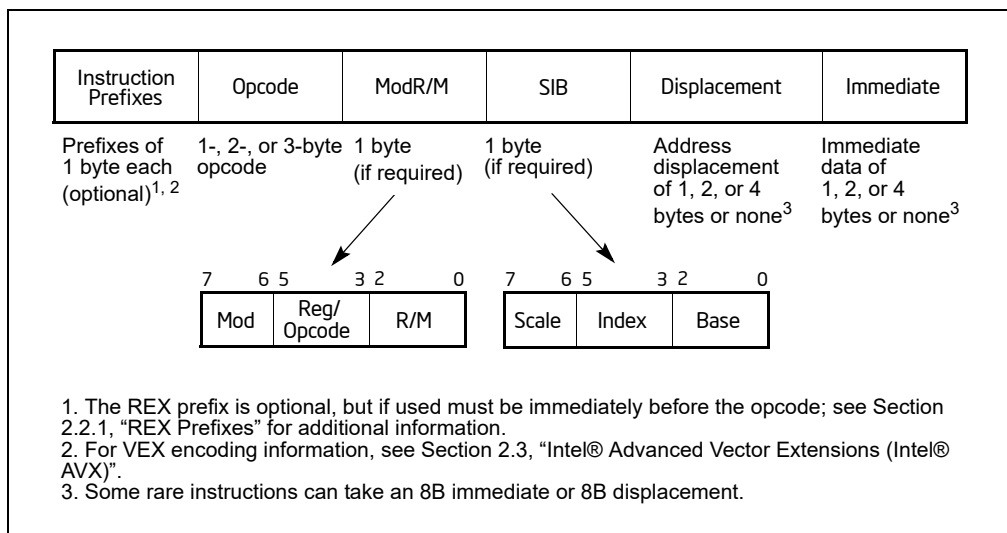


Figure 2-1. Intel 64 and IA-32 Architectures Instruction Format

2.1.1 Instruction Prefixes

Instruction prefixes are divided into four groups, each with a set of allowable prefix codes. For each instruction, it is only useful to include up to one prefix code from each of the four groups (Groups 1, 2, 3, 4). Groups 1 through 4 may be placed in any order relative to each other.

- Group 1
 - Lock and repeat prefixes:
 - LOCK prefix is encoded using F0H.
 - REPNE/REPZ prefix is encoded using F2H. Repeat-Not-Zero prefix applies only to string and input/output instructions. (F2H is also used as a mandatory prefix for some instructions.)
 - REP or REPE/REPZ is encoded using F3H. The repeat prefix applies only to string and input/output instructions. F3H is also used as a mandatory prefix for POPCNT, LZCNT and ADOX instructions.

INSTRUCTION FORMAT

- BND prefix is encoded using F2H if the following conditions are true:
 - CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EBX.MPX[bit 14] is set.
 - BNDCFGU.EN and/or IA32_BNDCFGS.EN is set.
 - When the F2 prefix precedes a near CALL, a near RET, a near JMP, a short Jcc, or a near Jcc instruction (see Chapter 17, “Intel® MPX,” of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 1*).
- Group 2
 - Segment override prefixes:
 - 2EH—CS segment override (use with any branch instruction is reserved).
 - 36H—SS segment override prefix (use with any branch instruction is reserved).
 - 3EH—DS segment override prefix (use with any branch instruction is reserved).
 - 26H—ES segment override prefix (use with any branch instruction is reserved).
 - 64H—FS segment override prefix (use with any branch instruction is reserved).
 - 65H—GS segment override prefix (use with any branch instruction is reserved).
 - Branch hints¹:
 - 2EH—Branch not taken (used only with Jcc instructions).
 - 3EH—Branch taken (used only with Jcc instructions).
- Group 3
 - Operand-size override prefix is encoded using 66H (66H is also used as a mandatory prefix for some instructions).
- Group 4
 - 67H—Address-size override prefix.

The LOCK prefix (F0H) forces an operation that ensures exclusive use of shared memory in a multiprocessor environment. See “LOCK—Assert LOCK# Signal Prefix” in Chapter 3, “Instruction Set Reference, A-L,” for a description of this prefix.

Repeat prefixes (F2H, F3H) cause an instruction to be repeated for each element of a string. Use these prefixes only with string and I/O instructions (MOVS, CMPS, SCAS, LODS, STOS, INS, and OUTS). Use of repeat prefixes and/or undefined opcodes with other Intel 64 or IA-32 instructions is reserved; such use may cause unpredictable behavior.

Some instructions may use F2H,F3H as a mandatory prefix to express distinct functionality.

Branch hint prefixes (2EH, 3EH) allow a program to give a hint to the processor about the most likely code path for a branch. Use these prefixes only with conditional branch instructions (Jcc). Other use of branch hint prefixes and/or other undefined opcodes with Intel 64 or IA-32 instructions is reserved; such use may cause unpredictable behavior.

The operand-size override prefix allows a program to switch between 16- and 32-bit operand sizes. Either size can be the default; use of the prefix selects the non-default size.

Some SSE2/SSE3/SSSE3/SSE4 instructions and instructions using a three-byte sequence of primary opcode bytes may use 66H as a mandatory prefix to express distinct functionality.

Other use of the 66H prefix is reserved; such use may cause unpredictable behavior.

The address-size override prefix (67H) allows programs to switch between 16- and 32-bit addressing. Either size can be the default; the prefix selects the non-default size. Using this prefix and/or other undefined opcodes when operands for the instruction do not reside in memory is reserved; such use may cause unpredictable behavior.

1. Some earlier microarchitectures used these as branch hints, but recent generations have not and they are reserved for future hint usage.

2.1.2 Opcodes

A primary opcode can be 1, 2, or 3 bytes in length. An additional 3-bit opcode field is sometimes encoded in the ModR/M byte. Smaller fields can be defined within the primary opcode. Such fields define the direction of operation, size of displacements, register encoding, condition codes, or sign extension. Encoding fields used by an opcode vary depending on the class of operation.

Two-byte opcode formats for general-purpose and SIMD instructions consist of one of the following:

- An escape opcode byte 0FH as the primary opcode and a second opcode byte.
- A mandatory prefix (66H, F2H, or F3H), an escape opcode byte, and a second opcode byte (same as previous bullet).

For example, CVTQ2PD consists of the following sequence: F3 0F E6. The first byte is a mandatory prefix (it is not considered as a repeat prefix).

Three-byte opcode formats for general-purpose and SIMD instructions consist of one of the following:

- An escape opcode byte 0FH as the primary opcode, plus two additional opcode bytes.
- A mandatory prefix (66H, F2H, or F3H), an escape opcode byte, plus two additional opcode bytes (same as previous bullet).

For example, PHADDW for XMM registers consists of the following sequence: 66 0F 38 01. The first byte is the mandatory prefix.

Valid opcode expressions are defined in Appendix A and Appendix B.

2.1.3 ModR/M and SIB Bytes

Many instructions that refer to an operand in memory have an addressing-form specifier byte (called the ModR/M byte) following the primary opcode. The ModR/M byte contains three fields of information:

- The *mod* field combines with the *r/m* field to form 32 possible values: eight registers and 24 addressing modes.
- The *reg/opcode* field specifies either a register number or three more bits of opcode information. The purpose of the *reg/opcode* field is specified in the primary opcode.
- The *r/m* field can specify a register as an operand or it can be combined with the *mod* field to encode an addressing mode. Sometimes, certain combinations of the *mod* field and the *r/m* field are used to express opcode information for some instructions.

Certain encodings of the ModR/M byte require a second addressing byte (the SIB byte). The base-plus-index and scale-plus-index forms of 32-bit addressing require the SIB byte. The SIB byte includes the following fields:

- The *scale* field specifies the scale factor.
- The *index* field specifies the register number of the index register.
- The *base* field specifies the register number of the base register.

See Section 2.1.5 for the encodings of the ModR/M and SIB bytes.

2.1.4 Displacement and Immediate Bytes

Some addressing forms include a displacement immediately following the ModR/M byte (or the SIB byte if one is present). If a displacement is required, it can be 1, 2, or 4 bytes.

If an instruction specifies an immediate operand, the operand always follows any displacement bytes. An immediate operand can be 1, 2 or 4 bytes.

2.1.5 Addressing-Mode Encoding of ModR/M and SIB Bytes

The values and corresponding addressing forms of the ModR/M and SIB bytes are shown in Table 2-1 through Table 2-3: 16-bit addressing forms specified by the ModR/M byte are in Table 2-1 and 32-bit addressing forms are in Table 2-2. Table 2-3 shows 32-bit addressing forms specified by the SIB byte. In cases where the reg/opcode field in the ModR/M byte represents an extended opcode, valid encodings are shown in Appendix B.

In Table 2-1 and Table 2-2, the Effective Address column lists 32 effective addresses that can be assigned to the first operand of an instruction by using the Mod and R/M fields of the ModR/M byte. The first 24 options provide ways of specifying a memory location; the last eight (Mod = 11B) provide ways of specifying general-purpose, MMX technology and XMM registers.

The Mod and R/M columns in Table 2-1 and Table 2-2 give the binary encodings of the Mod and R/M fields required to obtain the effective address listed in the first column. For example: see the row indicated by Mod = 11B, R/M = 000B. The row identifies the general-purpose registers EAX, AX or AL; MMX technology register MM0; or XMM register XMM0. The register used is determined by the opcode byte and the operand-size attribute.

Now look at the seventh row in either table (labeled "REG ="). This row specifies the use of the 3-bit Reg/Opcode field when the field is used to give the location of a second operand. The second operand must be a general-purpose, MMX technology, or XMM register. Rows one through five list the registers that may correspond to the value in the table. Again, the register used is determined by the opcode byte along with the operand-size attribute.

If the instruction does not require a second operand, then the Reg/Opcode field may be used as an opcode extension. This use is represented by the sixth row in the tables (labeled "/digit (Opcode)"). Note that values in row six are represented in decimal form.

The body of Table 2-1 and Table 2-2 (under the label "Value of ModR/M Byte (in Hexadecimal)") contains a 32 by 8 array that presents all of 256 values of the ModR/M byte (in hexadecimal). Bits 3, 4 and 5 are specified by the column of the table in which a byte resides. The row specifies bits 0, 1 and 2; and bits 6 and 7. The figure below demonstrates interpretation of one table value.

	Mod	11	
	RM		000
/digit (Opcode);	REG =	001	
	C8H	11	001000

Figure 2-2. Table Interpretation of ModR/M Byte (C8H)

Table 2-1. 16-Bit Addressing Forms with the ModR/M Byte

			AL AX EAX MM0 XMM0 0 000	CL CX ECX MM1 XMM1 1 001	DL DX EDX MM2 XMM2 2 010	BL BX EBX MM3 XMM3 3 011	AH SP ESP MM4 XMM4 4 100	CH BP ¹ EBP MM5 XMM5 5 101	DH SI ESI MM6 XMM6 6 110	BH DI EDI MM7 XMM7 7 111
Effective Address	Mod	R/M	Value of ModR/M Byte (in Hexadecimal)							
[BX+SI] [BX+DI] [BP+SI] [BP+DI] [SI] [DI] disp16 ² [BX]	00	000 001 010 011 100 101 110 111	00 01 02 03 04 05 06 07	08 09 0A 0B 0C 0D 0E 0F	10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17	18 19 1A 1B 1C 1D 1E 1F	20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27	28 29 2A 2B 2C 2D 2E 2F	30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37	38 39 3A 3B 3C 3D 3E 3F
[BX+SI]+disp8 ³ [BX+DI]+disp8 [BP+SI]+disp8 [BP+DI]+disp8 [SI]+disp8 [DI]+disp8 [BP]+disp8 [BX]+disp8	01	000 001 010 011 100 101 110 111	40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47	48 49 4A 4B 4C 4D 4E 4F	50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57	58 59 5A 5B 5C 5D 5E 5F	60 61 62 63 64 65 66 67	68 69 6A 6B 6C 6D 6E 6F	70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77	78 79 7A 7B 7C 7D 7E 7F
[BX+SI]+disp16 [BX+DI]+disp16 [BP+SI]+disp16 [BP+DI]+disp16 [SI]+disp16 [DI]+disp16 [BP]+disp16 [BX]+disp16	10	000 001 010 011 100 101 110 111	80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87	88 89 8A 8B 8C 8D 8E 8F	90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97	98 99 9A 9B 9C 9D 9E 9F	A0 A1 A2 A3 A4 A5 A6 A7	A8 A9 AA AB AC AD AE AF	B0 B1 B2 B3 B4 B5 B6 B7	B8 B9 BA BB BC BD BE BF
EAX/AX/AL/MM0/XMM0 ECX/CX/CL/MM1/XMM1 EDX/DX/DL/MM2/XMM2 EBX/BX/BL/MM3/XMM3 ESP/SP/AHMM4/XMM4 EBP/BP/CH/MM5/XMM5 ESI/SI/DH/MM6/XMM6 EDI/DI/BH/MM7/XMM7	11	000 001 010 011 100 101 110 111	C0 C1 C2 C3 C4 C5 C6 C7	C8 C9 CA CB CC CD CE CF	D0 D1 D2 D3 D4 D5 D6 D7	D8 D9 DA DB DC DD DE DF	E0 E1 E2 E3 E4 E5 E6 E7	E8 E9 EA EB EC ED EE EF	F0 F1 F2 F3 F4 F5 F6 F7	F8 F9 FA FB FC FD FE FF

NOTES:

1. The default segment register is SS for the effective addresses containing a BP index, DS for other effective addresses.
2. The disp16 nomenclature denotes a 16-bit displacement that follows the ModR/M byte and that is added to the index.
3. The disp8 nomenclature denotes an 8-bit displacement that follows the ModR/M byte and that is sign-extended and added to the index.

Table 2-2. 32-Bit Addressing Forms with the ModR/M Byte

r8(/r) r16(/r) r32(/r) mm(/r) xmm(/r) (In decimal) /digit (Opcode) (In binary) REG =	AL AX EAX	CL CX ECX	DL DX EDX	BL BX EBX	AH SP ESP	CH BP EBP	DH SI ESI	BH DI EDI		
	MM0 XMM0	MM1 XMM1	MM2 XMM2	MM3 XMM3	MM4 XMM4	MM5 XMM5	MM6 XMM6	MM7 XMM7		
	0 000	1 001	2 010	3 011	4 100	5 101	6 110	7 111		
Effective Address	Mod	R/M	Value of ModR/M Byte (in Hexadecimal)							
[EAX] [ECX] [EDX] [EBX] [--][--] ¹ disp32 ² [ESI] [EDI]	00	000 001 010 011 100 101 110 111	00 01 02 03 04 05 06 07	08 09 0A 0B 0C 0D 0E 0F	10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17	18 19 1A 1B 1C 1D 1E 1F	20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27	28 29 2A 2B 2C 2D 2E 2F	30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37	38 39 3A 3B 3C 3D 3E 3F
[EAX]+disp8 ³ [ECX]+disp8 [EDX]+disp8 [EBX]+disp8 [--][--]+disp8 [EBP]+disp8 [ESI]+disp8 [EDI]+disp8	01	000 001 010 011 100 101 110 111	40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47	48 49 4A 4B 4C 4D 4E 4F	50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57	58 59 5A 5B 5C 5D 5E 5F	60 61 62 63 64 65 66 67	68 69 6A 6B 6C 6D 6E 6F	70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77	78 79 7A 7B 7C 7D 7E 7F
[EAX]+disp32 [ECX]+disp32 [EDX]+disp32 [EBX]+disp32 [--][--]+disp32 [EBP]+disp32 [ESI]+disp32 [EDI]+disp32	10	000 001 010 011 100 101 110 111	80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87	88 89 8A 8B 8C 8D 8E 8F	90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97	98 99 9A 9B 9C 9D 9E 9F	A0 A1 A2 A3 A4 A5 A6 A7	A8 A9 AA AB AC AD AE AF	B0 B1 B2 B3 B4 B5 B6 B7	B8 B9 BA BB BC BD BE BF
EAX/AX/AL/MM0/XMM0 ECX/CX/CL/MM/XMM1 EDX/DX/DL/MM2/XMM2 EBX/BX/BL/MM3/XMM3 ESP/SP/AH/MM4/XMM4 EBP/BP/CH/MM5/XMM5 ESI/SI/DH/MM6/XMM6 EDI/DI/BH/MM7/XMM7	11	000 001 010 011 100 101 110 111	C0 C1 C2 C3 C4 C5 C6 C7	C8 C9 CA CB CC CD CE CF	D0 D1 D2 D3 D4 D5 D6 D7	D8 D9 DA DB DC DD DE DF	E0 E1 E2 E3 E4 E5 E6 E7	E8 E9 EA EB EC ED EE EF	F0 F1 F2 F3 F4 F5 F6 F7	F8 F9 FA FB FC FD FE FF

NOTES:

1. The [--][--] nomenclature means a SIB follows the ModR/M byte.
2. The disp32 nomenclature denotes a 32-bit displacement that follows the ModR/M byte (or the SIB byte if one is present) and that is added to the index.
3. The disp8 nomenclature denotes an 8-bit displacement that follows the ModR/M byte (or the SIB byte if one is present) and that is sign-extended and added to the index.

Table 2-3 is organized to give 256 possible values of the SIB byte (in hexadecimal). General purpose registers used as a base are indicated across the top of the table, along with corresponding values for the SIB byte’s base field. Table rows in the body of the table indicate the register used as the index (SIB byte bits 3, 4 and 5) and the scaling factor (determined by SIB byte bits 6 and 7).

Table 2-3. 32-Bit Addressing Forms with the SIB Byte

r32 (In decimal) Base = (In binary) Base =			EAX 0 000	ECX 1 001	EDX 2 010	EBX 3 011	ESP 4 100	[*] 5 101	ESI 6 110	EDI 7 111
Scaled Index	SS	Index	Value of SIB Byte (in Hexadecimal)							
[EAX] [ECX] [EDX] [EBX] none [EBP] [ESI] [EDI]	00	000 001 010 011 100 101 110 111	00 08 10 18 20 28 30 38	01 09 11 19 21 29 31 39	02 0A 12 1A 22 2A 32 3A	03 0B 13 1B 23 2B 33 3B	04 0C 14 1C 24 2C 34 3C	05 0D 15 1D 25 2D 35 3D	06 0E 16 1E 26 2E 36 3E	07 0F 17 1F 27 2F 37 3F
[EAX*2] [ECX*2] [EDX*2] [EBX*2] none [EBP*2] [ESI*2] [EDI*2]	01	000 001 010 011 100 101 110 111	40 48 50 58 60 68 70 78	41 49 51 59 61 69 71 79	42 4A 52 5A 62 6A 72 7A	43 4B 53 5B 63 6B 73 7B	44 4C 54 5C 64 6C 74 7C	45 4D 55 5D 65 6D 75 7D	46 4E 56 5E 66 6E 76 7E	47 4F 57 5F 67 6F 77 7F
[EAX*4] [ECX*4] [EDX*4] [EBX*4] none [EBP*4] [ESI*4] [EDI*4]	10	000 001 010 011 100 101 110 111	80 88 90 98 A0 A8 B0 B8	81 89 91 99 A1 A9 B1 B9	82 8A 92 9A A2 AA B2 BA	83 8B 93 9B A3 AB B3 BB	84 8C 94 9C A4 AC B4 BC	85 8D 95 9D A5 AD B5 BD	86 8E 96 9E A6 AE B6 BE	87 8F 97 9F A7 AF B7 BF
[EAX*8] [ECX*8] [EDX*8] [EBX*8] none [EBP*8] [ESI*8] [EDI*8]	11	000 001 010 011 100 101 110 111	C0 C8 D0 D8 E0 E8 F0 F8	C1 C9 D1 D9 E1 E9 F1 F9	C2 CA D2 DA E2 EA F2 FA	C3 CB D3 DB E3 EB F3 FB	C4 CC D4 DC E4 EC F4 FC	C5 CD D5 DD E5 ED F5 FD	C6 CE D6 DE E6 EE F6 FE	C7 CF D7 DF E7 EF F7 FF

NOTES:

- The [*] nomenclature means a disp32 with no base if the MOD is 00B. Otherwise, [*] means disp8 or disp32 + [EBP]. This provides the following address modes:

MOD bits	Effective Address
----------	-------------------

00	[scaled index] + disp32
01	[scaled index] + disp8 + [EBP]
10	[scaled index] + disp32 + [EBP]

2.2 IA-32E MODE

IA-32e mode has two sub-modes. These are:

- Compatibility Mode.** Enables a 64-bit operating system to run most legacy protected mode software unmodified.
- 64-Bit Mode.** Enables a 64-bit operating system to run applications written to access 64-bit address space.

2.2.1 REX Prefixes

REX prefixes are instruction-prefix bytes used in 64-bit mode. They do the following:

- Specify GPRs and SSE registers.
- Specify 64-bit operand size.
- Specify extended control registers.

Not all instructions require a REX prefix in 64-bit mode. A prefix is necessary only if an instruction references one of the extended registers or uses a 64-bit operand. If a REX prefix is used when it has no meaning, it is ignored.

Only one REX prefix is allowed per instruction. If used, the REX prefix byte must immediately precede the opcode byte or the escape opcode byte (0FH). When a REX prefix is used in conjunction with an instruction containing a mandatory prefix, the mandatory prefix must come before the REX so the REX prefix can be immediately preceding the opcode or the escape byte. For example, CVTDQ2PD with a REX prefix should have REX placed between F3 and 0F E6. Other placements are ignored. The instruction-size limit of 15 bytes still applies to instructions with a REX prefix. See Figure 2-3.

Legacy Prefixes	REX Prefix	Opcode	ModR/M	SIB	Displacement	Immediate
Grp 1, Grp 2, Grp 3, Grp 4 (optional)	(optional)	1-, 2-, or 3-byte opcode	1 byte (if required)	1 byte (if required)	Address displacement of 1, 2, or 4 bytes	Immediate data of 1, 2, or 4 bytes or none

Figure 2-3. Prefix Ordering in 64-bit Mode

2.2.1.1 Encoding

Intel 64 and IA-32 instruction formats specify up to three registers by using 3-bit fields in the encoding, depending on the format:

- ModR/M: the reg and r/m fields of the ModR/M byte.
- ModR/M with SIB: the reg field of the ModR/M byte, the base and index fields of the SIB (scale, index, base) byte.
- Instructions without ModR/M: the reg field of the opcode.

In 64-bit mode, these formats do not change. Bits needed to define fields in the 64-bit context are provided by the addition of REX prefixes.

2.2.1.2 More on REX Prefix Fields

REX prefixes are a set of 16 opcodes that span one row of the opcode map and occupy entries 40H to 4FH. These opcodes represent valid instructions (INC or DEC) in IA-32 operating modes and in compatibility mode. In 64-bit mode, the same opcodes represent the instruction prefix REX and are not treated as individual instructions.

The single-byte-opcode forms of the INC/DEC instructions are not available in 64-bit mode. INC/DEC functionality is still available using ModR/M forms of the same instructions (opcodes FF/0 and FF/1).

See Table 2-4 for a summary of the REX prefix format. Figure 2-4 through Figure 2-7 show examples of REX prefix fields in use. Some combinations of REX prefix fields are invalid. In such cases, the prefix is ignored. Some additional information follows:

- Setting REX.W can be used to determine the operand size but does not solely determine operand width. Like the 66H size prefix, 64-bit operand size override has no effect on byte-specific operations.
- For non-byte operations: if a 66H prefix is used with prefix (REX.W = 1), 66H is ignored.
- If a 66H override is used with REX and REX.W = 0, the operand size is 16 bits.

- REX.R modifies the ModR/M reg field when that field encodes a GPR, SSE, control or debug register. REX.R is ignored when ModR/M specifies other registers or defines an extended opcode.
- REX.X bit modifies the SIB index field.
- REX.B either modifies the base in the ModR/M r/m field or SIB base field; or it modifies the opcode reg field used for accessing GPRs.

Table 2-4. REX Prefix Fields [BITS: 0100WRXB]

Field Name	Bit Position	Definition
-	7:4	0100
W	3	0 = Operand size determined by CS.D 1 = 64 Bit Operand Size
R	2	Extension of the ModR/M reg field
X	1	Extension of the SIB index field
B	0	Extension of the ModR/M r/m field, SIB base field, or Opcode reg field

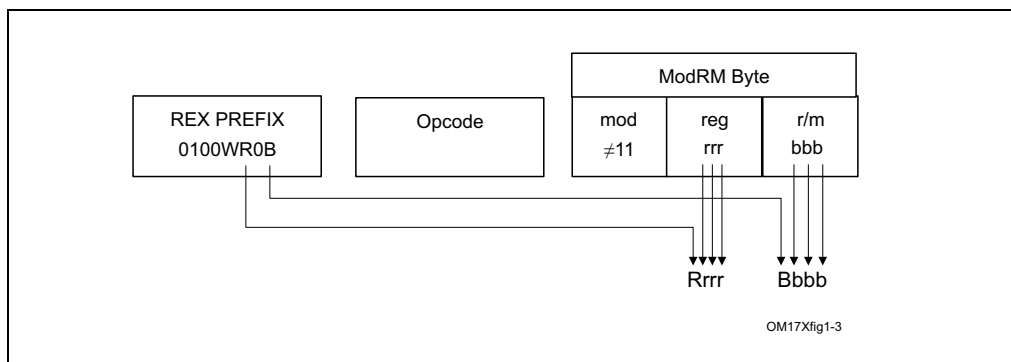


Figure 2-4. Memory Addressing Without a SIB Byte; REX.X Not Used

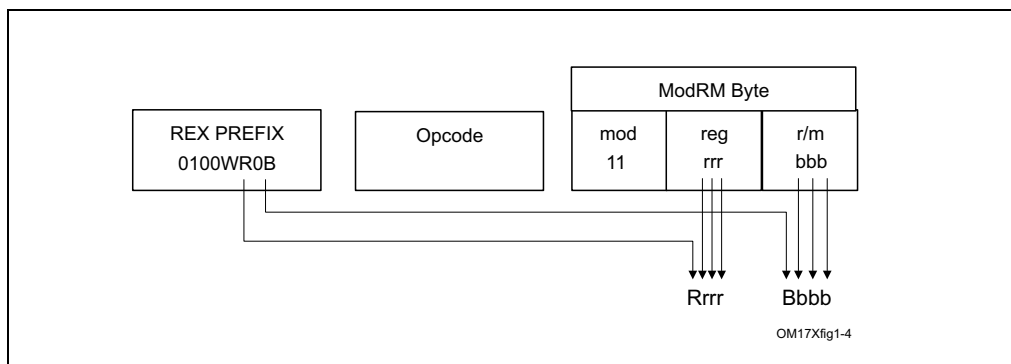


Figure 2-5. Register-Register Addressing (No Memory Operand); REX.X Not Used

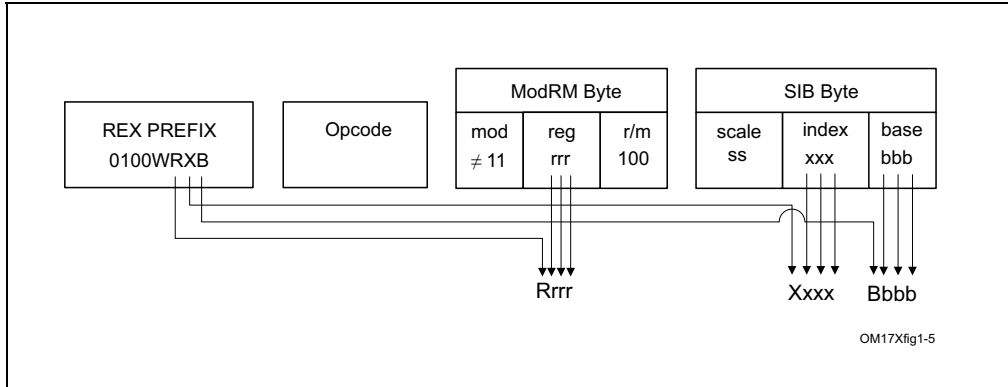


Figure 2-6. Memory Addressing With a SIB Byte

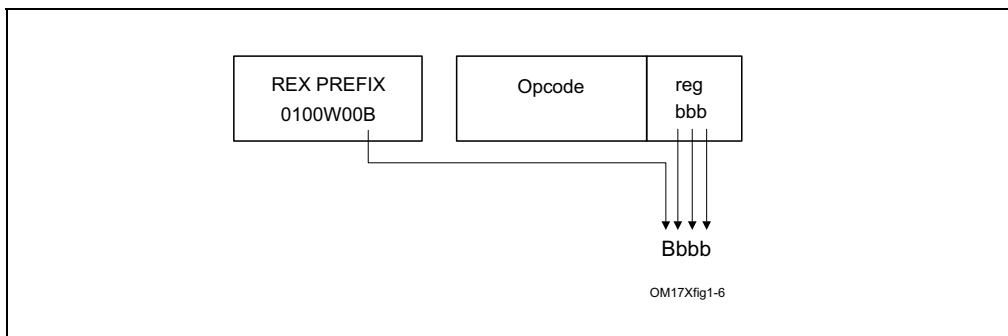


Figure 2-7. Register Operand Coded in Opcode Byte; REX.X & REX.R Not Used

In the IA-32 architecture, byte registers (AH, AL, BH, BL, CH, CL, DH, and DL) are encoded in the ModR/M byte’s reg field, the r/m field or the opcode reg field as registers 0 through 7. REX prefixes provide an additional addressing capability for byte-registers that makes the least-significant byte of GPRs available for byte operations. Certain combinations of the fields of the ModR/M byte and the SIB byte have special meaning for register encodings. For some combinations, fields expanded by the REX prefix are not decoded. Table 2-5 describes how each case behaves.

Table 2-5. Special Cases of REX Encodings

ModR/M or SIB	Sub-field Encodings	Compatibility Mode Operation	Compatibility Mode Implications	Additional Implications
ModR/M Byte	mod ≠ 11 r/m = b*100(ESP)	SIB byte present.	SIB byte required for ESP-based addressing.	REX prefix adds a fourth bit (b) which is not decoded (don't care). SIB byte also required for R12-based addressing.
ModR/M Byte	mod = 0 r/m = b*101(EBP)	Base register not used.	EBP without a displacement must be done using mod = 01 with displacement of 0.	REX prefix adds a fourth bit (b) which is not decoded (don't care). Using RBP or R13 without displacement must be done using mod = 01 with a displacement of 0.
SIB Byte	index = 0100(ESP)	Index register not used.	ESP cannot be used as an index register.	REX prefix adds a fourth bit (b) which is decoded. There are no additional implications. The expanded index field allows distinguishing RSP from R12, therefore R12 can be used as an index.
SIB Byte	base = 0101(EBP)	Base register is unused if mod = 0.	Base register depends on mod encoding.	REX prefix adds a fourth bit (b) which is not decoded. This requires explicit displacement to be used with EBP/RBP or R13.

NOTES:

* Don't care about value of REX.B

2.2.1.3 Displacement

Addressing in 64-bit mode uses existing 32-bit ModR/M and SIB encodings. The ModR/M and SIB displacement sizes do not change. They remain 8 bits or 32 bits and are sign-extended to 64 bits.

2.2.1.4 Direct Memory-Offset MOVs

In 64-bit mode, direct memory-offset forms of the MOV instruction are extended to specify a 64-bit immediate absolute address. This address is called a moffset. No prefix is needed to specify this 64-bit memory offset. For these MOV instructions, the size of the memory offset follows the address-size default (64 bits in 64-bit mode). See Table 2-6.

Table 2-6. Direct Memory Offset Form of MOV

Opcode	Instruction
A0	MOV AL, moffset
A1	MOV EAX, moffset
A2	MOV moffset, AL
A3	MOV moffset, EAX

2.2.1.5 Immediates

In 64-bit mode, the typical size of immediate operands remains 32 bits. When the operand size is 64 bits, the processor sign-extends all immediates to 64 bits prior to their use.

Support for 64-bit immediate operands is accomplished by expanding the semantics of the existing move (MOV reg, imm16/32) instructions. These instructions (opcodes B8H – BFH) move 16-bits or 32-bits of immediate data (depending on the effective operand size) into a GPR. When the effective operand size is 64 bits, these instructions can be used to load an immediate into a GPR. A REX prefix is needed to override the 32-bit default operand size to a 64-bit operand size.

For example:

```
48 B8 8877665544332211 MOV RAX,1122334455667788H
```

2.2.1.6 RIP-Relative Addressing

A new addressing form, RIP-relative (relative instruction-pointer) addressing, is implemented in 64-bit mode. An effective address is formed by adding displacement to the 64-bit RIP of the next instruction.

In IA-32 architecture and compatibility mode, addressing relative to the instruction pointer is available only with control-transfer instructions. In 64-bit mode, instructions that use ModR/M addressing can use RIP-relative addressing. Without RIP-relative addressing, all ModR/M modes address memory relative to zero.

RIP-relative addressing allows specific ModR/M modes to address memory relative to the 64-bit RIP using a signed 32-bit displacement. This provides an offset range of $\pm 2\text{GB}$ from the RIP. Table 2-7 shows the ModR/M and SIB encodings for RIP-relative addressing. Redundant forms of 32-bit displacement-addressing exist in the current ModR/M and SIB encodings. There is one ModR/M encoding and there are several SIB encodings. RIP-relative addressing is encoded using a redundant form.

In 64-bit mode, the ModR/M Disp32 (32-bit displacement) encoding is re-defined to be RIP+Disp32 rather than displacement-only. See Table 2-7.

Table 2-7. RIP-Relative Addressing

ModR/M and SIB Sub-field Encodings		Compatibility Mode Operation	64-bit Mode Operation	Additional Implications in 64-bit mode
ModR/M Byte	mod = 00	Disp32	RIP + Disp32	Must use SIB form with normal (zero-based) displacement addressing
	r/m = 101 (none)			
SIB Byte	base = 101 (none)	if mod = 00, Disp32	Same as legacy	None
	index = 100 (none)			
	scale = 0, 1, 2, 4			

The ModR/M encoding for RIP-relative addressing does not depend on using a prefix. Specifically, the r/m bit field encoding of 101B (used to select RIP-relative addressing) is not affected by the REX prefix. For example, selecting R13 (REX.B = 1, r/m = 101B) with mod = 00B still results in RIP-relative addressing. The 4-bit r/m field of REX.B combined with ModR/M is not fully decoded. In order to address R13 with no displacement, software must encode R13 + 0 using a 1-byte displacement of zero.

RIP-relative addressing is enabled by 64-bit mode, not by a 64-bit address-size. The use of the address-size prefix does not disable RIP-relative addressing. The effect of the address-size prefix is to truncate and zero-extend the computed effective address to 32 bits.

2.2.1.7 Default 64-Bit Operand Size

In 64-bit mode, two groups of instructions have a default operand size of 64 bits (do not need a REX prefix for this operand size). These are:

- Near branches.
- All instructions, except far branches, that implicitly reference the RSP.

2.2.2 Additional Encodings for Control and Debug Registers

In 64-bit mode, more encodings for control and debug registers are available. The REX.R bit is used to modify the ModR/M reg field when that field encodes a control or debug register (see Table 2-4). These encodings enable the processor to address CR8-CR15 and DR8-DR15. An additional control register (CR8) is defined in 64-bit mode. CR8 becomes the Task Priority Register (TPR).

In the first implementation of IA-32e mode, CR9-CR15 and DR8-DR15 are not implemented. Any attempt to access unimplemented registers results in an invalid-opcode exception (#UD).

2.3 INTEL® ADVANCED VECTOR EXTENSIONS (INTEL® AVX)

Intel AVX instructions are encoded using an encoding scheme that combines prefix bytes, opcode extension field, operand encoding fields, and vector length encoding capability into a new prefix, referred to as VEX. In the VEX encoding scheme, the VEX prefix may be two or three bytes long, depending on the instruction semantics. Despite the two-byte or three-byte length of the VEX prefix, the VEX encoding format provides a more compact representation/packing of the components of encoding an instruction in Intel 64 architecture. The VEX encoding scheme also allows more headroom for future growth of Intel 64 architecture.

2.3.1 Instruction Format

Instruction encoding using VEX prefix provides several advantages:

- Instruction syntax support for three operands and up-to four operands when necessary. For example, the third source register used by VBLENDVPD is encoded using bits 7:4 of the immediate byte.
- Encoding support for vector length of 128 bits (using XMM registers) and 256 bits (using YMM registers).
- Encoding support for instruction syntax of non-destructive source operands.
- Elimination of escape opcode byte (0FH), SIMD prefix byte (66H, F2H, F3H) via a compact bit field representation within the VEX prefix.
- Elimination of the need to use REX prefix to encode the extended half of general-purpose register sets (R8-R15) for direct register access, memory addressing, or accessing XMM8-XMM15 (including YMM8-YMM15).
- Flexible and more compact bit fields are provided in the VEX prefix to retain the full functionality provided by REX prefix. REX.W, REX.X, REX.B functionalities are provided in the three-byte VEX prefix only because only a subset of SIMD instructions need them.
- Extensibility for future instruction extensions without significant instruction length increase.

Figure 2-8 shows the Intel 64 instruction encoding format with VEX prefix support. Legacy instruction without a VEX prefix is fully supported and unchanged. The use of VEX prefix in an Intel 64 instruction is optional, but a VEX prefix is required for Intel 64 instructions that operate on YMM registers or support three and four operand syntax. VEX prefix is not a constant-valued, “single-purpose” byte like 0FH, 66H, F2H, F3H in legacy SSE instructions. VEX prefix provides substantially richer capability than the REX prefix.

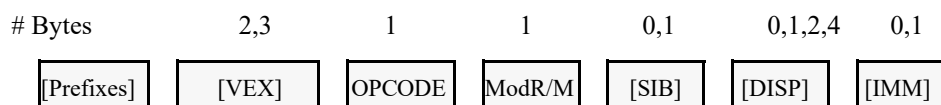


Figure 2-8. Instruction Encoding Format with VEX Prefix

2.3.2 VEX and the LOCK prefix

Any VEX-encoded instruction with a LOCK prefix preceding VEX will #UD.

2.3.3 VEX and the 66H, F2H, and F3H prefixes

Any VEX-encoded instruction with a 66H, F2H, or F3H prefix preceding VEX will #UD.

2.3.4 VEX and the REX prefix

Any VEX-encoded instruction with a REX prefix preceding VEX will #UD.

2.3.5 The VEX Prefix

The VEX prefix is encoded in either the two-byte form (the first byte must be C5H) or in the three-byte form (the first byte must be C4H). The two-byte VEX is used mainly for 128-bit, scalar, and the most common 256-bit AVX instructions; while the three-byte VEX provides a compact replacement of REX and 3-byte opcode instructions (including AVX and FMA instructions). Beyond the first byte of the VEX prefix, it consists of a number of bit fields providing specific capability, they are shown in Figure 2-9.

The bit fields of the VEX prefix can be summarized by its functional purposes:

- Non-destructive source register encoding (applicable to three and four operand syntax): This is the first source operand in the instruction syntax. It is represented by the notation, VEX.vvvv. This field is encoded using 1's complement form (inverted form), i.e. XMM0/YMM0/R0 is encoded as 1111B, XMM15/YMM15/R15 is encoded as 0000B.
- Vector length encoding: This 1-bit field represented by the notation VEX.L. L= 0 means vector length is 128 bits wide, L=1 means 256 bit vector. The value of this field is written as VEX.128 or VEX.256 in this document to distinguish encoded values of other VEX bit fields.
- REX prefix functionality: Full REX prefix functionality is provided in the three-byte form of VEX prefix. However the VEX bit fields providing REX functionality are encoded using 1's complement form, i.e. XMM0/YMM0/R0 is encoded as 1111B, XMM15/YMM15/R15 is encoded as 0000B.
 - Two-byte form of the VEX prefix only provides the equivalent functionality of REX.R, using 1's complement encoding. This is represented as VEX.R.
 - Three-byte form of the VEX prefix provides REX.R, REX.X, REX.B functionality using 1's complement encoding and three dedicated bit fields represented as VEX.R, VEX.X, VEX.B.
 - Three-byte form of the VEX prefix provides the functionality of REX.W only to specific instructions that need to override default 32-bit operand size for a general purpose register to 64-bit size in 64-bit mode. For those applicable instructions, VEX.W field provides the same functionality as REX.W. VEX.W field can provide completely different functionality for other instructions.

Consequently, the use of REX prefix with VEX encoded instructions is not allowed. However, the intent of the REX prefix for expanding register set is reserved for future instruction set extensions using VEX prefix encoding format.

- Compaction of SIMD prefix: Legacy SSE instructions effectively use SIMD prefixes (66H, F2H, F3H) as an opcode extension field. VEX prefix encoding allows the functional capability of such legacy SSE instructions (operating on XMM registers, bits 255:128 of corresponding YMM unmodified) to be encoded using the VEX.pp field without the presence of any SIMD prefix. The VEX-encoded 128-bit instruction will zero-out bits 255:128 of the destination register. VEX-encoded instruction may have 128 bit vector length or 256 bits length.
- Compaction of two-byte and three-byte opcode: More recently introduced legacy SSE instructions employ two and three-byte opcode. The one or two leading bytes are: 0FH, and 0FH 3AH/0FH 38H. The one-byte escape (0FH) and two-byte escape (0FH 3AH, 0FH 38H) can also be interpreted as an opcode extension field. The VEX.mmmmm field provides compaction to allow many legacy instruction to be encoded without the constant byte sequence, 0FH, 0FH 3AH, 0FH 38H. These VEX-encoded instruction may have 128 bit vector length or 256 bits length.

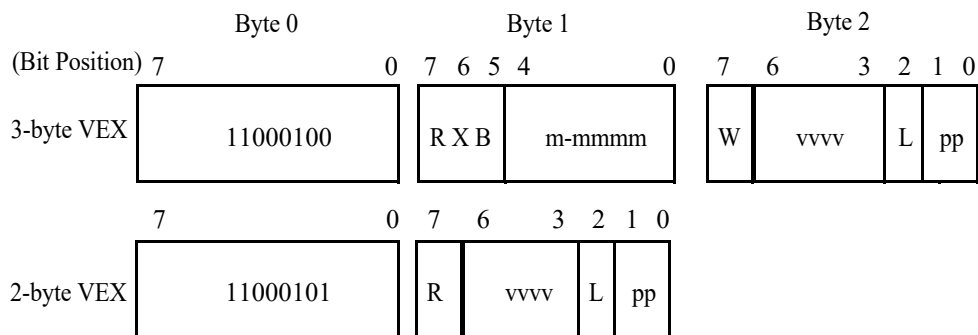
The VEX prefix is required to be the last prefix and immediately precedes the opcode bytes. It must follow any other prefixes. If VEX prefix is present a REX prefix is not supported.

The 3-byte VEX leaves room for future expansion with 3 reserved bits. REX and the 66h/F2h/F3h prefixes are reclaimed for future use.

VEX prefix has a two-byte form and a three byte form. If an instruction syntax can be encoded using the two-byte form, it can also be encoded using the three byte form of VEX. The latter increases the length of the instruction by one byte. This may be helpful in some situations for code alignment.

The VEX prefix supports 256-bit versions of floating-point SSE, SSE2, SSE3, and SSE4 instructions. Note, certain new instruction functionality can only be encoded with the VEX prefix.

The VEX prefix will #UD on any instruction containing MMX register sources or destinations.



R: REX.R in 1's complement (inverted) form
 1: Same as REX.R=0 (must be 1 in 32-bit mode)
 0: Same as REX.R=1 (64-bit mode only)

X: REX.X in 1's complement (inverted) form
 1: Same as REX.X=0 (must be 1 in 32-bit mode)
 0: Same as REX.X=1 (64-bit mode only)

B: REX.B in 1's complement (inverted) form
 1: Same as REX.B=0 (Ignored in 32-bit mode).
 0: Same as REX.B=1 (64-bit mode only)

W: opcode specific (use like REX.W, or used for opcode extension, or ignored, depending on the opcode byte)

m-mmmm:
 00000: Reserved for future use (will #UD)
 00001: implied 0F leading opcode byte
 00010: implied 0F 38 leading opcode bytes
 00011: implied 0F 3A leading opcode bytes
 00100-11111: Reserved for future use (will #UD)

vvvv: a register specifier (in 1's complement form) or 1111 if unused.

L: Vector Length
 0: scalar or 128-bit vector
 1: 256-bit vector

pp: opcode extension providing equivalent functionality of a SIMD prefix
 00: None
 01: 66
 10: F3
 11: F2

Figure 2-9. VEX bit fields

The following subsections describe the various fields in two or three-byte VEX prefix.

2.3.5.1 VEX Byte 0, bits[7:0]

VEX Byte 0, bits [7:0] must contain the value 11000101b (C5h) or 11000100b (C4h). The 3-byte VEX uses the C4h first byte, while the 2-byte VEX uses the C5h first byte.

2.3.5.2 VEX Byte 1, bit [7] - 'R'

VEX Byte 1, bit [7] contains a bit analogous to a bit inverted REX.R. In protected and compatibility modes the bit must be set to '1' otherwise the instruction is LES or LDS.

This bit is present in both 2- and 3-byte VEX prefixes.

The usage of WRXB bits for legacy instructions is explained in detail section 2.2.1.2 of Intel 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software developer's manual, Volume 2A.

This bit is stored in bit inverted format.

2.3.5.3 3-byte VEX byte 1, bit[6] - 'X'

Bit[6] of the 3-byte VEX byte 1 encodes a bit analogous to a bit inverted REX.X. It is an extension of the SIB Index field in 64-bit modes. In 32-bit modes, this bit must be set to '1' otherwise the instruction is LES or LDS.

This bit is available only in the 3-byte VEX prefix.

This bit is stored in bit inverted format.

2.3.5.4 3-byte VEX byte 1, bit[5] - 'B'

Bit[5] of the 3-byte VEX byte 1 encodes a bit analogous to a bit inverted REX.B. In 64-bit modes, it is an extension of the ModR/M r/m field, or the SIB base field. In 32-bit modes, this bit is ignored.

This bit is available only in the 3-byte VEX prefix.

This bit is stored in bit inverted format.

2.3.5.5 3-byte VEX byte 2, bit[7] - 'W'

Bit[7] of the 3-byte VEX byte 2 is represented by the notation VEX.W. It can provide following functions, depending on the specific opcode.

- For AVX instructions that have equivalent legacy SSE instructions (typically these SSE instructions have a general-purpose register operand with its operand size attribute promotable by REX.W), if REX.W promotes the operand size attribute of the general-purpose register operand in legacy SSE instruction, VEX.W has same meaning in the corresponding AVX equivalent form. In 32-bit modes for these instructions, VEX.W is silently ignored.
- For AVX instructions that have equivalent legacy SSE instructions (typically these SSE instructions have operands with their operand size attribute fixed and not promotable by REX.W), if REX.W is don't care in legacy SSE instruction, VEX.W is ignored in the corresponding AVX equivalent form irrespective of mode.
- For new AVX instructions where VEX.W has no defined function (typically these meant the combination of the opcode byte and VEX.mmmmm did not have any equivalent SSE functions), VEX.W is reserved as zero and setting to other than zero will cause instruction to #UD.

2.3.5.6 2-byte VEX Byte 1, bits[6:3] and 3-byte VEX Byte 2, bits [6:3]- 'vvvv' the Source or Dest Register Specifier

In 32-bit mode the VEX first byte C4 and C5 alias onto the LES and LDS instructions. To maintain compatibility with existing programs the VEX 2nd byte, bits [7:6] must be 11b. To achieve this, the VEX payload bits are selected to place only inverted, 64-bit valid fields (extended register selectors) in these upper bits.

The 2-byte VEX Byte 1, bits [6:3] and the 3-byte VEX, Byte 2, bits [6:3] encode a field (shorthand VEX.vvvv) that for instructions with 2 or more source registers and an XMM or YMM or memory destination encodes the first source register specifier stored in inverted (1's complement) form.

VEX.vvvv is not used by the instructions with one source (except certain shifts, see below) or on instructions with no XMM or YMM or memory destination. If an instruction does not use VEX.vvvv then it should be set to 1111b otherwise instruction will #UD.

In 64-bit mode all 4 bits may be used. See Table 2-8 for the encoding of the XMM or YMM registers. In 32-bit and 16-bit modes bit 6 must be 1 (if bit 6 is not 1, the 2-byte VEX version will generate LDS instruction and the 3-byte VEX version will ignore this bit).

Table 2-8. VEX.vvvv to register name mapping

VEX.vvvv	Dest Register	Valid in Legacy/Compatibility 32-bit modes?
1111B	XMM0/YMM0	Valid
1110B	XMM1/YMM1	Valid
1101B	XMM2/YMM2	Valid
1100B	XMM3/YMM3	Valid
1011B	XMM4/YMM4	Valid
1010B	XMM5/YMM5	Valid
1001B	XMM6/YMM6	Valid
1000B	XMM7/YMM7	Valid
0111B	XMM8/YMM8	Invalid
0110B	XMM9/YMM9	Invalid
0101B	XMM10/YMM10	Invalid
0100B	XMM11/YMM11	Invalid
0011B	XMM12/YMM12	Invalid
0010B	XMM13/YMM13	Invalid
0001B	XMM14/YMM14	Invalid
0000B	XMM15/YMM15	Invalid

The VEX.vvvv field is encoded in bit inverted format for accessing a register operand.

2.3.6 Instruction Operand Encoding and VEX.vvvv, ModR/M

VEX-encoded instructions support three-operand and four-operand instruction syntax. Some VEX-encoded instructions have syntax with less than three operands, e.g. VEX-encoded pack shift instructions support one source operand and one destination operand).

The roles of VEX.vvvv, reg field of ModR/M byte (ModR/M.reg), r/m field of ModR/M byte (ModR/M.r/m) with respect to encoding destination and source operands vary with different type of instruction syntax.

The role of VEX.vvvv can be summarized to three situations:

- VEX.vvvv encodes the first source register operand, specified in inverted (1's complement) form and is valid for instructions with 2 or more source operands.
- VEX.vvvv encodes the destination register operand, specified in 1's complement form for certain vector shifts. The instructions where VEX.vvvv is used as a destination are listed in Table 2-9. The notation in the "Opcode" column in Table 2-9 is described in detail in section 3.1.1.
- VEX.vvvv does not encode any operand, the field is reserved and should contain 1111b.

Table 2-9. Instructions with a VEX.vvvv destination

Opcode	Instruction mnemonic
VEX.128.66.0F 73 /7 ib	VPSLLDQ xmm1, xmm2, imm8
VEX.128.66.0F 73 /3 ib	VPSRLDQ xmm1, xmm2, imm8
VEX.128.66.0F 71 /2 ib	VPSRLW xmm1, xmm2, imm8
VEX.128.66.0F 72 /2 ib	VPSRLD xmm1, xmm2, imm8
VEX.128.66.0F 73 /2 ib	VPSRLQ xmm1, xmm2, imm8
VEX.128.66.0F 71 /4 ib	VPSRAW xmm1, xmm2, imm8
VEX.128.66.0F 72 /4 ib	VPSRAD xmm1, xmm2, imm8
VEX.128.66.0F 71 /6 ib	VPSLLW xmm1, xmm2, imm8
VEX.128.66.0F 72 /6 ib	VPSLLD xmm1, xmm2, imm8
VEX.128.66.0F 73 /6 ib	VPSLLQ xmm1, xmm2, imm8

The role of ModR/M.r/m field can be summarized to two situations:

- ModR/M.r/m encodes the instruction operand that references a memory address.
- For some instructions that do not support memory addressing semantics, ModR/M.r/m encodes either the destination register operand or a source register operand.

The role of ModR/M.reg field can be summarized to two situations:

- ModR/M.reg encodes either the destination register operand or a source register operand.
- For some instructions, ModR/M.reg is treated as an opcode extension and not used to encode any instruction operand.

For instruction syntax that support four operands, VEX.vvvv, ModR/M.r/m, ModR/M.reg encodes three of the four operands. The role of bits 7:4 of the immediate byte serves the following situation:

- Imm8[7:4] encodes the third source register operand.

2.3.6.1 3-byte VEX byte 1, bits[4:0] - “m-mmmm”

Bits[4:0] of the 3-byte VEX byte 1 encode an implied leading opcode byte (0F, 0F 38, or 0F 3A). Several bits are reserved for future use and will #UD unless 0.

Table 2-10. VEX.m-mmmm interpretation

VEX.m-mmmm	Implied Leading Opcode Bytes
00000B	Reserved
00001B	0F
00010B	0F 38
00011B	0F 3A
00100-11111B	Reserved
(2-byte VEX)	0F

VEX.m-mmmm is only available on the 3-byte VEX. The 2-byte VEX implies a leading 0Fh opcode byte.

2.3.6.2 2-byte VEX byte 1, bit[2], and 3-byte VEX byte 2, bit [2]- “L”

The vector length field, VEX.L, is encoded in bit[2] of either the second byte of 2-byte VEX, or the third byte of 3-byte VEX. If “VEX.L = 1”, it indicates 256-bit vector operation. “VEX.L = 0” indicates scalar and 128-bit vector operations.

The instruction VZEROUPPER is a special case that is encoded with VEX.L = 0, although its operation zero’s bits 255:128 of all YMM registers accessible in the current operating mode.

See the following table.

Table 2-11. VEX.L interpretation

VEX.L	Vector Length
0	128-bit (or 32/64-bit scalar)
1	256-bit

2.3.6.3 2-byte VEX byte 1, bits[1:0], and 3-byte VEX byte 2, bits [1:0]- “pp”

Up to one implied prefix is encoded by bits[1:0] of either the 2-byte VEX byte 1 or the 3-byte VEX byte 2. The prefix behaves as if it was encoded prior to VEX, but after all other encoded prefixes.

See the following table.

Table 2-12. VEX.pp interpretation

pp	Implies this prefix after other prefixes but before VEX
00B	None
01B	66
10B	F3
11B	F2

2.3.7 The Opcode Byte

One (and only one) opcode byte follows the 2 or 3 byte VEX. Legal opcodes are specified in Appendix B, in color. Any instruction that uses illegal opcode will #UD.

2.3.8 The MODRM, SIB, and Displacement Bytes

The encodings are unchanged but the interpretation of reg_field or rm_field differs (see above).

2.3.9 The Third Source Operand (Immediate Byte)

VEX-encoded instructions can support instruction with a four operand syntax. VBLENDVPD, VBLENDVPS, and PBLENDVB use imm8[7:4] to encode one of the source registers.

2.3.10 AVX Instructions and the Upper 128-bits of YMM registers

If an instruction with a destination XMM register is encoded with a VEX prefix, the processor zeroes the upper bits (above bit 128) of the equivalent YMM register. Legacy SSE instructions without VEX preserve the upper bits.

2.3.10.1 Vector Length Transition and Programming Considerations

An instruction encoded with a VEX.128 prefix that loads a YMM register operand operates as follows:

- Data is loaded into bits 127:0 of the register
- Bits above bit 127 in the register are cleared.

Thus, such an instruction clears bits 255:128 of a destination YMM register on processors with a maximum vector-register width of 256 bits. In the event that future processors extend the vector registers to greater widths, an instruction encoded with a VEX.128 or VEX.256 prefix will also clear any bits beyond bit 255. (This is in contrast with legacy SSE instructions, which have no VEX prefix; these modify only bits 127:0 of any destination register operand.)

Programmers should bear in mind that instructions encoded with VEX.128 and VEX.256 prefixes will clear any future extensions to the vector registers. A calling function that uses such extensions should save their state before calling legacy functions. This is not possible for involuntary calls (e.g., into an interrupt-service routine). It is recommended that software handling involuntary calls accommodate this by not executing instructions encoded with VEX.128 and VEX.256 prefixes. In the event that it is not possible or desirable to restrict these instructions, then software must take special care to avoid actions that would, on future processors, zero the upper bits of vector registers.

Processors that support further vector-register extensions (defining bits beyond bit 255) will also extend the XSAVE and XRSTOR instructions to save and restore these extensions. To ensure forward compatibility, software that handles involuntary calls and that uses instructions encoded with VEX.128 and VEX.256 prefixes should first save and then restore the vector registers (with any extensions) using the XSAVE and XRSTOR instructions with save/restore masks that set bits that correspond to all vector-register extensions. Ideally, software should rely on a mechanism that is cognizant of which bits to set. (E.g., an OS mechanism that sets the save/restore mask bits for all vector-register extensions that are enabled in XCR0.) Saving and restoring state with instructions other than XSAVE and XRSTOR will, on future processors with wider vector registers, corrupt the extended state of the vector registers - even if doing so functions correctly on processors supporting 256-bit vector registers. (The same is true

if XSAVE and XRSTOR are used with a save/restore mask that does not set bits corresponding to all supported extensions to the vector registers.)

2.3.11 AVX Instruction Length

The AVX instructions described in this document (including VEX and ignoring other prefixes) do not exceed 11 bytes in length, but may increase in the future. The maximum length of an Intel 64 and IA-32 instruction remains 15 bytes.

2.3.12 Vector SIB (VSIB) Memory Addressing

In Intel® Advanced Vector Extensions 2 (Intel® AVX2), an SIB byte that follows the ModR/M byte can support VSIB memory addressing to an array of linear addresses. VSIB addressing is only supported in a subset of Intel AVX2 instructions. VSIB memory addressing requires 32-bit or 64-bit effective address. In 32-bit mode, VSIB addressing is not supported when address size attribute is overridden to 16 bits. In 16-bit protected mode, VSIB memory addressing is permitted if address size attribute is overridden to 32 bits. Additionally, VSIB memory addressing is supported only with VEX prefix.

In VSIB memory addressing, the SIB byte consists of:

- The scale field (bit 7:6) specifies the scale factor.
- The index field (bits 5:3) specifies the register number of the vector index register, each element in the vector register specifies an index.
- The base field (bits 2:0) specifies the register number of the base register.

Table 2-3 shows the 32-bit VSIB addressing form. It is organized to give 256 possible values of the SIB byte (in hexadecimal). General purpose registers used as a base are indicated across the top of the table, along with corresponding values for the SIB byte's base field. The register names also include R8L-R15L applicable only in 64-bit mode (when address size override prefix is used, but the value of VEX.B is not shown in Table 2-3). In 32-bit mode, R8L-R15L does not apply.

Table rows in the body of the table indicate the vector index register used as the index field and each supported scaling factor shown separately. Vector registers used in the index field can be XMM or YMM registers. The left-most column includes vector registers VR8-VR15 (i.e. XMM8/YMM8-XMM15/YMM15), which are only available in 64-bit mode and does not apply if encoding in 32-bit mode.

Table 2-13. 32-Bit VSIB Addressing Forms of the SIB Byte

r32			EAX/ R8L	ECX/ R9L	EDX/ R10L	EBX/ R11L	ESP/ R12L	EBP/ R13L ¹	ESI/ R14L	EDI/ R15L	
(In decimal) Base =			0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	
(In binary) Base =			000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111	
Scaled Index	SS	Index	Value of SIB Byte (in Hexadecimal)								
VR0/VR8	*1	00	00	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	
VR1/VR9		001	08	09	0A	0B	0C	0D	0E	0F	
VR2/VR10		010	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	
VR3/VR11		011	18	19	1A	1B	1C	1D	1E	1F	
VR4/VR12		100	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	
VR5/VR13		101	28	29	2A	2B	2C	2D	2E	2F	
VR6/VR14		110	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	
VR7/VR15		111	38	39	3A	3B	3C	3D	3E	3F	
VR0/VR8	*2	01	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	
VR1/VR9		001	48	49	4A	4B	4C	4D	4E	4F	
VR2/VR10		010	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	
VR3/VR11		011	58	59	5A	5B	5C	5D	5E	5F	
VR4/VR12		100	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	
VR5/VR13		101	68	69	6A	6B	6C	6D	6E	6F	
VR6/VR14		110	70	71	72	73	74	75	76	77	
VR7/VR15		111	78	79	7A	7B	7C	7D	7E	7F	

Table 2-13. 32-Bit VSIB Addressing Forms of the SIB Byte (Contd.)

VR0/VR8	*4	10	000	80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87
VR1/VR9			001	88	89	8A	8B	8C	8D	8E	8F
VR2/VR10			010	90	91	92	93	94	95	96	97
VR3/VR11			011	98	99	9A	9B	9C	9D	9E	9F
VR4/VR12			100	A0	A1	A2	A3	A4	A5	A6	A7
VR5/VR13			101	A8	A9	AA	AB	AC	AD	AE	AF
VR6/VR14			110	B0	B1	B2	B3	B4	B5	B6	B7
VR7/VR15			111	B8	B9	BA	BB	BC	BD	BE	BF
VR0/VR8	*8	11	000	C0	C1	C2	C3	C4	C5	C6	C7
VR1/VR9			001	C8	C9	CA	CB	CC	CD	CE	CF
VR2/VR10			010	D0	D1	D2	D3	D4	D5	D6	D7
VR3/VR11			011	D8	D9	DA	DB	DC	DD	DE	DF
VR4/VR12			100	E0	E1	E2	E3	E4	E5	E6	E7
VR5/VR13			101	E8	E9	EA	EB	EC	ED	EE	EF
VR6/VR14			110	F0	F1	F2	F3	F4	F5	F6	F7
VR7/VR15			111	F8	F9	FA	FB	FC	FD	FE	FF

NOTES:

1. If ModR/M.mod = 00b, the base address is zero, then effective address is computed as [scaled vector index] + disp32. Otherwise the base address is computed as [EBP/R13]+ disp, the displacement is either 8 bit or 32 bit depending on the value of ModR/M.mod:

MOD	Effective Address
00b	[Scaled Vector Register] + Disp32
01b	[Scaled Vector Register] + Disp8 + [EBP/R13]
10b	[Scaled Vector Register] + Disp32 + [EBP/R13]

2.3.12.1 64-bit Mode VSIB Memory Addressing

In 64-bit mode VSIB memory addressing uses the VEX.B field and the base field of the SIB byte to encode one of the 16 general-purpose register as the base register. The VEX.X field and the index field of the SIB byte encode one of the 16 vector registers as the vector index register.

In 64-bit mode the top row of Table 2-13 base register should be interpreted as the full 64-bit of each register.

2.4 AVX AND SSE INSTRUCTION EXCEPTION SPECIFICATION

To look up the exceptions of legacy 128-bit SIMD instruction, 128-bit VEX-encoded instructions, and 256-bit VEX-encoded instruction, Table 2-14 summarizes the exception behavior into separate classes, with detailed exception conditions defined in sub-sections 2.4.1 through 2.5.1. For example, ADDPS contains the entry:

“See Exceptions Type 2”

In this entry, “Type2” can be looked up in Table 2-14.

The instruction’s corresponding CPUID feature flag can be identified in the fourth column of the Instruction summary table.

Note: #UD on CPUID feature flags=0 is not guaranteed in a virtualized environment if the hardware supports the feature flag.

NOTE

Instructions that operate only with MMX, X87, or general-purpose registers are not covered by the exception classes defined in this section. For instructions that operate on MMX registers, see Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3B*.

Table 2-14. Exception class description

Exception Class	Instruction set	Mem arg	Floating-Point Exceptions (#XM)
Type 1	AVX, Legacy SSE	16/32 byte explicitly aligned	None
Type 2	AVX, Legacy SSE	16/32 byte not explicitly aligned	Yes
Type 3	AVX, Legacy SSE	< 16 byte	Yes
Type 4	AVX, Legacy SSE	16/32 byte not explicitly aligned	No
Type 5	AVX, Legacy SSE	< 16 byte	No
Type 6	AVX (no Legacy SSE)	Varies	(At present, none do)
Type 7	AVX, Legacy SSE	None	None
Type 8	AVX	None	None
Type 11	F16C	8 or 16 byte, Not explicitly aligned, no AC#	Yes
Type 12	AVX2	Not explicitly aligned, no AC#	No

See Table 2-15 for lists of instructions in each exception class.

Table 2-15. Instructions in each Exception Class

Exception Class	Instruction
Type 1	(V)MOVAPD, (V)MOVAPS, (V)MOVDDQA, (V)MOVNTDQ, (V)MOVNTDQA, (V)MOVNTPD, (V)MOVNTPS
Type 2	(V)ADDPD, (V)ADDPs, (V)ADDSUBPD, (V)ADDSUBPS, (V)CMPPD, (V)CMPPS, (V)CVTDQ2PS, (V)CVTPD2DQ, (V)CVTPD2PS, (V)CVTPS2DQ, (V)CVTTPD2DQ, (V)CVTTPS2DQ, (V)DIVPD, (V)DIVPS, (V)DPPD*, (V)DPPS*, (V)FMADD132PD, (V)FMADD213PD, (V)FMADD231PD, (V)FMADD132PS, (V)FMADD213PS, (V)FMADD231PS, (V)FMADDSUB132PD, (V)FMADDSUB213PD, (V)FMADDSUB231PD, (V)FMADDSUB132PS, (V)FMADDSUB213PS, (V)FMADDSUB231PS, (V)FMSUBADD132PD, (V)FMSUBADD213PD, (V)FMSUBADD231PD, (V)FMSUBADD132PS, (V)FMSUBADD213PS, (V)FMSUBADD231PS, (V)FMSUB132PD, (V)FMSUB213PD, (V)FMSUB231PD, (V)FMSUB132PS, (V)FMSUB213PS, (V)FMSUB231PS, (V)FNMADD132PD, (V)FNMADD213PD, (V)FNMADD231PD, (V)FNMADD132PS, (V)FNMADD213PS, (V)FNMADD231PS, (V)FNMMSUB132PD, (V)FNMMSUB213PD, (V)FNMMSUB231PD, (V)FNMMSUB132PS, (V)FNMMSUB213PS, (V)FNMMSUB231PS, (V)HADDPD, (V)HADDPs, (V)HADDPS, (V)HSUBPD, (V)HSUBPS, (V)MAXPD, (V)MAXPS, (V)MINPD, (V)MINPS, (V)MULPD, (V)MULPS, (V)ROUNDPS, (V)SQRTPD, (V)SQRTPS, (V)SUBPD, (V)SUBPS
Type 3	(V)ADDS, (V)ADDSs, (V)CMPD, (V)CMPs, (V)COMISD, (V)COMISS, (V)CVTSD2PS, (V)CVTSD2SI, (V)CVTSD2SS, (V)CVTSD2SD, (V)CVTSD2SS, (V)CVTSS2SD, (V)CVTSS2SI, (V)CVTSS2SI, (V)CVTSS2SI, (V)DIVSD, (V)DIVSS, (V)FMADD132SD, (V)FMADD213SD, (V)FMADD231SD, (V)FMADD132SS, (V)FMADD213SS, (V)FMADD231SS, (V)FMSUB132SD, (V)FMSUB213SD, (V)FMSUB231SD, (V)FMSUB132SS, (V)FMSUB213SS, (V)FMSUB231SS, (V)FNMADD132SD, (V)FNMADD213SD, (V)FNMADD231SD, (V)FNMADD132SS, (V)FNMADD213SS, (V)FNMADD231SS, (V)FNMMSUB132SD, (V)FNMMSUB213SD, (V)FNMMSUB231SD, (V)FNMMSUB132SS, (V)FNMMSUB213SS, (V)FNMMSUB231SS, (V)MAXSD, (V)MAXSS, (V)MINS, (V)MINSs, (V)MULSD, (V)MULSS, (V)ROUNDSD, (V)ROUNDSS, (V)SQRTSD, (V)SQRTSS, (V)SUBSD, (V)SUBSS, (V)UCOMISD, (V)UCOMISS
Type 4	(V)AESDEC, (V)AESDECLAST, (V)AESENC, (V)AESENCLAST, (V)AESIMC, (V)AESKEYGENASSIST, (V)ANDPD, (V)ANDPS, (V)ANDNPD, (V)ANDNPS, (V)BLENDPD, (V)BLENDPS, (V)BLENDVPD, (V)BLENDVPS, (V)LDDQU***, (V)MASKMOVDQU, (V)PTEST, (V)TESTPS, (V)TESTPD, (V)MOVDQU*, (V)MOVSHDUP, (V)MOVSLDUP, (V)MOVUPD*, (V)MOVUPS*, (V)MPSADBW, (V)ORPD, (V)ORPS, (V)PABSB, (V)PABSW, (V)PABSD, (V)PACKSSWB, (V)PACKSSDW, (V)PACKUSWB, (V)PACKUSDW, (V)PADDB, (V)PADDW, (V)PADDD, (V)PADDQ, (V)PADDSB, (V)PADDSW, (V)PADDUSB, (V)PADDUSW, (V)PALIGNR, (V)PAND, (V)PANDN, (V)PAVGB, (V)PAVGW, (V)PBLENDVB, (V)PBLENDW, (V)PCMP(E/I)STRI/M***, (V)PCMPEQB, (V)PCMPEQW, (V)PCMPEQD, (V)PCMPEQQ, (V)PCMPGTB, (V)PCMPGTW, (V)PCMPGTD, (V)PCMPGTQ, (V)PCLMULQDQ, (V)PHADDW, (V)PHADD, (V)PHADDSW, (V)PHMINPOSUW, (V)PHSUBD, (V)PHSUBW, (V)PHSUBSW, (V)PMADDWD, (V)PMADDUBSW, (V)PMASXB, (V)PMASXW, (V)PMASXD, (V)PMASXUB, (V)PMASXUW, (V)PMASXUD, (V)PMINSB, (V)PMINSW, (V)PMINSD, (V)PMINUB, (V)PMINUW, (V)PMINUD, (V)PMULHUW, (V)PMULHRW, (V)PMULHW, (V)PMULLW, (V)PMULLD, (V)PMULUDQ, (V)PMULDQ, (V)POR, (V)PSADBW, (V)PSHUFB, (V)PSHUFD, (V)PSHUFW, (V)PSHUFLW, (V)PSIGNB, (V)PSIGNW, (V)PSIGND, (V)PSLLW, (V)PSLLD, (V)PSLLQ, (V)PSRAW, (V)PSRAD, (V)PSRLW, (V)PSRLD, (V)PSRLQ, (V)PSUBB, (V)PSUBW, (V)PSUBD, (V)PSUBQ, (V)PSUBSB, (V)PSUBSW, (V)PUNPCKHBW, (V)PUNPCKHWD, (V)PUNPCKHDQ, (V)PUNPCKHQDQ, (V)PUNPCKLBW, (V)PUNPCKLWD, (V)PUNPCKLDQ, (V)PUNPCKLQDQ, (V)PXOR, (V)RCPPS, (V)RSQRTPS, (V)SHUFPD, (V)SHUFPS, (V)UNPCKHPD, (V)UNPCKHPS, (V)UNPCKLPD, (V)UNPCKLPS, (V)XORPD, (V)XORPS, (V)BLEND, (V)PERMD, (V)PERMPS, (V)PERMPD, (V)PERMQ, (V)PSLLVD, (V)PSLLVQ, (V)PSRAVD, (V)PSRLVD, (V)PSRLVQ, (V)PERMILPD, (V)PERMILPS, (V)PERM2F128
Type 5	(V)CVTDQ2PD, (V)EXTRACTPS, (V)INSERTPS, (V)MOVD, (V)MOVQ, (V)MOVDDUP, (V)MOVLPD, (V)MOVLPS, (V)MOVHPD, (V)MOVHPS, (V)MOVSD, (V)MOVSS, (V)PEXTRB, (V)PEXTRD, (V)PEXTRW, (V)PEXTRQ, (V)PINSRB, (V)PINSRD, (V)PINSRW, (V)PINSRQ, (V)RCPPS, (V)RSQRTSS, (V)PMOVSX/ZX, (V)LDMXCSR*, (V)STMXCSR
Type 6	VEXTRACTF128, VBROADCASTSS, VBROADCASTSD, VBROADCASTF128, VINSERTF128, VMASKMOVPS**, (V)MASKMOVPD**, (V)MASKMOVQ, (V)MASKMOVQ, VBROADCASTI128, VPBROADCASTB, VPBROADCASTD, VPBROADCASTW, VPBROADCASTQ, VEXTRACTI128, VINSERTI128, VPERM2I128
Type 7	(V)MOVLHPS, (V)MOVHLPs, (V)MOVMSKPD, (V)MOVMSKPS, (V)PMOVMSKB, (V)PSLLDQ, (V)PSRLDQ, (V)PSLLW, (V)PSLLD, (V)PSLLQ, (V)PSRAW, (V)PSRAD, (V)PSRLW, (V)PSRLD, (V)PSRLQ
Type 8	VZEROALL, VZERoupper
Type 11	VCVTPH2PS, VCVTPS2PH
Type 12	VGATHERDPS, VGATHERDPD, VGATHERQPS, VGATHERQPD, VPGATHERDD, VPGATHERDQ, VPGATHERQD, VPGATHERQQ

(*) - Additional exception restrictions are present - see the Instruction description for details

(**) - Instruction behavior on alignment check reporting with mask bits of less than all 1s are the same as with mask bits of all 1s, i.e. no alignment checks are performed.

INSTRUCTION FORMAT

(***) - PCMPSTRI, PCMPSTRM, PCMPISTRI, PCMPISTRM and LDDQU instructions do not cause #GP if the memory operand is not aligned to 16-Byte boundary.

Table 2-15 classifies exception behaviors for AVX instructions. Within each class of exception conditions that are listed in Table 2-18 through Table 2-27, certain subsets of AVX instructions may be subject to #UD exception depending on the encoded value of the VEX.L field. Table 2-17 provides supplemental information of AVX instructions that may be subject to #UD exception if encoded with incorrect values in the VEX.W or VEX.L field.

Table 2-16. #UD Exception and VEX.W=1 Encoding

Exception Class	#UD If VEX.W = 1 in all modes	#UD If VEX.W = 1 in non-64-bit modes
Type 1		
Type 2		
Type 3		
Type 4	VBLENDVPD, VBLENDVPS, VPBLENDVB, VTESTPD, VTESTPS, VPBLEND, VPERMD, VPERMPS, VPERM2I128, VPSRAVD, VPERMILPD, VPERMILPS, VPERM2F128	
Type 5		
Type 6	VEXTRACTF128, VBROADCASTSS, VBROADCASTSD, VBROADCASTF128, VINSERTF128, VMASKMOVPS, VMASKMOVPD, VBROADCASTI128, VPBROADCASTB/W/D, VEXTRACTI128, VINSERTI128	
Type 7		
Type 8		
Type 11	VCVTPH2PS, VCVTPS2PH	
Type 12		

Table 2-17. #UD Exception and VEX.L Field Encoding

Exception Class	#UD If VEX.L = 0	#UD If (VEX.L = 1 && AVX2 not present && AVX present)	#UD If (VEX.L = 1 && AVX2 present)
Type 1		VMOVNTDQA	
Type 2		VDPPD	VDPPD
Type 3			
Type 4		VMASKMOVDQU, VMPSADBW, VPABSB/W/D, VPACKSSWB/DW, VPACKUSWB/DW, VPADDB/W/D, VPADDQ, VPADDSB/W, VPADDUSB/W, VPALIGNR, VPAND, VPANDN, VPAVGB/W, VPBLENDVB, VPBLENDW, VPCMP(E/I)STRI/M, VPCMPEQB/W/D/Q, VPCMPGTB/W/D/Q, VPHADDW/D, VPHADDSW, VPHMINPOSUW, VPHSUBD/W, VPHSUBSW, VPMADDWD, VPMADDUBSW, VPMASB/W/D, VPMAXUB/W/D, VPMINSB/W/D, VPMINUB/W/D, VPMULHUW, VPMULHRW, VPMULHW/LW, VPMULLD, VPMULLDQ, VPMULDQ, VPOR, VPSADBW, VPSHUF/D, VPSHUFHW/LW, VPSIGNB/W/D, VPSLLW/D/Q, VPSRAW/D, VPSRLW/D/Q, VPSUBB/W/D/Q, VPSUBSB/W, VPUNPCKHBW/W/D/DQ, VPUNPCKHQDQ, VPUNPCKLBW/W/D/DQ, VPUNPCKLQDQ, VPXOR	VPCMP(E/I)STRI/M, PHMINPOSUW
Type 5		VEXTRACTPS, VINSERTPS, VMOVD, VMOVQ, VMOVLDP, VMOVLPS, VMOVHPD, VMOVHPS, VPEXTRB, VPEXTRD, VPEXTRW, VPEXTRQ, VPINSRB, VPINSRD, VPINSRW, VPINSRQ, VPMOVSX/ZX, VLDMXCSR, VSTMXCSR	Same as column 3
Type 6	VEXTRACTF128, VPERM2F128, VBROADCASTSD, VBROADCASTF128, VINSERTF128,		
Type 7		VMOVLHPS, VMOVHLPS, VPMOVMASKB, VPSLLDQ, VPSRLDQ, VPSLLW, VPSLLD, VPSLLQ, VPSRAW, VPSRAD, VPSRLW, VPSRLD, VPSRLQ	VMOVLHPS, VMOVHLPS
Type 8			
Type 11			
Type 12			

2.4.1 Exceptions Type 1 (Aligned memory reference)

Table 2-18. Type 1 Class Exception Conditions

Exception	Real	Virtual-8086	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X			VEX prefix.
			X	X	VEX prefix: If XCRO[2:1] ≠ '11b'. If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0.
	X	X	X	X	Legacy SSE instruction: If CR0.EM[bit 2] = 1. If CR4.OSFXSR[bit 9] = 0.
	X	X	X	X	If preceded by a LOCK prefix (FOH).
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a VEX prefix.
	X	X	X	X	If any corresponding CPUID feature flag is '0'.
Device Not Available, #NM	X	X	X	X	If CR0.TS[bit 3]=1.
Stack, SS(0)			X		For an illegal address in the SS segment.
				X	If a memory address referencing the SS segment is in a non-canonical form.
General Protection, #GP(0)			X	X	VEX.256: Memory operand is not 32-byte aligned. VEX.128: Memory operand is not 16-byte aligned.
	X	X	X	X	Legacy SSE: Memory operand is not 16-byte aligned.
			X		For an illegal memory operand effective address in the CS, DS, ES, FS or GS segments.
				X	If the memory address is in a non-canonical form.
	X	X			If any part of the operand lies outside the effective address space from 0 to FFFFH.
Page Fault #PF(fault-code)		X	X	X	For a page fault.

2.4.2 Exceptions Type 2 (>=16 Byte Memory Reference, Unaligned)

Table 2-19. Type 2 Class Exception Conditions

Exception	Real	Virtual 8086	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X			VEX prefix.
	X	X	X	X	If an unmasked SIMD floating-point exception and CR4.OSXMMEXCPT[bit 10] = 0.
			X	X	VEX prefix: If XCRO[2:1] ≠ '11b'. If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0.
	X	X	X	X	Legacy SSE instruction: If CRO.EM[bit 2] = 1. If CR4.OSFXSR[bit 9] = 0.
	X	X	X	X	If preceded by a LOCK prefix (F0H).
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a VEX prefix.
	X	X	X	X	If any corresponding CPUID feature flag is '0'.
Device Not Available, #NM	X	X	X	X	If CRO.TS[bit 3]=1.
Stack, SS(0)			X		For an illegal address in the SS segment.
				X	If a memory address referencing the SS segment is in a non-canonical form.
General Protection, #GP(0)	X	X	X	X	Legacy SSE: Memory operand is not 16-byte aligned.
			X		For an illegal memory operand effective address in the CS, DS, ES, FS or GS segments.
				X	If the memory address is in a non-canonical form.
	X	X			If any part of the operand lies outside the effective address space from 0 to FFFFH.
Page Fault #PF(fault-code)		X	X	X	For a page fault.
SIMD Floating-point Exception, #XM	X	X	X	X	If an unmasked SIMD floating-point exception and CR4.OSXMMEXCPT[bit 10] = 1.

2.4.3 Exceptions Type 3 (<16 Byte memory argument)

Table 2-20. Type 3 Class Exception Conditions

Exception	Real	Virtual-8086	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X			VEX prefix.
	X	X	X	X	If an unmasked SIMD floating-point exception and CR4.OSXMMEXCPT[bit 10] = 0.
			X	X	VEX prefix: If XCRO[2:1] ≠ '11b'. If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0.
	X	X	X	X	Legacy SSE instruction: If CR0.EM[bit 2] = 1. If CR4.OSFXSR[bit 9] = 0.
	X	X	X	X	If preceded by a LOCK prefix (FOH).
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a VEX prefix.
	X	X	X	X	If any corresponding CPUID feature flag is '0'.
Device Not Available, #NM	X	X	X	X	If CR0.TS[bit 3]=1.
Stack, SS(0)			X		For an illegal address in the SS segment.
				X	If a memory address referencing the SS segment is in a non-canonical form.
General Protection, #GP(0)			X		For an illegal memory operand effective address in the CS, DS, ES, FS or GS segments.
				X	If the memory address is in a non-canonical form.
	X	X			If any part of the operand lies outside the effective address space from 0 to FFFFH.
Page Fault #PF(fault-code)		X	X	X	For a page fault.
Alignment Check #AC(0)		X	X	X	If alignment checking is enabled and an unaligned memory reference of 8 Bytes or less is made while the current privilege level is 3.
SIMD Floating-point Exception, #XM	X	X	X	X	If an unmasked SIMD floating-point exception and CR4.OSXMMEXCPT[bit 10] = 1.

2.4.4 Exceptions Type 4 (>=16 Byte mem arg no alignment, no floating-point exceptions)

Table 2-21. Type 4 Class Exception Conditions

Exception	Real	Virtual-8086	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X			VEX prefix.
			X	X	VEX prefix: If XCRO[2:1] ≠ '11b'. If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0.
	X	X	X	X	Legacy SSE instruction: If CRO.EM[bit 2] = 1. If CR4.OSFXSR[bit 9] = 0.
	X	X	X	X	If preceded by a LOCK prefix (FOH).
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a VEX prefix.
	X	X	X	X	If any corresponding CPUID feature flag is '0'.
Device Not Available, #NM	X	X	X	X	If CRO.TS[bit 3]=1.
Stack, SS(0)			X		For an illegal address in the SS segment.
				X	If a memory address referencing the SS segment is in a non-canonical form.
General Protection, #GP(0)	X	X	X	X	Legacy SSE: Memory operand is not 16-byte aligned. ¹
			X		For an illegal memory operand effective address in the CS, DS, ES, FS or GS segments.
				X	If the memory address is in a non-canonical form.
	X	X			If any part of the operand lies outside the effective address space from 0 to FFFFH.
Page Fault #PF(fault-code)		X	X	X	For a page fault.

NOTES:

1. PCMPSTRI, PCMPSTRM, PCMPISTRI, PCMPISTRM and LDDQU instructions do not cause #GP if the memory operand is not aligned to 16-Byte boundary.

2.4.5 Exceptions Type 5 (<16 Byte mem arg and no FP exceptions)

Table 2-22. Type 5 Class Exception Conditions

Exception	Real	Virtual-8086	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X			VEX prefix.
			X	X	VEX prefix: If XCRO[2:1] ≠ '11b'. If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0.
	X	X	X	X	Legacy SSE instruction: If CRO.EM[bit 2] = 1. If CR4.OSFXSR[bit 9] = 0.
	X	X	X	X	If preceded by a LOCK prefix (F0H).
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a VEX prefix.
	X	X	X	X	If any corresponding CPUID feature flag is '0'.
Device Not Available, #NM	X	X	X	X	If CRO.TS[bit 3]=1.
Stack, SS(0)			X		For an illegal address in the SS segment.
				X	If a memory address referencing the SS segment is in a non-canonical form.
General Protection, #GP(0)			X		For an illegal memory operand effective address in the CS, DS, ES, FS or GS segments.
				X	If the memory address is in a non-canonical form.
	X	X			If any part of the operand lies outside the effective address space from 0 to FFFFH.
Page Fault #PF(fault-code)		X	X	X	For a page fault.
Alignment Check #AC(0)		X	X	X	If alignment checking is enabled and an unaligned memory reference is made while the current privilege level is 3.

2.4.6 Exceptions Type 6 (VEX-Encoded Instructions Without Legacy SSE Analogues)

Note: At present, the AVX instructions in this category do not generate floating-point exceptions.

Table 2-23. Type 6 Class Exception Conditions

Exception	Real	Virtual-8086	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X			VEX prefix.
			X	X	If XCRO[2:1] ≠ '11b'. If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0.
			X	X	If preceded by a LOCK prefix (F0H).
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a VEX prefix.
			X	X	If any corresponding CPUID feature flag is '0'.
Device Not Available, #NM			X	X	If CR0.TS[bit 3]=1.
Stack, SS(0)			X		For an illegal address in the SS segment.
				X	If a memory address referencing the SS segment is in a non-canonical form.
General Protection, #GP(0)			X		For an illegal memory operand effective address in the CS, DS, ES, FS or GS segments.
				X	If the memory address is in a non-canonical form.
Page Fault #PF(fault-code)			X	X	For a page fault.
Alignment Check #AC(0)			X	X	For 4 or 8 byte memory references if alignment checking is enabled and an unaligned memory reference is made while the current privilege level is 3.

2.4.7 Exceptions Type 7 (No FP exceptions, no memory arg)

Table 2-24. Type 7 Class Exception Conditions

Exception	Real	Virtual-8086	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X			VEX prefix.
			X	X	VEX prefix: If XCRO[2:1] ≠ '11b'. If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0.
	X	X	X	X	Legacy SSE instruction: If CRO.EM[bit 2] = 1. If CR4.OSFXSR[bit 9] = 0.
	X	X	X	X	If preceded by a LOCK prefix (FOH).
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a VEX prefix.
	X	X	X	X	If any corresponding CPUID feature flag is '0'.
Device Not Available, #NM			X	X	If CRO.TS[bit 3]=1.

2.4.8 Exceptions Type 8 (AVX and no memory argument)

Table 2-25. Type 8 Class Exception Conditions

Exception	Real	Virtual-8086	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X			Always in Real or Virtual-8086 mode.
			X	X	If XCRO[2:1] ≠ '11b'. If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0. If CPUID.01H.ECX.AVX[bit 28]=0. If VEX.vvvv ≠ 1111B.
	X	X	X	X	If proceeded by a LOCK prefix (FOH).
Device Not Available, #NM			X	X	If CRO.TS[bit 3]=1.

2.4.9 Exception Type 11 (VEX-only, mem arg no AC, floating-point exceptions)

Table 2-26. Type 11 Class Exception Conditions

Exception	Real	Virtual-8086	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X			VEX prefix.
			X	X	VEX prefix: If XCRO[2:1] ≠ '11b'. If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0.
	X	X	X	X	If preceded by a LOCK prefix (FOH).
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a VEX prefix.
	X	X	X	X	If any corresponding CPUID feature flag is '0'.
Device Not Available, #NM	X	X	X	X	If CR0.TS[bit 3]=1.
Stack, SS(0)			X		For an illegal address in the SS segment.
				X	If a memory address referencing the SS segment is in a non-canonical form.
General Protection, #GP(0)			X		For an illegal memory operand effective address in the CS, DS, ES, FS or GS segments.
				X	If the memory address is in a non-canonical form.
	X	X			If any part of the operand lies outside the effective address space from 0 to FFFFH.
Page Fault #PF (fault-code)		X	X	X	For a page fault.
SIMD Floating-Point Exception, #XM	X	X	X	X	If an unmasked SIMD floating-point exception and CR4.OSXMMEXCPT[bit 10] = 1.

2.4.10 Exception Type 12 (VEX-only, VSIB mem arg, no AC, no floating-point exceptions)

Table 2-27. Type 12 Class Exception Conditions

Exception	Real	Virtual-8086	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X			VEX prefix.
			X	X	VEX prefix: If XCRO[2:1] ≠ '11b'. If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0.
	X	X	X	X	If preceded by a LOCK prefix (F0H).
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a VEX prefix.
	X	X	X	NA	If address size attribute is 16 bit.
	X	X	X	X	If ModR/M.mod = '11b'.
	X	X	X	X	If ModR/M.rm ≠ '100b'.
	X	X	X	X	If any corresponding CPUID feature flag is '0'.
Device Not Available, #NM	X	X	X	X	If CR0.TS[bit 3]=1.
			X		For an illegal address in the SS segment.
Stack, SS(0)				X	If a memory address referencing the SS segment is in a non-canonical form.
			X		For an illegal memory operand effective address in the CS, DS, ES, FS or GS segments.
General Protection, #GP(0)				X	If the memory address is in a non-canonical form.
	X	X			If any part of the operand lies outside the effective address space from 0 to FFFFH.
Page Fault #PF (fault-code)		X	X	X	For a page fault.

2.5 VEX ENCODING SUPPORT FOR GPR INSTRUCTIONS

VEX prefix may be used to encode instructions that operate on neither YMM nor XMM registers. VEX-encoded general-purpose-register instructions have the following properties:

- Instruction syntax support for three encodable operands.
- Encoding support for instruction syntax of non-destructive source operand, destination operand encoded via VEX.vvvv, and destructive three-operand syntax.
- Elimination of escape opcode byte (0FH), two-byte escape via a compact bit field representation within the VEX prefix.
- Elimination of the need to use REX prefix to encode the extended half of general-purpose register sets (R8-R15) for direct register access or memory addressing.
- Flexible and more compact bit fields are provided in the VEX prefix to retain the full functionality provided by REX prefix. REX.W, REX.X, REX.B functionalities are provided in the three-byte VEX prefix only.
- VEX-encoded GPR instructions are encoded with VEX.L=0.

Any VEX-encoded GPR instruction with a 66H, F2H, or F3H prefix preceding VEX will #UD.

Any VEX-encoded GPR instruction with a REX prefix proceeding VEX will #UD.

VEX-encoded GPR instructions are not supported in real and virtual 8086 modes.

2.5.1 Exception Conditions for VEX-Encoded GPR Instructions

The exception conditions applicable to VEX-encoded GPR instruction differs from those of legacy GPR instructions. Table 2-28 lists VEX-encoded GPR instructions. The exception conditions for VEX-encoded GPR instructions are found in Table 2-29 for those instructions which have a default operand size of 32 bits and 16-bit operand size is not encodable.

Table 2-28. VEX-Encoded GPR Instructions

Exception Class	Instruction
See Table 2-29	ANDN, BLSI, BLSMSK, BLSR, BZHI, MULX, PDEP, PEXT, RORX, SARX, SHLX, SHRX

(*) - Additional exception restrictions are present - see the Instruction description for details.

Table 2-29. Exception Definition (VEX-Encoded GPR Instructions)

Exception	Real	Virtual-8086	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X	X	X	If BMI1/BMI2 CPUID feature flag is '0'.
	X	X			If a VEX prefix is present.
	X	X	X	X	If VEX.L = 1.
	X	X	X	X	If preceded by a LOCK prefix (F0H).
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a VEX prefix.
Stack, SS(0)	X	X	X		For an illegal address in the SS segment.
				X	If a memory address referencing the SS segment is in a non-canonical form.
General Protection, #GP(0)			X		For an illegal memory operand effective address in the CS, DS, ES, FS or GS segments. If the DS, ES, FS, or GS register is used to access memory and it contains a null segment selector.
				X	If the memory address is in a non-canonical form.
	X	X			If any part of the operand lies outside the effective address space from 0 to FFFFH.
Page Fault #PF(fault-code)		X	X	X	For a page fault.
Alignment Check #AC(0)		X	X	X	If alignment checking is enabled and an unaligned memory reference is made while the current privilege level is 3.

2.6 INTEL® AVX-512 ENCODING

The majority of the Intel AVX-512 family of instructions (operating on 512/256/128-bit vector register operands) are encoded using a new prefix (called EVEX). Opmask instructions (operating on opmask register operands) are encoded using the VEX prefix. The EVEX prefix has some parts resembling the instruction encoding scheme using the VEX prefix, and many other capabilities not available with the VEX prefix.

INSTRUCTION FORMAT

The significant feature differences between EVEX and VEX are summarized below.

- EVEX is a 4-Byte prefix (the first byte must be 62H); VEX is either a 2-Byte (C5H is the first byte) or 3-Byte (C4H is the first byte) prefix.
- EVEX prefix can encode 32 vector registers (XMM/YMM/ZMM) in 64-bit mode.
- EVEX prefix can encode an opmask register for conditional processing or selection control in EVEX-encoded vector instructions. Opmask instructions, whose source/destination operands are opmask registers and treat the content of an opmask register as a single value, are encoded using the VEX prefix.
- EVEX memory addressing with disp8 form uses a compressed disp8 encoding scheme to improve the encoding density of the instruction byte stream.
- EVEX prefix can encode functionality that are specific to instruction classes (e.g., packed instruction with "load+op" semantic can support embedded broadcast functionality, floating-point instruction with rounding semantic can support static rounding functionality, floating-point instruction with non-rounding arithmetic semantic can support "suppress all exceptions" functionality).

2.6.1 Instruction Format and EVEX

The placement of the EVEX prefix in an IA instruction is represented in Figure 2-10. Note that the values contained within brackets are optional.

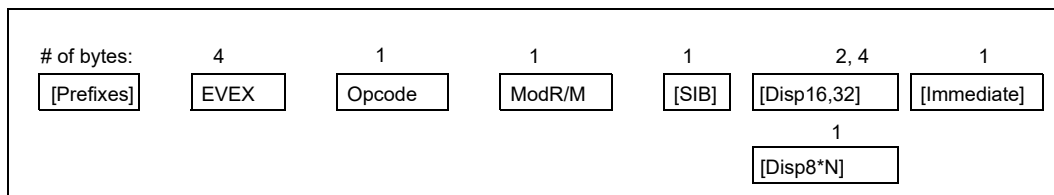


Figure 2-10. AVX-512 Instruction Format and the EVEX Prefix

The EVEX prefix is a 4-byte prefix, with the first two bytes derived from unused encoding form of the 32-bit-mode-only BOUND instruction. The layout of the EVEX prefix is shown in Figure 2-11. The first byte must be 62H, followed by three payload bytes, denoted as P0, P1, and P2 individually or collectively as P[23:0] (see Figure 2-11).

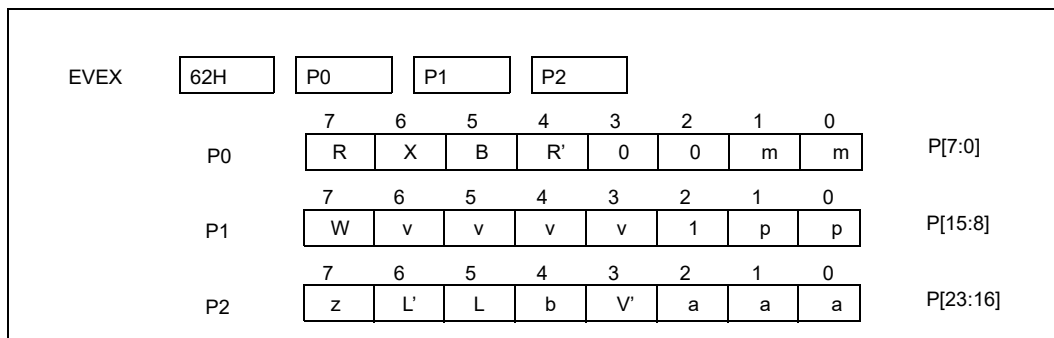


Figure 2-11. Bit Field Layout of the EVEX Prefix

Table 2-30. EVEX Prefix Bit Field Functional Grouping

Notation	Bit field Group	Position	Comment
--	Reserved	P[3 : 2]	Must be 0.
--	Fixed Value	P[10]	Must be 1.
EVEX.mm	Compressed legacy escape	P[1 : 0]	Identical to low two bits of VEX.mmmmm.
EVEX.pp	Compressed legacy prefix	P[9 : 8]	Identical to VEX.pp.
EVEX.RXB	Next-8 register specifier modifier	P[7 : 5]	Combine with ModR/M.reg, ModR/M.rm (base, index/vidx).
EVEX.R'	High-16 register specifier modifier	P[4]	Combine with EVEX.R and ModR/M.reg.
EVEX.X	High-16 register specifier modifier	P[6]	Combine with EVEX.B and ModR/M.rm, when SIB/VSIB absent.
EVEX.vvvv	VVVV register specifier	P[14 : 11]	Same as VEX.vvvv.
EVEX.V'	High-16 VVVV/VIDX register specifier	P[19]	Combine with EVEX.vvvv or when VSIB present.
EVEX.aaa	Embedded opmask register specifier	P[18 : 16]	
EVEX.W	Osize promotion/Opcode extension	P[15]	
EVEX.z	Zeroing/Merging	P[23]	
EVEX.b	Broadcast/RC/SAE Context	P[20]	
EVEX.L'L	Vector length/RC	P[22 : 21]	

The bit fields in P[23:0] are divided into the following functional groups (Table 2-30 provides a tabular summary):

- Reserved bits: P[3:2] must be 0, otherwise #UD.
- Fixed-value bit: P[10] must be 1, otherwise #UD.
- Compressed legacy prefix/escape bytes: P[1:0] is identical to the lowest 2 bits of VEX.mmmmm; P[9:8] is identical to VEX.pp.
- Operand specifier modifier bits for vector register, general purpose register, memory addressing: P[7:5] allows access to the next set of 8 registers beyond the low 8 registers when combined with ModR/M register specifiers.
- Operand specifier modifier bit for vector register: P[4] (or EVEX.R') allows access to the high 16 vector register set when combined with P[7] and ModR/M.reg specifier; P[6] can also provide access to a high 16 vector register when SIB or VSIB addressing are not needed.
- Non-destructive source /vector index operand specifier: P[19] and P[14:11] encode the second source vector register operand in a non-destructive source syntax, vector index register operand can access an upper 16 vector register using P[19].
- Op-mask register specifiers: P[18:16] encodes op-mask register set k0-k7 in instructions operating on vector registers.
- EVEX.W: P[15] is similar to VEX.W which serves either as opcode extension bit or operand size promotion to 64-bit in 64-bit mode.
- Vector destination merging/zeroing: P[23] encodes the destination result behavior which either zeroes the masked elements or leave masked element unchanged.
- Broadcast/Static-rounding/SAE context bit: P[20] encodes multiple functionality, which differs across different classes of instructions and can affect the meaning of the remaining field (EVEX.L'L). The functionality for the following instruction classes are:
 - Broadcasting a single element across the destination vector register: this applies to the instruction class with Load+Op semantic where one of the source operand is from memory.
 - Redirect L'L field (P[22:21]) as static rounding control for floating-point instructions with rounding semantic. Static rounding control overrides MXCSR.RC field and implies "Suppress all exceptions" (SAE).
 - Enable SAE for floating -point instructions with arithmetic semantic that is not rounding.
 - For instruction classes outside of the afore-mentioned three classes, setting EVEX.b will cause #UD.

- Vector length/rounding control specifier: P[22:21] can serve one of three options.
 - Vector length information for packed vector instructions.
 - Ignored for instructions operating on vector register content as a single data element.
 - Rounding control for floating-point instructions that have a rounding semantic and whose source and destination operands are all vector registers.

2.6.2 Register Specifier Encoding and EVEX

EVEX-encoded instruction can access 8 opmask registers, 16 general-purpose registers and 32 vector registers in 64-bit mode (8 general-purpose registers and 8 vector registers in non-64-bit modes). EVEX-encoding can support instruction syntax that access up to 4 instruction operands. Normal memory addressing modes and VSIB memory addressing are supported with EVEX prefix encoding. The mapping of register operands used by various instruction syntax and memory addressing in 64-bit mode are shown in Table 2-31. Opmask register encoding is described in Section 2.6.3.

Table 2-31. 32-Register Support in 64-bit Mode Using EVEX with Embedded REX Bits

	4 ¹	3	[2:0]	Reg. Type	Common Usages
REG	EVEX.R'	REX.R	modrm.reg	GPR, Vector	Destination or Source
VVVV	EVEX.V'	EVEX.vvvv		GPR, Vector	2ndSource or Destination
RM	EVEX.X	EVEX.B	modrm.r/m	GPR, Vector	1st Source or Destination
BASE	0	EVEX.B	modrm.r/m	GPR	memory addressing
INDEX	0	EVEX.X	sib.index	GPR	memory addressing
VIDX	EVEX.V'	EVEX.X	sib.index	Vector	VSIB memory addressing

NOTES:

1. Not applicable for accessing general purpose registers.

The mapping of register operands used by various instruction syntax and memory addressing in 32-bit modes are shown in Table 2-32.

Table 2-32. EVEX Encoding Register Specifiers in 32-bit Mode

	[2:0]	Reg. Type	Common Usages
REG	modrm.reg	GPR, Vector	Destination or Source
VVVV	EVEX.vvv	GPR, Vector	2nd Source or Destination
RM	modrm.r/m	GPR, Vector	1st Source or Destination
BASE	modrm.r/m	GPR	Memory Addressing
INDEX	sib.index	GPR	Memory Addressing
VIDX	sib.index	Vector	VSIB Memory Addressing

2.6.3 Opmask Register Encoding

There are eight opmask registers, k0-k7. Opmask register encoding falls into two categories:

- Opmask registers that are the source or destination operands of an instruction treating the content of opmask register as a scalar value, are encoded using the VEX prefix scheme. It can support up to three operands using standard modR/M byte's reg field and rm field and VEX.vvvv. Such a scalar opmask instruction does not support conditional update of the destination operand.
- An opmask register providing conditional processing and/or conditional update of the destination register of a vector instruction is encoded using EVEX.aaa field (see Section 2.6.4).

- An opmask register serving as the destination or source operand of a vector instruction is encoded using standard modR/M byte's reg field and rm fields.

Table 2-33. Opmask Register Specifier Encoding

	[2:0]	Register Access	Common Usages
REG	modrm.reg	k0-k7	Source
VVVV	VEX.vvvv	k0-k7	2nd Source
RM	modrm.r/m	k0-7	1st Source
{k1}	EVEX.aaa	k0 ¹ -k7	Opmask

NOTES:

1. Instructions that overwrite the conditional mask in opmask do not permit using k0 as the embedded mask.

2.6.4 Masking Support in EVEX

EVEX can encode an opmask register to conditionally control per-element computational operation and updating of result of an instruction to the destination operand. The predicate operand is known as the opmask register. The EVEX.aaa field, P[18:16] of the EVEX prefix, is used to encode one out of a set of eight 64-bit architectural registers. Note that from this set of 8 architectural registers, only k1 through k7 can be addressed as predicate operands. k0 can be used as a regular source or destination but cannot be encoded as a predicate operand.

AVX-512 instructions support two types of masking with EVEX.z bit (P[23]) controlling the type of masking:

- Merging-masking, which is the default type of masking for EVEX-encoded vector instructions, preserves the old value of each element of the destination where the corresponding mask bit has a 0. It corresponds to the case of EVEX.z = 0.
- Zeroing-masking, is enabled by having the EVEX.z bit set to 1. In this case, an element of the destination is set to 0 when the corresponding mask bit has a 0 value.

AVX-512 Foundation instructions can be divided into the following groups:

- Instructions which support “zeroing-masking”.
 - Also allow merging-masking.
- Instructions which require aaa = 000.
 - Do not allow any form of masking.
- Instructions which allow merging-masking but do not allow zeroing-masking.
 - Require EVEX.z to be set to 0.
 - This group is mostly composed of instructions that write to memory.
- Instructions which require aaa <> 000 do not allow EVEX.z to be set to 1.
 - Allow merging-masking and do not allow zeroing-masking, e.g., gather instructions.

2.6.5 Compressed Displacement (disp8*N) Support in EVEX

For memory addressing using disp8 form, EVEX-encoded instructions always use a compressed displacement scheme by multiplying disp8 in conjunction with a scaling factor N that is determined based on the vector length, the value of EVEX.b bit (embedded broadcast) and the input element size of the instruction. In general, the factor N corresponds to the number of bytes characterizing the internal memory operation of the input operand (e.g., 64 when the accessing a full 512-bit memory vector). The scale factor N is listed in Table 2-34 and Table 2-35 below, where EVEX encoded instructions are classified using the **tupletype** attribute. The scale factor N of each tupletype is listed based on the vector length (VL) and other factors affecting it.

Table 2-34 covers EVEX-encoded instructions which has a load semantic in conjunction with additional computational or data element movement operation, operating either on the full vector or half vector (due to conversion of

numerical precision from a wider format to narrower format). EVEX.b is supported for such instructions for data element sizes which are either dword or qword (see Section 2.6.11).

EVEX-encoded instruction that are pure load/store, and “Load+op” instruction semantic that operate on data element size less than dword do not support broadcasting using EVEX.b. These are listed in Table 2-35. Table 2-35 also includes many broadcast instructions which perform broadcast using a subset of data elements without using EVEX.b. These instructions and a few data element size conversion instructions are covered in Table 2-35. Instruction classified in Table 2-35 do not use EVEX.b and EVEX.b must be 0, otherwise #UD will occur.

The tuple type will be referenced in the instruction operand encoding table in the reference page of each instruction, providing the cross reference for the scaling factor N to encoding memory addressing operand.

Note that the disp8*N rules still apply when using 16b addressing.

Table 2-34. Compressed Displacement (DISP8*N) Affected by Embedded Broadcast

TupleType	EVEX.b	InputSize	EVEX.W	Broadcast	N (VL=128)	N (VL=256)	N (VL= 512)	Comment
Full	0	32bit	0	none	16	32	64	Load+Op (Full Vector Dword/Qword)
	1	32bit	0	{1tox}	4	4	4	
	0	64bit	1	none	16	32	64	
	1	64bit	1	{1tox}	8	8	8	
Half	0	32bit	0	none	8	16	32	Load+Op (Half Vector)
	1	32bit	0	{1tox}	4	4	4	

Table 2-35. EVEX DISP8*N for Instructions Not Affected by Embedded Broadcast

TupleType	InputSize	EVEX.W	N (VL= 128)	N (VL= 256)	N (VL= 512)	Comment
Full Mem	N/A	N/A	16	32	64	Load/store or subDword full vector
Tuple1 Scalar	8bit	N/A	1	1	1	1 Tuple
	16bit	N/A	2	2	2	
	32bit	0	4	4	4	
	64bit	1	8	8	8	
Tuple1 Fixed	32bit	N/A	4	4	4	1 Tuple, memsize not affected by EVEX.W
	64bit	N/A	8	8	8	
Tuple2	32bit	0	8	8	8	Broadcast (2 elements)
	64bit	1	NA	16	16	
Tuple4	32bit	0	NA	16	16	Broadcast (4 elements)
	64bit	1	NA	NA	32	
Tuple8	32bit	0	NA	NA	32	Broadcast (8 elements)
Half Mem	N/A	N/A	8	16	32	SubQword Conversion
Quarter Mem	N/A	N/A	4	8	16	SubDword Conversion
Eighth Mem	N/A	N/A	2	4	8	SubWord Conversion
Mem128	N/A	N/A	16	16	16	Shift count from memory
MOVDDUP	N/A	N/A	8	32	64	VMOVDDUP

2.6.6 EVEX Encoding of Broadcast/Rounding/SAE Support

EVEX.b can provide three types of encoding context, depending on the instruction classes:

- Embedded broadcasting of one data element from a source memory operand to the destination for vector instructions with “load+op” semantic.
- Static rounding control overriding MXCSR.RC for floating-point instructions with rounding semantic.
- “Suppress All exceptions” (SAE) overriding MXCSR mask control for floating-point arithmetic instructions that do not have rounding semantic.

2.6.7 Embedded Broadcast Support in EVEX

EVEX encodes an embedded broadcast functionality that is supported on many vector instructions with 32-bit (double word or single-precision floating-point) and 64-bit data elements, and when the source operand is from memory. EVEX.b (P[20]) bit is used to enable broadcast on load-op instructions. When enabled, only one element is loaded from memory and broadcasted to all other elements instead of loading the full memory size.

The following instruction classes do not support embedded broadcasting:

- Instructions with only one scalar result is written to the vector destination.
- Instructions with explicit broadcast functionality provided by its opcode.
- Instruction semantic is a pure load or a pure store operation.

2.6.8 Static Rounding Support in EVEX

Static rounding control embedded in the EVEX encoding system applies only to register-to-register flavor of floating-point instructions with rounding semantic at two distinct vector lengths: (i) scalar, (ii) 512-bit. In both cases, the field EVEX.L'L expresses rounding mode control overriding MXCSR.RC if EVEX.b is set. When EVEX.b is set, “suppress all exceptions” is implied. The processor behaves as if all MXCSR masking controls are set.

2.6.9 SAE Support in EVEX

The EVEX encoding system allows arithmetic floating-point instructions without rounding semantic to be encoded with the SAE attribute. This capability applies to scalar and 512-bit vector lengths, register-to-register only, by setting EVEX.b. When EVEX.b is set, “suppress all exceptions” is implied. The processor behaves as if all MXCSR masking controls are set.

2.6.10 Vector Length Orthogonality

The architecture of EVEX encoding scheme can support SIMD instructions operating at multiple vector lengths. Many AVX-512 Foundation instructions operate at 512-bit vector length. The vector length of EVEX encoded vector instructions are generally determined using the L'L field in EVEX prefix, except for 512-bit floating-point, reg-reg instructions with rounding semantic. The table below shows the vector length corresponding to various values of the L'L bits. When EVEX is used to encode scalar instructions, L'L is generally ignored.

When EVEX.b bit is set for a register-register instructions with floating-point rounding semantic, the same two bits P2[6:5] specifies rounding mode for the instruction, with implied SAE behavior. The mapping of different instruction classes relative to the embedded broadcast/rounding/SAE control and the EVEX.L'L fields are summarized in Table 2-36.

Table 2-36. EVEX Embedded Broadcast/Rounding/SAE and Vector Length on Vector Instructions

Position	P2[4]	P2[6:5]	P2[6:5]
Broadcast/Rounding/SAE Context	EVEX.b	EVEX.L'L	EVEX.RC
Reg-reg, FP Instructions w/ rounding semantic	Enable static rounding control (SAE implied)	Vector length Implied (512 bit or scalar)	00b: SAE + RNE 01b: SAE + RD 10b: SAE + RU 11b: SAE + RZ
FP Instructions w/o rounding semantic, can cause #XF	SAE control	00b: 128-bit 01b: 256-bit 10b: 512-bit 11b: Reserved (#UD)	NA
Load+op Instructions w/ memory source	Broadcast Control		NA
Other Instructions (Explicit Load/Store/Broadcast/Gather/Scatter)	Must be 0 (otherwise #UD)		NA

2.6.11 #UD Equations for EVEX

Instructions encoded using EVEX can face three types of UD conditions: state dependent, opcode independent and opcode dependent.

2.6.11.1 State Dependent #UD

In general, attempts to execute an instruction, which required OS support for incremental extended state component, will #UD if required state components were not enabled by OS. Table 2-37 lists instruction categories with respect to required processor state components. Attempts to execute a given category of instructions while enabled states were less than the required bit vector in XCR0 shown in Table 2-37 will cause #UD.

Table 2-37. OS XSAVE Enabling Requirements of Instruction Categories

Instruction Categories	Vector Register State Access	Required XCR0 Bit Vector [7:0]
Legacy SIMD prefix encoded Instructions (e.g SSE)	XMM	xxxxxx11b
VEX-encoded instructions operating on YMM	YMM	xxxxx111b
EVEX-encoded 128-bit instructions	ZMM	111xx111b
EVEX-encoded 256-bit instructions	ZMM	111xx111b
EVEX-encoded 512-bit instructions	ZMM	111xx111b
VEX-encoded instructions operating on opmask	k-reg	xx1xxx11b

2.6.11.2 Opcode Independent #UD

A number of bit fields in EVEX encoded instruction must obey mode-specific but opcode-independent patterns listed in Table 2-38.

Table 2-38. Opcode Independent, State Dependent EVEX Bit Fields

Position	Notation	64-bit #UD	Non-64-bit #UD
P[3 : 2]	--	if > 0	if > 0
P[10]	--	if 0	if 0
P[1: 0]	EVEX.mm	if 00b	if 00b
P[7 : 6]	EVEX.RX	None (valid)	None (BOUND if EVEX.RX != 11b)

2.6.11.3 Opcode Dependent #UD

This section describes legal values for the rest of the EVEX bit fields. Table 2-39 lists the #UD conditions of EVEX prefix bit fields which encodes or modifies register operands.

Table 2-39. #UD Conditions of Operand-Encoding EVEX Prefix Bit Fields

Notation	Position	Operand Encoding	64-bit #UD	Non-64-bit #UD
EVEX.R	P[7]	ModRM.reg encodes k-reg	if EVEX.R = 0	None (BOUND if EVEX.RX != 11b)
		ModRM.reg is opcode extension	None (ignored)	
		ModRM.reg encodes all other registers	None (valid)	
EVEX.X	P[6]	ModRM.r/m encodes ZMM/YMM/XMM	None (valid)	
		ModRM.r/m encodes k-reg or GPR	None (ignored)	
		ModRM.r/m without SIB/VSIB	None (ignored)	
		ModRM.r/m with SIB/VSIB	None (valid)	
EVEX.B	P[5]	ModRM.r/m encodes k-reg	None (ignored)	None (ignored)
		ModRM.r/m encodes other registers	None (valid)	
		ModRM.r/m base present	None (valid)	
		ModRM.r/m base not present	None (ignored)	
EVEXR'	P[4]	ModRM.reg encodes k-reg or GPR	if 0	None (ignored)
		ModRM.reg is opcode extension	None (ignored)	
		ModRM.reg encodes ZMM/YMM/XMM	None (valid)	
EVEX.vvvv	P[14 : 11]	vvvv encodes ZMM/YMM/XMM	None (valid)	None (valid) P[14] ignored
		Otherwise	if != 1111b	if != 1111b
EVEXV'	P[19]	Encodes ZMM/YMM/XMM	None (valid)	None (ignored)
		Otherwise	if 0	None (ignored)

Table 2-40 lists the #UD conditions of instruction encoding of opmask register using EVEX.aaa and EVEX.z

Table 2-40. #UD Conditions of Opmask Related Encoding Field

Notation	Position	Operand Encoding	64-bit #UD	Non-64-bit #UD
EVEX.aaa	P[18 : 16]	Instructions do not use opmask for conditional processing ¹ .	if aaa != 000b	if aaa != 000b
		Opmask used as conditional processing mask and updated at completion ² .	if aaa = 000b	if aaa = 000b;
		Opmask used as conditional processing.	None (valid ³)	None (valid ¹)
EVEX.z	P[23]	Vector instruction using opmask as source or destination ⁴ .	if EVEX.z != 0	if EVEX.z != 0
		Store instructions or gather/scatter instructions.	if EVEX.z != 0	if EVEX.z != 0
		Instruction supporting conditional processing mask with EVEX.aaa = 000b.	if EVEX.z != 0	if EVEX.z != 0
VEX.vvvv	Varies	K-regs are instruction operands not mask control.	if vvvv = 0xxx	None

NOTES:

1. E.g., VBROADCASTMxxx, VPMOVM2x, VPMOVx2M.

2. E.g., Gather/Scatter family.

3. aaa can take any value. A value of 000 indicates that there is no masking on the instruction; in this case, all elements will be processed as if there was a mask of 'all ones' regardless of the actual value in KO.

4. E.g., VFPClassPD/PS, VCMPB/D/Q/W family, VPMOVM2x, VPMOVx2M.

Table 2-41 lists the #UD conditions of EVEX bit fields that depends on the context of EVEX.b.

Table 2-41. #UD Conditions Dependent on EVEX.b Context

Notation	Position	Operand Encoding	64-bit #UD	Non-64-bit #UD
EVEX.L'Lb	P[22 : 20]	Reg-reg, FP instructions with rounding semantic.	None (valid ¹)	None (valid ¹)
		Other reg-reg, FP instructions that can cause #XF.	None (valid ²)	None (valid ²)
		Other reg-mem instructions in Table 2-34.	None (valid ³)	None (valid ³)
		Other instruction classes ⁴ in Table 2-35.	If EVEX.b > 0	If EVEX.b > 0

NOTES:

1. L'L specifies rounding control, see Table 2-36, supports {er} syntax.
2. L'L specifies vector length, see Table 2-36, supports {sae} syntax.
3. L'L specifies vector length, see Table 2-36, supports embedded broadcast syntax
4. L'L specifies either vector length or ignored.

2.6.12 Device Not Available

EVEX-encoded instructions follow the same rules when it comes to generating #NM (Device Not Available) exception. In particular, it is generated when CR0.TS[bit 3]= 1.

2.6.13 Scalar Instructions

EVEX-encoded scalar SIMD instructions can access up to 32 registers in 64-bit mode. Scalar instructions support masking (using the least significant bit of the opmask register), but broadcasting is not supported.

2.7 EXCEPTION CLASSIFICATIONS OF EVEX-ENCODED INSTRUCTIONS

The exception behavior of EVEX-encoded instructions can be classified into the classes shown in the rest of this section. The classification of EVEX-encoded instructions follow a similar framework as those of AVX and AVX2 instructions using the VEX prefix. Exception types for EVEX-encoded instructions are named in the style of "E##" or with a suffix "E##XX". The "##" designation generally follows that of AVX/AVX2 instructions. The majority of EVEX encoded instruction with "Load+op" semantic supports memory fault suppression, which is represented by E##. The instructions with "Load+op" semantic but do not support fault suppression are named "E##NF". A summary table of exception classes by class names are shown below.

Table 2-42. EVEX-Encoded Instruction Exception Class Summary

Exception Class	Instruction set	Mem arg	(#XM)
Type E1	Vector Moves/Load/Stores	Explicitly aligned, w/ fault suppression	None
Type E1NF	Vector Non-temporal Stores	Explicitly aligned, no fault suppression	None
Type E2	FP Vector Load+op	Support fault suppression	Yes
Type E2NF	FP Vector Load+op	No fault suppression	Yes
Type E3	FP Scalar/Partial Vector, Load+Op	Support fault suppression	Yes
Type E3NF	FP Scalar/Partial Vector, Load+Op	No fault suppression	Yes
Type E4	Integer Vector Load+op	Support fault suppression	No
Type E4NF	Integer Vector Load+op	No fault suppression	No
Type E5	Legacy-like Promotion	Varies, Support fault suppression	No

Table 2-42. EVEX-Encoded Instruction Exception Class Summary

Exception Class	Instruction set	Mem arg	(#XM)
Type E5NF	Legacy-like Promotion	Varies, No fault suppression	No
Type E6	Post AVX Promotion	Varies, w/ fault suppression	No
Type E6NF	Post AVX Promotion	Varies, no fault suppression	No
Type E7NM	Register-to-register op	None	None
Type E9NF	Miscellaneous 128-bit	Vector-length Specific, no fault suppression	None
Type E10	Non-XF Scalar	Vector Length ignored, w/ fault suppression	None
Type E10NF	Non-XF Scalar	Vector Length ignored, no fault suppression	None
Type E11	VCVTPH2PS	Half Vector Length, w/ fault suppression	Yes
Type E11NF	VCVTPS2PH	Half Vector Length, no fault suppression	Yes
Type E12	Gather and Scatter Family	VSIB addressing, w/ fault suppression	None
Type E12NP	Gather and Scatter Prefetch Family	VSIB addressing, w/o page fault	None

Table 2-43 lists EVEX-encoded instruction mnemonic by exception classes.

Table 2-43. EVEX Instructions in each Exception Class

Exception Class	Instruction
Type E1	VMOVAPD, VMOVAPS, VMOVDQA32, VMOVDQA64
Type E1NF	VMOVNTDQ, VMOVNTDQA, VMOVNTPD, VMOVNTPS
Type E2	VADDPD, VADDPs, VCMPPD, VCMPPS, VCVTDQ2PS, VCVTPD2DQ, VCVTPD2PS, VCVTPS2DQ, VCVTTPD2DQ, VCVTTPS2DQ, VDIVPD, VDIVPS, VFMADDxxxPD, VFMADDxxxPS, VFMSUBADDxxxPD, VFMSUBADDxxxPS, VFMSUBxxxPD, VFMSUBxxxPS, VFNMADDxxxPD, VFNMADDxxxPS, VFNMSUBxxxPD, VFNMSUBxxxPS, VMAXPD, VMAXPS, VMINPD, VMINPS, VMULPD, VMULPS, VSQRTPD, VSQRTPS, VSUBPD, VSUBPS VCVTPD2QQ, VCVTPD2UQQ, VCVTPD2UDQ, VCVTPS2UDQS, VCVTQQ2PD, VCVTQQ2PS, VCVTTPD2DQ, VCVTTPD2QQ, VCVTTPD2UDQ, VCVTTPD2UQQ, VCVTTPS2DQ, VCVTTPS2UDQ, VCVTUDQ2PS, VCVTUQQ2PD, VCVTUQQ2PS, VFIXUPIMMPD, VFIXUPIMMPS, VGETEXPPD, VGETEXPPS, VGETMANTPD, VGETMANTPS, VRANGEPD, VRANGEPS, VREDUCEPD, VREDUCEPS, VRNDSCALEPD, VRNDSCALEPS, VSCALEFPD, VSCALEFPS, VRCP28PD, VRCP28PS, VRSQRT28PD, VRSQRT28PS
Type E3	VADDSd, VADDSs, VCMPSD, VCMPSs, VCVTPS2PD, VCVTSD2SS, VCVTSS2SD, VDIVSD, VDIVSS, VMAXSD, VMAXSS, VMINSD, VMINSS, VMULSD, VMULSS, VSQRTSD, VSQRTSS, VSUBSD, VSUBSS VCVTPS2QQ, VCVTPS2UQQ, VCVTTPS2QQ, VCVTTPS2UQQ, VFMADDxxxSD, VFMADDxxxSS, VFMSUBxxxSD, VFMSUBxxxSS, VFNMADDxxxSD, VFNMADDxxxSS, VFNMSUBxxxSD, VFNMSUBxxxSS, VFIXUPIMMSD, VFIXUPIMMSS, VGETEXPSD, VGETEXPSS, VGETMANTSD, VGETMANTSS, VRANGESD, VRANGESS, VREDUCESD, VREDUCESS, VRNDSCALESD, VRNDSCALESS, VSCALEFSD, VSCALEFSS, VRCP28SD, VRCP28SS, VRSQRT28SD, VRSQRT28SS
Type E3NF	VCOMISD, VCOMISS, VCVTSD2SI, VCVTSI2SD, VCVTSI2SS, VCVTSS2SI, VCVTSS2SD, VCVTSS2SI, VUCOMISD, VUCOMISS VCVTSD2USI, VCVTSS2USI, VCVTSS2USI, VCVTSS2USI, VCVTUSI2SD, VCVTUSI2SS

Table 2-43. EVEX Instructions in each Exception Class (Contd.)

Exception Class	Instruction
Type E4	VANDPD, VANDPS, VANDNPD, VANDNPS, VORPD, VORPS, VPABSD, VPABSQ, VPADDD, VPADDQ, VPANDD, VPANDQ, VPANDND, VPANDNQ, VPCMPEQD, VPCMPEQQ, VPCMPGTD, VPCMPGTQ, VPMAXSD, VPMAXSQ, VPMAXUD, VPMAXUQ, VPMINSQ, VPMINSQ, VPMINUD, VPMINUQ, VPMULLD, VPMULLQ, VPMULUDQ, VPMULDQ, VPORD, VPORQ, VPSUBD, VPSUBQ, VPXORD, VPXORQ, VXORPD, VXORPS, VPSLLVD, VPSLLVQ, VBLENDMPD, VBLENDMPS, VPBLENDMD, VPBLENDMQ, VFPCLASSPD, VFPCLASSPS, VPCMPD, VPCMPQ, VPCMPUD, VPCMPUQ, VPLZCNTD, VPLZCNTQ, VPROLD, VPROLQ, (VPSLLD, VPSLLQ, VPSRAD, VPSRAQ, VPSRLD, VPSRLQ) ¹ , VPTERNLOGD, VPTERNLOGQ, VPTESTMD, VPTESTMQ, VPTESTNMD, VPTESTNMQ, VRCP14PD, VRCP14PS, VRSQRT14PD, VRSQRT14PS, VPSRAVW, VPSRAVD, VPSRAVW, VPSRAVQ, VPMADD52LUQ, VPMADD52HUQ
E4.nb ²	VMOVUPD, VMOVUPS, VMOVDQU8, VMOVDQU16, VMOVDQU32, VMOVDQU64, VPCMPB, VPCMPW, VPCMPUB, VPCMPUW, VEXPANDPD, VEXPANDPS, VPCOMPRESSD, VPCOMPRESSQ, VEXPANDD, VEXPANDQ, VCOMPRESSPD, VCOMPRESSPS, VPABSB, VPABSW, VPADDB, VPADDW, VPADDSB, VPADDSW, VPADDUSB, VPADDUSW, VPAVGB, VPAVGW, VPCMPEQB, VPCMPEQW, VPCMPGTB, VPCMPGTW, VPMAXSB, VPMAXSW, VPMAXUB, VPMAXUW, VPMINSB, VPMINSW, VPMINUB, VPMINUW, VPMULHRW, VPMULHUW, VPMULHW, VPMULLW, VPSUBB, VPSUBW, VPSUBSB, VPSUBSW, VPTESTMB, VPTESTMW, VPTESTNMB, VPTESTNMW, VPSLLW, VPSRAW, VPSRLW, VPSLLVW, VPSRLVW
Type E4NF	VPACKSSDW, VPACKUSDW, VPSHUFD, VPUNPCKHDQ, VPUNPCKHQDQ, VPUNPCKLDQ, VPUNPCKLQDQ, VSHUFPD, VSHUFPS, VUNPCKHPD, VUNPCKHPS, VUNPCKLPD, VUNPCKLPS, VPERMD, VPERMPS, VPERMPD, VPERMQ, VALIGND, VALIGNQ, VPCONFLICTD, VPCONFLICTQ, VPERMI2D, VPERMI2PS, VPERMI2PD, VPERMI2Q, VPERMT2D, VPERMT2PS, VPERMT2Q, VPERMT2PD, VPERMILPD, VPERMILPS, VSHUFI32X4, VSHUFI64X2, VSHUFF32X4, VSHUFF64X2, VPMULTISHIFTQB
E4NF.nb ²	VDBPSADBW, VPACKSSWB, VPACKUSWB, VPALIGNR, VPMADDWD, VPMADDUBSW, VMOVSHDUP, VMOVSLDUP, VPSADBW, VPSHUFB, VPSHUFBW, VPSHUFLW, VPSLLDQ, VPSRLDQ, VPSLLW, VPSRAW, VPSRLW, (VPSLLD, VPSLLQ, VPSRAD, VPSRAQ, VPSRLD, VPSRLQ) ³ , VPUNPCKHBW, VPUNPCKHWD, VPUNPCKLBW, VPUNPCKLWD, VPERMW, VPERMI2W, VPERMT2W
Type E5	VCVTDQ2PD, PMOVSWB, PMOVXWB, PMOVXBD, PMOVXQB, PMOVXWD, PMOVXWQ, PMOVXQD, PMOVZXBW, PMOVZXBQ, PMOVZXBQ, PMOVZXWD, PMOVZXWQ, PMOVZXDQ, VCVTUDQ2PD
Type E5NF	VMOVDDUP
Type E6	VBROADCASTSS, VBROADCASTSD, VBROADCASTF32X4, VBROADCASTI32X4, VPBROADCASTB, VPBROADCASTD, VPBROADCASTW, VPBROADCASTQ, VBROADCASTF32X2, VBROADCASTF32X4, VBROADCASTF64X2, VBROADCASTF32X8, VBROADCASTF64X4, VBROADCASTI32X2, VBROADCASTI32X4, VBROADCASTI64X2, VBROADCASTI32X8, VBROADCASTI64X4, VFPCLASSSD, VFPCLASSSS, VPMOVQB, VPMOVQB, VPMOVUSQB, VPMOVQW, VPMOVSQW, VPMOVUSQW, VPMOVQD, VPMOVSD, VPMOVUSQD, VPMOVDB, VPMOVSD, VPMOVUSDB, VPMOVDW, VPMOVSDW, VPMOVUSDW, VPMOVWB, VPMOVSWB, VPMOVUSWB
Type E6NF	VEXTRACTF32X4, VEXTRACTF64X2, VEXTRACTF32X8, VINSERTF32X4, VINSERTF64X2, VINSERTF64X4, VINSERTF32X8, VINSERTI32X4, VINSERTI64X2, VINSERTI64X4, VINSERTI32X8, VEXTRACTI32X4, VEXTRACTI64X2, VEXTRACTI32X8, VEXTRACTI64X4, VPBROADCASTMB2Q, VPBROADCASTMW2D
Type E7NM.128 ⁴	VMOVLHPS, VMOVHLPS
Type E7NM.	(VPBROADCASTD, VPBROADCASTQ, VPBROADCASTB, VPBROADCASTW) ⁵ , VPMOVM2B, VPMOVM2D, VPMOVM2Q, VPMOVM2W, VPMOV2M, VPMOVD2M, VPMOVQ2M, VPMOVW2M

Table 2-43. EVEX Instructions in each Exception Class (Contd.)

Exception Class	Instruction
Type E9NF	VEXTRACTPS, VINSERTPS, VMOVHPD, VMOVHPS, VMOVLPD, VMOVLPS, VMOVD, VMOVQ, VPEXTRB, VPEXTRD, VPEXTRW, VPEXTRQ, VPINSRB, VPINSRD, VPINSRW, VPINSRQ
Type E10	VMOVSD, VMOVSS, VRCP14SD, VRCP14SS, VRSQRT14SD, VRSQRT14SS,
Type E10NF	(VCVTSI2SD, VCVTUSI2SD) ⁶
Type E11	VCVTPH2PS, VCVTPS2PH
Type E12	VGATHERDPS, VGATHERDPD, VGATHERQPS, VGATHERQPD, VPGATHERDD, VPGATHERDQ, VPGATHERQD, VPGATHERQQ, VPSCATTERDD, VPSCATTERDQ, VPSCATTERQD, VPSCATTERQQ, VSCATTERDPD, VSCATTERDPS, VSCATTERQPD, VSCATTERQPS
Type E12NP	VGATHERPFODPD, VGATHERPFODPS, VGATHERPFOQPD, VGATHERPFOQPS, VGATHERPF1DPD, VGATHERPF1DPS, VGATHERPF1QPD, VGATHERPF1QPS, VSCATTERPFODPD, VSCATTERPFODPS, VSCATTERPFOQPD, VSCATTERPFOQPS, VSCATTERPF1DPD, VSCATTERPF1DPS, VSCATTERPF1QPD, VSCATTERPF1QPS

NOTES:

1. Operand encoding Full tupletype with immediate.
2. Embedded broadcast is not supported with the “.nb” suffix.
3. Operand encoding Mem128 tupletype.
4. #UD raised if EVEX.L'L !=00b (VL=128).
5. The source operand is a general purpose register.
6. W0 encoding only.

2.7.1 Exceptions Type E1 and E1NF of EVEX-Encoded Instructions

EVEX-encoded instructions with memory alignment restrictions, and supporting memory fault suppression follow exception class E1.

Table 2-44. Type E1 Class Exception Conditions

Exception	Real	Virtual 80x86	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X			If EVEX prefix present.
			X	X	If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0. If any one of following conditions applies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> State requirement, Table 2-37 not met. Opcode independent #UD condition in Table 2-38. Operand encoding #UD conditions in Table 2-39. Opmask encoding #UD condition of Table 2-40. If EVEX.b != 0. If EVEX.L'L != 10b (VL=512).
	X	X	X	X	If preceded by a LOCK prefix (FOH).
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a EVEX prefix.
	X	X	X	X	If any corresponding CPUID feature flag is '0'.
Device Not Available, #NM	X	X	X	X	If CR0.TS[bit 3]=1.
Stack, SS(0)			X		If fault suppression not set, and an illegal address in the SS segment.
				X	If fault suppression not set, and a memory address referencing the SS segment is in a non-canonical form.
General Protection, #GP(0)			X	X	EVEX.512: Memory operand is not 64-byte aligned. EVEX.256: Memory operand is not 32-byte aligned. EVEX.128: Memory operand is not 16-byte aligned.
			X		If fault suppression not set, and an illegal memory operand effective address in the CS, DS, ES, FS or GS segments.
				X	If fault suppression not set, and the memory address is in a non-canonical form.
	X	X			If fault suppression not set, and any part of the operand lies outside the effective address space from 0 to FFFFH.
Page Fault #PF(fault-code)		X	X	X	If fault suppression not set, and a page fault.

EVEX-encoded instructions with memory alignment restrictions, but do not support memory fault suppression follow exception class E1NF.

Table 2-45. Type E1NF Class Exception Conditions

Exception	Real	Virtual 80x86	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X			If EVEX prefix present.
			X	X	If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0. If any one of following conditions applies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> State requirement, Table 2-37 not met. Opcode independent #UD condition in Table 2-38. Operand encoding #UD conditions in Table 2-39. Opmask encoding #UD condition of Table 2-40. If EVEX.b != 0. If EVEX.L'L != 10b (VL=512).
	X	X	X	X	If preceded by a LOCK prefix (F0H).
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a EVEX prefix.
	X	X	X	X	If any corresponding CPUID feature flag is '0'.
Device Not Available, #NM	X	X	X	X	If CR0.TS[bit 3]=1.
Stack, SS(0)			X		For an illegal address in the SS segment.
				X	If a memory address referencing the SS segment is in a non-canonical form.
General Protection, #GP(0)			X	X	EVEX.512: Memory operand is not 64-byte aligned. EVEX.256: Memory operand is not 32-byte aligned. EVEX.128: Memory operand is not 16-byte aligned.
			X		For an illegal memory operand effective address in the CS, DS, ES, FS or GS segments.
				X	If the memory address is in a non-canonical form.
	X	X			If any part of the operand lies outside the effective address space from 0 to FFFFH.
Page Fault #PF(fault-code)		X	X	X	For a page fault.

2.7.2 Exceptions Type E2 of EVEX-Encoded Instructions

EVEX-encoded vector instructions with arithmetic semantic follow exception class E2.

Table 2-46. Type E2 Class Exception Conditions

Exception	Real	Virtual 8086	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X			If EVEX prefix present.
	X	X	X	X	If an unmasked SIMD floating-point exception and CR4.OSXMMEXCPT[bit 10] = 0.
			X	X	If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0. If any one of following conditions applies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ State requirement, Table 2-37 not met. ▪ Opcode independent #UD condition in Table 2-38. ▪ Operand encoding #UD conditions in Table 2-39. ▪ Opmask encoding #UD condition of Table 2-40. ▪ If EVEX.L'L != 10b (VL=512).
	X	X	X	X	If preceded by a LOCK prefix (F0H).
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a EVEX prefix.
	X	X	X	X	If any corresponding CPUID feature flag is '0'.
Device Not Available, #NM	X	X	X	X	If CR0.TS[bit 3]=1.
Stack, SS(0)			X		If fault suppression not set, and an illegal address in the SS segment.
				X	If fault suppression not set, and a memory address referencing the SS segment is in a non-canonical form.
General Protection, #GP(0)			X		If fault suppression not set, and an illegal memory operand effective address in the CS, DS, ES, FS or GS segments.
				X	If fault suppression not set, and the memory address is in a non-canonical form.
	X	X			If fault suppression not set, and any part of the operand lies outside the effective address space from 0 to FFFFH.
Page Fault #PF(fault-code)		X	X	X	If fault suppression not set, and a page fault.
Alignment Check #AC(0)		X	X	X	If EVEX.B=1, alignment checking is enabled, and an unaligned memory reference of 8 bytes or less is made while the current privilege level is 3.
SIMD Floating-point Exception, #XM	X	X	X	X	If an unmasked SIMD floating-point exception, {sae} or {er} not set, and CR4.OSXMMEXCPT[bit 10] = 1.

2.7.3 Exceptions Type E3 and E3NF of EVEX-Encoded Instructions

EVEX-encoded scalar instructions with arithmetic semantic that support memory fault suppression follow exception class E3.

Table 2-47. Type E3 Class Exception Conditions

Exception	Real	Virtual 80x86	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X			If EVEX prefix present.
	X	X	X	X	If an unmasked SIMD floating-point exception and CR4.OSXMMEXCPT[bit 10] = 0.
			X	X	If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0. If any one of following conditions applies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ State requirement, Table 2-37 not met. ▪ Opcode independent #UD condition in Table 2-38. ▪ Operand encoding #UD conditions in Table 2-39. ▪ Opmask encoding #UD condition of Table 2-40. ▪ If EVEX.b != 0.
	X	X	X	X	If preceded by a LOCK prefix (F0H).
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a EVEX prefix.
	X	X	X	X	If any corresponding CPUID feature flag is '0'.
Device Not Available, #NM	X	X	X	X	If CR0.TS[bit 3]=1.
Stack, SS(0)			X		If fault suppression not set, and an illegal address in the SS segment.
				X	If fault suppression not set, and a memory address referencing the SS segment is in a non-canonical form.
General Protection, #GP(0)			X		If fault suppression not set, and an illegal memory operand effective address in the CS, DS, ES, FS or GS segments.
				X	If fault suppression not set, and the memory address is in a non-canonical form.
	X	X			If fault suppression not set, and any part of the operand lies outside the effective address space from 0 to FFFFH.
Page Fault #PF(fault-code)		X	X	X	If fault suppression not set, and a page fault.
Alignment Check #AC(0)		X	X	X	If alignment checking is enabled and an unaligned memory reference of 8 bytes or less is made while the current privilege level is 3.
SIMD Floating-point Exception, #XM	X	X	X	X	If an unmasked SIMD floating-point exception, {sae} or {er} not set, and CR4.OSXMMEXCPT[bit 10] = 1.

EVEX-encoded scalar instructions with arithmetic semantic that do not support memory fault suppression follow exception class E3NF.

Table 2-48. Type E3NF Class Exception Conditions

Exception	Real	Virtual 80x86	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X			EVEX prefix.
	X	X	X	X	If an unmasked SIMD floating-point exception and CR4.OSXMMEXCPT[bit 10] = 0.
			X	X	If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0. If any one of following conditions applies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ State requirement, Table 2-37 not met. ▪ Opcode independent #UD condition in Table 2-38. ▪ Operand encoding #UD conditions in Table 2-39. ▪ Opmask encoding #UD condition of Table 2-40. ▪ If EVEX.b != 0.
	X	X	X	X	If preceded by a LOCK prefix (F0H).
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a EVEX prefix.
	X	X	X	X	If any corresponding CPUID feature flag is '0'.
Device Not Available, #NM	X	X	X	X	If CR0.TS[bit 3]=1.
Stack, SS(0)			X		For an illegal address in the SS segment.
				X	If a memory address referencing the SS segment is in a non-canonical form.
General Protection, #GP(0)			X		For an illegal memory operand effective address in the CS, DS, ES, FS or GS segments.
				X	If the memory address is in a non-canonical form.
	X	X			If any part of the operand lies outside the effective address space from 0 to FFFFH.
Page Fault #PF(fault-code)		X	X	X	For a page fault.
Alignment Check #AC(0)		X	X	X	If alignment checking is enabled and an unaligned memory reference of 8 bytes or less is made while the current privilege level is 3.
SIMD Floating-point Exception, #XM	X	X	X	X	If an unmasked SIMD floating-point exception, {sae} or {er} not set, and CR4.OSXMMEXCPT[bit 10] = 1.

2.7.4 Exceptions Type E4 and E4NF of EVEX-Encoded Instructions

EVEX-encoded vector instructions that cause no SIMD FP exception and support memory fault suppression follow exception class E4.

Table 2-49. Type E4 Class Exception Conditions

Exception	Real	Virtual 80x86	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X			If EVEX prefix present.
			X	X	If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0. If any one of following conditions applies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> State requirement, Table 2-37 not met. Opcode independent #UD condition in Table 2-38. Operand encoding #UD conditions in Table 2-39. Opmask encoding #UD condition of Table 2-40. If EVEX.b != 0 and in E4.nb subclass (see E4.nb entries in Table 2-43). If EVEX.L'L != 10b (VL=512).
	X	X	X	X	If preceded by a LOCK prefix (F0H).
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a EVEX prefix.
	X	X	X	X	If any corresponding CPUID feature flag is '0'.
Device Not Available, #NM	X	X	X	X	If CR0.TS[bit 3]=1.
Stack, SS(0)			X		If fault suppression not set, and an illegal address in the SS segment.
				X	If fault suppression not set, and a memory address referencing the SS segment is in a non-canonical form.
General Protection, #GP(0)			X		If fault suppression not set, and an illegal memory operand effective address in the CS, DS, ES, FS or GS segments.
				X	If fault suppression not set, and the memory address is in a non-canonical form.
	X	X			If fault suppression not set, and any part of the operand lies outside the effective address space from 0 to FFFFH.
Page Fault #PF(fault-code)		X	X	X	If fault suppression not set, and a page fault.
Alignment Check #AC(0)		X	X	X	If EVEX.B=1, alignment checking is enabled, and an unaligned memory reference of 8 bytes or less is made while the current privilege level is 3.

EVEX-encoded vector instructions that do not cause SIMD FP exception nor support memory fault suppression follow exception class E4NF.

Table 2-50. Type E4NF Class Exception Conditions

Exception	Real	Virtual 180x86	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X			If EVEX prefix present.
			X	X	If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0. If any one of following conditions applies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ State requirement, Table 2-37 not met. ▪ Opcode independent #UD condition in Table 2-38. ▪ Operand encoding #UD conditions in Table 2-39. ▪ Opmask encoding #UD condition of Table 2-40. ▪ If EVEX.b != 0 and in E4NF.nb subclass (see E4NF.nb entries in Table 2-43). ▪ If EVEX.L'L != 10b (VL=512).
	X	X	X	X	If preceded by a LOCK prefix (F0H).
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a EVEX prefix.
	X	X	X	X	If any corresponding CPUID feature flag is '0'.
Device Not Available, #NM	X	X	X	X	If CR0.TS[bit 3]=1.
Stack, SS(0)			X		For an illegal address in the SS segment.
				X	If a memory address referencing the SS segment is in a non-canonical form.
General Protection, #GP(0)			X		For an illegal memory operand effective address in the CS, DS, ES, FS or GS segments.
				X	If the memory address is in a non-canonical form.
	X	X			If any part of the operand lies outside the effective address space from 0 to FFFFH.
Page Fault #PF(fault-code)		X	X	X	For a page fault.

2.7.5 Exceptions Type E5 and E5NF

EVEX-encoded scalar/partial-vector instructions that cause no SIMD FP exception and support memory fault suppression follow exception class E5.

Table 2-51. Type E5 Class Exception Conditions

Exception	Real	Virtual 80x86	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X			If EVEX prefix present.
			X	X	If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0. If any one of following conditions applies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ State requirement, Table 2-37 not met. ▪ Opcode independent #UD condition in Table 2-38. ▪ Operand encoding #UD conditions in Table 2-39. ▪ Opmask encoding #UD condition of Table 2-40. ▪ If EVEX.b != 0. ▪ If EVEX.L'L != 10b (VL=512).
	X	X	X	X	If preceded by a LOCK prefix (FOH).
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a EVEX prefix.
	X	X	X	X	If any corresponding CPUID feature flag is '0'.
Device Not Available, #NM	X	X	X	X	If CR0.TS[bit 3]=1.
Stack, SS(0)			X		If fault suppression not set, and an illegal address in the SS segment.
				X	If fault suppression not set, and a memory address referencing the SS segment is in a non-canonical form.
General Protection, #GP(0)			X		If fault suppression not set, and an illegal memory operand effective address in the CS, DS, ES, FS or GS segments.
				X	If fault suppression not set, and the memory address is in a non-canonical form.
	X	X			If fault suppression not set, and any part of the operand lies outside the effective address space from 0 to FFFFH.
Page Fault #PF(fault-code)		X	X	X	If fault suppression not set, and a page fault.
Alignment Check #AC(0)		X	X	X	If alignment checking is enabled and an unaligned memory reference of 8 bytes or less is made while the current privilege level is 3.

EVEX-encoded scalar/partial vector instructions that do not cause SIMD FP exception nor support memory fault suppression follow exception class E5NF.

Table 2-52. Type E5NF Class Exception Conditions

Exception	Real	Virtual 80x86	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X			If EVEX prefix present.
			X	X	If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0. If any one of following conditions applies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ State requirement, Table 2-37 not met. ▪ Opcode independent #UD condition in Table 2-38. ▪ Operand encoding #UD conditions in Table 2-39. ▪ Opmask encoding #UD condition of Table 2-40. ▪ If EVEX.b != 0. ▪ If EVEX.L'L != 10b (VL=512).
	X	X	X	X	If preceded by a LOCK prefix (FOH).
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a EVEX prefix.
	X	X	X	X	If any corresponding CPUID feature flag is '0'.
Device Not Available, #NM	X	X	X	X	If CR0.TS[bit 3]=1.
Stack, SS(0)			X		If an illegal address in the SS segment.
				X	If a memory address referencing the SS segment is in a non-canonical form.
General Protection, #GP(0)			X		If an illegal memory operand effective address in the CS, DS, ES, FS or GS segments.
				X	If the memory address is in a non-canonical form.
	X	X			If any part of the operand lies outside the effective address space from 0 to FFFFH.
Page Fault #PF(fault-code)		X	X	X	For a page fault.
Alignment Check #AC(0)		X	X	X	If alignment checking is enabled and an unaligned memory reference of 8 bytes or less is made while the current privilege level is 3.

2.7.6 Exceptions Type E6 and E6NF

Table 2-53. Type E6 Class Exception Conditions

Exception	Real	Virtual 80x86	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X			If EVEX prefix present.
			X	X	If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0. If any one of following conditions applies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ State requirement, Table 2-37 not met. ▪ Opcode independent #UD condition in Table 2-38. ▪ Operand encoding #UD conditions in Table 2-39. ▪ Opmask encoding #UD condition of Table 2-40. ▪ If EVEX.b != 0. ▪ If EVEX.L'L != 10b (VL=512).
			X	X	If preceded by a LOCK prefix (FOH).
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a EVEX prefix.
			X	X	If any corresponding CPUID feature flag is '0'.
Device Not Available, #NM			X	X	If CR0.TS[bit 3]=1.
Stack, SS(0)			X		If fault suppression not set, and an illegal address in the SS segment.
				X	If fault suppression not set, and a memory address referencing the SS segment is in a non-canonical form.
General Protection, #GP(0)			X		If fault suppression not set, and an illegal memory operand effective address in the CS, DS, ES, FS or GS segments.
				X	If fault suppression not set, and the memory address is in a non-canonical form.
Page Fault #PF(fault-code)			X	X	If fault suppression not set, and a page fault.
Alignment Check #AC(0)			X	X	For 4 or 8 byte memory references if alignment checking is enabled and an unaligned memory reference of 8 bytes or less is made while the current privilege level is 3.

EVEX-encoded instructions that do not cause SIMD FP exception nor support memory fault suppression follow exception class E6NF.

Table 2-54. Type E6NF Class Exception Conditions

Exception	Real	Virtual 80x86	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X			If EVEX prefix present.
			X	X	If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0. If any one of following conditions applies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ State requirement, Table 2-37 not met. ▪ Opcode independent #UD condition in Table 2-38. ▪ Operand encoding #UD conditions in Table 2-39. ▪ Opmask encoding #UD condition of Table 2-40. ▪ If EVEX.b != 0. ▪ If EVEX.L'L != 10b (VL=512).
			X	X	If preceded by a LOCK prefix (FOH).
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a EVEX prefix.
			X	X	If any corresponding CPUID feature flag is '0'.
Device Not Available, #NM			X	X	If CR0.TS[bit 3]=1.
Stack, SS(0)			X		For an illegal address in the SS segment.
				X	If a memory address referencing the SS segment is in a non-canonical form.
General Protection, #GP(0)			X		For an illegal memory operand effective address in the CS, DS, ES, FS or GS segments.
				X	If the memory address is in a non-canonical form.
Page Fault #PF(fault-code)			X	X	For a page fault.
Alignment Check #AC(0)			X	X	For 4 or 8 byte memory references if alignment checking is enabled and an unaligned memory reference of 8 bytes or less is made while the current privilege level is 3.

2.7.7 Exceptions Type E7NM

EVEX-encoded instructions that cause no SIMD FP exception and do not reference memory follow exception class E7NM.

Table 2-55. Type E7NM Class Exception Conditions

Exception	Real	Virtual 80x86	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X			If EVEX prefix present.
			X	X	If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0. If any one of following conditions applies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ State requirement, Table 2-37 not met. ▪ Opcode independent #UD condition in Table 2-38. ▪ Operand encoding #UD conditions in Table 2-39. ▪ Opmask encoding #UD condition of Table 2-40. ▪ If EVEX.b != 0. ▪ Instruction specific EVEX.L'L restriction not met.
	X	X	X	X	If preceded by a LOCK prefix (FOH).
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a EVEX prefix.
	X	X	X	X	If any corresponding CPUID feature flag is '0'.
Device Not Available, #NM			X	X	If CR0.TS[bit 3]=1.

2.7.8 Exceptions Type E9 and E9NF

EVEX-encoded vector or partial-vector instructions that do not cause no SIMD FP exception and support memory fault suppression follow exception class E9.

Table 2-56. Type E9 Class Exception Conditions

Exception	Real	Virtual 80x86	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X			If EVEX prefix present.
			X	X	If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0. If any one of following conditions applies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> State requirement, Table 2-37 not met. Opcode independent #UD condition in Table 2-38. Operand encoding #UD conditions in Table 2-39. Opmask encoding #UD condition of Table 2-40. If EVEX.b != 0. If EVEX.L'L != 00b (VL=128).
	X	X	X	X	If preceded by a LOCK prefix (FOH).
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a EVEX prefix.
	X	X	X	X	If any corresponding CPUID feature flag is '0'.
Device Not Available, #NM	X	X	X	X	If CR0.TS[bit 3]=1.
Stack, SS(0)			X		If fault suppression not set, and an illegal address in the SS segment.
				X	If fault suppression not set, and a memory address referencing the SS segment is in a non-canonical form.
General Protection, #GP(0)			X		If fault suppression not set, and an illegal memory operand effective address in the CS, DS, ES, FS or GS segments.
				X	If fault suppression not set, and the memory address is in a non-canonical form.
	X	X			If fault suppression not set, and any part of the operand lies outside the effective address space from 0 to FFFFH.
Page Fault #PF(fault-code)		X	X	X	If fault suppression not set, and a page fault.
Alignment Check #AC(0)		X	X	X	If alignment checking is enabled and an unaligned memory reference of 8 bytes or less is made while the current privilege level is 3.

EVEX-encoded vector or partial-vector instructions that must be encoded with VEX.L'L = 0, do not cause SIMD FP exception nor support memory fault suppression follow exception class E9NF.

Table 2-57. Type E9NF Class Exception Conditions

Exception	Real	Virtual 80x86	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X			If EVEX prefix present.
			X	X	If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0. If any one of following conditions applies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ State requirement, Table 2-37 not met. ▪ Opcode independent #UD condition in Table 2-38. ▪ Operand encoding #UD conditions in Table 2-39. ▪ Opmask encoding #UD condition of Table 2-40. ▪ If EVEX.b != 0. ▪ If EVEX.L'L != 00b (VL=128).
	X	X	X	X	If preceded by a LOCK prefix (FOH).
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a EVEX prefix.
	X	X	X	X	If any corresponding CPUID feature flag is '0'.
Device Not Available, #NM	X	X	X	X	If CR0.TS[bit 3]=1.
Stack, SS(0)			X		If an illegal address in the SS segment.
				X	If a memory address referencing the SS segment is in a non-canonical form.
General Protection, #GP(0)			X		If an illegal memory operand effective address in the CS, DS, ES, FS or GS segments.
				X	If the memory address is in a non-canonical form.
	X	X			If any part of the operand lies outside the effective address space from 0 to FFFFH.
Page Fault #PF(fault-code)		X	X	X	For a page fault.
Alignment Check #AC(0)		X	X	X	If alignment checking is enabled and an unaligned memory reference is made while the current privilege level is 3.

2.7.9 Exceptions Type E10

EVEX-encoded scalar instructions that ignore EVEX.L'L vector length encoding and do not cause no SIMD FP exception, support memory fault suppression follow exception class E10.

Table 2-58. Type E10 Class Exception Conditions

Exception	Real	Virtual 80x86	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X			If EVEX prefix present.
			X	X	If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0. If any one of following conditions applies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> State requirement, Table 2-37 not met. Opcode independent #UD condition in Table 2-38. Operand encoding #UD conditions in Table 2-39. Opmask encoding #UD condition of Table 2-40. If EVEX.b != 0.
	X	X	X	X	If preceded by a LOCK prefix (FOH).
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a EVEX prefix.
	X	X	X	X	If any corresponding CPUID feature flag is '0'.
Device Not Available, #NM	X	X	X	X	If CR0.TS[bit 3]=1.
Stack, SS(0)			X		If fault suppression not set, and an illegal address in the SS segment.
				X	If fault suppression not set, and a memory address referencing the SS segment is in a non-canonical form.
General Protection, #GP(0)			X		If fault suppression not set, and an illegal memory operand effective address in the CS, DS, ES, FS or GS segments.
				X	If fault suppression not set, and the memory address is in a non-canonical form.
	X	X			If fault suppression not set, and any part of the operand lies outside the effective address space from 0 to FFFFH.
Page Fault #PF(fault-code)		X	X	X	If fault suppression not set, and a page fault.
Alignment Check #AC(0)		X	X	X	If alignment checking is enabled and an unaligned memory reference of 8 bytes or less is made while the current privilege level is 3.

EVEX-encoded scalar instructions that must be encoded with VEX.L'L = 0, do not cause SIMD FP exception nor support memory fault suppression follow exception class E10NF.

Table 2-59. Type E10NF Class Exception Conditions

Exception	Real	Virtual 80x86	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X			If EVEX prefix present.
			X	X	If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0. If any one of following conditions applies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> State requirement, Table 2-37 not met. Opcode independent #UD condition in Table 2-38. Operand encoding #UD conditions in Table 2-39. Opmask encoding #UD condition of Table 2-40. If EVEX.b != 0.
	X	X	X	X	If preceded by a LOCK prefix (F0H).
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a EVEX prefix.
	X	X	X	X	If any corresponding CPUID feature flag is '0'.
Device Not Available, #NM	X	X	X	X	If CR0.TS[bit 3]=1.
Stack, SS(0)			X		If fault suppression not set, and an illegal address in the SS segment.
				X	If fault suppression not set, and a memory address referencing the SS segment is in a non-canonical form.
General Protection, #GP(0)			X		If fault suppression not set, and an illegal memory operand effective address in the CS, DS, ES, FS or GS segments.
				X	If fault suppression not set, and the memory address is in a non-canonical form.
	X	X			If fault suppression not set, and any part of the operand lies outside the effective address space from 0 to FFFFH.
Page Fault #PF(fault-code)		X	X	X	If fault suppression not set, and a page fault.
Alignment Check #AC(0)		X	X	X	If alignment checking is enabled and an unaligned memory reference of 8 bytes or less is made while the current privilege level is 3.

2.7.10 Exception Type E11 (EVEX-only, mem arg no AC, floating-point exceptions)

EVEX-encoded instructions that can cause SIMD FP exception, memory operand support fault suppression but do not cause #AC follow exception class E11.

Table 2-60. Type E11 Class Exception Conditions

Exception	Real	Virtual 80x86	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X			If EVEX prefix present.
			X	X	If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0. If any one of following conditions applies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> State requirement, Table 2-37 not met. Opcode independent #UD condition in Table 2-38. Operand encoding #UD conditions in Table 2-39. Opmask encoding #UD condition of Table 2-40. If EVEX.b != 0. If EVEX.L'L != 10b (VL=512).
	X	X	X	X	If preceded by a LOCK prefix (FOH).
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a EVEX prefix.
	X	X	X	X	If any corresponding CPUID feature flag is '0'.
Device Not Available, #NM	X	X	X	X	If CR0.TS[bit 3]=1.
Stack, SS(0)			X		If fault suppression not set, and an illegal address in the SS segment.
				X	If fault suppression not set, and a memory address referencing the SS segment is in a non-canonical form.
General Protection, #GP(0)			X		If fault suppression not set, and an illegal memory operand effective address in the CS, DS, ES, FS or GS segments.
				X	If fault suppression not set, and the memory address is in a non-canonical form.
	X	X			If fault suppression not set, and any part of the operand lies outside the effective address space from 0 to FFFFH.
Page Fault #PF (fault-code)		X	X	X	If fault suppression not set, and a page fault.
SIMD Floating-Point Exception, #XM	X	X	X	X	If an unmasked SIMD floating-point exception, {sae} not set, and CR4.OSXMMEX-CPT[bit 10] = 1.

2.7.11 Exception Type E12 and E12NP (VSIB mem arg, no AC, no floating-point exceptions)

Table 2-61. Type E12 Class Exception Conditions

Exception	Real	Virtual 80x86	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X			If EVEX prefix present.
			X	X	If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0. If any one of following conditions applies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> State requirement, Table 2-37 not met. Opcode independent #UD condition in Table 2-38. Operand encoding #UD conditions in Table 2-39. Opmask encoding #UD condition of Table 2-40. If EVEX.b != 0. If EVEX.L'L != 10b (VL=512). If vvvv != 1111b.
	X	X	X	X	If preceded by a LOCK prefix (F0H).
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a VEX prefix.
	X	X	X	NA	If address size attribute is 16 bit.
	X	X	X	X	If ModR/M.mod = '11b'.
	X	X	X	X	If ModR/M.rm != '100b'.
	X	X	X	X	If any corresponding CPUID feature flag is '0'.
	X	X	X	X	If k0 is used (gather or scatter operation).
X	X	X	X	If index = destination register (gather operation).	
Device Not Available, #NM	X	X	X	X	If CR0.TS[bit 3]=1.
Stack, SS(0)			X		For an illegal address in the SS segment.
				X	If a memory address referencing the SS segment is in a non-canonical form.
General Protection, #GP(0)			X		For an illegal memory operand effective address in the CS, DS, ES, FS or GS segments.
				X	If the memory address is in a non-canonical form.
	X	X			If any part of the operand lies outside the effective address space from 0 to FFFFH.
Page Fault #PF (fault-code)		X	X	X	For a page fault.

EVEX-encoded prefetch instructions that do not cause #PF follow exception class E12NP.

Table 2-62. Type E12NP Class Exception Conditions

Exception	Real	Virtual 80x86	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X			If EVEX prefix present.
			X	X	If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0. If any one of following conditions applies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ State requirement, Table 2-37 not met. ▪ Opcode independent #UD condition in Table 2-38. ▪ Operand encoding #UD conditions in Table 2-39. ▪ Opmask encoding #UD condition of Table 2-40. ▪ If EVEX.b != 0. ▪ If EVEX.L'L != 10b (VL=512).
	X	X	X	X	If preceded by a LOCK prefix (F0H).
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a VEX prefix.
	X	X	X	NA	If address size attribute is 16 bit.
	X	X	X	X	If ModR/M.mod = '11b'.
	X	X	X	X	If ModR/M.rm != '100b'.
	X	X	X	X	If any corresponding CPUID feature flag is '0'.
Device Not Available, #NM	X	X	X	X	If CR0.TS[bit 3]=1.
			X		For an illegal address in the SS segment.
Stack, SS(0)				X	If a memory address referencing the SS segment is in a non-canonical form.
			X		For an illegal memory operand effective address in the CS, DS, ES, FS or GS segments.
General Protection, #GP(0)				X	If the memory address is in a non-canonical form.
	X	X			If any part of the operand lies outside the effective address space from 0 to FFFFH.

2.8 EXCEPTION CLASSIFICATIONS OF OPMASK INSTRUCTIONS

The exception behavior of VEX-encoded opmask instructions are listed below.

Exception conditions of Opmask instructions that do not address memory are listed as Type K20.

Table 2-63. TYPE K20 Exception Definition (VEX-Encoded OpMask Instructions w/o Memory Arg)

Exception	Real	Virtual 80x86	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X	X	X	If relevant CPUID feature flag is '0'.
	X	X			If a VEX prefix is present.
			X	X	If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0. If any one of following conditions applies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ State requirement, Table 2-37 not met. ▪ Opcode independent #UD condition in Table 2-38. ▪ Operand encoding #UD conditions in Table 2-39.
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a VEX prefix.
			X	X	If ModRM:[7:6] != 11b.
Device Not Available, #NM	X	X	X	X	If CR0.TS[bit 3]=1.

Exception conditions of Opmask instructions that address memory are listed as Type K21.

Table 2-64. TYPE K21 Exception Definition (VEX-Encoded OpMask Instructions Addressing Memory)

Exception	Real	Virtual 80x86	Protected and Compatibility	64-bit	Cause of Exception
Invalid Opcode, #UD	X	X	X	X	If relevant CPUID feature flag is '0'.
	X	X			If a VEX prefix is present.
			X	X	If CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18]=0. If any one of following conditions applies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ State requirement, Table 2-37 not met. ▪ Opcode independent #UD condition in Table 2-38. ▪ Operand encoding #UD conditions in Table 2-39.
Device Not Available, #NM	X	X	X	X	If CR0.TS[bit 3]=1.
			X	X	If any REX, F2, F3, or 66 prefixes precede a VEX prefix.
Stack, SS(0)	X	X	X		For an illegal address in the SS segment.
				X	If a memory address referencing the SS segment is in a non-canonical form.
General Protection, #GP(0)			X		For an illegal memory operand effective address in the CS, DS, ES, FS or GS segments. If the DS, ES, FS, or GS register is used to access memory and it contains a null segment selector.
				X	If the memory address is in a non-canonical form.
	X	X			If any part of the operand lies outside the effective address space from 0 to FFFFH.
Page Fault #PF(fault-code)		X	X	X	For a page fault.
Alignment Check #AC(0)		X	X	X	If alignment checking is enabled and an unaligned memory reference of 8 bytes or less is made while the current privilege level is 3.

4. Updates to Chapter 3, Volume 2A

Change bars show changes to Chapter 3 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 2A: Instruction Set Reference, A-L*.

Changes to this chapter: Addition of "NFx" term definition and added designator to opcode tables of affected instructions. Removal of NDS/NDD/DDS terms, and added note on historical usage of these terms and reason for removal. Where either of these changes are made to specific instructions, only the first page of the instructions are included here if no other areas of the instructions were updated. Minor typo corrections and additions. Execution ordering added for some instructions.

Instructions with changes: ADDPD, ADDPS, ADDSD, ADDSS, ADDSUBPD, ADDSUBPS, AESDEC, AESDECLAST, AESENC, AESENCCLAST, ANDN, ANDNPD, ANDNPS, ANDPD, ANDPS, BEXTR, BLENDPD, BLENDPS, BLENDVPD, BLENDVPS, BLSI, BLSMSK, BLSR, BZHI, CALL, CLFLUSHOPT, CMPPD, CMPPS, CMPSD, CMPSS, CPUID, CVTSD2SS, CVTSI2SD, CVTSI2SS, CVTSS2SD, DIVPD, DIVPS, DIVSD, DIVSS, DPPD, DPPS, HADDPD, HADDPS, HSUBPD, HSUBPS, INSERTPS, INT n/INTO/INT3/INT1, INVD, IRET/IRETD, JMP, KANDNW/KANDNB/KANDNQ/KANDND, KANDW/KANDB/KANDQ/KANDD, KORW/KORB/KORQ/KORD, KUNPCKBW/KUNPCKWD/KUNPCKDQ, KXNORW/KXNORB/KXNORQ/KXNORD, KXORW/KXORB/KXORQ/KXORD, and LFENCE.

CHAPTER 3 INSTRUCTION SET REFERENCE, A-L

This chapter describes the instruction set for the Intel 64 and IA-32 architectures (A-L) in IA-32e, protected, virtual-8086, and real-address modes of operation. The set includes general-purpose, x87 FPU, MMX, SSE/SSE2/SSE3/SSSE3/SSE4, AESNI/PCLMULQDQ, AVX and system instructions. See also Chapter 4, "Instruction Set Reference, M-U," in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 2B*, and Chapter 5, "Instruction Set Reference, V-Z," in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 2C*.

For each instruction, each operand combination is described. A description of the instruction and its operand, an operational description, a description of the effect of the instructions on flags in the EFLAGS register, and a summary of exceptions that can be generated are also provided.

3.1 INTERPRETING THE INSTRUCTION REFERENCE PAGES

This section describes the format of information contained in the instruction reference pages in this chapter. It explains notational conventions and abbreviations used in these sections.

3.1.1 Instruction Format

The following is an example of the format used for each instruction description in this chapter. The heading below introduces the example. The table below provides an example summary table.

CMC—Complement Carry Flag [this is an example]

Opcode	Instruction	Op/En	64/32-bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
F5	CMC	Z0	V/V	NA	Complement carry flag.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
Z0	NA	NA	NA	NA

3.1.1.1 Opcode Column in the Instruction Summary Table (Instructions without VEX Prefix)

The “Opcode” column in the table above shows the object code produced for each form of the instruction. When possible, codes are given as hexadecimal bytes in the same order in which they appear in memory. Definitions of entries other than hexadecimal bytes are as follows:

- **NP** — Indicates the use of 66/F2/F3 prefixes (beyond those already part of the instructions opcode) are not allowed with the instruction. Such use will either cause an invalid-opcode exception (#UD) or result in the encoding for a different instruction.
- **NF_x** — Indicates the use of F2/F3 prefixes (beyond those already part of the instructions opcode) are not allowed with the instruction. Such use will either cause an invalid-opcode exception (#UD) or result in the encoding for a different instruction.
- **REX.W** — Indicates the use of a REX prefix that affects operand size or instruction semantics. The ordering of the REX prefix and other optional/mandatory instruction prefixes are discussed Chapter 2. Note that REX prefixes that promote legacy instructions to 64-bit behavior are not listed explicitly in the opcode column.
- **/digit** — A digit between 0 and 7 indicates that the ModR/M byte of the instruction uses only the r/m (register or memory) operand. The reg field contains the digit that provides an extension to the instruction's opcode.
- **/r** — Indicates that the ModR/M byte of the instruction contains a register operand and an r/m operand.
- **cb, cw, cd, cp, co, ct** — A 1-byte (cb), 2-byte (cw), 4-byte (cd), 6-byte (cp), 8-byte (co) or 10-byte (ct) value following the opcode. This value is used to specify a code offset and possibly a new value for the code segment register.
- **ib, iw, id, io** — A 1-byte (ib), 2-byte (iw), 4-byte (id) or 8-byte (io) immediate operand to the instruction that follows the opcode, ModR/M bytes or scale-indexing bytes. The opcode determines if the operand is a signed value. All words, doublewords and quadwords are given with the low-order byte first.
- **+rb, +rw, +rd, +ro** — Indicated the lower 3 bits of the opcode byte is used to encode the register operand without a modR/M byte. The instruction lists the corresponding hexadecimal value of the opcode byte with low 3 bits as 000b. In non-64-bit mode, a register code, from 0 through 7, is added to the hexadecimal value of the opcode byte. In 64-bit mode, indicates the four bit field of REX.b and opcode[2:0] field encodes the register operand of the instruction. “+ro” is applicable only in 64-bit mode. See Table 3-1 for the codes.
- **+i** — A number used in floating-point instructions when one of the operands is ST(i) from the FPU register stack. The number i (which can range from 0 to 7) is added to the hexadecimal byte given at the left of the plus sign to form a single opcode byte.

Table 3-1. Register Codes Associated With +rb, +rw, +rd, +ro

byte register			word register			dword register			quadword register (64-Bit Mode only)		
Register	REX.B	Reg Field	Register	REX.B	Reg Field	Register	REX.B	Reg Field	Register	REX.B	Reg Field
AL	None	0	AX	None	0	EAX	None	0	RAX	None	0
CL	None	1	CX	None	1	ECX	None	1	RCX	None	1
DL	None	2	DX	None	2	EDX	None	2	RDX	None	2
BL	None	3	BX	None	3	EBX	None	3	RBX	None	3
AH	Not encodable (N.E.)	4	SP	None	4	ESP	None	4	N/A	N/A	N/A
CH	N.E.	5	BP	None	5	EBP	None	5	N/A	N/A	N/A
DH	N.E.	6	SI	None	6	ESI	None	6	N/A	N/A	N/A
BH	N.E.	7	DI	None	7	EDI	None	7	N/A	N/A	N/A
SPL	Yes	4	SP	None	4	ESP	None	4	RSP	None	4
BPL	Yes	5	BP	None	5	EBP	None	5	RBP	None	5

Table 3-1. Register Codes Associated With +rb, +rw, +rd, +ro (Contd.)

byte register			word register			dword register			quadword register (64-Bit Mode only)		
Register	REX.B	Reg Field	Register	REX.B	Reg Field	Register	REX.B	Reg Field	Register	REX.B	Reg Field
SIL	Yes	6	SI	None	6	ESI	None	6	RSI	None	6
DIL	Yes	7	DI	None	7	EDI	None	7	RDI	None	7
Registers R8 - R15 (see below): Available in 64-Bit Mode Only											
R8L	Yes	0	R8W	Yes	0	R8D	Yes	0	R8	Yes	0
R9L	Yes	1	R9W	Yes	1	R9D	Yes	1	R9	Yes	1
R10L	Yes	2	R10W	Yes	2	R10D	Yes	2	R10	Yes	2
R11L	Yes	3	R11W	Yes	3	R11D	Yes	3	R11	Yes	3
R12L	Yes	4	R12W	Yes	4	R12D	Yes	4	R12	Yes	4
R13L	Yes	5	R13W	Yes	5	R13D	Yes	5	R13	Yes	5
R14L	Yes	6	R14W	Yes	6	R14D	Yes	6	R14	Yes	6
R15L	Yes	7	R15W	Yes	7	R15D	Yes	7	R15	Yes	7

3.1.1.2 Opcode Column in the Instruction Summary Table (Instructions with VEX prefix)

In the Instruction Summary Table, the Opcode column presents each instruction encoded using the VEX prefix in following form (including the modR/M byte if applicable, the immediate byte if applicable):

VEX.[128,256].[66,F2,F3].OF/OF3A/OF38.[W0,W1] opcode [/r] [/ib,/is4]

- **VEX** — Indicates the presence of the VEX prefix is required. The VEX prefix can be encoded using the three-byte form (the first byte is C4H), or using the two-byte form (the first byte is C5H). The two-byte form of VEX only applies to those instructions that do not require the following fields to be encoded: VEX.mmmmm, VEX.W, VEX.X, VEX.B. Refer to Section 2.3 for more detail on the VEX prefix.

The encoding of various sub-fields of the VEX prefix is described using the following notations:

- **128,256**: VEX.L field can be 0 (denoted by VEX.128 or VEX.LZ) or 1 (denoted by VEX.256). The VEX.L field can be encoded using either the 2-byte or 3-byte form of the VEX prefix. The presence of the notation VEX.256 or VEX.128 in the opcode column should be interpreted as follows:
 - If VEX.256 is present in the opcode column: The semantics of the instruction must be encoded with VEX.L = 1. An attempt to encode this instruction with VEX.L = 0 can result in one of two situations: (a) if VEX.128 version is defined, the processor will behave according to the defined VEX.128 behavior; (b) an #UD occurs if there is no VEX.128 version defined.
 - If VEX.128 is present in the opcode column but there is no VEX.256 version defined for the same opcode byte: Two situations apply: (a) For VEX-encoded, 128-bit SIMD integer instructions, software must encode the instruction with VEX.L = 0. The processor will treat the opcode byte encoded with VEX.L = 1 by causing an #UD exception; (b) For VEX-encoded, 128-bit packed floating-point instructions, software must encode the instruction with VEX.L = 0. The processor will treat the opcode byte encoded with VEX.L = 1 by causing an #UD exception (e.g. VMOVLPS).
 - If VEX.LIG is present in the opcode column: The VEX.L value is ignored. This generally applies to VEX-encoded scalar SIMD floating-point instructions. Scalar SIMD floating-point instruction can be distinguished from the mnemonic of the instruction. Generally, the last two letters of the instruction mnemonic would be either "SS", "SD", or "SI" for SIMD floating-point conversion instructions.
 - If VEX.LZ is present in the opcode column: The VEX.L must be encoded to be 0B, an #UD occurs if VEX.L is not zero.
- **66,F2,F3**: The presence or absence of these values map to the VEX.pp field encodings. If absent, this corresponds to VEX.pp=00B. If present, the corresponding VEX.pp value affects the "opcode" byte in the

same way as if a SIMD prefix (66H, F2H or F3H) does to the ensuing opcode byte. Thus a non-zero encoding of VEX.pp may be considered as an implied 66H/F2H/F3H prefix. The VEX.pp field may be encoded using either the 2-byte or 3-byte form of the VEX prefix.

- **0F,0F3A,0F38**: The presence maps to a valid encoding of the VEX.mmmmm field. Only three encoded values of VEX.mmmmm are defined as valid, corresponding to the escape byte sequence of 0FH, 0F3AH and 0F38H. The effect of a valid VEX.mmmmm encoding on the ensuing opcode byte is same as if the corresponding escape byte sequence on the ensuing opcode byte for non-VEX encoded instructions. Thus a valid encoding of VEX.mmmmm may be consider as an implies escape byte sequence of either 0FH, 0F3AH or 0F38H. The VEX.mmmmm field must be encoded using the 3-byte form of VEX prefix.
- **0F,0F3A,0F38 and 2-byte/3-byte VEX**: The presence of 0F3A and 0F38 in the opcode column implies that opcode can only be encoded by the three-byte form of VEX. The presence of 0F in the opcode column does not preclude the opcode to be encoded by the two-byte of VEX if the semantics of the opcode does not require any subfield of VEX not present in the two-byte form of the VEX prefix.
- **W0**: VEX.W=0.
- **W1**: VEX.W=1.
- The presence of W0/W1 in the opcode column applies to two situations: (a) it is treated as an extended opcode bit, (b) the instruction semantics support an operand size promotion to 64-bit of a general-purpose register operand or a 32-bit memory operand. The presence of W1 in the opcode column implies the opcode must be encoded using the 3-byte form of the VEX prefix. The presence of W0 in the opcode column does not preclude the opcode to be encoded using the C5H form of the VEX prefix, if the semantics of the opcode does not require other VEX subfields not present in the two-byte form of the VEX prefix. Please see Section 2.3 on the subfield definitions within VEX.
- **WIG**: can use C5H form (if not requiring VEX.mmmmm) or VEX.W value is ignored in the C4H form of VEX prefix.
- If WIG is present, the instruction may be encoded using either the two-byte form or the three-byte form of VEX. When encoding the instruction using the three-byte form of VEX, the value of VEX.W is ignored.
- **opcode** — Instruction opcode.
- **/is4** — An 8-bit immediate byte is present containing a source register specifier in either imm8[7:4] (for 64-bit mode) or imm8[6:4] (for 32-bit mode), and instruction-specific payload in imm8[3:0].
- In general, the encoding of VEX.R, VEX.X, VEX.B field are not shown explicitly in the opcode column. The encoding scheme of VEX.R, VEX.X, VEX.B fields must follow the rules defined in Section 2.3.

EVEX.[128,256,512,LIG].[66,F2,F3].0F/0F3A/0F38.[W0,W1,WIG] opcode [/r] [ib]

- **EVEX** — The EVEX prefix is encoded using the four-byte form (the first byte is 62H). Refer to Section 2.6.1 for more detail on the EVEX prefix.

The encoding of various sub-fields of the EVEX prefix is described using the following notations:

- **128, 256, 512, LIG**: This corresponds to the vector length; three values are allowed by EVEX: 512-bit, 256-bit and 128-bit. Alternatively, vector length is ignored (LIG) for certain instructions; this typically applies to scalar instructions operating on one data element of a vector register.
- **66,F2,F3**: The presence of these value maps to the EVEX.pp field encodings. The corresponding VEX.pp value affects the “opcode” byte in the same way as if a SIMD prefix (66H, F2H or F3H) does to the ensuing opcode byte. Thus a non-zero encoding of VEX.pp may be considered as an implied 66H/F2H/F3H prefix.
- **0F,0F3A,0F38**: The presence maps to a valid encoding of the EVEX.mmm field. Only three encoded values of EVEX.mmm are defined as valid, corresponding to the escape byte sequence of 0FH, 0F3AH and 0F38H. The effect of a valid EVEX.mmm encoding on the ensuing opcode byte is the same as if the corresponding escape byte sequence on the ensuing opcode byte for non-EVEX encoded instructions. Thus a valid encoding of EVEX.mmm may be considered as an implied escape byte sequence of either 0FH, 0F3AH or 0F38H.
- **W0**: EVEX.W=0.
- **W1**: EVEX.W=1.

- **WIG:** EVEX.W bit ignored
- **opcode** — Instruction opcode.
- In general, the encoding of EVEX.R and R', EVEX.X and X', and EVEX.B and B' fields are not shown explicitly in the opcode column.

NOTE

Previously, the terms NDS, NDD and DDS were used in instructions with an EVEX (or VEX) prefix. These terms indicated that the vvvv field was valid for encoding, and specified register usage. These terms are no longer necessary and are redundant with the instruction operand encoding tables provided with each instruction. The instruction operand encoding tables give explicit details on all operands, indicating where every operand is stored and if they are read or written. If vvvv is not listed as an operand in the instruction operand encoding table, then EVEX (or VEX) vvvv must be 0b1111.

3.1.1.3 Instruction Column in the Opcode Summary Table

The “Instruction” column gives the syntax of the instruction statement as it would appear in an ASM386 program. The following is a list of the symbols used to represent operands in the instruction statements:

- **rel8** — A relative address in the range from 128 bytes before the end of the instruction to 127 bytes after the end of the instruction.
- **rel16, rel32** — A relative address within the same code segment as the instruction assembled. The rel16 symbol applies to instructions with an operand-size attribute of 16 bits; the rel32 symbol applies to instructions with an operand-size attribute of 32 bits.
- **ptr16:16, ptr16:32** — A far pointer, typically to a code segment different from that of the instruction. The notation *16:16* indicates that the value of the pointer has two parts. The value to the left of the colon is a 16-bit selector or value destined for the code segment register. The value to the right corresponds to the offset within the destination segment. The ptr16:16 symbol is used when the instruction's operand-size attribute is 16 bits; the ptr16:32 symbol is used when the operand-size attribute is 32 bits.
- **r8** — One of the byte general-purpose registers: AL, CL, DL, BL, AH, CH, DH, BH, BPL, SPL, DIL and SIL; or one of the byte registers (R8L - R15L) available when using REX.R and 64-bit mode.
- **r16** — One of the word general-purpose registers: AX, CX, DX, BX, SP, BP, SI, DI; or one of the word registers (R8-R15) available when using REX.R and 64-bit mode.
- **r32** — One of the doubleword general-purpose registers: EAX, ECX, EDX, EBX, ESP, EBP, ESI, EDI; or one of the doubleword registers (R8D - R15D) available when using REX.R in 64-bit mode.
- **r64** — One of the quadword general-purpose registers: RAX, RBX, RCX, RDX, RDI, RSI, RBP, RSP, R8–R15. These are available when using REX.R and 64-bit mode.
- **imm8** — An immediate byte value. The imm8 symbol is a signed number between –128 and +127 inclusive. For instructions in which imm8 is combined with a word or doubleword operand, the immediate value is sign-extended to form a word or doubleword. The upper byte of the word is filled with the topmost bit of the immediate value.
- **imm16** — An immediate word value used for instructions whose operand-size attribute is 16 bits. This is a number between –32,768 and +32,767 inclusive.
- **imm32** — An immediate doubleword value used for instructions whose operand-size attribute is 32 bits. It allows the use of a number between +2,147,483,647 and –2,147,483,648 inclusive.
- **imm64** — An immediate quadword value used for instructions whose operand-size attribute is 64 bits. The value allows the use of a number between +9,223,372,036,854,775,807 and –9,223,372,036,854,775,808 inclusive.
- **r/m8** — A byte operand that is either the contents of a byte general-purpose register (AL, CL, DL, BL, AH, CH, DH, BH, BPL, SPL, DIL and SIL) or a byte from memory. Byte registers R8L - R15L are available using REX.R in 64-bit mode.
- **r/m16** — A word general-purpose register or memory operand used for instructions whose operand-size attribute is 16 bits. The word general-purpose registers are: AX, CX, DX, BX, SP, BP, SI, DI. The contents of

ADDPD—Add Packed Double-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 58 /r ADDPD xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE2	Add packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm2/mem to xmm1 and store result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 58 /r VADDPD xmm1,xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Add packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm3/mem to xmm2 and store result in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG 58 /r VADDPD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX	Add packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm3/mem to ymm2 and store result in ymm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 58 /r VADDPD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Add packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm3/m128/m64bcst to xmm2 and store result in xmm1 with writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W1 58 /r VADDPD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Add packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm3/m256/m64bcst to ymm2 and store result in ymm1 with writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W1 58 /r VADDPD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst{er}	C	V/V	AVX512F	Add packed double-precision floating-point values from zmm3/m512/m64bcst to zmm2 and store result in zmm1 with writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Add two, four or eight packed double-precision floating-point values from the first source operand to the second source operand, and stores the packed double-precision floating-point results in the destination operand.

EVEX encoded versions: The first source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register conditionally updated with writemask k1.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand can be a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

VEX.128 encoded version: the first source operand is a XMM register. The second source operand is an XMM register or 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is an XMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source can be an XMM register or an 128-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are unmodified.

ADDPS—Add Packed Single-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF 5B /r ADDPS xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE	Add packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm2/m128 to xmm1 and store result in xmm1.
VEX.128.OF.WIG 5B /r VADDPS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Add packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm3/m128 to xmm2 and store result in xmm1.
VEX.256.OF.WIG 5B /r VADDPS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX	Add packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm3/m256 to ymm2 and store result in ymm1.
EVEX.128.OF.W0 5B /r VADDPS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Add packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm3/m128/m32bcst to xmm2 and store result in xmm1 with writemask k1.
EVEX.256.OF.W0 5B /r VADDPS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Add packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm3/m256/m32bcst to ymm2 and store result in ymm1 with writemask k1.
EVEX.512.OF.W0 5B /r VADDPS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst {er}	C	V/V	AVX512F	Add packed single-precision floating-point values from zmm3/m512/m32bcst to zmm2 and store result in zmm1 with writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Add four, eight or sixteen packed single-precision floating-point values from the first source operand with the second source operand, and stores the packed single-precision floating-point results in the destination operand.

EVEX encoded versions: The first source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 32-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register conditionally updated with writemask k1.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand can be a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

VEX.128 encoded version: the first source operand is a XMM register. The second source operand is an XMM register or 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is an XMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source can be an XMM register or an 128-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are unmodified.

ADDSD—Add Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
F2 0F 58 /r ADDSD xmm1, xmm2/m64	A	V/V	SSE2	Add the low double-precision floating-point value from xmm2/mem to xmm1 and store the result in xmm1.
VEX.LIG.F2.0F.WIG 58 /r VADDSD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m64	B	V/V	AVX	Add the low double-precision floating-point value from xmm3/mem to xmm2 and store the result in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.F2.0F.W1 58 /r VADDSD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64{er}	C	V/V	AVX512F	Add the low double-precision floating-point value from xmm3/m64 to xmm2 and store the result in xmm1 with writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Adds the low double-precision floating-point values from the second source operand and the first source operand and stores the double-precision floating-point result in the destination operand.

The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 64-bit memory location. The first source and destination operands are XMM registers.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source and destination operands are the same. Bits (MAXVL-1:64) of the corresponding destination register remain unchanged.

EVEX and VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is encoded by EVEX.vvvv/VEX.vvvv. Bits (127:64) of the XMM register destination are copied from corresponding bits in the first source operand. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination register are zeroed.

EVEX version: The low quadword element of the destination is updated according to the writemask.

Software should ensure VADDSD is encoded with VEX.L=0. Encoding VADDSD with VEX.L=1 may encounter unpredictable behavior across different processor generations.

ADDSS—Add Scalar Single-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
F3 0F 58 /r ADDSS xmm1, xmm2/m32	A	V/V	SSE	Add the low single-precision floating-point value from xmm2/mem to xmm1 and store the result in xmm1.
VEX.LIG.F3.0F.WIG 58 /r VADDSS xmm1,xmm2, xmm3/m32	B	V/V	AVX	Add the low single-precision floating-point value from xmm3/mem to xmm2 and store the result in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.F3.0F.WO 58 /r VADDSS xmm1{k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m32{er}	C	V/V	AVX512F	Add the low single-precision floating-point value from xmm3/m32 to xmm2 and store the result in xmm1 with writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Adds the low single-precision floating-point values from the second source operand and the first source operand, and stores the double-precision floating-point result in the destination operand.

The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 64-bit memory location. The first source and destination operands are XMM registers.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source and destination operands are the same. Bits (MAXVL-1:32) of the corresponding the destination register remain unchanged.

EVEX and VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is encoded by EVEX.vvvv/VEX.vvvv. Bits (127:32) of the XMM register destination are copied from corresponding bits in the first source operand. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination register are zeroed.

EVEX version: The low doubleword element of the destination is updated according to the writemask.

Software should ensure VADDSS is encoded with VEX.L=0. Encoding VADDSS with VEX.L=1 may encounter unpredictable behavior across different processor generations.

ADDSUBPD—Packed Double-FP Add/Subtract

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32-bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F D0 /r ADDSUBPD <i>xmm1, xmm2/m128</i>	RM	V/V	SSE3	Add/subtract double-precision floating-point values from <i>xmm2/m128</i> to <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG D0 /r VADDSUBPD <i>xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128</i>	RVM	V/V	AVX	Add/subtract packed double-precision floating-point values from <i>xmm3/mem</i> to <i>xmm2</i> and stores result in <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG D0 /r VADDSUBPD <i>ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256</i>	RVM	V/V	AVX	Add / subtract packed double-precision floating-point values from <i>ymm3/mem</i> to <i>ymm2</i> and stores result in <i>ymm1</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RM	ModRM:reg (<i>r, w</i>)	ModRM:r/m (<i>r</i>)	NA	NA
RVM	ModRM:reg (<i>w</i>)	VEX.vvvv (<i>r</i>)	ModRM:r/m (<i>r</i>)	NA

Description

Adds odd-numbered double-precision floating-point values of the first source operand (second operand) with the corresponding double-precision floating-point values from the second source operand (third operand); stores the result in the odd-numbered values of the destination operand (first operand). Subtracts the even-numbered double-precision floating-point values from the second source operand from the corresponding double-precision floating values in the first source operand; stores the result into the even-numbered values of the destination operand.

In 64-bit mode, using a REX prefix in the form of REX.R permits this instruction to access additional registers (XMM8-XMM15).

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source can be an XMM register or an 128-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM register destination are unmodified. See Figure 3-3.

VEX.128 encoded version: the first source operand is an XMM register or 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is an XMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM register destination are zeroed.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand can be a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register.

ADDSUBPS—Packed Single-FP Add/Subtract

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32-bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
F2 0F D0 /r ADDSUBPS <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	RM	V/V	SSE3	Add/subtract single-precision floating-point values from <i>xmm2/m128</i> to <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.F2.0F.WIG D0 /r VADDSUBPS <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	RVM	V/V	AVX	Add/subtract single-precision floating-point values from <i>xmm3/mem</i> to <i>xmm2</i> and stores result in <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.256.F2.0F.WIG D0 /r VADDSUBPS <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	RVM	V/V	AVX	Add / subtract single-precision floating-point values from <i>ymm3/mem</i> to <i>ymm2</i> and stores result in <i>ymm1</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RM	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
RVM	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Adds odd-numbered single-precision floating-point values of the first source operand (second operand) with the corresponding single-precision floating-point values from the second source operand (third operand); stores the result in the odd-numbered values of the destination operand (first operand). Subtracts the even-numbered single-precision floating-point values from the second source operand from the corresponding single-precision floating values in the first source operand; stores the result into the even-numbered values of the destination operand.

In 64-bit mode, using a REX prefix in the form of REX.R permits this instruction to access additional registers (XMM8-XMM15).

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source can be an XMM register or an 128-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM register destination are unmodified. See Figure 3-4.

VEX.128 encoded version: the first source operand is an XMM register or 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is an XMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM register destination are zeroed.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand can be a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register.

AESDEC—Perform One Round of an AES Decryption Flow

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32-bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 38 DE /r AESDEC xmm1, xmm2/m128	RM	V/V	AES	Perform one round of an AES decryption flow, using the Equivalent Inverse Cipher, operating on a 128-bit data (state) from xmm1 with a 128-bit round key from xmm2/m128.
VEX.128.66.0F38.WIG DE /r VAESDEC xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	RVM	V/V	Both AES and AVX flags	Perform one round of an AES decryption flow, using the Equivalent Inverse Cipher, operating on a 128-bit data (state) from xmm2 with a 128-bit round key from xmm3/m128; store the result in xmm1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand2	Operand3	Operand4
RM	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
RVM	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

This instruction performs a single round of the AES decryption flow using the Equivalent Inverse Cipher, with the round key from the second source operand, operating on a 128-bit data (state) from the first source operand, and store the result in the destination operand.

Use the AESDEC instruction for all but the last decryption round. For the last decryption round, use the AESDECLAST instruction.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source operand and the destination operand are the same and must be an XMM register. The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand and the destination operand are XMM registers. The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination YMM register are zeroed.

Operation

AESDEC

```
STATE ← SRC1;
RoundKey ← SRC2;
STATE ← InvShiftRows( STATE );
STATE ← InvSubBytes( STATE );
STATE ← InvMixColumns( STATE );
DEST[127:0] ← STATE XOR RoundKey;
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] (Unmodified)
```

VAESDEC

```
STATE ← SRC1;
RoundKey ← SRC2;
STATE ← InvShiftRows( STATE );
STATE ← InvSubBytes( STATE );
STATE ← InvMixColumns( STATE );
DEST[127:0] ← STATE XOR RoundKey;
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0
```


AESDECLAST—Perform Last Round of an AES Decryption Flow

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32-bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 38 DF /r AESDECLAST xmm1, xmm2/m128	RM	V/V	AES	Perform the last round of an AES decryption flow, using the Equivalent Inverse Cipher, operating on a 128-bit data (state) from xmm1 with a 128-bit round key from xmm2/m128.
VEX.128.66.0F38.WIG DF /r VAESDECLAST xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	RVM	V/V	Both AES and AVX flags	Perform the last round of an AES decryption flow, using the Equivalent Inverse Cipher, operating on a 128-bit data (state) from xmm2 with a 128-bit round key from xmm3/m128; store the result in xmm1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand2	Operand3	Operand4
RM	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
RVM	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

This instruction performs the last round of the AES decryption flow using the Equivalent Inverse Cipher, with the round key from the second source operand, operating on a 128-bit data (state) from the first source operand, and store the result in the destination operand.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source operand and the destination operand are the same and must be an XMM register. The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand and the destination operand are XMM registers. The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination YMM register are zeroed.

Operation

AESDECLAST

```
STATE ← SRC1;
RoundKey ← SRC2;
STATE ← InvShiftRows( STATE );
STATE ← InvSubBytes( STATE );
DEST[127:0] ← STATE XOR RoundKey;
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] (Unmodified)
```

VAESDECLAST

```
STATE ← SRC1;
RoundKey ← SRC2;
STATE ← InvShiftRows( STATE );
STATE ← InvSubBytes( STATE );
DEST[127:0] ← STATE XOR RoundKey;
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0
```

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

(V)AESDECLAST: `__m128i _mm_aesdeclast (__m128i, __m128i)`

AESENC—Perform One Round of an AES Encryption Flow

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32-bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 38 DC /r AESENC xmm1, xmm2/m128	RM	V/V	AES	Perform one round of an AES encryption flow, operating on a 128-bit data (state) from xmm1 with a 128-bit round key from xmm2/m128.
VEX.128.66.0F38.WIG DC /r VAESENC xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	RVM	V/V	Both AES and AVX flags	Perform one round of an AES encryption flow, operating on a 128-bit data (state) from xmm2 with a 128-bit round key from the xmm3/m128; store the result in xmm1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand2	Operand3	Operand4
RM	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
RVM	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

This instruction performs a single round of an AES encryption flow using a round key from the second source operand, operating on 128-bit data (state) from the first source operand, and store the result in the destination operand.

Use the AESENC instruction for all but the last encryption rounds. For the last encryption round, use the AESENC-CLAST instruction.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source operand and the destination operand are the same and must be an XMM register. The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand and the destination operand are XMM registers. The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination YMM register are zeroed.

Operation

AESENC

```
STATE ← SRC1;
RoundKey ← SRC2;
STATE ← ShiftRows( STATE );
STATE ← SubBytes( STATE );
STATE ← MixColumns( STATE );
DEST[127:0] ← STATE XOR RoundKey;
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] (Unmodified)
```

VAESENC

```
STATE ← SRC1;
RoundKey ← SRC2;
STATE ← ShiftRows( STATE );
STATE ← SubBytes( STATE );
STATE ← MixColumns( STATE );
DEST[127:0] ← STATE XOR RoundKey;
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0
```

AESENCLAST—Perform Last Round of an AES Encryption Flow

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32-bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 38 DD /r AESENCLAST xmm1, xmm2/m128	RM	V/V	AES	Perform the last round of an AES encryption flow, operating on a 128-bit data (state) from xmm1 with a 128-bit round key from xmm2/m128.
VEX.128.66.0F38.WIG DD /r VAESENCLAST xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	RVM	V/V	Both AES and AVX flags	Perform the last round of an AES encryption flow, operating on a 128-bit data (state) from xmm2 with a 128 bit round key from xmm3/m128; store the result in xmm1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand2	Operand3	Operand4
RM	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
RVM	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

This instruction performs the last round of an AES encryption flow using a round key from the second source operand, operating on 128-bit data (state) from the first source operand, and store the result in the destination operand.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source operand and the destination operand are the same and must be an XMM register. The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand and the destination operand are XMM registers. The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination YMM register are zeroed.

Operation**AESENCLAST**

```
STATE ← SRC1;
RoundKey ← SRC2;
STATE ← ShiftRows( STATE );
STATE ← SubBytes( STATE );
DEST[127:0] ← STATE XOR RoundKey;
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] (Unmodified)
```

VAESENCLAST

```
STATE ← SRC1;
RoundKey ← SRC2;
STATE ← ShiftRows( STATE );
STATE ← SubBytes( STATE );
DEST[127:0] ← STATE XOR RoundKey;
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0
```

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

(V)AESENCLAST: `__m128i _mm_aesenclast (__m128i, __m128i)`

ANDN — Logical AND NOT

Opcode/Instruction	Op/En	64/32-bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.LZ.0F38.W0 F2 /r ANDN r32a, r32b, r/m32	RVM	V/V	BMI1	Bitwise AND of inverted r32b with r/m32, store result in r32a.
VEX.LZ.0F38.W1 F2 /r ANDN r64a, r64b, r/m64	RVM	V/NE	BMI1	Bitwise AND of inverted r64b with r/m64, store result in r64a.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RVM	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a bitwise logical AND of inverted second operand (the first source operand) with the third operand (the second source operand). The result is stored in the first operand (destination operand).

This instruction is not supported in real mode and virtual-8086 mode. The operand size is always 32 bits if not in 64-bit mode. In 64-bit mode operand size 64 requires VEX.W1. VEX.W1 is ignored in non-64-bit modes. An attempt to execute this instruction with VEX.L not equal to 0 will cause #UD.

Operation

DEST ← (NOT SRC1) bitwiseAND SRC2;

SF ← DEST[OperandSize - 1];

ZF ← (DEST = 0);

Flags Affected

SF and ZF are updated based on result. OF and CF flags are cleared. AF and PF flags are undefined.

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

Auto-generated from high-level language.

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

See Section 2.5.1, "Exception Conditions for VEX-Encoded GPR Instructions", Table 2-29.

ANDNPD—Bitwise Logical AND NOT of Packed Double Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 55 /r ANDNPD xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE2	Return the bitwise logical AND NOT of packed double-precision floating-point values in xmm1 and xmm2/mem.
VEX.128.66.0F 55 /r VANDNPD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Return the bitwise logical AND NOT of packed double-precision floating-point values in xmm2 and xmm3/mem.
VEX.256.66.0F 55/r VANDNPD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX	Return the bitwise logical AND NOT of packed double-precision floating-point values in ymm2 and ymm3/mem.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 55 /r VANDNPD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512DQ	Return the bitwise logical AND NOT of packed double-precision floating-point values in xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W1 55 /r VANDNPD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512DQ	Return the bitwise logical AND NOT of packed double-precision floating-point values in ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W1 55 /r VANDNPD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512DQ	Return the bitwise logical AND NOT of packed double-precision floating-point values in zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst subject to writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a bitwise logical AND NOT of the two, four or eight packed double-precision floating-point values from the first source operand and the second source operand, and stores the result in the destination operand.

EVEX encoded versions: The first source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location, or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register conditionally updated with writemask k1.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand is a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is an XMM register. The second source operand is an XMM register or 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is an XMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source can be an XMM register or an 128-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding register destination are unmodified.

ANDNPS—Bitwise Logical AND NOT of Packed Single Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F 55 /r ANDNPS xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE	Return the bitwise logical AND NOT of packed single-precision floating-point values in xmm1 and xmm2/mem.
VEX.128.0F 55 /r VANDNPS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Return the bitwise logical AND NOT of packed single-precision floating-point values in xmm2 and xmm3/mem.
VEX.256.0F 55 /r VANDNPS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX	Return the bitwise logical AND NOT of packed single-precision floating-point values in ymm2 and ymm3/mem.
EVEX.128.0F.W0 55 /r VANDNPS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512DQ	Return the bitwise logical AND of packed single-precision floating-point values in xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.0F.W0 55 /r VANDNPS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512DQ	Return the bitwise logical AND of packed single-precision floating-point values in ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.0F.W0 55 /r VANDNPS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512DQ	Return the bitwise logical AND of packed single-precision floating-point values in zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst subject to writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a bitwise logical AND NOT of the four, eight or sixteen packed single-precision floating-point values from the first source operand and the second source operand, and stores the result in the destination operand.

EVEX encoded versions: The first source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location, or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 32-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register conditionally updated with writemask k1.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand is a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is an XMM register. The second source operand is an XMM register or 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is an XMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source can be an XMM register or an 128-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are unmodified.

ANDPD—Bitwise Logical AND of Packed Double Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 54 /r ANDPD xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE2	Return the bitwise logical AND of packed double-precision floating-point values in xmm1 and xmm2/mem.
VEX.128.66.0F 54 /r VANDPD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Return the bitwise logical AND of packed double-precision floating-point values in xmm2 and xmm3/mem.
VEX.256.66.0F 54 /r VANDPD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX	Return the bitwise logical AND of packed double-precision floating-point values in ymm2 and ymm3/mem.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 54 /r VANDPD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512DQ	Return the bitwise logical AND of packed double-precision floating-point values in xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W1 54 /r VANDPD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512DQ	Return the bitwise logical AND of packed double-precision floating-point values in ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W1 54 /r VANDPD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512DQ	Return the bitwise logical AND of packed double-precision floating-point values in zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst subject to writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a bitwise logical AND of the two, four or eight packed double-precision floating-point values from the first source operand and the second source operand, and stores the result in the destination operand.

EVEX encoded versions: The first source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location, or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register conditionally updated with writemask k1.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand is a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is an XMM register. The second source operand is an XMM register or 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is an XMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source can be an XMM register or an 128-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding register destination are unmodified.

ANDPS—Bitwise Logical AND of Packed Single Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F 54 /r ANDPS xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE	Return the bitwise logical AND of packed single-precision floating-point values in xmm1 and xmm2/mem.
VEX.128.0F 54 /r VANDPS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Return the bitwise logical AND of packed single-precision floating-point values in xmm2 and xmm3/mem.
VEX.256.0F 54 /r VANDPS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX	Return the bitwise logical AND of packed single-precision floating-point values in ymm2 and ymm3/mem.
EVEX.128.0F.W0 54 /r VANDPS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512DQ	Return the bitwise logical AND of packed single-precision floating-point values in xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.0F.W0 54 /r VANDPS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512DQ	Return the bitwise logical AND of packed single-precision floating-point values in ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.0F.W0 54 /r VANDPS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512DQ	Return the bitwise logical AND of packed single-precision floating-point values in zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst subject to writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a bitwise logical AND of the four, eight or sixteen packed single-precision floating-point values from the first source operand and the second source operand, and stores the result in the destination operand.

EVEX encoded versions: The first source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location, or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 32-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register conditionally updated with writemask k1.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand is a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is an XMM register. The second source operand is an XMM register or 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is an XMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source can be an XMM register or an 128-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are unmodified.

BEXTR – Bit Field Extract

Opcode/Instruction	Op/En	64/32-bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.LZ.0F38.W0 F7 /r BEXTR r32a, r/m32, r32b	RMV	V/V	BMI1	Contiguous bitwise extract from r/m32 using r32b as control; store result in r32a.
VEX.LZ.0F38.W1 F7 /r BEXTR r64a, r/m64, r64b	RMV	V/N.E.	BMI1	Contiguous bitwise extract from r/m64 using r64b as control; store result in r64a

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RMV	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	VEX.vvvv (r)	NA

Description

Extracts contiguous bits from the first source operand (the second operand) using an index value and length value specified in the second source operand (the third operand). Bit 7:0 of the second source operand specifies the starting bit position of bit extraction. A START value exceeding the operand size will not extract any bits from the second source operand. Bit 15:8 of the second source operand specifies the maximum number of bits (LENGTH) beginning at the START position to extract. Only bit positions up to (OperandSize - 1) of the first source operand are extracted. The extracted bits are written to the destination register, starting from the least significant bit. All higher order bits in the destination operand (starting at bit position LENGTH) are zeroed. The destination register is cleared if no bits are extracted.

This instruction is not supported in real mode and virtual-8086 mode. The operand size is always 32 bits if not in 64-bit mode. In 64-bit mode operand size 64 requires VEX.W1. VEX.W1 is ignored in non-64-bit modes. An attempt to execute this instruction with VEX.L not equal to 0 will cause #UD.

Operation

```
START ← SRC2[7:0];
LEN ← SRC2[15:8];
TEMP ← ZERO_EXTEND_TO_512 (SRC1 );
DEST ← ZERO_EXTEND(TEMP[START+LEN -1: START]);
ZF ← (DEST = 0);
```

Flags Affected

ZF is updated based on the result. AF, SF, and PF are undefined. All other flags are cleared.

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

```
BEXTR:    unsigned __int32 _bextr_u32(unsigned __int32 src, unsigned __int32 start, unsigned __int32 len);
```

```
BEXTR:    unsigned __int64 _bextr_u64(unsigned __int64 src, unsigned __int32 start, unsigned __int32 len);
```

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

See Section 2.5.1, "Exception Conditions for VEX-Encoded GPR Instructions", Table 2-29; additionally #UD If VEX.W = 1.

BLENDPD — Blend Packed Double Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32-bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 3A 0D /r ib BLENDPD <i>xmm1, xmm2/m128, imm8</i>	RMI	V/V	SSE4_1	Select packed DP-FP values from <i>xmm1</i> and <i>xmm2/m128</i> from mask specified in <i>imm8</i> and store the values into <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F3A.WIG OD /r ib VBLENDPD <i>xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128, imm8</i>	RVMI	V/V	AVX	Select packed double-precision floating-point Values from <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/m128</i> from mask in <i>imm8</i> and store the values in <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F3A.WIG OD /r ib VBLENDPD <i>ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256, imm8</i>	RVMI	V/V	AVX	Select packed double-precision floating-point Values from <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/m256</i> from mask in <i>imm8</i> and store the values in <i>ymm1</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RMI	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	imm8	NA
RVMI	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	imm8[3:0]

Description

Double-precision floating-point values from the second source operand (third operand) are conditionally merged with values from the first source operand (second operand) and written to the destination operand (first operand). The immediate bits [3:0] determine whether the corresponding double-precision floating-point value in the destination is copied from the second source or first source. If a bit in the mask, corresponding to a word, is "1", then the double-precision floating-point value in the second source operand is copied, else the value in the first source operand is copied.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source can be an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM register destination are unmodified.

VEX.128 encoded version: the first source operand is an XMM register. The second source operand is an XMM register or 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is an XMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM register destination are zeroed.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand can be a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register.

Operation

BLENDPD (128-bit Legacy SSE version)

```
IF (IMM8[0] = 0) THEN DEST[63:0] ← DEST[63:0]
    ELSE DEST [63:0] ← SRC[63:0] FI
IF (IMM8[1] = 0) THEN DEST[127:64] ← DEST[127:64]
    ELSE DEST [127:64] ← SRC[127:64] FI
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] (Unmodified)
```

VBLENDPD (VEX.128 encoded version)

```
IF (IMM8[0] = 0) THEN DEST[63:0] ← SRC1[63:0]
    ELSE DEST [63:0] ← SRC2[63:0] FI
IF (IMM8[1] = 0) THEN DEST[127:64] ← SRC1[127:64]
    ELSE DEST [127:64] ← SRC2[127:64] FI
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0
```

BLENDPS — Blend Packed Single Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32-bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 3A 0C /r ib BLENDPS xmm1, xmm2/m128, imm8	RMI	V/V	SSE4_1	Select packed single precision floating-point values from <i>xmm1</i> and <i>xmm2/m128</i> from mask specified in <i>imm8</i> and store the values into <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F3A.WIG 0C /r ib VBLENDPS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128, imm8	RVMI	V/V	AVX	Select packed single-precision floating-point values from <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/m128</i> from mask in <i>imm8</i> and store the values in <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F3A.WIG 0C /r ib VBLENDPS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256, imm8	RVMI	V/V	AVX	Select packed single-precision floating-point values from <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/m256</i> from mask in <i>imm8</i> and store the values in <i>ymm1</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RMI	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	imm8	NA
RVMI	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	imm8

Description

Packed single-precision floating-point values from the second source operand (third operand) are conditionally merged with values from the first source operand (second operand) and written to the destination operand (first operand). The immediate bits [7:0] determine whether the corresponding single precision floating-point value in the destination is copied from the second source or first source. If a bit in the mask, corresponding to a word, is "1", then the single-precision floating-point value in the second source operand is copied, else the value in the first source operand is copied.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source can be an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM register destination are unmodified.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is an XMM register. The second source operand is an XMM register or 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is an XMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM register destination are zeroed.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand can be a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register.

Operation

BLENDPS (128-bit Legacy SSE version)

```
IF (IMM8[0] = 0) THEN DEST[31:0] ← DEST[31:0]
    ELSE DEST [31:0] ← SRC[31:0] FI
IF (IMM8[1] = 0) THEN DEST[63:32] ← DEST[63:32]
    ELSE DEST [63:32] ← SRC[63:32] FI
IF (IMM8[2] = 0) THEN DEST[95:64] ← DEST[95:64]
    ELSE DEST [95:64] ← SRC[95:64] FI
IF (IMM8[3] = 0) THEN DEST[127:96] ← DEST[127:96]
    ELSE DEST [127:96] ← SRC[127:96] FI
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] (Unmodified)
```

BLENDVDP – Variable Blend Packed Double Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32-bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 38 15 /r BLENDVDP xmm1, xmm2/m128, <XMM0>	RMO	V/V	SSE4_1	Select packed DP FP values from <i>xmm1</i> and <i>xmm2</i> from mask specified in <i>XMM0</i> and store the values in <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F3A.W0 4B /r /is4 VBLENDVDP xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128, xmm4	RVMR	V/V	AVX	Conditionally copy double-precision floating-point values from <i>xmm2</i> or <i>xmm3/m128</i> to <i>xmm1</i> , based on mask bits in the mask operand, <i>xmm4</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F3A.W0 4B /r /is4 VBLENDVDP ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256, ymm4	RVMR	V/V	AVX	Conditionally copy double-precision floating-point values from <i>ymm2</i> or <i>ymm3/m256</i> to <i>ymm1</i> , based on mask bits in the mask operand, <i>ymm4</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RMO	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	implicit XMM0	NA
RVMR	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	imm8[7:4]

Description

Conditionally copy each quadword data element of double-precision floating-point value from the second source operand and the first source operand depending on mask bits defined in the mask register operand. The mask bits are the most significant bit in each quadword element of the mask register.

Each quadword element of the destination operand is copied from:

- the corresponding quadword element in the second source operand, if a mask bit is "1"; or
- the corresponding quadword element in the first source operand, if a mask bit is "0"

The register assignment of the implicit mask operand for BLENDVDP is defined to be the architectural register XMM0.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source operand and the destination operand is the same. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged. The mask register operand is implicitly defined to be the architectural register XMM0. An attempt to execute BLENDVDP with a VEX prefix will cause #UD.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand and the destination operand are XMM registers. The second source operand is an XMM register or 128-bit memory location. The mask operand is the third source register, and encoded in bits[7:4] of the immediate byte(imm8). The bits[3:0] of imm8 are ignored. In 32-bit mode, imm8[7] is ignored. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM register (destination register) are zeroed.

VEX.W must be 0, otherwise, the instruction will #UD.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand and destination operand are YMM registers. The second source operand can be a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The mask operand is the third source register, and encoded in bits[7:4] of the immediate byte(imm8). The bits[3:0] of imm8 are ignored. In 32-bit mode, imm8[7] is ignored. VEX.W must be 0, otherwise, the instruction will #UD.

VBLENDVDP permits the mask to be any XMM or YMM register. In contrast, BLENDVDP treats XMM0 implicitly as the mask and do not support non-destructive destination operation.

BLENDVPS – Variable Blend Packed Single Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32-bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 38 14 /r BLENDVPS <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i> , < <i>XMM0</i> >	RM0	V/V	SSE4_1	Select packed single precision floating-point values from <i>xmm1</i> and <i>xmm2/m128</i> from mask specified in <i>XMM0</i> and store the values into <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F3A.W0 4A /r /is4 VBLENDVPS <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i> , <i>xmm4</i>	RVMR	V/V	AVX	Conditionally copy single-precision floating-point values from <i>xmm2</i> or <i>xmm3/m128</i> to <i>xmm1</i> , based on mask bits in the specified mask operand, <i>xmm4</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F3A.W0 4A /r /is4 VBLENDVPS <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i> , <i>ymm4</i>	RVMR	V/V	AVX	Conditionally copy single-precision floating-point values from <i>ymm2</i> or <i>ymm3/m256</i> to <i>ymm1</i> , based on mask bits in the specified mask register, <i>ymm4</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RM0	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	implicit XMM0	NA
RVMR	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	imm8[7:4]

Description

Conditionally copy each dword data element of single-precision floating-point value from the second source operand and the first source operand depending on mask bits defined in the mask register operand. The mask bits are the most significant bit in each dword element of the mask register.

Each quadword element of the destination operand is copied from:

- the corresponding dword element in the second source operand, if a mask bit is “1”; or
- the corresponding dword element in the first source operand, if a mask bit is “0”

The register assignment of the implicit mask operand for BLENDVPS is defined to be the architectural register XMM0.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source operand and the destination operand is the same. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged. The mask register operand is implicitly defined to be the architectural register XMM0. An attempt to execute BLENDVPS with a VEX prefix will cause #UD.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand and the destination operand are XMM registers. The second source operand is an XMM register or 128-bit memory location. The mask operand is the third source register, and encoded in bits[7:4] of the immediate byte(imm8). The bits[3:0] of imm8 are ignored. In 32-bit mode, imm8[7] is ignored. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM register (destination register) are zeroed.

VEX.W must be 0, otherwise, the instruction will #UD.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand and destination operand are YMM registers. The second source operand can be a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The mask operand is the third source register, and encoded in bits[7:4] of the immediate byte(imm8). The bits[3:0] of imm8 are ignored. In 32-bit mode, imm8[7] is ignored. VEX.W must be 0, otherwise, the instruction will #UD.

VBLENDVPS permits the mask to be any XMM or YMM register. In contrast, BLENDVPS treats XMM0 implicitly as the mask and do not support non-destructive destination operation.

BLSI – Extract Lowest Set Isolated Bit

Opcode/Instruction	Op/En	64/32-bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.LZ.0F38.W0 F3 /3 BLSI r32, r/m32	VM	V/V	BMI1	Extract lowest set bit from r/m32 and set that bit in r32.
VEX.LZ.0F38.W1 F3 /3 BLSI r64, r/m64	VM	V/N.E.	BMI1	Extract lowest set bit from r/m64, and set that bit in r64.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
VM	VEX.vvvv (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA

Description

Extracts the lowest set bit from the source operand and set the corresponding bit in the destination register. All other bits in the destination operand are zeroed. If no bits are set in the source operand, BLSI sets all the bits in the destination to 0 and sets ZF and CF.

This instruction is not supported in real mode and virtual-8086 mode. The operand size is always 32 bits if not in 64-bit mode. In 64-bit mode operand size 64 requires VEX.W1. VEX.W1 is ignored in non-64-bit modes. An attempt to execute this instruction with VEX.L not equal to 0 will cause #UD.

Operation

```
temp ← (-SRC) bitwiseAND (SRC);
SF ← temp[OperandSize - 1];
ZF ← (temp = 0);
IF SRC = 0
    CF ← 0;
ELSE
    CF ← 1;
FI
DEST ← temp;
```

Flags Affected

ZF and SF are updated based on the result. CF is set if the source is not zero. OF flags are cleared. AF and PF flags are undefined.

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

```
BLSI:    unsigned __int32 _bsi_u32(unsigned __int32 src);
```

```
BLSI:    unsigned __int64 _bsi_u64(unsigned __int64 src);
```

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

See Section 2.5.1, “Exception Conditions for VEX-Encoded GPR Instructions”, Table 2-29.

BLSMSK – Get Mask Up to Lowest Set Bit

Opcode/Instruction	Op/En	64/32-bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.LZ.OF38.W0 F3 /2 BLSMSK r32, r/m32	VM	V/V	BMI1	Set all lower bits in r32 to “1” starting from bit 0 to lowest set bit in r/m32.
VEX.LZ.OF38.W1 F3 /2 BLSMSK r64, r/m64	VM	V/N.E.	BMI1	Set all lower bits in r64 to “1” starting from bit 0 to lowest set bit in r/m64.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
VM	VEX.vvvv (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA

Description

Sets all the lower bits of the destination operand to “1” up to and including lowest set bit (=1) in the source operand. If source operand is zero, BLSMSK sets all bits of the destination operand to 1 and also sets CF to 1.

This instruction is not supported in real mode and virtual-8086 mode. The operand size is always 32 bits if not in 64-bit mode. In 64-bit mode operand size 64 requires VEX.W1. VEX.W1 is ignored in non-64-bit modes. An attempt to execute this instruction with VEX.L not equal to 0 will cause #UD.

Operation

```
temp ← (SRC-1) XOR (SRC);
SF ← temp[OperandSize -1];
ZF ← 0;
IF SRC = 0
    CF ← 1;
ELSE
    CF ← 0;
FI
DEST ← temp;
```

Flags Affected

SF is updated based on the result. CF is set if the source is zero. ZF and OF flags are cleared. AF and PF flag are undefined.

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

BLSMSK: `unsigned __int32 _blsmask_u32(unsigned __int32 src);`

BLSMSK: `unsigned __int64 _blsmask_u64(unsigned __int64 src);`

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

See Section 2.5.1, “Exception Conditions for VEX-Encoded GPR Instructions”, Table 2-29.

BLSR — Reset Lowest Set Bit

Opcode/Instruction	Op/En	64/32-bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.LZ.0F38.W0 F3 /1 BLSR r32, r/m32	VM	V/V	BMI1	Reset lowest set bit of r/m32, keep all other bits of r/m32 and write result to r32.
VEX.LZ.0F38.W1 F3 /1 BLSR r64, r/m64	VM	V/N.E.	BMI1	Reset lowest set bit of r/m64, keep all other bits of r/m64 and write result to r64.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
VM	VEX.vvvv (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA

Description

Copies all bits from the source operand to the destination operand and resets (=0) the bit position in the destination operand that corresponds to the lowest set bit of the source operand. If the source operand is zero BLSR sets CF.

This instruction is not supported in real mode and virtual-8086 mode. The operand size is always 32 bits if not in 64-bit mode. In 64-bit mode operand size 64 requires VEX.W1. VEX.W1 is ignored in non-64-bit modes. An attempt to execute this instruction with VEX.L not equal to 0 will cause #UD.

Operation

```
temp ← (SRC-1) bitwiseAND ( SRC );
SF ← temp[OperandSize - 1];
ZF ← (temp = 0);
IF SRC = 0
    CF ← 1;
ELSE
    CF ← 0;
FI
DEST ← temp;
```

Flags Affected

ZF and SF flags are updated based on the result. CF is set if the source is zero. OF flag is cleared. AF and PF flags are undefined.

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

BLSR: unsigned __int32 _blsr_u32(unsigned __int32 src);

BLSR: unsigned __int64 _blsr_u64(unsigned __int64 src);

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

See Section 2.5.1, "Exception Conditions for VEX-Encoded GPR Instructions", Table 2-29.

BZHI — Zero High Bits Starting with Specified Bit Position

Opcode/Instruction	Op/En	64/32-bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.LZ.0F38.W0 F5 /r BZHI r32a, r/m32, r32b	RMV	V/V	BMI2	Zero bits in r/m32 starting with the position in r32b, write result to r32a.
VEX.LZ.0F38.W1 F5 /r BZHI r64a, r/m64, r64b	RMV	V/N.E.	BMI2	Zero bits in r/m64 starting with the position in r64b, write result to r64a.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RMV	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	VEX.vvvv (r)	NA

Description

BZHI copies the bits of the first source operand (the second operand) into the destination operand (the first operand) and clears the higher bits in the destination according to the INDEX value specified by the second source operand (the third operand). The INDEX is specified by bits 7:0 of the second source operand. The INDEX value is saturated at the value of OperandSize - 1. CF is set, if the number contained in the 8 low bits of the third operand is greater than OperandSize - 1.

This instruction is not supported in real mode and virtual-8086 mode. The operand size is always 32 bits if not in 64-bit mode. In 64-bit mode operand size 64 requires VEX.W1. VEX.W1 is ignored in non-64-bit modes. An attempt to execute this instruction with VEX.L not equal to 0 will cause #UD.

Operation

```

N ← SRC2[7:0]
DEST ← SRC1
IF (N < OperandSize)
    DEST[OperandSize-1:N] ← 0
FI
IF (N > OperandSize - 1)
    CF ← 1
ELSE
    CF ← 0
FI

```

Flags Affected

ZF, CF and SF flags are updated based on the result. OF flag is cleared. AF and PF flags are undefined.

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

BZHI: `unsigned __int32 _bzhi_u32(unsigned __int32 src, unsigned __int32 index);`

BZHI: `unsigned __int64 _bzhi_u64(unsigned __int64 src, unsigned __int32 index);`

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

See Section 2.5.1, "Exception Conditions for VEX-Encoded GPR Instructions", Table 2-29.

CALL—Call Procedure

Opcode	Instruction	Op/En	64-bit Mode	Compat/Leg Mode	Description
E8 <i>cw</i>	CALL <i>rel16</i>	M	N.S.	Valid	Call near, relative, displacement relative to next instruction.
E8 <i>cd</i>	CALL <i>rel32</i>	M	Valid	Valid	Call near, relative, displacement relative to next instruction. 32-bit displacement sign extended to 64-bits in 64-bit mode.
FF <i>12</i>	CALL <i>r/m16</i>	M	N.E.	Valid	Call near, absolute indirect, address given in <i>r/m16</i> .
FF <i>12</i>	CALL <i>r/m32</i>	M	N.E.	Valid	Call near, absolute indirect, address given in <i>r/m32</i> .
FF <i>12</i>	CALL <i>r/m64</i>	M	Valid	N.E.	Call near, absolute indirect, address given in <i>r/m64</i> .
9A <i>cd</i>	CALL <i>ptr16:16</i>	D	Invalid	Valid	Call far, absolute, address given in operand.
9A <i>cp</i>	CALL <i>ptr16:32</i>	D	Invalid	Valid	Call far, absolute, address given in operand.
FF <i>13</i>	CALL <i>m16:16</i>	M	Valid	Valid	Call far, absolute indirect address given in <i>m16:16</i> . In 32-bit mode: if selector points to a gate, then RIP = 32-bit zero extended displacement taken from gate; else RIP = zero extended 16-bit offset from far pointer referenced in the instruction.
FF <i>13</i>	CALL <i>m16:32</i>	M	Valid	Valid	In 64-bit mode: If selector points to a gate, then RIP = 64-bit displacement taken from gate; else RIP = zero extended 32-bit offset from far pointer referenced in the instruction.
REX.W + FF <i>13</i>	CALL <i>m16:64</i>	M	Valid	N.E.	In 64-bit mode: If selector points to a gate, then RIP = 64-bit displacement taken from gate; else RIP = 64-bit offset from far pointer referenced in the instruction.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
D	Offset	NA	NA	NA
M	ModRM:r/m (<i>r</i>)	NA	NA	NA

Description

Saves procedure linking information on the stack and branches to the called procedure specified using the target operand. The target operand specifies the address of the first instruction in the called procedure. The operand can be an immediate value, a general-purpose register, or a memory location.

This instruction can be used to execute four types of calls:

- **Near Call** — A call to a procedure in the current code segment (the segment currently pointed to by the CS register), sometimes referred to as an intra-segment call.
- **Far Call** — A call to a procedure located in a different segment than the current code segment, sometimes referred to as an inter-segment call.
- **Inter-privilege-level far call** — A far call to a procedure in a segment at a different privilege level than that of the currently executing program or procedure.
- **Task switch** — A call to a procedure located in a different task.

The latter two call types (inter-privilege-level call and task switch) can only be executed in protected mode. See “Calling Procedures Using Call and RET” in Chapter 6 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 1*, for additional information on near, far, and inter-privilege-level calls. See Chapter 7, “Task Management,” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*, for information on performing task switches with the CALL instruction.

Near Call. When executing a near call, the processor pushes the value of the EIP register (which contains the offset of the instruction following the CALL instruction) on the stack (for use later as a return-instruction pointer). The processor then branches to the address in the current code segment specified by the target operand. The target operand specifies either an absolute offset in the code segment (an offset from the base of the code segment) or a relative offset (a signed displacement relative to the current value of the instruction pointer in the EIP register; this value points to the instruction following the CALL instruction). The CS register is not changed on near calls.

For a near call absolute, an absolute offset is specified indirectly in a general-purpose register or a memory location (*r/m16*, *r/m32*, or *r/m64*). The operand-size attribute determines the size of the target operand (16, 32 or 64 bits). When in 64-bit mode, the operand size for near call (and all near branches) is forced to 64-bits. Absolute offsets are loaded directly into the EIP(RIP) register. If the operand size attribute is 16, the upper two bytes of the EIP register are cleared, resulting in a maximum instruction pointer size of 16 bits. When accessing an absolute offset indirectly using the stack pointer [ESP] as the base register, the base value used is the value of the ESP before the instruction executes.

A relative offset (*rel16* or *rel32*) is generally specified as a label in assembly code. But at the machine code level, it is encoded as a signed, 16- or 32-bit immediate value. This value is added to the value in the EIP(RIP) register. In 64-bit mode the relative offset is always a 32-bit immediate value which is sign extended to 64-bits before it is added to the value in the RIP register for the target calculation. As with absolute offsets, the operand-size attribute determines the size of the target operand (16, 32, or 64 bits). In 64-bit mode the target operand will always be 64-bits because the operand size is forced to 64-bits for near branches.

Far Calls in Real-Address or Virtual-8086 Mode. When executing a far call in real-address or virtual-8086 mode, the processor pushes the current value of both the CS and EIP registers on the stack for use as a return-instruction pointer. The processor then performs a “far branch” to the code segment and offset specified with the target operand for the called procedure. The target operand specifies an absolute far address either directly with a pointer (*ptr16:16* or *ptr16:32*) or indirectly with a memory location (*m16:16* or *m16:32*). With the pointer method, the segment and offset of the called procedure is encoded in the instruction using a 4-byte (16-bit operand size) or 6-byte (32-bit operand size) far address immediate. With the indirect method, the target operand specifies a memory location that contains a 4-byte (16-bit operand size) or 6-byte (32-bit operand size) far address. The operand-size attribute determines the size of the offset (16 or 32 bits) in the far address. The far address is loaded directly into the CS and EIP registers. If the operand-size attribute is 16, the upper two bytes of the EIP register are cleared.

Far Calls in Protected Mode. When the processor is operating in protected mode, the CALL instruction can be used to perform the following types of far calls:

- Far call to the same privilege level
- Far call to a different privilege level (inter-privilege level call)
- Task switch (far call to another task)

In protected mode, the processor always uses the segment selector part of the far address to access the corresponding descriptor in the GDT or LDT. The descriptor type (code segment, call gate, task gate, or TSS) and access rights determine the type of call operation to be performed.

If the selected descriptor is for a code segment, a far call to a code segment at the same privilege level is performed. (If the selected code segment is at a different privilege level and the code segment is non-conforming, a general-protection exception is generated.) A far call to the same privilege level in protected mode is very similar to one carried out in real-address or virtual-8086 mode. The target operand specifies an absolute far address either directly with a pointer (*ptr16:16* or *ptr16:32*) or indirectly with a memory location (*m16:16* or *m16:32*). The operand-size attribute determines the size of the offset (16 or 32 bits) in the far address. The new code segment selector and its descriptor are loaded into CS register; the offset from the instruction is loaded into the EIP register.

A call gate (described in the next paragraph) can also be used to perform a far call to a code segment at the same privilege level. Using this mechanism provides an extra level of indirection and is the preferred method of making calls between 16-bit and 32-bit code segments.

When executing an inter-privilege-level far call, the code segment for the procedure being called must be accessed through a call gate. The segment selector specified by the target operand identifies the call gate. The target operand can specify the call gate segment selector either directly with a pointer (*ptr16:16* or *ptr16:32*) or indirectly with a memory location (*m16:16* or *m16:32*). The processor obtains the segment selector for the new code segment and the new instruction pointer (offset) from the call gate descriptor. (The offset from the target operand is ignored when a call gate is used.)

On inter-privilege-level calls, the processor switches to the stack for the privilege level of the called procedure. The segment selector for the new stack segment is specified in the TSS for the currently running task. The branch to the new code segment occurs after the stack switch. (Note that when using a call gate to perform a far call to a segment at the same privilege level, no stack switch occurs.) On the new stack, the processor pushes the segment selector and stack pointer for the calling procedure's stack, an optional set of parameters from the calling procedure's stack, and the segment selector and instruction pointer for the calling procedure's code segment. (A value in the call gate descriptor determines how many parameters to copy to the new stack.) Finally, the processor branches to the address of the procedure being called within the new code segment.

Executing a task switch with the CALL instruction is similar to executing a call through a call gate. The target operand specifies the segment selector of the task gate for the new task activated by the switch (the offset in the target operand is ignored). The task gate in turn points to the TSS for the new task, which contains the segment selectors for the task's code and stack segments. Note that the TSS also contains the EIP value for the next instruction that was to be executed before the calling task was suspended. This instruction pointer value is loaded into the EIP register to re-start the calling task.

The CALL instruction can also specify the segment selector of the TSS directly, which eliminates the indirection of the task gate. See Chapter 7, "Task Management," in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3A*, for information on the mechanics of a task switch.

When you execute a task switch with a CALL instruction, the nested task flag (NT) is set in the EFLAGS register and the new TSS's previous task link field is loaded with the old task's TSS selector. Code is expected to suspend this nested task by executing an IRET instruction which, because the NT flag is set, automatically uses the previous task link to return to the calling task. (See "Task Linking" in Chapter 7 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3A*, for information on nested tasks.) Switching tasks with the CALL instruction differs in this regard from JMP instruction. JMP does not set the NT flag and therefore does not expect an IRET instruction to suspend the task.

Mixing 16-Bit and 32-Bit Calls. When making far calls between 16-bit and 32-bit code segments, use a call gate. If the far call is from a 32-bit code segment to a 16-bit code segment, the call should be made from the first 64 KBytes of the 32-bit code segment. This is because the operand-size attribute of the instruction is set to 16, so only a 16-bit return address offset can be saved. Also, the call should be made using a 16-bit call gate so that 16-bit values can be pushed on the stack. See Chapter 21, "Mixing 16-Bit and 32-Bit Code," in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3B*, for more information.

Far Calls in Compatibility Mode. When the processor is operating in compatibility mode, the CALL instruction can be used to perform the following types of far calls:

- Far call to the same privilege level, remaining in compatibility mode
- Far call to the same privilege level, transitioning to 64-bit mode
- Far call to a different privilege level (inter-privilege level call), transitioning to 64-bit mode

Note that a CALL instruction can not be used to cause a task switch in compatibility mode since task switches are not supported in IA-32e mode.

In compatibility mode, the processor always uses the segment selector part of the far address to access the corresponding descriptor in the GDT or LDT. The descriptor type (code segment, call gate) and access rights determine the type of call operation to be performed.

If the selected descriptor is for a code segment, a far call to a code segment at the same privilege level is performed. (If the selected code segment is at a different privilege level and the code segment is non-conforming, a general-protection exception is generated.) A far call to the same privilege level in compatibility mode is very similar to one carried out in protected mode. The target operand specifies an absolute far address either directly with a pointer (*ptr16:16* or *ptr16:32*) or indirectly with a memory location (*m16:16* or *m16:32*). The operand-size attribute determines the size of the offset (16 or 32 bits) in the far address. The new code segment selector and its descriptor are loaded into CS register and the offset from the instruction is loaded into the EIP register. The difference is that 64-bit mode may be entered. This is specified by the L bit in the new code segment descriptor.

Note that a 64-bit call gate (described in the next paragraph) can also be used to perform a far call to a code segment at the same privilege level. However, using this mechanism requires that the target code segment descriptor have the L bit set, causing an entry to 64-bit mode.

When executing an inter-privilege-level far call, the code segment for the procedure being called must be accessed through a 64-bit call gate. The segment selector specified by the target operand identifies the call gate. The target

operand can specify the call gate segment selector either directly with a pointer (*ptr16:16* or *ptr16:32*) or indirectly with a memory location (*m16:16* or *m16:32*). The processor obtains the segment selector for the new code segment and the new instruction pointer (offset) from the 16-byte call gate descriptor. (The offset from the target operand is ignored when a call gate is used.)

On inter-privilege-level calls, the processor switches to the stack for the privilege level of the called procedure. The segment selector for the new stack segment is set to NULL. The new stack pointer is specified in the TSS for the currently running task. The branch to the new code segment occurs after the stack switch. (Note that when using a call gate to perform a far call to a segment at the same privilege level, an implicit stack switch occurs as a result of entering 64-bit mode. The SS selector is unchanged, but stack segment accesses use a segment base of 0x0, the limit is ignored, and the default stack size is 64-bits. The full value of RSP is used for the offset, of which the upper 32-bits are undefined.) On the new stack, the processor pushes the segment selector and stack pointer for the calling procedure's stack and the segment selector and instruction pointer for the calling procedure's code segment. (Parameter copy is not supported in IA-32e mode.) Finally, the processor branches to the address of the procedure being called within the new code segment.

Near(Far) Calls in 64-bit Mode. When the processor is operating in 64-bit mode, the CALL instruction can be used to perform the following types of far calls:

- Far call to the same privilege level, transitioning to compatibility mode
- Far call to the same privilege level, remaining in 64-bit mode
- Far call to a different privilege level (inter-privilege level call), remaining in 64-bit mode

Note that in this mode the CALL instruction can not be used to cause a task switch in 64-bit mode since task switches are not supported in IA-32e mode.

In 64-bit mode, the processor always uses the segment selector part of the far address to access the corresponding descriptor in the GDT or LDT. The descriptor type (code segment, call gate) and access rights determine the type of call operation to be performed.

If the selected descriptor is for a code segment, a far call to a code segment at the same privilege level is performed. (If the selected code segment is at a different privilege level and the code segment is non-conforming, a general-protection exception is generated.) A far call to the same privilege level in 64-bit mode is very similar to one carried out in compatibility mode. The target operand specifies an absolute far address indirectly with a memory location (*m16:16*, *m16:32* or *m16:64*). The form of CALL with a direct specification of absolute far address is not defined in 64-bit mode. The operand-size attribute determines the size of the offset (16, 32, or 64 bits) in the far address. The new code segment selector and its descriptor are loaded into the CS register; the offset from the instruction is loaded into the EIP register. The new code segment may specify entry either into compatibility or 64-bit mode, based on the L bit value.

A 64-bit call gate (described in the next paragraph) can also be used to perform a far call to a code segment at the same privilege level. However, using this mechanism requires that the target code segment descriptor have the L bit set.

When executing an inter-privilege-level far call, the code segment for the procedure being called must be accessed through a 64-bit call gate. The segment selector specified by the target operand identifies the call gate. The target operand can only specify the call gate segment selector indirectly with a memory location (*m16:16*, *m16:32* or *m16:64*). The processor obtains the segment selector for the new code segment and the new instruction pointer (offset) from the 16-byte call gate descriptor. (The offset from the target operand is ignored when a call gate is used.)

On inter-privilege-level calls, the processor switches to the stack for the privilege level of the called procedure. The segment selector for the new stack segment is set to NULL. The new stack pointer is specified in the TSS for the currently running task. The branch to the new code segment occurs after the stack switch.

Note that when using a call gate to perform a far call to a segment at the same privilege level, an implicit stack switch occurs as a result of entering 64-bit mode. The SS selector is unchanged, but stack segment accesses use a segment base of 0x0, the limit is ignored, and the default stack size is 64-bits. (The full value of RSP is used for the offset.) On the new stack, the processor pushes the segment selector and stack pointer for the calling procedure's stack and the segment selector and instruction pointer for the calling procedure's code segment. (Parameter copy is not supported in IA-32e mode.) Finally, the processor branches to the address of the procedure being called within the new code segment.

Instruction ordering. Instructions following a far call may be fetched from memory before earlier instructions complete execution, but they will not execute (even speculatively) until all instructions prior to the far call have completed execution (the later instructions may execute before data stored by the earlier instructions have become globally visible).

Operation

IF near call

 THEN IF near relative call

 THEN

 IF OperandSize = 64

 THEN

 tempDEST ← SignExtend(DEST); (* DEST is rel32 *)

 tempRIP ← RIP + tempDEST;

 IF stack not large enough for a 8-byte return address

 THEN #SS(0); FI;

 Push(RIP);

 RIP ← tempRIP;

 FI;

 IF OperandSize = 32

 THEN

 tempEIP ← EIP + DEST; (* DEST is rel32 *)

 IF tempEIP is not within code segment limit THEN #GP(0); FI;

 IF stack not large enough for a 4-byte return address

 THEN #SS(0); FI;

 Push(EIP);

 EIP ← tempEIP;

 FI;

 IF OperandSize = 16

 THEN

 tempEIP ← (EIP + DEST) AND 0000FFFFH; (* DEST is rel16 *)

 IF tempEIP is not within code segment limit THEN #GP(0); FI;

 IF stack not large enough for a 2-byte return address

 THEN #SS(0); FI;

 Push(IP);

 EIP ← tempEIP;

 FI;

 ELSE (* Near absolute call *)

 IF OperandSize = 64

 THEN

 tempRIP ← DEST; (* DEST is r/m64 *)

 IF stack not large enough for a 8-byte return address

 THEN #SS(0); FI;

 Push(RIP);

 RIP ← tempRIP;

 FI;

 IF OperandSize = 32

 THEN

 tempEIP ← DEST; (* DEST is r/m32 *)

 IF tempEIP is not within code segment limit THEN #GP(0); FI;

 IF stack not large enough for a 4-byte return address

 THEN #SS(0); FI;

 Push(EIP);

 EIP ← tempEIP;

 FI;

```

    IF OperandSize = 16
        THEN
            tempEIP ← DEST AND 0000FFFFH; (* DEST is r/m16 *)
            IF tempEIP is not within code segment limit THEN #GP(0); FI;
            IF stack not large enough for a 2-byte return address
                THEN #SS(0); FI;
            Push(IP);
            EIP ← tempEIP;
        FI;
    FI;rel/abs
FI; near

IF far call and (PE = 0 or (PE = 1 and VM = 1)) (* Real-address or virtual-8086 mode *)
    THEN
        IF OperandSize = 32
            THEN
                IF stack not large enough for a 6-byte return address
                    THEN #SS(0); FI;
                IF DEST[31:16] is not zero THEN #GP(0); FI;
                Push(CS); (* Padded with 16 high-order bits *)
                Push(EIP);
                CS ← DEST[47:32]; (* DEST is ptr16:32 or [m16:32] *)
                EIP ← DEST[31:0]; (* DEST is ptr16:32 or [m16:32] *)
            ELSE (* OperandSize = 16 *)
                IF stack not large enough for a 4-byte return address
                    THEN #SS(0); FI;
                Push(CS);
                Push(IP);
                CS ← DEST[31:16]; (* DEST is ptr16:16 or [m16:16] *)
                EIP ← DEST[15:0]; (* DEST is ptr16:16 or [m16:16]; clear upper 16 bits *)
            FI;
        FI;
    FI;

IF far call and (PE = 1 and VM = 0) (* Protected mode or IA-32e Mode, not virtual-8086 mode*)
    THEN
        IF segment selector in target operand NULL
            THEN #GP(0); FI;
        IF segment selector index not within descriptor table limits
            THEN #GP(new code segment selector); FI;
        Read type and access rights of selected segment descriptor;
        IF IA32_EFER.LMA = 0
            THEN
                IF segment type is not a conforming or nonconforming code segment, call
                    gate, task gate, or TSS
                    THEN #GP(segment selector); FI;
            ELSE
                IF segment type is not a conforming or nonconforming code segment or
                    64-bit call gate,
                    THEN #GP(segment selector); FI;
            FI;
        Depending on type and access rights:
        GO TO CONFORMING-CODE-SEGMENT;
        GO TO NONCONFORMING-CODE-SEGMENT;
        GO TO CALL-GATE;
    
```

INSTRUCTION SET REFERENCE, A-L

```
        GO TO TASK-GATE;
        GO TO TASK-STATE-SEGMENT;
FI;

CONFORMING-CODE-SEGMENT:
  IF L bit = 1 and D bit = 1 and IA32_EFER.LMA = 1
    THEN GP(new code segment selector); FI;
  IF DPL > CPL
    THEN #GP(new code segment selector); FI;
  IF segment not present
    THEN #NP(new code segment selector); FI;
  IF stack not large enough for return address
    THEN #SS(0); FI;
  tempEIP ← DEST(Offset);
  IF target mode = Compatibility mode
    THEN tempEIP ← tempEIP AND 00000000_FFFFFFFFH; FI;
  IF OperandSize = 16
    THEN
      tempEIP ← tempEIP AND 0000FFFFH; FI; (* Clear upper 16 bits *)
  IF (EFER.LMA = 0 or target mode = Compatibility mode) and (tempEIP outside new code
  segment limit)
    THEN #GP(0); FI;
  IF tempEIP is non-canonical
    THEN #GP(0); FI;
  IF OperandSize = 32
    THEN
      Push(CS); (* Padded with 16 high-order bits *)
      Push(EIP);
      CS ← DEST(CodeSegmentSelector);
      (* Segment descriptor information also loaded *)
      CS(RPL) ← CPL;
      EIP ← tempEIP;
  ELSE
    IF OperandSize = 16
      THEN
          Push(CS);
          Push(IP);
          CS ← DEST(CodeSegmentSelector);
          (* Segment descriptor information also loaded *)
          CS(RPL) ← CPL;
          EIP ← tempEIP;
        ELSE (* OperandSize = 64 *)
          Push(CS); (* Padded with 48 high-order bits *)
          Push(RIP);
          CS ← DEST(CodeSegmentSelector);
          (* Segment descriptor information also loaded *)
          CS(RPL) ← CPL;
          RIP ← tempEIP;
    FI;
  FI;
END;
```

```
NONCONFORMING-CODE-SEGMENT:
  IF L-Bit = 1 and D-BIT = 1 and IA32_EFER.LMA = 1
```



```

    THEN GP(new code segment selector); FI;
IF (RPL > CPL) or (DPL ≠ CPL)
    THEN #GP(new code segment selector); FI;
IF segment not present
    THEN #NP(new code segment selector); FI;
IF stack not large enough for return address
    THEN #SS(0); FI;
tempEIP ← DEST(Offset);
IF target mode = Compatibility mode
    THEN tempEIP ← tempEIP AND 00000000_FFFFFFFFH; FI;
IF OperandSize = 16
    THEN tempEIP ← tempEIP AND 0000FFFFH; FI; (* Clear upper 16 bits *)
IF (EFER.LMA = 0 or target mode = Compatibility mode) and (tempEIP outside new code
segment limit)
    THEN #GP(0); FI;
IF tempEIP is non-canonical
    THEN #GP(0); FI;
IF OperandSize = 32
    THEN
        Push(CS); (* Padded with 16 high-order bits *)
        Push(EIP);
        CS ← DEST(CodeSegmentSelector);
        (* Segment descriptor information also loaded *)
        CS(RPL) ← CPL;
        EIP ← tempEIP;
    ELSE
        IF OperandSize = 16
            THEN
                Push(CS);
                Push(IP);
                CS ← DEST(CodeSegmentSelector);
                (* Segment descriptor information also loaded *)
                CS(RPL) ← CPL;
                EIP ← tempEIP;
            ELSE (* OperandSize = 64 *)
                Push(CS); (* Padded with 48 high-order bits *)
                Push(RIP);
                CS ← DEST(CodeSegmentSelector);
                (* Segment descriptor information also loaded *)
                CS(RPL) ← CPL;
                RIP ← tempEIP;
            FI;
        FI;
END;

```

CALL-GATE:

```

IF call gate (DPL < CPL) or (RPL > DPL)
    THEN #GP(call-gate selector); FI;
IF call gate not present
    THEN #NP(call-gate selector); FI;
IF call-gate code-segment selector is NULL
    THEN #GP(0); FI;
IF call-gate code-segment selector index is outside descriptor table limits
    THEN #GP(call-gate code-segment selector); FI;

```

```

Read call-gate code-segment descriptor;
IF call-gate code-segment descriptor does not indicate a code segment
or call-gate code-segment descriptor DPL > CPL
    THEN #GP(call-gate code-segment selector); FI;
IF IA32_EFER.LMA = 1 AND (call-gate code-segment descriptor is
not a 64-bit code segment or call-gate code-segment descriptor has both L-bit and D-bit set)
    THEN #GP(call-gate code-segment selector); FI;
IF call-gate code segment not present
    THEN #NP(call-gate code-segment selector); FI;
IF call-gate code segment is non-conforming and DPL < CPL
    THEN go to MORE-PRIVILEGE;
    ELSE go to SAME-PRIVILEGE;
FI;
END;

```

MORE-PRIVILEGE:

```

IF current TSS is 32-bit
    THEN
        TSSstackAddress ← (new code-segment DPL * 8) + 4;
        IF (TSSstackAddress + 5) > current TSS limit
            THEN #TS(current TSS selector); FI;
        NewSS ← 2 bytes loaded from (TSS base + TSSstackAddress + 4);
        NewESP ← 4 bytes loaded from (TSS base + TSSstackAddress);
    ELSE
        IF current TSS is 16-bit
            THEN
                TSSstackAddress ← (new code-segment DPL * 4) + 2
                IF (TSSstackAddress + 3) > current TSS limit
                    THEN #TS(current TSS selector); FI;
                NewSS ← 2 bytes loaded from (TSS base + TSSstackAddress + 2);
                NewESP ← 2 bytes loaded from (TSS base + TSSstackAddress);
            ELSE (* current TSS is 64-bit *)
                TSSstackAddress ← (new code-segment DPL * 8) + 4;
                IF (TSSstackAddress + 7) > current TSS limit
                    THEN #TS(current TSS selector); FI;
                NewSS ← new code-segment DPL; (* NULL selector with RPL = new CPL *)
                NewRSP ← 8 bytes loaded from (current TSS base + TSSstackAddress);
        FI;

```

```

FI;
IF IA32_EFER.LMA = 0 and NewSS is NULL
    THEN #TS(NewSS); FI;
Read new stack-segment descriptor;
IF IA32_EFER.LMA = 0 and (NewSS RPL ≠ new code-segment DPL
or new stack-segment DPL ≠ new code-segment DPL or new stack segment is not a
writable data segment)
    THEN #TS(NewSS); FI
IF IA32_EFER.LMA = 0 and new stack segment not present
    THEN #SS(NewSS); FI;
IF CallGateSize = 32
    THEN
        IF new stack does not have room for parameters plus 16 bytes
            THEN #SS(NewSS); FI;
        IF CallGate(InstructionPointer) not within new code-segment limit
            THEN #GP(0); FI;

```

```

SS ← newSS; (* Segment descriptor information also loaded *)
ESP ← newESP;
CS:EIP ← CallGate(CS:InstructionPointer);
(* Segment descriptor information also loaded *)
Push(oldSS:oldESP); (* From calling procedure *)
temp ← parameter count from call gate, masked to 5 bits;
Push(parameters from calling procedure's stack, temp)
Push(oldCS:oldEIP); (* Return address to calling procedure *)
ELSE
  IF CallGateSize = 16
    THEN
      IF new stack does not have room for parameters plus 8 bytes
        THEN #SS(NewSS); FI;
      IF (CallGate(InstructionPointer) AND FFFFH) not in new code-segment limit
        THEN #GP(0); FI;
      SS ← newSS; (* Segment descriptor information also loaded *)
      ESP ← newESP;
      CS:IP ← CallGate(CS:InstructionPointer);
      (* Segment descriptor information also loaded *)
      Push(oldSS:oldESP); (* From calling procedure *)
      temp ← parameter count from call gate, masked to 5 bits;
      Push(parameters from calling procedure's stack, temp)
      Push(oldCS:oldEIP); (* Return address to calling procedure *)
    ELSE (* CallGateSize = 64 *)
      IF pushing 32 bytes on the stack would use a non-canonical address
        THEN #SS(NewSS); FI;
      IF (CallGate(InstructionPointer) is non-canonical)
        THEN #GP(0); FI;
      SS ← NewSS; (* NewSS is NULL)
      RSP ← NewESP;
      CS:IP ← CallGate(CS:InstructionPointer);
      (* Segment descriptor information also loaded *)
      Push(oldSS:oldESP); (* From calling procedure *)
      Push(oldCS:oldEIP); (* Return address to calling procedure *)
    FI;
  FI;
CPL ← CodeSegment(DPL)
CS(RPL) ← CPL
END;

SAME-PRIVILEGE:
  IF CallGateSize = 32
    THEN
      IF stack does not have room for 8 bytes
        THEN #SS(0); FI;
      IF CallGate(InstructionPointer) not within code segment limit
        THEN #GP(0); FI;
      CS:EIP ← CallGate(CS:EIP) (* Segment descriptor information also loaded *)
      Push(oldCS:oldEIP); (* Return address to calling procedure *)
    ELSE
      If CallGateSize = 16
        THEN
          IF stack does not have room for 4 bytes
            THEN #SS(0); FI;

```

```

        IF CallGate(InstructionPointer) not within code segment limit
            THEN #GP(0); FI;
        CS:IP ← CallGate(CS:instruction pointer);
        (* Segment descriptor information also loaded *)
        Push(oldCS:oldIP); (* Return address to calling procedure *)
    ELSE (* CallGateSize = 64)
        IF pushing 16 bytes on the stack touches non-canonical addresses
            THEN #SS(0); FI;
        IF RIP non-canonical
            THEN #GP(0); FI;
        CS:IP ← CallGate(CS:instruction pointer);
        (* Segment descriptor information also loaded *)
        Push(oldCS:oldIP); (* Return address to calling procedure *)
    FI;
FI;
CS(RPL) ← CPL
END;

```

TASK-GATE:

```

    IF task gate DPL < CPL or RPL
        THEN #GP(task gate selector); FI;
    IF task gate not present
        THEN #NP(task gate selector); FI;
    Read the TSS segment selector in the task-gate descriptor;
    IF TSS segment selector local/global bit is set to local
    or index not within GDT limits
        THEN #GP(TSS selector); FI;
    Access TSS descriptor in GDT;
    IF descriptor is not a TSS segment
        THEN #GP(TSS selector); FI;
    IF TSS descriptor specifies that the TSS is busy
        THEN #GP(TSS selector); FI;
    IF TSS not present
        THEN #NP(TSS selector); FI;
    SWITCH-TASKS (with nesting) to TSS;
    IF EIP not within code segment limit
        THEN #GP(0); FI;
END;

```

TASK-STATE-SEGMENT:

```

    IF TSS DPL < CPL or RPL
    or TSS descriptor indicates TSS not available
        THEN #GP(TSS selector); FI;
    IF TSS is not present
        THEN #NP(TSS selector); FI;
    SWITCH-TASKS (with nesting) to TSS;
    IF EIP not within code segment limit
        THEN #GP(0); FI;
END;

```

Flags Affected

All flags are affected if a task switch occurs; no flags are affected if a task switch does not occur.

Protected Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	<p>If the target offset in destination operand is beyond the new code segment limit.</p> <p>If the segment selector in the destination operand is NULL.</p> <p>If the code segment selector in the gate is NULL.</p> <p>If a memory operand effective address is outside the CS, DS, ES, FS, or GS segment limit.</p> <p>If the DS, ES, FS, or GS register is used to access memory and it contains a NULL segment selector.</p>
#GP(selector)	<p>If a code segment or gate or TSS selector index is outside descriptor table limits.</p> <p>If the segment descriptor pointed to by the segment selector in the destination operand is not for a conforming-code segment, nonconforming-code segment, call gate, task gate, or task state segment.</p> <p>If the DPL for a nonconforming-code segment is not equal to the CPL or the RPL for the segment's segment selector is greater than the CPL.</p> <p>If the DPL for a conforming-code segment is greater than the CPL.</p> <p>If the DPL from a call-gate, task-gate, or TSS segment descriptor is less than the CPL or than the RPL of the call-gate, task-gate, or TSS's segment selector.</p> <p>If the segment descriptor for a segment selector from a call gate does not indicate it is a code segment.</p> <p>If the segment selector from a call gate is beyond the descriptor table limits.</p> <p>If the DPL for a code-segment obtained from a call gate is greater than the CPL.</p> <p>If the segment selector for a TSS has its local/global bit set for local.</p> <p>If a TSS segment descriptor specifies that the TSS is busy or not available.</p>
#SS(0)	<p>If pushing the return address, parameters, or stack segment pointer onto the stack exceeds the bounds of the stack segment, when no stack switch occurs.</p> <p>If a memory operand effective address is outside the SS segment limit.</p>
#SS(selector)	<p>If pushing the return address, parameters, or stack segment pointer onto the stack exceeds the bounds of the stack segment, when a stack switch occurs.</p> <p>If the SS register is being loaded as part of a stack switch and the segment pointed to is marked not present.</p> <p>If stack segment does not have room for the return address, parameters, or stack segment pointer, when stack switch occurs.</p>
#NP(selector)	<p>If a code segment, data segment, call gate, task gate, or TSS is not present.</p>
#TS(selector)	<p>If the new stack segment selector and ESP are beyond the end of the TSS.</p> <p>If the new stack segment selector is NULL.</p> <p>If the RPL of the new stack segment selector in the TSS is not equal to the DPL of the code segment being accessed.</p> <p>If DPL of the stack segment descriptor for the new stack segment is not equal to the DPL of the code segment descriptor.</p> <p>If the new stack segment is not a writable data segment.</p> <p>If segment-selector index for stack segment is outside descriptor table limits.</p>
#PF(fault-code)	<p>If a page fault occurs.</p>
#AC(0)	<p>If alignment checking is enabled and an unaligned memory reference is made while the current privilege level is 3.</p>
#UD	<p>If the LOCK prefix is used.</p>

Real-Address Mode Exceptions

#GP	<p>If a memory operand effective address is outside the CS, DS, ES, FS, or GS segment limit.</p> <p>If the target offset is beyond the code segment limit.</p>
#UD	<p>If the LOCK prefix is used.</p>

Virtual-8086 Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	If a memory operand effective address is outside the CS, DS, ES, FS, or GS segment limit. If the target offset is beyond the code segment limit.
#PF(fault-code)	If a page fault occurs.
#AC(0)	If alignment checking is enabled and an unaligned memory reference is made.
#UD	If the LOCK prefix is used.

Compatibility Mode Exceptions

Same exceptions as in protected mode.

#GP(selector)	If a memory address accessed by the selector is in non-canonical space.
#GP(0)	If the target offset in the destination operand is non-canonical.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	If a memory address is non-canonical. If target offset in destination operand is non-canonical. If the segment selector in the destination operand is NULL. If the code segment selector in the 64-bit gate is NULL.
#GP(selector)	If code segment or 64-bit call gate is outside descriptor table limits. If code segment or 64-bit call gate overlaps non-canonical space. If the segment descriptor pointed to by the segment selector in the destination operand is not for a conforming-code segment, nonconforming-code segment, or 64-bit call gate. If the segment descriptor pointed to by the segment selector in the destination operand is a code segment and has both the D-bit and the L-bit set. If the DPL for a nonconforming-code segment is not equal to the CPL, or the RPL for the segment's segment selector is greater than the CPL. If the DPL for a conforming-code segment is greater than the CPL. If the DPL from a 64-bit call-gate is less than the CPL or than the RPL of the 64-bit call-gate. If the upper type field of a 64-bit call gate is not 0x0. If the segment selector from a 64-bit call gate is beyond the descriptor table limits. If the DPL for a code-segment obtained from a 64-bit call gate is greater than the CPL. If the code segment descriptor pointed to by the selector in the 64-bit gate doesn't have the L-bit set and the D-bit clear. If the segment descriptor for a segment selector from the 64-bit call gate does not indicate it is a code segment.
#SS(0)	If pushing the return offset or CS selector onto the stack exceeds the bounds of the stack segment when no stack switch occurs. If a memory operand effective address is outside the SS segment limit. If the stack address is in a non-canonical form.
#SS(selector)	If pushing the old values of SS selector, stack pointer, EFLAGS, CS selector, offset, or error code onto the stack violates the canonical boundary when a stack switch occurs.
#NP(selector)	If a code segment or 64-bit call gate is not present.
#TS(selector)	If the load of the new RSP exceeds the limit of the TSS.
#UD	(64-bit mode only) If a far call is direct to an absolute address in memory. If the LOCK prefix is used.
#PF(fault-code)	If a page fault occurs.
#AC(0)	If alignment checking is enabled and an unaligned memory reference is made while the current privilege level is 3.

CLFLUSHOPT—Flush Cache Line Optimized

Opcode	Instruction	Op/En	64-bit Mode	Compat/Leg Mode	Description
NFx 66 0F AE /7	CLFLUSHOPT <i>m8</i>	M	Valid	Valid	Flushes cache line containing <i>m8</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
M	ModRM:r/m (w)	NA	NA	NA

Description

Invalidates from every level of the cache hierarchy in the cache coherence domain the cache line that contains the linear address specified with the memory operand. If that cache line contains modified data at any level of the cache hierarchy, that data is written back to memory. The source operand is a byte memory location.

The availability of CLFLUSHOPT is indicated by the presence of the CPUID feature flag CLFLUSHOPT (CPUID.(EAX=7,ECX=0):EBX[bit 23]). The aligned cache line size affected is also indicated with the CPUID instruction (bits 8 through 15 of the EBX register when the initial value in the EAX register is 1).

The memory attribute of the page containing the affected line has no effect on the behavior of this instruction. It should be noted that processors are free to speculatively fetch and cache data from system memory regions assigned a memory-type allowing for speculative reads (such as, the WB, WC, and WT memory types). PREFETCH h instructions can be used to provide the processor with hints for this speculative behavior. Because this speculative fetching can occur at any time and is not tied to instruction execution, the CLFLUSH instruction is not ordered with respect to PREFETCH h instructions or any of the speculative fetching mechanisms (that is, data can be speculatively loaded into a cache line just before, during, or after the execution of a CLFLUSH instruction that references the cache line).

Executions of the CLFLUSHOPT instruction are ordered with respect to fence instructions and to locked read-modify-write instructions; they are also ordered with respect to the following accesses to the cache line being invalidated: writes, executions of CLFLUSH, and executions of CLFLUSHOPT. They are not ordered with respect to writes, executions of CLFLUSH, or executions of CLFLUSHOPT that access other cache lines; to enforce ordering with such an operation, software can insert an SFENCE instruction between CLFLUSHOPT and that operation.

The CLFLUSHOPT instruction can be used at all privilege levels and is subject to all permission checking and faults associated with a byte load (and in addition, a CLFLUSHOPT instruction is allowed to flush a linear address in an execute-only segment). Like a load, the CLFLUSHOPT instruction sets the A bit but not the D bit in the page tables.

In some implementations, the CLFLUSHOPT instruction may always cause transactional abort with Transactional Synchronization Extensions (TSX). The CLFLUSHOPT instruction is not expected to be commonly used inside typical transactional regions. However, programmers must not rely on CLFLUSHOPT instruction to force a transactional abort, since whether they cause transactional abort is implementation dependent.

CLFLUSHOPT operation is the same in non-64-bit modes and 64-bit mode.

Operation

Flush_Cache_Line_Optimized(SRC);

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalents

CLFLUSHOPT: `void _mm_clflushopt(void const *p)`

CMPPD—Compare Packed Double-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F C2 /r ib CMPPD xmm1, xmm2/m128, imm8	A	V/V	SSE2	Compare packed double-precision floating-point values in xmm2/m128 and xmm1 using bits 2:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG C2 /r ib VCMPPD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128, imm8	B	V/V	AVX	Compare packed double-precision floating-point values in xmm3/m128 and xmm2 using bits 4:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG C2 /r ib VCMPPD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256, imm8	B	V/V	AVX	Compare packed double-precision floating-point values in ymm3/m256 and ymm2 using bits 4:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 C2 /r ib VCMPPD k1 {k2}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst, imm8	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare packed double-precision floating-point values in xmm3/m128/m64bcst and xmm2 using bits 4:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate with writemask k2 and leave the result in mask register k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W1 C2 /r ib VCMPPD k1 {k2}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst, imm8	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare packed double-precision floating-point values in ymm3/m256/m64bcst and ymm2 using bits 4:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate with writemask k2 and leave the result in mask register k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W1 C2 /r ib VCMPPD k1 {k2}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst{sae}, imm8	C	V/V	AVX512F	Compare packed double-precision floating-point values in zmm3/m512/m64bcst and zmm2 using bits 4:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate with writemask k2 and leave the result in mask register k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8

Description

Performs a SIMD compare of the packed double-precision floating-point values in the second source operand and the first source operand and returns the results of the comparison to the destination operand. The comparison predicate operand (immediate byte) specifies the type of comparison performed on each pair of packed values in the two source operands.

EVEX encoded versions: The first source operand (second operand) is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand (first operand) is an opmask register. Comparison results are written to the destination operand under the writemask k2. Each comparison result is a single mask bit of 1 (comparison true) or 0 (comparison false).

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand (second operand) is a YMM register. The second source operand (third operand) can be a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand (first operand) is a YMM register. Four comparisons are performed with results written to the destination operand. The result of each comparison is a quadword mask of all 1s (comparison true) or all 0s (comparison false).

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source and destination operand (first operand) is an XMM register. The second source operand (second operand) can be an XMM register or 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM destination register remain unchanged. Two comparisons are performed with results written to bits 127:0 of the destination operand. The result of each comparison is a quadword mask of all 1s (comparison true) or all 0s (comparison false).

CMPPS—Compare Packed Single-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F C2 /r ib CMPPS xmm1, xmm2/m128, imm8	A	V/V	SSE	Compare packed single-precision floating-point values in xmm2/m128 and xmm1 using bits 2:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate.
VEX.128.0F.WIG C2 /r ib VCMPPS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128, imm8	B	V/V	AVX	Compare packed single-precision floating-point values in xmm3/m128 and xmm2 using bits 4:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate.
VEX.256.0F.WIG C2 /r ib VCMPPS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256, imm8	B	V/V	AVX	Compare packed single-precision floating-point values in ymm3/m256 and ymm2 using bits 4:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate.
EVEX.128.0F.W0 C2 /r ib VCMPPS k1 {k2}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst, imm8	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare packed single-precision floating-point values in xmm3/m128/m32bcst and xmm2 using bits 4:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate with writemask k2 and leave the result in mask register k1.
EVEX.256.0F.W0 C2 /r ib VCMPPS k1 {k2}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst, imm8	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare packed single-precision floating-point values in ymm3/m256/m32bcst and ymm2 using bits 4:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate with writemask k2 and leave the result in mask register k1.
EVEX.512.0F.W0 C2 /r ib VCMPPS k1 {k2}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst{sae}, imm8	C	V/V	AVX512F	Compare packed single-precision floating-point values in zmm3/m512/m32bcst and zmm2 using bits 4:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate with writemask k2 and leave the result in mask register k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8

Description

Performs a SIMD compare of the packed single-precision floating-point values in the second source operand and the first source operand and returns the results of the comparison to the destination operand. The comparison predicate operand (immediate byte) specifies the type of comparison performed on each of the pairs of packed values.

EVEX encoded versions: The first source operand (second operand) is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 32-bit memory location. The destination operand (first operand) is an opmask register. Comparison results are written to the destination operand under the writemask k2. Each comparison result is a single mask bit of 1 (comparison true) or 0 (comparison false).

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand (second operand) is a YMM register. The second source operand (third operand) can be a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand (first operand) is a YMM register. Eight comparisons are performed with results written to the destination operand. The result of each comparison is a doubleword mask of all 1s (comparison true) or all 0s (comparison false).

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source and destination operand (first operand) is an XMM register. The second source operand (second operand) can be an XMM register or 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM destination register remain unchanged. Four comparisons are performed with results written to bits 127:0 of the destination operand. The result of each comparison is a doubleword mask of all 1s (comparison true) or all 0s (comparison false).

CMPSD—Compare Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
F2 0F C2 /r ib CMPSD xmm1, xmm2/m64, imm8	A	V/V	SSE2	Compare low double-precision floating-point value in xmm2/m64 and xmm1 using bits 2:0 of imm8 as comparison predicate.
VEX.LIG.F2.0F.WIG C2 /r ib VCMPD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m64, imm8	B	V/V	AVX	Compare low double-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m64 and xmm2 using bits 4:0 of imm8 as comparison predicate.
EVEX.LIG.F2.0F.W1 C2 /r ib VCMPD k1 {k2}, xmm2, xmm3/m64{sae}, imm8	C	V/V	AVX512F	Compare low double-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m64 and xmm2 using bits 4:0 of imm8 as comparison predicate with writemask k2 and leave the result in mask register k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8
C	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8

Description

Compares the low double-precision floating-point values in the second source operand and the first source operand and returns the results in of the comparison to the destination operand. The comparison predicate operand (immediate operand) specifies the type of comparison performed.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source and destination operand (first operand) is an XMM register. The second source operand (second operand) can be an XMM register or 64-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:64) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged. The comparison result is a quadword mask of all 1s (comparison true) or all 0s (comparison false).

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand (second operand) is an XMM register. The second source operand (third operand) can be an XMM register or a 64-bit memory location. The result is stored in the low quadword of the destination operand; the high quadword is filled with the contents of the high quadword of the first source operand. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination ZMM register are zeroed. The comparison result is a quadword mask of all 1s (comparison true) or all 0s (comparison false).

EVEX encoded version: The first source operand (second operand) is an XMM register. The second source operand can be a XMM register or a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand (first operand) is an opmask register. The comparison result is a single mask bit of 1 (comparison true) or 0 (comparison false), written to the destination starting from the LSB according to the writemask k2. Bits (MAX_KL-1:128) of the destination register are cleared.

The comparison predicate operand is an 8-bit immediate:

- For instructions encoded using the VEX prefix, bits 4:0 define the type of comparison to be performed (see Table 3-1). Bits 5 through 7 of the immediate are reserved.
- For instruction encodings that do not use VEX prefix, bits 2:0 define the type of comparison to be made (see the first 8 rows of Table 3-1). Bits 3 through 7 of the immediate are reserved.

The unordered relationship is true when at least one of the two source operands being compared is a NaN; the ordered relationship is true when neither source operand is a NaN.

A subsequent computational instruction that uses the mask result in the destination operand as an input operand will not generate an exception, because a mask of all 0s corresponds to a floating-point value of +0.0 and a mask of all 1s corresponds to a QNaN.

Note that processors with “CPUID.1H:ECX.AVX =0” do not implement the “greater-than”, “greater-than-or-equal”, “not-greater than”, and “not-greater-than-or-equal relations” predicates. These comparisons can be made either by using the inverse relationship (that is, use the “not-less-than-or-equal” to make a “greater-than” comparison)

CMPSS—Compare Scalar Single-Precision Floating-Point Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
F3 0F C2 /r ib CMPSS xmm1, xmm2/m32, imm8	A	V/V	SSE	Compare low single-precision floating-point value in xmm2/m32 and xmm1 using bits 2:0 of imm8 as comparison predicate.
VEEX.LIG.F3.0F.WIG C2 /r ib VCMPSS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m32, imm8	B	V/V	AVX	Compare low single-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m32 and xmm2 using bits 4:0 of imm8 as comparison predicate.
EVEX.LIG.F3.0F.W0 C2 /r ib VCMPSS k1 {k2}, xmm2, xmm3/m32{sae}, imm8	C	V/V	AVX512F	Compare low single-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m32 and xmm2 using bits 4:0 of imm8 as comparison predicate with writemask k2 and leave the result in mask register k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8
C	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8

Description

Compares the low single-precision floating-point values in the second source operand and the first source operand and returns the results of the comparison to the destination operand. The comparison predicate operand (immediate operand) specifies the type of comparison performed.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source and destination operand (first operand) is an XMM register. The second source operand (second operand) can be an XMM register or 32-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:32) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged. The comparison result is a doubleword mask of all 1s (comparison true) or all 0s (comparison false).

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand (second operand) is an XMM register. The second source operand (third operand) can be an XMM register or a 32-bit memory location. The result is stored in the low 32 bits of the destination operand; bits 128:32 of the destination operand are copied from the first source operand. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination ZMM register are zeroed. The comparison result is a doubleword mask of all 1s (comparison true) or all 0s (comparison false).

EVEX encoded version: The first source operand (second operand) is an XMM register. The second source operand can be a XMM register or a 32-bit memory location. The destination operand (first operand) is an opmask register. The comparison result is a single mask bit of 1 (comparison true) or 0 (comparison false), written to the destination starting from the LSB according to the writemask k2. Bits (MAX_KL-1:128) of the destination register are cleared.

The comparison predicate operand is an 8-bit immediate:

- For instructions encoded using the VEX prefix, bits 4:0 define the type of comparison to be performed (see Table 3-1). Bits 5 through 7 of the immediate are reserved.
- For instruction encodings that do not use VEX prefix, bits 2:0 define the type of comparison to be made (see the first 8 rows of Table 3-1). Bits 3 through 7 of the immediate are reserved.

The unordered relationship is true when at least one of the two source operands being compared is a NaN; the ordered relationship is true when neither source operand is a NaN.

A subsequent computational instruction that uses the mask result in the destination operand as an input operand will not generate an exception, because a mask of all 0s corresponds to a floating-point value of +0.0 and a mask of all 1s corresponds to a QNaN.

Note that processors with “CPUID.1H:ECX.AVX =0” do not implement the “greater-than”, “greater-than-or-equal”, “not-greater than”, and “not-greater-than-or-equal relations” predicates. These comparisons can be made either

CPUID—CPU Identification

Opcode	Instruction	Op/En	64-Bit Mode	Compat/Leg Mode	Description
0F A2	CPUID	Z0	Valid	Valid	Returns processor identification and feature information to the EAX, EBX, ECX, and EDX registers, as determined by input entered in EAX (in some cases, ECX as well).

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
Z0	NA	NA	NA	NA

Description

The ID flag (bit 21) in the EFLAGS register indicates support for the CPUID instruction. If a software procedure can set and clear this flag, the processor executing the procedure supports the CPUID instruction. This instruction operates the same in non-64-bit modes and 64-bit mode.

CPUID returns processor identification and feature information in the EAX, EBX, ECX, and EDX registers.¹ The instruction's output is dependent on the contents of the EAX register upon execution (in some cases, ECX as well). For example, the following pseudocode loads EAX with 00H and causes CPUID to return a Maximum Return Value and the Vendor Identification String in the appropriate registers:

```
MOV EAX, 00H
CPUID
```

Table 3-8 shows information returned, depending on the initial value loaded into the EAX register.

Two types of information are returned: basic and extended function information. If a value entered for CPUID.EAX is higher than the maximum input value for basic or extended function for that processor then the data for the highest basic information leaf is returned. For example, using some Intel processors, the following is true:

```
CPUID.EAX = 05H (* Returns MONITOR/MWAIT leaf. *)
CPUID.EAX = 0AH (* Returns Architectural Performance Monitoring leaf. *)
CPUID.EAX = 0BH (* Returns Extended Topology Enumeration leaf. *)2
CPUID.EAX = 0CH (* INVALID: Returns the same information as CPUID.EAX = 0BH. *)
CPUID.EAX = 1FH (* Returns V2 Extended Topology Enumeration leaf. *)2
CPUID.EAX = 80000008H (* Returns linear/physical address size data. *)
CPUID.EAX = 8000000AH (* INVALID: Returns same information as CPUID.EAX = 0BH. *)
```

If a value entered for CPUID.EAX is less than or equal to the maximum input value and the leaf is not supported on that processor then 0 is returned in all the registers.

When CPUID returns the highest basic leaf information as a result of an invalid input EAX value, any dependence on input ECX value in the basic leaf is honored.

CPUID can be executed at any privilege level to serialize instruction execution. Serializing instruction execution guarantees that any modifications to flags, registers, and memory for previous instructions are completed before the next instruction is fetched and executed.

See also:

"Serializing Instructions" in Chapter 8, "Multiple-Processor Management," in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3A*.

"Caching Translation Information" in Chapter 4, "Paging," in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3A*.

1. On Intel 64 processors, CPUID clears the high 32 bits of the RAX/RBX/RCX/RDX registers in all modes.
2. CPUID leaf 1FH is a preferred superset to leaf 0BH. Intel recommends first checking for the existence of CPUID leaf 1FH before using leaf 0BH.

Table 3-8. Information Returned by CPUID Instruction

Initial EAX Value	Information Provided about the Processor	
<i>Basic CPUID Information</i>		
0H	EAX	Maximum Input Value for Basic CPUID Information.
	EBX	"Genu"
	ECX	"ntel"
	EDX	"inel"
01H	EAX	Version Information: Type, Family, Model, and Stepping ID (see Figure 3-6).
	EBX	Bits 07 - 00: Brand Index. Bits 15 - 08: CLFLUSH line size (Value * 8 = cache line size in bytes; used also by CLFLUSHOPT). Bits 23 - 16: Maximum number of addressable IDs for logical processors in this physical package*. Bits 31 - 24: Initial APIC ID**.
	ECX	Feature Information (see Figure 3-7 and Table 3-10).
	EDX	Feature Information (see Figure 3-8 and Table 3-11).
		NOTES: * The nearest power-of-2 integer that is not smaller than EBX[23:16] is the number of unique initial APIC IDs reserved for addressing different logical processors in a physical package. This field is only valid if CPUID.1.EDX.HTT[bit 28]= 1. ** The 8-bit initial APIC ID in EBX[31:24] is replaced by the 32-bit x2APIC ID, available in Leaf 0BH and Leaf 1FH.
02H	EAX	Cache and TLB Information (see Table 3-12).
	EBX	Cache and TLB Information.
	ECX	Cache and TLB Information.
	EDX	Cache and TLB Information.
03H	EAX	Reserved.
	EBX	Reserved.
	ECX	Bits 00 - 31 of 96 bit processor serial number. (Available in Pentium III processor only; otherwise, the value in this register is reserved.)
	EDX	Bits 32 - 63 of 96 bit processor serial number. (Available in Pentium III processor only; otherwise, the value in this register is reserved.)
		NOTES: Processor serial number (PSN) is not supported in the Pentium 4 processor or later. On all models, use the PSN flag (returned using CPUID) to check for PSN support before accessing the feature.
CPUID leaves above 2 and below 80000000H are visible only when IA32_MISC_ENABLE[bit 22] has its default value of 0.		
<i>Deterministic Cache Parameters Leaf</i>		
04H		NOTES: Leaf 04H output depends on the initial value in ECX.* See also: "INPUT EAX = 04H: Returns Deterministic Cache Parameters for Each Level" on page 218.
	EAX	Bits 04 - 00: Cache Type Field. 0 = Null - No more caches. 1 = Data Cache. 2 = Instruction Cache. 3 = Unified Cache. 4-31 = Reserved.

Table 3-8. Information Returned by CPUID Instruction (Contd.)

Initial EAX Value	Information Provided about the Processor
	<p>Bits 07 - 05: Cache Level (starts at 1). Bit 08: Self Initializing cache level (does not need SW initialization). Bit 09: Fully Associative cache.</p> <p>Bits 13 - 10: Reserved. Bits 25 - 14: Maximum number of addressable IDs for logical processors sharing this cache**, ***. Bits 31 - 26: Maximum number of addressable IDs for processor cores in the physical package**, ****, *****.</p> <p>EBX Bits 11 - 00: L = System Coherency Line Size**. Bits 21 - 12: P = Physical Line partitions**. Bits 31 - 22: W = Ways of associativity**.</p> <p>ECX Bits 31-00: S = Number of Sets**.</p> <p>EDX Bit 00: Write-Back Invalidate/Invalidate. 0 = WBINVD/INVD from threads sharing this cache acts upon lower level caches for threads sharing this cache. 1 = WBINVD/INVD is not guaranteed to act upon lower level caches of non-originating threads sharing this cache.</p> <p>Bit 01: Cache Inclusiveness. 0 = Cache is not inclusive of lower cache levels. 1 = Cache is inclusive of lower cache levels.</p> <p>Bit 02: Complex Cache Indexing. 0 = Direct mapped cache. 1 = A complex function is used to index the cache, potentially using all address bits.</p> <p>Bits 31 - 03: Reserved = 0.</p> <p>NOTES:</p> <p>* If ECX contains an invalid sub leaf index, EAX/EBX/ECX/EDX return 0. Sub-leaf index n+1 is invalid if sub-leaf n returns EAX[4:0] as 0.</p> <p>** Add one to the return value to get the result.</p> <p>***The nearest power-of-2 integer that is not smaller than (1 + EAX[25:14]) is the number of unique initial APIC IDs reserved for addressing different logical processors sharing this cache.</p> <p>**** The nearest power-of-2 integer that is not smaller than (1 + EAX[31:26]) is the number of unique Core_IDs reserved for addressing different processor cores in a physical package. Core ID is a subset of bits of the initial APIC ID.</p> <p>***** The returned value is constant for valid initial values in ECX. Valid ECX values start from 0.</p>
	<i>MONITOR/MWAIT Leaf</i>
05H	<p>EAX Bits 15 - 00: Smallest monitor-line size in bytes (default is processor’s monitor granularity). Bits 31 - 16: Reserved = 0.</p> <p>EBX Bits 15 - 00: Largest monitor-line size in bytes (default is processor’s monitor granularity). Bits 31 - 16: Reserved = 0.</p> <p>ECX Bit 00: Enumeration of Monitor-Mwait extensions (beyond EAX and EBX registers) supported. Bit 01: Supports treating interrupts as break-event for MWAIT, even when interrupts disabled. Bits 31 - 02: Reserved.</p>

Table 3-8. Information Returned by CPUID Instruction (Contd.)

Initial EAX Value	Information Provided about the Processor	
	EDX	<p>Bits 03 - 00: Number of C0* sub C-states supported using MWAIT. Bits 07 - 04: Number of C1* sub C-states supported using MWAIT. Bits 11 - 08: Number of C2* sub C-states supported using MWAIT. Bits 15 - 12: Number of C3* sub C-states supported using MWAIT. Bits 19 - 16: Number of C4* sub C-states supported using MWAIT. Bits 23 - 20: Number of C5* sub C-states supported using MWAIT. Bits 27 - 24: Number of C6* sub C-states supported using MWAIT. Bits 31 - 28: Number of C7* sub C-states supported using MWAIT.</p> <p>NOTE: * The definition of C0 through C7 states for MWAIT extension are processor-specific C-states, not ACPI C-states.</p>
<i>Thermal and Power Management Leaf</i>		
06H	EAX	<p>Bit 00: Digital temperature sensor is supported if set. Bit 01: Intel Turbo Boost Technology available (see description of IA32_MISC_ENABLE[38]). Bit 02: ARAT. APIC-Timer-always-running feature is supported if set. Bit 03: Reserved. Bit 04: PLN. Power limit notification controls are supported if set. Bit 05: ECMD. Clock modulation duty cycle extension is supported if set. Bit 06: PTM. Package thermal management is supported if set. Bit 07: HWP. HWP base registers (IA32_PM_ENABLE[bit 0], IA32_HWP_CAPABILITIES, IA32_HWP_REQUEST, IA32_HWP_STATUS) are supported if set. Bit 08: HWP_Notification. IA32_HWP_INTERRUPT MSR is supported if set. Bit 09: HWP_Activity_Window. IA32_HWP_REQUEST[bits 41:32] is supported if set. Bit 10: HWP_Energy_Performance_Preference. IA32_HWP_REQUEST[bits 31:24] is supported if set. Bit 11: HWP_Package_Level_Request. IA32_HWP_REQUEST_PKG MSR is supported if set. Bit 12: Reserved. Bit 13: HDC. HDC base registers IA32_PKG_HDC_CTL, IA32_PM_CTL1, IA32_THREAD_STALL MSRs are supported if set. Bit 14: Intel® Turbo Boost Max Technology 3.0 available. Bit 15: HWP Capabilities. Highest Performance change is supported if set. Bit 16: HWP PECL override is supported if set. Bit 17: Flexible HWP is supported if set. Bit 18: Fast access mode for the IA32_HWP_REQUEST MSR is supported if set. Bit 19: Reserved. Bit 20: Ignoring Idle Logical Processor HWP request is supported if set. Bits 31 - 21: Reserved.</p>
	EBX	<p>Bits 03 - 00: Number of Interrupt Thresholds in Digital Thermal Sensor. Bits 31 - 04: Reserved.</p>
	ECX	<p>Bit 00: Hardware Coordination Feedback Capability (Presence of IA32_MPERF and IA32_APERF). The capability to provide a measure of delivered processor performance (since last reset of the counters), as a percentage of the expected processor performance when running at the TSC frequency. Bits 02 - 01: Reserved = 0. Bit 03: The processor supports performance-energy bias preference if CPUID.06H:ECX.SETBH[bit 3] is set and it also implies the presence of a new architectural MSR called IA32_ENERGY_PERF_BIAS (1B0H). Bits 31 - 04: Reserved = 0.</p>
	EDX	Reserved = 0.

Table 3-8. Information Returned by CPUID Instruction (Contd.)

Initial EAX Value	Information Provided about the Processor
<i>Structured Extended Feature Flags Enumeration Leaf (Output depends on ECX input value)</i>	
07H	Sub-leaf 0 (Input ECX = 0). *
EAX	Bits 31 - 00: Reports the maximum input value for supported leaf 7 sub-leaves.
EBX	Bit 00: FSGSBASE. Supports RDFSBASE/RDGSBASE/WRFSBASE/WRGSBASE if 1. Bit 01: IA32_TSC_ADJUST MSR is supported if 1. Bit 02: SGX. Supports Intel® Software Guard Extensions (Intel® SGX Extensions) if 1. Bit 03: BMI1. Bit 04: HLE. Bit 05: AVX2. Bit 06: FDP_EXCPTN_ONLY. x87 FPU Data Pointer updated only on x87 exceptions if 1. Bit 07: SMEP. Supports Supervisor-Mode Execution Prevention if 1. Bit 08: BMI2. Bit 09: Supports Enhanced REP MOVSB/STOSB if 1. Bit 10: INVPCID. If 1, supports INVPCID instruction for system software that manages process-context identifiers. Bit 11: RTM. Bit 12: RDT-M. Supports Intel® Resource Director Technology (Intel® RDT) Monitoring capability if 1. Bit 13: Deprecates FPU CS and FPU DS values if 1. Bit 14: MPX. Supports Intel® Memory Protection Extensions if 1. Bit 15: RDT-A. Supports Intel® Resource Director Technology (Intel® RDT) Allocation capability if 1. Bit 16: AVX512F. Bit 17: AVX512DQ. Bit 18: RDSEED. Bit 19: ADX. Bit 20: SMAP. Supports Supervisor-Mode Access Prevention (and the CLAC/STAC instructions) if 1. Bit 21: AVX512_IFMA. Bit 22: Reserved. Bit 23: CLFLUSHOPT. Bit 24: CLWB. Bit 25: Intel Processor Trace. Bit 26: AVX512PF. (Intel® Xeon Phi™ only.) Bit 27: AVX512ER. (Intel® Xeon Phi™ only.) Bit 28: AVX512CD. Bit 29: SHA. supports Intel® Secure Hash Algorithm Extensions (Intel® SHA Extensions) if 1. Bit 30: AVX512BW. Bit 31: AVX512VL.
ECX	Bit 00: PREFETCHWT1. (Intel® Xeon Phi™ only.) Bit 01: AVX512_VBMI. Bit 02: UMIP. Supports user-mode instruction prevention if 1. Bit 03: PKU. Supports protection keys for user-mode pages if 1. Bit 04: OSPKE. If 1, OS has set CR4.PKE to enable protection keys (and the RDPKRU/WRPKRU instructions). Bits 13 - 05: Reserved. Bit 14: AVX512_VPOPCNTDQ. (Intel® Xeon Phi™ only.) Bits 16 - 15: Reserved. Bits 21 - 17: The value of MAWAU used by the BNDLDX and BNDSTX instructions in 64-bit mode. Bit 22: RDPID and IA32_TSC_AUX are available if 1. Bits 29 - 23: Reserved. Bit 30: SGX_LC. Supports SGX Launch Configuration if 1. Bit 31: Reserved.

Table 3-8. Information Returned by CPUID Instruction (Contd.)

Initial EAX Value	Information Provided about the Processor	
	EDX	<p>Bit 01: Reserved. Bit 02: AVX512_4VNNIW. (Intel® Xeon Phi™ only.) Bit 03: AVX512_4FMAPS. (Intel® Xeon Phi™ only.) Bits 25 - 04: Reserved. Bit 26: Enumerates support for indirect branch restricted speculation (IBRS) and the indirect branch predictor barrier (IBPB). Processors that set this bit support the IA32_SPEC_CTRL MSR and the IA32_PRED_CMD MSR. They allow software to set IA32_SPEC_CTRL[0] (IBRS) and IA32_PRED_CMD[0] (IBPB). Bit 27: Enumerates support for single thread indirect branch predictors (STIBP). Processors that set this bit support the IA32_SPEC_CTRL MSR. They allow software to set IA32_SPEC_CTRL[1] (STIBP). Bit 28: Enumerates support for L1D_FLUSH. Processors that set this bit support the IA32_FLUSH_CMD MSR. They allow software to set IA32_FLUSH_CMD[0] (L1D_FLUSH). Bit 29: Enumerates support for the IA32_ARCH_CAPABILITIES MSR. Bit 30: Reserved. Bit 31: Enumerates support for Speculative Store Bypass Disable (SSBD). Processors that set this bit support the IA32_SPEC_CTRL MSR. They allow software to set IA32_SPEC_CTRL[2] (SSBD).</p> <p>NOTE: * If ECX contains an invalid sub-leaf index, EAX/EBX/ECX/EDX return 0. Sub-leaf index n is invalid if n exceeds the value that sub-leaf 0 returns in EAX.</p>
<i>Direct Cache Access Information Leaf</i>		
09H	EAX	Value of bits [31:0] of IA32_PLATFORM_DCA_CAP MSR (address 1F8H).
	EBX	Reserved.
	ECX	Reserved.
	EDX	Reserved.
<i>Architectural Performance Monitoring Leaf</i>		
0AH	EAX	<p>Bits 07 - 00: Version ID of architectural performance monitoring. Bits 15 - 08: Number of general-purpose performance monitoring counter per logical processor. Bits 23 - 16: Bit width of general-purpose, performance monitoring counter. Bits 31 - 24: Length of EBX bit vector to enumerate architectural performance monitoring events.</p>
	EBX	<p>Bit 00: Core cycle event not available if 1. Bit 01: Instruction retired event not available if 1. Bit 02: Reference cycles event not available if 1. Bit 03: Last-level cache reference event not available if 1. Bit 04: Last-level cache misses event not available if 1. Bit 05: Branch instruction retired event not available if 1. Bit 06: Branch mispredict retired event not available if 1. Bits 31 - 07: Reserved = 0.</p>
	ECX	Reserved = 0.
	EDX	<p>Bits 04 - 00: Number of fixed-function performance counters (if Version ID > 1). Bits 12 - 05: Bit width of fixed-function performance counters (if Version ID > 1). Bits 14 - 13: Reserved = 0. Bit 15: AnyThread deprecation. Bits 31 - 16: Reserved = 0.</p>

Table 3-8. Information Returned by CPUID Instruction (Contd.)

Initial EAX Value	Information Provided about the Processor
<i>Extended Topology Enumeration Leaf</i>	
OBH	<p>NOTES:</p> <p><i>CPUID leaf 1FH is a preferred superset to leaf 0BH. Intel recommends first checking for the existence of Leaf 1FH before using leaf 0BH.</i></p> <p>Most of Leaf 0BH output depends on the initial value in ECX.</p> <p>The EDX output of leaf 0BH is always valid and does not vary with input value in ECX.</p> <p>Output value in ECX[7:0] always equals input value in ECX[7:0].</p> <p>Sub-leaf index 0 enumerates SMT level. Each subsequent higher sub-leaf index enumerates a higher-level topological entity in hierarchical order.</p> <p>For sub-leaves that return an invalid level-type of 0 in ECX[15:8]; EAX and EBX will return 0.</p> <p>If an input value n in ECX returns the invalid level-type of 0 in ECX[15:8], other input values with ECX > n also return 0 in ECX[15:8].</p> <p>EAX Bits 04 - 00: Number of bits to shift right on x2APIC ID to get a unique topology ID of the next level type*. All logical processors with the same next level ID share current level. Bits 31 - 05: Reserved.</p> <p>EBX Bits 15 - 00: Number of logical processors at this level type. The number reflects configuration as shipped by Intel**. Bits 31 - 16: Reserved.</p> <p>ECX Bits 07 - 00: Level number. Same value in ECX input. Bits 15 - 08: Level type***. Bits 31 - 16: Reserved.</p> <p>EDX Bits 31 - 00: x2APIC ID the current logical processor.</p> <p>NOTES:</p> <p>* Software should use this field (EAX[4:0]) to enumerate processor topology of the system.</p> <p>** Software must not use EBX[15:0] to enumerate processor topology of the system. This value in this field (EBX[15:0]) is only intended for display/diagnostic purposes. The actual number of logical processors available to BIOS/OS/Applications may be different from the value of EBX[15:0], depending on software and platform hardware configurations.</p> <p>*** The value of the "level type" field is not related to level numbers in any way, higher "level type" values do not mean higher levels. Level type field has the following encoding: 0: Invalid. 1: SMT. 2: Core. 3-255: Reserved.</p>

Table 3-8. Information Returned by CPUID Instruction (Contd.)

Initial EAX Value	Information Provided about the Processor	
<i>Processor Extended State Enumeration Main Leaf (EAX = 0DH, ECX = 0)</i>		
0DH		<p>NOTES: Leaf 0DH main leaf (ECX = 0).</p> <p>EAX Bits 31 - 00: Reports the supported bits of the lower 32 bits of XCRO. XCRO[n] can be set to 1 only if EAX[n] is 1. Bit 00: x87 state. Bit 01: SSE state. Bit 02: AVX state. Bits 04 - 03: MPX state. Bits 07 - 05: AVX-512 state. Bit 08: Used for IA32_XSS. Bit 09: PKRU state. Bits 12 - 10: Reserved. Bit 13: Used for IA32_XSS. Bits 31 - 14: Reserved.</p> <p>EBX Bits 31 - 00: Maximum size (bytes, from the beginning of the XSAVE/XRSTOR save area) required by enabled features in XCRO. May be different than ECX if some features at the end of the XSAVE save area are not enabled.</p> <p>ECX Bit 31 - 00: Maximum size (bytes, from the beginning of the XSAVE/XRSTOR save area) of the XSAVE/XRSTOR save area required by all supported features in the processor, i.e., all the valid bit fields in XCRO.</p> <p>EDX Bit 31 - 00: Reports the supported bits of the upper 32 bits of XCRO. XCRO[n+32] can be set to 1 only if EDX[n] is 1. Bits 31 - 00: Reserved.</p>
<i>Processor Extended State Enumeration Sub-leaf (EAX = 0DH, ECX = 1)</i>		
0DH	EAX	Bit 00: XSAVEOPT is available. Bit 01: Supports XSAVEC and the compacted form of XRSTOR if set. Bit 02: Supports XGETBV with ECX = 1 if set. Bit 03: Supports XSAVES/XRSTORS and IA32_XSS if set. Bits 31 - 04: Reserved.
	EBX	Bits 31 - 00: The size in bytes of the XSAVE area containing all states enabled by XCRO IA32_XSS.
	ECX	Bits 31 - 00: Reports the supported bits of the lower 32 bits of the IA32_XSS MSR. IA32_XSS[n] can be set to 1 only if ECX[n] is 1. Bits 07 - 00: Used for XCRO. Bit 08: PT state. Bit 09: Used for XCRO. Bits 12 - 10: Reserved. Bit 13: HWP state. Bits 31 - 14: Reserved.
	EDX	Bits 31 - 00: Reports the supported bits of the upper 32 bits of the IA32_XSS MSR. IA32_XSS[n+32] can be set to 1 only if EDX[n] is 1. Bits 31 - 00: Reserved.

Table 3-8. Information Returned by CPUID Instruction (Contd.)

Initial EAX Value	Information Provided about the Processor
<i>Processor Extended State Enumeration Sub-leaves (EAX = 0DH, ECX = n, n > 1)</i>	
0DH	<p>NOTES: Leaf 0DH output depends on the initial value in ECX. Each sub-leaf index (starting at position 2) is supported if it corresponds to a supported bit in either the XCRO register or the IA32_XSS MSR. * If ECX contains an invalid sub-leaf index, EAX/EBX/ECX/EDX return 0. Sub-leaf n (0 ≤ n ≤ 31) is invalid if sub-leaf 0 returns 0 in EAX[n] and sub-leaf 1 returns 0 in ECX[n]. Sub-leaf n (32 ≤ n ≤ 63) is invalid if sub-leaf 0 returns 0 in EDX[n-32] and sub-leaf 1 returns 0 in EDX[n-32].</p> <p>EAX Bits 31 - 0: The size in bytes (from the offset specified in EBX) of the save area for an extended state feature associated with a valid sub-leaf index, <i>n</i>.</p> <p>EBX Bits 31 - 0: The offset in bytes of this extended state component's save area from the beginning of the XSAVE/XRSTOR area. This field reports 0 if the sub-leaf index, <i>n</i>, does not map to a valid bit in the XCRO register*.</p> <p>ECX Bit 00 is set if the bit <i>n</i> (corresponding to the sub-leaf index) is supported in the IA32_XSS MSR; it is clear if bit <i>n</i> is instead supported in XCRO. Bit 01 is set if, when the compacted format of an XSAVE area is used, this extended state component located on the next 64-byte boundary following the preceding state component (otherwise, it is located immediately following the preceding state component). Bits 31 - 02 are reserved. This field reports 0 if the sub-leaf index, <i>n</i>, is invalid*.</p> <p>EDX This field reports 0 if the sub-leaf index, <i>n</i>, is invalid*; otherwise it is reserved.</p>
<i>Intel Resource Director Technology (Intel RDT) Monitoring Enumeration Sub-leaf (EAX = 0FH, ECX = 0)</i>	
0FH	<p>NOTES: Leaf 0FH output depends on the initial value in ECX. Sub-leaf index 0 reports valid resource type starting at bit position 1 of EDX.</p> <p>EAX Reserved.</p> <p>EBX Bits 31 - 00: Maximum range (zero-based) of RMID within this physical processor of all types.</p> <p>ECX Reserved.</p> <p>EDX Bit 00: Reserved. Bit 01: Supports L3 Cache Intel RDT Monitoring if 1. Bits 31 - 02: Reserved.</p>
<i>L3 Cache Intel RDT Monitoring Capability Enumeration Sub-leaf (EAX = 0FH, ECX = 1)</i>	
0FH	<p>NOTES: Leaf 0FH output depends on the initial value in ECX.</p> <p>EAX Reserved.</p> <p>EBX Bits 31 - 00: Conversion factor from reported IA32_QM_CTR value to occupancy metric (bytes).</p> <p>ECX Maximum range (zero-based) of RMID of this resource type.</p> <p>EDX Bit 00: Supports L3 occupancy monitoring if 1. Bit 01: Supports L3 Total Bandwidth monitoring if 1. Bit 02: Supports L3 Local Bandwidth monitoring if 1. Bits 31 - 03: Reserved.</p>
<i>Intel Resource Director Technology (Intel RDT) Allocation Enumeration Sub-leaf (EAX = 10H, ECX = 0)</i>	
10H	<p>NOTES: Leaf 10H output depends on the initial value in ECX. Sub-leaf index 0 reports valid resource identification (ResID) starting at bit position 1 of EBX.</p>

Table 3-8. Information Returned by CPUID Instruction (Contd.)

Initial EAX Value	Information Provided about the Processor
	EAX Reserved. EBX Bit 00: Reserved. Bit 01: Supports L3 Cache Allocation Technology if 1. Bit 02: Supports L2 Cache Allocation Technology if 1. Bit 03: Supports Memory Bandwidth Allocation if 1. Bits 31 - 04: Reserved. ECX Reserved. EDX Reserved.
<i>L3 Cache Allocation Technology Enumeration Sub-leaf (EAX = 10H, ECX = ResID =1)</i>	
10H	NOTES: Leaf 10H output depends on the initial value in ECX. EAX Bits 04 - 00: Length of the capacity bit mask for the corresponding ResID using minus-one notation. Bits 31 - 05: Reserved. EBX Bits 31 - 00: Bit-granular map of isolation/contention of allocation units. ECX Bits 01 - 00: Reserved. Bit 02: Code and Data Prioritization Technology supported if 1. Bits 31 - 03: Reserved. EDX Bits 15 - 00: Highest COS number supported for this ResID. Bits 31 - 16: Reserved.
<i>L2 Cache Allocation Technology Enumeration Sub-leaf (EAX = 10H, ECX = ResID =2)</i>	
10H	NOTES: Leaf 10H output depends on the initial value in ECX. EAX Bits 04 - 00: Length of the capacity bit mask for the corresponding ResID using minus-one notation. Bits 31 - 05: Reserved. EBX Bits 31 - 00: Bit-granular map of isolation/contention of allocation units. ECX Bits 31 - 00: Reserved. EDX Bits 15 - 00: Highest COS number supported for this ResID. Bits 31 - 16: Reserved.
<i>Memory Bandwidth Allocation Enumeration Sub-leaf (EAX = 10H, ECX = ResID =3)</i>	
10H	NOTES: Leaf 10H output depends on the initial value in ECX. EAX Bits 11 - 00: Reports the maximum MBA throttling value supported for the corresponding ResID using minus-one notation. Bits 31 - 12: Reserved. EBX Bits 31 - 00: Reserved. ECX Bits 01 - 00: Reserved. Bit 02: Reports whether the response of the delay values is linear. Bits 31 - 03: Reserved. EDX Bits 15 - 00: Highest COS number supported for this ResID. Bits 31 - 16: Reserved.

Table 3-8. Information Returned by CPUID Instruction (Contd.)

Initial EAX Value	Information Provided about the Processor
<i>Intel SGX Capability Enumeration Leaf, sub-leaf 0 (EAX = 12H, ECX = 0)</i>	
12H	<p>NOTES: Leaf 12H sub-leaf 0 (ECX = 0) is supported if CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0H):EBX[SGX] = 1.</p> <p>EAX Bit 00: SGX1. If 1, Indicates Intel SGX supports the collection of SGX1 leaf functions. Bit 01: SGX2. If 1, Indicates Intel SGX supports the collection of SGX2 leaf functions. Bits 04 - 02: Reserved. Bit 05: If 1, indicates Intel SGX supports ENCLV instruction leaves EINCVRTCHILD, EDECVIRTCHILD, and ESETCONTEXT. Bit 06: If 1, indicates Intel SGX supports ENCLS instruction leaves ETRACKC, ERDINFO, ELDBC, and ELDUC. Bits 31 - 07: Reserved.</p> <p>EBX Bits 31 - 00: MISCSELECT. Bit vector of supported extended SGX features.</p> <p>ECX Bits 31 - 00: Reserved.</p> <p>EDX Bits 07 - 00: MaxEnclaveSize_Not64. The maximum supported enclave size in non-64-bit mode is 2^(EDX[7:0]). Bits 15 - 08: MaxEnclaveSize_64. The maximum supported enclave size in 64-bit mode is 2^(EDX[15:8]). Bits 31 - 16: Reserved.</p>
<i>Intel SGX Attributes Enumeration Leaf, sub-leaf 1 (EAX = 12H, ECX = 1)</i>	
12H	<p>NOTES: Leaf 12H sub-leaf 1 (ECX = 1) is supported if CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0H):EBX[SGX] = 1.</p> <p>EAX Bit 31 - 00: Reports the valid bits of SECS.ATTRIBUTES[31:0] that software can set with ECREATE.</p> <p>EBX Bit 31 - 00: Reports the valid bits of SECS.ATTRIBUTES[63:32] that software can set with ECREATE.</p> <p>ECX Bit 31 - 00: Reports the valid bits of SECS.ATTRIBUTES[95:64] that software can set with ECREATE.</p> <p>EDX Bit 31 - 00: Reports the valid bits of SECS.ATTRIBUTES[127:96] that software can set with ECREATE.</p>
<i>Intel SGX EPC Enumeration Leaf, sub-leaves (EAX = 12H, ECX = 2 or higher)</i>	
12H	<p>NOTES: Leaf 12H sub-leaf 2 or higher (ECX >= 2) is supported if CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0H):EBX[SGX] = 1. For sub-leaves (ECX = 2 or higher), definition of EDX,ECX,EBX,EAX[31:4] depends on the sub-leaf type listed below.</p> <p>EAX Bit 03 - 00: Sub-leaf Type 0000b: Indicates this sub-leaf is invalid. 0001b: This sub-leaf enumerates an EPC section. EBX:EAX and EDX:ECX provide information on the Enclave Page Cache (EPC) section. All other type encodings are reserved.</p> <p>Type 0000b. This sub-leaf is invalid. EDX:ECX:EBX:EAX return 0.</p>

Table 3-8. Information Returned by CPUID Instruction (Contd.)

Initial EAX Value	Information Provided about the Processor	
	Type	<p>0001b. This sub-leaf enumerates an EPC sections with EDX:ECX, EBX:EAX defined as follows.</p> <p>EAX[11:04]: Reserved (enumerate 0). EAX[31:12]: Bits 31:12 of the physical address of the base of the EPC section.</p> <p>EBX[19:00]: Bits 51:32 of the physical address of the base of the EPC section. EBX[31:20]: Reserved.</p> <p>ECX[03:00]: EPC section property encoding defined as follows: If EAX[3:0] 0000b, then all bits of the EDX:ECX pair are enumerated as 0. If EAX[3:0] 0001b, then this section has confidentiality and integrity protection. All other encodings are reserved.</p> <p>ECX[11:04]: Reserved (enumerate 0). ECX[31:12]: Bits 31:12 of the size of the corresponding EPC section within the Processor Reserved Memory.</p> <p>EDX[19:00]: Bits 51:32 of the size of the corresponding EPC section within the Processor Reserved Memory. EDX[31:20]: Reserved.</p>
<i>Intel Processor Trace Enumeration Main Leaf (EAX = 14H, ECX = 0)</i>		
14H		<p>NOTES: Leaf 14H main leaf (ECX = 0).</p> <p>EAX Bits 31 - 00: Reports the maximum sub-leaf supported in leaf 14H.</p> <p>EBX Bit 00: If 1, indicates that IA32_RTIT_CTL.CR3Filter can be set to 1, and that IA32_RTIT_CR3_MATCH MSR can be accessed. Bit 01: If 1, indicates support of Configurable PSB and Cycle-Accurate Mode. Bit 02: If 1, indicates support of IP Filtering, TraceStop filtering, and preservation of Intel PT MSRs across warm reset. Bit 03: If 1, indicates support of MTC timing packet and suppression of COFI-based packets. Bit 04: If 1, indicates support of PTWRITE. Writes can set IA32_RTIT_CTL[12] (PTWEn) and IA32_RTIT_CTL[5] (FUPonPTW), and PTWRITE can generate packets. Bit 05: If 1, indicates support of Power Event Trace. Writes can set IA32_RTIT_CTL[4] (PwrEvtEn), enabling Power Event Trace packet generation. Bit 31 - 06: Reserved.</p> <p>ECX Bit 00: If 1, Tracing can be enabled with IA32_RTIT_CTL.ToPA = 1, hence utilizing the ToPA output scheme; IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_BASE and IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS MSRs can be accessed. Bit 01: If 1, ToPA tables can hold any number of output entries, up to the maximum allowed by the MaskOffsetTableOffset field of IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS. Bit 02: If 1, indicates support of Single-Range Output scheme. Bit 03: If 1, indicates support of output to Trace Transport subsystem. Bit 30 - 04: Reserved. Bit 31: If 1, generated packets which contain IP payloads have LIP values, which include the CS base component.</p> <p>EDX Bits 31 - 00: Reserved.</p>
<i>Intel Processor Trace Enumeration Sub-leaf (EAX = 14H, ECX = 1)</i>		
14H		<p>EAX Bits 02 - 00: Number of configurable Address Ranges for filtering. Bits 15 - 03: Reserved. Bits 31 - 16: Bitmap of supported MTC period encodings.</p> <p>EBX Bits 15 - 00: Bitmap of supported Cycle Threshold value encodings. Bit 31 - 16: Bitmap of supported Configurable PSB frequency encodings.</p> <p>ECX Bits 31 - 00: Reserved.</p>

Table 3-8. Information Returned by CPUID Instruction (Contd.)

Initial EAX Value	Information Provided about the Processor	
	EDX	Bits 31 - 00: Reserved.
<i>Time Stamp Counter and Nominal Core Crystal Clock Information Leaf</i>		
15H		<p>NOTES:</p> <p>If EBX[31:0] is 0, the TSC/"core crystal clock" ratio is not enumerated. EBX[31:0]/EAX[31:0] indicates the ratio of the TSC frequency and the core crystal clock frequency. If ECX is 0, the nominal core crystal clock frequency is not enumerated. "TSC frequency" = "core crystal clock frequency" * EBX/EAX. The core crystal clock may differ from the reference clock, bus clock, or core clock frequencies.</p> <p>EAX Bits 31 - 00: An unsigned integer which is the denominator of the TSC/"core crystal clock" ratio. EBX Bits 31 - 00: An unsigned integer which is the numerator of the TSC/"core crystal clock" ratio. ECX Bits 31 - 00: An unsigned integer which is the nominal frequency of the core crystal clock in Hz. EDX Bits 31 - 00: Reserved = 0.</p>
<i>Processor Frequency Information Leaf</i>		
16H	EAX	Bits 15 - 00: Processor Base Frequency (in MHz). Bits 31 - 16: Reserved = 0.
	EBX	Bits 15 - 00: Maximum Frequency (in MHz). Bits 31 - 16: Reserved = 0.
	ECX	Bits 15 - 00: Bus (Reference) Frequency (in MHz). Bits 31 - 16: Reserved = 0.
	EDX	Reserved.
		<p>NOTES:</p> <p>* Data is returned from this interface in accordance with the processor's specification and does not reflect actual values. Suitable use of this data includes the display of processor information in like manner to the processor brand string and for determining the appropriate range to use when displaying processor information e.g. frequency history graphs. The returned information should not be used for any other purpose as the returned information does not accurately correlate to information / counters returned by other processor interfaces.</p> <p>While a processor may support the Processor Frequency Information leaf, fields that return a value of zero are not supported.</p>
<i>System-On-Chip Vendor Attribute Enumeration Main Leaf (EAX = 17H, ECX = 0)</i>		
17H		<p>NOTES:</p> <p>Leaf 17H main leaf (ECX = 0). Leaf 17H output depends on the initial value in ECX. Leaf 17H sub-leaves 1 through 3 reports SOC Vendor Brand String. Leaf 17H is valid if MaxSOCID_Index >= 3. Leaf 17H sub-leaves 4 and above are reserved.</p> <p>EAX Bits 31 - 00: MaxSOCID_Index. Reports the maximum input value of supported sub-leaf in leaf 17H. EBX Bits 15 - 00: SOC Vendor ID. Bit 16: IsVendorScheme. If 1, the SOC Vendor ID field is assigned via an industry standard enumeration scheme. Otherwise, the SOC Vendor ID field is assigned by Intel. Bits 31 - 17: Reserved = 0. ECX Bits 31 - 00: Project ID. A unique number an SOC vendor assigns to its SOC projects. EDX Bits 31 - 00: Stepping ID. A unique number within an SOC project that an SOC vendor assigns.</p>

Table 3-8. Information Returned by CPUID Instruction (Contd.)

Initial EAX Value	Information Provided about the Processor	
<i>System-On-Chip Vendor Attribute Enumeration Sub-leaf (EAX = 17H, ECX = 1..3)</i>		
17H	EAX EBX ECX EDX	<p>Bit 31 - 00: SOC Vendor Brand String. UTF-8 encoded string.</p> <p>Bit 31 - 00: SOC Vendor Brand String. UTF-8 encoded string.</p> <p>Bit 31 - 00: SOC Vendor Brand String. UTF-8 encoded string.</p> <p>Bit 31 - 00: SOC Vendor Brand String. UTF-8 encoded string.</p> <p>NOTES:</p> <p>Leaf 17H output depends on the initial value in ECX.</p> <p>SOC Vendor Brand String is a UTF-8 encoded string padded with trailing bytes of 00H.</p> <p>The complete SOC Vendor Brand String is constructed by concatenating in ascending order of EAX:EBX:ECX:EDX and from the sub-leaf 1 fragment towards sub-leaf 3.</p>
<i>System-On-Chip Vendor Attribute Enumeration Sub-leaves (EAX = 17H, ECX > MaxSOCID_Index)</i>		
17H	EAX EBX ECX EDX	<p>NOTES:</p> <p>Leaf 17H output depends on the initial value in ECX.</p> <p>Bits 31 - 00: Reserved = 0.</p> <p>Bits 31 - 00: Reserved = 0.</p> <p>Bits 31 - 00: Reserved = 0.</p> <p>Bits 31 - 00: Reserved = 0.</p>
<i>Deterministic Address Translation Parameters Main Leaf (EAX = 18H, ECX = 0)</i>		
18H	EAX EBX ECX	<p>NOTES:</p> <p>Each sub-leaf enumerates a different address translation structure.</p> <p>If ECX contains an invalid sub-leaf index, EAX/EBX/ECX/EDX return 0. Sub-leaf index n is invalid if n exceeds the value that sub-leaf 0 returns in EAX. A sub-leaf index is also invalid if EDX[4:0] returns 0. Valid sub-leaves do not need to be contiguous or in any particular order. A valid sub-leaf may be in a higher input ECX value than an invalid sub-leaf or than a valid sub-leaf of a higher or lower-level structure.</p> <p>* Some unified TLBs will allow a single TLB entry to satisfy data read/write and instruction fetches. Others will require separate entries (e.g., one loaded on data read/write and another loaded on an instruction fetch). Please see the <i>Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Optimization Reference Manual</i> for details of a particular product.</p> <p>** Add one to the return value to get the result.</p> <p>Bits 31 - 00: Reports the maximum input value of supported sub-leaf in leaf 18H.</p> <p>Bit 00: 4K page size entries supported by this structure. Bit 01: 2MB page size entries supported by this structure. Bit 02: 4MB page size entries supported by this structure. Bit 03: 1 GB page size entries supported by this structure. Bits 07 - 04: Reserved. Bits 10 - 08: Partitioning (0: Soft partitioning between the logical processors sharing this structure). Bits 15 - 11: Reserved. Bits 31 - 16: W = Ways of associativity.</p> <p>Bits 31 - 00: S = Number of Sets.</p>

Table 3-8. Information Returned by CPUID Instruction (Contd.)

Initial EAX Value	Information Provided about the Processor
	EDX Bits 04 - 00: Translation cache type field. 00000b: Null (indicates this sub-leaf is not valid). 00001b: Data TLB. 00010b: Instruction TLB. 00011b: Unified TLB*. All other encodings are reserved. Bits 07 - 05: Translation cache level (starts at 1). Bit 08: Fully associative structure. Bits 13 - 09: Reserved. Bits 25- 14: Maximum number of addressable IDs for logical processors sharing this translation cache** Bits 31 - 26: Reserved.
<i>Deterministic Address Translation Parameters Sub-leaf (EAX = 18H, ECX ≥ 1)</i>	
18H	<p>NOTES:</p> <p>Each sub-leaf enumerates a different address translation structure. If ECX contains an invalid sub-leaf index, EAX/EBX/ECX/EDX return 0. Sub-leaf index n is invalid if n exceeds the value that sub-leaf 0 returns in EAX. A sub-leaf index is also invalid if EDX[4:0] returns 0. Valid sub-leaves do not need to be contiguous or in any particular order. A valid sub-leaf may be in a higher input ECX value than an invalid sub-leaf or than a valid sub-leaf of a higher or lower-level structure.</p> <p>* Some unified TLBs will allow a single TLB entry to satisfy data read/write and instruction fetches. Others will require separate entries (e.g., one loaded on data read/write and another loaded on an instruction fetch) . Please see the <i>Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Optimization Reference Manual</i> for details of a particular product.</p> <p>** Add one to the return value to get the result.</p> <p>EAX Bits 31 - 00: Reserved.</p> <p>EBX Bit 00: 4K page size entries supported by this structure. Bit 01: 2MB page size entries supported by this structure. Bit 02: 4MB page size entries supported by this structure. Bit 03: 1 GB page size entries supported by this structure. Bits 07 - 04: Reserved. Bits 10 - 08: Partitioning (0: Soft partitioning between the logical processors sharing this structure). Bits 15 - 11: Reserved. Bits 31 - 16: W = Ways of associativity.</p> <p>ECX Bits 31 - 00: S = Number of Sets.</p> <p>EDX Bits 04 - 00: Translation cache type field. 0000b: Null (indicates this sub-leaf is not valid). 0001b: Data TLB. 0010b: Instruction TLB. 0011b: Unified TLB*. All other encodings are reserved. Bits 07 - 05: Translation cache level (starts at 1). Bit 08: Fully associative structure. Bits 13 - 09: Reserved. Bits 25- 14: Maximum number of addressable IDs for logical processors sharing this translation cache** Bits 31 - 26: Reserved.</p>

Table 3-8. Information Returned by CPUID Instruction (Contd.)

Initial EAX Value	Information Provided about the Processor	
<i>V2 Extended Topology Enumeration Leaf</i>		
1FH	<p>NOTES:</p> <p><i>CPUID leaf 1FH is a preferred superset to leaf 0BH. Intel recommends first checking for the existence of Leaf 1FH and using this if available.</i></p> <p>Most of Leaf 1FH output depends on the initial value in ECX.</p> <p>The EDX output of leaf 1FH is always valid and does not vary with input value in ECX.</p> <p>Output value in ECX[7:0] always equals input value in ECX[7:0].</p> <p>Sub-leaf index 0 enumerates SMT level. Each subsequent higher sub-leaf index enumerates a higher-level topological entity in hierarchical order.</p> <p>For sub-leaves that return an invalid level-type of 0 in ECX[15:8]; EAX and EBX will return 0.</p> <p>If an input value n in ECX returns the invalid level-type of 0 in ECX[15:8], other input values with ECX > n also return 0 in ECX[15:8].</p> <p>EAX Bits 04 - 00: Number of bits to shift right on x2APIC ID to get a unique topology ID of the next level type*. All logical processors with the same next level ID share current level. Bits 31 - 05: Reserved.</p> <p>EBX Bits 15 - 00: Number of logical processors at this level type. The number reflects configuration as shipped by Intel**. Bits 31 - 16: Reserved.</p> <p>ECX Bits 07 - 00: Level number. Same value in ECX input. Bits 15 - 08: Level type***. Bits 31 - 16: Reserved.</p> <p>EDX Bits 31 - 00: x2APIC ID the current logical processor.</p> <p>NOTES:</p> <p>* Software should use this field (EAX[4:0]) to enumerate processor topology of the system.</p> <p>** Software must not use EBX[15:0] to enumerate processor topology of the system. This value in this field (EBX[15:0]) is only intended for display/diagnostic purposes. The actual number of logical processors available to BIOS/OS/Applications may be different from the value of EBX[15:0], depending on software and platform hardware configurations.</p> <p>*** The value of the "level type" field is not related to level numbers in any way, higher "level type" values do not mean higher levels. Level type field has the following encoding: 0: Invalid. 1: SMT. 2: Core. 3: Module. 4: Tile. 5: Die. 6-255: Reserved.</p>	
<i>Unimplemented CPUID Leaf Functions</i>		
40000000H - 4FFFFFFFH	Invalid. No existing or future CPU will return processor identification or feature information if the initial EAX value is in the range 40000000H to 4FFFFFFFH.	
<i>Extended Function CPUID Information</i>		
80000000H	EAX	Maximum Input Value for Extended Function CPUID Information.
	EBX	Reserved.
	ECX	Reserved.

Table 3-8. Information Returned by CPUID Instruction (Contd.)

Initial EAX Value	Information Provided about the Processor	
	EDX	Reserved.
80000001H	EAX	Extended Processor Signature and Feature Bits.
	EBX	Reserved.
	ECX	Bit 00: LAHF/SAHF available in 64-bit mode. Bits 04 - 01: Reserved. Bit 05: LZCNT. Bits 07 - 06: Reserved. Bit 08: PREFETCHW. Bits 31 - 09: Reserved.
	EDX	Bits 10 - 00: Reserved. Bit 11: SYSCALL/SYSRET available in 64-bit mode. Bits 19 - 12: Reserved = 0. Bit 20: Execute Disable Bit available. Bits 25 - 21: Reserved = 0. Bit 26: 1-GByte pages are available if 1. Bit 27: RDTSCP and IA32_TSC_AUX are available if 1. Bit 28: Reserved = 0. Bit 29: Intel® 64 Architecture available if 1. Bits 31 - 30: Reserved = 0.
80000002H	EAX	Processor Brand String.
	EBX	Processor Brand String Continued.
	ECX	Processor Brand String Continued.
	EDX	Processor Brand String Continued.
80000003H	EAX	Processor Brand String Continued.
	EBX	Processor Brand String Continued.
	ECX	Processor Brand String Continued.
	EDX	Processor Brand String Continued.
80000004H	EAX	Processor Brand String Continued.
	EBX	Processor Brand String Continued.
	ECX	Processor Brand String Continued.
	EDX	Processor Brand String Continued.
80000005H	EAX	Reserved = 0.
	EBX	Reserved = 0.
	ECX	Reserved = 0.
	EDX	Reserved = 0.
80000006H	EAX	Reserved = 0.
	EBX	Reserved = 0.
	ECX	Bits 07 - 00: Cache Line size in bytes. Bits 11 - 08: Reserved. Bits 15 - 12: L2 Associativity field *. Bits 31 - 16: Cache size in 1K units.
	EDX	Reserved = 0.

Table 3-8. Information Returned by CPUID Instruction (Contd.)

Initial EAX Value	Information Provided about the Processor																	
	<p>NOTES:</p> <p>* L2 associativity field encodings:</p> <table> <tr> <td>00H - Disabled</td> <td>08H - 16 ways</td> </tr> <tr> <td>01H - 1 way (direct mapped)</td> <td>09H - Reserved</td> </tr> <tr> <td>02H - 2 ways</td> <td>0AH - 32 ways</td> </tr> <tr> <td>03H - Reserved</td> <td>0BH - 48 ways</td> </tr> <tr> <td>04H - 4 ways</td> <td>0CH - 64 ways</td> </tr> <tr> <td>05H - Reserved</td> <td>0DH - 96 ways</td> </tr> <tr> <td>06H - 8 ways</td> <td>0EH - 128 ways</td> </tr> <tr> <td>07H - See CPUID leaf 04H, sub-leaf 2**</td> <td>0FH - Fully associative</td> </tr> </table> <p>** CPUID leaf 04H provides details of deterministic cache parameters, including the L2 cache in sub-leaf 2</p>		00H - Disabled	08H - 16 ways	01H - 1 way (direct mapped)	09H - Reserved	02H - 2 ways	0AH - 32 ways	03H - Reserved	0BH - 48 ways	04H - 4 ways	0CH - 64 ways	05H - Reserved	0DH - 96 ways	06H - 8 ways	0EH - 128 ways	07H - See CPUID leaf 04H, sub-leaf 2**	0FH - Fully associative
00H - Disabled	08H - 16 ways																	
01H - 1 way (direct mapped)	09H - Reserved																	
02H - 2 ways	0AH - 32 ways																	
03H - Reserved	0BH - 48 ways																	
04H - 4 ways	0CH - 64 ways																	
05H - Reserved	0DH - 96 ways																	
06H - 8 ways	0EH - 128 ways																	
07H - See CPUID leaf 04H, sub-leaf 2**	0FH - Fully associative																	
80000007H	EAX EBX ECX EDX	Reserved = 0. Reserved = 0. Reserved = 0. Bits 07 - 00: Reserved = 0. Bit 08: Invariant TSC available if 1. Bits 31 - 09: Reserved = 0.																
80000008H	EAX EBX ECX EDX	Linear/Physical Address size. Bits 07 - 00: #Physical Address Bits*. Bits 15 - 08: #Linear Address Bits. Bits 31 - 16: Reserved = 0. Reserved = 0. Reserved = 0. Reserved = 0.																
	<p>NOTES:</p> <p>* If CPUID.80000008H:EAX[7:0] is supported, the maximum physical address number supported should come from this field.</p>																	

INPUT EAX = 0: Returns CPUID's Highest Value for Basic Processor Information and the Vendor Identification String

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 0, the processor returns the highest value the CPUID recognizes for returning basic processor information. The value is returned in the EAX register and is processor specific.

A vendor identification string is also returned in EBX, EDX, and ECX. For Intel processors, the string is "Genuin-eIntel" and is expressed:

EBX ← 756e6547h (* "Genu", with G in the low eight bits of BL *)

EDX ← 49656e69h (* "inel", with i in the low eight bits of DL *)

ECX ← 6c65746eh (* "ntel", with n in the low eight bits of CL *)

INPUT EAX = 80000000H: Returns CPUID's Highest Value for Extended Processor Information

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 80000000H, the processor returns the highest value the processor recognizes for returning extended processor information. The value is returned in the EAX register and is processor specific.

IA32_BIOS_SIGN_ID Returns Microcode Update Signature

For processors that support the microcode update facility, the IA32_BIOS_SIGN_ID MSR is loaded with the update signature whenever CPUID executes. The signature is returned in the upper DWORD. For details, see Chapter 9 in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3A*.

INPUT EAX = 01H: Returns Model, Family, Stepping Information

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 01H, version information is returned in EAX (see Figure 3-6). For example: model, family, and processor type for the Intel Xeon processor 5100 series is as follows:

- Model — 1111B
- Family — 0101B
- Processor Type — 00B

See Table 3-9 for available processor type values. Stepping IDs are provided as needed.

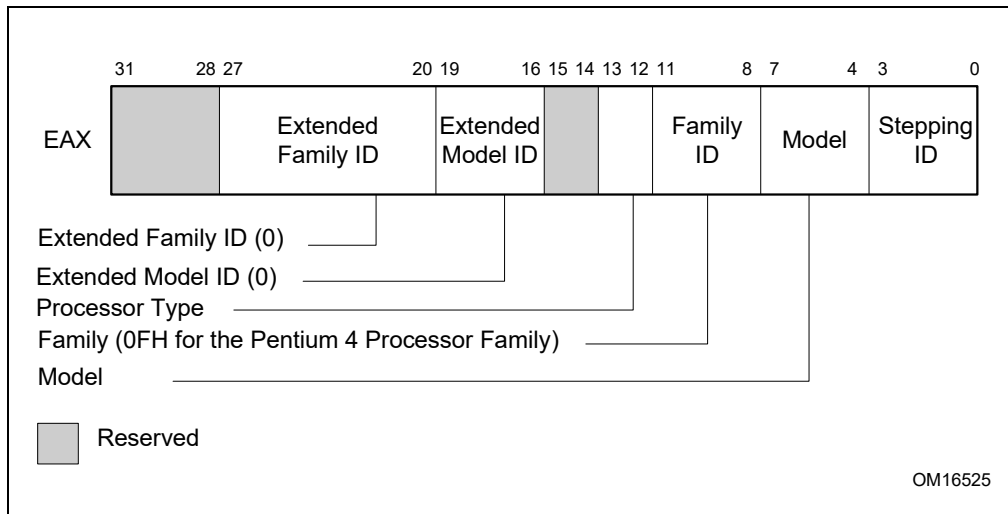


Figure 3-6. Version Information Returned by CPUID in EAX

Table 3-9. Processor Type Field

Type	Encoding
Original OEM Processor	00B
Intel OverDrive™ Processor	01B
Dual processor (not applicable to Intel486 processors)	10B
Intel reserved	11B

NOTE

See Chapter 19 in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 1*, for information on identifying earlier IA-32 processors.

The Extended Family ID needs to be examined only when the Family ID is 0FH. Integrate the fields into a display using the following rule:

```

IF Family_ID ≠ 0FH
  THEN DisplayFamily = Family_ID;
  ELSE DisplayFamily = Extended_Family_ID + Family_ID;
  (* Right justify and zero-extend 4-bit field. *)
FI;
(* Show DisplayFamily as HEX field. *)
    
```

The Extended Model ID needs to be examined only when the Family ID is 06H or 0FH. Integrate the field into a display using the following rule:

```
IF (Family_ID = 06H or Family_ID = 0FH)
  THEN DisplayModel = (Extended_Model_ID << 4) + Model_ID;
  (* Right justify and zero-extend 4-bit field; display Model_ID as HEX field.*)
  ELSE DisplayModel = Model_ID;
FI;
(* Show DisplayModel as HEX field. *)
```

INPUT EAX = 01H: Returns Additional Information in EBX

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 01H, additional information is returned to the EBX register:

- Brand index (low byte of EBX) — this number provides an entry into a brand string table that contains brand strings for IA-32 processors. More information about this field is provided later in this section.
- CLFLUSH instruction cache line size (second byte of EBX) — this number indicates the size of the cache line flushed by the CLFLUSH and CLFLUSHOPT instructions in 8-byte increments. This field was introduced in the Pentium 4 processor.
- Local APIC ID (high byte of EBX) — this number is the 8-bit ID that is assigned to the local APIC on the processor during power up. This field was introduced in the Pentium 4 processor.

INPUT EAX = 01H: Returns Feature Information in ECX and EDX

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 01H, feature information is returned in ECX and EDX.

- Figure 3-7 and Table 3-10 show encodings for ECX.
- Figure 3-8 and Table 3-11 show encodings for EDX.

For all feature flags, a 1 indicates that the feature is supported. Use Intel to properly interpret feature flags.

NOTE

Software must confirm that a processor feature is present using feature flags returned by CPUID prior to using the feature. Software should not depend on future offerings retaining all features.

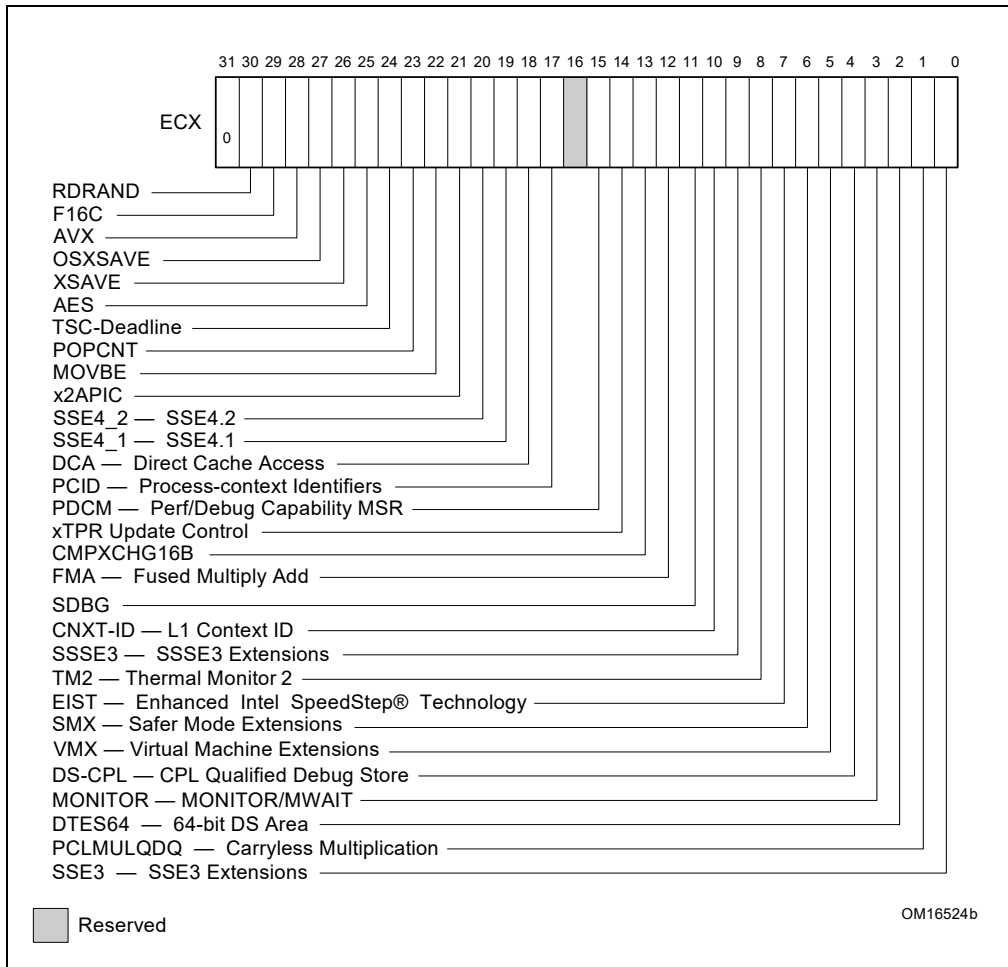


Figure 3-7. Feature Information Returned in the ECX Register

Table 3-10. Feature Information Returned in the ECX Register

Bit #	Mnemonic	Description
0	SSE3	Streaming SIMD Extensions 3 (SSE3). A value of 1 indicates the processor supports this technology.
1	PCLMULQDQ	PCLMULQDQ. A value of 1 indicates the processor supports the PCLMULQDQ instruction.
2	DTES64	64-bit DS Area. A value of 1 indicates the processor supports DS area using 64-bit layout.
3	MONITOR	MONITOR/MWAIT. A value of 1 indicates the processor supports this feature.
4	DS-CPL	CPL Qualified Debug Store. A value of 1 indicates the processor supports the extensions to the Debug Store feature to allow for branch message storage qualified by CPL.
5	VMX	Virtual Machine Extensions. A value of 1 indicates that the processor supports this technology.
6	SMX	Safer Mode Extensions. A value of 1 indicates that the processor supports this technology. See Chapter 6, "Safer Mode Extensions Reference".
7	EIST	Enhanced Intel SpeedStep® technology. A value of 1 indicates that the processor supports this technology.
8	TM2	Thermal Monitor 2. A value of 1 indicates whether the processor supports this technology.
9	SSSE3	A value of 1 indicates the presence of the Supplemental Streaming SIMD Extensions 3 (SSSE3). A value of 0 indicates the instruction extensions are not present in the processor.

Table 3-10. Feature Information Returned in the ECX Register (Contd.)

Bit #	Mnemonic	Description
10	CNXT-ID	L1 Context ID. A value of 1 indicates the L1 data cache mode can be set to either adaptive mode or shared mode. A value of 0 indicates this feature is not supported. See definition of the IA32_MISC_ENABLE MSR Bit 24 (L1 Data Cache Context Mode) for details.
11	SDBG	A value of 1 indicates the processor supports IA32_DEBUG_INTERFACE MSR for silicon debug.
12	FMA	A value of 1 indicates the processor supports FMA extensions using YMM state.
13	CMPXCHG16B	CMPXCHG16B Available. A value of 1 indicates that the feature is available. See the “CMPXCHG8B/CMPXCHG16B—Compare and Exchange Bytes” section in this chapter for a description.
14	xTPR Update Control	xTPR Update Control. A value of 1 indicates that the processor supports changing IA32_MISC_ENABLE[bit 23].
15	PDCM	Perfmon and Debug Capability: A value of 1 indicates the processor supports the performance and debug feature indication MSR IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES.
16	Reserved	Reserved
17	PCID	Process-context identifiers. A value of 1 indicates that the processor supports PCIDs and that software may set CR4.PCIDE to 1.
18	DCA	A value of 1 indicates the processor supports the ability to prefetch data from a memory mapped device.
19	SSE4.1	A value of 1 indicates that the processor supports SSE4.1.
20	SSE4.2	A value of 1 indicates that the processor supports SSE4.2.
21	x2APIC	A value of 1 indicates that the processor supports x2APIC feature.
22	MOVBE	A value of 1 indicates that the processor supports MOVBE instruction.
23	POPCNT	A value of 1 indicates that the processor supports the POPCNT instruction.
24	TSC-Deadline	A value of 1 indicates that the processor’s local APIC timer supports one-shot operation using a TSC deadline value.
25	AESNI	A value of 1 indicates that the processor supports the AESNI instruction extensions.
26	XSAVE	A value of 1 indicates that the processor supports the XSAVE/XRSTOR processor extended states feature, the XSETBV/XGETBV instructions, and XCR0.
27	OSXSAVE	A value of 1 indicates that the OS has set CR4.OSXSAVE[bit 18] to enable XSETBV/XGETBV instructions to access XCR0 and to support processor extended state management using XSAVE/XRSTOR.
28	AVX	A value of 1 indicates the processor supports the AVX instruction extensions.
29	F16C	A value of 1 indicates that processor supports 16-bit floating-point conversion instructions.
30	RDRAND	A value of 1 indicates that processor supports RDRAND instruction.
31	Not Used	Always returns 0.

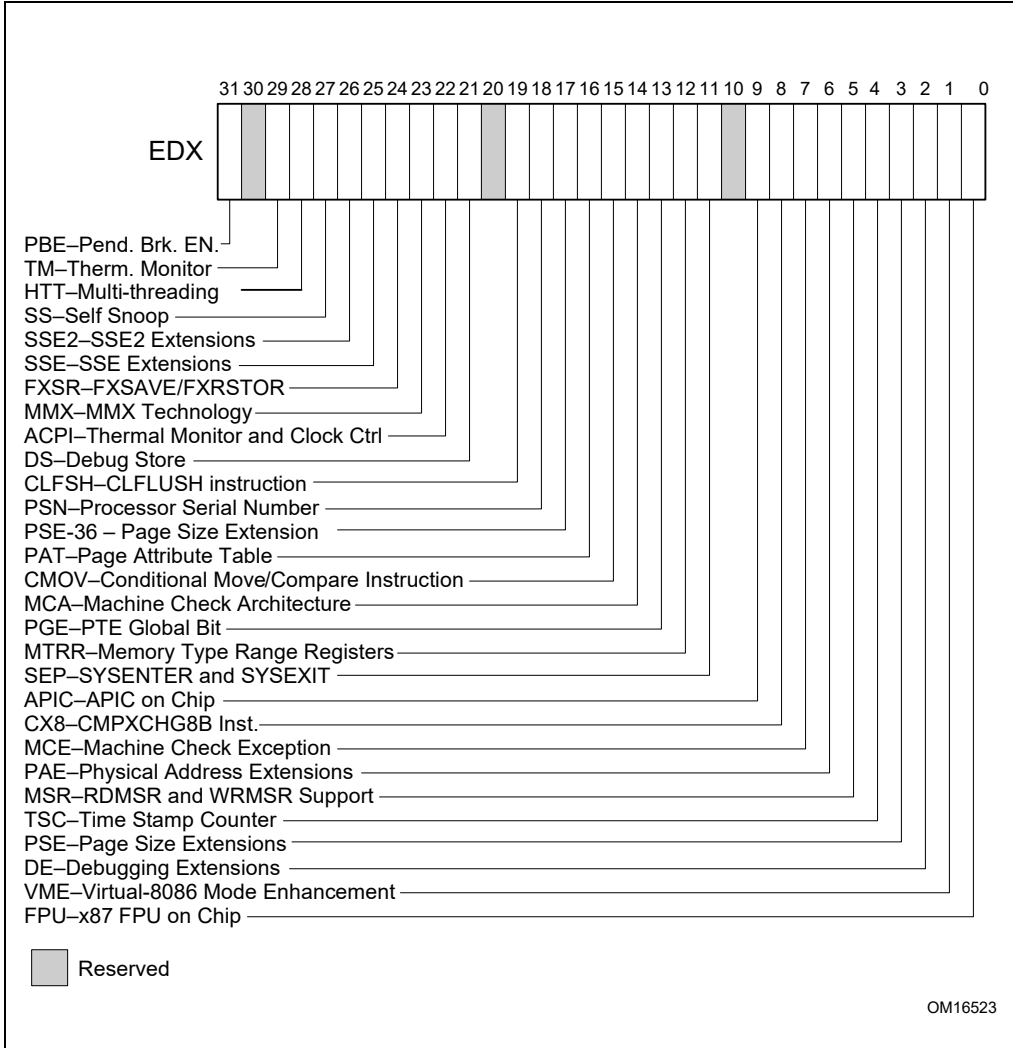


Figure 3-8. Feature Information Returned in the EDX Register

Table 3-11. More on Feature Information Returned in the EDX Register

Bit #	Mnemonic	Description
0	FPU	Floating Point Unit On-Chip. The processor contains an x87 FPU.
1	VME	Virtual 8086 Mode Enhancements. Virtual 8086 mode enhancements, including CR4.VME for controlling the feature, CR4.PVI for protected mode virtual interrupts, software interrupt indirection, expansion of the TSS with the software indirection bitmap, and EFLAGS.VIF and EFLAGS.VIP flags.
2	DE	Debugging Extensions. Support for I/O breakpoints, including CR4.DE for controlling the feature, and optional trapping of accesses to DR4 and DR5.
3	PSE	Page Size Extension. Large pages of size 4 MByte are supported, including CR4.PSE for controlling the feature, the defined dirty bit in PDE (Page Directory Entries), optional reserved bit trapping in CR3, PDEs, and PTEs.
4	TSC	Time Stamp Counter. The RDTSC instruction is supported, including CR4.TSD for controlling privilege.
5	MSR	Model Specific Registers RDMSR and WRMSR Instructions. The RDMSR and WRMSR instructions are supported. Some of the MSRs are implementation dependent.
6	PAE	Physical Address Extension. Physical addresses greater than 32 bits are supported: extended page table entry formats, an extra level in the page translation tables is defined, 2-MByte pages are supported instead of 4 Mbyte pages if PAE bit is 1.
7	MCE	Machine Check Exception. Exception 18 is defined for Machine Checks, including CR4.MCE for controlling the feature. This feature does not define the model-specific implementations of machine-check error logging, reporting, and processor shutdowns. Machine Check exception handlers may have to depend on processor version to do model specific processing of the exception, or test for the presence of the Machine Check feature.
8	CX8	CMPXCHG8B Instruction. The compare-and-exchange 8 bytes (64 bits) instruction is supported (implicitly locked and atomic).
9	APIC	APIC On-Chip. The processor contains an Advanced Programmable Interrupt Controller (APIC), responding to memory mapped commands in the physical address range FFFE0000H to FFFE0FFFH (by default - some processors permit the APIC to be relocated).
10	Reserved	Reserved
11	SEP	SYSENTER and SYSEXIT Instructions. The SYSENTER and SYSEXIT and associated MSRs are supported.
12	MTRR	Memory Type Range Registers. MTRRs are supported. The MTRRcap MSR contains feature bits that describe what memory types are supported, how many variable MTRRs are supported, and whether fixed MTRRs are supported.
13	PGE	Page Global Bit. The global bit is supported in paging-structure entries that map a page, indicating TLB entries that are common to different processes and need not be flushed. The CR4.PGE bit controls this feature.
14	MCA	Machine Check Architecture. A value of 1 indicates the Machine Check Architecture of reporting machine errors is supported. The MCG_CAP MSR contains feature bits describing how many banks of error reporting MSRs are supported.
15	CMOV	Conditional Move Instructions. The conditional move instruction CMOV is supported. In addition, if x87 FPU is present as indicated by the CPUID.FPU feature bit, then the FCOMI and FCMOV instructions are supported
16	PAT	Page Attribute Table. Page Attribute Table is supported. This feature augments the Memory Type Range Registers (MTRRs), allowing an operating system to specify attributes of memory accessed through a linear address on a 4KB granularity.
17	PSE-36	36-Bit Page Size Extension. 4-MByte pages addressing physical memory beyond 4 GBytes are supported with 32-bit paging. This feature indicates that upper bits of the physical address of a 4-MByte page are encoded in bits 20:13 of the page-directory entry. Such physical addresses are limited by MAXPHYADDR and may be up to 40 bits in size.
18	PSN	Processor Serial Number. The processor supports the 96-bit processor identification number feature and the feature is enabled.
19	CLFSH	CLFLUSH Instruction. CLFLUSH Instruction is supported.
20	Reserved	Reserved

Table 3-11. More on Feature Information Returned in the EDX Register (Contd.)

Bit #	Mnemonic	Description
21	DS	Debug Store. The processor supports the ability to write debug information into a memory resident buffer. This feature is used by the branch trace store (BTS) and processor event-based sampling (PEBS) facilities (see Chapter 23, "Introduction to Virtual-Machine Extensions," in the <i>Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3C</i>).
22	ACPI	Thermal Monitor and Software Controlled Clock Facilities. The processor implements internal MSRs that allow processor temperature to be monitored and processor performance to be modulated in predefined duty cycles under software control.
23	MMX	Intel MMX Technology. The processor supports the Intel MMX technology.
24	FXSR	FXSAVE and FXRSTOR Instructions. The FXSAVE and FXRSTOR instructions are supported for fast save and restore of the floating point context. Presence of this bit also indicates that CR4.OSFXSR is available for an operating system to indicate that it supports the FXSAVE and FXRSTOR instructions.
25	SSE	SSE. The processor supports the SSE extensions.
26	SSE2	SSE2. The processor supports the SSE2 extensions.
27	SS	Self Snoop. The processor supports the management of conflicting memory types by performing a snoop of its own cache structure for transactions issued to the bus.
28	HTT	Max APIC IDs reserved field is Valid. A value of 0 for HTT indicates there is only a single logical processor in the package and software should assume only a single APIC ID is reserved. A value of 1 for HTT indicates the value in CPUID.1.EBX[23:16] (the Maximum number of addressable IDs for logical processors in this package) is valid for the package.
29	TM	Thermal Monitor. The processor implements the thermal monitor automatic thermal control circuitry (TCC).
30	Reserved	Reserved
31	PBE	Pending Break Enable. The processor supports the use of the FERR#/PBE# pin when the processor is in the stop-clock state (STPCLK# is asserted) to signal the processor that an interrupt is pending and that the processor should return to normal operation to handle the interrupt. Bit 10 (PBE enable) in the IA32_MISC_ENABLE MSR enables this capability.

INPUT EAX = 02H: TLB/Cache/Prefetch Information Returned in EAX, EBX, ECX, EDX

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 02H, the processor returns information about the processor's internal TLBs, cache and prefetch hardware in the EAX, EBX, ECX, and EDX registers. The information is reported in encoded form and fall into the following categories:

- The least-significant byte in register EAX (register AL) will always return 01H. Software should ignore this value and not interpret it as an informational descriptor.
- The most significant bit (bit 31) of each register indicates whether the register contains valid information (set to 0) or is reserved (set to 1).
- If a register contains valid information, the information is contained in 1 byte descriptors. There are four types of encoding values for the byte descriptor, the encoding type is noted in the second column of Table 3-12. Table 3-12 lists the encoding of these descriptors. Note that the order of descriptors in the EAX, EBX, ECX, and EDX registers is not defined; that is, specific bytes are not designated to contain descriptors for specific cache, prefetch, or TLB types. The descriptors may appear in any order. Note also a processor may report a general descriptor type (FFH) and not report any byte descriptor of "cache type" via CPUID leaf 2.

Table 3-12. Encoding of CPUID Leaf 2 Descriptors

Value	Type	Description
00H	General	Null descriptor, this byte contains no information
01H	TLB	Instruction TLB: 4 KByte pages, 4-way set associative, 32 entries
02H	TLB	Instruction TLB: 4 MByte pages, fully associative, 2 entries
03H	TLB	Data TLB: 4 KByte pages, 4-way set associative, 64 entries
04H	TLB	Data TLB: 4 MByte pages, 4-way set associative, 8 entries
05H	TLB	Data TLB1: 4 MByte pages, 4-way set associative, 32 entries
06H	Cache	1st-level instruction cache: 8 KBytes, 4-way set associative, 32 byte line size
08H	Cache	1st-level instruction cache: 16 KBytes, 4-way set associative, 32 byte line size
09H	Cache	1st-level instruction cache: 32KBytes, 4-way set associative, 64 byte line size
0AH	Cache	1st-level data cache: 8 KBytes, 2-way set associative, 32 byte line size
0BH	TLB	Instruction TLB: 4 MByte pages, 4-way set associative, 4 entries
0CH	Cache	1st-level data cache: 16 KBytes, 4-way set associative, 32 byte line size
0DH	Cache	1st-level data cache: 16 KBytes, 4-way set associative, 64 byte line size
0EH	Cache	1st-level data cache: 24 KBytes, 6-way set associative, 64 byte line size
1DH	Cache	2nd-level cache: 128 KBytes, 2-way set associative, 64 byte line size
21H	Cache	2nd-level cache: 256 KBytes, 8-way set associative, 64 byte line size
22H	Cache	3rd-level cache: 512 KBytes, 4-way set associative, 64 byte line size, 2 lines per sector
23H	Cache	3rd-level cache: 1 MBytes, 8-way set associative, 64 byte line size, 2 lines per sector
24H	Cache	2nd-level cache: 1 MBytes, 16-way set associative, 64 byte line size
25H	Cache	3rd-level cache: 2 MBytes, 8-way set associative, 64 byte line size, 2 lines per sector
29H	Cache	3rd-level cache: 4 MBytes, 8-way set associative, 64 byte line size, 2 lines per sector
2CH	Cache	1st-level data cache: 32 KBytes, 8-way set associative, 64 byte line size
30H	Cache	1st-level instruction cache: 32 KBytes, 8-way set associative, 64 byte line size
40H	Cache	No 2nd-level cache or, if processor contains a valid 2nd-level cache, no 3rd-level cache
41H	Cache	2nd-level cache: 128 KBytes, 4-way set associative, 32 byte line size
42H	Cache	2nd-level cache: 256 KBytes, 4-way set associative, 32 byte line size
43H	Cache	2nd-level cache: 512 KBytes, 4-way set associative, 32 byte line size
44H	Cache	2nd-level cache: 1 MByte, 4-way set associative, 32 byte line size
45H	Cache	2nd-level cache: 2 MByte, 4-way set associative, 32 byte line size
46H	Cache	3rd-level cache: 4 MByte, 4-way set associative, 64 byte line size
47H	Cache	3rd-level cache: 8 MByte, 8-way set associative, 64 byte line size
48H	Cache	2nd-level cache: 3MByte, 12-way set associative, 64 byte line size
49H	Cache	3rd-level cache: 4MB, 16-way set associative, 64-byte line size (Intel Xeon processor MP, Family 0FH, Model 06H); 2nd-level cache: 4 MByte, 16-way set associative, 64 byte line size
4AH	Cache	3rd-level cache: 6MByte, 12-way set associative, 64 byte line size
4BH	Cache	3rd-level cache: 8MByte, 16-way set associative, 64 byte line size
4CH	Cache	3rd-level cache: 12MByte, 12-way set associative, 64 byte line size
4DH	Cache	3rd-level cache: 16MByte, 16-way set associative, 64 byte line size
4EH	Cache	2nd-level cache: 6MByte, 24-way set associative, 64 byte line size
4FH	TLB	Instruction TLB: 4 KByte pages, 32 entries

Table 3-12. Encoding of CPUID Leaf 2 Descriptors (Contd.)

Value	Type	Description
50H	TLB	Instruction TLB: 4 KByte and 2-MByte or 4-MByte pages, 64 entries
51H	TLB	Instruction TLB: 4 KByte and 2-MByte or 4-MByte pages, 128 entries
52H	TLB	Instruction TLB: 4 KByte and 2-MByte or 4-MByte pages, 256 entries
55H	TLB	Instruction TLB: 2-MByte or 4-MByte pages, fully associative, 7 entries
56H	TLB	Data TLB0: 4 MByte pages, 4-way set associative, 16 entries
57H	TLB	Data TLB0: 4 KByte pages, 4-way associative, 16 entries
59H	TLB	Data TLB0: 4 KByte pages, fully associative, 16 entries
5AH	TLB	Data TLB0: 2 MByte or 4 MByte pages, 4-way set associative, 32 entries
5BH	TLB	Data TLB: 4 KByte and 4 MByte pages, 64 entries
5CH	TLB	Data TLB: 4 KByte and 4 MByte pages, 128 entries
5DH	TLB	Data TLB: 4 KByte and 4 MByte pages, 256 entries
60H	Cache	1st-level data cache: 16 KByte, 8-way set associative, 64 byte line size
61H	TLB	Instruction TLB: 4 KByte pages, fully associative, 48 entries
63H	TLB	Data TLB: 2 MByte or 4 MByte pages, 4-way set associative, 32 entries and a separate array with 1 GByte pages, 4-way set associative, 4 entries
64H	TLB	Data TLB: 4 KByte pages, 4-way set associative, 512 entries
66H	Cache	1st-level data cache: 8 KByte, 4-way set associative, 64 byte line size
67H	Cache	1st-level data cache: 16 KByte, 4-way set associative, 64 byte line size
68H	Cache	1st-level data cache: 32 KByte, 4-way set associative, 64 byte line size
6AH	Cache	uTLB: 4 KByte pages, 8-way set associative, 64 entries
6BH	Cache	DTLB: 4 KByte pages, 8-way set associative, 256 entries
6CH	Cache	DTLB: 2M/4M pages, 8-way set associative, 128 entries
6DH	Cache	DTLB: 1 GByte pages, fully associative, 16 entries
70H	Cache	Trace cache: 12 K- μ op, 8-way set associative
71H	Cache	Trace cache: 16 K- μ op, 8-way set associative
72H	Cache	Trace cache: 32 K- μ op, 8-way set associative
76H	TLB	Instruction TLB: 2M/4M pages, fully associative, 8 entries
78H	Cache	2nd-level cache: 1 MByte, 4-way set associative, 64byte line size
79H	Cache	2nd-level cache: 128 KByte, 8-way set associative, 64 byte line size, 2 lines per sector
7AH	Cache	2nd-level cache: 256 KByte, 8-way set associative, 64 byte line size, 2 lines per sector
7BH	Cache	2nd-level cache: 512 KByte, 8-way set associative, 64 byte line size, 2 lines per sector
7CH	Cache	2nd-level cache: 1 MByte, 8-way set associative, 64 byte line size, 2 lines per sector
7DH	Cache	2nd-level cache: 2 MByte, 8-way set associative, 64byte line size
7FH	Cache	2nd-level cache: 512 KByte, 2-way set associative, 64-byte line size
80H	Cache	2nd-level cache: 512 KByte, 8-way set associative, 64-byte line size
82H	Cache	2nd-level cache: 256 KByte, 8-way set associative, 32 byte line size
83H	Cache	2nd-level cache: 512 KByte, 8-way set associative, 32 byte line size
84H	Cache	2nd-level cache: 1 MByte, 8-way set associative, 32 byte line size
85H	Cache	2nd-level cache: 2 MByte, 8-way set associative, 32 byte line size
86H	Cache	2nd-level cache: 512 KByte, 4-way set associative, 64 byte line size
87H	Cache	2nd-level cache: 1 MByte, 8-way set associative, 64 byte line size

Table 3-12. Encoding of CPUID Leaf 2 Descriptors (Contd.)

Value	Type	Description
A0H	DTLB	DTLB: 4k pages, fully associative, 32 entries
B0H	TLB	Instruction TLB: 4 KByte pages, 4-way set associative, 128 entries
B1H	TLB	Instruction TLB: 2M pages, 4-way, 8 entries or 4M pages, 4-way, 4 entries
B2H	TLB	Instruction TLB: 4KByte pages, 4-way set associative, 64 entries
B3H	TLB	Data TLB: 4 KByte pages, 4-way set associative, 128 entries
B4H	TLB	Data TLB1: 4 KByte pages, 4-way associative, 256 entries
B5H	TLB	Instruction TLB: 4KByte pages, 8-way set associative, 64 entries
B6H	TLB	Instruction TLB: 4KByte pages, 8-way set associative, 128 entries
BAH	TLB	Data TLB1: 4 KByte pages, 4-way associative, 64 entries
C0H	TLB	Data TLB: 4 KByte and 4 MByte pages, 4-way associative, 8 entries
C1H	STLB	Shared 2nd-Level TLB: 4 KByte/2MByte pages, 8-way associative, 1024 entries
C2H	DTLB	DTLB: 4 KByte/2 MByte pages, 4-way associative, 16 entries
C3H	STLB	Shared 2nd-Level TLB: 4 KByte /2 MByte pages, 6-way associative, 1536 entries. Also 1GByte pages, 4-way, 16 entries.
C4H	DTLB	DTLB: 2M/4M Byte pages, 4-way associative, 32 entries
CAH	STLB	Shared 2nd-Level TLB: 4 KByte pages, 4-way associative, 512 entries
D0H	Cache	3rd-level cache: 512 KByte, 4-way set associative, 64 byte line size
D1H	Cache	3rd-level cache: 1 MByte, 4-way set associative, 64 byte line size
D2H	Cache	3rd-level cache: 2 MByte, 4-way set associative, 64 byte line size
D6H	Cache	3rd-level cache: 1 MByte, 8-way set associative, 64 byte line size
D7H	Cache	3rd-level cache: 2 MByte, 8-way set associative, 64 byte line size
D8H	Cache	3rd-level cache: 4 MByte, 8-way set associative, 64 byte line size
DCH	Cache	3rd-level cache: 1.5 MByte, 12-way set associative, 64 byte line size
DDH	Cache	3rd-level cache: 3 MByte, 12-way set associative, 64 byte line size
DEH	Cache	3rd-level cache: 6 MByte, 12-way set associative, 64 byte line size
E2H	Cache	3rd-level cache: 2 MByte, 16-way set associative, 64 byte line size
E3H	Cache	3rd-level cache: 4 MByte, 16-way set associative, 64 byte line size
E4H	Cache	3rd-level cache: 8 MByte, 16-way set associative, 64 byte line size
EAH	Cache	3rd-level cache: 12MByte, 24-way set associative, 64 byte line size
EBH	Cache	3rd-level cache: 18MByte, 24-way set associative, 64 byte line size
ECH	Cache	3rd-level cache: 24MByte, 24-way set associative, 64 byte line size
F0H	Prefetch	64-Byte prefetching
F1H	Prefetch	128-Byte prefetching
FEH	General	CPUID leaf 2 does not report TLB descriptor information; use CPUID leaf 18H to query TLB and other address translation parameters.
FFH	General	CPUID leaf 2 does not report cache descriptor information, use CPUID leaf 4 to query cache parameters

Example 3-1. Example of Cache and TLB Interpretation

The first member of the family of Pentium 4 processors returns the following information about caches and TLBs when the CPUID executes with an input value of 2:

```
EAX    66 5B 50 01H
EBX    0H
ECX    0H
EDX    00 7A 70 00H
```

Which means:

- The least-significant byte (byte 0) of register EAX is set to 01H. This value should be ignored.
- The most-significant bit of all four registers (EAX, EBX, ECX, and EDX) is set to 0, indicating that each register contains valid 1-byte descriptors.
- Bytes 1, 2, and 3 of register EAX indicate that the processor has:
 - 50H - a 64-entry instruction TLB, for mapping 4-KByte and 2-MByte or 4-MByte pages.
 - 5BH - a 64-entry data TLB, for mapping 4-KByte and 4-MByte pages.
 - 66H - an 8-KByte 1st level data cache, 4-way set associative, with a 64-Byte cache line size.
- The descriptors in registers EBX and ECX are valid, but contain NULL descriptors.
- Bytes 0, 1, 2, and 3 of register EDX indicate that the processor has:
 - 00H - NULL descriptor.
 - 70H - Trace cache: 12 K- μ op, 8-way set associative.
 - 7AH - a 256-KByte 2nd level cache, 8-way set associative, with a sectored, 64-byte cache line size.
 - 00H - NULL descriptor.

INPUT EAX = 04H: Returns Deterministic Cache Parameters for Each Level

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 04H and ECX contains an index value, the processor returns encoded data that describe a set of deterministic cache parameters (for the cache level associated with the input in ECX). Valid index values start from 0.

Software can enumerate the deterministic cache parameters for each level of the cache hierarchy starting with an index value of 0, until the parameters report the value associated with the cache type field is 0. The architecturally defined fields reported by deterministic cache parameters are documented in Table 3-8.

This Cache Size in Bytes

$$= (\text{Ways} + 1) * (\text{Partitions} + 1) * (\text{Line_Size} + 1) * (\text{Sets} + 1)$$

$$= (\text{EBX}[31:22] + 1) * (\text{EBX}[21:12] + 1) * (\text{EBX}[11:0] + 1) * (\text{ECX} + 1)$$

The CPUID leaf 04H also reports data that can be used to derive the topology of processor cores in a physical package. This information is constant for all valid index values. Software can query the raw data reported by executing CPUID with EAX=04H and ECX=0 and use it as part of the topology enumeration algorithm described in Chapter 8, "Multiple-Processor Management," in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3A*.

INPUT EAX = 05H: Returns MONITOR and MWAIT Features

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 05H, the processor returns information about features available to MONITOR/MWAIT instructions. The MONITOR instruction is used for address-range monitoring in conjunction with MWAIT instruction. The MWAIT instruction optionally provides additional extensions for advanced power management. See Table 3-8.

INPUT EAX = 06H: Returns Thermal and Power Management Features

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 06H, the processor returns information about thermal and power management features. See Table 3-8.

INPUT EAX = 07H: Returns Structured Extended Feature Enumeration Information

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 07H and ECX = 0, the processor returns information about the maximum input value for sub-leaves that contain extended feature flags. See Table 3-8.

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 07H and the input value of ECX is invalid (see leaf 07H entry in Table 3-8), the processor returns 0 in EAX/EBX/ECX/EDX. In subleaf 0, EAX returns the maximum input value of the highest leaf 7 sub-leaf, and EBX, ECX & EDX contain information of extended feature flags.

INPUT EAX = 09H: Returns Direct Cache Access Information

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 09H, the processor returns information about Direct Cache Access capabilities. See Table 3-8.

INPUT EAX = 0AH: Returns Architectural Performance Monitoring Features

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 0AH, the processor returns information about support for architectural performance monitoring capabilities. Architectural performance monitoring is supported if the version ID (see Table 3-8) is greater than Pn 0. See Table 3-8.

For each version of architectural performance monitoring capability, software must enumerate this leaf to discover the programming facilities and the architectural performance events available in the processor. The details are described in Chapter 23, "Introduction to Virtual-Machine Extensions," in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3C*.

INPUT EAX = 0BH: Returns Extended Topology Information

CPUID leaf 1FH is a preferred superset to leaf 0BH. Intel recommends first checking for the existence of Leaf 1FH before using leaf 0BH.

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 0BH, the processor returns information about extended topology enumeration data. Software must detect the presence of CPUID leaf 0BH by verifying (a) the highest leaf index supported by CPUID is $\geq 0BH$, and (b) CPUID.0BH:EBX[15:0] reports a non-zero value. See Table 3-8.

INPUT EAX = 0DH: Returns Processor Extended States Enumeration Information

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 0DH and ECX = 0, the processor returns information about the bit-vector representation of all processor state extensions that are supported in the processor and storage size requirements of the XSAVE/XRSTOR area. See Table 3-8.

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 0DH and ECX = n ($n > 1$, and is a valid sub-leaf index), the processor returns information about the size and offset of each processor extended state save area within the XSAVE/XRSTOR area. See Table 3-8. Software can use the forward-extendable technique depicted below to query the valid sub-leaves and obtain size and offset information for each processor extended state save area:

```
For i = 2 to 62 // sub-leaf 1 is reserved
  IF (CPUID.(EAX=0DH, ECX=0):VECTOR[i] = 1 ) // VECTOR is the 64-bit value of EDX:EAX
    Execute CPUID.(EAX=0DH, ECX = i) to examine size and offset for sub-leaf i;
  FI;
```

INPUT EAX = 0FH: Returns Intel Resource Director Technology (Intel RDT) Monitoring Enumeration Information

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 0FH and ECX = 0, the processor returns information about the bit-vector representation of QoS monitoring resource types that are supported in the processor and maximum range of RMID values the processor can use to monitor of any supported resource types. Each bit, starting from bit 1, corresponds to a specific resource type if the bit is set. The bit position corresponds to the sub-leaf index (or ResID) that software must use to query QoS monitoring capability available for that type. See Table 3-8.

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 0FH and ECX = n ($n \geq 1$, and is a valid ResID), the processor returns information software can use to program IA32_PQR_ASSOC, IA32_QM_EVTSEL MSRs before reading QoS data from the IA32_QM_CTR MSR.

INPUT EAX = 10H: Returns Intel Resource Director Technology (Intel RDT) Allocation Enumeration Information

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 10H and ECX = 0, the processor returns information about the bit-vector representation of QoS Enforcement resource types that are supported in the processor. Each bit, starting from bit 1, corresponds to a specific resource type if the bit is set. The bit position corresponds to the sub-leaf index (or ResID) that software must use to query QoS enforcement capability available for that type. See Table 3-8.

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 10H and ECX = n (n >= 1, and is a valid ResID), the processor returns information about available classes of service and range of QoS mask MSRs that software can use to configure each class of services using capability bit masks in the QoS Mask registers, IA32_resourceType_Mask_n.

INPUT EAX = 12H: Returns Intel SGX Enumeration Information

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 12H and ECX = 0H, the processor returns information about Intel SGX capabilities. See Table 3-8.

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 12H and ECX = 1H, the processor returns information about Intel SGX attributes. See Table 3-8.

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 12H and ECX = n (n > 1), the processor returns information about Intel SGX Enclave Page Cache. See Table 3-8.

INPUT EAX = 14H: Returns Intel Processor Trace Enumeration Information

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 14H and ECX = 0H, the processor returns information about Intel Processor Trace extensions. See Table 3-8.

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 14H and ECX = n (n > 0 and less than the number of non-zero bits in CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX= 0H).EAX), the processor returns information about packet generation in Intel Processor Trace. See Table 3-8.

INPUT EAX = 15H: Returns Time Stamp Counter and Nominal Core Crystal Clock Information

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 15H and ECX = 0H, the processor returns information about Time Stamp Counter and Core Crystal Clock. See Table 3-8.

INPUT EAX = 16H: Returns Processor Frequency Information

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 16H, the processor returns information about Processor Frequency Information. See Table 3-8.

INPUT EAX = 17H: Returns System-On-Chip Information

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 17H, the processor returns information about the System-On-Chip Vendor Attribute Enumeration. See Table 3-8.

INPUT EAX = 18H: Returns Deterministic Address Translation Parameters Information

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 18H, the processor returns information about the Deterministic Address Translation Parameters. See Table 3-8.

INPUT EAX = 1FH: Returns V2 Extended Topology Information

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 1FH, the processor returns information about extended topology enumeration data. Software must detect the presence of CPUID leaf 1FH by verifying (a) the highest leaf index supported by CPUID is >= 1FH, and (b) CPUID.1FH:EBX[15:0] reports a non-zero value. See Table 3-8.

METHODS FOR RETURNING BRANDING INFORMATION

Use the following techniques to access branding information:

1. Processor brand string method.
2. Processor brand index; this method uses a software supplied brand string table.

These two methods are discussed in the following sections. For methods that are available in early processors, see Section: “Identification of Earlier IA-32 Processors” in Chapter 19 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 1*.

The Processor Brand String Method

Figure 3-9 describes the algorithm used for detection of the brand string. Processor brand identification software should execute this algorithm on all Intel 64 and IA-32 processors.

This method (introduced with Pentium 4 processors) returns an ASCII brand identification string and the Processor Base frequency of the processor to the EAX, EBX, ECX, and EDX registers.

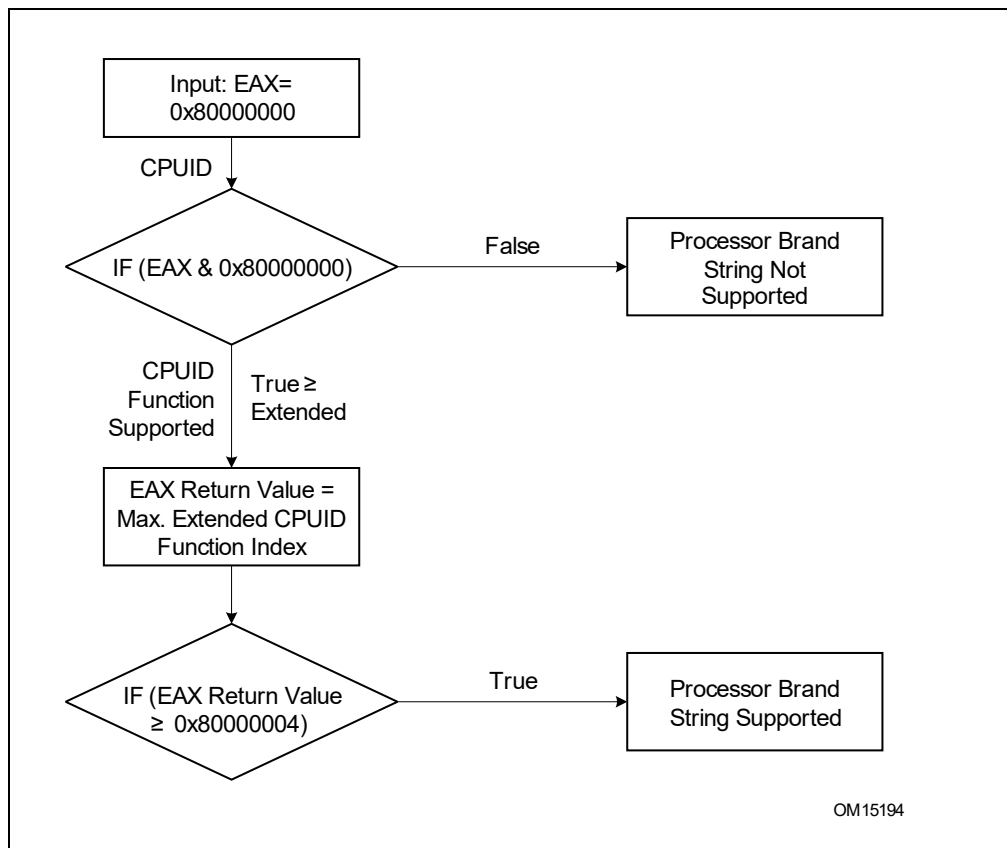


Figure 3-9. Determination of Support for the Processor Brand String

How Brand Strings Work

To use the brand string method, execute CPUID with EAX input of 8000002H through 80000004H. For each input value, CPUID returns 16 ASCII characters using EAX, EBX, ECX, and EDX. The returned string will be NULL-terminated.

Table 3-13 shows the brand string that is returned by the first processor in the Pentium 4 processor family.

Table 3-13. Processor Brand String Returned with Pentium 4 Processor

EAX Input Value	Return Values	ASCII Equivalent
80000002H	EAX = 20202020H EBX = 20202020H ECX = 20202020H EDX = 6E492020H	" " " " " " " " " "nl "
80000003H	EAX = 286C6574H EBX = 50202952H ECX = 69746E65H EDX = 52286D75H	"(let" "P)R" "itne" "R(mu"
80000004H	EAX = 20342029H EBX = 20555043H ECX = 30303531H EDX = 007A484DH	" 4)" " UPC" "0051" "\0zHM"

Extracting the Processor Frequency from Brand Strings

Figure 3-10 provides an algorithm which software can use to extract the Processor Base frequency from the processor brand string.

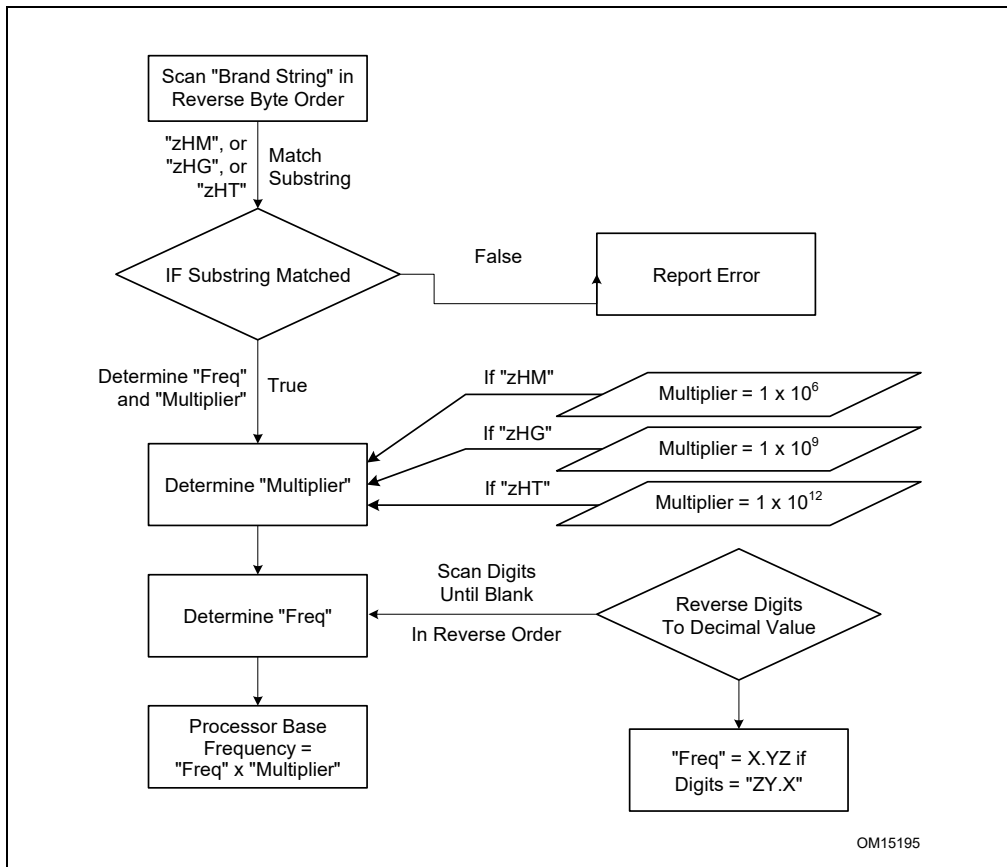


Figure 3-10. Algorithm for Extracting Processor Frequency

The Processor Brand Index Method

The brand index method (introduced with Pentium® III Xeon® processors) provides an entry point into a brand identification table that is maintained in memory by system software and is accessible from system- and user-level code. In this table, each brand index is associated with an ASCII brand identification string that identifies the official Intel family and model number of a processor.

When CPUID executes with EAX set to 1, the processor returns a brand index to the low byte in EBX. Software can then use this index to locate the brand identification string for the processor in the brand identification table. The first entry (brand index 0) in this table is reserved, allowing for backward compatibility with processors that do not support the brand identification feature. Starting with processor signature family ID = 0FH, model = 03H, brand index method is no longer supported. Use brand string method instead.

Table 3-14 shows brand indices that have identification strings associated with them.

Table 3-14. Mapping of Brand Indices; and Intel 64 and IA-32 Processor Brand Strings

Brand Index	Brand String
00H	This processor does not support the brand identification feature
01H	Intel(R) Celeron(R) processor ¹
02H	Intel(R) Pentium(R) III processor ¹
03H	Intel(R) Pentium(R) III Xeon(R) processor; If processor signature = 000006B1h, then Intel(R) Celeron(R) processor
04H	Intel(R) Pentium(R) III processor
06H	Mobile Intel(R) Pentium(R) III processor-M
07H	Mobile Intel(R) Celeron(R) processor ¹
08H	Intel(R) Pentium(R) 4 processor
09H	Intel(R) Pentium(R) 4 processor
0AH	Intel(R) Celeron(R) processor ¹
0BH	Intel(R) Xeon(R) processor; If processor signature = 00000F13h, then Intel(R) Xeon(R) processor MP
0CH	Intel(R) Xeon(R) processor MP
0EH	Mobile Intel(R) Pentium(R) 4 processor-M; If processor signature = 00000F13h, then Intel(R) Xeon(R) processor
0FH	Mobile Intel(R) Celeron(R) processor ¹
11H	Mobile Genuine Intel(R) processor
12H	Intel(R) Celeron(R) M processor
13H	Mobile Intel(R) Celeron(R) processor ¹
14H	Intel(R) Celeron(R) processor
15H	Mobile Genuine Intel(R) processor
16H	Intel(R) Pentium(R) M processor
17H	Mobile Intel(R) Celeron(R) processor ¹
18H - 0FFH	RESERVED

NOTES:

1. Indicates versions of these processors that were introduced after the Pentium III

IA-32 Architecture Compatibility

CPUID is not supported in early models of the Intel486 processor or in any IA-32 processor earlier than the Intel486 processor.

Operation

IA32_BIOS_SIGN_ID MSR ← Update with installed microcode revision number;

CASE (EAX) OF

EAX = 0:

EAX ← Highest basic function input value understood by CPUID;

EBX ← Vendor identification string;

EDX ← Vendor identification string;

ECX ← Vendor identification string;

BREAK;

EAX = 1H:

EAX[3:0] ← Stepping ID;

EAX[7:4] ← Model;

EAX[11:8] ← Family;

EAX[13:12] ← Processor type;

EAX[15:14] ← Reserved;

EAX[19:16] ← Extended Model;

EAX[27:20] ← Extended Family;

EAX[31:28] ← Reserved;

EBX[7:0] ← Brand Index; (* Reserved if the value is zero. *)

EBX[15:8] ← CLFLUSH Line Size;

EBX[16:23] ← Reserved; (* Number of threads enabled = 2 if MT enable fuse set. *)

EBX[24:31] ← Initial APIC ID;

ECX ← Feature flags; (* See Figure 3-7. *)

EDX ← Feature flags; (* See Figure 3-8. *)

BREAK;

EAX = 2H:

EAX ← Cache and TLB information;

EBX ← Cache and TLB information;

ECX ← Cache and TLB information;

EDX ← Cache and TLB information;

BREAK;

EAX = 3H:

EAX ← Reserved;

EBX ← Reserved;

ECX ← ProcessorSerialNumber[31:0];

(* Pentium III processors only, otherwise reserved. *)

EDX ← ProcessorSerialNumber[63:32];

(* Pentium III processors only, otherwise reserved. *)

BREAK

EAX = 4H:

EAX ← Deterministic Cache Parameters Leaf; (* See Table 3-8. *)

EBX ← Deterministic Cache Parameters Leaf;

ECX ← Deterministic Cache Parameters Leaf;

EDX ← Deterministic Cache Parameters Leaf;

BREAK;

EAX = 5H:

EAX ← MONITOR/MWAIT Leaf; (* See Table 3-8. *)

EBX ← MONITOR/MWAIT Leaf;

ECX ← MONITOR/MWAIT Leaf;

EDX ← MONITOR/MWAIT Leaf;

BREAK;

EAX = 6H:
 EAX ← Thermal and Power Management Leaf; (* See Table 3-8. *)
 EBX ← Thermal and Power Management Leaf;
 ECX ← Thermal and Power Management Leaf;
 EDX ← Thermal and Power Management Leaf;

BREAK;

EAX = 7H:
 EAX ← Structured Extended Feature Flags Enumeration Leaf; (* See Table 3-8. *)
 EBX ← Structured Extended Feature Flags Enumeration Leaf;
 ECX ← Structured Extended Feature Flags Enumeration Leaf;
 EDX ← Structured Extended Feature Flags Enumeration Leaf;

BREAK;

EAX = 8H:
 EAX ← Reserved = 0;
 EBX ← Reserved = 0;
 ECX ← Reserved = 0;
 EDX ← Reserved = 0;

BREAK;

EAX = 9H:
 EAX ← Direct Cache Access Information Leaf; (* See Table 3-8. *)
 EBX ← Direct Cache Access Information Leaf;
 ECX ← Direct Cache Access Information Leaf;
 EDX ← Direct Cache Access Information Leaf;

BREAK;

EAX = AH:
 EAX ← Architectural Performance Monitoring Leaf; (* See Table 3-8. *)
 EBX ← Architectural Performance Monitoring Leaf;
 ECX ← Architectural Performance Monitoring Leaf;
 EDX ← Architectural Performance Monitoring Leaf;
 BREAK

EAX = BH:
 EAX ← Extended Topology Enumeration Leaf; (* See Table 3-8. *)
 EBX ← Extended Topology Enumeration Leaf;
 ECX ← Extended Topology Enumeration Leaf;
 EDX ← Extended Topology Enumeration Leaf;

BREAK;

EAX = CH:
 EAX ← Reserved = 0;
 EBX ← Reserved = 0;
 ECX ← Reserved = 0;
 EDX ← Reserved = 0;

BREAK;

EAX = DH:
 EAX ← Processor Extended State Enumeration Leaf; (* See Table 3-8. *)
 EBX ← Processor Extended State Enumeration Leaf;
 ECX ← Processor Extended State Enumeration Leaf;
 EDX ← Processor Extended State Enumeration Leaf;

BREAK;

EAX = EH:
 EAX ← Reserved = 0;
 EBX ← Reserved = 0;
 ECX ← Reserved = 0;
 EDX ← Reserved = 0;

BREAK;

EAX = FH:

EAX ← Intel Resource Director Technology Monitoring Enumeration Leaf; (* See Table 3-8. *)
 EBX ← Intel Resource Director Technology Monitoring Enumeration Leaf;
 ECX ← Intel Resource Director Technology Monitoring Enumeration Leaf;
 EDX ← Intel Resource Director Technology Monitoring Enumeration Leaf;

BREAK;

EAX = 10H:

EAX ← Intel Resource Director Technology Allocation Enumeration Leaf; (* See Table 3-8. *)
 EBX ← Intel Resource Director Technology Allocation Enumeration Leaf;
 ECX ← Intel Resource Director Technology Allocation Enumeration Leaf;
 EDX ← Intel Resource Director Technology Allocation Enumeration Leaf;

BREAK;

EAX = 12H:

EAX ← Intel SGX Enumeration Leaf; (* See Table 3-8. *)
 EBX ← Intel SGX Enumeration Leaf;
 ECX ← Intel SGX Enumeration Leaf;
 EDX ← Intel SGX Enumeration Leaf;

BREAK;

EAX = 14H:

EAX ← Intel Processor Trace Enumeration Leaf; (* See Table 3-8. *)
 EBX ← Intel Processor Trace Enumeration Leaf;
 ECX ← Intel Processor Trace Enumeration Leaf;
 EDX ← Intel Processor Trace Enumeration Leaf;

BREAK;

EAX = 15H:

EAX ← Time Stamp Counter and Nominal Core Crystal Clock Information Leaf; (* See Table 3-8. *)
 EBX ← Time Stamp Counter and Nominal Core Crystal Clock Information Leaf;
 ECX ← Time Stamp Counter and Nominal Core Crystal Clock Information Leaf;
 EDX ← Time Stamp Counter and Nominal Core Crystal Clock Information Leaf;

BREAK;

EAX = 16H:

EAX ← Processor Frequency Information Enumeration Leaf; (* See Table 3-8. *)
 EBX ← Processor Frequency Information Enumeration Leaf;
 ECX ← Processor Frequency Information Enumeration Leaf;
 EDX ← Processor Frequency Information Enumeration Leaf;

BREAK;

EAX = 17H:

EAX ← System-On-Chip Vendor Attribute Enumeration Leaf; (* See Table 3-8. *)
 EBX ← System-On-Chip Vendor Attribute Enumeration Leaf;
 ECX ← System-On-Chip Vendor Attribute Enumeration Leaf;
 EDX ← System-On-Chip Vendor Attribute Enumeration Leaf;

BREAK;

EAX = 18H:

EAX ← Deterministic Address Translation Parameters Enumeration Leaf; (* See Table 3-8. *)
 EBX ← Deterministic Address Translation Parameters Enumeration Leaf;
 ECX ← Deterministic Address Translation Parameters Enumeration Leaf;
 EDX ← Deterministic Address Translation Parameters Enumeration Leaf;

BREAK;

EAX = 1FH:

EAX ← V2 Extended Topology Enumeration Leaf; (* See Table 3-8. *)
 EBX ← V2 Extended Topology Enumeration Leaf;
 ECX ← V2 Extended Topology Enumeration Leaf;
 EDX ← V2 Extended Topology Enumeration Leaf;

BREAK;

EAX = 80000000H:
 EAX ← Highest extended function input value understood by CPUID;
 EBX ← Reserved;
 ECX ← Reserved;
 EDX ← Reserved;
 BREAK;

EAX = 80000001H:
 EAX ← Reserved;
 EBX ← Reserved;
 ECX ← Extended Feature Bits (* See Table 3-8.*);
 EDX ← Extended Feature Bits (* See Table 3-8.*);
 BREAK;

EAX = 80000002H:
 EAX ← Processor Brand String;
 EBX ← Processor Brand String, continued;
 ECX ← Processor Brand String, continued;
 EDX ← Processor Brand String, continued;
 BREAK;

EAX = 80000003H:
 EAX ← Processor Brand String, continued;
 EBX ← Processor Brand String, continued;
 ECX ← Processor Brand String, continued;
 EDX ← Processor Brand String, continued;
 BREAK;

EAX = 80000004H:
 EAX ← Processor Brand String, continued;
 EBX ← Processor Brand String, continued;
 ECX ← Processor Brand String, continued;
 EDX ← Processor Brand String, continued;
 BREAK;

EAX = 80000005H:
 EAX ← Reserved = 0;
 EBX ← Reserved = 0;
 ECX ← Reserved = 0;
 EDX ← Reserved = 0;
 BREAK;

EAX = 80000006H:
 EAX ← Reserved = 0;
 EBX ← Reserved = 0;
 ECX ← Cache information;
 EDX ← Reserved = 0;
 BREAK;

EAX = 80000007H:
 EAX ← Reserved = 0;
 EBX ← Reserved = 0;
 ECX ← Reserved = 0;
 EDX ← Reserved = Misc Feature Flags;
 BREAK;

EAX = 80000008H:
 EAX ← Reserved = Physical Address Size Information;
 EBX ← Reserved = Virtual Address Size Information;
 ECX ← Reserved = 0;
 EDX ← Reserved = 0;
 BREAK;

EAX \geq 40000000H and EAX \leq 4FFFFFFFH:

DEFAULT: (* EAX = Value outside of recognized range for CPUID. *)

(* If the highest basic information leaf data depend on ECX input value, ECX is honored.*)

EAX \leftarrow Reserved; (* Information returned for highest basic information leaf. *)

EBX \leftarrow Reserved; (* Information returned for highest basic information leaf. *)

ECX \leftarrow Reserved; (* Information returned for highest basic information leaf. *)

EDX \leftarrow Reserved; (* Information returned for highest basic information leaf. *)

BREAK;

ESAC;

Flags Affected

None.

Exceptions (All Operating Modes)

#UD

If the LOCK prefix is used.

In earlier IA-32 processors that do not support the CPUID instruction, execution of the instruction results in an invalid opcode (#UD) exception being generated.

CVTSD2SS—Convert Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point Value to Scalar Single-Precision Floating-Point Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
F2 0F 5A /r CVTSD2SS xmm1, xmm2/m64	A	V/V	SSE2	Convert one double-precision floating-point value in xmm2/m64 to one single-precision floating-point value in xmm1.
VEX.LIG.F2.0F.WIG 5A /r VCVTSD2SS xmm1,xmm2, xmm3/m64	B	V/V	AVX	Convert one double-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m64 to one single-precision floating-point value and merge with high bits in xmm2.
EVEX.LIG.F2.0F.W1 5A /r VCVTSD2SS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64{er}	C	V/V	AVX512F	Convert one double-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m64 to one single-precision floating-point value and merge with high bits in xmm2 under writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Converts a double-precision floating-point value in the “convert-from” source operand (the second operand in SSE2 version, otherwise the third operand) to a single-precision floating-point value in the destination operand.

When the “convert-from” operand is an XMM register, the double-precision floating-point value is contained in the low quadword of the register. The result is stored in the low doubleword of the destination operand. When the conversion is inexact, the value returned is rounded according to the rounding control bits in the MXCSR register.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The “convert-from” source operand (the second operand) is an XMM register or memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:32) of the corresponding destination register remain unchanged. The destination operand is an XMM register.

VEX.128 and EVEX encoded versions: The “convert-from” source operand (the third operand) can be an XMM register or a 64-bit memory location. The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. Bits (127:32) of the XMM register destination are copied from the corresponding bits in the first source operand. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination register are zeroed.

EVEX encoded version: the converted result is written to the low doubleword element of the destination under the writemask.

Software should ensure VCVTSD2SS is encoded with VEX.L=0. Encoding VCVTSD2SS with VEX.L=1 may encounter unpredictable behavior across different processor generations.

CVTISI2SD—Convert Doubleword Integer to Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
F2 OF 2A /r CVTISI2SD xmm1, r32/m32	A	V/V	SSE2	Convert one signed doubleword integer from r32/m32 to one double-precision floating-point value in xmm1.
F2 REX.W OF 2A /r CVTISI2SD xmm1, r/m64	A	V/N.E.	SSE2	Convert one signed quadword integer from r/m64 to one double-precision floating-point value in xmm1.
VEX.LIG.F2.OF.W0 2A /r VCVTISI2SD xmm1, xmm2, r/m32	B	V/V	AVX	Convert one signed doubleword integer from r/m32 to one double-precision floating-point value in xmm1.
VEX.LIG.F2.OF.W1 2A /r VCVTISI2SD xmm1, xmm2, r/m64	B	V/N.E. ¹	AVX	Convert one signed quadword integer from r/m64 to one double-precision floating-point value in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.F2.OF.W0 2A /r VCVTISI2SD xmm1, xmm2, r/m32	C	V/V	AVX512F	Convert one signed doubleword integer from r/m32 to one double-precision floating-point value in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.F2.OF.W1 2A /r VCVTISI2SD xmm1, xmm2, r/m64{er}	C	V/N.E. ¹	AVX512F	Convert one signed quadword integer from r/m64 to one double-precision floating-point value in xmm1.

NOTES:

1. VEX.W1/EVEX.W1 in non-64 bit is ignored; the instructions behaves as if the W0 version is used.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Converts a signed doubleword integer (or signed quadword integer if operand size is 64 bits) in the “convert-from” source operand to a double-precision floating-point value in the destination operand. The result is stored in the low quadword of the destination operand, and the high quadword left unchanged. When conversion is inexact, the value returned is rounded according to the rounding control bits in the MXCSR register.

The second source operand can be a general-purpose register or a 32/64-bit memory location. The first source and destination operands are XMM registers.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: Use of the REX.W prefix promotes the instruction to 64-bit operands. The “convert-from” source operand (the second operand) is a general-purpose register or memory location. The destination is an XMM register Bits (MAXVL-1: 64) of the corresponding destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 and EVEX encoded versions: The “convert-from” source operand (the third operand) can be a general-purpose register or a memory location. The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. Bits (127: 64) of the XMM register destination are copied from the corresponding bits in the first source operand. Bits (MAXVL-1: 128) of the destination register are zeroed.

EVEX.W0 version: attempt to encode this instruction with EVEX embedded rounding is ignored.

VEX.W1 and EVEX.W1 versions: promotes the instruction to use 64-bit input value in 64-bit mode.

Software should ensure VCVTISI2SD is encoded with VEX.L=0. Encoding VCVTISI2SD with VEX.L=1 may encounter unpredictable behavior across different processor generations.

CVTSS2SS—Convert Doubleword Integer to Scalar Single-Precision Floating-Point Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
F3 0F 2A /r CVTSS2SS xmm1, r/m32	A	V/V	SSE	Convert one signed doubleword integer from r/m32 to one single-precision floating-point value in xmm1.
F3 REX.W 0F 2A /r CVTSS2SS xmm1, r/m64	A	V/N.E.	SSE	Convert one signed quadword integer from r/m64 to one single-precision floating-point value in xmm1.
VEX.LIG.F3.0F.W0 2A /r VCVTSI2SS xmm1, xmm2, r/m32	B	V/V	AVX	Convert one signed doubleword integer from r/m32 to one single-precision floating-point value in xmm1.
VEX.LIG.F3.0F.W1 2A /r VCVTSI2SS xmm1, xmm2, r/m64	B	V/N.E. ¹	AVX	Convert one signed quadword integer from r/m64 to one single-precision floating-point value in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.F3.0F.W0 2A /r VCVTSI2SS xmm1, xmm2, r/m32{er}	C	V/V	AVX512F	Convert one signed doubleword integer from r/m32 to one single-precision floating-point value in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.F3.0F.W1 2A /r VCVTSI2SS xmm1, xmm2, r/m64{er}	C	V/N.E. ¹	AVX512F	Convert one signed quadword integer from r/m64 to one single-precision floating-point value in xmm1.

NOTES:

1. VEX.W1/EVEX.W1 in non-64 bit is ignored; the instructions behaves as if the W0 version is used.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Converts a signed doubleword integer (or signed quadword integer if operand size is 64 bits) in the “convert-from” source operand to a single-precision floating-point value in the destination operand (first operand). The “convert-from” source operand can be a general-purpose register or a memory location. The destination operand is an XMM register. The result is stored in the low doubleword of the destination operand, and the upper three doublewords are left unchanged. When a conversion is inexact, the value returned is rounded according to the rounding control bits in the MXCSR register or the embedded rounding control bits.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: In 64-bit mode, Use of the REX.W prefix promotes the instruction to use 64-bit input value. The “convert-from” source operand (the second operand) is a general-purpose register or memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:32) of the corresponding destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 and EVEX encoded versions: The “convert-from” source operand (the third operand) can be a general-purpose register or a memory location. The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. Bits (127:32) of the XMM register destination are copied from corresponding bits in the first source operand. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination register are zeroed.

EVEX encoded version: the converted result is written to the low doubleword element of the destination under the writemask.

Software should ensure VCVTSI2SS is encoded with VEX.L=0. Encoding VCVTSI2SS with VEX.L=1 may encounter unpredictable behavior across different processor generations.

CVTSS2SD—Convert Scalar Single-Precision Floating-Point Value to Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
F3 0F 5A /r CVTSS2SD xmm1, xmm2/m32	A	V/V	SSE2	Convert one single-precision floating-point value in xmm2/m32 to one double-precision floating-point value in xmm1.
VEX.LIG.F3.0F.WIG 5A /r VCVTSS2SD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m32	B	V/V	AVX	Convert one single-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m32 to one double-precision floating-point value and merge with high bits of xmm2.
EVEX.LIG.F3.0F.W0 5A /r VCVTSS2SD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m32{sae}	C	V/V	AVX512F	Convert one single-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m32 to one double-precision floating-point value and merge with high bits of xmm2 under writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Converts a single-precision floating-point value in the “convert-from” source operand to a double-precision floating-point value in the destination operand. When the “convert-from” source operand is an XMM register, the single-precision floating-point value is contained in the low doubleword of the register. The result is stored in the low quadword of the destination operand.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The “convert-from” source operand (the second operand) is an XMM register or memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:64) of the corresponding destination register remain unchanged. The destination operand is an XMM register.

VEX.128 and EVEX encoded versions: The “convert-from” source operand (the third operand) can be an XMM register or a 32-bit memory location. The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. Bits (127:64) of the XMM register destination are copied from the corresponding bits in the first source operand. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination register are zeroed.

Software should ensure VCVTSS2SD is encoded with VEX.L=0. Encoding VCVTSS2SD with VEX.L=1 may encounter unpredictable behavior across different processor generations.

Operation

VCVTSS2SD (EVEX encoded version)

IF k1[0] or *no writemask*

THEN DEST[63:0] ← Convert_Single_Precision_To_Double_Precision_Floating_Point(SRC2[31:0]);

ELSE

IF *merging-masking* ; merging-masking

THEN *DEST[63:0] remains unchanged*

ELSE ; zeroing-masking

THEN DEST[63:0] = 0

FI;

FI;

DEST[127:64] ← SRC1[127:64]

DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0

DIVPD—Divide Packed Double-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 5E /r DIVPD xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE2	Divide packed double-precision floating-point values in xmm1 by packed double-precision floating-point values in xmm2/mem.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 5E /r VDIVPD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Divide packed double-precision floating-point values in xmm2 by packed double-precision floating-point values in xmm3/mem.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG 5E /r VDIVPD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX	Divide packed double-precision floating-point values in ymm2 by packed double-precision floating-point values in ymm3/mem.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 5E /r VDIVPD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Divide packed double-precision floating-point values in xmm2 by packed double-precision floating-point values in xmm3/m128/m64bcst and write results to xmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W1 5E /r VDIVPD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Divide packed double-precision floating-point values in ymm2 by packed double-precision floating-point values in ymm3/m256/m64bcst and write results to ymm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W1 5E /r VDIVPD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst{er}	C	V/V	AVX512F	Divide packed double-precision floating-point values in zmm2 by packed double-precision FP values in zmm3/m512/m64bcst and write results to zmm1 subject to writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a SIMD divide of the double-precision floating-point values in the first source operand by the floating-point values in the second source operand (the third operand). Results are written to the destination operand (the first operand).

EVEX encoded versions: The first source operand (the second operand) is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register conditionally updated with writemask k1.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand (the second operand) is a YMM register. The second source operand can be a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding destination are zeroed.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand (the second operand) is a XMM register. The second source operand can be a XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is a XMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding destination are zeroed.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source operand (the second operand) can be an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The destination is the same as the first source operand. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding destination are unmodified.

DIVPS—Divide Packed Single-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F 5E /r DIVPS xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE	Divide packed single-precision floating-point values in xmm1 by packed single-precision floating-point values in xmm2/mem.
VEX.128.0F.WIG 5E /r VDIVPS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Divide packed single-precision floating-point values in xmm2 by packed single-precision floating-point values in xmm3/mem.
VEX.256.0F.WIG 5E /r VDIVPS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX	Divide packed single-precision floating-point values in ymm2 by packed single-precision floating-point values in ymm3/mem.
EVEX.128.0F.W0 5E /r VDIVPS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Divide packed single-precision floating-point values in xmm2 by packed single-precision floating-point values in xmm3/m128/m32bcst and write results to xmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.0F.W0 5E /r VDIVPS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Divide packed single-precision floating-point values in ymm2 by packed single-precision floating-point values in ymm3/m256/m32bcst and write results to ymm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.0F.W0 5E /r VDIVPS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst{er}	C	V/V	AVX512F	Divide packed single-precision floating-point values in zmm2 by packed single-precision floating-point values in zmm3/m512/m32bcst and write results to zmm1 subject to writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a SIMD divide of the four, eight or sixteen packed single-precision floating-point values in the first source operand (the second operand) by the four, eight or sixteen packed single-precision floating-point values in the second source operand (the third operand). Results are written to the destination operand (the first operand).

EVEX encoded versions: The first source operand (the second operand) is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 32-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register conditionally updated with writemask k1.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand can be a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is a XMM register. The second source operand can be a XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is a XMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source can be an XMM register or an 128-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are unmodified.

DIVSD—Divide Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
F2 0F 5E /r DIVSD xmm1, xmm2/m64	A	V/V	SSE2	Divide low double-precision floating-point value in xmm1 by low double-precision floating-point value in xmm2/m64.
VEX.LIG.F2.0F.WIG 5E /r VDIVSD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m64	B	V/V	AVX	Divide low double-precision floating-point value in xmm2 by low double-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m64.
EVEX.LIG.F2.0F.W1 5E /r VDIVSD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64{er}	C	V/V	AVX512F	Divide low double-precision floating-point value in xmm2 by low double-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m64.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Divides the low double-precision floating-point value in the first source operand by the low double-precision floating-point value in the second source operand, and stores the double-precision floating-point result in the destination operand. The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 64-bit memory location. The first source and destination are XMM registers.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source operand and the destination operand are the same. Bits (MAXVL-1:64) of the corresponding ZMM destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is an xmm register encoded by VEX.vvvv. The quadword at bits 127:64 of the destination operand is copied from the corresponding quadword of the first source operand. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination register are zeroed.

EVEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is an xmm register encoded by EVEX.vvvv. The quadword element of the destination operand at bits 127:64 are copied from the first source operand. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination register are zeroed.

EVEX version: The low quadword element of the destination is updated according to the writemask.

Software should ensure VDIVSD is encoded with VEX.L=0. Encoding VDIVSD with VEX.L=1 may encounter unpredictable behavior across different processor generations.

DIVSS—Divide Scalar Single-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
F3 0F 5E /r DIVSS xmm1, xmm2/m32	A	V/V	SSE	Divide low single-precision floating-point value in xmm1 by low single-precision floating-point value in xmm2/m32.
VEX.LIG.F3.0F.WIG 5E /r VDIVSS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m32	B	V/V	AVX	Divide low single-precision floating-point value in xmm2 by low single-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m32.
EVEX.LIG.F3.0F.W0 5E /r VDIVSS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m32{er}	C	V/V	AVX512F	Divide low single-precision floating-point value in xmm2 by low single-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m32.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Divides the low single-precision floating-point value in the first source operand by the low single-precision floating-point value in the second source operand, and stores the single-precision floating-point result in the destination operand. The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 32-bit memory location.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source operand and the destination operand are the same. Bits (MAXVL-1:32) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is an xmm register encoded by VEX.vvvv. The three high-order doublewords of the destination operand are copied from the first source operand. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination register are zeroed.

EVEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is an xmm register encoded by EVEX.vvvv. The doubleword elements of the destination operand at bits 127:32 are copied from the first source operand. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination register are zeroed.

EVEX version: The low doubleword element of the destination is updated according to the writemask.

Software should ensure VDIVSS is encoded with VEX.L=0. Encoding VDIVSS with VEX.L=1 may encounter unpredictable behavior across different processor generations.

DPPD — Dot Product of Packed Double Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32-bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 3A 41 /r ib DPPD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i> , <i>imm8</i>	RMI	V/V	SSE4_1	Selectively multiply packed DP floating-point values from <i>xmm1</i> with packed DP floating-point values from <i>xmm2</i> , add and selectively store the packed DP floating-point values to <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F3A.WIG 41 /r ib VDPPD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i> , <i>imm8</i>	RVMI	V/V	AVX	Selectively multiply packed DP floating-point values from <i>xmm2</i> with packed DP floating-point values from <i>xmm3</i> , add and selectively store the packed DP floating-point values to <i>xmm1</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RMI	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	imm8	NA
RVMI	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	imm8

Description

Conditionally multiplies the packed double-precision floating-point values in the destination operand (first operand) with the packed double-precision floating-point values in the source (second operand) depending on a mask extracted from bits [5:4] of the immediate operand (third operand). If a condition mask bit is zero, the corresponding multiplication is replaced by a value of 0.0 in the manner described by Section 12.8.4 of *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 1*.

The two resulting double-precision values are summed into an intermediate result. The intermediate result is conditionally broadcasted to the destination using a broadcast mask specified by bits [1:0] of the immediate byte.

If a broadcast mask bit is "1", the intermediate result is copied to the corresponding qword element in the destination operand. If a broadcast mask bit is zero, the corresponding element in the destination is set to zero.

DPPD follows the NaN forwarding rules stated in the Software Developer's Manual, vol. 1, table 4.7. These rules do not cover horizontal prioritization of NaNs. Horizontal propagation of NaNs to the destination and the positioning of those NaNs in the destination is implementation dependent. NaNs on the input sources or computationally generated NaNs will have at least one NaN propagated to the destination.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source can be an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM register destination are unmodified.

VEX.128 encoded version: the first source operand is an XMM register or 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is an XMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM register destination are zeroed.

If VDPPD is encoded with VEX.L= 1, an attempt to execute the instruction encoded with VEX.L= 1 will cause an #UD exception.

DPPS — Dot Product of Packed Single Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32-bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 3A 40 /r ib DPPS <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i> , <i>imm8</i>	RMI	V/V	SSE4_1	Selectively multiply packed SP floating-point values from <i>xmm1</i> with packed SP floating-point values from <i>xmm2</i> , add and selectively store the packed SP floating-point values or zero values to <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F3A.WIG 40 /r ib VDPPS <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i> , <i>imm8</i>	RVMI	V/V	AVX	Multiply packed SP floating point values from <i>xmm1</i> with packed SP floating point values from <i>xmm2/mem</i> selectively add and store to <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F3A.WIG 40 /r ib VDPPS <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i> , <i>imm8</i>	RVMI	V/V	AVX	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from <i>ymm2</i> with packed SP floating point values from <i>ymm3/mem</i> , selectively add pairs of elements and store to <i>ymm1</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RMI	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	imm8	NA
RVMI	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	imm8

Description

Conditionally multiplies the packed single precision floating-point values in the destination operand (first operand) with the packed single-precision floats in the source (second operand) depending on a mask extracted from the high 4 bits of the immediate byte (third operand). If a condition mask bit in `Imm8[7:4]` is zero, the corresponding multiplication is replaced by a value of 0.0 in the manner described by Section 12.8.4 of *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 1*.

The four resulting single-precision values are summed into an intermediate result. The intermediate result is conditionally broadcasted to the destination using a broadcast mask specified by bits `[3:0]` of the immediate byte.

If a broadcast mask bit is "1", the intermediate result is copied to the corresponding dword element in the destination operand. If a broadcast mask bit is zero, the corresponding element in the destination is set to zero.

DPPS follows the NaN forwarding rules stated in the Software Developer's Manual, vol. 1, table 4.7. These rules do not cover horizontal prioritization of NaNs. Horizontal propagation of NaNs to the destination and the positioning of those NaNs in the destination is implementation dependent. NaNs on the input sources or computationally generated NaNs will have at least one NaN propagated to the destination.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source can be an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper bits (`MAXVL-1:128`) of the corresponding YMM register destination are unmodified.

VEX.128 encoded version: the first source operand is an XMM register or 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is an XMM register. The upper bits (`MAXVL-1:128`) of the corresponding YMM register destination are zeroed.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand can be a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register.

HADDPD—Packed Double-FP Horizontal Add

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32-bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 7C /r HADDPD <i>xmm1, xmm2/m128</i>	RM	V/V	SSE3	Horizontal add packed double-precision floating-point values from <i>xmm2/m128</i> to <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 7C /r VHADDPD <i>xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128</i>	RVM	V/V	AVX	Horizontal add packed double-precision floating-point values from <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/mem</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG 7C /r VHADDPD <i>ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256</i>	RVM	V/V	AVX	Horizontal add packed double-precision floating-point values from <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/mem</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RM	ModRM:reg (<i>r, w</i>)	ModRM:r/m (<i>r</i>)	NA	NA
RVM	ModRM:reg (<i>w</i>)	VEX.vvvv (<i>r</i>)	ModRM:r/m (<i>r</i>)	NA

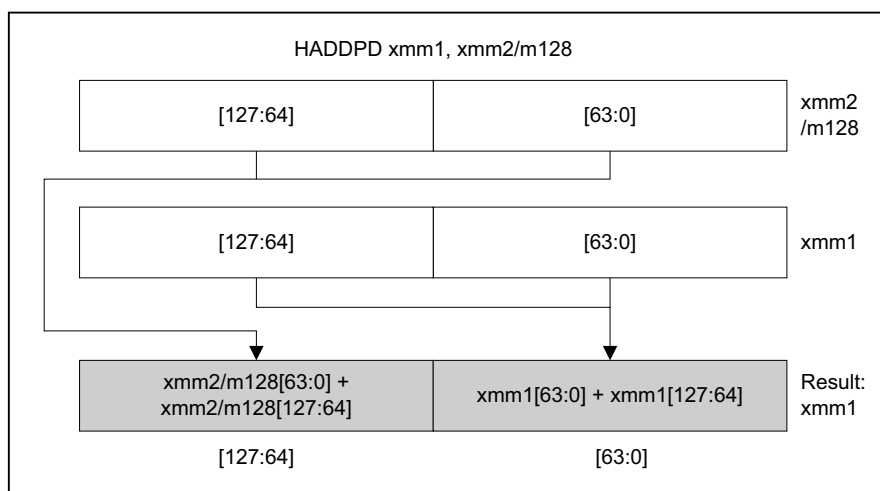
Description

Adds the double-precision floating-point values in the high and low quadwords of the destination operand and stores the result in the low quadword of the destination operand.

Adds the double-precision floating-point values in the high and low quadwords of the source operand and stores the result in the high quadword of the destination operand.

In 64-bit mode, use of the REX.R prefix permits this instruction to access additional registers (XMM8-XMM15).

See Figure 3-16 for HADDPD; see Figure 3-17 for VHADDPD.



OM15993

Figure 3-16. HADDPD—Packed Double-FP Horizontal Add

HADDPS—Packed Single-FP Horizontal Add

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32-bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
F2 0F 7C /r HADDPS <i>xmm1, xmm2/m128</i>	RM	V/V	SSE3	Horizontal add packed single-precision floating-point values from <i>xmm2/m128</i> to <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.F2.0F.WIG 7C /r VHADDPS <i>xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128</i>	RVM	V/V	AVX	Horizontal add packed single-precision floating-point values from <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/mem</i> .
VEX.256.F2.0F.WIG 7C /r VHADDPS <i>ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256</i>	RVM	V/V	AVX	Horizontal add packed single-precision floating-point values from <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/mem</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RM	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
RVM	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Adds the single-precision floating-point values in the first and second dwords of the destination operand and stores the result in the first dword of the destination operand.

Adds single-precision floating-point values in the third and fourth dword of the destination operand and stores the result in the second dword of the destination operand.

Adds single-precision floating-point values in the first and second dword of the source operand and stores the result in the third dword of the destination operand.

Adds single-precision floating-point values in the third and fourth dword of the source operand and stores the result in the fourth dword of the destination operand.

In 64-bit mode, use of the REX.R prefix permits this instruction to access additional registers (XMM8-XMM15).

HSUBPD—Packed Double-FP Horizontal Subtract

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32-bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 7D /r HSUBPD <i>xmm1, xmm2/m128</i>	RM	V/V	SSE3	Horizontal subtract packed double-precision floating-point values from <i>xmm2/m128</i> to <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 7D /r VHSUBPD <i>xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128</i>	RVM	V/V	AVX	Horizontal subtract packed double-precision floating-point values from <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/mem</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG 7D /r VHSUBPD <i>ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256</i>	RVM	V/V	AVX	Horizontal subtract packed double-precision floating-point values from <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/mem</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RM	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
RVM	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

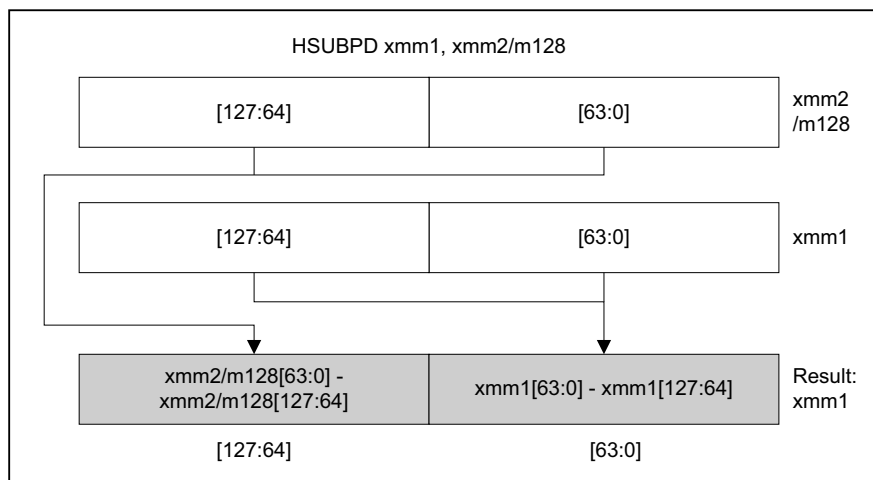
The HSUBPD instruction subtracts horizontally the packed DP FP numbers of both operands.

Subtracts the double-precision floating-point value in the high quadword of the destination operand from the low quadword of the destination operand and stores the result in the low quadword of the destination operand.

Subtracts the double-precision floating-point value in the high quadword of the source operand from the low quadword of the source operand and stores the result in the high quadword of the destination operand.

In 64-bit mode, use of the REX.R prefix permits this instruction to access additional registers (XMM8-XMM15).

See Figure 3-20 for HSUBPD; see Figure 3-21 for VHSUBPD.



OM15995

Figure 3-20. HSUBPD—Packed Double-FP Horizontal Subtract

HSUBPS—Packed Single-FP Horizontal Subtract

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32-bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
F2 0F 7D /r HSUBPS <i>xmm1, xmm2/m128</i>	RM	V/V	SSE3	Horizontal subtract packed single-precision floating-point values from <i>xmm2/m128</i> to <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.F2.0F.WIG 7D /r VHSUBPS <i>xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128</i>	RVM	V/V	AVX	Horizontal subtract packed single-precision floating-point values from <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/mem</i> .
VEX.256.F2.0F.WIG 7D /r VHSUBPS <i>ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256</i>	RVM	V/V	AVX	Horizontal subtract packed single-precision floating-point values from <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/mem</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RM	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
RVM	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Subtracts the single-precision floating-point value in the second dword of the destination operand from the first dword of the destination operand and stores the result in the first dword of the destination operand.

Subtracts the single-precision floating-point value in the fourth dword of the destination operand from the third dword of the destination operand and stores the result in the second dword of the destination operand.

Subtracts the single-precision floating-point value in the second dword of the source operand from the first dword of the source operand and stores the result in the third dword of the destination operand.

Subtracts the single-precision floating-point value in the fourth dword of the source operand from the third dword of the source operand and stores the result in the fourth dword of the destination operand.

In 64-bit mode, use of the REX.R prefix permits this instruction to access additional registers (XMM8-XMM15).

See Figure 3-22 for HSUBPS; see Figure 3-23 for VHSUBPS.

INSERTPS—Insert Scalar Single-Precision Floating-Point Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 3A 21 /r ib INSERTPS xmm1, xmm2/m32, imm8	A	V/V	SSE4_1	Insert a single-precision floating-point value selected by imm8 from xmm2/m32 into xmm1 at the specified destination element specified by imm8 and zero out destination elements in xmm1 as indicated in imm8.
VEX.128.66.0F3A.WIG 21 /r ib VINSERTPS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m32, imm8	B	V/V	AVX	Insert a single-precision floating-point value selected by imm8 from xmm3/m32 and merge with values in xmm2 at the specified destination element specified by imm8 and write out the result and zero out destination elements in xmm1 as indicated in imm8.
EVEX.128.66.0F3A.W0 21 /r ib VINSERTPS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m32, imm8	C	V/V	AVX512F	Insert a single-precision floating-point value selected by imm8 from xmm3/m32 and merge with values in xmm2 at the specified destination element specified by imm8 and write out the result and zero out destination elements in xmm1 as indicated in imm8.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8
C	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8

Description

(register source form)

Copy a single-precision scalar floating-point element into a 128-bit vector register. The immediate operand has three fields, where the ZMask bits specify which elements of the destination will be set to zero, the Count_D bits specify which element of the destination will be overwritten with the scalar value, and for vector register sources the Count_S bits specify which element of the source will be copied. When the scalar source is a memory operand the Count_S bits are ignored.

(memory source form)

Load a floating-point element from a 32-bit memory location and destination operand it into the first source at the location indicated by the Count_D bits of the immediate operand. Store in the destination and zero out destination elements based on the ZMask bits of the immediate operand.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source register is an XMM register. The second source operand is either an XMM register or a 32-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding register destination are unmodified.

VEX.128 and EVEX encoded version: The destination and first source register is an XMM register. The second source operand is either an XMM register or a 32-bit memory location. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding register destination are zeroed.

If VINSERTPS is encoded with VEX.L= 1, an attempt to execute the instruction encoded with VEX.L= 1 will cause an #UD exception.

INT *n*/INT0/INT3/INT1—Call to Interrupt Procedure

Opcode	Instruction	Op/En	64-Bit Mode	Compat/Leg Mode	Description
CC	INT3	Z0	Valid	Valid	Generate breakpoint trap.
CD <i>ib</i>	INT <i>imm8</i>	I	Valid	Valid	Generate software interrupt with vector specified by immediate byte.
CE	INT0	Z0	Invalid	Valid	Generate overflow trap if overflow flag is 1.
F1	INT1	Z0	Valid	Valid	Generate debug trap.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
Z0	NA	NA	NA	NA
I	imm8	NA	NA	NA

Description

The INT *n* instruction generates a call to the interrupt or exception handler specified with the destination operand (see the section titled “Interrupts and Exceptions” in Chapter 6 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 1*). The destination operand specifies a vector from 0 to 255, encoded as an 8-bit unsigned intermediate value. Each vector provides an index to a gate descriptor in the IDT. The first 32 vectors are reserved by Intel for system use. Some of these vectors are used for internally generated exceptions.

The INT *n* instruction is the general mnemonic for executing a software-generated call to an interrupt handler. The INTO instruction is a special mnemonic for calling overflow exception (#OF), exception 4. The overflow interrupt checks the OF flag in the EFLAGS register and calls the overflow interrupt handler if the OF flag is set to 1. (The INTO instruction cannot be used in 64-bit mode.)

The INT3 instruction uses a one-byte opcode (CC) and is intended for calling the debug exception handler with a breakpoint exception (#BP). (This one-byte form is useful because it can replace the first byte of any instruction at which a breakpoint is desired, including other one-byte instructions, without overwriting other instructions.)

The INT1 instruction also uses a one-byte opcode (F1) and generates a debug exception (#DB) without setting any bits in DR6.¹ Hardware vendors may use the INT1 instruction for hardware debug. For that reason, Intel recommends software vendors instead use the INT3 instruction for software breakpoints.

An interrupt generated by the INTO, INT3, or INT1 instruction differs from one generated by INT *n* in the following ways:

- The normal IOPL checks do not occur in virtual-8086 mode. The interrupt is taken (without fault) with any IOPL value.
- The interrupt redirection enabled by the virtual-8086 mode extensions (VME) does not occur. The interrupt is always handled by a protected-mode handler.

(These features do not pertain to CD03, the “normal” 2-byte opcode for INT 3. Intel and Microsoft assemblers will not generate the CD03 opcode from any mnemonic, but this opcode can be created by direct numeric code definition or by self-modifying code.)

The action of the INT *n* instruction (including the INTO, INT3, and INT1 instructions) is similar to that of a far call made with the CALL instruction. The primary difference is that with the INT *n* instruction, the EFLAGS register is pushed onto the stack before the return address. (The return address is a far address consisting of the current values of the CS and EIP registers.) Returns from interrupt procedures are handled with the IRET instruction, which pops the EFLAGS information and return address from the stack.

Each of the INT *n*, INTO, and INT3 instructions generates a general-protection exception (#GP) if the CPL is greater than the DPL value in the selected gate descriptor in the IDT. In contrast, the INT1 instruction can deliver a #DB

1. The mnemonic ICEBP has also been used for the instruction with opcode F1.

even if the CPL is greater than the DPL of descriptor 1 in the IDT. (This behavior supports the use of INT1 by hardware vendors performing hardware debug.)

The vector specifies an interrupt descriptor in the interrupt descriptor table (IDT); that is, it provides index into the IDT. The selected interrupt descriptor in turn contains a pointer to an interrupt or exception handler procedure. In protected mode, the IDT contains an array of 8-byte descriptors, each of which is an interrupt gate, trap gate, or task gate. In real-address mode, the IDT is an array of 4-byte far pointers (2-byte code segment selector and a 2-byte instruction pointer), each of which point directly to a procedure in the selected segment. (Note that in real-address mode, the IDT is called the **interrupt vector table**, and its pointers are called interrupt vectors.)

The following decision table indicates which action in the lower portion of the table is taken given the conditions in the upper portion of the table. Each Y in the lower section of the decision table represents a procedure defined in the "Operation" section for this instruction (except #GP).

Table 3-51. Decision Table

PE	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
VM	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	1
IOPL	-	-	-	-	-	-	<3	=3
DPL/CPL RELATIONSHIP	-	DPL < CPL	-	DPL > CPL	DPL = CPL or C	DPL < CPL & NC	-	-
INTERRUPT TYPE	-	S/W	-	-	-	-	-	-
GATE TYPE	-	-	Task	Trap or Interrupt	Trap or Interrupt	Trap or Interrupt	Trap or Interrupt	Trap or Interrupt
REAL-ADDRESS-MODE	Y							
PROTECTED-MODE		Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
TRAP-OR-INTERRUPT-GATE				Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
INTER-PRIVILEGE-LEVEL-INTERRUPT						Y		
INTRA-PRIVILEGE-LEVEL-INTERRUPT					Y			
INTERRUPT-FROM-VIRTUAL-8086-MODE								Y
TASK-GATE			Y					
#GP		Y		Y			Y	

NOTES:

- Don't Care.
- Y Yes, action taken.
- Blank Action not taken.
- S/W Applies to INT n, INT3, and INTO, but not to INT1.

When the processor is executing in virtual-8086 mode, the IOPL determines the action of the INT n instruction. If the IOPL is less than 3, the processor generates a #GP(selector) exception; if the IOPL is 3, the processor executes a protected mode interrupt to privilege level 0. The interrupt gate's DPL must be set to 3 and the target CPL of the interrupt handler procedure must be 0 to execute the protected mode interrupt to privilege level 0.

The interrupt descriptor table register (IDTR) specifies the base linear address and limit of the IDT. The initial base address value of the IDTR after the processor is powered up or reset is 0.

Instruction ordering. Instructions following an INT n may be fetched from memory before earlier instructions complete execution, but they will not execute (even speculatively) until all instructions prior to the INT n have completed execution (the later instructions may execute before data stored by the earlier instructions have become globally visible). This applies also to the INTO, INT3, and INT1 instructions, but not to executions of INTO when EFLAGS.OF = 0.

Operation

The following operational description applies not only to the INT *n*, INTO, INT3, or INT1 instructions, but also to external interrupts, nonmaskable interrupts (NMIs), and exceptions. Some of these events push onto the stack an error code.

The operational description specifies numerous checks whose failure may result in delivery of a nested exception. In these cases, the original event is not delivered.

The operational description specifies the error code delivered by any nested exception. In some cases, the error code is specified with a pseudofunction `error_code(num, idt, ext)`, where `idt` and `ext` are bit values. The pseudofunction produces an error code as follows: (1) if `idt` is 0, the error code is `(num & FCH) | ext`; (2) if `idt` is 1, the error code is `(num << 3) | 2 | ext`.

In many cases, the pseudofunction `error_code` is invoked with a pseudovariable `EXT`. The value of `EXT` depends on the nature of the event whose delivery encountered a nested exception: if that event is a software interrupt (INT *n*, INT3, or INTO), `EXT` is 0; otherwise (including INT1), `EXT` is 1.

```

IF PE = 0
  THEN
    GOTO REAL-ADDRESS-MODE;
  ELSE (* PE = 1 *)
    IF (EFLAGS.VM = 1 AND CR4.VME = 0 AND IOPL < 3 AND INT n)
      THEN
        #GP(0); (* Bit 0 of error code is 0 because INT n *)
      ELSE
        IF (EFLAGS.VM = 1 AND CR4.VME = 1 AND INT n)
          THEN
            Consult bit n of the software interrupt redirection bit map in the TSS;
            IF bit n is clear
              THEN (* redirect interrupt to 8086 program interrupt handler *)
                Push EFLAGS[15:0]; (* if IOPL < 3, save VIF in IF position and save IOPL position as 3 *)
                Push CS;
                Push IP;
                IF IOPL = 3
                  THEN IF ← 0; (* Clear interrupt flag *)
                  ELSE VIF ← 0; (* Clear virtual interrupt flag *)
                FI;
                TF ← 0; (* Clear trap flag *)
                load CS and EIP (lower 16 bits only) from entry n in interrupt vector table referenced from TSS;
              ELSE
                IF IOPL = 3
                  THEN GOTO PROTECTED-MODE;
                  ELSE #GP(0); (* Bit 0 of error code is 0 because INT n *)
                FI;
            FI;
          ELSE (* Protected mode, IA-32e mode, or virtual-8086 mode interrupt *)
            IF (IA32_EFER.LMA = 0)
              THEN (* Protected mode, or virtual-8086 mode interrupt *)
                GOTO PROTECTED-MODE;
              ELSE (* IA-32e mode interrupt *)
                GOTO IA-32e-MODE;
            FI;
          FI;
        FI;
      FI;
    REAL-ADDRESS-MODE:
      IF ((vector_number << 2) + 3) is not within IDT limit

```

```

    THEN #GP; FI;
IF stack not large enough for a 6-byte return information
    THEN #SS; FI;
Push (EFLAGS[15:0]);
IF ← 0; (* Clear interrupt flag *)
TF ← 0; (* Clear trap flag *)
AC ← 0; (* Clear AC flag *)
Push(CS);
Push(IP);
(* No error codes are pushed in real-address mode*)
CS ← IDT(Descriptor (vector_number << 2), selector);
EIP ← IDT(Descriptor (vector_number << 2), offset); (* 16 bit offset AND 0000FFFFH *)
END;
PROTECTED-MODE:
IF ((vector_number << 3) + 7) is not within IDT limits
or selected IDT descriptor is not an interrupt-, trap-, or task-gate type
    THEN #GP(error_code(vector_number,1,EXT)); FI;
    (* idt operand to error_code set because vector is used *)
IF software interrupt (* Generated by INT n, INT3, or INTO; does not apply to INT1 *)
    THEN
    IF gate DPL < CPL (* PE = 1, DPL < CPL, software interrupt *)
        THEN #GP(error_code(vector_number,1,0)); FI;
        (* idt operand to error_code set because vector is used *)
        (* ext operand to error_code is 0 because INT n, INT3, or INTO*)
    FI;
IF gate not present
    THEN #NP(error_code(vector_number,1,EXT)); FI;
    (* idt operand to error_code set because vector is used *)
IF task gate (* Specified in the selected interrupt table descriptor *)
    THEN GOTO TASK-GATE;
    ELSE GOTO TRAP-OR-INTERRUPT-GATE; (* PE = 1, trap/interrupt gate *)
FI;
END;
IA-32e-MODE:
IF INTO and CS.L = 1 (64-bit mode)
    THEN #UD;
FI;
IF ((vector_number << 4) + 15) is not in IDT limits
or selected IDT descriptor is not an interrupt-, or trap-gate type
    THEN #GP(error_code(vector_number,1,EXT));
    (* idt operand to error_code set because vector is used *)
FI;
IF software interrupt (* Generated by INT n, INT3, or INTO; does not apply to INT1 *)
    THEN
    IF gate DPL < CPL (* PE = 1, DPL < CPL, software interrupt *)
        THEN #GP(error_code(vector_number,1,0));
        (* idt operand to error_code set because vector is used *)
        (* ext operand to error_code is 0 because INT n, INT3, or INTO*)
    FI;
IF gate not present
    THEN #NP(error_code(vector_number,1,EXT));
    (* idt operand to error_code set because vector is used *)
FI;

```

```

GOTO TRAP-OR-INTERRUPT-GATE; (* Trap/interrupt gate *)
END;
TASK-GATE: (* PE = 1, task gate *)
  Read TSS selector in task gate (IDT descriptor);
  IF local/global bit is set to local or index not within GDT limits
    THEN #GP(error_code(TSS selector,0,EXT)); FI;
    (* idt operand to error_code is 0 because selector is used *)
  Access TSS descriptor in GDT;
  IF TSS descriptor specifies that the TSS is busy (low-order 5 bits set to 00001)
    THEN #GP(error_code(TSS selector,0,EXT)); FI;
    (* idt operand to error_code is 0 because selector is used *)
  IF TSS not present
    THEN #NP(error_code(TSS selector,0,EXT)); FI;
    (* idt operand to error_code is 0 because selector is used *)
SWITCH-TASKS (with nesting) to TSS;
IF interrupt caused by fault with error code
  THEN
    IF stack limit does not allow push of error code
      THEN #SS(EXT); FI;
    Push(error code);
  FI;
  IF EIP not within code segment limit
    THEN #GP(EXT); FI;
END;
TRAP-OR-INTERRUPT-GATE:
  Read new code-segment selector for trap or interrupt gate (IDT descriptor);
  IF new code-segment selector is NULL
    THEN #GP(EXT); FI; (* Error code contains NULL selector *)
  IF new code-segment selector is not within its descriptor table limits
    THEN #GP(error_code(new code-segment selector,0,EXT)); FI;
    (* idt operand to error_code is 0 because selector is used *)
  Read descriptor referenced by new code-segment selector;
  IF descriptor does not indicate a code segment or new code-segment DPL > CPL
    THEN #GP(error_code(new code-segment selector,0,EXT)); FI;
    (* idt operand to error_code is 0 because selector is used *)
  IF new code-segment descriptor is not present,
    THEN #NP(error_code(new code-segment selector,0,EXT)); FI;
    (* idt operand to error_code is 0 because selector is used *)
  IF new code segment is non-conforming with DPL < CPL
    THEN
      IF VM = 0
        THEN
          GOTO INTER-PRIVILEGE-LEVEL-INTERRUPT;
          (* PE = 1, VM = 0, interrupt or trap gate, nonconforming code segment,
          DPL < CPL *)
        ELSE (* VM = 1 *)
          IF new code-segment DPL ≠ 0
            THEN #GP(error_code(new code-segment selector,0,EXT));
            (* idt operand to error_code is 0 because selector is used *)
          GOTO INTERRUPT-FROM-VIRTUAL-8086-MODE; FI;
          (* PE = 1, interrupt or trap gate, DPL < CPL, VM = 1 *)
        FI;
      ELSE (* PE = 1, interrupt or trap gate, DPL ≥ CPL *)
        IF VM = 1

```

```

    THEN #GP(error_code(new code-segment selector,0,EXT));
    (* idt operand to error_code is 0 because selector is used *)
IF new code segment is conforming or new code-segment DPL = CPL
    THEN
        GOTO INTRA-PRIVILEGE-LEVEL-INTERRUPT;
    ELSE (* PE = 1, interrupt or trap gate, nonconforming code segment, DPL > CPL *)
        #GP(error_code(new code-segment selector,0,EXT));
        (* idt operand to error_code is 0 because selector is used *)
FI;
FI;
END;
INTER-PRIVILEGE-LEVEL-INTERRUPT:
(* PE = 1, interrupt or trap gate, non-conforming code segment, DPL < CPL *)
IF (IA32_EFER.LMA = 0) (* Not IA-32e mode *)
    THEN
        (* Identify stack-segment selector for new privilege level in current TSS *)
        IF current TSS is 32-bit
            THEN
                TSSstackAddress ← (new code-segment DPL << 3) + 4;
                IF (TSSstackAddress + 5) > current TSS limit
                    THEN #TS(error_code(current TSS selector,0,EXT)); FI;
                    (* idt operand to error_code is 0 because selector is used *)
                NewSS ← 2 bytes loaded from (TSS base + TSSstackAddress + 4);
                NewESP ← 4 bytes loaded from (TSS base + TSSstackAddress);
            ELSE (* current TSS is 16-bit *)
                TSSstackAddress ← (new code-segment DPL << 2) + 2
                IF (TSSstackAddress + 3) > current TSS limit
                    THEN #TS(error_code(current TSS selector,0,EXT)); FI;
                    (* idt operand to error_code is 0 because selector is used *)
                NewSS ← 2 bytes loaded from (TSS base + TSSstackAddress + 2);
                NewESP ← 2 bytes loaded from (TSS base + TSSstackAddress);
            FI;
        IF NewSS is NULL
            THEN #TS(EXT); FI;
        IF NewSS index is not within its descriptor-table limits
        or NewSS RPL ≠ new code-segment DPL
            THEN #TS(error_code(NewSS,0,EXT)); FI;
            (* idt operand to error_code is 0 because selector is used *)
        Read new stack-segment descriptor for NewSS in GDT or LDT;
        IF new stack-segment DPL ≠ new code-segment DPL
        or new stack-segment Type does not indicate writable data segment
            THEN #TS(error_code(NewSS,0,EXT)); FI;
            (* idt operand to error_code is 0 because selector is used *)
        IF NewSS is not present
            THEN #SS(error_code(NewSS,0,EXT)); FI;
            (* idt operand to error_code is 0 because selector is used *)
    ELSE (* IA-32e mode *)
        IF IDT-gate IST = 0
            THEN TSSstackAddress ← (new code-segment DPL << 3) + 4;
            ELSE TSSstackAddress ← (IDT gate IST << 3) + 28;
        FI;
        IF (TSSstackAddress + 7) > current TSS limit
            THEN #TS(error_code(current TSS selector,0,EXT)); FI;
            (* idt operand to error_code is 0 because selector is used *)

```

```

NewRSP ← 8 bytes loaded from (current TSS base + TSSstackAddress);
NewSS ← new code-segment DPL; (* NULL selector with RPL = new CPL *)
FI;
IF IDT gate is 32-bit
  THEN
    IF new stack does not have room for 24 bytes (error code pushed)
      or 20 bytes (no error code pushed)
      THEN #SS(error_code(NewSS,0,EXT)); FI;
      (* idt operand to error_code is 0 because selector is used *)
    FI
  ELSE
    IF IDT gate is 16-bit
      THEN
        IF new stack does not have room for 12 bytes (error code pushed)
          or 10 bytes (no error code pushed);
          THEN #SS(error_code(NewSS,0,EXT)); FI;
          (* idt operand to error_code is 0 because selector is used *)
        ELSE (* 64-bit IDT gate*)
          IF StackAddress is non-canonical
            THEN #SS(EXT); FI; (* Error code contains NULL selector *)
        FI;
    FI;
  IF (IA32_EFER.LMA = 0) (* Not IA-32e mode *)
    THEN
      IF instruction pointer from IDT gate is not within new code-segment limits
        THEN #GP(EXT); FI; (* Error code contains NULL selector *)
      ESP ← NewESP;
      SS ← NewSS; (* Segment descriptor information also loaded *)
    ELSE (* IA-32e mode *)
      IF instruction pointer from IDT gate contains a non-canonical address
        THEN #GP(EXT); FI; (* Error code contains NULL selector *)
      RSP ← NewRSP & FFFFFFFF0H;
      SS ← NewSS;
    FI;
  IF IDT gate is 32-bit
    THEN
      CS:EIP ← Gate(CS:EIP); (* Segment descriptor information also loaded *)
    ELSE
      IF IDT gate 16-bit
        THEN
          CS:IP ← Gate(CS:IP);
          (* Segment descriptor information also loaded *)
        ELSE (* 64-bit IDT gate *)
          CS:RIP ← Gate(CS:RIP);
          (* Segment descriptor information also loaded *)
        FI;
      FI;
    FI;
  IF IDT gate is 32-bit
    THEN
      Push(far pointer to old stack);
      (* Old SS and ESP, 3 words padded to 4 *)
      Push(EFLAGS);
      Push(far pointer to return instruction);
      (* Old CS and EIP, 3 words padded to 4 *)

```



```

        Push(ErrorCode); (* If needed, 4 bytes *)
    ELSE
        IF IDT gate 16-bit
            THEN
                Push(far pointer to old stack);
                (* Old SS and SP, 2 words *)
                Push(EFLAGS(15:0));
                Push(far pointer to return instruction);
                (* Old CS and IP, 2 words *)
                Push(ErrorCode); (* If needed, 2 bytes *)
            ELSE (* 64-bit IDT gate *)
                Push(far pointer to old stack);
                (* Old SS and SP, each an 8-byte push *)
                Push(RFLAGS); (* 8-byte push *)
                Push(far pointer to return instruction);
                (* Old CS and RIP, each an 8-byte push *)
                Push(ErrorCode); (* If needed, 8-bytes *)

        FI;
    FI;
    CPL ← new code-segment DPL;
    CS(RPL) ← CPL;
    IF IDT gate is interrupt gate
        THEN IF ← 0 (* Interrupt flag set to 0, interrupts disabled *); FI;
    TF ← 0;
    VM ← 0;
    RF ← 0;
    NT ← 0;
END;
INTERRUPT-FROM-VIRTUAL-8086-MODE:
(* Identify stack-segment selector for privilege level 0 in current TSS *)
IF current TSS is 32-bit
    THEN
        IF TSS limit < 9
            THEN #TS(error_code(current TSS selector,0,EXT)); FI;
            (* idt operand to error_code is 0 because selector is used *)
            NewSS ← 2 bytes loaded from (current TSS base + 8);
            NewESP ← 4 bytes loaded from (current TSS base + 4);
        ELSE (* current TSS is 16-bit *)
            IF TSS limit < 5
                THEN #TS(error_code(current TSS selector,0,EXT)); FI;
                (* idt operand to error_code is 0 because selector is used *)
                NewSS ← 2 bytes loaded from (current TSS base + 4);
                NewESP ← 2 bytes loaded from (current TSS base + 2);

    FI;
    IF NewSS is NULL
        THEN #TS(EXT); FI; (* Error code contains NULL selector *)
    IF NewSS index is not within its descriptor table limits
    or NewSS RPL ≠ 0
        THEN #TS(error_code(NewSS,0,EXT)); FI;
        (* idt operand to error_code is 0 because selector is used *)
    Read new stack-segment descriptor for NewSS in GDT or LDT;
    IF new stack-segment DPL ≠ 0 or stack segment does not indicate writable data segment
        THEN #TS(error_code(NewSS,0,EXT)); FI;
        (* idt operand to error_code is 0 because selector is used *)

```

```

IF new stack segment not present
    THEN #SS(error_code(NewSS,0,EXT)); FI;
    (* idt operand to error_code is 0 because selector is used *)
IF IDT gate is 32-bit
    THEN
        IF new stack does not have room for 40 bytes (error code pushed)
        or 36 bytes (no error code pushed)
            THEN #SS(error_code(NewSS,0,EXT)); FI;
            (* idt operand to error_code is 0 because selector is used *)
        ELSE (* IDT gate is 16-bit)
            IF new stack does not have room for 20 bytes (error code pushed)
            or 18 bytes (no error code pushed)
                THEN #SS(error_code(NewSS,0,EXT)); FI;
                (* idt operand to error_code is 0 because selector is used *)
        FI;
IF instruction pointer from IDT gate is not within new code-segment limits
    THEN #GP(EXT); FI; (* Error code contains NULL selector *)
tempEFLAGS ← EFLAGS;
VM ← 0;
TF ← 0;
RF ← 0;
NT ← 0;
IF service through interrupt gate
    THEN IF = 0; FI;
TempSS ← SS;
TempESP ← ESP;
SS ← NewSS;
ESP ← NewESP;
(* Following pushes are 16 bits for 16-bit IDT gates and 32 bits for 32-bit IDT gates;
Segment selector pushes in 32-bit mode are padded to two words *)
Push(GS);
Push(FS);
Push(DS);
Push(ES);
Push(TempSS);
Push(TempESP);
Push(TempEFlags);
Push(CS);
Push(EIP);
GS ← 0; (* Segment registers made NULL, invalid for use in protected mode *)
FS ← 0;
DS ← 0;
ES ← 0;
CS ← Gate(CS); (* Segment descriptor information also loaded *)
CS(RPL) ← 0;
CPL ← 0;
IF IDT gate is 32-bit
    THEN
        EIP ← Gate(instruction pointer);
    ELSE (* IDT gate is 16-bit *)
        EIP ← Gate(instruction pointer) AND 0000FFFFH;
    FI;
(* Start execution of new routine in Protected Mode *)
END;

```

INTRA-PRIVILEGE-LEVEL-INTERRUPT:

(* PE = 1, DPL = CPL or conforming segment *)

IF IA32_EFER.LMA = 1 (* IA-32e mode *)

IF IDT-descriptor IST \neq 0

THEN

TSSstackAddress \leftarrow (IDT-descriptor IST \ll 3) + 28;

IF (TSSstackAddress + 7) > TSS limit

THEN #TS(error_code(current TSS selector,0,EXT)); FI;

(* idt operand to error_code is 0 because selector is used *)

NewRSP \leftarrow 8 bytes loaded from (current TSS base + TSSstackAddress);

ELSE NewRSP \leftarrow RSP;

FI;

FI;

IF 32-bit gate (* implies IA32_EFER.LMA = 0 *)

THEN

IF current stack does not have room for 16 bytes (error code pushed)

or 12 bytes (no error code pushed)

THEN #SS(EXT); FI; (* Error code contains NULL selector *)

ELSE IF 16-bit gate (* implies IA32_EFER.LMA = 0 *)

IF current stack does not have room for 8 bytes (error code pushed)

or 6 bytes (no error code pushed)

THEN #SS(EXT); FI; (* Error code contains NULL selector *)

ELSE (* IA32_EFER.LMA = 1, 64-bit gate*)

IF NewRSP contains a non-canonical address

THEN #SS(EXT); (* Error code contains NULL selector *)

FI;

FI;

IF (IA32_EFER.LMA = 0) (* Not IA-32e mode *)

THEN

IF instruction pointer from IDT gate is not within new code-segment limit

THEN #GP(EXT); FI; (* Error code contains NULL selector *)

ELSE

IF instruction pointer from IDT gate contains a non-canonical address

THEN #GP(EXT); FI; (* Error code contains NULL selector *)

RSP \leftarrow NewRSP & FFFFFFFF00000000H;

FI;

IF IDT gate is 32-bit (* implies IA32_EFER.LMA = 0 *)

THEN

Push (EFLAGS);

Push (far pointer to return instruction); (* 3 words padded to 4 *)

CS:EIP \leftarrow Gate(CS:EIP); (* Segment descriptor information also loaded *)

Push (ErrorCode); (* If any *)

ELSE

IF IDT gate is 16-bit (* implies IA32_EFER.LMA = 0 *)

THEN

Push (FLAGS);

Push (far pointer to return location); (* 2 words *)

CS:IP \leftarrow Gate(CS:IP);

(* Segment descriptor information also loaded *)

Push (ErrorCode); (* If any *)

ELSE (* IA32_EFER.LMA = 1, 64-bit gate*)

Push(far pointer to old stack);

(* Old SS and SP, each an 8-byte push *)

Push(RFLAGS); (* 8-byte push *)

```

    Push(far pointer to return instruction);
    (* Old CS and RIP, each an 8-byte push *)
    Push(ErrorCode); (* If needed, 8 bytes *)
    CS:RIP ← GATE(CS:RIP);
    (* Segment descriptor information also loaded *)
FI;
FI;
CS(RPL) ← CPL;
IF IDT gate is interrupt gate
    THEN IF ← 0; FI; (* Interrupt flag set to 0; interrupts disabled *)
TF ← 0;
NT ← 0;
VM ← 0;
RF ← 0;
END;

```

Flags Affected

The EFLAGS register is pushed onto the stack. The IF, TF, NT, AC, RF, and VM flags may be cleared, depending on the mode of operation of the processor when the INT instruction is executed (see the "Operation" section). If the interrupt uses a task gate, any flags may be set or cleared, controlled by the EFLAGS image in the new task's TSS.

Protected Mode Exceptions

#GP(error_code)	<p>If the instruction pointer in the IDT or in the interrupt, trap, or task gate is beyond the code segment limits.</p> <p>If the segment selector in the interrupt, trap, or task gate is NULL.</p> <p>If an interrupt, trap, or task gate, code segment, or TSS segment selector index is outside its descriptor table limits.</p> <p>If the vector selects a descriptor outside the IDT limits.</p> <p>If an IDT descriptor is not an interrupt, trap, or task gate.</p> <p>If an interrupt is generated by the INT <i>n</i>, INT3, or INTO instruction and the DPL of an interrupt, trap, or task gate is less than the CPL.</p> <p>If the segment selector in an interrupt or trap gate does not point to a segment descriptor for a code segment.</p> <p>If the segment selector for a TSS has its local/global bit set for local.</p> <p>If a TSS segment descriptor specifies that the TSS is busy or not available.</p>
#SS(error_code)	<p>If pushing the return address, flags, or error code onto the stack exceeds the bounds of the stack segment and no stack switch occurs.</p> <p>If the SS register is being loaded and the segment pointed to is marked not present.</p> <p>If pushing the return address, flags, error code, or stack segment pointer exceeds the bounds of the new stack segment when a stack switch occurs.</p>
#NP(error_code)	If code segment, interrupt gate, trap gate, task gate, or TSS is not present.
#TS(error_code)	<p>If the RPL of the stack segment selector in the TSS is not equal to the DPL of the code segment being accessed by the interrupt or trap gate.</p> <p>If DPL of the stack segment descriptor pointed to by the stack segment selector in the TSS is not equal to the DPL of the code segment descriptor for the interrupt or trap gate.</p> <p>If the stack segment selector in the TSS is NULL.</p> <p>If the stack segment for the TSS is not a writable data segment.</p> <p>If segment-selector index for stack segment is outside descriptor table limits.</p>
#PF(fault-code)	If a page fault occurs.
#UD	If the LOCK prefix is used.
#AC(EXT)	If alignment checking is enabled, the gate DPL is 3, and a stack push is unaligned.

Real-Address Mode Exceptions

#GP	If a memory operand effective address is outside the CS, DS, ES, FS, or GS segment limit. If the interrupt vector number is outside the IDT limits.
#SS	If stack limit violation on push. If pushing the return address, flags, or error code onto the stack exceeds the bounds of the stack segment.
#UD	If the LOCK prefix is used.

Virtual-8086 Mode Exceptions

#GP(error_code)	(For INT <i>n</i> , INTO, or BOUND instruction) If the IOPL is less than 3 or the DPL of the interrupt, trap, or task gate is not equal to 3. If the instruction pointer in the IDT or in the interrupt, trap, or task gate is beyond the code segment limits. If the segment selector in the interrupt, trap, or task gate is NULL. If a interrupt gate, trap gate, task gate, code segment, or TSS segment selector index is outside its descriptor table limits. If the vector selects a descriptor outside the IDT limits. If an IDT descriptor is not an interrupt, trap, or task gate. If an interrupt is generated by INT <i>n</i> , INT3, or INTO and the DPL of an interrupt, trap, or task gate is less than the CPL. If the segment selector in an interrupt or trap gate does not point to a segment descriptor for a code segment. If the segment selector for a TSS has its local/global bit set for local.
#SS(error_code)	If the SS register is being loaded and the segment pointed to is marked not present. If pushing the return address, flags, error code, stack segment pointer, or data segments exceeds the bounds of the stack segment.
#NP(error_code)	If code segment, interrupt gate, trap gate, task gate, or TSS is not present.
#TS(error_code)	If the RPL of the stack segment selector in the TSS is not equal to the DPL of the code segment being accessed by the interrupt or trap gate. If DPL of the stack segment descriptor for the TSS's stack segment is not equal to the DPL of the code segment descriptor for the interrupt or trap gate. If the stack segment selector in the TSS is NULL. If the stack segment for the TSS is not a writable data segment. If segment-selector index for stack segment is outside descriptor table limits.
#PF(fault-code)	If a page fault occurs.
#OF	If the INTO instruction is executed and the OF flag is set.
#UD	If the LOCK prefix is used.
#AC(EXT)	If alignment checking is enabled, the gate DPL is 3, and a stack push is unaligned.

Compatibility Mode Exceptions

Same exceptions as in protected mode.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#GP(error_code)	<p>If the instruction pointer in the 64-bit interrupt gate or trap gate is non-canonical.</p> <p>If the segment selector in the 64-bit interrupt or trap gate is NULL.</p> <p>If the vector selects a descriptor outside the IDT limits.</p> <p>If the vector points to a gate which is in non-canonical space.</p> <p>If the vector points to a descriptor which is not a 64-bit interrupt gate or a 64-bit trap gate.</p> <p>If the descriptor pointed to by the gate selector is outside the descriptor table limit.</p> <p>If the descriptor pointed to by the gate selector is in non-canonical space.</p> <p>If the descriptor pointed to by the gate selector is not a code segment.</p> <p>If the descriptor pointed to by the gate selector doesn't have the L-bit set, or has both the L-bit and D-bit set.</p> <p>If the descriptor pointed to by the gate selector has DPL > CPL.</p>
#SS(error_code)	<p>If a push of the old EFLAGS, CS selector, EIP, or error code is in non-canonical space with no stack switch.</p> <p>If a push of the old SS selector, ESP, EFLAGS, CS selector, EIP, or error code is in non-canonical space on a stack switch (either CPL change or no-CPL with IST).</p>
#NP(error_code)	If the 64-bit interrupt-gate, 64-bit trap-gate, or code segment is not present.
#TS(error_code)	<p>If an attempt to load RSP from the TSS causes an access to non-canonical space.</p> <p>If the RSP from the TSS is outside descriptor table limits.</p>
#PF(fault-code)	If a page fault occurs.
#UD	If the LOCK prefix is used.
#AC(EXT)	If alignment checking is enabled, the gate DPL is 3, and a stack push is unaligned.

INVD—Invalidate Internal Caches

Opcode	Instruction	Op/En	64-Bit Mode	Compat/Leg Mode	Description
0F 08	INVD	Z0	Valid	Valid	Flush internal caches; initiate flushing of external caches.

NOTES:

* See the IA-32 Architecture Compatibility section below.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
Z0	NA	NA	NA	NA

Description

Invalidates (flushes) the processor's internal caches and issues a special-function bus cycle that directs external caches to also flush themselves. Data held in internal caches is not written back to main memory.

After executing this instruction, the processor does not wait for the external caches to complete their flushing operation before proceeding with instruction execution. It is the responsibility of hardware to respond to the cache flush signal.

The INVD instruction is a privileged instruction. When the processor is running in protected mode, the CPL of a program or procedure must be 0 to execute this instruction.

The INVD instruction may be used when the cache is used as temporary memory and the cache contents need to be invalidated rather than written back to memory. When the cache is used as temporary memory, no external device should be actively writing data to main memory.

Use this instruction with care. Data cached internally and not written back to main memory will be lost. Note that any data from an external device to main memory (for example, via a PCIWrite) can be temporarily stored in the caches; these data can be lost when an INVD instruction is executed. Unless there is a specific requirement or benefit to flushing caches without writing back modified cache lines (for example, temporary memory, testing, or fault recovery where cache coherency with main memory is not a concern), software should instead use the WBINVD instruction.

This instruction's operation is the same in non-64-bit modes and 64-bit mode.

IA-32 Architecture Compatibility

The INVD instruction is implementation dependent; it may be implemented differently on different families of Intel 64 or IA-32 processors. This instruction is not supported on IA-32 processors earlier than the Intel486 processor.

Operation

Flush(InternalCaches);
SignalFlush(ExternalCaches);
Continue (* Continue execution *)

Flags Affected

None

Protected Mode Exceptions

#GP(0) If the current privilege level is not 0.
#MM If the processor reserved memory protections are activated.
#UD If the LOCK prefix is used.

Real-Address Mode Exceptions

#UD If the LOCK prefix is used.

Virtual-8086 Mode Exceptions

#GP(0) The INVD instruction cannot be executed in virtual-8086 mode.

Compatibility Mode Exceptions

Same exceptions as in protected mode.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

Same exceptions as in protected mode.

IRET/IRETD—Interrupt Return

Opcode	Instruction	Op/En	64-Bit Mode	Compat/Leg Mode	Description
CF	IRET	Z0	Valid	Valid	Interrupt return (16-bit operand size).
CF	IRETD	Z0	Valid	Valid	Interrupt return (32-bit operand size).
REX.W + CF	IRETQ	Z0	Valid	N.E.	Interrupt return (64-bit operand size).

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
Z0	NA	NA	NA	NA

Description

Returns program control from an exception or interrupt handler to a program or procedure that was interrupted by an exception, an external interrupt, or a software-generated interrupt. These instructions are also used to perform a return from a nested task. (A nested task is created when a CALL instruction is used to initiate a task switch or when an interrupt or exception causes a task switch to an interrupt or exception handler.) See the section titled “Task Linking” in Chapter 7 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

IRET and IRETD are mnemonics for the same opcode. The IRETD mnemonic (interrupt return double) is intended for use when returning from an interrupt when using the 32-bit operand size; however, most assemblers use the IRET mnemonic interchangeably for both operand sizes.

In Real-Address Mode, the IRET instruction preforms a far return to the interrupted program or procedure. During this operation, the processor pops the return instruction pointer, return code segment selector, and EFLAGS image from the stack to the EIP, CS, and EFLAGS registers, respectively, and then resumes execution of the interrupted program or procedure.

In Protected Mode, the action of the IRET instruction depends on the settings of the NT (nested task) and VM flags in the EFLAGS register and the VM flag in the EFLAGS image stored on the current stack. Depending on the setting of these flags, the processor performs the following types of interrupt returns:

- Return from virtual-8086 mode.
- Return to virtual-8086 mode.
- Intra-privilege level return.
- Inter-privilege level return.
- Return from nested task (task switch).

If the NT flag (EFLAGS register) is cleared, the IRET instruction performs a far return from the interrupt procedure, without a task switch. The code segment being returned to must be equally or less privileged than the interrupt handler routine (as indicated by the RPL field of the code segment selector popped from the stack).

As with a real-address mode interrupt return, the IRET instruction pops the return instruction pointer, return code segment selector, and EFLAGS image from the stack to the EIP, CS, and EFLAGS registers, respectively, and then resumes execution of the interrupted program or procedure. If the return is to another privilege level, the IRET instruction also pops the stack pointer and SS from the stack, before resuming program execution. If the return is to virtual-8086 mode, the processor also pops the data segment registers from the stack.

If the NT flag is set, the IRET instruction performs a task switch (return) from a nested task (a task called with a CALL instruction, an interrupt, or an exception) back to the calling or interrupted task. The updated state of the task executing the IRET instruction is saved in its TSS. If the task is re-entered later, the code that follows the IRET instruction is executed.

If the NT flag is set and the processor is in IA-32e mode, the IRET instruction causes a general protection exception.

If nonmaskable interrupts (NMIs) are blocked (see Section 6.7.1, “Handling Multiple NMIs” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*), execution of the IRET instruction unblocks NMIs.

This unblocking occurs even if the instruction causes a fault. In such a case, NMIs are unmasked before the exception handler is invoked.

In 64-bit mode, the instruction's default operation size is 32 bits. Use of the REX.W prefix promotes operation to 64 bits (IRETQ). See the summary chart at the beginning of this section for encoding data and limits.

Instruction ordering. IRET is a serializing instruction. See Section 8.3 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3A*.

See "Changes to Instruction Behavior in VMX Non-Root Operation" in Chapter 25 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3C*, for more information about the behavior of this instruction in VMX non-root operation.

Operation

```

IF PE = 0
    THEN GOTO REAL-ADDRESS-MODE;
ELSIF (IA32_EFER.LMA = 0)
    THEN
        IF (EFLAGS.VM = 1)
            THEN GOTO RETURN-FROM-VIRTUAL-8086-MODE;
            ELSE GOTO PROTECTED-MODE;
        FI;
    ELSE GOTO IA-32e-MODE;
FI;

REAL-ADDRESS-MODE;
IF OperandSize = 32
    THEN
        EIP ← Pop();
        CS ← Pop(); (* 32-bit pop, high-order 16 bits discarded *)
        tempEFLAGS ← Pop();
        EFLAGS ← (tempEFLAGS AND 257FD5H) OR (EFLAGS AND 1A0000H);
    ELSE (* OperandSize = 16 *)
        EIP ← Pop(); (* 16-bit pop; clear upper 16 bits *)
        CS ← Pop(); (* 16-bit pop *)
        EFLAGS[15:0] ← Pop();
    FI;
END;

RETURN-FROM-VIRTUAL-8086-MODE;
(* Processor is in virtual-8086 mode when IRET is executed and stays in virtual-8086 mode *)
IF IOPL = 3 (* Virtual mode: PE = 1, VM = 1, IOPL = 3 *)
    THEN IF OperandSize = 32
        THEN
            EIP ← Pop();
            CS ← Pop(); (* 32-bit pop, high-order 16 bits discarded *)
            EFLAGS ← Pop();
            (* VM, IOPL, VIP and VIF EFLAG bits not modified by pop *)
            IF EIP not within CS limit
                THEN #GP(0); FI;
        ELSE (* OperandSize = 16 *)
            EIP ← Pop(); (* 16-bit pop; clear upper 16 bits *)
            CS ← Pop(); (* 16-bit pop *)
            EFLAGS[15:0] ← Pop(); (* IOPL in EFLAGS not modified by pop *)
            IF EIP not within CS limit
                THEN #GP(0); FI;
    FI;

```

INSTRUCTION SET REFERENCE, A-L

```
        FI;
    ELSE
        #GP(0); (* Trap to virtual-8086 monitor: PE = 1, VM = 1, IOPL < 3 *)
    FI;
END;

PROTECTED-MODE:
    IF NT = 1
        THEN GOTO TASK-RETURN; (* PE = 1, VM = 0, NT = 1 *)
    FI;
    IF OperandSize = 32
        THEN
            EIP ← Pop();
            CS ← Pop(); (* 32-bit pop, high-order 16 bits discarded *)
            tempEFLAGS ← Pop();
        ELSE (* OperandSize = 16 *)
            EIP ← Pop(); (* 16-bit pop; clear upper bits *)
            CS ← Pop(); (* 16-bit pop *)
            tempEFLAGS ← Pop(); (* 16-bit pop; clear upper bits *)
        FI;
    IF tempEFLAGS(VM) = 1 and CPL = 0
        THEN GOTO RETURN-TO-VIRTUAL-8086-MODE;
    ELSE GOTO PROTECTED-MODE-RETURN;
    FI;

TASK-RETURN: (* PE = 1, VM = 0, NT = 1 *)
    SWITCH-TASKS (without nesting) to TSS specified in link field of current TSS;
    Mark the task just abandoned as NOT BUSY;
    IF EIP is not within CS limit
        THEN #GP(0); FI;
END;

RETURN-TO-VIRTUAL-8086-MODE:
    (* Interrupted procedure was in virtual-8086 mode: PE = 1, CPL=0, VM = 1 in flag image *)
    IF EIP not within CS limit
        THEN #GP(0); FI;
    EFLAGS ← tempEFLAGS;
    ESP ← Pop();
    SS ← Pop(); (* Pop 2 words; throw away high-order word *)
    ES ← Pop(); (* Pop 2 words; throw away high-order word *)
    DS ← Pop(); (* Pop 2 words; throw away high-order word *)
    FS ← Pop(); (* Pop 2 words; throw away high-order word *)
    GS ← Pop(); (* Pop 2 words; throw away high-order word *)
    CPL ← 3;
    (* Resume execution in Virtual-8086 mode *)
END;

PROTECTED-MODE-RETURN: (* PE = 1 *)
    IF CS(RPL) > CPL
        THEN GOTO RETURN-TO-OUTER-PRIVILEGE-LEVEL;
    ELSE GOTO RETURN-TO-SAME-PRIVILEGE-LEVEL; FI;
END;

RETURN-TO-OUTER-PRIVILEGE-LEVEL:
```

```

IF OperandSize = 32
  THEN
    ESP ← Pop();
    SS ← Pop(); (* 32-bit pop, high-order 16 bits discarded *)
ELSE IF OperandSize = 16
  THEN
    ESP ← Pop(); (* 16-bit pop; clear upper bits *)
    SS ← Pop(); (* 16-bit pop *)
ELSE (* OperandSize = 64 *)
  RSP ← Pop();
  SS ← Pop(); (* 64-bit pop, high-order 48 bits discarded *)
FI;
IF new mode ≠ 64-Bit Mode
  THEN
    IF EIP is not within CS limit
      THEN #GP(0); FI;
    ELSE (* new mode = 64-bit mode *)
      IF RIP is non-canonical
        THEN #GP(0); FI;
FI;
EFLAGS (CF, PF, AF, ZF, SF, TF, DF, OF, NT) ← tempEFLAGS;
IF OperandSize = 32 or OperandSize = 64
  THEN EFLAGS(RF, AC, ID) ← tempEFLAGS; FI;
IF CPL ≤ IOPL
  THEN EFLAGS(IF) ← tempEFLAGS; FI;
IF CPL = 0
  THEN
    EFLAGS(IOPL) ← tempEFLAGS;
    IF OperandSize = 32 or OperandSize = 64
      THEN EFLAGS(VIF, VIP) ← tempEFLAGS; FI;
FI;
CPL ← CS(RPL);
FOR each SegReg in (ES, FS, GS, and DS)
  DO
    tempDesc ← descriptor cache for SegReg (* hidden part of segment register *)
    IF (SegmentSelector == NULL) OR (tempDesc(DPL) < CPL AND tempDesc(Type) is (data or non-conforming code)))
      THEN (* Segment register invalid *)
        SegmentSelector ← 0; (*Segment selector becomes null*)
  FI;
OD;
END;

RETURN-TO-SAME-PRIVILEGE-LEVEL: (* PE = 1, RPL = CPL *)
IF new mode ≠ 64-Bit Mode
  THEN
    IF EIP is not within CS limit
      THEN #GP(0); FI;
    ELSE (* new mode = 64-bit mode *)
      IF RIP is non-canonical
        THEN #GP(0); FI;
FI;
EFLAGS (CF, PF, AF, ZF, SF, TF, DF, OF, NT) ← tempEFLAGS;
IF OperandSize = 32 or OperandSize = 64
  THEN EFLAGS(RF, AC, ID) ← tempEFLAGS; FI;

```

```

IF CPL ≤ IOPL
    THEN EFLAGS(IF) ← tempEFLAGS; FI;
IF CPL = 0
    THEN
        EFLAGS(IOPL) ← tempEFLAGS;
        IF OperandSize = 32 or OperandSize = 64
            THEN EFLAGS(VIF, VIP) ← tempEFLAGS; FI;
FI;
END;

IA-32e-MODE:
IF NT = 1
    THEN #GP(0);
ELSE IF OperandSize = 32
    THEN
        EIP ← Pop();
        CS ← Pop();
        tempEFLAGS ← Pop();
    ELSE IF OperandSize = 16
        THEN
            EIP ← Pop(); (* 16-bit pop; clear upper bits *)
            CS ← Pop(); (* 16-bit pop *)
            tempEFLAGS ← Pop(); (* 16-bit pop; clear upper bits *)
        FI;
    ELSE (* OperandSize = 64 *)
        THEN
            RIP ← Pop();
            CS ← Pop(); (* 64-bit pop, high-order 48 bits discarded *)
            tempRFLAGS ← Pop();
        FI;
IF CS.RPL > CPL
    THEN GOTO RETURN-TO-OUTER-PRIVILEGE-LEVEL;
ELSE
    IF instruction began in 64-Bit Mode
        THEN
            IF OperandSize = 32
                THEN
                    ESP ← Pop();
                    SS ← Pop(); (* 32-bit pop, high-order 16 bits discarded *)
                ELSE IF OperandSize = 16
                    THEN
                        ESP ← Pop(); (* 16-bit pop; clear upper bits *)
                        SS ← Pop(); (* 16-bit pop *)
                    ELSE (* OperandSize = 64 *)
                        RSP ← Pop();
                        SS ← Pop(); (* 64-bit pop, high-order 48 bits discarded *)
                    FI;
                FI;
            GOTO RETURN-TO-SAME-PRIVILEGE-LEVEL; FI;
END;

```

Flags Affected

All the flags and fields in the EFLAGS register are potentially modified, depending on the mode of operation of the processor. If performing a return from a nested task to a previous task, the EFLAGS register will be modified according to the EFLAGS image stored in the previous task's TSS.

Protected Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	If the return code or stack segment selector is NULL. If the return instruction pointer is not within the return code segment limit.
#GP(selector)	If a segment selector index is outside its descriptor table limits. If the return code segment selector RPL is less than the CPL. If the DPL of a conforming-code segment is greater than the return code segment selector RPL. If the DPL for a nonconforming-code segment is not equal to the RPL of the code segment selector. If the stack segment descriptor DPL is not equal to the RPL of the return code segment selector. If the stack segment is not a writable data segment. If the stack segment selector RPL is not equal to the RPL of the return code segment selector. If the segment descriptor for a code segment does not indicate it is a code segment. If the segment selector for a TSS has its local/global bit set for local. If a TSS segment descriptor specifies that the TSS is not busy. If a TSS segment descriptor specifies that the TSS is not available.
#SS(0)	If the top bytes of stack are not within stack limits. If the return stack segment is not present.
#NP (selector)	If the return code segment is not present.
#PF(fault-code)	If a page fault occurs.
#AC(0)	If an unaligned memory reference occurs when the CPL is 3 and alignment checking is enabled.
#UD	If the LOCK prefix is used.

Real-Address Mode Exceptions

#GP	If the return instruction pointer is not within the return code segment limit.
#SS	If the top bytes of stack are not within stack limits.

Virtual-8086 Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	If the return instruction pointer is not within the return code segment limit. If IOPL not equal to 3.
#PF(fault-code)	If a page fault occurs.
#SS(0)	If the top bytes of stack are not within stack limits.
#AC(0)	If an unaligned memory reference occurs and alignment checking is enabled.
#UD	If the LOCK prefix is used.

Compatibility Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	If EFLAGS.NT[bit 14] = 1.
--------	---------------------------

Other exceptions same as in Protected Mode.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	<p>If EFLAGS.NT[bit 14] = 1.</p> <p>If the return code segment selector is NULL.</p> <p>If the stack segment selector is NULL going back to compatibility mode.</p> <p>If the stack segment selector is NULL going back to CPL3 64-bit mode.</p> <p>If a NULL stack segment selector RPL is not equal to CPL going back to non-CPL3 64-bit mode.</p> <p>If the return instruction pointer is not within the return code segment limit.</p> <p>If the return instruction pointer is non-canonical.</p>
#GP(Selector)	<p>If a segment selector index is outside its descriptor table limits.</p> <p>If a segment descriptor memory address is non-canonical.</p> <p>If the segment descriptor for a code segment does not indicate it is a code segment.</p> <p>If the proposed new code segment descriptor has both the D-bit and L-bit set.</p> <p>If the DPL for a nonconforming-code segment is not equal to the RPL of the code segment selector.</p> <p>If CPL is greater than the RPL of the code segment selector.</p> <p>If the DPL of a conforming-code segment is greater than the return code segment selector RPL.</p> <p>If the stack segment is not a writable data segment.</p> <p>If the stack segment descriptor DPL is not equal to the RPL of the return code segment selector.</p> <p>If the stack segment selector RPL is not equal to the RPL of the return code segment selector.</p>
#SS(0)	<p>If an attempt to pop a value off the stack violates the SS limit.</p> <p>If an attempt to pop a value off the stack causes a non-canonical address to be referenced.</p> <p>If the return stack segment is not present.</p>
#NP (selector)	If the return code segment is not present.
#PF(fault-code)	If a page fault occurs.
#AC(0)	If an unaligned memory reference occurs when the CPL is 3 and alignment checking is enabled.
#UD	If the LOCK prefix is used.

JMP—Jump

Opcode	Instruction	Op/En	64-Bit Mode	Compat/Leg Mode	Description
EB <i>cb</i>	JMP <i>rel8</i>	D	Valid	Valid	Jump short, RIP = RIP + 8-bit displacement sign extended to 64-bits
E9 <i>cw</i>	JMP <i>rel16</i>	D	N.S.	Valid	Jump near, relative, displacement relative to next instruction. Not supported in 64-bit mode.
E9 <i>cd</i>	JMP <i>rel32</i>	D	Valid	Valid	Jump near, relative, RIP = RIP + 32-bit displacement sign extended to 64-bits
FF <i>14</i>	JMP <i>r/m16</i>	M	N.S.	Valid	Jump near, absolute indirect, address = zero-extended <i>r/m16</i> . Not supported in 64-bit mode.
FF <i>14</i>	JMP <i>r/m32</i>	M	N.S.	Valid	Jump near, absolute indirect, address given in <i>r/m32</i> . Not supported in 64-bit mode.
FF <i>14</i>	JMP <i>r/m64</i>	M	Valid	N.E.	Jump near, absolute indirect, RIP = 64-Bit offset from register or memory
EA <i>cd</i>	JMP <i>ptr16:16</i>	D	Inv.	Valid	Jump far, absolute, address given in operand
EA <i>cp</i>	JMP <i>ptr16:32</i>	D	Inv.	Valid	Jump far, absolute, address given in operand
FF <i>15</i>	JMP <i>m16:16</i>	D	Valid	Valid	Jump far, absolute indirect, address given in <i>m16:16</i>
FF <i>15</i>	JMP <i>m16:32</i>	D	Valid	Valid	Jump far, absolute indirect, address given in <i>m16:32</i> .
REX.W + FF <i>15</i>	JMP <i>m16:64</i>	D	Valid	N.E.	Jump far, absolute indirect, address given in <i>m16:64</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
D	Offset	NA	NA	NA
M	ModRM:r/m (<i>r</i>)	NA	NA	NA

Description

Transfers program control to a different point in the instruction stream without recording return information. The destination (target) operand specifies the address of the instruction being jumped to. This operand can be an immediate value, a general-purpose register, or a memory location.

This instruction can be used to execute four different types of jumps:

- Near jump—A jump to an instruction within the current code segment (the segment currently pointed to by the CS register), sometimes referred to as an intrasegment jump.
- Short jump—A near jump where the jump range is limited to -128 to +127 from the current EIP value.
- Far jump—A jump to an instruction located in a different segment than the current code segment but at the same privilege level, sometimes referred to as an intersegment jump.
- Task switch—A jump to an instruction located in a different task.

A task switch can only be executed in protected mode (see Chapter 7, in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3A*, for information on performing task switches with the JMP instruction).

Near and Short Jumps. When executing a near jump, the processor jumps to the address (within the current code segment) that is specified with the target operand. The target operand specifies either an absolute offset (that is an offset from the base of the code segment) or a relative offset (a signed displacement relative to the current

value of the instruction pointer in the EIP register). A near jump to a relative offset of 8-bits (*rel8*) is referred to as a short jump. The CS register is not changed on near and short jumps.

An absolute offset is specified indirectly in a general-purpose register or a memory location (*r/m16* or *r/m32*). The operand-size attribute determines the size of the target operand (16 or 32 bits). Absolute offsets are loaded directly into the EIP register. If the operand-size attribute is 16, the upper two bytes of the EIP register are cleared, resulting in a maximum instruction pointer size of 16 bits.

A relative offset (*rel8*, *rel16*, or *rel32*) is generally specified as a label in assembly code, but at the machine code level, it is encoded as a signed 8-, 16-, or 32-bit immediate value. This value is added to the value in the EIP register. (Here, the EIP register contains the address of the instruction following the JMP instruction). When using relative offsets, the opcode (for short vs. near jumps) and the operand-size attribute (for near relative jumps) determines the size of the target operand (8, 16, or 32 bits).

Far Jumps in Real-Address or Virtual-8086 Mode. When executing a far jump in real-address or virtual-8086 mode, the processor jumps to the code segment and offset specified with the target operand. Here the target operand specifies an absolute far address either directly with a pointer (*ptr16:16* or *ptr16:32*) or indirectly with a memory location (*m16:16* or *m16:32*). With the pointer method, the segment and address of the called procedure is encoded in the instruction, using a 4-byte (16-bit operand size) or 6-byte (32-bit operand size) far address immediate. With the indirect method, the target operand specifies a memory location that contains a 4-byte (16-bit operand size) or 6-byte (32-bit operand size) far address. The far address is loaded directly into the CS and EIP registers. If the operand-size attribute is 16, the upper two bytes of the EIP register are cleared.

Far Jumps in Protected Mode. When the processor is operating in protected mode, the JMP instruction can be used to perform the following three types of far jumps:

- A far jump to a conforming or non-conforming code segment.
- A far jump through a call gate.
- A task switch.

(The JMP instruction cannot be used to perform inter-privilege-level far jumps.)

In protected mode, the processor always uses the segment selector part of the far address to access the corresponding descriptor in the GDT or LDT. The descriptor type (code segment, call gate, task gate, or TSS) and access rights determine the type of jump to be performed.

If the selected descriptor is for a code segment, a far jump to a code segment at the same privilege level is performed. (If the selected code segment is at a different privilege level and the code segment is non-conforming, a general-protection exception is generated.) A far jump to the same privilege level in protected mode is very similar to one carried out in real-address or virtual-8086 mode. The target operand specifies an absolute far address either directly with a pointer (*ptr16:16* or *ptr16:32*) or indirectly with a memory location (*m16:16* or *m16:32*). The operand-size attribute determines the size of the offset (16 or 32 bits) in the far address. The new code segment selector and its descriptor are loaded into CS register, and the offset from the instruction is loaded into the EIP register. Note that a call gate (described in the next paragraph) can also be used to perform far call to a code segment at the same privilege level. Using this mechanism provides an extra level of indirection and is the preferred method of making jumps between 16-bit and 32-bit code segments.

When executing a far jump through a call gate, the segment selector specified by the target operand identifies the call gate. (The offset part of the target operand is ignored.) The processor then jumps to the code segment specified in the call gate descriptor and begins executing the instruction at the offset specified in the call gate. No stack switch occurs. Here again, the target operand can specify the far address of the call gate either directly with a pointer (*ptr16:16* or *ptr16:32*) or indirectly with a memory location (*m16:16* or *m16:32*).

Executing a task switch with the JMP instruction is somewhat similar to executing a jump through a call gate. Here the target operand specifies the segment selector of the task gate for the task being switched to (and the offset part of the target operand is ignored). The task gate in turn points to the TSS for the task, which contains the segment selectors for the task's code and stack segments. The TSS also contains the EIP value for the next instruction that was to be executed before the task was suspended. This instruction pointer value is loaded into the EIP register so that the task begins executing again at this next instruction.

The JMP instruction can also specify the segment selector of the TSS directly, which eliminates the indirection of the task gate. See Chapter 7 in *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3A*, for detailed information on the mechanics of a task switch.

Note that when you execute at task switch with a JMP instruction, the nested task flag (NT) is not set in the EFLAGS register and the new TSS's previous task link field is not loaded with the old task's TSS selector. A return to the previous task can thus not be carried out by executing the IRET instruction. Switching tasks with the JMP instruction differs in this regard from the CALL instruction which does set the NT flag and save the previous task link information, allowing a return to the calling task with an IRET instruction.

In 64-Bit Mode. The instruction's operation size is fixed at 64 bits. If a selector points to a gate, then RIP equals the 64-bit displacement taken from gate; else RIP equals the zero-extended offset from the far pointer referenced in the instruction.

See the summary chart at the beginning of this section for encoding data and limits.

Instruction ordering. Instructions following a far jump may be fetched from memory before earlier instructions complete execution, but they will not execute (even speculatively) until all instructions prior to the far jump have completed execution (the later instructions may execute before data stored by the earlier instructions have become globally visible).

Operation

```

IF near jump
  IF 64-bit Mode
    THEN
      IF near relative jump
        THEN
          tempRIP ← RIP + DEST; (* RIP is instruction following JMP instruction*)
        ELSE (* Near absolute jump *)
          tempRIP ← DEST;
      FI;
    ELSE
      IF near relative jump
        THEN
          tempEIP ← EIP + DEST; (* EIP is instruction following JMP instruction*)
        ELSE (* Near absolute jump *)
          tempEIP ← DEST;
      FI;
    FI;
  IF (IA32_EFER.LMA = 0 or target mode = Compatibility mode)
  and tempEIP outside code segment limit
    THEN #GP(0); FI
  IF 64-bit mode and tempRIP is not canonical
    THEN #GP(0);
  FI;
  IF OperandSize = 32
    THEN
      EIP ← tempEIP;
    ELSE
      IF OperandSize = 16
        THEN (* OperandSize = 16 *)
          EIP ← tempEIP AND 0000FFFFH;
        ELSE (* OperandSize = 64 *)
          RIP ← tempRIP;
      FI;
    FI;
  FI;
  IF far jump and (PE = 0 or (PE = 1 AND VM = 1)) (* Real-address or virtual-8086 mode *)
    THEN
      tempEIP ← DEST(Offset); (* DEST is ptr16:32 or [m16:32] *)

```

```

    IF tempEIP is beyond code segment limit
        THEN #GP(0); FI;
    CS ← DEST(segment selector); (* DEST is ptr16:32 or [m16:32] *)
    IF OperandSize = 32
        THEN
            EIP ← tempEIP; (* DEST is ptr16:32 or [m16:32] *)
        ELSE (* OperandSize = 16 *)
            EIP ← tempEIP AND 0000FFFFH; (* Clear upper 16 bits *)
    FI;
FI;
IF far jump and (PE = 1 and VM = 0)
(* IA-32e mode or protected mode, not virtual-8086 mode *)
THEN
    IF effective address in the CS, DS, ES, FS, GS, or SS segment is illegal
    or segment selector in target operand NULL
        THEN #GP(0); FI;
    IF segment selector index not within descriptor table limits
        THEN #GP(new selector); FI;
    Read type and access rights of segment descriptor;
    IF (EFER.LMA = 0)
        THEN
            IF segment type is not a conforming or nonconforming code
            segment, call gate, task gate, or TSS
                THEN #GP(segment selector); FI;
        ELSE
            IF segment type is not a conforming or nonconforming code segment
            call gate
                THEN #GP(segment selector); FI;
    FI;
    Depending on type and access rights:
        GO TO CONFORMING-CODE-SEGMENT;
        GO TO NONCONFORMING-CODE-SEGMENT;
        GO TO CALL-GATE;
        GO TO TASK-GATE;
        GO TO TASK-STATE-SEGMENT;
    ELSE
        #GP(segment selector);
FI;
CONFORMING-CODE-SEGMENT:
    IF L-Bit = 1 and D-BIT = 1 and IA32_EFER.LMA = 1
        THEN GP(new code segment selector); FI;
    IF DPL > CPL
        THEN #GP(segment selector); FI;
    IF segment not present
        THEN #NP(segment selector); FI;
    tempEIP ← DEST(Offset);
    IF OperandSize = 16
        THEN tempEIP ← tempEIP AND 0000FFFFH;
    FI;
    IF (IA32_EFER.LMA = 0 or target mode = Compatibility mode) and
    tempEIP outside code segment limit
        THEN #GP(0); FI
    IF tempEIP is non-canonical
        THEN #GP(0); FI;

```

```

CS ← DEST[segment selector]; (* Segment descriptor information also loaded *)
CS(RPL) ← CPL
EIP ← tempEIP;
END;
NONCONFORMING-CODE-SEGMENT:
IF L-Bit = 1 and D-BIT = 1 and IA32_EFER.LMA = 1
    THEN GP(new code segment selector); FI;
IF (RPL > CPL) OR (DPL ≠ CPL)
    THEN #GP(code segment selector); FI;
IF segment not present
    THEN #NP(segment selector); FI;
tempEIP ← DEST(Offset);
IF OperandSize = 16
    THEN tempEIP ← tempEIP AND 0000FFFFH; FI;
IF (IA32_EFER.LMA = 0 OR target mode = Compatibility mode)
and tempEIP outside code segment limit
    THEN #GP(0); FI;
IF tempEIP is non-canonical THEN #GP(0); FI;
CS ← DEST[segment selector]; (* Segment descriptor information also loaded *)
CS(RPL) ← CPL;
EIP ← tempEIP;
END;

```

```

CALL-GATE:
IF call gate DPL < CPL
or call gate DPL < call gate segment-selector RPL
    THEN #GP(call gate selector); FI;
IF call gate not present
    THEN #NP(call gate selector); FI;
IF call gate code-segment selector is NULL
    THEN #GP(0); FI;
IF call gate code-segment selector index outside descriptor table limits
    THEN #GP(code segment selector); FI;
Read code segment descriptor;
IF code-segment segment descriptor does not indicate a code segment
or code-segment segment descriptor is conforming and DPL > CPL
or code-segment segment descriptor is non-conforming and DPL ≠ CPL
    THEN #GP(code segment selector); FI;
IF IA32_EFER.LMA = 1 and (code-segment descriptor is not a 64-bit code segment
or code-segment segment descriptor has both L-Bit and D-bit set)
    THEN #GP(code segment selector); FI;
IF code segment is not present
    THEN #NP(code-segment selector); FI;
tempEIP ← DEST(Offset);
IF GateSize = 16
    THEN tempEIP ← tempEIP AND 0000FFFFH; FI;
IF (IA32_EFER.LMA = 0 OR target mode = Compatibility mode) AND tempEIP
outside code segment limit
    THEN #GP(0); FI;
CS ← DEST[SegmentSelector]; (* Segment descriptor information also loaded *)
CS(RPL) ← CPL;
EIP ← tempEIP;
END;
TASK-GATE:

```

```

IF task gate DPL < CPL
or task gate DPL < task gate segment-selector RPL
    THEN #GP(task gate selector); FI;
IF task gate not present
    THEN #NP(gate selector); FI;
Read the TSS segment selector in the task-gate descriptor;
IF TSS segment selector local/global bit is set to local
or index not within GDT limits
or descriptor is not a TSS segment
or TSS descriptor specifies that the TSS is busy
    THEN #GP(TSS selector); FI;
IF TSS not present
    THEN #NP(TSS selector); FI;
SWITCH-TASKS to TSS;
IF EIP not within code segment limit
    THEN #GP(0); FI;
END;
TASK-STATE-SEGMENT:
IF TSS DPL < CPL
or TSS DPL < TSS segment-selector RPL
or TSS descriptor indicates TSS not available
    THEN #GP(TSS selector); FI;
IF TSS is not present
    THEN #NP(TSS selector); FI;
SWITCH-TASKS to TSS;
IF EIP not within code segment limit
    THEN #GP(0); FI;
END;

```

Flags Affected

All flags are affected if a task switch occurs; no flags are affected if a task switch does not occur.

Protected Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	<p>If offset in target operand, call gate, or TSS is beyond the code segment limits.</p> <p>If the segment selector in the destination operand, call gate, task gate, or TSS is NULL.</p> <p>If a memory operand effective address is outside the CS, DS, ES, FS, or GS segment limit.</p> <p>If the DS, ES, FS, or GS register is used to access memory and it contains a NULL segment selector.</p>
#GP(selector)	<p>If the segment selector index is outside descriptor table limits.</p> <p>If the segment descriptor pointed to by the segment selector in the destination operand is not for a conforming-code segment, nonconforming-code segment, call gate, task gate, or task state segment.</p> <p>If the DPL for a nonconforming-code segment is not equal to the CPL (When not using a call gate.) If the RPL for the segment's segment selector is greater than the CPL.</p> <p>If the DPL for a conforming-code segment is greater than the CPL.</p> <p>If the DPL from a call-gate, task-gate, or TSS segment descriptor is less than the CPL or than the RPL of the call-gate, task-gate, or TSS's segment selector.</p> <p>If the segment descriptor for selector in a call gate does not indicate it is a code segment.</p> <p>If the segment descriptor for the segment selector in a task gate does not indicate an available TSS.</p> <p>If the segment selector for a TSS has its local/global bit set for local.</p>

	If a TSS segment descriptor specifies that the TSS is busy or not available.
#SS(0)	If a memory operand effective address is outside the SS segment limit.
#NP (selector)	If the code segment being accessed is not present.
	If call gate, task gate, or TSS not present.
#PF(fault-code)	If a page fault occurs.
#AC(0)	If alignment checking is enabled and an unaligned memory reference is made while the current privilege level is 3. (Only occurs when fetching target from memory.)
#UD	If the LOCK prefix is used.

Real-Address Mode Exceptions

#GP	If a memory operand effective address is outside the CS, DS, ES, FS, or GS segment limit.
	If a memory operand effective address is outside the CS, DS, ES, FS, or GS segment limit.
#SS	If a memory operand effective address is outside the SS segment limit.
#UD	If the LOCK prefix is used.

Virtual-8086 Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	If the target operand is beyond the code segment limits.
	If a memory operand effective address is outside the CS, DS, ES, FS, or GS segment limit.
#SS(0)	If a memory operand effective address is outside the SS segment limit.
#PF(fault-code)	If a page fault occurs.
#AC(0)	If alignment checking is enabled and an unaligned memory reference is made. (Only occurs when fetching target from memory.)
#UD	If the LOCK prefix is used.

Compatibility Mode Exceptions

Same as 64-bit mode exceptions.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	If a memory address is non-canonical.
	If target offset in destination operand is non-canonical.
	If target offset in destination operand is beyond the new code segment limit.
	If the segment selector in the destination operand is NULL.
	If the code segment selector in the 64-bit gate is NULL.
#GP(selector)	If the code segment or 64-bit call gate is outside descriptor table limits.
	If the code segment or 64-bit call gate overlaps non-canonical space.
	If the segment descriptor from a 64-bit call gate is in non-canonical space.
	If the segment descriptor pointed to by the segment selector in the destination operand is not for a conforming-code segment, nonconforming-code segment, 64-bit call gate.
	If the segment descriptor pointed to by the segment selector in the destination operand is a code segment, and has both the D-bit and the L-bit set.
	If the DPL for a nonconforming-code segment is not equal to the CPL, or the RPL for the segment's segment selector is greater than the CPL.
	If the DPL for a conforming-code segment is greater than the CPL.
	If the DPL from a 64-bit call-gate is less than the CPL or than the RPL of the 64-bit call-gate.
	If the upper type field of a 64-bit call gate is not 0x0.
	If the segment selector from a 64-bit call gate is beyond the descriptor table limits.
	If the code segment descriptor pointed to by the selector in the 64-bit gate doesn't have the L-bit set and the D-bit clear.

	If the segment descriptor for a segment selector from the 64-bit call gate does not indicate it is a code segment.
	If the code segment is non-conforming and $CPL \neq DPL$.
	If the code segment is confirming and $CPL < DPL$.
#NP(selector)	If a code segment or 64-bit call gate is not present.
#UD	(64-bit mode only) If a far jump is direct to an absolute address in memory.
	If the LOCK prefix is used.
#PF(fault-code)	If a page fault occurs.
#AC(0)	If alignment checking is enabled and an unaligned memory reference is made while the current privilege level is 3.

KANDNW/KANDNB/KANDNQ/KANDND—Bitwise Logical AND NOT Masks

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.L1.0F.W0 42 /r KANDNW k1, k2, k3	RVR	V/V	AVX512F	Bitwise AND NOT 16 bits masks k2 and k3 and place result in k1.
VEX.L1.66.0F.W0 42 /r KANDNB k1, k2, k3	RVR	V/V	AVX512DQ	Bitwise AND NOT 8 bits masks k1 and k2 and place result in k1.
VEX.L1.0F.W1 42 /r KANDNQ k1, k2, k3	RVR	V/V	AVX512BW	Bitwise AND NOT 64 bits masks k2 and k3 and place result in k1.
VEX.L1.66.0F.W1 42 /r KANDND k1, k2, k3	RVR	V/V	AVX512BW	Bitwise AND NOT 32 bits masks k2 and k3 and place result in k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3
RVR	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.1vvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r, ModRM:[7:6] must be 11b)

Description

Performs a bitwise AND NOT between the vector mask k2 and the vector mask k3, and writes the result into vector mask k1.

Operation**KANDNW**

DEST[15:0] ← (BITWISE NOT SRC1[15:0]) BITWISE AND SRC2[15:0]
DEST[MAX_KL-1:16] ← 0

KANDNB

DEST[7:0] ← (BITWISE NOT SRC1[7:0]) BITWISE AND SRC2[7:0]
DEST[MAX_KL-1:8] ← 0

KANDNQ

DEST[63:0] ← (BITWISE NOT SRC1[63:0]) BITWISE AND SRC2[63:0]
DEST[MAX_KL-1:64] ← 0

KANDND

DEST[31:0] ← (BITWISE NOT SRC1[31:0]) BITWISE AND SRC2[31:0]
DEST[MAX_KL-1:32] ← 0

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

KANDNW __mmask16_mm512_kandn(__mmask16 a, __mmask16 b);

Flags Affected

None

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

See Exceptions Type K20.

KANDW/KANDB/KANDQ/KANDD—Bitwise Logical AND Masks

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.L1.0F.W0 41 /r KANDW k1, k2, k3	RVR	V/V	AVX512F	Bitwise AND 16 bits masks k2 and k3 and place result in k1.
VEX.L1.66.0F.W0 41 /r KANDB k1, k2, k3	RVR	V/V	AVX512DQ	Bitwise AND 8 bits masks k2 and k3 and place result in k1.
VEX.L1.0F.W1 41 /r KANDQ k1, k2, k3	RVR	V/V	AVX512BW	Bitwise AND 64 bits masks k2 and k3 and place result in k1.
VEX.L1.66.0F.W1 41 /r KANDD k1, k2, k3	RVR	V/V	AVX512BW	Bitwise AND 32 bits masks k2 and k3 and place result in k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3
RVR	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.1vvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r, ModRM:[7:6] must be 11b)

Description

Performs a bitwise AND between the vector mask k2 and the vector mask k3, and writes the result into vector mask k1.

Operation

KANDW

DEST[15:0] ← SRC1[15:0] BITWISE AND SRC2[15:0]
DEST[MAX_KL-1:16] ← 0

KANDB

DEST[7:0] ← SRC1[7:0] BITWISE AND SRC2[7:0]
DEST[MAX_KL-1:8] ← 0

KANDQ

DEST[63:0] ← SRC1[63:0] BITWISE AND SRC2[63:0]
DEST[MAX_KL-1:64] ← 0

KANDD

DEST[31:0] ← SRC1[31:0] BITWISE AND SRC2[31:0]
DEST[MAX_KL-1:32] ← 0

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

KANDW `__mmask16 _mm512_kand(__mmask16 a, __mmask16 b);`

Flags Affected

None

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

See Exceptions Type K20.

KORW/KORB/KORQ/KORD—Bitwise Logical OR Masks

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.L1.0F.W0 45 /r KORW k1, k2, k3	RVR	V/V	AVX512F	Bitwise OR 16 bits masks k2 and k3 and place result in k1.
VEX.L1.66.0F.W0 45 /r KORB k1, k2, k3	RVR	V/V	AVX512DQ	Bitwise OR 8 bits masks k2 and k3 and place result in k1.
VEX.L1.0F.W1 45 /r KORQ k1, k2, k3	RVR	V/V	AVX512BW	Bitwise OR 64 bits masks k2 and k3 and place result in k1.
VEX.L1.66.0F.W1 45 /r KORD k1, k2, k3	RVR	V/V	AVX512BW	Bitwise OR 32 bits masks k2 and k3 and place result in k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3
RVR	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.1vvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r, ModRM:[7:6] must be 11b)

Description

Performs a bitwise OR between the vector mask k2 and the vector mask k3, and writes the result into vector mask k1 (three-operand form).

Operation**KORW**

DEST[15:0] ← SRC1[15:0] BITWISE OR SRC2[15:0]
DEST[MAX_KL-1:16] ← 0

KORB

DEST[7:0] ← SRC1[7:0] BITWISE OR SRC2[7:0]
DEST[MAX_KL-1:8] ← 0

KORQ

DEST[63:0] ← SRC1[63:0] BITWISE OR SRC2[63:0]
DEST[MAX_KL-1:64] ← 0

KORD

DEST[31:0] ← SRC1[31:0] BITWISE OR SRC2[31:0]
DEST[MAX_KL-1:32] ← 0

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

KORW `__mmask16 _mm512_kor(__mmask16 a, __mmask16 b);`

Flags Affected

None

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

See Exceptions Type K20.

KUNPCKBW/KUNPCKWD/KUNPCKDQ—Unpack for Mask Registers

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.L1.66.0F.W0 4B /r KUNPCKBW k1, k2, k3	RVR	V/V	AVX512F	Unpack 8-bit masks in k2 and k3 and write word result in k1.
VEX.L1.0F.W0 4B /r KUNPCKWD k1, k2, k3	RVR	V/V	AVX512BW	Unpack 16-bit masks in k2 and k3 and write doubleword result in k1.
VEX.L1.0F.W1 4B /r KUNPCKDQ k1, k2, k3	RVR	V/V	AVX512BW	Unpack 32-bit masks in k2 and k3 and write quadword result in k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3
RVR	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.1vvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r, ModRM:[7:6] must be 11b)

Description

Unpacks the lower 8/16/32 bits of the second and third operands (source operands) into the low part of the first operand (destination operand), starting from the low bytes. The result is zero-extended in the destination.

Operation

KUNPCKBW

```
DEST[7:0] ← SRC2[7:0]
DEST[15:8] ← SRC1[7:0]
DEST[MAX_KL-1:16] ← 0
```

KUNPCKWD

```
DEST[15:0] ← SRC2[15:0]
DEST[31:16] ← SRC1[15:0]
DEST[MAX_KL-1:32] ← 0
```

KUNPCKDQ

```
DEST[31:0] ← SRC2[31:0]
DEST[63:32] ← SRC1[31:0]
DEST[MAX_KL-1:64] ← 0
```

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

```
KUNPCKBW __mmask16 __mm512_kunpackb(__mmask16 a, __mmask16 b);
KUNPCKDQ __mmask64 __mm512_kunpackd(__mmask64 a, __mmask64 b);
KUNPCKWD __mmask32 __mm512_kunpackw(__mmask32 a, __mmask32 b);
```

Flags Affected

None

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

See Exceptions Type K20.

KXNORW/KXNORB/KXNORQ/KXNORD—Bitwise Logical XNOR Masks

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.L1.0F.W0 46 /r KXNORW k1, k2, k3	RVR	V/V	AVX512F	Bitwise XNOR 16-bit masks k2 and k3 and place result in k1.
VEX.L1.66.0F.W0 46 /r KXNORB k1, k2, k3	RVR	V/V	AVX512DQ	Bitwise XNOR 8-bit masks k2 and k3 and place result in k1.
VEX.L1.0F.W1 46 /r KXNORQ k1, k2, k3	RVR	V/V	AVX512BW	Bitwise XNOR 64-bit masks k2 and k3 and place result in k1.
VEX.L1.66.0F.W1 46 /r KXNORD k1, k2, k3	RVR	V/V	AVX512BW	Bitwise XNOR 32-bit masks k2 and k3 and place result in k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3
RVR	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.1vvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r, ModRM:[7:6] must be 11b)

Description

Performs a bitwise XNOR between the vector mask k2 and the vector mask k3, and writes the result into vector mask k1 (three-operand form).

Operation**KXNORW**

DEST[15:0] ← NOT (SRC1[15:0] BITWISE XOR SRC2[15:0])
DEST[MAX_KL-1:16] ← 0

KXNORB

DEST[7:0] ← NOT (SRC1[7:0] BITWISE XOR SRC2[7:0])
DEST[MAX_KL-1:8] ← 0

KXNORQ

DEST[63:0] ← NOT (SRC1[63:0] BITWISE XOR SRC2[63:0])
DEST[MAX_KL-1:64] ← 0

KXNORD

DEST[31:0] ← NOT (SRC1[31:0] BITWISE XOR SRC2[31:0])
DEST[MAX_KL-1:32] ← 0

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

KXNORW __mmask16 __mm512_kxnor(__mmask16 a, __mmask16 b);

Flags Affected

None

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

See Exceptions Type K20.

KXORW/KXORB/KXORQ/KXORD—Bitwise Logical XOR Masks

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.L1.0F.W0 47 /r KXORW k1, k2, k3	RVR	V/V	AVX512F	Bitwise XOR 16-bit masks k2 and k3 and place result in k1.
VEX.L1.66.0F.W0 47 /r KXORB k1, k2, k3	RVR	V/V	AVX512DQ	Bitwise XOR 8-bit masks k2 and k3 and place result in k1.
VEX.L1.0F.W1 47 /r KXORQ k1, k2, k3	RVR	V/V	AVX512BW	Bitwise XOR 64-bit masks k2 and k3 and place result in k1.
VEX.L1.66.0F.W1 47 /r KXORD k1, k2, k3	RVR	V/V	AVX512BW	Bitwise XOR 32-bit masks k2 and k3 and place result in k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3
RVR	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.1 vvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r, ModRM:[7:6] must be 11b)

Description

Performs a bitwise XOR between the vector mask k2 and the vector mask k3, and writes the result into vector mask k1 (three-operand form).

Operation

KXORW

DEST[15:0] ← SRC1[15:0] BITWISE XOR SRC2[15:0]
DEST[MAX_KL-1:16] ← 0

KXORB

DEST[7:0] ← SRC1[7:0] BITWISE XOR SRC2[7:0]
DEST[MAX_KL-1:8] ← 0

KXORQ

DEST[63:0] ← SRC1[63:0] BITWISE XOR SRC2[63:0]
DEST[MAX_KL-1:64] ← 0

KXORD

DEST[31:0] ← SRC1[31:0] BITWISE XOR SRC2[31:0]
DEST[MAX_KL-1:32] ← 0

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

KXORW __mmask16 __mm512_kxor(__mmask16 a, __mmask16 b);

Flags Affected

None

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

See Exceptions Type K20.

LFENCE—Load Fence

Opcode	Instruction	Op/En	64-Bit Mode	Compat/Leg Mode	Description
NP 0F AE E8	LFENCE	Z0	Valid	Valid	Serializes load operations.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
Z0	NA	NA	NA	NA

Description

Performs a serializing operation on all load-from-memory instructions that were issued prior the LFENCE instruction. Specifically, LFENCE does not execute until all prior instructions have completed locally, and no later instruction begins execution until LFENCE completes. In particular, an instruction that loads from memory and that precedes an LFENCE receives data from memory prior to completion of the LFENCE. (An LFENCE that follows an instruction that stores to memory might complete **before** the data being stored have become globally visible.) Instructions following an LFENCE may be fetched from memory before the LFENCE, but they will not execute (even speculatively) until the LFENCE completes.

Weakly ordered memory types can be used to achieve higher processor performance through such techniques as out-of-order issue and speculative reads. The degree to which a consumer of data recognizes or knows that the data is weakly ordered varies among applications and may be unknown to the producer of this data. The LFENCE instruction provides a performance-efficient way of ensuring load ordering between routines that produce weakly-ordered results and routines that consume that data.

Processors are free to fetch and cache data speculatively from regions of system memory that use the WB, WC, and WT memory types. This speculative fetching can occur at any time and is not tied to instruction execution. Thus, it is not ordered with respect to executions of the LFENCE instruction; data can be brought into the caches speculatively just before, during, or after the execution of an LFENCE instruction.

This instruction's operation is the same in non-64-bit modes and 64-bit mode.

Specification of the instruction's opcode above indicates a ModR/M byte of E8. For this instruction, the processor ignores the r/m field of the ModR/M byte. Thus, LFENCE is encoded by any opcode of the form 0F AE Ex, where x is in the range 8-F.

Operation

Wait_On_Following_Instructions_Until(preceding_instructions_complete);

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

void _mm_lfence(void)

Exceptions (All Modes of Operation)

#UD If CPUID.01H:EDX.SSE2[bit 26] = 0.
If the LOCK prefix is used.

5. Updates to Chapter 4, Volume 2B

Change bars show changes to Chapter 4 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 2B: Instruction Set Reference, M-U*.

Changes to this chapter: Addition of "NFX" designator to opcode tables of affected instructions. Removal of NDS/NDD/DDDS terms from affected instructions. Where either of these changes are made to specific instructions, only the first page of the instructions are included here if no other areas of the instructions were updated. Minor typo corrections. Update to RDRAND/RDSEED to remove #UD condition. Update to RDPMC description and operation sections. Execution ordering added for some instructions.

Instructions with changes: MAXPD, MAXPS, MAXSD, MAXSS, MINPD, MINPS, MINSND, MINSS, MOVHLPS, MOVHPD, MOVHPS, MOVLHPS, MOVLPD, MOVLPS, MOVNTDQ, MOVNTDQA, MOVNTPD, MOVNTPS, MOVQ, MOVSD, MOVSS, MPSADBW, MULPD, MULPS, MULSD, MULSS, MULX, ORPD, ORPS, PABSB/PABSW/PABSD/PABSQ, PACKSSWB/PACKSSDW, PACKUSDW, PACKUSWB, PADDB/PADDW/PADDD/PADDQ, PADDDB/PADDSW, PADDUSB/PADDUSW, PALIGNR, PAND, PANDN, PAVGB/PAVGW, PBLENDVB, PBLENDW, PCLMULQDQ, PCMPEQB/PCMPEQW/PCMPEQD, PCMPEQQ, PCMPGTB/PCMPGTW/PCMPGTD, PCMPGTQ, PDEP, PEXT, PHADDSW, PHADDW/PHADDD, PHSUBSW, PHSUBW/PHSUBD, PINSRB/PINSRD/PINSRQ, PINSRW, PMADDUBSW, PMADDWD, PMAJSB/PMAJSW/PMAJSD/PMAJSQ, PMAJUB/PMAJUW, PMAJUD/PMAJUQ, PMINSB/PMINSW, PMINSND/PMINSQ, PMINUB/PMINUW, PMINUD/PMINUQ, PMULDQ, PMULHRW, PMULHW, PMULLD/PMULLQ, PMULLW, PMULUDQ, POR, PREFETCHW, PSADBW, PSHUFB, PSIGNB/PSIGNW/PSIGND, PSLLDQ, PSLLW/PSLLD/PSLLQ, PSRAW/PSRAD/PSRAQ, PSRLDQ, PSRLW/PSRLD/PSRLQ, PSUBB/PSUBW/PSUBD, PSUBQ, PSUBSB/PSUBSW, PSUBUSB/PSUBUSW, PUNPCKHBW/PUNPCKHWD/PUNPCKHDQ/PUNPCKHQDQ, PUNPCKLBW/PUNPCKLWD/PUNPCKLDQ/PUNPCKLQDQ, PXOR, RCPSS, RDPMC, RDRAND, RDSEED, RET, ROUNDSS, RSQRTSS, SARX/SHLX/SHRX, SHUFPD, SHUFPS, SQRTSD, SQRTSS, SUBPD, SUBPS, SUBSD, SUBSS, SYSCALL, SYSENTER, SYSEXIT, SYSRET, UNPCKHPD, UNPCKHPS, UNPCKLPD, and UNPCKLPS.

MAXPD—Maximum of Packed Double-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 5F /r MAXPD xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE2	Return the maximum double-precision floating-point values between xmm1 and xmm2/m128.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 5F /r VMAXPD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Return the maximum double-precision floating-point values between xmm2 and xmm3/m128.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG 5F /r VMAXPD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX	Return the maximum packed double-precision floating-point values between ymm2 and ymm3/m256.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 5F /r VMAXPD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Return the maximum packed double-precision floating-point values between xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst and store result in xmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W1 5F /r VMAXPD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Return the maximum packed double-precision floating-point values between ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst and store result in ymm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W1 5F /r VMAXPD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst{sae}	C	V/V	AVX512F	Return the maximum packed double-precision floating-point values between zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst and store result in zmm1 subject to writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a SIMD compare of the packed double-precision floating-point values in the first source operand and the second source operand and returns the maximum value for each pair of values to the destination operand.

If the values being compared are both 0.0s (of either sign), the value in the second operand (source operand) is returned. If a value in the second operand is an SNaN, then SNaN is forwarded unchanged to the destination (that is, a QNaN version of the SNaN is not returned).

If only one value is a NaN (SNaN or QNaN) for this instruction, the second operand (source operand), either a NaN or a valid floating-point value, is written to the result. If instead of this behavior, it is required that the NaN source operand (from either the first or second operand) be returned, the action of MAXPD can be emulated using a sequence of instructions, such as a comparison followed by AND, ANDN and OR.

EVEX encoded versions: The first source operand (the second operand) is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register conditionally updated with writemask k1.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand can be a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is a XMM register. The second source operand can be a XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is a XMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

MAXPS—Maximum of Packed Single-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F 5F /r MAXPS xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE	Return the maximum single-precision floating-point values between xmm1 and xmm2/mem.
VEX.128.0F.WIG 5F /r VMAXPS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Return the maximum single-precision floating-point values between xmm2 and xmm3/mem.
VEX.256.0F.WIG 5F /r VMAXPS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX	Return the maximum single-precision floating-point values between ymm2 and ymm3/mem.
EVEX.128.0F.W0 5F /r VMAXPS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Return the maximum packed single-precision floating-point values between xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst and store result in xmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.0F.W0 5F /r VMAXPS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Return the maximum packed single-precision floating-point values between ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst and store result in ymm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.0F.W0 5F /r VMAXPS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst{sae}	C	V/V	AVX512F	Return the maximum packed single-precision floating-point values between zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst and store result in zmm1 subject to writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a SIMD compare of the packed single-precision floating-point values in the first source operand and the second source operand and returns the maximum value for each pair of values to the destination operand.

If the values being compared are both 0.0s (of either sign), the value in the second operand (source operand) is returned. If a value in the second operand is an SNaN, then SNaN is forwarded unchanged to the destination (that is, a QNaN version of the SNaN is not returned).

If only one value is a NaN (SNaN or QNaN) for this instruction, the second operand (source operand), either a NaN or a valid floating-point value, is written to the result. If instead of this behavior, it is required that the NaN source operand (from either the first or second operand) be returned, the action of MAXPS can be emulated using a sequence of instructions, such as, a comparison followed by AND, ANDN and OR.

EVEX encoded versions: The first source operand (the second operand) is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 32-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register conditionally updated with writemask k1.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand can be a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is a XMM register. The second source operand can be a XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is a XMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source can be an XMM register or an 128-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are unmodified.

MAXSD—Return Maximum Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
F2 0F 5F /r MAXSD xmm1, xmm2/m64	A	V/V	SSE2	Return the maximum scalar double-precision floating-point value between xmm2/m64 and xmm1.
VEX.LIG.F2.0F.WIG 5F /r VMAXSD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m64	B	V/V	AVX	Return the maximum scalar double-precision floating-point value between xmm3/m64 and xmm2.
EVEX.LIG.F2.0F.W1 5F /r VMAXSD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64{sae}	C	V/V	AVX512F	Return the maximum scalar double-precision floating-point value between xmm3/m64 and xmm2.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Compares the low double-precision floating-point values in the first source operand and the second source operand, and returns the maximum value to the low quadword of the destination operand. The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 64-bit memory location. The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. When the second source operand is a memory operand, only 64 bits are accessed.

If the values being compared are both 0.0s (of either sign), the value in the second source operand is returned. If a value in the second source operand is an SNaN, that SNaN is returned unchanged to the destination (that is, a QNaN version of the SNaN is not returned).

If only one value is a NaN (SNaN or QNaN) for this instruction, the second source operand, either a NaN or a valid floating-point value, is written to the result. If instead of this behavior, it is required that the NaN of either source operand be returned, the action of MAXSD can be emulated using a sequence of instructions, such as, a comparison followed by AND, ANDN and OR.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The destination and first source operand are the same. Bits (MAXVL-1:64) of the corresponding destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 and EVEX encoded version: Bits (127:64) of the XMM register destination are copied from corresponding bits in the first source operand. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination register are zeroed.

EVEX encoded version: The low quadword element of the destination operand is updated according to the writemask.

Software should ensure VMAXSD is encoded with VEX.L=0. Encoding VMAXSD with VEX.L=1 may encounter unpredictable behavior across different processor generations.

MAXSS—Return Maximum Scalar Single-Precision Floating-Point Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
F3 0F 5F /r MAXSS xmm1, xmm2/m32	A	V/V	SSE	Return the maximum scalar single-precision floating-point value between xmm2/m32 and xmm1.
VEX.LIG.F3.0F.WIG 5F /r VMAXSS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m32	B	V/V	AVX	Return the maximum scalar single-precision floating-point value between xmm3/m32 and xmm2.
EVEX.LIG.F3.0F.W0 5F /r VMAXSS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m32{sae}	C	V/V	AVX512F	Return the maximum scalar single-precision floating-point value between xmm3/m32 and xmm2.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Compares the low single-precision floating-point values in the first source operand and the second source operand, and returns the maximum value to the low doubleword of the destination operand.

If the values being compared are both 0.0s (of either sign), the value in the second source operand is returned. If a value in the second source operand is an SNaN, that SNaN is returned unchanged to the destination (that is, a QNaN version of the SNaN is not returned).

If only one value is a NaN (SNaN or QNaN) for this instruction, the second source operand, either a NaN or a valid floating-point value, is written to the result. If instead of this behavior, it is required that the NaN from either source operand be returned, the action of MAXSS can be emulated using a sequence of instructions, such as, a comparison followed by AND, ANDN and OR.

The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 32-bit memory location. The first source and destination operands are XMM registers.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The destination and first source operand are the same. Bits (MAXVL:32) of the corresponding destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 and EVEX encoded version: The first source operand is an xmm register encoded by VEX.vvvv. Bits (127:32) of the XMM register destination are copied from corresponding bits in the first source operand. Bits (MAXVL:128) of the destination register are zeroed.

EVEX encoded version: The low doubleword element of the destination operand is updated according to the writemask.

Software should ensure VMAXSS is encoded with VEX.L=0. Encoding VMAXSS with VEX.L=1 may encounter unpredictable behavior across different processor generations.

MINPD—Minimum of Packed Double-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 5D /r MINPD xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE2	Return the minimum double-precision floating-point values between xmm1 and xmm2/mem
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 5D /r VMINPD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Return the minimum double-precision floating-point values between xmm2 and xmm3/mem.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG 5D /r VMINPD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX	Return the minimum packed double-precision floating-point values between ymm2 and ymm3/mem.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 5D /r VMINPD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Return the minimum packed double-precision floating-point values between xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst and store result in xmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W1 5D /r VMINPD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Return the minimum packed double-precision floating-point values between ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst and store result in ymm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W1 5D /r VMINPD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst{sae}	C	V/V	AVX512F	Return the minimum packed double-precision floating-point values between zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst and store result in zmm1 subject to writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a SIMD compare of the packed double-precision floating-point values in the first source operand and the second source operand and returns the minimum value for each pair of values to the destination operand.

If the values being compared are both 0.0s (of either sign), the value in the second operand (source operand) is returned. If a value in the second operand is an SNaN, then SNaN is forwarded unchanged to the destination (that is, a QNaN version of the SNaN is not returned).

If only one value is a NaN (SNaN or QNaN) for this instruction, the second operand (source operand), either a NaN or a valid floating-point value, is written to the result. If instead of this behavior, it is required that the NaN source operand (from either the first or second operand) be returned, the action of MINPD can be emulated using a sequence of instructions, such as, a comparison followed by AND, ANDN and OR.

EVEX encoded versions: The first source operand (the second operand) is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register conditionally updated with writemask k1.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand can be a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is a XMM register. The second source operand can be a XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is a XMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source can be an XMM register or an 128-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are unmodified.

MINPS—Minimum of Packed Single-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF 5D /r MINPS xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE	Return the minimum single-precision floating-point values between xmm1 and xmm2/mem.
VEX.128.OF.WIG 5D /r VMINPS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Return the minimum single-precision floating-point values between xmm2 and xmm3/mem.
VEX.256.OF.WIG 5D /r VMINPS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX	Return the minimum single double-precision floating-point values between ymm2 and ymm3/mem.
EVEX.128.OF.W0 5D /r VMINPS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Return the minimum packed single-precision floating-point values between xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst and store result in xmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.OF.W0 5D /r VMINPS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Return the minimum packed single-precision floating-point values between ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst and store result in ymm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.OF.W0 5D /r VMINPS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst{sae}	C	V/V	AVX512F	Return the minimum packed single-precision floating-point values between zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst and store result in zmm1 subject to writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a SIMD compare of the packed single-precision floating-point values in the first source operand and the second source operand and returns the minimum value for each pair of values to the destination operand.

If the values being compared are both 0.0s (of either sign), the value in the second operand (source operand) is returned. If a value in the second operand is an SNaN, then SNaN is forwarded unchanged to the destination (that is, a QNaN version of the SNaN is not returned).

If only one value is a NaN (SNaN or QNaN) for this instruction, the second operand (source operand), either a NaN or a valid floating-point value, is written to the result. If instead of this behavior, it is required that the NaN source operand (from either the first or second operand) be returned, the action of MINPS can be emulated using a sequence of instructions, such as, a comparison followed by AND, ANDN and OR.

EVEX encoded versions: The first source operand (the second operand) is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 32-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register conditionally updated with writemask k1.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand can be a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is a XMM register. The second source operand can be a XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is a XMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source can be an XMM register or an 128-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are unmodified.

MINSD—Return Minimum Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
F2 0F 5D /r MINSD xmm1, xmm2/m64	A	V/V	SSE2	Return the minimum scalar double-precision floating-point value between xmm2/m64 and xmm1.
VEX.LIG.F2.0F.WIG 5D /r VMINSD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m64	B	V/V	AVX	Return the minimum scalar double-precision floating-point value between xmm3/m64 and xmm2.
EVEX.LIG.F2.0F.W1 5D /r VMINSD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64{sae}	C	V/V	AVX512F	Return the minimum scalar double-precision floating-point value between xmm3/m64 and xmm2.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Compares the low double-precision floating-point values in the first source operand and the second source operand, and returns the minimum value to the low quadword of the destination operand. When the source operand is a memory operand, only the 64 bits are accessed.

If the values being compared are both 0.0s (of either sign), the value in the second source operand is returned. If a value in the second source operand is an SNaN, then SNaN is returned unchanged to the destination (that is, a QNaN version of the SNaN is not returned).

If only one value is a NaN (SNaN or QNaN) for this instruction, the second source operand, either a NaN or a valid floating-point value, is written to the result. If instead of this behavior, it is required that the NaN source operand (from either the first or second source) be returned, the action of MINSD can be emulated using a sequence of instructions, such as, a comparison followed by AND, ANDN and OR.

The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 64-bit memory location. The first source and destination operands are XMM registers.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The destination and first source operand are the same. Bits (MAXVL-1:64) of the corresponding destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 and EVEX encoded version: Bits (127:64) of the XMM register destination are copied from corresponding bits in the first source operand. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination register are zeroed.

EVEX encoded version: The low quadword element of the destination operand is updated according to the writemask.

Software should ensure VMINSD is encoded with VEX.L=0. Encoding VMINSD with VEX.L=1 may encounter unpredictable behavior across different processor generations.

MINSS—Return Minimum Scalar Single-Precision Floating-Point Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
F3 0F 5D /r MINSS xmm1,xmm2/m32	A	V/V	SSE	Return the minimum scalar single-precision floating-point value between xmm2/m32 and xmm1.
VEX.LIG.F3.0F.WIG 5D /r VMINSS xmm1,xmm2, xmm3/m32	B	V/V	AVX	Return the minimum scalar single-precision floating-point value between xmm3/m32 and xmm2.
EVEX.LIG.F3.0F.WO 5D /r VMINSS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m32{sae}	C	V/V	AVX512F	Return the minimum scalar single-precision floating-point value between xmm3/m32 and xmm2.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Compares the low single-precision floating-point values in the first source operand and the second source operand and returns the minimum value to the low doubleword of the destination operand.

If the values being compared are both 0.0s (of either sign), the value in the second source operand is returned. If a value in the second operand is an SNaN, that SNaN is returned unchanged to the destination (that is, a QNaN version of the SNaN is not returned).

If only one value is a NaN (SNaN or QNaN) for this instruction, the second source operand, either a NaN or a valid floating-point value, is written to the result. If instead of this behavior, it is required that the NaN in either source operand be returned, the action of MINSD can be emulated using a sequence of instructions, such as, a comparison followed by AND, ANDN and OR.

The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 32-bit memory location. The first source and destination operands are XMM registers.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The destination and first source operand are the same. Bits (MAXVL:32) of the corresponding destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 and EVEX encoded version: The first source operand is an xmm register encoded by (E)VEX.vvvv. Bits (127:32) of the XMM register destination are copied from corresponding bits in the first source operand. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination register are zeroed.

EVEX encoded version: The low doubleword element of the destination operand is updated according to the writemask.

Software should ensure VMINSS is encoded with VEX.L=0. Encoding VMINSS with VEX.L=1 may encounter unpredictable behavior across different processor generations.

MOVHLPS—Move Packed Single-Precision Floating-Point Values High to Low

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF 12 /r MOVHLPS xmm1, xmm2	RM	V/V	SSE	Move two packed single-precision floating-point values from high quadword of xmm2 to low quadword of xmm1.
VEX.128.OF.WIG 12 /r VMOVHLPS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3	RVM	V/V	AVX	Merge two packed single-precision floating-point values from high quadword of xmm3 and low quadword of xmm2.
EVEX.128.OF.W0 12 /r VMOVHLPS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3	RVM	V/V	AVX512F	Merge two packed single-precision floating-point values from high quadword of xmm3 and low quadword of xmm2.

Instruction Operand Encoding¹

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RM	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
RVM	ModRM:reg (w)	vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

This instruction cannot be used for memory to register moves.

128-bit two-argument form:

Moves two packed single-precision floating-point values from the high quadword of the second XMM argument (second operand) to the low quadword of the first XMM register (first argument). The quadword at bits 127:64 of the destination operand is left unchanged. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding destination register remain unchanged.

128-bit and EVEX three-argument form

Moves two packed single-precision floating-point values from the high quadword of the third XMM argument (third operand) to the low quadword of the destination (first operand). Copies the high quadword from the second XMM argument (second operand) to the high quadword of the destination (first operand). Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding destination register are zeroed.

If VMOVHLPS is encoded with VEX.L or EVEX.L'L= 1, an attempt to execute the instruction encoded with VEX.L or EVEX.L'L= 1 will cause an #UD exception.

Operation

MOVHLPS (128-bit two-argument form)

DEST[63:0] ← SRC[127:64]
DEST[MAXVL-1:64] (Unmodified)

VMOVHLPS (128-bit three-argument form - VEX & EVEX)

DEST[63:0] ← SRC2[127:64]
DEST[127:64] ← SRC1[127:64]
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

MOVHLPS __m128 __mm_movehl_ps(__m128 a, __m128 b)

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

1. ModRM.MOD = 011B required

MOVHPD—Move High Packed Double-Precision Floating-Point Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 16 /r MOVHPD xmm1, m64	A	V/V	SSE2	Move double-precision floating-point value from m64 to high quadword of xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 16 /r VMOVHPD xmm2, xmm1, m64	B	V/V	AVX	Merge double-precision floating-point value from m64 and the low quadword of xmm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 16 /r VMOVHPD xmm2, xmm1, m64	D	V/V	AVX512F	Merge double-precision floating-point value from m64 and the low quadword of xmm1.
66 0F 17 /r MOVHPD m64, xmm1	C	V/V	SSE2	Move double-precision floating-point value from high quadword of xmm1 to m64.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 17 /r VMOVHPD m64, xmm1	C	V/V	AVX	Move double-precision floating-point value from high quadword of xmm1 to m64.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 17 /r VMOVHPD m64, xmm1	E	V/V	AVX512F	Move double-precision floating-point value from high quadword of xmm1 to m64.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	NA	ModRM:r/m (w)	ModRM:reg (r)	NA	NA
D	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
E	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:r/m (w)	ModRM:reg (r)	NA	NA

Description

This instruction cannot be used for register to register or memory to memory moves.

128-bit Legacy SSE load:

Moves a double-precision floating-point value from the source 64-bit memory operand and stores it in the high 64-bits of the destination XMM register. The lower 64bits of the XMM register are preserved. Bits (MAXVL-1: 128) of the corresponding destination register are preserved.

VEX.128 & EVEX encoded load:

Loads a double-precision floating-point value from the source 64-bit memory operand (the third operand) and stores it in the upper 64-bits of the destination XMM register (first operand). The low 64-bits from the first source operand (second operand) are copied to the low 64-bits of the destination. Bits (MAXVL-1: 128) of the corresponding destination register are zeroed.

128-bit store:

Stores a double-precision floating-point value from the high 64-bits of the XMM register source (second operand) to the 64-bit memory location (first operand).

Note: VMOVHPD (store) (VEX.128.66.0F 17 /r) is legal and has the same behavior as the existing 66 0F 17 store. For VMOVHPD (store) VEX.vvvv and EVEX.vvvv are reserved and must be 1111b otherwise instruction will #UD.

If VMOVHPD is encoded with VEX.L or EVEX.L'L= 1, an attempt to execute the instruction encoded with VEX.L or EVEX.L'L= 1 will cause an #UD exception.

MOVHPS—Move High Packed Single-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF 16 /r MOVHPS xmm1, m64	A	V/V	SSE	Move two packed single-precision floating-point values from m64 to high quadword of xmm1.
VEX.128.OF.WIG 16 /r VMOVHPS xmm2, xmm1, m64	B	V/V	AVX	Merge two packed single-precision floating-point values from m64 and the low quadword of xmm1.
EVEX.128.OF.W0 16 /r VMOVHPS xmm2, xmm1, m64	D	V/V	AVX512F	Merge two packed single-precision floating-point values from m64 and the low quadword of xmm1.
NP OF 17 /r MOVHPS m64, xmm1	C	V/V	SSE	Move two packed single-precision floating-point values from high quadword of xmm1 to m64.
VEX.128.OF.WIG 17 /r VMOVHPS m64, xmm1	C	V/V	AVX	Move two packed single-precision floating-point values from high quadword of xmm1 to m64.
EVEX.128.OF.W0 17 /r VMOVHPS m64, xmm1	E	V/V	AVX512F	Move two packed single-precision floating-point values from high quadword of xmm1 to m64.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	NA	ModRM:r/m (w)	ModRM:reg (r)	NA	NA
D	Tuple2	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
E	Tuple2	ModRM:r/m (w)	ModRM:reg (r)	NA	NA

Description

This instruction cannot be used for register to register or memory to memory moves.

128-bit Legacy SSE load:

Moves two packed single-precision floating-point values from the source 64-bit memory operand and stores them in the high 64-bits of the destination XMM register. The lower 64bits of the XMM register are preserved. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding destination register are preserved.

VEX.128 & EVEX encoded load:

Loads two single-precision floating-point values from the source 64-bit memory operand (the third operand) and stores it in the upper 64-bits of the destination XMM register (first operand). The low 64-bits from the first source operand (the second operand) are copied to the lower 64-bits of the destination. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding destination register are zeroed.

128-bit store:

Stores two packed single-precision floating-point values from the high 64-bits of the XMM register source (second operand) to the 64-bit memory location (first operand).

Note: VMOVHPS (store) (VEX.128.OF 17 /r) is legal and has the same behavior as the existing OF 17 store. For VMOVHPS (store) VEX.vvvv and EVEX.vvvv are reserved and must be 1111b otherwise instruction will #UD.

If VMOVHPS is encoded with VEX.L or EVEX.L'L= 1, an attempt to execute the instruction encoded with VEX.L or EVEX.L'L= 1 will cause an #UD exception.

MOVLHPS—Move Packed Single-Precision Floating-Point Values Low to High

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF 16 /r MOVLHPS xmm1, xmm2	RM	V/V	SSE	Move two packed single-precision floating-point values from low quadword of xmm2 to high quadword of xmm1.
VEX.128.OF.WIG 16 /r VMOVLHPS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3	RVM	V/V	AVX	Merge two packed single-precision floating-point values from low quadword of xmm3 and low quadword of xmm2.
EVEX.128.OF.W0 16 /r VMOVLHPS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3	RVM	V/V	AVX512F	Merge two packed single-precision floating-point values from low quadword of xmm3 and low quadword of xmm2.

Instruction Operand Encoding¹

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RM	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
RVM	ModRM:reg (w)	vvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

This instruction cannot be used for memory to register moves.

128-bit two-argument form:

Moves two packed single-precision floating-point values from the low quadword of the second XMM argument (second operand) to the high quadword of the first XMM register (first argument). The low quadword of the destination operand is left unchanged. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding destination register are unmodified.

128-bit three-argument forms:

Moves two packed single-precision floating-point values from the low quadword of the third XMM argument (third operand) to the high quadword of the destination (first operand). Copies the low quadword from the second XMM argument (second operand) to the low quadword of the destination (first operand). Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding destination register are zeroed.

If VMOVLHPS is encoded with VEX.L or EVEX.L'L = 1, an attempt to execute the instruction encoded with VEX.L or EVEX.L'L = 1 will cause an #UD exception.

Operation

MOVLHPS (128-bit two-argument form)

DEST[63:0] (Unmodified)
 DEST[127:64] ← SRC[63:0]
 DEST[MAXVL-1:128] (Unmodified)

VMOVLHPS (128-bit three-argument form - VEX & EVEX)

DEST[63:0] ← SRC1[63:0]
 DEST[127:64] ← SRC2[63:0]
 DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

MOVLHPS __m128 __mm_movelh_ps(__m128 a, __m128 b)

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

1. ModRM.MOD = 011B required

MOVLPD—Move Low Packed Double-Precision Floating-Point Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 12 /r MOVLPD xmm1, m64	A	V/V	SSE2	Move double-precision floating-point value from m64 to low quadword of xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 12 /r VMOVLPD xmm2, xmm1, m64	B	V/V	AVX	Merge double-precision floating-point value from m64 and the high quadword of xmm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 12 /r VMOVLPD xmm2, xmm1, m64	D	V/V	AVX512F	Merge double-precision floating-point value from m64 and the high quadword of xmm1.
66 0F 13/r MOVLPD m64, xmm1	C	V/V	SSE2	Move double-precision floating-point value from low quadword of xmm1 to m64.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 13/r VMOVLPD m64, xmm1	C	V/V	AVX	Move double-precision floating-point value from low quadword of xmm1 to m64.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 13/r VMOVLPD m64, xmm1	E	V/V	AVX512F	Move double-precision floating-point value from low quadword of xmm1 to m64.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:r/m (r)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	NA	ModRM:r/m (w)	ModRM:reg (r)	NA	NA
D	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
E	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:r/m (w)	ModRM:reg (r)	NA	NA

Description

This instruction cannot be used for register to register or memory to memory moves.

128-bit Legacy SSE load:

Moves a double-precision floating-point value from the source 64-bit memory operand and stores it in the low 64-bits of the destination XMM register. The upper 64bits of the XMM register are preserved. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding destination register are preserved.

VEX.128 & EVEX encoded load:

Loads a double-precision floating-point value from the source 64-bit memory operand (third operand), merges it with the upper 64-bits of the first source XMM register (second operand), and stores it in the low 128-bits of the destination XMM register (first operand). Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding destination register are zeroed.

128-bit store:

Stores a double-precision floating-point value from the low 64-bits of the XMM register source (second operand) to the 64-bit memory location (first operand).

Note: VMOVLPD (store) (VEX.128.66.0F 13 /r) is legal and has the same behavior as the existing 66 0F 13 store. For VMOVLPD (store) VEX.vvvv and EVEX.vvvv are reserved and must be 1111b otherwise instruction will #UD.

If VMOVLPD is encoded with VEX.L or EVEX.L'L= 1, an attempt to execute the instruction encoded with VEX.L or EVEX.L'L= 1 will cause an #UD exception.

Operation

MOVLPD (128-bit Legacy SSE load)

DEST[63:0] ← SRC[63:0]

DEST[MAXVL-1:64] (Unmodified)

MOVLPS—Move Low Packed Single-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF 12 /r MOVLPS xmm1, m64	A	V/V	SSE	Move two packed single-precision floating-point values from m64 to low quadword of xmm1.
VEX.128.OF.WIG 12 /r VMOVLPS xmm2, xmm1, m64	B	V/V	AVX	Merge two packed single-precision floating-point values from m64 and the high quadword of xmm1.
EVEX.128.OF.W0 12 /r VMOVLPS xmm2, xmm1, m64	D	V/V	AVX512F	Merge two packed single-precision floating-point values from m64 and the high quadword of xmm1.
OF 13/r MOVLPS m64, xmm1	C	V/V	SSE	Move two packed single-precision floating-point values from low quadword of xmm1 to m64.
VEX.128.OF.WIG 13/r VMOVLPS m64, xmm1	C	V/V	AVX	Move two packed single-precision floating-point values from low quadword of xmm1 to m64.
EVEX.128.OF.W0 13/r VMOVLPS m64, xmm1	E	V/V	AVX512F	Move two packed single-precision floating-point values from low quadword of xmm1 to m64.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	NA	ModRM:r/m (w)	ModRM:reg (r)	NA	NA
D	Tuple2	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
E	Tuple2	ModRM:r/m (w)	ModRM:reg (r)	NA	NA

Description

This instruction cannot be used for register to register or memory to memory moves.

128-bit Legacy SSE load:

Moves two packed single-precision floating-point values from the source 64-bit memory operand and stores them in the low 64-bits of the destination XMM register. The upper 64bits of the XMM register are preserved. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding destination register are preserved.

VEX.128 & EVEX encoded load:

Loads two packed single-precision floating-point values from the source 64-bit memory operand (the third operand), merges them with the upper 64-bits of the first source operand (the second operand), and stores them in the low 128-bits of the destination register (the first operand). Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding destination register are zeroed.

128-bit store:

Loads two packed single-precision floating-point values from the low 64-bits of the XMM register source (second operand) to the 64-bit memory location (first operand).

Note: VMOVLPS (store) (VEX.128.OF 13 /r) is legal and has the same behavior as the existing OF 13 store. For VMOVLPS (store) VEX.vvvv and EVEX.vvvv are reserved and must be 1111b otherwise instruction will #UD.

If VMOVLPS is encoded with VEX.L or EVEX.L'L= 1, an attempt to execute the instruction encoded with VEX.L or EVEX.L'L= 1 will cause an #UD exception.

MOVNTDQ—Store Packed Integers Using Non-Temporal Hint

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F E7 /r MOVNTDQ m128, xmm1	A	V/V	SSE2	Move packed integer values in xmm1 to m128 using non-temporal hint.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG E7 /r VMOVNTDQ m128, xmm1	A	V/V	AVX	Move packed integer values in xmm1 to m128 using non-temporal hint.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG E7 /r VMOVNTDQ m256, ymm1	A	V/V	AVX	Move packed integer values in ymm1 to m256 using non-temporal hint.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W0 E7 /r VMOVNTDQ m128, xmm1	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Move packed integer values in xmm1 to m128 using non-temporal hint.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W0 E7 /r VMOVNTDQ m256, ymm1	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Move packed integer values in zmm1 to m256 using non-temporal hint.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W0 E7 /r VMOVNTDQ m512, zmm1	B	V/V	AVX512F	Move packed integer values in zmm1 to m512 using non-temporal hint.

Instruction Operand Encoding¹

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:r/m (w)	ModRM:reg (r)	NA	NA
B	Full Mem	ModRM:r/m (w)	ModRM:reg (r)	NA	NA

Description

Moves the packed integers in the source operand (second operand) to the destination operand (first operand) using a non-temporal hint to prevent caching of the data during the write to memory. The source operand is an XMM register, YMM register or ZMM register, which is assumed to contain integer data (packed bytes, words, double-words, or quadwords). The destination operand is a 128-bit, 256-bit or 512-bit memory location. The memory operand must be aligned on a 16-byte (128-bit version), 32-byte (VEX.256 encoded version) or 64-byte (512-bit version) boundary otherwise a general-protection exception (#GP) will be generated.

The non-temporal hint is implemented by using a write combining (WC) memory type protocol when writing the data to memory. Using this protocol, the processor does not write the data into the cache hierarchy, nor does it fetch the corresponding cache line from memory into the cache hierarchy. The memory type of the region being written to can override the non-temporal hint, if the memory address specified for the non-temporal store is in an uncacheable (UC) or write protected (WP) memory region. For more information on non-temporal stores, see “Caching of Temporal vs. Non-Temporal Data” in Chapter 10 in the IA-32 Intel Architecture Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 1.

Because the WC protocol uses a weakly-ordered memory consistency model, a fencing operation implemented with the SFENCE or MFENCE instruction should be used in conjunction with VMOVNTDQ instructions if multiple processors might use different memory types to read/write the destination memory locations.

Note: VEX.vvvv and EVEX.vvvv are reserved and must be 1111b, VEX.L must be 0; otherwise instructions will #UD.

Operation

VMOVNTDQ(EVEX encoded versions)

VL = 128, 256, 512

DEST[VL-1:0] ← SRC[VL-1:0]

DEST[MAXVL-1:VL] ← 0

¹ ModRM.MOD != 011B

MOVNTDQ (Legacy and VEX versions)

DEST ← SRC

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

VMOVNTDQ void _mm512_stream_si512(void * p, __m512i a);

VMOVNTDQ void _mm256_stream_si256 (__m256i * p, __m256i a);

MOVNTDQ void _mm_stream_si128 (__m128i * p, __m128i a);

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

Non-EVEX-encoded instruction, see Exceptions Type 1.SSE2;

EVEX-encoded instruction, see Exceptions Type E1NF.

#UD If VEX.vvvv != 1111B or EVEX.vvvv != 1111B.

MOVNTDQA—Load Double Quadword Non-Temporal Aligned Hint

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 38 2A /r MOVNTDQA xmm1, m128	A	V/V	SSE4_1	Move double quadword from m128 to xmm1 using non-temporal hint if WC memory type.
VEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 2A /r VMOVNTDQA xmm1, m128	A	V/V	AVX	Move double quadword from m128 to xmm using non-temporal hint if WC memory type.
VEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 2A /r VMOVNTDQA ymm1, m256	A	V/V	AVX2	Move 256-bit data from m256 to ymm using non-temporal hint if WC memory type.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 2A /r VMOVNTDQA xmm1, m128	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Move 128-bit data from m128 to xmm using non-temporal hint if WC memory type.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 2A /r VMOVNTDQA ymm1, m256	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Move 256-bit data from m256 to ymm using non-temporal hint if WC memory type.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 2A /r VMOVNTDQA zmm1, m512	B	V/V	AVX512F	Move 512-bit data from m512 to zmm using non-temporal hint if WC memory type.

Instruction Operand Encoding¹

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA

Description

MOVNTDQA loads a double quadword from the source operand (second operand) to the destination operand (first operand) using a non-temporal hint if the memory source is WC (write combining) memory type. For WC memory type, the nontemporal hint may be implemented by loading a temporary internal buffer with the equivalent of an aligned cache line without filling this data to the cache. Any memory-type aliased lines in the cache will be snooped and flushed. Subsequent MOVNTDQA reads to unread portions of the WC cache line will receive data from the temporary internal buffer if data is available. The temporary internal buffer may be flushed by the processor at any time for any reason, for example:

- A load operation other than a MOVNTDQA which references memory already resident in a temporary internal buffer.
- A non-WC reference to memory already resident in a temporary internal buffer.
- Interleaving of reads and writes to a single temporary internal buffer.
- Repeated (V)MOVNTDQA loads of a particular 16-byte item in a streaming line.
- Certain micro-architectural conditions including resource shortages, detection of a mis-speculation condition, and various fault conditions

The non-temporal hint is implemented by using a write combining (WC) memory type protocol when reading the data from memory. Using this protocol, the processor

does not read the data into the cache hierarchy, nor does it fetch the corresponding cache line from memory into the cache hierarchy. The memory type of the region being read can override the non-temporal hint, if the memory address specified for the non-temporal read is not a WC memory region. Information on non-temporal reads and writes can be found in “Caching of Temporal vs. Non-Temporal Data” in Chapter 10 in the Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architecture Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A.

Because the WC protocol uses a weakly-ordered memory consistency model, a fencing operation implemented with a MFENCE instruction should be used in conjunction with MOVNTDQA instructions if multiple processors might use different memory types for the referenced memory locations or to synchronize reads of a processor with writes by other agents in the system. A processor’s implementation of the streaming load hint does not override the effective memory type, but the implementation of the hint is processor dependent. For example, a processor implementa-

¹ ModRM.MOD != 011B

tion may choose to ignore the hint and process the instruction as a normal MOVNDQA for any memory type. Alternatively, another implementation may optimize cache reads generated by MOVNTDQA on WB memory type to reduce cache evictions.

The 128-bit (V)MOVNTDQA addresses must be 16-byte aligned or the instruction will cause a #GP.

The 256-bit VMOVNTDQA addresses must be 32-byte aligned or the instruction will cause a #GP.

The 512-bit VMOVNTDQA addresses must be 64-byte aligned or the instruction will cause a #GP.

Operation

MOVNTDQA (128bit- Legacy SSE form)

DEST ← SRC

DEST[MAXVL-1:128] (Unmodified)

VMOVNTDQA (VEX.128 and EVEX.128 encoded form)

DEST ← SRC

DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0

VMOVNTDQA (VEX.256 and EVEX.256 encoded forms)

DEST[255:0] ← SRC[255:0]

DEST[MAXVL-1:256] ← 0

VMOVNTDQA (EVEX.512 encoded form)

DEST[511:0] ← SRC[511:0]

DEST[MAXVL-1:512] ← 0

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

VMOVNTDQA __m512i _mm512_stream_load_si512(__m512i const* p);

MOVNTDQA __m128i _mm_stream_load_si128(const __m128i *p);

VMOVNTDQA __m256i _mm256_stream_load_si256(__m256i const* p);

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

Non-EVEX-encoded instruction, see Exceptions Type1;

EVEX-encoded instruction, see Exceptions Type E1NF.

#UD If VEX.vvvv != 1111B or EVEX.vvvv != 1111B.

MOVNTPD—Store Packed Double-Precision Floating-Point Values Using Non-Temporal Hint

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 2B /r MOVNTPD m128, xmm1	A	V/V	SSE2	Move packed double-precision values in xmm1 to m128 using non-temporal hint.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 2B /r VMOVNTPD m128, xmm1	A	V/V	AVX	Move packed double-precision values in xmm1 to m128 using non-temporal hint.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG 2B /r VMOVNTPD m256, ymm1	A	V/V	AVX	Move packed double-precision values in ymm1 to m256 using non-temporal hint.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 2B /r VMOVNTPD m128, xmm1	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Move packed double-precision values in xmm1 to m128 using non-temporal hint.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W1 2B /r VMOVNTPD m256, ymm1	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Move packed double-precision values in ymm1 to m256 using non-temporal hint.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W1 2B /r VMOVNTPD m512, zmm1	B	V/V	AVX512F	Move packed double-precision values in zmm1 to m512 using non-temporal hint.

Instruction Operand Encoding¹

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:r/m (w)	ModRM:reg (r)	NA	NA
B	Full Mem	ModRM:r/m (w)	ModRM:reg (r)	NA	NA

Description

Moves the packed double-precision floating-point values in the source operand (second operand) to the destination operand (first operand) using a non-temporal hint to prevent caching of the data during the write to memory. The source operand is an XMM register, YMM register or ZMM register, which is assumed to contain packed double-precision, floating-pointing data. The destination operand is a 128-bit, 256-bit or 512-bit memory location. The memory operand must be aligned on a 16-byte (128-bit version), 32-byte (VEX.256 encoded version) or 64-byte (EVEX.512 encoded version) boundary otherwise a general-protection exception (#GP) will be generated.

The non-temporal hint is implemented by using a write combining (WC) memory type protocol when writing the data to memory. Using this protocol, the processor does not write the data into the cache hierarchy, nor does it fetch the corresponding cache line from memory into the cache hierarchy. The memory type of the region being written to can override the non-temporal hint, if the memory address specified for the non-temporal store is in an uncacheable (UC) or write protected (WP) memory region. For more information on non-temporal stores, see “Caching of Temporal vs. Non-Temporal Data” in Chapter 10 in the IA-32 Intel Architecture Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 1.

Because the WC protocol uses a weakly-ordered memory consistency model, a fencing operation implemented with the SFENCE or MFENCE instruction should be used in conjunction with MOVNTPD instructions if multiple processors might use different memory types to read/write the destination memory locations.

Note: VEX.vvvv and EVEX.vvvv are reserved and must be 1111b, VEX.L must be 0; otherwise instructions will #UD.

Operation**VMOVNTPD (EVEX encoded versions)**

VL = 128, 256, 512

DEST[VL-1:0] ← SRC[VL-1:0]

DEST[MAXVL-1:VL] ← 0

¹ ModRM.MOD != 011B

MOVNTPD (Legacy and VEX versions)

DEST ← SRC

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

VMOVNTPD void _mm512_stream_pd(double * p, __m512d a);

VMOVNTPD void _mm256_stream_pd (double * p, __m256d a);

MOVNTPD void _mm_stream_pd (double * p, __m128d a);

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

Non-EVEX-encoded instruction, see Exceptions Type1.SSE2;

EVEX-encoded instruction, see Exceptions Type E1NF.

#UD If VEX.vvvv != 1111B or EVEX.vvvv != 1111B.

MOVNTPS—Store Packed Single-Precision Floating-Point Values Using Non-Temporal Hint

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F 2B /r MOVNTPS m128, xmm1	A	V/V	SSE	Move packed single-precision values xmm1 to mem using non-temporal hint.
VEX.128.0F.WIG 2B /r VMOVNTPS m128, xmm1	A	V/V	AVX	Move packed single-precision values xmm1 to mem using non-temporal hint.
VEX.256.0F.WIG 2B /r VMOVNTPS m256, ymm1	A	V/V	AVX	Move packed single-precision values ymm1 to mem using non-temporal hint.
EVEX.128.0F.W0 2B /r VMOVNTPS m128, xmm1	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Move packed single-precision values in xmm1 to m128 using non-temporal hint.
EVEX.256.0F.W0 2B /r VMOVNTPS m256, ymm1	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Move packed single-precision values in ymm1 to m256 using non-temporal hint.
EVEX.512.0F.W0 2B /r VMOVNTPS m512, zmm1	B	V/V	AVX512F	Move packed single-precision values in zmm1 to m512 using non-temporal hint.

Instruction Operand Encoding¹

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:r/m (w)	ModRM:reg (r)	NA	NA
B	Full Mem	ModRM:r/m (w)	ModRM:reg (r)	NA	NA

Description

Moves the packed single-precision floating-point values in the source operand (second operand) to the destination operand (first operand) using a non-temporal hint to prevent caching of the data during the write to memory. The source operand is an XMM register, YMM register or ZMM register, which is assumed to contain packed single-precision, floating-pointing. The destination operand is a 128-bit, 256-bit or 512-bit memory location. The memory operand must be aligned on a 16-byte (128-bit version), 32-byte (VEX.256 encoded version) or 64-byte (EVEX.512 encoded version) boundary otherwise a general-protection exception (#GP) will be generated.

The non-temporal hint is implemented by using a write combining (WC) memory type protocol when writing the data to memory. Using this protocol, the processor does not write the data into the cache hierarchy, nor does it fetch the corresponding cache line from memory into the cache hierarchy. The memory type of the region being written to can override the non-temporal hint, if the memory address specified for the non-temporal store is in an uncacheable (UC) or write protected (WP) memory region. For more information on non-temporal stores, see “Caching of Temporal vs. Non-Temporal Data” in Chapter 10 in the IA-32 Intel Architecture Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 1.

Because the WC protocol uses a weakly-ordered memory consistency model, a fencing operation implemented with the SFENCE or MFENCE instruction should be used in conjunction with MOVNTPS instructions if multiple processors might use different memory types to read/write the destination memory locations.

Note: VEX.vvvv and EVEX.vvvv are reserved and must be 1111b otherwise instructions will #UD.

Operation**VMOVNTPS (EVEX encoded versions)**

VL = 128, 256, 512

DEST[VL-1:0] ← SRC[VL-1:0]

DEST[MAXVL-1:VL] ← 0

1. ModRM.MOD != 011B

MOVNTPS

DEST ← SRC

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

VMOVNTPS void _mm512_stream_ps(float * p, __m512d a);

MOVNTPS void _mm_stream_ps (float * p, __m128d a);

VMOVNTPS void _mm256_stream_ps (float * p, __m256 a);

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

Non-EVEX-encoded instruction, see Exceptions Type 1.SSE; additionally

EVEX-encoded instruction, see Exceptions Type E1NF.

#UD If VEX.vvvv != 1111B or EVEX.vvvv != 1111B.

MOVQ—Move Quadword

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32-bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F 6F /r MOVQ <i>mm, mm/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Move quadword from <i>mm/m64</i> to <i>mm</i> .
NP 0F 7F /r MOVQ <i>mm/m64, mm</i>	B	V/V	MMX	Move quadword from <i>mm</i> to <i>mm/m64</i> .
F3 0F 7E /r MOVQ <i>xmm1, xmm2/m64</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Move quadword from <i>xmm2/mem64</i> to <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.F3.0F.WIG 7E /r VMOVQ <i>xmm1, xmm2/m64</i>	A	V/V	AVX	Move quadword from <i>xmm2</i> to <i>xmm1</i> .
EVEX.128.F3.0F.W1 7E /r VMOVQ <i>xmm1, xmm2/m64</i>	C	V/V	AVX512F	Move quadword from <i>xmm2/m64</i> to <i>xmm1</i> .
66 0F D6 /r MOVQ <i>xmm2/m64, xmm1</i>	B	V/V	SSE2	Move quadword from <i>xmm1</i> to <i>xmm2/mem64</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG D6 /r VMOVQ <i>xmm1/m64, xmm2</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Move quadword from <i>xmm2</i> register to <i>xmm1/m64</i> .
EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 D6 /r VMOVQ <i>xmm1/m64, xmm2</i>	D	V/V	AVX512F	Move quadword from <i>xmm2</i> register to <i>xmm1/m64</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:r/m (w)	ModRM:reg (r)	NA	NA
C	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
D	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:r/m (w)	ModRM:reg (r)	NA	NA

Description

Copies a quadword from the source operand (second operand) to the destination operand (first operand). The source and destination operands can be MMX technology registers, XMM registers, or 64-bit memory locations. This instruction can be used to move a quadword between two MMX technology registers or between an MMX technology register and a 64-bit memory location, or to move data between two XMM registers or between an XMM register and a 64-bit memory location. The instruction cannot be used to transfer data between memory locations.

When the source operand is an XMM register, the low quadword is moved; when the destination operand is an XMM register, the quadword is stored to the low quadword of the register, and the high quadword is cleared to all 0s.

In 64-bit mode and if not encoded using VEX/EVEX, use of the REX prefix in the form of REX.R permits this instruction to access additional registers (XMM8-XMM15).

Note: VEX.vvvv and EVEX.vvvv are reserved and must be 1111b, otherwise instructions will #UD.

If VMOVQ is encoded with VEX.L= 1, an attempt to execute the instruction encoded with VEX.L= 1 will cause an #UD exception.

Operation

MOVQ instruction when operating on MMX technology registers and memory locations

DEST ← SRC;

MOVQ instruction when source and destination operands are XMM registers

DEST[63:0] ← SRC[63:0];

DEST[127:64] ← 0000000000000000H;

MOVQ instruction when source operand is XMM register and destination

operand is memory location:

DEST ← SRC[63:0];

MOVQ instruction when source operand is memory location and destination

operand is XMM register:

DEST[63:0] ← SRC;

DEST[127:64] ← 0000000000000000H;

VMOVQ (VEX.128.F3.0F 7E) with XMM register source and destination

DEST[63:0] ← SRC[63:0]

DEST[MAXVL-1:64] ← 0

VMOVQ (VEX.128.66.0F D6) with XMM register source and destination

DEST[63:0] ← SRC[63:0]

DEST[MAXVL-1:64] ← 0

VMOVQ (7E - EVEX encoded version) with XMM register source and destination

DEST[63:0] ← SRC[63:0]

DEST[MAXVL-1:64] ← 0

VMOVQ (D6 - EVEX encoded version) with XMM register source and destination

DEST[63:0] ← SRC[63:0]

DEST[MAXVL-1:64] ← 0

VMOVQ (7E) with memory source

DEST[63:0] ← SRC[63:0]

DEST[MAXVL-1:64] ← 0

VMOVQ (7E - EVEX encoded version) with memory source

DEST[63:0] ← SRC[63:0]

DEST[:MAXVL-1:64] ← 0

VMOVQ (D6) with memory dest

DEST[63:0] ← SRC2[63:0]

Flags Affected

None.

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

VMOVQ __m128i _mm_loadu_si64(void * s);

VMOVQ void _mm_storeu_si64(void * d, __m128i s);

MOVQ m128i _mm_move_epi64(__m128i a)

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

See Table 22-8, "Exception Conditions for Legacy SIMD/MMX Instructions without FP Exception," in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3B*.

MOVSD—Move or Merge Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
F2 0F 10 /r MOVSD xmm1, xmm2	A	V/V	SSE2	Move scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm2 to xmm1 register.
F2 0F 10 /r MOVSD xmm1, m64	A	V/V	SSE2	Load scalar double-precision floating-point value from m64 to xmm1 register.
F2 0F 11 /r MOVSD xmm1/m64, xmm2	C	V/V	SSE2	Move scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm2 register to xmm1/m64.
VEX.LIG.F2.0F.WIG 10 /r VMOVSD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3	B	V/V	AVX	Merge scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm2 and xmm3 to xmm1 register.
VEX.LIG.F2.0F.WIG 10 /r VMOVSD xmm1, m64	D	V/V	AVX	Load scalar double-precision floating-point value from m64 to xmm1 register.
VEX.LIG.F2.0F.WIG 11 /r VMOVSD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3	E	V/V	AVX	Merge scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm2 and xmm3 registers to xmm1.
VEX.LIG.F2.0F.WIG 11 /r VMOVSD m64, xmm1	C	V/V	AVX	Store scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm1 register to m64.
EVEX.LIG.F2.0F.W1 10 /r VMOVSD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3	B	V/V	AVX512F	Merge scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm2 and xmm3 registers to xmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.LIG.F2.0F.W1 10 /r VMOVSD xmm1 {k1}{z}, m64	F	V/V	AVX512F	Load scalar double-precision floating-point value from m64 to xmm1 register under writemask k1.
EVEX.LIG.F2.0F.W1 11 /r VMOVSD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3	E	V/V	AVX512F	Merge scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm2 and xmm3 registers to xmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.LIG.F2.0F.W1 11 /r VMOVSD m64 {k1}, xmm1	G	V/V	AVX512F	Store scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm1 register to m64 under writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	NA	ModRM:r/m (w)	ModRM:reg (r)	NA	NA
D	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
E	NA	ModRM:r/m (w)	vvvv (r)	ModRM:reg (r)	NA
F	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
G	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:r/m (w)	ModRM:reg (r)	NA	NA

Description

Moves a scalar double-precision floating-point value from the source operand (second operand) to the destination operand (first operand). The source and destination operands can be XMM registers or 64-bit memory locations. This instruction can be used to move a double-precision floating-point value to and from the low quadword of an XMM register and a 64-bit memory location, or to move a double-precision floating-point value between the low quadwords of two XMM registers. The instruction cannot be used to transfer data between memory locations.

Legacy version: When the source and destination operands are XMM registers, bits MAXVL:64 of the destination operand remains unchanged. When the source operand is a memory location and destination operand is an XMM registers, the quadword at bits 127:64 of the destination operand is cleared to all 0s, bits MAXVL:128 of the destination operand remains unchanged.

VEX and EVEX encoded register-register syntax: Moves a scalar double-precision floating-point value from the second source operand (the third operand) to the low quadword element of the destination operand (the first operand). Bits 127:64 of the destination operand are copied from the first source operand (the second operand). Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding destination register are zeroed.

VEX and EVEX encoded memory store syntax: When the source operand is a memory location and destination operand is an XMM registers, bits MAXVL:64 of the destination operand is cleared to all 0s.

EVEX encoded versions: The low quadword of the destination is updated according to the writemask.

Note: For VMOVSD (memory store and load forms), VEX.vvvv and EVEX.vvvv are reserved and must be 1111b, otherwise instruction will #UD.

Operation**VMOVSD (EVEX.LIG.F2.0F 10 /r: VMOVSD xmm1, m64 with support for 32 registers)**

IF k1[0] or *no writemask*

THEN DEST[63:0] ← SRC[63:0]

ELSE

IF *merging-masking* ; merging-masking

THEN *DEST[63:0] remains unchanged*

ELSE ; zeroing-masking

THEN DEST[63:0] ← 0

FI;

FI;

DEST[MAXVL-1:64] ← 0

VMOVSD (EVEX.LIG.F2.0F 11 /r: VMOVSD m64, xmm1 with support for 32 registers)

IF k1[0] or *no writemask*

THEN DEST[63:0] ← SRC[63:0]

ELSE *DEST[63:0] remains unchanged* ; merging-masking

FI;

VMOVSD (EVEX.LIG.F2.0F 11 /r: VMOVSD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3)

IF k1[0] or *no writemask*

THEN DEST[63:0] ← SRC2[63:0]

ELSE

IF *merging-masking* ; merging-masking

THEN *DEST[63:0] remains unchanged*

ELSE ; zeroing-masking

THEN DEST[63:0] ← 0

FI;

FI;

DEST[127:64] ← SRC1[127:64]

DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0

MOVSD (128-bit Legacy SSE version: MOVSD XMM1, XMM2)

DEST[63:0] ← SRC[63:0]
 DEST[MAXVL-1:64] (Unmodified)

VMOVSD (VEX.128.F2.0F 11 /r: VMOVSD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3)

DEST[63:0] ← SRC2[63:0]
 DEST[127:64] ← SRC1[127:64]
 DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0

VMOVSD (VEX.128.F2.0F 10 /r: VMOVSD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3)

DEST[63:0] ← SRC2[63:0]
 DEST[127:64] ← SRC1[127:64]
 DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0

VMOVSD (VEX.128.F2.0F 10 /r: VMOVSD xmm1, m64)

DEST[63:0] ← SRC[63:0]
 DEST[MAXVL-1:64] ← 0

MOVSD/VMOVSD (128-bit versions: MOVSD m64, xmm1 or VMOVSD m64, xmm1)

DEST[63:0] ← SRC[63:0]

MOVSD (128-bit Legacy SSE version: MOVSD XMM1, m64)

DEST[63:0] ← SRC[63:0]
 DEST[127:64] ← 0
 DEST[MAXVL-1:128] (Unmodified)

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

```
VMOVSD __m128d __mm_mask_load_sd(__m128d s, __mmask8 k, double * p);
VMOVSD __m128d __mm_maskz_load_sd(__mmask8 k, double * p);
VMOVSD __m128d __mm_mask_move_sd(__m128d sh, __mmask8 k, __m128d sl, __m128d a);
VMOVSD __m128d __mm_maskz_move_sd(__mmask8 k, __m128d s, __m128d a);
VMOVSD void __mm_mask_store_sd(double * p, __mmask8 k, __m128d s);
MOVSD __m128d __mm_load_sd (double *p)
MOVSD void __mm_store_sd (double *p, __m128d a)
MOVSD __m128d __mm_move_sd ( __m128d a, __m128d b)
```

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

Non-EVEX-encoded instruction, see Exceptions Type 5; additionally

#UD If VEX.vvvv != 1111B.

EVEX-encoded instruction, see Exceptions Type E10.

MOVSS—Move or Merge Scalar Single-Precision Floating-Point Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
F3 0F 10 /r MOVSS xmm1, xmm2	A	V/V	SSE	Merge scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm2 to xmm1 register.
F3 0F 10 /r MOVSS xmm1, m32	A	V/V	SSE	Load scalar single-precision floating-point value from m32 to xmm1 register.
VEX.LIG.F3.0F.WIG 10 /r VMOVSS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3	B	V/V	AVX	Merge scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm2 and xmm3 to xmm1 register
VEX.LIG.F3.0F.WIG 10 /r VMOVSS xmm1, m32	D	V/V	AVX	Load scalar single-precision floating-point value from m32 to xmm1 register.
F3 0F 11 /r MOVSS xmm2/m32, xmm1	C	V/V	SSE	Move scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm1 register to xmm2/m32.
VEX.LIG.F3.0F.WIG 11 /r VMOVSS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3	E	V/V	AVX	Move scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm2 and xmm3 to xmm1 register.
VEX.LIG.F3.0F.WIG 11 /r VMOVSS m32, xmm1	C	V/V	AVX	Move scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm1 register to m32.
EVEX.LIG.F3.0F.W0 10 /r VMOVSS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3	B	V/V	AVX512F	Move scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm2 and xmm3 to xmm1 register under writemask k1.
EVEX.LIG.F3.0F.W0 10 /r VMOVSS xmm1 {k1}{z}, m32	F	V/V	AVX512F	Move scalar single-precision floating-point values from m32 to xmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.LIG.F3.0F.W0 11 /r VMOVSS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3	E	V/V	AVX512F	Move scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm2 and xmm3 to xmm1 register under writemask k1.
EVEX.LIG.F3.0F.W0 11 /r VMOVSS m32 {k1}, xmm1	G	V/V	AVX512F	Move scalar single-precision floating-point values from xmm1 to m32 under writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	NA	ModRM:r/m (w)	ModRM:reg (r)	NA	NA
D	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
E	NA	ModRM:r/m (w)	vvvv (r)	ModRM:reg (r)	NA
F	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
G	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:r/m (w)	ModRM:reg (r)	NA	NA

Description

Moves a scalar single-precision floating-point value from the source operand (second operand) to the destination operand (first operand). The source and destination operands can be XMM registers or 32-bit memory locations. This instruction can be used to move a single-precision floating-point value to and from the low doubleword of an XMM register and a 32-bit memory location, or to move a single-precision floating-point value between the low doublewords of two XMM registers. The instruction cannot be used to transfer data between memory locations.

Legacy version: When the source and destination operands are XMM registers, bits (MAXVL-1:32) of the corresponding destination register are unmodified. When the source operand is a memory location and destination operand is an XMM registers, Bits (127:32) of the destination operand is cleared to all 0s, bits MAXVL:128 of the destination operand remains unchanged.

VEX and EVEX encoded register-register syntax: Moves a scalar single-precision floating-point value from the second source operand (the third operand) to the low doubleword element of the destination operand (the first operand). Bits 127:32 of the destination operand are copied from the first source operand (the second operand). Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding destination register are zeroed.

VEX and EVEX encoded memory load syntax: When the source operand is a memory location and destination operand is an XMM registers, bits MAXVL:32 of the destination operand is cleared to all 0s.

EVEX encoded versions: The low doubleword of the destination is updated according to the writemask.

Note: For memory store form instruction “VMOVSS m32, xmm1”, VEX.vvvv is reserved and must be 1111b otherwise instruction will #UD. For memory store form instruction “VMOVSS mv {k1}, xmm1”, EVEX.vvvv is reserved and must be 1111b otherwise instruction will #UD.

Software should ensure VMOVSS is encoded with VEX.L=0. Encoding VMOVSS with VEX.L=1 may encounter unpredictable behavior across different processor generations.

Operation

VMOVSS (EVEX.LIG.F3.OF.W0 11 /r when the source operand is memory and the destination is an XMM register)

IF k1[0] or *no writemask*

THEN DEST[31:0] ← SRC[31:0]

ELSE

IF *merging-masking* ; merging-masking

THEN *DEST[31:0] remains unchanged*

ELSE ; zeroing-masking

THEN DEST[31:0] ← 0

FI;

FI;

DEST[MAXVL-1:32] ← 0

VMOVSS (EVEX.LIG.F3.OF.W0 10 /r when the source operand is an XMM register and the destination is memory)

IF k1[0] or *no writemask*

THEN DEST[31:0] ← SRC[31:0]

ELSE *DEST[31:0] remains unchanged* ; merging-masking

FI;

VMOVSS (EVEX.LIG.F3.0F.W0 10/11 /r where the source and destination are XMM registers)

```

IF k1[0] or *no writemask*
  THEN  DEST[31:0] ← SRC2[31:0]
  ELSE
    IF *merging-masking*           ; merging-masking
      THEN *DEST[31:0] remains unchanged*
    ELSE                             ; zeroing-masking
      THEN DEST[31:0] ← 0
  FI;
FI;
DEST[127:32] ← SRC1[127:32]
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0

```

MOVSS (Legacy SSE version when the source and destination operands are both XMM registers)

```

DEST[31:0] ← SRC[31:0]
DEST[MAXVL-1:32] (Unmodified)

```

VMOVSS (VEX.128.F3.0F 11 /r where the destination is an XMM register)

```

DEST[31:0] ← SRC2[31:0]
DEST[127:32] ← SRC1[127:32]
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0

```

VMOVSS (VEX.128.F3.0F 10 /r where the source and destination are XMM registers)

```

DEST[31:0] ← SRC2[31:0]
DEST[127:32] ← SRC1[127:32]
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0

```

VMOVSS (VEX.128.F3.0F 10 /r when the source operand is memory and the destination is an XMM register)

```

DEST[31:0] ← SRC[31:0]
DEST[MAXVL-1:32] ← 0

```

MOVSS/VMOVSS (when the source operand is an XMM register and the destination is memory)

```

DEST[31:0] ← SRC[31:0]

```

MOVSS (Legacy SSE version when the source operand is memory and the destination is an XMM register)

```

DEST[31:0] ← SRC[31:0]
DEST[127:32] ← 0
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] (Unmodified)

```

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

```

VMOVSS __m128 __mm_mask_load_ss(__m128 s, __mmask8 k, float * p);
VMOVSS __m128 __mm_maskz_load_ss(__mmask8 k, float * p);
VMOVSS __m128 __mm_mask_move_ss(__m128 sh, __mmask8 k, __m128 sl, __m128 a);
VMOVSS __m128 __mm_maskz_move_ss(__mmask8 k, __m128 s, __m128 a);
VMOVSS void __mm_mask_store_ss(float * p, __mmask8 k, __m128 a);
MOVSS __m128 __mm_load_ss(float * p)
MOVSS void __mm_store_ss(float * p, __m128 a)
MOVSS __m128 __mm_move_ss(__m128 a, __m128 b)

```

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

Non-EVEX-encoded instruction, see Exceptions Type 5; additionally

#UD If VEX.vvvv != 1111B.

EVEX-encoded instruction, see Exceptions Type E10.

MPSADBW – Compute Multiple Packed Sums of Absolute Difference

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32-bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 3A 42 /r ib MPSADBW <i>xmm1, xmm2/m128, imm8</i>	RMI	V/V	SSE4_1	Sums absolute 8-bit integer difference of adjacent groups of 4 byte integers in <i>xmm1</i> and <i>xmm2/m128</i> and writes the results in <i>xmm1</i> . Starting offsets within <i>xmm1</i> and <i>xmm2/m128</i> are determined by <i>imm8</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F3A.WIG 42 /r ib VMPSADBW <i>xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128, imm8</i>	RVMI	V/V	AVX	Sums absolute 8-bit integer difference of adjacent groups of 4 byte integers in <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/m128</i> and writes the results in <i>xmm1</i> . Starting offsets within <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/m128</i> are determined by <i>imm8</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F3A.WIG 42 /r ib VMPSADBW <i>ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256, imm8</i>	RVMI	V/V	AVX2	Sums absolute 8-bit integer difference of adjacent groups of 4 byte integers in <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/m256</i> and writes the results in <i>ymm1</i> . Starting offsets within <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/m256</i> are determined by <i>imm8</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RMI	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	imm8	NA
RVMI	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	imm8

Description

(V)MPSADBW calculates packed word results of sum-absolute-difference (SAD) of unsigned bytes from two blocks of 32-bit dword elements, using two select fields in the immediate byte to select the offsets of the two blocks within the first source operand and the second operand. Packed SAD word results are calculated within each 128-bit lane. Each SAD word result is calculated between a stationary block_2 (whose offset within the second source operand is selected by a two bit select control, multiplied by 32 bits) and a sliding block_1 at consecutive byte-granular position within the first source operand. The offset of the first 32-bit block of block_1 is selectable using a one bit select control, multiplied by 32 bits.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: Imm8[1:0]*32 specifies the bit offset of block_2 within the second source operand. Imm[2]*32 specifies the initial bit offset of the block_1 within the first source operand. The first source operand and destination operand are the same. The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. The second source operand is either an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged. Bits 7:3 of the immediate byte are ignored.

VEX.128 encoded version: Imm8[1:0]*32 specifies the bit offset of block_2 within the second source operand. Imm[2]*32 specifies the initial bit offset of the block_1 within the first source operand. The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. The second source operand is either an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (127:128) of the corresponding YMM register are zeroed. Bits 7:3 of the immediate byte are ignored.

VEX.256 encoded version: The sum-absolute-difference (SAD) operation is repeated 8 times for MPSADW between the same block_2 (fixed offset within the second source operand) and a variable block_1 (offset is shifted by 8 bits for each SAD operation) in the first source operand. Each 16-bit result of eight SAD operations between block_2 and block_1 is written to the respective word in the lower 128 bits of the destination operand.

Additionally, VMPSADBW performs another eight SAD operations on block_4 of the second source operand and block_3 of the first source operand. (Imm8[4:3]*32 + 128) specifies the bit offset of block_4 within the second source operand. (Imm[5]*32+128) specifies the initial bit offset of the block_3 within the first source operand. Each 16-bit result of eight SAD operations between block_4 and block_3 is written to the respective word in the upper 128 bits of the destination operand.

MULPD—Multiply Packed Double-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 59 /r MULPD xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE2	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values in xmm2/m128 with xmm1 and store result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 59 /r VMULPD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values in xmm3/m128 with xmm2 and store result in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG 59 /r VMULPD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values in ymm3/m256 with ymm2 and store result in ymm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 59 /r VMULPD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm3/m128/m64bcst to xmm2 and store result in xmm1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W1 59 /r VMULPD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm3/m256/m64bcst to ymm2 and store result in ymm1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W1 59 /r VMULPD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst{er}	C	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values in zmm3/m512/m64bcst with zmm2 and store result in zmm1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from the first source operand with corresponding values in the second source operand, and stores the packed double-precision floating-point results in the destination operand.

EVEX encoded versions: The first source operand (the second operand) is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register conditionally updated with writemask k1.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand can be a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register. Bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding destination ZMM register are zeroed.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is a XMM register. The second source operand can be a XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is a XMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination YMM register destination are zeroed.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source can be an XMM register or an 128-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are unmodified.

MULPS—Multiply Packed Single-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F 59 /r MULPS xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values in xmm2/m128 with xmm1 and store result in xmm1.
VEX.128.0F.WIG 59 /r VMULPS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values in xmm3/m128 with xmm2 and store result in xmm1.
VEX.256.0F.WIG 59 /r VMULPS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values in ymm3/m256 with ymm2 and store result in ymm1.
EVEX.128.0F.W0 59 /r VMULPS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm3/m128/m32bcst to xmm2 and store result in xmm1.
EVEX.256.0F.W0 59 /r VMULPS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm3/m256/m32bcst to ymm2 and store result in ymm1.
EVEX.512.0F.W0 59 /r VMULPS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst {er}	C	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values in zmm3/m512/m32bcst with zmm2 and store result in zmm1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Multiply the packed single-precision floating-point values from the first source operand with the corresponding values in the second source operand, and stores the packed double-precision floating-point results in the destination operand.

EVEX encoded versions: The first source operand (the second operand) is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 32-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register conditionally updated with writemask k1.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand can be a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register. Bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding destination ZMM register are zeroed.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is a XMM register. The second source operand can be a XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is a XMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination YMM register destination are zeroed.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source can be an XMM register or an 128-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are unmodified.

MULSD—Multiply Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
F2 0F 59 /r MULSD xmm1,xmm2/m64	A	V/V	SSE2	Multiply the low double-precision floating-point value in xmm2/m64 by low double-precision floating-point value in xmm1.
VEX.LIG.F2.0F.WIG 59 /r VMULSD xmm1,xmm2, xmm3/m64	B	V/V	AVX	Multiply the low double-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m64 by low double-precision floating-point value in xmm2.
EVEX.LIG.F2.0F.W1 59 /r VMULSD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64 {er}	C	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply the low double-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m64 by low double-precision floating-point value in xmm2.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Multiplies the low double-precision floating-point value in the second source operand by the low double-precision floating-point value in the first source operand, and stores the double-precision floating-point result in the destination operand. The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 64-bit memory location. The first source operand and the destination operands are XMM registers.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source operand and the destination operand are the same. Bits (MAXVL-1:64) of the corresponding destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 and EVEX encoded version: The quadword at bits 127:64 of the destination operand is copied from the same bits of the first source operand. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination register are zeroed.

EVEX encoded version: The low quadword element of the destination operand is updated according to the writemask.

Software should ensure VMULSD is encoded with VEX.L=0. Encoding VMULSD with VEX.L=1 may encounter unpredictable behavior across different processor generations.

MULSS—Multiply Scalar Single-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
F3 0F 59 /r MULSS xmm1,xmm2/m32	A	V/V	SSE	Multiply the low single-precision floating-point value in xmm2/m32 by the low single-precision floating-point value in xmm1.
VEX.LIG.F3.0F.WIG 59 /r VMULSS xmm1,xmm2, xmm3/m32	B	V/V	AVX	Multiply the low single-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m32 by the low single-precision floating-point value in xmm2.
EVEX.LIG.F3.0F.WO 59 /r VMULSS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m32 {er}	C	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply the low single-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m32 by the low single-precision floating-point value in xmm2.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Multiplies the low single-precision floating-point value from the second source operand by the low single-precision floating-point value in the first source operand, and stores the single-precision floating-point result in the destination operand. The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 32-bit memory location. The first source operand and the destination operands are XMM registers.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source operand and the destination operand are the same. Bits (MAXVL-1:32) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 and EVEX encoded version: The first source operand is an xmm register encoded by VEX.vvvv. The three high-order doublewords of the destination operand are copied from the first source operand. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination register are zeroed.

EVEX encoded version: The low doubleword element of the destination operand is updated according to the writemask.

Software should ensure VMULSS is encoded with VEX.L=0. Encoding VMULSS with VEX.L=1 may encounter unpredictable behavior across different processor generations.

MULX – Unsigned Multiply Without Affecting Flags

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 -bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.LZ.F2.0F38.W0 F6 /r MULX <i>r32a, r32b, r/m32</i>	RVM	V/V	BMI2	Unsigned multiply of <i>r/m32</i> with EDX without affecting arithmetic flags.
VEX.LZ.F2.0F38.W1 F6 /r MULX <i>r64a, r64b, r/m64</i>	RVM	V/N.E.	BMI2	Unsigned multiply of <i>r/m64</i> with RDX without affecting arithmetic flags.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RVM	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	RDX/EDX is implied 64/32 bits source

Description

Performs an unsigned multiplication of the implicit source operand (EDX/RDX) and the specified source operand (the third operand) and stores the low half of the result in the second destination (second operand), the high half of the result in the first destination operand (first operand), without reading or writing the arithmetic flags. This enables efficient programming where the software can interleave add with carry operations and multiplications.

If the first and second operand are identical, it will contain the high half of the multiplication result.

This instruction is not supported in real mode and virtual-8086 mode. The operand size is always 32 bits if not in 64-bit mode. In 64-bit mode operand size 64 requires VEX.W1. VEX.W1 is ignored in non-64-bit modes. An attempt to execute this instruction with VEX.L not equal to 0 will cause #UD.

Operation

```
// DEST1: ModRM:reg
// DEST2: VEX.vvvv
IF (OperandSize = 32)
    SRC1 ← EDX;
    DEST2 ← (SRC1*SRC2)[31:0];
    DEST1 ← (SRC1*SRC2)[63:32];
ELSE IF (OperandSize = 64)
    SRC1 ← RDX;
    DEST2 ← (SRC1*SRC2)[63:0];
    DEST1 ← (SRC1*SRC2)[127:64];
FI
```

Flags Affected

None

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

Auto-generated from high-level language when possible.

```
unsigned int mulx_u32(unsigned int a, unsigned int b, unsigned int * hi);
```

```
unsigned __int64 mulx_u64(unsigned __int64 a, unsigned __int64 b, unsigned __int64 * hi);
```

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

- See Section 2.5.1, “Exception Conditions for VEX-Encoded GPR Instructions”, Table 2-29.

ORPD—Bitwise Logical OR of Packed Double Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 56/r ORPD xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE2	Return the bitwise logical OR of packed double-precision floating-point values in xmm1 and xmm2/mem.
VEX.128.66.0F 56 /r VORPD xmm1,xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Return the bitwise logical OR of packed double-precision floating-point values in xmm2 and xmm3/mem.
VEX.256.66.0F 56 /r VORPD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX	Return the bitwise logical OR of packed double-precision floating-point values in ymm2 and ymm3/mem.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 56 /r VORPD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512DQ	Return the bitwise logical OR of packed double-precision floating-point values in xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W1 56 /r VORPD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512DQ	Return the bitwise logical OR of packed double-precision floating-point values in ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W1 56 /r VORPD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512DQ	Return the bitwise logical OR of packed double-precision floating-point values in zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst subject to writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a bitwise logical OR of the two, four or eight packed double-precision floating-point values from the first source operand and the second source operand, and stores the result in the destination operand.

EVEX encoded versions: The first source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location, or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 32-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register conditionally updated with writemask k1.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand is a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is an XMM register. The second source operand is an XMM register or 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is an XMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source can be an XMM register or an 128-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding register destination are unmodified.

ORPS—Bitwise Logical OR of Packed Single Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F 56 /r ORPS xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE	Return the bitwise logical OR of packed single-precision floating-point values in xmm1 and xmm2/mem.
VEX.128.0F 56 /r VORPS xmm1,xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Return the bitwise logical OR of packed single-precision floating-point values in xmm2 and xmm3/mem.
VEX.256.0F 56 /r VORPS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX	Return the bitwise logical OR of packed single-precision floating-point values in ymm2 and ymm3/mem.
EVEX.128.0F.W0 56 /r VORPS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512DQ	Return the bitwise logical OR of packed single-precision floating-point values in xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.0F.W0 56 /r VORPS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512DQ	Return the bitwise logical OR of packed single-precision floating-point values in ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.0F.W0 56 /r VORPS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512DQ	Return the bitwise logical OR of packed single-precision floating-point values in zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst subject to writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a bitwise logical OR of the four, eight or sixteen packed single-precision floating-point values from the first source operand and the second source operand, and stores the result in the destination operand

EVEX encoded versions: The first source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location, or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 32-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register conditionally updated with writemask k1.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand is a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is an XMM register. The second source operand is an XMM register or 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is an XMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source can be an XMM register or an 128-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding register destination are unmodified.

PABS/PAWS/PABSD/PABSQ — Packed Absolute Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F 38 1C /r ¹ PABS mm1, mm2/m64	A	V/V	SSSE3	Compute the absolute value of bytes in mm2/m64 and store UNSIGNED result in mm1.
66 0F 38 1C /r PABS xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSSE3	Compute the absolute value of bytes in xmm2/m128 and store UNSIGNED result in xmm1.
NP 0F 38 1D /r ¹ PAWS mm1, mm2/m64	A	V/V	SSSE3	Compute the absolute value of 16-bit integers in mm2/m64 and store UNSIGNED result in mm1.
66 0F 38 1D /r PAWS xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSSE3	Compute the absolute value of 16-bit integers in xmm2/m128 and store UNSIGNED result in xmm1.
NP 0F 38 1E /r ¹ PABSD mm1, mm2/m64	A	V/V	SSSE3	Compute the absolute value of 32-bit integers in mm2/m64 and store UNSIGNED result in mm1.
66 0F 38 1E /r PABSD xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSSE3	Compute the absolute value of 32-bit integers in xmm2/m128 and store UNSIGNED result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 1C /r VPABS xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	AVX	Compute the absolute value of bytes in xmm2/m128 and store UNSIGNED result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 1D /r VPABSW xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	AVX	Compute the absolute value of 16-bit integers in xmm2/m128 and store UNSIGNED result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 1E /r VPABSD xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	AVX	Compute the absolute value of 32-bit integers in xmm2/m128 and store UNSIGNED result in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 1C /r VPABS ymm1, ymm2/m256	A	V/V	AVX2	Compute the absolute value of bytes in ymm2/m256 and store UNSIGNED result in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 1D /r VPABSW ymm1, ymm2/m256	A	V/V	AVX2	Compute the absolute value of 16-bit integers in ymm2/m256 and store UNSIGNED result in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 1E /r VPABSD ymm1, ymm2/m256	A	V/V	AVX2	Compute the absolute value of 32-bit integers in ymm2/m256 and store UNSIGNED result in ymm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 1C /r VPABS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2/m128	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compute the absolute value of bytes in xmm2/m128 and store UNSIGNED result in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 1C /r VPABS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2/m256	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compute the absolute value of bytes in ymm2/m256 and store UNSIGNED result in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.WIG 1C /r VPABS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2/m512	B	V/V	AVX512BW	Compute the absolute value of bytes in zmm2/m512 and store UNSIGNED result in zmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 1D /r VPABSW xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2/m128	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compute the absolute value of 16-bit integers in xmm2/m128 and store UNSIGNED result in xmm1 using writemask k1.

EVEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 1D /r VPABSW ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2/m256	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compute the absolute value of 16-bit integers in ymm2/m256 and store UNSIGNED result in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.WIG 1D /r VPABSW zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2/m512	B	V/V	AVX512BW	Compute the absolute value of 16-bit integers in zmm2/m512 and store UNSIGNED result in zmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 1E /r VPABSD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2/m128/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compute the absolute value of 32-bit integers in xmm2/m128/m32bcst and store UNSIGNED result in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 1E /r VPABSD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2/m256/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compute the absolute value of 32-bit integers in ymm2/m256/m32bcst and store UNSIGNED result in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 1E /r VPABSD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2/m512/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512F	Compute the absolute value of 32-bit integers in zmm2/m512/m32bcst and store UNSIGNED result in zmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 1F /r VPABSQ xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2/m128/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compute the absolute value of 64-bit integers in xmm2/m128/m64bcst and store UNSIGNED result in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 1F /r VPABSQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2/m256/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compute the absolute value of 64-bit integers in ymm2/m256/m64bcst and store UNSIGNED result in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 1F /r VPABSQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2/m512/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512F	Compute the absolute value of 64-bit integers in zmm2/m512/m64bcst and store UNSIGNED result in zmm1 using writemask k1.

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA

Description

PABSB/W/D computes the absolute value of each data element of the source operand (the second operand) and stores the UNSIGNED results in the destination operand (the first operand). PABSB operates on signed bytes, PABSW operates on signed 16-bit words, and PABSD operates on signed 32-bit integers.

EVEX encoded VPABSD/Q: The source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location, or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 32/64-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register updated according to the writemask.

EVEX encoded VPABSB/W: The source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, or a 512/256/128-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register updated according to the writemask.

VEX.256 encoded versions: The source operand is a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding register destination are zeroed.

VEX.128 encoded versions: The source operand is an XMM register or 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is an XMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding register destination are zeroed.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The source operand can be an XMM register or an 128-bit memory location. The destination is an XMM register. The upper bits (VL_MAX-1:128) of the corresponding register destination are unmodified.

VEX.vvvv and EVEX.vvvv are reserved and must be 1111b otherwise instructions will #UD.

Operation

PABSB with 128 bit operands:

Unsigned DEST[7:0] ← ABS(SRC[7: 0])
 Repeat operation for 2nd through 15th bytes
 Unsigned DEST[127:120] ← ABS(SRC[127:120])

VPABSB with 128 bit operands:

Unsigned DEST[7:0] ← ABS(SRC[7: 0])
 Repeat operation for 2nd through 15th bytes
 Unsigned DEST[127:120] ← ABS(SRC[127:120])

VPABSB with 256 bit operands:

Unsigned DEST[7:0] ← ABS(SRC[7: 0])
 Repeat operation for 2nd through 31st bytes
 Unsigned DEST[255:248] ← ABS(SRC[255:248])

VPABSB (EVEX encoded versions)

(KL, VL) = (16, 128), (32, 256), (64, 512)

FOR j ← 0 TO KL-1

i ← j * 8

IF k1[j] OR *no writemask*

THEN

Unsigned DEST[i+7:i] ← ABS(SRC[i+7:i])

ELSE

IF *merging-masking* ; merging-masking

THEN *DEST[i+7:i] remains unchanged*

ELSE *zeroing-masking* ; zeroing-masking

DEST[i+7:i] ← 0

FI

FI;

ENDFOR;

DEST[MAXVL-1:VL] ← 0

PABSW with 128 bit operands:

Unsigned DEST[15:0] ← ABS(SRC[15:0])
 Repeat operation for 2nd through 7th 16-bit words
 Unsigned DEST[127:112] ← ABS(SRC[127:112])

VPABSW with 128 bit operands:

Unsigned DEST[15:0] ← ABS(SRC[15:0])
 Repeat operation for 2nd through 7th 16-bit words
 Unsigned DEST[127:112] ← ABS(SRC[127:112])

VPABSW with 256 bit operands:

Unsigned DEST[15:0] ← ABS(SRC[15:0])
 Repeat operation for 2nd through 15th 16-bit words
 Unsigned DEST[255:240] ← ABS(SRC[255:240])

VPABSW (EVEX encoded versions)

(KL, VL) = (8, 128), (16, 256), (32, 512)

```

FOR j ← 0 TO KL-1
  i ← j * 16
  IF k1[j] OR *no writemask*
    THEN
      Unsigned DEST[j+15:i] ← ABS(SRC[j+15:i])
    ELSE
      IF *merging-masking*           ; merging-masking
        THEN *DEST[j+15:i] remains unchanged*
      ELSE *zeroing-masking*       ; zeroing-masking
        DEST[j+15:i] ← 0
      FI
    FI;
ENDFOR;
DEST[MAXVL-1:VL] ← 0

```

PABSD with 128 bit operands:

```

Unsigned DEST[31:0] ← ABS(SRC[31:0])
Repeat operation for 2nd through 3rd 32-bit double words
Unsigned DEST[127:96] ← ABS(SRC[127:96])

```

VPABSD with 128 bit operands:

```

Unsigned DEST[31:0] ← ABS(SRC[31:0])
Repeat operation for 2nd through 3rd 32-bit double words
Unsigned DEST[127:96] ← ABS(SRC[127:96])

```

VPABSD with 256 bit operands:

```

Unsigned DEST[31:0] ← ABS(SRC[31:0])
Repeat operation for 2nd through 7th 32-bit double words
Unsigned DEST[255:224] ← ABS(SRC[255:224])

```

VPABSD (EVEX encoded versions)

(KL, VL) = (4, 128), (8, 256), (16, 512)

```

FOR j ← 0 TO KL-1
  i ← j * 32
  IF k1[j] OR *no writemask*
    THEN
      IF (EVEX.b = 1) AND (SRC *is memory*)
        THEN
          Unsigned DEST[j+31:i] ← ABS(SRC[31:0])
        ELSE
          Unsigned DEST[j+31:i] ← ABS(SRC[j+31:i])
        FI;
      ELSE
      IF *merging-masking*           ; merging-masking
        THEN *DEST[j+31:i] remains unchanged*
      ELSE *zeroing-masking*       ; zeroing-masking
        DEST[j+31:i] ← 0
      FI
    FI;
ENDFOR;
DEST[MAXVL-1:VL] ← 0

```

VPABSQ (EVEX encoded versions)

(KL, VL) = (2, 128), (4, 256), (8, 512)

FOR j ← 0 TO KL-1

i ← j * 64

IF k1[j] OR *no writemask*

THEN

IF (EVEX.b = 1) AND (SRC *is memory*)

THEN

Unsigned DEST[i+63:i] ← ABS(SRC[63:0])

ELSE

Unsigned DEST[i+63:i] ← ABS(SRC[i+63:i])

FI;

ELSE

IF *merging-masking* ; merging-masking

THEN *DEST[i+63:i] remains unchanged*

ELSE *zeroing-masking* ; zeroing-masking

DEST[i+63:i] ← 0

FI

FI;

ENDFOR;

DEST[MAXVL-1:VL] ← 0

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalents

VPABSB__m512i__mm512_abs_epi8 (__m512i a)

VPABSW__m512i__mm512_abs_epi16 (__m512i a)

VPABSB__m512i__mm512_mask_abs_epi8 (__m512i s, __mmask64 m, __m512i a)

VPABSW__m512i__mm512_mask_abs_epi16 (__m512i s, __mmask32 m, __m512i a)

VPABSB__m512i__mm512_maskz_abs_epi8 (__mmask64 m, __m512i a)

VPABSW__m512i__mm512_maskz_abs_epi16 (__mmask32 m, __m512i a)

VPABSB__m256i__mm256_mask_abs_epi8 (__m256i s, __mmask32 m, __m256i a)

VPABSW__m256i__mm256_mask_abs_epi16 (__m256i s, __mmask16 m, __m256i a)

VPABSB__m256i__mm256_maskz_abs_epi8 (__mmask32 m, __m256i a)

VPABSW__m256i__mm256_maskz_abs_epi16 (__mmask16 m, __m256i a)

VPABSB__m128i__mm_mask_abs_epi8 (__m128i s, __mmask16 m, __m128i a)

VPABSW__m128i__mm_mask_abs_epi16 (__m128i s, __mmask8 m, __m128i a)

VPABSB__m128i__mm_maskz_abs_epi8 (__mmask16 m, __m128i a)

VPABSW__m128i__mm_maskz_abs_epi16 (__mmask8 m, __m128i a)

VPABSD __m256i__mm256_mask_abs_epi32(__m256i s, __mmask8 k, __m256i a);

VPABSD __m256i__mm256_maskz_abs_epi32(__mmask8 k, __m256i a);

VPABSD __m128i__mm_mask_abs_epi32(__m128i s, __mmask8 k, __m128i a);

VPABSD __m128i__mm_maskz_abs_epi32(__mmask8 k, __m128i a);

VPABSD __m512i__mm512_abs_epi32(__m512i a);

VPABSD __m512i__mm512_mask_abs_epi32(__m512i s, __mmask16 k, __m512i a);

VPABSD __m512i__mm512_maskz_abs_epi32(__mmask16 k, __m512i a);

VPABSQ __m512i__mm512_abs_epi64(__m512i a);

VPABSQ __m512i__mm512_mask_abs_epi64(__m512i s, __mmask8 k, __m512i a);

VPABSQ __m512i__mm512_maskz_abs_epi64(__mmask8 k, __m512i a);

VPABSQ __m256i__mm256_mask_abs_epi64(__m256i s, __mmask8 k, __m256i a);

VPABSQ __m256i__mm256_maskz_abs_epi64(__mmask8 k, __m256i a);

VPABSQ __m128i__mm_mask_abs_epi64(__m128i s, __mmask8 k, __m128i a);

VPABSQ __m128i__mm_maskz_abs_epi64(__mmask8 k, __m128i a);

PABSB __m128i__mm_abs_epi8 (__m128i a)

VPABSB __m128i__mm_abs_epi8 (__m128i a)

VPABSB __m256i __mm256_abs_epi8 (__m256i a)
PABSW __m128i __mm_abs_epi16 (__m128i a)
VPABSW __m128i __mm_abs_epi16 (__m128i a)
VPABSW __m256i __mm256_abs_epi16 (__m256i a)
PABSD __m128i __mm_abs_epi32 (__m128i a)
VPABSD __m128i __mm_abs_epi32 (__m128i a)
VPABSD __m256i __mm256_abs_epi32 (__m256i a)

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

Non-EVEX-encoded instruction, see Exceptions Type 4.

EVEX-encoded VPABSD/Q, see Exceptions Type E4.

EVEX-encoded VPABSB/W, see Exceptions Type E4.nb.

PACKSSWB/PACKSSDW—Pack with Signed Saturation

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF 63 /r ¹ PACKSSWB <i>mm1, mm2/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Converts 4 packed signed word integers from <i>mm1</i> and from <i>mm2/m64</i> into 8 packed signed byte integers in <i>mm1</i> using signed saturation.
66 OF 63 /r PACKSSWB <i>xmm1, xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Converts 8 packed signed word integers from <i>xmm1</i> and from <i>xmm2/m128</i> into 16 packed signed byte integers in <i>xmm1</i> using signed saturation.
NP OF 6B /r ¹ PACKSSDW <i>mm1, mm2/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Converts 2 packed signed doubleword integers from <i>mm1</i> and from <i>mm2/m64</i> into 4 packed signed word integers in <i>mm1</i> using signed saturation.
66 OF 6B /r PACKSSDW <i>xmm1, xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Converts 4 packed signed doubleword integers from <i>xmm1</i> and from <i>xmm2/m128</i> into 8 packed signed word integers in <i>xmm1</i> using signed saturation.
VE.X.128.66.OF.WIG 63 /r VPACKSSWB <i>xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Converts 8 packed signed word integers from <i>xmm2</i> and from <i>xmm3/m128</i> into 16 packed signed byte integers in <i>xmm1</i> using signed saturation.
VE.X.128.66.OF.WIG 6B /r VPACKSSDW <i>xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Converts 4 packed signed doubleword integers from <i>xmm2</i> and from <i>xmm3/m128</i> into 8 packed signed word integers in <i>xmm1</i> using signed saturation.
VE.X.256.66.OF.WIG 63 /r VPACKSSWB <i>ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Converts 16 packed signed word integers from <i>ymm2</i> and from <i>ymm3/m256</i> into 32 packed signed byte integers in <i>ymm1</i> using signed saturation.
VE.X.256.66.OF.WIG 6B /r VPACKSSDW <i>ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Converts 8 packed signed doubleword integers from <i>ymm2</i> and from <i>ymm3/m256</i> into 16 packed signed word integers in <i>ymm1</i> using signed saturation.
EVEX.128.66.OF.WIG 63 /r VPACKSSWB <i>xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Converts packed signed word integers from <i>xmm2</i> and from <i>xmm3/m128</i> into packed signed byte integers in <i>xmm1</i> using signed saturation under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.OF.WIG 63 /r VPACKSSWB <i>ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Converts packed signed word integers from <i>ymm2</i> and from <i>ymm3/m256</i> into packed signed byte integers in <i>ymm1</i> using signed saturation under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.OF.WIG 63 /r VPACKSSWB <i>zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512</i>	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Converts packed signed word integers from <i>zmm2</i> and from <i>zmm3/m512</i> into packed signed byte integers in <i>zmm1</i> using signed saturation under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.128.66.OF.WO 6B /r VPACKSSDW <i>xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst</i>	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Converts packed signed doubleword integers from <i>xmm2</i> and from <i>xmm3/m128/m32bcst</i> into packed signed word integers in <i>xmm1</i> using signed saturation under writemask <i>k1</i> .

EVEX.256.66.0F.W0 6B /r VPACKSSDW ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Converts packed signed doubleword integers from <i>ymm2</i> and from <i>ymm3/m256/m32bcst</i> into packed signed word integers in <i>ymm1</i> using signed saturation under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.0F.W0 6B /r VPACKSSDW zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	D	V/V	AVX512BW	Converts packed signed doubleword integers from <i>zmm2</i> and from <i>zmm3/m512/m32bcst</i> into packed signed word integers in <i>zmm1</i> using signed saturation under writemask <i>k1</i> .

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
D	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Converts packed signed word integers into packed signed byte integers (PACKSSWB) or converts packed signed doubleword integers into packed signed word integers (PACKSSDW), using saturation to handle overflow conditions. See Figure 4-6 for an example of the packing operation.

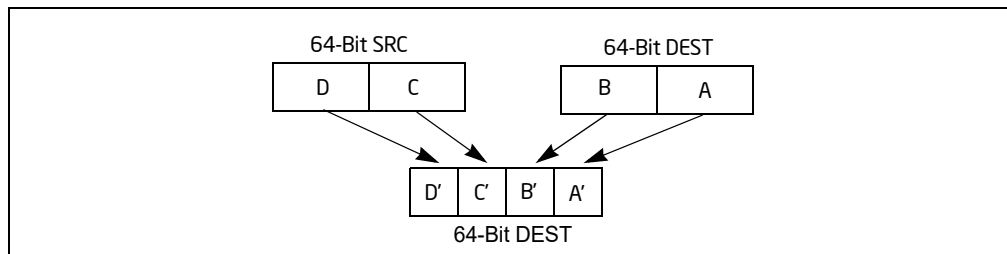


Figure 4-6. Operation of the PACKSSDW Instruction Using 64-bit Operands

PACKSSWB converts packed signed word integers in the first and second source operands into packed signed byte integers using signed saturation to handle overflow conditions beyond the range of signed byte integers. If the signed word value is beyond the range of a signed byte value (i.e., greater than 7FH or less than 80H), the saturated signed byte integer value of 7FH or 80H, respectively, is stored in the destination. PACKSSDW converts packed signed doubleword integers in the first and second source operands into packed signed word integers using signed saturation to handle overflow conditions beyond 7FFFH and 8000H.

EVEX encoded PACKSSWB: The first source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register or a 512/256/128-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, updated conditional under the writemask *k1*.

EVEX encoded PACKSSDW: The first source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location, or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 32-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, updated conditional under the writemask *k1*.

PACKUSDW—Pack with Unsigned Saturation

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 38 2B /r PACKUSDW <i>xmm1, xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE4_1	Convert 4 packed signed doubleword integers from <i>xmm1</i> and 4 packed signed doubleword integers from <i>xmm2/m128</i> into 8 packed unsigned word integers in <i>xmm1</i> using unsigned saturation.
VEX.128.66.0F38 2B /r VPACKUSDW <i>xmm1,xmm2, xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Convert 4 packed signed doubleword integers from <i>xmm2</i> and 4 packed signed doubleword integers from <i>xmm3/m128</i> into 8 packed unsigned word integers in <i>xmm1</i> using unsigned saturation.
VEX.256.66.0F38 2B /r VPACKUSDW <i>ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Convert 8 packed signed doubleword integers from <i>ymm2</i> and 8 packed signed doubleword integers from <i>ymm3/m256</i> into 16 packed unsigned word integers in <i>ymm1</i> using unsigned saturation.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 2B /r VPACKUSDW <i>xmm1{k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Convert packed signed doubleword integers from <i>xmm2</i> and packed signed doubleword integers from <i>xmm3/m128/m32bcst</i> into packed unsigned word integers in <i>xmm1</i> using unsigned saturation under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 2B /r VPACKUSDW <i>ymm1{k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Convert packed signed doubleword integers from <i>ymm2</i> and packed signed doubleword integers from <i>ymm3/m256/m32bcst</i> into packed unsigned word integers in <i>ymm1</i> using unsigned saturation under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 2B /r VPACKUSDW <i>zmm1{k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst</i>	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Convert packed signed doubleword integers from <i>zmm2</i> and packed signed doubleword integers from <i>zmm3/m512/m32bcst</i> into packed unsigned word integers in <i>zmm1</i> using unsigned saturation under writemask <i>k1</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Converts packed signed doubleword integers in the first and second source operands into packed unsigned word integers using unsigned saturation to handle overflow conditions. If the signed doubleword value is beyond the range of an unsigned word (that is, greater than FFFFH or less than 0000H), the saturated unsigned word integer value of FFFFH or 0000H, respectively, is stored in the destination.

EVEX encoded versions: The first source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location, or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 32-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM register, updated conditionally under the writemask *k1*.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand is a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is an XMM register. The second source operand is an XMM register or 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is an XMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source operand is an XMM register. The second operand can be an XMM register or an 128-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding destination register destination are unmodified.

PACKUSWB—Pack with Unsigned Saturation

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F 67 /r ¹ PACKUSWB <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Converts 4 signed word integers from <i>mm</i> and 4 signed word integers from <i>mm/m64</i> into 8 unsigned byte integers in <i>mm</i> using unsigned saturation.
66 0F 67 /r PACKUSWB <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Converts 8 signed word integers from <i>xmm1</i> and 8 signed word integers from <i>xmm2/m128</i> into 16 unsigned byte integers in <i>xmm1</i> using unsigned saturation.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 67 /r VPACKUSWB <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Converts 8 signed word integers from <i>xmm2</i> and 8 signed word integers from <i>xmm3/m128</i> into 16 unsigned byte integers in <i>xmm1</i> using unsigned saturation.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG 67 /r VPACKUSWB <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Converts 16 signed word integers from <i>ymm2</i> and 16 signed word integers from <i>ymm3/m256</i> into 32 unsigned byte integers in <i>ymm1</i> using unsigned saturation.
EVEX.128.66.0F.WIG 67 /r VPACKUSWB <i>xmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Converts signed word integers from <i>xmm2</i> and signed word integers from <i>xmm3/m128</i> into unsigned byte integers in <i>xmm1</i> using unsigned saturation under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG 67 /r VPACKUSWB <i>ymm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Converts signed word integers from <i>ymm2</i> and signed word integers from <i>ymm3/m256</i> into unsigned byte integers in <i>ymm1</i> using unsigned saturation under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG 67 /r VPACKUSWB <i>zmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>zmm2</i> , <i>zmm3/m512</i>	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Converts signed word integers from <i>zmm2</i> and signed word integers from <i>zmm3/m512</i> into unsigned byte integers in <i>zmm1</i> using unsigned saturation under writemask <i>k1</i> .

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Converts 4, 8, 16 or 32 signed word integers from the destination operand (first operand) and 4, 8, 16 or 32 signed word integers from the source operand (second operand) into 8, 16, 32 or 64 unsigned byte integers and stores the result in the destination operand. (See Figure 4-6 for an example of the packing operation.) If a signed word integer value is beyond the range of an unsigned byte integer (that is, greater than FFH or less than 00H), the saturated unsigned byte integer value of FFH or 00H, respectively, is stored in the destination.

EVEX.512 encoded version: The first source operand is a ZMM register. The second source operand is a ZMM register or a 512-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM register.

PADDB/PADDW/PADD/PADDQ—Add Packed Integers

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bitMode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF FC /r ¹ PADDB mm, mm/m64	A	V/V	MMX	Add packed byte integers from mm/m64 and mm.
NP OF FD /r ¹ PADDW mm, mm/m64	A	V/V	MMX	Add packed word integers from mm/m64 and mm.
NP OF FE /r ¹ PADD mm, mm/m64	A	V/V	MMX	Add packed doubleword integers from mm/m64 and mm.
NP OF D4 /r ¹ PADDQ mm, mm/m64	A	V/V	MMX	Add packed quadword integers from mm/m64 and mm.
66 OF FC /r PADDB xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE2	Add packed byte integers from xmm2/m128 and xmm1.
66 OF FD /r PADDW xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE2	Add packed word integers from xmm2/m128 and xmm1.
66 OF FE /r PADD xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE2	Add packed doubleword integers from xmm2/m128 and xmm1.
66 OF D4 /r PADDQ xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE2	Add packed quadword integers from xmm2/m128 and xmm1.
VEX.128.66.OF.WIG FC /r VPADDB xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Add packed byte integers from xmm2, and xmm3/m128 and store in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.OF.WIG FD /r VPADDW xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Add packed word integers from xmm2, xmm3/m128 and store in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.OF.WIG FE /r VPADD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Add packed doubleword integers from xmm2, xmm3/m128 and store in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.OF.WIG D4 /r VPADDQ xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Add packed quadword integers from xmm2, xmm3/m128 and store in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.OF.WIG FC /r VPADDB ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX2	Add packed byte integers from ymm2, and ymm3/m256 and store in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.OF.WIG FD /r VPADDW ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX2	Add packed word integers from ymm2, ymm3/m256 and store in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.OF.WIG FE /r VPADD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX2	Add packed doubleword integers from ymm2, ymm3/m256 and store in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.OF.WIG D4 /r VPADDQ ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX2	Add packed quadword integers from ymm2, ymm3/m256 and store in ymm1.
EVEX.128.66.OF.WIG FC /r VPADDB xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Add packed byte integers from xmm2, and xmm3/m128 and store in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.OF.WIG FD /r VPADDW xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Add packed word integers from xmm2, and xmm3/m128 and store in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.OF.WO FE /r VPADD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Add packed doubleword integers from xmm2, and xmm3/m128/m32bcst and store in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.OF.W1 D4 /r VPADDQ xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Add packed quadword integers from xmm2, and xmm3/m128/m64bcst and store in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.OF.WIG FC /r VPADDB ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Add packed byte integers from ymm2, and ymm3/m256 and store in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.OF.WIG FD /r VPADDW ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Add packed word integers from ymm2, and ymm3/m256 and store in ymm1 using writemask k1.

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bitMode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.256.66.0F.W0 FE /r VPADDD <i>ymm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256/m32bcst</i>	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Add packed doubleword integers from <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256/m32bcst</i> and store in <i>ymm1</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.0F.W1 D4 /r VPADDQ <i>ymm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256/m64bcst</i>	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Add packed quadword integers from <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256/m64bcst</i> and store in <i>ymm1</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG FC /r VPADDB <i>zmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>zmm2</i> , <i>zmm3/m512</i>	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Add packed byte integers from <i>zmm2</i> , and <i>zmm3/m512</i> and store in <i>zmm1</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG FD /r VPADDW <i>zmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>zmm2</i> , <i>zmm3/m512</i>	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Add packed word integers from <i>zmm2</i> , and <i>zmm3/m512</i> and store in <i>zmm1</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.0F.W0 FE /r VPADDD <i>zmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>zmm2</i> , <i>zmm3/m512/m32bcst</i>	D	V/V	AVX512F	Add packed doubleword integers from <i>zmm2</i> , <i>zmm3/m512/m32bcst</i> and store in <i>zmm1</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.0F.W1 D4 /r VPADDQ <i>zmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>zmm2</i> , <i>zmm3/m512/m64bcst</i>	D	V/V	AVX512F	Add packed quadword integers from <i>zmm2</i> , <i>zmm3/m512/m64bcst</i> and store in <i>zmm1</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .
NOTES:				
1. See note in Section 2.4, "AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification" in the <i>Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 2A</i> and Section 22.25.3, "Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers" in the <i>Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3A</i> .				

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (<i>r</i> , <i>w</i>)	ModRM:r/m (<i>r</i>)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (<i>w</i>)	VEX.vvvv (<i>r</i>)	ModRM:r/m (<i>r</i>)	NA
C	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (<i>w</i>)	EVEX.vvvv (<i>r</i>)	ModRM:r/m (<i>r</i>)	NA
D	Full	ModRM:reg (<i>w</i>)	EVEX.vvvv (<i>r</i>)	ModRM:r/m (<i>r</i>)	NA

Description

Performs a SIMD add of the packed integers from the source operand (second operand) and the destination operand (first operand), and stores the packed integer results in the destination operand. See Figure 9-4 in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 1*, for an illustration of a SIMD operation. Overflow is handled with wraparound, as described in the following paragraphs.

The PADDB and VPADDB instructions add packed byte integers from the first source operand and second source operand and store the packed integer results in the destination operand. When an individual result is too large to be represented in 8 bits (overflow), the result is wrapped around and the low 8 bits are written to the destination operand (that is, the carry is ignored).

The PADDW and VPADDW instructions add packed word integers from the first source operand and second source operand and store the packed integer results in the destination operand. When an individual result is too large to be represented in 16 bits (overflow), the result is wrapped around and the low 16 bits are written to the destination operand (that is, the carry is ignored).

The PADDD and VPADDD instructions add packed doubleword integers from the first source operand and second source operand and store the packed integer results in the destination operand. When an individual result is too large to be represented in 32 bits (overflow), the result is wrapped around and the low 32 bits are written to the destination operand (that is, the carry is ignored).

The PADDQ and VPADDQ instructions add packed quadword integers from the first source operand and second source operand and store the packed integer results in the destination operand. When a quadword result is too

PADDSB/PADDSW—Add Packed Signed Integers with Signed Saturation

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF EC /r ¹ PADDSB <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Add packed signed byte integers from <i>mm/m64</i> and <i>mm</i> and saturate the results.
66 OF EC /r PADDSB <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Add packed signed byte integers from <i>xmm2/m128</i> and <i>xmm1</i> and saturate the results.
NP OF ED /r ¹ PADDSW <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Add packed signed word integers from <i>mm/m64</i> and <i>mm</i> and saturate the results.
66 OF ED /r PADDSW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Add packed signed word integers from <i>xmm2/m128</i> and <i>xmm1</i> and saturate the results.
VEX.128.66.OF.WIG EC /r VPADDSB <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Add packed signed byte integers from <i>xmm3/m128</i> and <i>xmm2</i> and saturate the results.
VEX.128.66.OF.WIG ED /r VPADDSW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Add packed signed word integers from <i>xmm3/m128</i> and <i>xmm2</i> and saturate the results.
VEX.256.66.OF.WIG EC /r VPADDSB <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Add packed signed byte integers from <i>ymm2</i> , and <i>ymm3/m256</i> and store the saturated results in <i>ymm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.OF.WIG ED /r VPADDSW <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Add packed signed word integers from <i>ymm2</i> , and <i>ymm3/m256</i> and store the saturated results in <i>ymm1</i> .
EVEX.128.66.OF.WIG EC /r VPADDSB <i>xmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Add packed signed byte integers from <i>xmm2</i> , and <i>xmm3/m128</i> and store the saturated results in <i>xmm1</i> under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.OF.WIG EC /r VPADDSB <i>ymm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Add packed signed byte integers from <i>ymm2</i> , and <i>ymm3/m256</i> and store the saturated results in <i>ymm1</i> under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.OF.WIG EC /r VPADDSB <i>zmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>zmm2</i> , <i>zmm3/m512</i>	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Add packed signed byte integers from <i>zmm2</i> , and <i>zmm3/m512</i> and store the saturated results in <i>zmm1</i> under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.128.66.OF.WIG ED /r VPADDSW <i>xmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Add packed signed word integers from <i>xmm2</i> , and <i>xmm3/m128</i> and store the saturated results in <i>xmm1</i> under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.OF.WIG ED /r VPADDSW <i>ymm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Add packed signed word integers from <i>ymm2</i> , and <i>ymm3/m256</i> and store the saturated results in <i>ymm1</i> under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.OF.WIG ED /r VPADDSW <i>zmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>zmm2</i> , <i>zmm3/m512</i>	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Add packed signed word integers from <i>zmm2</i> , and <i>zmm3/m512</i> and store the saturated results in <i>zmm1</i> under writemask <i>k1</i> .

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

PADDUSB/PADDUSW—Add Packed Unsigned Integers with Unsigned Saturation

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF DC /r ¹ PADDUSB <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Add packed unsigned byte integers from <i>mm/m64</i> and <i>mm</i> and saturate the results.
66 OF DC /r PADDUSB <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Add packed unsigned byte integers from <i>xmm2/m128</i> and <i>xmm1</i> saturate the results.
NP OF DD /r ¹ PADDUSW <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Add packed unsigned word integers from <i>mm/m64</i> and <i>mm</i> and saturate the results.
66 OF DD /r PADDUSW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Add packed unsigned word integers from <i>xmm2/m128</i> to <i>xmm1</i> and saturate the results.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG DC /r VPADDUSB <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Add packed unsigned byte integers from <i>xmm3/m128</i> to <i>xmm2</i> and saturate the results.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG DD /r VPADDUSW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Add packed unsigned word integers from <i>xmm3/m128</i> to <i>xmm2</i> and saturate the results.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG DC /r VPADDUSB <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Add packed unsigned byte integers from <i>ymm2</i> , and <i>ymm3/m256</i> and store the saturated results in <i>ymm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG DD /r VPADDUSW <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Add packed unsigned word integers from <i>ymm2</i> , and <i>ymm3/m256</i> and store the saturated results in <i>ymm1</i> .
EVEX.128.66.0F.WIG DC /r VPADDUSB <i>xmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Add packed unsigned byte integers from <i>xmm2</i> , and <i>xmm3/m128</i> and store the saturated results in <i>xmm1</i> under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG DC /r VPADDUSB <i>ymm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Add packed unsigned byte integers from <i>ymm2</i> , and <i>ymm3/m256</i> and store the saturated results in <i>ymm1</i> under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG DC /r VPADDUSB <i>zmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>zmm2</i> , <i>zmm3/m512</i>	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Add packed unsigned byte integers from <i>zmm2</i> , and <i>zmm3/m512</i> and store the saturated results in <i>zmm1</i> under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.128.66.0F.WIG DD /r VPADDUSW <i>xmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Add packed unsigned word integers from <i>xmm2</i> , and <i>xmm3/m128</i> and store the saturated results in <i>xmm1</i> under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG DD /r VPADDUSW <i>ymm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Add packed unsigned word integers from <i>ymm2</i> , and <i>ymm3/m256</i> and store the saturated results in <i>ymm1</i> under writemask <i>k1</i> .

EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG DD /r VPADDUSW zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Add packed unsigned word integers from zmm2, and zmm3/m512 and store the saturated results in zmm1 under writemask k1.
--	---	-----	----------	--

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a SIMD add of the packed unsigned integers from the source operand (second operand) and the destination operand (first operand), and stores the packed integer results in the destination operand. See Figure 9-4 in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 1*, for an illustration of a SIMD operation. Overflow is handled with unsigned saturation, as described in the following paragraphs.

(V)PADDUSB performs a SIMD add of the packed unsigned integers with saturation from the first source operand and second source operand and stores the packed integer results in the destination operand. When an individual byte result is beyond the range of an unsigned byte integer (that is, greater than FFH), the saturated value of FFH is written to the destination operand.

(V)PADDUSW performs a SIMD add of the packed unsigned word integers with saturation from the first source operand and second source operand and stores the packed integer results in the destination operand. When an individual word result is beyond the range of an unsigned word integer (that is, greater than FFFFH), the saturated value of FFFFH is written to the destination operand.

EVEX encoded versions: The first source operand is an ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand is an ZMM/YMM/XMM register or a 512/256/128-bit memory location. The destination is an ZMM/YMM/XMM register.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand is a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is an XMM register. The second source operand is an XMM register or 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is an XMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding destination register destination are zeroed.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source operand is an XMM register. The second operand can be an XMM register or an 128-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding register destination are unmodified.

Operation**PADDUSB (with 64-bit operands)**

DEST[7:0] ← SaturateToUnsignedByte(DEST[7:0] + SRC[7:0]);
 (* Repeat add operation for 2nd through 7th bytes *)
 DEST[63:56] ← SaturateToUnsignedByte(DEST[63:56] + SRC[63:56])

PADDUSW (with 128-bit operands)

DEST[7:0] ← SaturateToUnsignedByte (DEST[7:0] + SRC[7:0]);
 (* Repeat add operation for 2nd through 14th bytes *)
 DEST[127:120] ← SaturateToUnsignedByte (DEST[127:120] + SRC[127:120]);

PALIGNR — Packed Align Right

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F 3A 0F /r ib ¹ PALIGNR <i>mm1</i> , <i>mm2/m64</i> , <i>imm8</i>	A	V/V	SSSE3	Concatenate destination and source operands, extract byte-aligned result shifted to the right by constant value in <i>imm8</i> into <i>mm1</i> .
66 0F 3A 0F /r ib PALIGNR <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i> , <i>imm8</i>	A	V/V	SSSE3	Concatenate destination and source operands, extract byte-aligned result shifted to the right by constant value in <i>imm8</i> into <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F3A.WIG 0F /r ib VPALIGNR <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i> , <i>imm8</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Concatenate <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/m128</i> , extract byte aligned result shifted to the right by constant value in <i>imm8</i> and result is stored in <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F3A.WIG 0F /r ib VPALIGNR <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i> , <i>imm8</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Concatenate pairs of 16 bytes in <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/m256</i> into 32-byte intermediate result, extract byte-aligned, 16-byte result shifted to the right by constant values in <i>imm8</i> from each intermediate result, and two 16-byte results are stored in <i>ymm1</i> .
EVEX.128.66.0F3A.WIG 0F /r ib VPALIGNR <i>xmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i> , <i>imm8</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Concatenate <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/m128</i> into a 32-byte intermediate result, extract byte aligned result shifted to the right by constant value in <i>imm8</i> and result is stored in <i>xmm1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.0F3A.WIG 0F /r ib VPALIGNR <i>ymm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i> , <i>imm8</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Concatenate pairs of 16 bytes in <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/m256</i> into 32-byte intermediate result, extract byte-aligned, 16-byte result shifted to the right by constant values in <i>imm8</i> from each intermediate result, and two 16-byte results are stored in <i>ymm1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.WIG 0F /r ib VPALIGNR <i>zmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>zmm2</i> , <i>zmm3/m512</i> , <i>imm8</i>	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Concatenate pairs of 16 bytes in <i>zmm2</i> and <i>zmm3/m512</i> into 32-byte intermediate result, extract byte-aligned, 16-byte result shifted to the right by constant values in <i>imm8</i> from each intermediate result, and four 16-byte results are stored in <i>zmm1</i> .

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (<i>r</i> , <i>w</i>)	ModRM:r/m (<i>r</i>)	<i>imm8</i>	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (<i>w</i>)	VEX.vvvv (<i>r</i>)	ModRM:r/m (<i>r</i>)	<i>imm8</i>
C	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (<i>w</i>)	EVEX.vvvv (<i>r</i>)	ModRM:r/m (<i>r</i>)	<i>imm8</i>

Description

(V)PALIGNR concatenates the destination operand (the first operand) and the source operand (the second operand) into an intermediate composite, shifts the composite at byte granularity to the right by a constant immediate, and extracts the right-aligned result into the destination. The first and the second operands can be an MMX,

PAND—Logical AND

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF DB /r ¹ PAND mm, mm/m64	A	V/V	MMX	Bitwise AND mm/m64 and mm.
66 OF DB /r PAND xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE2	Bitwise AND of xmm2/m128 and xmm1.
VEX.128.66.OF.WIG DB /r VPAND xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Bitwise AND of xmm3/m128 and xmm.
VEX.256.66.OF.WIG DB /r VPAND ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX2	Bitwise AND of ymm2, and ymm3/m256 and store result in ymm1.
EVEX.128.66.OF.WO DB /r VPANDD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Bitwise AND of packed doubleword integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst and store result in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.OF.WO DB /r VPANDD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Bitwise AND of packed doubleword integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst and store result in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.OF.WO DB /r VPANDD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512F	Bitwise AND of packed doubleword integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst and store result in zmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.OF.W1 DB /r VPANDQ xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Bitwise AND of packed quadword integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst and store result in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.OF.W1 DB /r VPANDQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Bitwise AND of packed quadword integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst and store result in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.OF.W1 DB /r VPANDQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512F	Bitwise AND of packed quadword integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst and store result in zmm1 using writemask k1.

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a bitwise logical AND operation on the first source operand and second source operand and stores the result in the destination operand. Each bit of the result is set to 1 if the corresponding bits of the first and second operands are 1, otherwise it is set to 0.

In 64-bit mode and not encoded with VEX/EVEX, using a REX prefix in the form of REX.R permits this instruction to access additional registers (XMM8-XMM15).

PANDN—Logical AND NOT

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF DF /r ¹ PANDN <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Bitwise AND NOT of <i>mm/m64</i> and <i>mm</i> .
66 OF DF /r PANDN <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Bitwise AND NOT of <i>xmm2/m128</i> and <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.OF.WIG DF /r VPANDN <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Bitwise AND NOT of <i>xmm3/m128</i> and <i>xmm2</i> .
VEX.256.66.OF.WIG DF /r VPANDN <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Bitwise AND NOT of <i>ymm2</i> , and <i>ymm3/m256</i> and store result in <i>ymm1</i> .
EVEX.128.66.OF.WO DF /r VPANDND <i>xmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128/m32bcst</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Bitwise AND NOT of packed doubleword integers in <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/m128/m32bcst</i> and store result in <i>xmm1</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.OF.WO DF /r VPANDND <i>ymm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256/m32bcst</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Bitwise AND NOT of packed doubleword integers in <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/m256/m32bcst</i> and store result in <i>ymm1</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.OF.WO DF /r VPANDND <i>zmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>zmm2</i> , <i>zmm3/m512/m32bcst</i>	C	V/V	AVX512F	Bitwise AND NOT of packed doubleword integers in <i>zmm2</i> and <i>zmm3/m512/m32bcst</i> and store result in <i>zmm1</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.128.66.OF.W1 DF /r VPANDNQ <i>xmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128/m64bcst</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Bitwise AND NOT of packed quadword integers in <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/m128/m64bcst</i> and store result in <i>xmm1</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.OF.W1 DF /r VPANDNQ <i>ymm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256/m64bcst</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Bitwise AND NOT of packed quadword integers in <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/m256/m64bcst</i> and store result in <i>ymm1</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.OF.W1 DF /r VPANDNQ <i>zmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>zmm2</i> , <i>zmm3/m512/m64bcst</i>	C	V/V	AVX512F	Bitwise AND NOT of packed quadword integers in <i>zmm2</i> and <i>zmm3/m512/m64bcst</i> and store result in <i>zmm1</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (<i>r</i> , <i>w</i>)	ModRM:r/m (<i>r</i>)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (<i>w</i>)	VEX.vvvv (<i>r</i>)	ModRM:r/m (<i>r</i>)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (<i>w</i>)	EVEX.vvvv (<i>r</i>)	ModRM:r/m (<i>r</i>)	NA

Description

Performs a bitwise logical NOT operation on the first source operand, then performs bitwise AND with second source operand and stores the result in the destination operand. Each bit of the result is set to 1 if the corresponding bit in the first operand is 0 and the corresponding bit in the second operand is 1, otherwise it is set to 0.

In 64-bit mode and not encoded with VEX/EVEX, using a REX prefix in the form of REX.R permits this instruction to access additional registers (XMM8-XMM15).

PAVGB/PAVGW—Average Packed Integers

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF E0 /r ¹ PAVGB <i>mm1, mm2/m64</i>	A	V/V	SSE	Average packed unsigned byte integers from <i>mm2/m64</i> and <i>mm1</i> with rounding.
66 OF E0, /r PAVGB <i>xmm1, xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Average packed unsigned byte integers from <i>xmm2/m128</i> and <i>xmm1</i> with rounding.
NP OF E3 /r ¹ PAVGW <i>mm1, mm2/m64</i>	A	V/V	SSE	Average packed unsigned word integers from <i>mm2/m64</i> and <i>mm1</i> with rounding.
66 OF E3 /r PAVGW <i>xmm1, xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Average packed unsigned word integers from <i>xmm2/m128</i> and <i>xmm1</i> with rounding.
VEEX.128.66.OF.WIG E0 /r VPAVGB <i>xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Average packed unsigned byte integers from <i>xmm3/m128</i> and <i>xmm2</i> with rounding.
VEEX.128.66.OF.WIG E3 /r VPAVGW <i>xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Average packed unsigned word integers from <i>xmm3/m128</i> and <i>xmm2</i> with rounding.
VEEX.256.66.OF.WIG E0 /r VPAVGB <i>ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Average packed unsigned byte integers from <i>ymm2</i> , and <i>ymm3/m256</i> with rounding and store to <i>ymm1</i> .
VEEX.256.66.OF.WIG E3 /r VPAVGW <i>ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Average packed unsigned word integers from <i>ymm2, ymm3/m256</i> with rounding to <i>ymm1</i> .
EVEX.128.66.OF.WIG E0 /r VPAVGB <i>xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Average packed unsigned byte integers from <i>xmm2</i> , and <i>xmm3/m128</i> with rounding and store to <i>xmm1</i> under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.OF.WIG E0 /r VPAVGB <i>ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Average packed unsigned byte integers from <i>ymm2</i> , and <i>ymm3/m256</i> with rounding and store to <i>ymm1</i> under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.OF.WIG E0 /r VPAVGB <i>zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512</i>	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Average packed unsigned byte integers from <i>zmm2</i> , and <i>zmm3/m512</i> with rounding and store to <i>zmm1</i> under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.128.66.OF.WIG E3 /r VPAVGW <i>xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Average packed unsigned word integers from <i>xmm2, xmm3/m128</i> with rounding to <i>xmm1</i> under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.OF.WIG E3 /r VPAVGW <i>ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Average packed unsigned word integers from <i>ymm2, ymm3/m256</i> with rounding to <i>ymm1</i> under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.OF.WIG E3 /r VPAVGW <i>zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512</i>	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Average packed unsigned word integers from <i>zmm2, zmm3/m512</i> with rounding to <i>zmm1</i> under writemask <i>k1</i> .

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

PBLENDVB – Variable Blend Packed Bytes

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 38 10 /r PBLENDVB <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i> , < <i>XMM0</i> >	RM	V/V	SSE4_1	Select byte values from <i>xmm1</i> and <i>xmm2/m128</i> from mask specified in the high bit of each byte in <i>XMM0</i> and store the values into <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F3A.W0 4C /r /is4 VPBLENDVB <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i> , <i>xmm4</i>	RVMR	V/V	AVX	Select byte values from <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/m128</i> using mask bits in the specified mask register, <i>xmm4</i> , and store the values into <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F3A.W0 4C /r /is4 VPBLENDVB <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i> , <i>ymm4</i>	RVMR	V/V	AVX2	Select byte values from <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/m256</i> from mask specified in the high bit of each byte in <i>ymm4</i> and store the values into <i>ymm1</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RM	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	< <i>XMM0</i> >	NA
RVMR	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	imm8[7:4]

Description

Conditionally copies byte elements from the source operand (second operand) to the destination operand (first operand) depending on mask bits defined in the implicit third register argument, *XMM0*. The mask bits are the most significant bit in each byte element of the *XMM0* register.

If a mask bit is "1", then the corresponding byte element in the source operand is copied to the destination, else the byte element in the destination operand is left unchanged.

The register assignment of the implicit third operand is defined to be the architectural register *XMM0*.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source operand and the destination operand is the same. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged. The mask register operand is implicitly defined to be the architectural register *XMM0*. An attempt to execute *PBLENDVB* with a VEX prefix will cause #UD.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand and the destination operand are XMM registers. The second source operand is an XMM register or 128-bit memory location. The mask operand is the third source register, and encoded in bits[7:4] of the immediate byte(imm8). The bits[3:0] of imm8 are ignored. In 32-bit mode, imm8[7] is ignored. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM register (destination register) are zeroed. VEX.L must be 0, otherwise the instruction will #UD. VEX.W must be 0, otherwise, the instruction will #UD.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand and the destination operand are YMM registers. The second source operand is an YMM register or 256-bit memory location. The third source register is an YMM register and encoded in bits[7:4] of the immediate byte(imm8). The bits[3:0] of imm8 are ignored. In 32-bit mode, imm8[7] is ignored.

VPBLENDVB permits the mask to be any XMM or YMM register. In contrast, *PBLENDVB* treats *XMM0* implicitly as the mask and do not support non-destructive destination operation. An attempt to execute *PBLENDVB* encoded with a VEX prefix will cause a #UD exception.

Operation

PBLENDVB (128-bit Legacy SSE version)

MASK ← *XMM0*

IF (MASK[7] = 1) THEN DEST[7:0] ← SRC[7:0];

ELSE DEST[7:0] ← DEST[7:0];

IF (MASK[15] = 1) THEN DEST[15:8] ← SRC[15:8];

PBLENDW — Blend Packed Words

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 3A 0E /r ib PBLENDW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i> , <i>imm8</i>	RMI	V/V	SSE4_1	Select words from <i>xmm1</i> and <i>xmm2/m128</i> from mask specified in <i>imm8</i> and store the values into <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F3A.WIG 0E /r ib VPBLENDW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i> , <i>imm8</i>	RVMI	V/V	AVX	Select words from <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/m128</i> from mask specified in <i>imm8</i> and store the values into <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F3A.WIG 0E /r ib VPBLENDW <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i> , <i>imm8</i>	RVMI	V/V	AVX2	Select words from <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/m256</i> from mask specified in <i>imm8</i> and store the values into <i>ymm1</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RMI	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	imm8	NA
RVMI	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	imm8

Description

Words from the source operand (second operand) are conditionally written to the destination operand (first operand) depending on bits in the immediate operand (third operand). The immediate bits (bits 7:0) form a mask that determines whether the corresponding word in the destination is copied from the source. If a bit in the mask, corresponding to a word, is "1", then the word is copied, else the word element in the destination operand is unchanged.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 encoded version: The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM register are zeroed.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand is a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register.

Operation

PBLENDW (128-bit Legacy SSE version)

```

IF (imm8[0] = 1) THEN DEST[15:0] ← SRC[15:0]
ELSE DEST[15:0] ← DEST[15:0]
IF (imm8[1] = 1) THEN DEST[31:16] ← SRC[31:16]
ELSE DEST[31:16] ← DEST[31:16]
IF (imm8[2] = 1) THEN DEST[47:32] ← SRC[47:32]
ELSE DEST[47:32] ← DEST[47:32]
IF (imm8[3] = 1) THEN DEST[63:48] ← SRC[63:48]
ELSE DEST[63:48] ← DEST[63:48]
IF (imm8[4] = 1) THEN DEST[79:64] ← SRC[79:64]
ELSE DEST[79:64] ← DEST[79:64]
IF (imm8[5] = 1) THEN DEST[95:80] ← SRC[95:80]
ELSE DEST[95:80] ← DEST[95:80]
IF (imm8[6] = 1) THEN DEST[111:96] ← SRC[111:96]
ELSE DEST[111:96] ← DEST[111:96]
IF (imm8[7] = 1) THEN DEST[127:112] ← SRC[127:112]

```

PCLMULQDQ – Carry-Less Multiplication Quadword

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 3A 44 /r ib PCLMULQDQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i> , <i>imm8</i>	RMI	V/V	PCLMUL- QDQ	Carry-less multiplication of one quadword of <i>xmm1</i> by one quadword of <i>xmm2/m128</i> , stores the 128-bit result in <i>xmm1</i> . The immediate is used to determine which quadwords of <i>xmm1</i> and <i>xmm2/m128</i> should be used.
VEX.128.66.0F3A.WIG 44 /r ib VPCLMULQDQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i> , <i>imm8</i>	RVMI	V/V	Both PCL- MULQDQ and AVX flags	Carry-less multiplication of one quadword of <i>xmm2</i> by one quadword of <i>xmm3/m128</i> , stores the 128-bit result in <i>xmm1</i> . The immediate is used to determine which quadwords of <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/m128</i> should be used.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand2	Operand3	Operand4
RMI	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	imm8	NA
RVMI	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	imm8

Description

Performs a carry-less multiplication of two quadwords, selected from the first source and second source operand according to the value of the immediate byte. Bits 4 and 0 are used to select which 64-bit half of each operand to use according to Table 4-13, other bits of the immediate byte are ignored.

Table 4-13. PCLMULQDQ Quadword Selection of Immediate Byte

Imm[4]	Imm[0]	PCLMULQDQ Operation
0	0	CL_MUL(SRC2 ¹ [63:0], SRC1[63:0])
0	1	CL_MUL(SRC2[63:0], SRC1[127:64])
1	0	CL_MUL(SRC2[127:64], SRC1[63:0])
1	1	CL_MUL(SRC2[127:64], SRC1[127:64])

NOTES:

1. SRC2 denotes the second source operand, which can be a register or memory; SRC1 denotes the first source and destination operand.

The first source operand and the destination operand are the same and must be an XMM register. The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1: 128) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

Compilers and assemblers may implement the following pseudo-op syntax to simplify programming and emit the required encoding for Imm8.

Table 4-14. Pseudo-Op and PCLMULQDQ Implementation

Pseudo-Op	Imm8 Encoding
PCLMULLQLQDQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i>	0000_0000B
PCLMULHQLQDQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i>	0000_0001B
PCLMULLQHQQDQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i>	0001_0000B
PCLMULHQHQQDQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i>	0001_0001B

PCMPEQB/PCMPEQW/PCMPEQD— Compare Packed Data for Equal

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF 74 /r ¹ PCMPEQB <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Compare packed bytes in <i>mm/m64</i> and <i>mm</i> for equality.
66 OF 74 /r PCMPEQB <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Compare packed bytes in <i>xmm2/m128</i> and <i>xmm1</i> for equality.
NP OF 75 /r ¹ PCMPEQW <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Compare packed words in <i>mm/m64</i> and <i>mm</i> for equality.
66 OF 75 /r PCMPEQW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Compare packed words in <i>xmm2/m128</i> and <i>xmm1</i> for equality.
NP OF 76 /r ¹ PCMPEQD <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Compare packed doublewords in <i>mm/m64</i> and <i>mm</i> for equality.
66 OF 76 /r PCMPEQD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Compare packed doublewords in <i>xmm2/m128</i> and <i>xmm1</i> for equality.
VEX.128.66.OF.WIG 74 /r VPCMPEQB <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Compare packed bytes in <i>xmm3/m128</i> and <i>xmm2</i> for equality.
VEX.128.66.OF.WIG 75 /r VPCMPEQW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Compare packed words in <i>xmm3/m128</i> and <i>xmm2</i> for equality.
VEX.128.66.OF.WIG 76 /r VPCMPEQD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Compare packed doublewords in <i>xmm3/m128</i> and <i>xmm2</i> for equality.
VEX.256.66.OF.WIG 74 /r VPCMPEQB <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3 /m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Compare packed bytes in <i>ymm3/m256</i> and <i>ymm2</i> for equality.
VEX.256.66.OF.WIG 75 /r VPCMPEQW <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3 /m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Compare packed words in <i>ymm3/m256</i> and <i>ymm2</i> for equality.
VEX.256.66.OF.WIG 76 /r VPCMPEQD <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3 /m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Compare packed doublewords in <i>ymm3/m256</i> and <i>ymm2</i> for equality.
EVEX.128.66.OF.W0 76 /r VPCMPEQD <i>k1 {k2}</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128/m32bcst</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare Equal between int32 vector <i>xmm2</i> and int32 vector <i>xmm3/m128/m32bcst</i> , and set vector mask <i>k1</i> to reflect the zero/nonzero status of each element of the result, under writemask.
EVEX.256.66.OF.W0 76 /r VPCMPEQD <i>k1 {k2}</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256/m32bcst</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare Equal between int32 vector <i>ymm2</i> and int32 vector <i>ymm3/m256/m32bcst</i> , and set vector mask <i>k1</i> to reflect the zero/nonzero status of each element of the result, under writemask.
EVEX.512.66.OF.W0 76 /r VPCMPEQD <i>k1 {k2}</i> , <i>zmm2</i> , <i>zmm3/m512/m32bcst</i>	C	V/V	AVX512F	Compare Equal between int32 vectors in <i>zmm2</i> and <i>zmm3/m512/m32bcst</i> , and set destination <i>k1</i> according to the comparison results under writemask <i>k2</i> .
EVEX.128.66.OF.WIG 74 /r VPCMPEQB <i>k1 {k2}</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3 /m128</i>	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed bytes in <i>xmm3/m128</i> and <i>xmm2</i> for equality and set vector mask <i>k1</i> to reflect the zero/nonzero status of each element of the result, under writemask.

EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG 74 /r VPCMPEQB k1 {k2}, ymm2, ymm3 /m256	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed bytes in ymm3/m256 and ymm2 for equality and set vector mask k1 to reflect the zero/nonzero status of each element of the result, under writemask.
EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG 74 /r VPCMPEQB k1 {k2}, zmm2, zmm3 /m512	D	V/V	AVX512BW	Compare packed bytes in zmm3/m512 and zmm2 for equality and set vector mask k1 to reflect the zero/nonzero status of each element of the result, under writemask.
EVEX.128.66.0F.WIG 75 /r VPCMPEQW k1 {k2}, xmm2, xmm3 /m128	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed words in xmm3/m128 and xmm2 for equality and set vector mask k1 to reflect the zero/nonzero status of each element of the result, under writemask.
EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG 75 /r VPCMPEQW k1 {k2}, ymm2, ymm3 /m256	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed words in ymm3/m256 and ymm2 for equality and set vector mask k1 to reflect the zero/nonzero status of each element of the result, under writemask.
EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG 75 /r VPCMPEQW k1 {k2}, zmm2, zmm3 /m512	D	V/V	AVX512BW	Compare packed words in zmm3/m512 and zmm2 for equality and set vector mask k1 to reflect the zero/nonzero status of each element of the result, under writemask.

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
D	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a SIMD compare for equality of the packed bytes, words, or doublewords in the destination operand (first operand) and the source operand (second operand). If a pair of data elements is equal, the corresponding data element in the destination operand is set to all 1s; otherwise, it is set to all 0s.

The (V)PCMPEQB instruction compares the corresponding bytes in the destination and source operands; the (V)PCMPEQW instruction compares the corresponding words in the destination and source operands; and the (V)PCMPEQD instruction compares the corresponding doublewords in the destination and source operands.

In 64-bit mode and not encoded with VEX/EVEX, using a REX prefix in the form of REX.R permits this instruction to access additional registers (XMM8-XMM15).

Legacy SSE instructions: The source operand can be an MMX technology register or a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand can be an MMX technology register.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 encoded version: The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM register are zeroed.

PCMPEQQ — Compare Packed Qword Data for Equal

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 38 29 /r PCMPEQQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE4_1	Compare packed qwords in <i>xmm2/m128</i> and <i>xmm1</i> for equality.
VEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 29 /r VPCMPEQQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Compare packed quadwords in <i>xmm3/m128</i> and <i>xmm2</i> for equality.
VEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 29 /r VPCMPEQQ <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3 /m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Compare packed quadwords in <i>ymm3/m256</i> and <i>ymm2</i> for equality.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 29 /r VPCMPEQQ <i>k1</i> { <i>k2</i> }, <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128/m64bcst</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare Equal between int64 vector <i>xmm2</i> and int64 vector <i>xmm3/m128/m64bcst</i> , and set vector mask <i>k1</i> to reflect the zero/nonzero status of each element of the result, under writemask.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 29 /r VPCMPEQQ <i>k1</i> { <i>k2</i> }, <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256/m64bcst</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare Equal between int64 vector <i>ymm2</i> and int64 vector <i>ymm3/m256/m64bcst</i> , and set vector mask <i>k1</i> to reflect the zero/nonzero status of each element of the result, under writemask.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 29 /r VPCMPEQQ <i>k1</i> { <i>k2</i> }, <i>zmm2</i> , <i>zmm3/m512/m64bcst</i>	C	V/V	AVX512F	Compare Equal between int64 vector <i>zmm2</i> and int64 vector <i>zmm3/m512/m64bcst</i> , and set vector mask <i>k1</i> to reflect the zero/nonzero status of each element of the result, under writemask.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (<i>r</i> , <i>w</i>)	ModRM:r/m (<i>r</i>)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (<i>w</i>)	VEX.vvvv (<i>r</i>)	ModRM:r/m (<i>r</i>)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (<i>w</i>)	EVEX.vvvv (<i>r</i>)	ModRM:r/m (<i>r</i>)	NA

Description

Performs an SIMD compare for equality of the packed quadwords in the destination operand (first operand) and the source operand (second operand). If a pair of data elements is equal, the corresponding data element in the destination is set to all 1s; otherwise, it is set to 0s.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 encoded version: The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM register are zeroed.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand is a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register.

EVEX encoded VPCMPEQQ: The first source operand (second operand) is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand (first operand) is a mask register updated according to the writemask *k2*.

PCMPGTB/PCMPGTW/PCMPGTD—Compare Packed Signed Integers for Greater Than

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF 64 /r ¹ PCMPGTB <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Compare packed signed byte integers in <i>mm</i> and <i>mm/m64</i> for greater than.
66 OF 64 /r PCMPGTB <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Compare packed signed byte integers in <i>xmm1</i> and <i>xmm2/m128</i> for greater than.
NP OF 65 /r ¹ PCMPGTW <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Compare packed signed word integers in <i>mm</i> and <i>mm/m64</i> for greater than.
66 OF 65 /r PCMPGTW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Compare packed signed word integers in <i>xmm1</i> and <i>xmm2/m128</i> for greater than.
NP OF 66 /r ¹ PCMPGTD <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Compare packed signed doubleword integers in <i>mm</i> and <i>mm/m64</i> for greater than.
66 OF 66 /r PCMPGTD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Compare packed signed doubleword integers in <i>xmm1</i> and <i>xmm2/m128</i> for greater than.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 64 /r VPCMPGTB <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Compare packed signed byte integers in <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/m128</i> for greater than.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 65 /r VPCMPGTW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Compare packed signed word integers in <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/m128</i> for greater than.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 66 /r VPCMPGTD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Compare packed signed doubleword integers in <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/m128</i> for greater than.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG 64 /r VPCMPGTB <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Compare packed signed byte integers in <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/m256</i> for greater than.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG 65 /r VPCMPGTW <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Compare packed signed word integers in <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/m256</i> for greater than.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG 66 /r VPCMPGTD <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Compare packed signed doubleword integers in <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/m256</i> for greater than.
EVEX.128.66.0F.WO 66 /r VPCMPGTD <i>k1</i> { <i>k2</i> }, <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128/m32bcst</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare Greater between int32 vector <i>xmm2</i> and int32 vector <i>xmm3/m128/m32bcst</i> , and set vector mask <i>k1</i> to reflect the zero/nonzero status of each element of the result, under writemask.
EVEX.256.66.0F.WO 66 /r VPCMPGTD <i>k1</i> { <i>k2</i> }, <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256/m32bcst</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare Greater between int32 vector <i>ymm2</i> and int32 vector <i>ymm3/m256/m32bcst</i> , and set vector mask <i>k1</i> to reflect the zero/nonzero status of each element of the result, under writemask.
EVEX.512.66.0F.WO 66 /r VPCMPGTD <i>k1</i> { <i>k2</i> }, <i>zmm2</i> , <i>zmm3/m512/m32bcst</i>	C	V/V	AVX512F	Compare Greater between int32 elements in <i>zmm2</i> and <i>zmm3/m512/m32bcst</i> , and set destination <i>k1</i> according to the comparison results under writemask. <i>k2</i> .
EVEX.128.66.0F.WIG 64 /r VPCMPGTB <i>k1</i> { <i>k2</i> }, <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed signed byte integers in <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/m128</i> for greater than, and set vector mask <i>k1</i> to reflect the zero/nonzero status of each element of the result, under writemask.
EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG 64 /r VPCMPGTB <i>k1</i> { <i>k2</i> }, <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed signed byte integers in <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/m256</i> for greater than, and set vector mask <i>k1</i> to reflect the zero/nonzero status of each element of the result, under writemask.

EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG 64 /r VPCMPGTB k1 {k2}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	D	V/V	AVX512BW	Compare packed signed byte integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512 for greater than, and set vector mask k1 to reflect the zero/nonzero status of each element of the result, under writemask.
EVEX.128.66.0F.WIG 65 /r VPCMPGTW k1 {k2}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed signed word integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128 for greater than, and set vector mask k1 to reflect the zero/nonzero status of each element of the result, under writemask.
EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG 65 /r VPCMPGTW k1 {k2}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed signed word integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256 for greater than, and set vector mask k1 to reflect the zero/nonzero status of each element of the result, under writemask.
EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG 65 /r VPCMPGTW k1 {k2}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	D	V/V	AVX512BW	Compare packed signed word integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512 for greater than, and set vector mask k1 to reflect the zero/nonzero status of each element of the result, under writemask.

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
D	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs an SIMD signed compare for the greater value of the packed byte, word, or doubleword integers in the destination operand (first operand) and the source operand (second operand). If a data element in the destination operand is greater than the corresponding data element in the source operand, the corresponding data element in the destination operand is set to all 1s; otherwise, it is set to all 0s.

The PCMPGTB instruction compares the corresponding signed byte integers in the destination and source operands; the PCMPGTW instruction compares the corresponding signed word integers in the destination and source operands; and the PCMPGTD instruction compares the corresponding signed doubleword integers in the destination and source operands.

In 64-bit mode and not encoded with VEX/EVEX, using a REX prefix in the form of REX.R permits this instruction to access additional registers (XMM8-XMM15).

Legacy SSE instructions: The source operand can be an MMX technology register or a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand can be an MMX technology register.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The first source operand and destination operand are XMM registers. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 encoded version: The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The first source operand and destination operand are XMM registers. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM register are zeroed.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand is a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register.

PCMPGTQ – Compare Packed Data for Greater Than

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 38 37 /r PCMPGTQ <i>xmm1, xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE4_2	Compare packed signed qwords in <i>xmm2/m128</i> and <i>xmm1</i> for greater than.
VEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 37 /r VPCMPGTQ <i>xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Compare packed signed qwords in <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/m128</i> for greater than.
VEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 37 /r VPCMPGTQ <i>ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Compare packed signed qwords in <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/m256</i> for greater than.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 37 /r VPCMPGTQ <i>k1 {k2}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare Greater between int64 vector <i>xmm2</i> and int64 vector <i>xmm3/m128/m64bcst</i> , and set vector mask <i>k1</i> to reflect the zero/nonzero status of each element of the result, under writemask.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 37 /r VPCMPGTQ <i>k1 {k2}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare Greater between int64 vector <i>ymm2</i> and int64 vector <i>ymm3/m256/m64bcst</i> , and set vector mask <i>k1</i> to reflect the zero/nonzero status of each element of the result, under writemask.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 37 /r VPCMPGTQ <i>k1 {k2}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst</i>	C	V/V	AVX512F	Compare Greater between int64 vector <i>zmm2</i> and int64 vector <i>zmm3/m512/m64bcst</i> , and set vector mask <i>k1</i> to reflect the zero/nonzero status of each element of the result, under writemask.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs an SIMD signed compare for the packed quadwords in the destination operand (first operand) and the source operand (second operand). If the data element in the first (destination) operand is greater than the corresponding element in the second (source) operand, the corresponding data element in the destination is set to all 1s; otherwise, it is set to 0s.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The first source operand and destination operand are XMM registers. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 encoded version: The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The first source operand and destination operand are XMM registers. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM register are zeroed.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand is a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register.

EVEX encoded VPCMPGTD/Q: The first source operand (second operand) is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand (first operand) is a mask register updated according to the writemask *k2*.

PDEP – Parallel Bits Deposit

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 -bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.LZ.F2.0F38.W0 F5 /r PDEP r32a, r32b, r/m32	RVM	V/V	BMI2	Parallel deposit of bits from r32b using mask in r/m32, result is written to r32a.
VEX.LZ.F2.0F38.W1 F5 /r PDEP r64a, r64b, r/m64	RVM	V/N.E.	BMI2	Parallel deposit of bits from r64b using mask in r/m64, result is written to r64a.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RVM	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

PDEP uses a mask in the second source operand (the third operand) to transfer/scatter contiguous low order bits in the first source operand (the second operand) into the destination (the first operand). PDEP takes the low bits from the first source operand and deposit them in the destination operand at the corresponding bit locations that are set in the second source operand (mask). All other bits (bits not set in mask) in destination are set to zero.

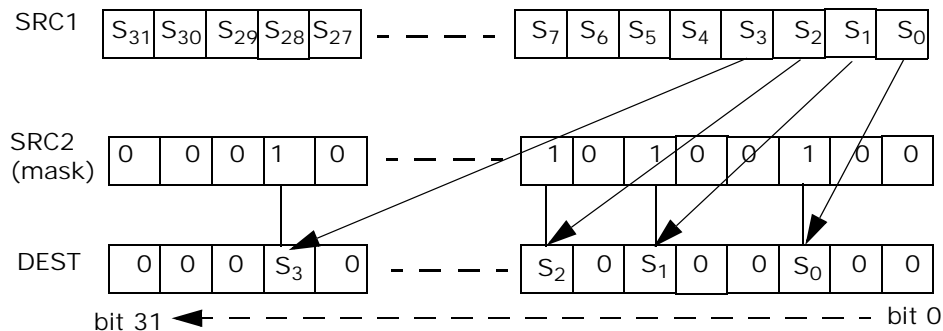


Figure 4-8. PDEP Example

This instruction is not supported in real mode and virtual-8086 mode. The operand size is always 32 bits if not in 64-bit mode. In 64-bit mode operand size 64 requires VEX.W1. VEX.W1 is ignored in non-64-bit modes. An attempt to execute this instruction with VEX.L not equal to 0 will cause #UD.

Operation

```

TEMP ← SRC1;
MASK ← SRC2;
DEST ← 0;
m ← 0, k ← 0;
DO WHILE m < OperandSize
    IF MASK[ m ] = 1 THEN
        DEST[ m ] ← TEMP[ k ];
        k ← k + 1;
    FI
    m ← m + 1;
OD
    
```

PEXT – Parallel Bits Extract

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 -bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.LZ.F3.0F38.W0 F5 /r PEXT <i>r32a, r32b, r/m32</i>	RVM	V/V	BMI2	Parallel extract of bits from <i>r32b</i> using mask in <i>r/m32</i> , result is written to <i>r32a</i> .
VEX.LZ.F3.0F38.W1 F5 /r PEXT <i>r64a, r64b, r/m64</i>	RVM	V/N.E.	BMI2	Parallel extract of bits from <i>r64b</i> using mask in <i>r/m64</i> , result is written to <i>r64a</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RVM	ModRM:reg (<i>w</i>)	VEX.vvvv (<i>r</i>)	ModRM:r/m (<i>r</i>)	NA

Description

PEXT uses a mask in the second source operand (the third operand) to transfer either contiguous or non-contiguous bits in the first source operand (the second operand) to contiguous low order bit positions in the destination (the first operand). For each bit set in the MASK, PEXT extracts the corresponding bits from the first source operand and writes them into contiguous lower bits of destination operand. The remaining upper bits of destination are zeroed.

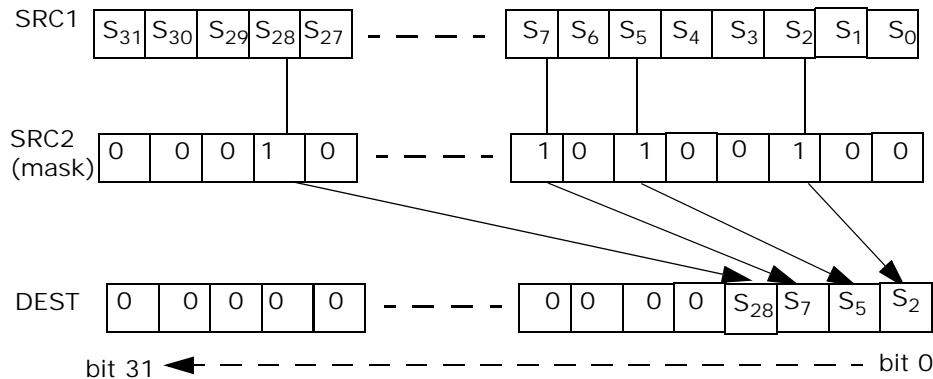


Figure 4-9. PEXT Example

This instruction is not supported in real mode and virtual-8086 mode. The operand size is always 32 bits if not in 64-bit mode. In 64-bit mode operand size 64 requires VEX.W1. VEX.W1 is ignored in non-64-bit modes. An attempt to execute this instruction with VEX.L not equal to 0 will cause #UD.

Operation

```

TEMP ← SRC1;
MASK ← SRC2;
DEST ← 0;
m ← 0, k ← 0;
DO WHILE m < OperandSize
    IF MASK[ m ] = 1 THEN
        DEST[ k ] ← TEMP[ m ];
        k ← k + 1;
    FI

```

PHADDSW – Packed Horizontal Add and Saturate

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F 38 03 /r ¹ PHADDSW mm1, mm2/m64	RM	V/V	SSSE3	Add 16-bit signed integers horizontally, pack saturated integers to mm1.
66 0F 38 03 /r PHADDSW xmm1, xmm2/m128	RM	V/V	SSSE3	Add 16-bit signed integers horizontally, pack saturated integers to xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 03 /r VPHADDSW xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	RVM	V/V	AVX	Add 16-bit signed integers horizontally, pack saturated integers to xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 03 /r VPHADDSW ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	RVM	V/V	AVX2	Add 16-bit signed integers horizontally, pack saturated integers to ymm1.

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RM	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
RVM	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

(V)PHADDSW adds two adjacent signed 16-bit integers horizontally from the source and destination operands and saturates the signed results; packs the signed, saturated 16-bit results to the destination operand (first operand). When the source operand is a 128-bit memory operand, the operand must be aligned on a 16-byte boundary or a general-protection exception (#GP) will be generated.

Legacy SSE version: Both operands can be MMX registers. The second source operand can be an MMX register or a 64-bit memory location.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. The second source operand is an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

In 64-bit mode, use the REX prefix to access additional registers.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. The second source operand is an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination YMM register are zeroed.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source and destination operands are YMM registers. The second source operand can be an YMM register or a 256-bit memory location.

Note: VEX.L must be 0, otherwise the instruction will #UD.

Operation

PHADDSW (with 64-bit operands)

```
mm1[15-0] = SaturateToSignedWord((mm1[31-16] + mm1[15-0]);
mm1[31-16] = SaturateToSignedWord(mm1[63-48] + mm1[47-32]);
mm1[47-32] = SaturateToSignedWord(mm2/m64[31-16] + mm2/m64[15-0]);
mm1[63-48] = SaturateToSignedWord(mm2/m64[63-48] + mm2/m64[47-32]);
```

PHADDW/PHADD — Packed Horizontal Add

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF 38 01 /r ¹ PHADDW mm1, mm2/m64	RM	V/V	SSSE3	Add 16-bit integers horizontally, pack to mm1.
66 OF 38 01 /r PHADDW xmm1, xmm2/m128	RM	V/V	SSSE3	Add 16-bit integers horizontally, pack to xmm1.
NP OF 38 02 /r PHADD mm1, mm2/m64	RM	V/V	SSSE3	Add 32-bit integers horizontally, pack to mm1.
66 OF 38 02 /r PHADD xmm1, xmm2/m128	RM	V/V	SSSE3	Add 32-bit integers horizontally, pack to xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 01 /r VPHADDW xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	RVM	V/V	AVX	Add 16-bit integers horizontally, pack to xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 02 /r VPHADD mm1, mm2, mm3/m128	RVM	V/V	AVX	Add 32-bit integers horizontally, pack to mm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 01 /r VPHADDW ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	RVM	V/V	AVX2	Add 16-bit signed integers horizontally, pack to ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 02 /r VPHADD mm1, mm2, mm3/m256	RVM	V/V	AVX2	Add 32-bit signed integers horizontally, pack to mm1.

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RM	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
RVM	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

(V)PHADDW adds two adjacent 16-bit signed integers horizontally from the source and destination operands and packs the 16-bit signed results to the destination operand (first operand). (V)PHADD mm adds two adjacent 32-bit signed integers horizontally from the source and destination operands and packs the 32-bit signed results to the destination operand (first operand). When the source operand is a 128-bit memory operand, the operand must be aligned on a 16-byte boundary or a general-protection exception (#GP) will be generated.

Note that these instructions can operate on either unsigned or signed (two’s complement notation) integers; however, it does not set bits in the EFLAGS register to indicate overflow and/or a carry. To prevent undetected overflow conditions, software must control the ranges of the values operated on.

Legacy SSE instructions: Both operands can be MMX registers. The second source operand can be an MMX register or a 64-bit memory location.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1: 128) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

In 64-bit mode, use the REX prefix to access additional registers.

PHSUBSW — Packed Horizontal Subtract and Saturate

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F 38 07 /r ¹ PHSUBSW mm1, mm2/m64	RM	V/V	SSSE3	Subtract 16-bit signed integer horizontally, pack saturated integers to mm1.
66 0F 38 07 /r PHSUBSW xmm1, xmm2/m128	RM	V/V	SSSE3	Subtract 16-bit signed integer horizontally, pack saturated integers to xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 07 /r VPHSUBSW xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	RVM	V/V	AVX	Subtract 16-bit signed integer horizontally, pack saturated integers to xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 07 /r VPHSUBSW ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	RVM	V/V	AVX2	Subtract 16-bit signed integer horizontally, pack saturated integers to ymm1.

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RM	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
RVM	ModRM:reg (r, w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

(V)PHSUBSW performs horizontal subtraction on each adjacent pair of 16-bit signed integers by subtracting the most significant word from the least significant word of each pair in the source and destination operands. The signed, saturated 16-bit results are packed to the destination operand (first operand). When the source operand is a 128-bit memory operand, the operand must be aligned on a 16-byte boundary or a general-protection exception (#GP) will be generated.

Legacy SSE version: Both operands can be MMX registers. The second source operand can be an MMX register or a 64-bit memory location.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. The second source operand is an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

In 64-bit mode, use the REX prefix to access additional registers.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. The second source operand is an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination YMM register are zeroed.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source and destination operands are YMM registers. The second source operand can be an YMM register or a 256-bit memory location.

Note: VEX.L must be 0, otherwise the instruction will #UD.

Operation

PHSUBSW (with 64-bit operands)

```
mm1[15-0] = SaturateToSignedWord(mm1[15-0] - mm1[31-16]);
mm1[31-16] = SaturateToSignedWord(mm1[47-32] - mm1[63-48]);
mm1[47-32] = SaturateToSignedWord(mm2/m64[15-0] - mm2/m64[31-16]);
mm1[63-48] = SaturateToSignedWord(mm2/m64[47-32] - mm2/m64[63-48]);
```

PHSUBW/PHSUBD – Packed Horizontal Subtract

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF 38 05 /r ¹ PHSUBW mm1, mm2/m64	RM	V/V	SSSE3	Subtract 16-bit signed integers horizontally, pack to mm1.
66 OF 38 05 /r PHSUBW xmm1, xmm2/m128	RM	V/V	SSSE3	Subtract 16-bit signed integers horizontally, pack to xmm1.
NP OF 38 06 /r PHSUBD mm1, mm2/m64	RM	V/V	SSSE3	Subtract 32-bit signed integers horizontally, pack to mm1.
66 OF 38 06 /r PHSUBD xmm1, xmm2/m128	RM	V/V	SSSE3	Subtract 32-bit signed integers horizontally, pack to xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 05 /r VPHSUBW xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	RVM	V/V	AVX	Subtract 16-bit signed integers horizontally, pack to xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 06 /r VPHSUBD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	RVM	V/V	AVX	Subtract 32-bit signed integers horizontally, pack to xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 05 /r VPHSUBW ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	RVM	V/V	AVX2	Subtract 16-bit signed integers horizontally, pack to ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 06 /r VPHSUBD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	RVM	V/V	AVX2	Subtract 32-bit signed integers horizontally, pack to ymm1.

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RM	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
RVM	ModRM:reg (r, w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

(V)PHSUBW performs horizontal subtraction on each adjacent pair of 16-bit signed integers by subtracting the most significant word from the least significant word of each pair in the source and destination operands, and packs the signed 16-bit results to the destination operand (first operand). (V)PHSUBD performs horizontal subtraction on each adjacent pair of 32-bit signed integers by subtracting the most significant doubleword from the least significant doubleword of each pair, and packs the signed 32-bit result to the destination operand. When the source operand is a 128-bit memory operand, the operand must be aligned on a 16-byte boundary or a general-protection exception (#GP) will be generated.

Legacy SSE version: Both operands can be MMX registers. The second source operand can be an MMX register or a 64-bit memory location.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. The second source operand is an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

In 64-bit mode, use the REX prefix to access additional registers.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. The second source operand is an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination YMM register are zeroed.

PINSRB/PINSRD/PINSRQ – Insert Byte/Dword/Qword

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 3A 20 /r ib PINSRB <i>xmm1</i> , <i>r32/m8</i> , <i>imm8</i>	A	V/V	SSE4_1	Insert a byte integer value from <i>r32/m8</i> into <i>xmm1</i> at the destination element in <i>xmm1</i> specified by <i>imm8</i> .
66 0F 3A 22 /r ib PINSRD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>r/m32</i> , <i>imm8</i>	A	V/V	SSE4_1	Insert a dword integer value from <i>r/m32</i> into the <i>xmm1</i> at the destination element specified by <i>imm8</i> .
66 REX.W 0F 3A 22 /r ib PINSRQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>r/m64</i> , <i>imm8</i>	A	V/N. E.	SSE4_1	Insert a qword integer value from <i>r/m64</i> into the <i>xmm1</i> at the destination element specified by <i>imm8</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F3A.W0 20 /r ib VPINSRB <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>r32/m8</i> , <i>imm8</i>	B	V ¹ /V	AVX	Merge a byte integer value from <i>r32/m8</i> and rest from <i>xmm2</i> into <i>xmm1</i> at the byte offset in <i>imm8</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F3A.W0 22 /r ib VPINSRD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>r/m32</i> , <i>imm8</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Insert a dword integer value from <i>r32/m32</i> and rest from <i>xmm2</i> into <i>xmm1</i> at the dword offset in <i>imm8</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F3A.W1 22 /r ib VPINSRQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>r/m64</i> , <i>imm8</i>	B	V/I ²	AVX	Insert a qword integer value from <i>r64/m64</i> and rest from <i>xmm2</i> into <i>xmm1</i> at the qword offset in <i>imm8</i> .
EVEX.128.66.0F3A.WIG 20 /r ib VPINSRB <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>r32/m8</i> , <i>imm8</i>	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Merge a byte integer value from <i>r32/m8</i> and rest from <i>xmm2</i> into <i>xmm1</i> at the byte offset in <i>imm8</i> .
EVEX.128.66.0F3A.W0 22 /r ib VPINSRD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>r32/m32</i> , <i>imm8</i>	C	V/V	AVX512DQ	Insert a dword integer value from <i>r32/m32</i> and rest from <i>xmm2</i> into <i>xmm1</i> at the dword offset in <i>imm8</i> .
EVEX.128.66.0F3A.W1 22 /r ib VPINSRQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>r64/m64</i> , <i>imm8</i>	C	V/N.E. ²	AVX512DQ	Insert a qword integer value from <i>r64/m64</i> and rest from <i>xmm2</i> into <i>xmm1</i> at the qword offset in <i>imm8</i> .

NOTES:

- In 64-bit mode, VEX.W1 is ignored for VPINSRB (similar to legacy REX.W=1 prefix with PINSRB).
- VEX.W/EVEX.W in non-64 bit is ignored; the instructions behaves as if the W0 version is used.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	imm8	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	imm8
C	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8

Description

Copies a byte/dword/qword from the source operand (second operand) and inserts it in the destination operand (first operand) at the location specified with the count operand (third operand). (The other elements in the destination register are left untouched.) The source operand can be a general-purpose register or a memory location. (When the source operand is a general-purpose register, PINSRB copies the low byte of the register.) The destination operand is an XMM register. The count operand is an 8-bit immediate. When specifying a qword[dword, byte] location in an XMM register, the [2, 4] least-significant bit(s) of the count operand specify the location.

PINSRW—Insert Word

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF C4 /r ib ¹ PINSRW <i>mm</i> , <i>r32/m16</i> , <i>imm8</i>	A	V/V	SSE	Insert the low word from <i>r32</i> or from <i>m16</i> into <i>mm</i> at the word position specified by <i>imm8</i> .
66 OF C4 /r ib PINSRW <i>xmm</i> , <i>r32/m16</i> , <i>imm8</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Move the low word of <i>r32</i> or from <i>m16</i> into <i>xmm</i> at the word position specified by <i>imm8</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F.W0 C4 /r ib VPINSRW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>r32/m16</i> , <i>imm8</i>	B	V ² /V	AVX	Insert a word integer value from <i>r32/m16</i> and rest from <i>xmm2</i> into <i>xmm1</i> at the word offset in <i>imm8</i> .
EVEX.128.66.0F.WIG C4 /r ib VPINSRW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>r32/m16</i> , <i>imm8</i>	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Insert a word integer value from <i>r32/m16</i> and rest from <i>xmm2</i> into <i>xmm1</i> at the word offset in <i>imm8</i> .

NOTES:

- See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.
- In 64-bit mode, VEX.W1 is ignored for VPINSRW (similar to legacy REX.W=1 prefix in PINSRW).

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	imm8	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	imm8
C	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8

Description

Copies a word from the source operand (second operand) and inserts it in the destination operand (first operand) at the location specified with the count operand (third operand). (The other words in the destination register are left untouched.) The source operand can be a general-purpose register or a 16-bit memory location. (When the source operand is a general-purpose register, the low word of the register is copied.) The destination operand can be an MMX technology register or an XMM register. The count operand is an 8-bit immediate. When specifying a word location in an MMX technology register, the 2 least-significant bits of the count operand specify the location; for an XMM register, the 3 least-significant bits specify the location.

In 64-bit mode and not encoded with VEX/EVEX, using a REX prefix in the form of REX.R permits this instruction to access additional registers (XMM8-XMM15, R8-15).

128-bit Legacy SSE version: Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 encoded version: Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination YMM register are zeroed. VEX.L must be 0, otherwise the instruction will #UD.

EVEX.128 encoded version: Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination register are zeroed. EVEX.L'L must be 0, otherwise the instruction will #UD.

PMADDUBSW – Multiply and Add Packed Signed and Unsigned Bytes

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP.0F.38.04 /r ¹ PMADDUBSW <i>mm1, mm2/m64</i>	A	V/V	SSSE3	Multiply signed and unsigned bytes, add horizontal pair of signed words, pack saturated signed-words to <i>mm1</i> .
66.0F.38.04 /r PMADDUBSW <i>xmm1, xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSSE3	Multiply signed and unsigned bytes, add horizontal pair of signed words, pack saturated signed-words to <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F38.WIG.04 /r VPMADDUBSW <i>xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Multiply signed and unsigned bytes, add horizontal pair of signed words, pack saturated signed-words to <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F38.WIG.04 /r VPMADDUBSW <i>ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Multiply signed and unsigned bytes, add horizontal pair of signed words, pack saturated signed-words to <i>ymm1</i> .
EVEX.128.66.0F38.WIG.04 /r VPMADDUBSW <i>xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Multiply signed and unsigned bytes, add horizontal pair of signed words, pack saturated signed-words to <i>xmm1</i> under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.0F38.WIG.04 /r VPMADDUBSW <i>ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Multiply signed and unsigned bytes, add horizontal pair of signed words, pack saturated signed-words to <i>ymm1</i> under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.0F38.WIG.04 /r VPMADDUBSW <i>zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512</i>	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Multiply signed and unsigned bytes, add horizontal pair of signed words, pack saturated signed-words to <i>zmm1</i> under writemask <i>k1</i> .

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (<i>r, w</i>)	ModRM:r/m (<i>r</i>)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (<i>w</i>)	VEX.vvvv (<i>r</i>)	ModRM:r/m (<i>r</i>)	NA
C	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (<i>w</i>)	EVEX.vvvv (<i>r</i>)	ModRM:r/m (<i>r</i>)	NA

Description

(V)PMADDUBSW multiplies vertically each unsigned byte of the destination operand (first operand) with the corresponding signed byte of the source operand (second operand), producing intermediate signed 16-bit integers. Each adjacent pair of signed words is added and the saturated result is packed to the destination operand. For example, the lowest-order bytes (bits 7-0) in the source and destination operands are multiplied and the intermediate signed word result is added with the corresponding intermediate result from the 2nd lowest-order bytes (bits 15-8) of the operands; the sign-saturated result is stored in the lowest word of the destination register (15-0). The same operation is performed on the other pairs of adjacent bytes. Both operands can be MMX register or XMM registers. When the source operand is a 128-bit memory operand, the operand must be aligned on a 16-byte boundary or a general-protection exception (#GP) will be generated.

In 64-bit mode and not encoded with VEX/EVEX, use the REX prefix to access XMM8-XMM15.

PMADDWD—Multiply and Add Packed Integers

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F F5 /r ¹ PMADDWD <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Multiply the packed words in <i>mm</i> by the packed words in <i>mm/m64</i> , add adjacent doubleword results, and store in <i>mm</i> .
66 0F F5 /r PMADDWD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Multiply the packed word integers in <i>xmm1</i> by the packed word integers in <i>xmm2/m128</i> , add adjacent doubleword results, and store in <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG F5 /r VPMADDWD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Multiply the packed word integers in <i>xmm2</i> by the packed word integers in <i>xmm3/m128</i> , add adjacent doubleword results, and store in <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG F5 /r VPMADDWD <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Multiply the packed word integers in <i>ymm2</i> by the packed word integers in <i>ymm3/m256</i> , add adjacent doubleword results, and store in <i>ymm1</i> .
EVEX.128.66.0F.WIG F5 /r VPMADDWD <i>xmm1</i> {k1}{z}, <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Multiply the packed word integers in <i>xmm2</i> by the packed word integers in <i>xmm3/m128</i> , add adjacent doubleword results, and store in <i>xmm1</i> under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG F5 /r VPMADDWD <i>ymm1</i> {k1}{z}, <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Multiply the packed word integers in <i>ymm2</i> by the packed word integers in <i>ymm3/m256</i> , add adjacent doubleword results, and store in <i>ymm1</i> under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG F5 /r VPMADDWD <i>zmm1</i> {k1}{z}, <i>zmm2</i> , <i>zmm3/m512</i>	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Multiply the packed word integers in <i>zmm2</i> by the packed word integers in <i>zmm3/m512</i> , add adjacent doubleword results, and store in <i>zmm1</i> under writemask k1.

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Multiplies the individual signed words of the destination operand (first operand) by the corresponding signed words of the source operand (second operand), producing temporary signed, doubleword results. The adjacent doubleword results are then summed and stored in the destination operand. For example, the corresponding low-order words (15-0) and (31-16) in the source and destination operands are multiplied by one another and the doubleword results are added together and stored in the low doubleword of the destination register (31-0). The same operation is performed on the other pairs of adjacent words. (Figure 4-11 shows this operation when using 64-bit operands).

PMAXSB/PMAXSW/PMAXSD/PMAXSQ—Maximum of Packed Signed Integers

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F EE /r ¹ PMAXSW mm1, mm2/m64	A	V/V	SSE	Compare signed word integers in mm2/m64 and mm1 and return maximum values.
66 0F 38 3C /r PMAXSB xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE4_1	Compare packed signed byte integers in xmm1 and xmm2/m128 and store packed maximum values in xmm1.
66 0F EE /r PMAXSW xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE2	Compare packed signed word integers in xmm2/m128 and xmm1 and stores maximum packed values in xmm1.
66 0F 38 3D /r PMAXSD xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE4_1	Compare packed signed dword integers in xmm1 and xmm2/m128 and store packed maximum values in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 3C /r VPMAXSB xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Compare packed signed byte integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128 and store packed maximum values in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG EE /r VPMAXSW xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Compare packed signed word integers in xmm3/m128 and xmm2 and store packed maximum values in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 3D /r VPMAXSD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Compare packed signed dword integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128 and store packed maximum values in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 3C /r VPMAXSB ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX2	Compare packed signed byte integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256 and store packed maximum values in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG EE /r VPMAXSW ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX2	Compare packed signed word integers in ymm3/m256 and ymm2 and store packed maximum values in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 3D /r VPMAXSD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX2	Compare packed signed dword integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256 and store packed maximum values in ymm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 3C /r VPMAXSB xmm1{k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed signed byte integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128 and store packed maximum values in xmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 3C /r VPMAXSB ymm1{k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed signed byte integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256 and store packed maximum values in ymm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.WIG 3C /r VPMAXSB zmm1{k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Compare packed signed byte integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512 and store packed maximum values in zmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F.WIG EE /r VPMAXSW xmm1{k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed signed word integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128 and store packed maximum values in xmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG EE /r VPMAXSW ymm1{k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed signed word integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256 and store packed maximum values in ymm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG EE /r VPMAXSW zmm1{k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Compare packed signed word integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512 and store packed maximum values in zmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 3D /r VPMAXSD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare packed signed dword integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst and store packed maximum values in xmm1 using writemask k1.

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 3D /r VPMAXSD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare packed signed dword integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst and store packed maximum values in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 3D /r VPMAXSD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	D	V/V	AVX512F	Compare packed signed dword integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst and store packed maximum values in zmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 3D /r VPMAXSQ xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare packed signed qword integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst and store packed maximum values in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 3D /r VPMAXSQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare packed signed qword integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst and store packed maximum values in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 3D /r VPMAXSQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	D	V/V	AVX512F	Compare packed signed qword integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst and store packed maximum values in zmm1 using writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
D	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a SIMD compare of the packed signed byte, word, dword or qword integers in the second source operand and the first source operand and returns the maximum value for each pair of integers to the destination operand.

Legacy SSE version PMAWSW: The source operand can be an MMX technology register or a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand can be an MMX technology register.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. The second source operand is an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. The second source operand is an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding destination register are zeroed.

VEX.256 encoded version: The second source operand can be an YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The first source and destination operands are YMM registers. Bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding destination register are zeroed.

EVEX encoded VPMAXSD/Q: The first source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register; The second source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 32/64-bit memory location. The destination operand is conditionally updated based on writemask k1.

EVEX encoded VPMAXSB/W: The first source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register; The second source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location. The destination operand is conditionally updated based on writemask k1.

PMAXUB/PMAXUW—Maximum of Packed Unsigned Integers

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F DE /r ¹ PMAXUB mm1, mm2/m64	A	V/V	SSE	Compare unsigned byte integers in mm2/m64 and mm1 and returns maximum values.
66 0F DE /r PMAXUB xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE2	Compare packed unsigned byte integers in xmm1 and xmm2/m128 and store packed maximum values in xmm1.
66 0F 38 3E/r PMAXUW xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE4_1	Compare packed unsigned word integers in xmm2/m128 and xmm1 and stores maximum packed values in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F DE /r VPMAXUB xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Compare packed unsigned byte integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128 and store packed maximum values in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38 3E/r VPMAXUW xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Compare packed unsigned word integers in xmm3/m128 and xmm2 and store maximum packed values in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F DE /r VPMAXUB ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX2	Compare packed unsigned byte integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256 and store packed maximum values in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38 3E/r VPMAXUW ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX2	Compare packed unsigned word integers in ymm3/m256 and ymm2 and store maximum packed values in ymm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F.WIG DE /r VPMAXUB xmm1{k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed unsigned byte integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128 and store packed maximum values in xmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG DE /r VPMAXUB ymm1{k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed unsigned byte integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256 and store packed maximum values in ymm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG DE /r VPMAXUB zmm1{k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Compare packed unsigned byte integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512 and store packed maximum values in zmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 3E /r VPMAXUW xmm1{k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed unsigned word integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128 and store packed maximum values in xmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 3E /r VPMAXUW ymm1{k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed unsigned word integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256 and store packed maximum values in ymm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.WIG 3E /r VPMAXUW zmm1{k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Compare packed unsigned word integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512 and store packed maximum values in zmm1 under writemask k1.

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

PMAXUD/PMAXUQ—Maximum of Packed Unsigned Integers

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bitMode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 38 3F /r PMAXUD xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE4_1	Compare packed unsigned dword integers in xmm1 and xmm2/m128 and store packed maximum values in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 3F /r VPMAXUD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Compare packed unsigned dword integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128 and store packed maximum values in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 3F /r VPMAXUD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX2	Compare packed unsigned dword integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256 and store packed maximum values in ymm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 3F /r VPMAXUD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare packed unsigned dword integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst and store packed maximum values in xmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 3F /r VPMAXUD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare packed unsigned dword integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst and store packed maximum values in ymm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 3F /r VPMAXUD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512F	Compare packed unsigned dword integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst and store packed maximum values in zmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 3F /r VPMAXUQ xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare packed unsigned qword integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst and store packed maximum values in xmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 3F /r VPMAXUQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare packed unsigned qword integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst and store packed maximum values in ymm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 3F /r VPMAXUQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512F	Compare packed unsigned qword integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst and store packed maximum values in zmm1 under writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a SIMD compare of the packed unsigned dword or qword integers in the second source operand and the first source operand and returns the maximum value for each pair of integers to the destination operand.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. The second source operand is an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. The second source operand is an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding destination register are zeroed.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register; The second source operand is a YMM register or 256-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding destination register are zeroed.

EVEX encoded versions: The first source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register; The second source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 32/64-bit memory location. The destination operand is conditionally updated based on writemask k1.

PMINSB/PMINSW—Minimum of Packed Signed Integers

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F EA /r ¹ PMINSW mm1, mm2/m64	A	V/V	SSE	Compare signed word integers in mm2/m64 and mm1 and return minimum values.
66 0F 38 38 /r PMINSB xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE4_1	Compare packed signed byte integers in xmm1 and xmm2/m128 and store packed minimum values in xmm1.
66 0F EA /r PMINSW xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE2	Compare packed signed word integers in xmm2/m128 and xmm1 and store packed minimum values in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38 38 /r VPMINSB xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Compare packed signed byte integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128 and store packed minimum values in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F EA /r VPMINSW xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Compare packed signed word integers in xmm3/m128 and xmm2 and return packed minimum values in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38 38 /r VPMINSB ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX2	Compare packed signed byte integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256 and store packed minimum values in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F EA /r VPMINSW ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX2	Compare packed signed word integers in ymm3/m256 and ymm2 and return packed minimum values in ymm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 38 /r VPMINSB xmm1{k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed signed byte integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128 and store packed minimum values in xmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 38 /r VPMINSB ymm1{k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed signed byte integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256 and store packed minimum values in ymm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.WIG 38 /r VPMINSB zmm1{k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Compare packed signed byte integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512 and store packed minimum values in zmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F.WIG EA /r VPMINSW xmm1{k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed signed word integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128 and store packed minimum values in xmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG EA /r VPMINSW ymm1{k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed signed word integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256 and store packed minimum values in ymm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG EA /r VPMINSW zmm1{k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Compare packed signed word integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512 and store packed minimum values in zmm1 under writemask k1.

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

PMINSD/PMINSQ—Minimum of Packed Signed Integers

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 38 39 /r PMINSD xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE4_1	Compare packed signed dword integers in xmm1 and xmm2/m128 and store packed minimum values in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 39 /r VPMINSD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Compare packed signed dword integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128 and store packed minimum values in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 39 /r VPMINSD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX2	Compare packed signed dword integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m128 and store packed minimum values in ymm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 39 /r VPMINSD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare packed signed dword integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128 and store packed minimum values in xmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 39 /r VPMINSD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare packed signed dword integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256 and store packed minimum values in ymm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 39 /r VPMINSD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512F	Compare packed signed dword integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst and store packed minimum values in zmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 39 /r VPMINSQ xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare packed signed qword integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128 and store packed minimum values in xmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 39 /r VPMINSQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare packed signed qword integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256 and store packed minimum values in ymm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 39 /r VPMINSQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512F	Compare packed signed qword integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst and store packed minimum values in zmm1 under writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a SIMD compare of the packed signed dword or qword integers in the second source operand and the first source operand and returns the minimum value for each pair of integers to the destination operand.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. The second source operand is an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. The second source operand is an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding destination register are zeroed.

VEX.256 encoded version: The second source operand can be an YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The first source and destination operands are YMM registers. Bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding destination register are zeroed.

PMINUB/PMINUW—Minimum of Packed Unsigned Integers

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F DA /r ¹ PMINUB mm1, mm2/m64	A	V/V	SSE	Compare unsigned byte integers in mm2/m64 and mm1 and returns minimum values.
66 0F DA /r PMINUB xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE2	Compare packed unsigned byte integers in xmm1 and xmm2/m128 and store packed minimum values in xmm1.
66 0F 38 3A/r PMINUW xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE4_1	Compare packed unsigned word integers in xmm2/m128 and xmm1 and store packed minimum values in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F DA /r VPMINUB xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Compare packed unsigned byte integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128 and store packed minimum values in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38 3A/r VPMINUW xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Compare packed unsigned word integers in xmm3/m128 and xmm2 and return packed minimum values in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F DA /r VPMINUB ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX2	Compare packed unsigned byte integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256 and store packed minimum values in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38 3A/r VPMINUW ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX2	Compare packed unsigned word integers in ymm3/m256 and ymm2 and return packed minimum values in ymm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F DA /r VPMINUB xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed unsigned byte integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128 and store packed minimum values in xmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F DA /r VPMINUB ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed unsigned byte integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256 and store packed minimum values in ymm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F DA /r VPMINUB zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Compare packed unsigned byte integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512 and store packed minimum values in zmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38 3A/r VPMINUW xmm1{k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed unsigned word integers in xmm3/m128 and xmm2 and return packed minimum values in xmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38 3A/r VPMINUW ymm1{k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed unsigned word integers in ymm3/m256 and ymm2 and return packed minimum values in ymm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38 3A/r VPMINUW zmm1{k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Compare packed unsigned word integers in zmm3/m512 and zmm2 and return packed minimum values in zmm1 under writemask k1.

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

PMINUD/PMINUQ—Minimum of Packed Unsigned Integers

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 38 3B /r PMINUD xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE4_1	Compare packed unsigned dword integers in xmm1 and xmm2/m128 and store packed minimum values in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 3B /r VPMINUD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Compare packed unsigned dword integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128 and store packed minimum values in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 3B /r VPMINUD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX2	Compare packed unsigned dword integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256 and store packed minimum values in ymm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 3B /r VPMINUD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare packed unsigned dword integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst and store packed minimum values in xmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 3B /r VPMINUD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare packed unsigned dword integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst and store packed minimum values in ymm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 3B /r VPMINUD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512F	Compare packed unsigned dword integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst and store packed minimum values in zmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 3B /r VPMINUQ xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare packed unsigned qword integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst and store packed minimum values in xmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 3B /r VPMINUQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare packed unsigned qword integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst and store packed minimum values in ymm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 3B /r VPMINUQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512F	Compare packed unsigned qword integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst and store packed minimum values in zmm1 under writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a SIMD compare of the packed unsigned dword/qword integers in the second source operand and the first source operand and returns the minimum value for each pair of integers to the destination operand.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. The second source operand is an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. The second source operand is an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding destination register are zeroed.

VEX.256 encoded version: The second source operand can be an YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The first source and destination operands are YMM registers. Bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding destination register are zeroed.

EVEX encoded versions: The first source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register; The second source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 32/64-bit memory location. The destination operand is conditionally updated based on writemask k1.

PMULDQ—Multiply Packed Doubleword Integers

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 38 28 /r PMULDQ xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE4_1	Multiply packed signed doubleword integers in xmm1 by packed signed doubleword integers in xmm2/m128, and store the quadword results in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 28 /r VPMULDQ xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Multiply packed signed doubleword integers in xmm2 by packed signed doubleword integers in xmm3/m128, and store the quadword results in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 28 /r VPMULDQ ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX2	Multiply packed signed doubleword integers in ymm2 by packed signed doubleword integers in ymm3/m256, and store the quadword results in ymm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 28 /r VPMULDQ xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed signed doubleword integers in xmm2 by packed signed doubleword integers in xmm3/m128/m64bcst, and store the quadword results in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 28 /r VPMULDQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed signed doubleword integers in ymm2 by packed signed doubleword integers in ymm3/m256/m64bcst, and store the quadword results in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 28 /r VPMULDQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed signed doubleword integers in zmm2 by packed signed doubleword integers in zmm3/m512/m64bcst, and store the quadword results in zmm1 using writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Multiplies packed signed doubleword integers in the even-numbered (zero-based reference) elements of the first source operand with the packed signed doubleword integers in the corresponding elements of the second source operand and stores packed signed quadword results in the destination operand.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The input signed doubleword integers are taken from the even-numbered elements of the source operands, i.e. the first (low) and third doubleword element. For 128-bit memory operands, 128 bits are fetched from memory, but only the first and third doublewords are used in the computation. The first source operand and the destination XMM operand is the same. The second source operand can be an XMM register or 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1: 128) of the corresponding destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 encoded version: The input signed doubleword integers are taken from the even-numbered elements of the source operands, i.e., the first (low) and third doubleword element. For 128-bit memory operands, 128 bits are fetched from memory, but only the first and third doublewords are used in the computation. The first source operand and the destination operand are XMM registers. The second source operand can be an XMM register or 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1: 128) of the corresponding destination register are zeroed.

VEX.256 encoded version: The input signed doubleword integers are taken from the even-numbered elements of the source operands, i.e. the first, 3rd, 5th, 7th doubleword element. For 256-bit memory operands, 256 bits are fetched from memory, but only the four even-numbered doublewords are used in the computation. The first source operand and the destination operand are YMM registers. The second source operand can be a YMM register or 256-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1: 256) of the corresponding destination ZMM register are zeroed.

PMULHRWSW — Packed Multiply High with Round and Scale

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F 38 0B /r ¹ PMULHRWSW <i>mm1, mm2/m64</i>	A	V/V	SSSE3	Multiply 16-bit signed words, scale and round signed doublewords, pack high 16 bits to <i>mm1</i> .
66 0F 38 0B /r PMULHRWSW <i>xmm1, xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSSE3	Multiply 16-bit signed words, scale and round signed doublewords, pack high 16 bits to <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 0B /r VPMULHRWSW <i>xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Multiply 16-bit signed words, scale and round signed doublewords, pack high 16 bits to <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 0B /r VPMULHRWSW <i>ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Multiply 16-bit signed words, scale and round signed doublewords, pack high 16 bits to <i>ymm1</i> .
EVEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 0B /r VPMULHRWSW <i>xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Multiply 16-bit signed words, scale and round signed doublewords, pack high 16 bits to <i>xmm1</i> under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 0B /r VPMULHRWSW <i>ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Multiply 16-bit signed words, scale and round signed doublewords, pack high 16 bits to <i>ymm1</i> under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.0F38.WIG 0B /r VPMULHRWSW <i>zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512</i>	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Multiply 16-bit signed words, scale and round signed doublewords, pack high 16 bits to <i>zmm1</i> under writemask <i>k1</i> .

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

PMULHRWSW multiplies vertically each signed 16-bit integer from the destination operand (first operand) with the corresponding signed 16-bit integer of the source operand (second operand), producing intermediate, signed 32-bit integers. Each intermediate 32-bit integer is truncated to the 18 most significant bits. Rounding is always performed by adding 1 to the least significant bit of the 18-bit intermediate result. The final result is obtained by selecting the 16 bits immediately to the right of the most significant bit of each 18-bit intermediate result and packed to the destination operand.

When the source operand is a 128-bit memory operand, the operand must be aligned on a 16-byte boundary or a general-protection exception (#GP) will be generated.

In 64-bit mode and not encoded with VEX/EVEX, use the REX prefix to access XMM8-XMM15 registers.

Legacy SSE version 64-bit operand: Both operands can be MMX registers. The second source operand is an MMX register or a 64-bit memory location.

PMULHUW—Multiply Packed Unsigned Integers and Store High Result

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F E4 /r ¹ PMULHUW <i>mm1, mm2/m64</i>	A	V/V	SSE	Multiply the packed unsigned word integers in <i>mm1</i> register and <i>mm2/m64</i> , and store the high 16 bits of the results in <i>mm1</i> .
66 0F E4 /r PMULHUW <i>xmm1, xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Multiply the packed unsigned word integers in <i>xmm1</i> and <i>xmm2/m128</i> , and store the high 16 bits of the results in <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG E4 /r VPMULHUW <i>xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Multiply the packed unsigned word integers in <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/m128</i> , and store the high 16 bits of the results in <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG E4 /r VPMULHUW <i>ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Multiply the packed unsigned word integers in <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/m256</i> , and store the high 16 bits of the results in <i>ymm1</i> .
EVEX.128.66.0F.WIG E4 /r VPMULHUW <i>xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Multiply the packed unsigned word integers in <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/m128</i> , and store the high 16 bits of the results in <i>xmm1</i> under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG E4 /r VPMULHUW <i>ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Multiply the packed unsigned word integers in <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/m256</i> , and store the high 16 bits of the results in <i>ymm1</i> under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG E4 /r VPMULHUW <i>zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512</i>	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Multiply the packed unsigned word integers in <i>zmm2</i> and <i>zmm3/m512</i> , and store the high 16 bits of the results in <i>zmm1</i> under writemask <i>k1</i> .

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a SIMD unsigned multiply of the packed unsigned word integers in the destination operand (first operand) and the source operand (second operand), and stores the high 16 bits of each 32-bit intermediate results in the destination operand. (Figure 4-12 shows this operation when using 64-bit operands.)

In 64-bit mode and not encoded with VEX/EVEX, using a REX prefix in the form of REX.R permits this instruction to access additional registers (XMM8-XMM15).

Legacy SSE version 64-bit operand: The source operand can be an MMX technology register or a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand is an MMX technology register.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. The second source operand is an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

PMULHW—Multiply Packed Signed Integers and Store High Result

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF E5 /r ¹ PMULHW mm, mm/m64	A	V/V	MMX	Multiply the packed signed word integers in <i>mm1</i> register and <i>mm2/m64</i> , and store the high 16 bits of the results in <i>mm1</i> .
66 OF E5 /r PMULHW xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE2	Multiply the packed signed word integers in <i>xmm1</i> and <i>xmm2/m128</i> , and store the high 16 bits of the results in <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.OF.WIG E5 /r VPMULHW xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Multiply the packed signed word integers in <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/m128</i> , and store the high 16 bits of the results in <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.OF.WIG E5 /r VPMULHW ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX2	Multiply the packed signed word integers in <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/m256</i> , and store the high 16 bits of the results in <i>ymm1</i> .
EVEX.128.66.OF.WIG E5 /r VPMULHW xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Multiply the packed signed word integers in <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/m128</i> , and store the high 16 bits of the results in <i>xmm1</i> under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.OF.WIG E5 /r VPMULHW ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Multiply the packed signed word integers in <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/m256</i> , and store the high 16 bits of the results in <i>ymm1</i> under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.OF.WIG E5 /r VPMULHW zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Multiply the packed signed word integers in <i>zmm2</i> and <i>zmm3/m512</i> , and store the high 16 bits of the results in <i>zmm1</i> under writemask <i>k1</i> .

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a SIMD signed multiply of the packed signed word integers in the destination operand (first operand) and the source operand (second operand), and stores the high 16 bits of each intermediate 32-bit result in the destination operand. (Figure 4-12 shows this operation when using 64-bit operands.)

In 64-bit mode and not encoded with VEX/EVEX, using a REX prefix in the form of REX.R permits this instruction to access additional registers (XMM8-XMM15).

Legacy SSE version 64-bit operand: The source operand can be an MMX technology register or a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand is an MMX technology register.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. The second source operand is an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1: 128) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. The second source operand is an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1: 128) of the destination YMM register are zeroed. VEX.L must be 0, otherwise the instruction will #UD.

PMULLD/PMULLQ—Multiply Packed Integers and Store Low Result

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 38 40 /r PMULLD xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE4_1	Multiply the packed dword signed integers in xmm1 and xmm2/m128 and store the low 32 bits of each product in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 40 /r VPMULLD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Multiply the packed dword signed integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128 and store the low 32 bits of each product in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 40 /r VPMULLD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX2	Multiply the packed dword signed integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256 and store the low 32 bits of each product in ymm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 40 /r VPMULLD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply the packed dword signed integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst and store the low 32 bits of each product in xmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 40 /r VPMULLD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply the packed dword signed integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst and store the low 32 bits of each product in ymm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 40 /r VPMULLD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply the packed dword signed integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst and store the low 32 bits of each product in zmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 40 /r VPMULLQ xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512DQ	Multiply the packed qword signed integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst and store the low 64 bits of each product in xmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 40 /r VPMULLQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512DQ	Multiply the packed qword signed integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst and store the low 64 bits of each product in ymm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 40 /r VPMULLQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512DQ	Multiply the packed qword signed integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst and store the low 64 bits of each product in zmm1 under writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a SIMD signed multiply of the packed signed dword/qword integers from each element of the first source operand with the corresponding element in the second source operand. The low 32/64 bits of each 64/128-bit intermediate results are stored to the destination operand.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. The second source operand is an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. The second source operand is an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register are zeroed.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register; The second source operand is a YMM register or 256-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding destination ZMM register are zeroed.

PMULLW—Multiply Packed Signed Integers and Store Low Result

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF D5 /r ¹ PMULLW mm, mm/m64	A	V/V	MMX	Multiply the packed signed word integers in mm1 register and mm2/m64, and store the low 16 bits of the results in mm1.
66 OF D5 /r PMULLW xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE2	Multiply the packed signed word integers in xmm1 and xmm2/m128, and store the low 16 bits of the results in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.OF.WIG D5 /r VPMULLW xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Multiply the packed dword signed integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128 and store the low 32 bits of each product in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.OF.WIG D5 /r VPMULLW ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX2	Multiply the packed signed word integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256, and store the low 16 bits of the results in ymm1.
EVEX.128.66.OF.WIG D5 /r VPMULLW xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Multiply the packed signed word integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128, and store the low 16 bits of the results in xmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.OF.WIG D5 /r VPMULLW ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Multiply the packed signed word integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256, and store the low 16 bits of the results in ymm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.OF.WIG D5 /r VPMULLW zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Multiply the packed signed word integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512, and store the low 16 bits of the results in zmm1 under writemask k1.

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a SIMD signed multiply of the packed signed word integers in the destination operand (first operand) and the source operand (second operand), and stores the low 16 bits of each intermediate 32-bit result in the destination operand. (Figure 4-12 shows this operation when using 64-bit operands.)

In 64-bit mode and not encoded with VEX/EVEX, using a REX prefix in the form of REX.R permits this instruction to access additional registers (XMM8-XMM15).

Legacy SSE version 64-bit operand: The source operand can be an MMX technology register or a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand is an MMX technology register.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. The second source operand is an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. The second source operand is an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination YMM register are zeroed. VEX.L must be 0, otherwise the instruction will #UD.

PMULUDQ—Multiply Packed Unsigned Doubleword Integers

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F F4 /r ¹ PMULUDQ mm1, mm2/m64	A	V/V	SSE2	Multiply unsigned doubleword integer in mm1 by unsigned doubleword integer in mm2/m64, and store the quadword result in mm1.
66 0F F4 /r PMULUDQ xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE2	Multiply packed unsigned doubleword integers in xmm1 by packed unsigned doubleword integers in xmm2/m128, and store the quadword results in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG F4 /r VPMULUDQ xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Multiply packed unsigned doubleword integers in xmm2 by packed unsigned doubleword integers in xmm3/m128, and store the quadword results in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG F4 /r VPMULUDQ ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX2	Multiply packed unsigned doubleword integers in ymm2 by packed unsigned doubleword integers in ymm3/m256, and store the quadword results in ymm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 F4 /r VPMULUDQ xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed unsigned doubleword integers in xmm2 by packed unsigned doubleword integers in xmm3/m128/m64bcst, and store the quadword results in xmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W1 F4 /r VPMULUDQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed unsigned doubleword integers in ymm2 by packed unsigned doubleword integers in ymm3/m256/m64bcst, and store the quadword results in ymm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W1 F4 /r VPMULUDQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed unsigned doubleword integers in zmm2 by packed unsigned doubleword integers in zmm3/m512/m64bcst, and store the quadword results in zmm1 under writemask k1.

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Multiplies the first operand (destination operand) by the second operand (source operand) and stores the result in the destination operand.

In 64-bit mode and not encoded with VEX/EVEX, using a REX prefix in the form of REX.R permits this instruction to access additional registers (XMM8-XMM15).

Legacy SSE version 64-bit operand: The source operand can be an unsigned doubleword integer stored in the low doubleword of an MMX technology register or a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand can be an unsigned doubleword integer stored in the low doubleword an MMX technology register. The result is an unsigned

POR—Bitwise Logical OR

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF EB /r ¹ POR <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Bitwise OR of <i>mm/m64</i> and <i>mm</i> .
66 OF EB /r POR <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Bitwise OR of <i>xmm2/m128</i> and <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.OF.WIG EB /r VPOR <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Bitwise OR of <i>xmm2/m128</i> and <i>xmm3</i> .
VEX.256.66.OF.WIG EB /r VPOR <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Bitwise OR of <i>ymm2/m256</i> and <i>ymm3</i> .
EVEX.128.66.OF.WO EB /r VPORD <i>xmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }[<i>z</i>], <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128/m32bcst</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Bitwise OR of packed doubleword integers in <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/m128/m32bcst</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.OF.WO EB /r VPORD <i>ymm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }[<i>z</i>], <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256/m32bcst</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Bitwise OR of packed doubleword integers in <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/m256/m32bcst</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.OF.WO EB /r VPORD <i>zmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }[<i>z</i>], <i>zmm2</i> , <i>zmm3/m512/m32bcst</i>	C	V/V	AVX512F	Bitwise OR of packed doubleword integers in <i>zmm2</i> and <i>zmm3/m512/m32bcst</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.128.66.OF.W1 EB /r VPORQ <i>xmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }[<i>z</i>], <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128/m64bcst</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Bitwise OR of packed quadword integers in <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/m128/m64bcst</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.OF.W1 EB /r VPORQ <i>ymm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }[<i>z</i>], <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256/m64bcst</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Bitwise OR of packed quadword integers in <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/m256/m64bcst</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.OF.W1 EB /r VPORQ <i>zmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }[<i>z</i>], <i>zmm2</i> , <i>zmm3/m512/m64bcst</i>	C	V/V	AVX512F	Bitwise OR of packed quadword integers in <i>zmm2</i> and <i>zmm3/m512/m64bcst</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (<i>r</i> , <i>w</i>)	ModRM:r/m (<i>r</i>)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (<i>w</i>)	VEX.vvvv (<i>r</i>)	ModRM:r/m (<i>r</i>)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (<i>w</i>)	EVEX.vvvv (<i>r</i>)	ModRM:r/m (<i>r</i>)	NA

Description

Performs a bitwise logical OR operation on the source operand (second operand) and the destination operand (first operand) and stores the result in the destination operand. Each bit of the result is set to 1 if either or both of the corresponding bits of the first and second operands are 1; otherwise, it is set to 0.

In 64-bit mode and not encoded with VEX/EVEX, using a REX prefix in the form of REX.R permits this instruction to access additional registers (XMM8-XMM15).

PREFETCHW—Prefetch Data into Caches in Anticipation of a Write

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
OF 0D /1 PREFETCHW m8	A	V/V	PREFETCHW	Move data from m8 closer to the processor in anticipation of a write.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
M	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA	NA

Description

Fetches the cache line of data from memory that contains the byte specified with the source operand to a location in the 1st or 2nd level cache and invalidates other cached instances of the line.

The source operand is a byte memory location. If the line selected is already present in the lowest level cache and is already in an exclusively owned state, no data movement occurs. Prefetches from non-writeback memory are ignored.

The PREFETCHW instruction is merely a hint and does not affect program behavior. If executed, this instruction moves data closer to the processor and invalidates other cached copies in anticipation of the line being written to in the future.

The characteristic of prefetch locality hints is implementation-dependent, and can be overloaded or ignored by a processor implementation. The amount of data prefetched is also processor implementation-dependent. It will, however, be a minimum of 32 bytes. Additional details of the implementation-dependent locality hints are described in Section 7.4 of *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Optimization Reference Manual*.

It should be noted that processors are free to speculatively fetch and cache data with exclusive ownership from system memory regions that permit such accesses (that is, the WB memory type). A PREFETCHW instruction is considered a hint to this speculative behavior. Because this speculative fetching can occur at any time and is not tied to instruction execution, a PREFETCHW instruction is not ordered with respect to the fence instructions (MFENCE, SFENCE, and LFENCE) or locked memory references. A PREFETCHW instruction is also unordered with respect to CLFLUSH and CLFLUSHOPT instructions, other PREFETCHW instructions, or any other general instruction.

It is ordered with respect to serializing instructions such as CPUID, WRMSR, OUT, and MOV CR.

This instruction's operation is the same in non-64-bit modes and 64-bit mode.

Operation

FETCH_WITH_EXCLUSIVE_OWNERSHIP (m8);

Flags Affected

All flags are affected.

C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

```
void _m_prefetchw( void * );
```

Protected Mode Exceptions

#UD If the LOCK prefix is used.

Real-Address Mode Exceptions

#UD If the LOCK prefix is used.

PSADBW—Compute Sum of Absolute Differences

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F F6 /r ¹ PSADBW <i>mm1</i> , <i>mm2/m64</i>	A	V/V	SSE	Computes the absolute differences of the packed unsigned byte integers from <i>mm2/m64</i> and <i>mm1</i> ; differences are then summed to produce an unsigned word integer result.
66 0F F6 /r PSADBW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Computes the absolute differences of the packed unsigned byte integers from <i>xmm2/m128</i> and <i>xmm1</i> ; the 8 low differences and 8 high differences are then summed separately to produce two unsigned word integer results.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG F6 /r VPSADBW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Computes the absolute differences of the packed unsigned byte integers from <i>xmm3/m128</i> and <i>xmm2</i> ; the 8 low differences and 8 high differences are then summed separately to produce two unsigned word integer results.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG F6 /r VPSADBW <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Computes the absolute differences of the packed unsigned byte integers from <i>ymm3/m256</i> and <i>ymm2</i> ; then each consecutive 8 differences are summed separately to produce four unsigned word integer results.
EVEX.128.66.0F.WIG F6 /r VPSADBW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Computes the absolute differences of the packed unsigned byte integers from <i>xmm3/m128</i> and <i>xmm2</i> ; then each consecutive 8 differences are summed separately to produce four unsigned word integer results.
EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG F6 /r VPSADBW <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Computes the absolute differences of the packed unsigned byte integers from <i>ymm3/m256</i> and <i>ymm2</i> ; then each consecutive 8 differences are summed separately to produce four unsigned word integer results.
EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG F6 /r VPSADBW <i>zmm1</i> , <i>zmm2</i> , <i>zmm3/m512</i>	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Computes the absolute differences of the packed unsigned byte integers from <i>zmm3/m512</i> and <i>zmm2</i> ; then each consecutive 8 differences are summed separately to produce four unsigned word integer results.

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

PSHUFB – Packed Shuffle Bytes

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F 38 00 /r ¹ PSHUFB <i>mm1</i> , <i>mm2/m64</i>	A	V/V	SSSE3	Shuffle bytes in <i>mm1</i> according to contents of <i>mm2/m64</i> .
66 0F 38 00 /r PSHUFB <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSSE3	Shuffle bytes in <i>xmm1</i> according to contents of <i>xmm2/m128</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 00 /r VPSHUFB <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Shuffle bytes in <i>xmm2</i> according to contents of <i>xmm3/m128</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 00 /r VPSHUFB <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Shuffle bytes in <i>ymm2</i> according to contents of <i>ymm3/m256</i> .
EVEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 00 /r VPSHUFB <i>xmm1</i> {k1}{z}, <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Shuffle bytes in <i>xmm2</i> according to contents of <i>xmm3/m128</i> under write mask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 00 /r VPSHUFB <i>ymm1</i> {k1}{z}, <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Shuffle bytes in <i>ymm2</i> according to contents of <i>ymm3/m256</i> under write mask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.WIG 00 /r VPSHUFB <i>zmm1</i> {k1}{z}, <i>zmm2</i> , <i>zmm3/m512</i>	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Shuffle bytes in <i>zmm2</i> according to contents of <i>zmm3/m512</i> under write mask k1.

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

PSHUFB performs in-place shuffles of bytes in the destination operand (the first operand) according to the shuffle control mask in the source operand (the second operand). The instruction permutes the data in the destination operand, leaving the shuffle mask unaffected. If the most significant bit (bit[7]) of each byte of the shuffle control mask is set, then constant zero is written in the result byte. Each byte in the shuffle control mask forms an index to permute the corresponding byte in the destination operand. The value of each index is the least significant 4 bits (128-bit operation) or 3 bits (64-bit operation) of the shuffle control byte. When the source operand is a 128-bit memory operand, the operand must be aligned on a 16-byte boundary or a general-protection exception (#GP) will be generated.

In 64-bit mode and not encoded with VEX/EVEX, use the REX prefix to access XMM8-XMM15 registers.

Legacy SSE version 64-bit operand: Both operands can be MMX registers.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source operand and the destination operand are the same. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 encoded version: The destination operand is the first operand, the first source operand is the second operand, the second source operand is the third operand. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination YMM register are zeroed.

VEX.256 encoded version: Bits (255:128) of the destination YMM register stores the 16-byte shuffle result of the upper 16 bytes of the first source operand, using the upper 16-bytes of the second source operand as control mask.

PSIGNB/PSIGNW/PSIGND — Packed SIGN

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F 38 08 /r ¹ PSIGNB <i>mm1</i> , <i>mm2/m64</i>	RM	V/V	SSSE3	Negate/zero/preserve packed byte integers in <i>mm1</i> depending on the corresponding sign in <i>mm2/m64</i> .
66 0F 38 08 /r PSIGNB <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	RM	V/V	SSSE3	Negate/zero/preserve packed byte integers in <i>xmm1</i> depending on the corresponding sign in <i>xmm2/m128</i> .
NP 0F 38 09 /r ¹ PSIGNW <i>mm1</i> , <i>mm2/m64</i>	RM	V/V	SSSE3	Negate/zero/preserve packed word integers in <i>mm1</i> depending on the corresponding sign in <i>mm2/m128</i> .
66 0F 38 09 /r PSIGNW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	RM	V/V	SSSE3	Negate/zero/preserve packed word integers in <i>xmm1</i> depending on the corresponding sign in <i>xmm2/m128</i> .
NP 0F 38 0A /r ¹ PSIGND <i>mm1</i> , <i>mm2/m64</i>	RM	V/V	SSSE3	Negate/zero/preserve packed doubleword integers in <i>mm1</i> depending on the corresponding sign in <i>mm2/m128</i> .
66 0F 38 0A /r PSIGND <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	RM	V/V	SSSE3	Negate/zero/preserve packed doubleword integers in <i>xmm1</i> depending on the corresponding sign in <i>xmm2/m128</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 08 /r VPSIGNB <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	RVM	V/V	AVX	Negate/zero/preserve packed byte integers in <i>xmm2</i> depending on the corresponding sign in <i>xmm3/m128</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 09 /r VPSIGNW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	RVM	V/V	AVX	Negate/zero/preserve packed word integers in <i>xmm2</i> depending on the corresponding sign in <i>xmm3/m128</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F38.WIG 0A /r VPSIGND <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	RVM	V/V	AVX	Negate/zero/preserve packed doubleword integers in <i>xmm2</i> depending on the corresponding sign in <i>xmm3/m128</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 08 /r VPSIGNB <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	RVM	V/V	AVX2	Negate packed byte integers in <i>ymm2</i> if the corresponding sign in <i>ymm3/m256</i> is less than zero.
VEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 09 /r VPSIGNW <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	RVM	V/V	AVX2	Negate packed 16-bit integers in <i>ymm2</i> if the corresponding sign in <i>ymm3/m256</i> is less than zero.
VEX.256.66.0F38.WIG 0A /r VPSIGND <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	RVM	V/V	AVX2	Negate packed doubleword integers in <i>ymm2</i> if the corresponding sign in <i>ymm3/m256</i> is less than zero.
NOTES:				
1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the <i>Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A</i> and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the <i>Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A</i> .				

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RM	ModRM:reg (<i>r</i> , <i>w</i>)	ModRM:r/m (<i>r</i>)	NA	NA
RVM	ModRM:reg (<i>w</i>)	VEX.vvvv (<i>r</i>)	ModRM:r/m (<i>r</i>)	NA

PSLLDQ—Shift Double Quadword Left Logical

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 73 /7 ib PSLLDQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>imm8</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Shift <i>xmm1</i> left by <i>imm8</i> bytes while shifting in 0s.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 73 /7 ib VPSLLDQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>imm8</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Shift <i>xmm2</i> left by <i>imm8</i> bytes while shifting in 0s and store result in <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG 73 /7 ib VPSLLDQ <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>imm8</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Shift <i>ymm2</i> left by <i>imm8</i> bytes while shifting in 0s and store result in <i>ymm1</i> .
EVEX.128.66.0F.WIG 73 /7 ib VPSLLDQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> /m128, <i>imm8</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Shift <i>xmm2</i> /m128 left by <i>imm8</i> bytes while shifting in 0s and store result in <i>xmm1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG 73 /7 ib VPSLLDQ <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> /m256, <i>imm8</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Shift <i>ymm2</i> /m256 left by <i>imm8</i> bytes while shifting in 0s and store result in <i>ymm1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG 73 /7 ib VPSLLDQ <i>zmm1</i> , <i>zmm2</i> /m512, <i>imm8</i>	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Shift <i>zmm2</i> /m512 left by <i>imm8</i> bytes while shifting in 0s and store result in <i>zmm1</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:r/m (r, w)	imm8	NA	NA
B	NA	VEX.vvvv (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	imm8	NA
C	Full Mem	EVEX.vvvv (w)	ModRM:r/m (R)	Imm8	NA

Description

Shifts the destination operand (first operand) to the left by the number of bytes specified in the count operand (second operand). The empty low-order bytes are cleared (set to all 0s). If the value specified by the count operand is greater than 15, the destination operand is set to all 0s. The count operand is an 8-bit immediate.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The source and destination operands are the same. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 encoded version: The source and destination operands are XMM registers. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination YMM register are zeroed.

VEX.256 encoded version: The source operand is YMM register. The destination operand is an YMM register. Bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding ZMM register are zeroed. The count operand applies to both the low and high 128-bit lanes.

EVEX encoded versions: The source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register or a 512/256/128-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The count operand applies to each 128-bit lanes.

Operation

VPSLLDQ (EVEX.U1.512 encoded version)

TEMP ← COUNT

IF (TEMP > 15) THEN TEMP ← 16; FI

DEST[127:0] ← SRC[127:0] << (TEMP * 8)

DEST[255:128] ← SRC[255:128] << (TEMP * 8)

DEST[383:256] ← SRC[383:256] << (TEMP * 8)

DEST[511:384] ← SRC[511:384] << (TEMP * 8)

DEST[MAXVL-1:512] ← 0

PSLLW/PSLLD/PSLLQ—Shift Packed Data Left Logical

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF F1 /r ¹ PSLLW <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Shift words in <i>mm</i> left <i>mm/m64</i> while shifting in 0s.
66 OF F1 /r PSLLW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Shift words in <i>xmm1</i> left by <i>xmm2/m128</i> while shifting in 0s.
NP OF 71 /6 ib PSLLW <i>mm1</i> , <i>imm8</i>	B	V/V	MMX	Shift words in <i>mm</i> left by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s.
66 OF 71 /6 ib PSLLW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>imm8</i>	B	V/V	SSE2	Shift words in <i>xmm1</i> left by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s.
NP OF F2 /r ¹ PSLLD <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Shift doublewords in <i>mm</i> left by <i>mm/m64</i> while shifting in 0s.
66 OF F2 /r PSLLD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Shift doublewords in <i>xmm1</i> left by <i>xmm2/m128</i> while shifting in 0s.
NP OF 72 /6 ib ¹ PSLLD <i>mm</i> , <i>imm8</i>	B	V/V	MMX	Shift doublewords in <i>mm</i> left by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s.
66 OF 72 /6 ib PSLLD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>imm8</i>	B	V/V	SSE2	Shift doublewords in <i>xmm1</i> left by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s.
NP OF F3 /r ¹ PSLLQ <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Shift quadword in <i>mm</i> left by <i>mm/m64</i> while shifting in 0s.
66 OF F3 /r PSLLQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Shift quadwords in <i>xmm1</i> left by <i>xmm2/m128</i> while shifting in 0s.
NP OF 73 /6 ib ¹ PSLLQ <i>mm</i> , <i>imm8</i>	B	V/V	MMX	Shift quadword in <i>mm</i> left by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s.
66 OF 73 /6 ib PSLLQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>imm8</i>	B	V/V	SSE2	Shift quadwords in <i>xmm1</i> left by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s.
VEX.128.66.OF.WIG F1 /r VPSLLW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX	Shift words in <i>xmm2</i> left by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in 0s.
VEX.128.66.OF.WIG 71 /6 ib VPSLLW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>imm8</i>	D	V/V	AVX	Shift words in <i>xmm2</i> left by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s.
VEX.128.66.OF.WIG F2 /r VPSLLD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX	Shift doublewords in <i>xmm2</i> left by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in 0s.
VEX.128.66.OF.WIG 72 /6 ib VPSLLD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>imm8</i>	D	V/V	AVX	Shift doublewords in <i>xmm2</i> left by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s.
VEX.128.66.OF.WIG F3 /r VPSLLQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX	Shift quadwords in <i>xmm2</i> left by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in 0s.
VEX.128.66.OF.WIG 73 /6 ib VPSLLQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>imm8</i>	D	V/V	AVX	Shift quadwords in <i>xmm2</i> left by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s.
VEX.256.66.OF.WIG F1 /r VPSLLW <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX2	Shift words in <i>ymm2</i> left by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in 0s.
VEX.256.66.OF.WIG 71 /6 ib VPSLLW <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>imm8</i>	D	V/V	AVX2	Shift words in <i>ymm2</i> left by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s.

VEX.256.66.0F.WIG F2 /r VPSLLD <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX2	Shift doublewords in <i>ymm2</i> left by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in 0s.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG 72 /6 ib VPSLLD <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>imm8</i>	D	V/V	AVX2	Shift doublewords in <i>ymm2</i> left by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG F3 /r VPSLLQ <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX2	Shift quadwords in <i>ymm2</i> left by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in 0s.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG 73 /6 ib VPSLLQ <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>imm8</i>	D	V/V	AVX2	Shift quadwords in <i>ymm2</i> left by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s.
EVEX.128.66.0F.WIG F1 /r VPSLLW <i>xmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> } <i>z</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	G	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Shift words in <i>xmm2</i> left by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in 0s using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG F1 /r VPSLLW <i>ymm1</i> { <i>k1</i> } <i>z</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	G	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Shift words in <i>ymm2</i> left by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in 0s using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG F1 /r VPSLLW <i>zmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> } <i>z</i> , <i>zmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	G	V/V	AVX512BW	Shift words in <i>zmm2</i> left by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in 0s using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.128.66.0F.WIG 71 /6 ib VPSLLW <i>xmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> } <i>z</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i> , <i>imm8</i>	E	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Shift words in <i>xmm2/m128</i> left by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG 71 /6 ib VPSLLW <i>ymm1</i> { <i>k1</i> } <i>z</i> , <i>ymm2/m256</i> , <i>imm8</i>	E	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Shift words in <i>ymm2/m256</i> left by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG 71 /6 ib VPSLLW <i>zmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> } <i>z</i> , <i>zmm2/m512</i> , <i>imm8</i>	E	V/V	AVX512BW	Shift words in <i>zmm2/m512</i> left by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0 using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.128.66.0F.WO F2 /r VPSLLD <i>xmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> } <i>z</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	G	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift doublewords in <i>xmm2</i> left by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in 0s under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.0F.WO F2 /r VPSLLD <i>ymm1</i> { <i>k1</i> } <i>z</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	G	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift doublewords in <i>ymm2</i> left by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in 0s under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.0F.WO F2 /r VPSLLD <i>zmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> } <i>z</i> , <i>zmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	G	V/V	AVX512F	Shift doublewords in <i>zmm2</i> left by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in 0s under writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.128.66.0F.WO 72 /6 ib VPSLLD <i>xmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> } <i>z</i> , <i>xmm2/m128/m32bcst</i> , <i>imm8</i>	F	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift doublewords in <i>xmm2/m128/m32bcst</i> left by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.0F.WO 72 /6 ib VPSLLD <i>ymm1</i> { <i>k1</i> } <i>z</i> , <i>ymm2/m256/m32bcst</i> , <i>imm8</i>	F	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift doublewords in <i>ymm2/m256/m32bcst</i> left by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.0F.WO 72 /6 ib VPSLLD <i>zmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> } <i>z</i> , <i>zmm2/m512/m32bcst</i> , <i>imm8</i>	F	V/V	AVX512F	Shift doublewords in <i>zmm2/m512/m32bcst</i> left by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 F3 /r VPSLLQ <i>xmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> } <i>z</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	G	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift quadwords in <i>xmm2</i> left by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in 0s using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.0F.W1 F3 /r VPSLLQ <i>ymm1</i> { <i>k1</i> } <i>z</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	G	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift quadwords in <i>ymm2</i> left by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in 0s using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.0F.W1 F3 /r VPSLLQ <i>zmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> } <i>z</i> , <i>zmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	G	V/V	AVX512F	Shift quadwords in <i>zmm2</i> left by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in 0s using writemask <i>k1</i> .

EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 73 /6 ib VPSLLQ xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2/m128/m64bcst, imm8	F	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift quadwords in xmm2/m128/m64bcst left by imm8 while shifting in 0s using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W1 73 /6 ib VPSLLQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2/m256/m64bcst, imm8	F	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift quadwords in ymm2/m256/m64bcst left by imm8 while shifting in 0s using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W1 73 /6 ib VPSLLQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2/m512/m64bcst, imm8	F	V/V	AVX512F	Shift quadwords in zmm2/m512/m64bcst left by imm8 while shifting in 0s using writemask k1.

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:r/m (r, w)	imm8	NA	NA
C	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
D	NA	VEX.vvvv (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	imm8	NA
E	Full Mem	EVEX.vvvv (w)	ModRM:r/m (R)	Imm8	NA
F	Full	EVEX.vvvv (w)	ModRM:r/m (R)	Imm8	NA
G	Mem128	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Shifts the bits in the individual data elements (words, doublewords, or quadword) in the destination operand (first operand) to the left by the number of bits specified in the count operand (second operand). As the bits in the data elements are shifted left, the empty low-order bits are cleared (set to 0). If the value specified by the count operand is greater than 15 (for words), 31 (for doublewords), or 63 (for a quadword), then the destination operand is set to all 0s. Figure 4-17 gives an example of shifting words in a 64-bit operand.

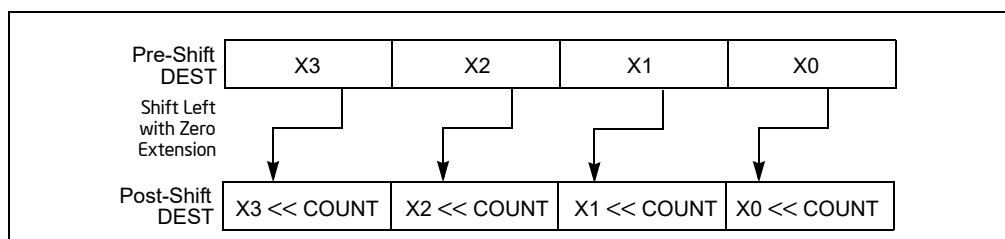


Figure 4-17. PSSLW, PSLD, and PSSLQ Instruction Operation Using 64-bit Operand

The (V)PSSLW instruction shifts each of the words in the destination operand to the left by the number of bits specified in the count operand; the (V)PSLLD instruction shifts each of the doublewords in the destination operand; and the (V)PSSLQ instruction shifts the quadword (or quadwords) in the destination operand.

In 64-bit mode and not encoded with VEX/EVEX, using a REX prefix in the form of REX.R permits this instruction to access additional registers (XMM8-XMM15).

Legacy SSE instructions 64-bit operand: The destination operand is an MMX technology register; the count operand can be either an MMX technology register or a 64-bit memory location.

PSRAW/PSRAD/PSRAQ—Shift Packed Data Right Arithmetic

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF E1 /r ¹ PSRAW <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Shift words in <i>mm</i> right by <i>mm/m64</i> while shifting in sign bits.
66 OF E1 /r PSRAW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Shift words in <i>xmm1</i> right by <i>xmm2/m128</i> while shifting in sign bits.
NP OF 71 /4 ib ¹ PSRAW <i>mm</i> , <i>imm8</i>	B	V/V	MMX	Shift words in <i>mm</i> right by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in sign bits
66 OF 71 /4 ib PSRAW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>imm8</i>	B	V/V	SSE2	Shift words in <i>xmm1</i> right by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in sign bits
NP OF E2 /r ¹ PSRAD <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Shift doublewords in <i>mm</i> right by <i>mm/m64</i> while shifting in sign bits.
66 OF E2 /r PSRAD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Shift doubleword in <i>xmm1</i> right by <i>xmm2 /m128</i> while shifting in sign bits.
NP OF 72 /4 ib ¹ PSRAD <i>mm</i> , <i>imm8</i>	B	V/V	MMX	Shift doublewords in <i>mm</i> right by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in sign bits.
66 OF 72 /4 ib PSRAD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>imm8</i>	B	V/V	SSE2	Shift doublewords in <i>xmm1</i> right by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in sign bits.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG E1 /r VPSRAW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX	Shift words in <i>xmm2</i> right by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in sign bits.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 71 /4 ib VPSRAW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>imm8</i>	D	V/V	AVX	Shift words in <i>xmm2</i> right by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in sign bits.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG E2 /r VPSRAD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX	Shift doublewords in <i>xmm2</i> right by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in sign bits.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 72 /4 ib VPSRAD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>imm8</i>	D	V/V	AVX	Shift doublewords in <i>xmm2</i> right by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in sign bits.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG E1 /r VPSRAW <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX2	Shift words in <i>ymm2</i> right by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in sign bits.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG 71 /4 ib VPSRAW <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>imm8</i>	D	V/V	AVX2	Shift words in <i>ymm2</i> right by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in sign bits.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG E2 /r VPSRAD <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX2	Shift doublewords in <i>ymm2</i> right by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in sign bits.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG 72 /4 ib VPSRAD <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>imm8</i>	D	V/V	AVX2	Shift doublewords in <i>ymm2</i> right by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in sign bits.
EVEX.128.66.0F.WIG E1 /r VPSRAW <i>xmm1</i> {k1}{z}, <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	G	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Shift words in <i>xmm2</i> right by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in sign bits using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG E1 /r VPSRAW <i>ymm1</i> {k1}{z}, <i>ymm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	G	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Shift words in <i>ymm2</i> right by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in sign bits using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG E1 /r VPSRAW <i>zmm1</i> {k1}{z}, <i>zmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	G	V/V	AVX512BW	Shift words in <i>zmm2</i> right by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in sign bits using writemask k1.

EVEX.128.66.0F.WIG 71 /4 ib VPSRAW xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2/m128, imm8	E	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Shift words in xmm2/m128 right by imm8 while shifting in sign bits using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG 71 /4 ib VPSRAW ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2/m256, imm8	E	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Shift words in ymm2/m256 right by imm8 while shifting in sign bits using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG 71 /4 ib VPSRAW zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2/m512, imm8	E	V/V	AVX512BW	Shift words in zmm2/m512 right by imm8 while shifting in sign bits using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W0 E2 /r VPSRAD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	G	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift doublewords in xmm2 right by amount specified in xmm3/m128 while shifting in sign bits using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W0 E2 /r VPSRAD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, xmm3/m128	G	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift doublewords in ymm2 right by amount specified in xmm3/m128 while shifting in sign bits using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W0 E2 /r VPSRAD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, xmm3/m128	G	V/V	AVX512F	Shift doublewords in zmm2 right by amount specified in xmm3/m128 while shifting in sign bits using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W0 72 /4 ib VPSRAD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2/m128/m32bcst, imm8	F	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift doublewords in xmm2/m128/m32bcst right by imm8 while shifting in sign bits using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W0 72 /4 ib VPSRAD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2/m256/m32bcst, imm8	F	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift doublewords in ymm2/m256/m32bcst right by imm8 while shifting in sign bits using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W0 72 /4 ib VPSRAD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2/m512/m32bcst, imm8	F	V/V	AVX512F	Shift doublewords in zmm2/m512/m32bcst right by imm8 while shifting in sign bits using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 E2 /r VPSRAQ xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	G	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift quadwords in xmm2 right by amount specified in xmm3/m128 while shifting in sign bits using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W1 E2 /r VPSRAQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, xmm3/m128	G	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift quadwords in ymm2 right by amount specified in xmm3/m128 while shifting in sign bits using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W1 E2 /r VPSRAQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, xmm3/m128	G	V/V	AVX512F	Shift quadwords in zmm2 right by amount specified in xmm3/m128 while shifting in sign bits using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 72 /4 ib VPSRAQ xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2/m128/m64bcst, imm8	F	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift quadwords in xmm2/m128/m64bcst right by imm8 while shifting in sign bits using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W1 72 /4 ib VPSRAQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2/m256/m64bcst, imm8	F	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift quadwords in ymm2/m256/m64bcst right by imm8 while shifting in sign bits using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W1 72 /4 ib VPSRAQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2/m512/m64bcst, imm8	F	V/V	AVX512F	Shift quadwords in zmm2/m512/m64bcst right by imm8 while shifting in sign bits using writemask k1.

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

PSRLDQ—Shift Double Quadword Right Logical

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 73 /3 ib PSRLDQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>imm8</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Shift <i>xmm1</i> right by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 73 /3 ib VPSRLDQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>imm8</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Shift <i>xmm2</i> right by <i>imm8</i> bytes while shifting in 0s.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG 73 /3 ib VPSRLDQ <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>imm8</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Shift <i>ymm1</i> right by <i>imm8</i> bytes while shifting in 0s.
EVEX.128.66.0F.WIG 73 /3 ib VPSRLDQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i> , <i>imm8</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Shift <i>xmm2/m128</i> right by <i>imm8</i> bytes while shifting in 0s and store result in <i>xmm1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG 73 /3 ib VPSRLDQ <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2/m256</i> , <i>imm8</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Shift <i>ymm2/m256</i> right by <i>imm8</i> bytes while shifting in 0s and store result in <i>ymm1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG 73 /3 ib VPSRLDQ <i>zmm1</i> , <i>zmm2/m512</i> , <i>imm8</i>	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Shift <i>zmm2/m512</i> right by <i>imm8</i> bytes while shifting in 0s and store result in <i>zmm1</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:r/m (r, w)	<i>imm8</i>	NA	NA
B	NA	VEX.vvvv (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	<i>imm8</i>	NA
C	Full Mem	EVEX.vvvv (w)	ModRM:r/m (R)	<i>Imm8</i>	NA

Description

Shifts the destination operand (first operand) to the right by the number of bytes specified in the count operand (second operand). The empty high-order bytes are cleared (set to all 0s). If the value specified by the count operand is greater than 15, the destination operand is set to all 0s. The count operand is an 8-bit immediate.

In 64-bit mode and not encoded with VEX/EVEX, using a REX prefix in the form of REX.R permits this instruction to access additional registers (XMM8-XMM15).

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The source and destination operands are the same. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 encoded version: The source and destination operands are XMM registers. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination YMM register are zeroed.

VEX.256 encoded version: The source operand is a YMM register. The destination operand is a YMM register. The count operand applies to both the low and high 128-bit lanes.

VEX.256 encoded version: The source operand is YMM register. The destination operand is an YMM register. Bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding ZMM register are zeroed. The count operand applies to both the low and high 128-bit lanes.

EVEX encoded versions: The source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register or a 512/256/128-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The count operand applies to each 128-bit lanes.

Note: VEX.vvvv/EVEX.vvvv encodes the destination register.

PSRLW/PSRLD/PSRLQ—Shift Packed Data Right Logical

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF D1 /r ¹ PSRLW <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Shift words in <i>mm</i> right by amount specified in <i>mm/m64</i> while shifting in 0s.
66 OF D1 /r PSRLW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Shift words in <i>xmm1</i> right by amount specified in <i>xmm2/m128</i> while shifting in 0s.
NP OF 71 /2 ib ¹ PSRLW <i>mm</i> , <i>imm8</i>	B	V/V	MMX	Shift words in <i>mm</i> right by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s.
66 OF 71 /2 ib PSRLW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>imm8</i>	B	V/V	SSE2	Shift words in <i>xmm1</i> right by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s.
NP OF D2 /r ¹ PSRLD <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Shift doublewords in <i>mm</i> right by amount specified in <i>mm/m64</i> while shifting in 0s.
66 OF D2 /r PSRLD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Shift doublewords in <i>xmm1</i> right by amount specified in <i>xmm2/m128</i> while shifting in 0s.
NP OF 72 /2 ib ¹ PSRLD <i>mm</i> , <i>imm8</i>	B	V/V	MMX	Shift doublewords in <i>mm</i> right by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s.
66 OF 72 /2 ib PSRLD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>imm8</i>	B	V/V	SSE2	Shift doublewords in <i>xmm1</i> right by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s.
NP OF D3 /r ¹ PSRLQ <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Shift <i>mm</i> right by amount specified in <i>mm/m64</i> while shifting in 0s.
66 OF D3 /r PSRLQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Shift quadwords in <i>xmm1</i> right by amount specified in <i>xmm2/m128</i> while shifting in 0s.
NP OF 73 /2 ib ¹ PSRLQ <i>mm</i> , <i>imm8</i>	B	V/V	MMX	Shift <i>mm</i> right by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s.
66 OF 73 /2 ib PSRLQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>imm8</i>	B	V/V	SSE2	Shift quadwords in <i>xmm1</i> right by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG D1 /r VPSRLW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX	Shift words in <i>xmm2</i> right by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in 0s.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 71 /2 ib VPSRLW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>imm8</i>	D	V/V	AVX	Shift words in <i>xmm2</i> right by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG D2 /r VPSRLD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX	Shift doublewords in <i>xmm2</i> right by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in 0s.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 72 /2 ib VPSRLD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>imm8</i>	D	V/V	AVX	Shift doublewords in <i>xmm2</i> right by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG D3 /r VPSRLQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX	Shift quadwords in <i>xmm2</i> right by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in 0s.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 73 /2 ib VPSRLQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>imm8</i>	D	V/V	AVX	Shift quadwords in <i>xmm2</i> right by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG D1 /r VPSRLW <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX2	Shift words in <i>ymm2</i> right by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in 0s.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG 71 /2 ib VPSRLW <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>imm8</i>	D	V/V	AVX2	Shift words in <i>ymm2</i> right by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s.

VEX.256.66.0F.WIG D2 /r VPSRLD <i>ymm1, ymm2, xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX2	Shift doublewords in <i>ymm2</i> right by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in 0s.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG 72 /2 ib VPSRLD <i>ymm1, ymm2, imm8</i>	D	V/V	AVX2	Shift doublewords in <i>ymm2</i> right by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG D3 /r VPSRLQ <i>ymm1, ymm2, xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX2	Shift quadwords in <i>ymm2</i> right by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in 0s.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG 73 /2 ib VPSRLQ <i>ymm1, ymm2, imm8</i>	D	V/V	AVX2	Shift quadwords in <i>ymm2</i> right by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s.
EVEX.128.66.0F.WIG D1 /r VPSRLW <i>xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128</i>	G	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Shift words in <i>xmm2</i> right by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in 0s using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG D1 /r VPSRLW <i>ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, xmm3/m128</i>	G	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Shift words in <i>ymm2</i> right by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in 0s using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG D1 /r VPSRLW <i>zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, xmm3/m128</i>	G	V/V	AVX512BW	Shift words in <i>zmm2</i> right by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in 0s using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.128.66.0F.WIG 71 /2 ib VPSRLW <i>xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2/m128, imm8</i>	E	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Shift words in <i>xmm2/m128</i> right by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG 71 /2 ib VPSRLW <i>ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2/m256, imm8</i>	E	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Shift words in <i>ymm2/m256</i> right by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG 71 /2 ib VPSRLW <i>zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2/m512, imm8</i>	E	V/V	AVX512BW	Shift words in <i>zmm2/m512</i> right by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.128.66.0F.W0 D2 /r VPSRLD <i>xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128</i>	G	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift doublewords in <i>xmm2</i> right by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in 0s using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.0F.W0 D2 /r VPSRLD <i>ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, xmm3/m128</i>	G	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift doublewords in <i>ymm2</i> right by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in 0s using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.0F.W0 D2 /r VPSRLD <i>zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, xmm3/m128</i>	G	V/V	AVX512F	Shift doublewords in <i>zmm2</i> right by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in 0s using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.128.66.0F.W0 72 /2 ib VPSRLD <i>xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2/m128/m32bcst, imm8</i>	F	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift doublewords in <i>xmm2/m128/m32bcst</i> right by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.0F.W0 72 /2 ib VPSRLD <i>ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2/m256/m32bcst, imm8</i>	F	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift doublewords in <i>ymm2/m256/m32bcst</i> right by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.0F.W0 72 /2 ib VPSRLD <i>zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2/m512/m32bcst, imm8</i>	F	V/V	AVX512F	Shift doublewords in <i>zmm2/m512/m32bcst</i> right by <i>imm8</i> while shifting in 0s using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 D3 /r VPSRLQ <i>xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128</i>	G	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift quadwords in <i>xmm2</i> right by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in 0s using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.0F.W1 D3 /r VPSRLQ <i>ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, xmm3/m128</i>	G	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift quadwords in <i>ymm2</i> right by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in 0s using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.0F.W1 D3 /r VPSRLQ <i>zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, xmm3/m128</i>	G	V/V	AVX512F	Shift quadwords in <i>zmm2</i> right by amount specified in <i>xmm3/m128</i> while shifting in 0s using writemask <i>k1</i> .

EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 73 /2 ib VPSRLQ xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2/m128/m64bcst, imm8	F	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift quadwords in xmm2/m128/m64bcst right by imm8 while shifting in 0s using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W1 73 /2 ib VPSRLQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2/m256/m64bcst, imm8	F	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift quadwords in ymm2/m256/m64bcst right by imm8 while shifting in 0s using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W1 73 /2 ib VPSRLQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2/m512/m64bcst, imm8	F	V/V	AVX512F	Shift quadwords in zmm2/m512/m64bcst right by imm8 while shifting in 0s using writemask k1.

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:r/m (r, w)	imm8	NA	NA
C	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
D	NA	VEX.vvvv (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	imm8	NA
E	Full Mem	EVEX.vvvv (w)	ModRM:r/m (R)	Imm8	NA
F	Full	EVEX.vvvv (w)	ModRM:r/m (R)	Imm8	NA
G	Mem128	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Shifts the bits in the individual data elements (words, doublewords, or quadword) in the destination operand (first operand) to the right by the number of bits specified in the count operand (second operand). As the bits in the data elements are shifted right, the empty high-order bits are cleared (set to 0). If the value specified by the count operand is greater than 15 (for words), 31 (for doublewords), or 63 (for a quadword), then the destination operand is set to all 0s. Figure 4-19 gives an example of shifting words in a 64-bit operand.

Note that only the low 64-bits of a 128-bit count operand are checked to compute the count.

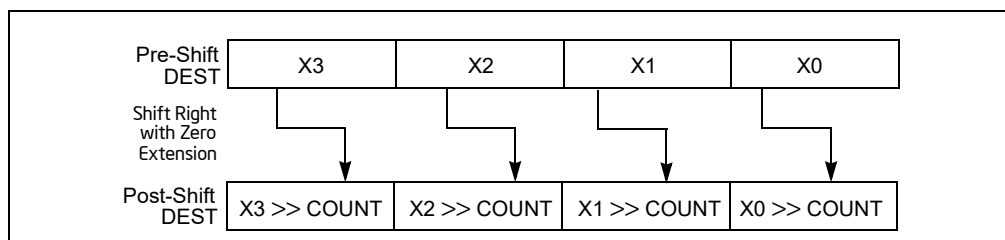


Figure 4-19. PSRLW, PSRLD, and PSRLQ Instruction Operation Using 64-bit Operand

The (V)PSRLW instruction shifts each of the words in the destination operand to the right by the number of bits specified in the count operand; the (V)PSRLD instruction shifts each of the doublewords in the destination operand; and the PSRLQ instruction shifts the quadword (or quadwords) in the destination operand.

In 64-bit mode and not encoded with VEX/EVEX, using a REX prefix in the form of REX.R permits this instruction to access additional registers (XMM8-XMM15).

Legacy SSE instruction 64-bit operand: The destination operand is an MMX technology register; the count operand can be either an MMX technology register or a 64-bit memory location.

PSUBB/PSUBW/PSUBD—Subtract Packed Integers

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF F8 /r ¹ PSUBB <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Subtract packed byte integers in <i>mm/m64</i> from packed byte integers in <i>mm</i> .
66 OF F8 /r PSUBB <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Subtract packed byte integers in <i>xmm2/m128</i> from packed byte integers in <i>xmm1</i> .
NP OF F9 /r ¹ PSUBW <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Subtract packed word integers in <i>mm/m64</i> from packed word integers in <i>mm</i> .
66 OF F9 /r PSUBW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Subtract packed word integers in <i>xmm2/m128</i> from packed word integers in <i>xmm1</i> .
NP OF FA /r ¹ PSUBD <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Subtract packed doubleword integers in <i>mm/m64</i> from packed doubleword integers in <i>mm</i> .
66 OF FA /r PSUBD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Subtract packed doubleword integers in <i>xmm2/mem128</i> from packed doubleword integers in <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG F8 /r VPSUBB <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Subtract packed byte integers in <i>xmm3/m128</i> from <i>xmm2</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG F9 /r VPSUBW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Subtract packed word integers in <i>xmm3/m128</i> from <i>xmm2</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG FA /r VPSUBD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Subtract packed doubleword integers in <i>xmm3/m128</i> from <i>xmm2</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG F8 /r VPSUBB <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Subtract packed byte integers in <i>ymm3/m256</i> from <i>ymm2</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG F9 /r VPSUBW <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Subtract packed word integers in <i>ymm3/m256</i> from <i>ymm2</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG FA /r VPSUBD <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Subtract packed doubleword integers in <i>ymm3/m256</i> from <i>ymm2</i> .
EVEX.128.66.0F.WIG F8 /r VPSUBB <i>xmm1</i> {k1}{z}, <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Subtract packed byte integers in <i>xmm3/m128</i> from <i>xmm2</i> and store in <i>xmm1</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG F8 /r VPSUBB <i>ymm1</i> {k1}{z}, <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Subtract packed byte integers in <i>ymm3/m256</i> from <i>ymm2</i> and store in <i>ymm1</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG F8 /r VPSUBB <i>zmm1</i> {k1}{z}, <i>zmm2</i> , <i>zmm3/m512</i>	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Subtract packed byte integers in <i>zmm3/m512</i> from <i>zmm2</i> and store in <i>zmm1</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.128.66.0F.WIG F9 /r VPSUBW <i>xmm1</i> {k1}{z}, <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Subtract packed word integers in <i>xmm3/m128</i> from <i>xmm2</i> and store in <i>xmm1</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG F9 /r VPSUBW <i>ymm1</i> {k1}{z}, <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Subtract packed word integers in <i>ymm3/m256</i> from <i>ymm2</i> and store in <i>ymm1</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG F9 /r VPSUBW <i>zmm1</i> {k1}{z}, <i>zmm2</i> , <i>zmm3/m512</i>	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Subtract packed word integers in <i>zmm3/m512</i> from <i>zmm2</i> and store in <i>zmm1</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .

EVEX.128.66.0F.W0 FA /r VPSUBD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Subtract packed doubleword integers in xmm3/m128/m32bcst from xmm2 and store in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W0 FA /r VPSUBD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Subtract packed doubleword integers in ymm3/m256/m32bcst from ymm2 and store in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W0 FA /r VPSUBD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	D	V/V	AVX512F	Subtract packed doubleword integers in zmm3/m512/m32bcst from zmm2 and store in zmm1 using writemask k1.

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
D	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a SIMD subtract of the packed integers of the source operand (second operand) from the packed integers of the destination operand (first operand), and stores the packed integer results in the destination operand. See Figure 9-4 in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 1*, for an illustration of a SIMD operation. Overflow is handled with wraparound, as described in the following paragraphs.

The (V)PSUBB instruction subtracts packed byte integers. When an individual result is too large or too small to be represented in a byte, the result is wrapped around and the low 8 bits are written to the destination element.

The (V)PSUBW instruction subtracts packed word integers. When an individual result is too large or too small to be represented in a word, the result is wrapped around and the low 16 bits are written to the destination element.

The (V)PSUBD instruction subtracts packed doubleword integers. When an individual result is too large or too small to be represented in a doubleword, the result is wrapped around and the low 32 bits are written to the destination element.

Note that the (V)PSUBB, (V)PSUBW, and (V)PSUBD instructions can operate on either unsigned or signed (two’s complement notation) packed integers; however, it does not set bits in the EFLAGS register to indicate overflow and/or a carry. To prevent undetected overflow conditions, software must control the ranges of values upon which it operates.

In 64-bit mode and not encoded with VEX/EVEX, using a REX prefix in the form of REX.R permits this instruction to access additional registers (XMM8-XMM15).

Legacy SSE version 64-bit operand: The destination operand must be an MMX technology register and the source operand can be either an MMX technology register or a 64-bit memory location.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source operand is an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The first source operand and destination operands are XMM registers. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 encoded version: The second source operand is an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The first source operand and destination operands are XMM registers. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination YMM register are zeroed.

PSUBQ—Subtract Packed Quadword Integers

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F FB /r ¹ PSUBQ mm1, mm2/m64	A	V/V	SSE2	Subtract quadword integer in mm1 from mm2 /m64.
66 0F FB /r PSUBQ xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE2	Subtract packed quadword integers in xmm1 from xmm2 /m128.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG FB/r VPSUBQ xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Subtract packed quadword integers in xmm3/m128 from xmm2.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG FB /r VPSUBQ ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX2	Subtract packed quadword integers in ymm3/m256 from ymm2.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 FB /r VPSUBQ xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Subtract packed quadword integers in xmm3/m128/m64bcst from xmm2 and store in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W1 FB /r VPSUBQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Subtract packed quadword integers in ymm3/m256/m64bcst from ymm2 and store in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W1 FB/r VPSUBQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512F	Subtract packed quadword integers in zmm3/m512/m64bcst from zmm2 and store in zmm1 using writemask k1.

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Subtracts the second operand (source operand) from the first operand (destination operand) and stores the result in the destination operand. When packed quadword operands are used, a SIMD subtract is performed. When a quadword result is too large to be represented in 64 bits (overflow), the result is wrapped around and the low 64 bits are written to the destination element (that is, the carry is ignored).

Note that the (V)PSUBQ instruction can operate on either unsigned or signed (two’s complement notation) integers; however, it does not set bits in the EFLAGS register to indicate overflow and/or a carry. To prevent undetected overflow conditions, software must control the ranges of the values upon which it operates.

In 64-bit mode and not encoded with VEX/EVEX, using a REX prefix in the form of REX.R permits this instruction to access additional registers (XMM8-XMM15).

Legacy SSE version 64-bit operand: The source operand can be a quadword integer stored in an MMX technology register or a 64-bit memory location.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source operand is an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The first source operand and destination operands are XMM registers. Bits (MAXVL-1: 128) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

PSUBSB/PSUBSW—Subtract Packed Signed Integers with Signed Saturation

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F E8 /r ¹ PSUBSB <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Subtract signed packed bytes in <i>mm/m64</i> from signed packed bytes in <i>mm</i> and saturate results.
66 0F E8 /r PSUBSB <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Subtract packed signed byte integers in <i>xmm2/m128</i> from packed signed byte integers in <i>xmm1</i> and saturate results.
NP 0F E9 /r ¹ PSUBSW <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Subtract signed packed words in <i>mm/m64</i> from signed packed words in <i>mm</i> and saturate results.
66 0F E9 /r PSUBSW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Subtract packed signed word integers in <i>xmm2/m128</i> from packed signed word integers in <i>xmm1</i> and saturate results.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG E8 /r VPSUBSB <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Subtract packed signed byte integers in <i>xmm3/m128</i> from packed signed byte integers in <i>xmm2</i> and saturate results.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG E9 /r VPSUBSW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Subtract packed signed word integers in <i>xmm3/m128</i> from packed signed word integers in <i>xmm2</i> and saturate results.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG E8 /r VPSUBSB <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Subtract packed signed byte integers in <i>ymm3/m256</i> from packed signed byte integers in <i>ymm2</i> and saturate results.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG E9 /r VPSUBSW <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Subtract packed signed word integers in <i>ymm3/m256</i> from packed signed word integers in <i>ymm2</i> and saturate results.
EVEX.128.66.0F.WIG E8 /r VPSUBSB <i>xmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Subtract packed signed byte integers in <i>xmm3/m128</i> from packed signed byte integers in <i>xmm2</i> and saturate results and store in <i>xmm1</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG E8 /r VPSUBSB <i>ymm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Subtract packed signed byte integers in <i>ymm3/m256</i> from packed signed byte integers in <i>ymm2</i> and saturate results and store in <i>ymm1</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG E8 /r VPSUBSB <i>zmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>zmm2</i> , <i>zmm3/m512</i>	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Subtract packed signed byte integers in <i>zmm3/m512</i> from packed signed byte integers in <i>zmm2</i> and saturate results and store in <i>zmm1</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.128.66.0F.WIG E9 /r VPSUBSW <i>xmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Subtract packed signed word integers in <i>xmm3/m128</i> from packed signed word integers in <i>xmm2</i> and saturate results and store in <i>xmm1</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG E9 /r VPSUBSW <i>ymm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Subtract packed signed word integers in <i>ymm3/m256</i> from packed signed word integers in <i>ymm2</i> and saturate results and store in <i>ymm1</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .

EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG E9 /r VPSUBSW zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Subtract packed signed word integers in zmm3/m512 from packed signed word integers in zmm2 and saturate results and store in zmm1 using writemask k1.
---	---	-----	----------	---

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a SIMD subtract of the packed signed integers of the source operand (second operand) from the packed signed integers of the destination operand (first operand), and stores the packed integer results in the destination operand. See Figure 9-4 in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 1*, for an illustration of a SIMD operation. Overflow is handled with signed saturation, as described in the following paragraphs.

The (V)PSUBSB instruction subtracts packed signed byte integers. When an individual byte result is beyond the range of a signed byte integer (that is, greater than 7FH or less than 80H), the saturated value of 7FH or 80H, respectively, is written to the destination operand.

The (V)PSUBSW instruction subtracts packed signed word integers. When an individual word result is beyond the range of a signed word integer (that is, greater than 7FFFH or less than 8000H), the saturated value of 7FFFH or 8000H, respectively, is written to the destination operand.

In 64-bit mode and not encoded with VEX/EVEX, using a REX prefix in the form of REX.R permits this instruction to access additional registers (XMM8-XMM15).

Legacy SSE version 64-bit operand: The destination operand must be an MMX technology register and the source operand can be either an MMX technology register or a 64-bit memory location.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source operand is an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The first source operand and destination operands are XMM registers. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 encoded version: The second source operand is an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The first source operand and destination operands are XMM registers. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination YMM register are zeroed.

VEX.256 encoded versions: The second source operand is an YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The first source operand and destination operands are YMM registers. Bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding ZMM register are zeroed.

EVEX encoded version: The second source operand is an ZMM/YMM/XMM register or a 512/256/128-bit memory location. The first source operand and destination operands are ZMM/YMM/XMM registers. The destination is conditionally updated with writemask k1.

Operation**PSUBSB (with 64-bit operands)**

DEST[7:0] ← SaturateToSignedByte (DEST[7:0] – SRC (7:0));

(* Repeat subtract operation for 2nd through 7th bytes *)

DEST[63:56] ← SaturateToSignedByte (DEST[63:56] – SRC[63:56]);

PSUBUSB/PSUBUSW—Subtract Packed Unsigned Integers with Unsigned Saturation

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF D8 /r ¹ PSUBUSB <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Subtract unsigned packed bytes in <i>mm/m64</i> from unsigned packed bytes in <i>mm</i> and saturate result.
66 OF D8 /r PSUBUSB <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Subtract packed unsigned byte integers in <i>xmm2/m128</i> from packed unsigned byte integers in <i>xmm1</i> and saturate result.
NP OF D9 /r ¹ PSUBUSW <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m64</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Subtract unsigned packed words in <i>mm/m64</i> from unsigned packed words in <i>mm</i> and saturate result.
66 OF D9 /r PSUBUSW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Subtract packed unsigned word integers in <i>xmm2/m128</i> from packed unsigned word integers in <i>xmm1</i> and saturate result.
■ VEX.128.66.0F.WIG D8 /r VPSUBUSB <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Subtract packed unsigned byte integers in <i>xmm3/m128</i> from packed unsigned byte integers in <i>xmm2</i> and saturate result.
■ VEX.128.66.0F.WIG D9 /r VPSUBUSW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Subtract packed unsigned word integers in <i>xmm3/m128</i> from packed unsigned word integers in <i>xmm2</i> and saturate result.
■ VEX.256.66.0F.WIG D8 /r VPSUBUSB <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Subtract packed unsigned byte integers in <i>ymm3/m256</i> from packed unsigned byte integers in <i>ymm2</i> and saturate result.
■ VEX.256.66.0F.WIG D9 /r VPSUBUSW <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Subtract packed unsigned word integers in <i>ymm3/m256</i> from packed unsigned word integers in <i>ymm2</i> and saturate result.
■ EVEX.128.66.0F.WIG D8 /r VPSUBUSB <i>xmm1</i> {k1}{z}, <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Subtract packed unsigned byte integers in <i>xmm3/m128</i> from packed unsigned byte integers in <i>xmm2</i> , saturate results and store in <i>xmm1</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .
■ EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG D8 /r VPSUBUSB <i>ymm1</i> {k1}{z}, <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Subtract packed unsigned byte integers in <i>ymm3/m256</i> from packed unsigned byte integers in <i>ymm2</i> , saturate results and store in <i>ymm1</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .
■ EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG D8 /r VPSUBUSB <i>zmm1</i> {k1}{z}, <i>zmm2</i> , <i>zmm3/m512</i>	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Subtract packed unsigned byte integers in <i>zmm3/m512</i> from packed unsigned byte integers in <i>zmm2</i> , saturate results and store in <i>zmm1</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .
■ EVEX.128.66.0F.WIG D9 /r VPSUBUSW <i>xmm1</i> {k1}{z}, <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Subtract packed unsigned word integers in <i>xmm3/m128</i> from packed unsigned word integers in <i>xmm2</i> and saturate results and store in <i>xmm1</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .
■ EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG D9 /r VPSUBUSW <i>ymm1</i> {k1}{z}, <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Subtract packed unsigned word integers in <i>ymm3/m256</i> from packed unsigned word integers in <i>ymm2</i> , saturate results and store in <i>ymm1</i> using writemask <i>k1</i> .

EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG D9 /r VPSUBUSW zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Subtract packed unsigned word integers in zmm3/m512 from packed unsigned word integers in zmm2, saturate results and store in zmm1 using writemask k1.
--	---	-----	----------	--

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a SIMD subtract of the packed unsigned integers of the source operand (second operand) from the packed unsigned integers of the destination operand (first operand), and stores the packed unsigned integer results in the destination operand. See Figure 9-4 in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 1*, for an illustration of a SIMD operation. Overflow is handled with unsigned saturation, as described in the following paragraphs.

These instructions can operate on either 64-bit or 128-bit operands.

The (V)PSUBUSB instruction subtracts packed unsigned byte integers. When an individual byte result is less than zero, the saturated value of 00H is written to the destination operand.

The (V)PSUBUSW instruction subtracts packed unsigned word integers. When an individual word result is less than zero, the saturated value of 0000H is written to the destination operand.

In 64-bit mode and not encoded with VEX/EVEX, using a REX prefix in the form of REX.R permits this instruction to access additional registers (XMM8-XMM15).

Legacy SSE version 64-bit operand: The destination operand must be an MMX technology register and the source operand can be either an MMX technology register or a 64-bit memory location.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source operand is an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The first source operand and destination operands are XMM registers. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 encoded version: The second source operand is an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The first source operand and destination operands are XMM registers. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination YMM register are zeroed.

VEX.256 encoded versions: The second source operand is an YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The first source operand and destination operands are YMM registers. Bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding ZMM register are zeroed.

EVEX encoded version: The second source operand is an ZMM/YMM/XMM register or an 512/256/128-bit memory location. The first source operand and destination operands are ZMM/YMM/XMM registers. The destination is conditionally updated with writemask k1.

Operation**PSUBUSB (with 64-bit operands)**

DEST[7:0] ← SaturateToUnsignedByte (DEST[7:0] – SRC (7:0));

(* Repeat add operation for 2nd through 7th bytes *)

DEST[63:56] ← SaturateToUnsignedByte (DEST[63:56] – SRC[63:56]);

PUNPCKHBW/PUNPCKHWD/PUNPCKHDQ/PUNPCKHQDQ— Unpack High Data

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF 68 /r ¹ PUNPCKHBW mm, mm/m64	A	V/V	MMX	Unpack and interleave high-order bytes from mm and mm/m64 into mm.
66 OF 68 /r PUNPCKHBW xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE2	Unpack and interleave high-order bytes from xmm1 and xmm2/m128 into xmm1.
NP OF 69 /r ¹ PUNPCKHWD mm, mm/m64	A	V/V	MMX	Unpack and interleave high-order words from mm and mm/m64 into mm.
66 OF 69 /r PUNPCKHWD xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE2	Unpack and interleave high-order words from xmm1 and xmm2/m128 into xmm1.
NP OF 6A /r ¹ PUNPCKHDQ mm, mm/m64	A	V/V	MMX	Unpack and interleave high-order doublewords from mm and mm/m64 into mm.
66 OF 6A /r PUNPCKHDQ xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE2	Unpack and interleave high-order doublewords from xmm1 and xmm2/m128 into xmm1.
66 OF 6D /r PUNPCKHQDQ xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE2	Unpack and interleave high-order quadwords from xmm1 and xmm2/m128 into xmm1.
VEX.128.66.OF.WIG 68/r VPUNPCKHBW xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Interleave high-order bytes from xmm2 and xmm3/m128 into xmm1.
VEX.128.66.OF.WIG 69/r VPUNPCKHWD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Interleave high-order words from xmm2 and xmm3/m128 into xmm1.
VEX.128.66.OF.WIG 6A/r VPUNPCKHDQ xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Interleave high-order doublewords from xmm2 and xmm3/m128 into xmm1.
VEX.128.66.OF.WIG 6D/r VPUNPCKHQDQ xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Interleave high-order quadword from xmm2 and xmm3/m128 into xmm1 register.
VEX.256.66.OF.WIG 68 /r VPUNPCKHBW ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX2	Interleave high-order bytes from ymm2 and ymm3/m256 into ymm1 register.
VEX.256.66.OF.WIG 69 /r VPUNPCKHWD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX2	Interleave high-order words from ymm2 and ymm3/m256 into ymm1 register.
VEX.256.66.OF.WIG 6A /r VPUNPCKHDQ ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX2	Interleave high-order doublewords from ymm2 and ymm3/m256 into ymm1 register.
VEX.256.66.OF.WIG 6D /r VPUNPCKHQDQ ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX2	Interleave high-order quadword from ymm2 and ymm3/m256 into ymm1 register.
EVEX.128.66.OF.WIG 68 /r VPUNPCKHBW xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Interleave high-order bytes from xmm2 and xmm3/m128 into xmm1 register using k1 write mask.
EVEX.128.66.OF.WIG 69 /r VPUNPCKHWD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Interleave high-order words from xmm2 and xmm3/m128 into xmm1 register using k1 write mask.
EVEX.128.66.OF.W0 6A /r VPUNPCKHDQ xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Interleave high-order doublewords from xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst into xmm1 register using k1 write mask.
EVEX.128.66.OF.W1 6D /r VPUNPCKHQDQ xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Interleave high-order quadword from xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst into xmm1 register using k1 write mask.

EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG 68 /r VPUNPCKHBW ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Interleave high-order bytes from ymm2 and ymm3/m256 into ymm1 register using k1 write mask.
EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG 69 /r VPUNPCKHWD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Interleave high-order words from ymm2 and ymm3/m256 into ymm1 register using k1 write mask.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W0 6A /r VPUNPCKHDQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Interleave high-order doublewords from ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst into ymm1 register using k1 write mask.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W1 6D /r VPUNPCKHQDQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Interleave high-order quadword from ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst into ymm1 register using k1 write mask.
EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG 68/r VPUNPCKHBW zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Interleave high-order bytes from zmm2 and zmm3/m512 into zmm1 register.
EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG 69/r VPUNPCKHWD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Interleave high-order words from zmm2 and zmm3/m512 into zmm1 register.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W0 6A /r VPUNPCKHDQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	D	V/V	AVX512F	Interleave high-order doublewords from zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst into zmm1 register using k1 write mask.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W1 6D /r VPUNPCKHQDQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	D	V/V	AVX512F	Interleave high-order quadword from zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst into zmm1 register using k1 write mask.

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
D	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Unpacks and interleaves the high-order data elements (bytes, words, doublewords, or quadwords) of the destination operand (first operand) and source operand (second operand) into the destination operand. Figure 4-20 shows the unpack operation for bytes in 64-bit operands. The low-order data elements are ignored.

PUNPCKLBW/PUNPCKLWD/PUNPCKLDQ/PUNPCKLQDQ—Unpack Low Data

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF 60 /r ¹ PUNPCKLBW <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m32</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Interleave low-order bytes from <i>mm</i> and <i>mm/m32</i> into <i>mm</i> .
66 OF 60 /r PUNPCKLBW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Interleave low-order bytes from <i>xmm1</i> and <i>xmm2/m128</i> into <i>xmm1</i> .
NP OF 61 /r ¹ PUNPCKLWD <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m32</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Interleave low-order words from <i>mm</i> and <i>mm/m32</i> into <i>mm</i> .
66 OF 61 /r PUNPCKLWD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Interleave low-order words from <i>xmm1</i> and <i>xmm2/m128</i> into <i>xmm1</i> .
NP OF 62 /r ¹ PUNPCKLDQ <i>mm</i> , <i>mm/m32</i>	A	V/V	MMX	Interleave low-order doublewords from <i>mm</i> and <i>mm/m32</i> into <i>mm</i> .
66 OF 62 /r PUNPCKLDQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Interleave low-order doublewords from <i>xmm1</i> and <i>xmm2/m128</i> into <i>xmm1</i> .
66 OF 6C /r PUNPCKLQDQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m128</i>	A	V/V	SSE2	Interleave low-order quadword from <i>xmm1</i> and <i>xmm2/m128</i> into <i>xmm1</i> register.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 60/r VPUNPCKLBW <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Interleave low-order bytes from <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/m128</i> into <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 61/r VPUNPCKLWD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Interleave low-order words from <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/m128</i> into <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 62/r VPUNPCKLDQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Interleave low-order doublewords from <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/m128</i> into <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 6C/r VPUNPCKLQDQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	B	V/V	AVX	Interleave low-order quadword from <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/m128</i> into <i>xmm1</i> register.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG 60 /r VPUNPCKLBW <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Interleave low-order bytes from <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/m256</i> into <i>ymm1</i> register.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG 61 /r VPUNPCKLWD <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Interleave low-order words from <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/m256</i> into <i>ymm1</i> register.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG 62 /r VPUNPCKLDQ <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Interleave low-order doublewords from <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/m256</i> into <i>ymm1</i> register.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG 6C /r VPUNPCKLQDQ <i>ymm1</i> , <i>ymm2</i> , <i>ymm3/m256</i>	B	V/V	AVX2	Interleave low-order quadword from <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/m256</i> into <i>ymm1</i> register.
EVEX.128.66.0F.WIG 60 /r VPUNPCKLBW <i>xmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Interleave low-order bytes from <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/m128</i> into <i>xmm1</i> register subject to write mask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.128.66.0F.WIG 61 /r VPUNPCKLWD <i>xmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128</i>	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Interleave low-order words from <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/m128</i> into <i>xmm1</i> register subject to write mask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.128.66.0F.WO 62 /r VPUNPCKLDQ <i>xmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128/m32bcst</i>	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Interleave low-order doublewords from <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/m128/m32bcst</i> into <i>xmm1</i> register subject to write mask <i>k1</i> .
EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 6C /r VPUNPCKLQDQ <i>xmm1</i> { <i>k1</i> }{ <i>z</i> }, <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m128/m64bcst</i>	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Interleave low-order quadword from <i>zmm2</i> and <i>zmm3/m512/m64bcst</i> into <i>zmm1</i> register subject to write mask <i>k1</i> .

EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG 60 /r VPUNPCKLBW ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Interleave low-order bytes from ymm2 and ymm3/m256 into ymm1 register subject to write mask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.WIG 61 /r VPUNPCKLWD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Interleave low-order words from ymm2 and ymm3/m256 into ymm1 register subject to write mask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.WO 62 /r VPUNPCKLDQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Interleave low-order doublewords from ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst into ymm1 register subject to write mask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W1 6C /r VPUNPCKLQDQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Interleave low-order quadword from ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst into ymm1 register subject to write mask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG 60/r VPUNPCKLBW zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Interleave low-order bytes from zmm2 and zmm3/m512 into zmm1 register subject to write mask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.WIG 61/r VPUNPCKLWD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Interleave low-order words from zmm2 and zmm3/m512 into zmm1 register subject to write mask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.WO 62 /r VPUNPCKLDQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	D	V/V	AVX512F	Interleave low-order doublewords from zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst into zmm1 register subject to write mask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W1 6C /r VPUNPCKLQDQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	D	V/V	AVX512F	Interleave low-order quadword from zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst into zmm1 register subject to write mask k1.

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
D	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Unpacks and interleaves the low-order data elements (bytes, words, doublewords, and quadwords) of the destination operand (first operand) and source operand (second operand) into the destination operand. (Figure 4-22 shows the unpack operation for bytes in 64-bit operands.). The high-order data elements are ignored.

PXOR—Logical Exclusive OR

Opcode*/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F EF /r ¹ PXOR mm, mm/m64	A	V/V	MMX	Bitwise XOR of mm/m64 and mm.
66 0F EF /r PXOR xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE2	Bitwise XOR of xmm2/m128 and xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG EF /r VPXOR xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Bitwise XOR of xmm3/m128 and xmm2.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG EF /r VPXOR ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX2	Bitwise XOR of ymm3/m256 and ymm2.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W0 EF /r VPXORD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Bitwise XOR of packed doubleword integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W0 EF /r VPXORD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Bitwise XOR of packed doubleword integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W0 EF /r VPXORD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512F	Bitwise XOR of packed doubleword integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 EF /r VPXORQ xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Bitwise XOR of packed quadword integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W1 EF /r VPXORQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Bitwise XOR of packed quadword integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W1 EF /r VPXORQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512F	Bitwise XOR of packed quadword integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst using writemask k1.

NOTES:

1. See note in Section 2.4, “AVX and SSE Instruction Exception Specification” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A* and Section 22.25.3, “Exception Conditions of Legacy SIMD Instructions Operating on MMX Registers” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a bitwise logical exclusive-OR (XOR) operation on the source operand (second operand) and the destination operand (first operand) and stores the result in the destination operand. Each bit of the result is 1 if the corresponding bits of the two operands are different; each bit is 0 if the corresponding bits of the operands are the same.

In 64-bit mode and not encoded with VEX/EVEX, using a REX prefix in the form of REX.R permits this instruction to access additional registers (XMM8-XMM15).

Legacy SSE instructions 64-bit operand: The source operand can be an MMX technology register or a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand is an MMX technology register.

RCPSS—Compute Reciprocal of Scalar Single-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode*/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
F3 0F 53 /r RCPSS <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m32</i>	RM	V/V	SSE	Computes the approximate reciprocal of the scalar single-precision floating-point value in <i>xmm2/m32</i> and stores the result in <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.LIG.F3.0F.WIG 53 /r VRCPS <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m32</i>	RVM	V/V	AVX	Computes the approximate reciprocal of the scalar single-precision floating-point value in <i>xmm3/m32</i> and stores the result in <i>xmm1</i> . Also, upper single precision floating-point values (bits[127:32]) from <i>xmm2</i> are copied to <i>xmm1</i> [127:32].

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RM	ModRM:reg (<i>w</i>)	ModRM:r/m (<i>r</i>)	NA	NA
RVM	ModRM:reg (<i>w</i>)	VEX.vvvv (<i>r</i>)	ModRM:r/m (<i>r</i>)	NA

Description

Computes of an approximate reciprocal of the low single-precision floating-point value in the source operand (second operand) and stores the single-precision floating-point result in the destination operand. The source operand can be an XMM register or a 32-bit memory location. The destination operand is an XMM register. The three high-order doublewords of the destination operand remain unchanged. See Figure 10-6 in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 1*, for an illustration of a scalar single-precision floating-point operation.

The relative error for this approximation is:

$$|\text{Relative Error}| \leq 1.5 * 2^{-12}$$

The RCPSS instruction is not affected by the rounding control bits in the MXCSR register. When a source value is a 0.0, an ∞ of the sign of the source value is returned. A denormal source value is treated as a 0.0 (of the same sign). Tiny results (see Section 4.9.1.5, "Numeric Underflow Exception (#U)" in *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 1*) are always flushed to 0.0, with the sign of the operand. (Input values greater than or equal to $|1.111111110100000000000000B * 2^{125}|$ are guaranteed to not produce tiny results; input values less than or equal to $|1.000000000001100000000001B * 2^{126}|$ are guaranteed to produce tiny results, which are in turn flushed to 0.0; and input values in between this range may or may not produce tiny results, depending on the implementation.) When a source value is an SNaN or QNaN, the SNaN is converted to a QNaN or the source QNaN is returned.

In 64-bit mode, using a REX prefix in the form of REX.R permits this instruction to access additional registers (XMM8-XMM15).

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source operand and the destination operand are the same. Bits (MAXVL-1:32) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 encoded version: Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination YMM register are zeroed.

Operation

RCPSS (128-bit Legacy SSE version)

DEST[31:0] ← APPROXIMATE(1/SRC[31:0])

DEST[MAXVL-1:32] (Unmodified)

RDPMC—Read Performance-Monitoring Counters

Opcode*	Instruction	Op/En	64-Bit Mode	Compat/Leg Mode	Description
0F 33	RDPMC	Z0	Valid	Valid	Read performance-monitoring counter specified by ECX into EDX:EAX.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
Z0	NA	NA	NA	NA

Description

The EAX register is loaded with the low-order 32 bits. The EDX register is loaded with the supported high-order bits of the counter. The number of high-order bits loaded into EDX is implementation specific on processors that do not support architectural performance monitoring. The width of fixed-function and general-purpose performance counters on processors supporting architectural performance monitoring are reported by CPUID 0AH leaf. See below for the treatment of the EDX register for “fast” reads.

The ECX register specifies the counter type (if the processor supports architectural performance monitoring) and counter index. Counter type is specified in ECX[30] to select one of two type of performance counters. If the processor does not support architectural performance monitoring, ECX[30:0] specifies the counter index; otherwise ECX[29:0] specifies the index relative to the base of each counter type. ECX[31] selects “fast” read mode if supported. The two counter types are:

- General-purpose or special-purpose performance counters are specified with ECX[30] = 0: The number of general-purpose performance counters on processor supporting architectural performance monitoring are reported by CPUID 0AH leaf. The availability of special-purpose counters, as well as the number of general-purpose counters if the processor does not support architectural performance monitoring, is model specific; see Chapter 18, “Performance Monitoring” of *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3B*.
- Fixed-function performance counters are specified with ECX[30] = 1. The number fixed-function performance counters is enumerated by CPUID 0AH leaf. See Chapter 18, “Performance Monitoring” of *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3B*. This counter type is selected if ECX[30] is set.

The width of fixed-function performance counters and general-purpose performance counters on processors supporting architectural performance monitoring are reported by CPUID 0AH leaf. The width of general-purpose performance counters are 40-bits for processors that do not support architectural performance monitoring counters. The width of special-purpose performance counters are implementation specific.

When in protected or virtual 8086 mode, the performance-monitoring counters enabled (PCE) flag in register CR4 restricts the use of the RDPMC instruction as follows. When the PCE flag is set, the RDPMC instruction can be executed at any privilege level; when the flag is clear, the instruction can only be executed at privilege level 0. (When in real-address mode, the RDPMC instruction is always enabled.)

The performance-monitoring counters can also be read with the RDMSR instruction, when executing at privilege level 0.

The performance-monitoring counters are event counters that can be programmed to count events such as the number of instructions decoded, number of interrupts received, or number of cache loads. Chapter 19, “Performance Monitoring Events,” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3B*, lists the events that can be counted for various processors in the Intel 64 and IA-32 architecture families.

The RDPMC instruction is not a serializing instruction; that is, it does not imply that all the events caused by the preceding instructions have been completed or that events caused by subsequent instructions have not begun. If an exact event count is desired, software must insert a serializing instruction (such as the CPUID instruction) before and/or after the RDPMC instruction.

Performing back-to-back fast reads are not guaranteed to be monotonic. To guarantee monotonicity on back-to-back reads, a serializing instruction must be placed between the two RDPMC instructions.

The RDPMC instruction can execute in 16-bit addressing mode or virtual-8086 mode; however, the full contents of the ECX register are used to select the counter, and the event count is stored in the full EAX and EDX registers. The RDPMC instruction was introduced into the IA-32 Architecture in the Pentium Pro processor and the Pentium processor with MMX technology. The earlier Pentium processors have performance-monitoring counters, but they must be read with the RDMSR instruction.

Operation

MSCB = Most Significant Counter Bit (* Model-specific *)

IF (((CR4.PCE = 1) or (CPL = 0) or (CR0.PE = 0)) and (ECX indicates a supported counter))

THEN

EAX ← counter[31:0];

EDX ← ZeroExtend(counter[MSCB:32]);

ELSE (* ECX is not valid or CR4.PCE is 0 and CPL is 1, 2, or 3 and CR0.PE is 1 *)

#GP(0);

FI;

Flags Affected

None.

Protected Mode Exceptions

- #GP(0) If the current privilege level is not 0 and the PCE flag in the CR4 register is clear.
- If an invalid performance counter index is specified.
- #UD If the LOCK prefix is used.

Real-Address Mode Exceptions

- #GP If an invalid performance counter index is specified.
- #UD If the LOCK prefix is used.

Virtual-8086 Mode Exceptions

- #GP(0) If the PCE flag in the CR4 register is clear.
- If an invalid performance counter index is specified.
- #UD If the LOCK prefix is used.

Compatibility Mode Exceptions

Same exceptions as in protected mode.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

- #GP(0) If the current privilege level is not 0 and the PCE flag in the CR4 register is clear.
- If an invalid performance counter index is specified.
- #UD If the LOCK prefix is used.

RDRAND—Read Random Number

Opcode*/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NF _x 0F C7 /6 RDRAND r16	M	V/V	RDRAND	Read a 16-bit random number and store in the destination register.
NF _x 0F C7 /6 RDRAND r32	M	V/V	RDRAND	Read a 32-bit random number and store in the destination register.
NF _x REX.W + 0F C7 /6 RDRAND r64	M	V/I	RDRAND	Read a 64-bit random number and store in the destination register.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
M	ModRM:r/m (w)	NA	NA	NA

Description

Loads a hardware generated random value and store it in the destination register. The size of the random value is determined by the destination register size and operating mode. The Carry Flag indicates whether a random value is available at the time the instruction is executed. CF=1 indicates that the data in the destination is valid. Otherwise CF=0 and the data in the destination operand will be returned as zeros for the specified width. All other flags are forced to 0 in either situation. Software must check the state of CF=1 for determining if a valid random value has been returned, otherwise it is expected to loop and retry execution of RDRAND (see *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 1, Section 7.3.17, "Random Number Generator Instructions"*).

This instruction is available at all privilege levels.

In 64-bit mode, the instruction's default operation size is 32 bits. Using a REX prefix in the form of REX.B permits access to additional registers (R8-R15). Using a REX prefix in the form of REX.W promotes operation to 64 bit operands. See the summary chart at the beginning of this section for encoding data and limits.

Operation

```

IF HW_RND_GEN.ready = 1
  THEN
    CASE of
      osize is 64: DEST[63:0] ← HW_RND_GEN.data;
      osize is 32: DEST[31:0] ← HW_RND_GEN.data;
      osize is 16: DEST[15:0] ← HW_RND_GEN.data;
    ESAC
    CF ← 1;
  ELSE
    CASE of
      osize is 64: DEST[63:0] ← 0;
      osize is 32: DEST[31:0] ← 0;
      osize is 16: DEST[15:0] ← 0;
    ESAC
    CF ← 0;
  FI
OF, SF, ZF, AF, PF ← 0;

```

Flags Affected

The CF flag is set according to the result (see the "Operation" section above). The OF, SF, ZF, AF, and PF flags are set to 0.

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

RDRAND: int _rdrand16_step(unsigned short *);
RDRAND: int _rdrand32_step(unsigned int *);
RDRAND: int _rdrand64_step(unsigned __int64 *);

Protected Mode Exceptions

#UD If the LOCK prefix is used.
 If CPUID.01H:ECX.RDRAND[bit 30] = 0.

Real-Address Mode Exceptions

Same exceptions as in protected mode.

Virtual-8086 Mode Exceptions

Same exceptions as in protected mode.

Compatibility Mode Exceptions

Same exceptions as in protected mode.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

Same exceptions as in protected mode.

RDSEED—Read Random SEED

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NF _x 0F C7 /7 RDSEED r16	M	V/V	RDSEED	Read a 16-bit NIST SP800-90B & C compliant random value and store in the destination register.
NF _x 0F C7 /7 RDSEED r32	M	V/V	RDSEED	Read a 32-bit NIST SP800-90B & C compliant random value and store in the destination register.
NF _x REX.W + 0F C7 /7 RDSEED r64	M	V/I	RDSEED	Read a 64-bit NIST SP800-90B & C compliant random value and store in the destination register.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
M	ModRM:r/m (w)	NA	NA	NA

Description

Loads a hardware generated random value and store it in the destination register. The random value is generated from an Enhanced NRBG (Non Deterministic Random Bit Generator) that is compliant to NIST SP800-90B and NIST SP800-90C in the XOR construction mode. The size of the random value is determined by the destination register size and operating mode. The Carry Flag indicates whether a random value is available at the time the instruction is executed. CF=1 indicates that the data in the destination is valid. Otherwise CF=0 and the data in the destination operand will be returned as zeros for the specified width. All other flags are forced to 0 in either situation. Software must check the state of CF=1 for determining if a valid random seed value has been returned, otherwise it is expected to loop and retry execution of RDSEED (see Section 1.2).

The RDSEED instruction is available at all privilege levels. The RDSEED instruction executes normally either inside or outside a transaction region.

In 64-bit mode, the instruction's default operation size is 32 bits. Using a REX prefix in the form of REX.B permits access to additional registers (R8-R15). Using a REX prefix in the form of REX.W promotes operation to 64 bit operands. See the summary chart at the beginning of this section for encoding data and limits.

Operation

IF HW_NRND_GEN.ready = 1

THEN

CASE of

osize is 64: DEST[63:0] ← HW_NRND_GEN.data;

osize is 32: DEST[31:0] ← HW_NRND_GEN.data;

osize is 16: DEST[15:0] ← HW_NRND_GEN.data;

ESAC;

CF ← 1;

ELSE

CASE of

osize is 64: DEST[63:0] ← 0;

osize is 32: DEST[31:0] ← 0;

osize is 16: DEST[15:0] ← 0;

ESAC;

CF ← 0;

FI;

OF, SF, ZF, AF, PF ← 0;

Flags Affected

The CF flag is set according to the result (see the "Operation" section above). The OF, SF, ZF, AF, and PF flags are set to 0.

C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

```
RDSEED int _rdseed16_step( unsigned short * );
RDSEED int _rdseed32_step( unsigned int * );
RDSEED int _rdseed64_step( unsigned __int64 * );
```

Protected Mode Exceptions

#UD If the LOCK prefix is used.
If CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0H):EBX.RDSEED[bit 18] = 0.

Real-Address Mode Exceptions

#UD If the LOCK prefix is used.
If CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0H):EBX.RDSEED[bit 18] = 0.

Virtual-8086 Mode Exceptions

#UD If the LOCK prefix is used.
If CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0H):EBX.RDSEED[bit 18] = 0.

Compatibility Mode Exceptions

#UD If the LOCK prefix is used.
If CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0H):EBX.RDSEED[bit 18] = 0.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#UD If the LOCK prefix is used.
If CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0H):EBX.RDSEED[bit 18] = 0.

RET—Return from Procedure

Opcode*	Instruction	Op/En	64-Bit Mode	Compat/Leg Mode	Description
C3	RET	Z0	Valid	Valid	Near return to calling procedure.
CB	RET	Z0	Valid	Valid	Far return to calling procedure.
C2 <i>iw</i>	RET <i>imm16</i>	I	Valid	Valid	Near return to calling procedure and pop <i>imm16</i> bytes from stack.
CA <i>iw</i>	RET <i>imm16</i>	I	Valid	Valid	Far return to calling procedure and pop <i>imm16</i> bytes from stack.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
Z0	NA	NA	NA	NA
I	<i>imm16</i>	NA	NA	NA

Description

Transfers program control to a return address located on the top of the stack. The address is usually placed on the stack by a CALL instruction, and the return is made to the instruction that follows the CALL instruction.

The optional source operand specifies the number of stack bytes to be released after the return address is popped; the default is none. This operand can be used to release parameters from the stack that were passed to the called procedure and are no longer needed. It must be used when the CALL instruction used to switch to a new procedure uses a call gate with a non-zero word count to access the new procedure. Here, the source operand for the RET instruction must specify the same number of bytes as is specified in the word count field of the call gate.

The RET instruction can be used to execute three different types of returns:

- **Near return** — A return to a calling procedure within the current code segment (the segment currently pointed to by the CS register), sometimes referred to as an intrasegment return.
- **Far return** — A return to a calling procedure located in a different segment than the current code segment, sometimes referred to as an intersegment return.
- **Inter-privilege-level far return** — A far return to a different privilege level than that of the currently executing program or procedure.

The inter-privilege-level return type can only be executed in protected mode. See the section titled “Calling Procedures Using Call and RET” in Chapter 6 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 1*, for detailed information on near, far, and inter-privilege-level returns.

When executing a near return, the processor pops the return instruction pointer (offset) from the top of the stack into the EIP register and begins program execution at the new instruction pointer. The CS register is unchanged.

When executing a far return, the processor pops the return instruction pointer from the top of the stack into the EIP register, then pops the segment selector from the top of the stack into the CS register. The processor then begins program execution in the new code segment at the new instruction pointer.

The mechanics of an inter-privilege-level far return are similar to an intersegment return, except that the processor examines the privilege levels and access rights of the code and stack segments being returned to determine if the control transfer is allowed to be made. The DS, ES, FS, and GS segment registers are cleared by the RET instruction during an inter-privilege-level return if they refer to segments that are not allowed to be accessed at the new privilege level. Since a stack switch also occurs on an inter-privilege level return, the ESP and SS registers are loaded from the stack.

If parameters are passed to the called procedure during an inter-privilege level call, the optional source operand must be used with the RET instruction to release the parameters on the return. Here, the parameters are released both from the called procedure’s stack and the calling procedure’s stack (that is, the stack being returned to).

In 64-bit mode, the default operation size of this instruction is the stack-address size, i.e. 64 bits. This applies to near returns, not far returns; the default operation size of far returns is 32 bits.

Instruction ordering. Instructions following a far return may be fetched from memory before earlier instructions complete execution, but they will not execute (even speculatively) until all instructions prior to the far return have completed execution (the later instructions may execute before data stored by the earlier instructions have become globally visible).

Operation

(* Near return *)

IF instruction = near return

THEN;

IF OperandSize = 32

THEN

IF top 4 bytes of stack not within stack limits

THEN #SS(0); FI;

EIP ← Pop();

ELSE

IF OperandSize = 64

THEN

IF top 8 bytes of stack not within stack limits

THEN #SS(0); FI;

RIP ← Pop();

ELSE (* OperandSize = 16 *)

IF top 2 bytes of stack not within stack limits

THEN #SS(0); FI;

tempEIP ← Pop();

tempEIP ← tempEIP AND 0000FFFFH;

IF tempEIP not within code segment limits

THEN #GP(0); FI;

EIP ← tempEIP;

FI;

FI;

IF instruction has immediate operand

THEN (* Release parameters from stack *)

IF StackAddressSize = 32

THEN

ESP ← ESP + SRC;

ELSE

IF StackAddressSize = 64

THEN

RSP ← RSP + SRC;

ELSE (* StackAddressSize = 16 *)

SP ← SP + SRC;

FI;

FI;

FI;

FI;

(* Real-address mode or virtual-8086 mode *)

IF ((PE = 0) or (PE = 1 AND VM = 1)) and instruction = far return

THEN

IF OperandSize = 32

THEN

IF top 8 bytes of stack not within stack limits

THEN #SS(0); FI;

```

    EIP ← Pop();
    CS ← Pop(); (* 32-bit pop, high-order 16 bits discarded *)
ELSE (* OperandSize = 16 *)
    IF top 4 bytes of stack not within stack limits
        THEN #SS(0); FI;
    tempEIP ← Pop();
    tempEIP ← tempEIP AND 0000FFFFH;
    IF tempEIP not within code segment limits
        THEN #GP(0); FI;
    EIP ← tempEIP;
    CS ← Pop(); (* 16-bit pop *)
FI;
IF instruction has immediate operand
    THEN (* Release parameters from stack *)
        SP ← SP + (SRC AND FFFFH);
FI;
FI;

(* Protected mode, not virtual-8086 mode *)
IF (PE = 1 and VM = 0 and IA32_EFER.LMA = 0) and instruction = far return
    THEN
        IF OperandSize = 32
            THEN
                IF second doubleword on stack is not within stack limits
                    THEN #SS(0); FI;
                ELSE (* OperandSize = 16 *)
                    IF second word on stack is not within stack limits
                        THEN #SS(0); FI;
            FI;
        IF return code segment selector is NULL
            THEN #GP(0); FI;
        IF return code segment selector addresses descriptor beyond descriptor table limit
            THEN #GP(selector); FI;
        Obtain descriptor to which return code segment selector points from descriptor table;
        IF return code segment descriptor is not a code segment
            THEN #GP(selector); FI;
        IF return code segment selector RPL < CPL
            THEN #GP(selector); FI;
        IF return code segment descriptor is conforming
            and return code segment DPL > return code segment selector RPL
            THEN #GP(selector); FI;
        IF return code segment descriptor is non-conforming and return code
            segment DPL ≠ return code segment selector RPL
            THEN #GP(selector); FI;
        IF return code segment descriptor is not present
            THEN #NP(selector); FI;
        IF return code segment selector RPL > CPL
            THEN GOTO RETURN-TO-OUTER-PRIVILEGE-LEVEL;
            ELSE GOTO RETURN-TO-SAME-PRIVILEGE-LEVEL;
    FI;
FI;

RETURN-TO-SAME-PRIVILEGE-LEVEL:
    IF the return instruction pointer is not within the return code segment limit

```

```

    THEN #GP(0); FI;
IF OperandSize = 32
    THEN
        EIP ← Pop();
        CS ← Pop(); (* 32-bit pop, high-order 16 bits discarded *)
    ELSE (* OperandSize = 16 *)
        EIP ← Pop();
        EIP ← EIP AND 0000FFFFH;
        CS ← Pop(); (* 16-bit pop *)
FI;
IF instruction has immediate operand
    THEN (* Release parameters from stack *)
        IF StackAddressSize = 32
            THEN
                ESP ← ESP + SRC;
            ELSE (* StackAddressSize = 16 *)
                SP ← SP + SRC;
        FI;
    FI;
FI;

RETURN-TO-OUTER-PRIVILEGE-LEVEL:
IF top (16 + SRC) bytes of stack are not within stack limits (OperandSize = 32)
or top (8 + SRC) bytes of stack are not within stack limits (OperandSize = 16)
    THEN #SS(0); FI;
Read return segment selector;
IF stack segment selector is NULL
    THEN #GP(0); FI;
IF return stack segment selector index is not within its descriptor table limits
    THEN #GP(selector); FI;
Read segment descriptor pointed to by return segment selector;
IF stack segment selector RPL ≠ RPL of the return code segment selector
or stack segment is not a writable data segment
or stack segment descriptor DPL ≠ RPL of the return code segment selector
    THEN #GP(selector); FI;
IF stack segment not present
    THEN #SS(StackSegmentSelector); FI;
IF the return instruction pointer is not within the return code segment limit
    THEN #GP(0); FI;
CPL ← ReturnCodeSegmentSelector(RPL);
IF OperandSize = 32
    THEN
        EIP ← Pop();
        CS ← Pop(); (* 32-bit pop, high-order 16 bits discarded; segment descriptor loaded *)
        CS(RPL) ← CPL;
        IF instruction has immediate operand
            THEN (* Release parameters from called procedure's stack *)
                IF StackAddressSize = 32
                    THEN
                        ESP ← ESP + SRC;
                    ELSE (* StackAddressSize = 16 *)
                        SP ← SP + SRC;
                FI;
            FI;
        FI;
        tempESP ← Pop();

```

```

tempSS ← Pop(); (* 32-bit pop, high-order 16 bits discarded; seg. descriptor loaded *)
ESP ← tempESP;
SS ← tempSS;
ELSE (* OperandSize = 16 *)
    EIP ← Pop();
    EIP ← EIP AND 0000FFFFH;
    CS ← Pop(); (* 16-bit pop; segment descriptor loaded *)
    CS(RPL) ← CPL;
    IF instruction has immediate operand
        THEN (* Release parameters from called procedure's stack *)
            IF StackAddressSize = 32
                THEN
                    ESP ← ESP + SRC;
                ELSE (* StackAddressSize = 16 *)
                    SP ← SP + SRC;
            FI;
        FI;
    tempESP ← Pop();
    tempSS ← Pop(); (* 16-bit pop; segment descriptor loaded *)
    ESP ← tempESP;
    SS ← tempSS;
FI;

FOR each SegReg in (ES, FS, GS, and DS)
    DO
        tempDesc ← descriptor cache for SegReg (* hidden part of segment register *)
        IF (SegmentSelector == NULL) OR (tempDesc(DPL) < CPL AND tempDesc(Type) is (data or non-conforming code))
            THEN (* Segment register invalid *)
                SegmentSelector ← 0; (*Segment selector becomes null*)
        FI;
    OD;

IF instruction has immediate operand
    THEN (* Release parameters from calling procedure's stack *)
        IF StackAddressSize = 32
            THEN
                ESP ← ESP + SRC;
            ELSE (* StackAddressSize = 16 *)
                SP ← SP + SRC;
        FI;
    FI;

(* IA-32e Mode *)
IF (PE = 1 and VM = 0 and IA32_EFER.LMA = 1) and instruction = far return
    THEN
        IF OperandSize = 32
            THEN
                IF second doubleword on stack is not within stack limits
                    THEN #SS(0); FI;
                IF first or second doubleword on stack is not in canonical space
                    THEN #SS(0); FI;
            ELSE
                IF OperandSize = 16
                    THEN

```

```

                IF second word on stack is not within stack limits
                    THEN #SS(0); FI;
                IF first or second word on stack is not in canonical space
                    THEN #SS(0); FI;
            ELSE (* OperandSize = 64 *)
                IF first or second quadword on stack is not in canonical space
                    THEN #SS(0); FI;
        FI
    FI;
    IF return code segment selector is NULL
        THEN GP(0); FI;
    IF return code segment selector addresses descriptor beyond descriptor table limit
        THEN GP(selector); FI;
    IF return code segment selector addresses descriptor in non-canonical space
        THEN GP(selector); FI;
    Obtain descriptor to which return code segment selector points from descriptor table;
    IF return code segment descriptor is not a code segment
        THEN #GP(selector); FI;
    IF return code segment descriptor has L-bit = 1 and D-bit = 1
        THEN #GP(selector); FI;
    IF return code segment selector RPL < CPL
        THEN #GP(selector); FI;
    IF return code segment descriptor is conforming
    and return code segment DPL > return code segment selector RPL
        THEN #GP(selector); FI;
    IF return code segment descriptor is non-conforming
    and return code segment DPL ≠ return code segment selector RPL
        THEN #GP(selector); FI;
    IF return code segment descriptor is not present
        THEN #NP(selector); FI;
    IF return code segment selector RPL > CPL
        THEN GOTO IA-32E-MODE-RETURN-TO-OUTER-PRIVILEGE-LEVEL;
        ELSE GOTO IA-32E-MODE-RETURN-TO-SAME-PRIVILEGE-LEVEL;
    FI;
FI;

```

IA-32E-MODE-RETURN-TO-SAME-PRIVILEGE-LEVEL:

```

    IF the return instruction pointer is not within the return code segment limit
        THEN #GP(0); FI;
    IF the return instruction pointer is not within canonical address space
        THEN #GP(0); FI;
    IF OperandSize = 32
        THEN
            EIP ← Pop();
            CS ← Pop(); (* 32-bit pop, high-order 16 bits discarded *)
        ELSE
            IF OperandSize = 16
                THEN
                    EIP ← Pop();
                    EIP ← EIP AND 0000FFFFH;
                    CS ← Pop(); (* 16-bit pop *)
                ELSE (* OperandSize = 64 *)
                    RIP ← Pop();
                    CS ← Pop(); (* 64-bit pop, high-order 48 bits discarded *)
            FI;
        FI;

```

```

    FI;
FI;
IF instruction has immediate operand
  THEN (* Release parameters from stack *)
    IF StackAddressSize = 32
      THEN
        ESP ← ESP + SRC;
      ELSE
        IF StackAddressSize = 16
          THEN
            SP ← SP + SRC;
          ELSE (* StackAddressSize = 64 *)
            RSP ← RSP + SRC;
        FI;
      FI;
    FI;
FI;

```

```

IA-32E-MODE-RETURN-TO-OUTER-PRIVILEGE-LEVEL:
IF top (16 + SRC) bytes of stack are not within stack limits (OperandSize = 32)
or top (8 + SRC) bytes of stack are not within stack limits (OperandSize = 16)
  THEN #SS(0); FI;
IF top (16 + SRC) bytes of stack are not in canonical address space (OperandSize = 32)
or top (8 + SRC) bytes of stack are not in canonical address space (OperandSize = 16)
or top (32 + SRC) bytes of stack are not in canonical address space (OperandSize = 64)
  THEN #SS(0); FI;
Read return stack segment selector;
IF stack segment selector is NULL
  THEN
    IF new CS descriptor L-bit = 0
      THEN #GP(selector);
    IF stack segment selector RPL = 3
      THEN #GP(selector);
  FI;
IF return stack segment descriptor is not within descriptor table limits
  THEN #GP(selector); FI;
IF return stack segment descriptor is in non-canonical address space
  THEN #GP(selector); FI;
Read segment descriptor pointed to by return segment selector;
IF stack segment selector RPL ≠ RPL of the return code segment selector
or stack segment is not a writable data segment
or stack segment descriptor DPL ≠ RPL of the return code segment selector
  THEN #GP(selector); FI;
IF stack segment not present
  THEN #SS(StackSegmentSelector); FI;
IF the return instruction pointer is not within the return code segment limit
  THEN #GP(0); FI;
IF the return instruction pointer is not within canonical address space
  THEN #GP(0); FI;
CPL ← ReturnCodeSegmentSelector(RPL);
IF OperandSize = 32
  THEN
    EIP ← Pop();
    CS ← Pop(); (* 32-bit pop, high-order 16 bits discarded, segment descriptor loaded *)
    CS(RPL) ← CPL;
  FI;

```

```

IF instruction has immediate operand
  THEN (* Release parameters from called procedure's stack *)
    IF StackAddressSize = 32
      THEN
        ESP ← ESP + SRC;
      ELSE
        IF StackAddressSize = 16
          THEN
            SP ← SP + SRC;
          ELSE (* StackAddressSize = 64 *)
            RSP ← RSP + SRC;
        FI;
      FI;
    FI;
  tempESP ← Pop();
  tempSS ← Pop(); (* 32-bit pop, high-order 16 bits discarded, segment descriptor loaded *)
  ESP ← tempESP;
  SS ← tempSS;
ELSE
  IF OperandSize = 16
    THEN
      EIP ← Pop();
      EIP ← EIP AND 0000FFFFH;
      CS ← Pop(); (* 16-bit pop; segment descriptor loaded *)
      CS(RPL) ← CPL;
      IF instruction has immediate operand
        THEN (* Release parameters from called procedure's stack *)
          IF StackAddressSize = 32
            THEN
              ESP ← ESP + SRC;
            ELSE
              IF StackAddressSize = 16
                THEN
                  SP ← SP + SRC;
                ELSE (* StackAddressSize = 64 *)
                  RSP ← RSP + SRC;
              FI;
            FI;
          FI;
        tempESP ← Pop();
        tempSS ← Pop(); (* 16-bit pop; segment descriptor loaded *)
        ESP ← tempESP;
        SS ← tempSS;
    ELSE (* OperandSize = 64 *)
      RIP ← Pop();
      CS ← Pop(); (* 64-bit pop; high-order 48 bits discarded; seg. descriptor loaded *)
      CS(RPL) ← CPL;
      IF instruction has immediate operand
        THEN (* Release parameters from called procedure's stack *)
          RSP ← RSP + SRC;
        FI;
      tempESP ← Pop();
      tempSS ← Pop(); (* 64-bit pop; high-order 48 bits discarded; seg. desc. loaded *)
      ESP ← tempESP;

```

```

        SS ← tempSS;
    FI;
FI;

FOR each of segment register (ES, FS, GS, and DS)
    DO
        IF segment register points to data or non-conforming code segment
        and CPL > segment descriptor DPL; (* DPL in hidden part of segment register *)
        THEN SegmentSelector ← 0; (* SegmentSelector invalid *)
    FI;
OD;

IF instruction has immediate operand
    THEN (* Release parameters from calling procedure's stack *)
        IF StackAddressSize = 32
            THEN
                ESP ← ESP + SRC;
            ELSE
                IF StackAddressSize = 16
                    THEN
                        SP ← SP + SRC;
                    ELSE (* StackAddressSize = 64 *)
                        RSP ← RSP + SRC;
                FI;
            FI;
    FI;
FI;

```

Flags Affected

None.

Protected Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	If the return code or stack segment selector is NULL.
	If the return instruction pointer is not within the return code segment limit
#GP(selector)	If the RPL of the return code segment selector is less than the CPL.
	If the return code or stack segment selector index is not within its descriptor table limits.
	If the return code segment descriptor does not indicate a code segment.
	If the return code segment is non-conforming and the segment selector's DPL is not equal to the RPL of the code segment's segment selector
	If the return code segment is conforming and the segment selector's DPL greater than the RPL of the code segment's segment selector
	If the stack segment is not a writable data segment.
	If the stack segment selector RPL is not equal to the RPL of the return code segment selector.
	If the stack segment descriptor DPL is not equal to the RPL of the return code segment selector.
#SS(0)	If the top bytes of stack are not within stack limits.
	If the return stack segment is not present.
#NP(selector)	If the return code segment is not present.
#PF(fault-code)	If a page fault occurs.
#AC(0)	If an unaligned memory access occurs when the CPL is 3 and alignment checking is enabled.

Real-Address Mode Exceptions

#GP	If the return instruction pointer is not within the return code segment limit
#SS	If the top bytes of stack are not within stack limits.

Virtual-8086 Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	If the return instruction pointer is not within the return code segment limit
#SS(0)	If the top bytes of stack are not within stack limits.
#PF(fault-code)	If a page fault occurs.
#AC(0)	If an unaligned memory access occurs when alignment checking is enabled.

Compatibility Mode Exceptions

Same as 64-bit mode exceptions.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	<p>If the return instruction pointer is non-canonical.</p> <p>If the return instruction pointer is not within the return code segment limit.</p> <p>If the stack segment selector is NULL going back to compatibility mode.</p> <p>If the stack segment selector is NULL going back to CPL3 64-bit mode.</p> <p>If a NULL stack segment selector RPL is not equal to CPL going back to non-CPL3 64-bit mode.</p> <p>If the return code segment selector is NULL.</p>
#GP(selector)	<p>If the proposed segment descriptor for a code segment does not indicate it is a code segment.</p> <p>If the proposed new code segment descriptor has both the D-bit and L-bit set.</p> <p>If the DPL for a nonconforming-code segment is not equal to the RPL of the code segment selector.</p> <p>If CPL is greater than the RPL of the code segment selector.</p> <p>If the DPL of a conforming-code segment is greater than the return code segment selector RPL.</p> <p>If a segment selector index is outside its descriptor table limits.</p> <p>If a segment descriptor memory address is non-canonical.</p> <p>If the stack segment is not a writable data segment.</p> <p>If the stack segment descriptor DPL is not equal to the RPL of the return code segment selector.</p> <p>If the stack segment selector RPL is not equal to the RPL of the return code segment selector.</p>
#SS(0)	<p>If an attempt to pop a value off the stack violates the SS limit.</p> <p>If an attempt to pop a value off the stack causes a non-canonical address to be referenced.</p>
#NP(selector)	If the return code or stack segment is not present.
#PF(fault-code)	If a page fault occurs.
#AC(0)	If alignment checking is enabled and an unaligned memory reference is made while the current privilege level is 3.

ROUNDSS — Round Scalar Single Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode*/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 3A 0A /r ib ROUNDSS <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2/m32</i> , <i>imm8</i>	RMI	V/V	SSE4_1	Round the low packed single precision floating-point value in <i>xmm2/m32</i> and place the result in <i>xmm1</i> . The rounding mode is determined by <i>imm8</i> .
VEX.LIG.66.0F3A.WIG 0A /r ib VROUNDSS <i>xmm1</i> , <i>xmm2</i> , <i>xmm3/m32</i> , <i>imm8</i>	RVMI	V/V	AVX	Round the low packed single precision floating-point value in <i>xmm3/m32</i> and place the result in <i>xmm1</i> . The rounding mode is determined by <i>imm8</i> . Also, upper packed single precision floating-point values (bits[127:32]) from <i>xmm2</i> are copied to <i>xmm1</i> [127:32].

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RMI	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	imm8	NA
RVMI	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	imm8

Description

Round the single-precision floating-point value in the lowest dword of the source operand (second operand) using the rounding mode specified in the immediate operand (third operand) and place the result in the destination operand (first operand). The rounding process rounds a single-precision floating-point input to an integer value and returns the result as a single-precision floating-point value in the lowest position. The upper three single-precision floating-point values in the destination are retained.

The immediate operand specifies control fields for the rounding operation, three bit fields are defined and shown in Figure 4-24. Bit 3 of the immediate byte controls processor behavior for a precision exception, bit 2 selects the source of rounding mode control. Bits 1:0 specify a non-sticky rounding-mode value (Table 4-17 lists the encoded values for rounding-mode field).

The Precision Floating-Point Exception is signaled according to the immediate operand. If any source operand is an SNaN then it will be converted to a QNaN. If DAZ is set to '1 then denormals will be converted to zero before rounding.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source operand and the destination operand are the same. Bits (MAXVL-1:32) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 encoded version: Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination YMM register are zeroed.

Operation

```
IF (imm[2] = '1)
    THEN // rounding mode is determined by MXCSR.RC
        DEST[31:0] ← ConvertSPFPToInteger_M(SRC[31:0]);
    ELSE // rounding mode is determined by IMM8.RC
        DEST[31:0] ← ConvertSPFPToInteger_Imm(SRC[31:0]);
```

```
FI;
DEST[127:32] remains unchanged ;
```

ROUNDSS (128-bit Legacy SSE version)

```
DEST[31:0] ← RoundToInteger(SRC[31:0], ROUND_CONTROL)
DEST[MAXVL-1:32] (Unmodified)
```

RSQRTSS—Compute Reciprocal of Square Root of Scalar Single-Precision Floating-Point Value

Opcode*/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
F3 0F 52 /r RSQRTSS <i>xmm1, xmm2/m32</i>	RM	V/V	SSE	Computes the approximate reciprocal of the square root of the low single-precision floating-point value in <i>xmm2/m32</i> and stores the results in <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.LIG.F3.0F.WIG 52 /r VRSQRTSS <i>xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m32</i>	RVM	V/V	AVX	Computes the approximate reciprocal of the square root of the low single precision floating-point value in <i>xmm3/m32</i> and stores the results in <i>xmm1</i> . Also, upper single precision floating-point values (bits[127:32]) from <i>xmm2</i> are copied to <i>xmm1</i> [127:32].

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RM	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
RVM	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Computes an approximate reciprocal of the square root of the low single-precision floating-point value in the source operand (second operand) stores the single-precision floating-point result in the destination operand. The source operand can be an XMM register or a 32-bit memory location. The destination operand is an XMM register. The three high-order doublewords of the destination operand remain unchanged. See Figure 10-6 in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 1*, for an illustration of a scalar single-precision floating-point operation.

The relative error for this approximation is:

$$|\text{Relative Error}| \leq 1.5 * 2^{-12}$$

The RSQRTSS instruction is not affected by the rounding control bits in the MXCSR register. When a source value is a 0.0, an ∞ of the sign of the source value is returned. A denormal source value is treated as a 0.0 (of the same sign). When a source value is a negative value (other than -0.0), a floating-point indefinite is returned. When a source value is an SNaN or QNaN, the SNaN is converted to a QNaN or the source QNaN is returned.

In 64-bit mode, using a REX prefix in the form of REX.R permits this instruction to access additional registers (XMM8-XMM15).

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source operand and the destination operand are the same. Bits (MAXVL-1:32) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 encoded version: Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination YMM register are zeroed.

Operation**RSQRTSS (128-bit Legacy SSE version)**

DEST[31:0] ← APPROXIMATE(1/SQRT(SRC2[31:0]))

DEST[MAXVL-1:32] (Unmodified)

VRSQRTSS (VEX.128 encoded version)

DEST[31:0] ← APPROXIMATE(1/SQRT(SRC2[31:0]))

DEST[127:32] ← SRC1[127:32]

DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0

SARX/SHLX/SHRX – Shift Without Affecting Flags

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 -bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.LZ.F3.0F38.W0 F7 /r SARX <i>r32a</i> , <i>r/m32</i> , <i>r32b</i>	RMV	V/V	BMI2	Shift <i>r/m32</i> arithmetically right with count specified in <i>r32b</i> .
VEX.LZ.66.0F38.W0 F7 /r SHLX <i>r32a</i> , <i>r/m32</i> , <i>r32b</i>	RMV	V/V	BMI2	Shift <i>r/m32</i> logically left with count specified in <i>r32b</i> .
VEX.LZ.F2.0F38.W0 F7 /r SHRX <i>r32a</i> , <i>r/m32</i> , <i>r32b</i>	RMV	V/V	BMI2	Shift <i>r/m32</i> logically right with count specified in <i>r32b</i> .
VEX.LZ.F3.0F38.W1 F7 /r SARX <i>r64a</i> , <i>r/m64</i> , <i>r64b</i>	RMV	V/N.E.	BMI2	Shift <i>r/m64</i> arithmetically right with count specified in <i>r64b</i> .
VEX.LZ.66.0F38.W1 F7 /r SHLX <i>r64a</i> , <i>r/m64</i> , <i>r64b</i>	RMV	V/N.E.	BMI2	Shift <i>r/m64</i> logically left with count specified in <i>r64b</i> .
VEX.LZ.F2.0F38.W1 F7 /r SHRX <i>r64a</i> , <i>r/m64</i> , <i>r64b</i>	RMV	V/N.E.	BMI2	Shift <i>r/m64</i> logically right with count specified in <i>r64b</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RMV	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	VEX.vvvv (r)	NA

Description

Shifts the bits of the first source operand (the second operand) to the left or right by a COUNT value specified in the second source operand (the third operand). The result is written to the destination operand (the first operand).

The shift arithmetic right (SARX) and shift logical right (SHRX) instructions shift the bits of the destination operand to the right (toward less significant bit locations), SARX keeps and propagates the most significant bit (sign bit) while shifting.

The logical shift left (SHLX) shifts the bits of the destination operand to the left (toward more significant bit locations).

This instruction is not supported in real mode and virtual-8086 mode. The operand size is always 32 bits if not in 64-bit mode. In 64-bit mode operand size 64 requires VEX.W1. VEX.W1 is ignored in non-64-bit modes. An attempt to execute this instruction with VEX.L not equal to 0 will cause #UD.

If the value specified in the first source operand exceeds OperandSize - 1, the COUNT value is masked.

SARX,SHRX, and SHLX instructions do not update flags.

Operation

```
TEMP ← SRC1;
IF VEX.W1 and CS.L = 1
THEN
    countMASK ← 3FH;
ELSE
    countMASK ← 1FH;
FI
COUNT ← (SRC2 AND countMASK)
```

```
DEST[OperandSize - 1] = TEMP[OperandSize - 1];
DO WHILE (COUNT ≠ 0)
    IF instruction is SHLX
    THEN
        DEST[] ← DEST * 2;
```

```
    ELSE IF instruction is SHRX
      THEN
        DEST[] ← DEST /2; //unsigned divide
    ELSE
      // SARX
        DEST[] ← DEST /2; // signed divide, round toward negative infinity
    FI;
    COUNT ← COUNT - 1;
OD
```

Flags Affected

None.

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

Auto-generated from high-level language.

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

See Section 2.5.1, “Exception Conditions for VEX-Encoded GPR Instructions”, Table 2-29.

SHUFPD—Packed Interleave Shuffle of Pairs of Double-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F C6 /r ib SHUFPD xmm1, xmm2/m128, imm8	A	V/V	SSE2	Shuffle two pairs of double-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm2/m128 using imm8 to select from each pair, interleaved result is stored in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG C6 /r ib VSHUFPD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128, imm8	B	V/V	AVX	Shuffle two pairs of double-precision floating-point values from xmm2 and xmm3/m128 using imm8 to select from each pair, interleaved result is stored in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG C6 /r ib VSHUFPD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256, imm8	B	V/V	AVX	Shuffle four pairs of double-precision floating-point values from ymm2 and ymm3/m256 using imm8 to select from each pair, interleaved result is stored in xmm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 C6 /r ib VSHUFPD xmm1{k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst, imm8	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shuffle two pairs of double-precision floating-point values from xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst using imm8 to select from each pair. store interleaved results in xmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W1 C6 /r ib VSHUFPD ymm1{k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst, imm8	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shuffle four pairs of double-precision floating-point values from ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst using imm8 to select from each pair. store interleaved results in ymm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W1 C6 /r ib VSHUFPD zmm1{k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst, imm8	C	V/V	AVX512F	Shuffle eight pairs of double-precision floating-point values from zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst using imm8 to select from each pair. store interleaved results in zmm1 subject to writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8

Description

Selects a double-precision floating-point value of an input pair using a bit control and move to a designated element of the destination operand. The low-to-high order of double-precision element of the destination operand is interleaved between the first source operand and the second source operand at the granularity of input pair of 128 bits. Each bit in the imm8 byte, starting from bit 0, is the select control of the corresponding element of the destination to received the shuffled result of an input pair.

EVEX encoded versions: The first source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register updated according to the writemask. The select controls are the lower 8/4/2 bits of the imm8 byte.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand can be a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register. The select controls are the bit 3:0 of the imm8 byte, imm8[7:4] are ignored.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is a XMM register. The second source operand can be a XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is a XMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed. The select controls are the bit 1:0 of the imm8 byte, imm8[7:2] are ignored.

SHUFPS—Packed Interleave Shuffle of Quadruplets of Single-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F C6 /r ib SHUFPS xmm1, xmm3/m128, imm8	A	V/V	SSE	Select from quadruplet of single-precision floating-point values in xmm1 and xmm2/m128 using imm8, interleaved result pairs are stored in xmm1.
VEX.128.0F.WIG C6 /r ib VSHUFPS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128, imm8	B	V/V	AVX	Select from quadruplet of single-precision floating-point values in xmm1 and xmm2/m128 using imm8, interleaved result pairs are stored in xmm1.
VEX.256.0F.WIG C6 /r ib VSHUFPS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256, imm8	B	V/V	AVX	Select from quadruplet of single-precision floating-point values in ymm2 and ymm3/m256 using imm8, interleaved result pairs are stored in ymm1.
EVEX.128.0F.W0 C6 /r ib VSHUFPS xmm1{k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst, imm8	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Select from quadruplet of single-precision floating-point values in xmm1 and xmm2/m128 using imm8, interleaved result pairs are stored in xmm1, subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.0F.W0 C6 /r ib VSHUFPS ymm1{k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst, imm8	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Select from quadruplet of single-precision floating-point values in ymm2 and ymm3/m256 using imm8, interleaved result pairs are stored in ymm1, subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.0F.W0 C6 /r ib VSHUFPS zmm1{k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst, imm8	C	V/V	AVX512F	Select from quadruplet of single-precision floating-point values in zmm2 and zmm3/m512 using imm8, interleaved result pairs are stored in zmm1, subject to writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8

Description

Selects a single-precision floating-point value of an input quadruplet using a two-bit control and move to a designated element of the destination operand. Each 64-bit element-pair of a 128-bit lane of the destination operand is interleaved between the corresponding lane of the first source operand and the second source operand at the granularity 128 bits. Each two bits in the imm8 byte, starting from bit 0, is the select control of the corresponding element of a 128-bit lane of the destination to received the shuffled result of an input quadruplet. The two lower elements of a 128-bit lane in the destination receives shuffle results from the quadruple of the first source operand. The next two elements of the destination receives shuffle results from the quadruple of the second source operand.

EVEX encoded versions: The first source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 32-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register updated according to the writemask. Imm8[7:0] provides 4 select controls for each applicable 128-bit lane of the destination.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand can be a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register. Imm8[7:0] provides 4 select controls for the high and low 128-bit of the destination.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is a XMM register. The second source operand can be a XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is a XMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed. Imm8[7:0] provides 4 select controls for each element of the destination.

SQRTSD—Compute Square Root of Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
F2 0F 51/r SQRTSD xmm1,xmm2/m64	A	V/V	SSE2	Computes square root of the low double-precision floating-point value in xmm2/m64 and stores the results in xmm1.
VEX.LIG.F2.0F.WIG 51/r VSQRTSD xmm1,xmm2, xmm3/m64	B	V/V	AVX	Computes square root of the low double-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m64 and stores the results in xmm1. Also, upper double-precision floating-point value (bits[127:64]) from xmm2 is copied to xmm1[127:64].
EVEX.LIG.F2.0F.W1 51/r VSQRTSD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64{er}	C	V/V	AVX512F	Computes square root of the low double-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m64 and stores the results in xmm1 under writemask k1. Also, upper double-precision floating-point value (bits[127:64]) from xmm2 is copied to xmm1[127:64].

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Computes the square root of the low double-precision floating-point value in the second source operand and stores the double-precision floating-point result in the destination operand. The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 64-bit memory location. The first source and destination operands are XMM registers.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source operand and the destination operand are the same. The quadword at bits 127:64 of the destination operand remains unchanged. Bits (MAXVL-1:64) of the corresponding destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 and EVEX encoded versions: Bits 127:64 of the destination operand are copied from the corresponding bits of the first source operand. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination register are zeroed.

EVEX encoded version: The low quadword element of the destination operand is updated according to the writemask.

Software should ensure VSQRTSD is encoded with VEX.L=0. Encoding VSQRTSD with VEX.L=1 may encounter unpredictable behavior across different processor generations.

SQRTSS—Compute Square Root of Scalar Single-Precision Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
F3 0F 51 /r SQRTSS xmm1, xmm2/m32	A	V/V	SSE	Computes square root of the low single-precision floating-point value in xmm2/m32 and stores the results in xmm1.
VEX.LIG.F3.0F.WIG 51 /r VSQRTSS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m32	B	V/V	AVX	Computes square root of the low single-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m32 and stores the results in xmm1. Also, upper single-precision floating-point values (bits[127:32]) from xmm2 are copied to xmm1[127:32].
EVEX.LIG.F3.0F.W0 51 /r VSQRTSS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m32{er}	C	V/V	AVX512F	Computes square root of the low single-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m32 and stores the results in xmm1 under writemask k1. Also, upper single-precision floating-point values (bits[127:32]) from xmm2 are copied to xmm1[127:32].

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Computes the square root of the low single-precision floating-point value in the second source operand and stores the single-precision floating-point result in the destination operand. The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 32-bit memory location. The first source and destination operands is an XMM register.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The first source operand and the destination operand are the same. Bits (MAXVL-1:32) of the corresponding YMM destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 and EVEX encoded versions: Bits 127:32 of the destination operand are copied from the corresponding bits of the first source operand. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination ZMM register are zeroed.

EVEX encoded version: The low doubleword element of the destination operand is updated according to the writemask.

Software should ensure VSQRTSS is encoded with VEX.L=0. Encoding VSQRTSS with VEX.L=1 may encounter unpredictable behavior across different processor generations.

SUBPD—Subtract Packed Double-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 5C /r SUBPD xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE2	Subtract packed double-precision floating-point values in xmm2/mem from xmm1 and store result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 5C /r VSUBPD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Subtract packed double-precision floating-point values in xmm3/mem from xmm2 and store result in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG 5C /r VSUBPD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX	Subtract packed double-precision floating-point values in ymm3/mem from ymm2 and store result in ymm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 5C /r VSUBPD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Subtract packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm3/m128/m64bcst to xmm2 and store result in xmm1 with writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W1 5C /r VSUBPD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Subtract packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm3/m256/m64bcst to ymm2 and store result in ymm1 with writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W1 5C /r VSUBPD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst{er}	C	V/V	AVX512F	Subtract packed double-precision floating-point values from zmm3/m512/m64bcst to zmm2 and store result in zmm1 with writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a SIMD subtract of the two, four or eight packed double-precision floating-point values of the second Source operand from the first Source operand, and stores the packed double-precision floating-point results in the destination operand.

VEX.128 and EVEX.128 encoded versions: The second source operand is an XMM register or an 128-bit memory location. The first source operand and destination operands are XMM registers. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding destination register are zeroed.

VEX.256 and EVEX.256 encoded versions: The second source operand is an YMM register or an 256-bit memory location. The first source operand and destination operands are YMM registers. Bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding destination register are zeroed.

EVEX.512 encoded version: The second source operand is a ZMM register, a 512-bit memory location or a 512-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location. The first source operand and destination operands are ZMM registers. The destination operand is conditionally updated according to the writemask.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source can be an XMM register or an 128-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding register destination are unmodified.

SUBPS—Subtract Packed Single-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F 5C /r SUBPS xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE	Subtract packed single-precision floating-point values in xmm2/mem from xmm1 and store result in xmm1.
VEX.128.0F.WIG 5C /r VSUBPS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Subtract packed single-precision floating-point values in xmm3/mem from xmm2 and stores result in xmm1.
VEX.256.0F.WIG 5C /r VSUBPS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX	Subtract packed single-precision floating-point values in ymm3/mem from ymm2 and stores result in ymm1.
EVEX.128.0F.W0 5C /r VSUBPS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Subtract packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm3/m128/m32bcst to xmm2 and stores result in xmm1 with writemask k1.
EVEX.256.0F.W0 5C /r VSUBPS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Subtract packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm3/m256/m32bcst to ymm2 and stores result in ymm1 with writemask k1.
EVEX.512.0F.W0 5C /r VSUBPS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst{er}	C	V/V	AVX512F	Subtract packed single-precision floating-point values in zmm3/m512/m32bcst from zmm2 and stores result in zmm1 with writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a SIMD subtract of the packed single-precision floating-point values in the second Source operand from the First Source operand, and stores the packed single-precision floating-point results in the destination operand.

VEX.128 and EVEX.128 encoded versions: The second source operand is an XMM register or an 128-bit memory location. The first source operand and destination operands are XMM registers. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding destination register are zeroed.

VEX.256 and EVEX.256 encoded versions: The second source operand is an YMM register or an 256-bit memory location. The first source operand and destination operands are YMM registers. Bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding destination register are zeroed.

EVEX.512 encoded version: The second source operand is a ZMM register, a 512-bit memory location or a 512-bit vector broadcasted from a 32-bit memory location. The first source operand and destination operands are ZMM registers. The destination operand is conditionally updated according to the writemask.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source can be an XMM register or an 128-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding register destination are unmodified.

SUBSD—Subtract Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
F2 0F 5C /r SUBSD xmm1, xmm2/m64	A	V/V	SSE2	Subtract the low double-precision floating-point value in xmm2/m64 from xmm1 and store the result in xmm1.
VEX.LIG.F2.0F.WIG 5C /r VSUBSD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m64	B	V/V	AVX	Subtract the low double-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m64 from xmm2 and store the result in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.F2.0F.W1 5C /r VSUBSD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64{er}	C	V/V	AVX512F	Subtract the low double-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m64 from xmm2 and store the result in xmm1 under writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Subtract the low double-precision floating-point value in the second source operand from the first source operand and stores the double-precision floating-point result in the low quadword of the destination operand.

The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 64-bit memory location. The first source and destination operands are XMM registers.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The destination and first source operand are the same. Bits (MAXVL-1:64) of the corresponding destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 and EVEX encoded versions: Bits (127:64) of the XMM register destination are copied from corresponding bits in the first source operand. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination register are zeroed.

EVEX encoded version: The low quadword element of the destination operand is updated according to the writemask.

Software should ensure VSUBSD is encoded with VEX.L=0. Encoding VSUBSD with VEX.L=1 may encounter unpredictable behavior across different processor generations.

SUBSS—Subtract Scalar Single-Precision Floating-Point Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
F3 0F 5C /r SUBSS xmm1, xmm2/m32	A	V/V	SSE	Subtract the low single-precision floating-point value in xmm2/m32 from xmm1 and store the result in xmm1.
VEX.LIG.F3.0F.WIG 5C /r VSUBSS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m32	B	V/V	AVX	Subtract the low single-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m32 from xmm2 and store the result in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.F3.0F.W0 5C /r VSUBSS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m32{er}	C	V/V	AVX512F	Subtract the low single-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m32 from xmm2 and store the result in xmm1 under writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Subtract the low single-precision floating-point value from the second source operand and the first source operand and store the double-precision floating-point result in the low doubleword of the destination operand.

The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 32-bit memory location. The first source and destination operands are XMM registers.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The destination and first source operand are the same. Bits (MAXVL-1:32) of the corresponding destination register remain unchanged.

VEX.128 and EVEX encoded versions: Bits (127:32) of the XMM register destination are copied from corresponding bits in the first source operand. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination register are zeroed.

EVEX encoded version: The low doubleword element of the destination operand is updated according to the writemask.

Software should ensure VSUBSS is encoded with VEX.L=0. Encoding VSUBSD with VEX.L=1 may encounter unpredictable behavior across different processor generations.

SYSCALL—Fast System Call

Opcode	Instruction	Op/En	64-Bit Mode	Compat/Leg Mode	Description
OF 05	SYSCALL	Z0	Valid	Invalid	Fast call to privilege level 0 system procedures.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
Z0	NA	NA	NA	NA

Description

SYSCALL invokes an OS system-call handler at privilege level 0. It does so by loading RIP from the IA32_LSTAR MSR (after saving the address of the instruction following SYSCALL into RCX). (The WRMSR instruction ensures that the IA32_LSTAR MSR always contain a canonical address.)

SYSCALL also saves RFLAGS into R11 and then masks RFLAGS using the IA32_FMASK MSR (MSR address C0000084H); specifically, the processor clears in RFLAGS every bit corresponding to a bit that is set in the IA32_FMASK MSR.

SYSCALL loads the CS and SS selectors with values derived from bits 47:32 of the IA32_STAR MSR. However, the CS and SS descriptor caches are **not** loaded from the descriptors (in GDT or LDT) referenced by those selectors. Instead, the descriptor caches are loaded with fixed values. See the Operation section for details. It is the responsibility of OS software to ensure that the descriptors (in GDT or LDT) referenced by those selector values correspond to the fixed values loaded into the descriptor caches; the SYSCALL instruction does not ensure this correspondence.

The SYSCALL instruction does not save the stack pointer (RSP). If the OS system-call handler will change the stack pointer, it is the responsibility of software to save the previous value of the stack pointer. This might be done prior to executing SYSCALL, with software restoring the stack pointer with the instruction following SYSCALL (which will be executed after SYSRET). Alternatively, the OS system-call handler may save the stack pointer and restore it before executing SYSRET.

Instruction ordering. Instructions following a SYSCALL may be fetched from memory before earlier instructions complete execution, but they will not execute (even speculatively) until all instructions prior to the SYSCALL have completed execution (the later instructions may execute before data stored by the earlier instructions have become globally visible).

Operation

IF (CS.L \neq 1) or (IA32_EFER.LMA \neq 1) or (IA32_EFER.SCE \neq 1)
 (* Not in 64-Bit Mode or SYSCALL/SYSRET not enabled in IA32_EFER *)

THEN #UD;

FI;

RCX \leftarrow RIP; (* Will contain address of next instruction *)

RIP \leftarrow IA32_LSTAR;

R11 \leftarrow RFLAGS;

RFLAGS \leftarrow RFLAGS AND NOT(IA32_FMASK);

CS.Selector \leftarrow IA32_STAR[47:32] AND FFFCH (* Operating system provides CS; RPL forced to 0 *)

(* Set rest of CS to a fixed value *)

CS.Base \leftarrow 0; (* Flat segment *)

CS.Limit \leftarrow FFFFFFFH; (* With 4-KByte granularity, implies a 4-GByte limit *)

CS.Type \leftarrow 11; (* Execute/read code, accessed *)

CS.S \leftarrow 1;

CS.DPL \leftarrow 0;

CS.P \leftarrow 1;

CS.L ← 1;	(* Entry is to 64-bit mode *)
CS.D ← 0;	(* Required if CS.L = 1 *)
CS.G ← 1;	(* 4-KByte granularity *)
CPL ← 0;	
SS.Selector ← IA32_STAR[47:32] + 8;	(* SS just above CS *)
(* Set rest of SS to a fixed value *)	
SS.Base ← 0;	(* Flat segment *)
SS.Limit ← FFFFFFFH;	(* With 4-KByte granularity, implies a 4-GByte limit *)
SS.Type ← 3;	(* Read/write data, accessed *)
SS.S ← 1;	
SS.DPL ← 0;	
SS.P ← 1;	
SS.B ← 1;	(* 32-bit stack segment *)
SS.G ← 1;	(* 4-KByte granularity *)

Flags Affected

All.

Protected Mode Exceptions

#UD The SYSCALL instruction is not recognized in protected mode.

Real-Address Mode Exceptions

#UD The SYSCALL instruction is not recognized in real-address mode.

Virtual-8086 Mode Exceptions

#UD The SYSCALL instruction is not recognized in virtual-8086 mode.

Compatibility Mode Exceptions

#UD The SYSCALL instruction is not recognized in compatibility mode.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#UD If IA32_EFER.SCE = 0.
If the LOCK prefix is used.

SYSENTER—Fast System Call

Opcode	Instruction	Op/En	64-Bit Mode	Compat/Leg Mode	Description
0F 34	SYSENTER	Z0	Valid	Valid	Fast call to privilege level 0 system procedures.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
Z0	NA	NA	NA	NA

Description

Executes a fast call to a level 0 system procedure or routine. SYSENTER is a companion instruction to SYSEXIT. The instruction is optimized to provide the maximum performance for system calls from user code running at privilege level 3 to operating system or executive procedures running at privilege level 0.

When executed in IA-32e mode, the SYSENTER instruction transitions the logical processor to 64-bit mode; otherwise, the logical processor remains in protected mode.

Prior to executing the SYSENTER instruction, software must specify the privilege level 0 code segment and code entry point, and the privilege level 0 stack segment and stack pointer by writing values to the following MSRs:

- **IA32_SYSENTER_CS** (MSR address 174H) — The lower 16 bits of this MSR are the segment selector for the privilege level 0 code segment. This value is also used to determine the segment selector of the privilege level 0 stack segment (see the Operation section). This value cannot indicate a null selector.
- **IA32_SYSENTER_EIP** (MSR address 176H) — The value of this MSR is loaded into RIP (thus, this value references the first instruction of the selected operating procedure or routine). In protected mode, only bits 31:0 are loaded.
- **IA32_SYSENTER_ESP** (MSR address 175H) — The value of this MSR is loaded into RSP (thus, this value contains the stack pointer for the privilege level 0 stack). This value cannot represent a non-canonical address. In protected mode, only bits 31:0 are loaded.

These MSRs can be read from and written to using RDMSR/WRMSR. The WRMSR instruction ensures that the IA32_SYSENTER_EIP and IA32_SYSENTER_ESP MSRs always contain canonical addresses.

While SYSENTER loads the CS and SS selectors with values derived from the IA32_SYSENTER_CS MSR, the CS and SS descriptor caches are **not** loaded from the descriptors (in GDT or LDT) referenced by those selectors. Instead, the descriptor caches are loaded with fixed values. See the Operation section for details. It is the responsibility of OS software to ensure that the descriptors (in GDT or LDT) referenced by those selector values correspond to the fixed values loaded into the descriptor caches; the SYSENTER instruction does not ensure this correspondence.

The SYSENTER instruction can be invoked from all operating modes except real-address mode.

The SYSENTER and SYSEXIT instructions are companion instructions, but they do not constitute a call/return pair. When executing a SYSENTER instruction, the processor does not save state information for the user code (e.g., the instruction pointer), and neither the SYSENTER nor the SYSEXIT instruction supports passing parameters on the stack.

To use the SYSENTER and SYSEXIT instructions as companion instructions for transitions between privilege level 3 code and privilege level 0 operating system procedures, the following conventions must be followed:

- The segment descriptors for the privilege level 0 code and stack segments and for the privilege level 3 code and stack segments must be contiguous in a descriptor table. This convention allows the processor to compute the segment selectors from the value entered in the SYSENTER_CS_MSR MSR.
- The fast system call “stub” routines executed by user code (typically in shared libraries or DLLs) must save the required return IP and processor state information if a return to the calling procedure is required. Likewise, the operating system or executive procedures called with SYSENTER instructions must have access to and use this saved return and state information when returning to the user code.

The SYSENTER and SYSEXIT instructions were introduced into the IA-32 architecture in the Pentium II processor. The availability of these instructions on a processor is indicated with the SYSENTER/SYSEXIT present (SEP) feature flag returned to the EDX register by the CPUID instruction. An operating system that qualifies the SEP flag must also qualify the processor family and model to ensure that the SYSENTER/SYSEXIT instructions are actually present. For example:

```
IF CPUID SEP bit is set
  THEN IF (Family = 6) and (Model < 3) and (Stepping < 3)
    THEN
      SYSENTER/SYSEXIT_Not_Supported; FI;
    ELSE
      SYSENTER/SYSEXIT_Supported; FI;
  FI;
```

When the CPUID instruction is executed on the Pentium Pro processor (model 1), the processor returns a the SEP flag as set, but does not support the SYSENTER/SYSEXIT instructions.

Instruction ordering. Instructions following a SYSENTER may be fetched from memory before earlier instructions complete execution, but they will not execute (even speculatively) until all instructions prior to the SYSENTER have completed execution (the later instructions may execute before data stored by the earlier instructions have become globally visible).

Operation

```
IF CR0.PE = 0 OR IA32_SYSENTER_CS[15:2] = 0 THEN #GP(0); FI;

RFLAGS.VM ← 0;                (* Ensures protected mode execution *)
RFLAGS.IF ← 0;                (* Mask interrupts *)
IF in IA-32e mode
  THEN
    RSP ← IA32_SYSENTER_ESP;
    RIP ← IA32_SYSENTER_EIP;
  ELSE
    ESP ← IA32_SYSENTER_ESP[31:0];
    EIP ← IA32_SYSENTER_EIP[31:0];
  FI;

CS.Selector ← IA32_SYSENTER_CS[15:0] AND FFFCH;
                                     (* Operating system provides CS; RPL forced to 0 *)
(* Set rest of CS to a fixed value *)
CS.Base ← 0;                    (* Flat segment *)
CS.Limit ← FFFFFFFH;           (* With 4-KByte granularity, implies a 4-GByte limit *)
CS.Type ← 11;                  (* Execute/read code, accessed *)
CS.S ← 1;
CS.DPL ← 0;
CS.P ← 1;
IF in IA-32e mode
  THEN
    CS.L ← 1;                   (* Entry is to 64-bit mode *)
    CS.D ← 0;                   (* Required if CS.L = 1 *)
  ELSE
    CS.L ← 0;
    CS.D ← 1;                   (* 32-bit code segment*)
  FI;
CS.G ← 1;                       (* 4-KByte granularity *)
CPL ← 0;

SS.Selector ← CS.Selector + 8;    (* SS just above CS *)
```

(* Set rest of SS to a fixed value *)

SS.Base \leftarrow 0;

SS.Limit \leftarrow FFFFFFFH;

SS.Type \leftarrow 3;

SS.S \leftarrow 1;

SS.DPL \leftarrow 0;

SS.P \leftarrow 1;

SS.B \leftarrow 1;

SS.G \leftarrow 1;

(* Flat segment *)

(* With 4-KByte granularity, implies a 4-GByte limit *)

(* Read/write data, accessed *)

(* 32-bit stack segment*)

(* 4-KByte granularity *)

Flags Affected

VM, IF (see Operation above)

Protected Mode Exceptions

#GP(0) If IA32_SYSENTER_CS[15:2] = 0.

#UD If the LOCK prefix is used.

Real-Address Mode Exceptions

#GP The SYSENTER instruction is not recognized in real-address mode.

#UD If the LOCK prefix is used.

Virtual-8086 Mode Exceptions

Same exceptions as in protected mode.

Compatibility Mode Exceptions

Same exceptions as in protected mode.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

Same exceptions as in protected mode.

SYSEXIT—Fast Return from Fast System Call

Opcode	Instruction	Op/En	64-Bit Mode	Compat/Leg Mode	Description
0F 35	SYSEXIT	Z0	Valid	Valid	Fast return to privilege level 3 user code.
REX.W + 0F 35	SYSEXIT	Z0	Valid	Valid	Fast return to 64-bit mode privilege level 3 user code.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
Z0	NA	NA	NA	NA

Description

Executes a fast return to privilege level 3 user code. SYSEXIT is a companion instruction to the SYSENTER instruction. The instruction is optimized to provide the maximum performance for returns from system procedures executing at protection levels 0 to user procedures executing at protection level 3. It must be executed from code executing at privilege level 0.

With a 64-bit operand size, SYSEXIT remains in 64-bit mode; otherwise, it either enters compatibility mode (if the logical processor is in IA-32e mode) or remains in protected mode (if it is not).

Prior to executing SYSEXIT, software must specify the privilege level 3 code segment and code entry point, and the privilege level 3 stack segment and stack pointer by writing values into the following MSR and general-purpose registers:

- **IA32_SYSENTER_CS** (MSR address 174H) — Contains a 32-bit value that is used to determine the segment selectors for the privilege level 3 code and stack segments (see the Operation section)
- **RDX** — The canonical address in this register is loaded into RIP (thus, this value references the first instruction to be executed in the user code). If the return is not to 64-bit mode, only bits 31:0 are loaded.
- **ECX** — The canonical address in this register is loaded into RSP (thus, this value contains the stack pointer for the privilege level 3 stack). If the return is not to 64-bit mode, only bits 31:0 are loaded.

The IA32_SYSENTER_CS MSR can be read from and written to using RDMSR and WRMSR.

While SYSEXIT loads the CS and SS selectors with values derived from the IA32_SYSENTER_CS MSR, the CS and SS descriptor caches are **not** loaded from the descriptors (in GDT or LDT) referenced by those selectors. Instead, the descriptor caches are loaded with fixed values. See the Operation section for details. It is the responsibility of OS software to ensure that the descriptors (in GDT or LDT) referenced by those selector values correspond to the fixed values loaded into the descriptor caches; the SYSEXIT instruction does not ensure this correspondence.

The SYSEXIT instruction can be invoked from all operating modes except real-address mode and virtual-8086 mode.

The SYSENTER and SYSEXIT instructions were introduced into the IA-32 architecture in the Pentium II processor. The availability of these instructions on a processor is indicated with the SYSENTER/SYSEXIT present (SEP) feature flag returned to the EDX register by the CPUID instruction. An operating system that qualifies the SEP flag must also qualify the processor family and model to ensure that the SYSENTER/SYSEXIT instructions are actually present. For example:

```
IF CPUID SEP bit is set
  THEN IF (Family = 6) and (Model < 3) and (Stepping < 3)
    THEN
      SYSENTER/SYSEXIT_Not_Supported; FI;
    ELSE
      SYSENTER/SYSEXIT_Supported; FI;
  FI;
```

When the CPUID instruction is executed on the Pentium Pro processor (model 1), the processor returns a the SEP flag as set, but does not support the SYSENTER/SYSEXIT instructions.

Instruction ordering. Instructions following a SYSEXIT may be fetched from memory before earlier instructions complete execution, but they will not execute (even speculatively) until all instructions prior to the SYSEXIT have completed execution (the later instructions may execute before data stored by the earlier instructions have become globally visible).

Operation

IF IA32_SYSENTER_CS[15:2] = 0 OR CRO.PE = 0 OR CPL ≠ 0 THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF operand size is 64-bit

THEN (* Return to 64-bit mode *)

RSP ← RCX;

RIP ← RDX;

ELSE (* Return to protected mode or compatibility mode *)

RSP ← ECX;

RIP ← EDX;

FI;

IF operand size is 64-bit (* Operating system provides CS; RPL forced to 3 *)

THEN CS.Selector ← IA32_SYSENTER_CS[15:0] + 32;

ELSE CS.Selector ← IA32_SYSENTER_CS[15:0] + 16;

FI;

CS.Selector ← CS.Selector OR 3; (* RPL forced to 3 *)

(* Set rest of CS to a fixed value *)

CS.Base ← 0; (* Flat segment *)

CS.Limit ← FFFFFFFH; (* With 4-KByte granularity, implies a 4-GByte limit *)

CS.Type ← 11; (* Execute/read code, accessed *)

CS.S ← 1;

CS.DPL ← 3;

CS.P ← 1;

IF operand size is 64-bit

THEN (* return to 64-bit mode *)

CS.L ← 1; (* 64-bit code segment *)

CS.D ← 0; (* Required if CS.L = 1 *)

ELSE (* return to protected mode or compatibility mode *)

CS.L ← 0;

CS.D ← 1; (* 32-bit code segment*)

FI;

CS.G ← 1; (* 4-KByte granularity *)

CPL ← 3;

SS.Selector ← CS.Selector + 8; (* SS just above CS *)

(* Set rest of SS to a fixed value *)

SS.Base ← 0; (* Flat segment *)

SS.Limit ← FFFFFFFH; (* With 4-KByte granularity, implies a 4-GByte limit *)

SS.Type ← 3; (* Read/write data, accessed *)

SS.S ← 1;

SS.DPL ← 3;

SS.P ← 1;

SS.B ← 1; (* 32-bit stack segment*)

SS.G ← 1; (* 4-KByte granularity *)

Flags Affected

None.

Protected Mode Exceptions

- #GP(0) If IA32_SYSENTER_CS[15:2] = 0.
If CPL ≠ 0.
- #UD If the LOCK prefix is used.

Real-Address Mode Exceptions

- #GP The SYSEXIT instruction is not recognized in real-address mode.
- #UD If the LOCK prefix is used.

Virtual-8086 Mode Exceptions

- #GP(0) The SYSEXIT instruction is not recognized in virtual-8086 mode.

Compatibility Mode Exceptions

Same exceptions as in protected mode.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

- #GP(0) If IA32_SYSENTER_CS = 0.
If CPL ≠ 0.
If RCX or RDX contains a non-canonical address.
- #UD If the LOCK prefix is used.

SYSRET—Return From Fast System Call

Opcode	Instruction	Op/En	64-Bit Mode	Compat/Leg Mode	Description
0F 07	SYSRET	Z0	Valid	Invalid	Return to compatibility mode from fast system call
REX.W + 0F 07	SYSRET	Z0	Valid	Invalid	Return to 64-bit mode from fast system call

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
Z0	NA	NA	NA	NA

Description

SYSRET is a companion instruction to the SYSCALL instruction. It returns from an OS system-call handler to user code at privilege level 3. It does so by loading RIP from RCX and loading RFLAGS from R11.¹ With a 64-bit operand size, SYSRET remains in 64-bit mode; otherwise, it enters compatibility mode and only the low 32 bits of the registers are loaded.

SYSRET loads the CS and SS selectors with values derived from bits 63:48 of the IA32_STAR MSR. However, the CS and SS descriptor caches are **not** loaded from the descriptors (in GDT or LDT) referenced by those selectors. Instead, the descriptor caches are loaded with fixed values. See the Operation section for details. It is the responsibility of OS software to ensure that the descriptors (in GDT or LDT) referenced by those selector values correspond to the fixed values loaded into the descriptor caches; the SYSRET instruction does not ensure this correspondence.

The SYSRET instruction does not modify the stack pointer (ESP or RSP). For that reason, it is necessary for software to switch to the user stack. The OS may load the user stack pointer (if it was saved after SYSCALL) before executing SYSRET; alternatively, user code may load the stack pointer (if it was saved before SYSCALL) after receiving control from SYSRET.

If the OS loads the stack pointer before executing SYSRET, it must ensure that the handler of any interrupt or exception delivered between restoring the stack pointer and successful execution of SYSRET is not invoked with the user stack. It can do so using approaches such as the following:

- External interrupts. The OS can prevent an external interrupt from being delivered by clearing EFLAGS.IF before loading the user stack pointer.
- Nonmaskable interrupts (NMIs). The OS can ensure that the NMI handler is invoked with the correct stack by using the interrupt stack table (IST) mechanism for gate 2 (NMI) in the IDT (see Section 6.14.5, “Interrupt Stack Table,” in *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*).
- General-protection exceptions (#GP). The SYSRET instruction generates #GP(0) if the value of RCX is not canonical. The OS can address this possibility using one or more of the following approaches:
 - Confirming that the value of RCX is canonical before executing SYSRET.
 - Using paging to ensure that the SYSCALL instruction will never save a non-canonical value into RCX.
 - Using the IST mechanism for gate 13 (#GP) in the IDT.

Instruction ordering. Instructions following a SYSRET may be fetched from memory before earlier instructions complete execution, but they will not execute (even speculatively) until all instructions prior to the SYSRET have completed execution (the later instructions may execute before data stored by the earlier instructions have become globally visible).

1. Regardless of the value of R11, the RF and VM flags are always 0 in RFLAGS after execution of SYSRET. In addition, all reserved bits in RFLAGS retain the fixed values.

Operation

IF (CS.L \neq 1) or (IA32_EFER.LMA \neq 1) or (IA32_EFER.SCE \neq 1)
 (* Not in 64-Bit Mode or SYSCALL/SYSRET not enabled in IA32_EFER *)
 THEN #UD; FI;
 IF (CPL \neq 0) THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (operand size is 64-bit)
 THEN (* Return to 64-Bit Mode *)
 IF (RCX is not canonical) THEN #GP(0);
 RIP \leftarrow RCX;
 ELSE (* Return to Compatibility Mode *)
 RIP \leftarrow ECX;

FI;
 RFLAGS \leftarrow (R11 & 3C7FD7H) | 2; (* Clear RF, VM, reserved bits; set bit 1 *)

IF (operand size is 64-bit)
 THEN CS.Selector \leftarrow IA32_STAR[63:48]+16;
 ELSE CS.Selector \leftarrow IA32_STAR[63:48];

FI;
 CS.Selector \leftarrow CS.Selector OR 3; (* RPL forced to 3 *)
 (* Set rest of CS to a fixed value *)
 CS.Base \leftarrow 0; (* Flat segment *)
 CS.Limit \leftarrow FFFFFFFH; (* With 4-KByte granularity, implies a 4-GByte limit *)
 CS.Type \leftarrow 11; (* Execute/read code, accessed *)
 CS.S \leftarrow 1;
 CS.DPL \leftarrow 3;
 CS.P \leftarrow 1;

IF (operand size is 64-bit)
 THEN (* Return to 64-Bit Mode *)
 CS.L \leftarrow 1; (* 64-bit code segment *)
 CS.D \leftarrow 0; (* Required if CS.L = 1 *)
 ELSE (* Return to Compatibility Mode *)
 CS.L \leftarrow 0; (* Compatibility mode *)
 CS.D \leftarrow 1; (* 32-bit code segment *)

FI;
 CS.G \leftarrow 1; (* 4-KByte granularity *)
 CPL \leftarrow 3;

SS.Selector \leftarrow (IA32_STAR[63:48]+8) OR 3; (* RPL forced to 3 *)
 (* Set rest of SS to a fixed value *)
 SS.Base \leftarrow 0; (* Flat segment *)
 SS.Limit \leftarrow FFFFFFFH; (* With 4-KByte granularity, implies a 4-GByte limit *)
 SS.Type \leftarrow 3; (* Read/write data, accessed *)
 SS.S \leftarrow 1;
 SS.DPL \leftarrow 3;
 SS.P \leftarrow 1;
 SS.B \leftarrow 1; (* 32-bit stack segment *)
 SS.G \leftarrow 1; (* 4-KByte granularity *)

Flags Affected

All.

Protected Mode Exceptions

#UD The SYSRET instruction is not recognized in protected mode.

Real-Address Mode Exceptions

#UD The SYSRET instruction is not recognized in real-address mode.

Virtual-8086 Mode Exceptions

#UD The SYSRET instruction is not recognized in virtual-8086 mode.

Compatibility Mode Exceptions

#UD The SYSRET instruction is not recognized in compatibility mode.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#UD If IA32_EFER.SCE = 0.
If the LOCK prefix is used.

#GP(0) If CPL ≠ 0.
If the return is to 64-bit mode and RCX contains a non-canonical address.

UNPCKHPD—Unpack and Interleave High Packed Double-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 15 /r UNPCKHPD xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE2	Unpacks and Interleaves double-precision floating-point values from high quadwords of xmm1 and xmm2/m128.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 15 /r VUNPCKHPD xmm1,xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Unpacks and Interleaves double-precision floating-point values from high quadwords of xmm2 and xmm3/m128.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG 15 /r VUNPCKHPD ymm1,ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX	Unpacks and Interleaves double-precision floating-point values from high quadwords of ymm2 and ymm3/m256.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 15 /r VUNPCKHPD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Unpacks and Interleaves double precision floating-point values from high quadwords of xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W1 15 /r VUNPCKHPD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Unpacks and Interleaves double precision floating-point values from high quadwords of ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W1 15 /r VUNPCKHPD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512F	Unpacks and Interleaves double-precision floating-point values from high quadwords of zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst subject to writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs an interleaved unpack of the high double-precision floating-point values from the first source operand and the second source operand. See Figure 4-15 in the Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 2B.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source can be an XMM register or an 128-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are unmodified. When unpacking from a memory operand, an implementation may fetch only the appropriate 64 bits; however, alignment to 16-byte boundary and normal segment checking will still be enforced.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is a XMM register. The second source operand can be a XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is a XMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand can be a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register.

EVEX.512 encoded version: The first source operand is a ZMM register. The second source operand is a ZMM register, a 512-bit memory location, or a 512-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM register, conditionally updated using writemask k1.

EVEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand is a YMM register, a 256-bit memory location, or a 256-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register, conditionally updated using writemask k1.

EVEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is a XMM register. The second source operand is a XMM register, a 128-bit memory location, or a 128-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand is a XMM register, conditionally updated using writemask k1.

UNPCKHPS—Unpack and Interleave High Packed Single-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF 15 /r UNPCKHPS xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE	Unpacks and Interleaves single-precision floating-point values from high quadwords of xmm1 and xmm2/m128.
VEX.128.OF.WIG 15 /r VUNPCKHPS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Unpacks and Interleaves single-precision floating-point values from high quadwords of xmm2 and xmm3/m128.
VEX.256.OF.WIG 15 /r VUNPCKHPS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX	Unpacks and Interleaves single-precision floating-point values from high quadwords of ymm2 and ymm3/m256.
EVEX.128.OF.W0 15 /r VUNPCKHPS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Unpacks and Interleaves single-precision floating-point values from high quadwords of xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst and write result to xmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.OF.W0 15 /r VUNPCKHPS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Unpacks and Interleaves single-precision floating-point values from high quadwords of ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst and write result to ymm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.OF.W0 15 /r VUNPCKHPS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512F	Unpacks and Interleaves single-precision floating-point values from high quadwords of zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst and write result to zmm1 subject to writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs an interleaved unpack of the high single-precision floating-point values from the first source operand and the second source operand.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source can be an XMM register or an 128-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are unmodified. When unpacking from a memory operand, an implementation may fetch only the appropriate 64 bits; however, alignment to 16-byte boundary and normal segment checking will still be enforced.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is a XMM register. The second source operand can be a XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is a XMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

VEX.256 encoded version: The second source operand is an YMM register or an 256-bit memory location. The first source operand and destination operands are YMM registers.

UNPCKLPD—Unpack and Interleave Low Packed Double-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 14 /r UNPCKLPD xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE2	Unpacks and interleaves double-precision floating-point values from low quadwords of xmm1 and xmm2/m128.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 14 /r VUNPCKLPD xmm1,xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Unpacks and interleaves double-precision floating-point values from low quadwords of xmm2 and xmm3/m128.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG 14 /r VUNPCKLPD ymm1,ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX	Unpacks and interleaves double-precision floating-point values from low quadwords of ymm2 and ymm3/m256.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 14 /r VUNPCKLPD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Unpacks and interleaves double precision floating-point values from low quadwords of xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst subject to write mask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W1 14 /r VUNPCKLPD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Unpacks and interleaves double precision floating-point values from low quadwords of ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst subject to write mask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W1 14 /r VUNPCKLPD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512F	Unpacks and interleaves double-precision floating-point values from low quadwords of zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst subject to write mask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs an interleaved unpack of the low double-precision floating-point values from the first source operand and the second source operand.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source can be an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper bits (MAXVL-1: 128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are unmodified. When unpacking from a memory operand, an implementation may fetch only the appropriate 64 bits; however, alignment to 16-byte boundary and normal segment checking will still be enforced.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is a XMM register. The second source operand can be a XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is a XMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1: 128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand can be a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register.

EVEX.512 encoded version: The first source operand is a ZMM register. The second source operand is a ZMM register, a 512-bit memory location, or a 512-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM register, conditionally updated using writemask k1.

EVEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand is a YMM register, a 256-bit memory location, or a 256-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register, conditionally updated using writemask k1.

EVEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is an XMM register. The second source operand is a XMM register, a 128-bit memory location, or a 128-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand is a XMM register, conditionally updated using writemask k1.

UNPCKLPS—Unpack and Interleave Low Packed Single-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF 14 /r UNPCKLPS xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE	Unpacks and interleaves single-precision floating-point values from low quadwords of xmm1 and xmm2/m128.
VEX.128.OF.WIG 14 /r VUNPCKLPS xmm1,xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Unpacks and interleaves single-precision floating-point values from low quadwords of xmm2 and xmm3/m128.
VEX.256.OF.WIG 14 /r VUNPCKLPS ymm1,ymm2,ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX	Unpacks and interleaves single-precision floating-point values from low quadwords of ymm2 and ymm3/m256.
EVEX.128.OF.W0 14 /r VUNPCKLPS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Unpacks and interleaves single-precision floating-point values from low quadwords of xmm2 and xmm3/mem and write result to xmm1 subject to write mask k1.
EVEX.256.OF.W0 14 /r VUNPCKLPS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Unpacks and interleaves single-precision floating-point values from low quadwords of ymm2 and ymm3/mem and write result to ymm1 subject to write mask k1.
EVEX.512.OF.W0 14 /r VUNPCKLPS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512F	Unpacks and interleaves single-precision floating-point values from low quadwords of zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst and write result to zmm1 subject to write mask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs an interleaved unpack of the low single-precision floating-point values from the first source operand and the second source operand.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source can be an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are unmodified. When unpacking from a memory operand, an implementation may fetch only the appropriate 64 bits; however, alignment to 16-byte boundary and normal segment checking will still be enforced.

VEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is a XMM register. The second source operand can be a XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is a XMM register. The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand can be a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register.

6. Updates to Chapter 5, Volume 2C

Change bars show changes to Appendix A of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 2C: Instruction Set Reference, V-Z*.

Changes to this chapter: Addition of "NFx" designator to opcode tables of affected instructions. Removal of NDS/NDD/DDS terms from affected instructions. Where either of these changes are made to specific instructions, only the first page of the instructions are included here if no other areas of the instructions were updated. Minor typo corrections and additions.

Instructions with changes: VALIGND/VALIGNQ, VBLENDMPD/VBLENDMPS, VCVTUSI2SD, VCVTUSI2SS, VDBPSADBW, VFIXUPIMMPD, VFIXUPIMMPS, VFIXUPIMMSD, VFIXUPIMMSS, VFMADD132PD/VFMADD213PD/VFMADD231PD, VFMADD132PS/VFMADD213PS/VFMADD231PS, VFMADD132SD/VFMADD213SD/VFMADD231SD, VFMADD132SS/VFMADD213SS/VFMADD231SS, VFMADDSUB132PD/VFMADDSUB213PD/VFMADDSUB231PD, VFMADDSUB132PS/VFMADDSUB213PS/VFMADDSUB231PS, VFMSUB132PD/VFMSUB213PD/VFMSUB231PD, VFMSUB132PS/VFMSUB213PS/VFMSUB231PS, VFMSUB132SD/VFMSUB213SD/VFMSUB231SD, VFMSUB132SS/VFMSUB213SS/VFMSUB231SS, VFMSUBADD132PD/VFMSUBADD213PD/VFMSUBADD231PD, VFMSUBADD132PS/VFMSUBADD213PS/VFMSUBADD231PS, VFNMADD132PD/VFNMADD213PD/VFNMADD231PD, VFNMADD132PS/VFNMADD213PS/VFNMADD231PS, VFNMADD132SD/VFNMADD213SD/VFNMADD231SD, VFNMADD132SS/VFNMADD213SS/VFNMADD231SS, VFNMSUB132PD/VFNMSUB213PD/VFNMSUB231PD, VFNMSUB132PS/VFNMSUB213PS/VFNMSUB231PS, VFNMSUB132SD/VFNMSUB213SD/VFNMSUB231SD, VFNMSUB132SS/VFNMSUB213SS/VFNMSUB231SS, VGATHERDPD/VGATHERQPD, VGATHERDPS/VGATHERQPS, VGATHERQPS/VGATHERQPD, VGETEXPSD, VGETEXPSS, VGETMANTSD, VGETMANTSS, VINSERTF128/VINSERTF32x4/VINSERTF64x2/VINSERTF32x8/VINSERTF64x4, VINSERTI128/VINSERTI32x4/VINSERTI64x2/VINSERTI32x8/VINSERTI64x4, VMASKMOV, VPBLEND, VPBLENDMB/VPBLENDMW, VPBLENDMD/VPBLENDMQ, VPCMPB/VPCMPUB, VPCMPD/VPCMPUD, VPCMPQ/VPCMPUQ, VPCMPW/VPCMPUW, VPERM2F128, VPERM2I128, VPERMB, VPERMD/VPERMW, VPERMI2B, VPERMI2W/D/Q/PS/PD, VPERMILPD, VPERMILPS, VPERMPD, VPERMPS, VPERMQ, VPERMT2B, VPERMT2W/D/Q/PS/PD, VPGATHERDD/VPGATHERDQ, VPGATHERDD/VPGATHERQD, VPGATHERDQ/VPGATHERQQ, VPMADD52HUQ, VPMADD52LUQ, VPMASKMOV, VPMULTISHIFTQB, VPROLD/VPROLVD/VPROLQ/VPROLVQ, VPRORD/VPRORVD/VPRORQ/VPRORVQ, VPSCATTERDD/VPSCATTERDQ/VPSCATTERQD/VPSCATTERQQ, VSCATTERDPS/VSCATTERDPD/VSCATTERQPS/VSCATTERQPD, VPSLLVW/VPSLLVD/VPSLLVQ, VPSRAVW/VPSRAVD/VPSRAVQ, VPSRLVW/VPSRLVD/VPSRLVQ, VPTERNLOGD/VPTERNLOGQ, VPTESTMB/VPTESTMW/VPTESTMD/VPTESTMQ, VPTESTNMB/W/D/Q, VRANGEPD, VRANGEPS, VRANGESD, VRANGESS, VRCP14PS, VRCP14SD, VRCP14SS, VREDUCESD, VREDUCESS, VRNDSCALES, VRNDSCALESS, VRSQRT14SD, VRSQRT14SS, VSCALEFPD, VSCALEFPS, VSCALEFSD, VSCALEFSS, VSHUFF32x4/VSHUFF64x2/VSHUFI32x4/VSHUFI64x2, XORPD, XORPS.

VALIGND/VALIGNQ—Align Doubleword/Quadword Vectors

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F3A.W0 03 /r ib VALIGND xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift right and merge vectors xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst with double-word granularity using imm8 as number of elements to shift, and store the final result in xmm1, under writemask.
EVEX.128.66.0F3A.W1 03 /r ib VALIGNQ xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift right and merge vectors xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst with quad-word granularity using imm8 as number of elements to shift, and store the final result in xmm1, under writemask.
EVEX.256.66.0F3A.W0 03 /r ib VALIGND ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift right and merge vectors ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst with double-word granularity using imm8 as number of elements to shift, and store the final result in ymm1, under writemask.
EVEX.256.66.0F3A.W1 03 /r ib VALIGNQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift right and merge vectors ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst with quad-word granularity using imm8 as number of elements to shift, and store the final result in ymm1, under writemask.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W0 03 /r ib VALIGND zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512F	Shift right and merge vectors zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst with double-word granularity using imm8 as number of elements to shift, and store the final result in zmm1, under writemask.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W1 03 /r ib VALIGNQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512F	Shift right and merge vectors zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst with quad-word granularity using imm8 as number of elements to shift, and store the final result in zmm1, under writemask.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Concatenates and shifts right doubleword/quadword elements of the first source operand (the second operand) and the second source operand (the third operand) into a 1024/512/256-bit intermediate vector. The low 512/256/128-bit of the intermediate vector is written to the destination operand (the first operand) using the writemask k1. The destination and first source operands are ZMM/YMM/XMM registers. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 32/64-bit memory location.

This instruction is writemasked, so only those elements with the corresponding bit set in vector mask register k1 are computed and stored into zmm1. Elements in zmm1 with the corresponding bit clear in k1 retain their previous values (merging-masking) or are set to 0 (zeroing-masking).

VBLENDMPD/VBLENDMPS—Blend Float64/Float32 Vectors Using an OpMask Control

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 65 /r VBLENDMPD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Blend double-precision vector xmm2 and double-precision vector xmm3/m128/m64bcst and store the result in xmm1, under control mask.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 65 /r VBLENDMPD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Blend double-precision vector ymm2 and double-precision vector ymm3/m256/m64bcst and store the result in ymm1, under control mask.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 65 /r VBLENDMPD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	A	V/V	AVX512F	Blend double-precision vector zmm2 and double-precision vector zmm3/m512/m64bcst and store the result in zmm1, under control mask.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 65 /r VBLENDMPS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Blend single-precision vector xmm2 and single-precision vector xmm3/m128/m32bcst and store the result in xmm1, under control mask.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 65 /r VBLENDMPS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Blend single-precision vector ymm2 and single-precision vector ymm3/m256/m32bcst and store the result in ymm1, under control mask.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 65 /r VBLENDMPS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	A	V/V	AVX512F	Blend single-precision vector zmm2 and single-precision vector zmm3/m512/m32bcst using k1 as select control and store the result in zmm1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs an element-by-element blending between float64/float32 elements in the first source operand (the second operand) with the elements in the second source operand (the third operand) using an opmask register as select control. The blended result is written to the destination register.

The destination and first source operands are ZMM/YMM/XMM registers. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location.

The opmask register is not used as a writemask for this instruction. Instead, the mask is used as an element selector: every element of the destination is conditionally selected between first source or second source using the value of the related mask bit (0 for first source operand, 1 for second source operand).

If EVEX.z is set, the elements with corresponding mask bit value of 0 in the destination operand are zeroed.

VCVTUSI2SD—Convert Unsigned Integer to Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.LIG.F2.OF.W0 7B /r VCVTUSI2SD xmm1, xmm2, r/m32	A	V/V	AVX512F	Convert one unsigned doubleword integer from r/m32 to one double-precision floating-point value in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.F2.OF.W1 7B /r VCVTUSI2SD xmm1, xmm2, r/m64{er}	A	V/N.E. ¹	AVX512F	Convert one unsigned quadword integer from r/m64 to one double-precision floating-point value in xmm1.

NOTES:

- For this specific instruction, EVEX.W in non-64 bit is ignored; the instructions behaves as if the W0 version is used.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Converts an unsigned doubleword integer (or unsigned quadword integer if operand size is 64 bits) in the second source operand to a double-precision floating-point value in the destination operand. The result is stored in the low quadword of the destination operand. When conversion is inexact, the value returned is rounded according to the rounding control bits in the MXCSR register.

The second source operand can be a general-purpose register or a 32/64-bit memory location. The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. Bits (127:64) of the XMM register destination are copied from corresponding bits in the first source operand. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination register are zeroed.

EVEX.W1 version: promotes the instruction to use 64-bit input value in 64-bit mode.

EVEX.W0 version: attempt to encode this instruction with EVEX embedded rounding is ignored.

Operation

VCVTUSI2SD (EVEX encoded version)

IF (SRC2 *is register*) AND (EVEX.b = 1)

THEN

SET_RM(EVEX.RC);

ELSE

SET_RM(MXCSR.RM);

FI;

IF 64-Bit Mode And OperandSize = 64

THEN

DEST[63:0] ← Convert_UInteger_To_Double_Precision_Floating_Point(SRC2[63:0]);

ELSE

DEST[63:0] ← Convert_UInteger_To_Double_Precision_Floating_Point(SRC2[31:0]);

FI;

DEST[127:64] ← SRC1[127:64]

DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0

VCVTUSI2SS—Convert Unsigned Integer to Scalar Single-Precision Floating-Point Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.LIG.F3.0F.W0 7B /r VCVTUSI2SS xmm1, xmm2, r/m32{er}	A	V/V	AVX512F	Convert one signed doubleword integer from r/m32 to one single-precision floating-point value in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.F3.0F.W1 7B /r VCVTUSI2SS xmm1, xmm2, r/m64{er}	A	V/N.E. ¹	AVX512F	Convert one signed quadword integer from r/m64 to one single-precision floating-point value in xmm1.

NOTES:

- For this specific instruction, EVEX.W in non-64 bit is ignored; the instructions behaves as if the W0 version is used.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Converts a unsigned doubleword integer (or unsigned quadword integer if operand size is 64 bits) in the source operand (second operand) to a single-precision floating-point value in the destination operand (first operand). The source operand can be a general-purpose register or a memory location. The destination operand is an XMM register. The result is stored in the low doubleword of the destination operand. When a conversion is inexact, the value returned is rounded according to the rounding control bits in the MXCSR register or the embedded rounding control bits.

The second source operand can be a general-purpose register or a 32/64-bit memory location. The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. Bits (127:32) of the XMM register destination are copied from corresponding bits in the first source operand. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination register are zeroed.

EVEX.W1 version: promotes the instruction to use 64-bit input value in 64-bit mode.

Operation

VCVTUSI2SS (EVEX encoded version)

IF (SRC2 *is register*) AND (EVEX.b = 1)

THEN

SET_RM(EVEX.RC);

ELSE

SET_RM(MXCSR.RM);

FI;

IF 64-Bit Mode And OperandSize = 64

THEN

DEST[31:0] ← Convert_UInteger_To_Single_Precision_Floating_Point(SRC[63:0]);

ELSE

DEST[31:0] ← Convert_UInteger_To_Single_Precision_Floating_Point(SRC[31:0]);

FI;

DEST[127:32] ← SRC1[127:32]

DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

VCVTUSI2SS __m128 __mm_cvts32_ss(__m128 s, unsigned a);

VCVTUSI2SS __m128 __mm_cvt_roundu32_ss(__m128 s, unsigned a, int r);

VCVTUSI2SS __m128 __mm_cvts64_ss(__m128 s, unsigned __int64 a);

VCVTUSI2SS __m128 __mm_cvt_roundu64_ss(__m128 s, unsigned __int64 a, int r);

VDBPSADBW—Double Block Packed Sum-Absolute-Differences (SAD) on Unsigned Bytes

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F3A.W0 42 /r ib VDBPSADBW xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compute packed SAD word results of unsigned bytes in dword block from xmm2 with unsigned bytes of dword blocks transformed from xmm3/m128 using the shuffle controls in imm8. Results are written to xmm1 under the writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F3A.W0 42 /r ib VDBPSADBW ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compute packed SAD word results of unsigned bytes in dword block from ymm2 with unsigned bytes of dword blocks transformed from ymm3/m256 using the shuffle controls in imm8. Results are written to ymm1 under the writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W0 42 /r ib VDBPSADBW zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512BW	Compute packed SAD word results of unsigned bytes in dword block from zmm2 with unsigned bytes of dword blocks transformed from zmm3/m512 using the shuffle controls in imm8. Results are written to zmm1 under the writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8

Description

Compute packed SAD (sum of absolute differences) word results of unsigned bytes from two 32-bit dword elements. Packed SAD word results are calculated in multiples of qword superblocks, producing 4 SAD word results in each 64-bit superblock of the destination register.

Within each super block of packed word results, the SAD results from two 32-bit dword elements are calculated as follows:

- The lower two word results are calculated each from the SAD operation between a sliding dword element within a qword superblock from an intermediate vector with a stationary dword element in the corresponding qword superblock of the first source operand. The intermediate vector, see “Tmp1” in Figure 5-8, is constructed from the second source operand the imm8 byte as shuffle control to select dword elements within a 128-bit lane of the second source operand. The two sliding dword elements in a qword superblock of Tmp1 are located at byte offset 0 and 1 within the superblock, respectively. The stationary dword element in the qword superblock from the first source operand is located at byte offset 0.
- The next two word results are calculated each from the SAD operation between a sliding dword element within a qword superblock from the intermediate vector Tmp1 with a second stationary dword element in the corresponding qword superblock of the first source operand. The two sliding dword elements in a qword superblock of Tmp1 are located at byte offset 2 and 3 within the superblock, respectively. The stationary dword element in the qword superblock from the first source operand is located at byte offset 4.
- The intermediate vector is constructed in 128-bit lanes. Within each 128-bit lane, each dword element of the intermediate vector is selected by a two-bit field within the imm8 byte on the corresponding 128-bits of the second source operand. The imm8 byte serves as dword shuffle control within each 128-bit lanes of the intermediate vector and the second source operand, similarly to PSHUFD.

The first source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, or a 512/256/128-bit memory location. The destination operand is conditionally updated based on writemask k1 at 16-bit word granularity.

VFIXUPIMMPD—Fix Up Special Packed Float64 Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F3A.W1 54 /r ib VFIXUPIMMPD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Fix up special numbers in float64 vector xmm1, float64 vector xmm2 and int64 vector xmm3/m128/m64bcst and store the result in xmm1, under writemask.
EVEX.256.66.0F3A.W1 54 /r ib VFIXUPIMMPD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Fix up special numbers in float64 vector ymm1, float64 vector ymm2 and int64 vector ymm3/m256/m64bcst and store the result in ymm1, under writemask.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W1 54 /r ib VFIXUPIMMPD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst{sae}, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512F	Fix up elements of float64 vector in zmm2 using int64 vector table in zmm3/m512/m64bcst, combine with preserved elements from zmm1, and store the result in zmm1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Full	ModRM:reg (r, w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8

Description

Perform fix-up of quad-word elements encoded in double-precision floating-point format in the first source operand (the second operand) using a 32-bit, two-level look-up table specified in the corresponding quadword element of the second source operand (the third operand) with exception reporting specifier imm8. The elements that are fixed-up are selected by mask bits of 1 specified in the opmask k1. Mask bits of 0 in the opmask k1 or table response action of 0000b preserves the corresponding element of the first operand. The fixed-up elements from the first source operand and the preserved element in the first operand are combined as the final results in the destination operand (the first operand).

The destination and the first source operands are ZMM/YMM/XMM registers. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location.

The two-level look-up table perform a fix-up of each DP FP input data in the first source operand by decoding the input data encoding into 8 token types. A response table is defined for each token type that converts the input encoding in the first source operand with one of 16 response actions.

This instruction is specifically intended for use in fixing up the results of arithmetic calculations involving one source so that they match the spec, although it is generally useful for fixing up the results of multiple-instruction sequences to reflect special-number inputs. For example, consider `rcp(0)`. Input 0 to `rcp`, and you should get INF according to the DX10 spec. However, evaluating `rcp` via Newton-Raphson, where $x = \text{approx}(1/0)$, yields an incorrect result. To deal with this, VFIXUPIMMPD can be used after the N-R reciprocal sequence to set the result to the correct value (i.e. INF when the input is 0).

If MXCSR.DAZ is not set, denormal input elements in the first source operand are considered as normal inputs and do not trigger any fixup nor fault reporting.

Imm8 is used to set the required flags reporting. It supports #ZE and #IE fault reporting (see details below).

MXCSR mask bits are ignored and are treated as if all mask bits are set to masked response). If any of the imm8 bits is set and the condition met for fault reporting, MXCSR.IE or MXCSR.ZE might be updated.

This instruction is writemasked, so only those elements with the corresponding bit set in vector mask register k1 are computed and stored into zmm1. Elements in the destination with the corresponding bit clear in k1 retain their previous values or are set to 0.

VFIXUPIMMPS—Fix Up Special Packed Float32 Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F3A.W0 54 /r VFIXUPIMMPS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Fix up special numbers in float32 vector xmm1, float32 vector xmm2 and int32 vector xmm3/m128/m32bcst and store the result in xmm1, under writemask.
EVEX.256.66.0F3A.W0 54 /r VFIXUPIMMPS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Fix up special numbers in float32 vector ymm1, float32 vector ymm2 and int32 vector ymm3/m256/m32bcst and store the result in ymm1, under writemask.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W0 54 /r ib VFIXUPIMMPS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst{sae}, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512F	Fix up elements of float32 vector in zmm2 using int32 vector table in zmm3/m512/m32bcst, combine with preserved elements from zmm1, and store the result in zmm1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Full	ModRM:reg (r, w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8

Description

Perform fix-up of doubleword elements encoded in single-precision floating-point format in the first source operand (the second operand) using a 32-bit, two-level look-up table specified in the corresponding doubleword element of the second source operand (the third operand) with exception reporting specifier imm8. The elements that are fixed-up are selected by mask bits of 1 specified in the opmask k1. Mask bits of 0 in the opmask k1 or table response action of 0000b preserves the corresponding element of the first operand. The fixed-up elements from the first source operand and the preserved element in the first operand are combined as the final results in the destination operand (the first operand).

The destination and the first source operands are ZMM/YMM/XMM registers. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location.

The two-level look-up table perform a fix-up of each SP FP input data in the first source operand by decoding the input data encoding into 8 token types. A response table is defined for each token type that converts the input encoding in the first source operand with one of 16 response actions.

This instruction is specifically intended for use in fixing up the results of arithmetic calculations involving one source so that they match the spec, although it is generally useful for fixing up the results of multiple-instruction sequences to reflect special-number inputs. For example, consider `rcp(0)`. Input 0 to `rcp`, and you should get INF according to the DX10 spec. However, evaluating `rcp` via Newton-Raphson, where $x = \text{approx}(1/0)$, yields an incorrect result. To deal with this, VFIXUPIMMPS can be used after the N-R reciprocal sequence to set the result to the correct value (i.e. INF when the input is 0).

If MXCSR.DAZ is not set, denormal input elements in the first source operand are considered as normal inputs and do not trigger any fixup nor fault reporting.

Imm8 is used to set the required flags reporting. It supports #ZE and #IE fault reporting (see details below).

MXCSR.DAZ is used and refer to zmm2 only (i.e. zmm1 is not considered as zero in case MXCSR.DAZ is set).

MXCSR mask bits are ignored and are treated as if all mask bits are set to masked response). If any of the imm8 bits is set and the condition met for fault reporting, MXCSR.IE or MXCSR.ZE might be updated.

VFIXUPIMMSD—Fix Up Special Scalar Float64 Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.LIG.66.OF3A.W1 55 /r ib VFIXUPIMMSD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64{sae}, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512F	Fix up a float64 number in the low quadword element of xmm2 using scalar int32 table in xmm3/m64 and store the result in xmm1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (r, w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8

Description

Perform a fix-up of the low quadword element encoded in double-precision floating-point format in the first source operand (the second operand) using a 32-bit, two-level look-up table specified in the low quadword element of the second source operand (the third operand) with exception reporting specifier imm8. The element that is fixed-up is selected by mask bit of 1 specified in the opmask k1. Mask bit of 0 in the opmask k1 or table response action of 0000b preserves the corresponding element of the first operand. The fixed-up element from the first source operand or the preserved element in the first operand becomes the low quadword element of the destination operand (the first operand). Bits 127:64 of the destination operand is copied from the corresponding bits of the first source operand. The destination and first source operands are XMM registers. The second source operand can be a XMM register or a 64-bit memory location.

The two-level look-up table perform a fix-up of each DP FP input data in the first source operand by decoding the input data encoding into 8 token types. A response table is defined for each token type that converts the input encoding in the first source operand with one of 16 response actions.

This instruction is specifically intended for use in fixing up the results of arithmetic calculations involving one source so that they match the spec, although it is generally useful for fixing up the results of multiple-instruction sequences to reflect special-number inputs. For example, consider `rcp(0)`. Input 0 to `rcp`, and you should get INF according to the DX10 spec. However, evaluating `rcp` via Newton-Raphson, where $x = \text{approx}(1/0)$, yields an incorrect result. To deal with this, VFIXUPIMMSD can be used after the N-R reciprocal sequence to set the result to the correct value (i.e. INF when the input is 0).

If MXCSR.DAZ is not set, denormal input elements in the first source operand are considered as normal inputs and do not trigger any fixup nor fault reporting.

Imm8 is used to set the required flags reporting. It supports #ZE and #IE fault reporting (see details below).

MXCSR.DAZ is used and refer to zmm2 only (i.e. zmm1 is not considered as zero in case MXCSR.DAZ is set).

MXCSR mask bits are ignored and are treated as if all mask bits are set to masked response). If any of the imm8 bits is set and the condition met for fault reporting, MXCSR.IE or MXCSR.ZE might be updated.

Operation

```
enum TOKEN_TYPE
{
    QNAN_TOKEN ← 0,
    SNAN_TOKEN ← 1,
    ZERO_VALUE_TOKEN ← 2,
    POS_ONE_VALUE_TOKEN ← 3,
    NEG_INF_TOKEN ← 4,
    POS_INF_TOKEN ← 5,
    NEG_VALUE_TOKEN ← 6,
    POS_VALUE_TOKEN ← 7
}
```

VFIXUPIMMSS—Fix Up Special Scalar Float32 Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.LIG.66.0F3A.W0 55 /r ib VFIXUPIMMSS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m32{sae}, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512F	Fix up a float32 number in the low doubleword element in xmm2 using scalar int32 table in xmm3/m32 and store the result in xmm1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (r, w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8

Description

Perform a fix-up of the low doubleword element encoded in single-precision floating-point format in the first source operand (the second operand) using a 32-bit, two-level look-up table specified in the low doubleword element of the second source operand (the third operand) with exception reporting specifier imm8. The element that is fixed-up is selected by mask bit of 1 specified in the opmask k1. Mask bit of 0 in the opmask k1 or table response action of 0000b preserves the corresponding element of the first operand. The fixed-up element from the first source operand or the preserved element in the first operand becomes the low doubleword element of the destination operand (the first operand) Bits 127: 32 of the destination operand is copied from the corresponding bits of the first source operand. The destination and first source operands are XMM registers. The second source operand can be a XMM register or a 32-bit memory location.

The two-level look-up table perform a fix-up of each SP FP input data in the first source operand by decoding the input data encoding into 8 token types. A response table is defined for each token type that converts the input encoding in the first source operand with one of 16 response actions.

This instruction is specifically intended for use in fixing up the results of arithmetic calculations involving one source so that they match the spec, although it is generally useful for fixing up the results of multiple-instruction sequences to reflect special-number inputs. For example, consider `rcp(0)`. Input 0 to `rcp`, and you should get INF according to the DX10 spec. However, evaluating `rcp` via Newton-Raphson, where $x = \text{approx}(1/0)$, yields an incorrect result. To deal with this, `VFIXUPIMMSS` can be used after the N-R reciprocal sequence to set the result to the correct value (i.e. INF when the input is 0).

If `MXCSR.DAZ` is not set, denormal input elements in the first source operand are considered as normal inputs and do not trigger any fixup nor fault reporting.

Imm8 is used to set the required flags reporting. It supports `#ZE` and `#IE` fault reporting (see details below).

`MXCSR.DAZ` is used and refer to `zmm2` only (i.e. `zmm1` is not considered as zero in case `MXCSR.DAZ` is set).

`MXCSR` mask bits are ignored and are treated as if all mask bits are set to masked response). If any of the imm8 bits is set and the condition met for fault reporting, `MXCSR.IE` or `MXCSR.ZE` might be updated.

Operation

```
enum TOKEN_TYPE
{
    QNAN_TOKEN ← 0,
    SNAN_TOKEN ← 1,
    ZERO_VALUE_TOKEN ← 2,
    POS_ONE_VALUE_TOKEN ← 3,
    NEG_INF_TOKEN ← 4,
    POS_INF_TOKEN ← 5,
    NEG_VALUE_TOKEN ← 6,
    POS_VALUE_TOKEN ← 7
}
```

VFMADD132PD/VFMADD213PD/VFMADD231PD—Fused Multiply-Add of Packed Double-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.128.66.0F38.W1 98 /r VFMADD132PD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm3/mem, add to xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.W1 A8 /r VFMADD213PD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm2, add to xmm3/mem and put result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.W1 B8 /r VFMADD231PD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm2 and xmm3/mem, add to xmm1 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W1 98 /r VFMADD132PD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm3/mem, add to ymm2 and put result in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W1 A8 /r VFMADD213PD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm2, add to ymm3/mem and put result in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W1 B8 /r VFMADD231PD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm2 and ymm3/mem, add to ymm1 and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 98 /r VFMADD132PD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst, add to xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 A8 /r VFMADD213PD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm2, add to xmm3/m128/m64bcst and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 B8 /r VFMADD231PD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst, add to xmm1 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 98 /r VFMADD132PD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst, add to ymm2 and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 A8 /r VFMADD213PD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm2, add to ymm3/m256/m64bcst and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 B8 /r VFMADD231PD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst, add to ymm1 and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 98 /r VFMADD132PD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from zmm1 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst, add to zmm2 and put result in zmm1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 A8 /r VFMADD213PD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from zmm1 and zmm2, add to zmm3/m512/m64bcst and put result in zmm1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 B8 /r VFMADD231PD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst, add to zmm1 and put result in zmm1.

VFMADD132PS/VFMADD213PS/VFMADD231PS—Fused Multiply-Add of Packed Single-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 98 /r VFMADD132PS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm3/mem, add to xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 A8 /r VFMADD213PS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm2, add to xmm3/mem and put result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 B8 /r VFMADD231PS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm2 and xmm3/mem, add to xmm1 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 98 /r VFMADD132PS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm3/mem, add to ymm2 and put result in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 A8 /r VFMADD213PS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm2, add to ymm3/mem and put result in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.0 B8 /r VFMADD231PS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm2 and ymm3/mem, add to ymm1 and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 98 /r VFMADD132PS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst, add to xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 A8 /r VFMADD213PS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm2, add to xmm3/m128/m32bcst and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 B8 /r VFMADD231PS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst, add to xmm1 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 98 /r VFMADD132PS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst, add to ymm2 and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 A8 /r VFMADD213PS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm2, add to ymm3/m256/m32bcst and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 B8 /r VFMADD231PS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst, add to ymm1 and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 98 /r VFMADD132PS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from zmm1 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst, add to zmm2 and put result in zmm1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 A8 /r VFMADD213PS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from zmm1 and zmm2, add to zmm3/m512/m32bcst and put result in zmm1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 B8 /r VFMADD231PS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst, add to zmm1 and put result in zmm1.

VFMADD132SD/VFMADD213SD/VFMADD231SD—Fused Multiply-Add of Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.LIG.66.0F38.W1 99 /r VFMADD132SD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m64	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm3/m64, add to xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.LIG.66.0F38.W1 A9 /r VFMADD213SD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m64	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm2, add to xmm3/m64 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.LIG.66.0F38.W1 B9 /r VFMADD231SD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m64	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm2 and xmm3/m64, add to xmm1 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W1 99 /r VFMADD132SD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm3/m64, add to xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W1 A9 /r VFMADD213SD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm2, add to xmm3/m64 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W1 B9 /r VFMADD231SD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm2 and xmm3/m64, add to xmm1 and put result in xmm1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
B	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (r, w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a SIMD multiply-add computation on the low double-precision floating-point values using three source operands and writes the multiply-add result in the destination operand. The destination operand is also the first source operand. The first and second operand are XMM registers. The third source operand can be an XMM register or a 64-bit memory location.

VFMADD132SD: Multiplies the low double-precision floating-point value from the first source operand to the low double-precision floating-point value in the third source operand, adds the infinite precision intermediate result to the low double-precision floating-point values in the second source operand, performs rounding and stores the resulting double-precision floating-point value to the destination operand (first source operand).

VFMADD213SD: Multiplies the low double-precision floating-point value from the second source operand to the low double-precision floating-point value in the first source operand, adds the infinite precision intermediate result to the low double-precision floating-point value in the third source operand, performs rounding and stores the resulting double-precision floating-point value to the destination operand (first source operand).

VFMADD231SD: Multiplies the low double-precision floating-point value from the second source to the low double-precision floating-point value in the third source operand, adds the infinite precision intermediate result to the low double-precision floating-point value in the first source operand, performs rounding and stores the resulting double-precision floating-point value to the destination operand (first source operand).

VEX.128 and EVEX encoded version: The destination operand (also first source operand) is encoded in `reg_field`. The second source operand is encoded in `VEX.vvvv/EVEX.vvvv`. The third source operand is encoded in `rm_field`. Bits 127:64 of the destination are unchanged. Bits MAXVL-1:128 of the destination register are zeroed.

EVEX encoded version: The low quadword element of the destination is updated according to the writemask.

VFMADD132SS/VFMADD213SS/VFMADD231SS—Fused Multiply-Add of Scalar Single-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.LIG.66.0F38.W0 99 /r VFMADD132SS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m32	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm3/m32, add to xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.LIG.66.0F38.W0 A9 /r VFMADD213SS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m32	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm2, add to xmm3/m32 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.LIG.66.0F38.W0 B9 /r VFMADD231SS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m32	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm2 and xmm3/m32, add to xmm1 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W0 99 /r VFMADD132SS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m32{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm3/m32, add to xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W0 A9 /r VFMADD213SS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m32{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm2, add to xmm3/m32 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W0 B9 /r VFMADD231SS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m32{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm2 and xmm3/m32, add to xmm1 and put result in xmm1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
B	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (r, w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a SIMD multiply-add computation on single-precision floating-point values using three source operands and writes the multiply-add results in the destination operand. The destination operand is also the first source operand. The first and second operands are XMM registers. The third source operand can be a XMM register or a 32-bit memory location.

VFMADD132SS: Multiplies the low single-precision floating-point value from the first source operand to the low single-precision floating-point value in the third source operand, adds the infinite precision intermediate result to the low single-precision floating-point value in the second source operand, performs rounding and stores the resulting single-precision floating-point value to the destination operand (first source operand).

VFMADD213SS: Multiplies the low single-precision floating-point value from the second source operand to the low single-precision floating-point value in the first source operand, adds the infinite precision intermediate result to the low single-precision floating-point value in the third source operand, performs rounding and stores the resulting single-precision floating-point value to the destination operand (first source operand).

VFMADD231SS: Multiplies the low single-precision floating-point value from the second source operand to the low single-precision floating-point value in the third source operand, adds the infinite precision intermediate result to the low single-precision floating-point value in the first source operand, performs rounding and stores the resulting single-precision floating-point value to the destination operand (first source operand).

VEX.128 and EVEX encoded version: The destination operand (also first source operand) is encoded in reg_field. The second source operand is encoded in VEX.vvvv/EVEX.vvvv. The third source operand is encoded in rm_field. Bits 127:32 of the destination are unchanged. Bits MAXVL-1:128 of the destination register are zeroed.

VFMADDSUB132PD/VFMADDSUB213PD/VFMADDSUB231PD—Fused Multiply-Alternating Add/Subtract of Packed Double-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.128.66.0F38.W1 96 /r VFMADDSUB132PD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm3/mem, add/subtract elements in xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.W1 A6 /r VFMADDSUB213PD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm2, add/subtract elements in xmm3/mem and put result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.W1 B6 /r VFMADDSUB231PD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm2 and xmm3/mem, add/subtract elements in xmm1 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W1 96 /r VFMADDSUB132PD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm3/mem, add/subtract elements in ymm2 and put result in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W1 A6 /r VFMADDSUB213PD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm2, add/subtract elements in ymm3/mem and put result in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W1 B6 /r VFMADDSUB231PD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm2 and ymm3/mem, add/subtract elements in ymm1 and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 A6 /r VFMADDSUB213PD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm2, add/subtract elements in xmm3/m128/m64bcst and put result in xmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 B6 /r VFMADDSUB231PD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst, add/subtract elements in xmm1 and put result in xmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 96 /r VFMADDSUB132PD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst, add/subtract elements in xmm2 and put result in xmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 A6 /r VFMADDSUB213PD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm2, add/subtract elements in ymm3/m256/m64bcst and put result in ymm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 B6 /r VFMADDSUB231PD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst, add/subtract elements in ymm1 and put result in ymm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 96 /r VFMADDSUB132PD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst, add/subtract elements in ymm2 and put result in ymm1 subject to writemask k1.

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bitMode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 A6 /r VFMADDSUB213PD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from zmm1 and zmm2, add/subtract elements in zmm3/m512/m64bcst and put result in zmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 B6 /r VFMADDSUB231PD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst, add/subtract elements in zmm1 and put result in zmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 96 /r VFMADDSUB132PD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from zmm1 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst, add/subtract elements in zmm2 and put result in zmm1 subject to writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
B	Full	ModRM:reg (r, w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

VFMADDSUB132PD: Multiplies the two, four, or eight packed double-precision floating-point values from the first source operand to the two or four packed double-precision floating-point values in the third source operand. From the infinite precision intermediate result, adds the odd double-precision floating-point elements and subtracts the even double-precision floating-point values in the second source operand, performs rounding and stores the resulting two or four packed double-precision floating-point values to the destination operand (first source operand).

VFMADDSUB213PD: Multiplies the two, four, or eight packed double-precision floating-point values from the second source operand to the two or four packed double-precision floating-point values in the first source operand. From the infinite precision intermediate result, adds the odd double-precision floating-point elements and subtracts the even double-precision floating-point values in the third source operand, performs rounding and stores the resulting two or four packed double-precision floating-point values to the destination operand (first source operand).

VFMADDSUB231PD: Multiplies the two, four, or eight packed double-precision floating-point values from the second source operand to the two or four packed double-precision floating-point values in the third source operand. From the infinite precision intermediate result, adds the odd double-precision floating-point elements and subtracts the even double-precision floating-point values in the first source operand, performs rounding and stores the resulting two or four packed double-precision floating-point values to the destination operand (first source operand).

EVEX encoded versions: The destination operand (also first source operand) and the second source operand are ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The third source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand is conditionally updated with write mask k1.

VEX.256 encoded version: The destination operand (also first source operand) is a YMM register and encoded in reg_field. The second source operand is a YMM register and encoded in VEX.vvvv. The third source operand is a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location and encoded in rm_field.

VFMADDSUB132PS/VFMADDSUB213PS/VFMADDSUB231PS—Fused Multiply-Alternating Add/Subtract of Packed Single-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 96 /r VFMADDSUB132PS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm3/mem, add/subtract elements in xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 A6 /r VFMADDSUB213PS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm2, add/subtract elements in xmm3/mem and put result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 B6 /r VFMADDSUB231PS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm2 and xmm3/mem, add/subtract elements in xmm1 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 96 /r VFMADDSUB132PS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm3/mem, add/subtract elements in ymm2 and put result in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 A6 /r VFMADDSUB213PS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm2, add/subtract elements in ymm3/mem and put result in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 B6 /r VFMADDSUB231PS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm2 and ymm3/mem, add/subtract elements in ymm1 and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 A6 /r VFMADDSUB213PS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm2, add/subtract elements in xmm3/m128/m32bcst and put result in xmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 B6 /r VFMADDSUB231PS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst, add/subtract elements in xmm1 and put result in xmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 96 /r VFMADDSUB132PS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst, add/subtract elements in zmm2 and put result in xmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 A6 /r VFMADDSUB213PS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm2, add/subtract elements in ymm3/m256/m32bcst and put result in ymm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 B6 /r VFMADDSUB231PS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst, add/subtract elements in ymm1 and put result in ymm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 96 /r VFMADDSUB132PS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst, add/subtract elements in ymm2 and put result in ymm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 A6 /r VFMADDSUB213PS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from zmm1 and zmm2, add/subtract elements in zmm3/m512/m32bcst and put result in zmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 B6 /r VFMADDSUB231PS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst, add/subtract elements in zmm1 and put result in zmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 96 /r VFMADDSUB132PS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from zmm1 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst, add/subtract elements in zmm2 and put result in zmm1 subject to writemask k1.

VFMSUB132PD/VFMSUB213PD/VFMSUB231PD—Fused Multiply-Subtract of Packed Double-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.128.66.0F38.W1 9A /r VFMSUB132PD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm3/mem, subtract xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.W1 AA /r VFMSUB213PD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm2, subtract xmm3/mem and put result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.W1 BA /r VFMSUB231PD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm2 and xmm3/mem, subtract xmm1 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W1 9A /r VFMSUB132PD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm3/mem, subtract ymm2 and put result in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W1 AA /r VFMSUB213PD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm2, subtract ymm3/mem and put result in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W1 BA /r VFMSUB231PD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm2 and ymm3/mem, subtract ymm1 and put result in ymm1.S
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 9A /r VFMSUB132PD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst, subtract xmm2 and put result in xmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 AA /r VFMSUB213PD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm2, subtract xmm3/m128/m64bcst and put result in xmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 BA /r VFMSUB231PD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst, subtract xmm1 and put result in xmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 9A /r VFMSUB132PD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst, subtract ymm2 and put result in ymm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 AA /r VFMSUB213PD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm2, subtract ymm3/m256/m64bcst and put result in ymm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 BA /r VFMSUB231PD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst, subtract ymm1 and put result in ymm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 9A /r VFMSUB132PD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from zmm1 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst, subtract zmm2 and put result in zmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 AA /r VFMSUB213PD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from zmm1 and zmm2, subtract zmm3/m512/m64bcst and put result in zmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 BA /r VFMSUB231PD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst, subtract zmm1 and put result in zmm1 subject to writemask k1.

VFMSUB132PS/VFMSUB213PS/VFMSUB231PS—Fused Multiply-Subtract of Packed Single-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/E n	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 9A /r VFMSUB132PS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm3/mem, subtract xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 AA /r VFMSUB213PS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm2, subtract xmm3/mem and put result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 BA /r VFMSUB231PS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm2 and xmm3/mem, subtract xmm1 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 9A /r VFMSUB132PS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm3/mem, subtract ymm2 and put result in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 AA /r VFMSUB213PS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm2, subtract ymm3/mem and put result in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 BA /r VFMSUB231PS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm2 and ymm3/mem, subtract ymm1 and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 9A /r VFMSUB132PS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst, subtract xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 AA /r VFMSUB213PS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm2, subtract xmm3/m128/m32bcst and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 BA /r VFMSUB231PS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst, subtract xmm1 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 9A /r VFMSUB132PS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst, subtract ymm2 and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 AA /r VFMSUB213PS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm2, subtract ymm3/m256/m32bcst and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 BA /r VFMSUB231PS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst, subtract ymm1 and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 9A /r VFMSUB132PS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from zmm1 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst, subtract zmm2 and put result in zmm1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 AA /r VFMSUB213PS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from zmm1 and zmm2, subtract zmm3/m512/m32bcst and put result in zmm1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 BA /r VFMSUB231PS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst, subtract zmm1 and put result in zmm1.

VFMSUB132SD/VFMSUB213SD/VFMSUB231SD—Fused Multiply-Subtract of Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.LIG.66.0F38.W1 9B /r VFMSUB132SD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m64	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm3/m64, subtract xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.LIG.66.0F38.W1 AB /r VFMSUB213SD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m64	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm2, subtract xmm3/m64 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.LIG.66.0F38.W1 BB /r VFMSUB231SD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m64	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm2 and xmm3/m64, subtract xmm1 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W1 9B /r VFMSUB132SD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm3/m64, subtract xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W1 AB /r VFMSUB213SD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm2, subtract xmm3/m64 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W1 BB /r VFMSUB231SD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm2 and xmm3/m64, subtract xmm1 and put result in xmm1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
B	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (r, w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a SIMD multiply-subtract computation on the low packed double-precision floating-point values using three source operands and writes the multiply-subtract result in the destination operand. The destination operand is also the first source operand. The second operand must be a XMM register. The third source operand can be a XMM register or a 64-bit memory location.

VFMSUB132SD: Multiplies the low packed double-precision floating-point value from the first source operand to the low packed double-precision floating-point value in the third source operand. From the infinite precision intermediate result, subtracts the low packed double-precision floating-point values in the second source operand, performs rounding and stores the resulting packed double-precision floating-point value to the destination operand (first source operand).

VFMSUB213SD: Multiplies the low packed double-precision floating-point value from the second source operand to the low packed double-precision floating-point value in the first source operand. From the infinite precision intermediate result, subtracts the low packed double-precision floating-point value in the third source operand, performs rounding and stores the resulting packed double-precision floating-point value to the destination operand (first source operand).

VFMSUB231SD: Multiplies the low packed double-precision floating-point value from the second source to the low packed double-precision floating-point value in the third source operand. From the infinite precision intermediate result, subtracts the low packed double-precision floating-point value in the first source operand, performs rounding and stores the resulting packed double-precision floating-point value to the destination operand (first source operand).

VEX.128 and EVEX encoded version: The destination operand (also first source operand) is encoded in `reg_field`. The second source operand is encoded in `VEX.vvvv/EVEX.vvvv`. The third source operand is encoded in `rm_field`. Bits 127:64 of the destination are unchanged. Bits MAXVL-1:128 of the destination register are zeroed.

VFMSUB132SS/VFMSUB213SS/VFMSUB231SS—Fused Multiply-Subtract of Scalar Single-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.LIG.66.0F38.W0 9B /r VFMSUB132SS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m32	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm3/m32, subtract xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.LIG.66.0F38.W0 AB /r VFMSUB213SS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m32	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm2, subtract xmm3/m32 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.LIG.66.0F38.W0 BB /r VFMSUB231SS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m32	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm2 and xmm3/m32, subtract xmm1 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W0 9B /r VFMSUB132SS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m32{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm3/m32, subtract xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W0 AB /r VFMSUB213SS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m32{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm2, subtract xmm3/m32 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W0 BB /r VFMSUB231SS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m32{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm2 and xmm3/m32, subtract xmm1 and put result in xmm1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
B	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (r, w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a SIMD multiply-subtract computation on the low packed single-precision floating-point values using three source operands and writes the multiply-subtract result in the destination operand. The destination operand is also the first source operand. The second operand must be a XMM register. The third source operand can be a XMM register or a 32-bit memory location.

VFMSUB132SS: Multiplies the low packed single-precision floating-point value from the first source operand to the low packed single-precision floating-point value in the third source operand. From the infinite precision intermediate result, subtracts the low packed single-precision floating-point values in the second source operand, performs rounding and stores the resulting packed single-precision floating-point value to the destination operand (first source operand).

VFMSUB213SS: Multiplies the low packed single-precision floating-point value from the second source operand to the low packed single-precision floating-point value in the first source operand. From the infinite precision intermediate result, subtracts the low packed single-precision floating-point value in the third source operand, performs rounding and stores the resulting packed single-precision floating-point value to the destination operand (first source operand).

VFMSUB231SS: Multiplies the low packed single-precision floating-point value from the second source to the low packed single-precision floating-point value in the third source operand. From the infinite precision intermediate result, subtracts the low packed single-precision floating-point value in the first source operand, performs rounding and stores the resulting packed single-precision floating-point value to the destination operand (first source operand).

VEX.128 and EVEX encoded version: The destination operand (also first source operand) is encoded in `reg_field`. The second source operand is encoded in VEX.vvvv/EVEX.vvvv. The third source operand is encoded in `rm_field`. Bits 127:32 of the destination are unchanged. Bits MAXVL-1:128 of the destination register are zeroed.

VFMSUBADD132PD/VFMSUBADD213PD/VFMSUBADD231PD—Fused Multiply-Alternating Subtract/Add of Packed Double-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.128.66.0F38.W1 97 /r VFMSUBADD132PD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm3/mem, subtract/add elements in xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.W1 A7 /r VFMSUBADD213PD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm2, subtract/add elements in xmm3/mem and put result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.W1 B7 /r VFMSUBADD231PD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm2 and xmm3/mem, subtract/add elements in xmm1 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W1 97 /r VFMSUBADD132PD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm3/mem, subtract/add elements in ymm2 and put result in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W1 A7 /r VFMSUBADD213PD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm2, subtract/add elements in ymm3/mem and put result in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W1 B7 /r VFMSUBADD231PD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm2 and ymm3/mem, subtract/add elements in ymm1 and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 97 /r VFMSUBADD132PD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst, subtract/add elements in xmm2 and put result in xmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 A7 /r VFMSUBADD213PD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm2, subtract/add elements in xmm3/m128/m64bcst and put result in xmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 B7 /r VFMSUBADD231PD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst, subtract/add elements in xmm1 and put result in xmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 97 /r VFMSUBADD132PD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst, subtract/add elements in ymm2 and put result in ymm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 A7 /r VFMSUBADD213PD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm2, subtract/add elements in ymm3/m256/m64bcst and put result in ymm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 B7 /r VFMSUBADD231PD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst, subtract/add elements in ymm1 and put result in ymm1 subject to writemask k1.

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 97 /r VFMSUBADD132PD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from zmm1 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst, subtract/add elements in zmm2 and put result in zmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 A7 /r VFMSUBADD213PD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from zmm1 and zmm2, subtract/add elements in zmm3/m512/m64bcst and put result in zmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 B7 /r VFMSUBADD231PD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst, subtract/add elements in zmm1 and put result in zmm1 subject to writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
B	Full	ModRM:reg (r, w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

VFMSUBADD132PD: Multiplies the two, four, or eight packed double-precision floating-point values from the first source operand to the two or four packed double-precision floating-point values in the third source operand. From the infinite precision intermediate result, subtracts the odd double-precision floating-point elements and adds the even double-precision floating-point values in the second source operand, performs rounding and stores the resulting two or four packed double-precision floating-point values to the destination operand (first source operand).

VFMSUBADD213PD: Multiplies the two, four, or eight packed double-precision floating-point values from the second source operand to the two or four packed double-precision floating-point values in the first source operand. From the infinite precision intermediate result, subtracts the odd double-precision floating-point elements and adds the even double-precision floating-point values in the third source operand, performs rounding and stores the resulting two or four packed double-precision floating-point values to the destination operand (first source operand).

VFMSUBADD231PD: Multiplies the two, four, or eight packed double-precision floating-point values from the second source operand to the two or four packed double-precision floating-point values in the third source operand. From the infinite precision intermediate result, subtracts the odd double-precision floating-point elements and adds the even double-precision floating-point values in the first source operand, performs rounding and stores the resulting two or four packed double-precision floating-point values to the destination operand (first source operand).

EVEX encoded versions: The destination operand (also first source operand) and the second source operand are ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The third source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand is conditionally updated with write mask k1.

VFMSUBADD132PS/VFMSUBADD213PS/VFMSUBADD231PS—Fused Multiply-Alternating Subtract/Add of Packed Single-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 97 /r VFMSUBADD132PS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm3/mem, subtract/add elements in xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 A7 /r VFMSUBADD213PS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm2, subtract/add elements in xmm3/mem and put result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 B7 /r VFMSUBADD231PS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm2 and xmm3/mem, subtract/add elements in xmm1 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 97 /r VFMSUBADD132PS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm3/mem, subtract/add elements in ymm2 and put result in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 A7 /r VFMSUBADD213PS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm2, subtract/add elements in ymm3/mem and put result in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 B7 /r VFMSUBADD231PS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm2 and ymm3/mem, subtract/add elements in ymm1 and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 97 /r VFMSUBADD132PS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst, subtract/add elements in xmm2 and put result in xmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 A7 /r VFMSUBADD213PS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm2, subtract/add elements in xmm3/m128/m32bcst and put result in xmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 B7 /r VFMSUBADD231PS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst, subtract/add elements in xmm1 and put result in xmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 97 /r VFMSUBADD132PS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst, subtract/add elements in ymm2 and put result in ymm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 A7 /r VFMSUBADD213PS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm2, subtract/add elements in ymm3/m256/m32bcst and put result in ymm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 B7 /r VFMSUBADD231PS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst, subtract/add elements in ymm1 and put result in ymm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 97 /r VFMSUBADD132PS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from zmm1 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst, subtract/add elements in zmm2 and put result in zmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 A7 /r VFMSUBADD213PS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from zmm1 and zmm2, subtract/add elements in zmm3/m512/m32bcst and put result in zmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 B7 /r VFMSUBADD231PS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst, subtract/add elements in zmm1 and put result in zmm1 subject to writemask k1.

VFMADD132PD/VFMADD213PD/VFMADD231PD—Fused Negative Multiply-Add of Packed Double-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.128.66.0F38.W1 9C /r VFMADD132PD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm3/mem, negate the multiplication result and add to xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.W1 AC /r VFMADD213PD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm2, negate the multiplication result and add to xmm3/mem and put result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.W1 BC /r VFMADD231PD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm2 and xmm3/mem, negate the multiplication result and add to xmm1 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W1 9C /r VFMADD132PD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm3/mem, negate the multiplication result and add to ymm2 and put result in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W1 AC /r VFMADD213PD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm2, negate the multiplication result and add to ymm3/mem and put result in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W1 BC /r VFMADD231PD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm2 and ymm3/mem, negate the multiplication result and add to ymm1 and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 9C /r VFMADD132PD xmm0 {k1}{z}, xmm1, xmm2/m128/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst, negate the multiplication result and add to xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 AC /r VFMADD213PD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm2, negate the multiplication result and add to xmm3/m128/m64bcst and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 BC /r VFMADD231PD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst, negate the multiplication result and add to xmm1 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 9C /r VFMADD132PD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst, negate the multiplication result and add to ymm2 and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 AC /r VFMADD213PD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm2, negate the multiplication result and add to ymm3/m256/m64bcst and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 BC /r VFMADD231PD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst, negate the multiplication result and add to ymm1 and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 9C /r VFMADD132PD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from zmm1 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst, negate the multiplication result and add to zmm2 and put result in zmm1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 AC /r VFMADD213PD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from zmm1 and zmm2, negate the multiplication result and add to zmm3/m512/m64bcst and put result in zmm1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 BC /r VFMADD231PD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst, negate the multiplication result and add to zmm1 and put result in zmm1.

VFMADD132PS/VFMADD213PS/VFMADD231PS—Fused Negative Multiply-Add of Packed Single-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 9C /r VFMADD132PS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm3/mem, negate the multiplication result and add to xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 AC /r VFMADD213PS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm2, negate the multiplication result and add to xmm3/mem and put result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 BC /r VFMADD231PS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm2 and xmm3/mem, negate the multiplication result and add to xmm1 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 9C /r VFMADD132PS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm3/mem, negate the multiplication result and add to ymm2 and put result in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 AC /r VFMADD213PS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm2, negate the multiplication result and add to ymm3/mem and put result in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.0 BC /r VFMADD231PS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm2 and ymm3/mem, negate the multiplication result and add to ymm1 and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 9C /r VFMADD132PS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst, negate the multiplication result and add to xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 AC /r VFMADD213PS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm2, negate the multiplication result and add to xmm3/m128/m32bcst and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 BC /r VFMADD231PS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst, negate the multiplication result and add to xmm1 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 9C /r VFMADD132PS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst, negate the multiplication result and add to ymm2 and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 AC /r VFMADD213PS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm2, negate the multiplication result and add to ymm3/m256/m32bcst and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 BC /r VFMADD231PS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst, negate the multiplication result and add to ymm1 and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 9C /r VFMADD132PS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from zmm1 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst, negate the multiplication result and add to zmm2 and put result in zmm1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 AC /r VFMADD213PS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from zmm1 and zmm2, negate the multiplication result and add to zmm3/m512/m32bcst and put result in zmm1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 BC /r VFMADD231PS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst, negate the multiplication result and add to zmm1 and put result in zmm1.

VFMADD132SD/VFMADD213SD/VFMADD231SD—Fused Negative Multiply-Add of Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.LIG.66.0F38.W1 9D /r VFMADD132SD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m64	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm3/mem, negate the multiplication result and add to xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.LIG.66.0F38.W1 AD /r VFMADD213SD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m64	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm2, negate the multiplication result and add to xmm3/mem and put result in xmm1.
VEX.LIG.66.0F38.W1 BD /r VFMADD231SD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m64	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm2 and xmm3/mem, negate the multiplication result and add to xmm1 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W1 9D /r VFMADD132SD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm3/m64, negate the multiplication result and add to xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W1 AD /r VFMADD213SD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm2, negate the multiplication result and add to xmm3/m64 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W1 BD /r VFMADD231SD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm2 and xmm3/m64, negate the multiplication result and add to xmm1 and put result in xmm1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
B	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (r, w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

VFMADD132SD: Multiplies the low packed double-precision floating-point value from the first source operand to the low packed double-precision floating-point value in the third source operand, adds the negated infinite precision intermediate result to the low packed double-precision floating-point values in the second source operand, performs rounding and stores the resulting packed double-precision floating-point value to the destination operand (first source operand).

VFMADD213SD: Multiplies the low packed double-precision floating-point value from the second source operand to the low packed double-precision floating-point value in the first source operand, adds the negated infinite precision intermediate result to the low packed double-precision floating-point value in the third source operand, performs rounding and stores the resulting packed double-precision floating-point value to the destination operand (first source operand).

VFMADD231SD: Multiplies the low packed double-precision floating-point value from the second source to the low packed double-precision floating-point value in the third source operand, adds the negated infinite precision intermediate result to the low packed double-precision floating-point value in the first source operand, performs rounding and stores the resulting packed double-precision floating-point value to the destination operand (first source operand).

VEX.128 and EVEX encoded version: The destination operand (also first source operand) is encoded in reg_field. The second source operand is encoded in VEX.vvvv/EVEX.vvvv. The third source operand is encoded in rm_field. Bits 127:64 of the destination are unchanged. Bits MAXVL-1:128 of the destination register are zeroed.

VFMADD132SS/VFMADD213SS/VFMADD231SS—Fused Negative Multiply-Add of Scalar Single-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.LIG.66.0F38.W0 9D /r VFMADD132SS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m32	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm3/m32, negate the multiplication result and add to xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.LIG.66.0F38.W0 AD /r VFMADD213SS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m32	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm2, negate the multiplication result and add to xmm3/m32 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.LIG.66.0F38.W0 BD /r VFMADD231SS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m32	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm2 and xmm3/m32, negate the multiplication result and add to xmm1 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W0 9D /r VFMADD132SS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m32{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm3/m32, negate the multiplication result and add to xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W0 AD /r VFMADD213SS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m32{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm2, negate the multiplication result and add to xmm3/m32 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W0 BD /r VFMADD231SS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m32{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm2 and xmm3/m32, negate the multiplication result and add to xmm1 and put result in xmm1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
B	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (r, w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

VFMADD132SS: Multiplies the low packed single-precision floating-point value from the first source operand to the low packed single-precision floating-point value in the third source operand, adds the negated infinite precision intermediate result to the low packed single-precision floating-point value in the second source operand, performs rounding and stores the resulting packed single-precision floating-point value to the destination operand (first source operand).

VFMADD213SS: Multiplies the low packed single-precision floating-point value from the second source operand to the low packed single-precision floating-point value in the first source operand, adds the negated infinite precision intermediate result to the low packed single-precision floating-point value in the third source operand, performs rounding and stores the resulting packed single-precision floating-point value to the destination operand (first source operand).

VFMADD231SS: Multiplies the low packed single-precision floating-point value from the second source operand to the low packed single-precision floating-point value in the third source operand, adds the negated infinite precision intermediate result to the low packed single-precision floating-point value in the first source operand, performs rounding and stores the resulting packed single-precision floating-point value to the destination operand (first source operand).

VEX.128 and EVEX encoded version: The destination operand (also first source operand) is encoded in reg_field. The second source operand is encoded in VEX.vvvv/EVEX.vvvv. The third source operand is encoded in rm_field. Bits 127:32 of the destination are unchanged. Bits MAXVL-1:128 of the destination register are zeroed.

VFNSUB132PD/VFNSUB213PD/VFNSUB231PD—Fused Negative Multiply-Subtract of Packed Double-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.128.66.0F38.W1 9E /r VFNSUB132PD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm3/mem, negate the multiplication result and subtract xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.W1 AE /r VFNSUB213PD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm2, negate the multiplication result and subtract xmm3/mem and put result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.W1 BE /r VFNSUB231PD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm2 and xmm3/mem, negate the multiplication result and subtract xmm1 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W1 9E /r VFNSUB132PD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm3/mem, negate the multiplication result and subtract ymm2 and put result in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W1 AE /r VFNSUB213PD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm2, negate the multiplication result and subtract ymm3/mem and put result in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W1 BE /r VFNSUB231PD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm2 and ymm3/mem, negate the multiplication result and subtract ymm1 and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 9E /r VFNSUB132PD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst, negate the multiplication result and subtract xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 AE /r VFNSUB213PD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm2, negate the multiplication result and subtract xmm3/m128/m64bcst and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 BE /r VFNSUB231PD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst, negate the multiplication result and subtract xmm1 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 9E /r VFNSUB132PD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst, negate the multiplication result and subtract ymm2 and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 AE /r VFNSUB213PD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm2, negate the multiplication result and subtract ymm3/m256/m64bcst and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 BE /r VFNSUB231PD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst, negate the multiplication result and subtract ymm1 and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 9E /r VFNSUB132PD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from zmm1 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst, negate the multiplication result and subtract zmm2 and put result in zmm1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 AE /r VFNSUB213PD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from zmm1 and zmm2, negate the multiplication result and subtract zmm3/m512/m64bcst and put result in zmm1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 BE /r VFNSUB231PD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed double-precision floating-point values from zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst, negate the multiplication result and subtract zmm1 and put result in zmm1.

VFNMSUB132PS/VFNMSUB213PS/VFNMSUB231PS—Fused Negative Multiply-Subtract of Packed Single-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 9E /r VFNMSUB132PS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm3/mem, negate the multiplication result and subtract xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 AE /r VFNMSUB213PS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm2, negate the multiplication result and subtract xmm3/mem and put result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 BE /r VFNMSUB231PS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm2 and xmm3/mem, negate the multiplication result and subtract xmm1 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 9E /r VFNMSUB132PS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm3/mem, negate the multiplication result and subtract ymm2 and put result in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 AE /r VFNMSUB213PS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm2, negate the multiplication result and subtract ymm3/mem and put result in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.0 BE /r VFNMSUB231PS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm2 and ymm3/mem, negate the multiplication result and subtract ymm1 and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 9E /r VFNMSUB132PS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst, negate the multiplication result and subtract xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 AE /r VFNMSUB213PS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm1 and xmm2, negate the multiplication result and subtract xmm3/m128/m32bcst and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 BE /r VFNMSUB231PS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst, negate the multiplication result subtract add to xmm1 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 9E /r VFNMSUB132PS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst, negate the multiplication result and subtract ymm2 and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 AE /r VFNMSUB213PS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm1 and ymm2, negate the multiplication result and subtract ymm3/m256/m32bcst and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 BE /r VFNMSUB231PS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst, negate the multiplication result subtract add to ymm1 and put result in ymm1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 9E /r VFNMSUB132PS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from zmm1 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst, negate the multiplication result and subtract zmm2 and put result in zmm1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 AE /r VFNMSUB213PS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from zmm1 and zmm2, negate the multiplication result and subtract zmm3/m512/m32bcst and put result in zmm1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 BE /r VFNMSUB231PS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst, negate the multiplication result subtract add to zmm1 and put result in zmm1.

VFNSUB132SD/VFNSUB213SD/VFNSUB231SD—Fused Negative Multiply-Subtract of Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.LIG.66.0F38.W1 9F /r VFNSUB132SD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m64	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm3/mem, negate the multiplication result and subtract xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.LIG.66.0F38.W1 AF /r VFNSUB213SD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m64	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm2, negate the multiplication result and subtract xmm3/mem and put result in xmm1.
VEX.LIG.66.0F38.W1 BF /r VFNSUB231SD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m64	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm2 and xmm3/mem, negate the multiplication result and subtract xmm1 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W1 9F /r VFNSUB132SD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm3/m64, negate the multiplication result and subtract xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W1 AF /r VFNSUB213SD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm2, negate the multiplication result and subtract xmm3/m64 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W1 BF /r VFNSUB231SD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm2 and xmm3/m64, negate the multiplication result and subtract xmm1 and put result in xmm1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
B	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (r, w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

VFNSUB132SD: Multiplies the low packed double-precision floating-point value from the first source operand to the low packed double-precision floating-point value in the third source operand. From negated infinite precision intermediate result, subtracts the low double-precision floating-point value in the second source operand, performs rounding and stores the resulting packed double-precision floating-point value to the destination operand (first source operand).

VFNSUB213SD: Multiplies the low packed double-precision floating-point value from the second source operand to the low packed double-precision floating-point value in the first source operand. From negated infinite precision intermediate result, subtracts the low double-precision floating-point value in the third source operand, performs rounding and stores the resulting packed double-precision floating-point value to the destination operand (first source operand).

VFNSUB231SD: Multiplies the low packed double-precision floating-point value from the second source to the low packed double-precision floating-point value in the third source operand. From negated infinite precision intermediate result, subtracts the low double-precision floating-point value in the first source operand, performs rounding and stores the resulting packed double-precision floating-point value to the destination operand (first source operand).

VEX.128 and EVEX encoded version: The destination operand (also first source operand) is encoded in reg_field. The second source operand is encoded in VEX.vvvv/EVEX.vvvv. The third source operand is encoded in rm_field. Bits 127:64 of the destination are unchanged. Bits MAXVL-1:128 of the destination register are zeroed.

VFNMSUB132SS/VFNMSUB213SS/VFNMSUB231SS—Fused Negative Multiply-Subtract of Scalar Single-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.LIG.66.0F38.W0 9F /r VFNMSUB132SS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m32	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm3/m32, negate the multiplication result and subtract xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.LIG.66.0F38.W0 AF /r VFNMSUB213SS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m32	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm2, negate the multiplication result and subtract xmm3/m32 and put result in xmm1.
VEX.LIG.66.0F38.W0 BF /r VFNMSUB231SS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m32	A	V/V	FMA	Multiply scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm2 and xmm3/m32, negate the multiplication result and subtract xmm1 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W0 9F /r VFNMSUB132SS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m32{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm3/m32, negate the multiplication result and subtract xmm2 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W0 AF /r VFNMSUB213SS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m32{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm1 and xmm2, negate the multiplication result and subtract xmm3/m32 and put result in xmm1.
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W0 BF /r VFNMSUB231SS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m32{er}	B	V/V	AVX512F	Multiply scalar single-precision floating-point value from xmm2 and xmm3/m32, negate the multiplication result and subtract xmm1 and put result in xmm1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
B	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (r, w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

VFNMSUB132SS: Multiplies the low packed single-precision floating-point value from the first source operand to the low packed single-precision floating-point value in the third source operand. From negated infinite precision intermediate result, the low single-precision floating-point value in the second source operand, performs rounding and stores the resulting packed single-precision floating-point value to the destination operand (first source operand).

VFNMSUB213SS: Multiplies the low packed single-precision floating-point value from the second source operand to the low packed single-precision floating-point value in the first source operand. From negated infinite precision intermediate result, the low single-precision floating-point value in the third source operand, performs rounding and stores the resulting packed single-precision floating-point value to the destination operand (first source operand).

VFNMSUB231SS: Multiplies the low packed single-precision floating-point value from the second source to the low packed single-precision floating-point value in the third source operand. From negated infinite precision intermediate result, the low single-precision floating-point value in the first source operand, performs rounding and stores the resulting packed single-precision floating-point value to the destination operand (first source operand).

VEX.128 and EVEX encoded version: The destination operand (also first source operand) is encoded in reg_field. The second source operand is encoded in VEX.vvvv/EVEX.vvvv. The third source operand is encoded in rm_field. Bits 127:32 of the destination are unchanged. Bits MAXVL-1:128 of the destination register are zeroed.

EVEX encoded version: The low doubleword element of the destination is updated according to the writemask.

Compiler tools may optionally support a complementary mnemonic for each instruction mnemonic listed in the opcode/instruction column of the summary table. The behavior of the complementary mnemonic in situations involving NaNs are governed by the definition of the instruction mnemonic defined in the opcode/instruction column.

VGATHERDPD/VGATHERQPD – Gather Packed DP FP Values Using Signed Dword/Qword Indices

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/3 2-bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.128.66.0F38.W1 92 /r VGATHERDPD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>vm32x</i> , <i>xmm2</i>	RMV	V/V	AVX2	Using dword indices specified in <i>vm32x</i> , gather double-precision FP values from memory conditioned on mask specified by <i>xmm2</i> . Conditionally gathered elements are merged into <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F38.W1 93 /r VGATHERQPD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>vm64x</i> , <i>xmm2</i>	RMV	V/V	AVX2	Using qword indices specified in <i>vm64x</i> , gather double-precision FP values from memory conditioned on mask specified by <i>xmm2</i> . Conditionally gathered elements are merged into <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F38.W1 92 /r VGATHERDPD <i>ymm1</i> , <i>vm32x</i> , <i>ymm2</i>	RMV	V/V	AVX2	Using dword indices specified in <i>vm32x</i> , gather double-precision FP values from memory conditioned on mask specified by <i>ymm2</i> . Conditionally gathered elements are merged into <i>ymm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F38.W1 93 /r VGATHERQPD <i>ymm1</i> , <i>vm64y</i> , <i>ymm2</i>	RMV	V/V	AVX2	Using qword indices specified in <i>vm64y</i> , gather double-precision FP values from memory conditioned on mask specified by <i>ymm2</i> . Conditionally gathered elements are merged into <i>ymm1</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RMV	ModRM:reg (<i>r,w</i>)	BaseReg (R): VSIB:base, VectorReg(R): VSIB:index	VEX.vvvv (<i>r, w</i>)	NA

Description

The instruction conditionally loads up to 2 or 4 double-precision floating-point values from memory addresses specified by the memory operand (the second operand) and using qword indices. The memory operand uses the VSIB form of the SIB byte to specify a general purpose register operand as the common base, a vector register for an array of indices relative to the base and a constant scale factor.

The mask operand (the third operand) specifies the conditional load operation from each memory address and the corresponding update of each data element of the destination operand (the first operand). Conditionality is specified by the most significant bit of each data element of the mask register. If an element's mask bit is not set, the corresponding element of the destination register is left unchanged. The width of data element in the destination register and mask register are identical. The entire mask register will be set to zero by this instruction unless the instruction causes an exception.

Using dword indices in the lower half of the mask register, the instruction conditionally loads up to 2 or 4 double-precision floating-point values from the VSIB addressing memory operand, and updates the destination register.

This instruction can be suspended by an exception if at least one element is already gathered (i.e., if the exception is triggered by an element other than the rightmost one with its mask bit set). When this happens, the destination register and the mask operand are partially updated; those elements that have been gathered are placed into the destination register and have their mask bits set to zero. If any traps or interrupts are pending from already gathered elements, they will be delivered in lieu of the exception; in this case, EFLAG.RF is set to one so an instruction breakpoint is not re-triggered when the instruction is continued.

If the data size and index size are different, part of the destination register and part of the mask register do not correspond to any elements being gathered. This instruction sets those parts to zero. It may do this to one or both of those registers even if the instruction triggers an exception, and even if the instruction triggers the exception before gathering any elements.

VEX.128 version: The instruction will gather two double-precision floating-point values. For dword indices, only the lower two indices in the vector index register are used.

VEX.256 version: The instruction will gather four double-precision floating-point values. For dword indices, only the lower four indices in the vector index register are used.

Note that:

- If any pair of the index, mask, or destination registers are the same, this instruction results a #UD fault.
- The values may be read from memory in any order. Memory ordering with other instructions follows the Intel-64 memory-ordering model.
- Faults are delivered in a right-to-left manner. That is, if a fault is triggered by an element and delivered, all elements closer to the LSB of the destination will be completed (and non-faulting). Individual elements closer to the MSB may or may not be completed. If a given element triggers multiple faults, they are delivered in the conventional order.
- Elements may be gathered in any order, but faults must be delivered in a right-to-left order; thus, elements to the left of a faulting one may be gathered before the fault is delivered. A given implementation of this instruction is repeatable - given the same input values and architectural state, the same set of elements to the left of the faulting one will be gathered.
- This instruction does not perform AC checks, and so will never deliver an AC fault.
- This instruction will cause a #UD if the address size attribute is 16-bit.
- This instruction will cause a #UD if the memory operand is encoded without the SIB byte.
- This instruction should not be used to access memory mapped I/O as the ordering of the individual loads it does is implementation specific, and some implementations may use loads larger than the data element size or load elements an indeterminate number of times.
- The scaled index may require more bits to represent than the address bits used by the processor (e.g., in 32-bit mode, if the scale is greater than one). In this case, the most significant bits beyond the number of address bits are ignored.

Operation

$DEST \leftarrow SRC1$;
 BASE_ADDR: base register encoded in VSIB addressing;
 VINDEX: the vector index register encoded by VSIB addressing;
 SCALE: scale factor encoded by SIB:[7:6];
 DISP: optional 1, 4 byte displacement;
 $MASK \leftarrow SRC3$;

VGATHERDPD (VEX.128 version)

```

MASK[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0;
FOR j ← 0 to 1
  i ← j * 64;
  IF MASK[63:i] THEN
    MASK[i + 63:i] ← FFFFFFFF_FFFFFFFFH; // extend from most significant bit
  ELSE
    MASK[i + 63:i] ← 0;
  FI;
ENDFOR
FOR j ← 0 to 1
  k ← j * 32;
  i ← j * 64;
  DATA_ADDR ← BASE_ADDR + (SignExtend(VINDEX[k+31:k])*SCALE + DISP);
  IF MASK[63:i] THEN
    DEST[i + 63:i] ← FETCH_64BITS(DATA_ADDR); // a fault exits the instruction
  FI;
  MASK[i + 63: i] ← 0;
ENDFOR
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0;
  
```

VGATHERQPD (VEX.128 version)

```

MASK[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0;
FOR j ← 0 to 1
  i ← j * 64;
  IF MASK[63:i] THEN
    MASK[i + 63:i] ← FFFFFFFF_FFFFFFFFH; // extend from most significant bit
  ELSE
    MASK[i + 63:i] ← 0;
  FI;
ENDFOR
FOR j ← 0 to 1
  i ← j * 64;
  DATA_ADDR ← BASE_ADDR + (SignExtend(VINDEX1[i+63:i])*SCALE + DISP);
  IF MASK[63:i] THEN
    DEST[i + 63:i] ← FETCH_64BITS(DATA_ADDR); // a fault exits this instruction
  FI;
  MASK[i + 63: i] ← 0;
ENDFOR
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0;
  
```

VGATHERQPD (VEX.256 version)

```

MASK[MAXVL-1:256] ← 0;
FOR j ← 0 to 3
  i ← j * 64;
  IF MASK[63+i] THEN
    MASK[i +63:i] ← FFFFFFFF_FFFFFFFFH; // extend from most significant bit
  ELSE
    MASK[i +63:i] ← 0;
  FI;
ENDFOR
FOR j ← 0 to 3
  i ← j * 64;
  DATA_ADDR ← BASE_ADDR + (SignExtend(VINDEX1[i+63:i])*SCALE + DISP;
  IF MASK[63+i] THEN
    DEST[i +63:i] ← FETCH_64BITS(DATA_ADDR); // a fault exits the instruction
  FI;
  MASK[i +63: i] ← 0;
ENDFOR
DEST[MAXVL-1:256] ← 0;

```

VGATHERDPD (VEX.256 version)

```

MASK[MAXVL-1:256] ← 0;
FOR j ← 0 to 3
  i ← j * 64;
  IF MASK[63+i] THEN
    MASK[i +63:i] ← FFFFFFFF_FFFFFFFFH; // extend from most significant bit
  ELSE
    MASK[i +63:i] ← 0;
  FI;
ENDFOR
FOR j ← 0 to 3
  k ← j * 32;
  i ← j * 64;
  DATA_ADDR ← BASE_ADDR + (SignExtend(VINDEX1[k+31:k])*SCALE + DISP;
  IF MASK[63+i] THEN
    DEST[i +63:i] ← FETCH_64BITS(DATA_ADDR); // a fault exits the instruction
  FI;
  MASK[i +63:i] ← 0;
ENDFOR
DEST[MAXVL-1:256] ← 0;

```


Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

VGATHERDPD: `__m128d _mm_i32gather_pd (double const * base, __m128i index, const int scale);`

VGATHERDPD: `__m128d _mm_mask_i32gather_pd (__m128d src, double const * base, __m128i index, __m128d mask, const int scale);`

VGATHERDPD: `__m256d _mm256_i32gather_pd (double const * base, __m128i index, const int scale);`

VGATHERDPD: `__m256d _mm256_mask_i32gather_pd (__m256d src, double const * base, __m128i index, __m256d mask, const int scale);`

VGATHERQPD: `__m128d _mm_i64gather_pd (double const * base, __m128i index, const int scale);`

VGATHERQPD: `__m128d _mm_mask_i64gather_pd (__m128d src, double const * base, __m128i index, __m128d mask, const int scale);`

VGATHERQPD: `__m256d _mm256_i64gather_pd (double const * base, __m256i index, const int scale);`

VGATHERQPD: `__m256d _mm256_mask_i64gather_pd (__m256d src, double const * base, __m256i index, __m256d mask, const int scale);`

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

See Exceptions Type 12.

VGATHERDPS/VGATHERDPD—Gather Packed Single, Packed Double with Signed Dword

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 92 /vsib VGATHERDPS xmm1 {k1}, vm32x	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed dword indices, gather single-precision floating-point values from memory using k1 as completion mask.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 92 /vsib VGATHERDPS ymm1 {k1}, vm32y	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed dword indices, gather single-precision floating-point values from memory using k1 as completion mask.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 92 /vsib VGATHERDPS zmm1 {k1}, vm32z	A	V/V	AVX512F	Using signed dword indices, gather single-precision floating-point values from memory using k1 as completion mask.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 92 /vsib VGATHERDPD xmm1 {k1}, vm32x	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed dword indices, gather float64 vector into float64 vector xmm1 using k1 as completion mask.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 92 /vsib VGATHERDPD ymm1 {k1}, vm32x	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed dword indices, gather float64 vector into float64 vector ymm1 using k1 as completion mask.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 92 /vsib VGATHERDPD zmm1 {k1}, vm32y	A	V/V	AVX512F	Using signed dword indices, gather float64 vector into float64 vector zmm1 using k1 as completion mask.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	BaseReg (R): VSIB:base, VectorReg(R): VSIB:index	NA	NA

Description

A set of single-precision/double-precision floating-point memory locations pointed by base address `BASE_ADDR` and index vector `V_INDEX` with scale `SCALE` are gathered. The result is written into a vector register. The elements are specified via the VSIB (i.e., the index register is a vector register, holding packed indices). Elements will only be loaded if their corresponding mask bit is one. If an element's mask bit is not set, the corresponding element of the destination register is left unchanged. The entire mask register will be set to zero by this instruction unless it triggers an exception.

This instruction can be suspended by an exception if at least one element is already gathered (i.e., if the exception is triggered by an element other than the right most one with its mask bit set). When this happens, the destination register and the mask register (k1) are partially updated; those elements that have been gathered are placed into the destination register and have their mask bits set to zero. If any traps or interrupts are pending from already gathered elements, they will be delivered in lieu of the exception; in this case, `EFLAG.RF` is set to one so an instruction breakpoint is not re-triggered when the instruction is continued.

If the data element size is less than the index element size, the higher part of the destination register and the mask register do not correspond to any elements being gathered. This instruction sets those higher parts to zero. It may update these unused elements to one or both of those registers even if the instruction triggers an exception, and even if the instruction triggers the exception before gathering any elements.

Note that:

- The values may be read from memory in any order. Memory ordering with other instructions follows the Intel-64 memory-ordering model.
- Faults are delivered in a right-to-left manner. That is, if a fault is triggered by an element and delivered, all elements closer to the LSB of the destination zmm will be completed (and non-faulting). Individual elements closer to the MSB may or may not be completed. If a given element triggers multiple faults, they are delivered in the conventional order.
- Elements may be gathered in any order, but faults must be delivered in a right-to-left order; thus, elements to the left of a faulting one may be gathered before the fault is delivered. A given implementation of this instruction is repeatable - given the same input values and architectural state, the same set of elements to the left of the faulting one will be gathered.

- This instruction does not perform AC checks, and so will never deliver an AC fault.
- Not valid with 16-bit effective addresses. Will deliver a #UD fault.

Note that the presence of VSIB byte is enforced in this instruction. Hence, the instruction will #UD fault if ModRM.rm is different than 100b.

This instruction has special $\text{disp8} * N$ and alignment rules. N is considered to be the size of a single vector element. The scaled index may require more bits to represent than the address bits used by the processor (e.g., in 32-bit mode, if the scale is greater than one). In this case, the most significant bits beyond the number of address bits are ignored.

The instruction will #UD fault if the destination vector zmm1 is the same as index vector VINDEX . The instruction will #UD fault if the $k0$ mask register is specified.

Operation

BASE_ADDR stands for the memory operand base address (a GPR); may not exist

VINDEX stands for the memory operand vector of indices (a vector register)

SCALE stands for the memory operand scalar (1, 2, 4 or 8)

DISP is the optional 1 or 4 byte displacement

VGATHERDPS (EVEX encoded version)

(KL, VL) = (4, 128), (8, 256), (16, 512)

FOR $j \leftarrow 0$ TO $KL-1$

$i \leftarrow j * 32$

 IF $k1[j]$

 THEN $\text{DEST}[i+31:i] \leftarrow$

$\text{MEM}[\text{BASE_ADDR} +$

$\text{SignExtend}(\text{VINDEX}[i+31:i]) * \text{SCALE} + \text{DISP}]$

$k1[j] \leftarrow 0$

 ELSE $*\text{DEST}[i+31:i] \leftarrow \text{remains unchanged}$ *

 FI;

ENDFOR

$k1[\text{MAX_KL}-1:KL] \leftarrow 0$

$\text{DEST}[\text{MAXVL}-1:VL] \leftarrow 0$

VGATHERDPD (EVEX encoded version)

(KL, VL) = (2, 128), (4, 256), (8, 512)

FOR $j \leftarrow 0$ TO $KL-1$

$i \leftarrow j * 64$

$k \leftarrow j * 32$

 IF $k1[j]$

 THEN $\text{DEST}[i+63:i] \leftarrow \text{MEM}[\text{BASE_ADDR} +$

$\text{SignExtend}(\text{VINDEX}[k+31:k]) * \text{SCALE} + \text{DISP}]$

$k1[j] \leftarrow 0$

 ELSE $*\text{DEST}[i+63:i] \leftarrow \text{remains unchanged}$ *

 FI;

ENDFOR

$k1[\text{MAX_KL}-1:KL] \leftarrow 0$

$\text{DEST}[\text{MAXVL}-1:VL] \leftarrow 0$

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

```

VGATHERDPD __m512d __mm512_i32gather_pd(__m256i vdx, void * base, int scale);
VGATHERDPD __m512d __mm512_mask_i32gather_pd(__m512d s, __mmask8 k, __m256i vdx, void * base, int scale);
VGATHERDPD __m256d __mm256_mask_i32gather_pd(__m256d s, __mmask8 k, __m128i vdx, void * base, int scale);
VGATHERDPD __m128d __mm_mask_i32gather_pd(__m128d s, __mmask8 k, __m128i vdx, void * base, int scale);
VGATHERDPS __m512 __mm512_i32gather_ps(__m512i vdx, void * base, int scale);
VGATHERDPS __m512 __mm512_mask_i32gather_ps(__m512 s, __mmask16 k, __m512i vdx, void * base, int scale);
VGATHERDPS __m256 __mm256_mask_i32gather_ps(__m256 s, __mmask8 k, __m256i vdx, void * base, int scale);
GATHERDPS __m128 __mm_mask_i32gather_ps(__m128 s, __mmask8 k, __m128i vdx, void * base, int scale);

```

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

See Exceptions Type E12.

VGATHERDPS/VGATHERQPS — Gather Packed SP FP values Using Signed Dword/Qword Indices

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 -bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 92 /r VGATHERDPS <i>xmm1</i> , <i>vm32x</i> , <i>xmm2</i>	A	V/V	AVX2	Using dword indices specified in <i>vm32x</i> , gather single-precision FP values from memory conditioned on mask specified by <i>xmm2</i> . Conditionally gathered elements are merged into <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 93 /r VGATHERQPS <i>xmm1</i> , <i>vm64x</i> , <i>xmm2</i>	A	V/V	AVX2	Using qword indices specified in <i>vm64x</i> , gather single-precision FP values from memory conditioned on mask specified by <i>xmm2</i> . Conditionally gathered elements are merged into <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 92 /r VGATHERDPS <i>ymm1</i> , <i>vm32y</i> , <i>ymm2</i>	A	V/V	AVX2	Using dword indices specified in <i>vm32y</i> , gather single-precision FP values from memory conditioned on mask specified by <i>ymm2</i> . Conditionally gathered elements are merged into <i>ymm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 93 /r VGATHERQPS <i>xmm1</i> , <i>vm64y</i> , <i>xmm2</i>	A	V/V	AVX2	Using qword indices specified in <i>vm64y</i> , gather single-precision FP values from memory conditioned on mask specified by <i>xmm2</i> . Conditionally gathered elements are merged into <i>xmm1</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	ModRM:reg (<i>r,w</i>)	BaseReg (R): VSIB:base, VectorReg(R): VSIB:index	VEX.vvvv (<i>r, w</i>)	NA

Description

The instruction conditionally loads up to 4 or 8 single-precision floating-point values from memory addresses specified by the memory operand (the second operand) and using dword indices. The memory operand uses the VSIB form of the SIB byte to specify a general purpose register operand as the common base, a vector register for an array of indices relative to the base and a constant scale factor.

The mask operand (the third operand) specifies the conditional load operation from each memory address and the corresponding update of each data element of the destination operand (the first operand). Conditionality is specified by the most significant bit of each data element of the mask register. If an element's mask bit is not set, the corresponding element of the destination register is left unchanged. The width of data element in the destination register and mask register are identical. The entire mask register will be set to zero by this instruction unless the instruction causes an exception.

Using qword indices, the instruction conditionally loads up to 2 or 4 single-precision floating-point values from the VSIB addressing memory operand, and updates the lower half of the destination register. The upper 128 or 256 bits of the destination register are zero'ed with qword indices.

This instruction can be suspended by an exception if at least one element is already gathered (i.e., if the exception is triggered by an element other than the rightmost one with its mask bit set). When this happens, the destination register and the mask operand are partially updated; those elements that have been gathered are placed into the destination register and have their mask bits set to zero. If any traps or interrupts are pending from already gathered elements, they will be delivered in lieu of the exception; in this case, EFLAG.RF is set to one so an instruction breakpoint is not re-triggered when the instruction is continued.

If the data size and index size are different, part of the destination register and part of the mask register do not correspond to any elements being gathered. This instruction sets those parts to zero. It may do this to one or both of those registers even if the instruction triggers an exception, and even if the instruction triggers the exception before gathering any elements.

VEX.128 version: For dword indices, the instruction will gather four single-precision floating-point values. For qword indices, the instruction will gather two values and zero the upper 64 bits of the destination.

VEX.256 version: For dword indices, the instruction will gather eight single-precision floating-point values. For qword indices, the instruction will gather four values and zero the upper 128 bits of the destination.

Note that:

- If any pair of the index, mask, or destination registers are the same, this instruction results a UD fault.
- The values may be read from memory in any order. Memory ordering with other instructions follows the Intel-64 memory-ordering model.
- Faults are delivered in a right-to-left manner. That is, if a fault is triggered by an element and delivered, all elements closer to the LSB of the destination will be completed (and non-faulting). Individual elements closer to the MSB may or may not be completed. If a given element triggers multiple faults, they are delivered in the conventional order.
- Elements may be gathered in any order, but faults must be delivered in a right-to-left order; thus, elements to the left of a faulting one may be gathered before the fault is delivered. A given implementation of this instruction is repeatable - given the same input values and architectural state, the same set of elements to the left of the faulting one will be gathered.
- This instruction does not perform AC checks, and so will never deliver an AC fault.
- This instruction will cause a #UD if the address size attribute is 16-bit.
- This instruction will cause a #UD if the memory operand is encoded without the SIB byte.
- This instruction should not be used to access memory mapped I/O as the ordering of the individual loads it does is implementation specific, and some implementations may use loads larger than the data element size or load elements an indeterminate number of times.
- The scaled index may require more bits to represent than the address bits used by the processor (e.g., in 32-bit mode, if the scale is greater than one). In this case, the most significant bits beyond the number of address bits are ignored.

Operation

DEST ← SRC1;

BASE_ADDR: base register encoded in VSIB addressing;

VINDEX: the vector index register encoded by VSIB addressing;

SCALE: scale factor encoded by SIB:[7:6];

DISP: optional 1, 4 byte displacement;

MASK ← SRC3;

VGATHERDPS (VEX.128 version)

```

■ MASK[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0;
  FOR j ← 0 to 3
    i ← j * 32;
    IF MASK[31+i] THEN
      MASK[i +31:i] ← FFFFFFFFH; // extend from most significant bit
    ELSE
      MASK[i +31:i] ← 0;
    FI;
  ENDFOR
■ FOR j ← 0 to 3
    i ← j * 32;
    DATA_ADDR ← BASE_ADDR + (SignExtend(VINDEX[i+31:i])*SCALE + DISP;
    IF MASK[31+i] THEN
      DEST[i +31:i] ← FETCH_32BITS(DATA_ADDR); // a fault exits the instruction
    FI;
    MASK[i +31:i] ← 0;
  ENDFOR
■ DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0;

```

VGATHERQPS (VEX.128 version)

```

■ MASK[MAXVL-1:64] ← 0;
  FOR j ← 0 to 3
    i ← j * 32;
    IF MASK[31+i] THEN
      MASK[i +31:i] ← FFFFFFFFH; // extend from most significant bit
    ELSE
      MASK[i +31:i] ← 0;
    FI;
  ENDFOR
■ FOR j ← 0 to 1
    k ← j * 64;
    i ← j * 32;
    DATA_ADDR ← BASE_ADDR + (SignExtend(VINDEX1[k+63:k])*SCALE + DISP;
    IF MASK[31+i] THEN
      DEST[i +31:i] ← FETCH_32BITS(DATA_ADDR); // a fault exits the instruction
    FI;
    MASK[i +31:i] ← 0;
  ENDFOR
■ DEST[MAXVL-1:64] ← 0;

```

VGATHERDPS (VEX.256 version)

```

MASK[MAXVL-1:256] ← 0;
FOR j ← 0 to 7
  i ← j * 32;
  IF MASK[31+i] THEN
    MASK[i +31:i] ← FFFFFFFFH; // extend from most significant bit
  ELSE
    MASK[i +31:i] ← 0;
  FI;
ENDFOR
FOR j ← 0 to 7
  i ← j * 32;
  DATA_ADDR ← BASE_ADDR + (SignExtend(VINDEX1[i+31:i])*SCALE + DISP;
  IF MASK[31+i] THEN
    DEST[i +31:i] ← FETCH_32BITS(DATA_ADDR); // a fault exits the instruction
  FI;
  MASK[i +31:i] ← 0;
ENDFOR
DEST[MAXVL-1:256] ← 0;

```

VGATHERQPS (VEX.256 version)

```

MASK[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0;
FOR j ← 0 to 7
  i ← j * 32;
  IF MASK[31+i] THEN
    MASK[i +31:i] ← FFFFFFFFH; // extend from most significant bit
  ELSE
    MASK[i +31:i] ← 0;
  FI;
ENDFOR
FOR j ← 0 to 3
  k ← j * 64;
  i ← j * 32;
  DATA_ADDR ← BASE_ADDR + (SignExtend(VINDEX1[k+63:k])*SCALE + DISP;
  IF MASK[31+i] THEN
    DEST[i +31:i] ← FETCH_32BITS(DATA_ADDR); // a fault exits the instruction
  FI;
  MASK[i +31:i] ← 0;
ENDFOR
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0;

```


Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

VGATHERDPS: `__m128 _mm_i32gather_ps (float const * base, __m128i index, const int scale);`

VGATHERDPS: `__m128 _mm_mask_i32gather_ps (__m128 src, float const * base, __m128i index, __m128 mask, const int scale);`

VGATHERDPS: `__m256 _mm256_i32gather_ps (float const * base, __m256i index, const int scale);`

VGATHERDPS: `__m256 _mm256_mask_i32gather_ps (__m256 src, float const * base, __m256i index, __m256 mask, const int scale);`

VGATHERQPS: `__m128 _mm_i64gather_ps (float const * base, __m128i index, const int scale);`

VGATHERQPS: `__m128 _mm_mask_i64gather_ps (__m128 src, float const * base, __m128i index, __m128 mask, const int scale);`

VGATHERQPS: `__m128 _mm256_i64gather_ps (float const * base, __m256i index, const int scale);`

VGATHERQPS: `__m128 _mm256_mask_i64gather_ps (__m128 src, float const * base, __m256i index, __m128 mask, const int scale);`

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

See Exceptions Type 12.

VGATHERQPS/VGATHERQPD—Gather Packed Single, Packed Double with Signed Qword Indices

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 93 /vsib VGATHERQPS xmm1 {k1}, vm64x	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed qword indices, gather single-precision floating-point values from memory using k1 as completion mask.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 93 /vsib VGATHERQPS xmm1 {k1}, vm64y	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed qword indices, gather single-precision floating-point values from memory using k1 as completion mask.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 93 /vsib VGATHERQPS ymm1 {k1}, vm64z	A	V/V	AVX512F	Using signed qword indices, gather single-precision floating-point values from memory using k1 as completion mask.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 93 /vsib VGATHERQPD xmm1 {k1}, vm64x	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed qword indices, gather float64 vector into float64 vector xmm1 using k1 as completion mask.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 93 /vsib VGATHERQPD ymm1 {k1}, vm64y	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed qword indices, gather float64 vector into float64 vector ymm1 using k1 as completion mask.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 93 /vsib VGATHERQPD zmm1 {k1}, vm64z	A	V/V	AVX512F	Using signed qword indices, gather float64 vector into float64 vector zmm1 using k1 as completion mask.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	BaseReg (R): VSIB:base, VectorReg(R): VSIB:index	NA	NA

Description

A set of 8 single-precision/double-precision floating-point memory locations pointed by base address `BASE_ADDR` and index vector `V_INDEX` with scale `SCALE` are gathered. The result is written into vector a register. The elements are specified via the VSIB (i.e., the index register is a vector register, holding packed indices). Elements will only be loaded if their corresponding mask bit is one. If an element's mask bit is not set, the corresponding element of the destination register is left unchanged. The entire mask register will be set to zero by this instruction unless it triggers an exception.

This instruction can be suspended by an exception if at least one element is already gathered (i.e., if the exception is triggered by an element other than the rightmost one with its mask bit set). When this happens, the destination register and the mask register (k1) are partially updated; those elements that have been gathered are placed into the destination register and have their mask bits set to zero. If any traps or interrupts are pending from already gathered elements, they will be delivered in lieu of the exception; in this case, `EFLAG.RF` is set to one so an instruction breakpoint is not re-triggered when the instruction is continued.

If the data element size is less than the index element size, the higher part of the destination register and the mask register do not correspond to any elements being gathered. This instruction sets those higher parts to zero. It may update these unused elements to one or both of those registers even if the instruction triggers an exception, and even if the instruction triggers the exception before gathering any elements.

Note that:

- The values may be read from memory in any order. Memory ordering with other instructions follows the Intel-64 memory-ordering model.
- Faults are delivered in a right-to-left manner. That is, if a fault is triggered by an element and delivered, all elements closer to the LSB of the destination zmm will be completed (and non-faulting). Individual elements closer to the MSB may or may not be completed. If a given element triggers multiple faults, they are delivered in the conventional order.

- Elements may be gathered in any order, but faults must be delivered in a right-to-left order; thus, elements to the left of a faulting one may be gathered before the fault is delivered. A given implementation of this instruction is repeatable - given the same input values and architectural state, the same set of elements to the left of the faulting one will be gathered.
- This instruction does not perform AC checks, and so will never deliver an AC fault.
- Not valid with 16-bit effective addresses. Will deliver a #UD fault.

Note that the presence of VSIB byte is enforced in this instruction. Hence, the instruction will #UD fault if ModRM.rm is different than 100b.

This instruction has special $\text{disp8} * N$ and alignment rules. N is considered to be the size of a single vector element. The scaled index may require more bits to represent than the address bits used by the processor (e.g., in 32-bit mode, if the scale is greater than one). In this case, the most significant bits beyond the number of address bits are ignored.

The instruction will #UD fault if the destination vector `zmm1` is the same as index vector `VINDEX`. The instruction will #UD fault if the `k0` mask register is specified.

Operation

`BASE_ADDR` stands for the memory operand base address (a GPR); may not exist

`VINDEX` stands for the memory operand vector of indices (a ZMM register)

`SCALE` stands for the memory operand scalar (1, 2, 4 or 8)

`DISP` is the optional 1 or 4 byte displacement

VGATHERQPS (EVEX encoded version)

(KL, VL) = (2, 128), (4, 256), (8, 512)

FOR $j \leftarrow 0$ TO $KL-1$

$i \leftarrow j * 32$

$k \leftarrow j * 64$

 IF $k1[j]$ OR *no writemask*

 THEN $\text{DEST}[i+31:i] \leftarrow$

$\text{MEM}[\text{BASE_ADDR} + (\text{VINDEX}[k+63:k]) * \text{SCALE} + \text{DISP}]$

$k1[j] \leftarrow 0$

 ELSE * $\text{DEST}[i+31:i] \leftarrow$ remains unchanged*

 FI;

ENDFOR

$k1[\text{MAX_KL}-1:\text{KL}] \leftarrow 0$

$\text{DEST}[\text{MAXVL}-1:\text{VL}/2] \leftarrow 0$

VGATHERQPD (EVEX encoded version)

(KL, VL) = (2, 128), (4, 256), (8, 512)

FOR $j \leftarrow 0$ TO $KL-1$

$i \leftarrow j * 64$

 IF $k1[j]$ OR *no writemask*

 THEN $\text{DEST}[i+63:i] \leftarrow \text{MEM}[\text{BASE_ADDR} + (\text{VINDEX}[i+63:i]) * \text{SCALE} + \text{DISP}]$

$k1[j] \leftarrow 0$

 ELSE * $\text{DEST}[i+63:i] \leftarrow$ remains unchanged*

 FI;

ENDFOR

$k1[\text{MAX_KL}-1:\text{KL}] \leftarrow 0$

$\text{DEST}[\text{MAXVL}-1:\text{VL}] \leftarrow 0$

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

```

VGATHERQPD __m512d __mm512_i64gather_pd(__m512i vdx, void * base, int scale);
VGATHERQPD __m512d __mm512_mask_i64gather_pd(__m512d s, __mmask8 k, __m512i vdx, void * base, int scale);
VGATHERQPD __m256d __mm256_mask_i64gather_pd(__m256d s, __mmask8 k, __m256i vdx, void * base, int scale);
VGATHERQPD __m128d __mm_mask_i64gather_pd(__m128d s, __mmask8 k, __m128i vdx, void * base, int scale);
VGATHERQPS __m256 __mm512_i64gather_ps(__m512i vdx, void * base, int scale);
VGATHERQPS __m256 __mm512_mask_i64gather_ps(__m256 s, __mmask16 k, __m512i vdx, void * base, int scale);
VGATHERQPS __m128 __mm256_mask_i64gather_ps(__m128 s, __mmask8 k, __m256i vdx, void * base, int scale);
VGATHERQPS __m128 __mm_mask_i64gather_ps(__m128 s, __mmask8 k, __m128i vdx, void * base, int scale);

```

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

See Exceptions Type E12.

VGETEXPSD—Convert Exponents of Scalar DP FP Values to DP FP Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bitMode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W1 43 /r VGETEXPSD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64{sae}	A	V/V	AVX512F	Convert the biased exponent (bits 62:52) of the low double-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m64 to a DP FP value representing unbiased integer exponent. Stores the result to the low 64-bit of xmm1 under the writemask k1 and merge with the other elements of xmm2.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Extracts the biased exponent from the normalized DP FP representation of the low qword data element of the source operand (the third operand) as unbiased signed integer value, or convert the denormal representation of input data to unbiased negative integer values. The integer value of the unbiased exponent is converted to double-precision FP value and written to the destination operand (the first operand) as DP FP numbers. Bits (127:64) of the XMM register destination are copied from corresponding bits in the first source operand.

The destination must be a XMM register, the source operand can be a XMM register or a float64 memory location. The low quadword element of the destination operand is conditionally updated with writemask k1.

Each GETEXP operation converts the exponent value into a FP number (permitting input value in denormal representation). Special cases of input values are listed in Table 5-5.

The formula is:

$$\text{GETEXP}(x) = \text{floor}(\log_2(|x|))$$

Notation **floor(x)** stands for maximal integer not exceeding real number x.

Operation

// NormalizeExpTinyDPFP(SRC[63:0]) is defined in the Operation section of VGETEXPPD

// ConvertExpDPFP(SRC[63:0]) is defined in the Operation section of VGETEXPPD

VGETEXPSD (EVEX encoded version)

```

IF k1[0] OR *no writemask*
  THEN DEST[63:0] ←
    ConvertExpDPFP(SRC2[63:0])
  ELSE
    IF *merging-masking*           ; merging-masking
      THEN *DEST[63:0] remains unchanged*
    ELSE                             ; zeroing-masking
      DEST[63:0] ← 0
  FI
FI;
DEST[127:64] ← SRC1[127:64]
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0

```

VGETEXPSS—Convert Exponents of Scalar SP FP Values to SP FP Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W0 43 /r VGETEXPSS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m32{sae}	A	V/V	AVX512F	Convert the biased exponent (bits 30:23) of the low single-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m32 to a SP FP value representing unbiased integer exponent. Stores the result to xmm1 under the writemask k1 and merge with the other elements of xmm2.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Extracts the biased exponent from the normalized SP FP representation of the low doubleword data element of the source operand (the third operand) as unbiased signed integer value, or convert the denormal representation of input data to unbiased negative integer values. The integer value of the unbiased exponent is converted to single-precision FP value and written to the destination operand (the first operand) as SP FP numbers. Bits (127: 32) of the XMM register destination are copied from corresponding bits in the first source operand.

The destination must be a XMM register, the source operand can be a XMM register or a float32 memory location. The the low doubleword element of the destination operand is conditionally updated with writemask k1.

Each GETEXP operation converts the exponent value into a FP number (permitting input value in denormal representation). Special cases of input values are listed in Table 5-6.

The formula is:

$$\text{GETEXP}(x) = \text{floor}(\log_2(|x|))$$

Notation **floor(x)** stands for maximal integer not exceeding real number x.

Software usage of VGETEXPxx and VGETMANTxx instructions generally involve a combination of GETEXP operation and GETMANT operation (see VGETMANTPD). Thus VGETEXPxx instruction do not require software to handle SIMD FP exceptions.

Operation

// NormalizeExpTinySPFP(SRC[31:0]) is defined in the Operation section of VGETEXPSS

// ConvertExpSPFP(SRC[31:0]) is defined in the Operation section of VGETEXPSS

VGETEXPSS (EVEX encoded version)

```

IF k1[0] OR *no writemask*
  THEN DEST[31:0] ←
    ConvertExpDPFP(SRC2[31:0])
  ELSE
    IF *merging-masking*           ; merging-masking
      THEN *DEST[31:0] remains unchanged*
    ELSE                             ; zeroing-masking
      DEST[31:0] ← 0
    FI
  FI;
ENDFOR
DEST[127:32] ← SRC1[127:32]
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0

```

VGETMANTSD—Extract Float64 of Normalized Mantissas from Float64 Scalar

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEEX.LIG.66.0F3A.W1 27 /r ib VGETMANTSD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64{sae}, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512F	Extract the normalized mantissa of the low float64 element in xmm3/m64 using <i>imm8</i> for sign control and mantissa interval normalization. Store the mantissa to xmm1 under the writemask k1 and merge with the other elements of xmm2.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Convert the double-precision floating values in the low quadword element of the second source operand (the third operand) to DP FP value with the mantissa normalization and sign control specified by the *imm8* byte, see Figure 5-15. The converted result is written to the low quadword element of the destination operand (the first operand) using writemask k1. Bits (127:64) of the XMM register destination are copied from corresponding bits in the first source operand. The normalized mantissa is specified by *interv* (*imm8*[1:0]) and the sign control (*sc*) is specified by bits 3:2 of the immediate byte.

The conversion operation is:

$$\text{GetMant}(x) = \pm 2^k / x.\text{significand}$$

where:

$$1 \leq |x.\text{significand}| < 2$$

Unbiased exponent *k* depends on the interval range defined by *interv* and whether the exponent of the source is even or odd. The sign of the final result is determined by *sc* and the source sign.

If *interv* != 0 then *k* = -1, otherwise *k* = 0. The encoded value of *imm8*[1:0] and sign control are shown in Figure 5-15.

The converted DP FP result is encoded according to the sign control, the unbiased exponent *k* (adding bias) and a mantissa normalized to the range specified by *interv*.

The *GetMant*() function follows Table 5-7 when dealing with floating-point special numbers.

This instruction is writemasked, so only those elements with the corresponding bit set in vector mask register k1 are computed and stored into zmm1. Elements in zmm1 with the corresponding bit clear in k1 retain their previous values.

VGETMANTSS—Extract Float32 Vector of Normalized Mantissa from Float32 Vector

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEEX.LIG.66.0F3A.W0 27 /r ib VGETMANTSS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m32{sae}, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512F	Extract the normalized mantissa from the low float32 element of xmm3/m32 using imm8 for sign control and mantissa interval normalization, store the mantissa to xmm1 under the writemask k1 and merge with the other elements of xmm2.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Convert the single-precision floating values in the low doubleword element of the second source operand (the third operand) to SP FP value with the mantissa normalization and sign control specified by the imm8 byte, see Figure 5-15. The converted result is written to the low doubleword element of the destination operand (the first operand) using writemask k1. Bits (127:32) of the XMM register destination are copied from corresponding bits in the first source operand. The normalized mantissa is specified by interv (imm8[1:0]) and the sign control (sc) is specified by bits 3:2 of the immediate byte.

The conversion operation is:

$$\text{GetMant}(x) = \pm 2^k / x.\text{significand}$$

where:

$$1 \leq |x.\text{significand}| < 2$$

Unbiased exponent k depends on the interval range defined by interv and whether the exponent of the source is even or odd. The sign of the final result is determined by sc and the source sign.

if interv != 0 then k = -1, otherwise K = 0. The encoded value of imm8[1:0] and sign control are shown in Figure 5-15.

The converted SP FP result is encoded according to the sign control, the unbiased exponent k (adding bias) and a mantissa normalized to the range specified by interv.

The GetMant() function follows Table 5-7 when dealing with floating-point special numbers.

This instruction is writemasked, so only those elements with the corresponding bit set in vector mask register k1 are computed and stored into zmm1. Elements in zmm1 with the corresponding bit clear in k1 retain their previous values.

VINSERTF128/VINSERTF32x4/VINSERTF64x2/VINSERTF32x8/VINSERTF64x4—Insert Packed Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.256.66.0F3A.W0 18 /r ib VINSERTF128 ymm1, ymm2, xmm3/m128, imm8	A	V/V	AVX	Insert 128 bits of packed floating-point values from xmm3/m128 and the remaining values from ymm2 into ymm1.
EVEX.256.66.0F3A.W0 18 /r ib VINSERTF32X4 ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, xmm3/m128, imm8	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Insert 128 bits of packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm3/m128 and the remaining values from ymm2 into ymm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W0 18 /r ib VINSERTF32X4 zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, xmm3/m128, imm8	C	V/V	AVX512F	Insert 128 bits of packed single-precision floating-point values from xmm3/m128 and the remaining values from zmm2 into zmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F3A.W1 18 /r ib VINSERTF64X2 ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, xmm3/m128, imm8	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512DQ	Insert 128 bits of packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm3/m128 and the remaining values from ymm2 into ymm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W1 18 /r ib VINSERTF64X2 zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, xmm3/m128, imm8	B	V/V	AVX512DQ	Insert 128 bits of packed double-precision floating-point values from xmm3/m128 and the remaining values from zmm2 into zmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W0 1A /r ib VINSERTF32X8 zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, ymm3/m256, imm8	D	V/V	AVX512DQ	Insert 256 bits of packed single-precision floating-point values from ymm3/m256 and the remaining values from zmm2 into zmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W1 1A /r ib VINSERTF64X4 zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, ymm3/m256, imm8	C	V/V	AVX512F	Insert 256 bits of packed double-precision floating-point values from ymm3/m256 and the remaining values from zmm2 into zmm1 under writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8
B	Tuple2	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8
C	Tuple4	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8
D	Tuple8	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8

Description

VINSERTF128/VINSERTF32x4 and VINSERTF64x2 insert 128-bits of packed floating-point values from the second source operand (the third operand) into the destination operand (the first operand) at a 128-bit granularity offset multiplied by imm8[0] (256-bit) or imm8[1:0]. The remaining portions of the destination operand are copied from the corresponding fields of the first source operand (the second operand). The second source operand can be either an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The destination and first source operands are vector registers.

VINSERTF32x4: The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM register and updated at 32-bit granularity according to the writemask. The high 6/7 bits of the immediate are ignored.

VINSERTF64x2: The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM register and updated at 64-bit granularity according to the writemask. The high 6/7 bits of the immediate are ignored.

VINSERTF32x8 and VINSERTF64x4 inserts 256-bits of packed floating-point values from the second source operand (the third operand) into the destination operand (the first operand) at a 256-bit granular offset multiplied by imm8[0]. The remaining portions of the destination are copied from the corresponding fields of the first source operand (the second operand). The second source operand can be either an YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The high 7 bits of the immediate are ignored. The destination operand is a ZMM register and updated at 32/64-bit granularity according to the writemask.

VINSERTI128/VINSERTI32x4/VINSERTI64x2/VINSERTI32x8/VINSERTI64x4—Insert Packed Integer Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.256.66.0F3A.W0 38 /r ib VINSERTI128 ymm1, ymm2, xmm3/m128, imm8	A	V/V	AVX2	Insert 128 bits of integer data from xmm3/m128 and the remaining values from ymm2 into ymm1.
EVEX.256.66.0F3A.W0 38 /r ib VINSERTI32X4 ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, xmm3/m128, imm8	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Insert 128 bits of packed doubleword integer values from xmm3/m128 and the remaining values from ymm2 into ymm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W0 38 /r ib VINSERTI32X4 zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, xmm3/m128, imm8	C	V/V	AVX512F	Insert 128 bits of packed doubleword integer values from xmm3/m128 and the remaining values from zmm2 into zmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F3A.W1 38 /r ib VINSERTI64X2 ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, xmm3/m128, imm8	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512DQ	Insert 128 bits of packed quadword integer values from xmm3/m128 and the remaining values from ymm2 into ymm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W1 38 /r ib VINSERTI64X2 zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, xmm3/m128, imm8	B	V/V	AVX512DQ	Insert 128 bits of packed quadword integer values from xmm3/m128 and the remaining values from zmm2 into zmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W0 3A /r ib VINSERTI32X8 zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, ymm3/m256, imm8	D	V/V	AVX512DQ	Insert 256 bits of packed doubleword integer values from ymm3/m256 and the remaining values from zmm2 into zmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W1 3A /r ib VINSERTI64X4 zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, ymm3/m256, imm8	C	V/V	AVX512F	Insert 256 bits of packed quadword integer values from ymm3/m256 and the remaining values from zmm2 into zmm1 under writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8
B	Tuple2	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8
C	Tuple4	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8
D	Tuple8	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8

Description

VINSERTI32x4 and VINSERTI64x2 inserts 128-bits of packed integer values from the second source operand (the third operand) into the destination operand (the first operand) at a 128-bit granular offset multiplied by imm8[0] (256-bit) or imm8[1:0]. The remaining portions of the destination are copied from the corresponding fields of the first source operand (the second operand). The second source operand can be either an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The high 6/7bits of the immediate are ignored. The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM register and updated at 32 and 64-bit granularity according to the writemask.

VINSERTI32x8 and VINSERTI64x4 inserts 256-bits of packed integer values from the second source operand (the third operand) into the destination operand (the first operand) at a 256-bit granular offset multiplied by imm8[0]. The remaining portions of the destination are copied from the corresponding fields of the first source operand (the second operand). The second source operand can be either an YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The upper bits of the immediate are ignored. The destination operand is a ZMM register and updated at 32 and 64-bit granularity according to the writemask.

VINSERTI128 inserts 128-bits of packed integer data from the second source operand (the third operand) into the destination operand (the first operand) at a 128-bit granular offset multiplied by imm8[0]. The remaining portions of the destination are copied from the corresponding fields of the first source operand (the second operand). The second source operand can be either an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The high 7 bits of the immediate are ignored. VEX.L must be 1, otherwise attempt to execute this instruction with VEX.L=0 will cause #UD.

VMASKMOV—Conditional SIMD Packed Loads and Stores

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32-bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 2C /r VMASKMOVPS <i>xmm1, xmm2, m128</i>	RVM	V/V	AVX	Conditionally load packed single-precision values from <i>m128</i> using mask in <i>xmm2</i> and store in <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 2C /r VMASKMOVPS <i>ymm1, ymm2, m256</i>	RVM	V/V	AVX	Conditionally load packed single-precision values from <i>m256</i> using mask in <i>ymm2</i> and store in <i>ymm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 2D /r VMASKMOVPD <i>xmm1, xmm2, m128</i>	RVM	V/V	AVX	Conditionally load packed double-precision values from <i>m128</i> using mask in <i>xmm2</i> and store in <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 2D /r VMASKMOVPD <i>ymm1, ymm2, m256</i>	RVM	V/V	AVX	Conditionally load packed double-precision values from <i>m256</i> using mask in <i>ymm2</i> and store in <i>ymm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 2E /r VMASKMOVPS <i>m128, xmm1, xmm2</i>	MVR	V/V	AVX	Conditionally store packed single-precision values from <i>xmm2</i> using mask in <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 2E /r VMASKMOVPS <i>m256, ymm1, ymm2</i>	MVR	V/V	AVX	Conditionally store packed single-precision values from <i>ymm2</i> using mask in <i>ymm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 2F /r VMASKMOVPD <i>m128, xmm1, xmm2</i>	MVR	V/V	AVX	Conditionally store packed double-precision values from <i>xmm2</i> using mask in <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 2F /r VMASKMOVPD <i>m256, ymm1, ymm2</i>	MVR	V/V	AVX	Conditionally store packed double-precision values from <i>ymm2</i> using mask in <i>ymm1</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RVM	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
MVR	ModRM:r/m (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:reg (r)	NA

Description

Conditionally moves packed data elements from the second source operand into the corresponding data element of the destination operand, depending on the mask bits associated with each data element. The mask bits are specified in the first source operand.

The mask bit for each data element is the most significant bit of that element in the first source operand. If a mask is 1, the corresponding data element is copied from the second source operand to the destination operand. If the mask is 0, the corresponding data element is set to zero in the load form of these instructions, and unmodified in the store form.

The second source operand is a memory address for the load form of these instruction. The destination operand is a memory address for the store form of these instructions. The other operands are both XMM registers (for VEX.128 version) or YMM registers (for VEX.256 version).

Faults occur only due to mask-bit required memory accesses that caused the faults. Faults will not occur due to referencing any memory location if the corresponding mask bit for that memory location is 0. For example, no faults will be detected if the mask bits are all zero.

Unlike previous MASKMOV instructions (MASKMOVQ and MASKMOVDQU), a nontemporal hint is not applied to these instructions.

Instruction behavior on alignment check reporting with mask bits of less than all 1s are the same as with mask bits of all 1s.

VMASKMOV should not be used to access memory mapped I/O and un-cached memory as the access and the ordering of the individual loads or stores it does is implementation specific.

VPBLENDQ – Blend Packed Dwords

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 -bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.128.66.0F3A.W0 02 /r ib VPBLENDQ <i>xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128, imm8</i>	RVMI	V/V	AVX2	Select dwords from <i>xmm2</i> and <i>xmm3/m128</i> from mask specified in <i>imm8</i> and store the values into <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F3A.W0 02 /r ib VPBLENDQ <i>ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256, imm8</i>	RVMI	V/V	AVX2	Select dwords from <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/m256</i> from mask specified in <i>imm8</i> and store the values into <i>ymm1</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RVMI	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8

Description

Dword elements from the source operand (second operand) are conditionally written to the destination operand (first operand) depending on bits in the immediate operand (third operand). The immediate bits (bits 7:0) form a mask that determines whether the corresponding word in the destination is copied from the source. If a bit in the mask, corresponding to a word, is "1", then the word is copied, else the word is unchanged.

VEX.128 encoded version: The second source operand can be an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. The first source and destination operands are XMM registers. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding YMM register are zeroed.

VEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand is a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register.

Operation

VPBLENDQ (VEX.256 encoded version)

```

IF (imm8[0] == 1) THEN DEST[31:0] ← SRC2[31:0]
ELSE DEST[31:0] ← SRC1[31:0]
IF (imm8[1] == 1) THEN DEST[63:32] ← SRC2[63:32]
ELSE DEST[63:32] ← SRC1[63:32]
IF (imm8[2] == 1) THEN DEST[95:64] ← SRC2[95:64]
ELSE DEST[95:64] ← SRC1[95:64]
IF (imm8[3] == 1) THEN DEST[127:96] ← SRC2[127:96]
ELSE DEST[127:96] ← SRC1[127:96]
IF (imm8[4] == 1) THEN DEST[159:128] ← SRC2[159:128]
ELSE DEST[159:128] ← SRC1[159:128]
IF (imm8[5] == 1) THEN DEST[191:160] ← SRC2[191:160]
ELSE DEST[191:160] ← SRC1[191:160]
IF (imm8[6] == 1) THEN DEST[223:192] ← SRC2[223:192]
ELSE DEST[223:192] ← SRC1[223:192]
IF (imm8[7] == 1) THEN DEST[255:224] ← SRC2[255:224]
ELSE DEST[255:224] ← SRC1[255:224]

```

VPBLENDMB/VPBLENDMW—Blend Byte/Word Vectors Using an Opmask Control

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 66 /r VPBLENDMB xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Blend byte integer vector xmm2 and byte vector xmm3/m128 and store the result in xmm1, under control mask.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 66 /r VPBLENDMB ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Blend byte integer vector ymm2 and byte vector ymm3/m256 and store the result in ymm1, under control mask.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 66 /r VPBLENDMB zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	A	V/V	AVX512BW	Blend byte integer vector zmm2 and byte vector zmm3/m512 and store the result in zmm1, under control mask.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 66 /r VPBLENDMW xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Blend word integer vector xmm2 and word vector xmm3/m128 and store the result in xmm1, under control mask.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 66 /r VPBLENDMW ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Blend word integer vector ymm2 and word vector ymm3/m256 and store the result in ymm1, under control mask.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 66 /r VPBLENDMW zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	A	V/V	AVX512BW	Blend word integer vector zmm2 and word vector zmm3/m512 and store the result in zmm1, under control mask.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs an element-by-element blending of byte/word elements between the first source operand byte vector register and the second source operand byte vector from memory or register, using the instruction mask as selector. The result is written into the destination byte vector register.

The destination and first source operands are ZMM/YMM/XMM registers. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit memory location.

The mask is not used as a writemask for this instruction. Instead, the mask is used as an element selector: every element of the destination is conditionally selected between first source or second source using the value of the related mask bit (0 for first source, 1 for second source).

VPBLENDMD/VPBLENDMQ—Blend Int32/Int64 Vectors Using an OpMask Control

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 64 /r VPBLENDMD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Blend doubleword integer vector xmm2 and doubleword vector xmm3/m128/m32bcst and store the result in xmm1, under control mask.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 64 /r VPBLENDMD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Blend doubleword integer vector ymm2 and doubleword vector ymm3/m256/m32bcst and store the result in ymm1, under control mask.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 64 /r VPBLENDMD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	A	V/V	AVX512F	Blend doubleword integer vector zmm2 and doubleword vector zmm3/m512/m32bcst and store the result in zmm1, under control mask.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 64 /r VPBLENDMQ xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Blend quadword integer vector xmm2 and quadword vector xmm3/m128/m64bcst and store the result in xmm1, under control mask.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 64 /r VPBLENDMQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Blend quadword integer vector ymm2 and quadword vector ymm3/m256/m64bcst and store the result in ymm1, under control mask.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 64 /r VPBLENDMQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	A	V/V	AVX512F	Blend quadword integer vector zmm2 and quadword vector zmm3/m512/m64bcst and store the result in zmm1, under control mask.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs an element-by-element blending of dword/qword elements between the first source operand (the second operand) and the elements of the second source operand (the third operand) using an opmask register as select control. The blended result is written into the destination.

The destination and first source operands are ZMM registers. The second source operand can be a ZMM register, a 512-bit memory location or a 512-bit vector broadcasted from a 32-bit memory location.

The opmask register is not used as a writemask for this instruction. Instead, the mask is used as an element selector: every element of the destination is conditionally selected between first source or second source using the value of the related mask bit (0 for the first source operand, 1 for the second source operand).

If EVEX.z is set, the elements with corresponding mask bit value of 0 in the destination operand are zeroed.

VPCMPB/VPCMPUB—Compare Packed Byte Values Into Mask

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bitMode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F3A.W0 3F /r ib VPCMPB k1 {k2}, xmm2, xmm3/m128, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed signed byte values in xmm3/m128 and xmm2 using bits 2:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate with writemask k2 and leave the result in mask register k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F3A.W0 3F /r ib VPCMPB k1 {k2}, ymm2, ymm3/m256, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed signed byte values in ymm3/m256 and ymm2 using bits 2:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate with writemask k2 and leave the result in mask register k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W0 3F /r ib VPCMPB k1 {k2}, zmm2, zmm3/m512, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512BW	Compare packed signed byte values in zmm3/m512 and zmm2 using bits 2:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate with writemask k2 and leave the result in mask register k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F3A.W0 3E /r ib VPCMPUB k1 {k2}, xmm2, xmm3/m128, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed unsigned byte values in xmm3/m128 and xmm2 using bits 2:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate with writemask k2 and leave the result in mask register k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F3A.W0 3E /r ib VPCMPUB k1 {k2}, ymm2, ymm3/m256, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed unsigned byte values in ymm3/m256 and ymm2 using bits 2:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate with writemask k2 and leave the result in mask register k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W0 3E /r ib VPCMPUB k1 {k2}, zmm2, zmm3/m512, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512BW	Compare packed unsigned byte values in zmm3/m512 and zmm2 using bits 2:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate with writemask k2 and leave the result in mask register k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a SIMD compare of the packed byte values in the second source operand and the first source operand and returns the results of the comparison to the mask destination operand. The comparison predicate operand (immediate byte) specifies the type of comparison performed on each pair of packed values in the two source operands. The result of each comparison is a single mask bit result of 1 (comparison true) or 0 (comparison false).

VPCMPB performs a comparison between pairs of signed byte values.

VPCMPUB performs a comparison between pairs of unsigned byte values.

The first source operand (second operand) is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register or a 512/256/128-bit memory location. The destination operand (first operand) is a mask register k1. Up to 64/32/16 comparisons are performed with results written to the destination operand under the writemask k2.

VPCMPD/VPCMPUD—Compare Packed Integer Values into Mask

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bitMode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F3A.W0 1F /r ib VPCMPD k1 {k2}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare packed signed doubleword integer values in xmm3/m128/m32bcst and xmm2 using bits 2:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate with writemask k2 and leave the result in mask register k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F3A.W0 1F /r ib VPCMPD k1 {k2}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare packed signed doubleword integer values in ymm3/m256/m32bcst and ymm2 using bits 2:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate with writemask k2 and leave the result in mask register k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W0 1F /r ib VPCMPD k1 {k2}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512F	Compare packed signed doubleword integer values in zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst using bits 2:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate. The comparison results are written to the destination k1 under writemask k2.
EVEX.128.66.0F3A.W0 1E /r ib VPCMPUD k1 {k2}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare packed unsigned doubleword integer values in xmm3/m128/m32bcst and xmm2 using bits 2:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate with writemask k2 and leave the result in mask register k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F3A.W0 1E /r ib VPCMPUD k1 {k2}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare packed unsigned doubleword integer values in ymm3/m256/m32bcst and ymm2 using bits 2:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate with writemask k2 and leave the result in mask register k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W0 1E /r ib VPCMPUD k1 {k2}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512F	Compare packed unsigned doubleword integer values in zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst using bits 2:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate. The comparison results are written to the destination k1 under writemask k2.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8

Description

Performs a SIMD compare of the packed integer values in the second source operand and the first source operand and returns the results of the comparison to the mask destination operand. The comparison predicate operand (immediate byte) specifies the type of comparison performed on each pair of packed values in the two source operands. The result of each comparison is a single mask bit result of 1 (comparison true) or 0 (comparison false).

VPCMPD/VPCMPUD performs a comparison between pairs of signed/unsigned doubleword integer values.

The first source operand (second operand) is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register or a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512-bit vector broadcasted from a 32-bit memory location. The destination operand (first operand) is a mask register k1. Up to 16/8/4 comparisons are performed with results written to the destination operand under the writemask k2.

The comparison predicate operand is an 8-bit immediate: bits 2:0 define the type of comparison to be performed. Bits 3 through 7 of the immediate are reserved. Compiler can implement the pseudo-op mnemonic listed in Table 5-8.

VPCMPQ/VPCMPUQ—Compare Packed Integer Values into Mask

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F3A.W1 1F /r ib VPCMPQ k1 {k2}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare packed signed quadword integer values in xmm3/m128/m64bcst and xmm2 using bits 2:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate with writemask k2 and leave the result in mask register k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F3A.W1 1F /r ib VPCMPQ k1 {k2}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare packed signed quadword integer values in ymm3/m256/m64bcst and ymm2 using bits 2:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate with writemask k2 and leave the result in mask register k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W1 1F /r ib VPCMPQ k1 {k2}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512F	Compare packed signed quadword integer values in zmm3/m512/m64bcst and zmm2 using bits 2:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate with writemask k2 and leave the result in mask register k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F3A.W1 1E /r ib VPCMPUQ k1 {k2}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare packed unsigned quadword integer values in xmm3/m128/m64bcst and xmm2 using bits 2:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate with writemask k2 and leave the result in mask register k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F3A.W1 1E /r ib VPCMPUQ k1 {k2}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Compare packed unsigned quadword integer values in ymm3/m256/m64bcst and ymm2 using bits 2:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate with writemask k2 and leave the result in mask register k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W1 1E /r ib VPCMPUQ k1 {k2}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512F	Compare packed unsigned quadword integer values in zmm3/m512/m64bcst and zmm2 using bits 2:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate with writemask k2 and leave the result in mask register k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8

Description

Performs a SIMD compare of the packed integer values in the second source operand and the first source operand and returns the results of the comparison to the mask destination operand. The comparison predicate operand (immediate byte) specifies the type of comparison performed on each pair of packed values in the two source operands. The result of each comparison is a single mask bit result of 1 (comparison true) or 0 (comparison false).

VPCMPQ/VPCMPUQ performs a comparison between pairs of signed/unsigned quadword integer values.

The first source operand (second operand) is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register or a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand (first operand) is a mask register k1. Up to 8/4/2 comparisons are performed with results written to the destination operand under the writemask k2.

The comparison predicate operand is an 8-bit immediate: bits 2:0 define the type of comparison to be performed. Bits 3 through 7 of the immediate are reserved. Compiler can implement the pseudo-op mnemonic listed in Table 5-8.

VPCMPW/VPCMPUW—Compare Packed Word Values Into Mask

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F3A.W1 3F /r ib VPCMPW k1 {k2}, xmm2, xmm3/m128, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed signed word integers in xmm3/m128 and xmm2 using bits 2:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate with writemask k2 and leave the result in mask register k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F3A.W1 3F /r ib VPCMPW k1 {k2}, ymm2, ymm3/m256, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed signed word integers in ymm3/m256 and ymm2 using bits 2:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate with writemask k2 and leave the result in mask register k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W1 3F /r ib VPCMPW k1 {k2}, zmm2, zmm3/m512, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512BW	Compare packed signed word integers in zmm3/m512 and zmm2 using bits 2:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate with writemask k2 and leave the result in mask register k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F3A.W1 3E /r ib VPCMPUW k1 {k2}, xmm2, xmm3/m128, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed unsigned word integers in xmm3/m128 and xmm2 using bits 2:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate with writemask k2 and leave the result in mask register k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F3A.W1 3E /r ib VPCMPUW k1 {k2}, ymm2, ymm3/m256, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Compare packed unsigned word integers in ymm3/m256 and ymm2 using bits 2:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate with writemask k2 and leave the result in mask register k1.
VPCMPUW k1 {k2}, zmm2, zmm3/m512, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512BW	Compare packed unsigned word integers in zmm3/m512 and zmm2 using bits 2:0 of imm8 as a comparison predicate with writemask k2 and leave the result in mask register k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a SIMD compare of the packed integer word in the second source operand and the first source operand and returns the results of the comparison to the mask destination operand. The comparison predicate operand (immediate byte) specifies the type of comparison performed on each pair of packed values in the two source operands. The result of each comparison is a single mask bit result of 1 (comparison true) or 0 (comparison false).

VPCMPW performs a comparison between pairs of signed word values.

VPCMPUW performs a comparison between pairs of unsigned word values.

The first source operand (second operand) is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register or a 512/256/128-bit memory location. The destination operand (first operand) is a mask register k1. Up to 32/16/8 comparisons are performed with results written to the destination operand under the writemask k2.

The comparison predicate operand is an 8-bit immediate: bits 2:0 define the type of comparison to be performed. Bits 3 through 7 of the immediate are reserved. Compiler can implement the pseudo-op mnemonic listed in Table 5-8.

VPERM2F128 – Permute Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.256.66.0F3A.W0 06 /r ib VPERM2F128 <i>ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256, imm8</i>	RVMI	V/V	AVX	Permute 128-bit floating-point fields in <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/mem</i> using controls from <i>imm8</i> and store result in <i>ymm1</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RVMI	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	imm8

Description

Permute 128 bit floating-point-containing fields from the first source operand (second operand) and second source operand (third operand) using bits in the 8-bit immediate and store results in the destination operand (first operand). The first source operand is a YMM register, the second source operand is a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location, and the destination operand is a YMM register.

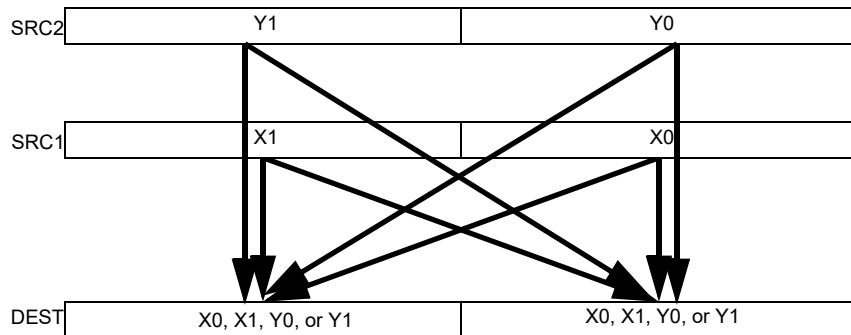


Figure 5-21. VPERM2F128 Operation

Imm8[1:0] select the source for the first destination 128-bit field, imm8[5:4] select the source for the second destination field. If imm8[3] is set, the low 128-bit field is zeroed. If imm8[7] is set, the high 128-bit field is zeroed. VEX.L must be 1, otherwise the instruction will #UD.

VPERM2I128 – Permute Integer Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 -bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.256.66.0F3A.W0 46 /r ib VPERM2I128 <i>ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256, imm8</i>	RVMI	V/V	AVX2	Permute 128-bit integer data in <i>ymm2</i> and <i>ymm3/mem</i> using controls from <i>imm8</i> and store result in <i>ymm1</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RVMI	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8

Description

Permute 128 bit integer data from the first source operand (second operand) and second source operand (third operand) using bits in the 8-bit immediate and store results in the destination operand (first operand). The first source operand is a YMM register, the second source operand is a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location, and the destination operand is a YMM register.

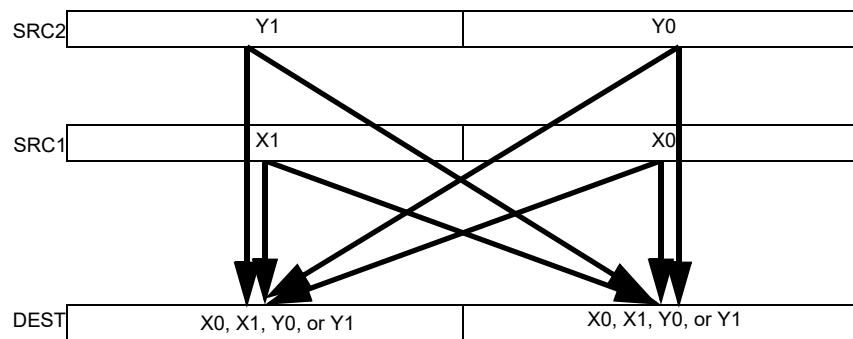


Figure 5-22. VPERM2I128 Operation

Imm8[1:0] select the source for the first destination 128-bit field, imm8[5:4] select the source for the second destination field. If imm8[3] is set, the low 128-bit field is zeroed. If imm8[7] is set, the high 128-bit field is zeroed. VEX.L must be 1, otherwise the instruction will #UD.

VPERMB—Permute Packed Bytes Elements

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 8D /r VPERMB xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512_VBMI	Permute bytes in xmm3/m128 using byte indexes in xmm2 and store the result in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 8D /r VPERMB ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512_VBMI	Permute bytes in ymm3/m256 using byte indexes in ymm2 and store the result in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 8D /r VPERMB zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	A	V/V	AVX512_VBMI	Permute bytes in zmm3/m512 using byte indexes in zmm2 and store the result in zmm1 using writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Copies bytes from the second source operand (the third operand) to the destination operand (the first operand) according to the byte indices in the first source operand (the second operand). Note that this instruction permits a byte in the source operand to be copied to more than one location in the destination operand.

Only the low 6(EVEX.512)/5(EVEX.256)/4(EVEX.128) bits of each byte index is used to select the location of the source byte from the second source operand.

The first source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register updated at byte granularity by the writemask k1.

Operation

VPERMB (EVEX encoded versions)

(KL, VL) = (16, 128), (32, 256), (64, 512)

IF VL = 128:

n ← 3;

ELSE IF VL = 256:

n ← 4;

ELSE IF VL = 512:

n ← 5;

FI;

FOR j ← 0 TO KL-1:

id ← SRC1[j*8 + n : j*8]; // location of the source byte

IF k1[j] OR *no writemask* THEN

DEST[j*8 + 7 : j*8] ← SRC2[id*8 + 7 : id*8];

ELSE IF zeroing-masking THEN

DEST[j*8 + 7 : j*8] ← 0;

*ELSE

DEST[j*8 + 7 : j*8] remains unchanged*

FI

ENDFOR

DEST[MAX_VL-1:VL] ← 0;

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

VPERMB __m512i __mm512_permutexvar_epi8(__m512i idx, __m512i a);

VPERMD/VPERMw—Permute Packed Doublewords/Words Elements

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 36 /r VPERMD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	AVX2	Permute doublewords in ymm3/m256 using indices in ymm2 and store the result in ymm1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 36 /r VPERMD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Permute doublewords in ymm3/m256/m32bcst using indexes in ymm2 and store the result in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 36 /r VPERMD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512F	Permute doublewords in zmm3/m512/m32bcst using indices in zmm2 and store the result in zmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 8D /r VPERMw xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Permute word integers in xmm3/m128 using indexes in xmm2 and store the result in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 8D /r VPERMw ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Permute word integers in ymm3/m256 using indexes in ymm2 and store the result in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 8D /r VPERMw zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	C	V/V	AVX512BW	Permute word integers in zmm3/m512 using indexes in zmm2 and store the result in zmm1 using writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
B	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Copies doublewords (or words) from the second source operand (the third operand) to the destination operand (the first operand) according to the indices in the first source operand (the second operand). Note that this instruction permits a doubleword (word) in the source operand to be copied to more than one location in the destination operand.

VEX.256 encoded VPERMD: The first and second operands are YMM registers, the third operand can be a YMM register or memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding destination register are zeroed.

EVEX encoded VPERMD: The first and second operands are ZMM/YMM registers, the third operand can be a ZMM/YMM register, a 512/256-bit memory location or a 512/256-bit vector broadcasted from a 32-bit memory location. The elements in the destination are updated using the writemask k1.

VPERMw: first and second operands are ZMM/YMM/XMM registers, the third operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, or a 512/256/128-bit memory location. The destination is updated using the writemask k1.

EVEX.128 encoded versions: Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register are zeroed.

VPERMI2B—Full Permute of Bytes from Two Tables Overwriting the Index

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 75 /r VPERMI2B xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512_VBMI	Permute bytes in xmm3/m128 and xmm2 using byte indexes in xmm1 and store the byte results in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 75 /r VPERMI2B ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512_VBMI	Permute bytes in ymm3/m256 and ymm2 using byte indexes in ymm1 and store the byte results in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 75 /r VPERMI2B zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	A	V/V	AVX512_VBMI	Permute bytes in zmm3/m512 and zmm2 using byte indexes in zmm1 and store the byte results in zmm1 using writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (r, w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Permutes byte values in the second operand (the first source operand) and the third operand (the second source operand) using the byte indices in the first operand (the destination operand) to select byte elements from the second or third source operands. The selected byte elements are written to the destination at byte granularity under the writemask k1.

The first and second operands are ZMM/YMM/XMM registers. The first operand contains input indices to select elements from the two input tables in the 2nd and 3rd operands. The first operand is also the destination of the result. The third operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, or a 512/256/128-bit memory location. In each index byte, the id bit for table selection is bit 6/5/4, and bits [5:0]/[4:0]/[3:0] selects element within each input table.

Note that these instructions permit a byte value in the source operands to be copied to more than one location in the destination operand. Also, the same tables can be reused in subsequent iterations, but the index elements are overwritten.

Bits (MAX_VL-1:256/128) of the destination are zeroed for VL=256,128.

VPERMI2W/D/Q/PS/PD—Full Permute From Two Tables Overwriting the Index

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 75 /r VPERMI2W xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Permute word integers from two tables in xmm3/m128 and xmm2 using indexes in xmm1 and store the result in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 75 /r VPERMI2W ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Permute word integers from two tables in ymm3/m256 and ymm2 using indexes in ymm1 and store the result in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 75 /r VPERMI2W zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	A	V/V	AVX512BW	Permute word integers from two tables in zmm3/m512 and zmm2 using indexes in zmm1 and store the result in zmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 76 /r VPERMI2D xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Permute double-words from two tables in xmm3/m128/m32bcst and xmm2 using indexes in xmm1 and store the result in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 76 /r VPERMI2D ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Permute double-words from two tables in ymm3/m256/m32bcst and ymm2 using indexes in ymm1 and store the result in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 76 /r VPERMI2D zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512F	Permute double-words from two tables in zmm3/m512/m32bcst and zmm2 using indices in zmm1 and store the result in zmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 76 /r VPERMI2Q xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Permute quad-words from two tables in xmm3/m128/m64bcst and xmm2 using indexes in xmm1 and store the result in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 76 /r VPERMI2Q ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Permute quad-words from two tables in ymm3/m256/m64bcst and ymm2 using indexes in ymm1 and store the result in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 76 /r VPERMI2Q zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512F	Permute quad-words from two tables in zmm3/m512/m64bcst and zmm2 using indices in zmm1 and store the result in zmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 77 /r VPERMI2PS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Permute single-precision FP values from two tables in xmm3/m128/m32bcst and xmm2 using indexes in xmm1 and store the result in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 77 /r VPERMI2PS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Permute single-precision FP values from two tables in ymm3/m256/m32bcst and ymm2 using indexes in ymm1 and store the result in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 77 /r VPERMI2PS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512F	Permute single-precision FP values from two tables in zmm3/m512/m32bcst and zmm2 using indices in zmm1 and store the result in zmm1 using writemask k1.

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 77 /r VPERMI2PD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Permute double-precision FP values from two tables in xmm3/m128/m64bcst and xmm2 using indexes in xmm1 and store the result in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 77 /r VPERMI2PD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Permute double-precision FP values from two tables in ymm3/m256/m64bcst and ymm2 using indexes in ymm1 and store the result in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 77 /r VPERMI2PD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512F	Permute double-precision FP values from two tables in zmm3/m512/m64bcst and zmm2 using indices in zmm1 and store the result in zmm1 using writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (r,w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
B	Full	ModRM:reg (r, w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Permutes 16-bit/32-bit/64-bit values in the second operand (the first source operand) and the third operand (the second source operand) using indices in the first operand to select elements from the second and third operands. The selected elements are written to the destination operand (the first operand) according to the writemask k1.

The first and second operands are ZMM/YMM/XMM registers. The first operand contains input indices to select elements from the two input tables in the 2nd and 3rd operands. The first operand is also the destination of the result.

D/Q/PS/PD element versions: The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 32/64-bit memory location. Broadcast from the low 32/64-bit memory location is performed if EVEX.b and the id bit for table selection are set (selecting table₂).

Dword/PS versions: The id bit for table selection is bit 4/3/2, depending on VL=512, 256, 128. Bits [3:0]/[2:0]/[1:0] of each element in the input index vector select an element within the two source operands, If the id bit is 0, table₁ (the first source) is selected; otherwise the second source operand is selected.

Qword/PD versions: The id bit for table selection is bit 3/2/1, and bits [2:0]/[1:0] /bit 0 selects element within each input table.

Word element versions: The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, or a 512/256/128-bit memory location. The id bit for table selection is bit 5/4/3, and bits [4:0]/[3:0]/[2:0] selects element within each input table.

Note that these instructions permit a 16-bit/32-bit/64-bit value in the source operands to be copied to more than one location in the destination operand. Note also that in this case, the same table can be reused for example for a second iteration, while the index elements are overwritten.

Bits (MAXVL-1:256/128) of the destination are zeroed for VL=256,128.

VPERMILPD—Permute In-Lane of Pairs of Double-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 0D /r VPERMILPD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	AVX	Permute double-precision floating-point values in xmm2 using controls from xmm3/m128 and store result in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 0D /r VPERMILPD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	AVX	Permute double-precision floating-point values in ymm2 using controls from ymm3/m256 and store result in ymm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 0D /r VPERMILPD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Permute double-precision floating-point values in xmm2 using control from xmm3/m128/m64bcst and store the result in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 0D /r VPERMILPD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Permute double-precision floating-point values in ymm2 using control from ymm3/m256/m64bcst and store the result in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 0D /r VPERMILPD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512F	Permute double-precision floating-point values in zmm2 using control from zmm3/m512/m64bcst and store the result in zmm1 using writemask k1.
VEX.128.66.0F3A.W0 05 /r ib VPERMILPD xmm1, xmm2/m128, imm8	B	V/V	AVX	Permute double-precision floating-point values in xmm2/m128 using controls from imm8.
VEX.256.66.0F3A.W0 05 /r ib VPERMILPD ymm1, ymm2/m256, imm8	B	V/V	AVX	Permute double-precision floating-point values in ymm2/m256 using controls from imm8.
EVEX.128.66.0F3A.W1 05 /r ib VPERMILPD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2/m128/m64bcst, imm8	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Permute double-precision floating-point values in xmm2/m128/m64bcst using controls from imm8 and store the result in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F3A.W1 05 /r ib VPERMILPD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2/m256/m64bcst, imm8	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Permute double-precision floating-point values in ymm2/m256/m64bcst using controls from imm8 and store the result in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W1 05 /r ib VPERMILPD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2/m512/m64bcst, imm8	D	V/V	AVX512F	Permute double-precision floating-point values in zmm2/m512/m64bcst using controls from imm8 and store the result in zmm1 using writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
D	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA

VPERMILPS—Permute In-Lane of Quadruples of Single-Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 0C /r VPERMILPS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	AVX	Permute single-precision floating-point values in xmm2 using controls from xmm3/m128 and store result in xmm1.
VEX.128.66.0F3A.W0 04 /r ib VPERMILPS xmm1, xmm2/m128, imm8	B	V/V	AVX	Permute single-precision floating-point values in xmm2/m128 using controls from imm8 and store result in xmm1.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 0C /r VPERMILPS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	AVX	Permute single-precision floating-point values in ymm2 using controls from ymm3/m256 and store result in ymm1.
VEX.256.66.0F3A.W0 04 /r ib VPERMILPS ymm1, ymm2/m256, imm8	B	V/V	AVX	Permute single-precision floating-point values in ymm2/m256 using controls from imm8 and store result in ymm1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 0C /r VPERMILPS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Permute single-precision floating-point values xmm2 using control from xmm3/m128/m32bcst and store the result in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 0C /r VPERMILPS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Permute single-precision floating-point values ymm2 using control from ymm3/m256/m32bcst and store the result in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 0C /r VPERMILPS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512F	Permute single-precision floating-point values zmm2 using control from zmm3/m512/m32bcst and store the result in zmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F3A.W0 04 /r ib VPERMILPS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2/m128/m32bcst, imm8	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Permute single-precision floating-point values xmm2/m128/m32bcst using controls from imm8 and store the result in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F3A.W0 04 /r ib VPERMILPS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2/m256/m32bcst, imm8	D	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Permute single-precision floating-point values ymm2/m256/m32bcst using controls from imm8 and store the result in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W0 04 /r ibVPERMILPS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2/m512/m32bcst, imm8	D	V/V	AVX512F	Permute single-precision floating-point values zmm2/m512/m32bcst using controls from imm8 and store the result in zmm1 using writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
D	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA

VPERMPD—Permute Double-Precision Floating-Point Elements

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.256.66.0F3A.W1 01 /r ib VPERMPD ymm1, ymm2/m256, imm8	A	V/V	AVX2	Permute double-precision floating-point elements in ymm2/m256 using indices in imm8 and store the result in ymm1.
EVEX.256.66.0F3A.W1 01 /r ib VPERMPD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2/m256/m64bcst, imm8	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Permute double-precision floating-point elements in ymm2/m256/m64bcst using indexes in imm8 and store the result in ymm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W1 01 /r ib VPERMPD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2/m512/m64bcst, imm8	B	V/V	AVX512F	Permute double-precision floating-point elements in zmm2/m512/m64bcst using indices in imm8 and store the result in zmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 16 /r VPERMPD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Permute double-precision floating-point elements in ymm3/m256/m64bcst using indexes in ymm2 and store the result in ymm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 16 /r VPERMPD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512F	Permute double-precision floating-point elements in zmm3/m512/m64bcst using indices in zmm2 and store the result in zmm1 subject to writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8	NA
B	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

The imm8 version: Copies quadword elements of double-precision floating-point values from the source operand (the second operand) to the destination operand (the first operand) according to the indices specified by the immediate operand (the third operand). Each two-bit value in the immediate byte selects a qword element in the source operand.

VEX version: The source operand can be a YMM register or a memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding destination register are zeroed.

In EVEX.512 encoded version, The elements in the destination are updated using the writemask k1 and the imm8 bits are reused as control bits for the upper 256-bit half when the control bits are coming from immediate. The source operand can be a ZMM register, a 512-bit memory location or a 512-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location.

The imm8 versions: VEX.vvvv and EVEX.vvvv are reserved and must be 1111b otherwise instructions will #UD.

The vector control version: Copies quadword elements of double-precision floating-point values from the second source operand (the third operand) to the destination operand (the first operand) according to the indices in the first source operand (the second operand). The first 3 bits of each 64 bit element in the index operand selects which quadword in the second source operand to copy. The first and second operands are ZMM registers, the third operand can be a ZMM register, a 512-bit memory location or a 512-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location. The elements in the destination are updated using the writemask k1.

Note that this instruction permits a qword in the source operand to be copied to multiple locations in the destination operand.

If VPERMPD is encoded with VEX.L= 0, an attempt to execute the instruction encoded with VEX.L= 0 will cause an #UD exception.

VPERMPS—Permute Single-Precision Floating-Point Elements

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 16 /r VPERMPS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	AVX2	Permute single-precision floating-point elements in ymm3/m256 using indices in ymm2 and store the result in ymm1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 16 /r VPERMPS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Permute single-precision floating-point elements in ymm3/m256/m32bcst using indexes in ymm2 and store the result in ymm1 subject to write mask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 16 /r VPERMPS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512F	Permute single-precision floating-point values in zmm3/m512/m32bcst using indices in zmm2 and store the result in zmm1 subject to write mask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
B	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Copies doubleword elements of single-precision floating-point values from the second source operand (the third operand) to the destination operand (the first operand) according to the indices in the first source operand (the second operand). Note that this instruction permits a doubleword in the source operand to be copied to more than one location in the destination operand.

VEX.256 versions: The first and second operands are YMM registers, the third operand can be a YMM register or memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding destination register are zeroed.

EVEX encoded version: The first and second operands are ZMM registers, the third operand can be a ZMM register, a 512-bit memory location or a 512-bit vector broadcasted from a 32-bit memory location. The elements in the destination are updated using the writemask k1.

If VPERMPS is encoded with VEX.L= 0, an attempt to execute the instruction encoded with VEX.L= 0 will cause an #UD exception.

Operation

VPERMPS (EVEX forms)

(KL, VL) (8, 256), (16, 512)

FOR j ← 0 TO KL-1

 i ← j * 64

 IF (EVEX.b = 1) AND (SRC2 *is memory*)

 THEN TMP_SRC2[i+31:i] ← SRC2[31:0];

 ELSE TMP_SRC2[i+31:i] ← SRC2[i+31:i];

 FI;

ENDFOR;

IF VL = 256

 TMP_DEST[31:0] ← (TMP_SRC2[255:0] >> (SRC1[2:0] * 32))[31:0];

 TMP_DEST[63:32] ← (TMP_SRC2[255:0] >> (SRC1[34:32] * 32))[31:0];

 TMP_DEST[95:64] ← (TMP_SRC2[255:0] >> (SRC1[66:64] * 32))[31:0];

 TMP_DEST[127:96] ← (TMP_SRC2[255:0] >> (SRC1[98:96] * 32))[31:0];

 TMP_DEST[159:128] ← (TMP_SRC2[255:0] >> (SRC1[130:128] * 32))[31:0];

 TMP_DEST[191:160] ← (TMP_SRC2[255:0] >> (SRC1[162:160] * 32))[31:0];

 TMP_DEST[223:192] ← (TMP_SRC2[255:0] >> (SRC1[193:192] * 32))[31:0];

 TMP_DEST[255:224] ← (TMP_SRC2[255:0] >> (SRC1[226:224] * 32))[31:0];

VPERMQ—Qwords Element Permutation

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.256.66.0F3A.W1 00 /r ib VPERMQ ymm1, ymm2/m256, imm8	A	V/V	AVX2	Permute qwords in ymm2/m256 using indices in imm8 and store the result in ymm1.
EVEX.256.66.0F3A.W1 00 /r ib VPERMQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2/m256/m64bcst, imm8	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Permute qwords in ymm2/m256/m64bcst using indexes in imm8 and store the result in ymm1.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W1 00 /r ib VPERMQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2/m512/m64bcst, imm8	B	V/V	AVX512F	Permute qwords in zmm2/m512/m64bcst using indices in imm8 and store the result in zmm1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 36 /r VPERMQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Permute qwords in ymm3/m256/m64bcst using indexes in ymm2 and store the result in ymm1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 36 /r VPERMQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512F	Permute qwords in zmm3/m512/m64bcst using indices in zmm2 and store the result in zmm1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8	NA
B	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

The imm8 version: Copies quadwords from the source operand (the second operand) to the destination operand (the first operand) according to the indices specified by the immediate operand (the third operand). Each two-bit value in the immediate byte selects a qword element in the source operand.

VEX version: The source operand can be a YMM register or a memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding destination register are zeroed.

In EVEX.512 encoded version, The elements in the destination are updated using the writemask k1 and the imm8 bits are reused as control bits for the upper 256-bit half when the control bits are coming from immediate. The source operand can be a ZMM register, a 512-bit memory location or a 512-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location.

Immediate control versions: VEX.vvvv and EVEX.vvvv are reserved and must be 1111b otherwise instructions will #UD.

The vector control version: Copies quadwords from the second source operand (the third operand) to the destination operand (the first operand) according to the indices in the first source operand (the second operand). The first 3 bits of each 64 bit element in the index operand selects which quadword in the second source operand to copy. The first and second operands are ZMM registers, the third operand can be a ZMM register, a 512-bit memory location or a 512-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location. The elements in the destination are updated using the writemask k1.

Note that this instruction permits a qword in the source operand to be copied to multiple locations in the destination operand.

If VPERMPQ is encoded with VEX.L= 0 or EVEX.128, an attempt to execute the instruction will cause an #UD exception.

VPERMT2B—Full Permute of Bytes from Two Tables Overwriting a Table

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 7D /r VPERMT2B xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512_VBMI	Permute bytes in xmm3/m128 and xmm1 using byte indexes in xmm2 and store the byte results in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 7D /r VPERMT2B ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512_VBMI	Permute bytes in ymm3/m256 and ymm1 using byte indexes in ymm2 and store the byte results in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 7D /r VPERMT2B zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	A	V/V	AVX512_VBMI	Permute bytes in zmm3/m512 and zmm1 using byte indexes in zmm2 and store the byte results in zmm1 using writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (r, w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Permutes byte values from two tables, comprising of the first operand (also the destination operand) and the third operand (the second source operand). The second operand (the first source operand) provides byte indices to select byte results from the two tables. The selected byte elements are written to the destination at byte granularity under the writemask k1.

The first and second operands are ZMM/YMM/XMM registers. The second operand contains input indices to select elements from the two input tables in the 1st and 3rd operands. The first operand is also the destination of the result. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, or a 512/256/128-bit memory location. In each index byte, the id bit for table selection is bit 6/5/4, and bits [5:0]/[4:0]/[3:0] selects element within each input table.

Note that these instructions permit a byte value in the source operands to be copied to more than one location in the destination operand. Also, the second table and the indices can be reused in subsequent iterations, but the first table is overwritten.

Bits (MAX_VL-1:256/128) of the destination are zeroed for VL=256,128.

VPERMT2W/D/Q/PS/PD—Full Permute from Two Tables Overwriting one Table

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 7D /r VPERMT2W xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Permute word integers from two tables in xmm3/m128 and xmm1 using indexes in xmm2 and store the result in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 7D /r VPERMT2W ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Permute word integers from two tables in ymm3/m256 and ymm1 using indexes in ymm2 and store the result in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 7D /r VPERMT2W zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	A	V/V	AVX512BW	Permute word integers from two tables in zmm3/m512 and zmm1 using indexes in zmm2 and store the result in zmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 7E /r VPERMT2D xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Permute double-words from two tables in xmm3/m128/m32bcst and xmm1 using indexes in xmm2 and store the result in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 7E /r VPERMT2D ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Permute double-words from two tables in ymm3/m256/m32bcst and ymm1 using indexes in ymm2 and store the result in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 7E /r VPERMT2D zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512F	Permute double-words from two tables in zmm3/m512/m32bcst and zmm1 using indices in zmm2 and store the result in zmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 7E /r VPERMT2Q xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Permute quad-words from two tables in xmm3/m128/m64bcst and xmm1 using indexes in xmm2 and store the result in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 7E /r VPERMT2Q ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Permute quad-words from two tables in ymm3/m256/m64bcst and ymm1 using indexes in ymm2 and store the result in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 7E /r VPERMT2Q zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512F	Permute quad-words from two tables in zmm3/m512/m64bcst and zmm1 using indices in zmm2 and store the result in zmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 7F /r VPERMT2PS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Permute single-precision FP values from two tables in xmm3/m128/m32bcst and xmm1 using indexes in xmm2 and store the result in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 7F /r VPERMT2PS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Permute single-precision FP values from two tables in ymm3/m256/m32bcst and ymm1 using indexes in ymm2 and store the result in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 7F /r VPERMT2PS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512F	Permute single-precision FP values from two tables in zmm3/m512/m32bcst and zmm1 using indices in zmm2 and store the result in zmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 7F /r VPERMT2PD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Permute double-precision FP values from two tables in xmm3/m128/m64bcst and xmm1 using indexes in xmm2 and store the result in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 7F /r VPERMT2PD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Permute double-precision FP values from two tables in ymm3/m256/m64bcst and ymm1 using indexes in ymm2 and store the result in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 7F /r VPERMT2PD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512F	Permute double-precision FP values from two tables in zmm3/m512/m64bcst and zmm1 using indices in zmm2 and store the result in zmm1 using writemask k1.

VPGATHERDD/VPGATHERDQ—Gather Packed Dword, Packed Qword with Signed Dword Indices

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 90 /vsib VPGATHERDD xmm1 {k1}, vm32x	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed dword indices, gather dword values from memory using writemask k1 for merging-masking.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 90 /vsib VPGATHERDD ymm1 {k1}, vm32y	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed dword indices, gather dword values from memory using writemask k1 for merging-masking.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 90 /vsib VPGATHERDD zmm1 {k1}, vm32z	A	V/V	AVX512F	Using signed dword indices, gather dword values from memory using writemask k1 for merging-masking.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 90 /vsib VPGATHERDQ xmm1 {k1}, vm32x	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed dword indices, gather quadword values from memory using writemask k1 for merging-masking.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 90 /vsib VPGATHERDQ ymm1 {k1}, vm32x	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed dword indices, gather quadword values from memory using writemask k1 for merging-masking.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 90 /vsib VPGATHERDQ zmm1 {k1}, vm32y	A	V/V	AVX512F	Using signed dword indices, gather quadword values from memory using writemask k1 for merging-masking.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	BaseReg (R): VSIB:base, VectorReg(R): VSIB:index	NA	NA

Description

A set of 16 or 8 doubleword/quadword memory locations pointed to by base address `BASE_ADDR` and index vector `VINDEX` with scale `SCALE` are gathered. The result is written into vector `zmm1`. The elements are specified via the `VSIB` (i.e., the index register is a `zmm`, holding packed indices). Elements will only be loaded if their corresponding mask bit is one. If an element's mask bit is not set, the corresponding element of the destination register (`zmm1`) is left unchanged. The entire mask register will be set to zero by this instruction unless it triggers an exception.

This instruction can be suspended by an exception if at least one element is already gathered (i.e., if the exception is triggered by an element other than the rightmost one with its mask bit set). When this happens, the destination register and the mask register (`k1`) are partially updated; those elements that have been gathered are placed into the destination register and have their mask bits set to zero. If any traps or interrupts are pending from already gathered elements, they will be delivered in lieu of the exception; in this case, `EFLAG.RF` is set to one so an instruction breakpoint is not re-triggered when the instruction is continued.

If the data element size is less than the index element size, the higher part of the destination register and the mask register do not correspond to any elements being gathered. This instruction sets those higher parts to zero. It may update these unused elements to one or both of those registers even if the instruction triggers an exception, and even if the instruction triggers the exception before gathering any elements.

Note that:

- The values may be read from memory in any order. Memory ordering with other instructions follows the Intel-64 memory-ordering model.
- Faults are delivered in a right-to-left manner. That is, if a fault is triggered by an element and delivered, all elements closer to the LSB of the destination `zmm` will be completed (and non-faulting). Individual elements closer to the MSB may or may not be completed. If a given element triggers multiple faults, they are delivered in the conventional order.
- Elements may be gathered in any order, but faults must be delivered in a right-to-left order; thus, elements to the left of a faulting one may be gathered before the fault is delivered. A given implementation of this instruction is repeatable - given the same input values and architectural state, the same set of elements to the left of the faulting one will be gathered.
- This instruction does not perform AC checks, and so will never deliver an AC fault.
- Not valid with 16-bit effective addresses. Will deliver a `#UD` fault.
- These instructions do not accept zeroing-masking since the 0 values in `k1` are used to determine completion.

Note that the presence of VSIB byte is enforced in this instruction. Hence, the instruction will #UD fault if ModRM.rm is different than 100b.

This instruction has the same $\text{disp8} * N$ and alignment rules as for scalar instructions (Tuple 1).

The instruction will #UD fault if the destination vector zmm1 is the same as index vector VINDEX. The instruction will #UD fault if the k0 mask register is specified.

The scaled index may require more bits to represent than the address bits used by the processor (e.g., in 32-bit mode, if the scale is greater than one). In this case, the most significant bits beyond the number of address bits are ignored.

Operation

BASE_ADDR stands for the memory operand base address (a GPR); may not exist

VINDEX stands for the memory operand vector of indices (a ZMM register)

SCALE stands for the memory operand scalar (1, 2, 4 or 8)

DISP is the optional 1 or 4 byte displacement

VPGATHERDD (EVEX encoded version)

(KL, VL) = (4, 128), (8, 256), (16, 512)

FOR j ← 0 TO KL-1

 i ← j * 32

 IF k1[j]

 THEN DEST[i+31:i] ← MEM[BASE_ADDR +
 SignExtend(VINDEX[i+31:i]) * SCALE + DISP], 1)

 k1[j] ← 0

 ELSE *DEST[i+31:i] ← remains unchanged* ; Only merging masking is allowed

 FI;

ENDFOR

k1[MAX_KL-1:KL] ← 0

DEST[MAXVL-1:VL] ← 0

VPGATHERDQ (EVEX encoded version)

(KL, VL) = (2, 128), (4, 256), (8, 512)

FOR j ← 0 TO KL-1

 i ← j * 64

 k ← j * 32

 IF k1[j]

 THEN DEST[i+63:i] ←
 MEM[BASE_ADDR + SignExtend(VINDEX[k+31:k]) * SCALE + DISP]

 k1[j] ← 0

 ELSE *DEST[i+63:i] ← remains unchanged* ; Only merging masking is allowed

 FI;

ENDFOR

k1[MAX_KL-1:KL] ← 0

DEST[MAXVL-1:VL] ← 0

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

```

VPGATHERDD __m512i __mm512_i32gather_epi32(__m512i vdx, void * base, int scale);
VPGATHERDD __m512i __mm512_mask_i32gather_epi32(__m512i s, __mmask16 k, __m512i vdx, void * base, int scale);
VPGATHERDD __m256i __mm256_mask_i32gather_epi32(__m256i s, __mmask8 k, __m256i vdx, void * base, int scale);
VPGATHERDD __m128i __mm_mask_i32gather_epi32(__m128i s, __mmask8 k, __m128i vdx, void * base, int scale);
VPGATHERDQ __m512i __mm512_i32logather_epi64(__m256i vdx, void * base, int scale);
VPGATHERDQ __m512i __mm512_mask_i32logather_epi64(__m512i s, __mmask8 k, __m256i vdx, void * base, int scale);
VPGATHERDQ __m256i __mm256_mask_i32logather_epi64(__m256i s, __mmask8 k, __m128i vdx, void * base, int scale);
VPGATHERDQ __m128i __mm_mask_i32gather_epi64(__m128i s, __mmask8 k, __m128i vdx, void * base, int scale);

```

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

See Exceptions Type E12.

VPGATHERDD/VPGATHERQD – Gather Packed Dword Values Using Signed Dword/Qword Indices

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 -bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 90 /r VPGATHERDD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>vm32x</i> , <i>xmm2</i>	RMV	V/V	AVX2	Using dword indices specified in <i>vm32x</i> , gather dword values from memory conditioned on mask specified by <i>xmm2</i> . Conditionally gathered elements are merged into <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 91 /r VPGATHERQD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>vm64x</i> , <i>xmm2</i>	RMV	V/V	AVX2	Using qword indices specified in <i>vm64x</i> , gather dword values from memory conditioned on mask specified by <i>xmm2</i> . Conditionally gathered elements are merged into <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 90 /r VPGATHERDD <i>ymm1</i> , <i>vm32y</i> , <i>ymm2</i>	RMV	V/V	AVX2	Using dword indices specified in <i>vm32y</i> , gather dword from memory conditioned on mask specified by <i>ymm2</i> . Conditionally gathered elements are merged into <i>ymm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 91 /r VPGATHERQD <i>xmm1</i> , <i>vm64y</i> , <i>xmm2</i>	RMV	V/V	AVX2	Using qword indices specified in <i>vm64y</i> , gather dword values from memory conditioned on mask specified by <i>xmm2</i> . Conditionally gathered elements are merged into <i>xmm1</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RMV	ModRM:reg (r,w)	BaseReg (R): VSIB:base, VectorReg(R): VSIB:index	VEX.vvvv (r, w)	NA

Description

The instruction conditionally loads up to 4 or 8 dword values from memory addresses specified by the memory operand (the second operand) and using dword indices. The memory operand uses the VSIB form of the SIB byte to specify a general purpose register operand as the common base, a vector register for an array of indices relative to the base and a constant scale factor.

The mask operand (the third operand) specifies the conditional load operation from each memory address and the corresponding update of each data element of the destination operand (the first operand). Conditionality is specified by the most significant bit of each data element of the mask register. If an element's mask bit is not set, the corresponding element of the destination register is left unchanged. The width of data element in the destination register and mask register are identical. The entire mask register will be set to zero by this instruction unless the instruction causes an exception.

Using qword indices, the instruction conditionally loads up to 2 or 4 qword values from the VSIB addressing memory operand, and updates the lower half of the destination register. The upper 128 or 256 bits of the destination register are zero'ed with qword indices.

This instruction can be suspended by an exception if at least one element is already gathered (i.e., if the exception is triggered by an element other than the rightmost one with its mask bit set). When this happens, the destination register and the mask operand are partially updated; those elements that have been gathered are placed into the destination register and have their mask bits set to zero. If any traps or interrupts are pending from already gathered elements, they will be delivered in lieu of the exception; in this case, EFLAG.RF is set to one so an instruction breakpoint is not re-triggered when the instruction is continued.

If the data size and index size are different, part of the destination register and part of the mask register do not correspond to any elements being gathered. This instruction sets those parts to zero. It may do this to one or both of those registers even if the instruction triggers an exception, and even if the instruction triggers the exception before gathering any elements.

VEX.128 version: For dword indices, the instruction will gather four dword values. For qword indices, the instruction will gather two values and zero the upper 64 bits of the destination.

VEX.256 version: For dword indices, the instruction will gather eight dword values. For qword indices, the instruction will gather four values and zero the upper 128 bits of the destination.

Note that:

- If any pair of the index, mask, or destination registers are the same, this instruction results a UD fault.
- The values may be read from memory in any order. Memory ordering with other instructions follows the Intel-64 memory-ordering model.
- Faults are delivered in a right-to-left manner. That is, if a fault is triggered by an element and delivered, all elements closer to the LSB of the destination will be completed (and non-faulting). Individual elements closer to the MSB may or may not be completed. If a given element triggers multiple faults, they are delivered in the conventional order.
- Elements may be gathered in any order, but faults must be delivered in a right-to-left order; thus, elements to the left of a faulting one may be gathered before the fault is delivered. A given implementation of this instruction is repeatable - given the same input values and architectural state, the same set of elements to the left of the faulting one will be gathered.
- This instruction does not perform AC checks, and so will never deliver an AC fault.
- This instruction will cause a #UD if the address size attribute is 16-bit.
- This instruction will cause a #UD if the memory operand is encoded without the SIB byte.
- This instruction should not be used to access memory mapped I/O as the ordering of the individual loads it does is implementation specific, and some implementations may use loads larger than the data element size or load elements an indeterminate number of times.
- The scaled index may require more bits to represent than the address bits used by the processor (e.g., in 32-bit mode, if the scale is greater than one). In this case, the most significant bits beyond the number of address bits are ignored.

Operation

DEST ← SRC1;

BASE_ADDR: base register encoded in VSIB addressing;

VINDEX: the vector index register encoded by VSIB addressing;

SCALE: scale factor encoded by SIB:[7:6];

DISP: optional 1, 4 byte displacement;

MASK ← SRC3;

VPGATHERDD (VEX.128 version)

MASK[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0;

FOR j ← 0 to 3

 i ← j * 32;

 IF MASK[31+i] THEN

 MASK[j + 31:i] ← FFFFFFFFH; // extend from most significant bit

 ELSE

 MASK[j + 31:i] ← 0;

 FI;

ENDFOR

FOR j ← 0 to 3

 i ← j * 32;

 DATA_ADDR ← BASE_ADDR + (SignExtend(VINDEX[j+31:i])*SCALE + DISP;

 IF MASK[31+i] THEN

 DEST[j + 31:i] ← FETCH_32BITS(DATA_ADDR); // a fault exits the instruction

 FI;

 MASK[j + 31:i] ← 0;

ENDFOR

DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0;

VPGATHERQD (VEX.128 version)

```

■ MASK[MAXVL-1:64] ← 0;
  FOR j ← 0 to 3
    i ← j * 32;
    IF MASK[31+i] THEN
      MASK[i +31:i] ← FFFFFFFFH; // extend from most significant bit
    ELSE
      MASK[i +31:i] ← 0;
    FI;
  ENDFOR
■ FOR j ← 0 to 1
  k ← j * 64;
  i ← j * 32;
  DATA_ADDR ← BASE_ADDR + (SignExtend(VINDEX1[k+63:k])*SCALE + DISP;
  IF MASK[31+i] THEN
    DEST[i +31:i] ← FETCH_32BITS(DATA_ADDR); // a fault exits the instruction
  FI;
  MASK[i +31:i] ← 0;
ENDFOR
■ DEST[MAXVL-1:64] ← 0;

```

VPGATHERDD (VEX.256 version)

```

■ MASK[MAXVL-1:256] ← 0;
  FOR j ← 0 to 7
    i ← j * 32;
    IF MASK[31+i] THEN
      MASK[i +31:i] ← FFFFFFFFH; // extend from most significant bit
    ELSE
      MASK[i +31:i] ← 0;
    FI;
  ENDFOR
  FOR j ← 0 to 7
    i ← j * 32;
    DATA_ADDR ← BASE_ADDR + (SignExtend(VINDEX1[j+31:i])*SCALE + DISP;
    IF MASK[31+i] THEN
      DEST[i +31:i] ← FETCH_32BITS(DATA_ADDR); // a fault exits the instruction
    FI;
    MASK[i +31:i] ← 0;
  ENDFOR
■ DEST[MAXVL-1:256] ← 0;

```

VPGATHERQD (VEX.256 version)

```

MASK[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0;
FOR j ← 0 to 7
  i ← j * 32;
  IF MASK[31:i] THEN
    MASK[i + 31:i] ← FFFFFFFFH; // extend from most significant bit
  ELSE
    MASK[i + 31:i] ← 0;
  FI;
ENDFOR
FOR j ← 0 to 3
  k ← j * 64;
  i ← j * 32;
  DATA_ADDR ← BASE_ADDR + (SignExtend(VINDEX1[k+63:k])*SCALE + DISP;
  IF MASK[31:i] THEN
    DEST[i + 31:i] ← FETCH_32BITS(DATA_ADDR); // a fault exits the instruction
  FI;
  MASK[i + 31:i] ← 0;
ENDFOR
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0;

```

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

VPGATHERDD: `__m128i _mm_i32gather_epi32 (int const * base, __m128i index, const int scale);`

VPGATHERDD: `__m128i _mm_mask_i32gather_epi32 (__m128i src, int const * base, __m128i index, __m128i mask, const int scale);`

VPGATHERDD: `__m256i _mm256_i32gather_epi32 (int const * base, __m256i index, const int scale);`

VPGATHERDD: `__m256i _mm256_mask_i32gather_epi32 (__m256i src, int const * base, __m256i index, __m256i mask, const int scale);`

VPGATHERQD: `__m128i _mm_i64gather_epi32 (int const * base, __m128i index, const int scale);`

VPGATHERQD: `__m128i _mm_mask_i64gather_epi32 (__m128i src, int const * base, __m128i index, __m128i mask, const int scale);`

VPGATHERQD: `__m128i _mm256_i64gather_epi32 (int const * base, __m256i index, const int scale);`

VPGATHERQD: `__m128i _mm256_mask_i64gather_epi32 (__m128i src, int const * base, __m256i index, __m128i mask, const int scale);`

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

See Exceptions Type 12.

VPGATHERDQ/VPGATHERQQ – Gather Packed Qword Values Using Signed Dword/Qword Indices

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 -bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.128.66.0F38.W1 90 /r VPGATHERDQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>vm32x</i> , <i>xmm2</i>	A	V/V	AVX2	Using dword indices specified in <i>vm32x</i> , gather qword values from memory conditioned on mask specified by <i>xmm2</i> . Conditionally gathered elements are merged into <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F38.W1 91 /r VPGATHERQQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>vm64x</i> , <i>xmm2</i>	A	V/V	AVX2	Using qword indices specified in <i>vm64x</i> , gather qword values from memory conditioned on mask specified by <i>xmm2</i> . Conditionally gathered elements are merged into <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F38.W1 90 /r VPGATHERDQ <i>ymm1</i> , <i>vm32x</i> , <i>ymm2</i>	A	V/V	AVX2	Using dword indices specified in <i>vm32x</i> , gather qword values from memory conditioned on mask specified by <i>ymm2</i> . Conditionally gathered elements are merged into <i>ymm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F38.W1 91 /r VPGATHERQQ <i>ymm1</i> , <i>vm64y</i> , <i>ymm2</i>	A	V/V	AVX2	Using qword indices specified in <i>vm64y</i> , gather qword values from memory conditioned on mask specified by <i>ymm2</i> . Conditionally gathered elements are merged into <i>ymm1</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	ModRM:reg (r,w)	BaseReg (R): VSIB:base, VectorReg(R): VSIB:index	VEX.vvvv (r, w)	NA

Description

The instruction conditionally loads up to 2 or 4 qword values from memory addresses specified by the memory operand (the second operand) and using qword indices. The memory operand uses the VSIB form of the SIB byte to specify a general purpose register operand as the common base, a vector register for an array of indices relative to the base and a constant scale factor.

The mask operand (the third operand) specifies the conditional load operation from each memory address and the corresponding update of each data element of the destination operand (the first operand). Conditionality is specified by the most significant bit of each data element of the mask register. If an element's mask bit is not set, the corresponding element of the destination register is left unchanged. The width of data element in the destination register and mask register are identical. The entire mask register will be set to zero by this instruction unless the instruction causes an exception.

Using dword indices in the lower half of the mask register, the instruction conditionally loads up to 2 or 4 qword values from the VSIB addressing memory operand, and updates the destination register.

This instruction can be suspended by an exception if at least one element is already gathered (i.e., if the exception is triggered by an element other than the rightmost one with its mask bit set). When this happens, the destination register and the mask operand are partially updated; those elements that have been gathered are placed into the destination register and have their mask bits set to zero. If any traps or interrupts are pending from already gathered elements, they will be delivered in lieu of the exception; in this case, EFLAG.RF is set to one so an instruction breakpoint is not re-triggered when the instruction is continued.

If the data size and index size are different, part of the destination register and part of the mask register do not correspond to any elements being gathered. This instruction sets those parts to zero. It may do this to one or both of those registers even if the instruction triggers an exception, and even if the instruction triggers the exception before gathering any elements.

VEX.128 version: The instruction will gather two qword values. For dword indices, only the lower two indices in the vector index register are used.

VPGATHERDQ/VPGATHERQQ – Gather Packed Qword Values Using Signed Dword/Qword Indices

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 -bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.128.66.0F38.W1 90 /r VPGATHERDQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>vm32x</i> , <i>xmm2</i>	A	V/V	AVX2	Using dword indices specified in <i>vm32x</i> , gather qword values from memory conditioned on mask specified by <i>xmm2</i> . Conditionally gathered elements are merged into <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F38.W1 91 /r VPGATHERQQ <i>xmm1</i> , <i>vm64x</i> , <i>xmm2</i>	A	V/V	AVX2	Using qword indices specified in <i>vm64x</i> , gather qword values from memory conditioned on mask specified by <i>xmm2</i> . Conditionally gathered elements are merged into <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F38.W1 90 /r VPGATHERDQ <i>ymm1</i> , <i>vm32x</i> , <i>ymm2</i>	A	V/V	AVX2	Using dword indices specified in <i>vm32x</i> , gather qword values from memory conditioned on mask specified by <i>ymm2</i> . Conditionally gathered elements are merged into <i>ymm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F38.W1 91 /r VPGATHERQQ <i>ymm1</i> , <i>vm64y</i> , <i>ymm2</i>	A	V/V	AVX2	Using qword indices specified in <i>vm64y</i> , gather qword values from memory conditioned on mask specified by <i>ymm2</i> . Conditionally gathered elements are merged into <i>ymm1</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	ModRM:reg (r,w)	BaseReg (R): VSIB:base, VectorReg(R): VSIB:index	VEX.vvvv (r, w)	NA

Description

The instruction conditionally loads up to 2 or 4 qword values from memory addresses specified by the memory operand (the second operand) and using qword indices. The memory operand uses the VSIB form of the SIB byte to specify a general purpose register operand as the common base, a vector register for an array of indices relative to the base and a constant scale factor.

The mask operand (the third operand) specifies the conditional load operation from each memory address and the corresponding update of each data element of the destination operand (the first operand). Conditionality is specified by the most significant bit of each data element of the mask register. If an element's mask bit is not set, the corresponding element of the destination register is left unchanged. The width of data element in the destination register and mask register are identical. The entire mask register will be set to zero by this instruction unless the instruction causes an exception.

Using dword indices in the lower half of the mask register, the instruction conditionally loads up to 2 or 4 qword values from the VSIB addressing memory operand, and updates the destination register.

This instruction can be suspended by an exception if at least one element is already gathered (i.e., if the exception is triggered by an element other than the rightmost one with its mask bit set). When this happens, the destination register and the mask operand are partially updated; those elements that have been gathered are placed into the destination register and have their mask bits set to zero. If any traps or interrupts are pending from already gathered elements, they will be delivered in lieu of the exception; in this case, EFLAG.RF is set to one so an instruction breakpoint is not re-triggered when the instruction is continued.

If the data size and index size are different, part of the destination register and part of the mask register do not correspond to any elements being gathered. This instruction sets those parts to zero. It may do this to one or both of those registers even if the instruction triggers an exception, and even if the instruction triggers the exception before gathering any elements.

VEX.128 version: The instruction will gather two qword values. For dword indices, only the lower two indices in the vector index register are used.

VEX.256 version: The instruction will gather four qword values. For dword indices, only the lower four indices in the vector index register are used.

Note that:

- If any pair of the index, mask, or destination registers are the same, this instruction results a UD fault.
- The values may be read from memory in any order. Memory ordering with other instructions follows the Intel-64 memory-ordering model.
- Faults are delivered in a right-to-left manner. That is, if a fault is triggered by an element and delivered, all elements closer to the LSB of the destination will be completed (and non-faulting). Individual elements closer to the MSB may or may not be completed. If a given element triggers multiple faults, they are delivered in the conventional order.
- Elements may be gathered in any order, but faults must be delivered in a right-to-left order; thus, elements to the left of a faulting one may be gathered before the fault is delivered. A given implementation of this instruction is repeatable - given the same input values and architectural state, the same set of elements to the left of the faulting one will be gathered.
- This instruction does not perform AC checks, and so will never deliver an AC fault.
- This instruction will cause a #UD if the address size attribute is 16-bit.
- This instruction will cause a #UD if the memory operand is encoded without the SIB byte.
- This instruction should not be used to access memory mapped I/O as the ordering of the individual loads it does is implementation specific, and some implementations may use loads larger than the data element size or load elements an indeterminate number of times.
- The scaled index may require more bits to represent than the address bits used by the processor (e.g., in 32-bit mode, if the scale is greater than one). In this case, the most significant bits beyond the number of address bits are ignored.

Operation

DEST ← SRC1;

BASE_ADDR: base register encoded in VSIB addressing;

VINDEX: the vector index register encoded by VSIB addressing;

SCALE: scale factor encoded by SIB:[7:6];

DISP: optional 1, 4 byte displacement;

MASK ← SRC3;

VPGATHERDQ (VEX.128 version)

MASK[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0;

FOR j ← 0 to 1

 i ← j * 64;

 IF MASK[63+i] THEN

 MASK[j +63:i] ← FFFFFFFF_FFFFFFFFH; // extend from most significant bit

 ELSE

 MASK[j +63:i] ← 0;

 FI;

ENDFOR

FOR j ← 0 to 1

 k ← j * 32;

 i ← j * 64;

 DATA_ADDR ← BASE_ADDR + (SignExtend(VINDEX[k+31:k])*SCALE + DISP;

 IF MASK[63+i] THEN

 DEST[j +63:i] ← FETCH_64BITS(DATA_ADDR); // a fault exits the instruction

 FI;

 MASK[j +63:i] ← 0;

ENDFOR

DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0;

VPGATHERQQ (VEX.128 version)

```

MASK[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0;
FOR j ← 0 to 1
  i ← j * 64;
  IF MASK[63:i] THEN
    MASK[i + 63:i] ← FFFFFFFF_FFFFFFFFH; // extend from most significant bit
  ELSE
    MASK[i + 63:i] ← 0;
  FI;
ENDFOR
FOR j ← 0 to 1
  i ← j * 64;
  DATA_ADDR ← BASE_ADDR + (SignExtend(VINDEX1[i+63:i])*SCALE + DISP;
  IF MASK[63:i] THEN
    DEST[i + 63:i] ← FETCH_64BITS(DATA_ADDR); // a fault exits the instruction
  FI;
  MASK[i + 63:i] ← 0;
ENDFOR
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0;

```

VPGATHERQQ (VEX.256 version)

```

MASK[MAXVL-1:256] ← 0;
FOR j ← 0 to 3
  i ← j * 64;
  IF MASK[63:i] THEN
    MASK[i + 63:i] ← FFFFFFFF_FFFFFFFFH; // extend from most significant bit
  ELSE
    MASK[i + 63:i] ← 0;
  FI;
ENDFOR
FOR j ← 0 to 3
  i ← j * 64;
  DATA_ADDR ← BASE_ADDR + (SignExtend(VINDEX1[i+63:i])*SCALE + DISP;
  IF MASK[63:i] THEN
    DEST[i + 63:i] ← FETCH_64BITS(DATA_ADDR); // a fault exits the instruction
  FI;
  MASK[i + 63:i] ← 0;
ENDFOR
DEST[MAXVL-1:256] ← 0;

```

VPGATHERDQ (VEX.256 version)

```

MASK[MAXVL-1:256] ← 0;
FOR j ← 0 to 3
  i ← j * 64;
  IF MASK[63:i] THEN
    MASK[i + 63:i] ← FFFFFFFF_FFFFFFFFH; // extend from most significant bit
  ELSE
    MASK[i + 63:i] ← 0;
  FI;
ENDFOR
FOR j ← 0 to 3
  k ← j * 32;
  i ← j * 64;
  DATA_ADDR ← BASE_ADDR + (SignExtend(VINDEX1[k+31:k])*SCALE + DISP;

```

```

IF MASK[63:i] THEN
    DEST[j +63:i] ← FETCH_64BITS(DATA_ADDR); // a fault exits the instruction
FI;
MASK[j +63:i] ← 0;
ENDFOR
DEST[MAXVL-1:256] ← 0;

```

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

VPGATHERDQ: `__m128i _mm_i32gather_epi64 (__int64 const * base, __m128i index, const int scale);`

VPGATHERDQ: `__m128i _mm_mask_i32gather_epi64 (__m128i src, __int64 const * base, __m128i index, __m128i mask, const int scale);`

VPGATHERDQ: `__m256i _mm256_i32gather_epi64 (__int64 const * base, __m128i index, const int scale);`

VPGATHERDQ: `__m256i _mm256_mask_i32gather_epi64 (__m256i src, __int64 const * base, __m128i index, __m256i mask, const int scale);`

VPGATHERQQ: `__m128i _mm_i64gather_epi64 (__int64 const * base, __m128i index, const int scale);`

VPGATHERQQ: `__m128i _mm_mask_i64gather_epi64 (__m128i src, __int64 const * base, __m128i index, __m128i mask, const int scale);`

VPGATHERQQ: `__m256i _mm256_i64gather_epi64 (__int64 const * base, __m256i index, const int scale);`

VPGATHERQQ: `__m256i _mm256_mask_i64gather_epi64 (__m256i src, __int64 const * base, __m256i index, __m256i mask, const int scale);`

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

See Exceptions Type 12.

VPGATHERQD/VPGATHERQQ—Gather Packed Dword, Packed Qword with Signed Qword Indices

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 91 /vsib VPGATHERQD xmm1 {k1}, vm64x	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed qword indices, gather dword values from memory using writemask k1 for merging-masking.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 91 /vsib VPGATHERQD xmm1 {k1}, vm64y	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed qword indices, gather dword values from memory using writemask k1 for merging-masking.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 91 /vsib VPGATHERQD ymm1 {k1}, vm64z	A	V/V	AVX512F	Using signed qword indices, gather dword values from memory using writemask k1 for merging-masking.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 91 /vsib VPGATHERQQ xmm1 {k1}, vm64x	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed qword indices, gather quadword values from memory using writemask k1 for merging-masking.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 91 /vsib VPGATHERQQ ymm1 {k1}, vm64y	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed qword indices, gather quadword values from memory using writemask k1 for merging-masking.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 91 /vsib VPGATHERQQ zmm1 {k1}, vm64z	A	V/V	AVX512F	Using signed qword indices, gather quadword values from memory using writemask k1 for merging-masking.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	BaseReg (R): VSIB:base, VectorReg(R): VSIB:index	NA	NA

Description

A set of 8 doubleword/quadword memory locations pointed to by base address `BASE_ADDR` and index vector `VINDEX` with scale `SCALE` are gathered. The result is written into a vector register. The elements are specified via the `VSIB` (i.e., the index register is a vector register, holding packed indices). Elements will only be loaded if their corresponding mask bit is one. If an element's mask bit is not set, the corresponding element of the destination register is left unchanged. The entire mask register will be set to zero by this instruction unless it triggers an exception.

This instruction can be suspended by an exception if at least one element is already gathered (i.e., if the exception is triggered by an element other than the rightmost one with its mask bit set). When this happens, the destination register and the mask register (`k1`) are partially updated; those elements that have been gathered are placed into the destination register and have their mask bits set to zero. If any traps or interrupts are pending from already gathered elements, they will be delivered in lieu of the exception; in this case, `EFLAG.RF` is set to one so an instruction breakpoint is not re-triggered when the instruction is continued.

If the data element size is less than the index element size, the higher part of the destination register and the mask register do not correspond to any elements being gathered. This instruction sets those higher parts to zero. It may update these unused elements to one or both of those registers even if the instruction triggers an exception, and even if the instruction triggers the exception before gathering any elements.

Note that:

- The values may be read from memory in any order. Memory ordering with other instructions follows the Intel-64 memory-ordering model.
- Faults are delivered in a right-to-left manner. That is, if a fault is triggered by an element and delivered, all elements closer to the LSB of the destination `zmm` will be completed (and non-faulting). Individual elements closer to the MSB may or may not be completed. If a given element triggers multiple faults, they are delivered in the conventional order.
- Elements may be gathered in any order, but faults must be delivered in a right-to-left order; thus, elements to the left of a faulting one may be gathered before the fault is delivered. A given implementation of this instruction is repeatable - given the same input values and architectural state, the same set of elements to the left of the faulting one will be gathered.

- This instruction does not perform AC checks, and so will never deliver an AC fault.
- Not valid with 16-bit effective addresses. Will deliver a #UD fault.
- These instructions do not accept zeroing-masking since the 0 values in k1 are used to determine completion.

Note that the presence of VSIB byte is enforced in this instruction. Hence, the instruction will #UD fault if ModRM.rm is different than 100b.

This instruction has the same $\text{disp}8*N$ and alignment rules as for scalar instructions (Tuple 1).

The instruction will #UD fault if the destination vector zmm1 is the same as index vector VINDEX. The instruction will #UD fault if the k0 mask register is specified.

The scaled index may require more bits to represent than the address bits used by the processor (e.g., in 32-bit mode, if the scale is greater than one). In this case, the most significant bits beyond the number of address bits are ignored.

Operation

BASE_ADDR stands for the memory operand base address (a GPR); may not exist

VINDEX stands for the memory operand vector of indices (a ZMM register)

SCALE stands for the memory operand scalar (1, 2, 4 or 8)

DISP is the optional 1 or 4 byte displacement

VPGATHERQD (EVEX encoded version)

(KL, VL) = (2, 128), (4, 256), (8, 512)

FOR j ← 0 TO KL-1

 i ← j * 32

 k ← j * 64

 IF k1[jj]

 THEN DEST[i+31:i] ← MEM[BASE_ADDR + (VINDEX[k+63:k]) * SCALE + DISP], 1)

 k1[jj] ← 0

 ELSE *DEST[i+31:i] ← remains unchanged* ; Only merging masking is allowed

 FI;

ENDFOR

k1[MAX_KL-1:KL] ← 0

DEST[MAXVL-1:VL/2] ← 0

VPGATHERQQ (EVEX encoded version)

(KL, VL) = (2, 64), (4, 128), (8, 256)

FOR j ← 0 TO KL-1

 i ← j * 64

 IF k1[jj]

 THEN DEST[i+63:i] ←

 MEM[BASE_ADDR + (VINDEX[i+63:i]) * SCALE + DISP]

 k1[jj] ← 0

 ELSE *DEST[i+63:i] ← remains unchanged* ; Only merging masking is allowed

 FI;

ENDFOR

k1[MAX_KL-1:KL] ← 0

DEST[MAXVL-1:VL] ← 0

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

```
VPgatherQD __m256i __mm512_i64gather_epi32(__m512i vdx, void * base, int scale);  
VPgatherQD __m256i __mm512_mask_i64gather_epi32lo(__m256i s, __mmask8 k, __m512i vdx, void * base, int scale);  
VPgatherQD __m128i __mm256_mask_i64gather_epi32lo(__m128i s, __mmask8 k, __m256i vdx, void * base, int scale);  
VPgatherQD __m128i __mm_mask_i64gather_epi32(__m128i s, __mmask8 k, __m128i vdx, void * base, int scale);  
VPgatherQQ __m512i __mm512_i64gather_epi64(__m512i vdx, void * base, int scale);  
VPgatherQQ __m512i __mm512_mask_i64gather_epi64(__m512i s, __mmask8 k, __m512i vdx, void * base, int scale);  
VPgatherQQ __m256i __mm256_mask_i64gather_epi64(__m256i s, __mmask8 k, __m256i vdx, void * base, int scale);  
VPgatherQQ __m128i __mm_mask_i64gather_epi64(__m128i s, __mmask8 k, __m128i vdx, void * base, int scale);
```

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

See Exceptions Type E12.

VPMADD52HUQ—Packed Multiply of Unsigned 52-bit Unsigned Integers and Add High 52-bit Products to 64-bit Accumulators

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	32/64 bit Mode Support	CPUID	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 B5 /r VPMADD52HUQ xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	A	V/V	AVX512_IFMA AVX512VL	Multiply unsigned 52-bit integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128 and add the high 52 bits of the 104-bit product to the qword unsigned integers in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 B5 /r VPMADD52HUQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	A	V/V	AVX512_IFMA AVX512VL	Multiply unsigned 52-bit integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m128 and add the high 52 bits of the 104-bit product to the qword unsigned integers in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 B5 /r VPMADD52HUQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	A	V/V	AVX512_IFMA	Multiply unsigned 52-bit integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m128 and add the high 52 bits of the 104-bit product to the qword unsigned integers in zmm1 using writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Full	ModRM:reg (r, w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m(r)	NA

Description

Multiplies packed unsigned 52-bit integers in each qword element of the first source operand (the second operand) with the packed unsigned 52-bit integers in the corresponding elements of the second source operand (the third operand) to form packed 104-bit intermediate results. The high 52-bit, unsigned integer of each 104-bit product is added to the corresponding qword unsigned integer of the destination operand (the first operand) under the writemask k1.

The first source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register conditionally updated with writemask k1 at 64-bit granularity.

VPMADD52LUQ—Packed Multiply of Unsigned 52-bit Integers and Add the Low 52-bit Products to Qword Accumulators

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	32/64 bit Mode Support	CPUID	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 B4 /r VPMADD52LUQ xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2,xmm3/m128/m64bcst	A	V/V	AVX512_IFMA AVX512VL	Multiply unsigned 52-bit integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128 and add the low 52 bits of the 104-bit product to the qword unsigned integers in xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 B4 /r VPMADD52LUQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	A	V/V	AVX512_IFMA AVX512VL	Multiply unsigned 52-bit integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m128 and add the low 52 bits of the 104-bit product to the qword unsigned integers in ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 B4 /r VPMADD52LUQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2,zmm3/m512/m64bcst	A	V/V	AVX512_IFMA	Multiply unsigned 52-bit integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m128 and add the low 52 bits of the 104-bit product to the qword unsigned integers in zmm1 using writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Full	ModRM:reg (r, w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m(r)	NA

Description

Multiplies packed unsigned 52-bit integers in each qword element of the first source operand (the second operand) with the packed unsigned 52-bit integers in the corresponding elements of the second source operand (the third operand) to form packed 104-bit intermediate results. The low 52-bit, unsigned integer of each 104-bit product is added to the corresponding qword unsigned integer of the destination operand (the first operand) under the writemask k1.

The first source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register conditionally updated with writemask k1 at 64-bit granularity.

VPMASKMOV – Conditional SIMD Integer Packed Loads and Stores

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 -bit Mode	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 8C /r VPMASKMOVD <i>xmm1, xmm2, m128</i>	RVM	V/V	AVX2	Conditionally load dword values from <i>m128</i> using mask in <i>xmm2</i> and store in <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 8C /r VPMASKMOVD <i>ymm1, ymm2, m256</i>	RVM	V/V	AVX2	Conditionally load dword values from <i>m256</i> using mask in <i>ymm2</i> and store in <i>ymm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F38.W1 8C /r VPMASKMOVQ <i>xmm1, xmm2, m128</i>	RVM	V/V	AVX2	Conditionally load qword values from <i>m128</i> using mask in <i>xmm2</i> and store in <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F38.W1 8C /r VPMASKMOVQ <i>ymm1, ymm2, m256</i>	RVM	V/V	AVX2	Conditionally load qword values from <i>m256</i> using mask in <i>ymm2</i> and store in <i>ymm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 8E /r VPMASKMOVD <i>m128, xmm1, xmm2</i>	MVR	V/V	AVX2	Conditionally store dword values from <i>xmm2</i> using mask in <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 8E /r VPMASKMOVD <i>m256, ymm1, ymm2</i>	MVR	V/V	AVX2	Conditionally store dword values from <i>ymm2</i> using mask in <i>ymm1</i> .
VEX.128.66.0F38.W1 8E /r VPMASKMOVQ <i>m128, xmm1, xmm2</i>	MVR	V/V	AVX2	Conditionally store qword values from <i>xmm2</i> using mask in <i>xmm1</i> .
VEX.256.66.0F38.W1 8E /r VPMASKMOVQ <i>m256, ymm1, ymm2</i>	MVR	V/V	AVX2	Conditionally store qword values from <i>ymm2</i> using mask in <i>ymm1</i> .

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
RVM	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
MVR	ModRM:r/m (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:reg (r)	NA

Description

Conditionally moves packed data elements from the second source operand into the corresponding data element of the destination operand, depending on the mask bits associated with each data element. The mask bits are specified in the first source operand.

The mask bit for each data element is the most significant bit of that element in the first source operand. If a mask is 1, the corresponding data element is copied from the second source operand to the destination operand. If the mask is 0, the corresponding data element is set to zero in the load form of these instructions, and unmodified in the store form.

The second source operand is a memory address for the load form of these instructions. The destination operand is a memory address for the store form of these instructions. The other operands are either XMM registers (for VEX.128 version) or YMM registers (for VEX.256 version).

Faults occur only due to mask-bit required memory accesses that caused the faults. Faults will not occur due to referencing any memory location if the corresponding mask bit for that memory location is 0. For example, no faults will be detected if the mask bits are all zero.

Unlike previous MASKMOV instructions (MASKMOVQ and MASKMOVDQU), a nontemporal hint is not applied to these instructions.

Instruction behavior on alignment check reporting with mask bits of less than all 1s are the same as with mask bits of all 1s.

VPMULTISHIFTQB - Select Packed Unaligned Bytes from Quadword Sources

Opcode / Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 83 /r VPMULTISHIFTQB xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2,xmm3/m128/m64bcst	A	V/V	AVX512_VBMI AVX512VL	Select unaligned bytes from qwords in xmm3/m128/m64bcst using control bytes in xmm2, write byte results to xmm1 under k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 83 /r VPMULTISHIFTQB ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2,ymm3/m256/m64bcst	A	V/V	AVX512_VBMI AVX512VL	Select unaligned bytes from qwords in ymm3/m256/m64bcst using control bytes in ymm2, write byte results to ymm1 under k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 83 /r VPMULTISHIFTQB zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2,zmm3/m512/m64bcst	A	V/V	AVX512_VBMI	Select unaligned bytes from qwords in zmm3/m512/m64bcst using control bytes in zmm2, write byte results to zmm1 under k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

This instruction selects eight unaligned bytes from each input qword element of the second source operand (the third operand) and writes eight assembled bytes for each qword element in the destination operand (the first operand). Each byte result is selected using a byte-granular shift control within the corresponding qword element of the first source operand (the second operand). Each byte result in the destination operand is updated under the writemask k1.

Only the low 6 bits of each control byte are used to select an 8-bit slot to extract the output byte from the qword data in the second source operand. The starting bit of the 8-bit slot can be unaligned relative to any byte boundary and is extracted from the input qword source at the location specified in the low 6-bit of the control byte. If the 8-bit slot would exceed the qword boundary, the out-of-bound portion of the 8-bit slot is wrapped back to start from bit 0 of the input qword element.

The first source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register.

VPROLD/VPROLVD/VPROLQ/VPROLVQ—Bit Rotate Left

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 15 /r VPROLVD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Rotate doublewords in xmm2 left by count in the corresponding element of xmm3/m128/m32bcst. Result written to xmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W0 72 /1 ib VPROLD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2/m128/m32bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Rotate doublewords in xmm2/m128/m32bcst left by imm8. Result written to xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 15 /r VPROLVQ xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Rotate quadwords in xmm2 left by count in the corresponding element of xmm3/m128/m64bcst. Result written to xmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 72 /1 ib VPROLQ xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2/m128/m64bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Rotate quadwords in xmm2/m128/m64bcst left by imm8. Result written to xmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 15 /r VPROLVD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Rotate doublewords in ymm2 left by count in the corresponding element of ymm3/m256/m32bcst. Result written to ymm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W0 72 /1 ib VPROLD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2/m256/m32bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Rotate doublewords in ymm2/m256/m32bcst left by imm8. Result written to ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 15 /r VPROLVQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Rotate quadwords in ymm2 left by count in the corresponding element of ymm3/m256/m64bcst. Result written to ymm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W1 72 /1 ib VPROLQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2/m256/m64bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Rotate quadwords in ymm2/m256/m64bcst left by imm8. Result written to ymm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 15 /r VPROLVD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512F	Rotate left of doublewords in zmm2 by count in the corresponding element of zmm3/m512/m32bcst. Result written to zmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W0 72 /1 ib VPROLD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2/m512/m32bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512F	Rotate left of doublewords in zmm3/m512/m32bcst by imm8. Result written to zmm1 using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 15 /r VPROLVQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512F	Rotate quadwords in zmm2 left by count in the corresponding element of zmm3/m512/m64bcst. Result written to zmm1 under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W1 72 /1 ib VPROLQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2/m512/m64bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512F	Rotate quadwords in zmm2/m512/m64bcst left by imm8. Result written to zmm1 using writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Full	VEX.vvvv (w)	ModRM:r/m (R)	Imm8	NA
B	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

VPRORD/VPRORVD/VPRORQ/VPRORVQ—Bit Rotate Right

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 14 /r VPRORVD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Rotate doublewords in xmm2 right by count in the corresponding element of xmm3/m128/m32bcst, store result using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W0 72 /0 ib VPRORD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2/m128/m32bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Rotate doublewords in xmm2/m128/m32bcst right by imm8, store result using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 14 /r VPRORVQ xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Rotate quadwords in xmm2 right by count in the corresponding element of xmm3/m128/m64bcst, store result using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 72 /0 ib VPRORQ xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2/m128/m64bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Rotate quadwords in xmm2/m128/m64bcst right by imm8, store result using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 14 /r VPRORVD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Rotate doublewords in ymm2 right by count in the corresponding element of ymm3/m256/m32bcst, store using result writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W0 72 /0 ib VPRORD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2/m256/m32bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Rotate doublewords in ymm2/m256/m32bcst right by imm8, store result using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 14 /r VPRORVQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Rotate quadwords in ymm2 right by count in the corresponding element of ymm3/m256/m64bcst, store result using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W1 72 /0 ib VPRORQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2/m256/m64bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Rotate quadwords in ymm2/m256/m64bcst right by imm8, store result using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 14 /r VPRORVD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512F	Rotate doublewords in zmm2 right by count in the corresponding element of zmm3/m512/m32bcst, store result using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W0 72 /0 ib VPRORD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2/m512/m32bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512F	Rotate doublewords in zmm2/m512/m32bcst right by imm8, store result using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 14 /r VPRORVQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512F	Rotate quadwords in zmm2 right by count in the corresponding element of zmm3/m512/m64bcst, store result using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W1 72 /0 ib VPRORQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2/m512/m64bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512F	Rotate quadwords in zmm2/m512/m64bcst right by imm8, store result using writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Full	VEX.vvvv (w)	ModRM:r/m (R)	Imm8	NA
B	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

VPSCATTERDD/VPSCATTERDQ/VPSCATTERQD/VPSCATTERQQ—Scatter Packed Dword, Packed Qword with Signed Dword, Signed Qword Indices

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bitMode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 A0 /vsib VPSCATTERDD vm32x {k1}, xmm1	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed dword indices, scatter dword values to memory using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 A0 /vsib VPSCATTERDD vm32y {k1}, ymm1	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed dword indices, scatter dword values to memory using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 A0 /vsib VPSCATTERDD vm32z {k1}, zmm1	A	V/V	AVX512F	Using signed dword indices, scatter dword values to memory using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 A0 /vsib VPSCATTERDQ vm32x {k1}, xmm1	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed dword indices, scatter qword values to memory using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 A0 /vsib VPSCATTERDQ vm32y {k1}, ymm1	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed dword indices, scatter qword values to memory using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 A0 /vsib VPSCATTERDQ vm32y {k1}, zmm1	A	V/V	AVX512F	Using signed dword indices, scatter qword values to memory using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 A1 /vsib VPSCATTERQD vm64x {k1}, xmm1	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed qword indices, scatter dword values to memory using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 A1 /vsib VPSCATTERQD vm64y {k1}, xmm1	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed qword indices, scatter dword values to memory using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 A1 /vsib VPSCATTERQD vm64z {k1}, ymm1	A	V/V	AVX512F	Using signed qword indices, scatter dword values to memory using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 A1 /vsib VPSCATTERQQ vm64x {k1}, xmm1	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed qword indices, scatter qword values to memory using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 A1 /vsib VPSCATTERQQ vm64y {k1}, ymm1	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed qword indices, scatter qword values to memory using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 A1 /vsib VPSCATTERQQ vm64z {k1}, zmm1	A	V/V	AVX512F	Using signed qword indices, scatter qword values to memory using writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1 Scalar	BaseReg (R): VSIB:base, VectorReg(R): VSIB:index	ModRM:reg (r)	NA	NA

Description

Stores up to 16 elements (8 elements for qword indices) in doubleword vector or 8 elements in quadword vector to the memory locations pointed by base address `BASE_ADDR` and index vector `VINDEX`, with scale `SCALE`. The elements are specified via the VSIB (i.e., the index register is a vector register, holding packed indices). Elements will only be stored if their corresponding mask bit is one. The entire mask register will be set to zero by this instruction unless it triggers an exception.

This instruction can be suspended by an exception if at least one element is already scattered (i.e., if the exception is triggered by an element other than the rightmost one with its mask bit set). When this happens, the destination register and the mask register are partially updated. If any traps or interrupts are pending from already scattered elements, they will be delivered in lieu of the exception; in this case, `EFLAG.RF` is set to one so an instruction breakpoint is not re-triggered when the instruction is continued.

Note that:

- Only writes to overlapping vector indices are guaranteed to be ordered with respect to each other (from LSB to MSB of the source registers). Note that this also include partially overlapping vector indices. Writes that are not overlapped may happen in any order. Memory ordering with other instructions follows the Intel-64 memory ordering model. Note that this does not account for non-overlapping indices that map into the same physical address locations.

- If two or more destination indices completely overlap, the “earlier” write(s) may be skipped.
- Faults are delivered in a right-to-left manner. That is, if a fault is triggered by an element and delivered, all elements closer to the LSB of the destination ZMM will be completed (and non-faulting). Individual elements closer to the MSB may or may not be completed. If a given element triggers multiple faults, they are delivered in the conventional order.
- Elements may be scattered in any order, but faults must be delivered in a right-to-left order; thus, elements to the left of a faulting one may be gathered before the fault is delivered. A given implementation of this instruction is repeatable - given the same input values and architectural state, the same set of elements to the left of the faulting one will be gathered.
- This instruction does not perform AC checks, and so will never deliver an AC fault.
- Not valid with 16-bit effective addresses. Will deliver a #UD fault.
- If this instruction overwrites itself and then takes a fault, only a subset of elements may be completed before the fault is delivered (as described above). If the fault handler completes and attempts to re-execute this instruction, the new instruction will be executed, and the scatter will not complete.

Note that the presence of VSIB byte is enforced in this instruction. Hence, the instruction will #UD fault if ModRM.rm is different than 100b.

This instruction has special $\text{disp8} * N$ and alignment rules. N is considered to be the size of a single vector element. The scaled index may require more bits to represent than the address bits used by the processor (e.g., in 32-bit mode, if the scale is greater than one). In this case, the most significant bits beyond the number of address bits are ignored.

The instruction will #UD fault if the k0 mask register is specified.

The instruction will #UD fault if EVEX.Z = 1.

Operation

BASE_ADDR stands for the memory operand base address (a GPR); may not exist

VINDEX stands for the memory operand vector of indices (a ZMM register)

SCALE stands for the memory operand scalar (1, 2, 4 or 8)

DISP is the optional 1 or 4 byte displacement

VPSCATTERDD (EVEX encoded versions)

(KL, VL) = (4, 128), (8, 256), (16, 512)

FOR $j \leftarrow 0$ TO $KL-1$

$i \leftarrow j * 32$

IF $k1[j]$ OR *no writemask*

THEN $\text{MEM}[\text{BASE_ADDR} + \text{SignExtend}(\text{VINDEX}[i+31:i]) * \text{SCALE} + \text{DISP}] \leftarrow \text{SRC}[i+31:i]$

$k1[j] \leftarrow 0$

FI;

ENDFOR

$k1[\text{MAX_KL}-1:KL] \leftarrow 0$

VPSCATTERDQ (EVEX encoded versions)

(KL, VL) = (2, 128), (4, 256), (8, 512)

FOR $j \leftarrow 0$ TO $KL-1$

$i \leftarrow j * 64$

$k \leftarrow j * 32$

IF $k1[j]$ OR *no writemask*

THEN $\text{MEM}[\text{BASE_ADDR} + \text{SignExtend}(\text{VINDEX}[k+31:k]) * \text{SCALE} + \text{DISP}] \leftarrow \text{SRC}[i+63:i]$

$k1[j] \leftarrow 0$

FI;

ENDFOR

$k1[\text{MAX_KL}-1:KL] \leftarrow 0$

VPSCATTERQD (EVEX encoded versions)

(KL, VL)=(2, 128), (4, 256), (8, 512)

FOR j ← 0 TO KL-1

i ← j * 32

k ← j * 64

IF k1[j] OR *no writemask*

THEN MEM[BASE_ADDR + (VINDEK[k+63:k]) * SCALE + DISP] ← SRC[i+31:i]

k1[j] ← 0

FI;

ENDFOR

k1[MAX_KL-1:KL] ← 0

VPSCATTERQQ (EVEX encoded versions)

(KL, VL)=(2, 128), (4, 256), (8, 512)

FOR j ← 0 TO KL-1

i ← j * 64

IF k1[j] OR *no writemask*

THEN MEM[BASE_ADDR + (VINDEK[j+63:j]) * SCALE + DISP] ← SRC[i+63:i]

FI;

ENDFOR

k1[MAX_KL-1:KL] ← 0

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

VPSCATTERDD void __mm512_i32scatter_epi32(void * base, __m512i vdx, __m512i a, int scale);

VPSCATTERDD void __mm256_i32scatter_epi32(void * base, __m256i vdx, __m256i a, int scale);

VPSCATTERDD void __mm_i32scatter_epi32(void * base, __m128i vdx, __m128i a, int scale);

VPSCATTERDD void __mm512_mask_i32scatter_epi32(void * base, __mmask16 k, __m512i vdx, __m512i a, int scale);

VPSCATTERDD void __mm256_mask_i32scatter_epi32(void * base, __mmask8 k, __m256i vdx, __m256i a, int scale);

VPSCATTERDD void __mm_mask_i32scatter_epi32(void * base, __mmask8 k, __m128i vdx, __m128i a, int scale);

VPSCATTERDQ void __mm512_i32scatter_epi64(void * base, __m256i vdx, __m512i a, int scale);

VPSCATTERDQ void __mm256_i32scatter_epi64(void * base, __m128i vdx, __m256i a, int scale);

VPSCATTERDQ void __mm_i32scatter_epi64(void * base, __m128i vdx, __m128i a, int scale);

VPSCATTERDQ void __mm512_mask_i32scatter_epi64(void * base, __mmask8 k, __m256i vdx, __m512i a, int scale);

VPSCATTERDQ void __mm256_mask_i32scatter_epi64(void * base, __mmask8 k, __m128i vdx, __m256i a, int scale);

VPSCATTERDQ void __mm_mask_i32scatter_epi64(void * base, __mmask8 k, __m128i vdx, __m128i a, int scale);

VPSCATTERQD void __mm512_i64scatter_epi32(void * base, __m512i vdx, __m256i a, int scale);

VPSCATTERQD void __mm256_i64scatter_epi32(void * base, __m256i vdx, __m128i a, int scale);

VPSCATTERQD void __mm_i64scatter_epi32(void * base, __m128i vdx, __m128i a, int scale);

VPSCATTERQD void __mm512_mask_i64scatter_epi32(void * base, __mmask8 k, __m512i vdx, __m256i a, int scale);

VPSCATTERQD void __mm256_mask_i64scatter_epi32(void * base, __mmask8 k, __m256i vdx, __m128i a, int scale);

VPSCATTERQD void __mm_mask_i64scatter_epi32(void * base, __mmask8 k, __m128i vdx, __m128i a, int scale);

VPSCATTERQQ void __mm512_i64scatter_epi64(void * base, __m512i vdx, __m512i a, int scale);

VPSCATTERQQ void __mm256_i64scatter_epi64(void * base, __m256i vdx, __m256i a, int scale);

VPSCATTERQQ void __mm_i64scatter_epi64(void * base, __m128i vdx, __m128i a, int scale);

VPSCATTERQQ void __mm512_mask_i64scatter_epi64(void * base, __mmask8 k, __m512i vdx, __m512i a, int scale);

VPSCATTERQQ void __mm256_mask_i64scatter_epi64(void * base, __mmask8 k, __m256i vdx, __m256i a, int scale);

VPSCATTERQQ void __mm_mask_i64scatter_epi64(void * base, __mmask8 k, __m128i vdx, __m128i a, int scale);

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

See Exceptions Type E12.

VPSLLVW/VPSLLVD/VPSLLVQ—Variable Bit Shift Left Logical

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 47 /r VPSLLVD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	AVX2	Shift doublewords in xmm2 left by amount specified in the corresponding element of xmm3/m128 while shifting in 0s.
VEX.128.66.0F38.W1 47 /r VPSLLVQ xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	AVX2	Shift quadwords in xmm2 left by amount specified in the corresponding element of xmm3/m128 while shifting in 0s.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 47 /r VPSLLVD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	AVX2	Shift doublewords in ymm2 left by amount specified in the corresponding element of ymm3/m256 while shifting in 0s.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W1 47 /r VPSLLVQ ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	AVX2	Shift quadwords in ymm2 left by amount specified in the corresponding element of ymm3/m256 while shifting in 0s.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 12 /r VPSLLVW xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Shift words in xmm2 left by amount specified in the corresponding element of xmm3/m128 while shifting in 0s using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 12 /r VPSLLVW ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Shift words in ymm2 left by amount specified in the corresponding element of ymm3/m256 while shifting in 0s using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 12 /r VPSLLVW zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	B	V/V	AVX512BW	Shift words in zmm2 left by amount specified in the corresponding element of zmm3/m512 while shifting in 0s using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 47 /r VPSLLVD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift doublewords in xmm2 left by amount specified in the corresponding element of xmm3/m128/m32bcst while shifting in 0s using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 47 /r VPSLLVD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift doublewords in ymm2 left by amount specified in the corresponding element of ymm3/m256/m32bcst while shifting in 0s using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 47 /r VPSLLVD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512F	Shift doublewords in zmm2 left by amount specified in the corresponding element of zmm3/m512/m32bcst while shifting in 0s using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 47 /r VPSLLVQ xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift quadwords in xmm2 left by amount specified in the corresponding element of xmm3/m128/m64bcst while shifting in 0s using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 47 /r VPSLLVQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift quadwords in ymm2 left by amount specified in the corresponding element of ymm3/m256/m64bcst while shifting in 0s using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 47 /r VPSLLVQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512F	Shift quadwords in zmm2 left by amount specified in the corresponding element of zmm3/m512/m64bcst while shifting in 0s using writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
B	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Shifts the bits in the individual data elements (words, doublewords or quadword) in the first source operand to the left by the count value of respective data elements in the second source operand. As the bits in the data elements are shifted left, the empty low-order bits are cleared (set to 0).

The count values are specified individually in each data element of the second source operand. If the unsigned integer value specified in the respective data element of the second source operand is greater than 15 (for word), 31 (for doublewords), or 63 (for a quadword), then the destination data element are written with 0.

VEX.128 encoded version: The destination and first source operands are XMM registers. The count operand can be either an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1: 128) of the corresponding destination register are zeroed.

VEX.256 encoded version: The destination and first source operands are YMM registers. The count operand can be either an YMM register or a 256-bit memory. Bits (MAXVL-1: 256) of the corresponding ZMM register are zeroed.

EVEX encoded VPSLLVD/Q: The destination and first source operands are ZMM/YMM/XMM registers. The count operand can be either a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512-bit vector broadcasted from a 32/64-bit memory location. The destination is conditionally updated with writemask k1.

EVEX encoded VPSLLVW: The destination and first source operands are ZMM/YMM/XMM registers. The count operand can be either a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location. The destination is conditionally updated with writemask k1.

Operation**VPSLLVW (EVEX encoded version)**

(KL, VL) = (8, 128), (16, 256), (32, 512)

```

FOR j ← 0 TO KL-1
  i ← j * 16
  IF k1[j] OR *no writemask*
    THEN DEST[i+15:i] ← ZeroExtend(SRC1[i+15:i] << SRC2[i+15:i])
  ELSE
    IF *merging-masking*           ; merging-masking
      THEN *DEST[i+15:i] remains unchanged*
    ELSE                             ; zeroing-masking
      DEST[i+15:i] ← 0
    FI
  FI;
ENDFOR;
DEST[MAXVL-1:VL] ← 0;

```

VPSLLVD (VEX.128 version)

```

COUNT_0 ← SRC2[31 : 0]
(* Repeat Each COUNT_i for the 2nd through 4th dwords of SRC2*)
COUNT_3 ← SRC2[127 : 96];
IF COUNT_0 < 32 THEN
DEST[31:0] ← ZeroExtend(SRC1[31:0] << COUNT_0);
ELSE
DEST[31:0] ← 0;
(* Repeat shift operation for 2nd through 4th dwords *)
IF COUNT_3 < 32 THEN
DEST[127:96] ← ZeroExtend(SRC1[127:96] << COUNT_3);
ELSE
DEST[127:96] ← 0;
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0;

```

VPSLLVD (VEX.256 version)

```

COUNT_0 ← SRC2[31 : 0];
(* Repeat Each COUNT_i for the 2nd through 7th dwords of SRC2*)
COUNT_7 ← SRC2[255 : 224];
IF COUNT_0 < 32 THEN
DEST[31:0] ← ZeroExtend(SRC1[31:0] << COUNT_0);
ELSE
DEST[31:0] ← 0;
(* Repeat shift operation for 2nd through 7th dwords *)
IF COUNT_7 < 32 THEN
DEST[255:224] ← ZeroExtend(SRC1[255:224] << COUNT_7);
ELSE
DEST[255:224] ← 0;
DEST[MAXVL-1:256] ← 0;

```

VPSLLVD (EVEX encoded version)

```

(KL, VL) = (4, 128), (8, 256), (16, 512)
FOR j ← 0 TO KL-1
  i ← j * 32
  IF k1[j] OR *no writemask* THEN
    IF (EVEX.b = 1) AND (SRC2 *is memory*)
      THEN DEST[i+31:i] ← ZeroExtend(SRC1[i+31:i] << SRC2[31:0])
      ELSE DEST[i+31:i] ← ZeroExtend(SRC1[i+31:i] << SRC2[i+31:i])
    FI;
  ELSE
    IF *merging-masking* ; merging-masking
      THEN *DEST[i+31:i] remains unchanged*
    ELSE ; zeroing-masking
      DEST[i+31:i] ← 0
    FI
  FI;
ENDFOR;
DEST[MAXVL-1:VL] ← 0;

```

VPSLLVQ (VEX.128 version)

```

COUNT_0 ← SRC2[63 : 0];
COUNT_1 ← SRC2[127 : 64];
IF COUNT_0 < 64 THEN
DEST[63:0] ← ZeroExtend(SRC1[63:0] << COUNT_0);
ELSE
DEST[63:0] ← 0;
IF COUNT_1 < 64 THEN
DEST[127:64] ← ZeroExtend(SRC1[127:64] << COUNT_1);
ELSE
DEST[127:96] ← 0;
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0;

```

VPSLLVQ (VEX.256 version)

```

COUNT_0 ← SRC2[63 : 0];
(* Repeat Each COUNT_i for the 2nd through 4th dwords of SRC2*)
COUNT_3 ← SRC2[255 : 192];
IF COUNT_0 < 64 THEN
DEST[63:0] ← ZeroExtend(SRC1[63:0] << COUNT_0);
ELSE
DEST[63:0] ← 0;
(* Repeat shift operation for 2nd through 4th dwords *)
IF COUNT_3 < 64 THEN
DEST[255:192] ← ZeroExtend(SRC1[255:192] << COUNT_3);
ELSE
DEST[255:192] ← 0;
DEST[MAXVL-1:256] ← 0;

```

VPSLLVQ (EVEX encoded version)

```

(KL, VL) = (2, 128), (4, 256), (8, 512)
FOR j ← 0 TO KL-1
  i ← j * 64
  IF k1[j] OR *no writemask* THEN
    IF (EVEX.b = 1) AND (SRC2 *is memory*)
      THEN DEST[i+63:i] ← ZeroExtend(SRC1[i+63:i] << SRC2[63:0])
      ELSE DEST[i+63:i] ← ZeroExtend(SRC1[i+63:i] << SRC2[i+63:i])
    FI;
  ELSE
    IF *merging-masking* ; merging-masking
      THEN *DEST[i+63:i] remains unchanged*
    ELSE ; zeroing-masking
      DEST[i+63:i] ← 0
    FI
  FI;
ENDFOR;
DEST[MAXVL-1:VL] ← 0;

```

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

VPSLLVW __m512i _mm512_sllv_epi16(__m512i a, __m512i cnt);
 VPSLLVW __m512i _mm512_mask_sllv_epi16(__m512i s, __mmask32 k, __m512i a, __m512i cnt);
 VPSLLVW __m512i _mm512_maskz_sllv_epi16(__mmask32 k, __m512i a, __m512i cnt);
 VPSLLVW __m256i _mm256_mask_sllv_epi16(__m256i s, __mmask16 k, __m256i a, __m256i cnt);
 VPSLLVW __m256i _mm256_maskz_sllv_epi16(__mmask16 k, __m256i a, __m256i cnt);
 VPSLLVW __m128i _mm_mask_sllv_epi16(__m128i s, __mmask8 k, __m128i a, __m128i cnt);
 VPSLLVW __m128i _mm_maskz_sllv_epi16(__mmask8 k, __m128i a, __m128i cnt);
 VPSLLVD __m512i _mm512_sllv_epi32(__m512i a, __m512i cnt);
 VPSLLVD __m512i _mm512_mask_sllv_epi32(__m512i s, __mmask16 k, __m512i a, __m512i cnt);
 VPSLLVD __m512i _mm512_maskz_sllv_epi32(__mmask16 k, __m512i a, __m512i cnt);
 VPSLLVD __m256i _mm256_mask_sllv_epi32(__m256i s, __mmask8 k, __m256i a, __m256i cnt);
 VPSLLVD __m256i _mm256_maskz_sllv_epi32(__mmask8 k, __m256i a, __m256i cnt);
 VPSLLVD __m128i _mm_mask_sllv_epi32(__m128i s, __mmask8 k, __m128i a, __m128i cnt);
 VPSLLVD __m128i _mm_maskz_sllv_epi32(__mmask8 k, __m128i a, __m128i cnt);
 VPSLLVQ __m512i _mm512_sllv_epi64(__m512i a, __m512i cnt);
 VPSLLVQ __m512i _mm512_mask_sllv_epi64(__m512i s, __mmask8 k, __m512i a, __m512i cnt);
 VPSLLVQ __m512i _mm512_maskz_sllv_epi64(__mmask8 k, __m512i a, __m512i cnt);
 VPSLLVD __m256i _mm256_mask_sllv_epi64(__m256i s, __mmask8 k, __m256i a, __m256i cnt);
 VPSLLVD __m256i _mm256_maskz_sllv_epi64(__mmask8 k, __m256i a, __m256i cnt);
 VPSLLVD __m128i _mm_mask_sllv_epi64(__m128i s, __mmask8 k, __m128i a, __m128i cnt);
 VPSLLVD __m128i _mm_maskz_sllv_epi64(__mmask8 k, __m128i a, __m128i cnt);
 VPSLLVD __m256i _mm256_sllv_epi32(__m256i m, __m256i count)
 VPSLLVQ __m256i _mm256_sllv_epi64(__m256i m, __m256i count)

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

VEX-encoded instructions, see Exceptions Type 4.
 EVEX-encoded VPSLLVD/VPSLLVQ, see Exceptions Type E4.
 EVEX-encoded VPSLLVW, see Exceptions Type E4.nb.

VPSRAVW/VPSRAVD/VPSRAVQ—Variable Bit Shift Right Arithmetic

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 46 /r VPSRAVD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	AVX2	Shift doublewords in xmm2 right by amount specified in the corresponding element of xmm3/m128 while shifting in sign bits.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 46 /r VPSRAVD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	AVX2	Shift doublewords in ymm2 right by amount specified in the corresponding element of ymm3/m256 while shifting in sign bits.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 11 /r VPSRAVW xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Shift words in xmm2 right by amount specified in the corresponding element of xmm3/m128 while shifting in sign bits using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 11 /r VPSRAVW ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Shift words in ymm2 right by amount specified in the corresponding element of ymm3/m256 while shifting in sign bits using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 11 /r VPSRAVW zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	B	V/V	AVX512BW	Shift words in zmm2 right by amount specified in the corresponding element of zmm3/m512 while shifting in sign bits using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 46 /r VPSRAVD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift doublewords in xmm2 right by amount specified in the corresponding element of xmm3/m128/m32bcst while shifting in sign bits using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 46 /r VPSRAVD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift doublewords in ymm2 right by amount specified in the corresponding element of ymm3/m256/m32bcst while shifting in sign bits using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 46 /r VPSRAVD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512F	Shift doublewords in zmm2 right by amount specified in the corresponding element of zmm3/m512/m32bcst while shifting in sign bits using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 46 /r VPSRAVQ xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift quadwords in xmm2 right by amount specified in the corresponding element of xmm3/m128/m64bcst while shifting in sign bits using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 46 /r VPSRAVQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift quadwords in ymm2 right by amount specified in the corresponding element of ymm3/m256/m64bcst while shifting in sign bits using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 46 /r VPSRAVQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512F	Shift quadwords in zmm2 right by amount specified in the corresponding element of zmm3/m512/m64bcst while shifting in sign bits using writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
B	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Shifts the bits in the individual data elements (word/doublewords/quadword) in the first source operand (the second operand) to the right by the number of bits specified in the count value of respective data elements in the second source operand (the third operand). As the bits in the data elements are shifted right, the empty high-order bits are set to the MSB (sign extension).

The count values are specified individually in each data element of the second source operand. If the unsigned integer value specified in the respective data element of the second source operand is greater than 15 (for words), 31 (for doublewords), or 63 (for a quadword), then the destination data element is filled with the corresponding sign bit of the source element.

VEX.128 encoded version: The destination and first source operands are XMM registers. The count operand can be either an XMM register or a 128-bit memory location. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding destination register are zeroed.

VEX.256 encoded version: The destination and first source operands are YMM registers. The count operand can be either an YMM register or a 256-bit memory. Bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding destination register are zeroed.

EVEX.512/256/128 encoded VPSRAVD/W: The destination and first source operands are ZMM/YMM/XMM registers. The count operand can be either a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 32/64-bit memory location. The destination is conditionally updated with writemask k1.

EVEX.512/256/128 encoded VPSRAVQ: The destination and first source operands are ZMM/YMM/XMM registers. The count operand can be either a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location. The destination is conditionally updated with writemask k1.

Operation

VPSRAVW (EVEX encoded version)

(KL, VL) = (8, 128), (16, 256), (32, 512)

```

FOR j ← 0 TO KL-1
  i ← j * 16
  IF k1[j] OR *no writemask*
    THEN
      COUNT ← SRC2[i+3:i]
      IF COUNT < 16
        THEN DEST[i+15:i] ← SignExtend(SRC1[i+15:i] >> COUNT)
        ELSE
          FOR k ← 0 TO 15
            DEST[i+k] ← SRC1[i+15]
          ENDFOR;
        FI
      ELSE
        IF *merging-masking* ; merging-masking
          THEN *DEST[i+15:i] remains unchanged*
          ELSE ; zeroing-masking
            DEST[i+15:i] ← 0
          FI
        FI;
      ENDFOR;
    DEST[MAXVL-1:VL] ← 0;
  
```


VPSRAVD (VEX.128 version)

```

COUNT_0 ← SRC2[31 : 0]
(* Repeat Each COUNT_i for the 2nd through 4th dwords of SRC2*)
COUNT_3 ← SRC2[127 : 96];
DEST[31:0] ← SignExtend(SRC1[31:0] >> COUNT_0);
(* Repeat shift operation for 2nd through 4th dwords *)
DEST[127:96] ← SignExtend(SRC1[127:96] >> COUNT_3);
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0;

```

VPSRAVD (VEX.256 version)

```

COUNT_0 ← SRC2[31 : 0];
(* Repeat Each COUNT_i for the 2nd through 8th dwords of SRC2*)
COUNT_7 ← SRC2[255 : 224];
DEST[31:0] ← SignExtend(SRC1[31:0] >> COUNT_0);
(* Repeat shift operation for 2nd through 7th dwords *)
DEST[255:224] ← SignExtend(SRC1[255:224] >> COUNT_7);
DEST[MAXVL-1:256] ← 0;

```

VPSRAVD (EVEX encoded version)

(KL, VL) = (4, 128), (8, 256), (16, 512)

```

FOR j ← 0 TO KL-1
  i ← j * 32
  IF k1[j] OR *no writemask* THEN
    IF (EVEX.b = 1) AND (SRC2 *is memory*)
      THEN
        COUNT ← SRC2[4:0]
        IF COUNT < 32
          THEN DEST[i+31:i] ← SignExtend(SRC1[i+31:i] >> COUNT)
          ELSE
            FOR k ← 0 TO 31
              DEST[i+k] ← SRC1[i+31]
            ENDFOR;
          FI
        ELSE
          COUNT ← SRC2[i+4:i]
          IF COUNT < 32
            THEN DEST[i+31:i] ← SignExtend(SRC1[i+31:i] >> COUNT)
            ELSE
              FOR k ← 0 TO 31
                DEST[i+k] ← SRC1[i+31]
              ENDFOR;
            FI
          FI;
        ELSE
          IF *merging-masking* ; merging-masking
            THEN *DEST[31:0] remains unchanged*
          ELSE ; zeroing-masking
            DEST[31:0] ← 0
          FI
        FI;
      ENDFOR;
    DEST[MAXVL-1:VL] ← 0;

```

VPSRAVQ (EVEX encoded version)

(KL, VL) = (2, 128), (4, 256), (8, 512)

FOR j ← 0 TO KL-1

i ← j * 64

IF k1[j] OR *no writemask* THEN

IF (EVEX.b = 1) AND (SRC2 *is memory*)

THEN

COUNT ← SRC2[5:0]

IF COUNT < 64

THEN DEST[i+63:i] ← SignExtend(SRC1[i+63:i] >> COUNT)

ELSE

FOR k ← 0 TO 63

DEST[i+k] ← SRC1[i+63]

ENDFOR;

FI

ELSE

COUNT ← SRC2[i+5:i]

IF COUNT < 64

THEN DEST[i+63:i] ← SignExtend(SRC1[i+63:i] >> COUNT)

ELSE

FOR k ← 0 TO 63

DEST[i+k] ← SRC1[i+63]

ENDFOR;

FI

FI;

ELSE

IF *merging-masking* ; merging-masking

THEN *DEST[63:0] remains unchanged*

ELSE ; zeroing-masking

DEST[63:0] ← 0

FI

FI;

ENDFOR;

DEST[MAXVL-1:VL] ← 0;

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

```

VPSRAVD __m512i _mm512_srav_epi32(__m512i a, __m512i cnt);
VPSRAVD __m512i _mm512_mask_srav_epi32(__m512i s, __mmask16 m, __m512i a, __m512i cnt);
VPSRAVD __m512i _mm512_maskz_srav_epi32(__mmask16 m, __m512i a, __m512i cnt);
VPSRAVD __m256i _mm256_srav_epi32(__m256i a, __m256i cnt);
VPSRAVD __m256i _mm256_mask_srav_epi32(__m256i s, __mmask8 m, __m256i a, __m256i cnt);
VPSRAVD __m256i _mm256_maskz_srav_epi32(__mmask8 m, __m256i a, __m256i cnt);
VPSRAVD __m128i _mm_srav_epi32(__m128i a, __m128i cnt);
VPSRAVD __m128i _mm_mask_srav_epi32(__m128i s, __mmask8 m, __m128i a, __m128i cnt);
VPSRAVD __m128i _mm_maskz_srav_epi32(__mmask8 m, __m128i a, __m128i cnt);
VPSRAVQ __m512i _mm512_srav_epi64(__m512i a, __m512i cnt);
VPSRAVQ __m512i _mm512_mask_srav_epi64(__m512i s, __mmask8 m, __m512i a, __m512i cnt);
VPSRAVQ __m512i _mm512_maskz_srav_epi64(__mmask8 m, __m512i a, __m512i cnt);
VPSRAVQ __m256i _mm256_srav_epi64(__m256i a, __m256i cnt);
VPSRAVQ __m256i _mm256_mask_srav_epi64(__m256i s, __mmask8 m, __m256i a, __m256i cnt);
VPSRAVQ __m256i _mm256_maskz_srav_epi64(__mmask8 m, __m256i a, __m256i cnt);
VPSRAVQ __m128i _mm_srav_epi64(__m128i a, __m128i cnt);
VPSRAVQ __m128i _mm_mask_srav_epi64(__m128i s, __mmask8 m, __m128i a, __m128i cnt);
VPSRAVQ __m128i _mm_maskz_srav_epi64(__mmask8 m, __m128i a, __m128i cnt);
VPSRAVW __m512i _mm512_srav_epi16(__m512i a, __m512i cnt);
VPSRAVW __m512i _mm512_mask_srav_epi16(__m512i s, __mmask32 m, __m512i a, __m512i cnt);
VPSRAVW __m512i _mm512_maskz_srav_epi16(__mmask32 m, __m512i a, __m512i cnt);
VPSRAVW __m256i _mm256_srav_epi16(__m256i a, __m256i cnt);
VPSRAVW __m256i _mm256_mask_srav_epi16(__m256i s, __mmask16 m, __m256i a, __m256i cnt);
VPSRAVW __m256i _mm256_maskz_srav_epi16(__mmask16 m, __m256i a, __m256i cnt);
VPSRAVW __m128i _mm_srav_epi16(__m128i a, __m128i cnt);
VPSRAVW __m128i _mm_mask_srav_epi16(__m128i s, __mmask8 m, __m128i a, __m128i cnt);
VPSRAVW __m128i _mm_maskz_srav_epi32(__mmask8 m, __m128i a, __m128i cnt);
VPSRAVD __m256i _mm256_srav_epi32(__m256i m, __m256i count)

```

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

Non-EVEX-encoded instruction, see Exceptions Type 4.

EVEX-encoded instruction, see Exceptions Type E4.

VPSRLVW/VPSRLVD/VPSRLVQ—Variable Bit Shift Right Logical

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bitMode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
VEX.128.66.0F38.W0 45 /r VPSRLVD xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	AVX2	Shift doublewords in xmm2 right by amount specified in the corresponding element of xmm3/m128 while shifting in 0s.
VEX.128.66.0F38.W1 45 /r VPSRLVQ xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	AVX2	Shift quadwords in xmm2 right by amount specified in the corresponding element of xmm3/m128 while shifting in 0s.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W0 45 /r VPSRLVD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	AVX2	Shift doublewords in ymm2 right by amount specified in the corresponding element of ymm3/m256 while shifting in 0s.
VEX.256.66.0F38.W1 45 /r VPSRLVQ ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	AVX2	Shift quadwords in ymm2 right by amount specified in the corresponding element of ymm3/m256 while shifting in 0s.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 10 /r VPSRLVW xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Shift words in xmm2 right by amount specified in the corresponding element of xmm3/m128 while shifting in 0s using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 10 /r VPSRLVW ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Shift words in ymm2 right by amount specified in the corresponding element of ymm3/m256 while shifting in 0s using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 10 /r VPSRLVW zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	B	V/V	AVX512BW	Shift words in zmm2 right by amount specified in the corresponding element of zmm3/m512 while shifting in 0s using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 45 /r VPSRLVD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift doublewords in xmm2 right by amount specified in the corresponding element of xmm3/m128/m32bcst while shifting in 0s using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 45 /r VPSRLVD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift doublewords in ymm2 right by amount specified in the corresponding element of ymm3/m256/m32bcst while shifting in 0s using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 45 /r VPSRLVD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512F	Shift doublewords in zmm2 right by amount specified in the corresponding element of zmm3/m512/m32bcst while shifting in 0s using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 45 /r VPSRLVQ xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift quadwords in xmm2 right by amount specified in the corresponding element of xmm3/m128/m64bcst while shifting in 0s using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 45 /r VPSRLVQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shift quadwords in ymm2 right by amount specified in the corresponding element of ymm3/m256/m64bcst while shifting in 0s using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 45 /r VPSRLVQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512F	Shift quadwords in zmm2 right by amount specified in the corresponding element of zmm3/m512/m64bcst while shifting in 0s using writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
B	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

VPTERNLOGD/VPTERNLOGQ—Bitwise Ternary Logic

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F3A.W0 25 /r ib VPTERNLOGD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Bitwise ternary logic taking xmm1, xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst as source operands and writing the result to xmm1 under writemask k1 with dword granularity. The immediate value determines the specific binary function being implemented.
EVEX.256.66.0F3A.W0 25 /r ib VPTERNLOGD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Bitwise ternary logic taking ymm1, ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst as source operands and writing the result to ymm1 under writemask k1 with dword granularity. The immediate value determines the specific binary function being implemented.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W0 25 /r ib VPTERNLOGD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512F	Bitwise ternary logic taking zmm1, zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst as source operands and writing the result to zmm1 under writemask k1 with dword granularity. The immediate value determines the specific binary function being implemented.
EVEX.128.66.0F3A.W1 25 /r ib VPTERNLOGQ xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Bitwise ternary logic taking xmm1, xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst as source operands and writing the result to xmm1 under writemask k1 with qword granularity. The immediate value determines the specific binary function being implemented.
EVEX.256.66.0F3A.W1 25 /r ib VPTERNLOGQ ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Bitwise ternary logic taking ymm1, ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst as source operands and writing the result to ymm1 under writemask k1 with qword granularity. The immediate value determines the specific binary function being implemented.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W1 25 /r ib VPTERNLOGQ zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512F	Bitwise ternary logic taking zmm1, zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst as source operands and writing the result to zmm1 under writemask k1 with qword granularity. The immediate value determines the specific binary function being implemented.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Full	ModRM:reg (r, w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8

Description

VPTERNLOGD/Q takes three bit vectors of 512-bit length (in the first, second and third operand) as input data to form a set of 512 indices, each index is comprised of one bit from each input vector. The imm8 byte specifies a boolean logic table producing a binary value for each 3-bit index value. The final 512-bit boolean result is written to the destination operand (the first operand) using the writemask k1 with the granularity of doubleword element or quadword element into the destination.

The destination operand is a ZMM (EVEX.512)/YMM (EVEX.256)/XMM (EVEX.128) register. The first source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 32/64-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM register conditionally updated with writemask k1.

VPTESTMB/VPTESTMW/VPTESTMD/VPTESTMQ—Logical AND and Set Mask

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 26 /r VPTESTMB k2 {k1}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Bitwise AND of packed byte integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128 and set mask k2 to reflect the zero/non-zero status of each element of the result, under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 26 /r VPTESTMB k2 {k1}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Bitwise AND of packed byte integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256 and set mask k2 to reflect the zero/non-zero status of each element of the result, under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 26 /r VPTESTMB k2 {k1}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	A	V/V	AVX512BW	Bitwise AND of packed byte integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512 and set mask k2 to reflect the zero/non-zero status of each element of the result, under writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 26 /r VPTESTMW k2 {k1}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Bitwise AND of packed word integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128 and set mask k2 to reflect the zero/non-zero status of each element of the result, under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 26 /r VPTESTMW k2 {k1}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Bitwise AND of packed word integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256 and set mask k2 to reflect the zero/non-zero status of each element of the result, under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 26 /r VPTESTMW k2 {k1}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	A	V/V	AVX512BW	Bitwise AND of packed word integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512 and set mask k2 to reflect the zero/non-zero status of each element of the result, under writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 27 /r VPTESTMD k2 {k1}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Bitwise AND of packed doubleword integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst and set mask k2 to reflect the zero/non-zero status of each element of the result, under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 27 /r VPTESTMD k2 {k1}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Bitwise AND of packed doubleword integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst and set mask k2 to reflect the zero/non-zero status of each element of the result, under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 27 /r VPTESTMD k2 {k1}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512F	Bitwise AND of packed doubleword integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst and set mask k2 to reflect the zero/non-zero status of each element of the result, under writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 27 /r VPTESTMQ k2 {k1}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Bitwise AND of packed quadword integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst and set mask k2 to reflect the zero/non-zero status of each element of the result, under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 27 /r VPTESTMQ k2 {k1}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Bitwise AND of packed quadword integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst and set mask k2 to reflect the zero/non-zero status of each element of the result, under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 27 /r VPTESTMQ k2 {k1}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512F	Bitwise AND of packed quadword integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst and set mask k2 to reflect the zero/non-zero status of each element of the result, under writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Full Mem	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
B	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

VPTESTNMB/W/D/Q—Logical NAND and Set

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID	Description
EVEX.128.F3.0F38.W0 26 /r VPTESTNMB k2 {k1}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Bitwise NAND of packed byte integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128 and set mask k2 to reflect the zero/non-zero status of each element of the result, under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.F3.0F38.W0 26 /r VPTESTNMB k2 {k1}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Bitwise NAND of packed byte integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256 and set mask k2 to reflect the zero/non-zero status of each element of the result, under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.F3.0F38.W0 26 /r VPTESTNMB k2 {k1}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	A	V/V	AVX512F AVX512BW	Bitwise NAND of packed byte integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512 and set mask k2 to reflect the zero/non-zero status of each element of the result, under writemask k1.
EVEX.128.F3.0F38.W1 26 /r VPTESTNMW k2 {k1}, xmm2, xmm3/m128	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Bitwise NAND of packed word integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128 and set mask k2 to reflect the zero/non-zero status of each element of the result, under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.F3.0F38.W1 26 /r VPTESTNMW k2 {k1}, ymm2, ymm3/m256	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512BW	Bitwise NAND of packed word integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256 and set mask k2 to reflect the zero/non-zero status of each element of the result, under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.F3.0F38.W1 26 /r VPTESTNMW k2 {k1}, zmm2, zmm3/m512	A	V/V	AVX512F AVX512BW	Bitwise NAND of packed word integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512 and set mask k2 to reflect the zero/non-zero status of each element of the result, under writemask k1.
EVEX.128.F3.0F38.W0 27 /r VPTESTNMD k2 {k1}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Bitwise NAND of packed doubleword integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst and set mask k2 to reflect the zero/non-zero status of each element of the result, under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.F3.0F38.W0 27 /r VPTESTNMD k2 {k1}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Bitwise NAND of packed doubleword integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst and set mask k2 to reflect the zero/non-zero status of each element of the result, under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.F3.0F38.W0 27 /r VPTESTNMD k2 {k1}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	B	V/V	AVX512F	Bitwise NAND of packed doubleword integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst and set mask k2 to reflect the zero/non-zero status of each element of the result, under writemask k1.
EVEX.128.F3.0F38.W1 27 /r VPTESTNMQ k2 {k1}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Bitwise NAND of packed quadword integers in xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst and set mask k2 to reflect the zero/non-zero status of each element of the result, under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.F3.0F38.W1 27 /r VPTESTNMQ k2 {k1}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Bitwise NAND of packed quadword integers in ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst and set mask k2 to reflect the zero/non-zero status of each element of the result, under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.F3.0F38.W1 27 /r VPTESTNMQ k2 {k1}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	B	V/V	AVX512F	Bitwise NAND of packed quadword integers in zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst and set mask k2 to reflect the zero/non-zero status of each element of the result, under writemask k1.

VRANGEPD—Range Restriction Calculation For Packed Pairs of Float64 Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F3A.W1 50 /r ib VRANGEPD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512DQ	Calculate two RANGE operation output value from 2 pairs of double-precision floating-point values in xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst, store the results to xmm1 under the writemask k1. Imm8 specifies the comparison and sign of the range operation.
EVEX.256.66.0F3A.W1 50 /r ib VRANGEPD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512DQ	Calculate four RANGE operation output value from 4pairs of double-precision floating-point values in ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst, store the results to ymm1 under the writemask k1. Imm8 specifies the comparison and sign of the range operation.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W1 50 /r ib VRANGEPD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst{sae}, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512DQ	Calculate eight RANGE operation output value from 8 pairs of double-precision floating-point values in zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst, store the results to zmm1 under the writemask k1. Imm8 specifies the comparison and sign of the range operation.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8

Description

This instruction calculates 2/4/8 range operation outputs from two sets of packed input double-precision FP values in the first source operand (the second operand) and the second source operand (the third operand). The range outputs are written to the destination operand (the first operand) under the writemask k1.

Bits7: 4 of imm8 byte must be zero. The range operation output is performed in two parts, each configured by a two-bit control field within imm8[3:0]:

- Imm8[1:0] specifies the initial comparison operation to be one of max, min, max absolute value or min absolute value of the input value pair. Each comparison of two input values produces an intermediate result that combines with the sign selection control (Imm8[3:2]) to determine the final range operation output.
- Imm8[3:2] specifies the sign of the range operation output to be one of the following: from the first input value, from the comparison result, set or clear.

The encodings of Imm8[1:0] and Imm8[3:2] are shown in Figure 5-27.

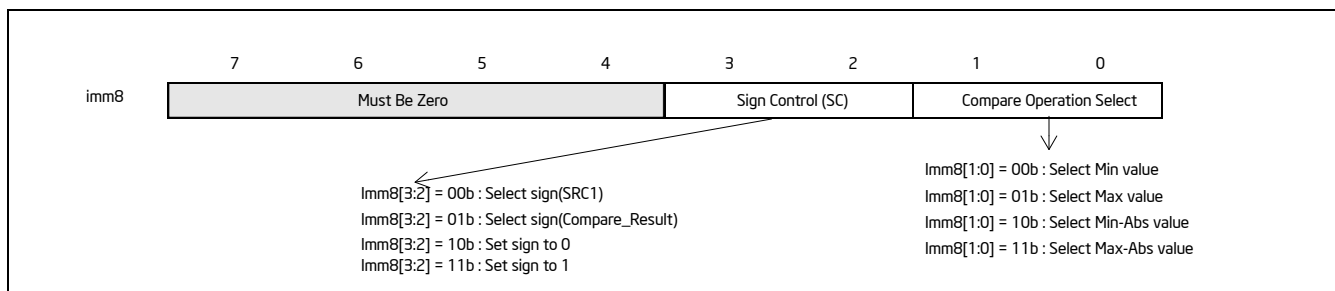


Figure 5-27. Imm8 Controls for VRANGEPD/SD/PS/SS

VRANGEPS—Range Restriction Calculation For Packed Pairs of Float32 Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F3A.W0 50 /r ib VRANGEPS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512DQ	Calculate four RANGE operation output value from 4 pairs of single-precision floating-point values in xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst, store the results to xmm1 under the writemask k1. Imm8 specifies the comparison and sign of the range operation.
EVEX.256.66.0F3A.W0 50 /r ib VRANGEPS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512DQ	Calculate eight RANGE operation output value from 8 pairs of single-precision floating-point values in ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst, store the results to ymm1 under the writemask k1. Imm8 specifies the comparison and sign of the range operation.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W0 50 /r ib VRANGEPS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst{sae}, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512DQ	Calculate 16 RANGE operation output value from 16 pairs of single-precision floating-point values in zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst, store the results to zmm1 under the writemask k1. Imm8 specifies the comparison and sign of the range operation.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8

Description

This instruction calculates 4/8/16 range operation outputs from two sets of packed input single-precision FP values in the first source operand (the second operand) and the second source operand (the third operand). The range outputs are written to the destination operand (the first operand) under the writemask k1.

Bits7:4 of imm8 byte must be zero. The range operation output is performed in two parts, each configured by a two-bit control field within imm8[3:0]:

- Imm8[1:0] specifies the initial comparison operation to be one of max, min, max absolute value or min absolute value of the input value pair. Each comparison of two input values produces an intermediate result that combines with the sign selection control (Imm8[3:2]) to determine the final range operation output.
- Imm8[3:2] specifies the sign of the range operation output to be one of the following: from the first input value, from the comparison result, set or clear.

The encodings of Imm8[1:0] and Imm8[3:2] are shown in Figure 5-27.

When one or more of the input value is a NAN, the comparison operation may signal invalid exception (IE). Details with one of more input value is NAN is listed in Table 5-10. If the comparison raises an IE, the sign select control (Imm8[3:2]) has no effect to the range operation output, this is indicated also in Table 5-10.

When both input values are zeros of opposite signs, the comparison operation of MIN/MAX in the range compare operation is slightly different from the conceptually similar FP MIN/MAX operation that are found in the instructions VMAXPD/VMINPD. The details of MIN/MAX/MIN_ABS/MAX_ABS operation for VRANGEPS/PS/SD/SS for magnitude-0, opposite-signed input cases are listed in Table 5-11.

Additionally, non-zero, equal-magnitude with opposite-sign input values perform MIN_ABS or MAX_ABS comparison operation with result listed in Table 5-12.

VRANGESD—Range Restriction Calculation From a pair of Scalar Float64 Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.LIG.66.0F3A.W1 51 /r VRANGESD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64{sae}, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512DQ	Calculate a RANGE operation output value from 2 double-precision floating-point values in xmm2 and xmm3/m64, store the output to xmm1 under writemask. Imm8 specifies the comparison and sign of the range operation.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8

Description

This instruction calculates a range operation output from two input double-precision FP values in the low qword element of the first source operand (the second operand) and second source operand (the third operand). The range output is written to the low qword element of the destination operand (the first operand) under the writemask k1.

Bits7:4 of imm8 byte must be zero. The range operation output is performed in two parts, each configured by a two-bit control field within imm8[3:0]:

- Imm8[1:0] specifies the initial comparison operation to be one of max, min, max absolute value or min absolute value of the input value pair. Each comparison of two input values produces an intermediate result that combines with the sign selection control (Imm8[3:2]) to determine the final range operation output.
- Imm8[3:2] specifies the sign of the range operation output to be one of the following: from the first input value, from the comparison result, set or clear.

The encodings of Imm8[1:0] and Imm8[3:2] are shown in Figure 5-27.

Bits 128:63 of the destination operand are copied from the respective element of the first source operand.

When one or more of the input value is a NAN, the comparison operation may signal invalid exception (IE). Details with one of more input value is NAN is listed in Table 5-10. If the comparison raises an IE, the sign select control (Imm8[3:2]) has no effect to the range operation output, this is indicated also in Table 5-10.

When both input values are zeros of opposite signs, the comparison operation of MIN/MAX in the range compare operation is slightly different from the conceptually similar FP MIN/MAX operation that are found in the instructions VMAXPD/VMINPD. The details of MIN/MAX/MIN_ABS/MAX_ABS operation for VRANGESD/PS/SD/SS for magnitude-0, opposite-signed input cases are listed in Table 5-11.

Additionally, non-zero, equal-magnitude with opposite-sign input values perform MIN_ABS or MAX_ABS comparison operation with result listed in Table 5-12.

VRANGESS—Range Restriction Calculation From a Pair of Scalar Float32 Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.LIG.66.0F3A.W0 51 /r VRANGESS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m32{sae}, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512DQ	Calculate a RANGE operation output value from 2 single-precision floating-point values in xmm2 and xmm3/m32, store the output to xmm1 under writemask. Imm8 specifies the comparison and sign of the range operation.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

This instruction calculates a range operation output from two input single-precision FP values in the low dword element of the first source operand (the second operand) and second source operand (the third operand). The range output is written to the low dword element of the destination operand (the first operand) under the writemask k1.

Bits7:4 of imm8 byte must be zero. The range operation output is performed in two parts, each configured by a two-bit control field within imm8[3:0]:

- Imm8[1:0] specifies the initial comparison operation to be one of max, min, max absolute value or min absolute value of the input value pair. Each comparison of two input values produces an intermediate result that combines with the sign selection control (Imm8[3:2]) to determine the final range operation output.
- Imm8[3:2] specifies the sign of the range operation output to be one of the following: from the first input value, from the comparison result, set or clear.

The encodings of Imm8[1:0] and Imm8[3:2] are shown in Figure 5-27.

Bits 128:31 of the destination operand are copied from the respective elements of the first source operand.

When one or more of the input value is a NAN, the comparison operation may signal invalid exception (IE). Details with one of more input value is NAN is listed in Table 5-10. If the comparison raises an IE, the sign select control (Imm8[3:2]) has no effect to the range operation output, this is indicated also in Table 5-10.

When both input values are zeros of opposite signs, the comparison operation of MIN/MAX in the range compare operation is slightly different from the conceptually similar FP MIN/MAX operation that are found in the instructions VMAXPD/VMINPD. The details of MIN/MAX/MIN_ABS/MAX_ABS operation for VRANGEPD/PS/SD/SS for magnitude-0, opposite-signed input cases are listed in Table 5-11.

Additionally, non-zero, equal-magnitude with opposite-sign input values perform MIN_ABS or MAX_ABS comparison operation with result listed in Table 5-12.

VRCP14PS—Compute Approximate Reciprocals of Packed Float32 Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 4C /r VRCP14PS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2/m128/m32bcst	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Computes the approximate reciprocals of the packed single-precision floating-point values in xmm2/m128/m32bcst and stores the results in xmm1. Under writemask.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 4C /r VRCP14PS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2/m256/m32bcst	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Computes the approximate reciprocals of the packed single-precision floating-point values in ymm2/m256/m32bcst and stores the results in ymm1. Under writemask.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 4C /r VRCP14PS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2/m512/m32bcst	A	V/V	AVX512F	Computes the approximate reciprocals of the packed single-precision floating-point values in zmm2/m512/m32bcst and stores the results in zmm1. Under writemask.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA

Description

This instruction performs a SIMD computation of the approximate reciprocals of the packed single-precision floating-point values in the source operand (the second operand) and stores the packed single-precision floating-point results in the destination operand (the first operand). The maximum relative error for this approximation is less than 2^{-14} .

The source operand can be a ZMM register, a 512-bit memory location or a 512-bit vector broadcasted from a 32-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM register conditionally updated according to the writemask.

The VRCP14PS instruction is not affected by the rounding control bits in the MXCSR register. When a source value is a 0.0, an ∞ with the sign of the source value is returned. A denormal source value will be treated as zero only in case of DAZ bit set in MXCSR. Otherwise it is treated correctly (i.e. not as a 0.0). Underflow results are flushed to zero only in case of FTZ bit set in MXCSR. Otherwise it will be treated correctly (i.e. correct underflow result is written) with the sign of the operand. When a source value is a SNaN or QNaN, the SNaN is converted to a QNaN or the source QNaN is returned.

EVEX.vvvv is reserved and must be 1111b otherwise instructions will #UD.

MXCSR exception flags are not affected by this instruction and floating-point exceptions are not reported.

Table 5-14. VRCP14PS/VRCP14SS Special Cases

Input value	Result value	Comments
$0 \leq X \leq 2^{-128}$	INF	Very small denormal
$-2^{-128} \leq X \leq -0$	-INF	Very small denormal
$X > 2^{126}$	Underflow	Up to 18 bits of fractions are returned*
$X < -2^{126}$	-Underflow	Up to 18 bits of fractions are returned*
$X = 2^{-n}$	2^n	
$X = -2^{-n}$	-2^n	

* in this case the mantissa is shifted right by one or two bits

A numerically exact implementation of VRCP14xx can be found at:

<https://software.intel.com/en-us/articles/reference-implementations-for-1A-approximation-instructions-vcpr14-vrsqrt14-vcpr28-vrsqrt28-vexp2>.

Operation**VRCP14PS (EVEX encoded versions)**

(KL, VL) = (4, 128), (8, 256), (16, 512)

FOR j ← 0 TO KL-1

i ← j * 32

IF k1[j] OR *no writemask* THEN

IF (EVEX.b = 1) AND (SRC *is memory*)

THEN DEST[i+31:i] ← APPROXIMATE(1.0/SRC[31:0]);

ELSE DEST[i+31:i] ← APPROXIMATE(1.0/SRC[i+31:i]);

FI;

ELSE

IF *merging-masking* ; merging-masking

THEN *DEST[i+31:i] remains unchanged*

ELSE ; zeroing-masking

DEST[i+31:i] ← 0

FI;

FI;

ENDFOR;

DEST[MAXVL-1:VL] ← 0

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

VRCP14PS __m512 __mm512_rcp14_ps(__m512 a);

VRCP14PS __m512 __mm512_mask_rcp14_ps(__m512 s, __mmask16 k, __m512 a);

VRCP14PS __m512 __mm512_maskz_rcp14_ps(__mmask16 k, __m512 a);

VRCP14PS __m256 __mm256_rcp14_ps(__m256 a);

VRCP14PS __m256 __mm512_mask_rcp14_ps(__m256 s, __mmask8 k, __m256 a);

VRCP14PS __m256 __mm512_maskz_rcp14_ps(__mmask8 k, __m256 a);

VRCP14PS __m128 __mm_rcp14_ps(__m128 a);

VRCP14PS __m128 __mm_mask_rcp14_ps(__m128 s, __mmask8 k, __m128 a);

VRCP14PS __m128 __mm_maskz_rcp14_ps(__mmask8 k, __m128 a);

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

See Exceptions Type E4.

VRCP14SD—Compute Approximate Reciprocal of Scalar Float64 Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W1 4D /r VRCP14SD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64	A	V/V	AVX512F	Computes the approximate reciprocal of the scalar double-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m64 and stores the result in xmm1 using writemask k1. Also, upper double-precision floating-point value (bits[127:64]) from xmm2 is copied to xmm1[127:64].

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

This instruction performs a SIMD computation of the approximate reciprocal of the low double-precision floating-point value in the second source operand (the third operand) stores the result in the low quadword element of the destination operand (the first operand) according to the writemask k1. Bits (127:64) of the XMM register destination are copied from corresponding bits in the first source operand (the second operand). The maximum relative error for this approximation is less than 2^{-14} . The source operand can be an XMM register or a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand is an XMM register.

The VRCP14SD instruction is not affected by the rounding control bits in the MXCSR register. When a source value is a 0.0, an ∞ with the sign of the source value is returned. A denormal source value will be treated as zero only in case of DAZ bit set in MXCSR. Otherwise it is treated correctly (i.e. not as a 0.0). Underflow results are flushed to zero only in case of FTZ bit set in MXCSR. Otherwise it will be treated correctly (i.e. correct underflow result is written) with the sign of the operand. When a source value is a SNaN or QNaN, the SNaN is converted to a QNaN or the source QNaN is returned. See Table 5-13 for special-case input values.

MXCSR exception flags are not affected by this instruction and floating-point exceptions are not reported.

A numerically exact implementation of VRCP14xx can be found at:

<https://software.intel.com/en-us/articles/reference-implementations-for-IA-approximation-instructions-vrcp14-vrsqrt14-vrcp28-vrsqrt28-vexp2>.

Operation

VRCP14SD (EVEX version)

```

IF k1[0] OR *no writemask*
    THEN DEST[63:0] ← APPROXIMATE(1.0/SRC2[63:0]);
ELSE
    IF *merging-masking*                ; merging-masking
        THEN *DEST[63:0] remains unchanged*
    ELSE                                  ; zeroing-masking
        DEST[63:0] ← 0
FI;
FI;
DEST[127:64] ← SRC1[127:64]
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0

```

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

`VRCP14SD __m128d _mm_rcp14_sd(__m128d a, __m128d b);`

`VRCP14SD __m128d _mm_mask_rcp14_sd(__m128d s, __mmask8 k, __m128d a, __m128d b);`

`VRCP14SD __m128d _mm_maskz_rcp14_sd(__mmask8 k, __m128d a, __m128d b);`

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

See Exceptions Type E5.

VRCP14SS—Compute Approximate Reciprocal of Scalar Float32 Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W0 4D /r VRCP14SS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m32	A	V/V	AVX512F	Computes the approximate reciprocal of the scalar single-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m32 and stores the results in xmm1 using writemask k1. Also, upper double-precision floating-point value (bits[127:32]) from xmm2 is copied to xmm1[127:32].

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

This instruction performs a SIMD computation of the approximate reciprocal of the low single-precision floating-point value in the second source operand (the third operand) and stores the result in the low quadword element of the destination operand (the first operand) according to the writemask k1. Bits (127:32) of the XMM register destination are copied from corresponding bits in the first source operand (the second operand). The maximum relative error for this approximation is less than 2^{-14} . The source operand can be an XMM register or a 32-bit memory location. The destination operand is an XMM register.

The VRCP14SS instruction is not affected by the rounding control bits in the MXCSR register. When a source value is a 0.0, an ∞ with the sign of the source value is returned. A denormal source value will be treated as zero only in case of DAZ bit set in MXCSR. Otherwise it is treated correctly (i.e. not as a 0.0). Underflow results are flushed to zero only in case of FTZ bit set in MXCSR. Otherwise it will be treated correctly (i.e. correct underflow result is written) with the sign of the operand. When a source value is a SNaN or QNaN, the SNaN is converted to a QNaN or the source QNaN is returned. See Table 5-14 for special-case input values.

MXCSR exception flags are not affected by this instruction and floating-point exceptions are not reported.

A numerically exact implementation of VRCP14xx can be found at <https://software.intel.com/en-us/articles/reference-implementations-for-IA-approximation-instructions-vrcp14-vrsqrt14-vrcp28-vrsqrt28-vexp2>.

Operation

VRCP14SS (EVEX version)

IF k1[0] OR *no writemask*

THEN DEST[31:0] ← APPROXIMATE(1.0/SRC2[31:0]);

ELSE

IF *merging-masking* ; merging-masking

THEN *DEST[31:0] remains unchanged*

ELSE ; zeroing-masking

DEST[31:0] ← 0

FI;

FI;

DEST[127:32] ← SRC1[127:32]

DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0

VREDUCESD—Perform a Reduction Transformation on a Scalar Float64 Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.LIG.66.OF3A.W1 57 VREDUCESD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64{sae}, imm8/r	A	V/V	AVX512D Q	Perform a reduction transformation on a scalar double-precision floating point value in xmm3/m64 by subtracting a number of fraction bits specified by the imm8 field. Also, upper double precision floating-point value (bits[127:64]) from xmm2 are copied to xmm1[127:64]. Stores the result in xmm1 register.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Perform a reduction transformation of the binary encoded double-precision FP value in the low qword element of the second source operand (the third operand) and store the reduced result in binary FP format to the low qword element of the destination operand (the first operand) under the writemask k1. Bits 127:64 of the destination operand are copied from respective qword elements of the first source operand (the second operand).

The reduction transformation subtracts the integer part and the leading M fractional bits from the binary FP source value, where M is a unsigned integer specified by imm8[7:4], see Figure 5-28. Specifically, the reduction transformation can be expressed as:

$$\text{dest} = \text{src} - (\text{ROUND}(2^M * \text{src})) * 2^{-M};$$

where "Round()" treats "src", "2^M", and their product as binary FP numbers with normalized significand and biased exponents.

The magnitude of the reduced result can be expressed by considering $\text{src} = 2^p * \text{man}_2$, where 'man₂' is the normalized significand and 'p' is the unbiased exponent

Then if RC = RNE: $0 \leq |\text{Reduced Result}| \leq 2^{p-M-1}$

Then if RC ≠ RNE: $0 \leq |\text{Reduced Result}| < 2^{p-M}$

This instruction might end up with a precision exception set. However, in case of SPE set (i.e. Suppress Precision Exception, which is imm8[3]=1), no precision exception is reported.

The operation is write masked.

Handling of special case of input values are listed in Table 5-15.

Operation

ReduceArgumentDP(SRC[63:0], imm8[7:0])

```
{
  // Check for NaN
  IF (SRC [63:0] = NAN) THEN
    RETURN (Convert SRC[63:0] to QNaN); FI;
  M ← imm8[7:4]; // Number of fraction bits of the normalized significand to be subtracted
  RC ← imm8[1:0]; // Round Control for ROUND() operation
  RC source ← imm[2];
  SPE ← 0; // Suppress Precision Exception
  TMP[63:0] ← 2-M * {ROUND(2M*SRC[63:0], SPE, RC_source, RC)}; // ROUND() treats SRC and 2M as standard binary FP values
  TMP[63:0] ← SRC[63:0] - TMP[63:0]; // subtraction under the same RC,SPE controls
  RETURN TMP[63:0]; // binary encoded FP with biased exponent and normalized significand
}
```

VREDUCESS—Perform a Reduction Transformation on a Scalar Float32 Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.LIG.66.0F3A.W0 57 /r /ib VREDUCESS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m32{sae}, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512DQ	Perform a reduction transformation on a scalar single-precision floating point value in xmm3/m32 by subtracting a number of fraction bits specified by the imm8 field. Also, upper single precision floating-point values (bits[127:32]) from xmm2 are copied to xmm1[127:32]. Stores the result in xmm1 register.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Perform a reduction transformation of the binary encoded single-precision FP value in the low dword element of the second source operand (the third operand) and store the reduced result in binary FP format to the low dword element of the destination operand (the first operand) under the writemask k1. Bits 127:32 of the destination operand are copied from respective dword elements of the first source operand (the second operand).

The reduction transformation subtracts the integer part and the leading M fractional bits from the binary FP source value, where M is a unsigned integer specified by imm8[7:4], see Figure 5-28. Specifically, the reduction transformation can be expressed as:

$$\text{dest} = \text{src} - (\text{ROUND}(2^M * \text{src})) * 2^{-M};$$

where "Round()" treats "src", "2^M", and their product as binary FP numbers with normalized significand and biased exponents.

The magnitude of the reduced result can be expressed by considering $\text{src} = 2^p * \text{man}_2$, where 'man₂' is the normalized significand and 'p' is the unbiased exponent

Then if RC = RNE: $0 \leq |\text{Reduced Result}| \leq 2^{p-M-1}$

Then if RC ≠ RNE: $0 \leq |\text{Reduced Result}| < 2^{p-M}$

This instruction might end up with a precision exception set. However, in case of SPE set (i.e. Suppress Precision Exception, which is imm8[3]=1), no precision exception is reported.

Handling of special case of input values are listed in Table 5-15.

Operation

ReduceArgumentSP(SRC[31:0], imm8[7:0])

```
{
  // Check for NaN
  IF (SRC [31:0] = NAN) THEN
    RETURN (Convert SRC[31:0] to QNaN); FI
  M ← imm8[7:4]; // Number of fraction bits of the normalized significand to be subtracted
  RC ← imm8[1:0]; // Round Control for ROUND() operation
  RC source ← imm[2];
  SPE ← 0; // Suppress Precision Exception
  TMP[31:0] ← 2-M * {ROUND(2M*SRC[31:0], SPE, RC_source, RC)}; // ROUND() treats SRC and 2M as standard binary FP values
  TMP[31:0] ← SRC[31:0] - TMP[31:0]; // subtraction under the same RC,SPE controls
  RETURN TMP[31:0]; // binary encoded FP with biased exponent and normalized significand
}
```

VRNDSCALESD—Round Scalar Float64 Value To Include A Given Number Of Fraction Bits

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.LIG.66.OF3A.W1 0B /r ib VRNDSCALESD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64{sae}, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512F	Rounds scalar double-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m64 to a number of fraction bits specified by the imm8 field. Stores the result in xmm1 register.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	Imm8

Description

Rounds a double-precision floating-point value in the low quadword (see Figure 5-29) element of the second source operand (the third operand) by the rounding mode specified in the immediate operand and places the result in the corresponding element of the destination operand (the first operand) according to the writemask. The quadword element at bits 127:64 of the destination is copied from the first source operand (the second operand).

The destination and first source operands are XMM registers, the 2nd source operand can be an XMM register or memory location. Bits MAXVL-1:128 of the destination register are cleared.

The rounding process rounds the input to an integral value, plus number bits of fraction that are specified by imm8[7:4] (to be included in the result) and returns the result as a double-precision floating-point value.

It should be noticed that no overflow is induced while executing this instruction (although the source is scaled by the imm8[7:4] value).

The immediate operand also specifies control fields for the rounding operation, three bit fields are defined and shown in the “Immediate Control Description” figure below. Bit 3 of the immediate byte controls the processor behavior for a precision exception, bit 2 selects the source of rounding mode control. Bits 1:0 specify a non-sticky rounding-mode value (Immediate control table below lists the encoded values for rounding-mode field).

The Precision Floating-Point Exception is signaled according to the immediate operand. If any source operand is an SNaN then it will be converted to a QNaN. If DAZ is set to '1 then denormals will be converted to zero before rounding.

The sign of the result of this instruction is preserved, including the sign of zero.

The formula of the operation for VRNDSCALESD is

$$\text{ROUND}(x) = 2^{-M} * \text{Round_to_INT}(x * 2^M, \text{round_ctrl}),$$

$$\text{round_ctrl} = \text{imm}[3:0];$$

$$M = \text{imm}[7:4];$$

The operation of $x * 2^M$ is computed as if the exponent range is unlimited (i.e. no overflow ever occurs).

VRNDSCALESD is a more general form of the VEX-encoded VROUNDSD instruction. In VROUNDSD, the formula of the operation is

$$\text{ROUND}(x) = \text{Round_to_INT}(x, \text{round_ctrl}),$$

$$\text{round_ctrl} = \text{imm}[3:0];$$

EVEX encoded version: The source operand is a XMM register or a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand is a XMM register.

Handling of special case of input values are listed in Table 5-16.

VRNDSCALESS—Round Scalar Float32 Value To Include A Given Number Of Fraction Bits

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.LIG.66.0F3A.W0 0A /r ib VRNDSCALESS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m32{sae}, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512F	Rounds scalar single-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m32 to a number of fraction bits specified by the imm8 field. Stores the result in xmm1 register under writemask.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Rounds the single-precision floating-point value in the low doubleword element of the second source operand (the third operand) by the rounding mode specified in the immediate operand (see Figure 5-29) and places the result in the corresponding element of the destination operand (the first operand) according to the writemask. The doubleword elements at bits 127:32 of the destination are copied from the first source operand (the second operand).

The destination and first source operands are XMM registers, the 2nd source operand can be an XMM register or memory location. Bits MAXVL-1:128 of the destination register are cleared.

The rounding process rounds the input to an integral value, plus number bits of fraction that are specified by imm8[7:4] (to be included in the result) and returns the result as a single-precision floating-point value.

It should be noticed that no overflow is induced while executing this instruction (although the source is scaled by the imm8[7:4] value).

The immediate operand also specifies control fields for the rounding operation, three bit fields are defined and shown in the “Immediate Control Description” figure below. Bit 3 of the immediate byte controls the processor behavior for a precision exception, bit 2 selects the source of rounding mode control. Bits 1:0 specify a non-sticky rounding-mode value (Immediate control tables below lists the encoded values for rounding-mode field).

The Precision Floating-Point Exception is signaled according to the immediate operand. If any source operand is an SNaN then it will be converted to a QNaN. If DAZ is set to ‘1 then denormals will be converted to zero before rounding.

The sign of the result of this instruction is preserved, including the sign of zero.

The formula of the operation for VRNDSCALESS is

$$\text{ROUND}(x) = 2^{-M} * \text{Round_to_INT}(x * 2^M, \text{round_ctrl}),$$

$$\text{round_ctrl} = \text{imm}[3:0];$$

$$M = \text{imm}[7:4];$$

The operation of $x * 2^M$ is computed as if the exponent range is unlimited (i.e. no overflow ever occurs).

VRNDSCALESS is a more general form of the VEX-encoded VROUNDSS instruction. In VROUNDSS, the formula of the operation on each element is

$$\text{ROUND}(x) = \text{Round_to_INT}(x, \text{round_ctrl}),$$

$$\text{round_ctrl} = \text{imm}[3:0];$$

EVEX encoded version: The source operand is a XMM register or a 32-bit memory location. The destination operand is a XMM register.

Handling of special case of input values are listed in Table 5-16.

VRSQRT14SD—Compute Approximate Reciprocal of Square Root of Scalar Float64 Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W1 4F /r VRSQRT14SD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64	A	V/V	AVX512F	Computes the approximate reciprocal square root of the scalar double-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m64 and stores the result in the low quadword element of xmm1 using writemask k1. Bits[127:64] of xmm2 is copied to xmm1[127:64].

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Computes the approximate reciprocal of the square roots of the scalar double-precision floating-point value in the low quadword element of the source operand (the second operand) and stores the result in the low quadword element of the destination operand (the first operand) according to the writemask. The maximum relative error for this approximation is less than 2^{-14} . The source operand can be an XMM register or a 32-bit memory location. The destination operand is an XMM register.

Bits (127:64) of the XMM register destination are copied from corresponding bits in the first source operand. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination register are zeroed.

The VRSQRT14SD instruction is not affected by the rounding control bits in the MXCSR register. When a source value is a 0.0, an ∞ with the sign of the source value is returned. When the source operand is an $+\infty$ then +ZERO value is returned. A denormal source value is treated as zero only if DAZ bit is set in MXCSR. Otherwise it is treated correctly and performs the approximation with the specified masked response. When a source value is a negative value (other than 0.0) a floating-point QNaN_indefinite is returned. When a source value is an SNaN or QNaN, the SNaN is converted to a QNaN or the source QNaN is returned.

MXCSR exception flags are not affected by this instruction and floating-point exceptions are not reported.

A numerically exact implementation of VRSQRT14xx can be found at <https://software.intel.com/en-us/articles/reference-implementations-for-IA-approximation-instructions-vrcp14-vrsqrt14-vrcp28-vrsqrt28-vexp2>.

Operation

VRSQRT14SD (EVEX version)

```

IF k1[0] or *no writemask*
  THEN  DEST[63:0] ← APPROXIMATE(1.0/ SQRT(SRC2[63:0]))
  ELSE
    IF *merging-masking*           ; merging-masking
      THEN *DEST[63:0] remains unchanged*
    ELSE                             ; zeroing-masking
      THEN DEST[63:0] ← 0
  FI;
FI;
DEST[127:64] ← SRC1[127:64]
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0

```

VRSQRT14SS—Compute Approximate Reciprocal of Square Root of Scalar Float32 Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W0 4F /r VRSQRT14SS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m32	A	V/V	AVX512F	Computes the approximate reciprocal square root of the scalar single-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m32 and stores the result in the low doubleword element of xmm1 using writemask k1. Bits[127:32] of xmm2 is copied to xmm1[127:32].

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Computes of the approximate reciprocal of the square root of the scalar single-precision floating-point value in the low doubleword element of the source operand (the second operand) and stores the result in the low doubleword element of the destination operand (the first operand) according to the writemask. The maximum relative error for this approximation is less than 2^{-14} . The source operand can be an XMM register or a 32-bit memory location. The destination operand is an XMM register.

Bits (127:32) of the XMM register destination are copied from corresponding bits in the first source operand. Bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the destination register are zeroed.

The VRSQRT14SS instruction is not affected by the rounding control bits in the MXCSR register. When a source value is a 0.0, an ∞ with the sign of the source value is returned. When the source operand is an ∞ , zero with the sign of the source value is returned. A denormal source value is treated as zero only if DAZ bit is set in MXCSR. Otherwise it is treated correctly and performs the approximation with the specified masked response. When a source value is a negative value (other than 0.0) a floating-point indefinite is returned. When a source value is an SNaN or QNaN, the SNaN is converted to a QNaN or the source QNaN is returned.

MXCSR exception flags are not affected by this instruction and floating-point exceptions are not reported.

A numerically exact implementation of VRSQRT14xx can be found at <https://software.intel.com/en-us/articles/reference-implementations-for-IA-approximation-instructions-vrcp14-vrsqrt14-vrcp28-vrsqrt28-vexp2>.

Operation

VRSQRT14SS (EVEX version)

```

IF k1[0] or *no writemask*
  THEN  DEST[31:0] ← APPROXIMATE(1.0/ SQRT(SRC2[31:0]))
  ELSE
    IF *merging-masking*           ; merging-masking
      THEN *DEST[31:0] remains unchanged*
    ELSE                             ; zeroing-masking
      THEN DEST[31:0] ← 0
  FI;
FI;
DEST[127:32] ← SRC1[127:32]
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0

```

VSCALEFPD—Scale Packed Float64 Values With Float64 Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 2C /r VSCALEFPD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Scale the packed double-precision floating-point values in xmm2 using values from xmm3/m128/m64bcst. Under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 2C /r VSCALEFPD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Scale the packed double-precision floating-point values in ymm2 using values from ymm3/m256/m64bcst. Under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 2C /r VSCALEFPD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst{er}	A	V/V	AVX512F	Scale the packed double-precision floating-point values in zmm2 using values from zmm3/m512/m64bcst. Under writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a floating-point scale of the packed double-precision floating-point values in the first source operand by multiplying it by 2 power of the double-precision floating-point values in second source operand.

The equation of this operation is given by:

$$zmm1 := zmm2 * 2^{\text{floor}(zmm3)}$$

Floor(zmm3) means maximum integer value \leq zmm3.

If the result cannot be represented in double precision, then the proper overflow response (for positive scaling operand), or the proper underflow response (for negative scaling operand) is issued. The overflow and underflow responses are dependent on the rounding mode (for IEEE-compliant rounding), as well as on other settings in MXCSR (exception mask bits, FTZ bit), and on the SAE bit.

The first source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register. The second source operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register, a 512/256/128-bit memory location or a 512/256/128-bit vector broadcasted from a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM/YMM/XMM register conditionally updated with writemask k1.

Handling of special-case input values are listed in Table 5-21 and Table 5-22.

Table 5-21. VSCALEFPD/SD/PS/SS Special Cases

		Src2				Set IE
		\pm NaN	+Inf	-Inf	0/Denorm/Norm	
Src1	\pm QNaN	QNaN(Src1)	+INF	+0	QNaN(Src1)	IF either source is SNAN
	\pm SNaN	QNaN(Src1)	QNaN(Src1)	QNaN(Src1)	QNaN(Src1)	YES
	\pm Inf	QNaN(Src2)	Src1	QNaN_Indefinite	Src1	IF Src2 is SNAN or -INF
	\pm 0	QNaN(Src2)	QNaN_Indefinite	Src1	Src1	IF Src2 is SNAN or +INF
	Denorm/Norm	QNaN(Src2)	\pm INF (Src1 sign)	\pm 0 (Src1 sign)	Compute Result	IF Src2 is SNAN

VSCALEFPS—Scale Packed Float32 Values With Float32 Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 2C /r VSCALEFPS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Scale the packed single-precision floating-point values in xmm2 using values from xmm3/m128/m32bcst. Under writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 2C /r VSCALEFPS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Scale the packed single-precision values in ymm2 using floating point values from ymm3/m256/m32bcst. Under writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 2C /r VSCALEFPS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst{er}	A	V/V	AVX512F	Scale the packed single-precision floating-point values in zmm2 using floating-point values from zmm3/m512/m32bcst. Under writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a floating-point scale of the packed single-precision floating-point values in the first source operand by multiplying it by 2 power of the float32 values in second source operand.

The equation of this operation is given by:

$$zmm1 := zmm2 * 2^{\text{floor}(zmm3)}$$

Floor(zmm3) means maximum integer value \leq zmm3.

If the result cannot be represented in single precision, then the proper overflow response (for positive scaling operand), or the proper underflow response (for negative scaling operand) is issued. The overflow and underflow responses are dependent on the rounding mode (for IEEE-compliant rounding), as well as on other settings in MXCSR (exception mask bits, FTZ bit), and on the SAE bit.

EVEX.512 encoded version: The first source operand is a ZMM register. The second source operand is a ZMM register, a 512-bit memory location or a 512-bit vector broadcasted from a 32-bit memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM register conditionally updated with writemask k1.

EVEX.256 encoded version: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand is a YMM register, a 256-bit memory location, or a 256-bit vector broadcasted from a 32-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register, conditionally updated using writemask k1.

EVEX.128 encoded version: The first source operand is an XMM register. The second source operand is a XMM register, a 128-bit memory location, or a 128-bit vector broadcasted from a 32-bit memory location. The destination operand is a XMM register, conditionally updated using writemask k1.

Handling of special-case input values are listed in Table 5-21 and Table 5-23.

Table 5-23. Additional VSCALEFPS/SS Special Cases

Special Case	Returned value	Faults
$ \text{result} < 2^{-149}$	± 0 or $\pm \text{Min-Denormal}$ (Src1 sign)	Underflow
$ \text{result} \geq 2^{128}$	$\pm \text{INF}$ (Src1 sign) or $\pm \text{Max-normal}$ (Src1 sign)	Overflow

VSCALEFSD—Scale Scalar Float64 Values With Float64 Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W1 2D /r VSCALEFSD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64{er}	A	V/V	AVX512F	Scale the scalar double-precision floating-point values in xmm2 using the value from xmm3/m64. Under writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a floating-point scale of the packed double-precision floating-point value in the first source operand by multiplying it by 2 power of the double-precision floating-point value in second source operand.

The equation of this operation is given by:

$$\text{xmm1} := \text{xmm2} * 2^{\text{Floor}(\text{xmm3})}$$

Floor(xmm3) means maximum integer value \leq xmm3.

If the result cannot be represented in double precision, then the proper overflow response (for positive scaling operand), or the proper underflow response (for negative scaling operand) is issued. The overflow and underflow responses are dependent on the rounding mode (for IEEE-compliant rounding), as well as on other settings in MXCSR (exception mask bits, FTZ bit), and on the SAE bit.

EVEX encoded version: The first source operand is an XMM register. The second source operand is an XMM register or a memory location. The destination operand is an XMM register conditionally updated with writemask k1.

Handling of special-case input values are listed in Table 5-21 and Table 5-22.

Operation

```
SCALE(SRC1, SRC2)
{
    ; Check for denormal operands
    TMP_SRC2 ← SRC2
    TMP_SRC1 ← SRC1
    IF (SRC2 is denormal AND MXCSR.DAZ) THEN TMP_SRC2=0
    IF (SRC1 is denormal AND MXCSR.DAZ) THEN TMP_SRC1=0
    /* SRC2 is a 64 bits floating-point value */
    DEST[63:0] ← TMP_SRC1[63:0] * POW(2, Floor(TMP_SRC2[63:0]))
}
```

VSCALEFSS—Scale Scalar Float32 Value With Float32 Value

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bitMode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W0 2D /r VSCALEFSS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m32{er}	A	V/V	AVX512F	Scale the scalar single-precision floating-point value in xmm2 using floating-point value from xmm3/m32. Under writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a floating-point scale of the scalar single-precision floating-point value in the first source operand by multiplying it by 2 power of the float32 value in second source operand.

The equation of this operation is given by:

$$\text{xmm1} := \text{xmm2} * 2^{\text{floor}(\text{xmm3})}$$

Floor(xmm3) means maximum integer value \leq xmm3.

If the result cannot be represented in single precision, then the proper overflow response (for positive scaling operand), or the proper underflow response (for negative scaling operand) is issued. The overflow and underflow responses are dependent on the rounding mode (for IEEE-compliant rounding), as well as on other settings in MXCSR (exception mask bits, FTZ bit), and on the SAE bit.

EVEX encoded version: The first source operand is an XMM register. The second source operand is an XMM register or a memory location. The destination operand is an XMM register conditionally updated with writemask k1.

Handling of special-case input values are listed in Table 5-21 and Table 5-23.

VSCATTERDPS/VSCATTERDPD/VSCATTERQPS/VSCATTERQPD—Scatter Packed Single, Packed Double with Signed Dword and Qword Indices

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 A2 /vsib VSCATTERDPS vm32x {k1}, xmm1	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed dword indices, scatter single-precision floating-point values to memory using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 A2 /vsib VSCATTERDPS vm32y {k1}, ymm1	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed dword indices, scatter single-precision floating-point values to memory using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 A2 /vsib VSCATTERDPS vm32z {k1}, zmm1	A	V/V	AVX512F	Using signed dword indices, scatter single-precision floating-point values to memory using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 A2 /vsib VSCATTERDPD vm32x {k1}, xmm1	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed dword indices, scatter double-precision floating-point values to memory using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 A2 /vsib VSCATTERDPD vm32x {k1}, ymm1	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed dword indices, scatter double-precision floating-point values to memory using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 A2 /vsib VSCATTERDPD vm32y {k1}, zmm1	A	V/V	AVX512F	Using signed dword indices, scatter double-precision floating-point values to memory using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W0 A3 /vsib VSCATTERQPS vm64x {k1}, xmm1	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed qword indices, scatter single-precision floating-point values to memory using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W0 A3 /vsib VSCATTERQPS vm64y {k1}, xmm1	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed qword indices, scatter single-precision floating-point values to memory using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W0 A3 /vsib VSCATTERQPS vm64z {k1}, ymm1	A	V/V	AVX512F	Using signed qword indices, scatter single-precision floating-point values to memory using writemask k1.
EVEX.128.66.0F38.W1 A3 /vsib VSCATTERQPD vm64x {k1}, xmm1	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed qword indices, scatter double-precision floating-point values to memory using writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F38.W1 A3 /vsib VSCATTERQPD vm64y {k1}, ymm1	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Using signed qword indices, scatter double-precision floating-point values to memory using writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F38.W1 A3 /vsib VSCATTERQPD vm64z {k1}, zmm1	A	V/V	AVX512F	Using signed qword indices, scatter double-precision floating-point values to memory using writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1 Scalar	BaseReg (R): VSIB:base, VectorReg(R): VSIB:index	ModRM:reg (r)	NA	NA

Description

Stores up to 16 elements (or 8 elements) in doubleword/quadword vector zmm1 to the memory locations pointed by base address `BASE_ADDR` and index vector `VINDEX`, with scale `SCALE`. The elements are specified via the VSIB (i.e., the index register is a vector register, holding packed indices). Elements will only be stored if their corresponding mask bit is one. The entire mask register will be set to zero by this instruction unless it triggers an exception.

This instruction can be suspended by an exception if at least one element is already scattered (i.e., if the exception is triggered by an element other than the rightmost one with its mask bit set). When this happens, the destination register and the mask register (k1) are partially updated. If any traps or interrupts are pending from already scattered elements, they will be delivered in lieu of the exception; in this case, `EFLAG.RF` is set to one so an instruction breakpoint is not re-triggered when the instruction is continued.

Note that:

- Only writes to overlapping vector indices are guaranteed to be ordered with respect to each other (from LSB to MSB of the source registers). Note that this also include partially overlapping vector indices. Writes that are not overlapped may happen in any order. Memory ordering with other instructions follows the Intel-64 memory ordering model. Note that this does not account for non-overlapping indices that map into the same physical address locations.

- If two or more destination indices completely overlap, the “earlier” write(s) may be skipped.
- Faults are delivered in a right-to-left manner. That is, if a fault is triggered by an element and delivered, all elements closer to the LSB of the destination zmm will be completed (and non-faulting). Individual elements closer to the MSB may or may not be completed. If a given element triggers multiple faults, they are delivered in the conventional order.
- Elements may be scattered in any order, but faults must be delivered in a right-to-left order; thus, elements to the left of a faulting one may be gathered before the fault is delivered. A given implementation of this instruction is repeatable - given the same input values and architectural state, the same set of elements to the left of the faulting one will be gathered.
- This instruction does not perform AC checks, and so will never deliver an AC fault.
- Not valid with 16-bit effective addresses. Will deliver a #UD fault.
- If this instruction overwrites itself and then takes a fault, only a subset of elements may be completed before the fault is delivered (as described above). If the fault handler completes and attempts to re-execute this instruction, the new instruction will be executed, and the scatter will not complete.

Note that the presence of VSIB byte is enforced in this instruction. Hence, the instruction will #UD fault if ModRM.rm is different than 100b.

This instruction has special $\text{disp8} * N$ and alignment rules. N is considered to be the size of a single vector element. The scaled index may require more bits to represent than the address bits used by the processor (e.g., in 32-bit mode, if the scale is greater than one). In this case, the most significant bits beyond the number of address bits are ignored.

The instruction will #UD fault if the k0 mask register is specified.

Operation

BASE_ADDR stands for the memory operand base address (a GPR); may not exist

VINDEX stands for the memory operand vector of indices (a ZMM register)

SCALE stands for the memory operand scalar (1, 2, 4 or 8)

DISP is the optional 1 or 4 byte displacement

VSCATTERDPS (EVEX encoded versions)

(KL, VL) = (4, 128), (8, 256), (16, 512)

FOR $j \leftarrow 0$ TO $KL-1$

$i \leftarrow j * 32$

IF $k1[j]$ OR *no writemask*

THEN $\text{MEM}[\text{BASE_ADDR} + \text{SignExtend}(\text{VINDEX}[j+31:i]) * \text{SCALE} + \text{DISP}] \leftarrow$

$\text{SRC}[i+31:i]$

$k1[j] \leftarrow 0$

FI;

ENDFOR

$k1[\text{MAX_KL}-1:KL] \leftarrow 0$

VSCATTERDPD (EVEX encoded versions)

(KL, VL) = (2, 128), (4, 256), (8, 512)

FOR $j \leftarrow 0$ TO $KL-1$

$i \leftarrow j * 64$

$k \leftarrow j * 32$

IF $k1[j]$ OR *no writemask*

THEN $\text{MEM}[\text{BASE_ADDR} + \text{SignExtend}(\text{VINDEX}[k+31:k]) * \text{SCALE} + \text{DISP}] \leftarrow$

$\text{SRC}[i+63:i]$

$k1[j] \leftarrow 0$

FI;

ENDFOR

$k1[\text{MAX_KL}-1:KL] \leftarrow 0$

VSCATTERQPS (EVEX encoded versions)

(KL, VL)= (2, 128), (4, 256), (8, 512)

```

FOR j ← 0 TO KL-1
  i ← j * 32
  k ← j * 64
  IF k1[j] OR *no writemask*
    THEN MEM[BASE_ADDR + (VINDEK[k+63:k]) * SCALE + DISP] ←
      SRC[i+31:i]
      k1[j] ← 0
  FI;
ENDFOR
k1[MAX_KL-1:KL] ← 0

```

VSCATTERQPD (EVEX encoded versions)

(KL, VL)= (2, 128), (4, 256), (8, 512)

```

FOR j ← 0 TO KL-1
  i ← j * 64
  IF k1[j] OR *no writemask*
    THEN MEM[BASE_ADDR + (VINDEK[i+63:i]) * SCALE + DISP] ←
      SRC[i+63:i]
      k1[j] ← 0
  FI;
ENDFOR
k1[MAX_KL-1:KL] ← 0

```

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

```

VSCATTERDPD void __mm512_i32scatter_pd(void * base, __m256i vdx, __m512d a, int scale);
VSCATTERDPD void __mm512_mask_i32scatter_pd(void * base, __mmask8 k, __m256i vdx, __m512d a, int scale);
VSCATTERDPS void __mm512_i32scatter_ps(void * base, __m512i vdx, __m512 a, int scale);
VSCATTERDPS void __mm512_mask_i32scatter_ps(void * base, __mmask16 k, __m512i vdx, __m512 a, int scale);
VSCATTERQPD void __mm512_i64scatter_pd(void * base, __m512i vdx, __m512d a, int scale);
VSCATTERQPD void __mm512_mask_i64scatter_pd(void * base, __mmask8 k, __m512i vdx, __m512d a, int scale);
VSCATTERQPS void __mm512_i64scatter_ps(void * base, __m512i vdx, __m256 a, int scale);
VSCATTERQPS void __mm512_mask_i64scatter_ps(void * base, __mmask8 k, __m512i vdx, __m256 a, int scale);
VSCATTERDPD void __mm256_i32scatter_pd(void * base, __m128i vdx, __m256d a, int scale);
VSCATTERDPD void __mm256_mask_i32scatter_pd(void * base, __mmask8 k, __m128i vdx, __m256d a, int scale);
VSCATTERDPS void __mm256_i32scatter_ps(void * base, __m256i vdx, __m256 a, int scale);
VSCATTERDPS void __mm256_mask_i32scatter_ps(void * base, __mmask8 k, __m256i vdx, __m256 a, int scale);
VSCATTERQPD void __mm256_i64scatter_pd(void * base, __m256i vdx, __m256d a, int scale);
VSCATTERQPD void __mm256_mask_i64scatter_pd(void * base, __mmask8 k, __m256i vdx, __m256d a, int scale);
VSCATTERQPS void __mm256_i64scatter_ps(void * base, __m256i vdx, __m128 a, int scale);
VSCATTERQPS void __mm256_mask_i64scatter_ps(void * base, __mmask8 k, __m256i vdx, __m128 a, int scale);
VSCATTERDPD void __mm_i32scatter_pd(void * base, __m128i vdx, __m128d a, int scale);
VSCATTERDPD void __mm_mask_i32scatter_pd(void * base, __mmask8 k, __m128i vdx, __m128d a, int scale);
VSCATTERDPS void __mm_i32scatter_ps(void * base, __m128i vdx, __m128 a, int scale);
VSCATTERDPS void __mm_mask_i32scatter_ps(void * base, __mmask8 k, __m128i vdx, __m128 a, int scale);
VSCATTERQPD void __mm_i64scatter_pd(void * base, __m128i vdx, __m128d a, int scale);
VSCATTERQPD void __mm_mask_i64scatter_pd(void * base, __mmask8 k, __m128i vdx, __m128d a, int scale);
VSCATTERQPS void __mm_i64scatter_ps(void * base, __m128i vdx, __m128 a, int scale);
VSCATTERQPS void __mm_mask_i64scatter_ps(void * base, __mmask8 k, __m128i vdx, __m128 a, int scale);

```

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

Invalid, Overflow, Underflow, Precision, Denormal

Other Exceptions

See Exceptions Type E12.

VSHUFF32x4/VSHUFF64x2/VSHUFI32x4/VSHUFI64x2—Shuffle Packed Values at 128-bit Granularity

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.256.66.0F3A.W0 23 /r ib VSHUFF32X4 ymm1{k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shuffle 128-bit packed single-precision floating-point values selected by imm8 from ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst and place results in ymm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W0 23 /r ib VSHUFF32x4 zmm1{k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512F	Shuffle 128-bit packed single-precision floating-point values selected by imm8 from zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst and place results in zmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F3A.W1 23 /r ib VSHUFF64X2 ymm1{k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shuffle 128-bit packed double-precision floating-point values selected by imm8 from ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst and place results in ymm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W1 23 /r ib VSHUFF64x2 zmm1{k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512F	Shuffle 128-bit packed double-precision floating-point values selected by imm8 from zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst and place results in zmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F3A.W0 43 /r ib VSHUFI32X4 ymm1{k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shuffle 128-bit packed double-word values selected by imm8 from ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst and place results in ymm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W0 43 /r ib VSHUFI32x4 zmm1{k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512F	Shuffle 128-bit packed double-word values selected by imm8 from zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst and place results in zmm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F3A.W1 43 /r ib VSHUFI64X2 ymm1{k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512F	Shuffle 128-bit packed quad-word values selected by imm8 from ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst and place results in ymm1 subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F3A.W1 43 /r ib VSHUFI64x2 zmm1{k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst, imm8	A	V/V	AVX512F	Shuffle 128-bit packed quad-word values selected by imm8 from zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst and place results in zmm1 subject to writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

256-bit Version: Moves one of the two 128-bit packed single-precision floating-point values from the first source operand (second operand) into the low 128-bit of the destination operand (first operand); moves one of the two packed 128-bit floating-point values from the second source operand (third operand) into the high 128-bit of the destination operand. The selector operand (third operand) determines which values are moved to the destination operand.

512-bit Version: Moves two of the four 128-bit packed single-precision floating-point values from the first source operand (second operand) into the low 256-bit of each double qword of the destination operand (first operand); moves two of the four packed 128-bit floating-point values from the second source operand (third operand) into the high 256-bit of the destination operand. The selector operand (third operand) determines which values are moved to the destination operand.

The first source operand is a vector register. The second source operand can be a ZMM register, a 512-bit memory location or a 512-bit vector broadcasted from a 32/64-bit memory location. The destination operand is a vector register.

The writemask updates the destination operand with the granularity of 32/64-bit data elements.

XEND – Transactional End

Opcode/Instruction	Op/En	64/32bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF 01 D5 XEND	A	V/V	RTM	Specifies the end of an RTM code region.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand2	Operand3	Operand4
A	NA	NA	NA	NA

Description

The instruction marks the end of an RTM code region. If this corresponds to the outermost scope (that is, including this XEND instruction, the number of XBEGIN instructions is the same as number of XEND instructions), the logical processor will attempt to commit the logical processor state atomically. If the commit fails, the logical processor will rollback all architectural register and memory updates performed during the RTM execution. The logical processor will resume execution at the fallback address computed from the outermost XBEGIN instruction. The EAX register is updated to reflect RTM abort information.

XEND executed outside a transactional region will cause a #GP (General Protection Fault).

Operation

XEND

```

IF (RTM_ACTIVE = 0) THEN
    SIGNAL #GP
ELSE
    RTM_NEST_COUNT--
    IF (RTM_NEST_COUNT = 0) THEN
        Try to commit transaction
        IF fail to commit transactional execution
            THEN
                GOTO RTM_ABORT_PROCESSING;
            ELSE (* commit success *)
                RTM_ACTIVE ← 0
    FI;
FI;

```

(* For any RTM abort condition encountered during RTM execution *)

```

RTM_ABORT_PROCESSING:
    Restore architectural register state
    Discard memory updates performed in transaction
    Update EAX with status
    RTM_NEST_COUNT ← 0
    RTM_ACTIVE ← 0
    IF 64-bit Mode
        THEN
            RIP ← fallbackRIP
        ELSE
            EIP ← fallbackEIP
    FI;
END

```


Flags Affected

None

Intel C/C++ Compiler Intrinsic Equivalent

XEND: void_xend(void);

SIMD Floating-Point Exceptions

None

Other Exceptions

#UD CUID.(EAX=7, ECX=0):EBX.RTM[bit 11] = 0.
 If LOCK prefix is used.

#GP(0) If RTM_ACTIVE = 0.

XORPD—Bitwise Logical XOR of Packed Double Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
66 0F 57/r XORPD xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE2	Return the bitwise logical XOR of packed double-precision floating-point values in xmm1 and xmm2/mem.
VEX.128.66.0F.WIG 57 /r VXORPD xmm1,xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Return the bitwise logical XOR of packed double-precision floating-point values in xmm2 and xmm3/mem.
VEX.256.66.0F.WIG 57 /r VXORPD ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX	Return the bitwise logical XOR of packed double-precision floating-point values in ymm2 and ymm3/mem.
EVEX.128.66.0F.W1 57 /r VXORPD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512DQ	Return the bitwise logical XOR of packed double-precision floating-point values in xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m64bcst subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.66.0F.W1 57 /r VXORPD ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512DQ	Return the bitwise logical XOR of packed double-precision floating-point values in ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m64bcst subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.66.0F.W1 57 /r VXORPD zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m64bcst	C	V/V	AVX512DQ	Return the bitwise logical XOR of packed double-precision floating-point values in zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m64bcst subject to writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a bitwise logical XOR of the two, four or eight packed double-precision floating-point values from the first source operand and the second source operand, and stores the result in the destination operand

EVEX.512 encoded version: The first source operand is a ZMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM register or a vector memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM register conditionally updated with writemask k1.

VEX.256 and EVEX.256 encoded versions: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand is a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register (conditionally updated with writemask k1 in case of EVEX). The upper bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

VEX.128 and EVEX.128 encoded versions: The first source operand is an XMM register. The second source operand is an XMM register or 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is an XMM register (conditionally updated with writemask k1 in case of EVEX). The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source can be an XMM register or an 128-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding register destination are unmodified.

XORPS—Bitwise Logical XOR of Packed Single Precision Floating-Point Values

Opcode/ Instruction	Op / En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F 57 /r XORPS xmm1, xmm2/m128	A	V/V	SSE	Return the bitwise logical XOR of packed single-precision floating-point values in xmm1 and xmm2/mem.
VEX.128.0F.WIG 57 /r VXORPS xmm1, xmm2, xmm3/m128	B	V/V	AVX	Return the bitwise logical XOR of packed single-precision floating-point values in xmm2 and xmm3/mem.
VEX.256.0F.WIG 57 /r VXORPS ymm1, ymm2, ymm3/m256	B	V/V	AVX	Return the bitwise logical XOR of packed single-precision floating-point values in ymm2 and ymm3/mem.
EVEX.128.0F.W0 57 /r VXORPS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m128/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512DQ	Return the bitwise logical XOR of packed single-precision floating-point values in xmm2 and xmm3/m128/m32bcst subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.256.0F.W0 57 /r VXORPS ymm1 {k1}{z}, ymm2, ymm3/m256/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512VL AVX512DQ	Return the bitwise logical XOR of packed single-precision floating-point values in ymm2 and ymm3/m256/m32bcst subject to writemask k1.
EVEX.512.0F.W0 57 /r VXORPS zmm1 {k1}{z}, zmm2, zmm3/m512/m32bcst	C	V/V	AVX512DQ	Return the bitwise logical XOR of packed single-precision floating-point values in zmm2 and zmm3/m512/m32bcst subject to writemask k1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	NA	ModRM:reg (r, w)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA	NA
B	NA	ModRM:reg (w)	VEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA
C	Full	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Performs a bitwise logical XOR of the four, eight or sixteen packed single-precision floating-point values from the first source operand and the second source operand, and stores the result in the destination operand

EVEX.512 encoded version: The first source operand is a ZMM register. The second source operand can be a ZMM register or a vector memory location. The destination operand is a ZMM register conditionally updated with writemask k1.

VEX.256 and EVEX.256 encoded versions: The first source operand is a YMM register. The second source operand is a YMM register or a 256-bit memory location. The destination operand is a YMM register (conditionally updated with writemask k1 in case of EVEX). The upper bits (MAXVL-1:256) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

VEX.128 and EVEX.128 encoded versions: The first source operand is an XMM register. The second source operand is an XMM register or 128-bit memory location. The destination operand is an XMM register (conditionally updated with writemask k1 in case of EVEX). The upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding ZMM register destination are zeroed.

128-bit Legacy SSE version: The second source can be an XMM register or an 128-bit memory location. The destination is not distinct from the first source XMM register and the upper bits (MAXVL-1:128) of the corresponding register destination are unmodified.

7. Updates to Chapter 6, Volume 2D

Change bars show changes to Chapter 6 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 2D: Instruction Set Reference*.

Changes to this chapter: Updates to layout of IA32_Feature_Control table.

6.1 OVERVIEW

This chapter describes the Safer Mode Extensions (SMX) for the Intel 64 and IA-32 architectures. Safer Mode Extensions (SMX) provide a programming interface for system software to establish a measured environment within the platform to support trust decisions by end users. The measured environment includes:

- Measured launch of a system executive, referred to as a Measured Launched Environment (MLE)¹. The system executive may be based on a Virtual Machine Monitor (VMM), a measured VMM is referred to as MVMM².
- Mechanisms to ensure the above measurement is protected and stored in a secure location in the platform.
- Protection mechanisms that allow the VMM to control attempts to modify the VMM.

The measurement and protection mechanisms used by a measured environment are supported by the capabilities of an Intel[®] Trusted Execution Technology (Intel[®] TXT) platform:

- The SMX are the processor's programming interface in an Intel TXT platform.
- The chipset in an Intel TXT platform provides enforcement of the protection mechanisms.
- Trusted Platform Module (TPM) 1.2 in the platform provides platform configuration registers (PCRs) to store software measurement values.

6.2 SMX FUNCTIONALITY

SMX functionality is provided in an Intel 64 processor through the GETSEC instruction via leaf functions. The GETSEC instruction supports multiple leaf functions. Leaf functions are selected by the value in EAX at the time GETSEC is executed. Each GETSEC leaf function is documented separately in the reference pages with a unique mnemonic (even though these mnemonics share the same opcode, 0F 37).

6.2.1 Detecting and Enabling SMX

Software can detect support for SMX operation using the CPUID instruction. If software executes CPUID with 1 in EAX, a value of 1 in bit 6 of ECX indicates support for SMX operation (GETSEC is available), see CPUID instruction for the layout of feature flags of reported by CPUID.01H:ECX.

System software enables SMX operation by setting CR4.SMXE[Bit 14] = 1 before attempting to execute GETSEC. Otherwise, execution of GETSEC results in the processor signaling an invalid opcode exception (#UD).

If the CPUID SMX feature flag is clear (CPUID.01H.ECX[Bit 6] = 0), attempting to set CR4.SMXE[Bit 14] results in a general protection exception.

The IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL MSR (at address 03AH) provides feature control bits that configure operation of VMX and SMX. These bits are documented in Table 6-1.

1. See *Intel[®] Trusted Execution Technology Measured Launched Environment Programming Guide*.
2. An MVMM is sometimes referred to as a measured launched environment (MLE). See *Intel[®] Trusted Execution Technology Measured Launched Environment Programming Guide*

Table 6-1. Layout of IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL

Bit Position	Description
0	Lock bit (0 = unlocked, 1 = locked). When set to '1' further writes to this MSR are blocked.
1	Enable VMX in SMX operation.
2	Enable VMX outside SMX operation.
7:3	Reserved
14:8	SENTER Local Function Enables: When set, each bit in the field represents an enable control for a corresponding SENTER function.
15	SENTER Global Enable: Must be set to '1' to enable operation of GETSEC[SENTER].
16	Reserved
17	SGX Launch Control Enable: Must be set to '1' to enable runtime re-configuration of SGX Launch Control via the IA32_SGXLEPUBKEYHASHn MSR.
18	SGX Global Enable: Must be set to '1' to enable Intel SGX leaf functions.
19	Reserved
20	LMCE On: When set, system software can program the MSRs associated with LMCE to configure delivery of some machine check exceptions to a single logical processor.
63:21	Reserved

- Bit 0 is a lock bit. If the lock bit is clear, an attempt to execute VMXON will cause a general-protection exception. Attempting to execute GETSEC[SENTER] when the lock bit is clear will also cause a general-protection exception. If the lock bit is set, WRMSR to the IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL MSR will cause a general-protection exception. Once the lock bit is set, the MSR cannot be modified until a power-on reset. System BIOS can use this bit to provide a setup option for BIOS to disable support for VMX, SMX or both VMX and SMX.
- Bit 1 enables VMX in SMX operation (between executing the SENTER and SEXIT leaves of GETSEC). If this bit is clear, an attempt to execute VMXON in SMX will cause a general-protection exception if executed in SMX operation. Attempts to set this bit on logical processors that do not support both VMX operation (Chapter 6, "Safer Mode Extensions Reference") and SMX operation cause general-protection exceptions.
- Bit 2 enables VMX outside SMX operation. If this bit is clear, an attempt to execute VMXON will cause a general-protection exception if executed outside SMX operation. Attempts to set this bit on logical processors that do not support VMX operation cause general-protection exceptions.
- Bits 8 through 14 specify enabled functionality of the SENTER leaf function. Each bit in the field represents an enable control for a corresponding SENTER function. Only enabled SENTER leaf functionality can be used when executing SENTER.
- Bits 15 specify global enable of all SENTER functionalities.

6.2.2 SMX Instruction Summary

System software must first query for available GETSEC leaf functions by executing GETSEC[CAPABILITIES]. The CAPABILITIES leaf function returns a bit map of available GETSEC leaves. An attempt to execute an unsupported leaf index results in an undefined opcode (#UD) exception.

6.2.2.1 GETSEC[CAPABILITIES]

The SMX functionality provides an architectural interface for newer processor generations to extend SMX capabilities. Specifically, the GETSEC instruction provides a capability leaf function for system software to discover the available GETSEC leaf functions that are supported in a processor. Table 6-2 lists the currently available GETSEC leaf functions.

Table 6-2. GETSEC Leaf Functions

Index (EAX)	Leaf function	Description
0	CAPABILITIES	Returns the available leaf functions of the GETSEC instruction.
1	Undefined	Reserved
2	ENTERACCS	Enter
3	EXITAC	Exit
4	SENDER	Launch an MLE.
5	SEXIT	Exit the MLE.
6	PARAMETERS	Return SMX related parameter information.
7	SMCTRL	SMX mode control.
8	WAKEUP	Wake up sleeping processors in safer mode.
9 - (4G-1)	Undefined	Reserved

6.2.2.2 GETSEC[ENTERACCS]

The GETSEC[ENTERACCS] leaf enables authenticated code execution mode. The ENTERACCS leaf function performs an authenticated code module load using the chipset public key as the signature verification. ENTERACCS requires the existence of an Intel® Trusted Execution Technology capable chipset since it unlocks the chipset private configuration register space after successful authentication of the loaded module. The physical base address and size of the authenticated code module are specified as input register values in EBX and ECX, respectively.

While in the authenticated code execution mode, certain processor state properties change. For this reason, the time in which the processor operates in authenticated code execution mode should be limited to minimize impact on external system events.

Upon entry into , the previous paging context is disabled (since the authenticated code module image is specified with physical addresses and can no longer rely upon external memory-based page-table structures).

Prior to executing the GETSEC[ENTERACCS] leaf, system software must ensure the logical processor issuing GETSEC[ENTERACCS] is the boot-strap processor (BSP), as indicated by IA32_APIC_BASE.BSP = 1. System software must ensure other logical processors are in a suitable idle state and not marked as BSP.

The GETSEC[ENTERACCS] leaf may be used by different agents to load different authenticated code modules to perform functions related to different aspects of a measured environment, for example system software and Intel® TXT enabled BIOS may use more than one authenticated code modules.

6.2.2.3 GETSEC[EXITAC]

GETSEC[EXITAC] takes the processor out of . When this instruction leaf is executed, the contents of the authenticated code execution area are scrubbed and control is transferred to the non-authenticated context defined by a near pointer passed with the GETSEC[EXITAC] instruction.

The authenticated code execution area is no longer accessible after completion of GETSEC[EXITAC]. RBX (or EBX) holds the address of the near absolute indirect target to be taken.

6.2.2.4 GETSEC[SENDER]

The GETSEC[SENDER] leaf function is used by the initiating logical processor (ILP) to launch an MLE. GETSEC[SENDER] can be considered a superset of the ENTERACCS leaf, because it enters as part of the measured environment launch.

Measured environment startup consists of the following steps:

- the ILP rendezvous the responding logical processors (RLPs) in the platform into a controlled state (At the completion of this handshake, all the RLPs except for the ILP initiating the measured environment launch are placed in a newly defined SENTER sleep state).
- Load and authenticate the authenticated code module required by the measured environment, and enter authenticated code execution mode.
- Verify and lock certain system configuration parameters.
- Measure the dynamic root of trust and store into the PCRs in TPM.
- Transfer control to the MLE with interrupts disabled.

Prior to executing the GETSEC[SENDER] leaf, system software must ensure the platform's TPM is ready for access and the ILP is the boot-strap processor (BSP), as indicated by IA32_APIC_BASE.BSP. System software must ensure other logical processors (RLPs) are in a suitable idle state and not marked as BSP.

System software launching a measurement environment is responsible for providing a proper authenticate code module address when executing GETSEC[SENDER]. The AC module responsible for the launch of a measured environment and loaded by GETSEC[SENDER] is referred to as SINIT. See *Intel® Trusted Execution Technology Measured Launched Environment Programming Guide* for additional information on system software requirements prior to executing GETSEC[SENDER].

6.2.2.5 GETSEC[SEXIT]

System software exits the measured environment by executing the instruction GETSEC[SEXIT] on the ILP. This instruction rendezvous the responding logical processors in the platform for exiting from the measured environment. External events (if left masked) are unmasked and Intel® TXT-capable chipset's private configuration space is re-locked.

6.2.2.6 GETSEC[PARAMETERS]

The GETSEC[PARAMETERS] leaf function is used to report attributes, options and limitations of SMX operation. Software uses this leaf to identify operating limits or additional options.

The information reported by GETSEC[PARAMETERS] may require executing the leaf multiple times using EBX as an index. If the GETSEC[PARAMETERS] instruction leaf or if a specific parameter field is not available, then SMX operation should be interpreted to use the default limits of respective GETSEC leaves or parameter fields defined in the GETSEC[PARAMETERS] leaf.

6.2.2.7 GETSEC[SMCTRL]

The GETSEC[SMCTRL] leaf function is used for providing additional control over specific conditions associated with the SMX architecture. An input register is supported for selecting the control operation to be performed. See the specific leaf description for details on the type of control provided.

6.2.2.8 GETSEC[WAKEUP]

Responding logical processors (RLPs) are placed in the SENTER sleep state after the initiating logical processor executes GETSEC[SENDER]. The ILP can wake up RLPs to join the measured environment by using GETSEC[WAKEUP]. When the RLPs in SENTER sleep state wake up, these logical processors begin execution at the entry point defined in a data structure held in system memory (pointed to by a chipset register LT.MLE.JOIN) in TXT configuration space.

6.2.3 Measured Environment and SMX

This section gives a simplified view of a representative life cycle of a measured environment that is launched by a system executive using SMX leaf functions. *Intel® Trusted Execution Technology Measured Launched Environment Programming Guide* provides more detailed examples of using SMX and chipset resources (including chipset registers, Trusted Platform Module) to launch an MVMM.

The life cycle starts with the system executive (an OS, an OS loader, and so forth) loading the MLE and SINIT AC module into available system memory. The system executive must validate and prepare the platform for the measured launch. When the platform is properly configured, the system executive executes GETSEC[SENDER] on the initiating logical processor (ILP) to rendezvous the responding logical processors into an SENTER sleep state, the ILP then enters into using the SINIT AC module. In a multi-threaded or multi-processing environment, the system executive must ensure that other logical processors are already in an idle loop, or asleep (such as after executing HLT) before executing GETSEC[SENDER].

After the GETSEC[SENDER] rendezvous handshake is performed between all logical processors in the platform, the ILP loads the chipset authenticated code module (SINIT) and performs an authentication check. If the check passes, the processor hashes the SINIT AC module and stores the result into TPM PCR 17. It then switches execution context to the SINIT AC module. The SINIT AC module will perform a number of platform operations, including: verifying the system configuration, protecting the system memory used by the MLE from I/O devices capable of DMA, producing a hash of the MLE, storing the hash value in TPM PCR 18, and various other operations. When SINIT completes execution, it executes the GETSEC[EXITAC] instruction and transfers control the MLE at the designated entry point.

Upon receiving control from the SINIT AC module, the MLE must establish its protection and isolation controls before enabling DMA and interrupts and transferring control to other software modules. It must also wake up the RLPs from their SENTER sleep state using the GETSEC[WAKEUP] instruction and bring them into its protection and isolation environment.

While executing in a measured environment, the MVMM can access the Trusted Platform Module (TPM) in locality 2. The MVMM has complete access to all TPM commands and may use the TPM to report current measurement values or use the measurement values to protect information such that only when the platform configuration registers (PCRs) contain the same value is the information released from the TPM. This protection mechanism is known as sealing.

A measured environment shutdown is ultimately completed by executing GETSEC[SEXIT]. Prior to this step system software is responsible for scrubbing sensitive information left in the processor caches, system memory.

6.3 GETSEC LEAF FUNCTIONS

This section provides detailed descriptions of each leaf function of the GETSEC instruction. GETSEC is available only if CPUID.01H:ECX[Bit 6] = 1. This indicates the availability of SMX and the GETSEC instruction. Before GETSEC can be executed, SMX must be enabled by setting CR4.SMXE[Bit 14] = 1.

A GETSEC leaf can only be used if it is shown to be available as reported by the GETSEC[CAPABILITIES] function. Attempts to access a GETSEC leaf index not supported by the processor, or if CR4.SMXE is 0, results in the signaling of an undefined opcode exception.

All GETSEC leaf functions are available in protected mode, including the compatibility sub-mode of IA-32e mode and the 64-bit sub-mode of IA-32e mode. Unless otherwise noted, the behavior of all GETSEC functions and interactions related to the measured environment are independent of IA-32e mode. This also applies to the interpretation of register widths¹ passed as input parameters to GETSEC functions and to register results returned as output parameters.

1. This chapter uses the 64-bit notation RAX, RIP, RSP, RFLAGS, etc. for processor registers because processors that support SMX also support Intel 64 Architecture. The MVMM can be launched in IA-32e mode or outside IA-32e mode. The 64-bit notation of processor registers also refer to its 32-bit forms if SMX is used in 32-bit environment. In some places, notation such as EAX is used to refer specifically to lower 32 bits of the indicated register

The GETSEC functions ENTERACCS, SENTER, SEXIT, and WAKEUP require an Intel® TXT capable-chipset to be present in the platform. The GETSEC[CAPABILITIES] returned bit vector in position 0 indicates an Intel® TXT-capable chipset has been sampled present¹ by the processor.

The processor's operating mode also affects the execution of the following GETSEC leaf functions: SMCTRL, ENTERACCS, EXITAC, SENTER, SEXIT, and WAKEUP. These functions are only allowed in protected mode at CPL = 0. They are not allowed while in SMM in order to prevent potential intra-mode conflicts. Further execution qualifications exist to prevent potential architectural conflicts (for example: nesting of the measured environment or authenticated code execution mode). See the definitions of the GETSEC leaf functions for specific requirements.

For the purpose of performance monitor counting, the execution of GETSEC functions is counted as a single instruction with respect to retired instructions. The response by a responding logical processor (RLP) to messages associated with GETSEC[SENER] or GETSEC[SEXIT] is transparent to the retired instruction count on the ILP.

1. Sampled present means that the processor sent a message to the chipset and the chipset responded that it (a) knows about the message and (b) is capable of executing SENTER. This means that the chipset CAN support Intel® TXT, and is configured and WILLING to support it.

GETSEC[CAPABILITIES] - Report the SMX Capabilities

Opcode	Instruction	Description
OF 37 (EAX = 0)	GETSEC[CAPABILITIES]	Report the SMX capabilities. The capabilities index is input in EBX with the result returned in EAX.

Description

The GETSEC[CAPABILITIES] function returns a bit vector of supported GETSEC leaf functions. The CAPABILITIES leaf of GETSEC is selected with EAX set to 0 at entry. EBX is used as the selector for returning the bit vector field in EAX. GETSEC[CAPABILITIES] may be executed at all privilege levels, but the CR4.SMXE bit must be set or an undefined opcode exception (#UD) is returned.

With EBX = 0 upon execution of GETSEC[CAPABILITIES], EAX returns the a bit vector representing status on the presence of a Intel[®] TXT-capable chipset and the first 30 available GETSEC leaf functions. The format of the returned bit vector is provided in Table 6-3.

If bit 0 is set to 1, then an Intel[®] TXT-capable chipset has been sampled present by the processor. If bits in the range of 1-30 are set, then the corresponding GETSEC leaf function is available. If the bit value at a given bit index is 0, then the GETSEC leaf function corresponding to that index is unsupported and attempted execution results in a #UD.

Bit 31 of EAX indicates if further leaf indexes are supported. If the Extended Leafs bit 31 is set, then additional leaf functions are accessed by repeating GETSEC[CAPABILITIES] with EBX incremented by one. When the most significant bit of EAX is not set, then additional GETSEC leaf functions are not supported; indexing EBX to a higher value results in EAX returning zero.

Table 6-3. Getsec Capability Result Encoding (EBX = 0)

Field	Bit position	Description
Chipset Present	0	Intel [®] TXT-capable chipset is present.
Undefined	1	Reserved
ENTERACCS	2	GETSEC[ENTERACCS] is available.
EXITAC	3	GETSEC[EXITAC] is available.
SENER	4	GETSEC[SENER] is available.
SEXIT	5	GETSEC[SEXIT] is available.
PARAMETERS	6	GETSEC[PARAMETERS] is available.
SMCTRL	7	GETSEC[SMCTRL] is available.
WAKEUP	8	GETSEC[WAKEUP] is available.
Undefined	30:9	Reserved
Extended Leafs	31	Reserved for extended information reporting of GETSEC capabilities.

Operation

```

IF (CR4.SMXE=0)
  THEN #UD;
ELSIF (in VMX non-root operation)
  THEN VM Exit (reason="GETSEC instruction");
IF (EBX=0) THEN
  BitVector← 0;
  IF (TXT chipset present)
    BitVector[Chipset present]← 1;
  IF (ENTERACCS Available)
    THEN BitVector[ENTERACCS]← 1;
  IF (EXITAC Available)
    THEN BitVector[EXITAC]← 1;
  IF (SENTER Available)
    THEN BitVector[SENTER]← 1;
  IF (SEXIT Available)
    THEN BitVector[SEXIT]← 1;
  IF (PARAMETERS Available)
    THEN BitVector[PARAMETERS]← 1;
  IF (SMCTRL Available)
    THEN BitVector[SMCTRL]← 1;
  IF (WAKEUP Available)
    THEN BitVector[WAKEUP]← 1;
  EAX← BitVector;
ELSE
  EAX← 0;
END;;

```

Flags Affected

None

Use of Prefixes

LOCK	Causes #UD
REP*	Cause #UD (includes REPNE/REPZ and REP/REPE/REPZ)
Operand size	Causes #UD
Segment overrides	Ignored
Address size	Ignored
REX	Ignored

Protected Mode Exceptions

#UD IF CR4.SMXE = 0.

Real-Address Mode Exceptions

#UD IF CR4.SMXE = 0.

Virtual-8086 Mode Exceptions

#UD IF CR4.SMXE = 0.

Compatibility Mode Exceptions

#UD IF CR4.SMXE = 0.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#UD IF CR4.SMXE = 0.

VM-exit Condition

Reason (GETSEC) IF in VMX non-root operation.

GETSEC[ENTERACCS] - Execute Authenticated Chipset Code

Opcode	Instruction	Description
0F 37 (EAX = 2)	GETSEC[ENTERACCS]	Enter authenticated code execution mode. EBX holds the authenticated code module physical base address. ECX holds the authenticated code module size (bytes).

Description

The GETSEC[ENTERACCS] function loads, authenticates and executes an authenticated code module using an Intel® TXT platform chipset's public key. The ENTERACCS leaf of GETSEC is selected with EAX set to 2 at entry.

There are certain restrictions enforced by the processor for the execution of the GETSEC[ENTERACCS] instruction:

- Execution is not allowed unless the processor is in protected mode or IA-32e mode with CPL = 0 and EFLAGS.VM = 0.
- Processor cache must be available and not disabled, that is, CR0.CD and CR0.NW bits must be 0.
- For processor packages containing more than one logical processor, CR0.CD is checked to ensure consistency between enabled logical processors.
- For enforcing consistency of operation with numeric exception reporting using Interrupt 16, CR0.NE must be set.
- An Intel TXT-capable chipset must be present as communicated to the processor by sampling of the power-on configuration capability field after reset.
- The processor can not already be in authenticated code execution mode as launched by a previous GETSEC[ENTERACCS] or GETSEC[SENDER] instruction without a subsequent exiting using GETSEC[EXITAC]).
- To avoid potential operability conflicts between modes, the processor is not allowed to execute this instruction if it currently is in SMM or VMX operation.
- To insure consistent handling of SIPI messages, the processor executing the GETSEC[ENTERACCS] instruction must also be designated the BSP (boot-strap processor) as defined by IA32_APIC_BASE.BSP (Bit 8).

Failure to conform to the above conditions results in the processor signaling a general protection exception.

Prior to execution of the ENTERACCS leaf, other logical processors, i.e., RLPs, in the platform must be:

- Idle in a wait-for-SIPI state (as initiated by an INIT assertion or through reset for non-BSP designated processors), or
- In the SENTER sleep state as initiated by a GETSEC[SENDER] from the initiating logical processor (ILP).

If other logical processor(s) in the same package are not idle in one of these states, execution of ENTERACCS signals a general protection exception. The same requirement and action applies if the other logical processor(s) of the same package do not have CR0.CD = 0.

A successful execution of ENTERACCS results in the ILP entering an authenticated code execution mode. Prior to reaching this point, the processor performs several checks. These include:

- Establish and check the location and size of the specified authenticated code module to be executed by the processor.
- Inhibit the ILP's response to the external events: INIT, A20M, NMI and SMI.
- Broadcast a message to enable protection of memory and I/O from other processor agents.
- Load the designated code module into an authenticated code execution area.
- Isolate the contents of the authenticated code execution area from further state modification by external agents.
- Authenticate the authenticated code module.
- Initialize the initiating logical processor state based on information contained in the authenticated code module header.
- Unlock the Intel® TXT-capable chipset private configuration space and TPM locality 3 space.

- Begin execution in the authenticated code module at the defined entry point.

The GETSEC[ENTERACCS] function requires two additional input parameters in the general purpose registers EBX and ECX. EBX holds the authenticated code (AC) module physical base address (the AC module must reside below 4 GBytes in physical address space) and ECX holds the AC module size (in bytes). The physical base address and size are used to retrieve the code module from system memory and load it into the internal authenticated code execution area. The base physical address is checked to verify it is on a modulo-4096 byte boundary. The size is verified to be a multiple of 64, that it does not exceed the internal authenticated code execution area capacity (as reported by GETSEC[CAPABILITIES]), and that the top address of the AC module does not exceed 32 bits. An error condition results in an abort of the authenticated code execution launch and the signaling of a general protection exception.

As an integrity check for proper processor hardware operation, execution of GETSEC[ENTERACCS] will also check the contents of all the machine check status registers (as reported by the MSRs IA32_MCi_STATUS) for any valid uncorrectable error condition. In addition, the global machine check status register IA32_MCG_STATUS MCIP bit must be cleared and the IERR processor package pin (or its equivalent) must not be asserted, indicating that no machine check exception processing is currently in progress. These checks are performed prior to initiating the load of the authenticated code module. Any outstanding valid uncorrectable machine check error condition present in these status registers at this point will result in the processor signaling a general protection violation.

The ILP masks the response to the assertion of the external signals INIT#, A20M, NMI#, and SMI#. This masking remains active until optionally unmasked by GETSEC[EXITAC] (this defined unmasking behavior assumes GETSEC[ENTERACCS] was not executed by a prior GETSEC[SENDER]). The purpose of this masking control is to prevent exposure to existing external event handlers that may not be under the control of the authenticated code module.

The ILP sets an internal flag to indicate it has entered authenticated code execution mode. The state of the A20M pin is likewise masked and forced internally to a de-asserted state so that any external assertion is not recognized during authenticated code execution mode.

To prevent other (logical) processors from interfering with the ILP operating in authenticated code execution mode, memory (excluding implicit write-back transactions) access and I/O originating from other processor agents are blocked. This protection starts when the ILP enters into authenticated code execution mode. Only memory and I/O transactions initiated from the ILP are allowed to proceed. Exiting authenticated code execution mode is done by executing GETSEC[EXITAC]. The protection of memory and I/O activities remains in effect until the ILP executes GETSEC[EXITAC].

Prior to launching the authenticated execution module using GETSEC[ENTERACCS] or GETSEC[SENDER], the processor's MTRRs (Memory Type Range Registers) must first be initialized to map out the authenticated RAM addresses as WB (writeback). Failure to do so may affect the ability for the processor to maintain isolation of the loaded authenticated code module. If the processor detected this requirement is not met, it will signal an Intel® TXT reset condition with an error code during the loading of the authenticated code module.

While physical addresses within the load module must be mapped as WB, the memory type for locations outside of the module boundaries must be mapped to one of the supported memory types as returned by GETSEC[PARAMETERS] (or UC as default).

To conform to the minimum granularity of MTRR MSRs for specifying the memory type, authenticated code RAM (ACRAM) is allocated to the processor in 4096 byte granular blocks. If an AC module size as specified in ECX is not a multiple of 4096 then the processor will allocate up to the next 4096 byte boundary for mapping as ACRAM with indeterminate data. This pad area will not be visible to the authenticated code module as external memory nor can it depend on the value of the data used to fill the pad area.

At the successful completion of GETSEC[ENTERACCS], the architectural state of the processor is partially initialized from contents held in the header of the authenticated code module. The processor GDTR, CS, and DS selectors are initialized from fields within the authenticated code module. Since the authenticated code module must be relocatable, all address references must be relative to the authenticated code module base address in EBX. The processor GDTR base value is initialized to the AC module header field GDTBasePtr + module base address held in EBX and the GDTR limit is set to the value in the GDTLimit field. The CS selector is initialized to the AC module header SegSel field, while the DS selector is initialized to CS + 8. The segment descriptor fields are implicitly initialized to BASE=0, LIMIT=FFFFFFh, G=1, D=1, P=1, S=1, read/write access for DS, and execute/read access for CS. The processor begins the authenticated code module execution with the EIP set to the AC module header EntryPoint field + module base address (EBX). The AC module based fields used for initializing the processor state are checked for consistency and any failure results in a shutdown condition.

A summary of the register state initialization after successful completion of GETSEC[ENTERACCS] is given for the processor in Table 6-4. The paging is disabled upon entry into authenticated code execution mode. The authenticated code module is loaded and initially executed using physical addresses. It is up to the system software after execution of GETSEC[ENTERACCS] to establish a new (or restore its previous) paging environment with an appropriate mapping to meet new protection requirements. EBP is initialized to the authenticated code module base physical address for initial execution in the authenticated environment. As a result, the authenticated code can reference EBP for relative address based references, given that the authenticated code module must be position independent.

Table 6-4. Register State Initialization after GETSEC[ENTERACCS]

Register State	Initialization Status	Comment
CRO	PG←0, AM←0, WP←0: Others unchanged	Paging, Alignment Check, Write-protection are disabled.
CR4	MCE←0: Others unchanged	Machine Check Exceptions disabled.
EFLAGS	00000002H	
IA32_EFER	0H	IA-32e mode disabled.
EIP	AC.base + EntryPoint	AC.base is in EBX as input to GETSEC[ENTERACCS].
[E R]BX	Pre-ENTERACCS state: Next [E R]IP prior to GETSEC[ENTERACCS]	Carry forward 64-bit processor state across GETSEC[ENTERACCS].
ECX	Pre-ENTERACCS state: [31:16]=GDTR.limit; [15:0]=CS.sel	Carry forward processor state across GETSEC[ENTERACCS].
[E R]DX	Pre-ENTERACCS state: GDTR base	Carry forward 64-bit processor state across GETSEC[ENTERACCS].
EBP	AC.base	
CS	Sel=[SegSel], base=0, limit=FFFFFh, G=1, D=1, AR=9BH	
DS	Sel=[SegSel] +8, base=0, limit=FFFFFh, G=1, D=1, AR=93H	
GDTR	Base= AC.base (EBX) + [GDTBasePtr], Limit=[GDTLimit]	
DR7	00000400H	
IA32_DEBUGCTL	0H	
IA32_MISC_ENABLE	See Table 6-5 for example.	The number of initialized fields may change due to processor implementation.

The segmentation related processor state that has not been initialized by GETSEC[ENTERACCS] requires appropriate initialization before use. Since a new GDT context has been established, the previous state of the segment selector values held in ES, SS, FS, GS, TR, and LDTR might not be valid.

The MSR IA32_EFER is also unconditionally cleared as part of the processor state initialized by ENTERACCS. Since paging is disabled upon entering authenticated code execution mode, a new paging environment will have to be reestablished in order to establish IA-32e mode while operating in authenticated code execution mode.

Debug exception and trap related signaling is also disabled as part of GETSEC[ENTERACCS]. This is achieved by resetting DR7, TF in EFLAGS, and the MSR IA32_DEBUGCTL. These debug functions are free to be re-enabled once supporting exception handler(s), descriptor tables, and debug registers have been properly initialized following

entry into authenticated code execution mode. Also, any pending single-step trap condition will have been cleared upon entry into this mode.

The IA32_MISC_ENABLE MSR is initialized upon entry into authenticated execution mode. Certain bits of this MSR are preserved because preserving these bits may be important to maintain previously established platform settings (See the footnote for Table 6-5.). The remaining bits are cleared for the purpose of establishing a more consistent environment for the execution of authenticated code modules. One of the impacts of initializing this MSR is any previous condition established by the MONITOR instruction will be cleared.

To support the possible return to the processor architectural state prior to execution of GETSEC[ENTERACCS], certain critical processor state is captured and stored in the general-purpose registers at instruction completion. [E|R]BX holds effective address ([E|R]IP) of the instruction that would execute next after GETSEC[ENTERACCS], ECX[15:0] holds the CS selector value, ECX[31:16] holds the GDTR limit field, and [E|R]DX holds the GDTR base field. The subsequent authenticated code can preserve the contents of these registers so that this state can be manually restored if needed, prior to exiting authenticated code execution mode with GETSEC[EXITAC]. For the processor state after exiting authenticated code execution mode, see the description of GETSEC[SEXIT].

Table 6-5. IA32_MISC_ENABLE MSR Initialization¹ by ENTERACCS and SENTER

Field	Bit position	Description
Fast strings enable	0	Clear to 0.
FOPCODE compatibility mode enable	2	Clear to 0.
Thermal monitor enable	3	Set to 1 if other thermal monitor capability is not enabled. ²
Split-lock disable	4	Clear to 0.
Bus lock on cache line splits disable	8	Clear to 0.
Hardware prefetch disable	9	Clear to 0.
GV1/2 legacy enable	15	Clear to 0.
MONITOR/MWAIT s/m enable	18	Clear to 0.
Adjacent sector prefetch disable	19	Clear to 0.

NOTES:

1. The number of IA32_MISC_ENABLE fields that are initialized may vary due to processor implementations.
2. ENTERACCS (and SENTER) initialize the state of processor thermal throttling such that at least a minimum level is enabled. If thermal throttling is already enabled when executing one of these GETSEC leaves, then no change in the thermal throttling control settings will occur. If thermal throttling is disabled, then it will be enabled via setting of the thermal throttle control bit 3 as a result of executing these GETSEC leaves.

The IDTR will also require reloading with a new IDT context after entering authenticated code execution mode, before any exceptions or the external interrupts INTR and NMI can be handled. Since external interrupts are re-enabled at the completion of authenticated code execution mode (as terminated with EXITAC), it is recommended that a new IDT context be established before this point. Until such a new IDT context is established, the programmer must take care in not executing an INT n instruction or any other operation that would result in an exception or trap signaling.

Prior to completion of the GETSEC[ENTERACCS] instruction and after successful authentication of the AC module, the private configuration space of the Intel TXT chipset is unlocked. The authenticated code module alone can gain access to this normally restricted chipset state for the purpose of securing the platform.

Once the authenticated code module is launched at the completion of GETSEC[ENTERACCS], it is free to enable interrupts by setting EFLAGS.IF and enable NMI by execution of IRET. This presumes that it has re-established interrupt handling support through initialization of the IDT, GDT, and corresponding interrupt handling code.

Operation in a Uni-Processor Platform

(* The state of the internal flag ACMODEFLAG persists across instruction boundary *)

```

IF (CR4.SMXE=0)
    THEN #UD;
ELSIF (in VMX non-root operation)
    THEN VM Exit (reason="GETSEC instruction");
ELSIF (GETSEC leaf unsupported)
    THEN #UD;
ELSIF ((in VMX operation) or
    (CRO.PE=0) or (CRO.CD=1) or (CRO.NW=1) or (CRO.NE=0) or
    (CPL>0) or (EFLAGS.VM=1) or
    (IA32_APIC_BASE.BSP=0) or
    (TXT chipset not present) or
    (ACMODEFLAG=1) or (IN_SMM=1))
    THEN #GP(0);
IF (GETSEC[PARAMETERS].Parameter_Type = 5, MCA_Handling (bit 6) = 0)
    FOR I = 0 to IA32_MCG_CAP.COUNT-1 DO
        IF (IA32_MCG[I]_STATUS = uncorrectable error)
            THEN #GP(0);
    OD;
FI;
IF (IA32_MCG_STATUS.MCIP=1) or (IERR pin is asserted)
    THEN #GP(0);
ACBASE← EBX;
ACSIZE← ECX;
IF (((ACBASE MOD 4096) ≠ 0) or ((ACSIZE MOD 64) ≠ 0) or (ACSIZE < minimum module size) OR (ACSIZE > authenticated RAM
capacity)) or ((ACBASE+ACSIZE) > (2^32 - 1)))
    THEN #GP(0);
IF (secondary thread(s) CRO.CD = 1) or ((secondary thread(s) NOT(wait-for-SIPI)) and
    (secondary thread(s) not in SENTER sleep state)
    THEN #GP(0);
Mask SMI, INIT, A20M, and NMI external pin events;
IA32_MISC_ENABLE← (IA32_MISC_ENABLE & MASK_CONST*)
(* The hexadecimal value of MASK_CONST may vary due to processor implementations *)
A20M← 0;
IA32_DEBUGCTL← 0;
Invalidate processor TLB(s);
Drain Outgoing Transactions;
ACMODEFLAG← 1;
SignalTXTMessage(ProcessorHold);
Load the internal ACRAM based on the AC module size;
(* Ensure that all ACRAM loads hit Write Back memory space *)
IF (ACRAM memory type ≠ WB)
    THEN TXT-SHUTDOWN(#BadACMMType);
IF (AC module header version isnot supported) OR (ACRAM[ModuleType] ≠ 2)
    THEN TXT-SHUTDOWN(#UnsupportedACM);
(* Authenticate the AC Module and shutdown with an error if it fails *)
KEY← GETKEY(ACRAM, ACBASE);
KEYHASH← HASH(KEY);
CSKEYHASH← READ(TXT.PUBLIC.KEY);
IF (KEYHASH ≠ CSKEYHASH)
    THEN TXT-SHUTDOWN(#AuthenticateFail);
SIGNATURE← DECRYPT(ACRAM, ACBASE, KEY);
(* The value of SIGNATURE_LEN_CONST is implementation-specific*)

```

```

FOR I=0 to SIGNATURE_LEN_CONST - 1 DO
  ACRAM[SCRATCH.I]← SIGNATURE[I];
COMPUTEDSIGNATURE← HASH(ACRAM, ACBASE, ACSIZE);
FOR I=0 to SIGNATURE_LEN_CONST - 1 DO
  ACRAM[SCRATCH.SIGNATURE_LEN_CONST+I]← COMPUTEDSIGNATURE[I];
IF (SIGNATURE ≠ COMPUTEDSIGNATURE)
  THEN TXT-SHUTDOWN(#AuthenticateFail);
ACMCONTROL← ACRAM[CodeControl];
IF ((ACMCONTROL.0 = 0) and (ACMCONTROL.1 = 1) and (snoop hit to modified line detected on ACRAM load))
  THEN TXT-SHUTDOWN(#UnexpectedHITM);
IF (ACMCONTROL reserved bits are set)
  THEN TXT-SHUTDOWN(#BadACMFormat);
IF ((ACRAM[GDTBasePtr] < (ACRAM[HeaderLen] * 4 + Scratch_size)) OR
  ((ACRAM[GDTBasePtr] + ACRAM[GDTLimit]) >= ACSIZE))
  THEN TXT-SHUTDOWN(#BadACMFormat);
IF ((ACMCONTROL.0 = 1) and (ACMCONTROL.1 = 1) and (snoop hit to modified line detected on ACRAM load))
  THEN ACEntryPoint← ACBASE+ACRAM[ErrorEntryPoint];
ELSE
  ACEntryPoint← ACBASE+ACRAM[EntryPoint];
IF ((ACEntryPoint >= ACSIZE) OR (ACEntryPoint < (ACRAM[HeaderLen] * 4 + Scratch_size)))THEN TXT-SHUTDOWN(#BadACMFormat);
IF (ACRAM[GDTLimit] & FFFF0000h)
  THEN TXT-SHUTDOWN(#BadACMFormat);
IF ((ACRAM[SegSel] > (ACRAM[GDTLimit] - 15)) OR (ACRAM[SegSel] < 8))
  THEN TXT-SHUTDOWN(#BadACMFormat);
IF ((ACRAM[SegSel].TI=1) OR (ACRAM[SegSel].RPL≠0))
  THEN TXT-SHUTDOWN(#BadACMFormat);
CR0.[PG.AM.WP]← 0;
CR4.MCE← 0;
EFLAGS← 00000002h;
IA32_EFER← 0h;
[EIR]BX← [EIR]IP of the instruction after GETSEC[ENTERACCS];
ECX← Pre-GETSEC[ENTERACCS] GDT.limit:CS.sel;
[EIR]DX← Pre-GETSEC[ENTERACCS] GDT.base;
EBP← ACBASE;
GDTR.BASE← ACBASE+ACRAM[GDTBasePtr];
GDTR.LIMIT← ACRAM[GDTLimit];
CS.SEL← ACRAM[SegSel];
CS.BASE← 0;
CS.LIMIT← FFFFFFFh;
CS.G← 1;
CS.D← 1;
CS.AR← 9Bh;
DS.SEL← ACRAM[SegSel]+8;
DS.BASE← 0;
DS.LIMIT← FFFFFFFh;
DS.G← 1;
DS.D← 1;
DS.AR← 93h;
DR7← 00000400h;
IA32_DEBUGCTL← 0;
SignalTXTMsg(OpenPrivate);
SignalTXTMsg(OpenLocality3);
EIP← ACEntryPoint;
END;

```

Flags Affected

All flags are cleared.

Use of Prefixes

LOCK	Causes #UD.
REP*	Cause #UD (includes REPNE/REPZ and REP/REPE/REPZ).
Operand size	Causes #UD.
Segment overrides	Ignored.
Address size	Ignored.
REX	Ignored.

Protected Mode Exceptions

#UD	If CR4.SMXE = 0. If GETSEC[ENTERACCS] is not reported as supported by GETSEC[CAPABILITIES].
#GP(0)	If CR0.CD = 1 or CR0.NW = 1 or CR0.NE = 0 or CR0.PE = 0 or CPL > 0 or EFLAGS.VM = 1. If a Intel® TXT-capable chipset is not present. If in VMX root operation. If the initiating processor is not designated as the bootstrap processor via the MSR bit IA32_APIC_BASE.BSP. If the processor is already in authenticated code execution mode. If the processor is in SMM. If a valid uncorrectable machine check error is logged in IA32_MC[I]_STATUS. If the authenticated code base is not on a 4096 byte boundary. If the authenticated code size > processor internal authenticated code area capacity. If the authenticated code size is not modulo 64. If other enabled logical processor(s) of the same package CR0.CD = 1. If other enabled logical processor(s) of the same package are not in the wait-for-SIPI or SENTER sleep state.

Real-Address Mode Exceptions

#UD	If CR4.SMXE = 0. If GETSEC[ENTERACCS] is not reported as supported by GETSEC[CAPABILITIES].
#GP(0)	GETSEC[ENTERACCS] is not recognized in real-address mode.

Virtual-8086 Mode Exceptions

#UD	If CR4.SMXE = 0. If GETSEC[ENTERACCS] is not reported as supported by GETSEC[CAPABILITIES].
#GP(0)	GETSEC[ENTERACCS] is not recognized in virtual-8086 mode.

Compatibility Mode Exceptions

All protected mode exceptions apply.

#GP	IF AC code module does not reside in physical address below $2^{32} - 1$.
-----	--

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

All protected mode exceptions apply.

#GP	IF AC code module does not reside in physical address below $2^{32} - 1$.
-----	--

VM-exit Condition

Reason (GETSEC) IF in VMX non-root operation.

GETSEC[EXITAC]—Exit Authenticated Code Execution Mode

Opcode	Instruction	Description
0F 37 (EAX=3)	GETSEC[EXITAC]	Exit authenticated code execution mode. RBX holds the Near Absolute Indirect jump target and EDX hold the exit parameter flags.

Description

The GETSEC[EXITAC] leaf function exits the ILP out of authenticated code execution mode established by GETSEC[ENTERACCS] or GETSEC[SENDER]. The EXITAC leaf of GETSEC is selected with EAX set to 3 at entry. EBX (or RBX, if in 64-bit mode) holds the near jump target offset for where the processor execution resumes upon exiting authenticated code execution mode. EDX contains additional parameter control information. Currently only an input value of 0 in EDX is supported. All other EDX settings are considered reserved and result in a general protection violation.

GETSEC[EXITAC] can only be executed if the processor is in protected mode with CPL = 0 and EFLAGS.VM = 0. The processor must also be in authenticated code execution mode. To avoid potential operability conflicts between modes, the processor is not allowed to execute this instruction if it is in SMM or in VMX operation. A violation of these conditions results in a general protection violation.

Upon completion of the GETSEC[EXITAC] operation, the processor unmask responses to external event signals INIT#, NMI#, and SMI#. This unmasking is performed conditionally, based on whether the authenticated code execution mode was entered via execution of GETSEC[SENDER] or GETSEC[ENTERACCS]. If the processor is in authenticated code execution mode due to the execution of GETSEC[SENDER], then these external event signals will remain masked. In this case, A20M is kept disabled in the measured environment until the measured environment executes GETSEC[SEXIT]. INIT# is unconditionally unmasked by EXITAC. Note that any events that are pending, but have been blocked while in authenticated code execution mode, will be recognized at the completion of the GETSEC[EXITAC] instruction if the pin event is unmasked.

The intent of providing the ability to optionally leave the pin events SMI#, and NMI# masked is to support the completion of a measured environment bring-up that makes use of VMX. In this envisioned security usage scenario, these events will remain masked until an appropriate virtual machine has been established in order to field servicing of these events in a safer manner. Details on when and how events are masked and unmasked in VMX operation are described in *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3C*. It should be cautioned that if no VMX environment is to be activated following GETSEC[EXITAC], that these events will remain masked until the measured environment is exited with GETSEC[SEXIT]. If this is not desired then the GETSEC function SMCTRL(0) can be used for unmasking SMI# in this context. NMI# can be correspondingly unmasked by execution of IRET.

A successful exit of the authenticated code execution mode requires the ILP to perform additional steps as outlined below:

- Invalidate the contents of the internal authenticated code execution area.
- Invalidate processor TLBs.
- Clear the internal processor AC Mode indicator flag.
- Re-lock the TPM locality 3 space.
- Unlock the Intel® TXT-capable chipset memory and I/O protections to allow memory and I/O activity by other processor agents.
- Perform a near absolute indirect jump to the designated instruction location.

The content of the authenticated code execution area is invalidated by hardware in order to protect it from further use or visibility. This internal processor storage area can no longer be used or relied upon after GETSEC[EXITAC]. Data structures need to be re-established outside of the authenticated code execution area if they are to be referenced after EXITAC. Since addressed memory content formerly mapped to the authenticated code execution area may no longer be coherent with external system memory after EXITAC, processor TLBs in support of linear to physical address translation are also invalidated.

Upon completion of GETSEC[EXITAC] a near absolute indirect transfer is performed with EIP loaded with the contents of EBX (based on the current operating mode size). In 64-bit mode, all 64 bits of RBX are loaded into RIP if REX.W precedes GETSEC[EXITAC]. Otherwise RBX is treated as 32 bits even while in 64-bit mode. Conventional CS limit checking is performed as part of this control transfer. Any exception conditions generated as part of this control transfer will be directed to the existing IDT; thus it is recommended that an IDTR should also be established prior to execution of the EXITAC function if there is a need for fault handling. In addition, any segmentation related (and paging) data structures to be used after EXITAC should be re-established or validated by the authenticated code prior to EXITAC.

In addition, any segmentation related (and paging) data structures to be used after EXITAC need to be re-established and mapped outside of the authenticated RAM designated area by the authenticated code prior to EXITAC. Any data structure held within the authenticated RAM allocated area will no longer be accessible after completion by EXITAC.

Operation

(* The state of the internal flag ACMODEFLAG and SENTERFLAG persist across instruction boundary *)

```

IF (CR4.SMXE=0)
    THEN #UD;
ELSIF ( in VMX non-root operation)
    THEN VM Exit (reason="GETSEC instruction");
ELSIF (GETSEC leaf unsupported)
    THEN #UD;
ELSIF ((in VMX operation) or ( in 64-bit mode) and ( RBX is non-canonical) )
    (CR0.PE=0) or (CPL>0) or (EFLAGS.VM=1) or
    (ACMODEFLAG=0) or (IN_SMM=1)) or (EDX ≠ 0))
    THEN #GP(0);
IF (OperandSize = 32)
    THEN tempEIP← EBX;
ELSIF (OperandSize = 64)
    THEN tempEIP← RBX;
ELSE
    tempEIP← EBX AND 0000FFFFH;
IF (tempEIP > code segment limit)
    THEN #GP(0);
Invalidate ACRAM contents;
Invalidate processor TLB(s);
Drain outgoing messages;
SignalTXTMsg(CloseLocality3);
SignalTXTMsg(LockSMRAM);
SignalTXTMsg(ProcessorRelease);
Unmask INIT;
IF (SENERFLAG=0)
    THEN Unmask SMI, INIT, NMI, and A20M pin event;
ELSEIF (IA32_SMM_MONITOR_CTL[0] = 0)
    THEN Unmask SMI pin event;
ACMODEFLAG← 0;
EIP← tempEIP;
END;
```

Flags Affected

None.

Use of Prefixes

LOCK	Causes #UD.
REP*	Cause #UD (includes REPNE/REPZ and REP/REPE/REPZ).
Operand size	Causes #UD.
Segment overrides	Ignored.
Address size	Ignored.
REX.W	Sets 64-bit mode Operand size attribute.

Protected Mode Exceptions

#UD	If CR4.SMXE = 0. If GETSEC[EXITAC] is not reported as supported by GETSEC[CAPABILITIES].
#GP(0)	If CR0.PE = 0 or CPL>0 or EFLAGS.VM = 1. If in VMX root operation. If the processor is not currently in authenticated code execution mode. If the processor is in SMM. If any reserved bit position is set in the EDX parameter register.

Real-Address Mode Exceptions

#UD	If CR4.SMXE = 0. If GETSEC[EXITAC] is not reported as supported by GETSEC[CAPABILITIES].
#GP(0)	GETSEC[EXITAC] is not recognized in real-address mode.

Virtual-8086 Mode Exceptions

#UD	If CR4.SMXE = 0. If GETSEC[EXITAC] is not reported as supported by GETSEC[CAPABILITIES].
#GP(0)	GETSEC[EXITAC] is not recognized in virtual-8086 mode.

Compatibility Mode Exceptions

All protected mode exceptions apply.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

All protected mode exceptions apply.

#GP(0)	If the target address in RBX is not in a canonical form.
--------	--

VM-Exit Condition

Reason (GETSEC)	IF in VMX non-root operation.
-----------------	-------------------------------

GETSEC[SENTER]—Enter a Measured Environment

Opcode	Instruction	Description
0F 37 (EAX=4)	GETSEC[SENTER]	Launch a measured environment. EBX holds the SINIT authenticated code module physical base address. ECX holds the SINIT authenticated code module size (bytes). EDX controls the level of functionality supported by the measured environment launch.

Description

The GETSEC[SENTER] instruction initiates the launch of a measured environment and places the initiating logical processor (ILP) into the authenticated code execution mode. The SENTER leaf of GETSEC is selected with EAX set to 4 at execution. The physical base address of the AC module to be loaded and authenticated is specified in EBX. The size of the module in bytes is specified in ECX. EDX controls the level of functionality supported by the measured environment launch. To enable the full functionality of the protected environment launch, EDX must be initialized to zero.

The authenticated code base address and size parameters (in bytes) are passed to the GETSEC[SENTER] instruction using EBX and ECX respectively. The ILP evaluates the contents of these registers according to the rules for the AC module address in GETSEC[ENTERACCS]. AC module execution follows the same rules, as set by GETSEC[ENTERACCS].

The launching software must ensure that the TPM.ACCESS_0.activeLocality bit is clear before executing the GETSEC[SENTER] instruction.

There are restrictions enforced by the processor for execution of the GETSEC[SENTER] instruction:

- Execution is not allowed unless the processor is in protected mode or IA-32e mode with CPL = 0 and EFLAGS.VM = 0.
- Processor cache must be available and not disabled using the CR0.CD and NW bits.
- For enforcing consistency of operation with numeric exception reporting using Interrupt 16, CR0.NE must be set.
- An Intel TXT-capable chipset must be present as communicated to the processor by sampling of the power-on configuration capability field after reset.
- The processor can not be in authenticated code execution mode or already in a measured environment (as launched by a previous GETSEC[ENTERACCS] or GETSEC[SENTER] instruction).
- To avoid potential operability conflicts between modes, the processor is not allowed to execute this instruction if it currently is in SMM or VMX operation.
- To insure consistent handling of SIPI messages, the processor executing the GETSEC[SENTER] instruction must also be designated the BSP (boot-strap processor) as defined by A32_APIC_BASE.BSP (Bit 8).
- EDX must be initialized to a setting supportable by the processor. Unless enumeration by the GETSEC[PARAMETERS] leaf reports otherwise, only a value of zero is supported.

Failure to abide by the above conditions results in the processor signaling a general protection violation.

This instruction leaf starts the launch of a measured environment by initiating a rendezvous sequence for all logical processors in the platform. The rendezvous sequence involves the initiating logical processor sending a message (by executing GETSEC[SENTER]) and other responding logical processors (RLPs) acknowledging the message, thus synchronizing the RLP(s) with the ILP.

In response to a message signaling the completion of rendezvous, RLPs clear the bootstrap processor indicator flag (IA32_APIC_BASE.BSP) and enter an SENTER sleep state. In this sleep state, RLPs enter an idle processor condition while waiting to be activated after a measured environment has been established by the system executive. RLPs in the SENTER sleep state can only be activated by the GETSEC leaf function WAKEUP in a measured environment.

A successful launch of the measured environment results in the initiating logical processor entering the authenticated code execution mode. Prior to reaching this point, the ILP performs the following steps internally:

- Inhibit processor response to the external events: INIT, A20M, NMI, and SMI.
- Establish and check the location and size of the authenticated code module to be executed by the ILP.
- Check for the existence of an Intel® TXT-capable chipset.
- Verify the current power management configuration is acceptable.
- Broadcast a message to enable protection of memory and I/O from activities from other processor agents.
- Load the designated AC module into authenticated code execution area.
- Isolate the content of authenticated code execution area from further state modification by external agents.
- Authenticate the AC module.
- Updated the Trusted Platform Module (TPM) with the authenticated code module's hash.
- Initialize processor state based on the authenticated code module header information.
- Unlock the Intel® TXT-capable chipset private configuration register space and TPM locality 3 space.
- Begin execution in the authenticated code module at the defined entry point.

As an integrity check for proper processor hardware operation, execution of GETSEC[SENDER] will also check the contents of all the machine check status registers (as reported by the MSRs IA32_MCI_STATUS) for any valid uncorrectable error condition. In addition, the global machine check status register IA32_MCG_STATUS MCIP bit must be cleared and the IERR processor package pin (or its equivalent) must be not asserted, indicating that no machine check exception processing is currently in-progress. These checks are performed twice: once by the ILP prior to the broadcast of the rendezvous message to RLPs, and later in response to RLPs acknowledging the rendezvous message. Any outstanding valid uncorrectable machine check error condition present in the machine check status registers at the first check point will result in the ILP signaling a general protection violation. If an outstanding valid uncorrectable machine check error condition is present at the second check point, then this will result in the corresponding logical processor signaling the more severe TXT-shutdown condition with an error code of 12.

Before loading and authentication of the target code module is performed, the processor also checks that the current voltage and bus ratio encodings correspond to known good values supportable by the processor. The MSR IA32_PERF_STATUS values are compared against either the processor supported maximum operating target setting, system reset setting, or the thermal monitor operating target. If the current settings do not meet any of these criteria then the SENTER function will attempt to change the voltage and bus ratio select controls in a processor-specific manner. This adjustment may be to the thermal monitor, minimum (if different), or maximum operating target depending on the processor.

This implies that some thermal operating target parameters configured by BIOS may be overridden by SENTER. The measured environment software may need to take responsibility for restoring such settings that are deemed to be safe, but not necessarily recognized by SENTER. If an adjustment is not possible when an out of range setting is discovered, then the processor will abort the measured launch. This may be the case for chipset controlled settings of these values or if the controllability is not enabled on the processor. In this case it is the responsibility of the external software to program the chipset voltage ID and/or bus ratio select settings to known good values recognized by the processor, prior to executing SENTER.

NOTE

For a mobile processor, an adjustment can be made according to the thermal monitor operating target. For a quad-core processor the SENTER adjustment mechanism may result in a more conservative but non-uniform voltage setting, depending on the pre-SENDER settings per core.

The ILP and RLPs mask the response to the assertion of the external signals INIT#, A20M, NMI#, and SMI#. The purpose of this masking control is to prevent exposure to existing external event handlers until a protected handler has been put in place to directly handle these events. Masked external pin events may be unmasked conditionally or unconditionally via the GETSEC[EXITAC], GETSEC[SEXIT], GETSEC[SMCTRL] or for specific VMX related operations such as a VM entry or the VMXOFF instruction (see respective GETSEC leaves and *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3C* for more details). The state of the A20M pin is masked and forced internally to a de-asserted state so that external assertion is not recognized. A20M masking as set by

GETSEC[SENDER] is undone only after taking down the measured environment with the GETSEC[SEXIT] instruction or processor reset. INTR is masked by simply clearing the EFLAGS.IF bit. It is the responsibility of system software to control the processor response to INTR through appropriate management of EFLAGS.

To prevent other (logical) processors from interfering with the ILP operating in authenticated code execution mode, memory (excluding implicit write-back transactions) and I/O activities originating from other processor agents are blocked. This protection starts when the ILP enters into authenticated code execution mode. Only memory and I/O transactions initiated from the ILP are allowed to proceed. Exiting authenticated code execution mode is done by executing GETSEC[EXITAC]. The protection of memory and I/O activities remains in effect until the ILP executes GETSEC[EXITAC].

Once the authenticated code module has been loaded into the authenticated code execution area, it is protected against further modification from external bus snoops. There is also a requirement that the memory type for the authenticated code module address range be WB (via initialization of the MTRRs prior to execution of this instruction). If this condition is not satisfied, it is a violation of security and the processor will force a TXT system reset (after writing an error code to the chipset LT.ERRORCODE register). This action is referred to as a Intel® TXT reset condition. It is performed when it is considered unreliable to signal an error through the conventional exception reporting mechanism.

To conform to the minimum granularity of MTRR MSRs for specifying the memory type, authenticated code RAM (ACRAM) is allocated to the processor in 4096 byte granular blocks. If an AC module size as specified in ECX is not a multiple of 4096 then the processor will allocate up to the next 4096 byte boundary for mapping as ACRAM with indeterminate data. This pad area will not be visible to the authenticated code module as external memory nor can it depend on the value of the data used to fill the pad area.

Once successful authentication has been completed by the ILP, the computed hash is stored in a trusted storage facility in the platform. The following trusted storage facilities are supported:

- If the platform register FTM_INTERFACE_ID.[bits 3:0] = 0, the computed hash is stored to the platform's TPM at PCR17 after this register is implicitly reset. PCR17 is a dedicated register for holding the computed hash of the authenticated code module loaded and subsequently executed by the GETSEC[SENDER]. As part of this process, the dynamic PCRs 18-22 are reset so they can be utilized by subsequently software for registration of code and data modules.
- If the platform register FTM_INTERFACE_ID.[bits 3:0] = 1, the computed hash is stored in a firmware trusted module (FTM) using a modified protocol similar to the protocol used to write to TPM's PCR17.

After successful execution of SENTER, either PCR17 (if FTM is not enabled) or the FTM (if enabled) contains the measurement of AC code and the SENTER launching parameters.

After authentication is completed successfully, the private configuration space of the Intel® TXT-capable chipset is unlocked so that the authenticated code module and measured environment software can gain access to this normally restricted chipset state. The Intel® TXT-capable chipset private configuration space can be locked later by software writing to the chipset LT.CMD.CLOSE-PRIVATE register or unconditionally using the GETSEC[SEXIT] instruction.

The SENTER leaf function also initializes some processor architecture state for the ILP from contents held in the header of the authenticated code module. Since the authenticated code module is relocatable, all address references are relative to the base address passed in via EBX. The ILP GDTR base value is initialized to EBX + [GDTBasePtr] and GDTR limit set to [GDTLimit]. The CS selector is initialized to the value held in the AC module header field SegSel, while the DS, SS, and ES selectors are initialized to CS+8. The segment descriptor fields are initialized implicitly with BASE=0, LIMIT=FFFFh, G=1, D=1, P=1, S=1, read/write/accessed for DS, SS, and ES, while execute/read/accessed for CS. Execution in the authenticated code module for the ILP begins with the EIP set to EBX + [EntryPoint]. AC module defined fields used for initializing processor state are consistency checked with a failure resulting in an TXT-shutdown condition.

Table 6-6 provides a summary of processor state initialization for the ILP and RLP(s) after successful completion of GETSEC[SENDER]. For both ILP and RLP(s), paging is disabled upon entry to the measured environment. It is up to the ILP to establish a trusted paging environment, with appropriate mappings, to meet protection requirements established during the launch of the measured environment. RLP state initialization is not completed until a subsequent wake-up has been signaled by execution of the GETSEC[WAKEUP] function by the ILP.

Table 6-6. Register State Initialization after GETSEC[SENTER] and GETSEC[WAKEUP]

Register State	ILP after GETSEC[SENTER]	RLP after GETSEC[WAKEUP]
CR0	PG←0, AM←0, WP←0; Others unchanged	PG←0, CD←0, NW←0, AM←0, WP←0; PE←1, NE←1
CR4	00004000H	00004000H
EFLAGS	00000002H	00000002H
IA32_EFER	0H	0
EIP	[EntryPoint from MLE header ¹]	[LT.MLE.JOIN + 12]
EBX	Unchanged [SINIT.BASE]	Unchanged
EDX	SENTER control flags	Unchanged
EBP	SINIT.BASE	Unchanged
CS	Sel=[SINIT SegSel], base=0, limit=FFFFFh, G=1, D=1, AR=9BH	Sel = [LT.MLE.JOIN + 8], base = 0, limit = FFFFFH, G = 1, D = 1, AR = 9BH
DS, ES, SS	Sel=[SINIT SegSel] +8, base=0, limit=FFFFFh, G=1, D=1, AR=93H	Sel = [LT.MLE.JOIN + 8] +8, base = 0, limit = FFFFFH, G = 1, D = 1, AR = 93H
GDTR	Base= SINIT.base (EBX) + [SINIT.GDTBasePtr], Limit=[SINIT.GDTLimit]	Base = [LT.MLE.JOIN + 4], Limit = [LT.MLE.JOIN]
DR7	00000400H	00000400H
IA32_DEBUGCTL	0H	0H
Performance counters and counter control registers	0H	0H
IA32_MISC_ENABLE	See Table 6-5	See Table 6-5
IA32_SMM_MONITOR_CTL	Bit 2←0	Bit 2←0

NOTES:

1. See *Intel® Trusted Execution Technology Measured Launched Environment Programming Guide* for MLE header format.

Segmentation related processor state that has not been initialized by GETSEC[SENTER] requires appropriate initialization before use. Since a new GDT context has been established, the previous state of the segment selector values held in FS, GS, TR, and LDTR may no longer be valid. The IDTR will also require reloading with a new IDT context after launching the measured environment before exceptions or the external interrupts INTR and NMI can be handled. In the meantime, the programmer must take care in not executing an INT n instruction or any other condition that would result in an exception or trap signaling.

Debug exception and trap related signaling is also disabled as part of execution of GETSEC[SENTER]. This is achieved by clearing DR7, TF in EFLAGS, and the MSR IA32_DEBUGCTL as defined in Table 6-6. These can be re-enabled once supporting exception handler(s), descriptor tables, and debug registers have been properly re-initialized following SENTER. Also, any pending single-step trap condition will be cleared at the completion of SENTER for both the ILP and RLP(s).

Performance related counters and counter control registers are cleared as part of execution of SENTER on both the ILP and RLP. This implies any active performance counters at the time of SENTER execution will be disabled. To reactive the processor performance counters, this state must be re-initialized and re-enabled.

Since MCE along with all other state bits (with the exception of SMXE) are cleared in CR4 upon execution of SENTER processing, any enabled machine check error condition that occurs will result in the processor performing the TXT-

shutdown action. This also applies to an RLP while in the SENTER sleep state. For each logical processor CR4.MCE must be reestablished with a valid machine check exception handler to otherwise avoid an TXT-shutdown under such conditions.

The MSR IA32_EFER is also unconditionally cleared as part of the processor state initialized by SENTER for both the ILP and RLP. Since paging is disabled upon entering authenticated code execution mode, a new paging environment will have to be re-established if it is desired to enable IA-32e mode while operating in authenticated code execution mode.

The miscellaneous feature control MSR, IA32_MISC_ENABLE, is initialized as part of the measured environment launch. Certain bits of this MSR are preserved because preserving these bits may be important to maintain previously established platform settings. See the footnote for Table 6-5 The remaining bits are cleared for the purpose of establishing a more consistent environment for the execution of authenticated code modules. Among the impact of initializing this MSR, any previous condition established by the MONITOR instruction will be cleared.

Effect of MSR IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL MSR

Bits 15:8 of the IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL MSR affect the execution of GETSEC[SENTER]. These bits consist of two fields:

- Bit 15: a global enable control for execution of SENTER.
- Bits 14:8: a parameter control field providing the ability to qualify SENTER execution based on the level of functionality specified with corresponding EDX parameter bits 6:0.

The layout of these fields in the IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL MSR is shown in Table 6-1.

Prior to the execution of GETSEC[SENTER], the lock bit of IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL MSR must be bit set to affirm the settings to be used. Once the lock bit is set, only a power-up reset condition will clear this MSR. The IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL MSR must be configured in accordance to the intended usage at platform initialization. Note that this MSR is only available on SMX or VMX enabled processors. Otherwise, IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL is treated as reserved.

The *Intel® Trusted Execution Technology Measured Launched Environment Programming Guide* provides additional details and requirements for programming measured environment software to launch in an Intel TXT platform.

Operation in a Uni-Processor Platform

(* The state of the internal flag ACMODEFLAG and SENTERFLAG persist across instruction boundary *)

GETSEC[SENTER] (ILP only):

```
IF (CR4.SMXE=0)
    THEN #UD;
ELSE IF (in VMX non-root operation)
    THEN VM Exit (reason="GETSEC instruction");
ELSE IF (GETSEC leaf unsupported)
    THEN #UD;
ELSE IF ((in VMX root operation) or
(CR0.PE=0) or (CR0.CD=1) or (CR0.NW=1) or (CR0.NE=0) or
(CPL>0) or (EFLAGS.VM=1) or
(IA32_APIC_BASE.BSP=0) or (TXT chipset not present) or
(SENTERFLAG=1) or (ACMODEFLAG=1) or (IN_SMM=1) or
(TPM interface is not present) or
(EDX ≠ (SENTER_EDX_support_mask & EDX)) or
(IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL[0]=0) or (IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL[15]=0) or
((IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL[14:8] & EDX[6:0]) ≠ EDX[6:0]))
    THEN #GP(0);
IF (GETSEC[PARAMETERS].Parameter_Type = 5, MCA_Handling (bit 6) = 0)
    FOR I = 0 to IA32_MCG_CAP.COUNT-1 DO
        IF IA32_MC[I]_STATUS = uncorrectable error
            THEN #GP(0);
    FI;
OD;
```

```

FI;
IF (IA32_MCG_STATUS.MCIP=1) or (IERR pin is asserted)
    THEN #GP(0);
ACBASE← EBX;
ACSIZE← ECX;
IF (((ACBASE MOD 4096) ≠ 0) or ((ACSIZE MOD 64) ≠ 0) or (ACSIZE < minimum
    module size) or (ACSIZE > AC RAM capacity) or ((ACBASE+ACSIZE) > (2^32 -1)))
    THEN #GP(0);
Mask SMI, INIT, A20M, and NMI external pin events;
SignalTXTMsg(SENTER);
DO
WHILE (no SignalSENTER message);

```

TXT_SENTER__MSG_EVENT (ILP & RLP):

```

Mask and clear SignalSENTER event;
Unmask SignalSEXIT event;
IF (in VMX operation)
    THEN TXT-SHUTDOWN(#IllegalEvent);
FOR I = 0 to IA32_MCG_CAP.COUNT-1 DO
    IF IA32_MC[I]_STATUS = uncorrectable error
        THEN TXT-SHUTDOWN(#UnrecovMCErr);
    FI;
OD;
IF (IA32_MCG_STATUS.MCIP=1) or (IERR pin is asserted)
    THEN TXT-SHUTDOWN(#UnrecovMCErr);
IF (Voltage or bus ratio status are NOT at a known good state)
    THEN IF (Voltage select and bus ratio are internally adjustable)
        THEN
            Make product-specific adjustment on operating parameters;
        ELSE
            TXT-SHUTDOWN(#IllegalVIDBRatio);
    FI;

```

```

IA32_MISC_ENABLE← (IA32_MISC_ENABLE & MASK_CONST*)
(* The hexadecimal value of MASK_CONST may vary due to processor implementations *)
A20M← 0;
IA32_DEBUGCTL← 0;
Invalidate processor TLB(s);
Drain outgoing transactions;
Clear performance monitor counters and control;
SENTERFLAG← 1;
SignalTXTMsg(SENTERAck);
IF (logical processor is not ILP)
    THEN GOTO RLP_SENTER_ROUTINE;
(* ILP waits for all logical processors to ACK *)
DO
    DONE← TXT.READ(LT.STS);
WHILE (not DONE);
SignalTXTMsg(SENTERContinue);
SignalTXTMsg(ProcessorHold);
FOR I=ACBASE to ACBASE+ACSIZE-1 DO
    ACRAM[I-ACBASE].ADDR← I;
    ACRAM[I-ACBASE].DATA← LOAD(I);
OD;

```

```

IF (ACRAM memory type ≠ WB)
    THEN TXT-SHUTDOWN(#BadACMMType);
IF (AC module header version is not supported) OR (ACRAM[ModuleType] ≠ 2)
    THEN TXT-SHUTDOWN(#UnsupportedACM);
KEY← GETKEY(ACRAM, ACBASE);
KEYHASH← HASH(KEY);
CSKEYHASH← LT.READ(LT.PUBLIC.KEY);
IF (KEYHASH ≠ CSKEYHASH)
    THEN TXT-SHUTDOWN(#AuthenticateFail);
SIGNATURE← DECRYPT(ACRAM, ACBASE, KEY);
(* The value of SIGNATURE_LEN_CONST is implementation-specific*)
FOR I=0 to SIGNATURE_LEN_CONST - 1 DO
    ACRAM[SCRATCH.I]← SIGNATURE[I];
COMPUTEDSIGNATURE← HASH(ACRAM, ACBASE, ACSIZE);
FOR I=0 to SIGNATURE_LEN_CONST - 1 DO
    ACRAM[SCRATCH.SIGNATURE_LEN_CONST+I]← COMPUTEDSIGNATURE[I];
IF (SIGNATURE ≠ COMPUTEDSIGNATURE)
    THEN TXT-SHUTDOWN(#AuthenticateFail);
ACMCONTROL← ACRAM[CodeControl];
IF ((ACMCONTROL.0 = 0) and (ACMCONTROL.1 = 1) and (snoop hit to modified line detected on ACRAM load))
    THEN TXT-SHUTDOWN(#UnexpectedHITM);
IF (ACMCONTROL reserved bits are set)
    THEN TXT-SHUTDOWN(#BadACMFormat);
IF ((ACRAM[GDTBasePtr] < (ACRAM[HeaderLen] * 4 + Scratch_size)) OR
    ((ACRAM[GDTBasePtr] + ACRAM[GDTLimit]) >= ACSIZE))
    THEN TXT-SHUTDOWN(#BadACMFormat);
IF ((ACMCONTROL.0 = 1) and (ACMCONTROL.1 = 1) and (snoop hit to modified
    line detected on ACRAM load))
    THEN ACEntryPoint← ACBASE+ACRAM[ErrorEntryPoint];
ELSE
    ACEntryPoint← ACBASE+ACRAM[EntryPoint];
IF ((ACEntryPoint >= ACSIZE) or (ACEntryPoint < (ACRAM[HeaderLen] * 4 + Scratch_size)))
    THEN TXT-SHUTDOWN(#BadACMFormat);
IF ((ACRAM[SegSel] > (ACRAM[GDTLimit] - 15)) or (ACRAM[SegSel] < 8))
    THEN TXT-SHUTDOWN(#BadACMFormat);
IF ((ACRAM[SegSel].TI=1) or (ACRAM[SegSel].RPL≠0))
    THEN TXT-SHUTDOWN(#BadACMFormat);

IF (FTM_INTERFACE_ID.[3:0] = 1 ) (* Alternate FTM Interface has been enabled *)
    THEN (* TPM_LOC_CTRL_4 is located at 0FED44008H, TMP_DATA_BUFFER_4 is located at 0FED44080H *)
        WRITE(TPM_LOC_CTRL_4) ← 01H; (* Modified HASH.START protocol *)
        (* Write to firmware storage *)
        WRITE(TPM_DATA_BUFFER_4) ← SIGNATURE_LEN_CONST + 4;
        FOR I=0 to SIGNATURE_LEN_CONST - 1 DO
            WRITE(TPM_DATA_BUFFER_4 + 2 + I)← ACRAM[SCRATCH.I];
            WRITE(TPM_DATA_BUFFER_4 + 2 + SIGNATURE_LEN_CONST) ← EDX;
            WRITE(FTM.LOC_CTRL) ← 06H; (* Modified protocol combining HASH.DATA and HASH.END *)
        ELSE IF (FTM_INTERFACE_ID.[3:0] = 0 ) (* Use standard TPM Interface *)
            ACRAM[SCRATCH.SIGNATURE_LEN_CONST]← EDX;
            WRITE(TPM.HASH.START)← 0;
            FOR I=0 to SIGNATURE_LEN_CONST + 3 DO
                WRITE(TPM.HASH.DATA)← ACRAM[SCRATCH.I];
                WRITE(TPM.HASH.END)← 0;
FI;

```

```

ACMODEFLAG← 1;
CR0.[PG.AM.WP]← 0;
CR4← 00004000h;
EFLAGS← 00000002h;
IA32_EFER← 0;
EBP← ACBASE;
GDTR.BASE← ACBASE+ACRAM[GDTBasePtr];
GDTR.LIMIT← ACRAM[GDTLimit];
CS.SEL← ACRAM[SegSel];
CS.BASE← 0;
CS.LIMIT← FFFFFFFh;
CS.G← 1;
CS.D← 1;
CS.AR← 9Bh;
DS.SEL← ACRAM[SegSel]+8;
DS.BASE← 0;
DS.LIMIT← FFFFFFFh;
DS.G← 1;
DS.D← 1;
DS.AR← 93h;
SS← DS;
ES← DS;
DR7← 0000400h;
IA32_DEBUGCTL← 0;
SignalTXTMsg(UnlockSMRAM);
SignalTXTMsg(OpenPrivate);
SignalTXTMsg(OpenLocality3);
EIP← ACEntryPoint;
END;

```

RLP_SENTER_ROUTINE: (RLP only)

```

Mask SMI, INIT, A20M, and NMI external pin events
Unmask SignalWAKEUP event;
Wait for SignalSENTERContinue message;
IA32_APIC_BASE.BSP← 0;
GOTO SENTER sleep state;
END;

```

Flags Affected

All flags are cleared.

Use of Prefixes

LOCK	Causes #UD.
REP*	Cause #UD (includes REPNE/REPZ and REP/REPE/REPZ).
Operand size	Causes #UD.
Segment overrides	Ignored.
Address size	Ignored.
REX	Ignored.

Protected Mode Exceptions

#UD	If CR4.SMXE = 0. If GETSEC[SENTER] is not reported as supported by GETSEC[CAPABILITIES].
#GP(0)	If CR0.CD = 1 or CR0.NW = 1 or CR0.NE = 0 or CR0.PE = 0 or CPL > 0 or EFLAGS.VM = 1. If in VMX root operation. If the initiating processor is not designated as the bootstrap processor via the MSR bit IA32_APIC_BASE.BSP. If an Intel® TXT-capable chipset is not present. If an Intel® TXT-capable chipset interface to TPM is not detected as present. If a protected partition is already active or the processor is already in authenticated code mode. If the processor is in SMM. If a valid uncorrectable machine check error is logged in IA32_MC[I]_STATUS. If the authenticated code base is not on a 4096 byte boundary. If the authenticated code size > processor's authenticated code execution area storage capacity. If the authenticated code size is not modulo 64.

Real-Address Mode Exceptions

#UD	If CR4.SMXE = 0. If GETSEC[SENTER] is not reported as supported by GETSEC[CAPABILITIES].
#GP(0)	GETSEC[SENTER] is not recognized in real-address mode.

Virtual-8086 Mode Exceptions

#UD	If CR4.SMXE = 0. If GETSEC[SENTER] is not reported as supported by GETSEC[CAPABILITIES].
#GP(0)	GETSEC[SENTER] is not recognized in virtual-8086 mode.

Compatibility Mode Exceptions

All protected mode exceptions apply.

#GP	IF AC code module does not reside in physical address below $2^{32} - 1$.
-----	--

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

All protected mode exceptions apply.

#GP	IF AC code module does not reside in physical address below $2^{32} - 1$.
-----	--

VM-Exit Condition

Reason (GETSEC)	IF in VMX non-root operation.
-----------------	-------------------------------

GETSEC[SEXIT]—Exit Measured Environment

Opcode	Instruction	Description
OF 37 (EAX=5)	GETSEC[SEXIT]	Exit measured environment.

Description

The GETSEC[SEXIT] instruction initiates an exit of a measured environment established by GETSEC[SENDER]. The SEXIT leaf of GETSEC is selected with EAX set to 5 at execution. This instruction leaf sends a message to all logical processors in the platform to signal the measured environment exit.

There are restrictions enforced by the processor for the execution of the GETSEC[SEXIT] instruction:

- Execution is not allowed unless the processor is in protected mode (CR0.PE = 1) with CPL = 0 and EFLAGS.VM = 0.
- The processor must be in a measured environment as launched by a previous GETSEC[SENDER] instruction, but not still in authenticated code execution mode.
- To avoid potential inter-operability conflicts between modes, the processor is not allowed to execute this instruction if it currently is in SMM or in VMX operation.
- To insure consistent handling of SIPI messages, the processor executing the GETSEC[SEXIT] instruction must also be designated the BSP (bootstrap processor) as defined by the register bit IA32_APIC_BASE.BSP (bit 8).

Failure to abide by the above conditions results in the processor signaling a general protection violation.

This instruction initiates a sequence to rendezvous the RLPs with the ILP. It then clears the internal processor flag indicating the processor is operating in a measured environment.

In response to a message signaling the completion of rendezvous, all RLPs restart execution with the instruction that was to be executed at the time GETSEC[SEXIT] was recognized. This applies to all processor conditions, with the following exceptions:

- If an RLP executed HLT and was in this halt state at the time of the message initiated by GETSEC[SEXIT], then execution resumes in the halt state.
- If an RLP was executing MWAIT, then a message initiated by GETSEC[SEXIT] causes an exit of the MWAIT state, falling through to the next instruction.
- If an RLP was executing an intermediate iteration of a string instruction, then the processor resumes execution of the string instruction at the point which the message initiated by GETSEC[SEXIT] was recognized.
- If an RLP is still in the SENTER sleep state (never awakened with GETSEC[WAKEUP]), it will be sent to the wait-for-SIPI state after first clearing the bootstrap processor indicator flag (IA32_APIC_BASE.BSP) and any pending SIPI state. In this case, such RLPs are initialized to an architectural state consistent with having taken a soft reset using the INIT# pin.

Prior to completion of the GETSEC[SEXIT] operation, both the ILP and any active RLPs unmask the response of the external event signals INIT#, A20M, NMI#, and SMI#. This unmasking is performed unconditionally to recognize pin events which are masked after a GETSEC[SENDER]. The state of A20M is unmasked, as the A20M pin is not recognized while the measured environment is active.

On a successful exit of the measured environment, the ILP re-locks the Intel® TXT-capable chipset private configuration space. GETSEC[SEXIT] does not affect the content of any PCR.

At completion of GETSEC[SEXIT] by the ILP, execution proceeds to the next instruction. Since EFLAGS and the debug register state are not modified by this instruction, a pending trap condition is free to be signaled if previously enabled.

Operation in a Uni-Processor Platform

(* The state of the internal flag ACMODEFLAG and SENTERFLAG persist across instruction boundary *)

GETSEC[SEXIT] (ILP only):

```

IF (CR4.SMXE=0)
  THEN #UD;
ELSE IF (in VMX non-root operation)
  THEN VM Exit (reason="GETSEC instruction");
ELSE IF (GETSEC leaf unsupported)
  THEN #UD;
ELSE IF ((in VMX root operation) or
  (CR0.PE=0) or (CPL>0) or (EFLAGS.VM=1) or
  (IA32_APIC_BASE.BSP=0) or
  (TXT chipset not present) or
  (SENTERFLAG=0) or (ACMODEFLAG=1) or (IN_SMM=1))
  THEN #GP(0);
SignalTXTMsg(SEXIT);
DO
  WHILE (no SignalSEXIT message);

```

TXT_SEXIT_MSG_EVENT (ILP & RLP):

```

Mask and clear SignalSEXIT event;
Clear MONITOR FSM;
Unmask SignalSENDER event;
IF (in VMX operation)
  THEN TXT-SHUTDOWN(#IllegalEvent);
SignalTXTMsg(SEXITAck);
IF (logical processor is not ILP)
  THEN GOTO RLP_SEXIT_ROUTINE;
(* ILP waits for all logical processors to ACK *)
DO
  DONE← READ(LT.STS);
  WHILE (NOT DONE);
SignalTXTMsg(SEXITContinue);
SignalTXTMsg(ClosePrivate);
SENTERFLAG← 0;
Unmask SMI, INIT, A20M, and NMI external pin events;
END;

```

RLP_SEXIT_ROUTINE (RLPs only):

```

Wait for SignalSEXITContinue message;
Unmask SMI, INIT, A20M, and NMI external pin events;
IF (prior execution state = HLT)
  THEN reenter HLT state;
IF (prior execution state = SENTER sleep)
  THEN
    IA32_APIC_BASE.BSP← 0;
    Clear pending SIPI state;
    Call INIT_PROCESSOR_STATE;
    Unmask SIPI event;
    GOTO WAIT-FOR-SIPI;
FI;
END;

```

Flags Affected

ILP: None.

RLPs: all flags are modified for an RLP. returning to wait-for-SIPI state, none otherwise.

Use of Prefixes

LOCK	Causes #UD.
REP*	Cause #UD (includes REPNE/REPZ and REP/REPE/REPZ).
Operand size	Causes #UD.
Segment overrides	Ignored.
Address size	Ignored.
REX	Ignored.

Protected Mode Exceptions

#UD	If CR4.SMXE = 0. If GETSEC[SEXIT] is not reported as supported by GETSEC[CAPABILITIES].
#GP(0)	If CR0.PE = 0 or CPL > 0 or EFLAGS.VM = 1. If in VMX root operation. If the initiating processor is not designated via the MSR bit IA32_APIC_BASE.BSP. If an Intel® TXT-capable chipset is not present. If a protected partition is not already active or the processor is already in authenticated code mode. If the processor is in SMM.

Real-Address Mode Exceptions

#UD	If CR4.SMXE = 0. If GETSEC[SEXIT] is not reported as supported by GETSEC[CAPABILITIES].
#GP(0)	GETSEC[SEXIT] is not recognized in real-address mode.

Virtual-8086 Mode Exceptions

#UD	If CR4.SMXE = 0. If GETSEC[SEXIT] is not reported as supported by GETSEC[CAPABILITIES].
#GP(0)	GETSEC[SEXIT] is not recognized in virtual-8086 mode.

Compatibility Mode Exceptions

All protected mode exceptions apply.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

All protected mode exceptions apply.

VM-Exit Condition

Reason (GETSEC) IF in VMX non-root operation.

GETSEC[PARAMETERS]—Report the SMX Parameters

Opcode	Instruction	Description
0F 37 (EAX=6)	GETSEC[PARAMETERS]	Report the SMX parameters. The parameters index is input in EBX with the result returned in EAX, EBX, and ECX.

Description

The GETSEC[PARAMETERS] instruction returns specific parameter information for SMX features supported by the processor. Parameter information is returned in EAX, EBX, and ECX, with the input parameter selected using EBX.

Software retrieves parameter information by searching with an input index for EBX starting at 0, and then reading the returned results in EAX, EBX, and ECX. EAX[4:0] is designated to return a parameter type field indicating if a parameter is available and what type it is. If EAX[4:0] is returned with 0, this designates a null parameter and indicates no more parameters are available.

Table 6-7 defines the parameter types supported in current and future implementations.

Table 6-7. SMX Reporting Parameters Format

Parameter Type EAX[4:0]	Parameter Description	EAX[31:5]	EBX[31:0]	ECX[31:0]
0	NULL	Reserved (0 returned)	Reserved (unmodified)	Reserved (unmodified)
1	Supported AC module versions	Reserved (0 returned)	Version comparison mask	Version numbers supported
2	Max size of authenticated code execution area	Multiply by 32 for size in bytes	Reserved (unmodified)	Reserved (unmodified)
3	External memory types supported during AC mode	Memory type bit mask	Reserved (unmodified)	Reserved (unmodified)
4	Selective SENTER functionality control	EAX[14:8] correspond to available SENTER function disable controls	Reserved (unmodified)	Reserved (unmodified)
5	TXT extensions support	TXT Feature Extensions Flags (see Table 6-8)	Reserved	Reserved
6-31	Undefined	Reserved (unmodified)	Reserved (unmodified)	Reserved (unmodified)

Table 6-8. TXT Feature Extensions Flags

Bit	Definition	Description
5	Processor based S-CRTM support	Returns 1 if this processor implements a processor-rooted S-CRTM capability and 0 if not (S-CRTM is rooted in BIOS). This flag cannot be used to infer whether the chipset supports TXT or whether the processor support SMX.
6	Machine Check Handling	Returns 1 if it machine check status registers can be preserved through ENTERACCS and SENTER. If this bit is 1, the caller of ENTERACCS and SENTER is not required to clear machine check error status bits before invoking these GETSEC leaves. If this bit returns 0, the caller of ENTERACCS and SENTER must clear all machine check error status bits before invoking these GETSEC leaves.
31:7	Reserved	Reserved for future use. Will return 0.

Supported AC module versions (as defined by the AC module HeaderVersion field) can be determined for a particular SMX capable processor by the type 1 parameter. Using EBX to index through the available parameters reported by GETSEC[PARAMETERS] for each unique parameter set returned for type 1, software can determine the complete list of AC module version(s) supported.

For each parameter set, EBX returns the comparison mask and ECX returns the available HeaderVersion field values supported, after AND'ing the target HeaderVersion with the comparison mask. Software can then determine if a particular AC module version is supported by following the pseudo-code search routine given below:

```
parameter_search_index= 0
do {
    EBX= parameter_search_index++
    EAX= 6
    GETSEC
    if (EAX[4:0] = 1) {
        if ((version_query & EBX) = ECX) {
            version_is_supported= 1
            break
        }
    }
} while (EAX[4:0] ≠ 0)
```

If only AC modules with a HeaderVersion of 0 are supported by the processor, then only one parameter set of type 1 will be returned, as follows: EAX = 00000001H,

EBX = FFFFFFFFH and ECX = 00000000H.

The maximum capacity for an authenticated code execution area supported by the processor is reported with the parameter type of 2. The maximum supported size in bytes is determined by multiplying the returned size in EAX[31:5] by 32. Thus, for a maximum supported authenticated RAM size of 32KBytes, EAX returns with 00008002H.

Supportable memory types for memory mapped outside of the authenticated code execution area are reported with the parameter type of 3. While is active, as initiated by the GETSEC functions SENTER and ENTERACCS and terminated by EXITAC, there are restrictions on what memory types are allowed for the rest of system memory. It is the responsibility of the system software to initialize the memory type range register (MTRR) MSRs and/or the page attribute table (PAT) to only map memory types consistent with the reporting of this parameter. The reporting of supportable memory types of external memory is indicated using a bit map returned in EAX[31:8]. These bit positions correspond to the memory type encodings defined for the MTRR MSR and PAT programming. See Table 6-9.

The parameter type of 4 is used for enumerating the availability of selective GETSEC[SENDER] function disable controls. If a 1 is reported in bits 14:8 of the returned parameter EAX, then this indicates a disable control capa-

bility exists with SENTER for a particular function. The enumerated field in bits 14:8 corresponds to use of the EDX input parameter bits 6:0 for SENTER. If an enumerated field bit is set to 1, then the corresponding EDX input parameter bit of EDX may be set to 1 to disable that designated function. If the enumerated field bit is 0 or this parameter is not reported, then no disable capability exists with the corresponding EDX input parameter for SENTER, and EDX bit(s) must be cleared to 0 to enable execution of SENTER. If no selective disable capability for SENTER exists as enumerated, then the corresponding bits in the IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL MSR bits 14:8 must also be programmed to 1 if the SENTER global enable bit 15 of the MSR is set. This is required to enable future extensibility of SENTER selective disable capability with respect to potentially separate software initialization of the MSR.

Table 6-9. External Memory Types Using Parameter 3

EAX Bit Position	Parameter Description
8	Uncacheable (UC)
9	Write Combining (WC)
11:10	Reserved
12	Write-through (WT)
13	Write-protected (WP)
14	Write-back (WB)
31:15	Reserved

If the GETSEC[PARAMETERS] leaf or specific parameter is not present for a given SMX capable processor, then default parameter values should be assumed. These are defined in Table 6-10.

Table 6-10. Default Parameter Values

Parameter Type EAX[4:0]	Default Setting	Parameter Description
1	0.0 only	Supported AC module versions.
2	32 KBytes	Authenticated code execution area size.
3	UC only	External memory types supported during AC execution mode.
4	None	Available SENTER selective disable controls.

Operation

(* example of a processor supporting only a 0.0 HeaderVersion, 32K ACRAM size, memory types UC and WC *)

IF (CR4.SMXE=0)

THEN #UD;

ELSE IF (in VMX non-root operation)

THEN VM Exit (reason="GETSEC instruction");

ELSE IF (GETSEC leaf unsupported)

THEN #UD;

(* example of a processor supporting a 0.0 HeaderVersion *)

IF (EBX=0) THEN

EAX← 00000001h;

EBX← FFFFFFFFh;

ECX← 00000000h;

ELSE IF (EBX=1)

(* example of a processor supporting a 32K ACRAM size *)

```

    THEN EAX← 00008002h;
ESE IF (EBX= 2)
    (* example of a processor supporting external memory types of UC and WC *)
    THEN EAX← 00000303h;
ESE IF (EBX= other value(s) less than unsupported index value)
    (* EAX value varies. Consult Table 6-7 and Table 6-8*)
ELSE (* unsupported index*)
    EAX" 00000000h;
END;

```

Flags Affected

None.

Use of Prefixes

LOCK	Causes #UD.
REP*	Cause #UD (includes REPNE/REPZ and REP/REPE/REPZ).
Operand size	Causes #UD.
Segment overrides	Ignored.
Address size	Ignored.
REX	Ignored.

Protected Mode Exceptions

#UD	If CR4.SMXE = 0. If GETSEC[PARAMETERS] is not reported as supported by GETSEC[CAPABILITIES].
-----	---

Real-Address Mode Exceptions

#UD	If CR4.SMXE = 0. If GETSEC[PARAMETERS] is not reported as supported by GETSEC[CAPABILITIES].
-----	---

Virtual-8086 Mode Exceptions

#UD	If CR4.SMXE = 0. If GETSEC[PARAMETERS] is not reported as supported by GETSEC[CAPABILITIES].
-----	---

Compatibility Mode Exceptions

All protected mode exceptions apply.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

All protected mode exceptions apply.

VM-Exit Condition

Reason (GETSEC) IF in VMX non-root operation.

GETSEC[SMCTRL]—SMX Mode Control

Opcode	Instruction	Description
OF 37 (EAX = 7)	GETSEC[SMCTRL]	Perform specified SMX mode control as selected with the input EBX.

Description

The GETSEC[SMCTRL] instruction is available for performing certain SMX specific mode control operations. The operation to be performed is selected through the input register EBX. Currently only an input value in EBX of 0 is supported. All other EBX settings will result in the signaling of a general protection violation.

If EBX is set to 0, then the SMCTRL leaf is used to re-enable SMI events. SMI is masked by the ILP executing the GETSEC[SENDER] instruction (SMI is also masked in the responding logical processors in response to SENTER rendezvous messages.). The determination of when this instruction is allowed and the events that are unmasked is dependent on the processor context (See Table 6-11). For brevity, the usage of SMCTRL where EBX=0 will be referred to as GETSEC[SMCTRL(0)].

As part of support for launching a measured environment, the SMI, NMI and INIT events are masked after GETSEC[SENDER], and remain masked after exiting authenticated execution mode. Unmasking these events should be accompanied by securely enabling these event handlers. These security concerns can be addressed in VMX operation by a MVMM.

The VM monitor can choose two approaches:

- In a dual monitor approach, the executive software will set up an SMM monitor in parallel to the executive VMM (i.e. the MVMM), see Chapter 34, “System Management Mode” of *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3C*. The SMM monitor is dedicated to handling SMI events without compromising the security of the MVMM. This usage model of handling SMI while a measured environment is active does not require the use of GETSEC[SMCTRL(0)] as event re-enabling after the VMX environment launch is handled implicitly and through separate VMX based controls.
- If a dedicated SMM monitor will not be established and SMIs are to be handled within the measured environment, then GETSEC[SMCTRL(0)] can be used by the executive software to re-enable SMI that has been masked as a result of SENTER.

Table 6-11 defines the processor context in which GETSEC[SMCTRL(0)] can be used and which events will be unmasked. Note that the events that are unmasked are dependent upon the currently operating processor context.

Table 6-11. Supported Actions for GETSEC[SMCTRL(0)]

ILP Mode of Operation	SMCTRL execution action
In VMX non-root operation	VM exit
SENDERFLAG = 0	#GP(0), illegal context
In authenticated code execution mode (ACMODEFLAG = 1)	#GP(0), illegal context
SENDERFLAG = 1, not in VMX operation, not in SMM	Unmask SMI
SENDERFLAG = 1, in VMX root operation, not in SMM	Unmask SMI if SMM monitor is not configured, otherwise #GP(0)
SENDERFLAG = 1, In VMX root operation, in SMM	#GP(0), illegal context

Operation

(* The state of the internal flag ACMODEFLAG and SENTERFLAG persist across instruction boundary *)

```

IF (CR4.SMXE=0)
    THEN #UD;
ELSE IF (in VMX non-root operation)
    THEN VM Exit (reason="GETSEC instruction");
ELSE IF (GETSEC leaf unsupported)
    THEN #UD;
ELSE IF ((CR0.PE=0) or (CPL>0) OR (EFLAGS.VM=1))
    THEN #GP(0);
ELSE IF ((EBX=0) and (SENTERFLAG=1) and (ACMODEFLAG=0) and (IN_SMM=0) and
    (((in VMX root operation) and (SMM monitor not configured)) or (not in VMX operation)))
    THEN unmask SMI;
ELSE
    #GP(0);
END

```

Flags Affected

None.

Use of Prefixes

LOCK	Causes #UD.
REP*	Cause #UD (includes REPNE/REPZ and REP/REPE/REPZ).
Operand size	Causes #UD.
Segment overrides	Ignored.
Address size	Ignored.
REX	Ignored.

Protected Mode Exceptions

#UD	If CR4.SMXE = 0. If GETSEC[SMCTRL] is not reported as supported by GETSEC[CAPABILITIES].
#GP(0)	If CR0.PE = 0 or CPL > 0 or EFLAGS.VM = 1. If in VMX root operation. If a protected partition is not already active or the processor is currently in authenticated code mode. If the processor is in SMM. If the SMM monitor is not configured.

Real-Address Mode Exceptions

#UD	If CR4.SMXE = 0. If GETSEC[SMCTRL] is not reported as supported by GETSEC[CAPABILITIES].
#GP(0)	GETSEC[SMCTRL] is not recognized in real-address mode.

Virtual-8086 Mode Exceptions

#UD	If CR4.SMXE = 0. If GETSEC[SMCTRL] is not reported as supported by GETSEC[CAPABILITIES].
#GP(0)	GETSEC[SMCTRL] is not recognized in virtual-8086 mode.

Compatibility Mode Exceptions

All protected mode exceptions apply.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

All protected mode exceptions apply.

VM-exit Condition

Reason (GETSEC) IF in VMX non-root operation.

GETSEC[WAKEUP]—Wake up sleeping processors in measured environment

Opcode	Instruction	Description
OF 37 (EAX=8)	GETSEC[WAKEUP]	Wake up the responding logical processors from the SENTER sleep state.

Description

The GETSEC[WAKEUP] leaf function broadcasts a wake-up message to all logical processors currently in the SENTER sleep state. This GETSEC leaf must be executed only by the ILP, in order to wake-up the RLPs. Responding logical processors (RLPs) enter the SENTER sleep state after completion of the SENTER rendezvous sequence.

The GETSEC[WAKEUP] instruction may only be executed:

- In a measured environment as initiated by execution of GETSEC[SENTER].
- Outside of authenticated code execution mode.
- Execution is not allowed unless the processor is in protected mode with CPL = 0 and EFLAGS.VM = 0.
- In addition, the logical processor must be designated as the boot-strap processor as configured by setting IA32_APIC_BASE.BSP = 1.

If these conditions are not met, attempts to execute GETSEC[WAKEUP] result in a general protection violation.

An RLP exits the SENTER sleep state and start execution in response to a WAKEUP signal initiated by ILP's execution of GETSEC[WAKEUP]. The RLP retrieves a pointer to a data structure that contains information to enable execution from a defined entry point. This data structure is located using a physical address held in the Intel[®] TXT-capable chipset configuration register LT.MLE.JOIN. The register is publicly writable in the chipset by all processors and is not restricted by the Intel[®] TXT-capable chipset configuration register lock status. The format of this data structure is defined in Table 6-12.

Table 6-12. RLP MVMM JOIN Data Structure

Offset	Field
0	GDT limit
4	GDT base pointer
8	Segment selector initializer
12	EIP

The MLE JOIN data structure contains the information necessary to initialize RLP processor state and permit the processor to join the measured environment. The GDTR, LIP, and CS, DS, SS, and ES selector values are initialized using this data structure. The CS selector index is derived directly from the segment selector initializer field; DS, SS, and ES selectors are initialized to CS+8. The segment descriptor fields are initialized implicitly with BASE = 0, LIMIT = FFFFH, G = 1, D = 1, P = 1, S = 1; read/write/access for DS, SS, and ES; and execute/read/access for CS. It is the responsibility of external software to establish a GDT pointed to by the MLE JOIN data structure that contains descriptor entries consistent with the implicit settings initialized by the processor (see Table 6-6). Certain states from the content of Table 6-12 are checked for consistency by the processor prior to execution. A failure of any consistency check results in the RLP aborting entry into the protected environment and signaling an Intel[®] TXT shutdown condition. The specific checks performed are documented later in this section. After successful completion of processor consistency checks and subsequent initialization, RLP execution in the measured environment begins from the entry point at offset 12 (as indicated in Table 6-12).

Operation

(* The state of the internal flag ACMODEFLAG and SENTERFLAG persist across instruction boundary *)

```

IF (CR4.SMXE=0)
    THEN #UD;
ELSE IF (in VMX non-root operation)
    THEN VM Exit (reason="GETSEC instruction");
ELSE IF (GETSEC leaf unsupported)
    THEN #UD;
ELSE IF ((CR0.PE=0) or (CPL>0) or (EFLAGS.VM=1) or (SENTERFLAG=0) or (ACMODEFLAG=1) or (IN_SMM=0) or (in VMX operation) or
(IA32_APIC_BASE.BSP=0) or (TXT chipset not present))
    THEN #GP(0);
ELSE
    SignalTXTMsg(WAKEUP);
END;

```

RLP_SIPWAKEUP_FROM_SENTER_ROUTINE: (RLP only)

```

WHILE (no SignalWAKEUP event);
IF (IA32_SMM_MONITOR_CTL[0] ≠ ILP.IA32_SMM_MONITOR_CTL[0])
    THEN TXT-SHUTDOWN(#IllegalEvent)
IF (IA32_SMM_MONITOR_CTL[0] = 0)
    THEN Unmask SMI pin event;
ELSE
    Mask SMI pin event;
Mask A20M, and NMI external pin events (unmask INIT);
Mask SignalWAKEUP event;
Invalidate processor TLB(s);
Drain outgoing transactions;
TempGDTRLIMIT← LOAD(LT.MLE.JOIN);
TempGDTRBASE← LOAD(LT.MLE.JOIN+4);
TempSegSel← LOAD(LT.MLE.JOIN+8);
TempEIP← LOAD(LT.MLE.JOIN+12);
IF (TempGDTLimit & FFFF0000h)
    THEN TXT-SHUTDOWN(#BadJOINFormat);
IF ((TempSegSel > TempGDTRLIMIT-15) or (TempSegSel < 8))
    THEN TXT-SHUTDOWN(#BadJOINFormat);
IF ((TempSegSel.TI=1) or (TempSegSel.RPL≠0))
    THEN TXT-SHUTDOWN(#BadJOINFormat);
CR0.[PG,CD,NW,AM,WP]← 0;
CR0.[NE,PE]← 1;
CR4← 00004000h;
EFLAGS← 00000002h;
IA32_EFER← 0;
GDTR.BASE← TempGDTRBASE;
GDTR.LIMIT← TempGDTRLIMIT;
CS.SEL← TempSegSel;
CS.BASE← 0;
CS.LIMIT← FFFFFh;
CS.G← 1;
CS.D← 1;
CS.AR← 9Bh;
DS.SEL← TempSegSel+8;
DS.BASE← 0;
DS.LIMIT← FFFFFh;
DS.G← 1;

```

```

DS,D← 1;
DS,AR← 93h;
SS← DS;
ES← DS;
DR7← 00000400h;
IA32_DEBUGCTL← 0;
EIP← TempEIP;
END;

```

Flags Affected

None.

Use of Prefixes

LOCK	Causes #UD.
REP*	Cause #UD (includes REPNE/REPZ and REP/REPE/REPZ).
Operand size	Causes #UD.
Segment overrides	Ignored.
Address size	Ignored.
REX	Ignored.

Protected Mode Exceptions

#UD	If CR4.SMXE = 0. If GETSEC[WAKEUP] is not reported as supported by GETSEC[CAPABILITIES].
#GP(0)	If CR0.PE = 0 or CPL > 0 or EFLAGS.VM = 1. If in VMX operation. If a protected partition is not already active or the processor is currently in authenticated code mode. If the processor is in SMM.
#UD	If CR4.SMXE = 0. If GETSEC[WAKEUP] is not reported as supported by GETSEC[CAPABILITIES].
#GP(0)	GETSEC[WAKEUP] is not recognized in real-address mode.

Virtual-8086 Mode Exceptions

#UD	If CR4.SMXE = 0. If GETSEC[WAKEUP] is not reported as supported by GETSEC[CAPABILITIES].
#GP(0)	GETSEC[WAKEUP] is not recognized in virtual-8086 mode.

Compatibility Mode Exceptions

All protected mode exceptions apply.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

All protected mode exceptions apply.

VM-exit Condition

Reason (GETSEC) IF in VMX non-root operation.

8. Updates to Chapter 7, Volume 2D

Change bars show changes to Chapter 7 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 2D: Instruction Set Reference*.

Changes to this chapter: Removal of NDS/NDD/DDS terms from affected instructions. Where these changes are made to specific instructions, only the first page of the instructions are included here if no other areas of the instructions were updated.

Instructions with changes: V4FMADDPS/V4FNMADDPS, V4FMADDSS/V4FNMADDSS, VP4DPWSSD, VP4DPWSSDS, VRCP28SD, VRCP28SS, and VRSQRT28SD.

V4FMADDPS/V4FNMADDPS — Packed Single-Precision Floating-Point Fused Multiply-Add (4-iterations)

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.512.F2.0F38.W0 9A /r V4FMADDPS zmm1{k1}{z}, zmm2+3, m128	A	V/V	AVX512_4FMAPS	Multiply packed single-precision floating-point values from source register block indicated by zmm2 by values from m128 and accumulate the result in zmm1.
EVEX.512.F2.0F38.W0 AA /r V4FNMADDPS zmm1{k1}{z}, zmm2+3, m128	A	V/V	AVX512_4FMAPS	Multiply and negate packed single-precision floating-point values from source register block indicated by zmm2 by values from m128 and accumulate the result in zmm1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1_4X	ModRM:reg (r, w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

This instruction computes 4 sequential packed fused single-precision floating-point multiply-add instructions with a sequentially selected memory operand in each of the four steps.

In the above box, the notation of “+3” is used to denote that the instruction accesses 4 source registers based on that operand; sources are consecutive, start in a multiple of 4 boundary, and contain the encoded register operand.

This instruction supports memory fault suppression. The entire memory operand is loaded if any of the 16 lowest significant mask bits is set to 1 or if a “no masking” encoding is used.

The tuple type Tuple1_4X implies that four 32-bit elements (16 bytes) are referenced by the memory operation portion of this instruction.

Rounding is performed at every FMA (fused multiply and add) boundary. Exceptions are also taken sequentially. Pre- and post-computational exceptions of the first FMA take priority over the pre- and post-computational exceptions of the second FMA, etc.

V4FMADDSS/V4FNMADDSS —Scalar Single-Precision Floating-Point Fused Multiply-Add (4-iterations)

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.LLIG.F2.0F38.W0 9B /r V4FMADDSS xmm1{k1}{z}, xmm2+3, m128	A	V/V	AVX512_4FMAPS	Multiply scalar single-precision floating-point values from source register block indicated by xmm2 by values from m128 and accumulate the result in xmm1.
EVEX.LLIG.F2.0F38.W0 AB /r V4FNMADDSS xmm1{k1}{z}, xmm2+3, m128	A	V/V	AVX512_4FMAPS	Multiply and negate scalar single-precision floating-point values from source register block indicated by xmm2 by values from m128 and accumulate the result in xmm1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1_4X	ModRM:reg (r, w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

This instruction computes 4 sequential scalar fused single-precision floating-point multiply-add instructions with a sequentially selected memory operand in each of the four steps.

In the above box, the notation of “+3” is used to denote that the instruction accesses 4 source registers based that operand; sources are consecutive, start in a multiple of 4 boundary, and contain the encoded register operand.

This instruction supports memory fault suppression. The entire memory operand is loaded if the least significant mask bit is set to 1 or if a “no masking” encoding is used.

The tuple type Tuple1_4X implies that four 32-bit elements (16 bytes) are referenced by the memory operation portion of this instruction.

Rounding is performed at every FMA boundary. Exceptions are also taken sequentially. Pre- and post-computational exceptions of the first FMA take priority over the pre- and post-computational exceptions of the second FMA, etc.

Operation

src_reg_id is the 5 bit index of the vector register specified in the instruction as the src1 register.

```
define NFMA_SS(vl, dest, k1, msrc, regs_loaded, src_base, posneg):
    tmpdest ← dest
    // reg[] is an array representing the SIMD register file.
    IF k1[0] or *no writemask*:
        FOR j ← 0 to regs_loaded - 1:
            IF posneg = 0:
                tmpdest.single[0] ← RoundFPControl_MXCSR(tmpdest.single[0] - reg[src_base + j].single[0] * msrc.single[j])
            ELSE:
                tmpdest.single[0] ← RoundFPControl_MXCSR(tmpdest.single[0] + reg[src_base + j].single[0] * msrc.single[j])
    ELSE IF *zeroing*:
        tmpdest.single[0] ← 0
    dest ← tmpdst
    dest[MAX_VL-1:VL] ← 0
```

VP4DPWSSD – Dot Product of Signed Words with Dword Accumulation (4-iterations)

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.512.F2.0F38.W0 52 /r VP4DPWSSD zmm1{k1}{z}, zmm2+3, m128	A	V/V	AVX512_4VNNIW	Multiply signed words from source register block indicated by zmm2 by signed words from m128 and accumulate resulting signed dwords in zmm1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1_4X	ModRM:reg (r, w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

This instruction computes 4 sequential register source-block dot-products of two signed word operands with doubleword accumulation; see Figure 7-1 below. The memory operand is sequentially selected in each of the four steps.

In the above box, the notation of “+3” is used to denote that the instruction accesses 4 source registers based on that operand; sources are consecutive, start in a multiple of 4 boundary, and contain the encoded register operand.

This instruction supports memory fault suppression. The entire memory operand is loaded if any bit of the lowest 16-bits of the mask is set to 1 or if a “no masking” encoding is used.

The tuple type Tuple1_4X implies that four 32-bit elements (16 bytes) are referenced by the memory operation portion of this instruction.

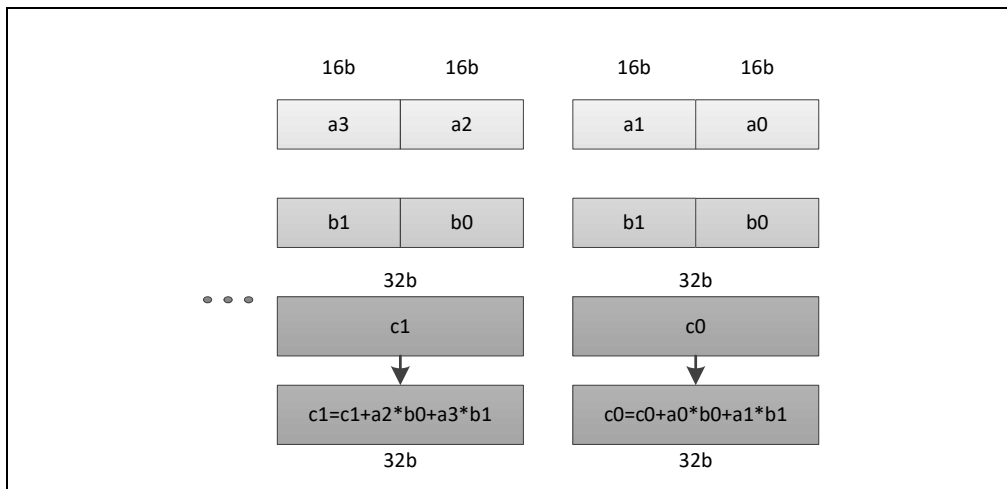


Figure 7-1. Register Source-Block Dot Product of Two Signed Word Operands with Doubleword Accumulation¹

NOTES:

1. For illustration purposes, one source-block dot product instance is shown out of the four.

VP4DPWSSDS — Dot Product of Signed Words with Dword Accumulation and Saturation (4-iterations)

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.512.F2.0F38.W0 53 /r VP4DPWSSDS zmm1{k1}{z}, zmm2+3, m128	A	V/V	AVX512_4VNNIW	Multiply signed words from source register block indicated by zmm2 by signed words from m128 and accumulate the resulting dword results with signed saturation in zmm1.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1_4X	ModRM:reg (r, w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

This instruction computes 4 sequential register source-block dot-products of two signed word operands with doubleword accumulation and signed saturation. The memory operand is sequentially selected in each of the four steps.

In the above box, the notation of "+3" is used to denote that the instruction accesses 4 source registers based on that operand; sources are consecutive, start in a multiple of 4 boundary, and contain the encoded register operand.

This instruction supports memory fault suppression. The entire memory operand is loaded if any bit of the lowest 16-bits of the mask is set to 1 or if a "no masking" encoding is used.

The tuple type Tuple1_4X implies that four 32-bit elements (16 bytes) are referenced by the memory operation portion of this instruction.

Operation

src_reg_id is the 5 bit index of the vector register specified in the instruction as the src1 register.

VP4DPWSSDS dest, src1, src2

(KL,VL) = (16,512)

N ← 4

ORIGDEST ← DEST

src_base ← src_reg_id & ~ (N-1) // for src1 operand

FOR i ← 0 to KL-1:

IF k1[i] or *no writemask*:

FOR m ← 0 to N-1:

t ← SRC2.dword[m]

p1dword ← reg[src_base+m].word[2*i] * t.word[0]

p2dword ← reg[src_base+m].word[2*i+1] * t.word[1]

DEST.dword[i] ← SIGNED_DWORD_SATURATE(DEST.dword[i] + p1dword + p2dword)

ELSE IF *zeroing*:

DEST.dword[i] ← 0

ELSE

DEST.dword[i] ← ORIGDEST.dword[i]

DEST[MAX_VL-1:VL] ← 0

VRCP28SD—Approximation to the Reciprocal of Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point Value with Less Than 2^{-28} Relative Error

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W1 CB /r VRCP28SD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64 {sae}	A	V/V	AVX512ER	Computes the approximate reciprocal ($< 2^{-28}$ relative error) of the scalar double-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m64 and stores the results in xmm1. Under writemask. Also, upper double-precision floating-point value (bits[127:64]) from xmm2 is copied to xmm1[127:64].

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Computes the reciprocal approximation of the low float64 value in the second source operand (the third operand) and store the result to the destination operand (the first operand). The approximate reciprocal is evaluated with less than 2^{-28} of maximum relative error. The result is written into the low float64 element of the destination operand according to the writemask k1. Bits 127:64 of the destination is copied from the corresponding bits of the first source operand (the second operand).

A denormal input value is treated as zero and does not signal #DE, irrespective of MXCSR.DAZ. A denormal result is flushed to zero and does not signal #UE, irrespective of MXCSR.FTZ.

If any source element is NaN, the quietized NaN source value is returned for that element. If any source element is $\pm\infty$, ± 0.0 is returned for that element. Also, if any source element is ± 0.0 , $\pm\infty$ is returned for that element.

The first source operand is an XMM register. The second source operand is an XMM register or a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand is a XMM register, conditionally updated using writemask k1.

A numerically exact implementation of VRCP28xx can be found at <https://software.intel.com/en-us/articles/reference-implementations-for-IA-approximation-instructions-vrcp14-vrsqrt14-vrcp28-vrsqrt28-vexp2>.

Operation

VRCP28SD ((EVEX encoded versions)

```

IF k1[0] OR *no writemask* THEN
    DEST[63: 0] ← RCP_28_DP(1.0/SRC2[63: 0]);
ELSE
    IF *merging-masking*           ; merging-masking
        THEN *DEST[63: 0] remains unchanged*
    ELSE                             ; zeroing-masking
        DEST[63: 0] ← 0
    FI;
FI;
ENDFOR;
DEST[127:64] ← SRC1[127: 64]
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0

```

VRCP28SS—Approximation to the Reciprocal of Scalar Single-Precision Floating-Point Value with Less Than 2^{-28} Relative Error

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W0 CB /r VRCP28SS xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m32 {sae}	A	V/V	AVX512ER	Computes the approximate reciprocal ($< 2^{-28}$ relative error) of the scalar single-precision floating-point value in xmm3/m32 and stores the results in xmm1. Under writemask. Also, upper 3 single-precision floating-point values (bits[127:32]) from xmm2 is copied to xmm1[127:32].

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Computes the reciprocal approximation of the low float32 value in the second source operand (the third operand) and store the result to the destination operand (the first operand). The approximate reciprocal is evaluated with less than 2^{-28} of maximum relative error prior to final rounding. The final result is rounded to $< 2^{-23}$ relative error before written into the low float32 element of the destination according to writemask k1. Bits 127:32 of the destination is copied from the corresponding bits of the first source operand (the second operand).

A denormal input value is treated as zero and does not signal #DE, irrespective of MXCSR.DAZ. A denormal result is flushed to zero and does not signal #UE, irrespective of MXCSR.FTZ.

If any source element is NaN, the quietized NaN source value is returned for that element. If any source element is $\pm\infty$, ± 0.0 is returned for that element. Also, if any source element is ± 0.0 , $\pm\infty$ is returned for that element.

The first source operand is an XMM register. The second source operand is an XMM register or a 32-bit memory location. The destination operand is a XMM register, conditionally updated using writemask k1.

A numerically exact implementation of VRCP28xx can be found at <https://software.intel.com/en-us/articles/reference-implementations-for-1A-approximation-instructions-vrcp14-vrsqrt14-vrcp28-vrsqrt28-vexp2>.

Operation

VRCP28SS ((EVEX encoded versions)

```

IF k1[0] OR *no writemask* THEN
    DEST[31: 0] ← RCP_28_SP(1.0/SRC2[31: 0]);
ELSE
    IF *merging-masking*           ; merging-masking
        THEN *DEST[31: 0] remains unchanged*
    ELSE                             ; zeroing-masking
        DEST[31: 0] ← 0
    FI;
FI;
ENDFOR;
DEST[127:32] ← SRC1[127: 32]
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0

```

VRSQRT28SD—Approximation to the Reciprocal Square Root of Scalar Double-Precision Floating-Point Value with Less Than 2^{-28} Relative Error

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/ En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EVEX.LIG.66.0F38.W1 CD /r VRSQRT28SD xmm1 {k1}{z}, xmm2, xmm3/m64 {sae}	A	V/V	AVX512ER	Computes approximate reciprocal square root ($<2^{-28}$ relative error) of the scalar double-precision floating-point value from xmm3/m64 and stores result in xmm1 with writemask k1. Also, upper double-precision floating-point value (bits[127:64]) from xmm2 is copied to xmm1[127:64].

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Tuple Type	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Operand 4
A	Tuple1 Scalar	ModRM:reg (w)	EVEX.vvvv (r)	ModRM:r/m (r)	NA

Description

Computes the reciprocal square root of the low float64 value in the second source operand (the third operand) and store the result to the destination operand (the first operand). The approximate reciprocal square root is evaluated with less than 2^{-28} of maximum relative error. The result is written into the low float64 element of xmm1 according to the writemask k1. Bits 127:64 of the destination is copied from the corresponding bits of the first source operand (the second operand).

If any source element is NaN, the quietized NaN source value is returned for that element. Negative (non-zero) source numbers, as well as $-\infty$, return the canonical NaN and set the Invalid Flag (#I).

A value of -0 must return $-\infty$ and set the DivByZero flags (#Z). Negative numbers should return NaN and set the Invalid flag (#I). Note however that the instruction flush input denormals to zero of the same sign, so negative denormals return $-\infty$ and set the DivByZero flag.

The first source operand is an XMM register. The second source operand is an XMM register or a 64-bit memory location. The destination operand is a XMM register.

A numerically exact implementation of VRSQRT28xx can be found at <https://software.intel.com/en-us/articles/reference-implementations-for-IA-approximation-instructions-vrcp14-vrsqrt14-vrcp28-vrsqrt28-vexp2>.

Operation

VRSQRT28SD (EVEX encoded versions)

```

IF k1[0] OR *no writemask* THEN
    DEST[63: 0] ← (1.0/ SQRT(SRC[63: 0]));
ELSE
    IF *merging-masking*           ; merging-masking
    THEN *DEST[63: 0] remains unchanged*
    ELSE                             ; zeroing-masking
        DEST[63: 0] ← 0
    FI;
FI;
ENDFOR;
DEST[127:64] ← SRC1[127: 64]
DEST[MAXVL-1:128] ← 0

```

9. Updates to Chapter 4, Volume 3A

Change bars show changes to Chapter 4 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3A: System Programming Guide, Part 1*.

Changes to this chapter: Typo corrections.

Chapter 3 explains how segmentation converts logical addresses to linear addresses. **Paging** (or linear-address translation) is the process of translating linear addresses so that they can be used to access memory or I/O devices. Paging translates each linear address to a **physical address** and determines, for each translation, what accesses to the linear address are allowed (the address's **access rights**) and the type of caching used for such accesses (the address's **memory type**).

Intel-64 processors support three different paging modes. These modes are identified and defined in Section 4.1. Section 4.2 gives an overview of the translation mechanism that is used in all modes. Section 4.3, Section 4.4, and Section 4.5 discuss the three paging modes in detail.

Section 4.6 details how paging determines and uses access rights. Section 4.7 discusses exceptions that may be generated by paging (page-fault exceptions). Section 4.8 considers data which the processor writes in response to linear-address accesses (accessed and dirty flags).

Section 4.9 describes how paging determines the memory types used for accesses to linear addresses. Section 4.10 provides details of how a processor may cache information about linear-address translation. Section 4.11 outlines interactions between paging and certain VMX features. Section 4.12 gives an overview of how paging can be used to implement virtual memory.

4.1 PAGING MODES AND CONTROL BITS

Paging behavior is controlled by the following control bits:

- The WP and PG flags in control register CR0 (bit 16 and bit 31, respectively).
- The PSE, PAE, PGE, PCIDE, SMEP, SMAP, and PKE flags in control register CR4 (bit 4, bit 5, bit 7, bit 17, bit 20, bit 21, and bit 22, respectively).
- The LME and NXE flags in the IA32_EFER MSR (bit 8 and bit 11, respectively).
- The AC flag in the EFLAGS register (bit 18).

Software enables paging by using the MOV to CR0 instruction to set CR0.PG. Before doing so, software should ensure that control register CR3 contains the physical address of the first paging structure that the processor will use for linear-address translation (see Section 4.2) and that structure is initialized as desired. See Table 4-3, Table 4-7, and Table 4-12 for the use of CR3 in the different paging modes.

Section 4.1.1 describes how the values of CR0.PG, CR4.PAE, and IA32_EFER.LME determine whether paging is in use and, if so, which of three paging modes is in use. Section 4.1.2 explains how to manage these bits to establish or make changes in paging modes. Section 4.1.3 discusses how CR0.WP, CR4.PSE, CR4.PGE, CR4.PCIDE, CR4.SMEP, CR4.SMAP, CR4.PKE, and IA32_EFER.NXE modify the operation of the different paging modes.

4.1.1 Three Paging Modes

If CR0.PG = 0, paging is not used. The logical processor treats all linear addresses as if they were physical addresses. CR4.PAE and IA32_EFER.LME are ignored by the processor, as are CR0.WP, CR4.PSE, CR4.PGE, CR4.SMEP, CR4.SMAP, and IA32_EFER.NXE.

Paging is enabled if CR0.PG = 1. Paging can be enabled only if protection is enabled (CR0.PE = 1). If paging is enabled, one of three paging modes is used. The values of CR4.PAE and IA32_EFER.LME determine which paging mode is used:

- If CR0.PG = 1 and CR4.PAE = 0, **32-bit paging** is used. 32-bit paging is detailed in Section 4.3. 32-bit paging uses CR0.WP, CR4.PSE, CR4.PGE, CR4.SMEP, and CR4.SMAP as described in Section 4.1.3.
- If CR0.PG = 1, CR4.PAE = 1, and IA32_EFER.LME = 0, **PAE paging** is used. PAE paging is detailed in Section 4.4. PAE paging uses CR0.WP, CR4.PGE, CR4.SMEP, CR4.SMAP, and IA32_EFER.NXE as described in Section 4.1.3.

PAGING

- If CR0.PG = 1, CR4.PAE = 1, and IA32_EFER.LME = 1, **4-level paging**¹ is used.² 4-level paging is detailed in Section 4.5. 4-level paging uses CR0.WP, CR4.PGE, CR4.PCIDE, CR4.SMEP, CR4.SMAP, CR4.PKE, and IA32_EFER.NXE as described in Section 4.1.3. 4-level paging is available only on processors that support the Intel 64 architecture.

The three paging modes differ with regard to the following details:

- Linear-address width. The size of the linear addresses that can be translated.
- Physical-address width. The size of the physical addresses produced by paging.
- Page size. The granularity at which linear addresses are translated. Linear addresses on the same page are translated to corresponding physical addresses on the same page.
- Support for execute-disable access rights. In some paging modes, software can be prevented from fetching instructions from pages that are otherwise readable.
- Support for PCIDs. With 4-level paging, software can enable a facility by which a logical processor caches information for multiple linear-address spaces. The processor may retain cached information when software switches between different linear-address spaces.
- Support for protection keys. With 4-level paging, software can enable a facility by which each linear address is associated with a **protection key**. Software can use a new control register to determine, for each protection key, how software can access linear addresses associated with that protection key.

Table 4-1 illustrates the principal differences between the three paging modes.

Table 4-1. Properties of Different Paging Modes

Paging Mode	PG in CR0	PAE in CR4	LME in IA32_EFER	Lin.-Addr. Width	Phys.-Addr. Width ¹	Page Sizes	Supports Execute-Disable?	Supports PCIDs and protection keys?
None	0	N/A	N/A	32	32	N/A	No	No
32-bit	1	0	0 ²	32	Up to 40 ³	4 KB 4 MB ⁴	No	No
PAE	1	1	0	32	Up to 52	4 KB 2 MB	Yes ⁵	No
4-level	1	1	1	48	Up to 52	4 KB 2 MB 1 GB ⁶	Yes ⁵	Yes ⁷

NOTES:

1. The physical-address width is always bounded by MAXPHYADDR; see Section 4.1.4.
2. The processor ensures that IA32_EFER.LME must be 0 if CR0.PG = 1 and CR4.PAE = 0.
3. 32-bit paging supports physical-address widths of more than 32 bits only for 4-MByte pages and only if the PSE-36 mechanism is supported; see Section 4.1.4 and Section 4.3.
4. 4-MByte pages are used with 32-bit paging only if CR4.PSE = 1; see Section 4.3.
5. Execute-disable access rights are applied only if IA32_EFER.NXE = 1; see Section 4.6.
6. Not all processors that support 4-level paging support 1-GByte pages; see Section 4.1.4.
7. PCIDs are used only if CR4.PCIDE = 1; see Section 4.10.1. Protection keys are used only if certain conditions hold; see Section 4.6.2.

-
1. Earlier versions of this manual used the term "IA-32e paging" to identify 4-level paging.
 2. The LMA flag in the IA32_EFER MSR (bit 10) is a status bit that indicates whether the logical processor is in IA-32e mode (and thus using 4-level paging). The processor always sets IA32_EFER.LMA to CR0.PG & IA32_EFER.LME. Software cannot directly modify IA32_EFER.LMA; an execution of WRMSR to the IA32_EFER MSR ignores bit 10 of its source operand.

- Paging cannot be enabled (by setting CR0.PG to 1) while CR4.PAE = 0 and IA32_EFER.LME = 1. Attempts to do so using MOV to CR0 cause a general-protection exception (#GP(0)).
- CR4.PAE cannot be cleared while 4-level paging is active (CR0.PG = 1 and IA32_EFER.LME = 1). Attempts to do so using MOV to CR4 cause a general-protection exception (#GP(0)).
- Regardless of the current paging mode, software can disable paging by clearing CR0.PG with MOV to CR0.¹
- Software can make transitions between 32-bit paging and PAE paging by changing the value of CR4.PAE with MOV to CR4.
- Software cannot make transitions directly between 4-level paging and either of the other two paging modes. It must first disable paging (by clearing CR0.PG with MOV to CR0), then set CR4.PAE and IA32_EFER.LME to the desired values (with MOV to CR4 and WRMSR), and then re-enable paging (by setting CR0.PG with MOV to CR0). As noted earlier, an attempt to clear either CR4.PAE or IA32_EFER.LME cause a general-protection exception (#GP(0)).
- VMX transitions allow transitions between paging modes that are not possible using MOV to CR or WRMSR. This is because VMX transitions can load CR0, CR4, and IA32_EFER in one operation. See Section 4.11.1.

4.1.3 Paging-Mode Modifiers

Details of how each paging mode operates are determined by the following control bits:

- The WP flag in CR0 (bit 16).
- The PSE, PGE, PCIDE, SMEP, SMAP, and PKE flags in CR4 (bit 4, bit 7, bit 17, bit 20, bit 21, and bit 22 respectively).
- The NXE flag in the IA32_EFER MSR (bit 11).

CR0.WP allows pages to be protected from supervisor-mode writes. If CR0.WP = 0, supervisor-mode write accesses are allowed to linear addresses with read-only access rights; if CR0.WP = 1, they are not. (User-mode write accesses are never allowed to linear addresses with read-only access rights, regardless of the value of CR0.WP.) Section 4.6 explains how access rights are determined, including the definition of supervisor-mode and user-mode accesses.

CR4.PSE enables 4-MByte pages for 32-bit paging. If CR4.PSE = 0, 32-bit paging can use only 4-KByte pages; if CR4.PSE = 1, 32-bit paging can use both 4-KByte pages and 4-MByte pages. See Section 4.3 for more information. (PAE paging and 4-level paging can use multiple page sizes regardless of the value of CR4.PSE.)

CR4.PGE enables global pages. If CR4.PGE = 0, no translations are shared across address spaces; if CR4.PGE = 1, specified translations may be shared across address spaces. See Section 4.10.2.4 for more information.

CR4.PCIDE enables process-context identifiers (PCIDs) for 4-level paging (CR4.PCIDE can be 1 only when 4-level paging is in use). PCIDs allow a logical processor to cache information for multiple linear-address spaces. See Section 4.10.1 for more information.

CR4.SMEP allows pages to be protected from supervisor-mode instruction fetches. If CR4.SMEP = 1, software operating in supervisor mode cannot fetch instructions from linear addresses that are accessible in user mode. Section 4.6 explains how access rights are determined, including the definition of supervisor-mode accesses and user-mode accessibility.

CR4.SMAP allows pages to be protected from supervisor-mode data accesses. If CR4.SMAP = 1, software operating in supervisor mode cannot access data at linear addresses that are accessible in user mode. Software can override this protection by setting EFLAGS.AC. Section 4.6 explains how access rights are determined, including the definition of supervisor-mode accesses and user-mode accessibility.

CR4.PKE allows each linear address to be associated with a **protection key**. The PKRU register specifies, for each protection key, whether linear addresses with that protection key can be read or written by software. See Section 4.6 for more information.

IA32_EFER.NXE enables execute-disable access rights for PAE paging and 4-level paging. If IA32_EFER.NXE = 1, instruction fetches can be prevented from specified linear addresses (even if data reads from the addresses are

1. If CR4.PCIDE = 1, an attempt to clear CR0.PG causes a general-protection exception (#GP); software should clear CR4.PCIDE before attempting to disable paging.

allowed). Section 4.6 explains how access rights are determined. (IA32_EFER.NXE has no effect with 32-bit paging. Software that wants to use this feature to limit instruction fetches from readable pages must use either PAE paging or 4-level paging.)

4.1.4 Enumeration of Paging Features by CPUID

Software can discover support for different paging features using the CPUID instruction:

- PSE: page-size extensions for 32-bit paging.
If CPUID.01H:EDX.PSE [bit 3] = 1, CR4.PSE may be set to 1, enabling support for 4-MByte pages with 32-bit paging (see Section 4.3).
- PAE: physical-address extension.
If CPUID.01H:EDX.PAE [bit 6] = 1, CR4.PAE may be set to 1, enabling PAE paging (this setting is also required for 4-level paging).
- PGE: global-page support.
If CPUID.01H:EDX.PGE [bit 13] = 1, CR4.PGE may be set to 1, enabling the global-page feature (see Section 4.10.2.4).
- PAT: page-attribute table.
If CPUID.01H:EDX.PAT [bit 16] = 1, the 8-entry page-attribute table (PAT) is supported. When the PAT is supported, three bits in certain paging-structure entries select a memory type (used to determine type of caching used) from the PAT (see Section 4.9.2).
- PSE-36: page-size extensions with 40-bit physical-address extension.
If CPUID.01H:EDX.PSE-36 [bit 17] = 1, the PSE-36 mechanism is supported, indicating that translations using 4-MByte pages with 32-bit paging may produce physical addresses with up to 40 bits (see Section 4.3).
- PCID: process-context identifiers.
If CPUID.01H:ECX.PCID [bit 17] = 1, CR4.PCIDE may be set to 1, enabling process-context identifiers (see Section 4.10.1).
- SMEP: supervisor-mode execution prevention.
If CPUID.(EAX=07H,ECX=0H):EBX.SMEP [bit 7] = 1, CR4.SMEP may be set to 1, enabling supervisor-mode execution prevention (see Section 4.6).
- SMAP: supervisor-mode access prevention.
If CPUID.(EAX=07H,ECX=0H):EBX.SMAM [bit 20] = 1, CR4.SMAM may be set to 1, enabling supervisor-mode access prevention (see Section 4.6).
- PKU: protection keys.
If CPUID.(EAX=07H,ECX=0H):ECX.PKU [bit 3] = 1, CR4.PKE may be set to 1, enabling protection keys (see Section 4.6).
- NX: execute disable.
If CPUID.80000001H:EDX.NX [bit 20] = 1, IA32_EFER.NXE may be set to 1, allowing PAE paging and 4-level paging to disable execute access to selected pages (see Section 4.6). (Processors that do not support CPUID function 80000001H do not allow IA32_EFER.NXE to be set to 1.)
- Page1GB: 1-GByte pages.
If CPUID.80000001H:EDX.Page1GB [bit 26] = 1, 1-GByte pages are supported with 4-level paging (see Section 4.5).
- LM: IA-32e mode support.
If CPUID.80000001H:EDX.LM [bit 29] = 1, IA32_EFER.LME may be set to 1, enabling 4-level paging. (Processors that do not support CPUID function 80000001H do not allow IA32_EFER.LME to be set to 1.)
- CPUID.80000008H:EAX[7:0] reports the physical-address width supported by the processor. (For processors that do not support CPUID function 80000008H, the width is generally 36 if CPUID.01H:EDX.PAE [bit 6] = 1 and 32 otherwise.) This width is referred to as MAXPHYADDR. MAXPHYADDR is at most 52.
- CPUID.80000008H:EAX[15:8] reports the linear-address width supported by the processor. Generally, this value is 48 if CPUID.80000001H:EDX.LM [bit 29] = 1 and 32 otherwise. (Processors that do not support CPUID function 80000008H, support a linear-address width of 32.)

4.2 HIERARCHICAL PAGING STRUCTURES: AN OVERVIEW

All three paging modes translate linear addresses using **hierarchical paging structures**. This section provides an overview of their operation. Section 4.3, Section 4.4, and Section 4.5 provide details for the three paging modes.

Every paging structure is 4096 Bytes in size and comprises a number of individual **entries**. With 32-bit paging, each entry is 32 bits (4 bytes); there are thus 1024 entries in each structure. With PAE paging and 4-level paging, each entry is 64 bits (8 bytes); there are thus 512 entries in each structure. (PAE paging includes one exception, a paging structure that is 32 bytes in size, containing 4 64-bit entries.)

The processor uses the upper portion of a linear address to identify a series of paging-structure entries. The last of these entries identifies the physical address of the region to which the linear address translates (called the **page frame**). The lower portion of the linear address (called the **page offset**) identifies the specific address within that region to which the linear address translates.

Each paging-structure entry contains a physical address, which is either the address of another paging structure or the address of a page frame. In the first case, the entry is said to **reference** the other paging structure; in the latter, the entry is said to **map a page**.

The first paging structure used for any translation is located at the physical address in CR3. A linear address is translated using the following iterative procedure. A portion of the linear address (initially the uppermost bits) selects an entry in a paging structure (initially the one located using CR3). If that entry references another paging structure, the process continues with that paging structure and with the portion of the linear address immediately below that just used. If instead the entry maps a page, the process completes: the physical address in the entry is that of the page frame and the remaining lower portion of the linear address is the page offset.

The following items give an example for each of the three paging modes (each example locates a 4-KByte page frame):

- With 32-bit paging, each paging structure comprises $1024 = 2^{10}$ entries. For this reason, the translation process uses 10 bits at a time from a 32-bit linear address. Bits 31:22 identify the first paging-structure entry and bits 21:12 identify a second. The latter identifies the page frame. Bits 11:0 of the linear address are the page offset within the 4-KByte page frame. (See Figure 4-2 for an illustration.)
- With PAE paging, the first paging structure comprises only $4 = 2^2$ entries. Translation thus begins by using bits 31:30 from a 32-bit linear address to identify the first paging-structure entry. Other paging structures comprise $512 = 2^9$ entries, so the process continues by using 9 bits at a time. Bits 29:21 identify a second paging-structure entry and bits 20:12 identify a third. This last identifies the page frame. (See Figure 4-5 for an illustration.)
- With 4-level paging, each paging structure comprises $512 = 2^9$ entries and translation uses 9 bits at a time from a 48-bit linear address. Bits 47:39 identify the first paging-structure entry, bits 38:30 identify a second, bits 29:21 a third, and bits 20:12 identify a fourth. Again, the last identifies the page frame. (See Figure 4-8 for an illustration.)

The translation process in each of the examples above completes by identifying a page frame; the page frame is part of the **translation** of the original linear address. In some cases, however, the paging structures may be configured so that the translation process terminates before identifying a page frame. This occurs if the process encounters a paging-structure entry that is marked “not present” (because its P flag — bit 0 — is clear) or in which a reserved bit is set. In this case, there is no translation for the linear address; an access to that address causes a page-fault exception (see Section 4.7).

In the examples above, a paging-structure entry maps a page with a 4-KByte page frame when only 12 bits remain in the linear address; entries identified earlier always reference other paging structures. That may not apply in other cases. The following items identify when an entry maps a page and when it references another paging structure:

- If more than 12 bits remain in the linear address, bit 7 (PS — page size) of the current paging-structure entry is consulted. If the bit is 0, the entry references another paging structure; if the bit is 1, the entry maps a page.
- If only 12 bits remain in the linear address, the current paging-structure entry always maps a page (bit 7 is used for other purposes).

If a paging-structure entry maps a page when more than 12 bits remain in the linear address, the entry identifies a page frame larger than 4 KBytes. For example, 32-bit paging uses the upper 10 bits of a linear address to locate the first paging-structure entry; 22 bits remain. If that entry maps a page, the page frame is 2^{22} Bytes = 4 MBytes.

32-bit paging supports 4-MByte pages if CR4.PSE = 1. PAE paging and 4-level paging support 2-MByte pages (regardless of the value of CR4.PSE). 4-level paging may support 1-GByte pages (see Section 4.1.4).

Paging structures are given different names based on their uses in the translation process. Table 4-2 gives the names of the different paging structures. It also provides, for each structure, the source of the physical address used to locate it (CR3 or a different paging-structure entry); the bits in the linear address used to select an entry from the structure; and details of whether and how such an entry can map a page.

Table 4-2. Paging Structures in the Different Paging Modes

Paging Structure	Entry Name	Paging Mode	Physical Address of Structure	Bits Selecting Entry	Page Mapping
PML4 table	PML4E	32-bit, PAE	N/A		
		4-level	CR3	47:39	N/A (PS must be 0)
Page-directory-pointer table	PDPTE	32-bit	N/A		
		PAE	CR3	31:30	N/A (PS must be 0)
		4-level	PML4E	38:30	1-GByte page if PS=1 ¹
Page directory	PDE	32-bit	CR3	31:22	4-MByte page if PS=1 ²
		PAE, 4-level	PDPTE	29:21	2-MByte page if PS=1
Page table	PTE	32-bit	PDE	21:12	4-KByte page
		PAE, 4-level		20:12	4-KByte page

NOTES:

1. Not all processors allow the PS flag to be 1 in PDPTEs; see Section 4.1.4 for how to determine whether 1-GByte pages are supported.
2. 32-bit paging ignores the PS flag in a PDE (and uses the entry to reference a page table) unless CR4.PSE = 1. Not all processors allow CR4.PSE to be 1; see Section 4.1.4 for how to determine whether 4-MByte pages are supported with 32-bit paging.

4.3 32-BIT PAGING

A logical processor uses 32-bit paging if CR0.PG = 1 and CR4.PAE = 0. 32-bit paging translates 32-bit linear addresses to 40-bit physical addresses.¹ Although 40 bits corresponds to 1 TByte, linear addresses are limited to 32 bits; at most 4 GBytes of linear-address space may be accessed at any given time.

32-bit paging uses a hierarchy of paging structures to produce a translation for a linear address. CR3 is used to locate the first paging-structure, the page directory. Table 4-3 illustrates how CR3 is used with 32-bit paging.

32-bit paging may map linear addresses to either 4-KByte pages or 4-MByte pages. Figure 4-2 illustrates the translation process when it uses a 4-KByte page; Figure 4-3 covers the case of a 4-MByte page. The following items describe the 32-bit paging process in more detail as well as how the page size is determined:

- A 4-KByte naturally aligned page directory is located at the physical address specified in bits 31:12 of CR3 (see Table 4-3). A page directory comprises 1024 32-bit entries (PDEs). A PDE is selected using the physical address defined as follows:
 - Bits 39:32 are all 0.
 - Bits 31:12 are from CR3.

1. Bits in the range 39:32 are 0 in any physical address used by 32-bit paging except those used to map 4-MByte pages. If the processor does not support the PSE-36 mechanism, this is true also for physical addresses used to map 4-MByte pages. If the processor does support the PSE-36 mechanism and MAXPHYADDR < 40, bits in the range 39:MAXPHYADDR are 0 in any physical address used to map a 4-MByte page. (The corresponding bits are reserved in PDEs.) See Section 4.1.4 for how to determine MAXPHYADDR and whether the PSE-36 mechanism is supported.

PAGING

- Bits 11:2 are bits 31:22 of the linear address.
- Bits 1:0 are 0.

Because a PDE is identified using bits 31:22 of the linear address, it controls access to a 4-Mbyte region of the linear-address space. Use of the PDE depends on CR4.PSE and the PDE's PS flag (bit 7):

- If CR4.PSE = 1 and the PDE's PS flag is 1, the PDE maps a 4-MByte page (see Table 4-4). The final physical address is computed as follows:
 - Bits 39:32 are bits 20:13 of the PDE.
 - Bits 31:22 are bits 31:22 of the PDE.¹
 - Bits 21:0 are from the original linear address.
- If CR4.PSE = 0 or the PDE's PS flag is 0, a 4-KByte naturally aligned page table is located at the physical address specified in bits 31:12 of the PDE (see Table 4-5). A page table comprises 1024 32-bit entries (PTEs). A PTE is selected using the physical address defined as follows:
 - Bits 39:32 are all 0.
 - Bits 31:12 are from the PDE.
 - Bits 11:2 are bits 21:12 of the linear address.
 - Bits 1:0 are 0.
- Because a PTE is identified using bits 31:12 of the linear address, every PTE maps a 4-KByte page (see Table 4-6). The final physical address is computed as follows:
 - Bits 39:32 are all 0.
 - Bits 31:12 are from the PTE.
 - Bits 11:0 are from the original linear address.

If a paging-structure entry's P flag (bit 0) is 0 or if the entry sets any reserved bit, the entry is used neither to reference another paging-structure entry nor to map a page. There is no translation for a linear address whose translation would use such a paging-structure entry; a reference to such a linear address causes a page-fault exception (see Section 4.7).

With 32-bit paging, there are reserved bits only if CR4.PSE = 1:

- If the P flag and the PS flag (bit 7) of a PDE are both 1, the bits reserved depend on MAXPHYADDR, and whether the PSE-36 mechanism is supported:²
 - If the PSE-36 mechanism is not supported, bits 21:13 are reserved.
 - If the PSE-36 mechanism is supported, bits 21:(M-19) are reserved, where M is the minimum of 40 and MAXPHYADDR.
- If the PAT is not supported:³
 - If the P flag of a PTE is 1, bit 7 is reserved.
 - If the P flag and the PS flag of a PDE are both 1, bit 12 is reserved.

(If CR4.PSE = 0, no bits are reserved with 32-bit paging.)

A reference using a linear address that is successfully translated to a physical address is performed only if allowed by the access rights of the translation; see Section 4.6.

1. The upper bits in the final physical address do not all come from corresponding positions in the PDE; the physical-address bits in the PDE are not all contiguous.

2. See Section 4.1.4 for how to determine MAXPHYADDR and whether the PSE-36 mechanism is supported.

3. See Section 4.1.4 for how to determine whether the PAT is supported.

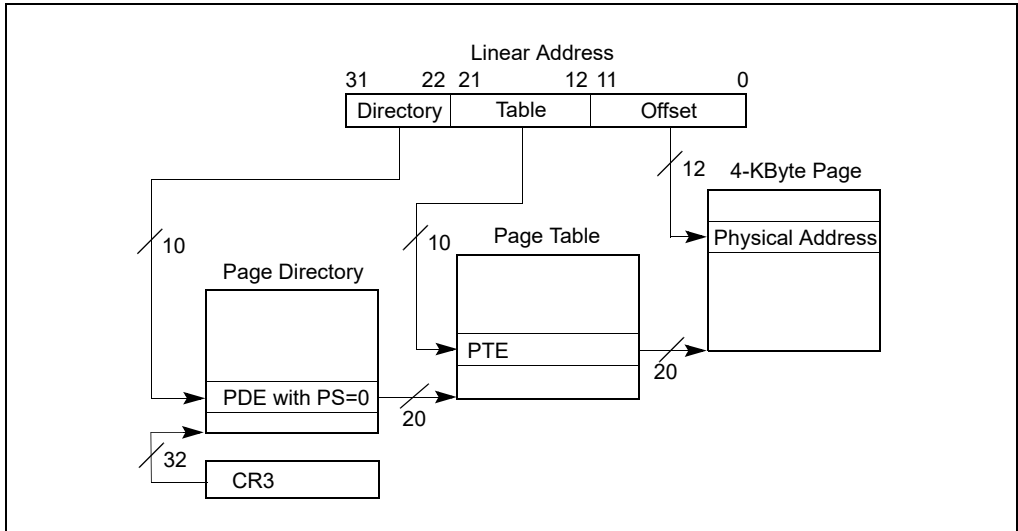


Figure 4-2. Linear-Address Translation to a 4-KByte Page using 32-Bit Paging

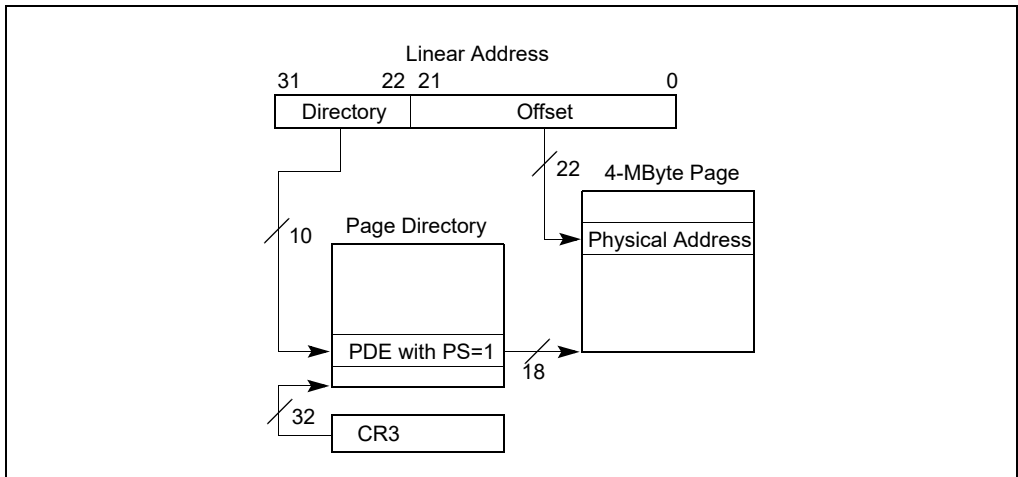


Figure 4-3. Linear-Address Translation to a 4-MByte Page using 32-Bit Paging

Figure 4-4 gives a summary of the formats of CR3 and the paging-structure entries with 32-bit paging. For the paging structure entries, it identifies separately the format of entries that map pages, those that reference other paging structures, and those that do neither because they are “not present”; bit 0 (P) and bit 7 (PS) are highlighted because they determine how such an entry is used.

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
Address of page directory ¹												Ignored						PCD	PWT	Ignored			CR3									
Bits 31:22 of address of 4MB page frame						Reserved (must be 0)			Bits 39:32 of address ²			PAT	Ignored	G	1	D	A	PCD	PWT	U/S	R/W	1	PDE: 4MB page									
Address of page table												Ignored						0	Ign	A	PCD	PWT	U/S	R/W	1	PDE: page table						
Ignored																	0			PDE: not present												
Address of 4KB page frame												Ignored						G	PAT	D	A	PCD	PWT	U/S	R/W	1	PTE: 4KB page					
Ignored																	0			PTE: not present												

Figure 4-4. Formats of CR3 and Paging-Structure Entries with 32-Bit Paging

NOTES:

1. CR3 has 64 bits on processors supporting the Intel-64 architecture. These bits are ignored with 32-bit paging.
2. This example illustrates a processor in which MAXPHYADDR is 36. If this value is larger or smaller, the number of bits reserved in positions 20:13 of a PDE mapping a 4-MByte page will change.

Table 4-3. Use of CR3 with 32-Bit Paging

Bit Position(s)	Contents
2:0	Ignored
3 (PWT)	Page-level write-through; indirectly determines the memory type used to access the page directory during linear-address translation (see Section 4.9)
4 (PCD)	Page-level cache disable; indirectly determines the memory type used to access the page directory during linear-address translation (see Section 4.9)
11:5	Ignored
31:12	Physical address of the 4-KByte aligned page directory used for linear-address translation
63:32	Ignored (these bits exist only on processors supporting the Intel-64 architecture)

Table 4-4. Format of a 32-Bit Page-Directory Entry that Maps a 4-MByte Page

Bit Position(s)	Contents
0 (P)	Present; must be 1 to map a 4-MByte page
1 (R/W)	Read/write; if 0, writes may not be allowed to the 4-MByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.6)
2 (U/S)	User/supervisor; if 0, user-mode accesses are not allowed to the 4-MByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.6)
3 (PWT)	Page-level write-through; indirectly determines the memory type used to access the 4-MByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9)
4 (PCD)	Page-level cache disable; indirectly determines the memory type used to access the 4-MByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9)
5 (A)	Accessed; indicates whether software has accessed the 4-MByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.8)
6 (D)	Dirty; indicates whether software has written to the 4-MByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.8)
7 (PS)	Page size; must be 1 (otherwise, this entry references a page table; see Table 4-5)
8 (G)	Global; if CR4.PGE = 1, determines whether the translation is global (see Section 4.10); ignored otherwise
11:9	Ignored
12 (PAT)	If the PAT is supported, indirectly determines the memory type used to access the 4-MByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9.2); otherwise, reserved (must be 0) ¹
(M-20):13	Bits (M-1):32 of physical address of the 4-MByte page referenced by this entry ²
21:(M-19)	Reserved (must be 0)
31:22	Bits 31:22 of physical address of the 4-MByte page referenced by this entry

NOTES:

1. See Section 4.1.4 for how to determine whether the PAT is supported.
2. If the PSE-36 mechanism is not supported, M is 32, and this row does not apply. If the PSE-36 mechanism is supported, M is the minimum of 40 and MAXPHYADDR (this row does not apply if MAXPHYADDR = 32). See Section 4.1.4 for how to determine MAXPHYADDR and whether the PSE-36 mechanism is supported.

Table 4-5. Format of a 32-Bit Page-Directory Entry that References a Page Table

Bit Position(s)	Contents
0 (P)	Present; must be 1 to reference a page table
1 (R/W)	Read/write; if 0, writes may not be allowed to the 4-MByte region controlled by this entry (see Section 4.6)
2 (U/S)	User/supervisor; if 0, user-mode accesses are not allowed to the 4-MByte region controlled by this entry (see Section 4.6)
3 (PWT)	Page-level write-through; indirectly determines the memory type used to access the page table referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9)
4 (PCD)	Page-level cache disable; indirectly determines the memory type used to access the page table referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9)
5 (A)	Accessed; indicates whether this entry has been used for linear-address translation (see Section 4.8)
6	Ignored
7 (PS)	If CR4.PSE = 1, must be 0 (otherwise, this entry maps a 4-MByte page; see Table 4-4); otherwise, ignored
11:8	Ignored
31:12	Physical address of 4-KByte aligned page table referenced by this entry

Table 4-6. Format of a 32-Bit Page-Table Entry that Maps a 4-KByte Page

Bit Position(s)	Contents
0 (P)	Present; must be 1 to map a 4-KByte page
1 (R/W)	Read/write; if 0, writes may not be allowed to the 4-KByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.6)
2 (U/S)	User/supervisor; if 0, user-mode accesses are not allowed to the 4-KByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.6)
3 (PWT)	Page-level write-through; indirectly determines the memory type used to access the 4-KByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9)
4 (PCD)	Page-level cache disable; indirectly determines the memory type used to access the 4-KByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9)
5 (A)	Accessed; indicates whether software has accessed the 4-KByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.8)
6 (D)	Dirty; indicates whether software has written to the 4-KByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.8)
7 (PAT)	If the PAT is supported, indirectly determines the memory type used to access the 4-KByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9.2); otherwise, reserved (must be 0) ¹
8 (G)	Global; if CR4.PGE = 1, determines whether the translation is global (see Section 4.10); ignored otherwise
11:9	Ignored
31:12	Physical address of the 4-KByte page referenced by this entry

NOTES:

1. See Section 4.1.4 for how to determine whether the PAT is supported.

4.4 PAE PAGING

A logical processor uses PAE paging if $CR0.PG = 1$, $CR4.PAE = 1$, and $IA32_EFER.LME = 0$. PAE paging translates 32-bit linear addresses to 52-bit physical addresses.¹ Although 52 bits corresponds to 4 PBytes, linear addresses are limited to 32 bits; at most 4 GBytes of linear-address space may be accessed at any given time.

With PAE paging, a logical processor maintains a set of four (4) PDPTE registers, which are loaded from an address in CR3. Linear addresses are translated using 4 hierarchies of in-memory paging structures, each located using one of the PDPTE registers. (This is different from the other paging modes, in which there is one hierarchy referenced by CR3.)

Section 4.4.1 discusses the PDPTE registers. Section 4.4.2 describes linear-address translation with PAE paging.

4.4.1 PDPTE Registers

When PAE paging is used, CR3 references the base of a 32-Byte **page-directory-pointer table**. Table 4-7 illustrates how CR3 is used with PAE paging.

Table 4-7. Use of CR3 with PAE Paging

Bit Position(s)	Contents
4:0	Ignored
31:5	Physical address of the 32-Byte aligned page-directory-pointer table used for linear-address translation
63:32	Ignored (these bits exist only on processors supporting the Intel-64 architecture)

The page-directory-pointer-table comprises four (4) 64-bit entries called PDPTes. Each PDPTE controls access to a 1-GByte region of the linear-address space. Corresponding to the PDPTes, the logical processor maintains a set of four (4) internal, non-architectural PDPTE registers, called PDPTE0, PDPTE1, PDPTE2, and PDPTE3. The logical processor loads these registers from the PDPTes in memory as part of certain operations:

- If PAE paging would be in use following an execution of MOV to CR0 or MOV to CR4 (see Section 4.1.1) and the instruction is modifying any of CR0.CD, CR0.NW, CR0.PG, CR4.PAE, CR4.PGE, CR4.PSE, or CR4.SMEP; then the PDPTes are loaded from the address in CR3.
- If MOV to CR3 is executed while the logical processor is using PAE paging, the PDPTes are loaded from the address being loaded into CR3.
- If PAE paging is in use and a task switch changes the value of CR3, the PDPTes are loaded from the address in the new CR3 value.
- Certain VMX transitions load the PDPTE registers. See Section 4.11.1.

Table 4-8 gives the format of a PDPTE. If any of the PDPTes sets both the P flag (bit 0) and any reserved bit, the MOV to CR instruction causes a general-protection exception (#GP(0)) and the PDPTes are not loaded.² As shown in Table 4-8, bits 2:1, 8:5, and 63:MAXPHYADDR are reserved in the PDPTes.

1. If $MAXPHYADDR < 52$, bits in the range 51:MAXPHYADDR will be 0 in any physical address used by PAE paging. (The corresponding bits are reserved in the paging-structure entries.) See Section 4.1.4 for how to determine MAXPHYADDR.

2. On some processors, reserved bits are checked even in PDPTes in which the P flag (bit 0) is 0.

Table 4-8. Format of a PAE Page-Directory-Pointer-Table Entry (PDPTE)

Bit Position(s)	Contents
0 (P)	Present; must be 1 to reference a page directory
2:1	Reserved (must be 0)
3 (PWT)	Page-level write-through; indirectly determines the memory type used to access the page directory referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9)
4 (PCD)	Page-level cache disable; indirectly determines the memory type used to access the page directory referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9)
8:5	Reserved (must be 0)
11:9	Ignored
(M-1):12	Physical address of 4-KByte aligned page directory referenced by this entry ¹
63:M	Reserved (must be 0)

NOTES:

1. M is an abbreviation for MAXPHYADDR, which is at most 52; see Section 4.1.4.

4.4.2 Linear-Address Translation with PAE Paging

PAE paging may map linear addresses to either 4-KByte pages or 2-MByte pages. Figure 4-5 illustrates the translation process when it produces a 4-KByte page; Figure 4-6 covers the case of a 2-MByte page. The following items describe the PAE paging process in more detail as well as how the page size is determined:

- Bits 31:30 of the linear address select a PDPTE register (see Section 4.4.1); this is PDPTE_{*i*}, where *i* is the value of bits 31:30.¹ Because a PDPTE register is identified using bits 31:30 of the linear address, it controls access to a 1-GByte region of the linear-address space. If the P flag (bit 0) of PDPTE_{*i*} is 0, the processor ignores bits 63:1, and there is no mapping for the 1-GByte region controlled by PDPTE_{*i*}. A reference using a linear address in this region causes a page-fault exception (see Section 4.7).
- If the P flag of PDPTE_{*i*} is 1, 4-KByte naturally aligned page directory is located at the physical address specified in bits 51:12 of PDPTE_{*i*} (see Table 4-8 in Section 4.4.1). A page directory comprises 512 64-bit entries (PDEs). A PDE is selected using the physical address defined as follows:
 - Bits 51:12 are from PDPTE_{*i*}.
 - Bits 11:3 are bits 29:21 of the linear address.
 - Bits 2:0 are 0.

Because a PDE is identified using bits 31:21 of the linear address, it controls access to a 2-Mbyte region of the linear-address space. Use of the PDE depends on its PS flag (bit 7):

- If the PDE's PS flag is 1, the PDE maps a 2-MByte page (see Table 4-9). The final physical address is computed as follows:
 - Bits 51:21 are from the PDE.
 - Bits 20:0 are from the original linear address.
- If the PDE's PS flag is 0, a 4-KByte naturally aligned page table is located at the physical address specified in bits 51:12 of the PDE (see Table 4-10). A page table comprises 512 64-bit entries (PTEs). A PTE is selected using the physical address defined as follows:
 - Bits 51:12 are from the PDE.

1. With PAE paging, the processor does not use CR3 when translating a linear address (as it does in the other paging modes). It does not access the PDPTes in the page-directory-pointer table during linear-address translation.

- Bits 11:3 are bits 20:12 of the linear address.
- Bits 2:0 are 0.
- Because a PTE is identified using bits 31:12 of the linear address, every PTE maps a 4-KByte page (see Table 4-11). The final physical address is computed as follows:
 - Bits 51:12 are from the PTE.
 - Bits 11:0 are from the original linear address.

If the P flag (bit 0) of a PDE or a PTE is 0 or if a PDE or a PTE sets any reserved bit, the entry is used neither to reference another paging-structure entry nor to map a page. There is no translation for a linear address whose translation would use such a paging-structure entry; a reference to such a linear address causes a page-fault exception (see Section 4.7).

The following bits are reserved with PAE paging:

- If the P flag (bit 0) of a PDE or a PTE is 1, bits 62:MAXPHYADDR are reserved.
- If the P flag and the PS flag (bit 7) of a PDE are both 1, bits 20:13 are reserved.
- If IA32_EFER.NXE = 0 and the P flag of a PDE or a PTE is 1, the XD flag (bit 63) is reserved.
- If the PAT is not supported:¹
 - If the P flag of a PTE is 1, bit 7 is reserved.
 - If the P flag and the PS flag of a PDE are both 1, bit 12 is reserved.

A reference using a linear address that is successfully translated to a physical address is performed only if allowed by the access rights of the translation; see Section 4.6.

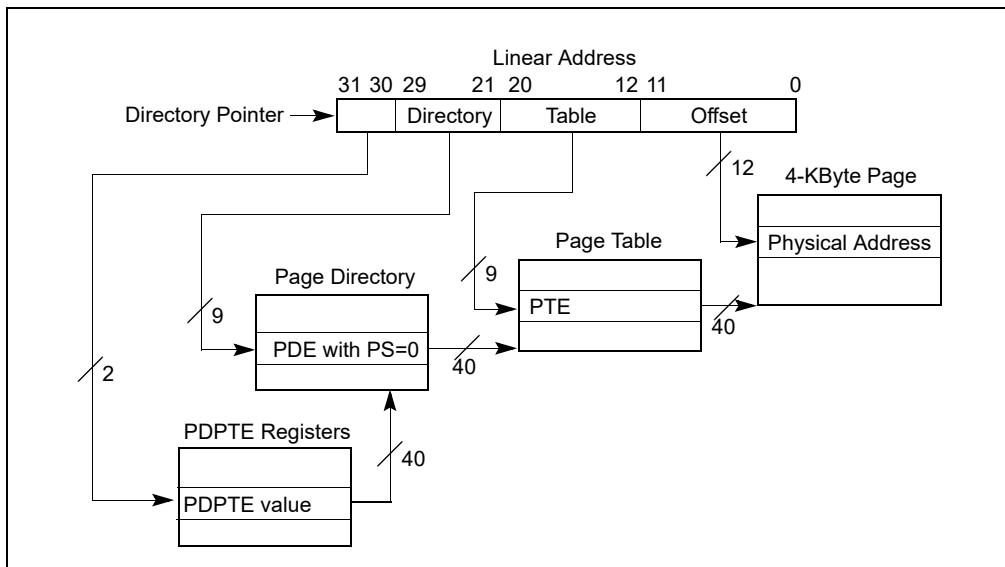


Figure 4-5. Linear-Address Translation to a 4-KByte Page using PAE Paging

1. See Section 4.1.4 for how to determine whether the PAT is supported.

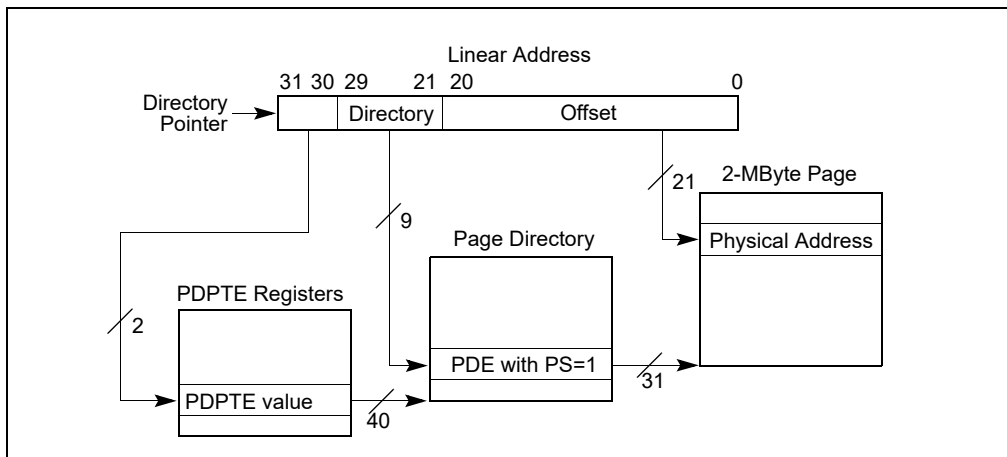


Figure 4-6. Linear-Address Translation to a 2-MByte Page using PAE Paging

Table 4-9. Format of a PAE Page-Directory Entry that Maps a 2-MByte Page

Bit Position(s)	Contents
0 (P)	Present; must be 1 to map a 2-MByte page
1 (R/W)	Read/write; if 0, writes may not be allowed to the 2-MByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.6)
2 (U/S)	User/supervisor; if 0, user-mode accesses are not allowed to the 2-MByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.6)
3 (PWT)	Page-level write-through; indirectly determines the memory type used to access the 2-MByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9)
4 (PCD)	Page-level cache disable; indirectly determines the memory type used to access the 2-MByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9)
5 (A)	Accessed; indicates whether software has accessed the 2-MByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.8)
6 (D)	Dirty; indicates whether software has written to the 2-MByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.8)
7 (PS)	Page size; must be 1 (otherwise, this entry references a page table; see Table 4-10)
8 (G)	Global; if CR4.PGE = 1, determines whether the translation is global (see Section 4.10); ignored otherwise
11:9	Ignored
12 (PAT)	If the PAT is supported, indirectly determines the memory type used to access the 2-MByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9.2); otherwise, reserved (must be 0) ¹
20:13	Reserved (must be 0)
(M-1):21	Physical address of the 2-MByte page referenced by this entry
62:M	Reserved (must be 0)
63 (XD)	If IA32_EFER.NXE = 1, execute-disable (if 1, instruction fetches are not allowed from the 2-MByte page controlled by this entry; see Section 4.6); otherwise, reserved (must be 0)

NOTES:

1. See Section 4.1.4 for how to determine whether the PAT is supported.

Table 4-10. Format of a PAE Page-Directory Entry that References a Page Table

Bit Position(s)	Contents
0 (P)	Present; must be 1 to reference a page table
1 (R/W)	Read/write; if 0, writes may not be allowed to the 2-MByte region controlled by this entry (see Section 4.6)
2 (U/S)	User/supervisor; if 0, user-mode accesses are not allowed to the 2-MByte region controlled by this entry (see Section 4.6)
3 (PWT)	Page-level write-through; indirectly determines the memory type used to access the page table referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9)
4 (PCD)	Page-level cache disable; indirectly determines the memory type used to access the page table referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9)
5 (A)	Accessed; indicates whether this entry has been used for linear-address translation (see Section 4.8)
6	Ignored
7 (PS)	Page size; must be 0 (otherwise, this entry maps a 2-MByte page; see Table 4-9)
11:8	Ignored
(M-1):12	Physical address of 4-KByte aligned page table referenced by this entry
62:M	Reserved (must be 0)
63 (XD)	If IA32_EFER.NXE = 1, execute-disable (if 1, instruction fetches are not allowed from the 2-MByte region controlled by this entry; see Section 4.6); otherwise, reserved (must be 0)

Table 4-11. Format of a PAE Page-Table Entry that Maps a 4-KByte Page

Bit Position(s)	Contents
0 (P)	Present; must be 1 to map a 4-KByte page
1 (R/W)	Read/write; if 0, writes may not be allowed to the 4-KByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.6)
2 (U/S)	User/supervisor; if 0, user-mode accesses are not allowed to the 4-KByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.6)
3 (PWT)	Page-level write-through; indirectly determines the memory type used to access the 4-KByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9)
4 (PCD)	Page-level cache disable; indirectly determines the memory type used to access the 4-KByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9)
5 (A)	Accessed; indicates whether software has accessed the 4-KByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.8)
6 (D)	Dirty; indicates whether software has written to the 4-KByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.8)
7 (PAT)	If the PAT is supported, indirectly determines the memory type used to access the 4-KByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9.2); otherwise, reserved (must be 0) ¹
8 (G)	Global; if CR4.PGE = 1, determines whether the translation is global (see Section 4.10); ignored otherwise

Table 4-11. Format of a PAE Page-Table Entry that Maps a 4-KByte Page (Contd.)

Bit Position(s)	Contents
11:9	Ignored
(M-1):12	Physical address of the 4-KByte page referenced by this entry
62:M	Reserved (must be 0)
63 (XD)	If IA32_EFER.NXE = 1, execute-disable (if 1, instruction fetches are not allowed from the 4-KByte page controlled by this entry; see Section 4.6); otherwise, reserved (must be 0)

NOTES:

1. See Section 4.1.4 for how to determine whether the PAT is supported.

Figure 4-7 gives a summary of the formats of CR3 and the paging-structure entries with PAE paging. For the paging structure entries, it identifies separately the format of entries that map pages, those that reference other paging structures, and those that do neither because they are “not present”; bit 0 (P) and bit 7 (PS) are highlighted because they determine how a paging-structure entry is used.

6	6	6	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5		M ¹	M-1			3	3	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Ignored ²											Address of page-directory-pointer table											Ignored				CR3																						
Reserved ³											Address of page directory											Ign.	Rsvd.	P	P	R	1	PDPTE: present																				
Reserved ³											Address of page directory											Ign.	Rsvd.	P	P	R	0	PDPTE: not present																				
X	D	4	Reserved											Address of 2MB page frame											Reserved	P	A	T	Ign.	G	1	D	A	P	P	U	R	1	PDE: 2MB page									
X	D	4	Reserved											Address of page table											Ign.	0	I	A	Ign.	P	P	U	R	1	PDE: page table													
Reserved ³											Address of page directory											Ign.	Rsvd.	P	P	R	0	PDPTE: not present																				
X	D	4	Reserved											Address of 4KB page frame											Ign.	G	P	A	T	Ign.	D	A	P	P	U	R	1	PTE: 4KB page										
Reserved ³											Address of page directory											Ign.	Rsvd.	P	P	R	0	PDPTE: not present																				

Figure 4-7. Formats of CR3 and Paging-Structure Entries with PAE Paging

NOTES:

1. M is an abbreviation for MAXPHYADDR.
2. CR3 has 64 bits only on processors supporting the Intel-64 architecture. These bits are ignored with PAE paging.
3. Reserved fields must be 0.
4. If IA32_EFER.NXE = 0 and the P flag of a PDE or a PTE is 1, the XD flag (bit 63) is reserved.

4.5 4-LEVEL PAGING

A logical processor uses 4-level paging if CR0.PG = 1, CR4.PAE = 1, and IA32_EFER.LME = 1. With 4-level paging, linear addresses are translated using a hierarchy of in-memory paging structures located using the contents of CR3. 4-level paging translates 48-bit linear addresses to 52-bit physical addresses.¹ Although 52 bits corresponds to 4 PBytes, linear addresses are limited to 48 bits; at most 256 TBytes of linear-address space may be accessed at any given time.

4-level paging uses a hierarchy of paging structures to produce a translation for a linear address. CR3 is used to locate the first paging-structure, the PML4 table. Use of CR3 with 4-level paging depends on whether process-context identifiers (PCIDs) have been enabled by setting CR4.PCIDE:

- Table 4-12 illustrates how CR3 is used with 4-level paging if CR4.PCIDE = 0.

Table 4-12. Use of CR3 with 4-Level Paging and CR4.PCIDE = 0

Bit Position(s)	Contents
2:0	Ignored
3 (PWT)	Page-level write-through; indirectly determines the memory type used to access the PML4 table during linear-address translation (see Section 4.9.2)
4 (PCD)	Page-level cache disable; indirectly determines the memory type used to access the PML4 table during linear-address translation (see Section 4.9.2)
11:5	Ignored
M-1:12	Physical address of the 4-KByte aligned PML4 table used for linear-address translation ¹
63:M	Reserved (must be 0)

NOTES:

1. M is an abbreviation for MAXPHYADDR, which is at most 52; see Section 4.1.4.

- Table 4-13 illustrates how CR3 is used with 4-level paging if CR4.PCIDE = 1.

Table 4-13. Use of CR3 with 4-Level Paging and CR4.PCIDE = 1

Bit Position(s)	Contents
11:0	PCID (see Section 4.10.1) ¹
M-1:12	Physical address of the 4-KByte aligned PML4 table used for linear-address translation ²
63:M	Reserved (must be 0) ³

NOTES:

1. Section 4.9.2 explains how the processor determines the memory type used to access the PML4 table during linear-address translation with CR4.PCIDE = 1.

2. M is an abbreviation for MAXPHYADDR, which is at most 52; see Section 4.1.4.

3. See Section 4.10.4.1 for use of bit 63 of the source operand of the MOV to CR3 instruction.

After software modifies the value of CR4.PCIDE, the logical processor immediately begins using CR3 as specified for the new value. For example, if software changes CR4.PCIDE from 1 to 0, the current PCID immediately changes

1. If MAXPHYADDR < 52, bits in the range 51:MAXPHYADDR will be 0 in any physical address used by 4-level paging. (The corresponding bits are reserved in the paging-structure entries.) See Section 4.1.4 for how to determine MAXPHYADDR.

PAGING

from CR3[11:0] to 000H (see also Section 4.10.4.1). In addition, the logical processor subsequently determines the memory type used to access the PML4 table using CR3.PWT and CR3.PCD, which had been bits 4:3 of the PCID. 4-level paging may map linear addresses to 4-KByte pages, 2-MByte pages, or 1-GByte pages.¹ Figure 4-8 illustrates the translation process when it produces a 4-KByte page; Figure 4-9 covers the case of a 2-MByte page, and Figure 4-10 the case of a 1-GByte page.

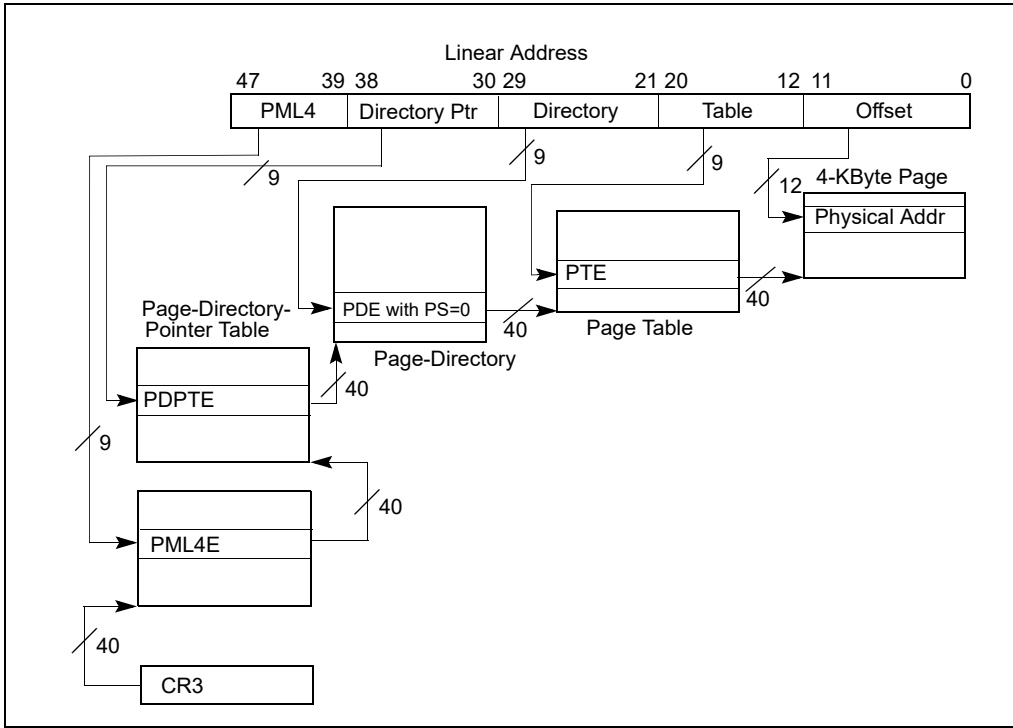


Figure 4-8. Linear-Address Translation to a 4-KByte Page using 4-Level Paging

1. Not all processors support 1-GByte pages; see Section 4.1.4.

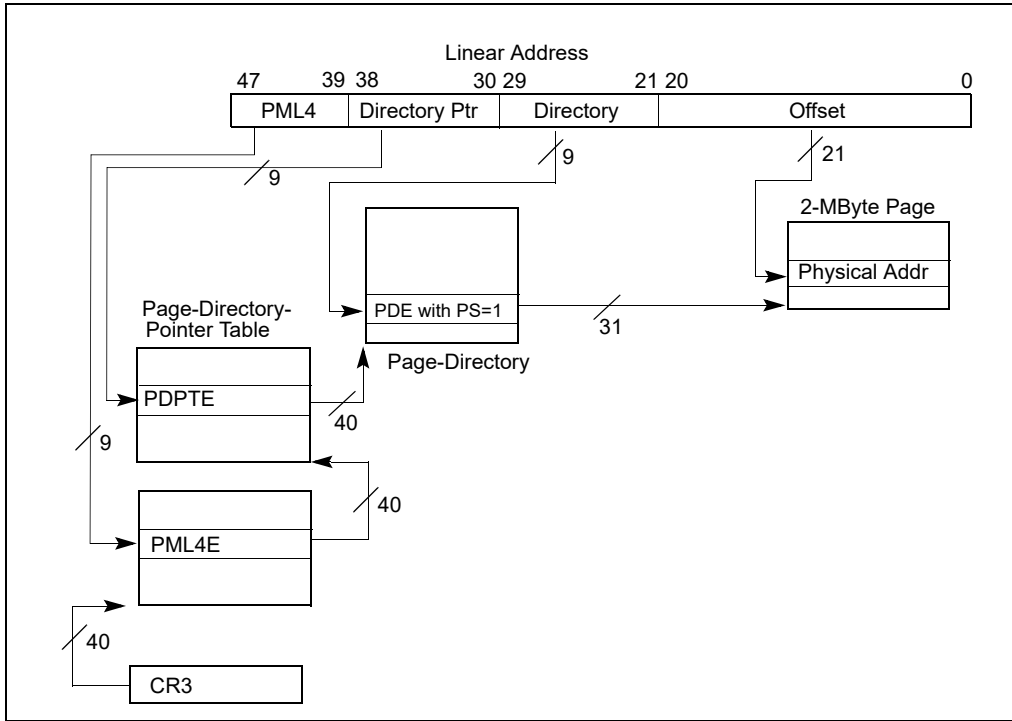


Figure 4-9. Linear-Address Translation to a 2-MByte Page using 4-Level Paging

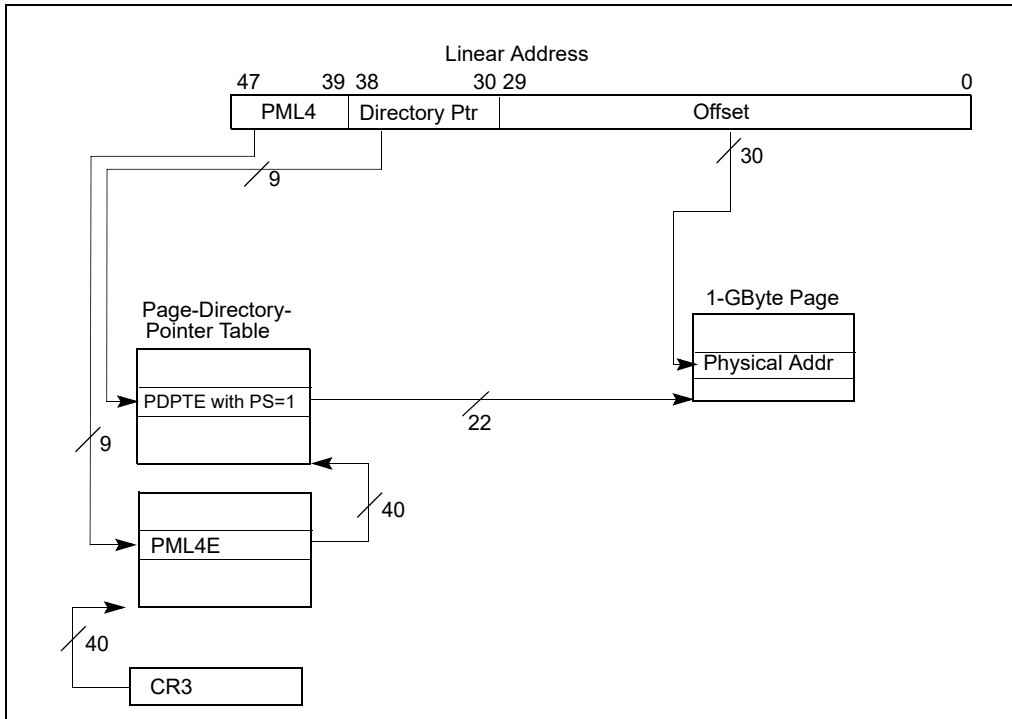


Figure 4-10. Linear-Address Translation to a 1-GByte Page using 4-Level Paging

If CR4.PKE = 1, 4-level paging associates with each linear address a **protection key**. Section 4.6 explains how the processor uses the protection key in its determination of the access rights of each linear address.

The following items describe the 4-level paging process in more detail as well as how the page size and protection key are determined.

- A 4-KByte naturally aligned PML4 table is located at the physical address specified in bits 51:12 of CR3 (see Table 4-12). A PML4 table comprises 512 64-bit entries (PML4Es). A PML4E is selected using the physical address defined as follows:
 - Bits 51:12 are from CR3.
 - Bits 11:3 are bits 47:39 of the linear address.
 - Bits 2:0 are all 0.

Because a PML4E is identified using bits 47:39 of the linear address, it controls access to a 512-GByte region of the linear-address space.
- A 4-KByte naturally aligned page-directory-pointer table is located at the physical address specified in bits 51:12 of the PML4E (see Table 4-14). A page-directory-pointer table comprises 512 64-bit entries (PDPTEs). A PDPTE is selected using the physical address defined as follows:
 - Bits 51:12 are from the PML4E.
 - Bits 11:3 are bits 38:30 of the linear address.
 - Bits 2:0 are all 0.

Because a PDPTE is identified using bits 47:30 of the linear address, it controls access to a 1-GByte region of the linear-address space. Use of the PDPTE depends on its PS flag (bit 7):¹

- If the PDPTE's PS flag is 1, the PDPTE maps a 1-GByte page (see Table 4-15). The final physical address is computed as follows:
 - Bits 51:30 are from the PDPTE.
 - Bits 29:0 are from the original linear address.

If CR4.PKE = 1, the linear address's protection key is the value of bits 62:59 of the PDPTE.
- If the PDPTE's PS flag is 0, a 4-KByte naturally aligned page directory is located at the physical address specified in bits 51:12 of the PDPTE (see Table 4-16). A page directory comprises 512 64-bit entries (PDEs). A PDE is selected using the physical address defined as follows:
 - Bits 51:12 are from the PDPTE.
 - Bits 11:3 are bits 29:21 of the linear address.
 - Bits 2:0 are all 0.

Because a PDE is identified using bits 47:21 of the linear address, it controls access to a 2-MByte region of the linear-address space. Use of the PDE depends on its PS flag:

- If the PDE's PS flag is 1, the PDE maps a 2-MByte page (see Table 4-17). The final physical address is computed as follows:
 - Bits 51:21 are from the PDE.
 - Bits 20:0 are from the original linear address.

If CR4.PKE = 1, the linear address's protection key is the value of bits 62:59 of the PDE.
- If the PDE's PS flag is 0, a 4-KByte naturally aligned page table is located at the physical address specified in bits 51:12 of the PDE (see Table 4-18). A page table comprises 512 64-bit entries (PTEs). A PTE is selected using the physical address defined as follows:
 - Bits 51:12 are from the PDE.
 - Bits 11:3 are bits 20:12 of the linear address.
 - Bits 2:0 are all 0.

1. The PS flag of a PDPTE is reserved and must be 0 (if the P flag is 1) if 1-GByte pages are not supported. See Section 4.1.4 for how to determine whether 1-GByte pages are supported.

- Because a PTE is identified using bits 47:12 of the linear address, every PTE maps a 4-KByte page (see Table 4-19). The final physical address is computed as follows:
 - Bits 51:12 are from the PTE.
 - Bits 11:0 are from the original linear address.

If CR4.PKE = 1, the linear address's protection key is the value of bits 62:59 of the PTE.

If a paging-structure entry's P flag (bit 0) is 0 or if the entry sets any reserved bit, the entry is used neither to reference another paging-structure entry nor to map a page. There is no translation for a linear address whose translation would use such a paging-structure entry; a reference to such a linear address causes a page-fault exception (see Section 4.7).

The following bits are reserved with 4-level paging:

- If the P flag of a paging-structure entry is 1, bits 51:MAXPHYADDR are reserved.
- If the P flag of a PML4E is 1, the PS flag is reserved.
- If 1-GByte pages are not supported and the P flag of a PDPTE is 1, the PS flag is reserved.¹
- If the P flag and the PS flag of a PDPTE are both 1, bits 29:13 are reserved.
- If the P flag and the PS flag of a PDE are both 1, bits 20:13 are reserved.
- If IA32_EFER.NXE = 0 and the P flag of a paging-structure entry is 1, the XD flag (bit 63) is reserved.

A reference using a linear address that is successfully translated to a physical address is performed only if allowed by the access rights of the translation; see Section 4.6.

Figure 4-11 gives a summary of the formats of CR3 and the 4-level paging-structure entries. For the paging structure entries, it identifies separately the format of entries that map pages, those that reference other paging structures, and those that do neither because they are "not present"; bit 0 (P) and bit 7 (PS) are highlighted because they determine how a paging-structure entry is used.

Table 4-14. Format of a 4-Level PML4 Entry (PML4E) that References a Page-Directory-Pointer Table

Bit Position(s)	Contents
0 (P)	Present; must be 1 to reference a page-directory-pointer table
1 (R/W)	Read/write; if 0, writes may not be allowed to the 512-GByte region controlled by this entry (see Section 4.6)
2 (U/S)	User/supervisor; if 0, user-mode accesses are not allowed to the 512-GByte region controlled by this entry (see Section 4.6)
3 (PWT)	Page-level write-through; indirectly determines the memory type used to access the page-directory-pointer table referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9.2)
4 (PCD)	Page-level cache disable; indirectly determines the memory type used to access the page-directory-pointer table referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9.2)
5 (A)	Accessed; indicates whether this entry has been used for linear-address translation (see Section 4.8)
6	Ignored
7 (PS)	Reserved (must be 0)
11:8	Ignored

1. See Section 4.1.4 for how to determine whether 1-GByte pages are supported.

Table 4-14. Format of a 4-Level PML4 Entry (PML4E) that References a Page-Directory-Pointer Table (Contd.)

Bit Position(s)	Contents
M-1:12	Physical address of 4-KByte aligned page-directory-pointer table referenced by this entry
51:M	Reserved (must be 0)
62:52	Ignored
63 (XD)	If IA32_EFER.NXE = 1, execute-disable (if 1, instruction fetches are not allowed from the 512-GByte region controlled by this entry; see Section 4.6); otherwise, reserved (must be 0)

Table 4-15. Format of a 4-Level Page-Directory-Pointer-Table Entry (PDPTE) that Maps a 1-GByte Page

Bit Position(s)	Contents
0 (P)	Present; must be 1 to map a 1-GByte page
1 (R/W)	Read/write; if 0, writes may not be allowed to the 1-GByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.6)
2 (U/S)	User/supervisor; if 0, user-mode accesses are not allowed to the 1-GByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.6)
3 (PWT)	Page-level write-through; indirectly determines the memory type used to access the 1-GByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9.2)
4 (PCD)	Page-level cache disable; indirectly determines the memory type used to access the 1-GByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9.2)
5 (A)	Accessed; indicates whether software has accessed the 1-GByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.8)
6 (D)	Dirty; indicates whether software has written to the 1-GByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.8)
7 (PS)	Page size; must be 1 (otherwise, this entry references a page directory; see Table 4-16)
8 (G)	Global; if CR4.PGE = 1, determines whether the translation is global (see Section 4.10); ignored otherwise
11:9	Ignored
12 (PAT)	Indirectly determines the memory type used to access the 1-GByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9.2) ¹
29:13	Reserved (must be 0)
(M-1):30	Physical address of the 1-GByte page referenced by this entry
51:M	Reserved (must be 0)
58:52	Ignored
62:59	Protection key; if CR4.PKE = 1, determines the protection key of the page (see Section 4.6.2); ignored otherwise
63 (XD)	If IA32_EFER.NXE = 1, execute-disable (if 1, instruction fetches are not allowed from the 1-GByte page controlled by this entry; see Section 4.6); otherwise, reserved (must be 0)

NOTES:

1. The PAT is supported on all processors that support 4-level paging.

Table 4-16. Format of a 4-Level Page-Directory-Pointer-Table Entry (PDPTE) that References a Page Directory

Bit Position(s)	Contents
0 (P)	Present; must be 1 to reference a page directory
1 (R/W)	Read/write; if 0, writes may not be allowed to the 1-GByte region controlled by this entry (see Section 4.6)
2 (U/S)	User/supervisor; if 0, user-mode accesses are not allowed to the 1-GByte region controlled by this entry (see Section 4.6)
3 (PWT)	Page-level write-through; indirectly determines the memory type used to access the page directory referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9.2)
4 (PCD)	Page-level cache disable; indirectly determines the memory type used to access the page directory referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9.2)
5 (A)	Accessed; indicates whether this entry has been used for linear-address translation (see Section 4.8)
6	Ignored
7 (PS)	Page size; must be 0 (otherwise, this entry maps a 1-GByte page; see Table 4-15)
11:8	Ignored
(M-1):12	Physical address of 4-KByte aligned page directory referenced by this entry
51:M	Reserved (must be 0)
62:52	Ignored
63 (XD)	If IA32_EFER.NXE = 1, execute-disable (if 1, instruction fetches are not allowed from the 1-GByte region controlled by this entry; see Section 4.6); otherwise, reserved (must be 0)

Table 4-17. Format of a 4-Level Page-Directory Entry that Maps a 2-MByte Page

Bit Position(s)	Contents
0 (P)	Present; must be 1 to map a 2-MByte page
1 (R/W)	Read/write; if 0, writes may not be allowed to the 2-MByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.6)
2 (U/S)	User/supervisor; if 0, user-mode accesses are not allowed to the 2-MByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.6)
3 (PWT)	Page-level write-through; indirectly determines the memory type used to access the 2-MByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9.2)
4 (PCD)	Page-level cache disable; indirectly determines the memory type used to access the 2-MByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9.2)
5 (A)	Accessed; indicates whether software has accessed the 2-MByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.8)
6 (D)	Dirty; indicates whether software has written to the 2-MByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.8)
7 (PS)	Page size; must be 1 (otherwise, this entry references a page table; see Table 4-18)
8 (G)	Global; if CR4.PGE = 1, determines whether the translation is global (see Section 4.10); ignored otherwise

Table 4-17. Format of a 4-Level Page-Directory Entry that Maps a 2-MByte Page (Contd.)

Bit Position(s)	Contents
11:9	Ignored
12 (PAT)	Indirectly determines the memory type used to access the 2-MByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9.2)
20:13	Reserved (must be 0)
(M-1):21	Physical address of the 2-MByte page referenced by this entry
51:M	Reserved (must be 0)
58:52	Ignored
62:59	Protection key; if CR4.PKE = 1, determines the protection key of the page (see Section 4.6.2); ignored otherwise
63 (XD)	If IA32_EFER.NXE = 1, execute-disable (if 1, instruction fetches are not allowed from the 2-MByte page controlled by this entry; see Section 4.6); otherwise, reserved (must be 0)

Table 4-18. Format of a 4-Level Page-Directory Entry that References a Page Table

Bit Position(s)	Contents
0 (P)	Present; must be 1 to reference a page table
1 (R/W)	Read/write; if 0, writes may not be allowed to the 2-MByte region controlled by this entry (see Section 4.6)
2 (U/S)	User/supervisor; if 0, user-mode accesses are not allowed to the 2-MByte region controlled by this entry (see Section 4.6)
3 (PWT)	Page-level write-through; indirectly determines the memory type used to access the page table referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9.2)
4 (PCD)	Page-level cache disable; indirectly determines the memory type used to access the page table referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9.2)
5 (A)	Accessed; indicates whether this entry has been used for linear-address translation (see Section 4.8)
6	Ignored
7 (PS)	Page size; must be 0 (otherwise, this entry maps a 2-MByte page; see Table 4-17)
11:8	Ignored
(M-1):12	Physical address of 4-KByte aligned page table referenced by this entry
51:M	Reserved (must be 0)
62:52	Ignored
63 (XD)	If IA32_EFER.NXE = 1, execute-disable (if 1, instruction fetches are not allowed from the 2-MByte region controlled by this entry; see Section 4.6); otherwise, reserved (must be 0)

Table 4-19. Format of a 4-Level Page-Table Entry that Maps a 4-KByte Page

Bit Position(s)	Contents
0 (P)	Present; must be 1 to map a 4-KByte page
1 (R/W)	Read/write; if 0, writes may not be allowed to the 4-KByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.6)
2 (U/S)	User/supervisor; if 0, user-mode accesses are not allowed to the 4-KByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.6)
3 (PWT)	Page-level write-through; indirectly determines the memory type used to access the 4-KByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9.2)
4 (PCD)	Page-level cache disable; indirectly determines the memory type used to access the 4-KByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9.2)
5 (A)	Accessed; indicates whether software has accessed the 4-KByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.8)
6 (D)	Dirty; indicates whether software has written to the 4-KByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.8)
7 (PAT)	Indirectly determines the memory type used to access the 4-KByte page referenced by this entry (see Section 4.9.2)
8 (G)	Global; if CR4.PGE = 1, determines whether the translation is global (see Section 4.10); ignored otherwise
11:9	Ignored
(M-1):12	Physical address of the 4-KByte page referenced by this entry
51:M	Reserved (must be 0)
58:52	Ignored
62:59	Protection key; if CR4.PKE = 1, determines the protection key of the page (see Section 4.6.2); ignored otherwise
63 (XD)	If IA32_EFER.NXE = 1, execute-disable (if 1, instruction fetches are not allowed from the 4-KByte page controlled by this entry; see Section 4.6); otherwise, reserved (must be 0)

6	6	6	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5			M ¹	M-1			3	3	3	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0		
Reserved ²												Address of PML4 table												Ignored				P	P			CR3																				
X	D	3	Ignored				Rsvd.				Address of page-directory-pointer table												Ign.				R	I	g	n	P	P			1	PML4E: present																
Ignored																																0	PML4E: not present																			
X	D	3	Prot. Key ⁴	Ignored				Rsvd.				Address of 1GB page frame				Reserved				P	A	T	Ign.				G	1	D	A	P	P			1	PDPTE: 1GB page																
X	D	3	Ignored				Rsvd.				Address of page directory												Ign.				0	I	g	n	P	P			1	PDPTE: page directory																
Ignored																																0	PDPTE: not present																			
X	D	3	Prot. Key ⁴	Ignored				Rsvd.				Address of 2MB page frame				Reserved				P	A	T	Ign.				G	1	D	A	P	P			1	PDE: 2MB page																
X	D	3	Ignored				Rsvd.				Address of page table												Ign.				0	I	g	n	P	P			1	PDE: page table																
Ignored																																0	PDE: not present																			
X	D	3	Prot. Key ⁴	Ignored				Rsvd.				Address of 4KB page frame												Ign.				G	P	A	T	D	A	P	P			1	PTE: 4KB page													
Ignored																																0	PTE: not present																			

Figure 4-11. Formats of CR3 and Paging-Structure Entries with 4-Level Paging

NOTES:

1. M is an abbreviation for MAXPHYADDR.
2. Reserved fields must be 0.
3. If IA32_EFER.NXE = 0 and the P flag of a paging-structure entry is 1, the XD flag (bit 63) is reserved.
4. If CR4.PKE = 0, the protection key is ignored.

4.6 ACCESS RIGHTS

There is a translation for a linear address if the processes described in Section 4.3, Section 4.4.2, and Section 4.5 (depending upon the paging mode) completes and produces a physical address. Whether an access is permitted by a translation is determined by the access rights specified by the paging-structure entries controlling the translation;¹ paging-mode modifiers in CR0, CR4, and the IA32_EFER MSR; EFLAGS.AC; and the mode of the access.

1. With PAE paging, the PDPTes do not determine access rights.

Section 4.6.1 describes how the processor determines the access rights for each linear address. Section 4.6.2 provides additional information about how protection keys contribute to access-rights determination. (They do so only with 4-level paging and only if CR4.PKE = 1.)

4.6.1 Determination of Access Rights

Every access to a linear address is either a **supervisor-mode access** or a **user-mode access**. For all instruction fetches and most data accesses, this distinction is determined by the current privilege level (CPL): accesses made while $CPL < 3$ are supervisor-mode accesses, while accesses made while $CPL = 3$ are user-mode accesses.

Some operations implicitly access system data structures with linear addresses; the resulting accesses to those data structures are supervisor-mode accesses regardless of CPL. Examples of such accesses include the following: accesses to the global descriptor table (GDT) or local descriptor table (LDT) to load a segment descriptor; accesses to the interrupt descriptor table (IDT) when delivering an interrupt or exception; and accesses to the task-state segment (TSS) as part of a task switch or change of CPL. All these accesses are called **implicit supervisor-mode accesses** regardless of CPL. Other accesses made while $CPL < 3$ are called **explicit supervisor-mode accesses**.

Access rights are also controlled by the **mode** of a linear address as specified by the paging-structure entries controlling the translation of the linear address. If the U/S flag (bit 2) is 0 in at least one of the paging-structure entries, the address is a **supervisor-mode address**. Otherwise, the address is a **user-mode address**.

The following items detail how paging determines access rights:

- For supervisor-mode accesses:
 - Data may be read (implicitly or explicitly) from any supervisor-mode address.
 - Data reads from user-mode pages.
Access rights depend on the value of CR4.SMAP:
 - If CR4.SMAP = 0, data may be read from any user-mode address with a protection key for which read access is permitted.
 - If CR4.SMAP = 1, access rights depend on the value of EFLAGS.AC and whether the access is implicit or explicit:
 - If EFLAGS.AC = 1 and the access is explicit, data may be read from any user-mode address with a protection key for which read access is permitted.
 - If EFLAGS.AC = 0 or the access is implicit, data may not be read from any user-mode address.
- Section 4.6.2 explains how protection keys are associated with user-mode addresses and the accesses that are permitted for each protection key.
- Data writes to supervisor-mode addresses.
Access rights depend on the value of CR0.WP:
 - If CR0.WP = 0, data may be written to any supervisor-mode address.
 - If CR0.WP = 1, data may be written to any supervisor-mode address with a translation for which the R/W flag (bit 1) is 1 in every paging-structure entry controlling the translation; data may not be written to any supervisor-mode address with a translation for which the R/W flag is 0 in any paging-structure entry controlling the translation.
 - Data writes to user-mode addresses.
Access rights depend on the value of CR0.WP:
 - If CR0.WP = 0, access rights depend on the value of CR4.SMAP:
 - If CR4.SMAP = 0, data may be written to any user-mode address with a protection key for which write access is permitted.
 - If CR4.SMAP = 1, access rights depend on the value of EFLAGS.AC and whether the access is implicit or explicit:
 - If EFLAGS.AC = 1 and the access is explicit, data may be written to any user-mode address with a protection key for which write access is permitted.
 - If EFLAGS.AC = 0 or the access is implicit, data may not be written to any user-mode address.

- If CR0.WP = 1, access rights depend on the value of CR4.SMAP:
 - If CR4.SMAP = 0, data may be written to any user-mode address with a translation for which the R/W flag is 1 in every paging-structure entry controlling the translation and with a protection key for which write access is permitted; data may not be written to any user-mode address with a translation for which the R/W flag is 0 in any paging-structure entry controlling the translation.
 - If CR4.SMAP = 1, access rights depend on the value of EFLAGS.AC and whether the access is implicit or explicit:
 - If EFLAGS.AC = 1 and the access is explicit, data may be written to any user-mode address with a translation for which the R/W flag is 1 in every paging-structure entry controlling the translation and with a protection key for which write access is permitted; data may not be written to any user-mode address with a translation for which the R/W flag is 0 in any paging-structure entry controlling the translation.
 - If EFLAGS.AC = 0 or the access is implicit, data may not be written to any user-mode address.

Section 4.6.2 explains how protection keys are associated with user-mode addresses and the accesses that are permitted for each protection key.

- Instruction fetches from supervisor-mode addresses.
 - For 32-bit paging or if IA32_EFER.NXE = 0, instructions may be fetched from any supervisor-mode address.
 - For PAE paging or 4-level paging with IA32_EFER.NXE = 1, instructions may be fetched from any supervisor-mode address with a translation for which the XD flag (bit 63) is 0 in every paging-structure entry controlling the translation; instructions may not be fetched from any supervisor-mode address with a translation for which the XD flag is 1 in any paging-structure entry controlling the translation.
- Instruction fetches from user-mode addresses.
Access rights depend on the values of CR4.SMEP:
 - If CR4.SMEP = 0, access rights depend on the paging mode and the value of IA32_EFER.NXE:
 - For 32-bit paging or if IA32_EFER.NXE = 0, instructions may be fetched from any user-mode address.
 - For PAE paging or 4-level paging with IA32_EFER.NXE = 1, instructions may be fetched from any user-mode address with a translation for which the XD flag is 0 in every paging-structure entry controlling the translation; instructions may not be fetched from any user-mode address with a translation for which the XD flag is 1 in any paging-structure entry controlling the translation.
 - If CR4.SMEP = 1, instructions may not be fetched from any user-mode address.
- For user-mode accesses:
 - Data reads.
Access rights depend on the mode of the linear address:
 - Data may be read from any user-mode address with a protection key for which read access is permitted. Section 4.6.2 explains how protection keys are associated with user-mode addresses and the accesses that are permitted for each protection key.
 - Data may not be read from any supervisor-mode address.
 - Data writes.
Access rights depend on the mode of the linear address:
 - Data may be written to any user-mode address with a translation for which the R/W flag is 1 in every paging-structure entry controlling the translation and with a protection key for which write access is permitted. Section 4.6.2 explains how protection keys are associated with user-mode addresses and the accesses that are permitted for each protection key.
 - Data may not be written to any supervisor-mode address.
 - Instruction fetches.
Access rights depend on the mode of the linear address, the paging mode, and the value of IA32_EFER.NXE:

- For 32-bit paging or if IA32_EFER.NXE = 0, instructions may be fetched from any user-mode address.
- For PAE paging or 4-level paging with IA32_EFER.NXE = 1, instructions may be fetched from any user-mode address with a translation for which the XD flag is 0 in every paging-structure entry controlling the translation.
- Instructions may not be fetched from any supervisor-mode address.

A processor may cache information from the paging-structure entries in TLBs and paging-structure caches (see Section 4.10). These structures may include information about access rights. The processor may enforce access rights based on the TLBs and paging-structure caches instead of on the paging structures in memory.

This fact implies that, if software modifies a paging-structure entry to change access rights, the processor might not use that change for a subsequent access to an affected linear address (see Section 4.10.4.3). See Section 4.10.4.2 for how software can ensure that the processor uses the modified access rights.

4.6.2 Protection Keys

The protection-key feature provides an additional mechanism by which 4-level paging controls access to user-mode addresses. When CR4.PKE = 1, every linear address is associated with the 4-bit **protection key** located in bits 62:59 of the paging-structure entry that mapped the page containing the linear address (see Section 4.5). The PKRU register determines, for each protection key, whether user-mode addresses with that protection key may be read or written.

If CR4.PKE = 0, or if 4-level paging is not active, the processor does not associate linear addresses with protection keys and does not use the access-control mechanism described in this section. In either of these cases, a reference in Section 4.6.1 to a user-mode address with a protection key should be considered a reference to any user-mode address.

The PKRU register (protection key rights for user pages) is a 32-bit register with the following format: for each i ($0 \leq i \leq 15$), PKRU[2*i*] is the **access-disable bit** for protection key i (AD i); PKRU[2*i*+1] is the **write-disable bit** for protection key i (WD i).

Software can use the RDPKRU and WRPKRU instructions with ECX = 0 to read and write PKRU. In addition, the PKRU register is XSAVE-managed state and can thus be read and written by instructions in the XSAVE feature set. See Chapter 13, "Managing State Using the XSAVE Feature Set," of *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 1* for more information about the XSAVE feature set.

How a linear address's protection key controls access to the address depends on the mode of the linear address:

- A linear address's protection key controls only data accesses to the address. It does not in any way affect instructions fetched from the address.
- The protection key of a supervisor-mode address is ignored and does not control data accesses to the address. Because of this, Section 4.6.1 does not refer to protection keys when specifying the access rights for supervisor-mode addresses.
- Use of the protection key i of a user-mode address depends on the value of the PKRU register:
 - If AD i = 1, no data accesses are permitted.
 - If WD i = 1, permission may be denied to certain data write accesses:
 - User-mode write accesses are not permitted.
 - Supervisor-mode write accesses are not permitted if CR0.WP = 1. (If CR0.WP = 0, WD i does not affect supervisor-mode write accesses to user-mode addresses with protection key i .)

4.7 PAGE-FAULT EXCEPTIONS

Accesses using linear addresses may cause **page-fault exceptions** (#PF; exception 14). An access to a linear address may cause a page-fault exception for either of two reasons: (1) there is no translation for the linear address; or (2) there is a translation for the linear address, but its access rights do not permit the access.

PAGING

As noted in Section 4.3, Section 4.4.2, and Section 4.5, there is no translation for a linear address if the translation process for that address would use a paging-structure entry in which the P flag (bit 0) is 0 or one that sets a reserved bit. If there is a translation for a linear address, its access rights are determined as specified in Section 4.6.

When Intel® Software Guard Extensions (Intel® SGX) are enabled, the processor may deliver exception 14 for reasons unrelated to paging. See Section 37.3, “Access-control Requirements” and Section 37.19, “Enclave Page Cache Map (EPCM)” in Chapter 37, “Enclave Access Control and Data Structures.” Such an exception is called an **SGX-induced page fault**. The processor uses the error code to distinguish SGX-induced page faults from ordinary page faults.

Figure 4-12 illustrates the error code that the processor provides on delivery of a page-fault exception. The following items explain how the bits in the error code describe the nature of the page-fault exception:

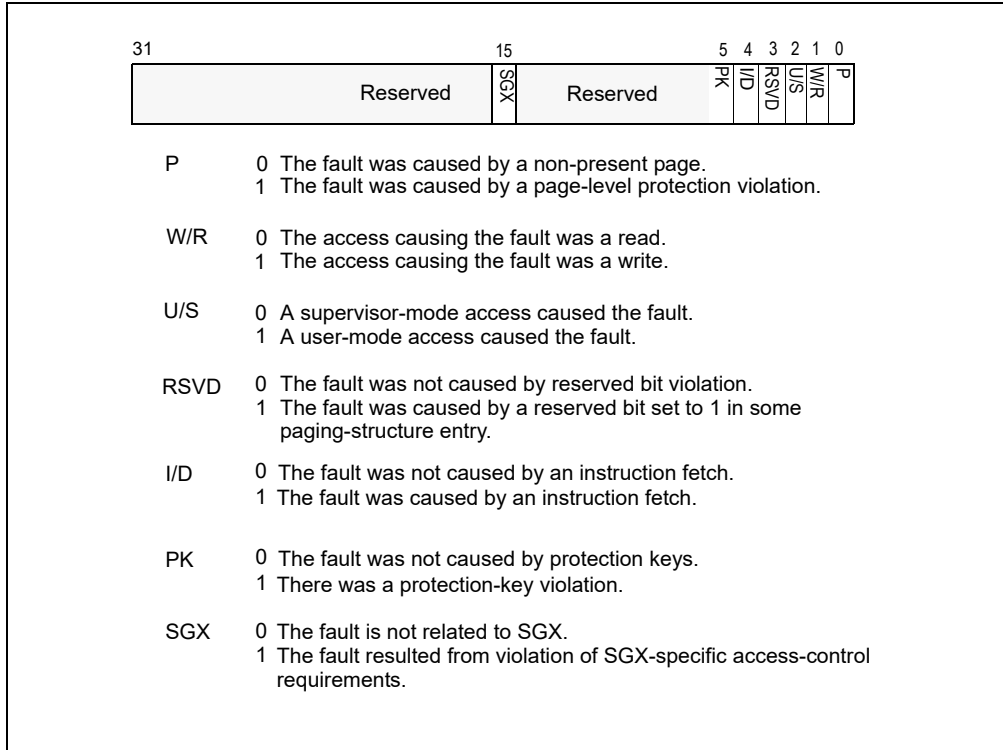


Figure 4-12. Page-Fault Error Code

- **P flag (bit 0).**
This flag is 0 if there is no translation for the linear address because the P flag was 0 in one of the paging-structure entries used to translate that address.
- **W/R (bit 1).**
If the access causing the page-fault exception was a write, this flag is 1; otherwise, it is 0. This flag describes the access causing the page-fault exception, not the access rights specified by paging.
- **U/S (bit 2).**
If a user-mode access caused the page-fault exception, this flag is 1; it is 0 if a supervisor-mode access did so. This flag describes the access causing the page-fault exception, not the access rights specified by paging. User-mode and supervisor-mode accesses are defined in Section 4.6.

- **RSVD flag (bit 3).**
This flag is 1 if there is no translation for the linear address because a reserved bit was set in one of the paging-structure entries used to translate that address. (Because reserved bits are not checked in a paging-structure entry whose P flag is 0, bit 3 of the error code can be set only if bit 0 is also set.¹)
Bits reserved in the paging-structure entries are reserved for future functionality. Software developers should be aware that such bits may be used in the future and that a paging-structure entry that causes a page-fault exception on one processor might not do so in the future.
- **I/D flag (bit 4).**
This flag is 1 if (1) the access causing the page-fault exception was an instruction fetch; and (2) either (a) CR4.SMEP = 1; or (b) both (i) CR4.PAE = 1 (either PAE paging or 4-level paging is in use); and (ii) IA32_EFER.NXE = 1. Otherwise, the flag is 0. This flag describes the access causing the page-fault exception, not the access rights specified by paging.
- **PK flag (bit 5).**
This flag is 1 if (1) IA32_EFER.LMA = CR4.PKE = 1; (2) the access causing the page-fault exception was a data access; (3) the linear address was a user-mode address with protection key *i*; and (5) the PKRU register (see Section 4.6.2) is such that either (a) AD_{*i*} = 1; or (b) the following all hold: (i) WD_{*i*} = 1; (ii) the access is a write access; and (iii) either CR0.WP = 1 or the access causing the page-fault exception was a user-mode access.
- **SGX flag (bit 15).**
This flag is 1 if the exception is unrelated to paging and resulted from violation of SGX-specific access-control requirements. Because such a violation can occur only if there is no ordinary page fault, this flag is set only if the P flag (bit 0) is 1 and the RSVD flag (bit 3) and the PK flag (bit 5) are both 0.

Page-fault exceptions occur only due to an attempt to use a linear address. Failures to load the PDPTTE registers with PAE paging (see Section 4.4.1) cause general-protection exceptions (#GP(0)) and not page-fault exceptions.

4.8 ACCESSED AND DIRTY FLAGS

For any paging-structure entry that is used during linear-address translation, bit 5 is the **accessed** flag.² For paging-structure entries that map a page (as opposed to referencing another paging structure), bit 6 is the **dirty** flag. These flags are provided for use by memory-management software to manage the transfer of pages and paging structures into and out of physical memory.

Whenever the processor uses a paging-structure entry as part of linear-address translation, it sets the accessed flag in that entry (if it is not already set).

Whenever there is a write to a linear address, the processor sets the dirty flag (if it is not already set) in the paging-structure entry that identifies the final physical address for the linear address (either a PTE or a paging-structure entry in which the PS flag is 1).

Memory-management software may clear these flags when a page or a paging structure is initially loaded into physical memory. These flags are “sticky,” meaning that, once set, the processor does not clear them; only software can clear them.

A processor may cache information from the paging-structure entries in TLBs and paging-structure caches (see Section 4.10). This fact implies that, if software changes an accessed flag or a dirty flag from 1 to 0, the processor might not set the corresponding bit in memory on a subsequent access using an affected linear address (see Section 4.10.4.3). See Section 4.10.4.2 for how software can ensure that these bits are updated as desired.

NOTE

The accesses used by the processor to set these flags may or may not be exposed to the processor’s self-modifying code detection logic. If the processor is executing code from the same

-
1. Some past processors had errata for some page faults that occur when there is no translation for the linear address because the P flag was 0 in one of the paging-structure entries used to translate that address. Due to these errata, some such page faults produced error codes that cleared bit 0 (P flag) and set bit 3 (RSVD flag).
 2. With PAE paging, the PDPTTEs are not used during linear-address translation but only to load the PDPTTE registers for some executions of the MOV CR instruction (see Section 4.4.1). For this reason, the PDPTTEs do not contain accessed flags with PAE paging.

memory area that is being used for the paging structures, the setting of these flags may or may not result in an immediate change to the executing code stream.

4.9 PAGING AND MEMORY TYPING

The **memory type** of a memory access refers to the type of caching used for that access. Chapter 11, “Memory Cache Control” provides many details regarding memory typing in the Intel-64 and IA-32 architectures. This section describes how paging contributes to the determination of memory typing.

The way in which paging contributes to memory typing depends on whether the processor supports the **Page Attribute Table (PAT)**; see Section 11.12).¹ Section 4.9.1 and Section 4.9.2 explain how paging contributes to memory typing depending on whether the PAT is supported.

4.9.1 Paging and Memory Typing When the PAT is Not Supported (Pentium Pro and Pentium II Processors)

NOTE

The PAT is supported on all processors that support 4-level paging. Thus, this section applies only to 32-bit paging and PAE paging.

If the PAT is not supported, paging contributes to memory typing in conjunction with the memory-type range registers (MTRRs) as specified in Table 11-6 in Section 11.5.2.1.

For any access to a physical address, the table combines the memory type specified for that physical address by the MTRRs with a PCD value and a PWT value. The latter two values are determined as follows:

- For an access to a PDE with 32-bit paging, the PCD and PWT values come from CR3.
- For an access to a PDE with PAE paging, the PCD and PWT values come from the relevant PDPTTE register.
- For an access to a PTE, the PCD and PWT values come from the relevant PDE.
- For an access to the physical address that is the translation of a linear address, the PCD and PWT values come from the relevant PTE (if the translation uses a 4-KByte page) or the relevant PDE (otherwise).
- With PAE paging, the UC memory type is used when loading the PDPTTEs (see Section 4.4.1).

4.9.2 Paging and Memory Typing When the PAT is Supported (Pentium III and More Recent Processor Families)

If the PAT is supported, paging contributes to memory typing in conjunction with the PAT and the memory-type range registers (MTRRs) as specified in Table 11-7 in Section 11.5.2.2.

The PAT is a 64-bit MSR (IA32_PAT; MSR index 277H) comprising eight (8) 8-bit entries (entry i comprises bits $8i+7:8i$ of the MSR).

1. The PAT is supported on Pentium III and more recent processor families. See Section 4.1.4 for how to determine whether the PAT is supported.

For any access to a physical address, the table combines the memory type specified for that physical address by the MTRRs with a memory type selected from the PAT. Table 11-11 in Section 11.12.3 specifies how a memory type is selected from the PAT. Specifically, it comes from entry i of the PAT, where i is defined as follows:

- For an access to an entry in a paging structure whose address is in CR3 (e.g., the PML4 table with 4-level paging):
 - For 4-level paging with $CR4.PCIDE = 1$, $i = 0$.
 - Otherwise, $i = 2*PCD + PWT$, where the PCD and PWT values come from CR3.
- For an access to a PDE with PAE paging, $i = 2*PCD + PWT$, where the PCD and PWT values come from the relevant PDPTTE register.
- For an access to a paging-structure entry X whose address is in another paging-structure entry Y, $i = 2*PCD + PWT$, where the PCD and PWT values come from Y.
- For an access to the physical address that is the translation of a linear address, $i = 4*PAT + 2*PCD + PWT$, where the PAT, PCD, and PWT values come from the relevant PTE (if the translation uses a 4-KByte page), the relevant PDE (if the translation uses a 2-MByte page or a 4-MByte page), or the relevant PDPTTE (if the translation uses a 1-GByte page).
- With PAE paging, the WB memory type is used when loading the PDPTTEs (see Section 4.4.1).¹

4.9.3 Caching Paging-Related Information about Memory Typing

A processor may cache information from the paging-structure entries in TLBs and paging-structure caches (see Section 4.10). These structures may include information about memory typing. The processor may use memory-typing information from the TLBs and paging-structure caches instead of from the paging structures in memory.

This fact implies that, if software modifies a paging-structure entry to change the memory-typing bits, the processor might not use that change for a subsequent translation using that entry or for access to an affected linear address. See Section 4.10.4.2 for how software can ensure that the processor uses the modified memory typing.

4.10 CACHING TRANSLATION INFORMATION

The Intel-64 and IA-32 architectures may accelerate the address-translation process by caching data from the paging structures on the processor. Because the processor does not ensure that the data that it caches are always consistent with the structures in memory, it is important for software developers to understand how and when the processor may cache such data. They should also understand what actions software can take to remove cached data that may be inconsistent and when it should do so. This section provides software developers information about the relevant processor operation.

Section 4.10.1 introduces process-context identifiers (PCIDs), which a logical processor may use to distinguish information cached for different linear-address spaces. Section 4.10.2 and Section 4.10.3 describe how the processor may cache information in translation lookaside buffers (TLBs) and paging-structure caches, respectively. Section 4.10.4 explains how software can remove inconsistent cached information by invalidating portions of the TLBs and paging-structure caches. Section 4.10.5 describes special considerations for multiprocessor systems.

4.10.1 Process-Context Identifiers (PCIDs)

Process-context identifiers (**PCIDs**) are a facility by which a logical processor may cache information for multiple linear-address spaces. The processor may retain cached information when software switches to a different linear-address space with a different PCID (e.g., by loading CR3; see Section 4.10.4.1 for details).

1. Some older IA-32 processors used the UC memory type when loading the PDPTTEs. Some processors may use the UC memory type if $CR0.CD = 1$ or if the MTRRs are disabled. These behaviors are model-specific and not architectural.

A PCID is a 12-bit identifier. Non-zero PCIDs are enabled by setting the PCIDE flag (bit 17) of CR4. If CR4.PCIDE = 0, the current PCID is always 000H; otherwise, the current PCID is the value of bits 11:0 of CR3. Not all processors allow CR4.PCIDE to be set to 1; see Section 4.1.4 for how to determine whether this is allowed.

The processor ensures that CR4.PCIDE can be 1 only in IA-32e mode (thus, 32-bit paging and PAE paging use only PCID 000H). In addition, software can change CR4.PCIDE from 0 to 1 only if CR3[11:0] = 000H. These requirements are enforced by the following limitations on the MOV CR instruction:

- MOV to CR4 causes a general-protection exception (#GP) if it would change CR4.PCIDE from 0 to 1 and either IA32_EFER.LMA = 0 or CR3[11:0] ≠ 000H.
- MOV to CR0 causes a general-protection exception if it would clear CR0.PG to 0 while CR4.PCIDE = 1.

When a logical processor creates entries in the TLBs (Section 4.10.2) and paging-structure caches (Section 4.10.3), it associates those entries with the current PCID. When using entries in the TLBs and paging-structure caches to translate a linear address, a logical processor uses only those entries associated with the current PCID (see Section 4.10.2.4 for an exception).

If CR4.PCIDE = 0, a logical processor does not cache information for any PCID other than 000H. This is because (1) if CR4.PCIDE = 0, the logical processor will associate any newly cached information with the current PCID, 000H; and (2) if MOV to CR4 clears CR4.PCIDE, all cached information is invalidated (see Section 4.10.4.1).

NOTE

In revisions of this manual that were produced when no processors allowed CR4.PCIDE to be set to 1, Section 4.10 discussed the caching of translation information without any reference to PCIDs. While the section now refers to PCIDs in its specification of this caching, this documentation change is not intended to imply any change to the behavior of processors that do not allow CR4.PCIDE to be set to 1.

4.10.2 Translation Lookaside Buffers (TLBs)

A processor may cache information about the translation of linear addresses in translation lookaside buffers (TLBs). In general, TLBs contain entries that map page numbers to page frames; these terms are defined in Section 4.10.2.1. Section 4.10.2.2 describes how information may be cached in TLBs, and Section 4.10.2.3 gives details of TLB usage. Section 4.10.2.4 explains the global-page feature, which allows software to indicate that certain translations should receive special treatment when cached in the TLBs.

4.10.2.1 Page Numbers, Page Frames, and Page Offsets

Section 4.3, Section 4.4.2, and Section 4.5 give details of how the different paging modes translate linear addresses to physical addresses. Specifically, the upper bits of a linear address (called the **page number**) determine the upper bits of the physical address (called the **page frame**); the lower bits of the linear address (called the **page offset**) determine the lower bits of the physical address. The boundary between the page number and the page offset is determined by the **page size**. Specifically:

- 32-bit paging:
 - If the translation does not use a PTE (because CR4.PSE = 1 and the PS flag is 1 in the PDE used), the page size is 4 MBytes and the page number comprises bits 31:22 of the linear address.
 - If the translation does use a PTE, the page size is 4 KBytes and the page number comprises bits 31:12 of the linear address.
- PAE paging:
 - If the translation does not use a PTE (because the PS flag is 1 in the PDE used), the page size is 2 MBytes and the page number comprises bits 31:21 of the linear address.
 - If the translation does use a PTE, the page size is 4 KBytes and the page number comprises bits 31:12 of the linear address.

- 4-level paging:
 - If the translation does not use a PDE (because the PS flag is 1 in the PDPTE used), the page size is 1 GByte and the page number comprises bits 47:30 of the linear address.
 - If the translation does use a PDE but does not use a PTE (because the PS flag is 1 in the PDE used), the page size is 2 MBytes and the page number comprises bits 47:21 of the linear address.
 - If the translation does use a PTE, the page size is 4 KBytes and the page number comprises bits 47:12 of the linear address.

4.10.2.2 Caching Translations in TLBs

The processor may accelerate the paging process by caching individual translations in **translation lookaside buffers (TLBs)**. Each entry in a TLB is an individual translation. Each translation is referenced by a page number. It contains the following information from the paging-structure entries used to translate linear addresses with the page number:

- The physical address corresponding to the page number (the page frame).
- The access rights from the paging-structure entries used to translate linear addresses with the page number (see Section 4.6):
 - The logical-AND of the R/W flags.
 - The logical-AND of the U/S flags.
 - The logical-OR of the XD flags (necessary only if IA32_EFER.NXE = 1).
 - The protection key (necessary only with 4-level paging and CR4.PKE = 1).
- Attributes from a paging-structure entry that identifies the final page frame for the page number (either a PTE or a paging-structure entry in which the PS flag is 1):
 - The dirty flag (see Section 4.8).
 - The memory type (see Section 4.9).

(TLB entries may contain other information as well. A processor may implement multiple TLBs, and some of these may be for special purposes, e.g., only for instruction fetches. Such special-purpose TLBs may not contain some of this information if it is not necessary. For example, a TLB used only for instruction fetches need not contain information about the R/W and dirty flags.)

As noted in Section 4.10.1, any TLB entries created by a logical processor are associated with the current PCID.

Processors need not implement any TLBs. Processors that do implement TLBs may invalidate any TLB entry at any time. Software should not rely on the existence of TLBs or on the retention of TLB entries.

4.10.2.3 Details of TLB Use

Because the TLBs cache entries only for linear addresses with translations, there can be a TLB entry for a page number only if the P flag is 1 and the reserved bits are 0 in each of the paging-structure entries used to translate that page number. In addition, the processor does not cache a translation for a page number unless the accessed flag is 1 in each of the paging-structure entries used during translation; before caching a translation, the processor sets any of these accessed flags that is not already 1.

The processor may cache translations required for prefetches and for accesses that are a result of speculative execution that would never actually occur in the executed code path.

If the page number of a linear address corresponds to a TLB entry associated with the current PCID, the processor may use that TLB entry to determine the page frame, access rights, and other attributes for accesses to that linear address. In this case, the processor may not actually consult the paging structures in memory. The processor may retain a TLB entry unmodified even if software subsequently modifies the relevant paging-structure entries in memory. See Section 4.10.4.2 for how software can ensure that the processor uses the modified paging-structure entries.

If the paging structures specify a translation using a page larger than 4 KBytes, some processors may cache multiple smaller-page TLB entries for that translation. Each such TLB entry would be associated with a page

number corresponding to the smaller page size (e.g., bits 47:12 of a linear address with 4-level paging), even though part of that page number (e.g., bits 20:12) is part of the offset with respect to the page specified by the paging structures. The upper bits of the physical address in such a TLB entry are derived from the physical address in the PDE used to create the translation, while the lower bits come from the linear address of the access for which the translation is created. There is no way for software to be aware that multiple translations for smaller pages have been used for a large page. For example, an execution of INVLPG for a linear address on such a page invalidates any and all smaller-page TLB entries for the translation of any linear address on that page.

If software modifies the paging structures so that the page size used for a 4-KByte range of linear addresses changes, the TLBs may subsequently contain multiple translations for the address range (one for each page size). A reference to a linear address in the address range may use any of these translations. Which translation is used may vary from one execution to another, and the choice may be implementation-specific.

4.10.2.4 Global Pages

The Intel-64 and IA-32 architectures also allow for **global pages** when the PGE flag (bit 7) is 1 in CR4. If the G flag (bit 8) is 1 in a paging-structure entry that maps a page (either a PTE or a paging-structure entry in which the PS flag is 1), any TLB entry cached for a linear address using that paging-structure entry is considered to be **global**. Because the G flag is used only in paging-structure entries that map a page, and because information from such entries is not cached in the paging-structure caches, the global-page feature does not affect the behavior of the paging-structure caches.

A logical processor may use a global TLB entry to translate a linear address, even if the TLB entry is associated with a PCID different from the current PCID.

4.10.3 Paging-Structure Caches

In addition to the TLBs, a processor may cache other information about the paging structures in memory.

4.10.3.1 Caches for Paging Structures

A processor may support any or all of the following paging-structure caches:

- **PML4 cache** (4-level paging only). Each PML4-cache entry is referenced by a 9-bit value and is used for linear addresses for which bits 47:39 have that value. The entry contains information from the PML4E used to translate such linear addresses:
 - The physical address from the PML4E (the address of the page-directory-pointer table).
 - The value of the R/W flag of the PML4E.
 - The value of the U/S flag of the PML4E.
 - The value of the XD flag of the PML4E.
 - The values of the PCD and PWT flags of the PML4E.

The following items detail how a processor may use the PML4 cache:

- If the processor has a PML4-cache entry for a linear address, it may use that entry when translating the linear address (instead of the PML4E in memory).
- The processor does not create a PML4-cache entry unless the P flag is 1 and all reserved bits are 0 in the PML4E in memory.
- The processor does not create a PML4-cache entry unless the accessed flag is 1 in the PML4E in memory; before caching a translation, the processor sets the accessed flag if it is not already 1.
- The processor may create a PML4-cache entry even if there are no translations for any linear address that might use that entry (e.g., because the P flags are 0 in all entries in the referenced page-directory-pointer table).
- If the processor creates a PML4-cache entry, the processor may retain it unmodified even if software subsequently modifies the corresponding PML4E in memory.

- **PDPTÉ cache** (4-level paging only).¹ Each PDPTÉ-cache entry is referenced by an 18-bit value and is used for linear addresses for which bits 47:30 have that value. The entry contains information from the PML4E and PDPTÉ used to translate such linear addresses:

- The physical address from the PDPTÉ (the address of the page directory). (No PDPTÉ-cache entry is created for a PDPTÉ that maps a 1-GByte page.)
- The logical-AND of the R/W flags in the PML4E and the PDPTÉ.
- The logical-AND of the U/S flags in the PML4E and the PDPTÉ.
- The logical-OR of the XD flags in the PML4E and the PDPTÉ.
- The values of the PCD and PWT flags of the PDPTÉ.

The following items detail how a processor may use the PDPTÉ cache:

- If the processor has a PDPTÉ-cache entry for a linear address, it may use that entry when translating the linear address (instead of the PML4E and the PDPTÉ in memory).
- The processor does not create a PDPTÉ-cache entry unless the P flag is 1, the PS flag is 0, and the reserved bits are 0 in the PML4E and the PDPTÉ in memory.
- The processor does not create a PDPTÉ-cache entry unless the accessed flags are 1 in the PML4E and the PDPTÉ in memory; before caching a translation, the processor sets any accessed flags that are not already 1.
- The processor may create a PDPTÉ-cache entry even if there are no translations for any linear address that might use that entry.
- If the processor creates a PDPTÉ-cache entry, the processor may retain it unmodified even if software subsequently modifies the corresponding PML4E or PDPTÉ in memory.

- **PDE cache.** The use of the PDE cache depends on the paging mode:
 - For 32-bit paging, each PDE-cache entry is referenced by a 10-bit value and is used for linear addresses for which bits 31:22 have that value.
 - For PAE paging, each PDE-cache entry is referenced by an 11-bit value and is used for linear addresses for which bits 31:21 have that value.
 - For 4-level paging, each PDE-cache entry is referenced by a 27-bit value and is used for linear addresses for which bits 47:21 have that value.

A PDE-cache entry contains information from the PML4E, PDPTÉ, and PDE used to translate the relevant linear addresses (for 32-bit paging and PAE paging, only the PDE applies):

- The physical address from the PDE (the address of the page table). (No PDE-cache entry is created for a PDE that maps a page.)
- The logical-AND of the R/W flags in the PML4E, PDPTÉ, and PDE.
- The logical-AND of the U/S flags in the PML4E, PDPTÉ, and PDE.
- The logical-OR of the XD flags in the PML4E, PDPTÉ, and PDE.
- The values of the PCD and PWT flags of the PDE.

1. With PAE paging, the PDPTÉs are stored in internal, non-architectural registers. The operation of these registers is described in Section 4.4.1 and differs from that described here.

The following items detail how a processor may use the PDE cache (references below to PML4Es and PDPTes apply only to 4-level paging):

- If the processor has a PDE-cache entry for a linear address, it may use that entry when translating the linear address (instead of the PML4E, the PDPTE, and the PDE in memory).
- The processor does not create a PDE-cache entry unless the P flag is 1, the PS flag is 0, and the reserved bits are 0 in the PML4E, the PDPTE, and the PDE in memory.
- The processor does not create a PDE-cache entry unless the accessed flag is 1 in the PML4E, the PDPTE, and the PDE in memory; before caching a translation, the processor sets any accessed flags that are not already 1.
- The processor may create a PDE-cache entry even if there are no translations for any linear address that might use that entry.
- If the processor creates a PDE-cache entry, the processor may retain it unmodified even if software subsequently modifies the corresponding PML4E, the PDPTE, or the PDE in memory.

Information from a paging-structure entry can be included in entries in the paging-structure caches for other paging-structure entries referenced by the original entry. For example, if the R/W flag is 0 in a PML4E, then the R/W flag will be 0 in any PDPTE-cache entry for a PDPTE from the page-directory-pointer table referenced by that PML4E. This is because the R/W flag of each such PDPTE-cache entry is the logical-AND of the R/W flags in the appropriate PML4E and PDPTE.

The paging-structure caches contain information only from paging-structure entries that reference other paging structures (and not those that map pages). Because the G flag is not used in such paging-structure entries, the global-page feature does not affect the behavior of the paging-structure caches.

The processor may create entries in paging-structure caches for translations required for prefetches and for accesses that are a result of speculative execution that would never actually occur in the executed code path.

As noted in Section 4.10.1, any entries created in paging-structure caches by a logical processor are associated with the current PCID.

A processor may or may not implement any of the paging-structure caches. Software should rely on neither their presence nor their absence. The processor may invalidate entries in these caches at any time. Because the processor may create the cache entries at the time of translation and not update them following subsequent modifications to the paging structures in memory, software should take care to invalidate the cache entries appropriately when causing such modifications. The invalidation of TLBs and the paging-structure caches is described in Section 4.10.4.

4.10.3.2 Using the Paging-Structure Caches to Translate Linear Addresses

When a linear address is accessed, the processor uses a procedure such as the following to determine the physical address to which it translates and whether the access should be allowed:

- If the processor finds a TLB entry that is for the page number of the linear address and that is associated with the current PCID (or which is global), it may use the physical address, access rights, and other attributes from that entry.
- If the processor does not find a relevant TLB entry, it may use the upper bits of the linear address to select an entry from the PDE cache that is associated with the current PCID (Section 4.10.3.1 indicates which bits are used in each paging mode). It can then use that entry to complete the translation process (locating a PTE, etc.) as if it had traversed the PDE (and, for 4-level paging, the PDPTE and PML4E) corresponding to the PDE-cache entry.
- The following items apply when 4-level paging is used:
 - If the processor does not find a relevant TLB entry or a relevant PDE-cache entry, it may use bits 47:30 of the linear address to select an entry from the PDPTE cache that is associated with the current PCID. It can then use that entry to complete the translation process (locating a PDE, etc.) as if it had traversed the PDPTE and the PML4E corresponding to the PDPTE-cache entry.
 - If the processor does not find a relevant TLB entry, a relevant PDE-cache entry, or a relevant PDPTE-cache entry, it may use bits 47:39 of the linear address to select an entry from the PML4 cache that is associated

with the current PCID. It can then use that entry to complete the translation process (locating a PDPTE, etc.) as if it had traversed the corresponding PML4E.

(Any of the above steps would be skipped if the processor does not support the cache in question.)

If the processor does not find a TLB or paging-structure-cache entry for the linear address, it uses the linear address to traverse the entire paging-structure hierarchy, as described in Section 4.3, Section 4.4.2, and Section 4.5.

4.10.3.3 Multiple Cached Entries for a Single Paging-Structure Entry

The paging-structure caches and TLBs may contain multiple entries associated with a single PCID and with information derived from a single paging-structure entry. The following items give some examples for 4-level paging:

- Suppose that two PML4Es contain the same physical address and thus reference the same page-directory-pointer table. Any PDPTE in that table may result in two PDPTE-cache entries, each associated with a different set of linear addresses. Specifically, suppose that the n_1^{th} and n_2^{th} entries in the PML4 table contain the same physical address. This implies that the physical address in the m^{th} PDPTE in the page-directory-pointer table would appear in the PDPTE-cache entries associated with both p_1 and p_2 , where $(p_1 \gg 9) = n_1$, $(p_2 \gg 9) = n_2$, and $(p_1 \& 1\text{FFH}) = (p_2 \& 1\text{FFH}) = m$. This is because both PDPTE-cache entries use the same PDPTE, one resulting from a reference from the n_1^{th} PML4E and one from the n_2^{th} PML4E.
- Suppose that the first PML4E (i.e., the one in position 0) contains the physical address X in CR3 (the physical address of the PML4 table). This implies the following:
 - Any PML4-cache entry associated with linear addresses with 0 in bits 47:39 contains address X.
 - Any PDPTE-cache entry associated with linear addresses with 0 in bits 47:30 contains address X. This is because the translation for a linear address for which the value of bits 47:30 is 0 uses the value of bits 47:39 (0) to locate a page-directory-pointer table at address X (the address of the PML4 table). It then uses the value of bits 38:30 (also 0) to find address X again and to store that address in the PDPTE-cache entry.
 - Any PDE-cache entry associated with linear addresses with 0 in bits 47:21 contains address X for similar reasons.
 - Any TLB entry for page number 0 (associated with linear addresses with 0 in bits 47:12) translates to page frame $X \gg 12$ for similar reasons.

The same PML4E contributes its address X to all these cache entries because the self-referencing nature of the entry causes it to be used as a PML4E, a PDPTE, a PDE, and a PTE.

4.10.4 Invalidation of TLBs and Paging-Structure Caches

As noted in Section 4.10.2 and Section 4.10.3, the processor may create entries in the TLBs and the paging-structure caches when linear addresses are translated, and it may retain these entries even after the paging structures used to create them have been modified. To ensure that linear-address translation uses the modified paging structures, software should take action to invalidate any cached entries that may contain information that has since been modified.

4.10.4.1 Operations that Invalidate TLBs and Paging-Structure Caches

The following instructions invalidate entries in the TLBs and the paging-structure caches:

- INVLPG. This instruction takes a single operand, which is a linear address. The instruction invalidates any TLB entries that are for a page number corresponding to the linear address and that are associated with the current PCID. It also invalidates any global TLB entries with that page number, regardless of PCID (see Section 4.10.2.4).¹ INVLPG also invalidates all entries in all paging-structure caches associated with the current PCID, regardless of the linear addresses to which they correspond.

1. If the paging structures map the linear address using a page larger than 4 KBytes and there are multiple TLB entries for that page (see Section 4.10.2.3), the instruction invalidates all of them.

- **INVPCID.** The operation of this instruction is based on instruction operands, called the INVPCID type and the INVPCID descriptor. Four INVPCID types are currently defined:
 - Individual-address. If the INVPCID type is 0, the logical processor invalidates mappings—except global translations—associated with the PCID specified in the INVPCID descriptor and that would be used to translate the linear address specified in the INVPCID descriptor.¹ (The instruction may also invalidate global translations, as well as mappings associated with other PCIDs and for other linear addresses.)
 - Single-context. If the INVPCID type is 1, the logical processor invalidates all mappings—except global translations—associated with the PCID specified in the INVPCID descriptor. (The instruction may also invalidate global translations, as well as mappings associated with other PCIDs.)
 - All-context, including globals. If the INVPCID type is 2, the logical processor invalidates mappings—including global translations—associated with all PCIDs.
 - All-context. If the INVPCID type is 3, the logical processor invalidates mappings—except global translations—associated with all PCIDs. (The instruction may also invalidate global translations.)

See Chapter 3 of the *Intel 64 and IA-32 Architecture Software Developer's Manual, Volume 2A* for details of the INVPCID instruction.

- **MOV to CR0.** The instruction invalidates all TLB entries (including global entries) and all entries in all paging-structure caches (for all PCIDs) if it changes the value of CR0.PG from 1 to 0.
- **MOV to CR3.** The behavior of the instruction depends on the value of CR4.PCIDE:
 - If CR4.PCIDE = 0, the instruction invalidates all TLB entries associated with PCID 000H except those for global pages. It also invalidates all entries in all paging-structure caches associated with PCID 000H.
 - If CR4.PCIDE = 1 and bit 63 of the instruction's source operand is 0, the instruction invalidates all TLB entries associated with the PCID specified in bits 11:0 of the instruction's source operand except those for global pages. It also invalidates all entries in all paging-structure caches associated with that PCID. It is not required to invalidate entries in the TLBs and paging-structure caches that are associated with other PCIDs.
 - If CR4.PCIDE = 1 and bit 63 of the instruction's source operand is 1, the instruction is not required to invalidate any TLB entries or entries in paging-structure caches.
- **MOV to CR4.** The behavior of the instruction depends on the bits being modified:
 - The instruction invalidates all TLB entries (including global entries) and all entries in all paging-structure caches (for all PCIDs) if (1) it changes the value of CR4.PGE;² or (2) it changes the value of the CR4.PCIDE from 1 to 0.
 - The instruction invalidates all TLB entries and all entries in all paging-structure caches for the current PCID if (1) it changes the value of CR4.PAE; or (2) it changes the value of CR4.SMEP from 0 to 1.
- **Task switch.** If a task switch changes the value of CR3, it invalidates all TLB entries associated with PCID 000H except those for global pages. It also invalidates all entries in all paging-structure caches associated with PCID 000H.³
- **VMX transitions.** See Section 4.11.1.

The processor is always free to invalidate additional entries in the TLBs and paging-structure caches. The following are some examples:

- **INVLPG** may invalidate TLB entries for pages other than the one corresponding to its linear-address operand. It may invalidate TLB entries and paging-structure-cache entries associated with PCIDs other than the current PCID.

1. If the paging structures map the linear address using a page larger than 4 KBytes and there are multiple TLB entries for that page (see Section 4.10.2.3), the instruction invalidates all of them.

2. If CR4.PGE is changing from 0 to 1, there were no global TLB entries before the execution; if CR4.PGE is changing from 1 to 0, there will be no global TLB entries after the execution.

3. Task switches do not occur in IA-32e mode and thus cannot occur with 4-level paging. Since CR4.PCIDE can be set only with 4-level paging, task switches occur only with CR4.PCIDE = 0.

- INVPID may invalidate TLB entries for pages other than the one corresponding to the specified linear address. It may invalidate TLB entries and paging-structure-cache entries associated with PCIDs other than the specified PCID.
- MOV to CR0 may invalidate TLB entries even if CR0.PG is not changing. For example, this may occur if either CR0.CD or CR0.NW is modified.
- MOV to CR3 may invalidate TLB entries for global pages. If CR4.PCIDE = 1 and bit 63 of the instruction's source operand is 0, it may invalidate TLB entries and entries in the paging-structure caches associated with PCIDs other than the PCID it is establishing. It may invalidate entries if CR4.PCIDE = 1 and bit 63 of the instruction's source operand is 1.
- MOV to CR4 may invalidate TLB entries when changing CR4.PSE or when changing CR4.SMEP from 1 to 0.
- On a processor supporting Hyper-Threading Technology, invalidations performed on one logical processor may invalidate entries in the TLBs and paging-structure caches used by other logical processors.

(Other instructions and operations may invalidate entries in the TLBs and the paging-structure caches, but the instructions identified above are recommended.)

In addition to the instructions identified above, page faults invalidate entries in the TLBs and paging-structure caches. In particular, a page-fault exception resulting from an attempt to use a linear address will invalidate any TLB entries that are for a page number corresponding to that linear address and that are associated with the current PCID. It also invalidates all entries in the paging-structure caches that would be used for that linear address and that are associated with the current PCID.¹ These invalidations ensure that the page-fault exception will not recur (if the faulting instruction is re-executed) if it would not be caused by the contents of the paging structures in memory (and if, therefore, it resulted from cached entries that were not invalidated after the paging structures were modified in memory).

As noted in Section 4.10.2, some processors may choose to cache multiple smaller-page TLB entries for a translation specified by the paging structures to use a page larger than 4 KBytes. There is no way for software to be aware that multiple translations for smaller pages have been used for a large page. The INVLPG instruction and page faults provide the same assurances that they provide when a single TLB entry is used: they invalidate all TLB entries corresponding to the translation specified by the paging structures.

4.10.4.2 Recommended Invalidation

The following items provide some recommendations regarding when software should perform invalidations:

- If software modifies a paging-structure entry that maps a page (rather than referencing another paging structure), it should execute INVLPG for any linear address with a page number whose translation uses that paging-structure entry.²
(If the paging-structure entry may be used in the translation of different page numbers — see Section 4.10.3.3 — software should execute INVLPG for linear addresses with each of those page numbers; alternatively, it could use MOV to CR3 or MOV to CR4.)
- If software modifies a paging-structure entry that references another paging structure, it may use one of the following approaches depending upon the types and number of translations controlled by the modified entry:
 - Execute INVLPG for linear addresses with each of the page numbers with translations that would use the entry. However, if no page numbers that would use the entry have translations (e.g., because the P flags are 0 in all entries in the paging structure referenced by the modified entry), it remains necessary to execute INVLPG at least once.
 - Execute MOV to CR3 if the modified entry controls no global pages.
 - Execute MOV to CR4 to modify CR4.PGE.
- If CR4.PCIDE = 1 and software modifies a paging-structure entry that does not map a page or in which the G flag (bit 8) is 0, additional steps are required if the entry may be used for PCIDs other than the current one. Any one of the following suffices:

1. Unlike INVLPG, page faults need not invalidate **all** entries in the paging-structure caches, only those that would be used to translate the faulting linear address.

2. One execution of INVLPG is sufficient even for a page with size greater than 4 KBytes.

- Execute MOV to CR4 to modify CR4.PGE, either immediately or before again using any of the affected PCIDs. For example, software could use different (previously unused) PCIDs for the processes that used the affected PCIDs.
- For each affected PCID, execute MOV to CR3 to make that PCID current (and to load the address of the appropriate PML4 table). If the modified entry controls no global pages and bit 63 of the source operand to MOV to CR3 was 0, no further steps are required. Otherwise, execute INVLPG for linear addresses with each of the page numbers with translations that would use the entry; if no page numbers that would use the entry have translations, execute INVLPG at least once.
- If software using PAE paging modifies a PDPTTE, it should reload CR3 with the register's current value to ensure that the modified PDPTTE is loaded into the corresponding PDPTTE register (see Section 4.4.1).
- If the nature of the paging structures is such that a single entry may be used for multiple purposes (see Section 4.10.3.3), software should perform invalidations for all of these purposes. For example, if a single entry might serve as both a PDE and PTE, it may be necessary to execute INVLPG with two (or more) linear addresses, one that uses the entry as a PDE and one that uses it as a PTE. (Alternatively, software could use MOV to CR3 or MOV to CR4.)
- As noted in Section 4.10.2, the TLBs may subsequently contain multiple translations for the address range if software modifies the paging structures so that the page size used for a 4-KByte range of linear addresses changes. A reference to a linear address in the address range may use any of these translations.
Software wishing to prevent this uncertainty should not write to a paging-structure entry in a way that would change, for any linear address, both the page size and either the page frame, access rights, or other attributes. It can instead use the following algorithm: first clear the P flag in the relevant paging-structure entry (e.g., PDE); then invalidate any translations for the affected linear addresses (see above); and then modify the relevant paging-structure entry to set the P flag and establish modified translation(s) for the new page size.
- Software should clear bit 63 of the source operand to a MOV to CR3 instruction that establishes a PCID that had been used earlier for a different linear-address space (e.g., with a different value in bits 51:12 of CR3). This ensures invalidation of any information that may have been cached for the previous linear-address space.
This assumes that both linear-address spaces use the same global pages and that it is thus not necessary to invalidate any global TLB entries. If that is not the case, software should invalidate those entries by executing MOV to CR4 to modify CR4.PGE.

4.10.4.3 Optional Invalidation

The following items describe cases in which software may choose not to invalidate and the potential consequences of that choice:

- If a paging-structure entry is modified to change the P flag from 0 to 1, no invalidation is necessary. This is because no TLB entry or paging-structure cache entry is created with information from a paging-structure entry in which the P flag is 0.¹
- If a paging-structure entry is modified to change the accessed flag from 0 to 1, no invalidation is necessary (assuming that an invalidation was performed the last time the accessed flag was changed from 1 to 0). This is because no TLB entry or paging-structure cache entry is created with information from a paging-structure entry in which the accessed flag is 0.
- If a paging-structure entry is modified to change the R/W flag from 0 to 1, failure to perform an invalidation may result in a "spurious" page-fault exception (e.g., in response to an attempted write access) but no other adverse behavior. Such an exception will occur at most once for each affected linear address (see Section 4.10.4.1).
- If CR4.SMEP = 0 and a paging-structure entry is modified to change the U/S flag from 0 to 1, failure to perform an invalidation may result in a "spurious" page-fault exception (e.g., in response to an attempted user-mode access) but no other adverse behavior. Such an exception will occur at most once for each affected linear address (see Section 4.10.4.1).
- If a paging-structure entry is modified to change the XD flag from 1 to 0, failure to perform an invalidation may result in a "spurious" page-fault exception (e.g., in response to an attempted instruction fetch) but no other

1. If it is also the case that no invalidation was performed the last time the P flag was changed from 1 to 0, the processor may use a TLB entry or paging-structure cache entry that was created when the P flag had earlier been 1.

adverse behavior. Such an exception will occur at most once for each affected linear address (see Section 4.10.4.1).

- If a paging-structure entry is modified to change the accessed flag from 1 to 0, failure to perform an invalidation may result in the processor not setting that bit in response to a subsequent access to a linear address whose translation uses the entry. Software cannot interpret the bit being clear as an indication that such an access has not occurred.
- If software modifies a paging-structure entry that identifies the final physical address for a linear address (either a PTE or a paging-structure entry in which the PS flag is 1) to change the dirty flag from 1 to 0, failure to perform an invalidation may result in the processor not setting that bit in response to a subsequent write to a linear address whose translation uses the entry. Software cannot interpret the bit being clear as an indication that such a write has not occurred.
- The read of a paging-structure entry in translating an address being used to fetch an instruction may appear to execute before an earlier write to that paging-structure entry if there is no serializing instruction between the write and the instruction fetch. Note that the invalidating instructions identified in Section 4.10.4.1 are all serializing instructions.
- Section 4.10.3.3 describes situations in which a single paging-structure entry may contain information cached in multiple entries in the paging-structure caches. Because all entries in these caches are invalidated by any execution of INVLPG, it is not necessary to follow the modification of such a paging-structure entry by executing INVLPG multiple times solely for the purpose of invalidating these multiple cached entries. (It may be necessary to do so to invalidate multiple TLB entries.)

4.10.4.4 Delayed Invalidation

Required invalidations may be delayed under some circumstances. Software developers should understand that, between the modification of a paging-structure entry and execution of the invalidation instruction recommended in Section 4.10.4.2, the processor may use translations based on either the old value or the new value of the paging-structure entry. The following items describe some of the potential consequences of delayed invalidation:

- If a paging-structure entry is modified to change the P flag from 1 to 0, an access to a linear address whose translation is controlled by this entry may or may not cause a page-fault exception.
- If a paging-structure entry is modified to change the R/W flag from 0 to 1, write accesses to linear addresses whose translation is controlled by this entry may or may not cause a page-fault exception.
- If a paging-structure entry is modified to change the U/S flag from 0 to 1, user-mode accesses to linear addresses whose translation is controlled by this entry may or may not cause a page-fault exception.
- If a paging-structure entry is modified to change the XD flag from 1 to 0, instruction fetches from linear addresses whose translation is controlled by this entry may or may not cause a page-fault exception.

As noted in Section 8.1.1, an x87 instruction or an SSE instruction that accesses data larger than a quadword may be implemented using multiple memory accesses. If such an instruction stores to memory and invalidation has been delayed, some of the accesses may complete (writing to memory) while another causes a page-fault exception.¹ In this case, the effects of the completed accesses may be visible to software even though the overall instruction caused a fault.

In some cases, the consequences of delayed invalidation may not affect software adversely. For example, when freeing a portion of the linear-address space (by marking paging-structure entries “not present”), invalidation using INVLPG may be delayed if software does not re-allocate that portion of the linear-address space or the memory that had been associated with it. However, because of speculative execution (or errant software), there may be accesses to the freed portion of the linear-address space before the invalidations occur. In this case, the following can happen:

- Reads can occur to the freed portion of the linear-address space. Therefore, invalidation should not be delayed for an address range that has read side effects.
- The processor may retain entries in the TLBs and paging-structure caches for an extended period of time. Software should not assume that the processor will not use entries associated with a linear address simply because time has passed.

1. If the accesses are to different pages, this may occur even if invalidation has not been delayed.

- As noted in Section 4.10.3.1, the processor may create an entry in a paging-structure cache even if there are no translations for any linear address that might use that entry. Thus, if software has marked “not present” all entries in a page table, the processor may subsequently create a PDE-cache entry for the PDE that references that page table (assuming that the PDE itself is marked “present”).
- If software attempts to write to the freed portion of the linear-address space, the processor might not generate a page fault. (Such an attempt would likely be the result of a software error.) For that reason, the page frames previously associated with the freed portion of the linear-address space should not be reallocated for another purpose until the appropriate invalidations have been performed.

4.10.5 Propagation of Paging-Structure Changes to Multiple Processors

As noted in Section 4.10.4, software that modifies a paging-structure entry may need to invalidate entries in the TLBs and paging-structure caches that were derived from the modified entry before it was modified. In a system containing more than one logical processor, software must account for the fact that there may be entries in the TLBs and paging-structure caches of logical processors other than the one used to modify the paging-structure entry. The process of propagating the changes to a paging-structure entry is commonly referred to as “TLB shutdown.”

TLB shutdown can be done using memory-based semaphores and/or interprocessor interrupts (IPI). The following items describe a simple but inefficient example of a TLB shutdown algorithm for processors supporting the Intel-64 and IA-32 architectures:

1. Begin barrier: Stop all but one logical processor; that is, cause all but one to execute the HLT instruction or to enter a spin loop.
2. Allow the active logical processor to change the necessary paging-structure entries.
3. Allow all logical processors to perform invalidations appropriate to the modifications to the paging-structure entries.
4. Allow all logical processors to resume normal operation.

Alternative, performance-optimized, TLB shutdown algorithms may be developed; however, software developers must take care to ensure that the following conditions are met:

- All logical processors that are using the paging structures that are being modified must participate and perform appropriate invalidations after the modifications are made.
- If the modifications to the paging-structure entries are made before the barrier or if there is no barrier, the operating system must ensure one of the following: (1) that the affected linear-address range is not used between the time of modification and the time of invalidation; or (2) that it is prepared to deal with the consequences of the affected linear-address range being used during that period. For example, if the operating system does not allow pages being freed to be reallocated for another purpose until after the required invalidations, writes to those pages by errant software will not unexpectedly modify memory that is in use.
- Software must be prepared to deal with reads, instruction fetches, and prefetch requests to the affected linear-address range that are a result of speculative execution that would never actually occur in the executed code path.

When multiple logical processors are using the same linear-address space at the same time, they must coordinate before any request to modify the paging-structure entries that control that linear-address space. In these cases, the barrier in the TLB shutdown routine may not be required. For example, when freeing a range of linear addresses, some other mechanism can assure no logical processor is using that range before the request to free it is made. In this case, a logical processor freeing the range can clear the P flags in the PTEs associated with the range, free the physical page frames associated with the range, and then signal the other logical processors using that linear-address space to perform the necessary invalidations. All the affected logical processors must complete their invalidations before the linear-address range and the physical page frames previously associated with that range can be reallocated.

4.11 INTERACTIONS WITH VIRTUAL-MACHINE EXTENSIONS (VMX)

The architecture for virtual-machine extensions (VMX) includes features that interact with paging. Section 4.11.1 discusses ways in which VMX-specific control transfers, called VMX transitions specially affect paging. Section 4.11.2 gives an overview of VMX features specifically designed to support address translation.

4.11.1 VMX Transitions

The VMX architecture defines two control transfers called **VM entries** and **VM exits**; collectively, these are called **VMX transitions**. VM entries and VM exits are described in detail in Chapter 26 and Chapter 27, respectively, in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3C*. The following items identify paging-related details:

- VMX transitions modify the CR0 and CR4 registers and the IA32_EFER MSR concurrently. For this reason, they allow transitions between paging modes that would not otherwise be possible:
 - VM entries allow transitions from 4-level paging directly to either 32-bit paging or PAE paging.
 - VM exits allow transitions from either 32-bit paging or PAE paging directly to 4-level paging.
- VMX transitions that result in PAE paging load the PDPTTE registers (see Section 4.4.1) as follows:
 - VM entries load the PDPTTE registers either from the physical address being loaded into CR3 or from the virtual-machine control structure (VMCS); see Section 26.3.2.4.
 - VM exits load the PDPTTE registers from the physical address being loaded into CR3; see Section 27.5.4.
- VMX transitions invalidate the TLBs and paging-structure caches based on certain control settings. See Section 26.3.2.5 and Section 27.5.5 in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3C*.

4.11.2 VMX Support for Address Translation

Chapter 28, "VMX Support for Address Translation," in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3C* describe two features of the virtual-machine extensions (VMX) that interact directly with paging. These are **virtual-processor identifiers (VPIDs)** and the **extended page table** mechanism (**EPT**).

VPIDs provide a way for software to identify to the processor the address spaces for different "virtual processors." The processor may use this identification to maintain concurrently information for multiple address spaces in its TLBs and paging-structure caches, even when non-zero PCIDs are not being used. See Section 28.1 for details.

When EPT is in use, the addresses in the paging-structures are not used as physical addresses to access memory and memory-mapped I/O. Instead, they are treated as **guest-physical** addresses and are translated through a set of EPT paging structures to produce physical addresses. EPT can also specify its own access rights and memory typing; these are used on conjunction with those specified in this chapter. See Section 28.2 for more information.

Both VPIDs and EPT may change the way that a processor maintains information in TLBs and paging structure caches and the ways in which software can manage that information. Some of the behaviors documented in Section 4.10 may change. See Section 28.3 for details.

4.12 USING PAGING FOR VIRTUAL MEMORY

With paging, portions of the linear-address space need not be mapped to the physical-address space; data for the unmapped addresses can be stored externally (e.g., on disk). This method of mapping the linear-address space is referred to as virtual memory or demand-paged virtual memory.

Paging divides the linear address space into fixed-size pages that can be mapped into the physical-address space and/or external storage. When a program (or task) references a linear address, the processor uses paging to translate the linear address into a corresponding physical address if such an address is defined.

If the page containing the linear address is not currently mapped into the physical-address space, the processor generates a page-fault exception as described in Section 4.7. The handler for page-fault exceptions typically

directs the operating system or executive to load data for the unmapped page from external storage into physical memory (perhaps writing a different page from physical memory out to external storage in the process) and to map it using paging (by updating the paging structures). When the page has been loaded into physical memory, a return from the exception handler causes the instruction that generated the exception to be restarted.

Paging differs from segmentation through its use of fixed-size pages. Unlike segments, which usually are the same size as the code or data structures they hold, pages have a fixed size. If segmentation is the only form of address translation used, a data structure present in physical memory will have all of its parts in memory. If paging is used, a data structure can be partly in memory and partly in disk storage.

4.13 MAPPING SEGMENTS TO PAGES

The segmentation and paging mechanisms provide support for a wide variety of approaches to memory management. When segmentation and paging are combined, segments can be mapped to pages in several ways. To implement a flat (unsegmented) addressing environment, for example, all the code, data, and stack modules can be mapped to one or more large segments (up to 4-GBytes) that share same range of linear addresses (see Figure 3-2 in Section 3.2.2). Here, segments are essentially invisible to applications and the operating-system or executive. If paging is used, the paging mechanism can map a single linear-address space (contained in a single segment) into virtual memory. Alternatively, each program (or task) can have its own large linear-address space (contained in its own segment), which is mapped into virtual memory through its own paging structures.

Segments can be smaller than the size of a page. If one of these segments is placed in a page which is not shared with another segment, the extra memory is wasted. For example, a small data structure, such as a 1-Byte semaphore, occupies 4 KBytes if it is placed in a page by itself. If many semaphores are used, it is more efficient to pack them into a single page.

The Intel-64 and IA-32 architectures do not enforce correspondence between the boundaries of pages and segments. A page can contain the end of one segment and the beginning of another. Similarly, a segment can contain the end of one page and the beginning of another.

Memory-management software may be simpler and more efficient if it enforces some alignment between page and segment boundaries. For example, if a segment which can fit in one page is placed in two pages, there may be twice as much paging overhead to support access to that segment.

One approach to combining paging and segmentation that simplifies memory-management software is to give each segment its own page table, as shown in Figure 4-13. This convention gives the segment a single entry in the page directory, and this entry provides the access control information for paging the entire segment.

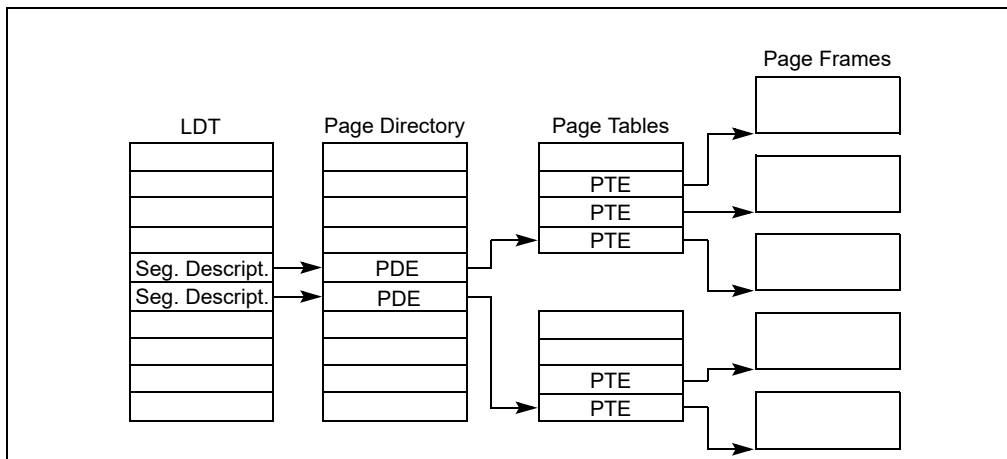


Figure 4-13. Memory Management Convention That Assigns a Page Table to Each Segment

10. Updates to Chapter 8, Volume 3A

Change bars show changes to Chapter 8 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3A: System Programming Guide, Part 1*.

Changes to this chapter: Updates related to CPUID package definition changes; expand the definition of a processor package and include new terms die, tile, and module. Figure 8-5 is also updated to include these terms. There are additional updates to existing text where appropriate.

The Intel 64 and IA-32 architectures provide mechanisms for managing and improving the performance of multiple processors connected to the same system bus. These include:

- Bus locking and/or cache coherency management for performing atomic operations on system memory.
- Serializing instructions.
- An advance programmable interrupt controller (APIC) located on the processor chip (see Chapter 10, “Advanced Programmable Interrupt Controller (APIC)”). This feature was introduced by the Pentium processor.
- A second-level cache (level 2, L2). For the Pentium 4, Intel Xeon, and P6 family processors, the L2 cache is included in the processor package and is tightly coupled to the processor. For the Pentium and Intel486 processors, pins are provided to support an external L2 cache.
- A third-level cache (level 3, L3). For Intel Xeon processors, the L3 cache is included in the processor package and is tightly coupled to the processor.
- Intel Hyper-Threading Technology. This extension to the Intel 64 and IA-32 architectures enables a single processor core to execute two or more threads concurrently (see Section 8.5, “Intel® Hyper-Threading Technology and Intel® Multi-Core Technology”).

These mechanisms are particularly useful in symmetric-multiprocessing (SMP) systems. However, they can also be used when an Intel 64 or IA-32 processor and a special-purpose processor (such as a communications, graphics, or video processor) share the system bus.

These multiprocessing mechanisms have the following characteristics:

- To maintain system memory coherency — When two or more processors are attempting simultaneously to access the same address in system memory, some communication mechanism or memory access protocol must be available to promote data coherency and, in some instances, to allow one processor to temporarily lock a memory location.
- To maintain cache consistency — When one processor accesses data cached on another processor, it must not receive incorrect data. If it modifies data, all other processors that access that data must receive the modified data.
- To allow predictable ordering of writes to memory — In some circumstances, it is important that memory writes be observed externally in precisely the same order as programmed.
- To distribute interrupt handling among a group of processors — When several processors are operating in a system in parallel, it is useful to have a centralized mechanism for receiving interrupts and distributing them to available processors for servicing.
- To increase system performance by exploiting the multi-threaded and multi-process nature of contemporary operating systems and applications.

The caching mechanism and cache consistency of Intel 64 and IA-32 processors are discussed in Chapter 11. The APIC architecture is described in Chapter 10. Bus and memory locking, serializing instructions, memory ordering, and Intel Hyper-Threading Technology are discussed in the following sections.

8.1 LOCKED ATOMIC OPERATIONS

The 32-bit IA-32 processors support locked atomic operations on locations in system memory. These operations are typically used to manage shared data structures (such as semaphores, segment descriptors, system segments, or page tables) in which two or more processors may try simultaneously to modify the same field or flag. The processor uses three interdependent mechanisms for carrying out locked atomic operations:

- Guaranteed atomic operations
- Bus locking, using the LOCK# signal and the LOCK instruction prefix

- Cache coherency protocols that ensure that atomic operations can be carried out on cached data structures (cache lock); this mechanism is present in the Pentium 4, Intel Xeon, and P6 family processors

These mechanisms are interdependent in the following ways. Certain basic memory transactions (such as reading or writing a byte in system memory) are always guaranteed to be handled atomically. That is, once started, the processor guarantees that the operation will be completed before another processor or bus agent is allowed access to the memory location. The processor also supports bus locking for performing selected memory operations (such as a read-modify-write operation in a shared area of memory) that typically need to be handled atomically, but are not automatically handled this way. Because frequently used memory locations are often cached in a processor's L1 or L2 caches, atomic operations can often be carried out inside a processor's caches without asserting the bus lock. Here the processor's cache coherency protocols ensure that other processors that are caching the same memory locations are managed properly while atomic operations are performed on cached memory locations.

NOTE

Where there are contested lock accesses, software may need to implement algorithms that ensure fair access to resources in order to prevent lock starvation. The hardware provides no resource that guarantees fairness to participating agents. It is the responsibility of software to manage the fairness of semaphores and exclusive locking functions.

The mechanisms for handling locked atomic operations have evolved with the complexity of IA-32 processors. More recent IA-32 processors (such as the Pentium 4, Intel Xeon, and P6 family processors) and Intel 64 provide a more refined locking mechanism than earlier processors. These mechanisms are described in the following sections.

8.1.1 Guaranteed Atomic Operations

The Intel486 processor (and newer processors since) guarantees that the following basic memory operations will always be carried out atomically:

- Reading or writing a byte
- Reading or writing a word aligned on a 16-bit boundary
- Reading or writing a doubleword aligned on a 32-bit boundary

The Pentium processor (and newer processors since) guarantees that the following additional memory operations will always be carried out atomically:

- Reading or writing a quadword aligned on a 64-bit boundary
- 16-bit accesses to uncached memory locations that fit within a 32-bit data bus

The P6 family processors (and newer processors since) guarantee that the following additional memory operation will always be carried out atomically:

- Unaligned 16-, 32-, and 64-bit accesses to cached memory that fit within a cache line

Accesses to cacheable memory that are split across cache lines and page boundaries are not guaranteed to be atomic by the Intel Core 2 Duo, Intel[®] Atom™, Intel Core Duo, Pentium M, Pentium 4, Intel Xeon, P6 family, Pentium, and Intel486 processors. The Intel Core 2 Duo, Intel Atom, Intel Core Duo, Pentium M, Pentium 4, Intel Xeon, and P6 family processors provide bus control signals that permit external memory subsystems to make split accesses atomic; however, nonaligned data accesses will seriously impact the performance of the processor and should be avoided.

An x87 instruction or an SSE instructions that accesses data larger than a quadword may be implemented using multiple memory accesses. If such an instruction stores to memory, some of the accesses may complete (writing to memory) while another causes the operation to fault for architectural reasons (e.g. due an page-table entry that is marked "not present"). In this case, the effects of the completed accesses may be visible to software even though the overall instruction caused a fault. If TLB invalidation has been delayed (see Section 4.10.4.4), such page faults may occur even if all accesses are to the same page.

8.1.2 Bus Locking

Intel 64 and IA-32 processors provide a LOCK# signal that is asserted automatically during certain critical memory operations to lock the system bus or equivalent link. While this output signal is asserted, requests from other processors or bus agents for control of the bus are blocked. Software can specify other occasions when the LOCK semantics are to be followed by prepending the LOCK prefix to an instruction.

In the case of the Intel386, Intel486, and Pentium processors, explicitly locked instructions will result in the assertion of the LOCK# signal. It is the responsibility of the hardware designer to make the LOCK# signal available in system hardware to control memory accesses among processors.

For the P6 and more recent processor families, if the memory area being accessed is cached internally in the processor, the LOCK# signal is generally not asserted; instead, locking is only applied to the processor's caches (see Section 8.1.4, "Effects of a LOCK Operation on Internal Processor Caches").

8.1.2.1 Automatic Locking

The operations on which the processor automatically follows the LOCK semantics are as follows:

- When executing an XCHG instruction that references memory.
- **When setting the B (busy) flag of a TSS descriptor** — The processor tests and sets the busy flag in the type field of the TSS descriptor when switching to a task. To ensure that two processors do not switch to the same task simultaneously, the processor follows the LOCK semantics while testing and setting this flag.
- **When updating segment descriptors** — When loading a segment descriptor, the processor will set the accessed flag in the segment descriptor if the flag is clear. During this operation, the processor follows the LOCK semantics so that the descriptor will not be modified by another processor while it is being updated. For this action to be effective, operating-system procedures that update descriptors should use the following steps:
 - Use a locked operation to modify the access-rights byte to indicate that the segment descriptor is not-present, and specify a value for the type field that indicates that the descriptor is being updated.
 - Update the fields of the segment descriptor. (This operation may require several memory accesses; therefore, locked operations cannot be used.)
 - Use a locked operation to modify the access-rights byte to indicate that the segment descriptor is valid and present.
- The Intel386 processor always updates the accessed flag in the segment descriptor, whether it is clear or not. The Pentium 4, Intel Xeon, P6 family, Pentium, and Intel486 processors only update this flag if it is not already set.
- **When updating page-directory and page-table entries** — When updating page-directory and page-table entries, the processor uses locked cycles to set the accessed and dirty flag in the page-directory and page-table entries.
- **Acknowledging interrupts** — After an interrupt request, an interrupt controller may use the data bus to send the interrupt's vector to the processor. The processor follows the LOCK semantics during this time to ensure that no other data appears on the data bus while the vector is being transmitted.

8.1.2.2 Software Controlled Bus Locking

To explicitly force the LOCK semantics, software can use the LOCK prefix with the following instructions when they are used to modify a memory location. An invalid-opcode exception (#UD) is generated when the LOCK prefix is used with any other instruction or when no write operation is made to memory (that is, when the destination operand is in a register).

- The bit test and modify instructions (BTS, BTR, and BTC).
- The exchange instructions (XADD, CMPXCHG, and CMPXCHG8B).
- The LOCK prefix is automatically assumed for XCHG instruction.
- The following single-operand arithmetic and logical instructions: INC, DEC, NOT, and NEG.
- The following two-operand arithmetic and logical instructions: ADD, ADC, SUB, SBB, AND, OR, and XOR.

A locked instruction is guaranteed to lock only the area of memory defined by the destination operand, but may be interpreted by the system as a lock for a larger memory area.

Software should access semaphores (shared memory used for signalling between multiple processors) using identical addresses and operand lengths. For example, if one processor accesses a semaphore using a word access, other processors should not access the semaphore using a byte access.

NOTE

Do not implement semaphores using the WC memory type. Do not perform non-temporal stores to a cache line containing a location used to implement a semaphore.

The integrity of a bus lock is not affected by the alignment of the memory field. The LOCK semantics are followed for as many bus cycles as necessary to update the entire operand. However, it is recommended that locked accesses be aligned on their natural boundaries for better system performance:

- Any boundary for an 8-bit access (locked or otherwise).
- 16-bit boundary for locked word accesses.
- 32-bit boundary for locked doubleword accesses.
- 64-bit boundary for locked quadword accesses.

Locked operations are atomic with respect to all other memory operations and all externally visible events. Only instruction fetch and page table accesses can pass locked instructions. Locked instructions can be used to synchronize data written by one processor and read by another processor.

For the P6 family processors, locked operations serialize all outstanding load and store operations (that is, wait for them to complete). This rule is also true for the Pentium 4 and Intel Xeon processors, with one exception. Load operations that reference weakly ordered memory types (such as the WC memory type) may not be serialized.

Locked instructions should not be used to ensure that data written can be fetched as instructions.

NOTE

The locked instructions for the current versions of the Pentium 4, Intel Xeon, P6 family, Pentium, and Intel486 processors allow data written to be fetched as instructions. However, Intel recommends that developers who require the use of self-modifying code use a different synchronizing mechanism, described in the following sections.

8.1.3 Handling Self- and Cross-Modifying Code

The act of a processor writing data into a currently executing code segment with the intent of executing that data as code is called **self-modifying code**. IA-32 processors exhibit model-specific behavior when executing self-modified code, depending upon how far ahead of the current execution pointer the code has been modified.

As processor microarchitectures become more complex and start to speculatively execute code ahead of the retirement point (as in P6 and more recent processor families), the rules regarding which code should execute, pre- or post-modification, become blurred. To write self-modifying code and ensure that it is compliant with current and future versions of the IA-32 architectures, use one of the following coding options:

(* OPTION 1 *)

Store modified code (as data) into code segment;
Jump to new code or an intermediate location;
Execute new code;

(* OPTION 2 *)

Store modified code (as data) into code segment;
Execute a serializing instruction; (* For example, CPUID instruction *)
Execute new code;

The use of one of these options is not required for programs intended to run on the Pentium or Intel486 processors, but are recommended to ensure compatibility with the P6 and more recent processor families.

Self-modifying code will execute at a lower level of performance than non-self-modifying or normal code. The degree of the performance deterioration will depend upon the frequency of modification and specific characteristics of the code.

The act of one processor writing data into the currently executing code segment of a second processor with the intent of having the second processor execute that data as code is called **cross-modifying code**. As with self-modifying code, IA-32 processors exhibit model-specific behavior when executing cross-modifying code, depending upon how far ahead of the executing processors current execution pointer the code has been modified.

To write cross-modifying code and ensure that it is compliant with current and future versions of the IA-32 architecture, the following processor synchronization algorithm must be implemented:

```
(* Action of Modifying Processor *)
Memory_Flag ← 0; (* Set Memory_Flag to value other than 1 *)
Store modified code (as data) into code segment;
Memory_Flag ← 1;

(* Action of Executing Processor *)
WHILE (Memory_Flag ≠ 1)
    Wait for code to update;
ELIHW;
Execute serializing instruction; (* For example, CPUID instruction *)
Begin executing modified code;
```

(The use of this option is not required for programs intended to run on the Intel486 processor, but is recommended to ensure compatibility with the Pentium 4, Intel Xeon, P6 family, and Pentium processors.)

Like self-modifying code, cross-modifying code will execute at a lower level of performance than non-cross-modifying (normal) code, depending upon the frequency of modification and specific characteristics of the code.

The restrictions on self-modifying code and cross-modifying code also apply to the Intel 64 architecture.

8.1.4 Effects of a LOCK Operation on Internal Processor Caches

For the Intel486 and Pentium processors, the LOCK# signal is always asserted on the bus during a LOCK operation, even if the area of memory being locked is cached in the processor.

For the P6 and more recent processor families, if the area of memory being locked during a LOCK operation is cached in the processor that is performing the LOCK operation as write-back memory and is completely contained in a cache line, the processor may not assert the LOCK# signal on the bus. Instead, it will modify the memory location internally and allow its cache coherency mechanism to ensure that the operation is carried out atomically. This operation is called "cache locking." The cache coherency mechanism automatically prevents two or more processors that have cached the same area of memory from simultaneously modifying data in that area.

8.2 MEMORY ORDERING

The term **memory ordering** refers to the order in which the processor issues reads (loads) and writes (stores) through the system bus to system memory. The Intel 64 and IA-32 architectures support several memory-ordering models depending on the implementation of the architecture. For example, the Intel386 processor enforces **program ordering** (generally referred to as **strong ordering**), where reads and writes are issued on the system bus in the order they occur in the instruction stream under all circumstances.

To allow performance optimization of instruction execution, the IA-32 architecture allows departures from strong-ordering model called **processor ordering** in Pentium 4, Intel Xeon, and P6 family processors. These **processor-ordering** variations (called here the **memory-ordering model**) allow performance enhancing operations such as allowing reads to go ahead of buffered writes. The goal of any of these variations is to increase instruction execution speeds, while maintaining memory coherency, even in multiple-processor systems.

Section 8.2.1 and Section 8.2.2 describe the memory-ordering implemented by Intel486, Pentium, Intel Core 2 Duo, Intel Atom, Intel Core Duo, Pentium 4, Intel Xeon, and P6 family processors. Section 8.2.3 gives examples

illustrating the behavior of the memory-ordering model on IA-32 and Intel-64 processors. Section 8.2.4 considers the special treatment of stores for string operations and Section 8.2.5 discusses how memory-ordering behavior may be modified through the use of specific instructions.

8.2.1 Memory Ordering in the Intel® Pentium® and Intel486™ Processors

The Pentium and Intel486 processors follow the processor-ordered memory model; however, they operate as strongly-ordered processors under most circumstances. Reads and writes always appear in programmed order at the system bus—except for the following situation where processor ordering is exhibited. Read misses are permitted to go ahead of buffered writes on the system bus when all the buffered writes are cache hits and, therefore, are not directed to the same address being accessed by the read miss.

In the case of I/O operations, both reads and writes always appear in programmed order.

Software intended to operate correctly in processor-ordered processors (such as the Pentium 4, Intel Xeon, and P6 family processors) should not depend on the relatively strong ordering of the Pentium or Intel486 processors. Instead, it should ensure that accesses to shared variables that are intended to control concurrent execution among processors are explicitly required to obey program ordering through the use of appropriate locking or serializing operations (see Section 8.2.5, “Strengthening or Weakening the Memory-Ordering Model”).

8.2.2 Memory Ordering in P6 and More Recent Processor Families

The Intel Core 2 Duo, Intel Atom, Intel Core Duo, Pentium 4, and P6 family processors also use a processor-ordered memory-ordering model that can be further defined as “write ordered with store-buffer forwarding.” This model can be characterized as follows.

In a single-processor system for memory regions defined as write-back cacheable, the memory-ordering model respects the following principles (**Note** the memory-ordering principles for single-processor and multiple-processor systems are written from the perspective of software executing on the processor, where the term “processor” refers to a logical processor. For example, a physical processor supporting multiple cores and/or Intel Hyper-Threading Technology is treated as a multi-processor systems.):

- Reads are not reordered with other reads.
- Writes are not reordered with older reads.
- Writes to memory are not reordered with other writes, with the following exceptions:
 - streaming stores (writes) executed with the non-temporal move instructions (MOVNTI, MOVNTQ, MOVNTDQ, MOVNTPS, and MOVNTPD); and
 - string operations (see Section 8.2.4.1).
- No write to memory may be reordered with an execution of the CLFLUSH instruction; a write may be reordered with an execution of the CLFLUSHOPT instruction that flushes a cache line other than the one being written.¹ Executions of the CLFLUSH instruction are not reordered with each other. Executions of CLFLUSHOPT that access different cache lines may be reordered with each other. An execution of CLFLUSHOPT may be reordered with an execution of CLFLUSH that accesses a different cache line.
- Reads may be reordered with older writes to different locations but not with older writes to the same location.
- Reads or writes cannot be reordered with I/O instructions, locked instructions, or serializing instructions.
- Reads cannot pass earlier LFENCE and MFENCE instructions.
- Writes and executions of CLFLUSH and CLFLUSHOPT cannot pass earlier LFENCE, SFENCE, and MFENCE instructions.
- LFENCE instructions cannot pass earlier reads.
- SFENCE instructions cannot pass earlier writes or executions of CLFLUSH and CLFLUSHOPT.
- MFENCE instructions cannot pass earlier reads, writes, or executions of CLFLUSH and CLFLUSHOPT.

1. Earlier versions of this manual specified that writes to memory may be reordered with executions of the CLFLUSH instruction. No processors implementing the CLFLUSH instruction allow such reordering.

In a multiple-processor system, the following ordering principles apply:

- Individual processors use the same ordering principles as in a single-processor system.
- Writes by a single processor are observed in the same order by all processors.
- Writes from an individual processor are NOT ordered with respect to the writes from other processors.
- Memory ordering obeys causality (memory ordering respects transitive visibility).
- Any two stores are seen in a consistent order by processors other than those performing the stores
- Locked instructions have a total order.

See the example in Figure 8-1. Consider three processors in a system and each processor performs three writes, one to each of three defined locations (A, B, and C). Individually, the processors perform the writes in the same program order, but because of bus arbitration and other memory access mechanisms, the order that the three processors write the individual memory locations can differ each time the respective code sequences are executed on the processors. The final values in location A, B, and C would possibly vary on each execution of the write sequence.

The processor-ordering model described in this section is virtually identical to that used by the Pentium and Intel486 processors. The only enhancements in the Pentium 4, Intel Xeon, and P6 family processors are:

- Added support for speculative reads, while still adhering to the ordering principles above.
- Store-buffer forwarding, when a read passes a write to the same memory location.
- Out of order store from long string store and string move operations (see Section 8.2.4, "Fast-String Operation and Out-of-Order Stores," below).

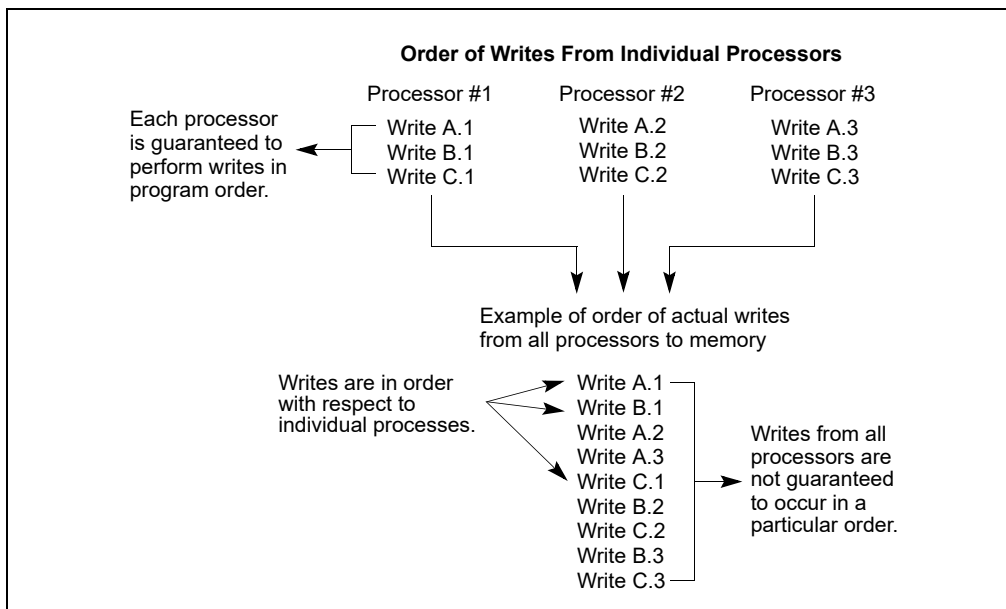


Figure 8-1. Example of Write Ordering in Multiple-Processor Systems

NOTE

In P6 processor family, store-buffer forwarding to reads of WC memory from streaming stores to the same address does not occur due to errata.

8.2.3 Examples Illustrating the Memory-Ordering Principles

This section provides a set of examples that illustrate the behavior of the memory-ordering principles introduced in Section 8.2.2. They are designed to give software writers an understanding of how memory ordering may affect the results of different sequences of instructions.

These examples are limited to accesses to memory regions defined as write-back cacheable (WB). (Section 8.2.3.1 describes other limitations on the generality of the examples.) The reader should understand that they describe only software-visible behavior. A logical processor may reorder two accesses even if one of examples indicates that they may not be reordered. Such an example states only that software cannot detect that such a reordering occurred. Similarly, a logical processor may execute a memory access more than once as long as the behavior visible to software is consistent with a single execution of the memory access.

8.2.3.1 Assumptions, Terminology, and Notation

As noted above, the examples in this section are limited to accesses to memory regions defined as write-back cacheable (WB). They apply only to ordinary loads stores and to locked read-modify-write instructions. They do not necessarily apply to any of the following: out-of-order stores for string instructions (see Section 8.2.4); accesses with a non-temporal hint; reads from memory by the processor as part of address translation (e.g., page walks); and updates to segmentation and paging structures by the processor (e.g., to update “accessed” bits).

The principles underlying the examples in this section apply to individual memory accesses and to locked read-modify-write instructions. The Intel-64 memory-ordering model guarantees that, for each of the following memory-access instructions, the constituent memory operation appears to execute as a single memory access:

- Instructions that read or write a single byte.
- Instructions that read or write a word (2 bytes) whose address is aligned on a 2 byte boundary.
- Instructions that read or write a doubleword (4 bytes) whose address is aligned on a 4 byte boundary.
- Instructions that read or write a quadword (8 bytes) whose address is aligned on an 8 byte boundary.

Any locked instruction (either the XCHG instruction or another read-modify-write instruction with a LOCK prefix) appears to execute as an indivisible and uninterruptible sequence of load(s) followed by store(s) regardless of alignment.

Other instructions may be implemented with multiple memory accesses. From a memory-ordering point of view, there are no guarantees regarding the relative order in which the constituent memory accesses are made. There is also no guarantee that the constituent operations of a store are executed in the same order as the constituent operations of a load.

Section 8.2.3.2 through Section 8.2.3.7 give examples using the MOV instruction. The principles that underlie these examples apply to load and store accesses in general and to other instructions that load from or store to memory. Section 8.2.3.8 and Section 8.2.3.9 give examples using the XCHG instruction. The principles that underlie these examples apply to other locked read-modify-write instructions.

This section uses the term “processor” is to refer to a logical processor. The examples are written using Intel-64 assembly-language syntax and use the following notational conventions:

- Arguments beginning with an “r”, such as r1 or r2 refer to registers (e.g., EAX) visible only to the processor being considered.
- Memory locations are denoted with x, y, z.
- Stores are written as *mov [_x], val*, which implies that *val* is being stored into the memory location x.
- Loads are written as *mov r, [_x]*, which implies that the contents of the memory location x are being loaded into the register r.

As noted earlier, the examples refer only to software visible behavior. When the succeeding sections make statement such as “the two stores are reordered,” the implication is only that “the two stores appear to be reordered from the point of view of software.”

8.2.3.2 Neither Loads Nor Stores Are Reordered with Like Operations

The Intel-64 memory-ordering model allows neither loads nor stores to be reordered with the same kind of operation. That is, it ensures that loads are seen in program order and that stores are seen in program order. This is illustrated by the following example:

Example 8-1. Stores Are Not Reordered with Other Stores

Processor 0	Processor 1
mov [_x], 1 mov [_y], 1	mov r1, [_y] mov r2, [_x]
Initially x = y = 0 r1 = 1 and r2 = 0 is not allowed	

The disallowed return values could be exhibited only if processor 0's two stores are reordered (with the two loads occurring between them) or if processor 1's two loads are reordered (with the two stores occurring between them).

If r1 = 1, the store to y occurs before the load from y. Because the Intel-64 memory-ordering model does not allow stores to be reordered, the earlier store to x occurs before the load from y. Because the Intel-64 memory-ordering model does not allow loads to be reordered, the store to x also occurs before the later load from x. This r2 = 1.

8.2.3.3 Stores Are Not Reordered with Earlier Loads

The Intel-64 memory-ordering model ensures that a store by a processor may not occur before a previous load by the same processor. This is illustrated by the following example:

Example 8-2. Stores Are Not Reordered with Older Loads

Processor 0	Processor 1
mov r1, [_x] mov [_y], 1	mov r2, [_y] mov [_x], 1
Initially x = y = 0 r1 = 1 and r2 = 1 is not allowed	

Assume r1 = 1.

- Because r1 = 1, processor 1's store to x occurs before processor 0's load from x.
- Because the Intel-64 memory-ordering model prevents each store from being reordered with the earlier load by the same processor, processor 1's load from y occurs before its store to x.
- Similarly, processor 0's load from x occurs before its store to y.
- Thus, processor 1's load from y occurs before processor 0's store to y, implying r2 = 0.

8.2.3.4 Loads May Be Reordered with Earlier Stores to Different Locations

The Intel-64 memory-ordering model allows a load to be reordered with an earlier store to a different location. However, loads are not reordered with stores to the same location.

The fact that a load may be reordered with an earlier store to a different location is illustrated by the following example:

Example 8-3. Loads May be Reordered with Older Stores

Processor 0	Processor 1
mov [_x], 1 mov r1, [_y]	mov [_y], 1 mov r2, [_x]
Initially x = y = 0 r1 = 0 and r2 = 0 is allowed	

At each processor, the load and the store are to different locations and hence may be reordered. Any interleaving of the operations is thus allowed. One such interleaving has the two loads occurring before the two stores. This would result in each load returning value 0.

The fact that a load may not be reordered with an earlier store to the same location is illustrated by the following example:

Example 8-4. Loads Are not Reordered with Older Stores to the Same Location

Processor 0
mov [_x], 1 mov r1, [_x]
Initially x = 0 r1 = 0 is not allowed

The Intel-64 memory-ordering model does not allow the load to be reordered with the earlier store because the accesses are to the same location. Therefore, r1 = 1 must hold.

8.2.3.5 Intra-Processor Forwarding Is Allowed

The memory-ordering model allows concurrent stores by two processors to be seen in different orders by those two processors; specifically, each processor may perceive its own store occurring before that of the other. This is illustrated by the following example:

Example 8-5. Intra-Processor Forwarding is Allowed

Processor 0	Processor 1
mov [_x], 1 mov r1, [_x] mov r2, [_y]	mov [_y], 1 mov r3, [_y] mov r4, [_x]
Initially x = y = 0 r2 = 0 and r4 = 0 is allowed	

The memory-ordering model imposes no constraints on the order in which the two stores appear to execute by the two processors. This fact allows processor 0 to see its store before seeing processor 1's, while processor 1 sees its store before seeing processor 0's. (Each processor is self consistent.) This allows r2 = 0 and r4 = 0.

In practice, the reordering in this example can arise as a result of store-buffer forwarding. While a store is temporarily held in a processor's store buffer, it can satisfy the processor's own loads but is not visible to (and cannot satisfy) loads by other processors.

8.2.3.6 Stores Are Transitively Visible

The memory-ordering model ensures transitive visibility of stores; stores that are causally related appear to all processors to occur in an order consistent with the causality relation. This is illustrated by the following example:

Example 8-6. Stores Are Transitively Visible

Processor 0	Processor 1	Processor 2
mov [_x], 1	mov r1, [_x] mov [_y], 1	mov r2, [_y] mov r3, [_x]
Initially x = y = 0 r1 = 1, r2 = 1, r3 = 0 is not allowed		

Assume that r1 = 1 and r2 = 1.

- Because r1 = 1, processor 0's store occurs before processor 1's load.

- Because the memory-ordering model prevents a store from being reordered with an earlier load (see Section 8.2.3.3), processor 1’s load occurs before its store. Thus, processor 0’s store causally precedes processor 1’s store.
- Because processor 0’s store causally precedes processor 1’s store, the memory-ordering model ensures that processor 0’s store appears to occur before processor 1’s store from the point of view of all processors.
- Because $r2 = 1$, processor 1’s store occurs before processor 2’s load.
- Because the Intel-64 memory-ordering model prevents loads from being reordered (see Section 8.2.3.2), processor 2’s load occur in order.
- The above items imply that processor 0’s store to x occurs before processor 2’s load from x . This implies that $r3 = 1$.

8.2.3.7 Stores Are Seen in a Consistent Order by Other Processors

As noted in Section 8.2.3.5, the memory-ordering model allows stores by two processors to be seen in different orders by those two processors. However, any two stores must appear to execute in the same order to all processors other than those performing the stores. This is illustrated by the following example:

Example 8-7. Stores Are Seen in a Consistent Order by Other Processors

Processor 0	Processor 1	Processor 2	Processor 3
mov [_x], 1	mov [_y], 1	mov r1, [_x] mov r2, [_y]	mov r3, [_y] mov r4, [_x]
Initially $x = y = 0$ $r1 = 1, r2 = 0, r3 = 1, r4 = 0$ is not allowed			

By the principles discussed in Section 8.2.3.2,

- processor 2’s first and second load cannot be reordered,
- processor 3’s first and second load cannot be reordered.
- If $r1 = 1$ and $r2 = 0$, processor 0’s store appears to precede processor 1’s store with respect to processor 2.
- Similarly, $r3 = 1$ and $r4 = 0$ imply that processor 1’s store appears to precede processor 0’s store with respect to processor 1.

Because the memory-ordering model ensures that any two stores appear to execute in the same order to all processors (other than those performing the stores), this set of return values is not allowed

8.2.3.8 Locked Instructions Have a Total Order

The memory-ordering model ensures that all processors agree on a single execution order of all locked instructions, including those that are larger than 8 bytes or are not naturally aligned. This is illustrated by the following example:

Example 8-8. Locked Instructions Have a Total Order

Processor 0	Processor 1	Processor 2	Processor 3
xchg [_x], r1	xchg [_y], r2	mov r3, [_x] mov r4, [_y]	mov r5, [_y] mov r6, [_x]
Initially $r1 = r2 = 1, x = y = 0$ $r3 = 1, r4 = 0, r5 = 1, r6 = 0$ is not allowed			

Processor 2 and processor 3 must agree on the order of the two executions of XCHG. Without loss of generality, suppose that processor 0’s XCHG occurs first.

- If $r5 = 1$, processor 1’s XCHG into y occurs before processor 3’s load from y .

- Because the Intel-64 memory-ordering model prevents loads from being reordered (see Section 8.2.3.2), processor 3’s loads occur in order and, therefore, processor 1’s XCHG occurs before processor 3’s load from x.
- Since processor 0’s XCHG into x occurs before processor 1’s XCHG (by assumption), it occurs before processor 3’s load from x. Thus, $r6 = 1$.

A similar argument (referring instead to processor 2’s loads) applies if processor 1’s XCHG occurs before processor 0’s XCHG.

8.2.3.9 Loads and Stores Are Not Reordered with Locked Instructions

The memory-ordering model prevents loads and stores from being reordered with locked instructions that execute earlier or later. The examples in this section illustrate only cases in which a locked instruction is executed before a load or a store. The reader should note that reordering is prevented also if the locked instruction is executed after a load or a store.

The first example illustrates that loads may not be reordered with earlier locked instructions:

Example 8-9. Loads Are not Reordered with Locks

Processor 0	Processor 1
xchg [_x], r1 mov r2, [_y]	xchg [_y], r3 mov r4, [_x]
Initially $x = y = 0, r1 = r3 = 1$ $r2 = 0$ and $r4 = 0$ is not allowed	

As explained in Section 8.2.3.8, there is a total order of the executions of locked instructions. Without loss of generality, suppose that processor 0’s XCHG occurs first.

Because the Intel-64 memory-ordering model prevents processor 1’s load from being reordered with its earlier XCHG, processor 0’s XCHG occurs before processor 1’s load. This implies $r4 = 1$.

A similar argument (referring instead to processor 2’s accesses) applies if processor 1’s XCHG occurs before processor 0’s XCHG.

The second example illustrates that a store may not be reordered with an earlier locked instruction:

Example 8-10. Stores Are not Reordered with Locks

Processor 0	Processor 1
xchg [_x], r1 mov [_y], 1	mov r2, [_y] mov r3, [_x]
Initially $x = y = 0, r1 = 1$ $r2 = 1$ and $r3 = 0$ is not allowed	

Assume $r2 = 1$.

- Because $r2 = 1$, processor 0’s store to y occurs before processor 1’s load from y.
- Because the memory-ordering model prevents a store from being reordered with an earlier locked instruction, processor 0’s XCHG into x occurs before its store to y. Thus, processor 0’s XCHG into x occurs before processor 1’s load from y.
- Because the memory-ordering model prevents loads from being reordered (see Section 8.2.3.2), processor 1’s loads occur in order and, therefore, processor 1’s XCHG into x occurs before processor 1’s load from x. Thus, $r3 = 1$.

8.2.4 Fast-String Operation and Out-of-Order Stores

Section 7.3.9.3 of *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 1* described an optimization of repeated string operations called **fast-string operation**.

As explained in that section, the stores produced by fast-string operation may appear to execute out of order. Software dependent upon sequential store ordering should not use string operations for the entire data structure to be stored. Data and semaphores should be separated. Order-dependent code should write to a discrete semaphore variable after any string operations to allow correctly ordered data to be seen by all processors. Atomicity of load and store operations is guaranteed only for native data elements of the string with native data size, and only if they are included in a single cache line.

Section 8.2.4.1 and Section 8.2.4.2 provide further explain and examples.

8.2.4.1 Memory-Ordering Model for String Operations on Write-Back (WB) Memory

This section deals with the memory-ordering model for string operations on write-back (WB) memory for the Intel 64 architecture.

The memory-ordering model respects the follow principles:

1. Stores within a single string operation may be executed out of order.
2. Stores from separate string operations (for example, stores from consecutive string operations) do not execute out of order. All the stores from an earlier string operation will complete before any store from a later string operation.
3. String operations are not reordered with other store operations.

Fast string operations (e.g. string operations initiated with the MOVSB/STOSB instructions and the REP prefix) may be interrupted by exceptions or interrupts. The interrupts are precise but may be delayed - for example, the interruptions may be taken at cache line boundaries, after every few iterations of the loop, or after operating on every few bytes. Different implementations may choose different options, or may even choose not to delay interrupt handling, so software should not rely on the delay. When the interrupt/trap handler is reached, the source/destination registers point to the next string element to be operated on, while the EIP stored in the stack points to the string instruction, and the ECX register has the value it held following the last successful iteration. The return from that trap/interrupt handler should cause the string instruction to be resumed from the point where it was interrupted.

The string operation memory-ordering principles, (item 2 and 3 above) should be interpreted by taking the incorruptibility of fast string operations into account. For example, if a fast string operation gets interrupted after k iterations, then stores performed by the interrupt handler will become visible after the fast string stores from iteration 0 to k, and before the fast string stores from the (k+1)th iteration onward.

Stores within a single string operation may execute out of order (item 1 above) only if fast string operation is enabled. Fast string operations are enabled/disabled through the IA32_MISC_ENABLE model specific register.

8.2.4.2 Examples Illustrating Memory-Ordering Principles for String Operations

The following examples uses the same notation and convention as described in Section 8.2.3.1.

In Example 8-11, processor 0 does one round of (128 iterations) doubleword string store operation via rep:stosd, writing the value 1 (value in EAX) into a block of 512 bytes from location `_x` (kept in ES:EDI) in ascending order. Since each operation stores a doubleword (4 bytes), the operation is repeated 128 times (value in ECX). The block of memory initially contained 0. Processor 1 is reading two memory locations that are part of the memory block being updated by processor 0, i.e, reading locations in the range `_x` to `(_x+511)`.

Example 8-11. Stores Within a String Operation May be Reordered

Processor 0	Processor 1
<code>rep:stosd [_x]</code>	<code>mov r1, [_z]</code> <code>mov r2, [_y]</code>
Initially on processor 0: EAX = 1, ECX=128, ES:EDI = <code>_x</code> Initially <code>[_x]</code> to <code>511[_x]</code> = 0, <code>_x <= _y < _z < _x+512</code> <code>r1 = 1</code> and <code>r2 = 0</code> is allowed	

MULTIPLE-PROCESSOR MANAGEMENT

It is possible for processor 1 to perceive that the repeated string stores in processor 0 are happening out of order. Assume that fast string operations are enabled on processor 0.

In Example 8-12, processor 0 does two separate rounds of `rep stosd` operation of 128 doubleword stores, writing the value 1 (value in `EAX`) into the first block of 512 bytes from location `_x` (kept in `ES:EDI`) in ascending order. It then writes 1 into a second block of memory from `(_x+512)` to `(_x+1023)`. All of the memory locations initially contain 0. The block of memory initially contained 0. Processor 1 performs two load operations from the two blocks of memory.

Example 8-12. Stores Across String Operations Are not Reordered

Processor 0	Processor 1
<code>rep:stosd [_x]</code>	<code>mov r1, [_z]</code>
<code>mov ecx, \$128</code>	<code>mov r2, [_y]</code>
<code>rep:stosd 512[_x]</code>	
Initially on processor 0: <code>EAX = 1, ECX=128, ES:EDI =_x</code> Initially <code>[_x] to 1023[_x]= 0, _x <= _y < _x+512 < _z < _x+1024</code> <code>r1 = 1 and r2 = 0</code> is not allowed	

It is not possible in the above example for processor 1 to perceive any of the stores from the later string operation (to the second 512 block) in processor 0 before seeing the stores from the earlier string operation to the first 512 block.

The above example assumes that writes to the second block (`_x+512` to `_x+1023`) does not get executed while processor 0's string operation to the first block has been interrupted. If the string operation to the first block by processor 0 is interrupted, and a write to the second memory block is executed by the interrupt handler, then that change in the second memory block will be visible before the string operation to the first memory block resumes.

In Example 8-13, processor 0 does one round of (128 iterations) doubleword string store operation via `rep:stosd`, writing the value 1 (value in `EAX`) into a block of 512 bytes from location `_x` (kept in `ES:EDI`) in ascending order. It then writes to a second memory location outside the memory block of the previous string operation. Processor 1 performs two read operations, the first read is from an address outside the 512-byte block but to be updated by processor 0, the second read is from inside the block of memory of string operation.

Example 8-13. String Operations Are not Reordered with later Stores

Processor 0	Processor 1
<code>rep:stosd [_x]</code>	<code>mov r1, [_z]</code>
<code>mov [_z], \$1</code>	<code>mov r2, [_y]</code>
Initially on processor 0: <code>EAX = 1, ECX=128, ES:EDI =_x</code> Initially <code>[_y] = [_z] = 0, [_x] to 511[_x]= 0, _x <= _y < _x+512, _z</code> is a separate memory location <code>r1 = 1 and r2 = 0</code> is not allowed	

Processor 1 cannot perceive the later store by processor 0 until it sees all the stores from the string operation. Example 8-13 assumes that processor 0's store to `[_z]` is not executed while the string operation has been interrupted. If the string operation is interrupted and the store to `[_z]` by processor 0 is executed by the interrupt handler, then changes to `[_z]` will become visible before the string operation resumes.

Example 8-14 illustrates the visibility principle when a string operation is interrupted.

Example 8-14. Interrupted String Operation

Processor 0	Processor 1
rep:stosd [_x] // interrupted before es:edi reach _y mov [_z], \$1 // interrupt handler	mov r1, [_z] mov r2, [_y]
Initially on processor 0: EAX = 1, ECX=128, ES:EDI = _x Initially [_y] = [_z] = 0, [_x] to 511[_x]= 0, _x <= _y < _x+512, _z is a separate memory location r1 = 1 and r2 = 0 is allowed	

In Example 8-14, processor 0 started a string operation to write to a memory block of 512 bytes starting at address _x. Processor 0 got interrupted after k iterations of store operations. The address _y has not yet been updated by processor 0 when processor 0 got interrupted. The interrupt handler that took control on processor 0 writes to the address _z. Processor 1 may see the store to _z from the interrupt handler, before seeing the remaining stores to the 512-byte memory block that are executed when the string operation resumes.

Example 8-15 illustrates the ordering of string operations with earlier stores. No store from a string operation can be visible before all prior stores are visible.

Example 8-15. String Operations Are not Reordered with Earlier Stores

Processor 0	Processor 1
mov [_z], \$1 rep:stosd [_x]	mov r1, [_y] mov r2, [_z]
Initially on processor 0: EAX = 1, ECX=128, ES:EDI = _x Initially [_y] = [_z] = 0, [_x] to 511[_x]= 0, _x <= _y < _x+512, _z is a separate memory location r1 = 1 and r2 = 0 is not allowed	

8.2.5 Strengthening or Weakening the Memory-Ordering Model

The Intel 64 and IA-32 architectures provide several mechanisms for strengthening or weakening the memory-ordering model to handle special programming situations. These mechanisms include:

- The I/O instructions, locking instructions, the LOCK prefix, and serializing instructions force stronger ordering on the processor.
- The SFENCE instruction (introduced to the IA-32 architecture in the Pentium III processor) and the LFENCE and MFENCE instructions (introduced in the Pentium 4 processor) provide memory-ordering and serialization capabilities for specific types of memory operations.
- The memory type range registers (MTRRs) can be used to strengthen or weaken memory ordering for specific area of physical memory (see Section 11.11, “Memory Type Range Registers (MTRRs)”). MTRRs are available only in the Pentium 4, Intel Xeon, and P6 family processors.
- The page attribute table (PAT) can be used to strengthen memory ordering for a specific page or group of pages (see Section 11.12, “Page Attribute Table (PAT)”). The PAT is available only in the Pentium 4, Intel Xeon, and Pentium III processors.

These mechanisms can be used as follows:

Memory mapped devices and other I/O devices on the bus are often sensitive to the order of writes to their I/O buffers. I/O instructions can be used to (the IN and OUT instructions) impose strong write ordering on such accesses as follows. Prior to executing an I/O instruction, the processor waits for all previous instructions in the program to complete and for all buffered writes to drain to memory. Only instruction fetch and page tables walks can pass I/O instructions. Execution of subsequent instructions do not begin until the processor determines that the I/O instruction has been completed.

Synchronization mechanisms in multiple-processor systems may depend upon a strong memory-ordering model. Here, a program can use a locking instruction such as the XCHG instruction or the LOCK prefix to ensure that a read-modify-write operation on memory is carried out atomically. Locking operations typically operate like I/O operations in that they wait for all previous instructions to complete and for all buffered writes to drain to memory (see Section 8.1.2, “Bus Locking”).

Program synchronization can also be carried out with serializing instructions (see Section 8.3). These instructions are typically used at critical procedure or task boundaries to force completion of all previous instructions before a jump to a new section of code or a context switch occurs. Like the I/O and locking instructions, the processor waits until all previous instructions have been completed and all buffered writes have been drained to memory before executing the serializing instruction.

The SFENCE, LFENCE, and MFENCE instructions provide a performance-efficient way of ensuring load and store memory ordering between routines that produce weakly-ordered results and routines that consume that data. The functions of these instructions are as follows:

- **SFENCE** — Serializes all store (write) operations that occurred prior to the SFENCE instruction in the program instruction stream, but does not affect load operations.
- **LFENCE** — Serializes all load (read) operations that occurred prior to the LFENCE instruction in the program instruction stream, but does not affect store operations.²
- **MFENCE** — Serializes all store and load operations that occurred prior to the MFENCE instruction in the program instruction stream.

Note that the SFENCE, LFENCE, and MFENCE instructions provide a more efficient method of controlling memory ordering than the CPUID instruction.

The MTRRs were introduced in the P6 family processors to define the cache characteristics for specified areas of physical memory. The following are two examples of how memory types set up with MTRRs can be used strengthen or weaken memory ordering for the Pentium 4, Intel Xeon, and P6 family processors:

- The strong uncached (UC) memory type forces a strong-ordering model on memory accesses. Here, all reads and writes to the UC memory region appear on the bus and out-of-order or speculative accesses are not performed. This memory type can be applied to an address range dedicated to memory mapped I/O devices to force strong memory ordering.
- For areas of memory where weak ordering is acceptable, the write back (WB) memory type can be chosen. Here, reads can be performed speculatively and writes can be buffered and combined. For this type of memory, cache locking is performed on atomic (locked) operations that do not split across cache lines, which helps to reduce the performance penalty associated with the use of the typical synchronization instructions, such as XCHG, that lock the bus during the entire read-modify-write operation. With the WB memory type, the XCHG instruction locks the cache instead of the bus if the memory access is contained within a cache line.

The PAT was introduced in the Pentium III processor to enhance the caching characteristics that can be assigned to pages or groups of pages. The PAT mechanism typically used to strengthen caching characteristics at the page level with respect to the caching characteristics established by the MTRRs. Table 11-7 shows the interaction of the PAT with the MTRRs.

Intel recommends that software written to run on Intel Core 2 Duo, Intel Atom, Intel Core Duo, Pentium 4, Intel Xeon, and P6 family processors assume the processor-ordering model or a weaker memory-ordering model. The Intel Core 2 Duo, Intel Atom, Intel Core Duo, Pentium 4, Intel Xeon, and P6 family processors do not implement a strong memory-ordering model, except when using the UC memory type. Despite the fact that Pentium 4, Intel Xeon, and P6 family processors support processor ordering, Intel does not guarantee that future processors will support this model. To make software portable to future processors, it is recommended that operating systems provide critical region and resource control constructs and API's (application program interfaces) based on I/O, locking, and/or serializing instructions be used to synchronize access to shared areas of memory in multiple-processor systems. Also, software should not depend on processor ordering in situations where the system hardware does not support this memory-ordering model.

-
2. Specifically, LFENCE does not execute until all prior instructions have completed locally, and no later instruction begins execution until LFENCE completes. As a result, an instruction that loads from memory and that precedes an LFENCE receives data from memory prior to completion of the LFENCE. An LFENCE that follows an instruction that stores to memory might complete before the data being stored have become globally visible. Instructions following an LFENCE may be fetched from memory before the LFENCE, but they will not execute until the LFENCE completes.

8.3 SERIALIZING INSTRUCTIONS

The Intel 64 and IA-32 architectures define several **serializing instructions**. These instructions force the processor to complete all modifications to flags, registers, and memory by previous instructions and to drain all buffered writes to memory before the next instruction is fetched and executed. For example, when a MOV to control register instruction is used to load a new value into control register CR0 to enable protected mode, the processor must perform a serializing operation before it enters protected mode. This serializing operation ensures that all operations that were started while the processor was in real-address mode are completed before the switch to protected mode is made.

The concept of serializing instructions was introduced into the IA-32 architecture with the Pentium processor to support parallel instruction execution. Serializing instructions have no meaning for the Intel486 and earlier processors that do not implement parallel instruction execution.

It is important to note that executing of serializing instructions on P6 and more recent processor families constrain speculative execution because the results of speculatively executed instructions are discarded. The following instructions are serializing instructions:

- **Privileged serializing instructions** — INVD, INVEPT, INVLPG, INVVPID, LGDT, LIDT, LLDT, LTR, MOV (to control register, with the exception of MOV CR8³), MOV (to debug register), WBINVD, and WRMSR⁴.
- **Non-privileged serializing instructions** — CPUID, IRET, and RSM.

When the processor serializes instruction execution, it ensures that all pending memory transactions are completed (including writes stored in its store buffer) before it executes the next instruction. Nothing can pass a serializing instruction and a serializing instruction cannot pass any other instruction (read, write, instruction fetch, or I/O). For example, CPUID can be executed at any privilege level to serialize instruction execution with no effect on program flow, except that the EAX, EBX, ECX, and EDX registers are modified.

The following instructions are memory-ordering instructions, not serializing instructions. These drain the data memory subsystem. They do not serialize the instruction execution stream:⁵

- **Non-privileged memory-ordering instructions** — SFENCE, LFENCE, and MFENCE.

The SFENCE, LFENCE, and MFENCE instructions provide more granularity in controlling the serialization of memory loads and stores (see Section 8.2.5, “Strengthening or Weakening the Memory-Ordering Model”).

The following additional information is worth noting regarding serializing instructions:

- The processor does not write back the contents of modified data in its data cache to external memory when it serializes instruction execution. Software can force modified data to be written back by executing the WBINVD instruction, which is a serializing instruction. The amount of time or cycles for WBINVD to complete will vary due to the size of different cache hierarchies and other factors. As a consequence, the use of the WBINVD instruction can have an impact on interrupt/event response time.
- When an instruction is executed that enables or disables paging (that is, changes the PG flag in control register CR0), the instruction should be followed by a jump instruction. The target instruction of the jump instruction is fetched with the new setting of the PG flag (that is, paging is enabled or disabled), but the jump instruction itself is fetched with the previous setting. The Pentium 4, Intel Xeon, and P6 family processors do not require the jump operation following the move to register CR0 (because any use of the MOV instruction in a Pentium 4, Intel Xeon, or P6 family processor to write to CR0 is completely serializing). However, to maintain backwards and forward compatibility with code written to run on other IA-32 processors, it is recommended that the jump operation be performed.
- Whenever an instruction is executed to change the contents of CR3 while paging is enabled, the next instruction is fetched using the translation tables that correspond to the new value of CR3. Therefore the next instruction and the sequentially following instructions should have a mapping based upon the new value of CR3. (Global entries in the TLBs are not invalidated, see Section 4.10.4, “Invalidation of TLBs and Paging-Structure Caches.”)

3. MOV CR8 is not defined architecturally as a serializing instruction.

4. WRMSR to the IA32_TSC_DEADLINE MSR (MSR index 6E0H) and the X2APIC MSRs (MSR indices 802H to 83FH) are not serializing.

5. LFENCE does provide some guarantees on instruction ordering. It does not execute until all prior instructions have completed locally, and no later instruction begins execution until LFENCE completes.

- The Pentium processor and more recent processor families use branch-prediction techniques to improve performance by prefetching the destination of a branch instruction before the branch instruction is executed. Consequently, instruction execution is not deterministically serialized when a branch instruction is executed.

8.4 MULTIPLE-PROCESSOR (MP) INITIALIZATION

The IA-32 architecture (beginning with the P6 family processors) defines a multiple-processor (MP) initialization protocol called the *Multiprocessor Specification Version 1.4*. This specification defines the boot protocol to be used by IA-32 processors in multiple-processor systems. (Here, **multiple processors** is defined as two or more processors.) The MP initialization protocol has the following important features:

- It supports controlled booting of multiple processors without requiring dedicated system hardware.
- It allows hardware to initiate the booting of a system without the need for a dedicated signal or a predefined boot processor.
- It allows all IA-32 processors to be booted in the same manner, including those supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology.
- The MP initialization protocol also applies to MP systems using Intel 64 processors.

The mechanism for carrying out the MP initialization protocol differs depending on the Intel processor generations. The following bullets summarize the evolution of the changes:

- **For P6 family or older processors supporting MP operations**— The selection of the BSP and APs (see Section 8.4.1, “BSP and AP Processors”) is handled through arbitration on the APIC bus, using BIPI and FIPI messages. These processor generations have CPUID signatures of (family=06H, extended_model=0, model<=0DH), or family <06H. See Section 8.11.1, “Overview of the MP Initialization Process For P6 Family Processors” for a complete discussion of MP initialization for P6 family processors.
- **Early generations of IA processors with family 0FH** — The selection of the BSP and APs (see Section 8.4.1, “BSP and AP Processors”) is handled through arbitration on the system bus, using BIPI and FIPI messages (see Section 8.4.3, “MP Initialization Protocol Algorithm for MP Systems”). These processor generations have CPUID signatures of family=0FH, model=0H, stepping<=09H.
- **Later generations of IA processors with family 0FH, and IA processors with system bus** — The selection of the BSP and APs is handled through a special system bus cycle, without using BIPI and FIPI message arbitration (see Section 8.4.3, “MP Initialization Protocol Algorithm for MP Systems”). These processor generations have CPUID signatures of family=0FH with (model=0H, stepping>=0AH) or (model>0, all steppings); or family=06H, extended_model=0, model>=0EH.
- **All other modern IA processor generations supporting MP operations**— The selection of the BSP and APs in the system is handled by platform-specific arrangement of the combination of hardware, BIOS, and/or configuration input options. The basis of the selection mechanism is similar to those of the Later generations of family 0FH and other Intel processor using system bus (see Section 8.4.3, “MP Initialization Protocol Algorithm for MP Systems”). These processor generations have CPUID signatures of family=06H, extended_model>0.

The family, model, and stepping ID for a processor is given in the EAX register when the CPUID instruction is executed with a value of 1 in the EAX register.

8.4.1 BSP and AP Processors

The MP initialization protocol defines two classes of processors: the bootstrap processor (BSP) and the application processors (APs). Following a power-up or RESET of an MP system, system hardware dynamically selects one of the processors on the system bus as the BSP. The remaining processors are designated as APs.

As part of the BSP selection mechanism, the BSP flag is set in the IA32_APIC_BASE MSR (see Figure 10-5) of the BSP, indicating that it is the BSP. This flag is cleared for all other processors.

The BSP executes the BIOS’s boot-strap code to configure the APIC environment, sets up system-wide data structures, and starts and initializes the APs. When the BSP and APs are initialized, the BSP then begins executing the operating-system initialization code.

Following a power-up or reset, the APs complete a minimal self-configuration, then wait for a startup signal (a SIPI message) from the BSP processor. Upon receiving a SIPI message, an AP executes the BIOS AP configuration code, which ends with the AP being placed in halt state.

For Intel 64 and IA-32 processors supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology, the MP initialization protocol treats each of the logical processors on the system bus or coherent link domain as a separate processor (with a unique APIC ID). During boot-up, one of the logical processors is selected as the BSP and the remainder of the logical processors are designated as APs.

8.4.2 MP Initialization Protocol Requirements and Restrictions

The MP initialization protocol imposes the following requirements and restrictions on the system:

- The MP protocol is executed only after a power-up or RESET. If the MP protocol has completed and a BSP is chosen, subsequent INITs (either to a specific processor or system wide) do not cause the MP protocol to be repeated. Instead, each logical processor examines its BSP flag (in the IA32_APIC_BASE MSR) to determine whether it should execute the BIOS boot-strap code (if it is the BSP) or enter a wait-for-SIPI state (if it is an AP).
- All devices in the system that are capable of delivering interrupts to the processors must be inhibited from doing so for the duration of the MP initialization protocol. The time during which interrupts must be inhibited includes the window between when the BSP issues an INIT-SIPI-SIPI sequence to an AP and when the AP responds to the last SIPI in the sequence.

8.4.3 MP Initialization Protocol Algorithm for MP Systems

Following a power-up or RESET of an MP system, the processors in the system execute the MP initialization protocol algorithm to initialize each of the logical processors on the system bus or coherent link domain. In the course of executing this algorithm, the following boot-up and initialization operations are carried out:

1. Each logical processor is assigned a unique APIC ID, based on system topology. The unique ID is a 32-bit value if the processor supports CPUID leaf 0BH, otherwise the unique ID is an 8-bit value. (see Section 8.4.5, "Identifying Logical Processors in an MP System").
2. Each logical processor is assigned a unique arbitration priority based on its APIC ID.
3. Each logical processor executes its internal BIST simultaneously with the other logical processors in the system.
4. Upon completion of the BIST, the logical processors use a hardware-defined selection mechanism to select the BSP and the APs from the available logical processors on the system bus. The BSP selection mechanism differs depending on the family, model, and stepping IDs of the processors, as follows:
 - Later generations of IA processors within family 0FH (see Section 8.4), IA processors with system bus (family=06H, extended_model=0, model>=0EH), or all other modern Intel processors (family=06H, extended_model>0):
 - The logical processors begin monitoring the BNR# signal, which is toggling. When the BNR# pin stops toggling, each processor attempts to issue a NOP special cycle on the system bus.
 - The logical processor with the highest arbitration priority succeeds in issuing a NOP special cycle and is nominated the BSP. This processor sets the BSP flag in its IA32_APIC_BASE MSR, then fetches and begins executing BIOS boot-strap code, beginning at the reset vector (physical address FFFF FFF0H).
 - The remaining logical processors (that failed in issuing a NOP special cycle) are designated as APs. They leave their BSP flags in the clear state and enter a "wait-for-SIPI state."
 - Early generations of IA processors within family 0FH (family=0FH, model=0H, stepping<=09H), P6 family or older processors supporting MP operations (family=06H, extended_model=0, model<=0DH; or family<06H):
 - Each processor broadcasts a BIPI to "all including self." The first processor that broadcasts a BIPI (and thus receives its own BIPI vector), selects itself as the BSP and sets the BSP flag in its IA32_APIC_BASE

MSR. (See Section 8.11.1, “Overview of the MP Initialization Process For P6 Family Processors” for a description of the BIPI, FIPI, and SIPI messages.)

- The remainder of the processors (which were not selected as the BSP) are designated as APs. They leave their BSP flags in the clear state and enter a “wait-for-SIPI state.”
 - The newly established BSP broadcasts an FIPI message to “all including self,” which the BSP and APs treat as an end of MP initialization signal. Only the processor with its BSP flag set responds to the FIPI message. It responds by fetching and executing the BIOS boot-strap code, beginning at the reset vector (physical address FFFF FFF0H).
5. As part of the boot-strap code, the BSP creates an ACPI table and/or an MP table and adds its initial APIC ID to these tables as appropriate.
 6. At the end of the boot-strap procedure, the BSP sets a processor counter to 1, then broadcasts a SIPI message to all the APs in the system. Here, the SIPI message contains a vector to the BIOS AP initialization code (at 000VV000H, where VV is the vector contained in the SIPI message).
 7. The first action of the AP initialization code is to set up a race (among the APs) to a BIOS initialization semaphore. The first AP to the semaphore begins executing the initialization code. (See Section 8.4.4, “MP Initialization Example,” for semaphore implementation details.) As part of the AP initialization procedure, the AP adds its APIC ID number to the ACPI and/or MP tables as appropriate and increments the processor counter by 1. At the completion of the initialization procedure, the AP executes a CLI instruction and halts itself.
 8. When each of the APs has gained access to the semaphore and executed the AP initialization code, the BSP establishes a count for the number of processors connected to the system bus, completes executing the BIOS boot-strap code, and then begins executing operating-system boot-strap and start-up code.
 9. While the BSP is executing operating-system boot-strap and start-up code, the APs remain in the halted state. In this state they will respond only to INITs, NMIs, and SMIs. They will also respond to snoops and to assertions of the STPCLK# pin.

The following section gives an example (with code) of the MP initialization protocol for of multiple processors operating in an MP configuration.

Chapter 2, “Model-Specific Registers (MSRs)” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 4* describes how to program the LINT[0:1] pins of the processor’s local APICs after an MP configuration has been completed.

8.4.4 MP Initialization Example

The following example illustrates the use of the MP initialization protocol used to initialize processors in an MP system after the BSP and APs have been established. The code runs on Intel 64 or IA-32 processors that use a protocol. This includes P6 Family processors, Pentium 4 processors, Intel Core Duo, Intel Core 2 Duo and Intel Xeon processors.

The following constants and data definitions are used in the accompanying code examples. They are based on the addresses of the APIC registers defined in Table 10-1.

```

ICR_LOW      EQU 0FEE00300H
SVR          EQU 0FEE000F0H
APIC_ID      EQU 0FEE00020H
LVT3        EQU 0FEE00370H
APIC_ENABLED EQU 0100H
BOOT_ID      DD ?
COUNT      EQU 00H
VACANT       EQU 00H
    
```

8.4.4.1 Typical BSP Initialization Sequence

After the BSP and APs have been selected (by means of a hardware protocol, see Section 8.4.3, “MP Initialization Protocol Algorithm for MP Systems”), the BSP begins executing BIOS boot-strap code (POST) at the normal IA-32 architecture starting address (FFFF FFF0H). The boot-strap code typically performs the following operations:

1. Initializes memory.
2. Loads the microcode update into the processor.
3. Initializes the MTRRs.
4. Enables the caches.
5. Executes the CPUID instruction with a value of 0H in the EAX register, then reads the EBX, ECX, and EDX registers to determine if the BSP is “GenuineIntel.”
6. Executes the CPUID instruction with a value of 1H in the EAX register, then saves the values in the EAX, ECX, and EDX registers in a system configuration space in RAM for use later.
7. Loads start-up code for the AP to execute into a 4-KByte page in the lower 1 MByte of memory.
8. Switches to protected mode and ensures that the APIC address space is mapped to the strong uncacheable (UC) memory type.
9. Determine the BSP’s APIC ID from the local APIC ID register (default is 0), the code snippet below is an example that applies to logical processors in a system whose local APIC units operate in xAPIC mode that APIC registers are accessed using memory mapped interface:

```
MOV ESI, APIC_ID; Address of local APIC ID register
MOV EAX, [ESI];
AND EAX, 0FF000000H; Zero out all other bits except APIC ID
MOV BOOT_ID, EAX; Save in memory
```

Saves the APIC ID in the ACPI and/or MP tables and optionally in the system configuration space in RAM.

10. Converts the base address of the 4-KByte page for the AP’s bootup code into 8-bit vector. The 8-bit vector defines the address of a 4-KByte page in the real-address mode address space (1-MByte space). For example, a vector of 0BDH specifies a start-up memory address of 000BD000H.
11. Enables the local APIC by setting bit 8 of the APIC spurious vector register (SVR).


```
MOV ESI, SVR; Address of SVR
MOV EAX, [ESI];
OR EAX, APIC_ENABLED; Set bit 8 to enable (0 on reset)
MOV [ESI], EAX;
```
12. Sets up the LVT error handling entry by establishing an 8-bit vector for the APIC error handler.

```
MOV ESI, LVT3;
MOV EAX, [ESI];
AND EAX, 0FFFFFF0H; Clear out previous vector.
OR EAX, 000000xxH; xx is the 8-bit vector the APIC error handler.
MOV [ESI], EAX;
```

13. Initializes the Lock Semaphore variable VACANT to 00H. The APs use this semaphore to determine the order in which they execute BIOS AP initialization code.
14. Performs the following operation to set up the BSP to detect the presence of APs in the system and the number of processors (within a finite duration, minimally 100 milliseconds):
 - Sets the value of the COUNT variable to 1.
 - In the AP BIOS initialization code, the AP will increment the COUNT variable to indicate its presence. The finite duration while waiting for the COUNT to be updated can be accomplished with a timer. When the timer expires, the BSP checks the value of the COUNT variable. If the timer expires and the COUNT variable has not been incremented, no APs are present or some error has occurred.

- Broadcasts an INIT-SIPI-SIPI IPI sequence to the APs to wake them up and initialize them. If software knows how many logical processors it expects to wake up, it may choose to poll the COUNT variable. If the expected processors show up before the 100 millisecond timer expires, the timer can be canceled and skip to step 16. The left-hand-side of the procedure illustrated in Table 8-1 provides an algorithm when the expected processor count is unknown. The right-hand-side of Table 8-1 can be used when the expected processor count is known.

Table 8-1. Broadcast INIT-SIPI-SIPI Sequence and Choice of Timeouts

INIT-SIPI-SIPI when the expected processor count is unknown	INIT-SIPI-SIPI when the expected processor count is known
MOV ESI, ICR_LOw; Load address of ICR low dword into ESI. MOV EAX, 000C4500H; Load ICR encoding for broadcast INIT IPI ; to all APs into EAX. MOV [ESI], EAX; Broadcast INIT IPI to all APs ; 10-millisecond delay loop. MOV EAX, 000C46XXH; Load ICR encoding for broadcast SIPI IP ; to all APs into EAX, where xx is the vector computed in step 10. MOV [ESI], EAX; Broadcast SIPI IPI to all APs ; 200-microsecond delay loop MOV [ESI], EAX; Broadcast second SIPI IPI to all APs ; Waits for the timer interrupt until the timer expires	MOV ESI, ICR_LOw; Load address of ICR low dword into ESI. MOV EAX, 000C4500H; Load ICR encoding for broadcast INIT IPI ; to all APs into EAX. MOV [ESI], EAX; Broadcast INIT IPI to all APs ; 10-millisecond delay loop. MOV EAX, 000C46XXH; Load ICR encoding for broadcast SIPI IP ; to all APs into EAX, where xx is the vector computed in step 10. MOV [ESI], EAX; Broadcast SIPI IPI to all APs ; 200 microsecond delay loop with check to see if COUNT has ; reached the expected processor count. If COUNT reaches ; expected processor count, cancel timer and go to step 16. MOV [ESI], EAX; Broadcast second SIPI IPI to all APs ; Wait for the timer interrupt polling COUNT. If COUNT reaches ; expected processor count, cancel timer and go to step 16. ; If timer expires, go to step 16.

- Reads and evaluates the COUNT variable and establishes a processor count.
- If necessary, reconfigures the APIC and continues with the remaining system diagnostics as appropriate.

8.4.4.2 Typical AP Initialization Sequence

When an AP receives the SIPI, it begins executing BIOS AP initialization code at the vector encoded in the SIPI. The AP initialization code typically performs the following operations:

- Waits on the BIOS initialization Lock Semaphore. When control of the semaphore is attained, initialization continues.
- Loads the microcode update into the processor.
- Initializes the MTRRs (using the same mapping that was used for the BSP).
- Enables the cache.
- Executes the CPUID instruction with a value of 0H in the EAX register, then reads the EBX, ECX, and EDX registers to determine if the AP is "GenuineIntel."
- Executes the CPUID instruction with a value of 1H in the EAX register, then saves the values in the EAX, ECX, and EDX registers in a system configuration space in RAM for use later.
- Switches to protected mode and ensures that the APIC address space is mapped to the strong uncacheable (UC) memory type.
- Determines the AP's APIC ID from the local APIC ID register, and adds it to the MP and ACPI tables and optionally to the system configuration space in RAM.
- Initializes and configures the local APIC by setting bit 8 in the SVR register and setting up the LVT3 (error LVT) for error handling (as described in steps 9 and 10 in Section 8.4.4.1, "Typical BSP Initialization Sequence").

10. Configures the APs SMI execution environment. (Each AP and the BSP must have a different SMBASE address.)
11. Increments the COUNT variable by 1.
12. Releases the semaphore.
13. Executes one of the following:
 - the CLI and HLT instructions (if MONITOR/MWAIT is not supported), or
 - the CLI, MONITOR and MWAIT sequence to enter a deep C-state.
14. Waits for an INIT IPI.

8.4.5 Identifying Logical Processors in an MP System

After the BIOS has completed the MP initialization protocol, each logical processor can be uniquely identified by its local APIC ID. Software can access these APIC IDs in either of the following ways:

- **Read APIC ID for a local APIC** — Code running on a logical processor can read APIC ID in one of two ways depending on the local APIC unit is operating in x2APIC mode (see *Intel® 64 Architecture x2APIC Specification*) or in xAPIC mode:
 - If the local APIC unit supports x2APIC and is operating in x2APIC mode, 32-bit APIC ID can be read by executing a RDMSR instruction to read the processor's x2APIC ID register. This method is equivalent to executing CPUID leaf 0BH described below.
 - If the local APIC unit is operating in xAPIC mode, 8-bit APIC ID can be read by executing a MOV instruction to read the processor's local APIC ID register (see Section 10.4.6, "Local APIC ID"). This is the ID to use for directing physical destination mode interrupts to the processor.
- **Read ACPI or MP table** — As part of the MP initialization protocol, the BIOS creates an ACPI table and an MP table. These tables are defined in the Multiprocessor Specification Version 1.4 and provide software with a list of the processors in the system and their local APIC IDs. The format of the ACPI table is derived from the ACPI specification, which is an industry standard power management and platform configuration specification for MP systems.
- **Read Initial APIC ID** (If the processor does not support CPUID leaf 0BH) — An APIC ID is assigned to a logical processor during power up. This is the initial APIC ID reported by CPUID.1:EBX[31:24] and may be different from the current value read from the local APIC. The initial APIC ID can be used to determine the topological relationship between logical processors for multi-processor systems that do not support CPUID leaf 0BH.

Bits in the 8-bit initial APIC ID can be interpreted using several bit masks. Each bit mask can be used to extract an identifier to represent a hierarchical level of the multi-threading resource topology in an MP system (See Section 8.9.1, "Hierarchical Mapping of Shared Resources"). The initial APIC ID may consist of up to four bit-fields. In a non-clustered MP system, the field consists of up to three bit fields.
- **Read 32-bit APIC ID from CPUID leaf 0BH** (If the processor supports CPUID leaf 0BH) — A unique APIC ID is assigned to a logical processor during power up. This APIC ID is reported by CPUID.0BH:EDX[31:0] as a 32-bit value. Use the 32-bit APIC ID and CPUID leaf 0BH to determine the topological relationship between logical processors if the processor supports CPUID leaf 0BH.

Bits in the 32-bit x2APIC ID can be extracted into sub-fields using CPUID leaf 0BH parameters. (See Section 8.9.1, "Hierarchical Mapping of Shared Resources").

Figure 8-2 shows two examples of APIC ID bit fields in earlier single-core processors. In single-core Intel Xeon processors, the APIC ID assigned to a logical processor during power-up and initialization is 8 bits. Bits 2:1 form a 2-bit physical package identifier (which can also be thought of as a socket identifier). In systems that configure physical processors in clusters, bits 4:3 form a 2-bit cluster ID. Bit 0 is used in the Intel Xeon processor MP to identify the two logical processors within the package (see Section 8.9.3, "Hierarchical ID of Logical Processors in an MP System"). For Intel Xeon processors that do not support Intel Hyper-Threading Technology, bit 0 is always set to 0; for Intel Xeon processors supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology, bit 0 performs the same function as it does for Intel Xeon processor MP.

For more recent multi-core processors, see Section 8.9.1, "Hierarchical Mapping of Shared Resources" for a complete description of the topological relationships between logical processors and bit field locations within an initial APIC ID across Intel 64 and IA-32 processor families.

Note the number of bit fields and the width of bit-fields are dependent on processor and platform hardware capabilities. Software should determine these at runtime. When initial APIC IDs are assigned to logical processors, the value of APIC ID assigned to a logical processor will respect the bit-field boundaries corresponding core, physical package, etc. Additional examples of the bit fields in the initial APIC ID of multi-threading capable systems are shown in Section 8.9.

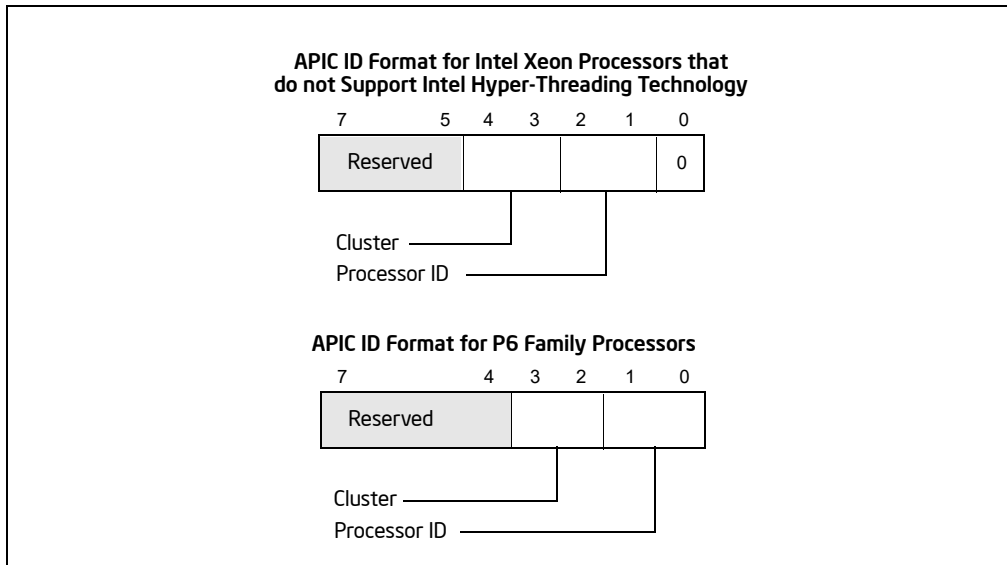


Figure 8-2. Interpretation of APIC ID in Early MP Systems

For P6 family processors, the APIC ID that is assigned to a processor during power-up and initialization is 4 bits (see Figure 8-2). Here, bits 0 and 1 form a 2-bit processor (or socket) identifier and bits 2 and 3 form a 2-bit cluster ID.

8.5 INTEL® HYPER-THREADING TECHNOLOGY AND INTEL® MULTI-CORE TECHNOLOGY

Intel Hyper-Threading Technology and Intel multi-core technology are extensions to Intel 64 and IA-32 architectures that enable a single physical processor to execute two or more separate code streams (called *threads*) concurrently. In Intel Hyper-Threading Technology, a single processor core provides two logical processors that share execution resources (see Section 8.7, “Intel® Hyper-Threading Technology Architecture”). In Intel multi-core technology, a physical processor package provides two or more processor cores. Both configurations require chipsets and a BIOS that support the technologies.

Software should not rely on processor names to determine whether a processor supports Intel Hyper-Threading Technology or Intel multi-core technology. Use the CPUID instruction to determine processor capability (see Section 8.6.2, “Initializing Multi-Core Processors”).

8.6 DETECTING HARDWARE MULTI-THREADING SUPPORT AND TOPOLOGY

Use the CPUID instruction to detect the presence of hardware multi-threading support in a physical processor. Hardware multi-threading can support several varieties of multigrade and/or Intel Hyper-Threading Technology. CPUID instruction provides several sets of parameter information to aid software enumerating topology information. The relevant topology enumeration parameters provided by CPUID include:

- **Hardware Multi-Threading feature flag (CPUID.1:EDX[28] = 1)** — Indicates when set that the physical package is capable of supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology and/or multiple cores.

- **Processor topology enumeration parameters for 8-bit APIC ID:**
 - **Addressable IDs for Logical processors in the same Package (CPUID.1:EBX[23:16])** — Indicates the maximum number of addressable ID for logical processors in a physical package. Within a physical package, there may be addressable IDs that are not occupied by any logical processors. This parameter does not represent the hardware capability of the physical processor.⁶
- **Addressable IDs for processor cores in the same Package⁷ (CPUID.(EAX=4, ECX=0⁸):EAX[31:26] + 1 = Y)** — Indicates the maximum number of addressable IDs attributable to processor cores (Y) in the physical package.
- **Extended Processor Topology Enumeration parameters for 32-bit APIC ID:** Intel 64 processors supporting CPUID leaf 0BH will assign unique APIC IDs to each logical processor in the system. CPUID leaf 0BH reports the 32-bit APIC ID and provide topology enumeration parameters. See CPUID instruction reference pages in *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 2A*.

The CPUID feature flag may indicate support for hardware multi-threading when only one logical processor available in the package. In this case, the decimal value represented by bits 16 through 23 in the EBX register will have a value of 1.

Software should note that the number of logical processors enabled by system software may be less than the value of "Addressable IDs for Logical processors". Similarly, the number of cores enabled by system software may be less than the value of "Addressable IDs for processor cores".

Software can detect the availability of the CPUID extended topology enumeration leaf (0BH) by performing two steps:

- Check maximum input value for basic CPUID information by executing CPUID with EAX= 0. If CPUID.0H:EAX is greater than or equal to 11 (0BH), then proceed to next step,
- Check CPUID.EAX=0BH, ECX=0H:EBX is non-zero.

If both of the above conditions are true, extended topology enumeration leaf is available. Note the presence of CPUID leaf 0BH in a processor does not guarantee support that the local APIC supports x2APIC. If CPUID.(EAX=0BH, ECX=0H):EBX returns zero and maximum input value for basic CPUID information is greater than 0BH, then CPUID.0BH leaf is not supported on that processor.

8.6.1 Initializing Processors Supporting Hyper-Threading Technology

The initialization process for an MP system that contains processors supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology is the same as for conventional MP systems (see Section 8.4, "Multiple-Processor (MP) Initialization"). One logical processor in the system is selected as the BSP and other processors (or logical processors) are designated as APs. The initialization process is identical to that described in Section 8.4.3, "MP Initialization Protocol Algorithm for MP Systems," and Section 8.4.4, "MP Initialization Example."

During initialization, each logical processor is assigned an APIC ID that is stored in the local APIC ID register for each logical processor. If two or more processors supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology are present, each logical processor on the system bus is assigned a unique ID (see Section 8.9.3, "Hierarchical ID of Logical Processors in an MP System"). Once logical processors have APIC IDs, software communicates with them by sending APIC IPI messages.

6. Operating system and BIOS may implement features that reduce the number of logical processors available in a platform to applications at runtime to less than the number of physical packages times the number of hardware-capable logical processors per package.

7. Software must check CPUID for its support of leaf 4 when implementing support for multi-core. If CPUID leaf 4 is not available at runtime, software should handle the situation as if there is only one core per package.

8. Maximum number of cores in the physical package must be queried by executing CPUID with EAX=4 and a valid ECX input value. Valid ECX input values start from 0.

8.6.2 Initializing Multi-Core Processors

The initialization process for an MP system that contains multi-core Intel 64 or IA-32 processors is the same as for conventional MP systems (see Section 8.4, “Multiple-Processor (MP) Initialization”). A logical processor in one core is selected as the BSP; other logical processors are designated as APs.

During initialization, each logical processor is assigned an APIC ID. Once logical processors have APIC IDs, software may communicate with them by sending APIC IPI messages.

8.6.3 Executing Multiple Threads on an Intel® 64 or IA-32 Processor Supporting Hardware Multi-Threading

Upon completing the operating system boot-up procedure, the bootstrap processor (BSP) executes operating system code. Other logical processors are placed in the halt state. To execute a code stream (thread) on a halted logical processor, the operating system issues an interprocessor interrupt (IPI) addressed to the halted logical processor. In response to the IPI, the processor wakes up and begins executing the code identified by the vector received as part of the IPI.

To manage execution of multiple threads on logical processors, an operating system can use conventional symmetric multiprocessing (SMP) techniques. For example, the operating-system can use a time-slice or load balancing mechanism to periodically interrupt each of the active logical processors. Upon interrupting a logical processor, the operating system checks its run queue for a thread waiting to be executed and dispatches the thread to the interrupted logical processor.

8.6.4 Handling Interrupts on an IA-32 Processor Supporting Hardware Multi-Threading

Interrupts are handled on processors supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology as they are on conventional MP systems. External interrupts are received by the I/O APIC, which distributes them as interrupt messages to specific logical processors (see Figure 8-3).

Logical processors can also send IPIs to other logical processors by writing to the ICR register of its local APIC (see Section 10.6, “Issuing Interprocessor Interrupts”). This also applies to dual-core processors.

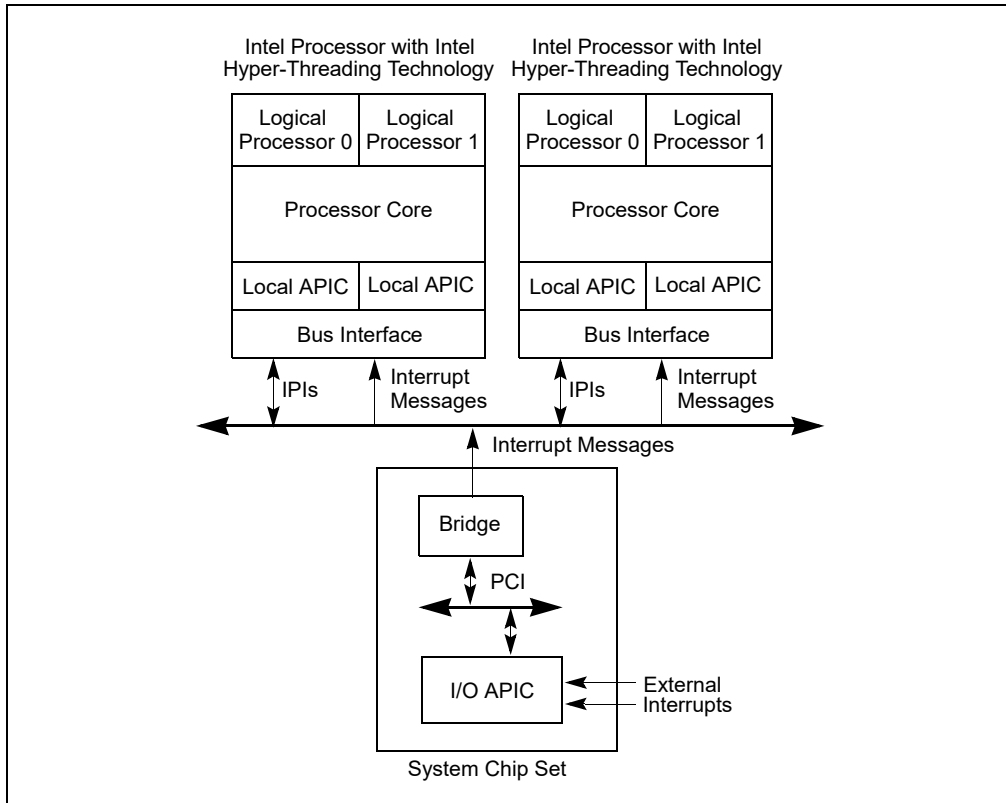


Figure 8-3. Local APICs and I/O APIC in MP System Supporting Intel HT Technology

8.7 INTEL® HYPER-THREADING TECHNOLOGY ARCHITECTURE

Figure 8-4 shows a generalized view of an Intel processor supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology, using the original Intel Xeon processor MP as an example. This implementation of the Intel Hyper-Threading Technology consists of two logical processors (each represented by a separate architectural state) which share the processor's execution engine and the bus interface. Each logical processor also has its own advanced programmable interrupt controller (APIC).

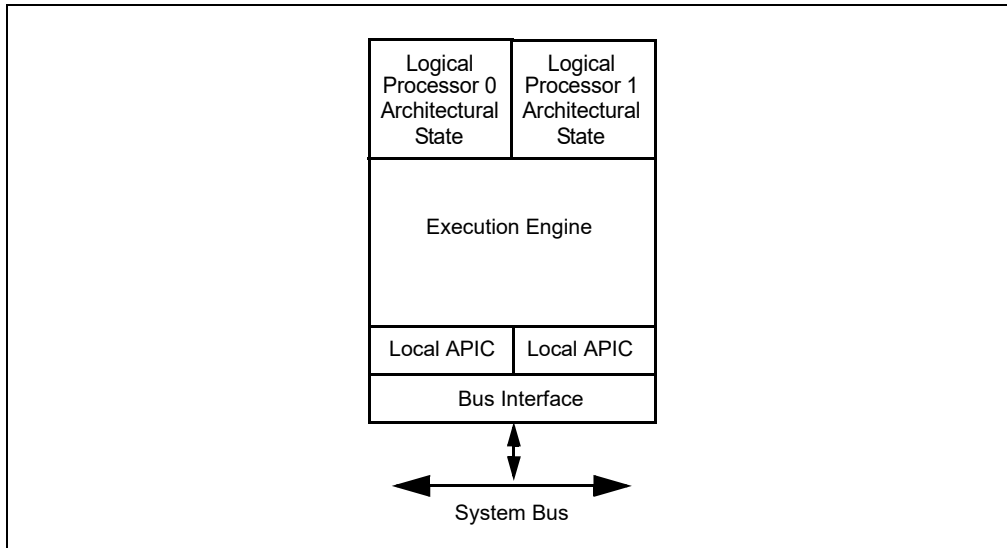


Figure 8-4. IA-32 Processor with Two Logical Processors Supporting Intel HT Technology

8.7.1 State of the Logical Processors

The following features are part of the architectural state of logical processors within Intel 64 or IA-32 processors supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology. The features can be subdivided into three groups:

- Duplicated for each logical processor
- Shared by logical processors in a physical processor
- Shared or duplicated, depending on the implementation

The following features are duplicated for each logical processor:

- General purpose registers (EAX, EBX, ECX, EDX, ESI, EDI, ESP, and EBP)
- Segment registers (CS, DS, SS, ES, FS, and GS)
- EFLAGS and EIP registers. Note that the CS and EIP/RIP registers for each logical processor point to the instruction stream for the thread being executed by the logical processor.
- x87 FPU registers (ST0 through ST7, status word, control word, tag word, data operand pointer, and instruction pointer)
- MMX registers (MM0 through MM7)
- XMM registers (XMM0 through XMM7) and the MXCSR register
- Control registers and system table pointer registers (GDTR, LDTR, IDTR, task register)
- Debug registers (DR0, DR1, DR2, DR3, DR6, DR7) and the debug control MSRs
- Machine check global status (IA32_MCG_STATUS) and machine check capability (IA32_MCG_CAP) MSRs
- Thermal clock modulation and ACPI Power management control MSRs
- Time stamp counter MSRs
- Most of the other MSR registers, including the page attribute table (PAT). See the exceptions below.
- Local APIC registers.
- Additional general purpose registers (R8-R15), XMM registers (XMM8-XMM15), control register, IA32_EFER on Intel 64 processors.

The following features are shared by logical processors:

- Memory type range registers (MTRRs)

Whether the following features are shared or duplicated is implementation-specific:

- IA32_MISC_ENABLE MSR (MSR address 1A0H)

- Machine check architecture (MCA) MSR (except for the IA32_MCG_STATUS and IA32_MCG_CAP MSRs)
- Performance monitoring control and counter MSRs

8.7.2 APIC Functionality

When a processor supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology support is initialized, each logical processor is assigned a local APIC ID (see Table 10-1). The local APIC ID serves as an ID for the logical processor and is stored in the logical processor's APIC ID register. If two or more processors supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology are present in a dual processor (DP) or MP system, each logical processor on the system bus is assigned a unique local APIC ID (see Section 8.9.3, "Hierarchical ID of Logical Processors in an MP System").

Software communicates with local processors using the APIC's interprocessor interrupt (IPI) messaging facility. Setup and programming for APICs is identical in processors that support and do not support Intel Hyper-Threading Technology. See Chapter 10, "Advanced Programmable Interrupt Controller (APIC)," for a detailed discussion.

8.7.3 Memory Type Range Registers (MTRR)

MTRRs in a processor supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology are shared by logical processors. When one logical processor updates the setting of the MTRRs, settings are automatically shared with the other logical processors in the same physical package.

The architectures require that all MP systems based on Intel 64 and IA-32 processors (this includes logical processors) must use an identical MTRR memory map. This gives software a consistent view of memory, independent of the processor on which it is running. See Section 11.11, "Memory Type Range Registers (MTRRs)," for information on setting up MTRRs.

8.7.4 Page Attribute Table (PAT)

Each logical processor has its own PAT MSR (IA32_PAT). However, as described in Section 11.12, "Page Attribute Table (PAT)," the PAT MSR settings must be the same for all processors in a system, including the logical processors.

8.7.5 Machine Check Architecture

In the Intel HT Technology context as implemented by processors based on Intel NetBurst[®] microarchitecture, all of the machine check architecture (MCA) MSR (except for the IA32_MCG_STATUS and IA32_MCG_CAP MSRs) are duplicated for each logical processor. This permits logical processors to initialize, configure, query, and handle machine-check exceptions simultaneously within the same physical processor. The design is compatible with machine check exception handlers that follow the guidelines given in Chapter 15, "Machine-Check Architecture."

The IA32_MCG_STATUS MSR is duplicated for each logical processor so that its machine check in progress bit field (MCIP) can be used to detect recursion on the part of MCA handlers. In addition, the MSR allows each logical processor to determine that a machine-check exception is in progress independent of the actions of another logical processor in the same physical package.

Because the logical processors within a physical package are tightly coupled with respect to shared hardware resources, both logical processors are notified of machine check errors that occur within a given physical processor. If machine-check exceptions are enabled when a fatal error is reported, all the logical processors within a physical package are dispatched to the machine-check exception handler. If machine-check exceptions are disabled, the logical processors enter the shutdown state and assert the IERR# signal.

When enabling machine-check exceptions, the MCE flag in control register CR4 should be set for each logical processor.

On Intel Atom family processors that support Intel Hyper-Threading Technology, the MCA facilities are shared between all logical processors on the same processor core.

8.7.6 Debug Registers and Extensions

Each logical processor has its own set of debug registers (DR0, DR1, DR2, DR3, DR6, DR7) and its own debug control MSR. These can be set to control and record debug information for each logical processor independently. Each logical processor also has its own last branch records (LBR) stack.

8.7.7 Performance Monitoring Counters

Performance counters and their companion control MSRs are shared between the logical processors within a processor core for processors based on Intel NetBurst microarchitecture. As a result, software must manage the use of these resources. The performance counter interrupts, events, and precise event monitoring support can be set up and allocated on a per thread (per logical processor) basis.

See Section 18.6.4, "Performance Monitoring and Intel Hyper-Threading Technology in Processors Based on Intel NetBurst[®] Microarchitecture," for a discussion of performance monitoring in the Intel Xeon processor MP.

In Intel Atom processor family that support Intel Hyper-Threading Technology, the performance counters (general-purpose and fixed-function counters) and their companion control MSRs are duplicated for each logical processor.

8.7.8 IA32_MISC_ENABLE MSR

The IA32_MISC_ENABLE MSR (MSR address 1A0H) is generally shared between the logical processors in a processor core supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology. However, some bit fields within IA32_MISC_ENABLE MSR may be duplicated per logical processor. The partition of shared or duplicated bit fields within IA32_MISC_ENABLE is implementation dependent. Software should program duplicated fields carefully on all logical processors in the system to ensure consistent behavior.

8.7.9 Memory Ordering

The logical processors in an Intel 64 or IA-32 processor supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology obey the same rules for memory ordering as Intel 64 or IA-32 processors without Intel HT Technology (see Section 8.2, "Memory Ordering"). Each logical processor uses a processor-ordered memory model that can be further defined as "write-ordered with store buffer forwarding." All mechanisms for strengthening or weakening the memory-ordering model to handle special programming situations apply to each logical processor.

8.7.10 Serializing Instructions

As a general rule, when a logical processor in a processor supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology executes a serializing instruction, only that logical processor is affected by the operation. An exception to this rule is the execution of the WBINVD, INVD, and WRMSR instructions; and the MOV CR instruction when the state of the CD flag in control register CR0 is modified. Here, both logical processors are serialized.

8.7.11 Microcode Update Resources

In an Intel processor supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology, the microcode update facilities are shared between the logical processors; either logical processor can initiate an update. Each logical processor has its own BIOS signature MSR (IA32_BIOS_SIGN_ID at MSR address 8BH). When a logical processor performs an update for the physical processor, the IA32_BIOS_SIGN_ID MSRs for resident logical processors are updated with identical information. If logical processors initiate an update simultaneously, the processor core provides the necessary synchronization needed to ensure that only one update is performed at a time.

NOTE

Some processors (prior to the introduction of Intel 64 Architecture and based on Intel NetBurst microarchitecture) do not support simultaneous loading of microcode update to the sibling logical processors in the same core. All other processors support logical processors initiating an update simultaneously. Intel recommends a common approach that the microcode loader use the sequential technique described in Section 9.11.6.3.

8.7.12 Self Modifying Code

Intel processors supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology support self-modifying code, where data writes modify instructions cached or currently in flight. They also support cross-modifying code, where on an MP system writes generated by one processor modify instructions cached or currently in flight on another. See Section 8.1.3, “Handling Self- and Cross-Modifying Code,” for a description of the requirements for self- and cross-modifying code in an IA-32 processor.

8.7.13 Implementation-Specific Intel HT Technology Facilities

The following non-architectural facilities are implementation-specific in IA-32 processors supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology:

- Caches
- Translation lookaside buffers (TLBs)
- Thermal monitoring facilities

The Intel Xeon processor MP implementation is described in the following sections.

8.7.13.1 Processor Caches

For processors supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology, the caches are shared. Any cache manipulation instruction that is executed on one logical processor has a global effect on the cache hierarchy of the physical processor. Note the following:

- **WBINVD instruction** — The entire cache hierarchy is invalidated after modified data is written back to memory. All logical processors are stopped from executing until after the write-back and invalidate operation is completed. A special bus cycle is sent to all caching agents. The amount of time or cycles for WBINVD to complete will vary due to the size of different cache hierarchies and other factors. As a consequence, the use of the WBINVD instruction can have an impact on interrupt/event response time.
- **INVD instruction** — The entire cache hierarchy is invalidated without writing back modified data to memory. All logical processors are stopped from executing until after the invalidate operation is completed. A special bus cycle is sent to all caching agents.
- **CLFLUSH and CLFLUSHOPT instructions** — The specified cache line is invalidated from the cache hierarchy after any modified data is written back to memory and a bus cycle is sent to all caching agents, regardless of which logical processor caused the cache line to be filled.
- **CD flag in control register CR0** — Each logical processor has its own CR0 control register, and thus its own CD flag in CR0. The CD flags for the two logical processors are ORed together, such that when any logical processor sets its CD flag, the entire cache is nominally disabled.

8.7.13.2 Processor Translation Lookaside Buffers (TLBs)

In processors supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology, data cache TLBs are shared. The instruction cache TLB may be duplicated or shared in each logical processor, depending on implementation specifics of different processor families.

Entries in the TLBs are tagged with an ID that indicates the logical processor that initiated the translation. This tag applies even for translations that are marked global using the page-global feature for memory paging. See Section 4.10, “Caching Translation Information,” for information about global translations.

When a logical processor performs a TLB invalidation operation, only the TLB entries that are tagged for that logical processor are guaranteed to be flushed. This protocol applies to all TLB invalidation operations, including writes to control registers CR3 and CR4 and uses of the INVLPG instruction.

8.7.13.3 Thermal Monitor

In a processor that supports Intel Hyper-Threading Technology, logical processors share the catastrophic shutdown detector and the automatic thermal monitoring mechanism (see Section 14.7, “Thermal Monitoring and Protection”). Sharing results in the following behavior:

- If the processor’s core temperature rises above the preset catastrophic shutdown temperature, the processor core halts execution, which causes both logical processors to stop execution.
- When the processor’s core temperature rises above the preset automatic thermal monitor trip temperature, the frequency of the processor core is automatically modulated, which effects the execution speed of both logical processors.

For software controlled clock modulation, each logical processor has its own IA32_CLOCK_MODULATION MSR, allowing clock modulation to be enabled or disabled on a logical processor basis. Typically, if software controlled clock modulation is going to be used, the feature must be enabled for all the logical processors within a physical processor and the modulation duty cycle must be set to the same value for each logical processor. If the duty cycle values differ between the logical processors, the processor clock will be modulated at the highest duty cycle selected.

8.7.13.4 External Signal Compatibility

This section describes the constraints on external signals received through the pins of a processor supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology and how these signals are shared between its logical processors.

- **STPCLK#** — A single STPCLK# pin is provided on the physical package of the Intel Xeon processor MP. External control logic uses this pin for power management within the system. When the STPCLK# signal is asserted, the processor core transitions to the stop-grant state, where instruction execution is halted but the processor core continues to respond to snoop transactions. Regardless of whether the logical processors are active or halted when the STPCLK# signal is asserted, execution is stopped on both logical processors and neither will respond to interrupts.

In MP systems, the STPCLK# pins on all physical processors are generally tied together. As a result this signal affects all the logical processors within the system simultaneously.

- **LINT0 and LINT1 pins** — A processor supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology has only one set of LINT0 and LINT1 pins, which are shared between the logical processors. When one of these pins is asserted, both logical processors respond unless the pin has been masked in the APIC local vector tables for one or both of the logical processors.

Typically in MP systems, the LINT0 and LINT1 pins are not used to deliver interrupts to the logical processors. Instead all interrupts are delivered to the local processors through the I/O APIC.

- **A20M# pin** — On an IA-32 processor, the A20M# pin is typically provided for compatibility with the Intel 286 processor. Asserting this pin causes bit 20 of the physical address to be masked (forced to zero) for all external bus memory accesses. Processors supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology provide one A20M# pin, which affects the operation of both logical processors within the physical processor.

The functionality of A20M# is used primarily by older operating systems and not used by modern operating systems. On newer Intel 64 processors, A20M# may be absent.

8.8 MULTI-CORE ARCHITECTURE

This section describes the architecture of Intel 64 and IA-32 processors supporting dual-core and quad-core technology. The discussion is applicable to the Intel Pentium processor Extreme Edition, Pentium D, Intel Core Duo, Intel Core 2 Duo, Dual-core Intel Xeon processor, Intel Core 2 Quad processors, and quad-core Intel Xeon processors. Features vary across different microarchitectures and are detectable using CPUID.

In general, each processor core has dedicated microarchitectural resources identical to a single-processor implementation of the underlying microarchitecture without hardware multi-threading capability. Each logical processor in a dual-core processor (whether supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology or not) has its own APIC functionality, PAT, machine check architecture, debug registers and extensions. Each logical processor handles serialization instructions or self-modifying code on its own. Memory order is handled the same way as in Intel Hyper-Threading Technology.

The topology of the cache hierarchy (with respect to whether a given cache level is shared by one or more processor cores or by all logical processors in the physical package) depends on the processor implementation. Software must use the deterministic cache parameter leaf of CPUID instruction to discover the cache-sharing topology between the logical processors in a multi-threading environment.

8.8.1 Logical Processor Support

The topological composition of processor cores and logical processors in a multi-core processor can be discovered using CPUID. Within each processor core, one or more logical processors may be available.

System software must follow the requirement MP initialization sequences (see Section 8.4, “Multiple-Processor (MP) Initialization”) to recognize and enable logical processors. At runtime, software can enumerate those logical processors enabled by system software to identify the topological relationships between these logical processors. (See Section 8.9.5, “Identifying Topological Relationships in a MP System”).

8.8.2 Memory Type Range Registers (MTRR)

MTRR is shared between two logical processors sharing a processor core if the physical processor supports Intel Hyper-Threading Technology. MTRR is not shared between logical processors located in different cores or different physical packages.

The Intel 64 and IA-32 architectures require that all logical processors in an MP system use an identical MTRR memory map. This gives software a consistent view of memory, independent of the processor on which it is running.

See Section 11.11, “Memory Type Range Registers (MTRRs).”

8.8.3 Performance Monitoring Counters

Performance counters and their companion control MSRs are shared between two logical processors sharing a processor core if the processor core supports Intel Hyper-Threading Technology and is based on Intel NetBurst microarchitecture. They are not shared between logical processors in different cores or different physical packages. As a result, software must manage the use of these resources, based on the topology of performance monitoring resources. Performance counter interrupts, events, and precise event monitoring support can be set up and allocated on a per thread (per logical processor) basis.

See Section 18.6.4, “Performance Monitoring and Intel Hyper-Threading Technology in Processors Based on Intel NetBurst® Microarchitecture.”

8.8.4 IA32_MISC_ENABLE MSR

Some bit fields in IA32_MISC_ENABLE MSR (MSR address 1A0H) may be shared between two logical processors sharing a processor core, or may be shared between different cores in a physical processor. See Chapter 2, “Model-Specific Registers (MSRs)” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 4*.

8.8.5 Microcode Update Resources

Microcode update facilities are shared between two logical processors sharing a processor core if the physical package supports Intel Hyper-Threading Technology. They are not shared between logical processors in different

cores or different physical packages. Either logical processor that has access to the microcode update facility can initiate an update.

Each logical processor has its own BIOS signature MSR (IA32_BIOS_SIGN_ID at MSR address 8BH). When a logical processor performs an update for the physical processor, the IA32_BIOS_SIGN_ID MSRs for resident logical processors are updated with identical information.

All microcode update steps during processor initialization should use the same update data on all cores in all physical packages of the same stepping. Any subsequent microcode update must apply consistent update data to all cores in all physical packages of the same stepping. If the processor detects an attempt to load an older microcode update when a newer microcode update had previously been loaded, it may reject the older update to stay with the newer update.

NOTE

Some processors (prior to the introduction of Intel 64 Architecture and based on Intel NetBurst microarchitecture) do not support simultaneous loading of microcode update to the sibling logical processors in the same core. All other processors support logical processors initiating an update simultaneously. Intel recommends a common approach that the microcode loader use the sequential technique described in Section 9.11.6.3.

8.9 PROGRAMMING CONSIDERATIONS FOR HARDWARE MULTI-THREADING CAPABLE PROCESSORS

In a multi-threading environment, there may be certain hardware resources that are physically shared at some level of the hardware topology. In the multi-processor systems, typically bus and memory sub-systems are physically shared between multiple sockets. Within a hardware multi-threading capable processors, certain resources are provided for each processor core, while other resources may be provided for each logical processors (see Section 8.7, “Intel® Hyper-Threading Technology Architecture,” and Section 8.8, “Multi-Core Architecture”).

From a software programming perspective, control transfer of processor operation is managed at the granularity of logical processor (operating systems dispatch a runnable task by allocating an available logical processor on the platform). To manage the topology of shared resources in a multi-threading environment, it may be useful for software to understand and manage resources that are shared by more than one logical processors.

8.9.1 Hierarchical Mapping of Shared Resources

The APIC_ID value associated with each logical processor in a multi-processor system is unique (see Section 8.6, “Detecting Hardware Multi-Threading Support and Topology”). This 8-bit or 32-bit value can be decomposed into sub-fields, where each sub-field corresponds a hierarchical level of the topological mapping of hardware resources.

The decomposition of an APIC_ID may consist of several sub fields representing the topology within a physical processor package, the higher-order bits of an APIC ID may also be used by cluster vendors to represent the topology of cluster nodes of each coherent multiprocessor systems:

- **Cluster** — Some multi-threading environments consists of multiple clusters of multi-processor systems. The CLUSTER_ID sub-field is usually supported by vendor firmware to distinguish different clusters. For non-clustered systems, CLUSTER_ID is usually 0 and system topology is reduced.
- **Package** — A physical processor package mates with a socket. A package may contain one or more software visible die. The PACKAGE_ID sub-field distinguishes different physical packages within a cluster.
- **Die** — A software-visible chip inside a package. The DIE_ID sub-field distinguishes different die within a package. If there are no software visible die, the width of this bit field is 0.
- **Tile** — A set of cores, possibly within modules, that share certain resources. The TILE_ID sub-field distinguishes different tiles. If there are no software visible tiles, the width of this bit field is 0.
- **Module** — A set of cores that share certain resources. The MODULE_ID sub-field distinguishes different modules. If there are no software visible modules, the width of this bit field is 0.

- **Core** — Processor cores may be contained within modules, within tiles, on software-visible die, or appear directly at the package level. The CORE_ID sub-field distinguishes processor cores. For a single-core processor, the width of this bit field is 0.
- **SMT** — A processor core provides one or more logical processors sharing execution resources. The SMT_ID sub-field distinguishes logical processors in a core. The width of this bit field is non-zero if a processor core provides more than one logical processors.

SMT and CORE sub-fields are bit-wise contiguous in the APIC_ID field (see Figure 8-5).

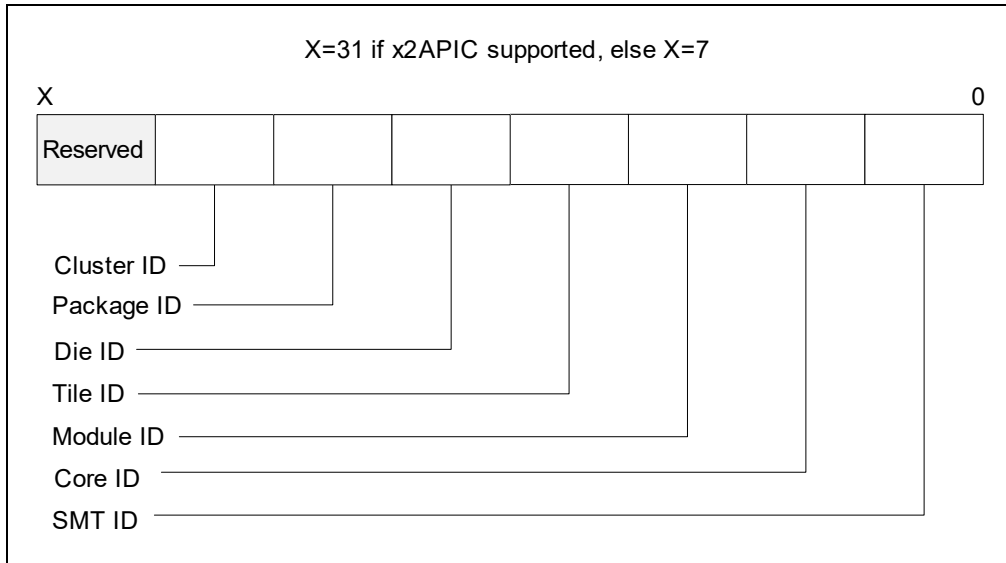


Figure 8-5. Generalized Seven Level Interpretation of the APIC ID

If the processor supports CPUID leaf 0BH and leaf 1FH, the 32-bit APIC ID can represent cluster plus several levels of topology within the physical processor package. The exact number of hierarchical levels within a physical processor package must be enumerated through CPUID leaf 0BH and leaf 1FH. Common processor families may employ topology similar to that represented by 8-bit Initial APIC ID. In general, CPUID leaf 0BH and leaf 1FH can support a topology enumeration algorithm that decompose a 32-bit APIC ID into more than four sub-fields (see Figure 8-6).

NOTE

CPUID leaf 0BH and leaf 1FH can have differences in the number of level types reported (CPUID leaf 1FH defines additional level types). If the processor supports CPUID leaf 1FH, usage of this leaf is preferred over leaf 0BH. CPUID leaf 0BH is available for legacy compatibility going forward.

The width of each sub-field depends on hardware and software configurations. Field widths can be determined at runtime using the algorithm discussed below (Example 8-16 through Example 8-21).

Figure 7-6 depicts the relationships of three of the hierarchical sub-fields in a hypothetical MP system. The value of valid APIC_IDs need not be contiguous across package boundary or core boundaries.

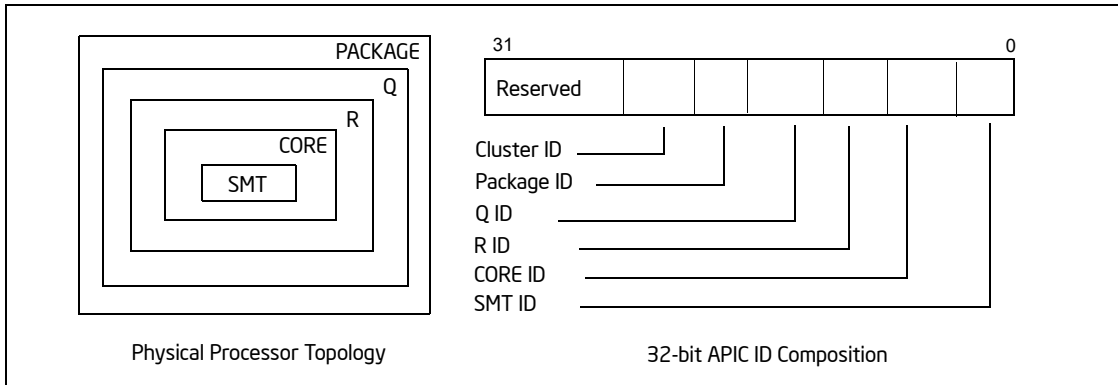


Figure 8-6. Conceptual Six-Level Topology and 32-bit APIC ID Composition

8.9.2 Hierarchical Mapping of CPUID Extended Topology Leaf

- CPUID leaf 0BH and leaf 1FH provide enumeration parameters for software to identify each hierarchy of the processor topology in a deterministic manner. Each hierarchical level of the topology starting from the SMT level is represented numerically by a sub-leaf index within the CPUID 0BH leaf and 1FH leaf. Each level of the topology is mapped to a sub-field in the APIC ID, following the general relationship depicted in Figure 8-6. This mechanism allows software to query the exact number of levels within a physical processor package and the bit-width of each sub-field of x2APIC ID directly. For example,
- • Starting from sub-leaf index 0 and incrementing ECX until CPUID.(EAX=0BH or 1FH, ECX=N):ECX[15:8] returns an invalid "level type" encoding. The number of levels within the physical processor package is "N" (excluding PACKAGE). Using Figure 8-6 as an example, CPUID.(EAX=0BH or 1FH, ECX=4):ECX[15:8] will report 00H, indicating sub leaf 04H is invalid. This is also depicted by a pseudo code example:

Example 8-16. Number of Levels Below the Physical Processor Package

```

Byte type = 1;
s = 0;
While ( type ) {
    EAX = 0BH or 1FH; // query each sub leaf of CPUID leaf 0BH or 1FH; CPUID leaf 1FH is preferred over leaf 0BH if available
    ECX = s;
    CPUID;
    type = ECX[15:8]; // examine level type encoding
    s ++;
}
N = ECX[7:0];

```

- • Sub-leaf index 0 (ECX= 0 as input) provides enumeration parameters to extract the SMT sub-field of x2APIC ID. If EAX = 0BH or 1FH, and ECX =0 is specified as input when executing CPUID, CPUID.(EAX=0BH or 1FH, ECX=0):EAX[4:0] reports a value (a right-shift count) that allow software to extract part of x2APIC ID to distinguish the next higher topological entities above the SMT level. This value also corresponds to the bit-width of the sub-field of x2APIC ID corresponding the hierarchical level with sub-leaf index 0.
- • For each subsequent higher sub-leaf index m, CPUID.(EAX=0BH or 1FH, ECX=m):EAX[4:0] reports the right-shift count that will allow software to extract part of x2APIC ID to distinguish higher-level topological entities. This means the right-shift value at of sub-leaf m, corresponds to the least significant (m+1) subfields of the 32-bit x2APIC ID.

Example 8-17. BitWidth Determination of x2APIC ID Subfields

```

For m = 0, m < N, m ++;
{ cumulative_width[m] = CPUID.(EAX=0BH or 1FH, ECX= m): EAX[4:0]; }
BitWidth[0] = cumulative_width[0];
For m = 1, m < N, m ++;
    BitWidth[m] = cumulative_width[m] - cumulative_width[m-1];

```

NOTE

CPUID leaf 1FH is a preferred superset to leaf 0BH. Leaf 1FH defines additional level types, and it must be parsed by an algorithm that can handle the addition of future level types.

Previously, only the following encoding of hierarchical level types were defined: 0 (invalid), 1 (SMT), and 2 (core). With the additional hierarchical level types available (see Section 8.9.1, “Hierarchical Mapping of Shared Resources” and Figure 8-5, “Generalized Seven Level Interpretation of the APIC ID”) software must not assume any “level type” encoding value to be related to any sub-leaf index, except sub-leaf 0.

Example 8-18. Support Routines for Identifying Package, Die, Core and Logical Processors from 32-bit x2APIC ID**a. Derive the extraction bitmask for logical processors in a processor core and associated mask offset for different cores.**

```

//
// This example shows how to enumerate CPU topology level types (level types may or may not be known/supported by the software)
//
// Below is the list of sample level types used in the example.
// Refer to the CPUID Leaf 1FH definition for the actual level type numbers: “V2 Extended Topology Enumeration Leaf”.
//
// SMT
// CORE
// MODULE
// TILE
// DIE
// PACKAGE
//
// The example shows how to identify and derive the extraction bitmask for the levels with identify type SMT/CORE/DIE/PACKAGE
//

```

```

int DeriveSMT_Mask_Offsets (void)
{
    IF (!HWMTSupported()) return -1;
    execute cpuid with EAX = 0BH or 1FH, ECX = 0;
    IF (returned level type encoding in ECX[15:8] does not match SMT) return -1;
    Mask_SMT_shift = EAX[4:0];           // # bits shift right of APIC ID to distinguish different cores
    SMT_MASK = ~( -1 ) << Mask_SMT_shift; // shift left to derive extraction bitmask for SMT_ID
    return 0;
}

```

- b. Derive the extraction bitmask for processor cores in a physical processor package and associated mask offset for different packages.

```

int DeriveCore_Mask_Offsets (void)
{
    IF (!HWMTSupported()) return -1;
    execute cpuid with EAX = 0BH or 1FH, ECX = 0;
    WHILE( ECX[15:8] ) { //level type encoding is valid
        Mask_last_known_shift = EAX[4:0]
        IF (returned level type encoding in ECX[15:8] matches CORE) {
            Mask_Core_shift = EAX[4:0];
        }
        ELSE IF (returned level type encoding in ECX[15:8] matches DIE {
            Mask_Die_shift = EAX[4:0];
        }
        //
        // Keep enumerating. Check if the next level is the desired level and if not, keep enumerating until you reach a known level
        // or the invalid level ("0" level type). If there are more levels between DIE and PACKAGE, the unknown levels will be ignored
        // and treated as an extension of the last known level (i.e., DIE in this case).
        //

        ECX++;
        execute cpuid with EAX = 0BH or 1FH;
    }

    COREPlusSMT_MASK = ~( (-1) << Mask_Core_shift);
    DIEPlusCORE_MASK = ~( (-1) << Mask_Die_shift);

    //
    // Treat levels between DIE and physical package as an extension of DIE for software choosing not to implement or recognize
    // these unknown levels.
    //

    CORE_MASK = COREPlusSMT_MASK ^ SMT_MASK;
    DIE_MASK = DIEPlusCORE_MASK ^ COREPlusSMT_MASK;
    PACKAGE_MASK = (-1) << Mask_last_known_shift;

    return -1;
}

```

8.9.3 Hierarchical ID of Logical Processors in an MP System

For Intel 64 and IA-32 processors, system hardware establishes an 8-bit initial APIC ID (or 32-bit APIC ID if the processor supports CPUID leaf 0BH) that is unique for each logical processor following power-up or RESET (see Section 8.6.1). Each logical processor on the system is allocated an initial APIC ID. BIOS may implement features that tell the OS to support less than the total number of logical processors on the system bus. Those logical processors that are not available to applications at runtime are halted during the OS boot process. As a result, the number valid local APIC_IDs that can be queried by affinityizing-current-thread-context (See Example 8-23) is limited to the number of logical processors enabled at runtime by the OS boot process.

Table 8-2 shows an example of the 8-bit APIC IDs that are initially reported for logical processors in a system with four Intel Xeon MP processors that support Intel Hyper-Threading Technology (a total of 8 logical processors, each physical package has two processor cores and supports Intel Hyper-Threading Technology). Of the two logical

processors within a Intel Xeon processor MP, logical processor 0 is designated the primary logical processor and logical processor 1 as the secondary logical processor.

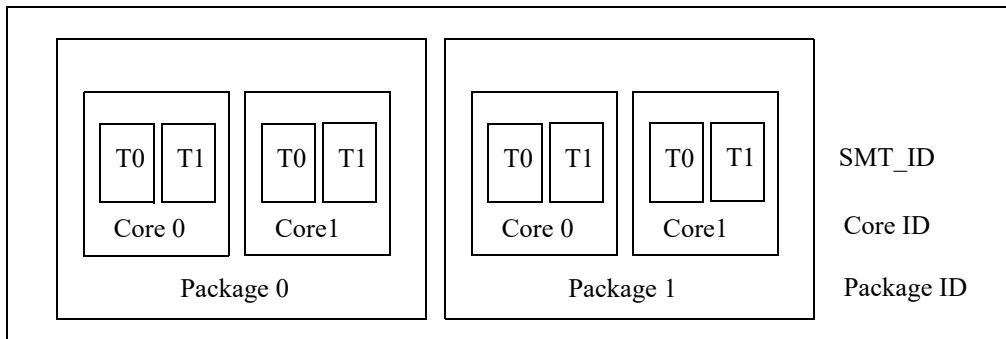


Figure 8-7. Topological Relationships between Hierarchical IDs in a Hypothetical MP Platform

Table 8-2. Initial APIC IDs for the Logical Processors in a System that has Four Intel Xeon MP Processors Supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology¹

Initial APIC ID	Package ID	Core ID	SMT ID
0H	0H	0H	0H
1H	0H	0H	1H
2H	1H	0H	0H
3H	1H	0H	1H
4H	2H	0H	0H
5H	2H	0H	1H
6H	3H	0H	0H
7H	3H	0H	1H

NOTE:

1. Because information on the number of processor cores in a physical package was not available in early single-core processors supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology, the core ID can be treated as 0.

Table 8-3 shows the initial APIC IDs for a hypothetical situation with a dual processor system. Each physical package providing two processor cores, and each processor core also supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology.

Table 8-3. Initial APIC IDs for the Logical Processors in a System that has Two Physical Processors Supporting Dual-Core and Intel Hyper-Threading Technology

Initial APIC ID	Package ID	Core ID	SMT ID
0H	0H	0H	0H
1H	0H	0H	1H
2H	0H	1H	0H
3H	0H	1H	1H
4H	1H	0H	0H
5H	1H	0H	1H
6H	1H	1H	0H
7H	1H	1H	1H

8.9.3.1 Hierarchical ID of Logical Processors with x2APIC ID

Table 8-4 shows an example of possible x2APIC ID assignments for a dual processor system that support x2APIC. Each physical package providing four processor cores, and each processor core also supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology. Note that the x2APIC ID need not be contiguous in the system.

Table 8-4. Example of Possible x2APIC ID Assignment in a System that has Two Physical Processors Supporting x2APIC and Intel Hyper-Threading Technology

x2APIC ID	Package ID	Core ID	SMT ID
0H	0H	0H	0H
1H	0H	0H	1H
2H	0H	1H	0H
3H	0H	1H	1H
4H	0H	2H	0H
5H	0H	2H	1H
6H	0H	3H	0H
7H	0H	3H	1H
10H	1H	0H	0H
11H	1H	0H	1H
12H	1H	1H	0H
13H	1H	1H	1H
14H	1H	2H	0H
15H	1H	2H	1H
16H	1H	3H	0H
17H	1H	3H	1H

8.9.4 Algorithm for Three-Level Mappings of APIC_ID

Software can gather the initial APIC_IDs for each logical processor supported by the operating system at runtime⁹ and extract identifiers corresponding to the three levels of sharing topology (package, core, and SMT). The three-level algorithms below focus on a non-clustered MP system for simplicity. They do not assume APIC IDs are contiguous or that all logical processors on the platform are enabled.

Intel supports multi-threading systems where all physical processors report identical values in CPUID leaf 0BH, CPUID.1:EBX[23:16]), CPUID.4¹⁰:EAX[31:26], and CPUID.4¹¹:EAX[25:14]. The algorithms below assume the target system has symmetry across physical package boundaries with respect to the number of logical processors per package, number of cores per package, and cache topology within a package.

Software can choose to assume three level hierarchy if it was developed to understand only three levels. However, software implementation needs to ensure it does not break if it runs on systems that have more levels in the hierarchy even if it does not recognize them.

-
- 9. As noted in Section 8.6 and Section 8.9.3, the number of logical processors supported by the OS at runtime may be less than the total number logical processors available in the platform hardware.
 - 10. Maximum number of addressable ID for processor cores in a physical processor is obtained by executing CPUID with EAX=4 and a valid ECX index, The ECX index start at 0.
 - 11. Maximum number addressable ID for processor cores sharing the target cache level is obtained by executing CPUID with EAX = 4 and the ECX index corresponding to the target cache level.

The extraction algorithm (for three-level mappings from an APIC ID) uses the general procedure depicted in Example 8-19, and is supplemented by more detailed descriptions on the derivation of topology enumeration parameters for extraction bit masks:

1. Detect hardware multi-threading support in the processor.
2. Derive a set of bit masks that can extract the sub ID of each hierarchical level of the topology. The algorithm to derive extraction bit masks for SMT_ID/CORE_ID/PACKAGE_ID differs based on APIC ID is 32-bit (see step 3 below) or 8-bit (see step 4 below):
3. If the processor supports CPUID leaf 0BH, each APIC ID contains a 32-bit value, the topology enumeration parameters needed to derive three-level extraction bit masks are:
 - a. Query the right-shift value for the SMT level of the topology using CPUID leaf 0BH with ECX = 0H as input. The number of bits to shift-right on x2APIC ID (EAX[4:0]) can distinguish different higher-level entities above SMT (e.g. processor cores) in the same physical package. This is also the width of the bit mask to extract the SMT_ID.
 - b. Enumerate until the desired level is found (i.e. processor cores). Determine if the next level is the expected level. If the next level is not known to the software, keep enumerating until the next known or the last level. Software should use the previous level before this to represent the last previously known level (i.e. processor cores). If the software does not recognize or implement certain hierarchical levels, it should assume these unknown levels as an extension of the last known level.
 - c. Query CPUID leaf 0BH for the amount of bit shift to distinguish next higher-level entities (e.g. physical processor packages) in the system. This describes an explicit three-level-topology situation for commonly available processors. Consult Example 8-17 to adapt to situations beyond three-level topology of a physical processor. The width of the extraction bit mask can be used to derive the cumulative extraction bitmask to extract the sub IDs of logical processors (including different processor cores) in the same physical package. The extraction bit mask to distinguish merely different processor cores can be derived by xor'ing the SMT extraction bit mask from the cumulative extraction bit mask.
 - d. Query the 32-bit x2APIC ID for the logical processor where the current thread is executing.
 - e. Derive the extraction bit masks corresponding to SMT_ID, CORE_ID, and PACKAGE_ID, starting from SMT_ID.
 - f. Apply each extraction bit mask to the 32-bit x2APIC ID to extract sub-field IDs.
4. If the processor does not support CPUID leaf 0BH, each initial APIC ID contains an 8-bit value, the topology enumeration parameters needed to derive extraction bit masks are:
 - a. Query the size of address space for sub IDs that can accommodate logical processors in a physical processor package. This size parameters (CPUID.1:EBX[23:16]) can be used to derive the width of an extraction bitmask to enumerate the sub IDs of different logical processors in the same physical package.
 - b. Query the size of address space for sub IDs that can accommodate processor cores in a physical processor package. This size parameters can be used to derive the width of an extraction bitmask to enumerate the sub IDs of processor cores in the same physical package.
 - c. Query the 8-bit initial APIC ID for the logical processor where the current thread is executing.
 - d. Derive the extraction bit masks using respective address sizes corresponding to SMT_ID, CORE_ID, and PACKAGE_ID, starting from SMT_ID.
 - e. Apply each extraction bit mask to the 8-bit initial APIC ID to extract sub-field IDs.

Example 8-19. Support Routines for Detecting Hardware Multi-Threading and Identifying the Relationships Between Package, Core and Logical Processors**1. Detect support for Hardware Multi-Threading Support in a processor.**

```
// Returns a non-zero value if CPUID reports the presence of hardware multi-threading
// support in the physical package where the current logical processor is located.
// This does not guarantee BIOS or OS will enable all logical processors in the physical
// package and make them available to applications.
// Returns zero if hardware multi-threading is not present.
```

```
#define HWMT_BIT 10000000H
```

```
unsigned int HWMTSupported(void)
{
    // ensure cpuid instruction is supported
    // execute cpuid with eax = 0 to get vendor string
    // execute cpuid with eax = 1 to get feature flag and signature

    // Check to see if this a Genuine Intel Processor

    if (vendor string EQ GenuineIntel) {
        return (feature_flag_edx & HWMT_BIT); // bit 28
    }
    return 0;
}
```

Example 8-20. Support Routines for Identifying Package, Core and Logical Processors from 32-bit x2APIC ID**a. Derive the extraction bitmask for logical processors in a processor core and associated mask offset for different cores.**

```
int DeriveSMT_Mask_Offsets (void)
{
    if (!HWMTSupported()) return -1;
    execute cpuid with eax = 11, ECX = 0;
    If (returned level type encoding in ECX[15:8] does not match SMT) return -1;
    Mask_SMT_shift = EAX[4:0]; // # bits shift right of APIC ID to distinguish different cores
    SMT_MASK = ~((-1) << Mask_SMT_shift); // shift left to derive extraction bitmask for SMT_ID
    return 0;
}
```

- b. **Derive the extraction bitmask for processor cores in a physical processor package and associated mask offset for different packages.**

```
int DeriveCore_Mask_Offsets (void)
{
    if (!HWMTSupported()) return -1;
    execute cpuid with eax = 11, ECX = 0;
    while( ECX[15:8] ) {          // level type encoding is valid
        Mask_Core_shift = EAX[4:0];    // needed to distinguish different physical packages
        ECX ++;
        execute cpuid with eax = 11;
    }
    COREPlusSMT_MASK = ~( (-1) << Mask_Core_shift);
    // treat levels between core and physical package as a core for software choosing not to implement or recognize
    // these unknown levels
    CORE_MASK = COREPlusSMT_MASK ^ SMT_MASK;
    PACKAGE_MASK = (-1) << Mask_Core_shift;
    return -1;
}
```

- c. **Query the x2APIC ID of a logical processor.**

APIC_IDs for each logical processor.

```
unsigned char Getx2APIC_ID (void)
{
    unsigned reg_edx = 0;
    execute cpuid with eax = 11, ECX = 0
    store returned value of edx
    return (unsigned) (reg_edx);
}
```

Example 8-21. Support Routines for Identifying Package, Core and Logical Processors from 8-bit Initial APIC ID

- a. **Find the size of address space for logical processors in a physical processor package.**

```
#define NUM_LOGICAL_BITS 00FF0000H
// Use the mask above and CPUID.1.EBX[23:16] to obtain the max number of addressable IDs
// for logical processors in a physical package,

//Returns the size of address space of logical processors in a physical processor package;
// Software should not assume the value to be a power of 2.

unsigned char MaxLPIDsPerPackage(void)
{
    if (!HWMTSupported()) return 1;
    execute cpuid with eax = 1
    store returned value of ebx
    return (unsigned char) ((reg_ebx & NUM_LOGICAL_BITS) >> 16);
}
```

b. Find the size of address space for processor cores in a physical processor package.

// Returns the max number of addressable IDs for processor cores in a physical processor package;
// Software should not assume cpuid reports this value to be a power of 2.

```
unsigned MaxCoreIDsPerPackage(void)
{
    if (!HWMTSupported()) return (unsigned char) 1;
    if cpuid supports leaf number 4
    { // we can retrieve multi-core topology info using leaf 4
        execute cpuid with eax = 4, ecx = 0
        store returned value of eax
        return (unsigned) ((reg_eax >> 26) + 1);
    }
    else // must be a single-core processor
        return 1;
}
```

c. Query the initial APIC ID of a logical processor.

#define INITIAL_APIC_ID_BITS FF000000H // CPUID.1.EBX[31:24] initial APIC ID

// Returns the 8-bit unique initial APIC ID for the processor running the code.
// Software can use OS services to affinitize the current thread to each logical processor
// available under the OS to gather the initial APIC_IDs for each logical processor.

```
unsigned GetInitAPIC_ID (void)
{
    unsigned int reg_ebx = 0;
    execute cpuid with eax = 1
    store returned value of ebx
    return (unsigned) ((reg_ebx & INITIAL_APIC_ID_BITS) >> 24);
}
```

d. Find the width of an extraction bitmask from the maximum count of the bit-field (address size).

```
// Returns the mask bit width of a bit field from the maximum count that bit field can represent.
// This algorithm does not assume 'address size' to have a value equal to power of 2.
// Address size for SMT_ID can be calculated from MaxLPIDsPerPackage()/MaxCoreIDsPerPackage()
// Then use the routine below to derive the corresponding width of SMT extraction bitmask
// Address size for CORE_ID is MaxCoreIDsPerPackage(),
// Derive the bitwidth for CORE extraction mask similarly
```

```
unsigned FindMaskWidth(Unsigned Max_Count)
{unsigned int mask_width, cnt = Max_Count;
  __asm {
    mov eax, cnt
    mov ecx, 0
    mov mask_width, ecx
    dec eax
    bsr cx, ax
    jz next
    inc cx
    mov mask_width, ecx
  next:
    mov eax, mask_width
  }
  return mask_width;
}
```

e. Extract a sub ID from an 8-bit full ID, using address size of the sub ID and shift count.

```
// The routine below can extract SMT_ID, CORE_ID, and PACKAGE_ID respectively from the init APIC_ID
// To extract SMT_ID, MaxSubIDvalue is set to the address size of SMT_ID, Shift_Count = 0
// To extract CORE_ID, MaxSubIDvalue is the address size of CORE_ID, Shift_Count is width of SMT extraction bitmask.
// Returns the value of the sub ID, this is not a zero-based value
```

```
Unsigned char GetSubID(unsigned char Full_ID, unsigned char MaxSubIDvalue, unsigned char Shift_Count)
{
  MaskWidth = FindMaskWidth(MaxSubIDvalue);
  MaskBits = ((uchar) (FFH << Shift_Count)) ^ ((uchar) (FFH << Shift_Count + MaskWidth));
  SubID = Full_ID & MaskBits;
  Return SubID;
}
```

Software must not assume local APIC_ID values in an MP system are consecutive. Non-consecutive local APIC_IDs may be the result of hardware configurations or debug features implemented in the BIOS or OS.

An identifier for each hierarchical level can be extracted from an 8-bit APIC_ID using the support routines illustrated in Example 8-21. The appropriate bit mask and shift value to construct the appropriate bit mask for each level must be determined dynamically at runtime.

8.9.5 Identifying Topological Relationships in a MP System

To detect the number of physical packages, processor cores, or other topological relationships in a MP system, the following procedures are recommended:

- Extract the three-level identifiers from the APIC ID of each logical processor enabled by system software. The sequence is as follows (See the pseudo code shown in Example 8-22 and support routines shown in Example 8-19):

- The extraction start from the right-most bit field, corresponding to SMT_ID, the innermost hierarchy in a three-level topology (See Figure 8-7). For the right-most bit field, the shift value of the working mask is zero. The width of the bit field is determined dynamically using the maximum number of logical processor per core, which can be derived from information provided from CPUID.
- To extract the next bit-field, the shift value of the working mask is determined from the width of the bit mask of the previous step. The width of the bit field is determined dynamically using the maximum number of cores per package.
- To extract the remaining bit-field, the shift value of the working mask is determined from the maximum number of logical processor per package. So the remaining bits in the APIC ID (excluding those bits already extracted in the two previous steps) are extracted as the third identifier. This applies to a non-clustered MP system, or if there is no need to distinguish between PACKAGE_ID and CLUSTER_ID.

If there is need to distinguish between PACKAGE_ID and CLUSTER_ID, PACKAGE_ID can be extracted using an algorithm similar to the extraction of CORE_ID, assuming the number of physical packages in each node of a clustered system is symmetric.

- Assemble the three-level identifiers of SMT_ID, CORE_ID, PACKAGE_IDs into arrays for each enabled logical processor. This is shown in Example 8-23a.
- To detect the number of physical packages: use PACKAGE_ID to identify those logical processors that reside in the same physical package. This is shown in Example 8-23b. This example also depicts a technique to construct a mask to represent the logical processors that reside in the same package.
- To detect the number of processor cores: use CORE_ID to identify those logical processors that reside in the same core. This is shown in Example 8-23. This example also depicts a technique to construct a mask to represent the logical processors that reside in the same core.

In Example 8-22, the numerical ID value can be obtained from the value extracted with the mask by shifting it right by shift count. Algorithms below do not shift the value. The assumption is that the SubID values can be compared for equivalence without the need to shift.

Example 8-22. Pseudo Code Depicting Three-level Extraction Algorithm

```

For Each local_APIC_ID{
    // Calculate SMT_MASK, the bit mask pattern to extract SMT_ID,
    // SMT_MASK is determined using topology enumeration parameters
    // from CPUID leaf 0BH (Example 8-20);
    // otherwise, SMT_MASK is determined using CPUID leaf 01H and leaf 04H (Example 8-21).
    // This algorithm assumes there is symmetry across core boundary, i.e. each core within a
    // package has the same number of logical processors
    // SMT_ID always starts from bit 0, corresponding to the right-most bit-field
    SMT_ID = APIC_ID & SMT_MASK;

// Extract CORE_ID:
    // CORE_MASK is determined in Example 8-20 or Example 8-21
    CORE_ID = (APIC_ID & CORE_MASK);

    // Extract PACKAGE_ID:
    // Assume single cluster.
    // Shift out the mask width for maximum logical processors per package
    // PACKAGE_MASK is determined in Example 8-20 or Example 8-21
    PACKAGE_ID = (APIC_ID & PACKAGE_MASK);
}

```

Example 8-23. Compute the Number of Packages, Cores, and Processor Relationships in a MP System

a) Assemble lists of PACKAGE_ID, CORE_ID, and SMT_ID of each enabled logical processors

```
//The BIOS and/or OS may limit the number of logical processors available to applications
// after system boot. The below algorithm will compute topology for the processors visible
// to the thread that is computing it.

// Extract the 3-levels of IDs on every processor
// SystemAffinity is a bitmask of all the processors started by the OS. Use OS specific APIs to
// obtain it.
// ThreadAffinityMask is used to affinitize the topology enumeration thread to each processor
using OS specific APIs.
// Allocate per processor arrays to store the Package_ID, Core_ID and SMT_ID for every started
// processor.
```

```
ThreadAffinityMask = 1;
ProcessorNum = 0;
while (ThreadAffinityMask != 0 && ThreadAffinityMask <= SystemAffinity) {
    // Check to make sure we can utilize this processor first.
    if (ThreadAffinityMask & SystemAffinity){
        Set thread to run on the processor specified in ThreadAffinityMask
        Wait if necessary and ensure thread is running on specified processor

        APIC_ID = GetAPIC_ID(); // 32 bit ID in Example 8-20 or 8-bit ID in Example 8-21
        Extract the Package_ID, Core_ID and SMT_ID as explained in three level extraction
        algorithm of Example 8-22
        PackageID[ProcessorNUM] = PACKAGE_ID;
        CoreID[ProcessorNum] = CORE_ID;
        SmtID[ProcessorNum] = SMT_ID;
        ProcessorNum++;
    }
    ThreadAffinityMask <<= 1;
}
NumStartedLPs = ProcessorNum;
```

b) Using the list of PACKAGE_ID to count the number of physical packages in a MP system and construct, for each package, a multi-bit mask corresponding to those logical processors residing in the same package.

```
// Compute the number of packages by counting the number of processors
// with unique PACKAGE_IDs in the PackageID array.
// Compute the mask of processors in each package.
```

PackageIDBucket is an array of unique PACKAGE_ID values. Allocate an array of NumStartedLPs count of entries in this array.
 PackageProcessorMask is a corresponding array of the bit mask of processors belonging to the same package, these are processors with the same PACKAGE_ID
 The algorithm below assumes there is symmetry across package boundary if more than one socket is populated in an MP system.
 // Bucket Package IDs and compute processor mask for every package.

```
PackageNum = 1;
PackageIDBucket[0] = PackageID[0];
ProcessorMask = 1;
PackageProcessorMask[0] = ProcessorMask;
```

MULTIPLE-PROCESSOR MANAGEMENT

```
For (ProcessorNum = 1; ProcessorNum < NumStartedLPs; ProcessorNum++) {
    ProcessorMask <<= 1;
    For (i=0; i < PackageNum; i++) {
        // we may be comparing bit-fields of logical processors residing in different
        // packages, the code below assume package symmetry
        If (PackageID[ProcessorNum] = PackageIDBucket[i]) {
            PackageProcessorMask[i] |= ProcessorMask;
            Break; // found in existing bucket, skip to next iteration
        }
    }
    if (i = PackageNum) {
        //PACKAGE_ID did not match any bucket, start new bucket
        PackageIDBucket[i] = PackageID[ProcessorNum];
        PackageProcessorMask[i] = ProcessorMask;
        PackageNum++;
    }
}
// PackageNum has the number of Packages started in OS
// PackageProcessorMask[] array has the processor set of each package
```

c) Using the list of CORE_ID to count the number of cores in a MP system and construct, for each core, a multi-bit mask corresponding to those logical processors residing in the same core.

Processors in the same core can be determined by bucketing the processors with the same PACKAGE_ID and CORE_ID. Note that code below can BIT OR the values of PACKAGE and CORE ID because they have not been shifted right.

The algorithm below assumes there is symmetry across package boundary if more than one socket is populated in an MP system.

```
//Bucketing PACKAGE and CORE IDs and computing processor mask for every core
CoreNum = 1;
CoreIDBucket[0] = PackageID[0] | CoreID[0];
ProcessorMask = 1;
CoreProcessorMask[0] = ProcessorMask;
For (ProcessorNum = 1; ProcessorNum < NumStartedLPs; ProcessorNum++) {
    ProcessorMask <<= 1;
    For (i=0; i < CoreNum; i++) {
        // we may be comparing bit-fields of logical processors residing in different
        // packages, the code below assume package symmetry
        If ((PackageID[ProcessorNum] | CoreID[ProcessorNum]) = CoreIDBucket[i]) {
            CoreProcessorMask[i] |= ProcessorMask;
            Break; // found in existing bucket, skip to next iteration
        }
    }
    if (i = CoreNum) {
        //Did not match any bucket, start new bucket
        CoreIDBucket[i] = PackageID[ProcessorNum] | CoreID[ProcessorNum];
        CoreProcessorMask[i] = ProcessorMask;
        CoreNum++;
    }
}
// CoreNum has the number of cores started in the OS
// CoreProcessorMask[] array has the processor set of each core
```

Other processor relationships such as processor mask of sibling cores can be computed from set operations of the PackageProcessorMask[] and CoreProcessorMask[].

The algorithm shown above can be adapted to work with earlier generations of single-core IA-32 processors that support Intel Hyper-Threading Technology and in situations that the deterministic cache parameter leaf is not supported (provided CPUID supports initial APIC ID). A reference code example is available (see *Intel® 64 Architecture Processor Topology Enumeration*).

8.10 MANAGEMENT OF IDLE AND BLOCKED CONDITIONS

When a logical processor in an MP system (including multi-core processor or processors supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology) is idle (no work to do) or blocked (on a lock or semaphore), additional management of the core execution engine resource can be accomplished by using the HLT (halt), PAUSE, or the MONITOR/MWAIT instructions.

8.10.1 HLT Instruction

The HLT instruction stops the execution of the logical processor on which it is executed and places it in a halted state until further notice (see the description of the HLT instruction in Chapter 3 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 2A*). When a logical processor is halted, active logical processors continue to have full access to the shared resources within the physical package. Here shared resources that were being used by the halted logical processor become available to active logical processors, allowing them to execute at greater efficiency. When the halted logical processor resumes execution, shared resources are again shared among all active logical processors. (See Section 8.10.6.3, "Halt Idle Logical Processors," for more information about using the HLT instruction with processors supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology.)

8.10.2 PAUSE Instruction

The PAUSE instruction can improve the performance of processors supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology when executing "spin-wait loops" and other routines where one thread is accessing a shared lock or semaphore in a tight polling loop. When executing a spin-wait loop, the processor can suffer a severe performance penalty when exiting the loop because it detects a possible memory order violation and flushes the core processor's pipeline. The PAUSE instruction provides a hint to the processor that the code sequence is a spin-wait loop. The processor uses this hint to avoid the memory order violation and prevent the pipeline flush. In addition, the PAUSE instruction depipelines the spin-wait loop to prevent it from consuming execution resources excessively and consume power needlessly. (See Section 8.10.6.1, "Use the PAUSE Instruction in Spin-Wait Loops," for more information about using the PAUSE instruction with IA-32 processors supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology.)

8.10.3 Detecting Support MONITOR/MWAIT Instruction

Streaming SIMD Extensions 3 introduced two instructions (MONITOR and MWAIT) to help multithreaded software improve thread synchronization. In the initial implementation, MONITOR and MWAIT are available to software at ring 0. The instructions are conditionally available at levels greater than 0. Use the following steps to detect the availability of MONITOR and MWAIT:

- Use CPUID to query the MONITOR bit (CPUID.1.ECX[3] = 1).
- If CPUID indicates support, execute MONITOR inside a TRY/EXCEPT exception handler and trap for an exception. If an exception occurs, MONITOR and MWAIT are not supported at a privilege level greater than 0. See Example 8-24.

Example 8-24. Verifying MONITOR/MWAIT Support

```

boolean MONITOR_MWAIT_works = TRUE;
try {
    _asm {
        xor ecx, ecx
        xor edx, edx
        mov eax, MemArea
        monitor
    }
    // Use monitor
} except (UNWIND) {
    // if we get here, MONITOR/MWAIT is not supported
    MONITOR_MWAIT_works = FALSE;
}

```

8.10.4 MONITOR/MWAIT Instruction

Operating systems usually implement idle loops to handle thread synchronization. In a typical idle-loop scenario, there could be several “busy loops” and they would use a set of memory locations. An impacted processor waits in a loop and poll a memory location to determine if there is available work to execute. The posting of work is typically a write to memory (the work-queue of the waiting processor). The time for initiating a work request and getting it scheduled is on the order of a few bus cycles.

From a resource sharing perspective (logical processors sharing execution resources), use of the HLT instruction in an OS idle loop is desirable but has implications. Executing the HLT instruction on a idle logical processor puts the targeted processor in a non-execution state. This requires another processor (when posting work for the halted logical processor) to wake up the halted processor using an inter-processor interrupt. The posting and servicing of such an interrupt introduces a delay in the servicing of new work requests.

In a shared memory configuration, exits from busy loops usually occur because of a state change applicable to a specific memory location; such a change tends to be triggered by writes to the memory location by another agent (typically a processor).

MONITOR/MWAIT complement the use of HLT and PAUSE to allow for efficient partitioning and un-partitioning of shared resources among logical processors sharing physical resources. MONITOR sets up an effective address range that is monitored for write-to-memory activities; MWAIT places the processor in an optimized state (this may vary between different implementations) until a write to the monitored address range occurs.

In the initial implementation of MONITOR and MWAIT, they are available at CPL = 0 only.

Both instructions rely on the state of the processor’s monitor hardware. The monitor hardware can be either armed (by executing the MONITOR instruction) or triggered (due to a variety of events, including a store to the monitored memory region). If upon execution of MWAIT, monitor hardware is in a triggered state: MWAIT behaves as a NOP and execution continues at the next instruction in the execution stream. The state of monitor hardware is not architecturally visible except through the behavior of MWAIT.

Multiple events other than a write to the triggering address range can cause a processor that executed MWAIT to wake up. These include events that would lead to voluntary or involuntary context switches, such as:

- External interrupts, including NMI, SMI, INIT, BINIT, MCERR, A20M#
- Faults, Aborts (including Machine Check)
- Architectural TLB invalidations including writes to CR0, CR3, CR4 and certain MSR writes; execution of LMSW (occurring prior to issuing MWAIT but after setting the monitor)
- Voluntary transitions due to fast system call and far calls (occurring prior to issuing MWAIT but after setting the monitor)

Power management related events (such as Thermal Monitor 2 or chipset driven STPCLK# assertion) will not cause the monitor event pending flag to be cleared. Faults will not cause the monitor event pending flag to be cleared.

Software should not allow for voluntary context switches in between MONITOR/MWAIT in the instruction flow. Note that execution of MWAIT does not re-arm the monitor hardware. This means that MONITOR/MWAIT need to be executed in a loop. Also note that exits from the MWAIT state could be due to a condition other than a write to the triggering address; software should explicitly check the triggering data location to determine if the write occurred. Software should also check the value of the triggering address following the execution of the monitor instruction (and prior to the execution of the MWAIT instruction). This check is to identify any writes to the triggering address that occurred during the course of MONITOR execution.

The address range provided to the MONITOR instruction must be of write-back caching type. Only write-back memory type stores to the monitored address range will trigger the monitor hardware. If the address range is not in memory of write-back type, the address monitor hardware may not be set up properly or the monitor hardware may not be armed. Software is also responsible for ensuring that

- Writes that are not intended to cause the exit of a busy loop do not write to a location within the address region being monitored by the monitor hardware,
- Writes intended to cause the exit of a busy loop are written to locations within the monitored address region.

Not doing so will lead to more false wakeups (an exit from the MWAIT state not due to a write to the intended data location). These have negative performance implications. It might be necessary for software to use padding to prevent false wakeups. CPUID provides a mechanism for determining the size data locations for monitoring as well as a mechanism for determining the size of a the pad.

8.10.5 Monitor/Mwait Address Range Determination

To use the MONITOR/MWAIT instructions, software should know the length of the region monitored by the MONITOR/MWAIT instructions and the size of the coherence line size for cache-snoop traffic in a multiprocessor system. This information can be queried using the CPUID monitor leaf function (EAX = 05H). You will need the smallest and largest monitor line size:

- To avoid missed wake-ups: make sure that the data structure used to monitor writes fits within the smallest monitor line-size. Otherwise, the processor may not wake up after a write intended to trigger an exit from MWAIT.
- To avoid false wake-ups; use the largest monitor line size to pad the data structure used to monitor writes. Software must make sure that beyond the data structure, no unrelated data variable exists in the triggering area for MWAIT. A pad may be needed to avoid this situation.

These above two values bear no relationship to cache line size in the system and software should not make any assumptions to that effect. Within a single-cluster system, the two parameters should default to be the same (the size of the monitor triggering area is the same as the system coherence line size).

Based on the monitor line sizes returned by the CPUID, the OS should dynamically allocate structures with appropriate padding. If static data structures must be used by an OS, attempt to adapt the data structure and use a dynamically allocated data buffer for thread synchronization. When the latter technique is not possible, consider not using MONITOR/MWAIT when using static data structures.

To set up the data structure correctly for MONITOR/MWAIT on multi-clustered systems: interaction between processors, chipsets, and the BIOS is required (system coherence line size may depend on the chipset used in the system; the size could be different from the processor's monitor triggering area). The BIOS is responsible to set the correct value for system coherence line size using the IA32_MONITOR_FILTER_LINE_SIZE MSR. Depending on the relative magnitude of the size of the monitor triggering area versus the value written into the IA32_MONITOR_FILTER_LINE_SIZE MSR, the smaller of the parameters will be reported as the *Smallest Monitor Line Size*. The larger of the parameters will be reported as the *Largest Monitor Line Size*.

8.10.6 Required Operating System Support

This section describes changes that must be made to an operating system to run on processors supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology. It also describes optimizations that can help an operating system make more efficient use of the logical processors sharing execution resources. The required changes and suggested optimizations are representative of the types of modifications that appear in Windows* XP and Linux* kernel 2.4.0 operating systems for Intel processors supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology. Additional optimizations for processors

supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology are described in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Optimization Reference Manual*.

8.10.6.1 Use the PAUSE Instruction in Spin-Wait Loops

Intel recommends that a PAUSE instruction be placed in all spin-wait loops that run on Intel processors supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology and multi-core processors.

Software routines that use spin-wait loops include multiprocessor synchronization primitives (spin-locks, semaphores, and mutex variables) and idle loops. Such routines keep the processor core busy executing a load-compare-branch loop while a thread waits for a resource to become available. Including a PAUSE instruction in such a loop greatly improves efficiency (see Section 8.10.2, "PAUSE Instruction"). The following routine gives an example of a spin-wait loop that uses a PAUSE instruction:

```
Spin_Lock:
    CMP lockvar, 0    ;Check if lock is free
    JE Get_Lock
    PAUSE            ;Short delay
    JMP Spin_Lock

Get_Lock:
    MOV EAX, 1
    XCHG EAX, lockvar ;Try to get lock
    CMP EAX, 0      ;Test if successful
    JNE Spin_Lock

Critical_Section:
    <critical section code>
    MOV lockvar, 0
    ...
Continue:
```

The spin-wait loop above uses a "test, test-and-set" technique for determining the availability of the synchronization variable. This technique is recommended when writing spin-wait loops.

In IA-32 processor generations earlier than the Pentium 4 processor, the PAUSE instruction is treated as a NOP instruction.

8.10.6.2 Potential Usage of MONITOR/MWAIT in C0 Idle Loops

An operating system may implement different handlers for different idle states. A typical OS idle loop on an ACPI-compatible OS is shown in Example 8-25:

Example 8-25. A Typical OS Idle Loop

```
// WorkQueue is a memory location indicating there is a thread
// ready to run. A non-zero value for WorkQueue is assumed to
// indicate the presence of work to be scheduled on the processor.
// The idle loop is entered with interrupts disabled.

WHILE (1) {
    IF (WorkQueue) THEN {
        // Schedule work at WorkQueue.
    }
    ELSE {
        // No work to do - wait in appropriate C-state handler depending
        // on Idle time accumulated
        IF (IdleTime >= IdleTimeThreshold) THEN {
            // Call appropriate C1, C2, C3 state handler, C1 handler
```

```

        // shown below
    }
}
// C1 handler uses a Halt instruction
VOID C1Handler()
{ STI
  HLT
}

```

The MONITOR and MWAIT instructions may be considered for use in the C0 idle state loops, if MONITOR and MWAIT are supported.

Example 8-26. An OS Idle Loop with MONITOR/MWAIT in the C0 Idle Loop

```

// WorkQueue is a memory location indicating there is a thread
// ready to run. A non-zero value for WorkQueue is assumed to
// indicate the presence of work to be scheduled on the processor.
// The following example assumes that the necessary padding has been
// added surrounding WorkQueue to eliminate false wakeups
// The idle loop is entered with interrupts disabled.

WHILE (1) {
  IF (WorkQueue) THEN {
    // Schedule work at WorkQueue.
  }
  ELSE {
    // No work to do - wait in appropriate C-state handler depending
    // on Idle time accumulated.
    IF (IdleTime >= IdleTimeThreshold) THEN {
      // Call appropriate C1, C2, C3 state handler, C1
      // handler shown below
      MONITOR WorkQueue // Setup of eax with WorkQueue
                        // LinearAddress,
                        // ECX, EDX = 0

      IF (WorkQueue = 0) THEN {
        MWAIT
      }
    }
  }
}
// C1 handler uses a Halt instruction.
VOID C1Handler()
{ STI
  HLT
}

```

8.10.6.3 Halt Idle Logical Processors

If one of two logical processors is idle or in a spin-wait loop of long duration, explicitly halt that processor by means of a HLT instruction.

In an MP system, operating systems can place idle processors into a loop that continuously checks the run queue for runnable software tasks. Logical processors that execute idle loops consume a significant amount of core's execution resources that might otherwise be used by the other logical processors in the physical package. For this reason, halting idle logical processors optimizes the performance.¹² If all logical processors within a physical package are halted, the processor will enter a power-saving state.

8.10.6.4 Potential Usage of MONITOR/MWAIT in C1 Idle Loops

An operating system may also consider replacing HLT with MONITOR/MWAIT in its C1 idle loop. An example is shown in Example 8-27:

Example 8-27. An OS Idle Loop with MONITOR/MWAIT in the C1 Idle Loop

```
// WorkQueue is a memory location indicating there is a thread
// ready to run. A non-zero value for WorkQueue is assumed to
// indicate the presence of work to be scheduled on the processor.
// The following example assumes that the necessary padding has been
// added surrounding WorkQueue to eliminate false wakeups
// The idle loop is entered with interrupts disabled.
```

```
WHILE (1) {
    IF (WorkQueue) THEN {
        // Schedule work at WorkQueue
    }
    ELSE {
        // No work to do - wait in appropriate C-state handler depending
        // on Idle time accumulated
        IF (IdleTime >= IdleTimeThreshold) THEN {
            // Call appropriate C1, C2, C3 state handler, C1
            // handler shown below
        }
    }
}

VOID C1Handler()

{ MONITOR WorkQueue // Setup of eax with WorkQueue LinearAddress,
    // ECX, EDX = 0
  IF (WorkQueue = 0) THEN {
    STI
    MWAIT // EAX, ECX = 0
  }
}
```

8.10.6.5 Guidelines for Scheduling Threads on Logical Processors Sharing Execution Resources

Because the logical processors, the order in which threads are dispatched to logical processors for execution can affect the overall efficiency of a system. The following guidelines are recommended for scheduling threads for execution.

- Dispatch threads to one logical processor per processor core before dispatching threads to the other logical processor sharing execution resources in the same processor core.
- In an MP system with two or more physical packages, distribute threads out over all the physical processors, rather than concentrate them in one or two physical processors.
- Use processor affinity to assign a thread to a specific processor core or package, depending on the cache-sharing topology. The practice increases the chance that the processor's caches will contain some of the thread's code and data when it is dispatched for execution after being suspended.

12. Excessive transitions into and out of the HALT state could also incur performance penalties. Operating systems should evaluate the performance trade-offs for their operating system.

8.10.6.6 Eliminate Execution-Based Timing Loops

Intel discourages the use of timing loops that depend on a processor's execution speed to measure time. There are several reasons:

- Timing loops cause problems when they are calibrated on a IA-32 processor running at one frequency and then executed on a processor running at another frequency.
- Routines for calibrating execution-based timing loops produce unpredictable results when run on an IA-32 processor supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology. This is due to the sharing of execution resources between the logical processors within a physical package.

To avoid the problems described, timing loop routines must use a timing mechanism for the loop that does not depend on the execution speed of the logical processors in the system. The following sources are generally available:

- A high resolution system timer (for example, an Intel 8254).
- A high resolution timer within the processor (such as, the local APIC timer or the time-stamp counter).

For additional information, see the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Optimization Reference Manual*.

8.10.6.7 Place Locks and Semaphores in Aligned, 128-Byte Blocks of Memory

When software uses locks or semaphores to synchronize processes, threads, or other code sections; Intel recommends that only one lock or semaphore be present within a cache line (or 128 byte sector, if 128-byte sector is supported). In processors based on Intel NetBurst microarchitecture (which support 128-byte sector consisting of two cache lines), following this recommendation means that each lock or semaphore should be contained in a 128-byte block of memory that begins on a 128-byte boundary. The practice minimizes the bus traffic required to service locks.

8.11 MP INITIALIZATION FOR P6 FAMILY PROCESSORS

This section describes the MP initialization process for systems that use multiple P6 family processors. This process uses the MP initialization protocol that was introduced with the Pentium Pro processor (see Section 8.4, "Multiple-Processor (MP) Initialization"). For P6 family processors, this protocol is typically used to boot 2 or 4 processors that reside on single system bus; however, it can support from 2 to 15 processors in a multi-clustered system when the APIC busses are tied together. Larger systems are not supported.

8.11.1 Overview of the MP Initialization Process For P6 Family Processors

During the execution of the MP initialization protocol, one processor is selected as the bootstrap processor (BSP) and the remaining processors are designated as application processors (APs), see Section 8.4.1, "BSP and AP Processors." Thereafter, the BSP manages the initialization of itself and the APs. This initialization includes executing BIOS initialization code and operating-system initialization code.

The MP protocol imposes the following requirements and restrictions on the system:

- An APIC clock (APICLK) must be provided.
- The MP protocol will be executed only after a power-up or RESET. If the MP protocol has been completed and a BSP has been chosen, subsequent INITs (either to a specific processor or system wide) do not cause the MP protocol to be repeated. Instead, each processor examines its BSP flag (in the APIC_BASE MSR) to determine whether it should execute the BIOS boot-strap code (if it is the BSP) or enter a wait-for-SIPI state (if it is an AP).
- All devices in the system that are capable of delivering interrupts to the processors must be inhibited from doing so for the duration of the MP initialization protocol. The time during which interrupts must be inhibited includes the window between when the BSP issues an INIT-SIPI-SIPI sequence to an AP and when the AP responds to the last SIPI in the sequence.

The following special-purpose interprocessor interrupts (IPIs) are used during the boot phase of the MP initialization protocol. These IPIs are broadcast on the APIC bus.

- Boot IPI (BIPI)—Initiates the arbitration mechanism that selects a BSP from the group of processors on the system bus and designates the remainder of the processors as APs. Each processor on the system bus broadcasts a BIPI to all the processors following a power-up or RESET.
- Final Boot IPI (FIPI)—Initiates the BIOS initialization procedure for the BSP. This IPI is broadcast to all the processors on the system bus, but only the BSP responds to it. The BSP responds by beginning execution of the BIOS initialization code at the reset vector.
- Startup IPI (SIPI)—Initiates the initialization procedure for an AP. The SIPI message contains a vector to the AP initialization code in the BIOS.

Table 8-5 describes the various fields of the boot phase IPIs.

Table 8-5. Boot Phase IPI Message Format

Type	Destination Field	Destination Shorthand	Trigger Mode	Level	Destination Mode	Delivery Mode	Vector (Hex)
BIPI	Not used	All including self	Edge	Deassert	Don't Care	Fixed (000)	40 to 4E*
FIPI	Not used	All including self	Edge	Deassert	Don't Care	Fixed (000)	10
SIPI	Used	All excluding self	Edge	Assert	Physical	StartUp (110)	00 to FF

NOTE:

* For all P6 family processors.

For BIPI messages, the lower 4 bits of the vector field contain the APIC ID of the processor issuing the message and the upper 4 bits contain the "generation ID" of the message. All P6 family processor will have a generation ID of 4H. BIPIs will therefore use vector values ranging from 40H to 4EH (4FH can not be used because FH is not a valid APIC ID).

8.11.2 MP Initialization Protocol Algorithm

Following a power-up or RESET of a system, the P6 family processors in the system execute the MP initialization protocol algorithm to initialize each of the processors on the system bus. In the course of executing this algorithm, the following boot-up and initialization operations are carried out:

1. Each processor on the system bus is assigned a unique APIC ID, based on system topology (see Section 8.4.5, "Identifying Logical Processors in an MP System"). This ID is written into the local APIC ID register for each processor.
2. Each processor executes its internal BIST simultaneously with the other processors on the system bus. Upon completion of the BIST (at T0), each processor broadcasts a BIPI to "all including self" (see Figure 8-1).
3. APIC arbitration hardware causes all the APICs to respond to the BIPIs one at a time (at T1, T2, T3, and T4).
4. When the first BIPI is received (at time T1), each APIC compares the four least significant bits of the BIPI's vector field with its APIC ID. If the vector and APIC ID match, the processor selects itself as the BSP by setting the BSP flag in its IA32_APIC_BASE MSR. If the vector and APIC ID do not match, the processor selects itself as an AP by entering the "wait for SIPI" state. (Note that in Figure 8-1, the BIPI from processor 1 is the first BIPI to be handled, so processor 1 becomes the BSP.)
5. The newly established BSP broadcasts an FIPI message to "all including self." The FIPI is guaranteed to be handled only after the completion of the BIPIs that were issued by the non-BSP processors.

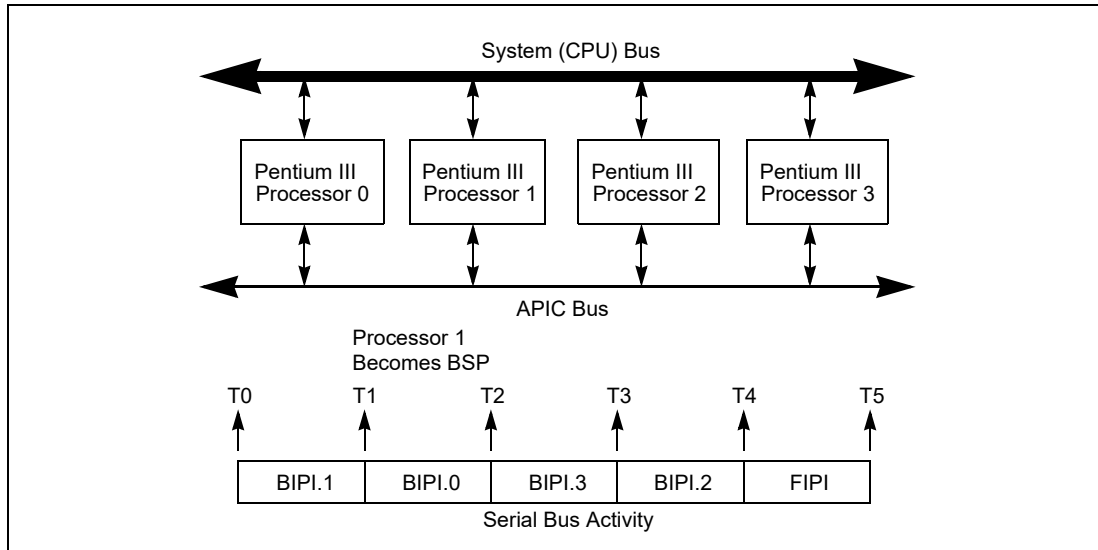


Figure 8-1. MP System With Multiple Pentium III Processors

6. After the BSP has been established, the outstanding BIPIs are received one at a time (at T2, T3, and T4) and ignored by all processors.
7. When the FIPI is finally received (at T5), only the BSP responds to it. It responds by fetching and executing BIOS boot-strap code, beginning at the reset vector (physical address FFFF FFF0H).
8. As part of the boot-strap code, the BSP creates an ACPI table and an MP table and adds its initial APIC ID to these tables as appropriate.
9. At the end of the boot-strap procedure, the BSP broadcasts a SIPI message to all the APs in the system. Here, the SIPI message contains a vector to the BIOS AP initialization code (at 000V V000H, where VV is the vector contained in the SIPI message).
10. All APs respond to the SIPI message by racing to a BIOS initialization semaphore. The first one to the semaphore begins executing the initialization code. (See MP init code for semaphore implementation details.) As part of the AP initialization procedure, the AP adds its APIC ID number to the ACPI and MP tables as appropriate. At the completion of the initialization procedure, the AP executes a CLI instruction (to clear the IF flag in the EFLAGS register) and halts itself.
11. When each of the APs has gained access to the semaphore and executed the AP initialization code and all written their APIC IDs into the appropriate places in the ACPI and MP tables, the BSP establishes a count for the number of processors connected to the system bus, completes executing the BIOS boot-strap code, and then begins executing operating-system boot-strap and start-up code.
12. While the BSP is executing operating-system boot-strap and start-up code, the APs remain in the halted state. In this state they will respond only to INITs, NMIs, and SMIs. They will also respond to snoops and to assertions of the STPCLK# pin.

See Section 8.4.4, "MP Initialization Example," for an annotated example the use of the MP protocol to boot IA-32 processors in an MP. This code should run on any IA-32 processor that used the MP protocol.

8.11.2.1 Error Detection and Handling During the MP Initialization Protocol

Errors may occur on the APIC bus during the MP initialization phase. These errors may be transient or permanent and can be caused by a variety of failure mechanisms (for example, broken traces, soft errors during bus usage, etc.). All serial bus related errors will result in an APIC checksum or acceptance error.

The MP initialization protocol makes the following assumptions regarding errors that occur during initialization:

- If errors are detected on the APIC bus during execution of the MP initialization protocol, the processors that detect the errors are shut down.
- The MP initialization protocol will be executed by processors even if they fail their BIST sequences.

11. Updates to Chapter 18, Volume 3B

Change bars show changes to Chapter 18 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3B: System Programming Guide, Part 2*.

Changes to this chapter: Updated DMND_IFETCH description. Update to bit fields in section 18.3.8.2 "Off-core Response Performance Monitoring" and update to tables associated with this section. Update to bit fields in section 18.3.8.2.1 "Off-core Response Performance Monitoring for the Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family" and update to tables associated with this section. Minor updates to wording in various sections throughout the chapter.

Intel 64 and IA-32 architectures provide facilities for monitoring performance via a PMU (Performance Monitoring Unit).

18.1 PERFORMANCE MONITORING OVERVIEW

Performance monitoring was introduced in the Pentium processor with a set of model-specific performance-monitoring counter MSR. These counters permit selection of processor performance parameters to be monitored and measured. The information obtained from these counters can be used for tuning system and compiler performance.

In Intel P6 family of processors, the performance monitoring mechanism was enhanced to permit a wider selection of events to be monitored and to allow greater control events to be monitored. Next, Intel processors based on Intel NetBurst microarchitecture introduced a distributed style of performance monitoring mechanism and performance events.

The performance monitoring mechanisms and performance events defined for the Pentium, P6 family, and Intel processors based on Intel NetBurst microarchitecture are not architectural. They are all model specific (not compatible among processor families). Intel Core Solo and Intel Core Duo processors support a set of architectural performance events and a set of non-architectural performance events. Newer Intel processor generations support enhanced architectural performance events and non-architectural performance events.

Starting with Intel Core Solo and Intel Core Duo processors, there are two classes of performance monitoring capabilities. The first class supports events for monitoring performance using counting or interrupt-based event sampling usage. These events are non-architectural and vary from one processor model to another. They are similar to those available in Pentium M processors. These non-architectural performance monitoring events are specific to the microarchitecture and may change with enhancements. They are discussed in Section 18.6.3, "Performance Monitoring (Processors Based on Intel NetBurst® Microarchitecture)." Non-architectural events for a given microarchitecture cannot be enumerated using CPUID; and they are listed in Chapter 19, "Performance Monitoring Events."

The second class of performance monitoring capabilities is referred to as architectural performance monitoring. This class supports the same counting and interrupt-based event sampling usages, with a smaller set of available events. The visible behavior of architectural performance events is consistent across processor implementations. Availability of architectural performance monitoring capabilities is enumerated using the CPUID.0AH. These events are discussed in Section 18.2.

See also:

- Section 18.2, "Architectural Performance Monitoring"
- Section 18.3, "Performance Monitoring (Intel® Core™ Processors and Intel® Xeon® Processors)"
 - Section 18.3.1, "Performance Monitoring for Processors Based on Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Nehalem"
 - Section 18.3.2, "Performance Monitoring for Processors Based on Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Westmere"
 - Section 18.3.3, "Intel® Xeon® Processor E7 Family Performance Monitoring Facility"
 - Section 18.3.4, "Performance Monitoring for Processors Based on Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Sandy Bridge"
 - Section 18.3.5, "3rd Generation Intel® Core™ Processor Performance Monitoring Facility"
 - Section 18.3.6, "4th Generation Intel® Core™ Processor Performance Monitoring Facility"
 - Section 18.3.7, "5th Generation Intel® Core™ Processor and Intel® Core™ M Processor Performance Monitoring Facility"

- Section 18.3.8, “6th Generation, 7th Generation and 8th Generation Intel® Core™ Processor Performance Monitoring Facility”
- Section 18.4, “Performance monitoring (Intel® Xeon™ Phi Processors)”
 - Section 18.4.1, “Intel® Xeon Phi™ Processor 7200/5200/3200 Performance Monitoring”
- Section 18.5, “Performance Monitoring (Intel® Atom™ Processors)”
 - Section 18.5.1, “Performance Monitoring (45 nm and 32 nm Intel® Atom™ Processors)”
 - Section 18.5.2, “Performance Monitoring for Silvermont Microarchitecture”
 - Section 18.5.3, “Performance Monitoring for Goldmont Microarchitecture”
 - Section 18.5.4, “Performance Monitoring for Goldmont Plus Microarchitecture”
- Section 18.6, “Performance Monitoring (Legacy Intel Processors)”
 - Section 18.6.1, “Performance Monitoring (Intel® Core™ Solo and Intel® Core™ Duo Processors)”
 - Section 18.6.2, “Performance Monitoring (Processors Based on Intel® Core™ Microarchitecture)”
 - Section 18.6.3, “Performance Monitoring (Processors Based on Intel NetBurst® Microarchitecture)”
 - Section 18.6.4, “Performance Monitoring and Intel Hyper-Threading Technology in Processors Based on Intel NetBurst® Microarchitecture”
 - Section 18.6.4.5, “Counting Clocks on systems with Intel Hyper-Threading Technology in Processors Based on Intel NetBurst® Microarchitecture”
 - Section 18.6.5, “Performance Monitoring and Dual-Core Technology”
 - Section 18.6.6, “Performance Monitoring on 64-bit Intel Xeon Processor MP with Up to 8-MByte L3 Cache”
 - Section 18.6.7, “Performance Monitoring on L3 and Caching Bus Controller Sub-Systems”
 - Section 18.6.8, “Performance Monitoring (P6 Family Processor)”
 - Section 18.6.9, “Performance Monitoring (Pentium Processors)”
- Section 18.7, “Counting Clocks”
- Section 18.8, “IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES MSR Enumeration”

18.2 ARCHITECTURAL PERFORMANCE MONITORING

Performance monitoring events are architectural when they behave consistently across microarchitectures. Intel Core Solo and Intel Core Duo processors introduced architectural performance monitoring. The feature provides a mechanism for software to enumerate performance events and provides configuration and counting facilities for events.

Architectural performance monitoring does allow for enhancement across processor implementations. The CPUID.0AH leaf provides version ID for each enhancement. Intel Core Solo and Intel Core Duo processors support base level functionality identified by version ID of 1. Processors based on Intel Core microarchitecture support, at a minimum, the base level functionality of architectural performance monitoring. Intel Core 2 Duo processor T 7700 and newer processors based on Intel Core microarchitecture support both the base level functionality and enhanced architectural performance monitoring identified by version ID of 2.

45 nm and 32 nm Intel Atom processors and Intel Atom processors based on the Silvermont microarchitecture support the functionality provided by versionID 1, 2, and 3; CPUID.0AH:EAX[7:0] reports versionID = 3 to indicate the aggregate of architectural performance monitoring capabilities. Intel Atom processors based on the Airmont microarchitecture support the same performance monitoring capabilities as those based on the Silvermont microarchitecture.

Intel Core processors and related Intel Xeon processor families based on the Nehalem through Broadwell microarchitectures support version ID 1, 2, and 3. Intel processors based on the Skylake, Kaby Lake and Coffee Lake microarchitectures support versionID 4.

Next generation Intel Atom processors are based on the Goldmont microarchitecture. Intel processors based on the Goldmont microarchitecture support versionID 4.

18.2.1 Architectural Performance Monitoring Version 1

Configuring an architectural performance monitoring event involves programming performance event select registers. There are a finite number of performance event select MSRs (IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSRs). The result of a performance monitoring event is reported in a performance monitoring counter (IA32_PMCx MSR). Performance monitoring counters are paired with performance monitoring select registers.

Performance monitoring select registers and counters are architectural in the following respects:

- Bit field layout of IA32_PERFEVTSELx is consistent across microarchitectures.
- Addresses of IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSRs remain the same across microarchitectures.
- Addresses of IA32_PMC MSRs remain the same across microarchitectures.
- Each logical processor has its own set of IA32_PERFEVTSELx and IA32_PMCx MSRs. Configuration facilities and counters are not shared between logical processors sharing a processor core.

Architectural performance monitoring provides a CPUID mechanism for enumerating the following information:

- Number of performance monitoring counters available to software in a logical processor (each IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSR is paired to the corresponding IA32_PMCx MSR).
- Number of bits supported in each IA32_PMCx.
- Number of architectural performance monitoring events supported in a logical processor.

Software can use CPUID to discover architectural performance monitoring availability (CPUID.0AH). The architectural performance monitoring leaf provides an identifier corresponding to the version number of architectural performance monitoring available in the processor.

The version identifier is retrieved by querying CPUID.0AH:EAX[bits 7:0] (see Chapter 3, “Instruction Set Reference, A-L,” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2A*). If the version identifier is greater than zero, architectural performance monitoring capability is supported. Software queries the CPUID.0AH for the version identifier first; it then analyzes the value returned in CPUID.0AH.EAX, CPUID.0AH.EBX to determine the facilities available.

In the initial implementation of architectural performance monitoring; software can determine how many IA32_PERFEVTSELx/ IA32_PMCx MSR pairs are supported per core, the bit-width of PMC, and the number of architectural performance monitoring events available.

18.2.1.1 Architectural Performance Monitoring Version 1 Facilities

Architectural performance monitoring facilities include a set of performance monitoring counters and performance event select registers. These MSRs have the following properties:

- IA32_PMCx MSRs start at address 0C1H and occupy a contiguous block of MSR address space; the number of MSRs per logical processor is reported using CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8]. Note that this may vary from the number of physical counters present on the hardware, because an agent running at a higher privilege level (e.g., a VMM) may not expose all counters.
- IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSRs start at address 186H and occupy a contiguous block of MSR address space. Each performance event select register is paired with a corresponding performance counter in the 0C1H address block.
- The bit width of an IA32_PMCx MSR is reported using the CPUID.0AH:EAX[23:16]. This the number of valid bits for read operation. On write operations, the lower-order 32 bits of the MSR may be written with any value, and the high-order bits are sign-extended from the value of bit 31.
- Bit field layout of IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSRs is defined architecturally.

See Figure 18-1 for the bit field layout of IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSRs. The bit fields are:

- Event select field (bits 0 through 7)** — Selects the event logic unit used to detect microarchitectural conditions (see Table 18-1, for a list of architectural events and their 8-bit codes). The set of values for this field is defined architecturally; each value corresponds to an event logic unit for use with an architectural performance event. The number of architectural events is queried using CPUID.0AH:EAX. A processor may support only a subset of pre-defined values.

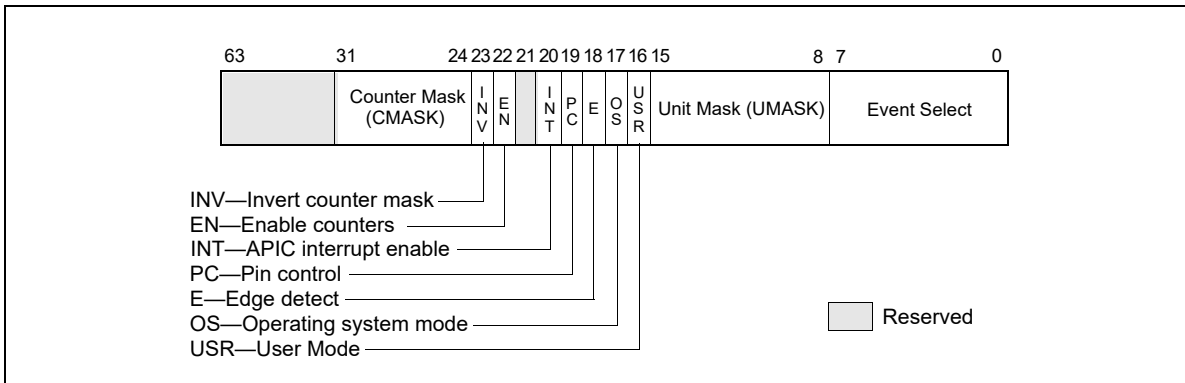


Figure 18-1. Layout of IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSRs

- Unit mask (UMASK) field (bits 8 through 15)** — These bits qualify the condition that the selected event logic unit detects. Valid UMASK values for each event logic unit are specific to the unit. For each architectural performance event, its corresponding UMASK value defines a specific microarchitectural condition.

A pre-defined microarchitectural condition associated with an architectural event may not be applicable to a given processor. The processor then reports only a subset of pre-defined architectural events. Pre-defined architectural events are listed in Table 18-1; support for pre-defined architectural events is enumerated using CPUID.0AH:EBX. Architectural performance events available in the initial implementation are listed in Table 19-1.
- USR (user mode) flag (bit 16)** — Specifies that the selected microarchitectural condition is counted when the logical processor is operating at privilege levels 1, 2 or 3. This flag can be used with the OS flag.
- OS (operating system mode) flag (bit 17)** — Specifies that the selected microarchitectural condition is counted when the logical processor is operating at privilege level 0. This flag can be used with the USR flag.
- E (edge detect) flag (bit 18)** — Enables (when set) edge detection of the selected microarchitectural condition. The logical processor counts the number of deasserted to asserted transitions for any condition that can be expressed by the other fields. The mechanism does not permit back-to-back assertions to be distinguished.

This mechanism allows software to measure not only the fraction of time spent in a particular state, but also the average length of time spent in such a state (for example, the time spent waiting for an interrupt to be serviced).
- PC (pin control) flag (bit 19)** — When set, the logical processor toggles the PMi pins and increments the counter when performance-monitoring events occur; when clear, the processor toggles the PMi pins when the counter overflows. The toggling of a pin is defined as assertion of the pin for a single bus clock followed by deassertion.
- INT (APIC interrupt enable) flag (bit 20)** — When set, the logical processor generates an exception through its local APIC on counter overflow.
- EN (Enable Counters) Flag (bit 22)** — When set, performance counting is enabled in the corresponding performance-monitoring counter; when clear, the corresponding counter is disabled. The event logic unit for a UMASK must be disabled by setting IA32_PERFEVTSELx[bit 22] = 0, before writing to IA32_PMCx.
- INV (invert) flag (bit 23)** — When set, inverts the counter-mask (CMASK) comparison, so that both greater than or equal to and less than comparisons can be made (0: greater than or equal; 1: less than). Note if counter-mask is programmed to zero, INV flag is ignored.

- **Counter mask (CMASK) field (bits 24 through 31)** — When this field is not zero, a logical processor compares this mask to the events count of the detected microarchitectural condition during a single cycle. If the event count is greater than or equal to this mask, the counter is incremented by one. Otherwise the counter is not incremented.

This mask is intended for software to characterize microarchitectural conditions that can count multiple occurrences per cycle (for example, two or more instructions retired per clock; or bus queue occupations). If the counter-mask field is 0, then the counter is incremented each cycle by the event count associated with multiple occurrences.

18.2.1.2 Pre-defined Architectural Performance Events

Table 18-1 lists architecturally defined events.

Table 18-1. UMask and Event Select Encodings for Pre-Defined Architectural Performance Events

Bit Position CPUID.AH.EBX	Event Name	UMask	Event Select
0	UnHalted Core Cycles	00H	3CH
1	Instruction Retired	00H	C0H
2	UnHalted Reference Cycles	01H	3CH
3	LLC Reference	4FH	2EH
4	LLC Misses	41H	2EH
5	Branch Instruction Retired	00H	C4H
6	Branch Misses Retired	00H	C5H

A processor that supports architectural performance monitoring may not support all the predefined architectural performance events (Table 18-1). The non-zero bits in CPUID.0AH:EBX indicate the events that are not available.

The behavior of each architectural performance event is expected to be consistent on all processors that support that event. Minor variations between microarchitectures are noted below:

- **UnHalted Core Cycles** — Event select 3CH, Umask 00H

This event counts core clock cycles when the clock signal on a specific core is running (not halted). The counter does not advance in the following conditions:

- an ACPI C-state other than C0 for normal operation
- HLT
- STPCLK# pin asserted
- being throttled by TM1
- during the frequency switching phase of a performance state transition (see Chapter 14, “Power and Thermal Management”)

The performance counter for this event counts across performance state transitions using different core clock frequencies

- **Instructions Retired** — Event select C0H, Umask 00H

This event counts the number of instructions at retirement. For instructions that consist of multiple micro-ops, this event counts the retirement of the last micro-op of the instruction. An instruction with a REP prefix counts as one instruction (not per iteration). Faults before the retirement of the last micro-op of a multi-ops instruction are not counted.

This event does not increment under VM-exit conditions. Counters continue counting during hardware interrupts, traps, and inside interrupt handlers.

- **UnHalted Reference Cycles** — Event select 3CH, Umask 01H

This event counts reference clock cycles at a fixed frequency while the clock signal on the core is running. The event counts at a fixed frequency, irrespective of core frequency changes due to performance state transitions. Processors may implement this behavior differently. Current implementations use the core crystal clock, TSC or the bus clock. Because the rate may differ between implementations, software should calibrate it to a time source with known frequency.

- **Last Level Cache References** — Event select 2EH, Umask 4FH

This event counts requests originating from the core that reference a cache line in the last level on-die cache. The event count includes speculation and cache line fills due to the first-level cache hardware prefetcher, but may exclude cache line fills due to other hardware-prefetchers.

Because cache hierarchy, cache sizes and other implementation-specific characteristics; value comparison to estimate performance differences is not recommended.

- **Last Level Cache Misses** — Event select 2EH, Umask 41H

This event counts each cache miss condition for references to the last level on-die cache. The event count may include speculation and cache line fills due to the first-level cache hardware prefetcher, but may exclude cache line fills due to other hardware-prefetchers.

Because cache hierarchy, cache sizes and other implementation-specific characteristics; value comparison to estimate performance differences is not recommended.

- **Branch Instructions Retired** — Event select C4H, Umask 00H

This event counts branch instructions at retirement. It counts the retirement of the last micro-op of a branch instruction.

- **All Branch Mispredict Retired** — Event select C5H, Umask 00H

This event counts mispredicted branch instructions at retirement. It counts the retirement of the last micro-op of a branch instruction in the architectural path of execution and experienced misprediction in the branch prediction hardware.

Branch prediction hardware is implementation-specific across microarchitectures; value comparison to estimate performance differences is not recommended.

NOTE

Programming decisions or software precisions on functionality should not be based on the event values or dependent on the existence of performance monitoring events.

18.2.2 Architectural Performance Monitoring Version 2

The enhanced features provided by architectural performance monitoring version 2 include the following:

- **Fixed-function performance counter register and associated control register** — Three of the architectural performance events are counted using three fixed-function MSRs (IA32_FIXED_CTR0 through IA32_FIXED_CTR2). Each of the fixed-function PMC can count only one architectural performance event.

Configuring the fixed-function PMCs is done by writing to bit fields in the MSR (IA32_FIXED_CTR_CTRL) located at address 38DH. Unlike configuring performance events for general-purpose PMCs (IA32_PMCx) via UMASK field in (IA32_PERFECTSELx), configuring, programming IA32_FIXED_CTR_CTRL for fixed-function PMCs do not require any UMASK.

- Simplified event programming** — Most frequent operation in programming performance events are enabling/disabling event counting and checking the status of counter overflows. Architectural performance event version 2 provides three architectural MSR:
 - IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL allows software to enable/disable event counting of all or any combination of fixed-function PMCs (IA32_FIXED_CTRx) or any general-purpose PMCs via a single WRMSR.
 - IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS allows software to query counter overflow conditions on any combination of fixed-function PMCs or general-purpose PMCs via a single RDMSR.
 - IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL allows software to clear counter overflow conditions on any combination of fixed-function PMCs or general-purpose PMCs via a single WRMSR.
- PMI Overhead Mitigation** — Architectural performance monitoring version 2 introduces two bit field interface in IA32_DEBUGCTL for PMI service routine to accumulate performance monitoring data and LBR records with reduced perturbation from servicing the PMI. The two bit fields are:
 - IA32_DEBUGCTL.Freeze_LBR_On_PMI(bit 11). In architectural performance monitoring version 2, only the legacy semantic behavior is supported. See Section 17.4.7 for details of the legacy Freeze LBRs on PMI control.
 - IA32_DEBUGCTL.Freeze_PerfMon_On_PMI(bit 12). In architectural performance monitoring version 2, only the legacy semantic behavior is supported. See Section 17.4.7 for details of the legacy Freeze LBRs on PMI control.

The facilities provided by architectural performance monitoring version 2 can be queried from CPUID leaf 0AH by examining the content of register EDX:

- Bits 0 through 4 of CPUID.0AH.EDX indicates the number of fixed-function performance counters available per core,
- Bits 5 through 12 of CPUID.0AH.EDX indicates the bit-width of fixed-function performance counters. Bits beyond the width of the fixed-function counter are reserved and must be written as zeros.

NOTE

Early generation of processors based on Intel Core microarchitecture may report in CPUID.0AH:EDX of support for version 2 but indicating incorrect information of version 2 facilities.

The IA32_FIXED_CTR_CTRL MSR include multiple sets of 4-bit field, each 4 bit field controls the operation of a fixed-function performance counter. Figure 18-2 shows the layout of 4-bit controls for each fixed-function PMC. Two sub-fields are currently defined within each control. The definitions of the bit fields are:

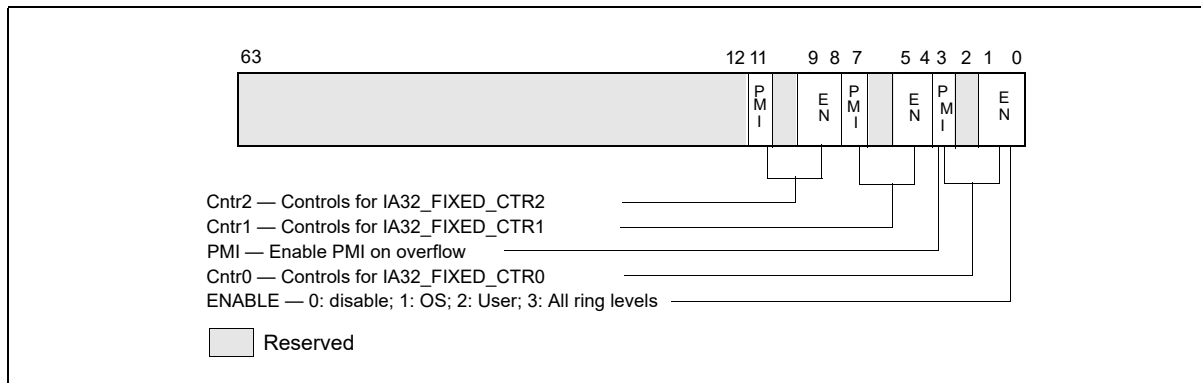


Figure 18-2. Layout of IA32_FIXED_CTR_CTRL MSR

- Enable field (lowest 2 bits within each 4-bit control)** — When bit 0 is set, performance counting is enabled in the corresponding fixed-function performance counter to increment while the target condition associated with the architecture performance event occurred at ring 0. When bit 1 is set, performance counting is enabled in the corresponding fixed-function performance counter to increment while the target condition associated with the architecture performance event occurred at ring greater than 0. Writing 0 to both bits stops the performance counter. Writing a value of 11B enables the counter to increment irrespective of privilege levels.
- PMI field (the fourth bit within each 4-bit control)** — When set, the logical processor generates an exception through its local APIC on overflow condition of the respective fixed-function counter.

IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL MSR provides single-bit controls to enable counting of each performance counter. Figure 18-3 shows the layout of IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL. Each enable bit in IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL is AND'ed with the enable bits for all privilege levels in the respective IA32_PERFEVTSELx or IA32_PERF_FIXED_CTR_CTRL MSRs to start/stop the counting of respective counters. Counting is enabled if the AND'ed results is true; counting is disabled when the result is false.

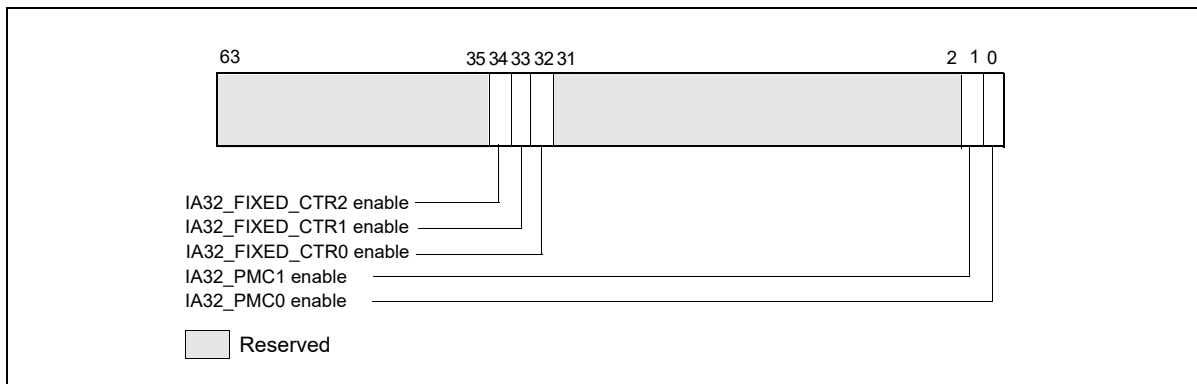


Figure 18-3. Layout of IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL MSR

The behavior of the fixed function performance counters supported by architectural performance version 2 is expected to be consistent on all processors that support those counters, and is defined as follows.

Table 18-2. Association of Fixed-Function Performance Counters with Architectural Performance Events

Fixed-Function Performance Counter	Address	Event Mask Mnemonic	Description
MSR_PERF_FIXED_CTR0//IA32_FIXED_CTR0	309H	INST_RETIRED.ANY	This event counts the number of instructions that retire execution. For instructions that consist of multiple uops, this event counts the retirement of the last uop of the instruction. The counter continues counting during hardware interrupts, traps, and in-side interrupt handlers.
MSR_PERF_FIXED_CTR1//IA32_FIXED_CTR1	30AH	CPU_CLK_UNHALTED.THREAD CPU_CLK_UNHALTED.CORE	The CPU_CLK_UNHALTED.THREAD event counts the number of core cycles while the logical processor is not in a halt state. If there is only one logical processor in a processor core, CPU_CLK_UNHALTED.CORE counts the unhalting cycles of the processor core. The core frequency may change from time to time due to transitions associated with Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology or TM2. For this reason this event may have a changing ratio with regards to time.
MSR_PERF_FIXED_CTR2//IA32_FIXED_CTR2	30BH	CPU_CLK_UNHALTED.REF_TSC	This event counts the number of reference cycles at the TSC rate when the core is not in a halt state and not in a TM stop-clock state. The core enters the halt state when it is running the HLT instruction or the MWAIT instruction. This event is not affected by core frequency changes (e.g., P states) but counts at the same frequency as the time stamp counter. This event can approximate elapsed time while the core was not in a halt state and not in a TM stopclock state.

IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS MSR provides single-bit status for software to query the overflow condition of each performance counter. IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS[bit 62] indicates overflow conditions of the DS area data buffer. IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS[bit 63] provides a CondChgd bit to indicate changes to the state of performance monitoring hardware. Figure 18-4 shows the layout of IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS. A value of 1 in bits 0, 1, 32 through 34 indicates a counter overflow condition has occurred in the associated counter.

When a performance counter is configured for PEBS, overflow condition in the counter generates a performance-monitoring interrupt signaling a PEBS event. On a PEBS event, the processor stores data records into the buffer area (see Section 18.15.5), clears the counter overflow status, and sets the "OvfBuffer" bit in IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS.

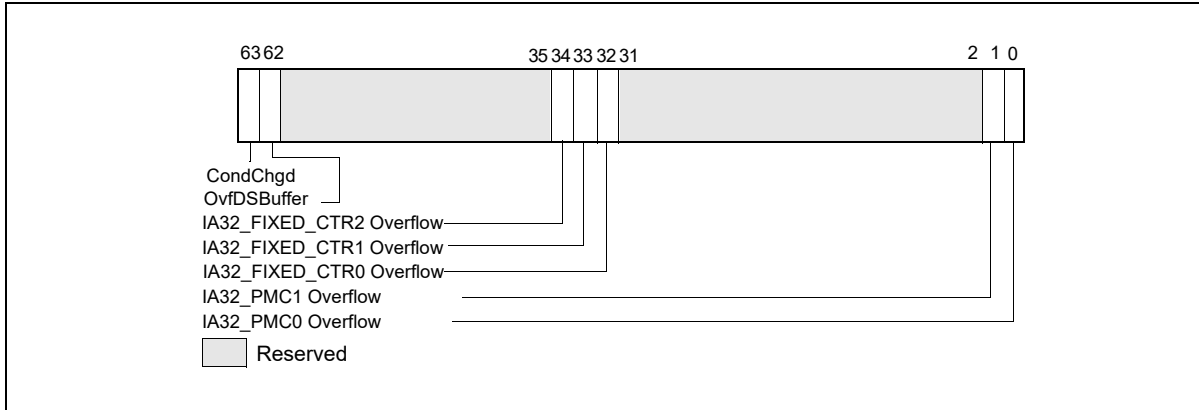


Figure 18-4. Layout of IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS MSR

IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTL MSR allows software to clear overflow indicator(s) of any general-purpose or fixed-function counters via a single WRMSR. Software should clear overflow indications when

- Setting up new values in the event select and/or UMASK field for counting or interrupt-based event sampling.
- Reloading counter values to continue collecting next sample.
- Disabling event counting or interrupt-based event sampling.

The layout of IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTL is shown in Figure 18-5.

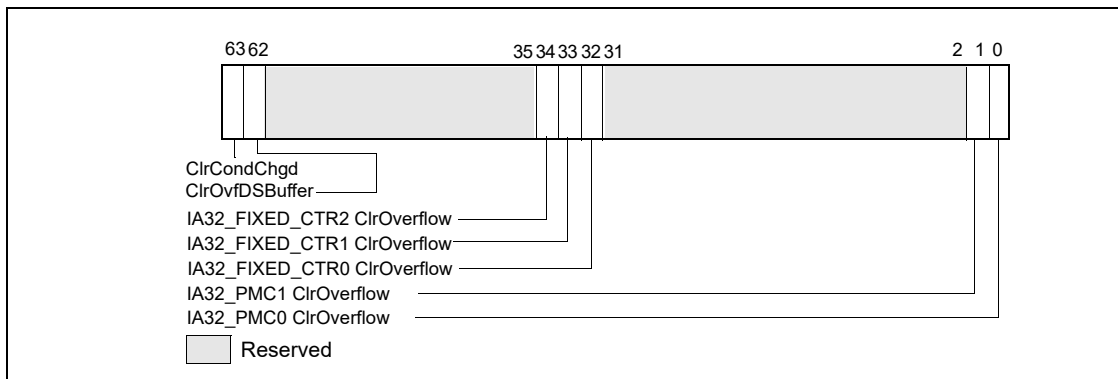


Figure 18-5. Layout of IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL MSR

18.2.3 Architectural Performance Monitoring Version 3

Processors supporting architectural performance monitoring version 3 also supports version 1 and 2, as well as capability enumerated by CPUID leaf 0AH. Specifically, version 3 provides the following enhancement in performance monitoring facilities if a processor core comprising of more than one logical processor, i.e. a processor core supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology or simultaneous multi-threading capability:

- AnyThread counting for processor core supporting two or more logical processors. The interface that supports AnyThread counting include:
 - Each IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSR (starting at MSR address 186H) support the bit field layout defined in Figure 18-6.

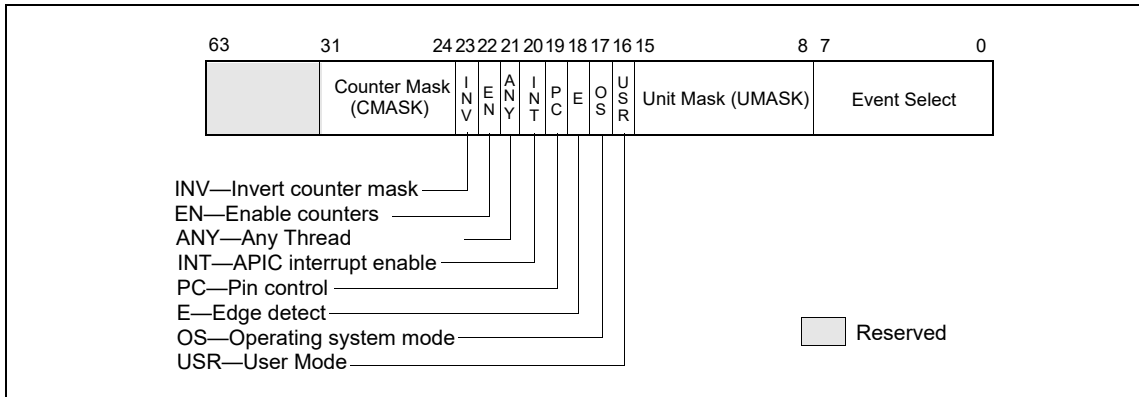


Figure 18-6. Layout of IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSRs Supporting Architectural Performance Monitoring Version 3

Bit 21 (AnyThread) of IA32_PERFEVTSELx is supported in architectural performance monitoring version 3 for processor core comprising of two or more logical processors. When set to 1, it enables counting the associated event conditions (including matching the thread’s CPL with the OS/USR setting of IA32_PERFEVTSELx) occurring across all logical processors sharing a processor core. When bit 21 is 0, the counter only increments the associated event conditions (including matching the thread’s CPL with the OS/USR setting of IA32_PERFEVTSELx) occurring in the logical processor which programmed the IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSR.

- Each fixed-function performance counter IA32_FIXED_CTRx (starting at MSR address 309H) is configured by a 4-bit control block in the IA32_PERF_FIXED_CTR_CTRL MSR. The control block also allow thread-specificity configuration using an AnyThread bit. The layout of IA32_PERF_FIXED_CTR_CTRL MSR is shown.

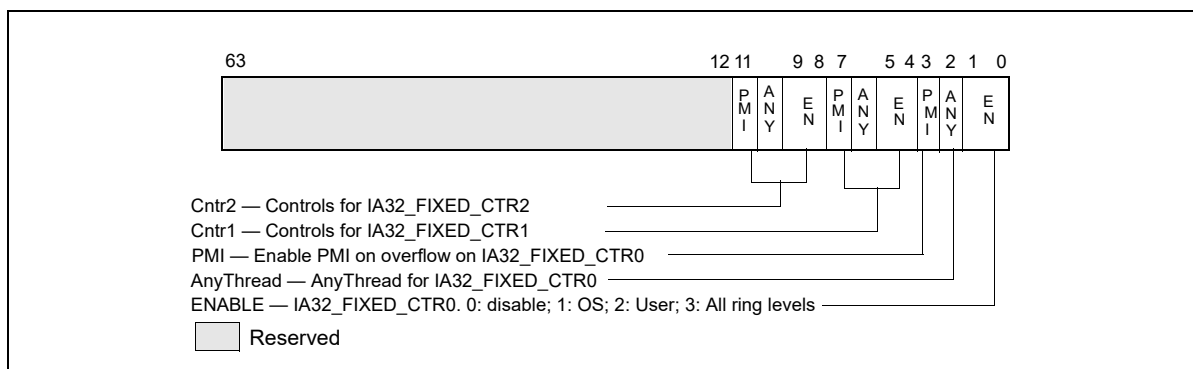


Figure 18-7. IA32_FIXED_CTR_CTRL MSR Supporting Architectural Performance Monitoring Version 3

Each control block for a fixed-function performance counter provides a **AnyThread** (bit position 2 + 4*N, N= 0, 1, etc.) bit. When set to 1, it enables counting the associated event conditions (including matching the thread’s CPL with the ENABLE setting of the corresponding control block of IA32_PERF_FIXED_CTR_CTRL) occurring across all logical processors sharing a processor core. When an **AnyThread** bit is 0 in IA32_PERF_FIXED_CTR_CTRL, the corresponding fixed counter only increments the associated event conditions occurring in the logical processor which programmed the IA32_PERF_FIXED_CTR_CTRL MSR.

- The IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL, IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS, IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL MSRs provide single-bit controls/status for each general-purpose and fixed-function performance counter. Figure 18-8 and Figure 18-9 show the layout of these MSRs for N general-purpose performance counters (where N is reported by CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8]) and three fixed-function counters.

18.2.3.1 AnyThread Counting and Software Evolution

The motivation for characterizing software workload over multiple software threads running on multiple logical processors of the same processor core originates from a time earlier than the introduction of the AnyThread interface in IA32_PERFEVTSELx and IA32_FIXED_CTR_CTRL. While AnyThread counting provides some benefits in simple software environments of an earlier era, the evolution contemporary software environments introduce certain concepts and pre-requisites that AnyThread counting does not comply with.

One example is the proliferation of software environments that support multiple virtual machines (VM) under VMX (see Chapter 23, “Introduction to Virtual-Machine Extensions”) where each VM represents a domain separated from one another.

A Virtual Machine Monitor (VMM) that manages the VMs may allow individual VM to employ performance monitoring facilities to profiles the performance characteristics of a workload. The use of the Anythread interface in IA32_PERFEVTSELx and IA32_FIXED_CTR_CTRL is discouraged with software environments supporting virtualization or requiring domain separation.

Specifically, Intel recommends VMM:

- configure the MSR bitmap to cause VM-exits for WRMSR to IA32_PERFEVTSELx and IA32_FIXED_CTR_CTRL in VMX non-Root operation (see CHAPTER 24 for additional information),
- clear the AnyThread bit of IA32_PERFEVTSELx and IA32_FIXED_CTR_CTRL in the MSR-load lists for VM exits and VM entries (see CHAPTER 24, CHAPTER 26, and CHAPTER 27).

Even when operating in simpler legacy software environments which might not emphasize the pre-requisites of a virtualized software environment, the use of the AnyThread interface should be moderated and follow any event-specific guidance where explicitly noted (see relevant sections of Chapter 19, “Performance Monitoring Events”).

18.2.4 Architectural Performance Monitoring Version 4

Processors supporting architectural performance monitoring version 4 also supports version 1, 2, and 3, as well as capability enumerated by CPUID leaf 0AH. Version 4 introduced a streamlined PMI overhead mitigation interface that replaces the legacy semantic behavior but retains the same control interface in IA32_DEBUGCTL.Freeze_LBRs_On_PMI and Freeze_PerfMon_On_PMI. Specifically version 4 provides the following enhancement:

- New indicators (LBR_FRZ, CTR_FRZ) in IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS, see Section 18.2.4.1.
- Streamlined Freeze/PMI Overhead management interfaces to use IA32_DEBUGCTL.Freeze_LBRs_On_PMI and IA32_DEBUGCTL.Freeze_PerfMon_On_PMI: see Section 18.2.4.1. Legacy semantics of Freeze_LBRs_On_PMI and Freeze_PerfMon_On_PMI (applicable to version 2 and 3) are not supported with version 4 or higher.
- Fine-grain separation of control interface to manage overflow/status of IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS and read-only performance counter enabling interface in IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS: see Section 18.2.4.2.
- Performance monitoring resource in-use MSR to facilitate cooperative sharing protocol between perfmon-managing privilege agents.

18.2.4.1 Enhancement in IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS

The IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS MSR provides the following indicators with architectural performance monitoring version 4:

- IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS.LBR_FRZ[bit 58]: This bit is set due to the following conditions:
 - IA32_DEBUGCTL.FREEZE_LBR_ON_PMI has been set by the profiling agent, and
 - A performance counter, configured to generate PMI, has overflowed to signal a PMI. Consequently the LBR stack is frozen.

Effectively, the IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS.LBR_FRZ bit also serve as an read-only control to enable capturing data in the LBR stack. To enable capturing LBR records, the following expression must hold with architectural perfmon version 4 or higher:

- $(\text{IA32_DEBUGCTL.LBR} \ \& \ (!\text{IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS.LBR_FRZ})) = 1$

- IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS.CTR_FRZ[bit 59]: This bit is set due to the following conditions:
 - IA32_DEBUGCTL.FREEZE_PERFMON_ON_PMI has been set by the profiling agent, and
 - A performance counter, configured to generate PMI, has overflowed to signal a PMI. Consequently, all the performance counters are frozen.

Effectively, the IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS.CTR_FRZ bit also serve as an read-only control to enable programmable performance counters and fixed counters in the core PMU. To enable counting with the performance counters, the following expression must hold with architectural perfmon version 4 or higher:

- $(IA32_PERFEVTSELn.EN \& IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL.PMCn \& (!IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS.CTR_FRZ)) = 1$ for programmable counter 'n', or
- $(IA32_PERF_FIXED_CTRL.ENi \& IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL.FCi \& (!IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS.CTR_FRZ)) = 1$ for fixed counter 'i'

The read-only enable interface IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS.CTR_FRZ provides a more efficient flow for a PMI handler to use IA32_DEBUGCTL.Freeza_Perfmon_On_PMI to filter out data that may distort target workload analysis, see Table 17-3. It should be noted the IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL register continue to serve as the primary interface to control all performance counters of the logical processor.

For example, when the Freeze-On-PMI mode is not being used, a PMI handler would be setting IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL as the very last step to commence the overall operation after configuring the individual counter registers, controls and PEBS facility. This does not only assure atomic monitoring but also avoids unnecessary complications (e.g. race conditions) when software attempts to change the core PMU configuration while some counters are kept enabled.

Additionally, IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS.TraceToPAPMI[bit 55]: On processors that support Intel Processor Trace and configured to store trace output packets to physical memory using the ToPA scheme, bit 55 is set when a PMI occurred due to a ToPA entry memory buffer was completely filled.

IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS also provides an indicator to distinguish interaction of performance monitoring operations with other side-band activities, which apply Intel SGX on processors that support SGX (For additional information about Intel SGX, see "Intel® Software Guard Extensions Programming Reference".):

- IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS.ASCI[bit 60]: This bit is set when data accumulated in any of the configured performance counters (i.e. IA32_PMCx or IA32_FIXED_CTRx) may include contributions from direct or indirect operation of Intel SGX to protect an enclave (since the last time IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS.ASCI was cleared).

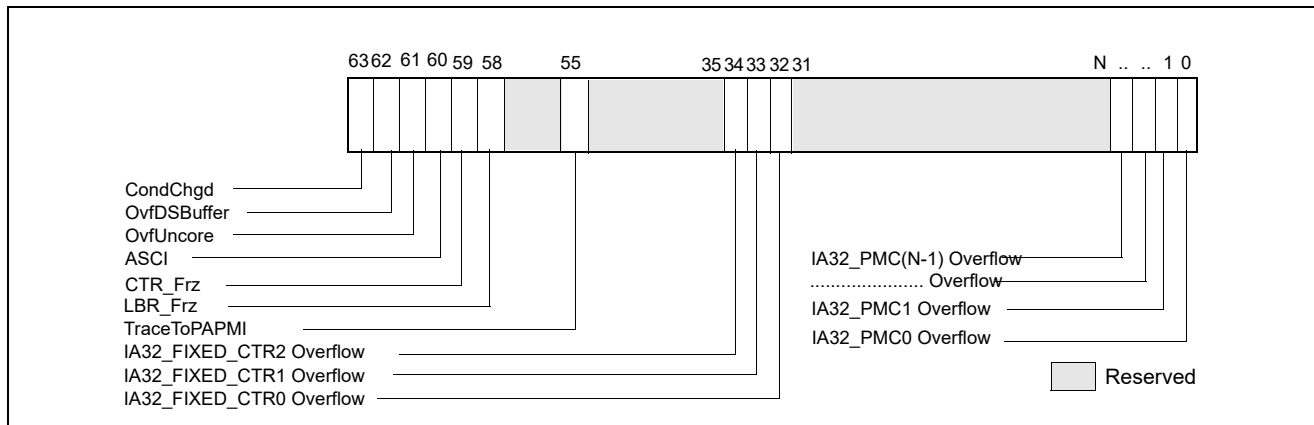


Figure 18-10. IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS MSR and Architectural Perfmon Version 4

Note, a processor’s support for IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS.TraceToPAPMI[bit 55] is enumerated as a result of CPUID enumerated capability of Intel Processor Trace and the use of the ToPA buffer scheme. Support of IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS.ASCI[bit 60] is enumerated by the CPUID enumeration of Intel SGX.

18.2.4.2 IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS_RESET and IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS_SET MSRS

With architectural performance monitoring version 3 and lower, clearing of the set bits in IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS MSR by software is done via IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL MSR. Starting with architectural performance monitoring version 4, software can manage the overflow and other indicators in IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS using separate interfaces to set or clear individual bits.

The address and the architecturally-defined bits of IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL is inherited by IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS_RESET (see Figure 18-11). Further, IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS_RESET provides additional bit fields to clear the new indicators in IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS described in Section 18.2.4.1.

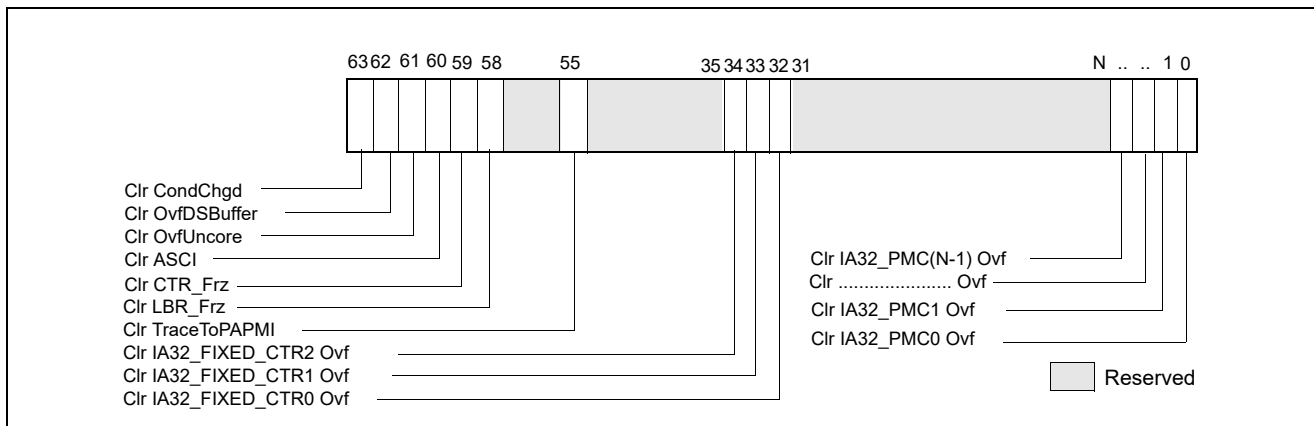


Figure 18-11. IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS_RESET MSR and Architectural Perfmon Version 4

The IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS_SET MSR is introduced with architectural performance monitoring version 4. It allows software to set individual bits in IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS. The IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS_SET interface can be used by a VMM to virtualize the state of IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS across VMs.

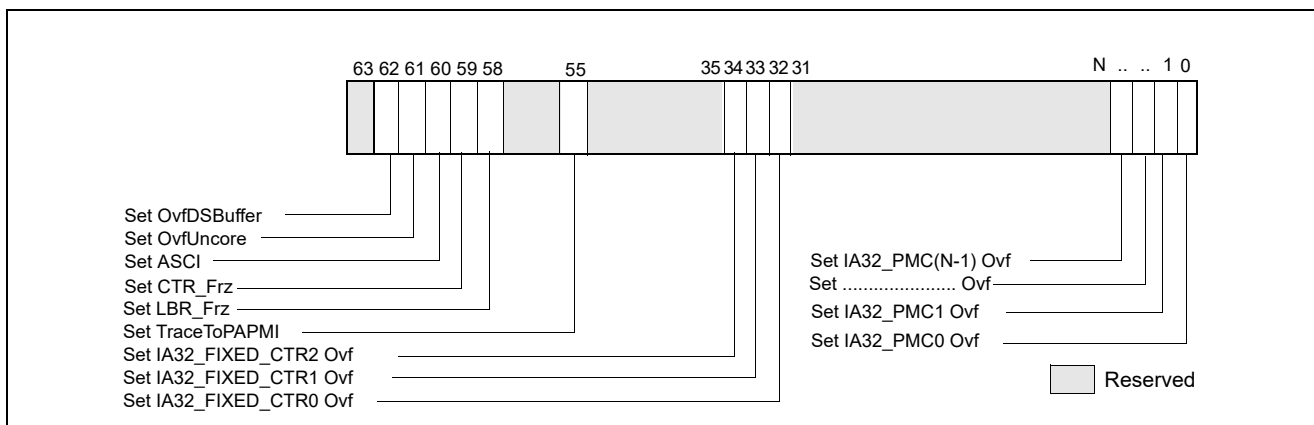


Figure 18-12. IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS_SET MSR and Architectural Perfmon Version 4

18.2.4.3 IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_INUSE MSR

In a contemporary software environment, multiple privileged service agents may wish to employ the processor’s performance monitoring facilities. The IA32_MISC_ENABLE.PERFMON_AVAILABLE[bit 7] interface could not serve

the need of multiple agent adequately. A white paper, “Performance Monitoring Unit Sharing Guideline”¹, proposed a cooperative sharing protocol that is voluntary for participating software agents.

Architectural performance monitoring version 4 introduces a new MSR, IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_INUSE, that simplifies the task of multiple cooperating agents to implement the sharing protocol.

The layout of IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_INUSE is shown in Figure 18-13.

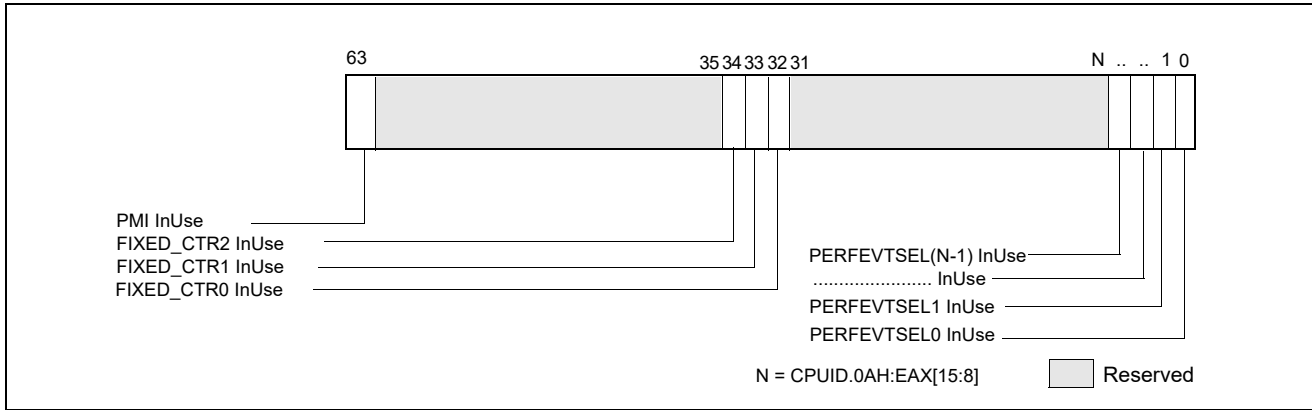


Figure 18-13. IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_INUSE MSR and Architectural Perfmon Version 4

The IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_INUSE MSR provides an “InUse” bit for each programmable performance counter and fixed counter in the processor. Additionally, it includes an indicator if the PMI mechanism has been configured by a profiling agent.

- IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_INUSE.PERFEVTSEL0_InUse[bit 0]: This bit reflects the logical state of (IA32_PERFEVTSEL0[7:0] != 0).
- IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_INUSE.PERFEVTSEL1_InUse[bit 1]: This bit reflects the logical state of (IA32_PERFEVTSEL1[7:0] != 0).
- IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_INUSE.PERFEVTSEL2_InUse[bit 2]: This bit reflects the logical state of (IA32_PERFEVTSEL2[7:0] != 0).
- IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_INUSE.PERFEVTSELn_InUse[bit n]: This bit reflects the logical state of (IA32_PERFEVTSELn[7:0] != 0), n < CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8].
- IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_INUSE.FC0_InUse[bit 32]: This bit reflects the logical state of (IA32_FIXED_CTR_CTRL[1:0] != 0).
- IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_INUSE.FC1_InUse[bit 33]: This bit reflects the logical state of (IA32_FIXED_CTR_CTRL[5:4] != 0).
- IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_INUSE.FC2_InUse[bit 34]: This bit reflects the logical state of (IA32_FIXED_CTR_CTRL[9:8] != 0).
- IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_INUSE.PMI_InUse[bit 63]: This bit is set if any one of the following bit is set:
 - IA32_PERFEVTSELn.INT[bit 20], n < CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8].
 - IA32_FIXED_CTR_CTRL.ENi_PMI, i = 0, 1, 2.
 - Any IA32_PEBS_ENABLES bit which enables PEBS for a general-purpose or fixed-function performance counter.

1. Available at <http://www.intel.com/sdm>

18.2.5 Full-Width Writes to Performance Counter Registers

The general-purpose performance counter registers IA32_PMCx are writable via WRMSR instruction. However, the value written into IA32_PMCx by WRMSR is the signed extended 64-bit value of the EAX[31:0] input of WRMSR.

A processor that supports full-width writes to the general-purpose performance counters enumerated by CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] will set IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES[13] to enumerate its full-width-write capability. See Figure 18-63.

If IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES.FW_WRITE[bit 13] = 1, each IA32_PMCi is accompanied by a corresponding alias address starting at 4C1H for IA32_A_PMC0.

The bit width of the performance monitoring counters is specified in CPUID.0AH:EAX[23:16].

If IA32_A_PMCi is present, the 64-bit input value (EDX:EAX) of WRMSR to IA32_A_PMCi will cause IA32_PMCi to be updated by:

```
COUNTERWIDTH = CPUID.0AH:EAX[23:16] bit width of the performance monitoring counter
IA32_PMCi[COUNTERWIDTH-1:32] ← EDX[COUNTERWIDTH-33:0];
IA32_PMCi[31:0] ← EAX[31:0];
EDX[63:COUNTERWIDTH] are reserved
```

18.3 PERFORMANCE MONITORING (INTEL® CORE™ PROCESSORS AND INTEL® XEON® PROCESSORS)

18.3.1 Performance Monitoring for Processors Based on Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Nehalem

Intel Core i7 processor family² supports architectural performance monitoring capability with version ID 3 (see Section 18.2.3) and a host of non-architectural monitoring capabilities. The Intel Core i7 processor family is based on Intel® microarchitecture code name Nehalem, and provides four general-purpose performance counters (IA32_PMC0, IA32_PMC1, IA32_PMC2, IA32_PMC3) and three fixed-function performance counters (IA32_FIXED_CTR0, IA32_FIXED_CTR1, IA32_FIXED_CTR2) in the processor core.

Non-architectural performance monitoring in Intel Core i7 processor family uses the IA32_PERFVTSELx MSR to configure a set of non-architecture performance monitoring events to be counted by the corresponding general-purpose performance counter. The list of non-architectural performance monitoring events is listed in Table 19-29. Non-architectural performance monitoring events fall into two broad categories:

- Performance monitoring events in the processor core: These include many events that are similar to performance monitoring events available to processor based on Intel Core microarchitecture. Additionally, there are several enhancements in the performance monitoring capability for detecting microarchitectural conditions in the processor core or in the interaction of the processor core to the off-core sub-systems in the physical processor package. The off-core sub-systems in the physical processor package is loosely referred to as "uncore".
- Performance monitoring events in the uncore: The uncore sub-system is shared by more than one processor cores in the physical processor package. It provides additional performance monitoring facility outside of IA32_PMCx and performance monitoring events that are specific to the uncore sub-system.

Architectural and non-architectural performance monitoring events in Intel Core i7 processor family support thread qualification using bit 21 of IA32_PERFVTSELx MSR.

The bit fields within each IA32_PERFVTSELx MSR are defined in Figure 18-6 and described in Section 18.2.1.1 and Section 18.2.3.

2. Intel Xeon processor 5500 series and 3400 series are also based on Intel microarchitecture code name Nehalem; the performance monitoring facilities described in this section generally also apply.

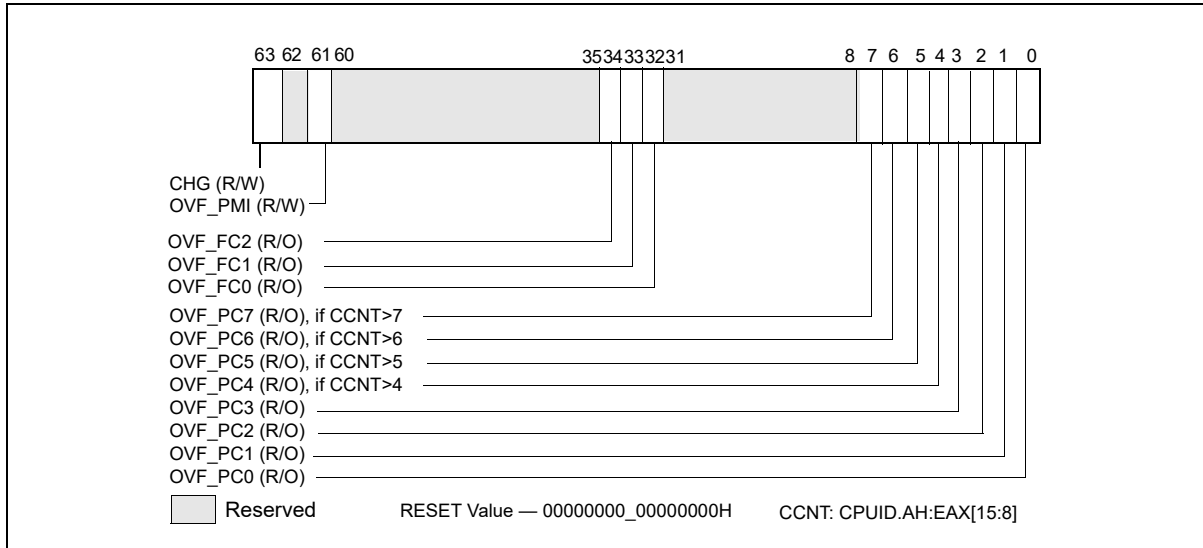


Figure 18-14. IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS MSR

18.3.1.1 Enhancements of Performance Monitoring in the Processor Core

The notable enhancements in the monitoring of performance events in the processor core include:

- Four general purpose performance counters, IA32_PMCx, associated counter configuration MSRs, IA32_PERFEVTSELx, and global counter control MSR supporting simplified control of four counters. Each of the four performance counter can support processor event based sampling (PEBS) and thread-qualification of architectural and non-architectural performance events. Width of IA32_PMCx supported by hardware has been increased. The width of counter reported by CPUID.0AH:EAX[23:16] is 48 bits. The PEBS facility in Intel micro-architecture code name Nehalem has been enhanced to include new data format to capture additional information, such as load latency.
- Load latency sampling facility. Average latency of memory load operation can be sampled using load-latency facility in processors based on Intel microarchitecture code name Nehalem. This field measures the load latency from load's first dispatch of till final data writeback from the memory subsystem. The latency is reported for retired demand load operations and in core cycles (it accounts for re-dispatches). This facility is used in conjunction with the PEBS facility.
- Off-core response counting facility. This facility in the processor core allows software to count certain transaction responses between the processor core to sub-systems outside the processor core (uncore). Counting off-core response requires additional event qualification configuration facility in conjunction with IA32_PERFEVTSELx. Two off-core response MSRs are provided to use in conjunction with specific event codes that must be specified with IA32_PERFEVTSELx.

NOTE

The number of counters available to software may vary from the number of physical counters present on the hardware, because an agent running at a higher privilege level (e.g., a VMM) may not expose all counters. CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] reports the MSRs available to software; see Section 18.2.1.

18.3.1.1.1 Processor Event Based Sampling (PEBS)

All four general-purpose performance counters, IA32_PMCx, can be used for PEBS if the performance event supports PEBS. Software uses IA32_MISC_ENABLE[7] and IA32_MISC_ENABLE[12] to detect whether the performance monitoring facility and PEBS functionality are supported in the processor. The MSR IA32_PEBS_ENABLE provides 4 bits that software must use to enable which IA32_PMCx overflow condition will cause the PEBS record to be captured.

Additionally, the PEBS record is expanded to allow latency information to be captured. The MSR IA32_PEBS_ENABLE provides 4 additional bits that software must use to enable latency data recording in the PEBS record upon the respective IA32_PMCx overflow condition. The layout of IA32_PEBS_ENABLE for processors based on Intel microarchitecture code name Nehalem is shown in Figure 18-15.

When a counter is enabled to capture machine state (PEBS_EN_PMCx = 1), the processor will write machine state information to a memory buffer specified by software as detailed below. When the counter IA32_PMCx overflows from maximum count to zero, the PEBS hardware is armed.

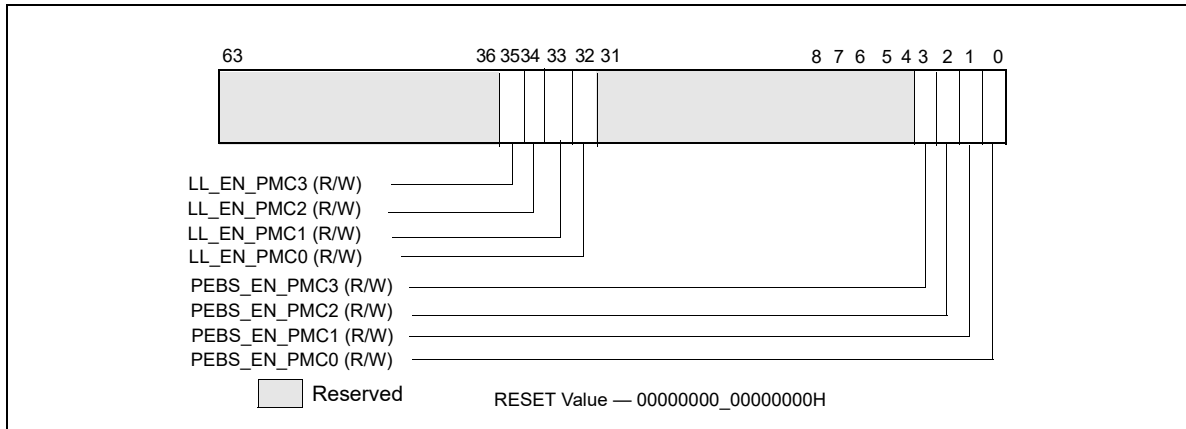


Figure 18-15. Layout of IA32_PEBS_ENABLE MSR

Upon occurrence of the next PEBS event, the PEBS hardware triggers an assist and causes a PEBS record to be written. The format of the PEBS record is indicated by the bit field IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES[11:8] (see Figure 18-63).

The behavior of PEBS assists is reported by IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES[6] (see Figure 18-63). The return instruction pointer (RIP) reported in the PEBS record will point to the instruction after (+1) the instruction that causes the PEBS assist. The machine state reported in the PEBS record is the machine state after the instruction that causes the PEBS assist is retired. For instance, if the instructions:

```
mov eax, [eax] ; causes PEBS assist
```

```
nop
```

are executed, the PEBS record will report the address of the nop, and the value of EAX in the PEBS record will show the value read from memory, not the target address of the read operation.

The PEBS record format is shown in Table 18-3, and each field in the PEBS record is 64 bits long. The PEBS record format, along with debug/store area storage format, does not change regardless of IA-32e mode is active or not. CPUID.01H:ECX.DTES64[bit 2] reports whether the processor's DS storage format support is mode-independent. When set, it uses 64-bit DS storage format.

Table 18-3. PEBS Record Format for Intel Core i7 Processor Family

Byte Offset	Field	Byte Offset	Field
00H	R/EFLAGS	58H	R9
08H	R/EIP	60H	R10
10H	R/EAX	68H	R11
18H	R/EBX	70H	R12
20H	R/ECX	78H	R13
28H	R/EDX	80H	R14
30H	R/ESI	88H	R15

Table 18-3. PEBS Record Format for Intel Core i7 Processor Family

Byte Offset	Field	Byte Offset	Field
38H	R/EDI	90H	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS
40H	R/EBP	98H	Data Linear Address
48H	R/ESP	A0H	Data Source Encoding
50H	R8	A8H	Latency value (core cycles)

In IA-32e mode, the full 64-bit value is written to the register. If the processor is not operating in IA-32e mode, 32-bit value is written to registers with bits 63:32 zeroed. Registers not defined when the processor is not in IA-32e mode are written to zero.

Bytes AFH:90H are enhancement to the PEBS record format. Support for this enhanced PEBS record format is indicated by IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES[11:8] encoding of 0001B.

The value written to bytes 97H:90H is the state of the IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS register before the PEBS assist occurred. This value is written so software can determine which counters overflowed when this PEBS record was written. Note that this field indicates the overflow status for all counters, regardless of whether they were programmed for PEBS or not.

Programming PEBS Facility

Only a subset of non-architectural performance events in the processor support PEBS. The subset of precise events are listed in Table 18-68. In addition to using IA32_PERFEVTSELx to specify event unit/mask settings and setting the EN_PMCx bit in the IA32_PEBS_ENABLE register for the respective counter, the software must also initialize the DS_BUFFER_MANAGEMENT_AREA data structure in memory to support capturing PEBS records for precise events.

NOTE

PEBS events are only valid when the following fields of IA32_PERFEVTSELx are all zero: AnyThread, Edge, Invert, CMask.

The beginning linear address of the DS_BUFFER_MANAGEMENT_AREA data structure must be programmed into the IA32_DS_AREA register. The layout of the DS_BUFFER_MANAGEMENT_AREA is shown in Figure 18-16.

- **PEBS Buffer Base:** This field is programmed with the linear address of the first byte of the PEBS buffer allocated by software. The processor reads this field to determine the base address of the PEBS buffer. Software should allocate this memory from the non-paged pool.
- **PEBS Index:** This field is initially programmed with the same value as the PEBS Buffer Base field, or the beginning linear address of the PEBS buffer. The processor reads this field to determine the location of the next PEBS record to write to. After a PEBS record has been written, the processor also updates this field with the address of the next PEBS record to be written. The figure above illustrates the state of PEBS Index after the first PEBS record is written.
- **PEBS Absolute Maximum:** This field represents the absolute address of the maximum length of the allocated PEBS buffer plus the starting address of the PEBS buffer. The processor will not write any PEBS record beyond the end of PEBS buffer, when **PEBS Index** equals **PEBS Absolute Maximum**. No signaling is generated when PEBS buffer is full. Software must reset the **PEBS Index** field to the beginning of the PEBS buffer address to continue capturing PEBS records.

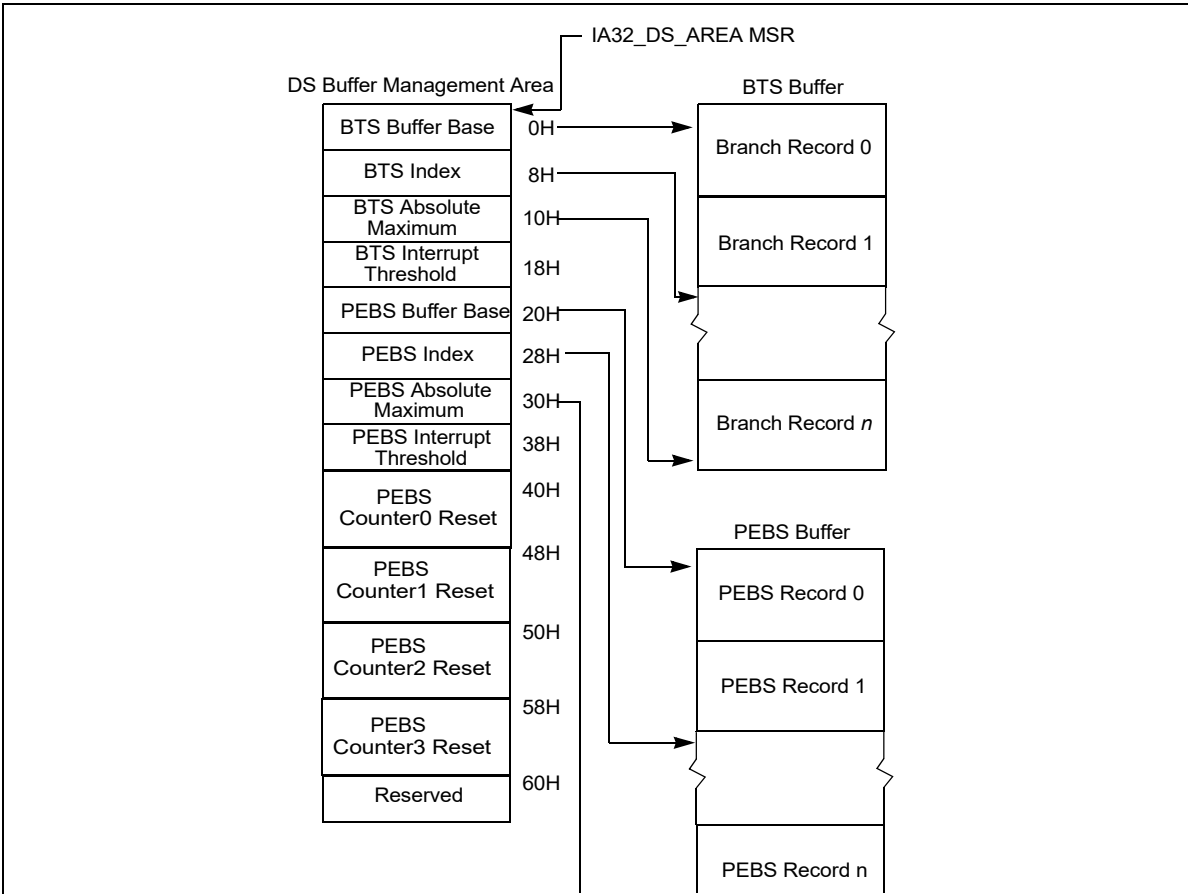


Figure 18-16. PEBS Programming Environment

- PEBS Interrupt Threshold:** This field specifies the threshold value to trigger a performance interrupt and notify software that the PEBS buffer is nearly full. This field is programmed with the linear address of the first byte of the PEBS record within the PEBS buffer that represents the threshold record. After the processor writes a PEBS record and updates **PEBS Index**, if the **PEBS Index** reaches the threshold value of this field, the processor will generate a performance interrupt. This is the same interrupt that is generated by a performance counter overflow, as programmed in the Performance Monitoring Counters vector in the Local Vector Table of the Local APIC. When a performance interrupt due to PEBS buffer full is generated, the IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS.PEBS_Ovf bit will be set.
- PEBS CounterX Reset:** This field allows software to set up PEBS counter overflow condition to occur at a rate useful for profiling workload, thereby generating multiple PEBS records to facilitate characterizing the profile the execution of test code. After each PEBS record is written, the processor checks each counter to see if it overflowed and was enabled for PEBS (the corresponding bit in IA32_PEBS_ENABLED was set). If these conditions are met, then the reset value for each overflowed counter is loaded from the DS Buffer Management Area. For example, if counter IA32_PMC0 caused a PEBS record to be written, then the value of "PEBS Counter 0 Reset" would be written to counter IA32_PMC0. If a counter is not enabled for PEBS, its value will not be modified by the PEBS assist.

Performance Counter Prioritization

Performance monitoring interrupts are triggered by a counter transitioning from maximum count to zero (assuming IA32_PerfEvtSelX.INT is set). This same transition will cause PEBS hardware to arm, but not trigger. PEBS hardware triggers upon detection of the first PEBS event after the PEBS hardware has been armed (a 0 to 1 transition of the counter). At this point, a PEBS assist will be undertaken by the processor.

Performance counters (fixed and general-purpose) are prioritized in index order. That is, counter IA32_PMC0 takes precedence over all other counters. Counter IA32_PMC1 takes precedence over counters IA32_PMC2 and IA32_PMC3, and so on. This means that if simultaneous overflows or PEBS assists occur, the appropriate action will be taken for the highest priority performance counter. For example, if IA32_PMC1 cause an overflow interrupt and IA32_PMC2 causes an PEBS assist simultaneously, then the overflow interrupt will be serviced first.

The PEBS threshold interrupt is triggered by the PEBS assist, and is by definition prioritized lower than the PEBS assist. Hardware will not generate separate interrupts for each counter that simultaneously overflows. General-purpose performance counters are prioritized over fixed counters.

If a counter is programmed with a precise (PEBS-enabled) event and programmed to generate a counter overflow interrupt, the PEBS assist is serviced before the counter overflow interrupt is serviced. If in addition the PEBS interrupt threshold is met, the

threshold interrupt is generated after the PEBS assist completes, followed by the counter overflow interrupt (two separate interrupts are generated).

Uncore counters may be programmed to interrupt one or more processor cores (see Section 18.3.1.2). It is possible for interrupts posted from the uncore facility to occur coincident with counter overflow interrupts from the processor core. Software must check core and uncore status registers to determine the exact origin of counter overflow interrupts.

18.3.1.1.2 Load Latency Performance Monitoring Facility

The load latency facility provides software a means to characterize the average load latency to different levels of cache/memory hierarchy. This facility requires processor supporting enhanced PEBS record format in the PEBS buffer, see Table 18-3. This field measures the load latency from load's first dispatch of till final data writeback from the memory subsystem. The latency is reported for retired demand load operations and in core cycles (it accounts for re-dispatches).

To use this feature software must assure:

- One of the IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSR is programmed to specify the event unit MEM_INST_RETIRED, and the LATENCY_ABOVE_THRESHOLD event mask must be specified (IA32_PerfEvtSelX[15:0] = 100H). The corresponding counter IA32_PMCx will accumulate event counts for architecturally visible loads which exceed the programmed latency threshold specified separately in a MSR. Stores are ignored when this event is programmed. The CMASK or INV fields of the IA32_PerfEvtSelX register used for counting load latency must be 0. Writing other values will result in undefined behavior.
- The MSR_PEBS_LD_LAT_THRESHOLD MSR is programmed with the desired latency threshold in core clock cycles. Loads with latencies greater than this value are eligible for counting and latency data reporting. The minimum value that may be programmed in this register is 3 (the minimum detectable load latency is 4 core clock cycles).
- The PEBS enable bit in the IA32_PEBS_ENABLE register is set for the corresponding IA32_PMCx counter register. This means that both the PEBS_EN_CTRX and LL_EN_CTRX bits must be set for the counter(s) of interest. For example, to enable load latency on counter IA32_PMC0, the IA32_PEBS_ENABLE register must be programmed with the 64-bit value 00000001_00000001H.

When the load-latency facility is enabled, load operations are randomly selected by hardware and tagged to carry information related to data source locality and latency. Latency and data source information of tagged loads are updated internally.

When a PEBS assist occurs, the last update of latency and data source information are captured by the assist and written as part of the PEBS record. The PEBS sample after value (SAV), specified in PEBS CounterX Reset, operates orthogonally to the tagging mechanism. Loads are randomly tagged to collect latency data. The SAV controls the number of tagged loads with latency information that will be written into the PEBS record field by the PEBS assists. The load latency data written to the PEBS record will be for the last tagged load operation which retired just before the PEBS assist was invoked.

The load-latency information written into a PEBS record (see Table 18-3, bytes AFH:98H) consists of:

- **Data Linear Address:** This is the linear address of the target of the load operation.
- **Latency Value:** This is the elapsed cycles of the tagged load operation between dispatch to GO, measured in processor core clock domain.

- **Data Source:** The encoded value indicates the origin of the data obtained by the load instruction. The encoding is shown in Table 18-4. In the descriptions local memory refers to system memory physically attached to a processor package, and remote memory referrals to system memory physically attached to another processor package.

Table 18-4. Data Source Encoding for Load Latency Record

Encoding	Description
00H	Unknown L3 cache miss
01H	Minimal latency core cache hit. This request was satisfied by the L1 data cache.
02H	Pending core cache HIT. Outstanding core cache miss to same cache-line address was already underway.
03H	This data request was satisfied by the L2.
04H	L3 HIT. Local or Remote home requests that hit L3 cache in the uncore with no coherency actions required (snooping).
05H	L3 HIT. Local or Remote home requests that hit the L3 cache and was serviced by another processor core with a cross core snoop where no modified copies were found. (clean).
06H	L3 HIT. Local or Remote home requests that hit the L3 cache and was serviced by another processor core with a cross core snoop where modified copies were found. (HITM).
07H ¹	Reserved/LLC Snoop HitM. Local or Remote home requests that hit the last level cache and was serviced by another core with a cross core snoop where modified copies found
08H	L3 MISS. Local homed requests that missed the L3 cache and was serviced by forwarded data following a cross package snoop where no modified copies found. (Remote home requests are not counted).
09H	Reserved
0AH	L3 MISS. Local home requests that missed the L3 cache and was serviced by local DRAM (go to shared state).
0BH	L3 MISS. Remote home requests that missed the L3 cache and was serviced by remote DRAM (go to shared state).
0CH	L3 MISS. Local home requests that missed the L3 cache and was serviced by local DRAM (go to exclusive state).
0DH	L3 MISS. Remote home requests that missed the L3 cache and was serviced by remote DRAM (go to exclusive state).
0EH	I/O, Request of input/output operation
0FH	The request was to un-cacheable memory.

NOTES:

1. Bit 7 is supported only for processor with CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel signature of 06_2A, and 06_2E; otherwise it is reserved.

The layout of MSR_PEBS_LD_LAT_THRESHOLD is shown in Figure 18-17.

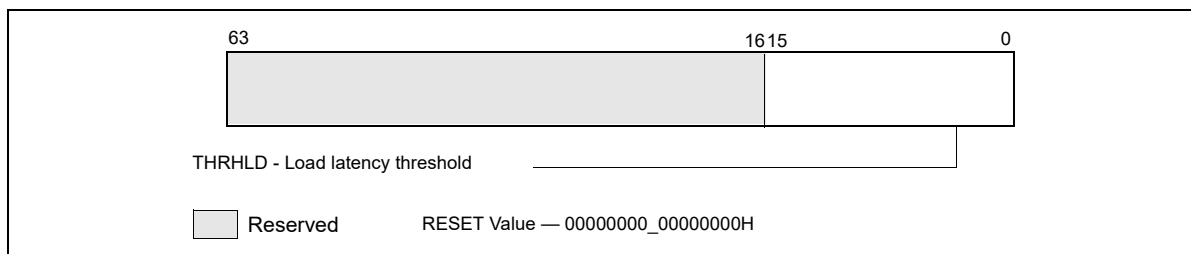


Figure 18-17. Layout of MSR_PEBS_LD_LAT MSR

Bits 15:0 specifies the threshold load latency in core clock cycles. Performance events with latencies greater than this value are counted in IA32_PMCx and their latency information is reported in the PEBS record. Otherwise, they are ignored. The minimum value that may be programmed in this field is 3.

18.3.1.1.3 Off-core Response Performance Monitoring in the Processor Core

Programming a performance event using the off-core response facility can choose any of the four IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSR with specific event codes and predefine mask bit value. Each event code for off-core response monitoring requires programming an associated configuration MSR, MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_0. There is only one off-core response configuration MSR. Table 18-5 lists the event code, mask value and additional off-core configuration MSR that must be programmed to count off-core response events using IA32_PMCx.

Table 18-5. Off-Core Response Event Encoding

Event code in IA32_PERFEVTSELx	Mask Value in IA32_PERFEVTSELx	Required Off-core Response MSR
B7H	01H	MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_0 (address 1A6H)

The layout of MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_0 is shown in Figure 18-18. Bits 7:0 specifies the request type of a transaction request to the uncore. Bits 15:8 specifies the response of the uncore subsystem.

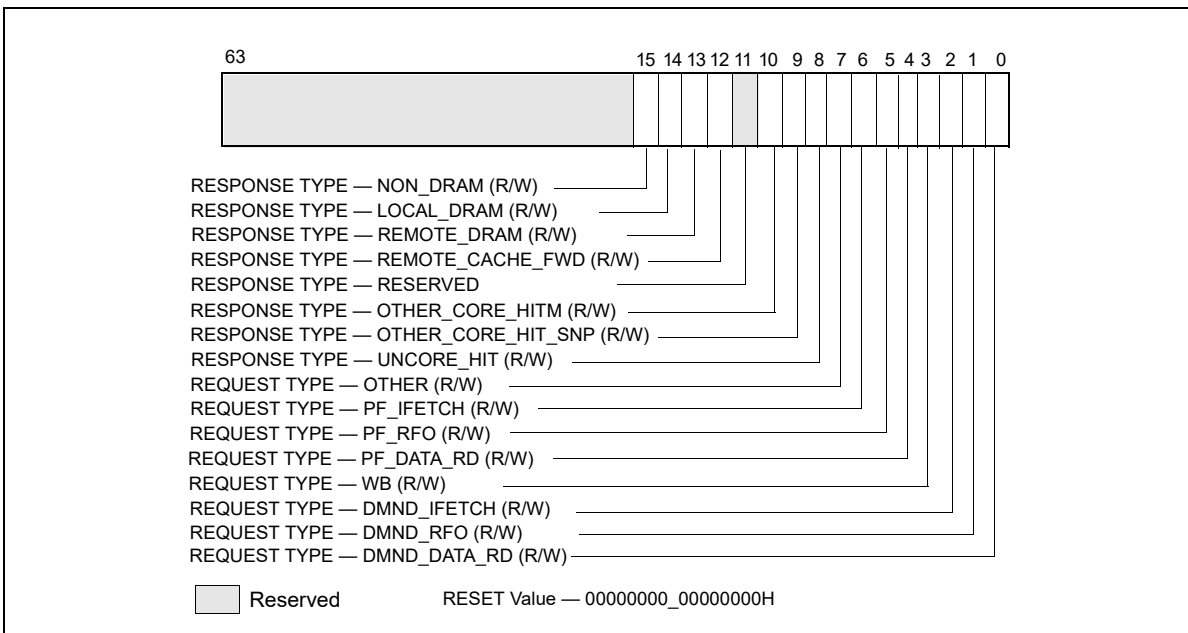


Figure 18-18. Layout of MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_0 and MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_1 to Configure Off-core Response Events

Table 18-6. MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_0 and MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_1 Bit Field Definition

Bit Name	Offset	Description
DMND_DATA_RD	0	(R/W). Counts the number of demand and DCU prefetch data reads of full and partial cachelines as well as demand data page table entry cacheline reads. Does not count L2 data read prefetches or instruction fetches.
DMND_RFO	1	(R/W). Counts the number of demand and DCU prefetch reads for ownership (RFO) requests generated by a write to data cacheline. Does not count L2 RFO.
DMND_IFETCH	2	(R/W). Counts the number of demand instruction cacheline reads and L1 instruction cacheline prefetches.
WB	3	(R/W). Counts the number of writeback (modified to exclusive) transactions.
PF_DATA_RD	4	(R/W). Counts the number of data cacheline reads generated by L2 prefetchers.
PF_RFO	5	(R/W). Counts the number of RFO requests generated by L2 prefetchers.

Table 18-6. MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_0 and MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_1 Bit Field Definition (Contd.)

Bit Name	Offset	Description
PF_IFETCH	6	(R/W). Counts the number of code reads generated by L2 prefetchers.
OTHER	7	(R/W). Counts one of the following transaction types, including L3 invalidate, I/O, full or partial writes, WC or non-temporal stores, CLFLUSH, Fences, lock, unlock, split lock.
UNCORE_HIT	8	(R/W). L3 Hit: local or remote home requests that hit L3 cache in the uncore with no coherency actions required (snooping).
OTHER_CORE_HIT_SNP	9	(R/W). L3 Hit: local or remote home requests that hit L3 cache in the uncore and was serviced by another core with a cross core snoop where no modified copies were found (clean).
OTHER_CORE_HIT_TM	10	(R/W). L3 Hit: local or remote home requests that hit L3 cache in the uncore and was serviced by another core with a cross core snoop where modified copies were found (HITM).
Reserved	11	Reserved
REMOTE_CACHE_FWD	12	(R/W). L3 Miss: local homed requests that missed the L3 cache and was serviced by forwarded data following a cross package snoop where no modified copies found. (Remote home requests are not counted)
REMOTE_DRAM	13	(R/W). L3 Miss: remote home requests that missed the L3 cache and were serviced by remote DRAM.
LOCAL_DRAM	14	(R/W). L3 Miss: local home requests that missed the L3 cache and were serviced by local DRAM.
NON_DRAM	15	(R/W). Non-DRAM requests that were serviced by IOH.

18.3.1.2 Performance Monitoring Facility in the Uncore

The “uncore” in Intel microarchitecture code name Nehalem refers to subsystems in the physical processor package that are shared by multiple processor cores. Some of the sub-systems in the uncore include the L3 cache, Intel QuickPath Interconnect link logic, and integrated memory controller. The performance monitoring facilities inside the uncore operates in the same clock domain as the uncore (U-clock domain), which is usually different from the processor core clock domain. The uncore performance monitoring facilities described in this section apply to Intel Xeon processor 5500 series and processors with the following CPUID signatures: 06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH (see Chapter 2, “Model-Specific Registers (MSRs)” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 4*). An overview of the uncore performance monitoring facilities is described separately.

The performance monitoring facilities available in the U-clock domain consist of:

- Eight General-purpose counters (MSR_UNCORE_PerfCntr0 through MSR_UNCORE_PerfCntr7). The counters are 48 bits wide. Each counter is associated with a configuration MSR, MSR_UNCORE_PerfEvtSelx, to specify event code, event mask and other event qualification fields. A set of global uncore performance counter enabling/overflow/status control MSRs are also provided for software.
- Performance monitoring in the uncore provides an address/opcode match MSR that provides event qualification control based on address value or QPI command opcode.
- One fixed-function counter, MSR_UNCORE_FixedCntr0. The fixed-function uncore counter increments at the rate of the U-clock when enabled.

The frequency of the uncore clock domain can be determined from the uncore clock ratio which is available in the PCI configuration space register at offset COH under device number 0 and Function 0.

18.3.1.2.1 Uncore Performance Monitoring Management Facility

MSR_UNCORE_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL provides bit fields to enable/disable general-purpose and fixed-function counters in the uncore. Figure 18-19 shows the layout of MSR_UNCORE_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL for an uncore that is shared by four processor cores in a physical package.

- EN_PCn (bit n, n = 0, 7): When set, enables counting for the general-purpose uncore counter MSR_UNCORE_PerfCntr n.
- EN_FC0 (bit 32): When set, enables counting for the fixed-function uncore counter MSR_UNCORE_FixedCntr0.

- EN_PMI_COREn (bit n, n = 0, 3 if four cores are present): When set, processor core n is programmed to receive an interrupt signal from any interrupt enabled uncore counter. PMI delivery due to an uncore counter overflow is enabled by setting IA32_DEBUGCTL.Offcore_PMI_EN to 1.
- PMI_FRZ (bit 63): When set, all U-clock uncore counters are disabled when any one of them signals a performance interrupt. Software must explicitly re-enable the counter by setting the enable bits in MSR_UNCORE_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL upon exit from the ISR.

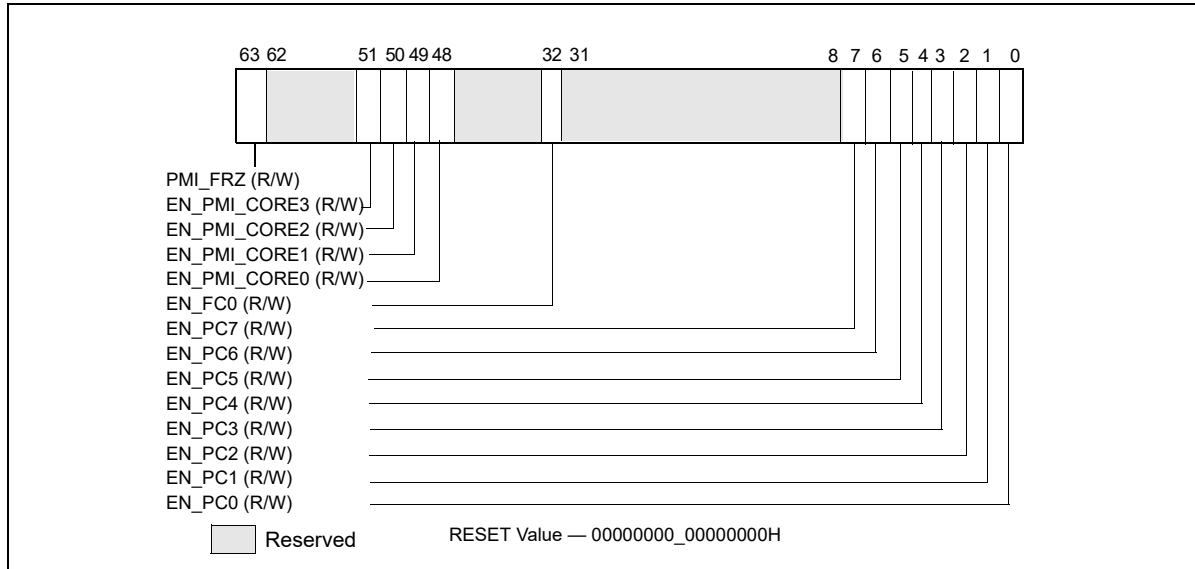


Figure 18-19. Layout of MSR_UNCORE_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL MSR

MSR_UNCORE_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS provides overflow status of the U-clock performance counters in the uncore. This is a read-only register. If an overflow status bit is set the corresponding counter has overflowed. The register provides a condition change bit (bit 63) which can be quickly checked by software to determine if a significant change has occurred since the last time the condition change status was cleared. Figure 18-20 shows the layout of MSR_UNCORE_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS.

- OVF_PCn (bit n, n = 0, 7): When set, indicates general-purpose uncore counter MSR_UNCORE_PerfCntr n has overflowed.
- OVF_FC0 (bit 32): When set, indicates the fixed-function uncore counter MSR_UNCORE_FixedCntr0 has overflowed.
- OVF_PMI (bit 61): When set indicates that an uncore counter overflowed and generated an interrupt request.
- CHG (bit 63): When set indicates that at least one status bit in MSR_UNCORE_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS register has changed state.

MSR_UNCORE_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL allows software to clear the status bits in the UNCORE_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS register. This is a write-only register, and individual status bits in the global status register are cleared by writing a binary one to the corresponding bit in this register. Writing zero to any bit position in this register has no effect on the uncore PMU hardware.

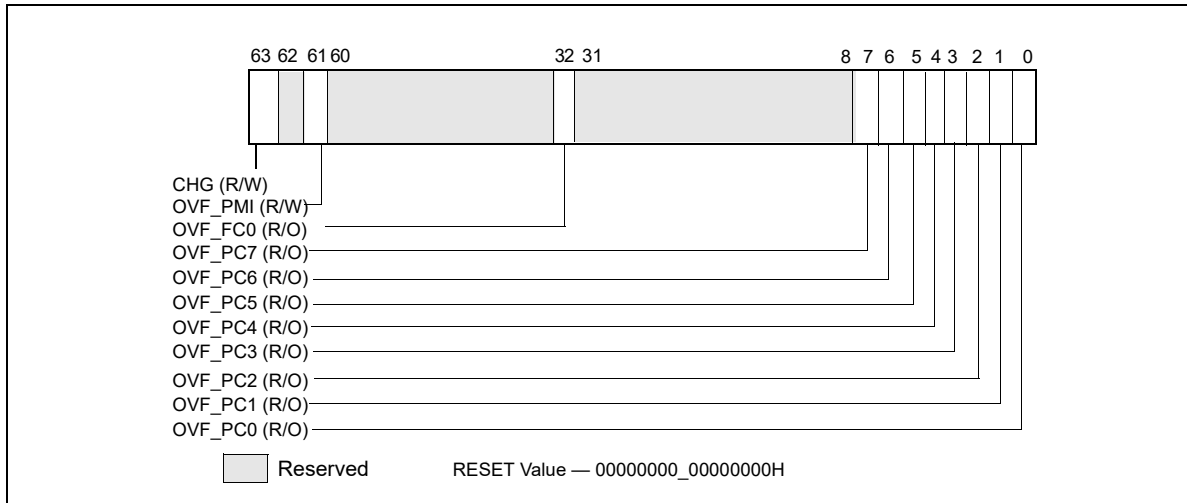


Figure 18-20. Layout of MSR_UNCORE_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS MSR

Figure 18-21 shows the layout of MSR_UNCORE_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL.

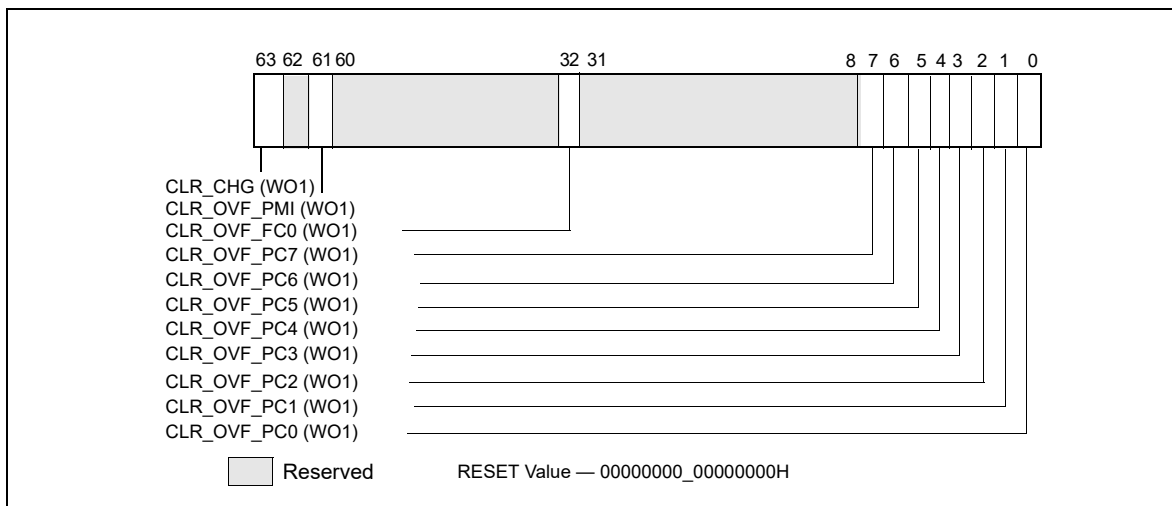


Figure 18-21. Layout of MSR_UNCORE_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL MSR

- CLR_OVF_PCn (bit n, n = 0, 7): Set this bit to clear the overflow status for general-purpose uncore counter MSR_UNCORE_PerfCntr n. Writing a value other than 1 is ignored.
- CLR_OVF_FC0 (bit 32): Set this bit to clear the overflow status for the fixed-function uncore counter MSR_UNCORE_FixedCntr0. Writing a value other than 1 is ignored.
- CLR_OVF_PMI (bit 61): Set this bit to clear the OVF_PMI flag in MSR_UNCORE_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS. Writing a value other than 1 is ignored.
- CLR_CHG (bit 63): Set this bit to clear the CHG flag in MSR_UNCORE_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS register. Writing a value other than 1 is ignored.

18.3.1.2.2 Uncore Performance Event Configuration Facility

MSR_UNCORE_PerfEvtSel0 through MSR_UNCORE_PerfEvtSel7 are used to select performance event and configure the counting behavior of the respective uncore performance counter. Each uncore PerfEvtSel MSR is paired with an uncore performance counter. Each uncore counter must be locally configured using the corresponding MSR_UNCORE_PerfEvtSelx and counting must be enabled using the respective EN_PCx bit in MSR_UNCORE_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL. Figure 18-22 shows the layout of MSR_UNCORE_PERFEVTSELx.

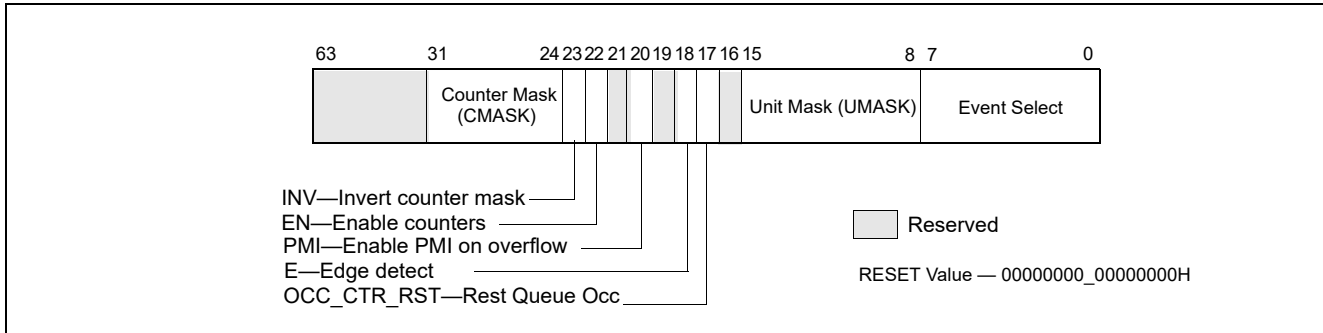


Figure 18-22. Layout of MSR_UNCORE_PERFEVTSELx MSRs

- Event Select (bits 7:0): Selects the event logic unit used to detect uncore events.
- Unit Mask (bits 15:8) : Condition qualifiers for the event selection logic specified in the Event Select field.
- OCC_CTR_RST (bit17): When set causes the queue occupancy counter associated with this event to be cleared (zeroed). Writing a zero to this bit will be ignored. It will always read as a zero.
- Edge Detect (bit 18): When set causes the counter to increment when a deasserted to asserted transition occurs for the conditions that can be expressed by any of the fields in this register.
- PMI (bit 20): When set, the uncore will generate an interrupt request when this counter overflowed. This request will be routed to the logical processors as enabled in the PMI enable bits (EN_PMI_COREx) in the register MSR_UNCORE_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL.
- EN (bit 22): When clear, this counter is locally disabled. When set, this counter is locally enabled and counting starts when the corresponding EN_PCx bit in MSR_UNCORE_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL is set.
- INV (bit 23): When clear, the Counter Mask field is interpreted as greater than or equal to. When set, the Counter Mask field is interpreted as less than.
- Counter Mask (bits 31:24): When this field is clear, it has no effect on counting. When set to a value other than zero, the logical processor compares this field to the event counts on each core clock cycle. If INV is clear and the event counts are greater than or equal to this field, the counter is incremented by one. If INV is set and the event counts are less than this field, the counter is incremented by one. Otherwise the counter is not incremented.

Figure 18-23 shows the layout of MSR_UNCORE_FIXED_CTR_CTRL.

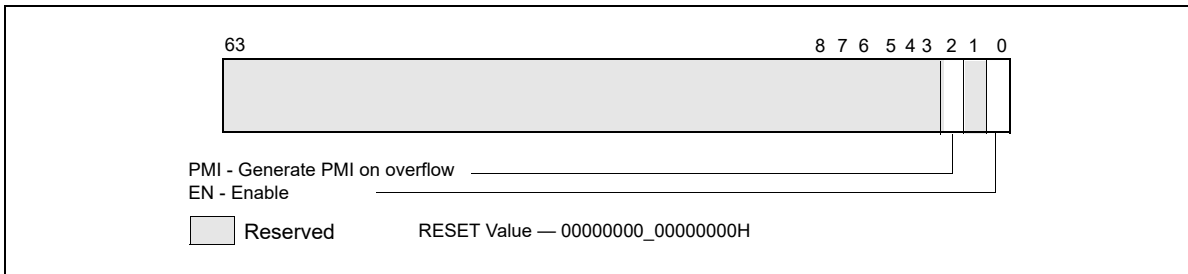


Figure 18-23. Layout of MSR_UNCORE_FIXED_CTR_CTRL MSR

- EN (bit 0): When clear, the uncore fixed-function counter is locally disabled. When set, it is locally enabled and counting starts when the EN_FC0 bit in MSR_UNCORE_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL is set.
- PMI (bit 2): When set, the uncore will generate an interrupt request when the uncore fixed-function counter overflowed. This request will be routed to the logical processors as enabled in the PMI enable bits (EN_PMI_COREx) in the register MSR_UNCORE_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL.

Both the general-purpose counters (MSR_UNCORE_PerfCnt) and the fixed-function counter (MSR_UNCORE_FixedCnt0) are 48 bits wide. They support both counting and interrupt based sampling usages. The event logic unit can filter event counts to specific regions of code or transaction types incoming to the home node logic.

18.3.1.2.3 Uncore Address/Opcode Match MSR

The Event Select field [7:0] of MSR_UNCORE_PERFEVTSELx is used to select different uncore event logic unit. When the event "ADDR_OPCODE_MATCH" is selected in the Event Select field, software can filter uncore performance events according to transaction address and certain transaction responses. The address filter and transaction response filtering requires the use of MSR_UNCORE_ADDR_OPCODE_MATCH register. The layout is shown in Figure 18-24.

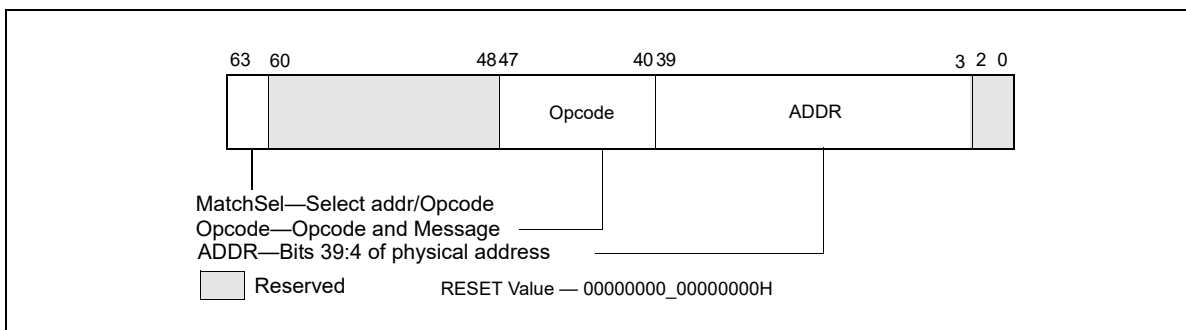


Figure 18-24. Layout of MSR_UNCORE_ADDR_OPCODE_MATCH MSR

- Addr (bits 39:3): The physical address to match if "MatchSel" field is set to select address match. The uncore performance counter will increment if the lowest 40-bit incoming physical address (excluding bits 2:0) for a transaction request matches bits 39:3.
- Opcode (bits 47:40) : Bits 47:40 allow software to filter uncore transactions based on QPI link message class/packed header opcode. These bits are consists two sub-fields:
 - Bits 43:40 specify the QPI packet header opcode.
 - Bits 47:44 specify the QPI message classes.

Table 18-7 lists the encodings supported in the opcode field.

Table 18-7. Opcode Field Encoding for MSR_UNCORE_ADDR_OPCODE_MATCH

Opcode [43:40]	QPI Message Class		
	Home Request [47:44] = 0000B	Snoop Response [47:44] = 0001B	Data Response [47:44] = 1110B
		1	
DMND_IFETCH	2	2	
WB	3	3	
PF_DATA_RD	4	4	
PF_RFO	5	5	
PF_IFETCH	6	6	
OTHER	7	7	
NON_DRAM	15	15	

- MatchSel (bits 63:61): Software specifies the match criteria according to the following encoding:
 - 000B: Disable addr_opcode match hardware.
 - 100B: Count if only the address field matches.
 - 010B: Count if only the opcode field matches.
 - 110B: Count if either opcode field matches or the address field matches.
 - 001B: Count only if both opcode and address field match.
 - Other encoding are reserved.

18.3.1.3 Intel® Xeon® Processor 7500 Series Performance Monitoring Facility

The performance monitoring facility in the processor core of Intel® Xeon® processor 7500 series are the same as those supported in Intel Xeon processor 5500 series. The uncore subsystem in Intel Xeon processor 7500 series are significantly different. The uncore performance monitoring facility consist of many distributed units associated with individual logic control units (referred to as boxes) within the uncore subsystem. A high level block diagram of the various box units of the uncore is shown in Figure 18-25.

Uncore PMUs are programmed via MSR interfaces. Each of the distributed uncore PMU units have several general-purpose counters. Each counter requires an associated event select MSR, and may require additional MSRs to configure sub-event conditions. The uncore PMU MSRs associated with each box can be categorized based on its functional scope: per-counter, per-box, or global across the uncore. The number counters available in each box type are different. Each box generally provides a set of MSRs to enable/disable, check status/overflow of multiple counters within each box.

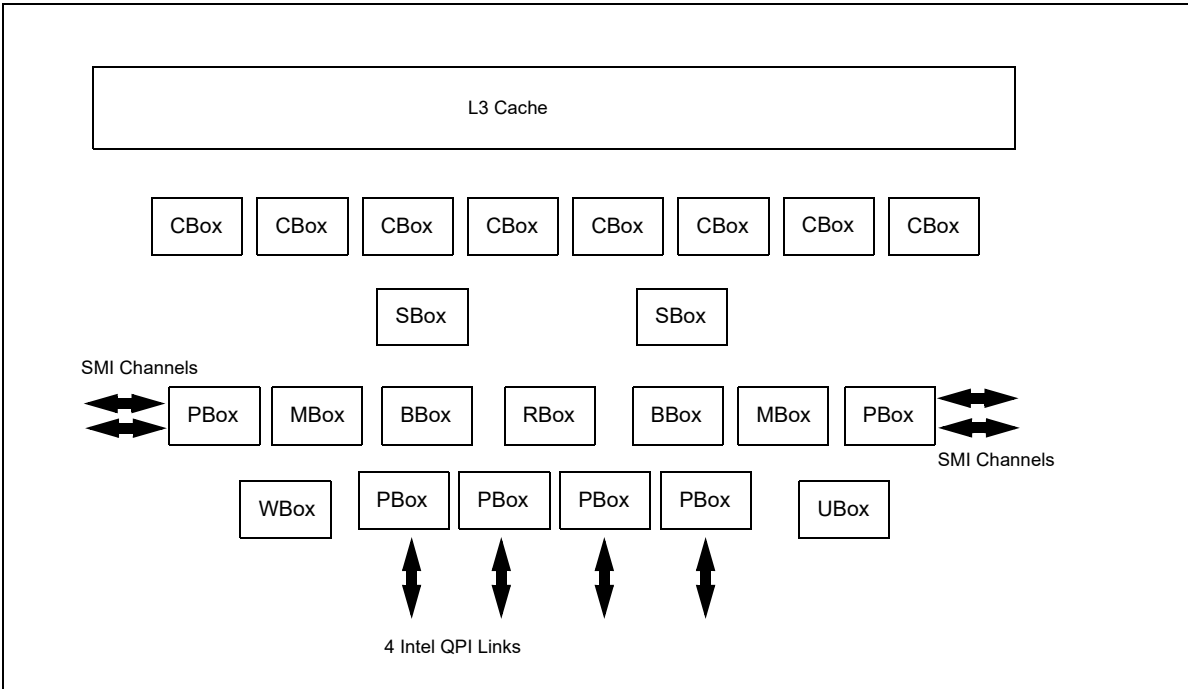


Figure 18-25. Distributed Units of the Uncore of Intel® Xeon® Processor 7500 Series

Table 18-8 summarizes the number MSRs for uncore PMU for each box.

Table 18-8. Uncore PMU MSR Summary

Box	# of Boxes	Counters per Box	Counter Width	General Purpose	Global Enable	Sub-control MSRs
C-Box	8	6	48	Yes	per-box	None
S-Box	2	4	48	Yes	per-box	Match/Mask
B-Box	2	4	48	Yes	per-box	Match/Mask
M-Box	2	6	48	Yes	per-box	Yes
R-Box	1	16 (2 port, 8 per port)	48	Yes	per-box	Yes
W-Box	1	4	48	Yes	per-box	None
		1	48	No	per-box	None
U-Box	1	1	48	Yes	uncore	None

The W-Box provides 4 general-purpose counters, each requiring an event select configuration MSR, similar to the general-purpose counters in other boxes. There is also a fixed-function counter that increments clockticks in the uncore clock domain.

For C,S,B,M,R, and W boxes, each box provides an MSR to enable/disable counting, configuring PMI of multiple counters within the same box, this is somewhat similar the “global control” programming interface, IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL, offered in the core PMU. Similarly status information and counter overflow control for multiple counters within the same box are also provided in C,S,B,M,R, and W boxes.

In the U-Box, MSR_U_PMON_GLOBAL_CTL provides overall uncore PMU enable/disable and PMI configuration control. The scope of status information in the U-box is at per-box granularity, in contrast to the per-box status information MSR (in the C,S,B,M,R, and W boxes) providing status information of individual counter overflow. The difference in scope also apply to the overflow control MSR in the U-Box versus those in the other Boxes.

The individual MSRs that provide uncore PMU interfaces are listed in Chapter 2, “Model-Specific Registers (MSRs)” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 4*, Table 2-16 under the general naming style of MSR_%box#%_PMON_%scope_function%, where %box#% designates the type of box and zero-based index if there are more than one box of the same type, %scope_function% follows the examples below:

- Multi-counter enabling MSRs: MSR_U_PMON_GLOBAL_CTL, MSR_S0_PMON_BOX_CTL, MSR_C7_PMON_BOX_CTL, etc.
- Multi-counter status MSRs: MSR_U_PMON_GLOBAL_STATUS, MSR_S0_PMON_BOX_STATUS, MSR_C7_PMON_BOX_STATUS, etc.
- Multi-counter overflow control MSRs: MSR_U_PMON_GLOBAL_OVF_CTL, MSR_S0_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTL, MSR_C7_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTL, etc.
- Performance counters MSRs: the scope is implicitly per counter, e.g. MSR_U_PMON_CTR, MSR_S0_PMON_CTR0, MSR_C7_PMON_CTR5, etc.
- Event select MSRs: the scope is implicitly per counter, e.g. MSR_U_PMON_EVNT_SEL, MSR_S0_PMON_EVNT_SEL0, MSR_C7_PMON_EVNT_SEL5, etc.
- Sub-control MSRs: the scope is implicitly per-box granularity, e.g. MSR_M0_PMON_TIMESTAMP, MSR_R0_PMON_IPERFO_P1, MSR_S1_PMON_MATCH.

Details of uncore PMU MSR bit field definitions can be found in a separate document “Intel Xeon Processor 7500 Series Uncore Performance Monitoring Guide”.

18.3.2 Performance Monitoring for Processors Based on Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Westmere

All of the performance monitoring programming interfaces (architectural and non-architectural core PMU facilities, and uncore PMU) described in Section 18.6.3 also apply to processors based on Intel® microarchitecture code name Westmere.

Table 18-5 describes a non-architectural performance monitoring event (event code 0B7H) and associated MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_0 (address 1A6H) in the core PMU. This event and a second functionally equivalent offcore response event using event code 0BBH and MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_1 (address 1A7H) are supported in processors based on Intel microarchitecture code name Westmere. The event code and event mask definitions of Non-architectural performance monitoring events are listed in Table 19-29.

The load latency facility is the same as described in Section 18.3.1.1.2, but added enhancement to provide more information in the data source encoding field of each load latency record. The additional information relates to STLB_MISS and LOCK, see Table 18-13.

18.3.3 Intel® Xeon® Processor E7 Family Performance Monitoring Facility

The performance monitoring facility in the processor core of the Intel® Xeon® processor E7 family is the same as those supported in the Intel Xeon processor 5600 series³. The uncore subsystem in the Intel Xeon processor E7 family is similar to those of the Intel Xeon processor 7500 series. The high level construction of the uncore subsystem is similar to that shown in Figure 18-25, with the additional capability that up to 10 C-Box units are supported.

3. Exceptions are indicated for event code 0FH in Table 19-21; and valid bits of data source encoding field of each load latency record is limited to bits 5:4 of Table 18-13.

Table 18-9 summarizes the number MSRs for uncore PMU for each box.

Table 18-9. Uncore PMU MSR Summary for Intel® Xeon® Processor E7 Family

Box	# of Boxes	Counters per Box	Counter Width	General Purpose	Global Enable	Sub-control MSRs
C-Box	10	6	48	Yes	per-box	None
S-Box	2	4	48	Yes	per-box	Match/Mask
B-Box	2	4	48	Yes	per-box	Match/Mask
M-Box	2	6	48	Yes	per-box	Yes
R-Box	1	16 (2 port, 8 per port)	48	Yes	per-box	Yes
W-Box	1	4	48	Yes	per-box	None
		1	48	No	per-box	None
U-Box	1	1	48	Yes	uncore	None

Details of the uncore performance monitoring facility of Intel Xeon Processor E7 family is available in the “Intel® Xeon® Processor E7 Uncore Performance Monitoring Programming Reference Manual”.

18.3.4 Performance Monitoring for Processors Based on Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Sandy Bridge

Intel® Core™ i7-2xxx, Intel® Core™ i5-2xxx, Intel® Core™ i3-2xxx processor series, and Intel® Xeon® processor E3-1200 family are based on Intel microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge; this section describes the performance monitoring facilities provided in the processor core. The core PMU supports architectural performance monitoring capability with version ID 3 (see Section 18.2.3) and a host of non-architectural monitoring capabilities.

Architectural performance monitoring version 3 capabilities are described in Section 18.2.3.

The core PMU’s capability is similar to those described in Section 18.3.1.1 and Section 18.6.3, with some differences and enhancements relative to Intel microarchitecture code name Westmere summarized in Table 18-10.

Table 18-10. Core PMU Comparison

Box	Intel® microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge	Intel® microarchitecture code name Westmere	Comment
# of Fixed counters per thread	3	3	Use CPUID to enumerate # of counters. See Section 18.2.1.
# of general-purpose counters per core	8	8	Use CPUID to enumerate # of counters. See Section 18.2.1.
Counter width (R,W)	R:48, W: 32/48	R:48, W:32	See Section 18.2.2.
# of programmable counters per thread	4 or (8 if a core not shared by two threads)	4	Use CPUID to enumerate # of counters. See Section 18.2.1.
PMI Overhead Mitigation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Freeze_Perfmon_on_PMI with legacy semantics. ▪ Freeze_on_LBR with legacy semantics for branch profiling. ▪ Freeze_while_SMM. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Freeze_Perfmon_on_PMI with legacy semantics. ▪ Freeze_on_LBR with legacy semantics for branch profiling. ▪ Freeze_while_SMM. 	See Section 17.4.7.
Processor Event Based Sampling (PEBS) Events	See Table 18-12.	See Table 18-68.	IA32_PMC4-IA32_PMC7 do not support PEBS.

Table 18-10. Core PMU Comparison (Contd.)

Box	Intel® microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge	Intel® microarchitecture code name Westmere	Comment
PEBS-Load Latency	See Section 18.3.4.4.2; <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Data source encoding ▪ STLB miss encoding ▪ Lock transaction encoding 	Data source encoding	
PEBS-Precise Store	Section 18.3.4.4.3	No	
PEBS-PDIR	Yes (using precise INST_RETIRED.ALL).	No	
Off-core Response Event	MSR 1A6H and 1A7H, extended request and response types.	MSR 1A6H and 1A7H, limited response types.	Nehalem supports 1A6H only.

18.3.4.1 Global Counter Control Facilities In Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Sandy Bridge

The number of general-purpose performance counters visible to a logical processor can vary across Processors based on Intel microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge. Software must use CPUID to determine the number performance counters/event select registers (See Section 18.2.1.1).

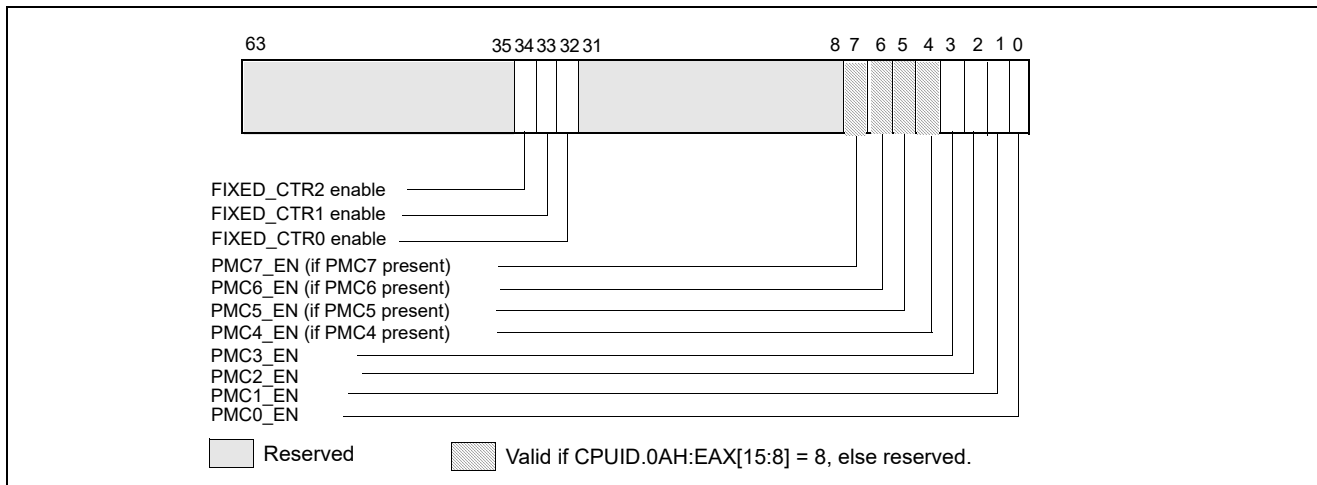


Figure 18-26. IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL MSR in Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Sandy Bridge

Figure 18-42 depicts the layout of IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL MSR. The enable bits (PMC4_EN, PMC5_EN, PMC6_EN, PMC7_EN) corresponding to IA32_PMC4-IA32_PMC7 are valid only if CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] reports a value of '8'. If CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] = 4, attempts to set the invalid bits will cause #GP.

Each enable bit in IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL is AND'ed with the enable bits for all privilege levels in the respective IA32_PERFEVTSELx or IA32_PERF_FIXED_CTR_CTRL MSRs to start/stop the counting of respective counters. Counting is enabled if the AND'ed results is true; counting is disabled when the result is false. IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS MSR provides single-bit status used by software to query the overflow condition of each performance counter. IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS[bit 62] indicates overflow conditions of the DS area data buffer (see Figure 18-27). A value of 1 in each bit of the PMCx_OVF field indicates an overflow condition has occurred in the associated counter.

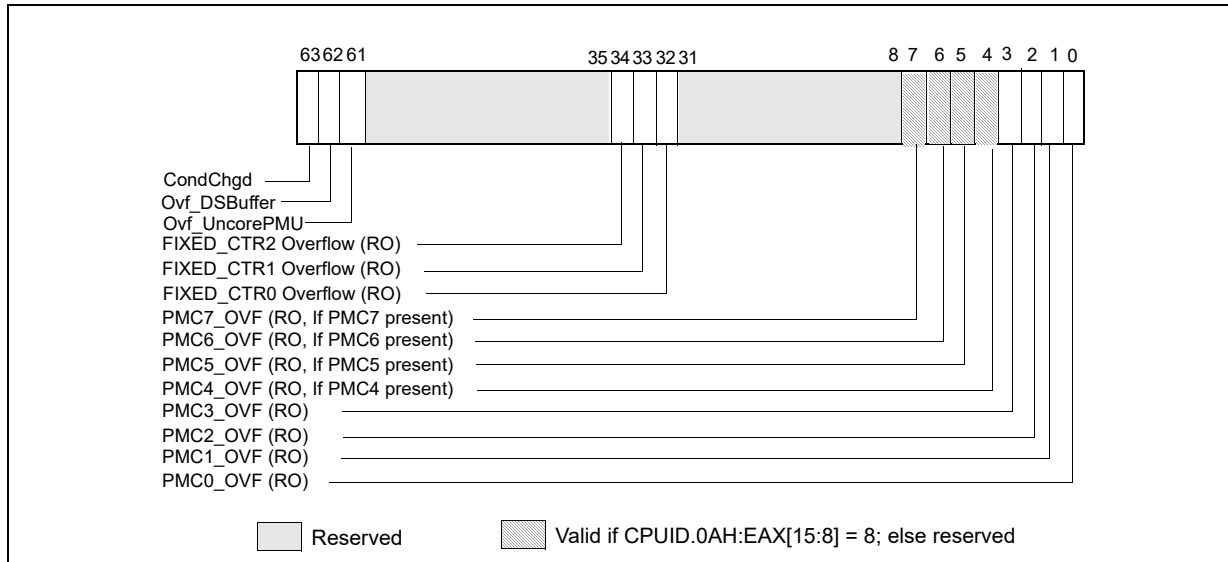


Figure 18-27. IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS MSR in Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Sandy Bridge

When a performance counter is configured for PEBS, an overflow condition in the counter will arm PEBS. On the subsequent event following overflow, the processor will generate a PEBS event. On a PEBS event, the processor will perform bounds checks based on the parameters defined in the DS Save Area (see Section 17.4.9). Upon successful bounds checks, the processor will store the data record in the defined buffer area, clear the counter overflow status, and reload the counter. If the bounds checks fail, the PEBS will be skipped entirely. In the event that the PEBS buffer fills up, the processor will set the OvfBuffer bit in MSR_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS.

IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTL MSR allows software to clear overflow the indicators for general-purpose or fixed-function counters via a single WRMSR (see Figure 18-28). Clear overflow indications when:

- Setting up new values in the event select and/or UMASK field for counting or interrupt based sampling.
- Reloading counter values to continue sampling.
- Disabling event counting or interrupt based sampling.

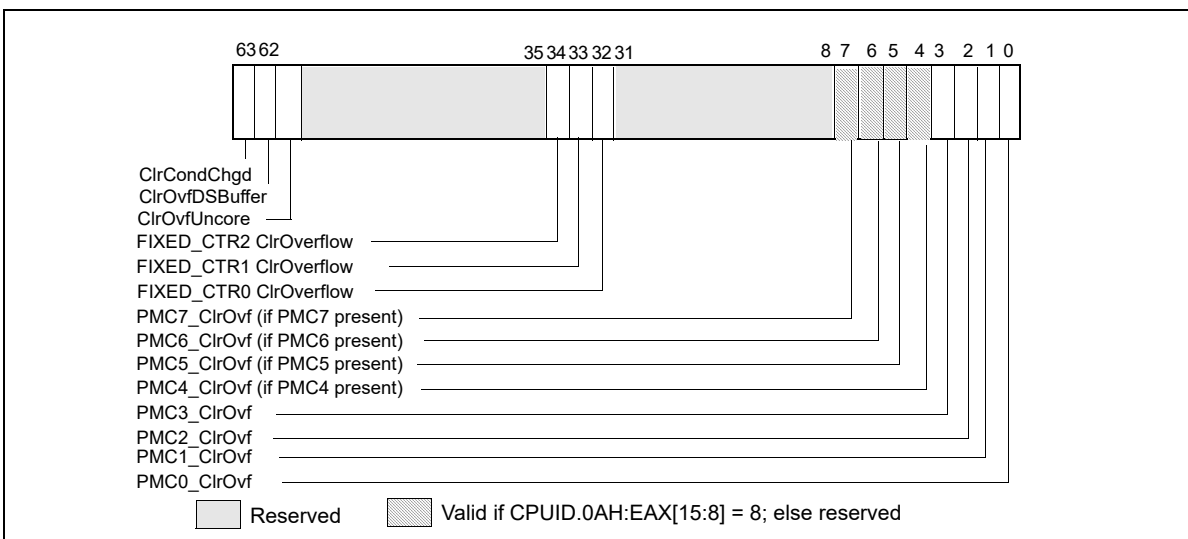


Figure 18-28. IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL MSR in Intel microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge

18.3.4.2 Counter Coalescence

In processors based on Intel microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge, each processor core implements eight general-purpose counters. CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] will report the number of counters visible to software.

If a processor core is shared by two logical processors, each logical processors can access up to four counters (IA32_PMC0-IA32_PMC3). This is the same as in the prior generation for processors based on Intel microarchitecture code name Nehalem.

If a processor core is not shared by two logical processors, up to eight general-purpose counters are visible. If CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] reports 8 counters, then IA32_PMC4-IA32_PMC7 would occupy MSR addresses 0C5H through 0C8H. Each counter is accompanied by an event select MSR (IA32_PERFEVTSEL4-IA32_PERFEVTSEL7).

If CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] report 4, access to IA32_PMC4-IA32_PMC7, IA32_PMC4-IA32_PMC7 will cause #GP. Writing 1's to bit position 7:4 of IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL, IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS, or IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTL will also cause #GP.

18.3.4.3 Full Width Writes to Performance Counters

Processors based on Intel microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge support full-width writes to the general-purpose counters, IA32_PMCx. Support of full-width writes are enumerated by IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES.FW_WRITES[13] (see Section 18.2.4).

The default behavior of IA32_PMCx is unchanged, i.e. WRMSR to IA32_PMCx results in a sign-extended 32-bit value of the input EAX written into IA32_PMCx. Full-width writes must issue WRMSR to a dedicated alias MSR address for each IA32_PMCx.

Software must check the presence of full-width write capability and the presence of the alias address IA32_A_PMCx by testing IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES[13].

18.3.4.4 PEBS Support in Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Sandy Bridge

Processors based on Intel microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge support PEBS, similar to those offered in prior generation, with several enhanced features. The key components and differences of PEBS facility relative to Intel microarchitecture code name Westmere is summarized in Table 18-11.

Table 18-11. PEBS Facility Comparison

Box	Intel® microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge	Intel® microarchitecture code name Westmere	Comment
Valid IA32_PMCx	PMC0-PMC3	PMC0-PMC3	No PEBS on PMC4-PMC7.
PEBS Buffer Programming	Section 18.3.1.1.1	Section 18.3.1.1.1	Unchanged
IA32_PEBS_ENABLE Layout	Figure 18-29	Figure 18-15	
PEBS record layout	Physical Layout same as Table 18-3.	Table 18-3	Enhanced fields at offsets 98H, A0H, A8H.
PEBS Events	See Table 18-12.	See Table 18-68.	IA32_PMC4-IA32_PMC7 do not support PEBS.
PEBS-Load Latency	See Table 18-13.	Table 18-4	
PEBS-Precise Store	Yes; see Section 18.3.4.4.3.	No	IA32_PMC3 only
PEBS-PDIR	Yes	No	IA32_PMC1 only
PEBS skid from EventingIP	1 (or 2 if micro+macro fusion)	1	
SAMPLING Restriction	Small SAV(CountDown) value incur higher overhead than prior generation.		

Only IA32_PMC0 through IA32_PMC3 support PEBS.

NOTE

PEBS events are only valid when the following fields of IA32_PERFEVTSELx are all zero: AnyThread, Edge, Invert, CMask.

In a PMU with PDIR capability, PEBS behavior is unpredictable if IA32_PERFEVTSELx or IA32_PMCx is changed for a PEBS-enabled counter while an event is being counted. To avoid this, changes to the programming or value of a PEBS-enabled counter should be performed when the counter is disabled.

In IA32_PEBS_ENABLE MSR, bit 63 is defined as PS_ENABLE: When set, this enables IA32_PMC3 to capture precise store information. Only IA32_PMC3 supports the precise store facility. In typical usage of PEBS, the bit fields in IA32_PEBS_ENABLE are written to when the agent software starts PEBS operation; the enabled bit fields should be modified only when re-programming another PEBS event or cleared when the agent uses the performance counters for non-PEBS operations.

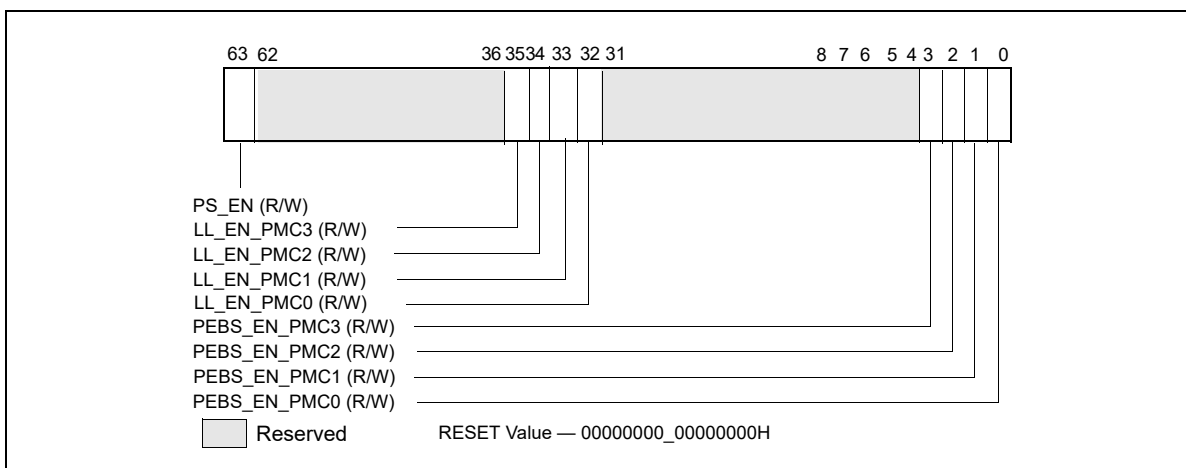


Figure 18-29. Layout of IA32_PEBS_ENABLE MSR

18.3.4.4.1 PEBS Record Format

The layout of PEBS records physically identical to those shown in Table 18-3, but the fields at offset 98H, A0H and A8H have been enhanced to support additional PEBS capabilities.

- **Load/Store Data Linear Address (Offset 98H):** This field will contain the linear address of the source of the load, or linear address of the destination of the store.
- **Data Source /Store Status (Offset A0H):** When load latency is enabled, this field will contain three piece of information (including an encoded value indicating the source which satisfied the load operation). The source field encodings are detailed in Table 18-4. When precise store is enabled, this field will contain information indicating the status of the store, as detailed in Table 19.
- **Latency Value/0 (Offset A8H):** When load latency is enabled, this field contains the latency in cycles to service the load. This field is not meaningful when precise store is enabled and will be written to zero in that case. Upon writing the PEBS record, microcode clears the overflow status bits in the IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS corresponding to those counters that both overflowed and were enabled in the IA32_PEBS_ENABLE register. The status bits of other counters remain unaffected.

The number PEBS events has expanded. The list of PEBS events supported in Intel microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge is shown in Table 18-12.

Table 18-12. PEBS Performance Events for Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Sandy Bridge

Event Name	Event Select	Sub-event	UMask
INST_RETIRED	C0H	PREC_DIST	01H ¹
UOPS_RETIRED	C2H	All	01H
		Retire_Slots	02H
BR_INST_RETIRED	C4H	Conditional	01H
		Near_Call	02H
		All_branches	04H
		Near_Return	08H
		Near_Taken	20H
BR_MISP_RETIRED	C5H	Conditional	01H
		Near_Call	02H
		All_branches	04H
		Not_Taken	10H
		Taken	20H
MEM_UOPS_RETIRED	D0H	STLB_MISS_LOADS	11H
		STLB_MISS_STORE	12H
		LOCK_LOADS	21H
		SPLIT_LOADS	41H
		SPLIT_STORES	42H
		ALL_LOADS	81H
		ALL_STORES	82H
MEM_LOAD_UOPS_RETIRED	D1H	L1_Hit	01H
		L2_Hit	02H
		L3_Hit	04H
		Hit_LFB	40H
MEM_LOAD_UOPS_LLC_HIT_RETIRED	D2H	XSNP_Miss	01H
		XSNP_Hit	02H
		XSNP_Hitm	04H
		XSNP_None	08H

NOTES:

1. Only available on IA32_PMC1.

18.3.4.4.2 Load Latency Performance Monitoring Facility

The load latency facility in Intel microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge is similar to that in prior microarchitecture. It provides software a means to characterize the average load latency to different levels of cache/memory hierarchy. This facility requires processor supporting enhanced PEBS record format in the PEBS buffer, see Table 18-3 and Section 18.3.4.4.1. This field measures the load latency from load's first dispatch of till final data writeback from the memory subsystem. The latency is reported for retired demand load operations and in core cycles (it accounts for re-dispatches).

To use this feature software must assure:

- One of the IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSR is programmed to specify the event unit MEM_TRANS_RETIRED, and the LATENCY_ABOVE_THRESHOLD event mask must be specified (IA32_PerfEvtSelX[15:0] = 1CDH). The corresponding counter IA32_PMCx will accumulate event counts for architecturally visible loads which exceed the programmed latency threshold specified separately in a MSR. Stores are ignored when this event is

programmed. The CMASK or INV fields of the IA32_PerfEvtSelX register used for counting load latency must be 0. Writing other values will result in undefined behavior.

- The MSR_PEBS_LD_LAT_THRESHOLD MSR is programmed with the desired latency threshold in core clock cycles. Loads with latencies greater than this value are eligible for counting and latency data reporting. The minimum value that may be programmed in this register is 3 (the minimum detectable load latency is 4 core clock cycles).
- The PEBS enable bit in the IA32_PEBS_ENABLE register is set for the corresponding IA32_PMCx counter register. This means that both the PEBS_EN_CTRX and LL_EN_CTRX bits must be set for the counter(s) of interest. For example, to enable load latency on counter IA32_PMC0, the IA32_PEBS_ENABLE register must be programmed with the 64-bit value 00000001.00000001H.
- When Load latency event is enabled, no other PEBS event can be configured with other counters.

When the load-latency facility is enabled, load operations are randomly selected by hardware and tagged to carry information related to data source locality and latency. Latency and data source information of tagged loads are updated internally. The MEM_TRANS_RETIRE event for load latency counts only tagged retired loads. If a load is cancelled it will not be counted and the internal state of the load latency facility will not be updated. In this case the hardware will tag the next available load.

When a PEBS assist occurs, the last update of latency and data source information are captured by the assist and written as part of the PEBS record. The PEBS sample after value (SAV), specified in PEBS CounterX Reset, operates orthogonally to the tagging mechanism. Loads are randomly tagged to collect latency data. The SAV controls the number of tagged loads with latency information that will be written into the PEBS record field by the PEBS assists. The load latency data written to the PEBS record will be for the last tagged load operation which retired just before the PEBS assist was invoked.

The physical layout of the PEBS records is the same as shown in Table 18-3. The specificity of Data Source entry at offset A0H has been enhanced to report three pieces of information.

Table 18-13. Layout of Data Source Field of Load Latency Record

Field	Position	Description
Source	3:0	See Table 18-4
STLB_MISS	4	0: The load did not miss the STLB (hit the DTLB or STLB). 1: The load missed the STLB.
Lock	5	0: The load was not part of a locked transaction. 1: The load was part of a locked transaction.
Reserved	63:6	Reserved

The layout of MSR_PEBS_LD_LAT_THRESHOLD is the same as shown in Figure 18-17.

18.3.4.4.3 Precise Store Facility

Processors based on Intel microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge offer a precise store capability that complements the load latency facility. It provides a means to profile store memory references in the system.

Precise stores leverage the PEBS facility and provide additional information about sampled stores. Having precise memory reference events with linear address information for both loads and stores can help programmers improve data structure layout, eliminate remote node references, and identify cache-line conflicts in NUMA systems.

Only IA32_PMC3 can be used to capture precise store information. After enabling this facility, counter overflows will initiate the generation of PEBS records as previously described in PEBS. Upon counter overflow hardware captures the linear address and other status information of the next store that retires. This information is then written to the PEBS record.

To enable the precise store facility, software must complete the following steps. Please note that the precise store facility relies on the PEBS facility, so the PEBS configuration requirements must be completed before attempting to capture precise store information.

- Complete the PEBS configuration steps.

- Program the MEM_TRANS_RETIREDPRECISE_STORE event in IA32_PERFVTSEL3. Only counter 3 (IA32_PMC3) supports collection of precise store information.
- Set IA32_PEBS_ENABLE[3] and IA32_PEBS_ENABLE[63]. This enables IA32_PMC3 as a PEBS counter and enables the precise store facility, respectively.

The precise store information written into a PEBS record affects entries at offset 98H, A0H and A8H of Table 18-3. The specificity of Data Source entry at offset A0H has been enhanced to report three piece of information.

Table 18-14. Layout of Precise Store Information In PEBS Record

Field	Offset	Description
Store Data Linear Address	98H	The linear address of the destination of the store.
Store Status	A0H	<p>L1D Hit (Bit 0): The store hit the data cache closest to the core (lowest latency cache) if this bit is set, otherwise the store missed the data cache.</p> <p>STLB Miss (bit 4): The store missed the STLB if set, otherwise the store hit the STLB</p> <p>Locked Access (bit 5): The store was part of a locked access if set, otherwise the store was not part of a locked access.</p>
Reserved	A8H	Reserved

18.3.4.4.4 Precise Distribution of Instructions Retired (PDIR)

Upon triggering a PEBS assist, there will be a finite delay between the time the counter overflows and when the microcode starts to carry out its data collection obligations. INST_RETIREDP is a very common event that is used to sample where performance bottleneck happened and to help identify its location in instruction address space. Even if the delay is constant in core clock space, it invariably manifest as variable “skids” in instruction address space. This creates a challenge for programmers to profile a workload and pinpoint the location of bottlenecks.

The core PMU in processors based on Intel microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge include a facility referred to as precise distribution of Instruction Retired (PDIR).

The PDIR facility mitigates the “skid” problem by providing an early indication of when the INST_RETIREDP counter is about to overflow, allowing the machine to more precisely trap on the instruction that actually caused the counter overflow thus eliminating skid.

PDIR applies only to the INST_RETIREDP.ALL precise event, and must use IA32_PMC1 with PerfEvtSel1 property configured and bit 1 in the IA32_PEBS_ENABLE set to 1. INST_RETIREDP.ALL is a non-architectural performance event, it is not supported in prior generation microarchitectures. Additionally, on processors with CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel signatures of 06_2A and 06_2D, the tool that programs PDIR should quiesce the rest of the programmable counters in the core when PDIR is active.

18.3.4.5 Off-core Response Performance Monitoring

The core PMU in processors based on Intel microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge provides off-core response facility similar to prior generation. Off-core response can be programmed only with a specific pair of event select and counter MSR, and with specific event codes and predefine mask bit value in a dedicated MSR to specify attributes of the off-core transaction. Two event codes are dedicated for off-core response event programming. Each event code for off-core response monitoring requires programming an associated configuration MSR, MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_x. Table 18-15 lists the event code, mask value and additional off-core configuration MSR that must be programmed to count off-core response events using IA32_PMCx.

Table 18-15. Off-Core Response Event Encoding

Counter	Event code	UMask	Required Off-core Response MSR
PMCO-3	B7H	01H	MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_0 (address 1A6H)
PMCO-3	BBH	01H	MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_1 (address 1A7H)

The layout of MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_0 and MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_1 are shown in Figure 18-30 and Figure 18-31. Bits 15:0 specifies the request type of a transaction request to the uncore. Bits 30:16 specifies supplier information, bits 37:31 specifies snoop response information.

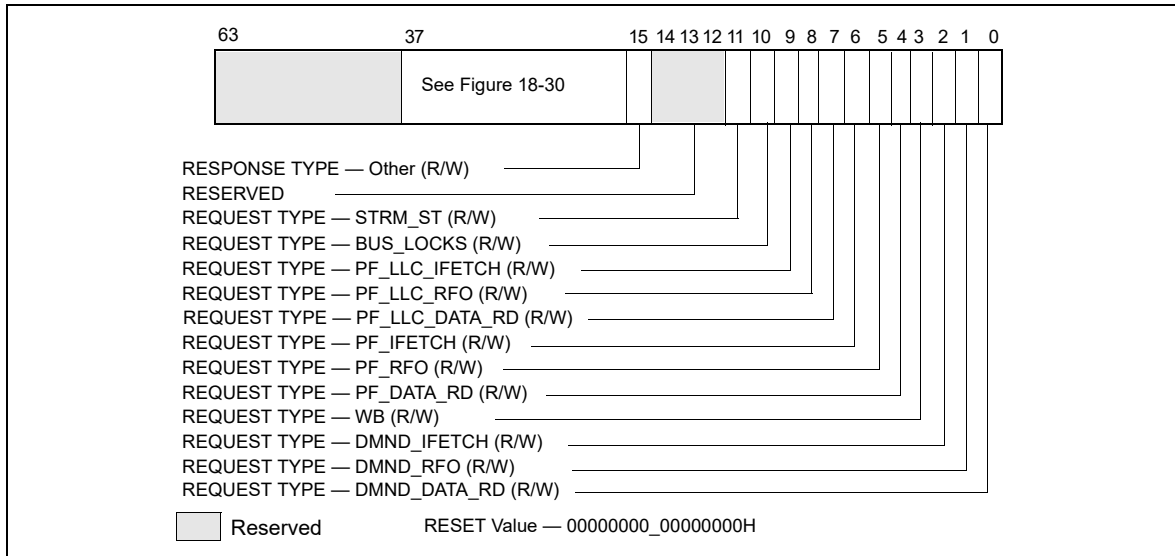


Figure 18-30. Request_Type Fields for MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_x

Table 18-16. MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_x Request_Type Field Definition

Bit Name	Offset	Description
DMND_DATA_RD	0	(R/W). Counts the number of demand data reads of full and partial cachelines as well as demand data page table entry cacheline reads. Does not count L2 data read prefetches or instruction fetches.
DMND_RFO	1	(R/W). Counts the number of demand and DCU prefetch reads for ownership (RFO) requests generated by a write to data cacheline. Does not count L2 RFO prefetches.
DMND_IFETCH	2	(R/W). Counts the number of demand instruction cacheline reads and L1 instruction cacheline prefetches.
WB	3	(R/W). Counts the number of writeback (modified to exclusive) transactions.
PF_DATA_RD	4	(R/W). Counts the number of data cacheline reads generated by L2 prefetchers.
PF_RFO	5	(R/W). Counts the number of RFO requests generated by L2 prefetchers.
PF_IFETCH	6	(R/W). Counts the number of code reads generated by L2 prefetchers.
PF_LLC_DATA_RD	7	(R/W). L2 prefetcher to L3 for loads.
PF_LLC_RFO	8	(R/W). RFO requests generated by L2 prefetcher
PF_LLC_IFETCH	9	(R/W). L2 prefetcher to L3 for instruction fetches.
BUS_LOCKS	10	(R/W). Bus lock and split lock requests
STRM_ST	11	(R/W). Streaming store requests
OTHER	15	(R/W). Any other request that crosses IDI, including I/O.

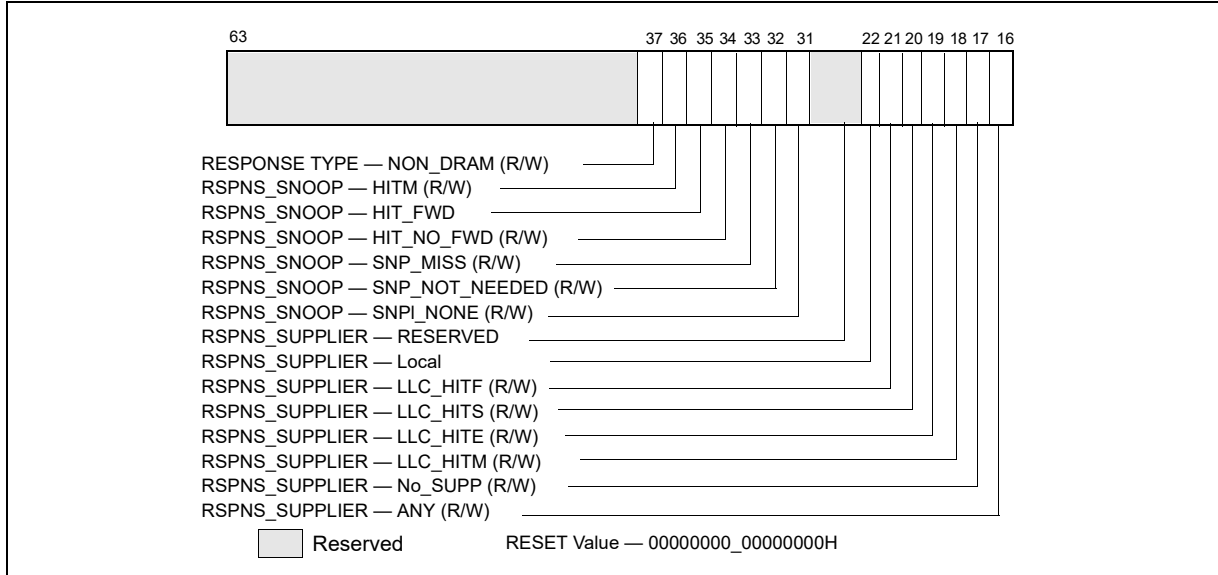


Figure 18-31. Response_Supplier and Snoop Info Fields for MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_x

To properly program this extra register, software must set at least one request type bit and a valid response type pattern. Otherwise, the event count reported will be zero. It is permissible and useful to set multiple request and response type bits in order to obtain various classes of off-core response events. Although MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_x allow an agent software to program numerous combinations that meet the above guideline, not all combinations produce meaningful data.

Table 18-17. MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_x Response Supplier Info Field Definition

Subtype	Bit Name	Offset	Description
Common	Any	16	(R/W). Catch all value for any response types.
Supplier Info	NO_SUPP	17	(R/W). No Supplier Information available
	LLC_HITM	18	(R/W). M-state initial lookup stat in L3.
	LLC_HITE	19	(R/W). E-state
	LLC_HITS	20	(R/W). S-state
	LLC_HITF	21	(R/W). F-state
	LOCAL	22	(R/W). Local DRAM Controller
	Reserved		30:23

To specify a complete offcore response filter, software must properly program bits in the request and response type fields. A valid request type must have at least one bit set in the non-reserved bits of 15:0. A valid response type must be a non-zero value of the following expression:

ANY | [(‘OR’ of Supplier Info Bits) & (‘OR’ of Snoop Info Bits)]

If “ANY” bit is set, the supplier and snoop info bits are ignored.

Table 18-18. MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_x Snoop Info Field Definition

Subtype	Bit Name	Offset	Description
Snoop Info	SNP_NONE	31	(R/W). No details on snoop-related information
	SNP_NOT_NEEDED	32	(R/W). No snoop was needed to satisfy the request.
	SNP_MISS	33	(R/W). A snoop was needed and it missed all snooped caches: -For LLC Hit, ReslHitl was returned by all cores -For LLC Miss, Rspl was returned by all sockets and data was returned from DRAM.
	SNP_NO_FWD	34	(R/W). A snoop was needed and it hits in at least one snooped cache. Hit denotes a cache-line was valid before snoop effect. This includes: -Snoop Hit w/ Invalidation (LLC Hit, RFO) -Snoop Hit, Left Shared (LLC Hit/Miss, IFetch/Data_RD) -Snoop Hit w/ Invalidation and No Forward (LLC Miss, RFO Hit S) In the LLC Miss case, data is returned from DRAM.
	SNP_FWD	35	(R/W). A snoop was needed and data was forwarded from a remote socket. This includes: -Snoop Forward Clean, Left Shared (LLC Hit/Miss, IFetch/Data_RD/RFT).
	HITM	36	(R/W). A snoop was needed and it HitM-ed in local or remote cache. HitM denotes a cache-line was in modified state before effect as a results of snoop. This includes: -Snoop HitM w/ WB (LLC miss, IFetch/Data_RD) -Snoop Forward Modified w/ Invalidation (LLC Hit/Miss, RFO) -Snoop MtoS (LLC Hit, IFetch/Data_RD).
	NON_DRAM	37	(R/W). Target was non-DRAM system address. This includes MMIO transactions.

18.3.4.6 Uncore Performance Monitoring Facilities In Intel® Core™ i7-2xxx, Intel® Core™ i5-2xxx, Intel® Core™ i3-2xxx Processor Series

The uncore sub-system in Intel® Core™ i7-2xxx, Intel® Core™ i5-2xxx, Intel® Core™ i3-2xxx processor series provides a unified L3 that can support up to four processor cores. The L3 cache consists multiple slices, each slice interface with a processor via a coherence engine, referred to as a C-Box. Each C-Box provides dedicated facility of MSRs to select uncore performance monitoring events and each C-Box event select MSR is paired with a counter register, similar in style as those described in Section 18.3.1.2.2. The ARB unit in the uncore also provides its local performance counters and event select MSRs. The layout of the event select MSRs in the C-Boxes and the ARB unit are shown in Figure 18-32.

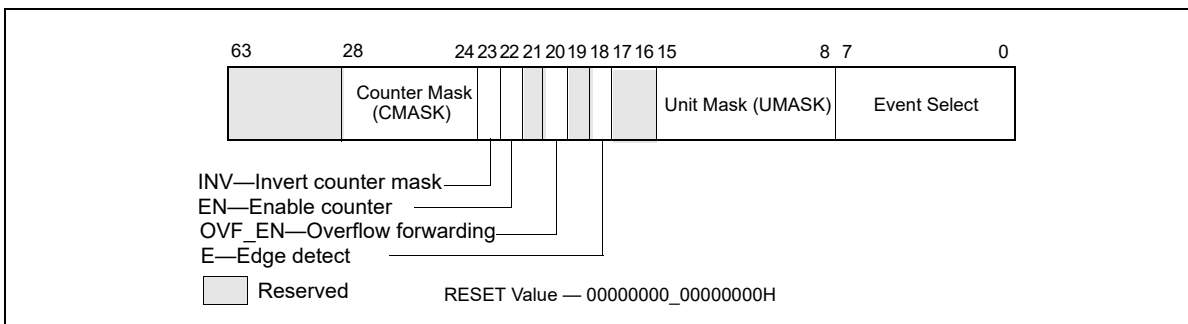


Figure 18-32. Layout of Uncore PERFVTSSEL MSR for a C-Box Unit or the ARB Unit

The bit fields of the uncore event select MSRs for a C-box unit or the ARB unit are summarized below:

- Event_Select (bits 7:0) and UMASK (bits 15:8): Specifies the microarchitectural condition to count in a local uncore PMU counter, see Table 19-18.
- E (bit 18): Enables edge detection filtering, if 1.
- OVF_EN (bit 20): Enables the overflow indicator from the uncore counter forwarded to MSR_UNC_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL, if 1.
- EN (bit 22): Enables the local counter associated with this event select MSR.
- INV (bit 23): Event count increments with non-negative value if 0, with negated value if 1.
- CMASK (bits 28:24): Specifies a positive threshold value to filter raw event count input.

At the uncore domain level, there is a master set of control MSRs that centrally manages all the performance monitoring facility of uncore units. Figure 18-33 shows the layout of the uncore domain global control.

When an uncore counter overflows, a PMI can be routed to a processor core. Bits 3:0 of MSR_UNC_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL can be used to select which processor core to handle the uncore PMI. Software must then write to bit 13 of IA32_DEBUGCTL (at address 1D9H) to enable this capability.

- PMI_SEL_Core#: Enables the forwarding of an uncore PMI request to a processor core, if 1. If bit 30 (WakePMI) is '1', a wake request is sent to the respective processor core prior to sending the PMI.
- EN: Enables the fixed uncore counter, the ARB counters, and the CBO counters in the uncore PMU, if 1. This bit is cleared if bit 31 (FREEZE) is set and any enabled uncore counters overflow.
- WakePMI: Controls sending a wake request to any halted processor core before issuing the uncore PMI request. If a processor core was halted and not sent a wake request, the uncore PMI will not be serviced by the processor core.
- FREEZE: Provides the capability to freeze all uncore counters when an overflow condition occurs in a unit counter. When this bit is set, and a counter overflow occurs, the uncore PMU logic will clear the global enable bit (bit 29).

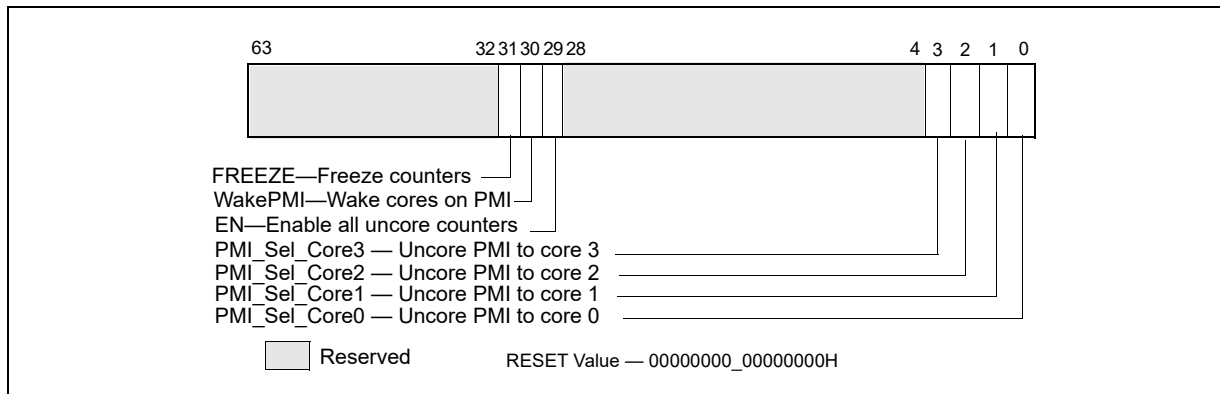


Figure 18-33. Layout of MSR_UNC_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL MSR for Uncore

Additionally, there is also a fixed counter, counting uncore clockticks, for the uncore domain. Table 18-19 summarizes the number MSRs for uncore PMU for each box.

Table 18-19. Uncore PMU MSR Summary

Box	# of Boxes	Counters per Box	Counter Width	General Purpose	Global Enable	Comment
C-Box	SKU specific	2	44	Yes	Per-box	Up to 4, see Table 2-20 MSR_UNC_CBO_CONFIG
ARB	1	2	44	Yes	Uncore	
Fixed Counter	N.A.	N.A.	48	No	Uncore	

18.3.4.6.1 Uncore Performance Monitoring Events

There are certain restrictions on the uncore performance counters in each C-Box. Specifically,

- Occupancy events are supported only with counter 0 but not counter 1.
- Other uncore C-Box events can be programmed with either counter 0 or 1.

The C-Box uncore performance events described in Table 19-18 can collect performance characteristics of transactions initiated by processor core. In that respect, they are similar to various sub-events in the OFFCORE_RESPONSE family of performance events in the core PMU. Information such as data supplier locality (LLC HIT/MISS) and snoop responses can be collected via OFFCORE_RESPONSE and qualified on a per-thread basis.

On the other hand, uncore performance event logic can not associate its counts with the same level of per-thread qualification attributes as the core PMU events can. Therefore, whenever similar event programming capabilities are available from both core PMU and uncore PMU, the recommendation is that utilizing the core PMU events may be less affected by artifacts, complex interactions and other factors.

18.3.4.7 Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 Family Performance Monitoring Facility

The Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 Family (and Intel® Core™ i7-3930K Processor) are based on Intel microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge-E. While the processor cores share the same microarchitecture as those of the Intel® Xeon® Processor E3 Family and 2nd generation Intel Core i7-2xxx, Intel Core i5-2xxx, Intel Core i3-2xxx processor series, the uncore subsystems are different. An overview of the uncore performance monitoring facilities of the Intel Xeon processor E5 family (and Intel Core i7-3930K processor) is described in Section 18.3.4.8.

Thus, the performance monitoring facilities in the processor core generally are the same as those described in Section 18.6.3 through Section 18.3.4.5. However, the MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_0/MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_1 Response Supplier Info field shown in Table 18-17 applies to Intel Core Processors with CPUID signature of DisplayFamily_DisplayModel encoding of 06_2AH; Intel Xeon processor with CPUID signature of DisplayFamily_DisplayModel encoding of 06_2DH supports an additional field for remote DRAM controller shown in Table 18-20. Additionally, there are some small differences in the non-architectural performance monitoring events (see Table 19-16).

Table 18-20. MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_x Supplier Info Field Definitions

Subtype	Bit Name	Offset	Description
Common	Any	16	(R/W). Catch all value for any response types.
Supplier Info	NO_SUPP	17	(R/W). No Supplier Information available
	LLC_HITM	18	(R/W). M-state initial lookup stat in L3.
	LLC_HITE	19	(R/W). E-state
	LLC_HITS	20	(R/W). S-state
	LLC_HITF	21	(R/W). F-state
	LOCAL	22	(R/W). Local DRAM Controller
	Remote	30:23	(R/W): Remote DRAM Controller (either all 0s or all 1s)

18.3.4.8 Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 Family Uncore Performance Monitoring Facility

The uncore subsystem in the Intel Xeon processor E5-2600 product family has some similarities with those of the Intel Xeon processor E7 family. Within the uncore subsystem, localized performance counter sets are provided at logic control unit scope. For example, each Cbox caching agent has a set of local performance counters, and the power controller unit (PCU) has its own local performance counters. Up to 8 C-Box units are supported in the uncore sub-system.

Table 18-21 summarizes the uncore PMU facilities providing MSR interfaces.

Table 18-21. Uncore PMU MSR Summary for Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 Family

Box	# of Boxes	Counters per Box	Counter Width	General Purpose	Global Enable	Sub-control MSRs
C-Box	8	4	44	Yes	per-box	None
PCU	1	4	48	Yes	per-box	Match/Mask
U-Box	1	2	44	Yes	uncore	None

Details of the uncore performance monitoring facility of Intel Xeon Processor E5 family is available in “Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 Uncore Performance Monitoring Programming Reference Manual”. The MSR-based uncore PMU interfaces are listed in Table 2-23.

18.3.5 3rd Generation Intel® Core™ Processor Performance Monitoring Facility

The 3rd generation Intel® Core™ processor family and Intel® Xeon® processor E3-1200v2 product family are based on the Ivy Bridge microarchitecture. The performance monitoring facilities in the processor core generally are the same as those described in Section 18.6.3 through Section 18.3.4.5. The non-architectural performance monitoring events supported by the processor core are listed in Table 19-16.

18.3.5.1 Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v2 and E7 v2 Family Uncore Performance Monitoring Facility

The uncore subsystem in the Intel Xeon processor E5 v2 and Intel Xeon Processor E7 v2 product families are based on the Ivy Bridge-E microarchitecture. There are some similarities with those of the Intel Xeon processor E5 family based on the Sandy Bridge microarchitecture. Within the uncore subsystem, localized performance counter sets are provided at logic control unit scope.

Details of the uncore performance monitoring facility of Intel Xeon Processor E5 v2 and Intel Xeon Processor E7 v2 families are available in “Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v2 and E7 v2 Uncore Performance Monitoring Programming Reference Manual”. The MSR-based uncore PMU interfaces are listed in Table 2-27.

18.3.6 4th Generation Intel® Core™ Processor Performance Monitoring Facility

The 4th generation Intel® Core™ processor and Intel® Xeon® processor E3-1200 v3 product family are based on the Haswell microarchitecture. The core PMU supports architectural performance monitoring capability with version ID 3 (see Section 18.2.3) and a host of non-architectural monitoring capabilities.

Architectural performance monitoring version 3 capabilities are described in Section 18.2.3.

The core PMU's capability is similar to those described in Section 18.6.3 through Section 18.3.4.5, with some differences and enhancements summarized in Table 18-22. Additionally, the core PMU provides some enhancement to support performance monitoring when the target workload contains instruction streams using Intel® Transactional Synchronization Extensions (TSX), see Section 18.3.6.5. For details of Intel TSX, see Chapter 16, "Programming with Intel® Transactional Synchronization Extensions" of *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 1*.

Table 18-22. Core PMU Comparison

Box	Intel® microarchitecture code name Haswell	Intel® microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge	Comment
# of Fixed counters per thread	3	3	Use CPUID to enumerate # of counters. See Section 18.2.1.
# of general-purpose counters per core	8	8	Use CPUID to enumerate # of counters. See Section 18.2.1.
Counter width (R,W)	R:48, W: 32/48	R:48, W: 32/48	See Section 18.2.2.
# of programmable counters per thread	4 or (8 if a core not shared by two threads)	4 or (8 if a core not shared by two threads)	Use CPUID to enumerate # of counters. See Section 18.2.1.
PMI Overhead Mitigation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Freeze_Perfmon_on_PMI with legacy semantics. ▪ Freeze_on_LBR with legacy semantics for branch profiling. ▪ Freeze_while_SMM. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Freeze_Perfmon_on_PMI with legacy semantics. ▪ Freeze_on_LBR with legacy semantics for branch profiling. ▪ Freeze_while_SMM. 	See Section 17.4.7.
Processor Event Based Sampling (PEBS) Events	See Table 18-12 and Section 18.3.6.5.1.	See Table 18-12.	IA32_PMC4-IA32_PMC7 do not support PEBS.
PEBS-Load Latency	See Section 18.3.4.4.2.	See Section 18.3.4.4.2.	
PEBS-Precise Store	No, replaced by Data Address profiling.	Section 18.3.4.4.3	
PEBS-PDIR	Yes (using precise INST_RETIRED.ALL)	Yes (using precise INST_RETIRED.ALL)	
PEBS-EventingIP	Yes	No	
Data Address Profiling	Yes	No	
LBR Profiling	Yes	Yes	
Call Stack Profiling	Yes, see Section 17.11.	No	Use LBR facility.
Off-core Response Event	MSR 1A6H and 1A7H; extended request and response types.	MSR 1A6H and 1A7H; extended request and response types.	
Intel TSX support for Perfmon	See Section 18.3.6.5.	No	

18.3.6.1 Processor Event Based Sampling (PEBS) Facility

The PEBS facility in the 4th Generation Intel Core processor is similar to those in processors based on Intel micro-architecture code name Sandy Bridge, with several enhanced features. The key components and differences of PEBS facility relative to Intel microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge is summarized in Table 18-23.

Table 18-23. PEBS Facility Comparison

Box	Intel® microarchitecture code name Haswell	Intel® microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge	Comment
Valid IA32_PMCx	PMC0-PMC3	PMC0-PMC3	No PEBS on PMC4-PMC7
PEBS Buffer Programming	Section 18.3.1.1.1	Section 18.3.1.1.1	Unchanged
IA32_PEBS_ENABLE Layout	Figure 18-15	Figure 18-29	
PEBS record layout	Table 18-24; enhanced fields at offsets 98H, A0H, A8H, B0H.	Table 18-3; enhanced fields at offsets 98H, A0H, A8H.	
Precise Events	See Table 18-12.	See Table 18-12.	IA32_PMC4-IA32_PMC7 do not support PEBS.
PEBS-Load Latency	See Table 18-13.	Table 18-13	
PEBS-Precise Store	No, replaced by data address profiling.	Yes; see Section 18.3.4.4.3.	
PEBS-PDIR	Yes	Yes	IA32_PMC1 only.
PEBS skid from EventingIP	1 (or 2 if micro+macro fusion)	1	
SAMPLING Restriction	Small SAV(CountDown) value incur higher overhead than prior generation.		

Only IA32_PMC0 through IA32_PMC3 support PEBS.

NOTE

PEBS events are only valid when the following fields of IA32_PERFEVTSELx are all zero: AnyThread, Edge, Invert, CMask.

In a PMU with PDIR capability, PEBS behavior is unpredictable if IA32_PERFEVTSELx or IA32_PMCx is changed for a PEBS-enabled counter while an event is being counted. To avoid this, changes to the programming or value of a PEBS-enabled counter should be performed when the counter is disabled.

18.3.6.2 PEBS Data Format

The PEBS record format for the 4th Generation Intel Core processor is shown in Table 18-24. The PEBS record format, along with debug/store area storage format, does not change regardless of whether IA-32e mode is active or not. CPUID.01H:ECX.DTES64[bit 2] reports whether the processor's DS storage format support is mode-independent. When set, it uses 64-bit DS storage format.

Table 18-24. PEBS Record Format for 4th Generation Intel Core Processor Family

Byte Offset	Field	Byte Offset	Field
00H	R/EFLAGS	60H	R10
08H	R/EIP	68H	R11
10H	R/EAX	70H	R12
18H	R/EBX	78H	R13
20H	R/ECX	80H	R14
28H	R/EDX	88H	R15
30H	R/ESI	90H	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS
38H	R/EDI	98H	Data Linear Address
40H	R/EBP	A0H	Data Source Encoding
48H	R/ESP	A8H	Latency value (core cycles)
50H	R8	B0H	EventingIP
58H	R9	B8H	TX Abort Information (Section 18.3.6.5.1)

The layout of PEBS records are almost identical to those shown in Table 18-3. Offset B0H is a new field that records the eventing IP address of the retired instruction that triggered the PEBS assist.

The PEBS records at offsets 98H, A0H, and ABH record data gathered from three of the PEBS capabilities in prior processor generations: load latency facility (Section 18.3.4.4.2), PDIR (Section 18.3.4.4.4), and the equivalent capability of precise store in prior generation (see Section 18.3.6.3).

In the core PMU of the 4th generation Intel Core processor, load latency facility and PDIR capabilities are unchanged. However, precise store is replaced by an enhanced capability, data address profiling, that is not restricted to store address. Data address profiling also records information in PEBS records at offsets 98H, A0H, and ABH.

18.3.6.3 PEBS Data Address Profiling

The Data Linear Address facility is also abbreviated as DataLA. The facility is a replacement or extension of the precise store facility in previous processor generations. The DataLA facility complements the load latency facility by providing a means to profile load and store memory references in the system, leverages the PEBS facility, and provides additional information about sampled loads and stores. Having precise memory reference events with linear address information for both loads and stores provides information to improve data structure layout, eliminate remote node references, and identify cache-line conflicts in NUMA systems.

The DataLA facility in the 4th generation processor supports the following events configured to use PEBS:

Table 18-25. Precise Events That Supports Data Linear Address Profiling

Event Name	Event Name
MEM_UOPS_RETIREDD.STLB_MISS_LOADS	MEM_UOPS_RETIREDD.STLB_MISS_STORES
MEM_UOPS_RETIREDD.LOCK_LOADS	MEM_UOPS_RETIREDD.SPLIT_STORES
MEM_UOPS_RETIREDD.SPLIT_LOADS	MEM_UOPS_RETIREDD.ALL_STORES
MEM_UOPS_RETIREDD.ALL_LOADS	MEM_LOAD_UOPS_LLC_MISS_RETIREDD.LOCAL_DRAM
MEM_LOAD_UOPS_RETIREDD.L1_HIT	MEM_LOAD_UOPS_RETIREDD.L2_HIT
MEM_LOAD_UOPS_RETIREDD.L3_HIT	MEM_LOAD_UOPS_RETIREDD.L1_MISS
MEM_LOAD_UOPS_RETIREDD.L2_MISS	MEM_LOAD_UOPS_RETIREDD.L3_MISS
MEM_LOAD_UOPS_RETIREDD.HIT_LFB	MEM_LOAD_UOPS_L3_HIT_RETIREDD.XSNP_MISS

Table 18-25. Precise Events That Supports Data Linear Address Profiling (Contd.)

Event Name	Event Name
MEM_LOAD_UOPS_L3_HIT_RETIRED.XSNP_HIT	MEM_LOAD_UOPS_L3_HIT_RETIRED.XSNP_HITM
UOPS_RETIRED.ALL (if load or store is tagged)	MEM_LOAD_UOPS_LLC_HIT_RETIRED.XSNP_NONE

DataLA can use any one of the IA32_PMC0-IA32_PMC3 counters. Counter overflows will initiate the generation of PEBS records. Upon counter overflow, hardware captures the linear address and possible other status information of the retiring memory uop. This information is then written to the PEBS record that is subsequently generated.

To enable the DataLA facility, software must complete the following steps. Please note that the DataLA facility relies on the PEBS facility, so the PEBS configuration requirements must be completed before attempting to capture DataLA information.

- Complete the PEBS configuration steps.
- Program the an event listed in Table 18-25 using any one of IA32_PERFEVTSEL0-IA32_PERFEVTSEL3.
- Set the corresponding IA32_PEBS_ENABLE.PEBS_EN_CTRx bit. This enables the corresponding IA32_PMCx as a PEBS counter and enables the DataLA facility.

When the DataLA facility is enabled, the relevant information written into a PEBS record affects entries at offsets 98H, A0H and A8H, as shown in Table 18-26.

Table 18-26. Layout of Data Linear Address Information In PEBS Record

Field	Offset	Description
Data Linear Address	98H	The linear address of the load or the destination of the store.
Store Status	A0H	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ DCU Hit (Bit 0): The store hit the data cache closest to the core (L1 cache) if this bit is set, otherwise the store missed the data cache. This information is valid only for the following store events: UOPS_RETIRED.ALL (if store is tagged), MEM_UOPS_RETIRED.STLB_MISS_STORES, MEM_UOPS_RETIRED.SPLIT_STORES, MEM_UOPS_RETIRED.ALL_STORES ▪ Other bits are zero, The STLB_MISS, LOCK bit information can be obtained by programming the corresponding store event in Table 18-25.
Reserved	A8H	Always zero.

18.3.6.3.1 EventingIP Record

The PEBS record layout for processors based on Intel microarchitecture code name Haswell adds a new field at offset 0B0H. This is the eventingIP field that records the IP address of the retired instruction that triggered the PEBS assist. The EIP/RIP field at offset 08H records the IP address of the next instruction to be executed following the PEBS assist.

18.3.6.4 Off-core Response Performance Monitoring

The core PMU facility to collect off-core response events are similar to those described in Section 18.3.4.5. The event codes are listed in Table 18-15. Each event code for off-core response monitoring requires programming an associated configuration MSR, MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_x. Software must program MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_x according to:

- Transaction request type encoding (bits 15:0): see Table 18-27.
- Supplier information (bits 30:16): see Table 18-28.
- Snoop response information (bits 37:31): see Table 18-18.

Table 18-27. MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_x Request_Type Definition (Haswell microarchitecture)

Bit Name	Offset	Description
DMND_DATA_RD	0	(R/W). Counts the number of demand data reads of full and partial cachelines as well as demand data page table entry cacheline reads. Does not count L2 data read prefetches or instruction fetches.
DMND_RFO	1	(R/W). Counts the number of demand and DCU prefetch reads for ownership (RFO) requests generated by a write to data cacheline. Does not count L2 RFO prefetches.
DMND_IFETCH	2	(R/W). Counts the number of demand instruction cacheline reads and L1 instruction cacheline prefetches.
COREWB	3	(R/W). Counts the number of modified cachelines written back.
PF_DATA_RD	4	(R/W). Counts the number of data cacheline reads generated by L2 prefetchers.
PF_RFO	5	(R/W). Counts the number of RFO requests generated by L2 prefetchers.
PF_IFETCH	6	(R/W). Counts the number of code reads generated by L2 prefetchers.
PF_L3_DATA_RD	7	(R/W). Counts the number of data cacheline reads generated by L3 prefetchers.
PF_L3_RFO	8	(R/W). Counts the number of RFO requests generated by L3 prefetchers.
PF_L3_CODE_RD	9	(R/W). Counts the number of code reads generated by L3 prefetchers.
SPLIT_LOCK_UC_LOCK	10	(R/W). Counts the number of lock requests that split across two cachelines or are to UC memory.
STRM_ST	11	(R/W). Counts the number of streaming store requests electronically.
Reserved	12-14	Reserved
OTHER	15	(R/W). Any other request that crosses IDI, including I/O.

The supplier information field listed in Table 18-28. The fields vary across products (according to CPUID signatures) and is noted in the description.

Table 18-28. MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_x Supplier Info Field Definition (CPUID Signature 06_3CH, 06_46H)

Subtype	Bit Name	Offset	Description
Common	Any	16	(R/W). Catch all value for any response types.
Supplier Info	NO_SUPP	17	(R/W). No Supplier Information available
	L3_HITM	18	(R/W). M-state initial lookup stat in L3.
	L3_HITE	19	(R/W). E-state
	L3_HITS	20	(R/W). S-state
	Reserved	21	Reserved
	LOCAL	22	(R/W). Local DRAM Controller
	Reserved	30:23	Reserved

Table 18-29. MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_x Supplier Info Field Definition (CUID Signature 06_45H)

Subtype	Bit Name	Offset	Description
Common	Any	16	(R/W). Catch all value for any response types.
Supplier Info	NO_SUPP	17	(R/W). No Supplier Information available
	L3_HITM	18	(R/W). M-state initial lookup stat in L3.
	L3_HITE	19	(R/W). E-state
	L3_HITS	20	(R/W). S-state
	Reserved	21	Reserved
	L4_HIT_LOCAL_L4	22	(R/W). L4 Cache
	L4_HIT_REMOTE_HOP0_L4	23	(R/W). L4 Cache
	L4_HIT_REMOTE_HOP1_L4	24	(R/W). L4 Cache
	L4_HIT_REMOTE_HOP2P_L4	25	(R/W). L4 Cache
	Reserved	30:26	Reserved

18.3.6.4.1 Off-core Response Performance Monitoring in Intel Xeon Processors E5 v3 Series

Table 18-28 lists the supplier information field that apply to Intel Xeon processor E5 v3 series (CUID signature 06_3FH).

Table 18-30. MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_x Supplier Info Field Definition

Subtype	Bit Name	Offset	Description
Common	Any	16	(R/W). Catch all value for any response types.
Supplier Info	NO_SUPP	17	(R/W). No Supplier Information available
	L3_HITM	18	(R/W). M-state initial lookup stat in L3.
	L3_HITE	19	(R/W). E-state
	L3_HITS	20	(R/W). S-state
	L3_HITF	21	(R/W). F-state
	LOCAL	22	(R/W). Local DRAM Controller
	Reserved	26:23	Reserved
	L3_MISS_REMOTE_HOP0	27	(R/W). Hop 0 Remote supplier
	L3_MISS_REMOTE_HOP1	28	(R/W). Hop 1 Remote supplier
	L3_MISS_REMOTE_HOP2P	29	(R/W). Hop 2 or more Remote supplier
	Reserved	30	Reserved

18.3.6.5 Performance Monitoring and Intel® TSX

Chapter 16 of *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 1* describes the details of Intel® Transactional Synchronization Extensions (Intel® TSX). This section describes performance monitoring support for Intel TSX.

If a processor supports Intel TSX, the core PMU enhances its IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSR with two additional bit fields for event filtering. Support for Intel TSX is indicated by either (a) CPUID.(EAX=7, ECX=0):RTM[bit 11]=1, or (b) if CPUID.07H.EBX.HLE [bit 4] = 1. The TSX-enhanced layout of IA32_PERFEVTSELx is shown in Figure 18-34. The two additional bit fields are:

- **IN_TX** (bit 32): When set, the counter will only include counts that occurred inside a transactional region, regardless of whether that region was aborted or committed. This bit may only be set if the processor supports HLE or RTM.
- **IN_TXCP** (bit 33): When set, the counter will not include counts that occurred inside of an aborted transactional region. This bit may only be set if the processor supports HLE or RTM. This bit may only be set for IA32_PERFEVTSEL2.

When the IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSR is programmed with both IN_TX=0 and IN_TXCP=0 on a processor that supports Intel TSX, the result in a counter may include detectable conditions associated with a transaction code region for its aborted execution (if any) and completed execution.

In the initial implementation, software may need to take pre-caution when using the IN_TXCP bit. see Table 2-28.

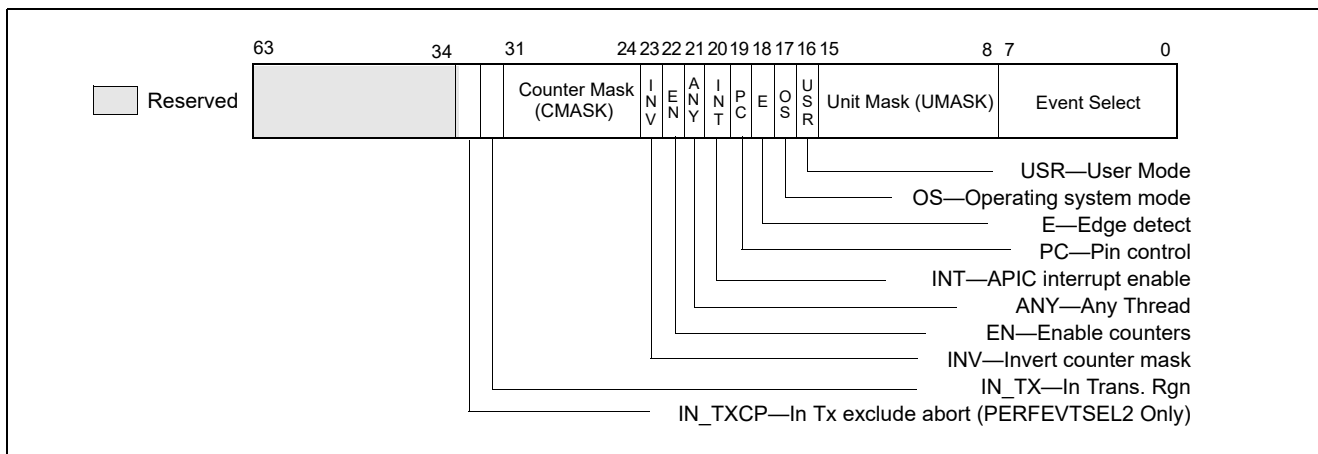


Figure 18-34. Layout of IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSRs Supporting Intel TSX

A common usage of setting IN_TXCP=1 is to capture the number of events that were discarded due to a transactional abort. With IA32_PMC2 configured to count in such a manner, then when a transactional region aborts, the value for that counter is restored to the value it had prior to the aborted transactional region. As a result, any updates performed to the counter during the aborted transactional region are discarded.

On the other hand, setting IN_TX=1 can be used to drill down on the performance characteristics of transactional code regions. When a PMCx is configured with the corresponding IA32_PERFEVTSELx.IN_TX=1, only eventing conditions that occur inside transactional code regions are propagated to the event logic and reflected in the counter result. Eventing conditions specified by IA32_PERFEVTSELx but occurring outside a transactional region are discarded. The following example illustrates using three counters to drill down cycles spent inside and outside of transactional regions:

- Program IA32_PERFEVTSEL2 to count Unhalted_Core_Cycles with (IN_TXCP=1, IN_TX=0), such that IA32_PMC2 will count cycles spent due to aborted TSX transactions;
- Program IA32_PERFEVTSEL0 to count Unhalted_Core_Cycles with (IN_TXCP=0, IN_TX=1), such that IA32_PMC0 will count cycles spent by the transactional code regions;
- Program IA32_PERFEVTSEL1 to count Unhalted_Core_Cycles with (IN_TXCP=0, IN_TX=0), such that IA32_PMC1 will count total cycles spent by the non-transactional code and transactional code regions.

Additionally, a number of performance events are solely focused on characterizing the execution of Intel TSX transactional code, they are listed in Table 19-10.

18.3.6.5.1 Intel TSX and PEBS Support

If a PEBS event would have occurred inside a transactional region, then the transactional region first aborts, and then the PEBS event is processed.

Two of the TSX performance monitoring events in Table 19-10 also support using PEBS facility to capture additional information. They are:

- HLE_RETIREDA.BORT ED (encoding C8H mask 04H),
- RTM_RETIREDA.BORTED (encoding C9H mask 04H).

A transactional abort (HLE_RETIREDA.BORTED,RTM_RETIREDA.BORTED) can also be programmed to cause PEBS events. In this scenario, a PEBS event is processed following the abort.

Pending a PEBS record inside of a transactional region will cause a transactional abort. If a PEBS record was pended at the time of the abort or on an overflow of the TSX PEBS events listed above, only the following PEBS entries will be valid (enumerated by PEBS entry offset B8H bits[33:32] to indicate an HLE abort or an RTM abort):

- Offset B0H: EventingIP,
- Offset B8H: TX Abort Information

These fields are set for all PEBS events.

- Offset 08H (RIP/EIP) corresponds to the instruction following the outermost XACQUIRE in HLE or the first instruction of the fallback handler of the outermost XBEGIN instruction in RTM. This is useful to identify the aborted transactional region.

In the case of HLE, an aborted transaction will restart execution deterministically at the start of the HLE region. In the case of RTM, an aborted transaction will transfer execution to the RTM fallback handler.

The layout of the TX Abort Information field is given in Table 18-31.

Table 18-31. TX Abort Information Field Definition

Bit Name	Offset	Description
Cycles_Last_TX	31:0	The number of cycles in the last TSX region, regardless of whether that region had aborted or committed.
HLE_Abort	32	If set, the abort information corresponds to an aborted HLE execution
RTM_Abort	33	If set, the abort information corresponds to an aborted RTM execution
Instruction_Abort	34	If set, the abort was associated with the instruction corresponding to the eventing IP (offset 0B0H) within the transactional region.
Non_Instruction_Abort	35	If set, the instruction corresponding to the eventing IP may not necessarily be related to the transactional abort.
Retry	36	If set, retrying the transactional execution may have succeeded.
Data_Conflict	37	If set, another logical processor conflicted with a memory address that was part of the transactional region that aborted.
Capacity Writes	38	If set, the transactional region aborted due to exceeding resources for transactional writes.
Capacity Reads	39	If set, the transactional region aborted due to exceeding resources for transactional reads.
Reserved	63:40	Reserved

18.3.6.6 Uncore Performance Monitoring Facilities in the 4th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors

The uncore sub-system in the 4th Generation Intel® Core™ processors provides its own performance monitoring facility. The uncore PMU facility provides dedicated MSRs to select uncore performance monitoring events in a similar manner as those described in Section 18.3.4.6.

The ARB unit and each C-Box provide local pairs of event select MSR and counter register. The layout of the event select MSRs in the C-Boxes are identical as shown in Figure 18-32.

At the uncore domain level, there is a master set of control MSRs that centrally manages all the performance monitoring facility of uncore units. Figure 18-33 shows the layout of the uncore domain global control.

Additionally, there is also a fixed counter, counting uncore clockticks, for the uncore domain. Table 18-19 summarizes the number MSRs for uncore PMU for each box.

Table 18-32. Uncore PMU MSR Summary

Box	# of Boxes	Counters per Box	Counter Width	General Purpose	Global Enable	Comment
C-Box	SKU specific	2	44	Yes	Per-box	Up to 4, see Table 2-20 MSR_UNC_CBO_CONFIG
ARB	1	2	44	Yes	Uncore	
Fixed Counter	N.A.	N.A.	48	No	Uncore	

The uncore performance events for the C-Box and ARB units are listed in Table 19-11.

18.3.6.7 Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v3 Family Uncore Performance Monitoring Facility

Details of the uncore performance monitoring facility of Intel Xeon Processor E5 v3 families are available in “Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v3 Uncore Performance Monitoring Programming Reference Manual”. The MSR-based uncore PMU interfaces are listed in Table 2-32.

18.3.7 5th Generation Intel® Core™ Processor and Intel® Core™ M Processor Performance Monitoring Facility

The 5th Generation Intel® Core™ processor and the Intel® Core™ M processor families are based on the Broadwell microarchitecture. The core PMU supports architectural performance monitoring capability with version ID 3 (see Section 18.2.3) and a host of non-architectural monitoring capabilities.

Architectural performance monitoring version 3 capabilities are described in Section 18.2.3.

The core PMU has the same capability as those described in Section 18.3.6. IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS provide a bit indicator (bit 55) for PMI handler to distinguish PMI due to output buffer overflow condition due to accumulating packet data from Intel Processor Trace.

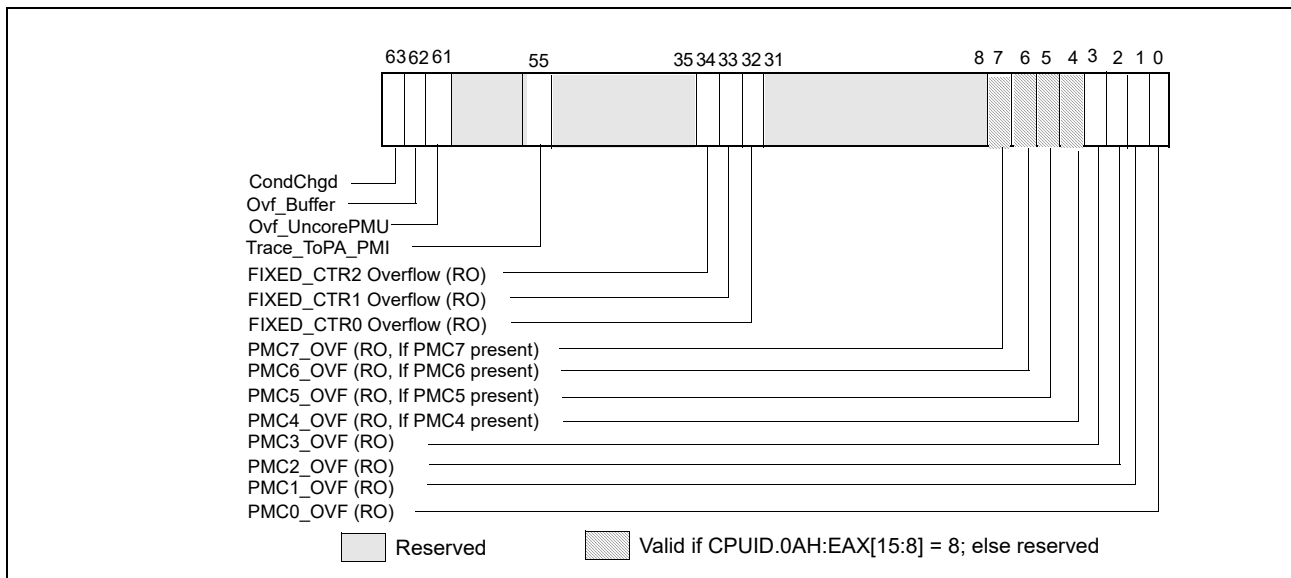


Figure 18-35. IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS MSR in Broadwell Microarchitecture

Details of Intel Processor Trace is described in Chapter 35, “Intel® Processor Trace”. IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL MSR provide a corresponding reset control bit.

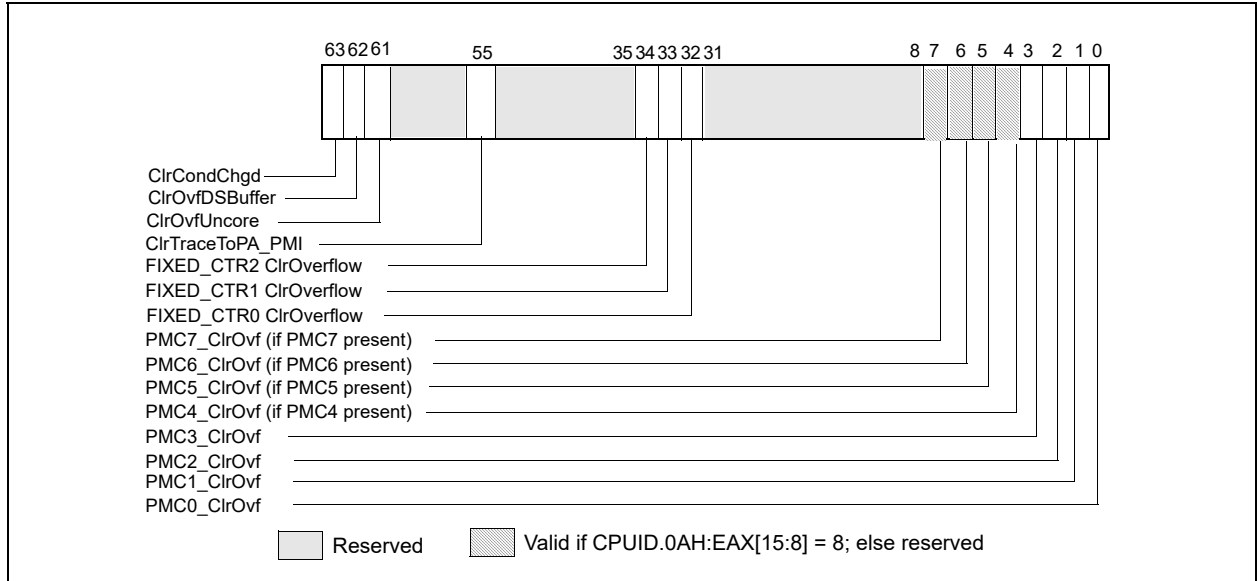


Figure 18-36. IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL MSR in Broadwell microarchitecture

The specifics of non-architectural performance events are listed in Chapter 19, “Performance Monitoring Events”.

18.3.8 6th Generation, 7th Generation and 8th Generation Intel® Core™ Processor Performance Monitoring Facility

The 6th generation Intel® Core™ processor is based on the Skylake microarchitecture. The 7th generation Intel® Core™ processor is based on the Kaby Lake microarchitecture. The 8th generation Intel® Core™ processor is based on the Coffee Lake microarchitecture. For these microarchitectures, the core PMU supports architectural performance monitoring capability with version ID 4 (see Section 18.2.4) and a host of non-architectural monitoring capabilities.

Architectural performance monitoring version 4 capabilities are described in Section 18.2.4.

The core PMU’s capability is similar to those described in Section 18.6.3 through Section 18.3.4.5, with some differences and enhancements summarized in Table 18-22. Additionally, the core PMU provides some enhancement to support performance monitoring when the target workload contains instruction streams using Intel® Transactional Synchronization Extensions (TSX), see Section 18.3.6.5. For details of Intel TSX, see Chapter 16, “Programming with Intel® Transactional Synchronization Extensions” of *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 1*.

Performance monitoring result may be affected by side-band activity on processors that support Intel SGX, details are described in Chapter 42, “Enclave Code Debug and Profiling”.

Table 18-33. Core PMU Comparison

Box	Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Skylake, Kaby Lake and Coffee Lake	Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Haswell and Broadwell	Comment
# of Fixed counters per thread	3	3	Use CPUID to enumerate # of counters. See Section 18.2.1.
# of general-purpose counters per core	8	8	Use CPUID to enumerate # of counters. See Section 18.2.1.
Counter width (R,W)	R:48, W: 32/48	R:48, W: 32/48	See Section 18.2.2.
# of programmable counters per thread	4 or (8 if a core not shared by two threads)	4 or (8 if a core not shared by two threads)	Use CPUID to enumerate # of counters. See Section 18.2.1.
Architectural Perfmon version	4	3	See Section 18.2.4
PMI Overhead Mitigation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Freeze_Perfmon_on_PMI with streamlined semantics. ▪ Freeze_on_LBR with streamlined semantics. ▪ Freeze_while_SMM. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Freeze_Perfmon_on_PMI with legacy semantics. ▪ Freeze_on_LBR with legacy semantics for branch profiling. ▪ Freeze_while_SMM. 	See Section 17.4.7. Legacy semantics not supported with version 4 or higher.
Counter and Buffer Overflow Status Management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Query via IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS ▪ Reset via IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS_RESET ▪ Set via IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS_SET 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Query via IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS ▪ Reset via IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL 	See Section 18.2.4.
IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS Indicators of Overflow/Overhead/Interference	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Individual counter overflow ▪ PEBS buffer overflow ▪ ToPA buffer overflow ▪ CTR_Frz, LBR_Frz, ASCI 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Individual counter overflow ▪ PEBS buffer overflow ▪ ToPA buffer overflow (applicable to Broadwell microarchitecture) 	See Section 18.2.4.
Enable control in IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ CTR_Frz ▪ LBR_Frz 	NA	See Section 18.2.4.1.
Perfmon Counter In-Use Indicator	Query IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_INUSE	NA	See Section 18.2.4.3.
Precise Events	See Table 18-36.	See Table 18-12.	IA32_PMC4-PMC7 do not support PEBS.
PEBS for front end events	See Section 18.3.8.1.4.	No	
LBR Record Format Encoding	000101b	000100b	Section 17.4.8.1
LBR Size	32 entries	16 entries	
LBR Entry	From_IP/To_IP/LBR_Info triplet	From_IP/To_IP pair	Section 17.12
LBR Timing	Yes	No	Section 17.12.1
Call Stack Profiling	Yes, see Section 17.11	Yes, see Section 17.11	Use LBR facility
Off-core Response Event	MSR 1A6H and 1A7H; Extended request and response types.	MSR 1A6H and 1A7H; Extended request and response types.	
Intel TSX support for Perfmon	See Section 18.3.6.5.	See Section 18.3.6.5.	

18.3.8.1 Processor Event Based Sampling (PEBS) Facility

The PEBS facility in the 6th generation, 7th generation and 8th generation Intel Core processors provides a number enhancement relative to PEBS in processors based on Haswell/Broadwell microarchitectures. The key components and differences of PEBS facility relative to Haswell/Broadwell microarchitecture is summarized in Table 18-34.

Table 18-34. PEBS Facility Comparison

Box	Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Skylake, Kaby Lake and Coffee Lake	Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Haswell and Broadwell	Comment
Valid IA32_PMCx	PMC0-PMC3	PMC0-PMC3	No PEBS on PMC4-PMC7.
PEBS Buffer Programming	Section 18.3.1.1.1	Section 18.3.1.1.1	Unchanged
IA32_PEBS_ENABLE Layout	Figure 18-15	Figure 18-15	
PEBS-EventingIP	Yes	Yes	
PEBS record format encoding	0011b	0010b	
PEBS record layout	Table 18-35; enhanced fields at offsets 98H- B8H; and TSC record field at C0H.	Table 18-24; enhanced fields at offsets 98H, A0H, A8H, B0H.	
Multi-counter PEBS resolution	PEBS record 90H resolves the eventing counter overflow.	PEBS record 90H reflects IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS.	
Precise Events	See Table 18-36.	See Table 18-12.	IA32_PMC4-IA32_PMC7 do not support PEBS.
PEBS-PDIR	Yes	Yes	IA32_PMC1 only.
PEBS-Load Latency	See Section 18.3.4.4.2.	See Section 18.3.4.4.2.	
Data Address Profiling	Yes	Yes	
FrontEnd event support	FrontEnd_Retried event and MSR_PEBS_FRONTEND.	No	IA32_PMC0-PMC3 only.

Only IA32_PMC0 through IA32_PMC3 support PEBS.

NOTES

Precise events are only valid when the following fields of IA32_PERFEVTSELx are all zero: AnyThread, Edge, Invert, CMask.

In a PMU with PDIR capability, PEBS behavior is unpredictable if IA32_PERFEVTSELx or IA32_PMCx is changed for a PEBS-enabled counter while an event is being counted. To avoid this, changes to the programming or value of a PEBS-enabled counter should be performed when the counter is disabled.

18.3.8.1.1 PEBS Data Format

The PEBS record format for the 6th generation, 7th generation and 8th generation Intel Core processors is reporting with encoding 0011b in IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES[11:8]. The lay out is shown in Table 18-35. The PEBS record format, along with debug/store area storage format, does not change regardless of whether IA-32e mode is active or not. CPUID.01H:ECX.DTES64[bit 2] reports whether the processor's DS storage format support is mode-independent. When set, it uses 64-bit DS storage format.

Table 18-35. PEBS Record Format for 6th Generation, 7th Generation and 8th Generation Intel Core Processor Families

Byte Offset	Field	Byte Offset	Field
00H	R/EFLAGS	68H	R11
08H	R/EIP	70H	R12
10H	R/EAX	78H	R13
18H	R/EBX	80H	R14
20H	R/ECX	88H	R15
28H	R/EDX	90H	Applicable Counter
30H	R/ESI	98H	Data Linear Address
38H	R/EDI	A0H	Data Source Encoding
40H	R/EBP	A8H	Latency value (core cycles)
48H	R/ESP	B0H	EventingIP
50H	R8	B8H	TX Abort Information (Section 18.3.6.5.1)
58H	R9	C0H	TSC
60H	R10		

The layout of PEBS records are largely identical to those shown in Table 18-24.

The PEBS records at offsets 98H, A0H, and ABH record data gathered from three of the PEBS capabilities in prior processor generations: load latency facility (Section 18.3.4.4.2), PDIR (Section 18.3.4.4.4), and data address profiling (Section 18.3.6.3).

In the core PMU of the 6th generation, 7th generation and 8th generation Intel Core processors, load latency facility and PDIR capabilities and data address profiling are unchanged relative to the 4th generation and 5th generation Intel Core processors. Similarly, precise store is replaced by data address profiling.

With format 0010b, a snapshot of the IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS may be useful to resolve the situations when more than one of IA32_PMICx have been configured to collect PEBS data and two consecutive overflows of the PEBS-enabled counters are sufficiently far apart in time. It is also possible for the image at 90H to indicate multiple PEBS-enabled counters have overflowed. In the latter scenario, software cannot to correlate the PEBS record entry to the multiple overflowed bits.

With PEBS record format encoding 0011b, offset 90H reports the “applicable counter” field, which is a multi-counter PEBS resolution index allowing software to correlate the PEBS record entry with the eventing PEBS overflow when multiple counters are configured to record PEBS records. Additionally, offset C0H captures a snapshot of the TSC that provides a time line annotation for each PEBS record entry.

18.3.8.1.2 PEBS Events

The list of precise events supported for PEBS in the Skylake, Kaby Lake and Coffee Lake microarchitectures is shown in Table 18-36.

Table 18-36. Precise Events for the Skylake, Kaby Lake and Coffee Lake Microarchitectures

Event Name	Event Select	Sub-event	UMask
INST_RETIRED	C0H	PREC_DIST ¹	01H
		ALL_CYCLES ²	01H
OTHER_ASSISTS	C1H	ANY	3FH
BR_INST_RETIRED	C4H	CONDITIONAL	01H
		NEAR_CALL	02H
		ALL_BRANCHES	04H
		NEAR_RETURN	08H
		NEAR_TAKEN	20H
		FAR_BRACHES	40H
BR_MISP_RETIRED	C5H	CONDITIONAL	01H
		ALL_BRANCHES	04H
		NEAR_TAKEN	20H
FRONTEND_RETIRED	C6H	<Programmable ³ >	01H
HLE_RETIRED	C8H	ABORTED	04H
RTM_RETIRED	C9H	ABORTED	04H
MEM_INST_RETIRED ²	D0H	LOCK_LOADS	21H
		SPLIT_LOADS	41H
		SPLIT_STORES	42H
		ALL_LOADS	81H
		ALL_STORES	82H
MEM_LOAD_RETIRED ⁴	D1H	L1_HIT	01H
		L2_HIT	02H
		L3_HIT	04H
		L1_MISS	08H
		L2_MISS	10H
		L3_MISS	20H
		HIT_LFB	40H
MEM_LOAD_L3_HIT_RETIRED ²	D2H	XSNP_MISS	01H
		XSNP_HIT	02H
		XSNP_HITM	04H
		XSNP_NONE	08H

NOTES:

1. Only available on IA32_PMC1.
2. INST_RETIRED.ALL_CYCLES is configured with additional parameters of cmask = 10 and INV = 1
3. Subevents are specified using MSR_PEBS_FRONTEND, see Section 18.3.8.2
4. Instruction with at least one load uop experiencing the condition specified in the UMask.

18.3.8.1.3 Data Address Profiling

The PEBS Data address profiling on the 6th generation, 7th generation and 8th generation Intel Core processors is largely unchanged from the prior generation. When the DataLA facility is enabled, the relevant information written into a PEBS record affects entries at offsets 98H, A0H and A8H, as shown in Table 18-26.

Table 18-37. Layout of Data Linear Address Information In PEBS Record

Field	Offset	Description
Data Linear Address	98H	The linear address of the load or the destination of the store.
Store Status	A0H	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ DCU Hit (Bit 0): The store hit the data cache closest to the core (L1 cache) if this bit is set, otherwise the store missed the data cache. This information is valid only for the following store events: UOPS_RETIRED.ALL (if store is tagged), MEM_INST_RETIRED.STLB_MISS_STORES, MEM_INST_RETIRED.ALL_STORES, MEM_INST_RETIRED.SPLIT_STORES. ▪ Other bits are zero.
Reserved	A8H	Always zero.

18.3.8.1.4 PEBS Facility for Front End Events

In the 6th generation, 7th generation and 8th generation Intel Core processors, the PEBS facility has been extended to allow capturing PEBS data for some microarchitectural conditions related to front end events. The frontend microarchitectural conditions supported by PEBS requires the following interfaces:

- The IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSR must select “FrontEnd_Retired” (C6H) in the EventSelect field (bits 7:0) and umask = 01H,
- The “FRONTEND_RETIRED” event employs a new MSR, MSR_PEBS_FRONTEND, to specify the supported frontend event details, see Table 18-38.
- Program the PEBS_EN_PMCx field of IA32_PEBS_ENABLE MSR as required.

Note the AnyThread field of IA32_PERFEVTSELx is ignored by the processor for the “FRONTEND_RETIRED” event.

The sub-event encodings supported by MSR_PEBS_FRONTEND.EVTSEL is given in Table 18-38.

Table 18-38. FrontEnd_Retired Sub-Event Encodings Supported by MSR_PEBS_FRONTEND.EVTSEL

Sub-Event Name	EVTSEL	Description
DSB_MISS	11H	Retired Instructions which experienced decode stream buffer (DSB) miss.
L11_MISS	12H	The fetch of retired Instructions which experienced Instruction L1 Cache true miss ¹ . Additional requests to the same cache line as an in-flight L11 cache miss will not be counted.
L2_MISS	13H	The fetch of retired Instructions which experienced L2 Cache true miss. Additional requests to the same cache line as an in-flight MLC cache miss will not be counted.
ITLB_MISS	14H	The fetch of retired Instructions which experienced ITLB true miss. Additional requests to the same cache line as an in-flight ITLB miss will not be counted.
STLB_MISS	15H	The fetch of retired Instructions which experienced STLB true miss. Additional requests to the same cache line as an in-flight STLB miss will not be counted.
IDQ_READ_BUBBLES	6H	<p>An IDQ read bubble is defined as any one of the 4 allocation slots of IDQ that is not filled by the front-end on any cycle where there is no back end stall. Using the threshold and latency fields in MSR_PEBS_FRONTEND allows counting of IDQ read bubbles of various magnitude and duration. Latency controls the number of cycles and Threshold controls the number of allocation slots that contain bubbles.</p> <p>The event counts if and only if a sequence of at least FE_LATENCY consecutive cycles contain at least FE_TRESHOLD number of bubbles each.</p>

NOTES:

1. A true miss is the first miss for a cacheline/page (excluding secondary misses that fall into same cacheline/page).

The layout of MSR_PEBS_FRONTEND is given in Table 18-39.

Table 18-39. MSR_PEBS_FRONTEND Layout

Bit Name	Offset	Description
EVTSEL	7:0	Encodes the sub-event within FrontEnd_Retired that can use PEBS facility, see Table 18-38.
IDQ_Bubble_Length	19:8	Specifies the threshold of continuously elapsed cycles for the specified width of bubbles when counting IDQ_READ_BUBBLES event.
IDQ_Bubble_Width	22:20	Specifies the threshold of simultaneous bubbles when counting IDQ_READ_BUBBLES event.
Reserved	63:23	Reserved

18.3.8.1.5 FRONTEND_RETIRED

The FRONTEND_RETIRED event is designed to help software developers identify exact instructions that caused front-end issues. There are some instances in which the event will, by design, the under-counting scenarios include the following:

- The event counts only retired (non-speculative) front-end events, i.e. events from just true program execution path are counted.
- The event will count once per cacheline (at most). If a cacheline contains multiple instructions which caused front-end misses, the count will be only 1 for that line.
- If the multibyte sequence of an instruction spans across two cachelines and causes a miss it will be recorded once. If there were additional misses in the second cacheline, they will not be counted separately.
- If a multi-uop instruction exceeds the allocation width of one cycle, the bubbles associated with these uops will be counted once per that instruction.
- If 2 instructions are fused (macro-fusion), and either of them or both cause front-end misses, it will be counted once for the fused instruction.
- If a front-end (miss) event occurs outside instruction boundary (e.g. due to processor handling of architectural event), it may be reported for the next instruction to retire.

18.3.8.2 Off-core Response Performance Monitoring

The core PMU facility to collect off-core response events are similar to those described in Section 18.3.4.5. Each event code for off-core response monitoring requires programming an associated configuration MSR, MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_x. Software must program MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_x according to:

- Transaction request type encoding (bits 15:0): see Table 18-40.
- Supplier information (bits 29:16): see Table 18-41.
- Snoop response information (bits 37:30): see Table 18-42.

Table 18-40. MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_x Request_Type Definition (Skylake, Kaby Lake and Coffee Lake Microarchitectures)

Bit Name	Offset	Description
DMND_DATA_RD	0	(R/W). Counts the number of demand data reads of full cachelines as well as demand data page table entry cacheline reads. Does not count hw or sw prefetches.
DMND_RFO	1	(R/W). Counts the number of demand reads for ownership (RFO) requests generated by a write to data cacheline. Does not count L2 RFO prefetches.
DMND_IFETCH	2	(R/W). Counts the number of demand instruction cacheline reads and L1 instruction cacheline prefetches.
Reserved	14:3	Reserved
OTHER	15	(R/W). Counts miscellaneous requests, such as I/O and un-cacheable accesses.

Table 18-41 lists the supplier information field that applies to 6th generation, 7th generation and 8th generation Intel Core processors. (6th generation Intel Core processor CPUID signatures: 06_4EH, 06_5EH; 7th generation and 8th generation Intel Core processor CPUID signatures: 06_8EH, 06_9EH).

Table 18-41. MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_x Supplier Info Field Definition (CPUID Signatures 06_4EH, 06_5EH and 06_8EH, 06_9EH)

Subtype	Bit Name	Offset	Description
Common	Any	16	(R/W). Catch all value for any response types.
Supplier Info	NO_SUPP	17	(R/W). No Supplier Information available.
	L3_HITM	18	(R/W). M-state initial lookup stat in L3.
	L3_HITE	19	(R/W). E-state
	L3_HITS	20	(R/W). S-state
	Reserved	21	Reserved
	L4_HIT	22	(R/W). L4 Cache (if L4 is present in the processor)
	Reserved	25:23	Reserved
	DRAM	26	(R/W). Local Node
	Reserved	29:27	Reserved
	SPL_HIT	30	(R/W). L4 cache super line hit (if L4 is present in the processor)

Table 18-42 lists the snoop information field that apply to processors with CPUID signatures 06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_8EH, 06_9E, and 06_55H.

**Table 18-42. MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_x Snoop Info Field Definition
(CPUID Signatures 06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_8EH, 06_9E and 06_55H)**

Subtype	Bit Name	Offset	Description
Snoop Info	SPL_HIT	30	(R/W). L4 cache super line hit (if L4 is present in the processor).
	SNOOP_NONE	31	(R/W). No details on snoop-related information.
	SNOOP_NOT_NEEDED	32	(R/W). No snoop was needed to satisfy the request.
	SNOOP_MISS	33	(R/W). A snoop was needed and it missed all snooped caches: -For LLC Hit, ReslHitl was returned by all cores. -For LLC Miss, Rspl was returned by all sockets and data was returned from DRAM.
	SNOOP_HIT_NO_FWD	34	(R/W). A snoop was needed and it hits in at least one snooped cache. Hit denotes a cache-line was valid before snoop effect. This includes: -Snoop Hit w/ Invalidation (LLC Hit, RFO). -Snoop Hit, Left Shared (LLC Hit/Miss, IFetch/Data_RD). -Snoop Hit w/ Invalidation and No Forward (LLC Miss, RFO Hit S). In the LLC Miss case, data is returned from DRAM.
	SNOOP_HIT_WITH_FWD	35	(R/W). A snoop was needed and data was forwarded from a remote socket. This includes: -Snoop Forward Clean, Left Shared (LLC Hit/Miss, IFetch/Data_RD/RFT).
	SNOOP_HITM	36	(R/W). A snoop was needed and it HitM-ed in local or remote cache. HitM denotes a cache-line was in modified state before effect as a results of snoop. This includes: -Snoop HitM w/ WB (LLC miss, IFetch/Data_RD). -Snoop Forward Modified w/ Invalidation (LLC Hit/Miss, RFO). -Snoop MtoS (LLC Hit, IFetch/Data_RD).
SNOOP_NON_DRAM	37	(R/W). Target was non-DRAM system address. This includes MMIO transactions.	

18.3.8.2.1 Off-core Response Performance Monitoring for the Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family

The following tables list the requestor and supplier information fields that apply to the Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family.

- Transaction request type encoding (bits 15:0): see Table 18-43.
- Supplier information (bits 29:16): see Table 18-44.
- Snoop response information has not been changed and is the same as in (bits 37:30): see Table 18-42.

Table 18-43. MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_x Request_Type Definition (Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family)

Bit Name	Offset	Description
DEMAND_DATA_RD	0	(R/W). Counts the number of demand data reads of full cachelines as well as demand data page table entry cacheline reads. Does not count hw or sw prefetches.
DEMAND_RFO	1	(R/W). Counts the number of demand reads for ownership (RFO) requests generated by a write to data cacheline. Does not count L2 RFO prefetches.
DEMAND_CODE_RD	2	(R/W). Counts the number of demand instruction cacheline reads and L1 instruction cacheline prefetches.
Reserved	3	Reserved.
PF_L2_DATA_RD	4	(R/W). Counts the number of prefetch data reads into L2.
PF_L2_RFO	5	(R/W). Counts the number of RFO Requests generated by the MLC prefetches to L2.
Reserved	6	Reserved.
PF_L3_DATA_RD	7	(R/W). Counts the number of MLC data read prefetches into L3.
PF_L3_RFO	8	(R/W). Counts the number of RFO requests generated by MLC prefetches to L3.
Reserved	9	Reserved.
PF_L1D_AND_SW	10	(R/W). Counts data cacheline reads generated by hardware L1 data cache prefetcher or software prefetch requests.
Reserved	14:11	Reserved.
OTHER	15	(R/W). Counts miscellaneous requests, such as I/O and un-cacheable accesses.

Table 18-44 lists the supplier information field that applies to the Intel Xeon Processor Scalable Family (CPUID signature: 06_55H).

Table 18-44. MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_x Supplier Info Field Definition (CPUID Signature 06_55H)

Subtype	Bit Name	Offset	Description
Common	Any	16	(R/W). Catch all value for any response types.
Supplier Info	SUPPLIER_NONE	17	(R/W). No Supplier Information available.
	L3_HIT_M	18	(R/W). M-state initial lookup stat in L3.
	L3_HIT_E	19	(R/W). E-state
	L3_HIT_S	20	(R/W). S-state
	L3_HIT_F	21	(R/W). F-state
	Reserved	25:22	Reserved.
	L3_MISS_LOCAL_DRAM	26	(R/W). L3 Miss: local home requests that missed the L3 cache and were serviced by local DRAM.
	L3_MISS_REMOTE_HOP0_DRAM	27	(R/W). Hop 0 Remote supplier.
	L3_MISS_REMOTE_HOP1_DRAM	28	(R/W). Hop 1 Remote supplier.
	L3_MISS_REMOTE_HOP2P_DRAM	29	(R/W). Hop 2 or more Remote supplier.
Reserved	30	Reserved.	

18.4 PERFORMANCE MONITORING (INTEL® XEON™ PHI PROCESSORS)

NOTE

This section also applies to the Intel® Xeon Phi™ Processor 7215, 7285, 7295 Series based on Knights Mill microarchitecture.

18.4.1 Intel® Xeon Phi™ Processor 7200/5200/3200 Performance Monitoring

The Intel® Xeon Phi™ processor 7200/5200/3200 series are based on the Knights Landing microarchitecture. The performance monitoring capabilities are distributed between its tiles (pair of processor cores) and untile (connecting many tiles in a physical processor package). Functional details of the tiles and untile of the Knights Landing microarchitecture can be found in Chapter 16 of *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Optimization Reference Manual*.

A complete description of the tile and untile PMU programming interfaces for Intel Xeon Phi processors based on the Knights Landing microarchitecture can be found in the Technical Document section at <http://www.intel.com/content/www/us/en/processors/xeon/xeon-phi-detail.html>.

A tile contains a pair of cores attached to a shared L2 cache and is similar to those found in Intel® Atom™ processors based on the Silvermont microarchitecture. The processor provides several new capabilities on top of the Silvermont performance monitoring facilities.

The processor supports architectural performance monitoring capability with version ID 3 (see Section 18.2.3) and a host of non-architectural performance monitoring capabilities. The processor provides two general-purpose performance counters (IA32_PMC0, IA32_PMC1) and three fixed-function performance counters (IA32_FIXED_CTR0, IA32_FIXED_CTR1, IA32_FIXED_CTR2).

Non-architectural performance monitoring in the processor also uses the IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSR to configure a set of non-architecture performance monitoring events to be counted by the corresponding general-purpose performance counter.

The bit fields within each IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSR are defined in Figure 18-6 and described in Section 18.2.1.1 and Section 18.2.3 in the SDM. The processor supports AnyThread counting in three architectural performance monitoring events.

18.4.1.1 Enhancements of Performance Monitoring in the Intel® Xeon Phi™ processor Tile

The Intel® Xeon Phi™ processor tile includes the following enhancements to the Silvermont microarchitecture.

- AnyThread support. This facility is limited to following three architectural events: Instructions Retired, Unhalted Core Cycles, Unhalted Reference Cycles using IA32_FIXED_CTR0-2 and Unhalted Core Cycles, Unhalted Reference Cycles using IA32_PERFEVTSELx.
- PEBS-DLA (Processor Event-Based Sampling-Data Linear Address) fields. The processor provides memory address in addition to the Silvermont PEBS record support on select events. The PEBS recording format as reported by IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES [11:8] is 2.
- Off-core response counting facility. This facility in the processor core allows software to count certain transaction responses between the processor tile to subsystems outside the tile (untile). Counting off-core response requires additional event qualification configuration facility in conjunction with IA32_PERFEVTSELx. Two off-core response MSRs are provided to use in conjunction with specific event codes that must be specified with IA32_PERFEVTSELx. Two cores do not share the off-core response MSRs. Knights Landing expands off-core response capability to match the processor untile changes.
- Average request latency measurement. The off-core response counting facility can be combined to use two performance counters to count the occurrences and weighted cycles of transaction requests. This facility is updated to match the processor untile changes.

18.4.1.1.1 Processor Event-Based Sampling

The processor supports processor event based sampling (PEBS). PEBS is supported using IA32_PMC0 (see also Section 17.4.9, “BTS and DS Save Area”).

PEBS uses a debug store mechanism to store a set of architectural state information for the processor. The information provides architectural state of the instruction executed after the instruction that caused the event (See Section 18.6.2.4).

The list of PEBS events supported in the processor is shown in the following table.

Table 18-45. PEBS Performance Events for the Knights Landing Microarchitecture

Event Name	Event Select	Sub-event	UMask	Data Linear Address Support
BR_INST_RETIRED	C4H	ALL_BRANCHES	00H	No
		JCC	7EH	No
		TAKEN_JCC	FEH	No
		CALL	F9H	No
		REL_CALL	FDH	No
		IND_CALL	FBH	No
		NON_RETURN_IND	EBH	No
		FAR_BRANCH	BFH	No
		RETURN	F7H	No
BR_MISP_RETIRED	C5H	ALL_BRANCHES	00H	No
		JCC	7EH	No
		TAKEN_JCC	FEH	No
		IND_CALL	FBH	No
		NON_RETURN_IND	EBH	No
		RETURN	F7H	No
MEM_UOPS_RETIRED	04H	L2_HIT_LOADS	02H	Yes
		L2_MISS_LOADS	04H	Yes
		DLTB_MISS_LOADS	08H	Yes
RECYCLEQ	03H	LD_BLOCK_ST_FORWARD	01H	Yes
		LD_SPLITS	08H	Yes

The PEBS record format 2 supported by processors based on the Knights Landing microarchitecture is shown in Table 18-46, and each field in the PEBS record is 64 bits long.

Table 18-46. PEBS Record Format for the Knights Landing Microarchitecture

Byte Offset	Field	Byte Offset	Field
00H	R/EFLAGS	60H	R10
08H	R/EIP	68H	R11
10H	R/EAX	70H	R12
18H	R/EBX	78H	R13
20H	R/ECX	80H	R14
28H	R/EDX	88H	R15
30H	R/ESI	90H	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS
38H	R/EDI	98H	PSDLA
40H	R/EBP	A0H	Reserved
48H	R/ESP	A8H	Reserved
50H	R8	B0H	EventingRIP
58H	R9	B8H	Reserved

18.4.1.1.2 Offcore Response Event

Event number 0B7H support offcore response monitoring using an associated configuration MSR, MSR_OFFCORE_RSP0 (address 1A6H) in conjunction with umask value 01H or MSR_OFFCORE_RSP1 (address 1A7H) in conjunction with umask value 02H. Table 18-47 lists the event code, mask value and additional off-core configuration MSR that must be programmed to count off-core response events using IA32_PMCx.

Table 18-47. OffCore Response Event Encoding

Counter	Event code	UMask	Required Off-core Response MSR
PMC0-1	B7H	01H	MSR_OFFCORE_RSP0 (address 1A6H)
PMC0-1	B7H	02H	MSR_OFFCORE_RSP1 (address 1A7H)

Some of the MSR_OFFCORE_RESP [0,1] register bits are not valid in this processor and their use is reserved. The layout of MSR_OFFCORE_RSP0 and MSR_OFFCORE_RSP1 registers are defined in Table 18-48. Bits 15:0 specifies the request type of a transaction request to the uncore. Bits 30:16 specifies supplier information, bits 37:31 specifies snoop response information.

Additionally, MSR_OFFCORE_RSP0 provides bit 38 to enable measurement of average latency of specific type of offcore transaction requests using two programmable counter simultaneously, see Section 18.5.2.3 for details.

Table 18-48. Bit fields of the MSR_OFFCORE_RESP [0, 1] Registers

Main	Sub-field	Bit	Name	Description
Request Type		0	DEMAND_DATA_RD	Demand cacheable data and L1 prefetch data reads.
		1	DEMAND_RFO	Demand cacheable data writes.
		2	DEMAND_CODE_RD	Demand code reads and prefetch code reads.
		3	Reserved	Reserved.
		4	Reserved	Reserved.
		5	PF_L2_RFO	L2 data RFO prefetches (includes PREFETCHW instruction).
		6	PF_L2_CODE_RD	L2 code HW prefetches.
		7	PARTIAL_READS	Partial reads (UC or WC).
		8	PARTIAL_WRITES	Partial writes (UC or WT or WP). Valid only for OFFCORE_RESP_1 event. Should only be used on PMC1. This bit is reserved for OFFCORE_RESP_0 event.
		9	UC_CODE_READS	UC code reads.
		10	BUS_LOCKS	Bus locks and split lock requests.
		11	FULL_STREAMING_STORES	Full streaming stores (WC). Valid only for OFFCORE_RESP_1 event. Should only be used on PMC1. This bit is reserved for OFFCORE_RESP_0 event.
		12	SW_PREFETCH	Software prefetches.
		13	PF_L1_DATA_RD	L1 data HW prefetches.
		14	PARTIAL_STREAMING_STORES	Partial streaming stores (WC). Valid only for OFFCORE_RESP_1 event. Should only be used on PMC1. This bit is reserved for OFFCORE_RESP_0 event.
Response Type	Any	16	ANY_RESPONSE	Account for any response.
	Data Supply from Untile	17	NO_SUPP	No Supplier Details.
		18	Reserved	Reserved.
		19	L2_HIT_OTHER_TILE_NEAR	Other tile L2 hit E Near.
		20	Reserved	Reserved.
		21	MCDRAM_NEAR	MCDRAM Local.
		22	MCDRAM_FAR_OR_L2_HIT_OTHER_TILE_FAR	MCDRAM Far or Other tile L2 hit far.
		23	DRAM_NEAR	DRAM Local.
		24	DRAM_FAR	DRAM Far.
	Data Supply from within same tile	25	L2_HITM_THIS_TILE	M-state.
		26	L2_HITE_THIS_TILE	E-state.
		27	L2_HITS_THIS_TILE	S-state.
		28	L2_HITF_THIS_TILE	F-state.
		29	Reserved	Reserved.
		30	Reserved	Reserved.

Table 18-48. Bit fields of the MSR_OFFCORE_RESP [0, 1] Registers (Contd.)

Main	Sub-field	Bit	Name	Description
	Snoop Info; Only Valid in case of Data Supply from Untile	31	SNOOP_NONE	None of the cores were snooped.
		32	NO_SNOOP_NEEDED	No snoop was needed to satisfy the request.
		33	Reserved	Reserved.
		34	Reserved	Reserved.
		35	HIT_OTHER_TILE_FWD	Snoop request hit in the other tile with data forwarded.
		36	HITM_OTHER_TILE	A snoop was needed and it HitM-ed in other core's L1 cache. HitM denotes a cache-line was in modified state before effect as a result of snoop.
		37	NON_DRAM	Target was non-DRAM system address. This includes MMIO transactions.
Outstanding requests	Weighted cycles	38	OUTSTANDING (Valid only for MSR_OFFCORE_RESP0. Should only be used on PMCO. This bit is reserved for MSR_OFFCORE_RESP1).	If set, counts total number of weighted cycles of any outstanding offcore requests with data response. Valid only for OFFCORE_RESP_0 event. Should only be used on PMCO. This bit is reserved for OFFCORE_RESP_1 event.

18.4.1.1.3 Average Offcore Request Latency Measurement

Measurement of average latency of offcore transaction requests can be enabled using MSR_OFFCORE_RSP0.[bit 38] with the choice of request type specified in MSR_OFFCORE_RSP0.[bit 15:0].

Refer to Section 18.5.2.3, "Average Offcore Request Latency Measurement," for typical usage. Note that MSR_OFFCORE_RESPx registers are not shared between cores in Knights Landing. This allows one core to measure average latency while other core is measuring different offcore response events.

18.5 PERFORMANCE MONITORING (INTEL® ATOM™ PROCESSORS)

18.5.1 Performance Monitoring (45 nm and 32 nm Intel® Atom™ Processors)

45 nm and 32 nm Intel Atom processors report architectural performance monitoring versionID = 3 (supporting the aggregate capabilities of versionID 1, 2, and 3; see Section 18.2.3) and a host of non-architectural monitoring capabilities. These 45 nm and 32 nm Intel Atom processors provide two general-purpose performance counters (IA32_PMC0, IA32_PMC1) and three fixed-function performance counters (IA32_FIXED_CTR0, IA32_FIXED_CTR1, IA32_FIXED_CTR2).

NOTE

The number of counters available to software may vary from the number of physical counters present on the hardware, because an agent running at a higher privilege level (e.g., a VMM) may not expose all counters. CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] reports the MSRs available to software; see Section 18.2.1.

Non-architectural performance monitoring in Intel Atom processor family uses the IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSR to configure a set of non-architecture performance monitoring events to be counted by the corresponding general-purpose performance counter. The list of non-architectural performance monitoring events is listed in Table 19-29.

Architectural and non-architectural performance monitoring events in 45 nm and 32 nm Intel Atom processors support thread qualification using bit 21 (AnyThread) of IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSR, i.e. if IA32_PERFEVTSELx.AnyThread = 1, event counts include monitored conditions due to either logical processors in the same processor core.

The bit fields within each IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSR are defined in Figure 18-6 and described in Section 18.2.1.1 and Section 18.2.3.

Valid event mask (Umask) bits are listed in Chapter 19. The UMASK field may contain sub-fields that provide the same qualifying actions like those listed in Table 18-61, Table 18-62, Table 18-63, and Table 18-64. One or more of these sub-fields may apply to specific events on an event-by-event basis. Details are listed in Table 19-29 in Chapter 19, “Performance Monitoring Events.” Precise Event Based Monitoring is supported using IA32_PMC0 (see also Section 17.4.9, “BTS and DS Save Area”).

18.5.2 Performance Monitoring for Silvermont Microarchitecture

Intel processors based on the Silvermont microarchitecture report architectural performance monitoring versionID = 3 (see Section 18.2.3) and a host of non-architectural monitoring capabilities. Intel processors based on the Silvermont microarchitecture provide two general-purpose performance counters (IA32_PMC0, IA32_PMC1) and three fixed-function performance counters (IA32_FIXED_CTR0, IA32_FIXED_CTR1, IA32_FIXED_CTR2). Intel Atom processors based on the Airmont microarchitecture support the same performance monitoring capabilities as those based on the Silvermont microarchitecture.

Non-architectural performance monitoring in the Silvermont microarchitecture uses the IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSR to configure a set of non-architecture performance monitoring events to be counted by the corresponding general-purpose performance counter. The list of non-architectural performance monitoring events is listed in Table 19-28.

The bit fields (except bit 21) within each IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSR are defined in Figure 18-6 and described in Section 18.2.1.1 and Section 18.2.3. Architectural and non-architectural performance monitoring events in the Silvermont microarchitecture ignore the AnyThread qualification regardless of its setting in IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSR.

18.5.2.1 Enhancements of Performance Monitoring in the Processor Core

The notable enhancements in the monitoring of performance events in the processor core include:

- The width of counter reported by CPUID.0AH:EAX[23:16] is 40 bits.
- Off-core response counting facility. This facility in the processor core allows software to count certain transaction responses between the processor core to sub-systems outside the processor core (uncore). Counting off-core response requires additional event qualification configuration facility in conjunction with IA32_PERFEVTSELx. Two off-core response MSRs are provided to use in conjunction with specific event codes that must be specified with IA32_PERFEVTSELx.
- Average request latency measurement. The off-core response counting facility can be combined to use two performance counters to count the occurrences and weighted cycles of transaction requests.

18.5.2.1.1 Processor Event Based Sampling (PEBS)

In the Silvermont microarchitecture, the PEBS facility can be used with precise events. PEBS is supported using IA32_PMC0 (see also Section 17.4.9).

PEBS uses a debug store mechanism to store a set of architectural state information for the processor. The information provides architectural state of the instruction executed after the instruction that caused the event (See Section 18.6.2.4).

The list of precise events supported in the Silvermont microarchitecture is shown in Table 18-49.

Table 18-49. PEBS Performance Events for the Silvermont Microarchitecture

Event Name	Event Select	Sub-event	UMask
BR_INST_RETIRED	C4H	ALL_BRANCHES	00H
		JCC	7EH
		TAKEN_JCC	FEH
		CALL	F9H
		REL_CALL	FDH

Table 18-49. PEBS Performance Events for the Silvermont Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Event Name	Event Select	Sub-event	UMask
		IND_CALL	FBH
		NON_RETURN_IND	EBH
		FAR_BRANCH	BFH
		RETURN	F7H
BR_MISP_RETIRED	C5H	ALL_BRANCHES	00H
		JCC	7EH
		TAKEN_JCC	FEH
		IND_CALL	FBH
		NON_RETURN_IND	EBH
		RETURN	F7H
MEM_UOPS_RETIRED	04H	L2_HIT_LOADS	02H
		L2_MISS_LOADS	04H
		DLTB_MISS_LOADS	08H
		HITM	20H
REHABQ	03H	LD_BLOCK_ST_FORWARD	01H
		LD_SPLITS	08H

PEBS Record Format The PEBS record format supported by processors based on the Intel Silvermont microarchitecture is shown in Table 18-50, and each field in the PEBS record is 64 bits long.

Table 18-50. PEBS Record Format for the Silvermont Microarchitecture

Byte Offset	Field	Byte Offset	Field
00H	R/EFLAGS	60H	R10
08H	R/EIP	68H	R11
10H	R/EAX	70H	R12
18H	R/EBX	78H	R13
20H	R/ECX	80H	R14
28H	R/EDX	88H	R15
30H	R/ESI	90H	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS
38H	R/EDI	98H	Reserved
40H	R/EBP	A0H	Reserved
48H	R/ESP	A8H	Reserved
50H	R8	B0H	EventingRIP
58H	R9	B8H	Reserved

18.5.2.2 Offcore Response Event

Event number 0B7H support offcore response monitoring using an associated configuration MSR, MSR_OFFCORE_RSP0 (address 1A6H) in conjunction with umask value 01H or MSR_OFFCORE_RSP1 (address 1A7H) in conjunction with umask value 02H. Table 18-51 lists the event code, mask value and additional off-core configuration MSR that must be programmed to count off-core response events using IA32_PMCx.

In the Silvermont microarchitecture, each MSR_OFFCORE_RSPx is shared by two processor cores.

Table 18-51. OffCore Response Event Encoding

Counter	Event code	UMask	Required Off-core Response MSR
PMCO-1	B7H	01H	MSR_OFFCORE_RSP0 (address 1A6H)
PMCO-1	B7H	02H	MSR_OFFCORE_RSP1 (address 1A7H)

The layout of MSR_OFFCORE_RSP0 and MSR_OFFCORE_RSP1 are shown in Figure 18-37 and Figure 18-38. Bits 15:0 specifies the request type of a transaction request to the uncore. Bits 30:16 specifies supplier information, bits 37:31 specifies snoop response information.

Additionally, MSR_OFFCORE_RSP0 provides bit 38 to enable measurement of average latency of specific type of offcore transaction requests using two programmable counter simultaneously, see Section 18.5.2.3 for details.

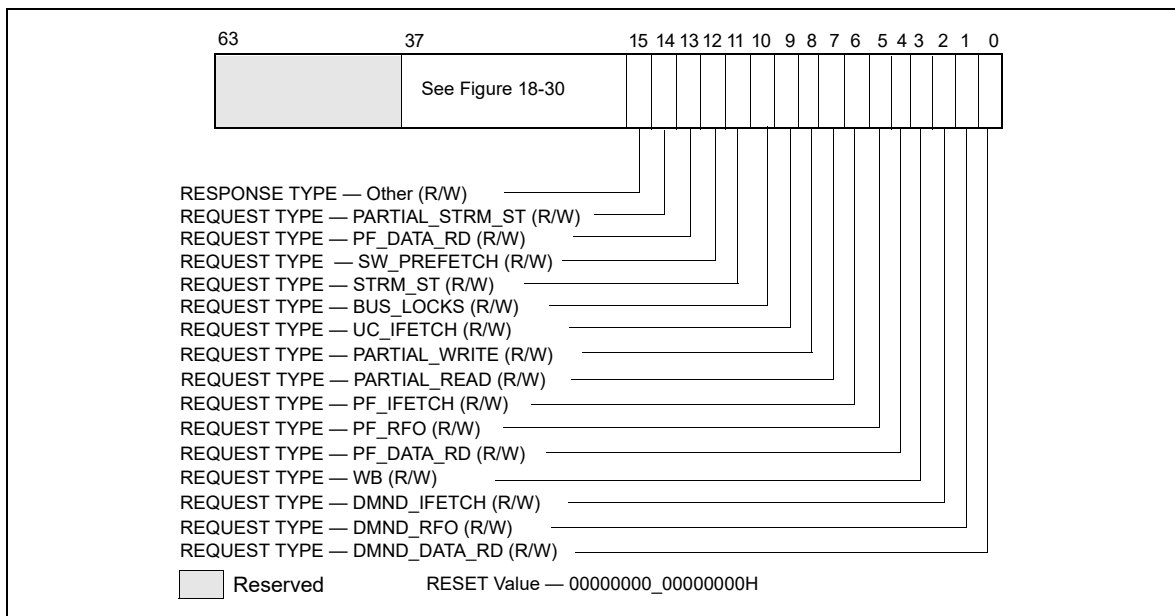


Figure 18-37. Request_Type Fields for MSR_OFFCORE_RSPx

Table 18-52. MSR_OFFCORE_RSPx Request_Type Field Definition

Bit Name	Offset	Description
DMND_DATA_RD	0	(R/W). Counts the number of demand and DCU prefetch data reads of full and partial cachelines as well as demand data page table entry cacheline reads. Does not count L2 data read prefetches or instruction fetches.
DMND_RFO	1	(R/W). Counts the number of demand and DCU prefetch reads for ownership (RFO) requests generated by a write to data cacheline. Does not count L2 RFO prefetches.
DMND_IFETCH	2	(R/W). Counts the number of demand instruction cacheline reads and L1 instruction cacheline prefetches.
WB	3	(R/W). Counts the number of writeback (modified to exclusive) transactions.
PF_DATA_RD	4	(R/W). Counts the number of data cacheline reads generated by L2 prefetchers.
PF_RFO	5	(R/W). Counts the number of RFO requests generated by L2 prefetchers.
PF_IFETCH	6	(R/W). Counts the number of code reads generated by L2 prefetchers.
PARTIAL_READ	7	(R/W). Counts the number of demand reads of partial cache lines (including UC and WC).

Table 18-52. MSR_OFFCORE_RSPx Request_Type Field Definition (Contd.)

Bit Name	Offset	Description
PARTIAL_WRITE	8	(R/W). Counts the number of demand RFO requests to write to partial cache lines (includes UC, WT and WP)
UC_IFETCH	9	(R/W). Counts the number of UC instruction fetches.
BUS_LOCKS	10	(R/W). Bus lock and split lock requests
STRM_ST	11	(R/W). Streaming store requests
SW_PREFETCH	12	(R/W). Counts software prefetch requests
PF_DATA_RD	13	(R/W). Counts DCU hardware prefetcher data read requests
PARTIAL_STRM_ST	14	(R/W). Streaming store requests
ANY	15	(R/W). Any request that crosses IDI, including I/O.

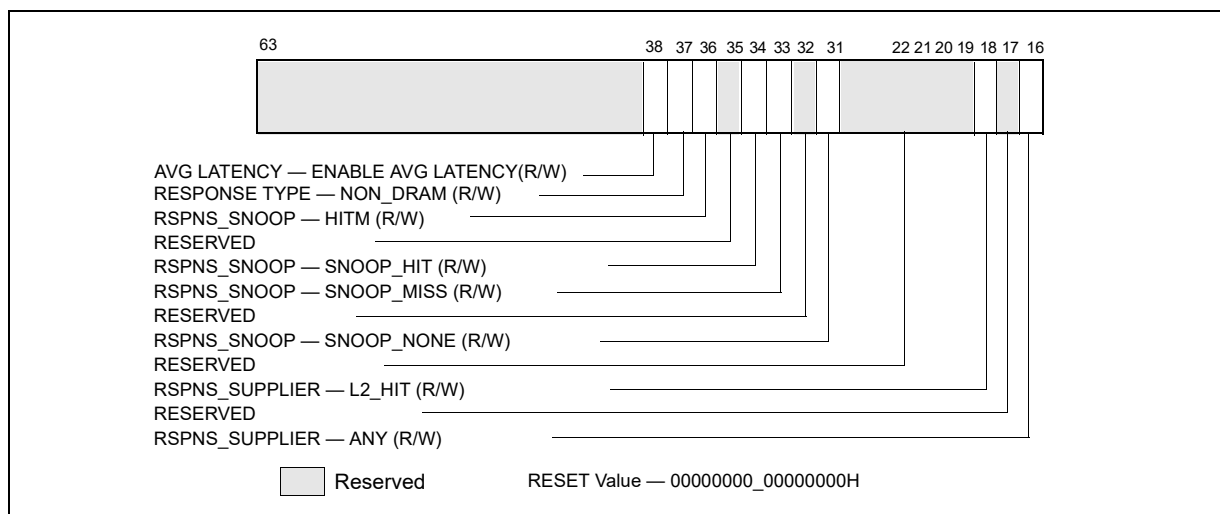


Figure 18-38. Response_Supplier and Snoop Info Fields for MSR_OFFCORE_RSPx

To properly program this extra register, software must set at least one request type bit (Table 18-52) and a valid response type pattern (Table 18-53, Table 18-54). Otherwise, the event count reported will be zero. It is permissible and useful to set multiple request and response type bits in order to obtain various classes of off-core response events. Although MSR_OFFCORE_RSPx allow an agent software to program numerous combinations that meet the above guideline, not all combinations produce meaningful data.

Table 18-53. MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_x Response Supplier Info Field Definition

Subtype	Bit Name	Offset	Description
Common	ANY_RESPONSE	16	(R/W). Catch all value for any response types.
Supplier Info	Reserved	17	Reserved
	L2_HIT	18	(R/W). Cache reference hit L2 in either M/E/S states.
	Reserved	30:19	Reserved

To specify a complete offcore response filter, software must properly program bits in the request and response type fields. A valid request type must have at least one bit set in the non-reserved bits of 15:0. A valid response type must be a non-zero value of the following expression:

ANY | [(‘OR’ of Supplier Info Bits) & (‘OR’ of Snoop Info Bits)]

If “ANY” bit is set, the supplier and snoop info bits are ignored.

Table 18-54. MSR_OFFCORE_RSPx Snoop Info Field Definition

Subtype	Bit Name	Offset	Description
Snoop Info	SNP_NONE	31	(R/W). No details on snoop-related information.
	Reserved	32	Reserved
	SNOOP_MISS	33	(R/W). Counts the number of snoop misses when L2 misses.
	SNOOP_HIT	34	(R/W). Counts the number of snoops hit in the other module where no modified copies were found.
	Reserved	35	Reserved
	HITM	36	(R/W). Counts the number of snoops hit in the other module where modified copies were found in other core's L1 cache.
	NON_DRAM	37	(R/W). Target was non-DRAM system address. This includes MMIO transactions.
	AVG_LATENCY	38	(R/W). Enable average latency measurement by counting weighted cycles of outstanding offcore requests of the request type specified in bits 15:0 and any response (bits 37:16 cleared to 0). This bit is available in MSR_OFFCORE_RESP0. The weighted cycles is accumulated in the specified programmable counter IA32_PMCx and the occurrence of specified requests are counted in the other programmable counter.

18.5.2.3 Average Offcore Request Latency Measurement

Average latency for offcore transactions can be determined by using both MSR_OFFCORE_RSP registers. Using two performance monitoring counters, program the two OFFCORE_RESPONSE event encodings into the corresponding IA32_PERFVTSELx MSRs. Count the weighted cycles via MSR_OFFCORE_RSP0 by programming a request type in MSR_OFFCORE_RSP0.[15:0] and setting MSR_OFFCORE_RSP0.OUTSTANDING[38] to 1, while setting the remaining bits to 0. Count the number of requests via MSR_OFFCORE_RSP1 by programming the same request type from MSR_OFFCORE_RSP0 into MSR_OFFCORE_RSP1[bit 15:0], and setting MSR_OFFCORE_RSP1.ANY_RESPONSE[16] = 1, while setting the remaining bits to 0. The average latency can be obtained by dividing the value of the IA32_PMCx register that counted weight cycles by the register that counted requests.

18.5.3 Performance Monitoring for Goldmont Microarchitecture

Intel Atom processors based on the Goldmont microarchitecture report architectural performance monitoring versionID = 4 (see Section 18.2.4) and support non-architectural monitoring capabilities described in this section.

Architectural performance monitoring version 4 capabilities are described in Section 18.2.4.

The bit fields (except bit 21) within each IA32_PERFVTSELx MSR are defined in Figure 18-6 and described in Section 18.2.1.1 and Section 18.2.3. The Goldmont microarchitecture does not support Hyper-Threading and thus architectural and non-architectural performance monitoring events ignore the AnyThread qualification regardless of its setting in the IA32_PERFVTSELx MSR. However, Goldmont does not set the AnyThread deprecation bit (CPUID.0AH:EDX[15]).

The core PMU's capability is similar to that of the Silvermont microarchitecture described in Section 18.5.2, with some differences and enhancements summarized in Table 18-55.

Table 18-55. Core PMU Comparison Between the Goldmont and Silvermont Microarchitectures

Box	The Goldmont microarchitecture	The Silvermont microarchitecture	Comment
# of Fixed counters per core	3	3	Use CPUID to enumerate # of counters. See Section 18.2.1.
# of general-purpose counters per core	4	2	Use CPUID to enumerate # of counters. See Section 18.2.1.
Counter width (R,W)	R:48, W: 32/48	R:40, W:32	See Section 18.2.2.
Architectural Performance Monitoring version ID	4	3	Use CPUID to enumerate # of counters. See Section 18.2.1.
PMI Overhead Mitigation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Freeze_Perfmon_on_PMI with streamlined semantics. Freeze_LBR_on_PMI with streamlined semantics for branch profiling. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Freeze_Perfmon_on_PMI with legacy semantics. Freeze_LBR_on_PMI with legacy semantics for branch profiling. 	See Section 17.4.7. Legacy semantics not supported with version 4 or higher.
Counter and Buffer Overflow Status Management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Query via IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS Reset via IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS_RESET Set via IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS_SET 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Query via IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS Reset via IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL 	See Section 18.2.4.
IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS Indicators of Overflow/Overhead/Interference	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Individual counter overflow PEBS buffer overflow ToPA buffer overflow CTR_Frz, LBR_Frz 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Individual counter overflow PEBS buffer overflow 	See Section 18.2.4.
Enable control in IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CTR_Frz, LBR_Frz 	No	See Section 18.2.4.1.
Perfmon Counter In-Use Indicator	Query IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_INUSE	No	See Section 18.2.4.3.
Processor Event Based Sampling (PEBS) Events	General-Purpose Counter 0 only. Supports all events (precise and non-precise). Precise events are listed in Table 18-56.	See Section 18.5.2.1.1. General-Purpose Counter 0 only. Only supports precise events (see Table 18-49).	IA32_PMC0 only.
PEBS record format encoding	0011b	0010b	
Reduce skid PEBS	IA32_PMC0 only	No	
Data Address Profiling	Yes	No	
PEBS record layout	Table 18-57; enhanced fields at offsets 90H- 98H; and TSC record field at COH.	Table 18-50.	
PEBS EventingIP	Yes	Yes	
Off-core Response Event	MSR 1A6H and 1A7H, each core has its own register.	MSR 1A6H and 1A7H, shared by a pair of cores.	Nehalem supports 1A6H only.

18.5.3.1 Processor Event Based Sampling (PEBS)

Processor event based sampling (PEBS) on the Goldmont microarchitecture is enhanced over prior generations with respect to sampling support of precise events and non-precise events. In the Goldmont microarchitecture, PEBS is supported using IA32_PMC0 for all events (see Section 17.4.9).

PEBS uses a debug store mechanism to store a set of architectural state information for the processor at the time the sample was generated.

Precise events work the same way on Goldmont microarchitecture as on the Silvermont microarchitecture. The record will be generated after an instruction that causes the event when the counter is already overflowed and will capture the architectural state at this point (see Section 18.6.2.4 and Section 17.4.9). The eventingIP in the record will indicate the instruction that caused the event. The list of precise events supported in the Goldmont microarchitecture is shown in Table 18-56.

In the Goldmont microarchitecture, the PEBS facility also supports the use of non-precise events to record processor state information into PEBS records with the same format as with precise events.

However, a non-precise event may not be attributable to a particular retired instruction or the time of instruction execution. When the counter overflows, a PEBS record will be generated at the next opportunity. Consider the event ICACHE.HIT. When the counter overflows, the processor is fetching future instructions. The PEBS record will be generated at the next opportunity and capture the state at the processor's current retirement point. It is likely that the instruction fetch that caused the event to increment was beyond that current retirement point. Other examples of non-precise events are CPU_CLK_UNHALTED.CORE_P and HARDWARE_INTERRUPTS.RECEIVED. CPU_CLK_UNHALTED.CORE_P will increment each cycle that the processor is awake. When the counter overflows, there may be many instructions in various stages of execution. Additionally, zero, one or multiple instructions may be retired the cycle that the counter overflows. HARDWARE_INTERRUPTS.RECEIVED increments independent of any instructions being executed. For all non-precise events, the PEBS record will be generated at the next opportunity, after the counter has overflowed. The PEBS facility thus allows for identification of the instructions which were executing when the event overflowed.

After generating a record for a non-precise event, the PEBS facility reloads the counter and resumes execution, just as is done for precise events. Unlike interrupt-based sampling, which requires an interrupt service routine to collect the sample and reload the counter, the PEBS facility can collect samples even when interrupts are masked and without using NMI. Since a PEBS record is generated immediately when a counter for a non-precise event is enabled, it may also be generated after an overflow is set by an MSR write to IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS_SET.

Table 18-56. Precise Events Supported by the Goldmont Microarchitecture

Event Name	Event Select	Sub-event	UMask
LD_BLOCKS	03H	DATA_UNKNOWN	01H
		STORE_FORWARD	02H
		4K_ALIAS	04H
		UTLB_MISS	08H
		ALL_BLOCK	10H
MISALIGN_MEM_REF	13H	LOAD_PAGE_SPLIT	02H
		STORE_PAGE_SPLIT	04H
INST_RETIRED	COH	ANY	00H
UOPS_RETITRED	C2H	ANY	00H
		LD_SPLITSMS	01H
BR_INST_RETIRED	C4H	ALL_BRANCHES	00H
		JCC	7EH
		TAKEN_JCC	FEH
		CALL	F9H
		REL_CALL	FDH
		IND_CALL	FBH

Table 18-56. Precise Events Supported by the Goldmont Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Event Name	Event Select	Sub-event	UMask
		NON_RETURN_IND	EBH
		FAR_BRANCH	BFH
		RETURN	F7H
BR_MISP_RETIRED	C5H	ALL_BRANCHES	00H
		JCC	7EH
		TAKEN_JCC	FEH
		IND_CALL	FBH
		NON_RETURN_IND	EBH
		RETURN	F7H
MEM_UOPS_RETIRED	D0H	ALL_LOADS	81H
		ALL_STORES	82H
		ALL	83H
		DLTB_MISS_LOADS	11H
		DLTB_MISS_STORES	12H
		DLTB_MISS	13H
MEM_LOAD_UOPS_RETIRED	D1H	L1_HIT	01H
		L2_HIT	02H
		L1_MISS	08H
		L2_MISS	10H
		HITM	20H
		WCB_HIT	40H
		DRAM_HIT	80H

The PEBS record format supported by processors based on the Intel Goldmont microarchitecture is shown in Table 18-57, and each field in the PEBS record is 64 bits long.

Table 18-57. PEBS Record Format for the Goldmont Microarchitecture

Byte Offset	Field	Byte Offset	Field
00H	R/EFLAGS	68H	R11
08H	R/EIP	70H	R12
10H	R/EAX	78H	R13
18H	R/EBX	80H	R14
20H	R/ECX	88H	R15
28H	R/EDX	90H	Applicable Counters
30H	R/ESI	98H	Data Linear Address
38H	R/EDI	A0H	Reserved
40H	R/EBP	A8H	Reserved
48H	R/ESP	B0H	EventingRIP
50H	R8	B8H	Reserved
58H	R9	C0H	TSC
60H	R10		

On Goldmont microarchitecture, all 64 bits of architectural registers are written into the PEBS record regardless of processor mode.

With PEBS record format encoding 0011b, offset 90H reports the "Applicable Counter" field, which indicates which counters actually requested generating a PEBS record. This allows software to correlate the PEBS record entry properly with the instruction that caused the event even when multiple counters are configured to record PEBS records and multiple bits are set in the field. Additionally, offset C0H captures a snapshot of the TSC that provides a time line annotation for each PEBS record entry.

18.5.3.1.1 PEBS Data Linear Address Profiling

Goldmont supports the Data Linear Address field introduced in Haswell. It does not support the Data Source Encoding or Latency Value fields that are also part of Data Address Profiling; those fields are present in the record but are reserved.

For Goldmont microarchitecture, the Data Linear Address field will record the linear address of memory accesses in the previous instruction (e.g. the one that triggered a precise event that caused the PEBS record to be generated). Goldmont microarchitecture may record a Data Linear Address for the instruction that caused the event even for events not related to memory accesses. This may differ from other microarchitectures.

18.5.3.1.2 Reduced Skid PEBS

For precise events, upon triggering a PEBS assist, there will be a finite delay between the time the counter overflows and when the microcode starts to carry out its data collection obligations. The Reduced Skid mechanism mitigates the "skid" problem by providing an early indication of when the counter is about to overflow, allowing the machine to more precisely trap on the instruction that actually caused the counter overflow thus greatly reducing skid.

This mechanism is a superset of the PDIR mechanism available in the Sandy Bridge microarchitecture. See Section 18.3.4.4.4

In the Goldmont microarchitecture, the mechanism applies to all precise events including, INST_RETIRE, except for UOPS_RETIRE. However, the Reduced Skid mechanism is disabled for any counter when the INV, ANY, E, or CMASK fields are set.

For the Reduced Skid mechanism to operate correctly, the performance monitoring counters should not be reconfigured or modified when they are running with PEBS enabled. The counters need to be disabled (e.g. via IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL MSR) before changes to the configuration (e.g. what event is specified in IA32_PERFEVTSELx or whether PEBS is enabled for that counter via IA32_PEBS_ENABLE) or counter value (MSR write to IA32_PMCx and IA32_A_PMCx).

18.5.3.1.3 Enhancements to IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS.OvfDSBuffer[62]

In addition to IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS.OvfDSBuffer[62] being set when PEBS_Index reaches the PEBS_Interrupt_Threshold, the bit is also set when PEBS_Index is out of bounds. That is, the bit will be set when PEBS_Index < PEBS_Buffer_Base or PEBS_Index > PEBS_Absolute_Maximum. Note that when an out of bound condition is encountered, the overflow bits in IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS will be cleared according to Applicable Counters, however the IA32_PMCx values will not be reloaded with the Reset values stored in the DS_AREA.

18.5.3.2 Offcore Response Event

Event number 0B7H support offcore response monitoring using an associated configuration MSR, MSR_OFFCORE_RSP0 (address 1A6H) in conjunction with umask value 01H or MSR_OFFCORE_RSP1 (address 1A7H) in conjunction with umask value 02H. Table 18-51 lists the event code, mask value and additional off-core configuration MSR that must be programmed to count off-core response events using IA32_PMCx.

The Goldmont microarchitecture provides unique pairs of MSR_OFFCORE_RSPx registers per core.

The layout of MSR_OFFCORE_RSP0 and MSR_OFFCORE_RSP1 are organized as follows:

- Bits 15:0 specifies the request type of a transaction request to the uncore. This is described in Table 18-58.
- Bits 30:16 specifies common supplier information or an L2 Hit, and is described in Table 18-53.

- If L2 misses, then Bits 37:31 can be used to specify snoop response information and is described in Table 18-59.
- For outstanding requests, bit 38 can enable measurement of average latency of specific type of offcore transaction requests using two programmable counter simultaneously; see Section 18.5.2.3 for details.

Table 18-58. MSR_OFFCORE_RSPx Request_Type Field Definition

Bit Name	Offset	Description
DEMAND_DATA_RD	0	(R/W) Counts cacheline read requests due to demand reads (excludes prefetches).
DEMAND_RFO	1	(R/W) Counts cacheline read for ownership (RFO) requests due to demand writes (excludes prefetches).
DEMAND_CODE_RD	2	(R/W) Counts demand instruction cacheline and I-side prefetch requests that miss the instruction cache.
COREWB	3	(R/W) Counts writeback transactions caused by L1 or L2 cache evictions.
PF_L2_DATA_RD	4	(R/W) Counts data cacheline reads generated by hardware L2 cache prefetcher.
PF_L2_RFO	5	(R/W) Counts reads for ownership (RFO) requests generated by L2 prefetcher.
Reserved	6	Reserved.
PARTIAL_READS	7	(R/W) Counts demand data partial reads, including data in uncacheable (UC) or uncacheable (WC) write combining memory types.
PARTIAL_WRITES	8	(R/W) Counts partial writes, including uncacheable (UC), write through (WT) and write protected (WP) memory type writes.
UC_CODE_READS	9	(R/W) Counts code reads in uncacheable (UC) memory region.
BUS_LOCKS	10	(R/W) Counts bus lock and split lock requests.
FULL_STREAMING_STORES	11	(R/W) Counts full cacheline writes due to streaming stores.
SW_PREFETCH	12	(R/W) Counts cacheline requests due to software prefetch instructions.
PF_L1_DATA_RD	13	(R/W) Counts data cacheline reads generated by hardware L1 data cache prefetcher.
PARTIAL_STREAMING_STORES	14	(R/W) Counts partial cacheline writes due to streaming stores.
ANY_REQUEST	15	(R/W) Counts requests to the uncore subsystem.

To properly program this extra register, software must set at least one request type bit (Table 18-52) and a valid response type pattern (either Table 18-53 or Table 18-59). Otherwise, the event count reported will be zero. It is permissible and useful to set multiple request and response type bits in order to obtain various classes of off-core response events. Although MSR_OFFCORE_RSPx allow an agent software to program numerous combinations that meet the above guideline, not all combinations produce meaningful data.

Table 18-59. MSR_OFFCORE_RSPx For L2 Miss and Outstanding Requests

Subtype	Bit Name	Offset	Description
L2_MISS (Snoop Info)	Reserved	32:31	Reserved
	L2_MISS.SNOOP_MISS_0 R_NO_SNOOP_NEEDED	33	(R/W) A true miss to this module, for which a snoop request missed the other module or no snoop was performed/needed.
	L2_MISS.HIT_OTHER_CO RE_NO_FWD	34	(R/W) A snoop hit in the other processor module, but no data forwarding is required.
	Reserved	35	Reserved
	L2_MISS.HITM_OTHER_C ORE	36	(R/W) Counts the number of snoops hit in the other module or other core's L1 where modified copies were found.
	L2_MISS.NON_DRAM	37	(R/W) Target was a non-DRAM system address. This includes MMIO transactions.

Table 18-59. MSR_OFFCORE_RSPx For L2 Miss and Outstanding Requests (Contd.)

Subtype	Bit Name	Offset	Description
Outstanding requests ¹	OUTSTANDING	38	(R/W) Counts weighted cycles of outstanding offcore requests of the request type specified in bits 15:0, from the time the XQ receives the request and any response is received. Bits 37:16 must be set to 0. This bit is only available in MSR_OFFCORE_RESP0.

NOTES:

1. See Section 18.5.2.3, "Average Offcore Request Latency Measurement" for details on how to use this bit to extract average latency.

To specify a complete offcore response filter, software must properly program bits in the request and response type fields. A valid request type must have at least one bit set in the non-reserved bits of 15:0. A valid response type must be a non-zero value of the following expression:

[ANY 'OR' (L2 Hit)] 'XOR' (Snoop Info Bits) 'XOR' (Avg Latency)

18.5.3.3 Average Offcore Request Latency Measurement

In Goldmont microarchitecture, measurement of average latency of offcore transaction requests is the same as described in Section 18.5.2.3.

18.5.4 Performance Monitoring for Goldmont Plus Microarchitecture

Intel Atom processors based on the Goldmont Plus microarchitecture report architectural performance monitoring versionID = 4 and support non-architectural monitoring capabilities described in this section.

Architectural performance monitoring version 4 capabilities are described in Section 18.2.4.

Goldmont Plus performance monitoring capabilities are similar to Goldmont capabilities. The differences are in specific events and in which counters support PEBS. Goldmont Plus introduces the ability for fixed performance monitoring counters to generate PEBS records.

Goldmont Plus will set the AnyThread deprecation CPUID bit (CPUID.0AH:EDX[15]) to indicate that the Any-Thread bits in IA32_PERFEVTSELx and IA32_FIXED_CTR_CTRL have no effect.

The core PMU's capability is similar to that of the Goldmont microarchitecture described in Section 18.6.3, with some differences and enhancements summarized in Table 18-60.

Table 18-60. Core PMU Comparison Between the Goldmont Plus and Goldmont Microarchitectures

Box	Goldmont Plus Microarchitecture	Goldmont Microarchitecture	Comment
# of Fixed counters per core	3	3	Use CPUID to enumerate # of counters. See Section 18.2.1.
# of general-purpose counters per core	4	4	Use CPUID to enumerate # of counters. See Section 18.2.1.
Counter width (R,W)	R:48, W: 32/48	R:48, W: 32/48	No change.
Architectural Performance Monitoring version ID	4	4	No change.
Processor Event Based Sampling (PEBS) Events	All General-Purpose and Fixed counters. Each General-Purpose counter supports all events (precise and non-precise).	General-Purpose Counter 0 only. Supports all events (precise and non-precise). Precise events are listed in Table 18-56.	Goldmont Plus supports PEBS on all counters.
PEBS record format encoding	0011b	0011b	No change.

18.5.4.1 Extended PEBS

The Extended PEBS feature, introduced in Goldmont Plus microarchitecture, supports PEBS (Processor Event Based Sampling) on a fixed-function performance counters as well as all four general purpose counters (PMC0-3). PEBS can be enabled for the four general purpose counters using PEBS_EN_PMCi bits of IA32_PEBS_ENABLE (i = 0, 1, 2, 3). PEBS can be enabled for the 3 fixed function counters using the PEBS_EN_FIXEDi bits of IA32_PEBS_ENABLE (I = 0, 1, 2).

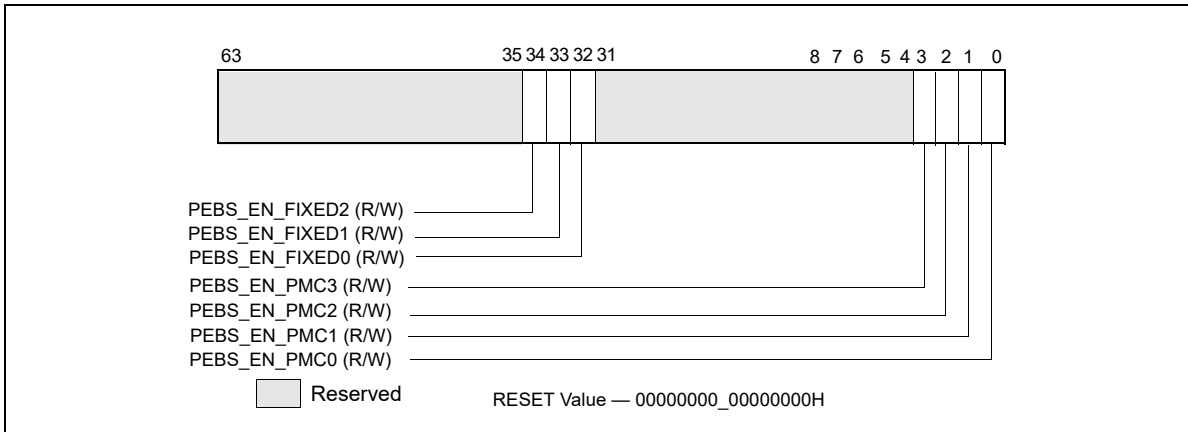


Figure 18-39. Layout of IA32_PEBS_ENABLE MSR

Similar to Goldmont microarchitecture, Goldmont Plus microarchitecture processors can generate PEBS record events on both precise as well as non-precise events.

A PEBS record due to a precise event will be generated after an instruction that causes the event when the counter has already overflowed. A PEBS record due to a non-precise event will occur at the next opportunity after the counter has overflowed, including immediately after an overflow is set by an MSR write.

IA32_FIXED_CTR0 counts instructions retired and is a precise event. IA32_FIXED_CTR1 counts unhalting core cycles and is a non-precise event. IA32_FIXED_CTR2 counts unhalting reference cycles and is a non-precise event.

The Applicable Counter field at offset 90H of the PEBS record indicates which counters caused the PEBS record to be generated. It is in the same format as the enable bits for each counter in IA32_PEBS_ENABLE. As an example, an Applicable Counter field with bits 2 and 32 set would indicate that both general purpose counter 2 and fixed function counter 0 generated the PEBS record.

- To properly use PEBS for the additional counters, software will need to set up the counter reset values in PEBS portion of the DS_BUFFER_MANAGEMENT_AREA data structure that is indicated by the IA32_DS_AREA register. The layout of the DS_BUFFER_MANAGEMENT_AREA for Goldmont Plus is shown in Figure 18-40. When a counter generates a PEBS records, the appropriate counter reset values will be loaded into that counter. In the above example where general purpose counter 2 and fixed function counter 0 generated the PEBS record, general purpose counter 2 would be reloaded with the value contained in PEBS GP Counter 2 Reset (offset 50H) and fixed function counter 0 would be reloaded with the value contained in PEBS Fixed Counter 0 Reset (offset 80H).

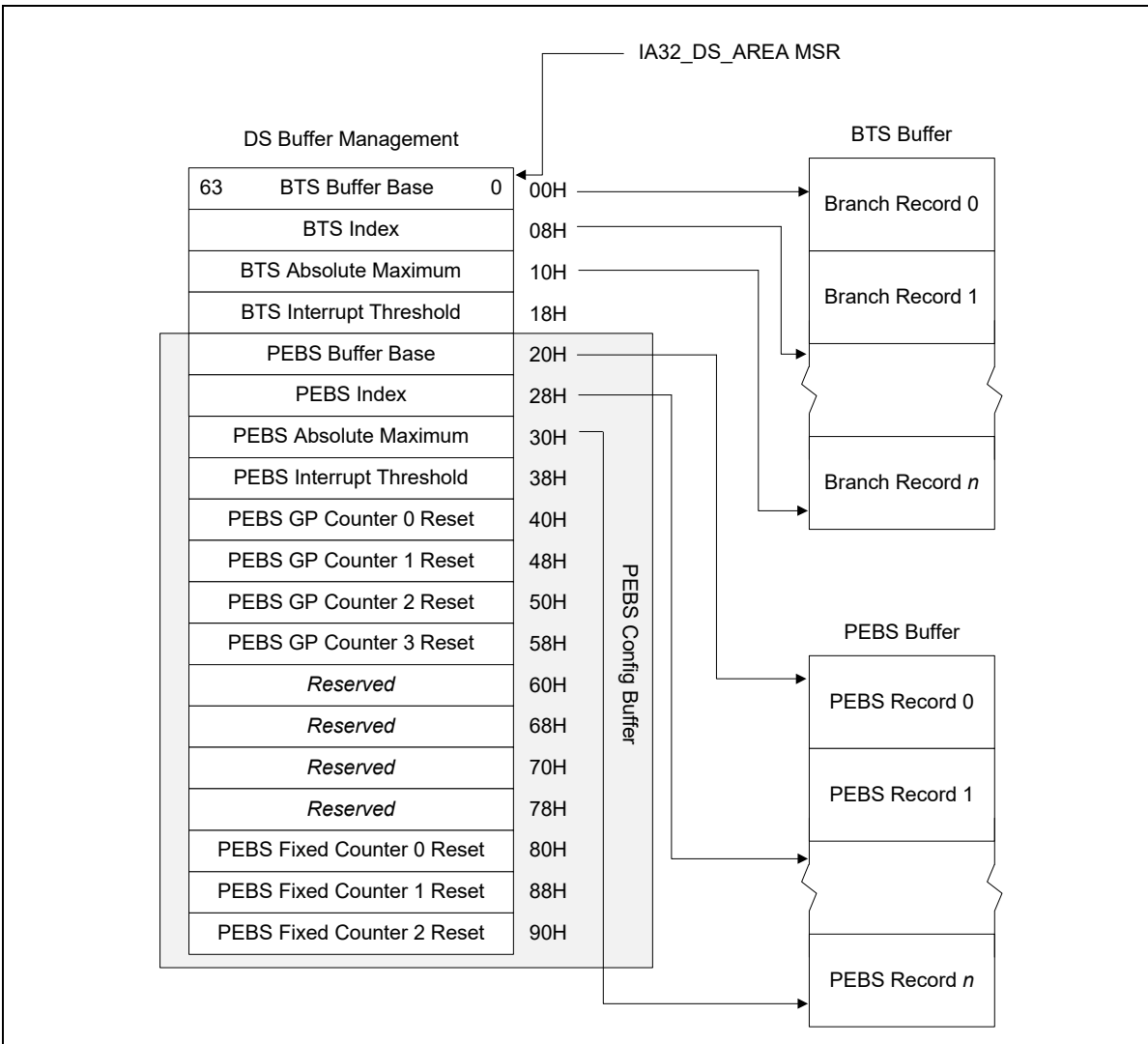


Figure 18-40. PEBS Programming Environment

18.5.4.2 Reduced Skid PEBS

Goldmont Plus microarchitecture processors supports the Reduced Skid PEBS feature described in Section 18.5.3.1.2 on the IA32_PMC0 counter. Although Goldmont Plus adds support for generating PEBS records for precise events on the other general-purpose and fixed-function performance counters, those counters do not support the Reduced Skid PEBS feature.

18.6 PERFORMANCE MONITORING (LEGACY INTEL PROCESSORS)

18.6.1 Performance Monitoring (Intel® Core™ Solo and Intel® Core™ Duo Processors)

In Intel Core Solo and Intel Core Duo processors, non-architectural performance monitoring events are programmed using the same facilities (see Figure 18-1) used for architectural performance events.

Non-architectural performance events use event select values that are model-specific. Event mask (Umask) values are also specific to event logic units. Some microarchitectural conditions detectable by a Umask value may have

specificity related to processor topology (see Section 8.6, “Detecting Hardware Multi-Threading Support and Topology,” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*). As a result, the unit mask field (for example, IA32_PERFEVTSELx[bits 15:8]) may contain sub-fields that specify topology information of processor cores.

The sub-field layout within the Umask field may support two-bit encoding that qualifies the relationship between a microarchitectural condition and the originating core. This data is shown in Table 18-61. The two-bit encoding for core-specificity is only supported for a subset of Umask values (see Chapter 19, “Performance Monitoring Events”) and for Intel Core Duo processors. Such events are referred to as core-specific events.

Table 18-61. Core Specificity Encoding within a Non-Architectural Umask

IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSRs	
Bit 15:14 Encoding	Description
11B	All cores
10B	Reserved
01B	This core
00B	Reserved

Some microarchitectural conditions allow detection specificity only at the boundary of physical processors. Some bus events belong to this category, providing specificity between the originating physical processor (a bus agent) versus other agents on the bus. Sub-field encoding for agent specificity is shown in Table 18-62.

Table 18-62. Agent Specificity Encoding within a Non-Architectural Umask

IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSRs	
Bit 13 Encoding	Description
0	This agent
1	Include all agents

Some microarchitectural conditions are detectable only from the originating core. In such cases, unit mask does not support core-specificity or agent-specificity encodings. These are referred to as core-only conditions.

Some microarchitectural conditions allow detection specificity that includes or excludes the action of hardware prefetches. A two-bit encoding may be supported to qualify hardware prefetch actions. Typically, this applies only to some L2 or bus events. The sub-field encoding for hardware prefetch qualification is shown in Table 18-63.

Table 18-63. HW Prefetch Qualification Encoding within a Non-Architectural Umask

IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSRs	
Bit 13:12 Encoding	Description
11B	All inclusive
10B	Reserved
01B	Hardware prefetch only
00B	Exclude hardware prefetch

Some performance events may (a) support none of the three event-specific qualification encodings (b) may support core-specificity and agent specificity simultaneously (c) or may support core-specificity and hardware prefetch qualification simultaneously. Agent-specificity and hardware prefetch qualification are mutually exclusive.

In addition, some L2 events permit qualifications that distinguish cache coherent states. The sub-field definition for cache coherency state qualification is shown in Table 18-64. If no bits in the MESI qualification sub-field are set for an event that requires setting MESI qualification bits, the event count will not increment.

Table 18-64. MESI Qualification Definitions within a Non-Architectural Umask

IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSRs	
Bit Position 11:8	Description
Bit 11	Counts modified state
Bit 10	Counts exclusive state
Bit 9	Counts shared state
Bit 8	Counts Invalid state

18.6.2 Performance Monitoring (Processors Based on Intel® Core™ Microarchitecture)

In addition to architectural performance monitoring, processors based on the Intel Core microarchitecture support non-architectural performance monitoring events.

Architectural performance events can be collected using general-purpose performance counters. Non-architectural performance events can be collected using general-purpose performance counters (coupled with two IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSRs for detailed event configurations), or fixed-function performance counters (see Section 18.6.2.1). IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSRs are architectural; their layout is shown in Figure 18-1. Starting with Intel Core 2 processor T 7700, fixed-function performance counters and associated counter control and status MSR becomes part of architectural performance monitoring version 2 facilities (see also Section 18.2.2).

Non-architectural performance events in processors based on Intel Core microarchitecture use event select values that are model-specific. Valid event mask (Umask) bits are listed in Chapter 19. The UMASK field may contain sub-fields identical to those listed in Table 18-61, Table 18-62, Table 18-63, and Table 18-64. One or more of these sub-fields may apply to specific events on an event-by-event basis. Details are listed in Table 19-25 in Chapter 19, "Performance Monitoring Events."

In addition, the UMASK field may also contain a sub-field that allows detection specificity related to snoop responses. Bits of the snoop response qualification sub-field are defined in Table 18-65.

Table 18-65. Bus Snoop Qualification Definitions within a Non-Architectural Umask

IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSRs	
Bit Position 11:8	Description
Bit 11	HITM response
Bit 10	Reserved
Bit 9	HIT response
Bit 8	CLEAN response

There are also non-architectural events that support qualification of different types of snoop operation. The corresponding bit field for snoop type qualification are listed in Table 18-66.

Table 18-66. Snoop Type Qualification Definitions within a Non-Architectural Umask

IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSRs	
Bit Position 9:8	Description
Bit 9	CMP2I snoops
Bit 8	CMP2S snoops

No more than one sub-field of MESI, snoop response, and snoop type qualification sub-fields can be supported in a performance event.

NOTE

Software must write known values to the performance counters prior to enabling the counters. The content of general-purpose counters and fixed-function counters are undefined after INIT or RESET.

18.6.2.1 Fixed-function Performance Counters

Processors based on Intel Core microarchitecture provide three fixed-function performance counters. Bits beyond the width of the fixed counter are reserved and must be written as zeros. Model-specific fixed-function performance counters on processors that support Architectural Perfmon version 1 are 40 bits wide.

Each of the fixed-function counter is dedicated to count a pre-defined performance monitoring events. See Table 18-2 for details of the PMC addresses and what these events count.

Programming the fixed-function performance counters does not involve any of the IA32_PERFEVTSELx MSRs, and does not require specifying any event masks. Instead, the MSR MSR_PERF_FIXED_CTRL_CTRL provides multiple sets of 4-bit fields; each 4-bit field controls the operation of a fixed-function performance counter (PMC). See Figures 18-41. Two sub-fields are defined for each control. See Figure 18-41; bit fields are:

- **Enable field (low 2 bits in each 4-bit control)** — When bit 0 is set, performance counting is enabled in the corresponding fixed-function performance counter to increment when the target condition associated with the architecture performance event occurs at ring 0.

When bit 1 is set, performance counting is enabled in the corresponding fixed-function performance counter to increment when the target condition associated with the architecture performance event occurs at ring greater than 0.

Writing 0 to both bits stops the performance counter. Writing 11B causes the counter to increment irrespective of privilege levels.

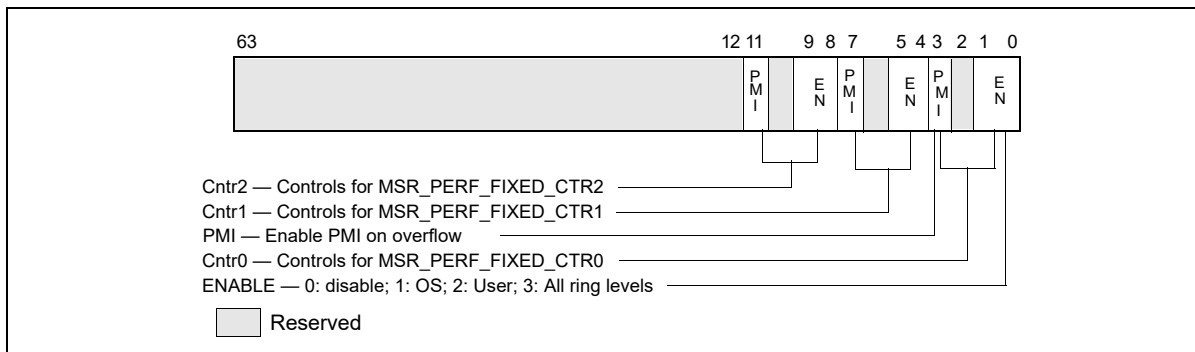


Figure 18-41. Layout of MSR_PERF_FIXED_CTRL_CTRL MSR

- **PMI field (fourth bit in each 4-bit control)** — When set, the logical processor generates an exception through its local APIC on overflow condition of the respective fixed-function counter.

18.6.2.2 Global Counter Control Facilities

Processors based on Intel Core microarchitecture provides simplified performance counter control that simplifies the most frequent operations in programming performance events, i.e. enabling/disabling event counting and checking the status of counter overflows. This is done by the following three MSRs:

- MSR_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL enables/disables event counting for all or any combination of fixed-function PMCs (MSR_PERF_FIXED_CTRLx) or general-purpose PMCs via a single WRMSR.
- MSR_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS allows software to query counter overflow conditions on any combination of fixed-function PMCs (MSR_PERF_FIXED_CTRLx) or general-purpose PMCs via a single RDMSR.
- MSR_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL allows software to clear counter overflow conditions on any combination of fixed-function PMCs (MSR_PERF_FIXED_CTRLx) or general-purpose PMCs via a single WRMSR.

MSR_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL MSR provides single-bit controls to enable counting in each performance counter (see Figure 18-42). Each enable bit in MSR_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL is AND'ed with the enable bits for all privilege levels in the respective IA32_PERFEVTSELx or MSR_PERF_FIXED_CTR_CTRL MSRs to start/stop the counting of respective counters. Counting is enabled if the AND'ed results is true; counting is disabled when the result is false.

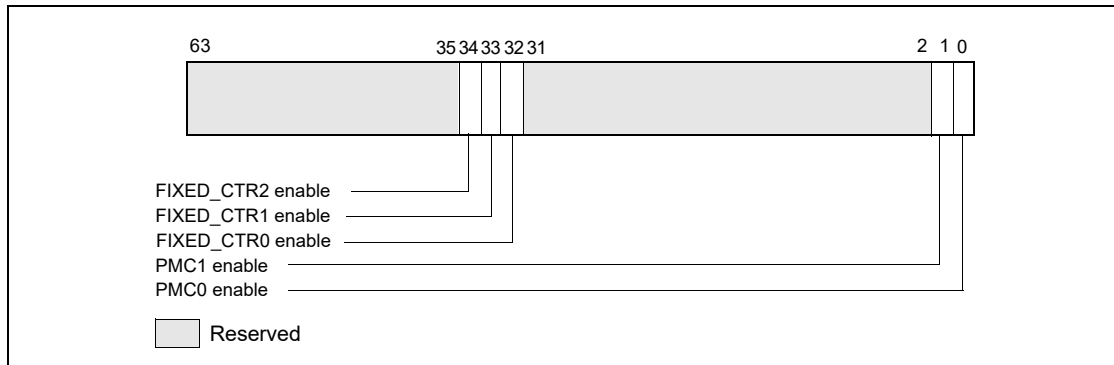


Figure 18-42. Layout of MSR_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL MSR

MSR_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS MSR provides single-bit status used by software to query the overflow condition of each performance counter. MSR_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS[bit 62] indicates overflow conditions of the DS area data buffer. MSR_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS[bit 63] provides a CondChgd bit to indicate changes to the state of performance monitoring hardware (see Figure 18-43). A value of 1 in bits 34:32, 1, 0 indicates an overflow condition has occurred in the associated counter.

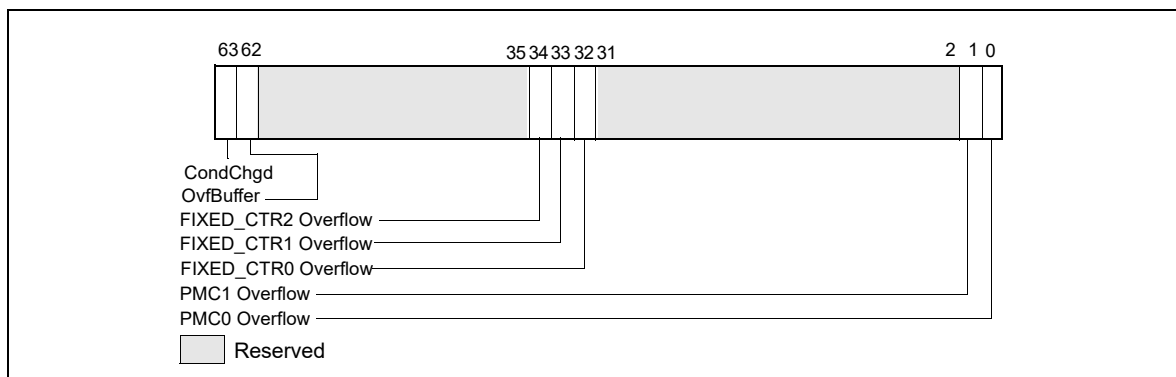


Figure 18-43. Layout of MSR_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS MSR

When a performance counter is configured for PEBS, an overflow condition in the counter will arm PEBS. On the subsequent event following overflow, the processor will generate a PEBS event. On a PEBS event, the processor will perform bounds checks based on the parameters defined in the DS Save Area (see Section 17.4.9). Upon successful bounds checks, the processor will store the data record in the defined buffer area, clear the counter overflow status, and reload the counter. If the bounds checks fail, the PEBS will be skipped entirely. In the event that the PEBS buffer fills up, the processor will set the OvfBuffer bit in MSR_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS.

MSR_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTL MSR allows software to clear overflow the indicators for general-purpose or fixed-function counters via a single WRMSR (see Figure 18-44). Clear overflow indications when:

- Setting up new values in the event select and/or UMASK field for counting or interrupt-based event sampling.
- Reloading counter values to continue collecting next sample.
- Disabling event counting or interrupt-based event sampling.

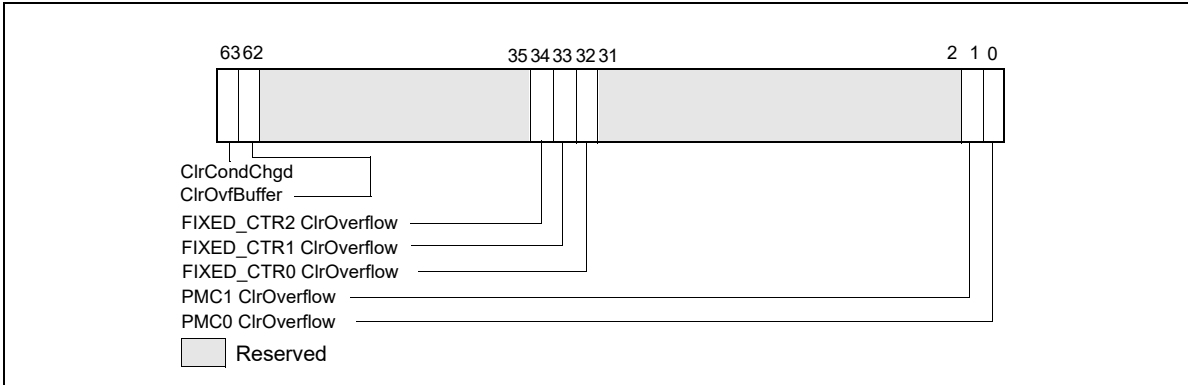


Figure 18-44. Layout of MSR_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL MSR

18.6.2.3 At-Retirement Events

Many non-architectural performance events are impacted by the speculative nature of out-of-order execution. A subset of non-architectural performance events on processors based on Intel Core microarchitecture are enhanced with a tagging mechanism (similar to that found in Intel NetBurst[®] microarchitecture) that exclude contributions that arise from speculative execution. The at-retirement events available in processors based on Intel Core microarchitecture does not require special MSR programming control (see Section 18.6.3.6, “At-Retirement Counting”), but is limited to IA32_PMC0. See Table 18-67 for a list of events available to processors based on Intel Core microarchitecture.

Table 18-67. At-Retirement Performance Events for Intel Core Microarchitecture

Event Name	UMask	Event Select
ITLB_MISS_RETIRED	00H	C9H
MEM_LOAD_RETIRED.L1D_MISS	01H	CBH
MEM_LOAD_RETIRED.L1D_LINE_MISS	02H	CBH
MEM_LOAD_RETIRED.L2_MISS	04H	CBH
MEM_LOAD_RETIRED.L2_LINE_MISS	08H	CBH
MEM_LOAD_RETIRED.DTLB_MISS	10H	CBH

18.6.2.4 Processor Event Based Sampling (PEBS)

Processors based on Intel Core microarchitecture also support processor event based sampling (PEBS). This feature was introduced by processors based on Intel NetBurst microarchitecture.

PEBS uses a debug store mechanism and a performance monitoring interrupt to store a set of architectural state information for the processor. The information provides architectural state of the instruction executed after the instruction that caused the event (See Section 18.6.2.4.2 and Section 17.4.9).

In cases where the same instruction causes BTS and PEBS to be activated, PEBS is processed before BTS are processed. The PMI request is held until the processor completes processing of PEBS and BTS.

For processors based on Intel Core microarchitecture, precise events that can be used with PEBS are listed in Table 18-68. The procedure for detecting availability of PEBS is the same as described in Section 18.6.3.8.1.

Table 18-68. PEBS Performance Events for Intel Core Microarchitecture

Event Name	UMask	Event Select
INSTR_RETIRED.ANY_P	00H	C0H
X87_OPS_RETIRED.ANY	FEH	C1H
BR_INST_RETIRED.MISPRED	00H	C5H

Table 18-68. PEBS Performance Events for Intel Core Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Event Name	UMask	Event Select
SIMD_INST_RETIRED.ANY	1FH	C7H
MEM_LOAD_RETIRED.L1D_MISS	01H	CBH
MEM_LOAD_RETIRED.L1D_LINE_MISS	02H	CBH
MEM_LOAD_RETIRED.L2_MISS	04H	CBH
MEM_LOAD_RETIRED.L2_LINE_MISS	08H	CBH
MEM_LOAD_RETIRED.DTLB_MISS	10H	CBH

18.6.2.4.1 Setting up the PEBS Buffer

For processors based on Intel Core microarchitecture, PEBS is available using IA32_PMC0 only. Use the following procedure to set up the processor and IA32_PMC0 counter for PEBS:

1. Set up the precise event buffering facilities. Place values in the precise event buffer base, precise event index, precise event absolute maximum, precise event interrupt threshold, and precise event counter reset fields of the DS buffer management area. In processors based on Intel Core microarchitecture, PEBS records consist of 64-bit address entries. See Figure 17-8 to set up the precise event records buffer in memory.
2. Enable PEBS. Set the Enable PEBS on PMC0 flag (bit 0) in IA32_PEBS_ENABLE MSR.
3. Set up the IA32_PMC0 performance counter and IA32_PERFEVTSEL0 for an event listed in Table 18-68.

18.6.2.4.2 PEBS Record Format

The PEBS record format may be extended across different processor implementations. The IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES MSR defines a mechanism for software to handle the evolution of PEBS record format in processors that support architectural performance monitoring with version id equals 2 or higher. The bit fields of IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES are defined in Table 2-2 of Chapter 2, "Model-Specific Registers (MSRs)" in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 4*. The relevant bit fields that governs PEBS are:

- **PEBSTrap [bit 6]:** When set, PEBS recording is trap-like. After the PEBS-enabled counter has overflowed, PEBS record is recorded for the next PEBS-able event at the completion of the sampled instruction causing the PEBS event. When clear, PEBS recording is fault-like. The PEBS record is recorded before the sampled instruction causing the PEBS event.
- **PEBSSaveArchRegs [bit 7]:** When set, PEBS will save architectural register and state information according to the encoded value of the PEBSRecordFormat field. When clear, only the return instruction pointer and flags are recorded. On processors based on Intel Core microarchitecture, this bit is always 1.
- **PEBSRecordFormat [bits 11:8]:** Valid encodings are:
 - 0000B: Only general-purpose registers, instruction pointer and RFLAGS registers are saved in each PEBS record (seeSection 18.6.3.8).
 - 0001B: PEBS record includes additional information of IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS and load latency data. (seeSection 18.3.1.1.1).
 - 0010B: PEBS record includes additional information of IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS, load latency data, and TSX tuning information. (seeSection 18.3.6.2).
 - 0011B: PEBS record includes additional information of load latency data, TSX tuning information, TSC data, and the applicable counter field replaces IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS at offset 90H. (see Section 18.3.8.1.1).

18.6.2.4.3 Writing a PEBS Interrupt Service Routine

The PEBS facilities share the same interrupt vector and interrupt service routine (called the DS ISR) with the Interrupt-based event sampling and BTS facilities. To handle PEBS interrupts, PEBS handler code must be included in the DS ISR. See Section 17.4.9.1, "64 Bit Format of the DS Save Area," for guidelines when writing the DS ISR.

The service routine can query MSR_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS to determine which counter(s) caused of overflow condition. The service routine should clear overflow indicator by writing to MSR_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTL.

A comparison of the sequence of requirements to program PEBS for processors based on Intel Core and Intel NetBurst microarchitectures is listed in Table 18-69.

Table 18-69. Requirements to Program PEBS

	For Processors based on Intel Core microarchitecture	For Processors based on Intel NetBurst microarchitecture
Verify PEBS support of processor/OS.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> IA32_MISC_ENABLE.EMON_AVAILABE (bit 7) is set. IA32_MISC_ENABLE.PEBS_UNAVAILABE (bit 12) is clear. 	
Ensure counters are in disabled.	On initial set up or changing event configurations, write MSR_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL MSR (38FH) with 0. On subsequent entries: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clear all counters if “Counter Freeze on PMI” is not enabled. If IA32_DebugCTL.Freeze is enabled, counters are automatically disabled. Counters MUST be stopped before writing. ¹	Optional
Disable PEBS.	Clear ENABLE PMCO bit in IA32_PEBS_ENABLE MSR (3F1H).	Optional
Check overflow conditions.	Check MSR_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS MSR (38EH) handle any overflow conditions.	Check OVF flag of each CCCR for overflow condition
Clear overflow status.	Clear MSR_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS MSR (38EH) using IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL MSR (390H).	Clear OVF flag of each CCCR.
Write “sample-after” values.	Configure the counter(s) with the sample after value.	
Configure specific counter configuration MSR.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set local enable bit 22 - 1. Do NOT set local counter PMI/INT bit, bit 20 - 0. Event programmed must be PEBS capable. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set appropriate OVF_PMI bits - 1. Only CCCR for MSR_IQ_COUNTER4 support PEBS.
Allocate buffer for PEBS states.	Allocate a buffer in memory for the precise information.	
Program the IA32_DS_AREA MSR.	Program the IA32_DS_AREA MSR.	
Configure the PEBS buffer management records.	Configure the PEBS buffer management records in the DS buffer management area.	
Configure/Enable PEBS.	Set Enable PMCO bit in IA32_PEBS_ENABLE MSR (3F1H).	Configure MSR_PEBS_ENABLE, MSR_PEBS_MATRIX_VERT and MSR_PEBS_MATRIX_HORZ as needed.
Enable counters.	Set Enable bits in MSR_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL MSR (38FH).	Set each CCCR enable bit 12 - 1.

NOTES:

1. Counters read while enabled are not guaranteed to be precise with event counts that occur in timing proximity to the RDMSR.

18.6.2.4.4 Re-configuring PEBS Facilities

When software needs to reconfigure PEBS facilities, it should allow a quiescent period between stopping the prior event counting and setting up a new PEBS event. The quiescent period is to allow any latent residual PEBS records to complete its capture at their previously specified buffer address (provided by IA32_DS_AREA).

18.6.3 Performance Monitoring (Processors Based on Intel NetBurst® Microarchitecture)

The performance monitoring mechanism provided in processors based on Intel NetBurst microarchitecture is different from that provided in the P6 family and Pentium processors. While the general concept of selecting,

filtering, counting, and reading performance events through the WRMSR, RDMSR, and RDPMS instructions is unchanged, the setup mechanism and MSR layouts are incompatible with the P6 family and Pentium processor mechanisms. Also, the RDPMS instruction has been extended to support faster reading of counters and to read all performance counters available in processors based on Intel NetBurst microarchitecture.

The event monitoring mechanism consists of the following facilities:

- The IA32_MISC_ENABLE MSR, which indicates the availability in an Intel 64 or IA-32 processor of the performance monitoring and processor event-based sampling (PEBS) facilities.
- Event selection control (ESCR) MSRs for selecting events to be monitored with specific performance counters. The number available differs by family and model (43 to 45).
- 18 performance counter MSRs for counting events.
- 18 counter configuration control (CCCR) MSRs, with one CCCR associated with each performance counter. CCCRs sets up an associated performance counter for a specific method of counting.
- A debug store (DS) save area in memory for storing PEBS records.
- The IA32_DS_AREA MSR, which establishes the location of the DS save area.
- The debug store (DS) feature flag (bit 21) returned by the CPUID instruction, which indicates the availability of the DS mechanism.
- The MSR_PEBS_ENABLE MSR, which enables the PEBS facilities and replay tagging used in at-retirement event counting.
- A set of predefined events and event metrics that simplify the setting up of the performance counters to count specific events.

Table 18-70 lists the performance counters and their associated CCCRs, along with the ESCRs that select events to be counted for each performance counter. Predefined event metrics and events are listed in Chapter 19, "Performance Monitoring Events."

Table 18-70. Performance Counter MSRs and Associated CCCR and ESCR MSRs (Processors Based on Intel NetBurst Microarchitecture)

Counter			CCCR		ESCR		
Name	No.	Addr	Name	Addr	Name	No.	Addr
MSR_BPU_COUNTER0	0	300H	MSR_BPU_CCCRO	360H	MSR_BSU_ESCRO	7	3A0H
					MSR_FSB_ESCRO	6	3A2H
					MSR_MOB_ESCRO	2	3AAH
					MSR_PMH_ESCRO	4	3ACH
					MSR_BPU_ESCRO	0	3B2H
					MSR_IS_ESCRO	1	3B4H
					MSR_ITLB_ESCRO	3	3B6H
					MSR_IX_ESCRO	5	3C8H
MSR_BPU_COUNTER1	1	301H	MSR_BPU_CCCR1	361H	MSR_BSU_ESCRO	7	3A0H
					MSR_FSB_ESCRO	6	3A2H
					MSR_MOB_ESCRO	2	3AAH
					MSR_PMH_ESCRO	4	3ACH
					MSR_BPU_ESCRO	0	3B2H
					MSR_IS_ESCRO	1	3B4H
					MSR_ITLB_ESCRO	3	3B6H
					MSR_IX_ESCRO	5	3C8H
MSR_BPU_COUNTER2	2	302H	MSR_BPU_CCCR2	362H	MSR_BSU_ESCR1	7	3A1H
					MSR_FSB_ESCR1	6	3A3H
					MSR_MOB_ESCR1	2	3ABH
					MSR_PMH_ESCR1	4	3ADH
					MSR_BPU_ESCR1	0	3B3H
					MSR_IS_ESCR1	1	3B5H
					MSR_ITLB_ESCR1	3	3B7H
					MSR_IX_ESCR1	5	3C9H

Table 18-70. Performance Counter MSRs and Associated CCCR and ESCR MSRs (Processors Based on Intel NetBurst Microarchitecture) (Contd.)

Counter			CCCR		ESCR		
Name	No.	Addr	Name	Addr	Name	No.	Addr
MSR_BPU_COUNTER3	3	303H	MSR_BPU_CCCR3	363H	MSR_BSU_ESCR1 MSR_FSB_ESCR1 MSR_MOB_ESCR1 MSR_PMH_ESCR1 MSR_BPU_ESCR1 MSR_IS_ESCR1 MSR_ITLB_ESCR1 MSR_IX_ESCR1	7 6 2 4 0 1 3 5	3A1H 3A3H 3ABH 3ADH 3B3H 3B5H 3B7H 3C9H
MSR_MS_COUNTER0	4	304H	MSR_MS_CCCR0	364H	MSR_MS_ESCR0 MSR_TBPU_ESCR0 MSR_TC_ESCR0	0 2 1	3C0H 3C2H 3C4H
MSR_MS_COUNTER1	5	305H	MSR_MS_CCCR1	365H	MSR_MS_ESCR0 MSR_TBPU_ESCR0 MSR_TC_ESCR0	0 2 1	3C0H 3C2H 3C4H
MSR_MS_COUNTER2	6	306H	MSR_MS_CCCR2	366H	MSR_MS_ESCR1 MSR_TBPU_ESCR1 MSR_TC_ESCR1	0 2 1	3C1H 3C3H 3C5H
MSR_MS_COUNTER3	7	307H	MSR_MS_CCCR3	367H	MSR_MS_ESCR1 MSR_TBPU_ESCR1 MSR_TC_ESCR1	0 2 1	3C1H 3C3H 3C5H
MSR_FLAME_COUNTER0	8	308H	MSR_FLAME_CCCR0	368H	MSR_FIRM_ESCR0 MSR_FLAME_ESCR0 MSR_DAC_ESCR0 MSR_SAA_T_ESCR0 MSR_U2L_ESCR0	1 0 5 2 3	3A4H 3A6H 3A8H 3AEH 3B0H
MSR_FLAME_COUNTER1	9	309H	MSR_FLAME_CCCR1	369H	MSR_FIRM_ESCR0 MSR_FLAME_ESCR0 MSR_DAC_ESCR0 MSR_SAA_T_ESCR0 MSR_U2L_ESCR0	1 0 5 2 3	3A4H 3A6H 3A8H 3AEH 3B0H
MSR_FLAME_COUNTER2	10	30AH	MSR_FLAME_CCCR2	36AH	MSR_FIRM_ESCR1 MSR_FLAME_ESCR1 MSR_DAC_ESCR1 MSR_SAA_T_ESCR1 MSR_U2L_ESCR1	1 0 5 2 3	3A5H 3A7H 3A9H 3AFH 3B1H
MSR_FLAME_COUNTER3	11	30BH	MSR_FLAME_CCCR3	36BH	MSR_FIRM_ESCR1 MSR_FLAME_ESCR1 MSR_DAC_ESCR1 MSR_SAA_T_ESCR1 MSR_U2L_ESCR1	1 0 5 2 3	3A5H 3A7H 3A9H 3AFH 3B1H
MSR_IQ_COUNTER0	12	30CH	MSR_IQ_CCCR0	36CH	MSR_CRU_ESCR0 MSR_CRU_ESCR2 MSR_CRU_ESCR4 MSR_IQ_ESCR0 ¹ MSR_RAT_ESCR0 MSR_SSU_ESCR0 MSR_ALF_ESCR0	4 5 6 0 2 3 1	3B8H 3CCH 3E0H 3BAH 3BCH 3BEH 3CAH
MSR_IQ_COUNTER1	13	30DH	MSR_IQ_CCCR1	36DH	MSR_CRU_ESCR0 MSR_CRU_ESCR2 MSR_CRU_ESCR4 MSR_IQ_ESCR0 ¹ MSR_RAT_ESCR0 MSR_SSU_ESCR0 MSR_ALF_ESCR0	4 5 6 0 2 3 1	3B8H 3CCH 3E0H 3BAH 3BCH 3BEH 3CAH

Table 18-70. Performance Counter MSRs and Associated CCCR and ESCR MSRs (Processors Based on Intel NetBurst Microarchitecture) (Contd.)

Counter			CCCR		ESCR		
Name	No.	Addr	Name	Addr	Name	No.	Addr
MSR_IQ_COUNTER2	14	30EH	MSR_IQ_CCCR2	36EH	MSR_CRU_ESCR1	4	3B9H
					MSR_CRU_ESCR3	5	3CDH
					MSR_CRU_ESCR5	6	3E1H
					MSR_IQ_ESCR1 ¹	0	3BBH
					MSR_RAT_ESCR1	2	3BDH
					MSR_ALF_ESCR1	1	3CBH
MSR_IQ_COUNTER3	15	30FH	MSR_IQ_CCCR3	36FH	MSR_CRU_ESCR1	4	3B9H
					MSR_CRU_ESCR3	5	3CDH
					MSR_CRU_ESCR5	6	3E1H
					MSR_IQ_ESCR1 ¹	0	3BBH
					MSR_RAT_ESCR1	2	3BDH
					MSR_ALF_ESCR1	1	3CBH
MSR_IQ_COUNTER4	16	310H	MSR_IQ_CCCR4	370H	MSR_CRU_ESCR0	4	3B8H
					MSR_CRU_ESCR2	5	3CCH
					MSR_CRU_ESCR4	6	3E0H
					MSR_IQ_ESCR0 ¹	0	3BAH
					MSR_RAT_ESCR0	2	3BCH
					MSR_SSU_ESCR0	3	3BEH
					MSR_ALF_ESCR0	1	3CAH
MSR_IQ_COUNTER5	17	311H	MSR_IQ_CCCR5	371H	MSR_CRU_ESCR1	4	3B9H
					MSR_CRU_ESCR3	5	3CDH
					MSR_CRU_ESCR5	6	3E1H
					MSR_IQ_ESCR1 ¹	0	3BBH
					MSR_RAT_ESCR1	2	3BDH
					MSR_ALF_ESCR1	1	3CBH

NOTES:

1. MSR_IQ_ESCR0 and MSR_IQ_ESCR1 are available only on early processor builds (family 0FH, models 01H-02H). These MSRs are not available on later versions.

The types of events that can be counted with these performance monitoring facilities are divided into two classes: non-retirement events and at-retirement events.

- Non-retirement events (see Table 19-31) are events that occur any time during instruction execution (such as bus transactions or cache transactions).
- At-retirement events (see Table 19-32) are events that are counted at the retirement stage of instruction execution, which allows finer granularity in counting events and capturing machine state.

The at-retirement counting mechanism includes facilities for tagging μ ops that have encountered a particular performance event during instruction execution. Tagging allows events to be sorted between those that occurred on an execution path that resulted in architectural state being committed at retirement as well as events that occurred on an execution path where the results were eventually cancelled and never committed to architectural state (such as, the execution of a mispredicted branch).

The Pentium 4 and Intel Xeon processor performance monitoring facilities support the three usage models described below. The first two models can be used to count both non-retirement and at-retirement events; the third model is used to count a subset of at-retirement events:

- **Event counting** — A performance counter is configured to count one or more types of events. While the counter is counting, software reads the counter at selected intervals to determine the number of events that have been counted between the intervals.
- **Interrupt-based event sampling** — A performance counter is configured to count one or more types of events and to generate an interrupt when it overflows. To trigger an overflow, the counter is preset to a modulus value that will cause the counter to overflow after a specific number of events have been counted. When the counter overflows, the processor generates a performance monitoring interrupt (PMI). The interrupt service routine for the PMI then records the return instruction pointer (RIP), resets the modulus, and restarts

the counter. Code performance can be analyzed by examining the distribution of RIPs with a tool like the VTune™ Performance Analyzer.

- **Processor event-based sampling (PEBS)** — In PEBS, the processor writes a record of the architectural state of the processor to a memory buffer after the counter overflows. The records of architectural state provide additional information for use in performance tuning. Processor-based event sampling can be used to count only a subset of at-retirement events. PEBS captures more precise processor state information compared to interrupt based event sampling, because the latter need to use the interrupt service routine to re-construct the architectural states of processor.

The following sections describe the MSRs and data structures used for performance monitoring in the Pentium 4 and Intel Xeon processors.

18.6.3.1 ESCR MSRs

The 45 ESCR MSRs (see Table 18-70) allow software to select specific events to be countered. Each ESCR is usually associated with a pair of performance counters (see Table 18-70) and each performance counter has several ESCRs associated with it (allowing the events counted to be selected from a variety of events).

Figure 18-45 shows the layout of an ESCR MSR. The functions of the flags and fields are:

- **USR flag, bit 2** — When set, events are counted when the processor is operating at a current privilege level (CPL) of 1, 2, or 3. These privilege levels are generally used by application code and unprotected operating system code.
- **OS flag, bit 3** — When set, events are counted when the processor is operating at CPL of 0. This privilege level is generally reserved for protected operating system code. (When both the OS and USR flags are set, events are counted at all privilege levels.)

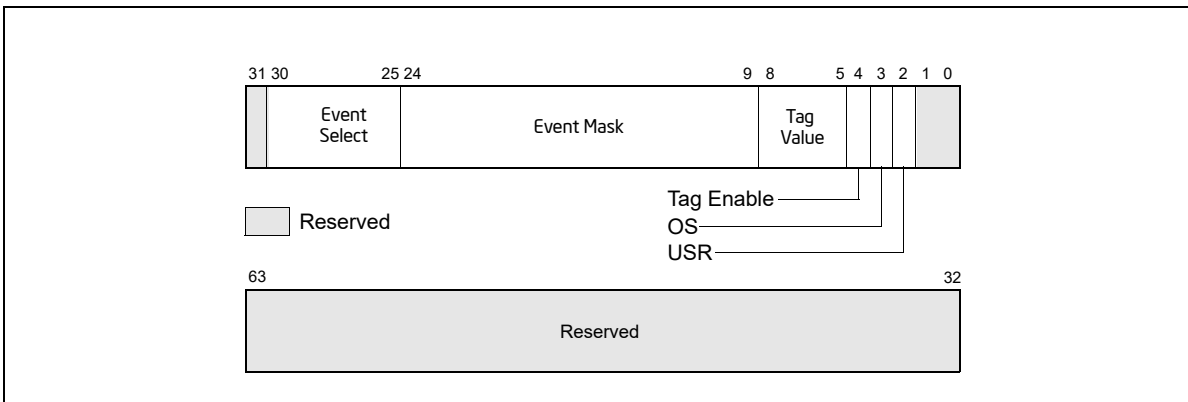


Figure 18-45. Event Selection Control Register (ESCR) for Pentium 4 and Intel Xeon Processors without Intel HT Technology Support

- **Tag enable, bit 4** — When set, enables tagging of μ ops to assist in at-retirement event counting; when clear, disables tagging. See Section 18.6.3.6, "At-Retirement Counting."
- **Tag value field, bits 5 through 8** — Selects a tag value to associate with a μ op to assist in at-retirement event counting.
- **Event mask field, bits 9 through 24** — Selects events to be counted from the event class selected with the event select field.
- **Event select field, bits 25 through 30** — Selects a class of events to be counted. The events within this class that are counted are selected with the event mask field.

When setting up an ESCR, the event select field is used to select a specific class of events to count, such as retired branches. The event mask field is then used to select one or more of the specific events within the class to be counted. For example, when counting retired branches, four different events can be counted: branch not taken predicted, branch not taken mispredicted, branch taken predicted, and branch taken mispredicted. The OS and

USR flags allow counts to be enabled for events that occur when operating system code and/or application code are being executed. If neither the OS nor USR flag is set, no events will be counted.

The ESCRs are initialized to all 0s on reset. The flags and fields of an ESCR are configured by writing to the ESCR using the WRMSR instruction. Table 18-70 gives the addresses of the ESCR MSRs.

Writing to an ESCR MSR does not enable counting with its associated performance counter; it only selects the event or events to be counted. The CCCR for the selected performance counter must also be configured. Configuration of the CCCR includes selecting the ESCR and enabling the counter.

18.6.3.2 Performance Counters

The performance counters in conjunction with the counter configuration control registers (CCCRs) are used for filtering and counting the events selected by the ESCRs. Processors based on Intel NetBurst microarchitecture provide 18 performance counters organized into 9 pairs. A pair of performance counters is associated with a particular subset of events and ESCR's (see Table 18-70). The counter pairs are partitioned into four groups:

- The BPU group, includes two performance counter pairs:
 - MSR_BPU_COUNTER0 and MSR_BPU_COUNTER1.
 - MSR_BPU_COUNTER2 and MSR_BPU_COUNTER3.
- The MS group, includes two performance counter pairs:
 - MSR_MS_COUNTER0 and MSR_MS_COUNTER1.
 - MSR_MS_COUNTER2 and MSR_MS_COUNTER3.
- The FLAME group, includes two performance counter pairs:
 - MSR_FLAME_COUNTER0 and MSR_FLAME_COUNTER1.
 - MSR_FLAME_COUNTER2 and MSR_FLAME_COUNTER3.
- The IQ group, includes three performance counter pairs:
 - MSR_IQ_COUNTER0 and MSR_IQ_COUNTER1.
 - MSR_IQ_COUNTER2 and MSR_IQ_COUNTER3.
 - MSR_IQ_COUNTER4 and MSR_IQ_COUNTER5.

The MSR_IQ_COUNTER4 counter in the IQ group provides support for the PEBS.

Alternate counters in each group can be cascaded: the first counter in one pair can start the first counter in the second pair and vice versa. A similar cascading is possible for the second counters in each pair. For example, within the BPU group of counters, MSR_BPU_COUNTER0 can start MSR_BPU_COUNTER2 and vice versa, and MSR_BPU_COUNTER1 can start MSR_BPU_COUNTER3 and vice versa (see Section 18.6.3.5.6, "Cascading Counters"). The cascade flag in the CCCR register for the performance counter enables the cascading of counters.

Each performance counter is 40-bits wide (see Figure 18-46). The RDPMC instruction is intended to allow reading of either the full counter-width (40-bits) or, if ECX[31] is set to 1, the low 32-bits of the counter. Reading the low 32-bits is faster than reading the full counter width and is appropriate in situations where the count is small enough to be contained in 32 bits. In such cases, counter bits 31:0 are written to EAX, while 0 is written to EDX.

The RDPMC instruction can be used by programs or procedures running at any privilege level and in virtual-8086 mode to read these counters. The PCE flag in control register CR4 (bit 8) allows the use of this instruction to be restricted to only programs and procedures running at privilege level 0.

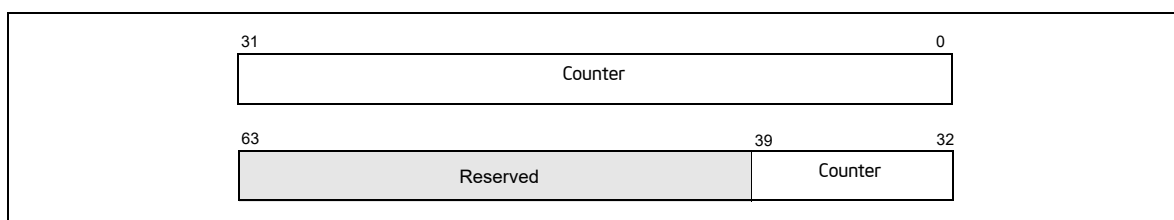


Figure 18-46. Performance Counter (Pentium 4 and Intel Xeon Processors)

The RDPMC instruction is not serializing or ordered with other instructions. Thus, it does not necessarily wait until all previous instructions have been executed before reading the counter. Similarly, subsequent instructions may begin execution before the RDPMC instruction operation is performed.

Only the operating system, executing at privilege level 0, can directly manipulate the performance counters, using the RDMSR and WRMSR instructions. A secure operating system would clear the PCE flag during system initialization to disable direct user access to the performance-monitoring counters, but provide a user-accessible programming interface that emulates the RDPMC instruction.

Some uses of the performance counters require the counters to be preset before counting begins (that is, before the counter is enabled). This can be accomplished by writing to the counter using the WRMSR instruction. To set a counter to a specified number of counts before overflow, enter a 2s complement negative integer in the counter. The counter will then count from the preset value up to -1 and overflow. Writing to a performance counter in a Pentium 4 or Intel Xeon processor with the WRMSR instruction causes all 40 bits of the counter to be written.

18.6.3.3 CCCR MSRs

Each of the 18 performance counters has one CCCR MSR associated with it (see Table 18-70). The CCCR control the filtering and counting of events as well as interrupt generation. Figure 18-47 shows the layout of an CCCR MSR. The functions of the flags and fields are as follows:

- **Enable flag, bit 12** — When set, enables counting; when clear, the counter is disabled. This flag is cleared on reset.
- **ESCR select field, bits 13 through 15** — Identifies the ESCR to be used to select events to be counted with the counter associated with the CCCR.
- **Compare flag, bit 18** — When set, enables filtering of the event count; when clear, disables filtering. The filtering method is selected with the threshold, complement, and edge flags.
- **Complement flag, bit 19** — Selects how the incoming event count is compared with the threshold value. When set, event counts that are less than or equal to the threshold value result in a single count being delivered to the performance counter; when clear, counts greater than the threshold value result in a count being delivered to the performance counter (see Section 18.6.3.5.2, “Filtering Events”). The complement flag is not active unless the compare flag is set.
- **Threshold field, bits 20 through 23** — Selects the threshold value to be used for comparisons. The processor examines this field only when the compare flag is set, and uses the complement flag setting to determine the type of threshold comparison to be made. The useful range of values that can be entered in this field depend on the type of event being counted (see Section 18.6.3.5.2, “Filtering Events”).
- **Edge flag, bit 24** — When set, enables rising edge (false-to-true) edge detection of the threshold comparison output for filtering event counts; when clear, rising edge detection is disabled. This flag is active only when the compare flag is set.

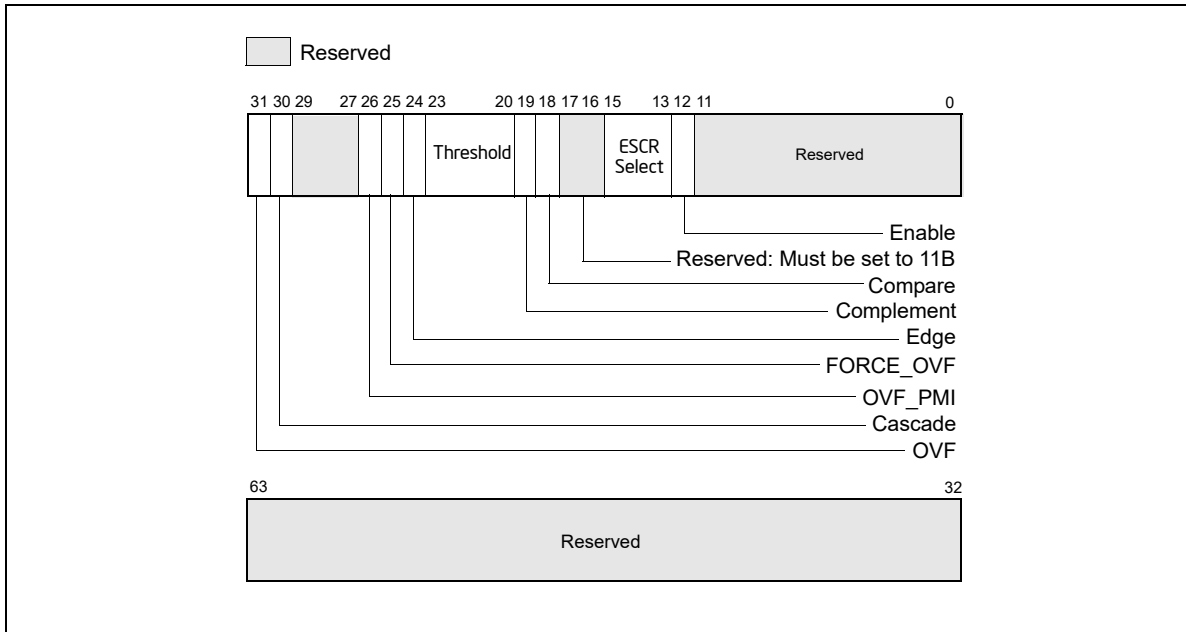


Figure 18-47. Counter Configuration Control Register (CCCR)

- **FORCE_OVF flag, bit 25** — When set, forces a counter overflow on every counter increment; when clear, overflow only occurs when the counter actually overflows.
- **OVF_PMI flag, bit 26** — When set, causes a performance monitor interrupt (PMI) to be generated when the counter overflow occurs; when clear, disables PMI generation. Note that the PMI is generated on the next event count after the counter has overflowed.
- **Cascade flag, bit 30** — When set, enables counting on one counter of a counter pair when its alternate counter in the other the counter pair in the same counter group overflows (see Section 18.6.3.2, “Performance Counters,” for further details); when clear, disables cascading of counters.
- **OVF flag, bit 31** — Indicates that the counter has overflowed when set. This flag is a sticky flag that must be explicitly cleared by software.

The CCCRs are initialized to all 0s on reset.

The events that an enabled performance counter actually counts are selected and filtered by the following flags and fields in the ESCR and CCCR registers and in the qualification order given:

1. The event select and event mask fields in the ESCR select a class of events to be counted and one or more event types within the class, respectively.
2. The OS and USR flags in the ESCR selected the privilege levels at which events will be counted.
3. The ESCR select field of the CCCR selects the ESCR. Since each counter has several ESCRs associated with it, one ESCR must be chosen to select the classes of events that may be counted.
4. The compare and complement flags and the threshold field of the CCCR select an optional threshold to be used in qualifying an event count.
5. The edge flag in the CCCR allows events to be counted only on rising-edge transitions.

The qualification order in the above list implies that the filtered output of one “stage” forms the input for the next. For instance, events filtered using the privilege level flags can be further qualified by the compare and complement flags and the threshold field, and an event that matched the threshold criteria, can be further qualified by edge detection.

The uses of the flags and fields in the CCCRs are discussed in greater detail in Section 18.6.3.5, “Programming the Performance Counters for Non-Retirement Events.”

18.6.3.4 Debug Store (DS) Mechanism

The debug store (DS) mechanism was introduced with processors based on Intel NetBurst microarchitecture to allow various types of information to be collected in memory-resident buffers for use in debugging and tuning programs. The DS mechanism can be used to collect two types of information: branch records and processor event-based sampling (PEBS) records. The availability of the DS mechanism in a processor is indicated with the DS feature flag (bit 21) returned by the CPUID instruction.

See Section 17.4.5, "Branch Trace Store (BTS)," and Section 18.6.3.8, "Processor Event-Based Sampling (PEBS)," for a description of these facilities. Records collected with the DS mechanism are saved in the DS save area. See Section 17.4.9, "BTS and DS Save Area."

18.6.3.5 Programming the Performance Counters for Non-Retirement Events

The basic steps to program a performance counter and to count events include the following:

1. Select the event or events to be counted.
2. For each event, select an ESCR that supports the event using the values in the ESCR restrictions row in Table 19-31, Chapter 19.
3. Match the CCCR Select value and ESCR name in Table 19-31 to a value listed in Table 18-70; select a CCCR and performance counter.
4. Set up an ESCR for the specific event or events to be counted and the privilege levels at which the are to be counted.
5. Set up the CCCR for the performance counter by selecting the ESCR and the desired event filters.
6. Set up the CCCR for optional cascading of event counts, so that when the selected counter overflows its alternate counter starts.
7. Set up the CCCR to generate an optional performance monitor interrupt (PMI) when the counter overflows. If PMI generation is enabled, the local APIC must be set up to deliver the interrupt to the processor and a handler for the interrupt must be in place.
8. Enable the counter to begin counting.

18.6.3.5.1 Selecting Events to Count

Table 19-32 in Chapter 19 lists a set of at-retirement events for processors based on Intel NetBurst microarchitecture. For each event listed in Table 19-32, setup information is provided. Table 18-71 gives an example of one of the events.

Table 18-71. Event Example

Event Name	Event Parameters	Parameter Value	Description
branch_retired			Counts the retirement of a branch. Specify one or more mask bits to select any combination of branch taken, not-taken, predicted and mispredicted.
	ESCR restrictions	MSR_CRU_ESCR2 MSR_CRU_ESCR3	See Table 15-3 for the addresses of the ESCR MSRs.
	Counter numbers per ESCR	ESCR2: 12, 13, 16 ESCR3: 14, 15, 17	The counter numbers associated with each ESCR are provided. The performance counters and corresponding CCCRs can be obtained from Table 15-3.
	ESCR Event Select	06H	ESCR[31:25]
	ESCR Event Mask	Bit 0: MMNP 1: MMNM 2: MMTP 3: MMTM	ESCR[24:9] Branch Not-taken Predicted Branch Not-taken Mispredicted Branch Taken Predicted Branch Taken Mispredicted
	CCCR Select	05H	CCCR[15:13]

Table 18-71. Event Example (Contd.)

Event Name	Event Parameters	Parameter Value	Description
	Event Specific Notes		P6: EMON_BR_INST_RETIRED
	Can Support PEBS	No	
	Requires Additional MSRs for Tagging	No	

For Table 19-31 and Table 19-32, Chapter 19, the name of the event is listed in the Event Name column and parameters that define the event and other information are listed in the Event Parameters column. The Parameter Value and Description columns give specific parameters for the event and additional description information. Entries in the Event Parameters column are described below.

- **ESCR restrictions** — Lists the ESCRs that can be used to program the event. Typically only one ESCR is needed to count an event.
- **Counter numbers per ESCR** — Lists which performance counters are associated with each ESCR. Table 18-70 gives the name of the counter and CCCR for each counter number. Typically only one counter is needed to count the event.
- **ESCR event select** — Gives the value to be placed in the event select field of the ESCR to select the event.
- **ESCR event mask** — Gives the value to be placed in the Event Mask field of the ESCR to select sub-events to be counted. The parameter value column defines the documented bits with relative bit position offset starting from 0, where the absolute bit position of relative offset 0 is bit 9 of the ESCR. All undocumented bits are reserved and should be set to 0.
- **CCCR select** — Gives the value to be placed in the ESCR select field of the CCCR associated with the counter to select the ESCR to be used to define the event. This value is not the address of the ESCR; it is the number of the ESCR from the Number column in Table 18-70.
- **Event specific notes** — Gives additional information about the event, such as the name of the same or a similar event defined for the P6 family processors.
- **Can support PEBS** — Indicates if PEBS is supported for the event (only supplied for at-retirement events listed in Table 19-32.)
- **Requires additional MSR for tagging** — Indicates which if any additional MSRs must be programmed to count the events (only supplied for the at-retirement events listed in Table 19-32.)

NOTE

The performance-monitoring events listed in Chapter 19, "Performance Monitoring Events," are intended to be used as guides for performance tuning. The counter values reported are not guaranteed to be absolutely accurate and should be used as a relative guide for tuning. Known discrepancies are documented where applicable.

The following procedure shows how to set up a performance counter for basic counting; that is, the counter is set up to count a specified event indefinitely, wrapping around whenever it reaches its maximum count. This procedure is continued through the following four sections.

Using information in Table 19-31, Chapter 19, an event to be counted can be selected as follows:

1. Select the event to be counted.
2. Select the ESCR to be used to select events to be counted from the ESCRs field.
3. Select the number of the counter to be used to count the event from the Counter Numbers Per ESCR field.
4. Determine the name of the counter and the CCCR associated with the counter, and determine the MSR addresses of the counter, CCCR, and ESCR from Table 18-70.
5. Use the WRMSR instruction to write the ESCR Event Select and ESCR Event Mask values into the appropriate fields in the ESCR. At the same time set or clear the USR and OS flags in the ESCR as desired.
6. Use the WRMSR instruction to write the CCCR Select value into the appropriate field in the CCCR.

NOTE

Typically all the fields and flags of the CCCR will be written with one WRMSR instruction; however, in this procedure, several WRMSR writes are used to more clearly demonstrate the uses of the various CCCR fields and flags.

This setup procedure is continued in the next section, Section 18.6.3.5.2, "Filtering Events."

18.6.3.5.2 Filtering Events

Each counter receives up to 4 input lines from the processor hardware from which it is counting events. The counter treats these inputs as binary inputs (input 0 has a value of 1, input 1 has a value of 2, input 2 has a value of 4, and input 3 has a value of 8). When a counter is enabled, it adds this binary input value to the counter value on each clock cycle. For each clock cycle, the value added to the counter can then range from 0 (no event) to 15.

For many events, only the 0 input line is active, so the counter is merely counting the clock cycles during which the 0 input is asserted. However, for some events two or more input lines are used. Here, the counter's threshold setting can be used to filter events. The compare, complement, threshold, and edge fields control the filtering of counter increments by input value.

If the compare flag is set, then a "greater than" or a "less than or equal to" comparison of the input value vs. a threshold value can be made. The complement flag selects "less than or equal to" (flag set) or "greater than" (flag clear). The threshold field selects a threshold value of from 0 to 15. For example, if the complement flag is cleared and the threshold field is set to 6, then any input value of 7 or greater on the 4 inputs to the counter will cause the counter to be incremented by 1, and any value less than 7 will cause an increment of 0 (or no increment) of the counter. Conversely, if the complement flag is set, any value from 0 to 6 will increment the counter and any value from 7 to 15 will not increment the counter. Note that when a threshold condition has been satisfied, the input to the counter is always 1, not the input value that is presented to the threshold filter.

The edge flag provides further filtering of the counter inputs when a threshold comparison is being made. The edge flag is only active when the compare flag is set. When the edge flag is set, the resulting output from the threshold filter (a value of 0 or 1) is used as an input to the edge filter. Each clock cycle, the edge filter examines the last and current input values and sends a count to the counter only when it detects a "rising edge" event; that is, a false-to-true transition. Figure 18-48 illustrates rising edge filtering.

The following procedure shows how to configure a CCCR to filter events using the threshold filter and the edge filter. This procedure is a continuation of the setup procedure introduced in Section 18.6.3.5.1, "Selecting Events to Count."

7. (Optional) To set up the counter for threshold filtering, use the WRMSR instruction to write values in the CCCR compare and complement flags and the threshold field:
 - Set the compare flag.
 - Set or clear the complement flag for less than or equal to or greater than comparisons, respectively.
 - Enter a value from 0 to 15 in the threshold field.
8. (Optional) Select rising edge filtering by setting the CCCR edge flag.

This setup procedure is continued in the next section, Section 18.6.3.5.3, "Starting Event Counting."

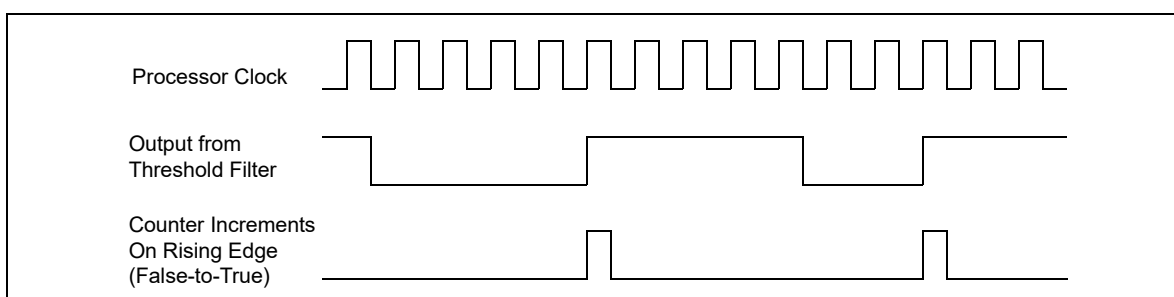


Figure 18-48. Effects of Edge Filtering

18.6.3.5.3 Starting Event Counting

Event counting by a performance counter can be initiated in either of two ways. The typical way is to set the enable flag in the counter's CCCR. Following the instruction to set the enable flag, event counting begins and continues until it is stopped (see Section 18.6.3.5.5, "Halting Event Counting").

The following procedural step shows how to start event counting. This step is a continuation of the setup procedure introduced in Section 18.6.3.5.2, "Filtering Events."

9. To start event counting, use the WRMSR instruction to set the CCCR enable flag for the performance counter.

This setup procedure is continued in the next section, Section 18.6.3.5.4, "Reading a Performance Counter's Count."

The second way that a counter can be started by using the cascade feature. Here, the overflow of one counter automatically starts its alternate counter (see Section 18.6.3.5.6, "Cascading Counters").

18.6.3.5.4 Reading a Performance Counter's Count

Performance counters can be read using either the RDPMC or RDMSR instructions. The enhanced functions of the RDPMC instruction (including fast read) are described in Section 18.6.3.2, "Performance Counters." These instructions can be used to read a performance counter while it is counting or when it is stopped.

The following procedural step shows how to read the event counter. This step is a continuation of the setup procedure introduced in Section 18.6.3.5.3, "Starting Event Counting."

10. To read a performance counters current event count, execute the RDPMC instruction with the counter number obtained from Table 18-70 used as an operand.

This setup procedure is continued in the next section, Section 18.6.3.5.5, "Halting Event Counting."

18.6.3.5.5 Halting Event Counting

After a performance counter has been started (enabled), it continues counting indefinitely. If the counter overflows (goes one count past its maximum count), it wraps around and continues counting. When the counter wraps around, it sets its OVF flag to indicate that the counter has overflowed. The OVF flag is a sticky flag that indicates that the counter has overflowed at least once since the OVF bit was last cleared.

To halt counting, the CCCR enable flag for the counter must be cleared.

The following procedural step shows how to stop event counting. This step is a continuation of the setup procedure introduced in Section 18.6.3.5.4, "Reading a Performance Counter's Count."

11. To stop event counting, execute a WRMSR instruction to clear the CCCR enable flag for the performance counter.

To halt a cascaded counter (a counter that was started when its alternate counter overflowed), either clear the Cascade flag in the cascaded counter's CCCR MSR or clear the OVF flag in the alternate counter's CCCR MSR.

18.6.3.5.6 Cascading Counters

As described in Section 18.6.3.2, "Performance Counters," eighteen performance counters are implemented in pairs. Nine pairs of counters and associated CCCRs are further organized as four blocks: BPU, MS, FLAME, and IQ (see Table 18-70). The first three blocks contain two pairs each. The IQ block contains three pairs of counters (12 through 17) with associated CCCRs (MSR_IQ_CCCR0 through MSR_IQ_CCCR5).

The first 8 counter pairs (0 through 15) can be programmed using ESCRs to detect performance monitoring events. Pairs of ESCRs in each of the four blocks allow many different types of events to be counted. The cascade flag in the CCCR MSR allows nested monitoring of events to be performed by cascading one counter to a second counter located in another pair in the same block (see Figure 18-47 for the location of the flag).

Counters 0 and 1 form the first pair in the BPU block. Either counter 0 or 1 can be programmed to detect an event via MSR_MO B_ESCR0. Counters 0 and 2 can be cascaded in any order, as can counters 1 and 3. It's possible to set up 4 counters in the same block to cascade on two pairs of independent events. The pairing described also applies to subsequent blocks. Since the IQ PUB has two extra counters, cascading operates somewhat differently if 16 and 17 are involved. In the IQ block, counter 16 can only be cascaded from counter 14 (not from 12); counter 14

cannot be cascaded from counter 16 using the CCCR cascade bit mechanism. Similar restrictions apply to counter 17.

Example 18-1. Counting Events

Assume a scenario where counter X is set up to count 200 occurrences of event A; then counter Y is set up to count 400 occurrences of event B. Each counter is set up to count a specific event and overflow to the next counter. In the above example, counter X is preset for a count of -200 and counter Y for a count of -400; this setup causes the counters to overflow on the 200th and 400th counts respectively.

Continuing this scenario, counter X is set up to count indefinitely and wraparound on overflow. This is described in the basic performance counter setup procedure that begins in Section 18.6.3.5.1, "Selecting Events to Count." Counter Y is set up with the cascade flag in its associated CCCR MSR set to 1 and its enable flag set to 0.

To begin the nested counting, the enable bit for the counter X is set. Once enabled, counter X counts until it overflows. At this point, counter Y is automatically enabled and begins counting. Thus counter X overflows after 200 occurrences of event A. Counter Y then starts, counting 400 occurrences of event B before overflowing. When performance counters are cascaded, the counter Y would typically be set up to generate an interrupt on overflow. This is described in Section 18.6.3.5.8, "Generating an Interrupt on Overflow."

The cascading counters mechanism can be used to count a single event. The counting begins on one counter then continues on the second counter after the first counter overflows. This technique doubles the number of event counts that can be recorded, since the contents of the two counters can be added together.

18.6.3.5.7 EXTENDED CASCADING

Extended cascading is a model-specific feature in the Intel NetBurst microarchitecture with CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel 0F_02, 0F_03, 0F_04, 0F_06. This feature uses bit 11 in CCCRs associated with the IQ block. See Table 18-72.

Table 18-72. CCR Names and Bit Positions

CCCR Name:Bit Position	Bit Name	Description
MSR_IQ_CCCR1 2:11	Reserved	
MSR_IQ_CCCR0:11	CASCNT4INT00	Allow counter 4 to cascade into counter 0
MSR_IQ_CCCR3:11	CASCNT5INT03	Allow counter 5 to cascade into counter 3
MSR_IQ_CCCR4:11	CASCNT5INT04	Allow counter 5 to cascade into counter 4
MSR_IQ_CCCR5:11	CASCNT4INT05	Allow counter 4 to cascade into counter 5

The extended cascading feature can be adapted to the Interrupt based sampling usage model for performance monitoring. However, it is known that performance counters do not generate PMI in cascade mode or extended cascade mode due to an erratum. This erratum applies to processors with CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel signature of 0F_02. For processors with CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel signature of 0F_00 and 0F_01, the erratum applies to processors with stepping encoding greater than 09H.

Counters 16 and 17 in the IQ block are frequently used in processor event-based sampling or at-retirement counting of events indicating a stalled condition in the pipeline. Neither counter 16 or 17 can initiate the cascading of counter pairs using the cascade bit in a CCCR.

Extended cascading permits performance monitoring tools to use counters 16 and 17 to initiate cascading of two counters in the IQ block. Extended cascading from counter 16 and 17 is conceptually similar to cascading other counters, but instead of using CASCADE bit of a CCCR, one of the four CASCNTxINT0y bits is used.

Example 18-2. Scenario for Extended Cascading

A usage scenario for extended cascading is to sample instructions retired on logical processor 1 after the first 4096 instructions retired on logical processor 0. A procedure to program extended cascading in this scenario is outlined below:

1. Write the value 0 to counter 12.
2. Write the value 04000603H to MSR_CRU_ESCR0 (corresponding to selecting the NBOGNTAG and NBOGTAG event masks with qualification restricted to logical processor 1).
3. Write the value 04038800H to MSR_IQ_CCCR0. This enables CASCNT4INTO0 and OVF_PMI. An ISR can sample on instruction addresses in this case (do not set ENABLE, or CASCADE).
4. Write the value FFFF000H into counter 16.1.
5. Write the value 0400060CH to MSR_CRU_ESCR2 (corresponding to selecting the NBOGNTAG and NBOGTAG event masks with qualification restricted to logical processor 0).
6. Write the value 00039000H to MSR_IQ_CCCR4 (set ENABLE bit, but not OVF_PMI).

Another use for cascading is to locate stalled execution in a multithreaded application. Assume MOB replays in thread B cause thread A to stall. Getting a sample of the stalled execution in this scenario could be accomplished by:

1. Set up counter B to count MOB replays on thread B.
2. Set up counter A to count resource stalls on thread A; set its force overflow bit and the appropriate CASCNTx-INTOy bit.
3. Use the performance monitoring interrupt to capture the program execution data of the stalled thread.

18.6.3.5.8 Generating an Interrupt on Overflow

Any performance counter can be configured to generate a performance monitor interrupt (PMI) if the counter overflows. The PMI interrupt service routine can then collect information about the state of the processor or program when overflow occurred. This information can then be used with a tool like the Intel® VTune™ Performance Analyzer to analyze and tune program performance.

To enable an interrupt on counter overflow, the OVR_PMI flag in the counter's associated CCCR MSR must be set. When overflow occurs, a PMI is generated through the local APIC. (Here, the performance counter entry in the local vector table [LVT] is set up to deliver the interrupt generated by the PMI to the processor.)

The PMI service routine can use the OVF flag to determine which counter overflowed when multiple counters have been configured to generate PMIs. Also, note that these processors mask PMIs upon receiving an interrupt. Clear this condition before leaving the interrupt handler.

When generating interrupts on overflow, the performance counter being used should be preset to value that will cause an overflow after a specified number of events are counted plus 1. The simplest way to select the preset value is to write a negative number into the counter, as described in Section 18.6.3.5.6, "Cascading Counters." Here, however, if an interrupt is to be generated after 100 event counts, the counter should be preset to minus 100 plus 1 (-100 + 1), or -99. The counter will then overflow after it counts 99 events and generate an interrupt on the next (100th) event counted. The difference of 1 for this count enables the interrupt to be generated immediately after the selected event count has been reached, instead of waiting for the overflow to be propagation through the counter.

Because of latency in the microarchitecture between the generation of events and the generation of interrupts on overflow, it is sometimes difficult to generate an interrupt close to an event that caused it. In these situations, the FORCE_OVF flag in the CCCR can be used to improve reporting. Setting this flag causes the counter to overflow on every counter increment, which in turn triggers an interrupt after every counter increment.

18.6.3.5.9 Counter Usage Guideline

There are some instances where the user must take care to configure counting logic properly, so that it is not powered down. To use any ESCR, even when it is being used just for tagging, (any) one of the counters that the particular ESCR (or its paired ESCR) can be connected to should be enabled. If this is not done, 0 counts may result. Likewise, to use any counter, there must be some event selected in a corresponding ESCR (other than no_event, which generally has a select value of 0).

18.6.3.6 At-Retirement Counting

At-retirement counting provides a means counting only events that represent work committed to architectural state and ignoring work that was performed speculatively and later discarded.

One example of this speculative activity is branch prediction. When a branch misprediction occurs, the results of instructions that were decoded and executed down the mispredicted path are canceled. If a performance counter was set up to count all executed instructions, the count would include instructions whose results were canceled as well as those whose results committed to architectural state.

To provide finer granularity in event counting in these situations, the performance monitoring facilities provided in the Pentium 4 and Intel Xeon processors provide a mechanism for tagging events and then counting only those tagged events that represent committed results. This mechanism is called "at-retirement counting."

Tables 19-32 through 19-36 list predefined at-retirement events and event metrics that can be used to for tagging events when using at retirement counting. The following terminology is used in describing at-retirement counting:

- **Bogus, non-bogus, retire** — In at-retirement event descriptions, the term "bogus" refers to instructions or μ ops that must be canceled because they are on a path taken from a mispredicted branch. The terms "retired" and "non-bogus" refer to instructions or μ ops along the path that results in committed architectural state changes as required by the program being executed. Thus instructions and μ ops are either bogus or non-bogus, but not both. Several of the Pentium 4 and Intel Xeon processors' performance monitoring events (such as, `Instruction_Retired` and `Uops_Retired` in Table 19-32) can count instructions or μ ops that are retired based on the characterization of bogus" versus non-bogus.
- **Tagging** — Tagging is a means of marking μ ops that have encountered a particular performance event so they can be counted at retirement. During the course of execution, the same event can happen more than once per μ op and a direct count of the event would not provide an indication of how many μ ops encountered that event. The tagging mechanisms allow a μ op to be tagged once during its lifetime and thus counted once at retirement. The retired suffix is used for performance metrics that increment a count once per μ op, rather than once per event. For example, a μ op may encounter a cache miss more than once during its life time, but a "Miss Retired" metric (that counts the number of retired μ ops that encountered a cache miss) will increment only once for that μ op. A "Miss Retired" metric would be useful for characterizing the performance of the cache hierarchy for a particular instruction sequence. Details of various performance metrics and how these can be constructed using the Pentium 4 and Intel Xeon processors performance events are provided in the *Intel Pentium 4 Processor Optimization Reference Manual* (see Section 1.4, "Related Literature").
- **Replay** — To maximize performance for the common case, the Intel NetBurst microarchitecture aggressively schedules μ ops for execution before all the conditions for correct execution are guaranteed to be satisfied. In the event that all of these conditions are not satisfied, μ ops must be reissued. The mechanism that the Pentium 4 and Intel Xeon processors use for this reissuing of μ ops is called replay. Some examples of replay causes are cache misses, dependence violations, and unforeseen resource constraints. In normal operation, some number of replays is common and unavoidable. An excessive number of replays is an indication of a performance problem.
- **Assist** — When the hardware needs the assistance of microcode to deal with some event, the machine takes an assist. One example of this is an underflow condition in the input operands of a floating-point operation. The hardware must internally modify the format of the operands in order to perform the computation. Assists clear the entire machine of μ ops before they begin and are costly.

18.6.3.6.1 Using At-Retirement Counting

Processors based on Intel NetBurst microarchitecture allow counting both events and μ ops that encountered a specified event. For a subset of the at-retirement events listed in Table 19-32, a μ op may be tagged when it encounters that event. The tagging mechanisms can be used in Interrupt-based event sampling, and a subset of these mechanisms can be used in PEBS. There are four independent tagging mechanisms, and each mechanism uses a different event to count μ ops tagged with that mechanism:

- **Front-end tagging** — This mechanism pertains to the tagging of μ ops that encountered front-end events (for example, trace cache and instruction counts) and are counted with the `Front_end_event` event.
- **Execution tagging** — This mechanism pertains to the tagging of μ ops that encountered execution events (for example, instruction types) and are counted with the `Execution_Event` event.

- **Replay tagging** — This mechanism pertains to tagging of μ ops whose retirement is replayed (for example, a cache miss) and are counted with the `Replay_event` event. Branch mispredictions are also tagged with this mechanism.
- **No tags** — This mechanism does not use tags. It uses the `Instr_retired` and the `Uops_retired` events.

Each tagging mechanism is independent from all others; that is, a μ op that has been tagged using one mechanism will not be detected with another mechanism's tagged- μ op detector. For example, if μ ops are tagged using the front-end tagging mechanisms, the `Replay_event` will not count those as tagged μ ops unless they are also tagged using the replay tagging mechanism. However, execution tags allow up to four different types of μ ops to be counted at retirement through execution tagging.

The independence of tagging mechanisms does not hold when using PEBS. When using PEBS, only one tagging mechanism should be used at a time.

Certain kinds of μ ops that cannot be tagged, including I/O, uncacheable and locked accesses, returns, and far transfers.

Table 19-32 lists the performance monitoring events that support at-retirement counting: specifically the `Front_end_event`, `Execution_event`, `Replay_event`, `Inst_retired` and `Uops_retired` events. The following sections describe the tagging mechanisms for using these events to tag μ op and count tagged μ ops.

18.6.3.6.2 Tagging Mechanism for `Front_end_event`

The `Front_end_event` counts μ ops that have been tagged as encountering any of the following events:

- **μ op decode events** — Tagging μ ops for μ op decode events requires specifying bits in the `ESCR` associated with the performance-monitoring event, `Uop_type`.
- **Trace cache events** — Tagging μ ops for trace cache events may require specifying certain bits in the `MSR_TC_PRECISE_EVENT` MSR (see Table 19-34).

Table 19-32 describes the `Front_end_event` and Table 19-34 describes metrics that are used to set up a `Front_end_event` count.

The MSRs specified in the Table 19-32 that are supported by the front-end tagging mechanism must be set and one or both of the `NBOGUS` and `BOGUS` bits in the `Front_end_event` event mask must be set to count events. None of the events currently supported requires the use of the `MSR_TC_PRECISE_EVENT` MSR.

18.6.3.6.3 Tagging Mechanism For `Execution_event`

Table 19-32 describes the `Execution_event` and Table 19-35 describes metrics that are used to set up an `Execution_event` count.

The execution tagging mechanism differs from other tagging mechanisms in how it causes tagging. One *upstream* `ESCR` is used to specify an event to detect and to specify a tag value (bits 5 through 8) to identify that event. A second *downstream* `ESCR` is used to detect μ ops that have been tagged with that tag value identifier using `Execution_event` for the event selection.

The upstream `ESCR` that counts the event must have its tag enable flag (bit 4) set and must have an appropriate tag value mask entered in its tag value field. The 4-bit tag value mask specifies which of tag bits should be set for a particular μ op. The value selected for the tag value should coincide with the event mask selected in the downstream `ESCR`. For example, if a tag value of 1 is set, then the event mask of `NBOGUS0` should be enabled, correspondingly in the downstream `ESCR`. The downstream `ESCR` detects and counts tagged μ ops. The normal (not tag value) mask bits in the downstream `ESCR` specify which tag bits to count. If any one of the tag bits selected by the mask is set, the related counter is incremented by one. This mechanism is summarized in the Table 19-35 metrics that are supported by the execution tagging mechanism. The tag enable and tag value bits are irrelevant for the downstream `ESCR` used to select the `Execution_event`.

The four separate tag bits allow the user to simultaneously but distinctly count up to four execution events at retirement. (This applies for interrupt-based event sampling. There are additional restrictions for PEBS as noted in Section 18.6.3.8.3, "Setting Up the PEBS Buffer.") It is also possible to detect or count combinations of events by setting multiple tag value bits in the upstream `ESCR` or multiple mask bits in the downstream `ESCR`. For example, use a tag value of 3H in the upstream `ESCR` and use `NBOGUS0/NBOGUS1` in the downstream `ESCR` event mask.

18.6.3.7 Tagging Mechanism for Replay_event

Table 19-32 describes the `Replay_event` and Table 19-36 describes metrics that are used to set up an `Replay_event` count.

The replay mechanism enables tagging of μ ops for a subset of all replays before retirement. Use of the replay mechanism requires selecting the type of μ op that may experience the replay in the `MSR_PEBS_MATRIX_VERT` MSR and selecting the type of event in the `MSR_PEBS_ENABLE` MSR. Replay tagging must also be enabled with the `UOP_Tag` flag (bit 24) in the `MSR_PEBS_ENABLE` MSR.

The Table 19-36 lists the metrics that support the replay tagging mechanism and the at-retirement events that use the replay tagging mechanism, and specifies how the appropriate MSRs need to be configured. The replay tags defined in Table A-5 also enable Processor Event-Based Sampling (PEBS, see Section 17.4.9). Each of these replay tags can also be used in normal sampling by not setting Bit 24 nor Bit 25 in `IA_32_PEBS_ENABLE_MSR`. Each of these metrics requires that the `Replay_Event` (see Table 19-32) be used to count the tagged μ ops.

18.6.3.8 Processor Event-Based Sampling (PEBS)

The debug store (DS) mechanism in processors based on Intel NetBurst microarchitecture allow two types of information to be collected for use in debugging and tuning programs: PEBS records and BTS records. See Section 17.4.5, "Branch Trace Store (BTS)," for a description of the BTS mechanism.

PEBS permits the saving of precise architectural information associated with one or more performance events in the precise event records buffer, which is part of the DS save area (see Section 17.4.9, "BTS and DS Save Area"). To use this mechanism, a counter is configured to overflow after it has counted a preset number of events. After the counter overflows, the processor copies the current state of the general-purpose and EFLAGS registers and instruction pointer into a record in the precise event records buffer. The processor then resets the count in the performance counter and restarts the counter. When the precise event records buffer is nearly full, an interrupt is generated, allowing the precise event records to be saved. A circular buffer is not supported for precise event records.

PEBS is supported only for a subset of the at-retirement events: `Execution_event`, `Front_end_event`, and `Replay_event`. Also, PEBS can only be carried out using the one performance counter, the `MSR_IQ_COUNTER4` MSR.

In processors based on Intel Core microarchitecture, a similar PEBS mechanism is also supported using `IA32_PMC0` and `IA32_PERFVTSEL0` MSRs (See Section 18.6.2.4).

18.6.3.8.1 Detection of the Availability of the PEBS Facilities

The DS feature flag (bit 21) returned by the `CPUID` instruction indicates (when set) the availability of the DS mechanism in the processor, which supports the PEBS (and BTS) facilities. When this bit is set, the following PEBS facilities are available:

- The `PEBS_UNAVAILABLE` flag in the `IA32_MISC_ENABLE` MSR indicates (when clear) the availability of the PEBS facilities, including the `MSR_PEBS_ENABLE` MSR.
- The enable PEBS flag (bit 24) in the `MSR_PEBS_ENABLE` MSR allows PEBS to be enabled (set) or disabled (clear).
- The `IA32_DS_AREA` MSR can be programmed to point to the DS save area.

18.6.3.8.2 Setting Up the DS Save Area

Section 17.4.9.2, "Setting Up the DS Save Area," describes how to set up and enable the DS save area. This procedure is common for PEBS and BTS.

18.6.3.8.3 Setting Up the PEBS Buffer

Only the `MSR_IQ_COUNTER4` performance counter can be used for PEBS. Use the following procedure to set up the processor and this counter for PEBS:

1. Set up the precise event buffering facilities. Place values in the precise event buffer base, precise event index, precise event absolute maximum, and precise event interrupt threshold, and precise event counter reset fields of the DS buffer management area (see Figure 17-5) to set up the precise event records buffer in memory.
2. Enable PEBS. Set the Enable PEBS flag (bit 24) in MSR_PEBS_ENABLE MSR.
3. Set up the MSR_IQ_COUNTER4 performance counter and its associated CCCR and one or more ESCRs for PEBS as described in Tables 19-32 through 19-36.

18.6.3.8.4 Writing a PEBS Interrupt Service Routine

The PEBS facilities share the same interrupt vector and interrupt service routine (called the DS ISR) with the non-precise event-based sampling and BTS facilities. To handle PEBS interrupts, PEBS handler code must be included in the DS ISR. See Section 17.4.9.5, "Writing the DS Interrupt Service Routine," for guidelines for writing the DS ISR.

18.6.3.8.5 Other DS Mechanism Implications

The DS mechanism is not available in the SMM. It is disabled on transition to the SMM mode. Similarly the DS mechanism is disabled on the generation of a machine check exception and is cleared on processor RESET and INIT.

The DS mechanism is available in real address mode.

18.6.3.9 Operating System Implications

The DS mechanism can be used by the operating system as a debugging extension to facilitate failure analysis. When using this facility, a 25 to 30 times slowdown can be expected due to the effects of the trace store occurring on every taken branch.

Depending upon intended usage, the instruction pointers that are part of the branch records or the PEBS records need to have an association with the corresponding process. One solution requires the ability for the DS specific operating system module to be chained to the context switch. A separate buffer can then be maintained for each process of interest and the MSR pointing to the configuration area saved and setup appropriately on each context switch.

If the BTS facility has been enabled, then it must be disabled and state stored on transition of the system to a sleep state in which processor context is lost. The state must be restored on return from the sleep state.

It is required that an interrupt gate be used for the DS interrupt as opposed to a trap gate to prevent the generation of an endless interrupt loop.

Pages that contain buffers must have mappings to the same physical address for all processes/logical processors, such that any change to CR3 will not change DS addresses. If this requirement cannot be satisfied (that is, the feature is enabled on a per thread/process basis), then the operating system must ensure that the feature is enabled/disabled appropriately in the context switch code.

18.6.4 Performance Monitoring and Intel Hyper-Threading Technology in Processors Based on Intel NetBurst® Microarchitecture

The performance monitoring capability of processors based on Intel NetBurst microarchitecture and supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology is similar to that described in Section 18.6.3. However, the capability is extended so that:

- Performance counters can be programmed to select events qualified by logical processor IDs.
- Performance monitoring interrupts can be directed to a specific logical processor within the physical processor.

The sections below describe performance counters, event qualification by logical processor ID, and special purpose bits in ESCRs/CCCRs. They also describe MSR_PEBS_ENABLE, MSR_PEBS_MATRIX_VERT, and MSR_TC_PRECISE_EVENT.

18.6.4.1 ESCR MSRs

Figure 18-49 shows the layout of an ESCR MSR in processors supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology. The functions of the flags and fields are as follows:

- T1_USR flag, bit 0** — When set, events are counted when thread 1 (logical processor 1) is executing at a current privilege level (CPL) of 1, 2, or 3. These privilege levels are generally used by application code and unprotected operating system code.

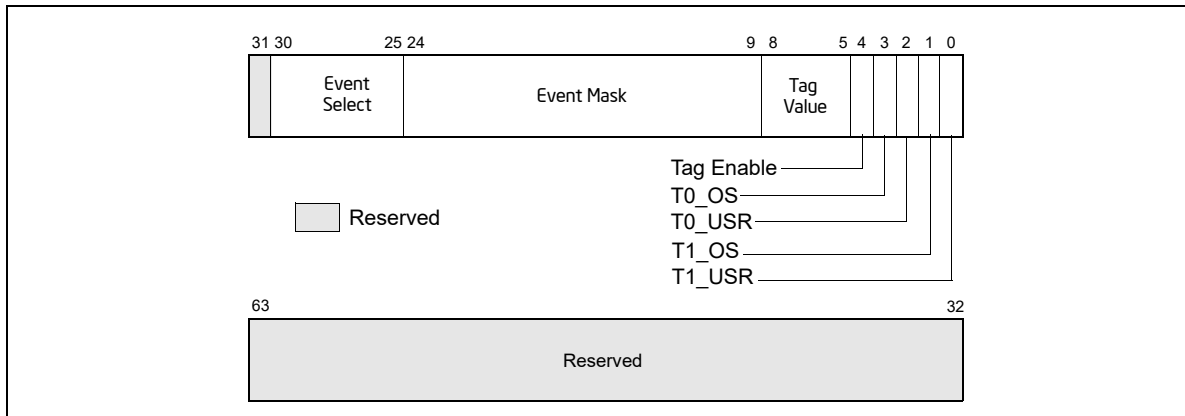


Figure 18-49. Event Selection Control Register (ESCR) for the Pentium 4 Processor, Intel Xeon Processor and Intel Xeon Processor MP Supporting Hyper-Threading Technology

- T1_OS flag, bit 1** — When set, events are counted when thread 1 (logical processor 1) is executing at CPL of 0. This privilege level is generally reserved for protected operating system code. (When both the T1_OS and T1_USR flags are set, thread 1 events are counted at all privilege levels.)
- T0_USR flag, bit 2** — When set, events are counted when thread 0 (logical processor 0) is executing at a CPL of 1, 2, or 3.
- T0_OS flag, bit 3** — When set, events are counted when thread 0 (logical processor 0) is executing at CPL of 0. (When both the T0_OS and T0_USR flags are set, thread 0 events are counted at all privilege levels.)
- Tag enable, bit 4** — When set, enables tagging of μ ops to assist in at-retirement event counting; when clear, disables tagging. See Section 18.6.3.6, "At-Retirement Counting."
- Tag value field, bits 5 through 8** — Selects a tag value to associate with a μ op to assist in at-retirement event counting.
- Event mask field, bits 9 through 24** — Selects events to be counted from the event class selected with the event select field.
- Event select field, bits 25 through 30** — Selects a class of events to be counted. The events within this class that are counted are selected with the event mask field.

The T0_OS and T0_USR flags and the T1_OS and T1_USR flags allow event counting and sampling to be specified for a specific logical processor (0 or 1) within an Intel Xeon processor MP (See also: Section 8.4.5, "Identifying Logical Processors in an MP System," in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3A*).

Not all performance monitoring events can be detected within an Intel Xeon processor MP on a per logical processor basis (see Section 18.6.4.4, "Performance Monitoring Events"). Some sub-events (specified by an event mask bits) are counted or sampled without regard to which logical processor is associated with the detected event.

18.6.4.2 CCCR MSRs

Figure 18-50 shows the layout of a CCCR MSR in processors supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology. The functions of the flags and fields are as follows:

- **Enable flag, bit 12** — When set, enables counting; when clear, the counter is disabled. This flag is cleared on reset
- **ESCR select field, bits 13 through 15** — Identifies the ESCR to be used to select events to be counted with the counter associated with the CCCR.
- **Active thread field, bits 16 and 17** — Enables counting depending on which logical processors are active (executing a thread). This field enables filtering of events based on the state (active or inactive) of the logical processors. The encodings of this field are as follows:
 - 00** — None. Count only when neither logical processor is active.
 - 01** — Single. Count only when one logical processor is active (either 0 or 1).
 - 10** — Both. Count only when both logical processors are active.
 - 11** — Any. Count when either logical processor is active.
 A halted logical processor or a logical processor in the “wait for SIPI” state is considered inactive.
- **Compare flag, bit 18** — When set, enables filtering of the event count; when clear, disables filtering. The filtering method is selected with the threshold, complement, and edge flags.

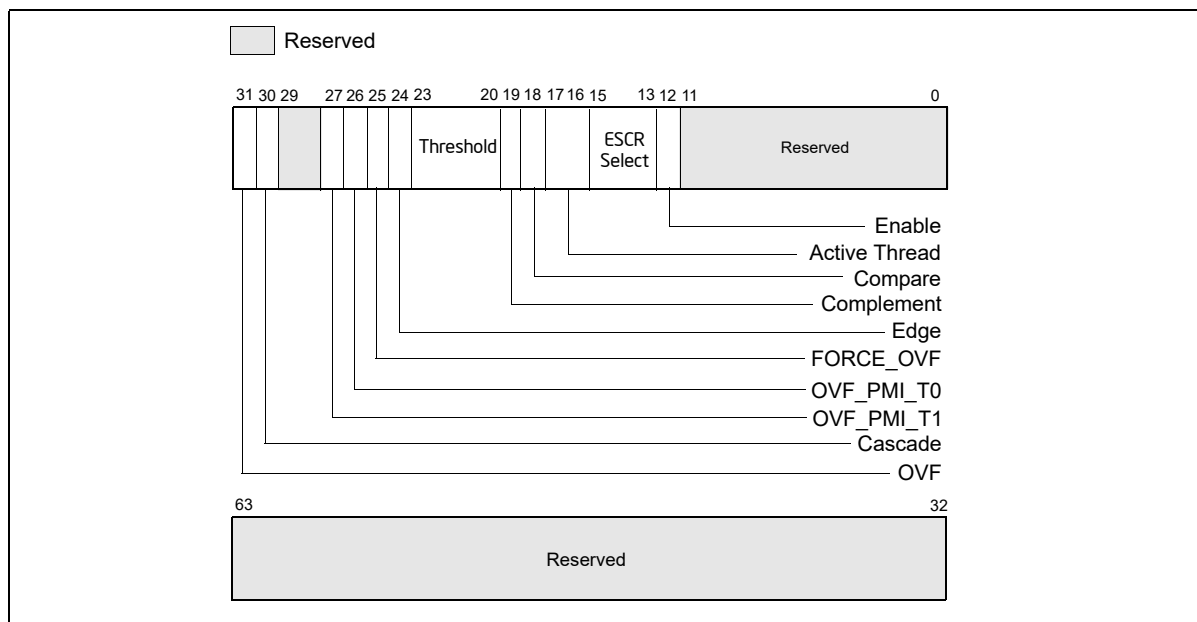


Figure 18-50. Counter Configuration Control Register (CCCR)

- **Complement flag, bit 19** — Selects how the incoming event count is compared with the threshold value. When set, event counts that are less than or equal to the threshold value result in a single count being delivered to the performance counter; when clear, counts greater than the threshold value result in a count being delivered to the performance counter (see Section 18.6.3.5.2, “Filtering Events”). The compare flag is not active unless the compare flag is set.
- **Threshold field, bits 20 through 23** — Selects the threshold value to be used for comparisons. The processor examines this field only when the compare flag is set, and uses the complement flag setting to determine the type of threshold comparison to be made. The useful range of values that can be entered in this field depend on the type of event being counted (see Section 18.6.3.5.2, “Filtering Events”).
- **Edge flag, bit 24** — When set, enables rising edge (false-to-true) edge detection of the threshold comparison output for filtering event counts; when clear, rising edge detection is disabled. This flag is active only when the compare flag is set.
- **FORCE_OVF flag, bit 25** — When set, forces a counter overflow on every counter increment; when clear, overflow only occurs when the counter actually overflows.

- **OVF_PMI_T0 flag, bit 26** — When set, causes a performance monitor interrupt (PMI) to be sent to logical processor 0 when the counter overflows occurs; when clear, disables PMI generation for logical processor 0. Note that the PMI is generate on the next event count after the counter has overflowed.
- **OVF_PMI_T1 flag, bit 27** — When set, causes a performance monitor interrupt (PMI) to be sent to logical processor 1 when the counter overflows occurs; when clear, disables PMI generation for logical processor 1. Note that the PMI is generate on the next event count after the counter has overflowed.
- **Cascade flag, bit 30** — When set, enables counting on one counter of a counter pair when its alternate counter in the other the counter pair in the same counter group overflows (see Section 18.6.3.2, “Performance Counters,” for further details); when clear, disables cascading of counters.
- **OVF flag, bit 31** — Indicates that the counter has overflowed when set. This flag is a sticky flag that must be explicitly cleared by software.

18.6.4.3 IA32_PEBS_ENABLE MSR

In a processor supporting Intel Hyper-Threading Technology and based on the Intel NetBurst microarchitecture, PEBS is enabled and qualified with two bits in the MSR_PEBS_ENABLE MSR: bit 25 (ENABLE_PEBS_MY_THR) and 26 (ENABLE_PEBS_OTH_THR) respectively. These bits do not explicitly identify a specific logical processor by logic processor ID(T0 or T1); instead, they allow a software agent to enable PEBS for subsequent threads of execution on the same logical processor on which the agent is running (“my thread”) or for the other logical processor in the physical package on which the agent is not running (“other thread”).

PEBS is supported for only a subset of the at-retirement events: Execution_event, Front_end_event, and Replay_event. Also, PEBS can be carried out only with two performance counters: MSR_IQ_CCCR4 (MSR address 370H) for logical processor 0 and MSR_IQ_CCCR5 (MSR address 371H) for logical processor 1.

Performance monitoring tools should use a processor affinity mask to bind the kernel mode components that need to modify the ENABLE_PEBS_MY_THR and ENABLE_PEBS_OTH_THR bits in the MSR_PEBS_ENABLE MSR to a specific logical processor. This is to prevent these kernel mode components from migrating between different logical processors due to OS scheduling.

18.6.4.4 Performance Monitoring Events

All of the events listed in Table 19-31 and 19-32 are available in an Intel Xeon processor MP. When Intel Hyper-Threading Technology is active, many performance monitoring events can be can be qualified by the logical processor ID, which corresponds to bit 0 of the initial APIC ID. This allows for counting an event in any or all of the logical processors. However, not all the events have this logic processor specificity, or thread specificity.

Here, each event falls into one of two categories:

- **Thread specific (TS)** — The event can be qualified as occurring on a specific logical processor.
- **Thread independent (TI)** — The event cannot be qualified as being associated with a specific logical processor.

Table 19-37 gives logical processor specific information (TS or TI) for each of the events described in Tables 19-31 and 19-32. If for example, a TS event occurred in logical processor T0, the counting of the event (as shown in Table 18-73) depends only on the setting of the T0_USR and T0_OS flags in the ESCR being used to set up the event counter. The T1_USR and T1_OS flags have no effect on the count.

Table 18-73. Effect of Logical Processor and CPL Qualification for Logical-Processor-Specific (TS) Events

	T1_OS/T1_USR = 00	T1_OS/T1_USR = 01	T1_OS/T1_USR = 11	T1_OS/T1_USR = 10
T0_OS/T0_USR = 00	Zero count	Counts while T1 in USR	Counts while T1 in OS or USR	Counts while T1 in OS
T0_OS/T0_USR = 01	Counts while T0 in USR	Counts while T0 in USR or T1 in USR	Counts while (a) T0 in USR or (b) T1 in OS or (c) T1 in USR	Counts while (a) T0 in OS or (b) T1 in OS

Table 18-73. Effect of Logical Processor and CPL Qualification for Logical-Processor-Specific (TS) Events

T0_OS/T0_USR = 11	Counts while T0 in OS or USR	Counts while (a) T0 in OS or (b) T0 in USR or (c) T1 in USR	Counts irrespective of CPL, T0, T1	Counts while (a) T0 in OS or (b) T0 in USR or (c) T1 in OS
T0_OS/T0_USR = 10	Counts T0 in OS	Counts T0 in OS or T1 in USR	Counts while (a) T0 in OS or (b) T1 in OS or (c) T1 in USR	Counts while (a) T0 in OS or (b) T1 in OS

When a bit in the event mask field is TI, the effect of specifying bit-0-3 of the associated ESCR are described in Table 15-6. For events that are marked as TI in Chapter 19, the effect of selectively specifying T0_USR, T0_OS, T1_USR, T1_OS bits is shown in Table 18-74.

Table 18-74. Effect of Logical Processor and CPL Qualification for Non-logical-Processor-specific (TI) Events

	T1_OS/T1_USR = 00	T1_OS/T1_USR = 01	T1_OS/T1_USR = 11	T1_OS/T1_USR = 10
T0_OS/T0_USR = 00	Zero count	Counts while (a) T0 in USR or (b) T1 in USR	Counts irrespective of CPL, T0, T1	Counts while (a) T0 in OS or (b) T1 in OS
T0_OS/T0_USR = 01	Counts while (a) T0 in USR or (b) T1 in USR	Counts while (a) T0 in USR or (b) T1 in USR	Counts irrespective of CPL, T0, T1	Counts irrespective of CPL, T0, T1
T0_OS/T0_USR = 11	Counts irrespective of CPL, T0, T1	Counts irrespective of CPL, T0, T1	Counts irrespective of CPL, T0, T1	Counts irrespective of CPL, T0, T1
T0_OS/T0_USR = 0	Counts while (a) T0 in OS or (b) T1 in OS	Counts irrespective of CPL, T0, T1	Counts irrespective of CPL, T0, T1	Counts while (a) T0 in OS or (b) T1 in OS

18.6.4.5 Counting Clocks on systems with Intel Hyper-Threading Technology in Processors Based on Intel NetBurst® Microarchitecture

18.6.4.5.1 Non-Halted Clockticks

Use the following procedure to program ESCRs and CCCRs to obtain non-halted clockticks on processors based on Intel NetBurst microarchitecture:

1. Select an ESCR for the global_power_events and specify the RUNNING sub-event mask and the desired T0_OS/T0_USR/T1_OS/T1_USR bits for the targeted processor.
2. Select an appropriate counter.
3. Enable counting in the CCCR for that counter by setting the enable bit.

18.6.4.5.2 Non-Sleep Clockticks

Performance monitoring counters can be configured to count clockticks whenever the performance monitoring hardware is not powered-down. To count Non-sleep Clockticks with a performance-monitoring counter, do the following:

1. Select one of the 18 counters.
2. Select any of the ESCRs whose events the selected counter can count. Set its event select to anything other than "no_event"; the counter may be disabled if this is not done.
3. Turn threshold comparison on in the CCCR by setting the compare bit to "1".
4. Set the threshold to "15" and the complement to "1" in the CCCR. Since no event can exceed this threshold, the threshold condition is met every cycle and the counter counts every cycle. Note that this overrides any qualification (e.g. by CPL) specified in the ESCR.
5. Enable counting in the CCCR for the counter by setting the enable bit.

In most cases, the counts produced by the non-halted and non-sleep metrics are equivalent if the physical package supports one logical processor and is not placed in a power-saving state. Operating systems may execute an HLT instruction and place a physical processor in a power-saving state.

On processors that support Intel Hyper-Threading Technology (Intel HT Technology), each physical package can support two or more logical processors. Current implementation of Intel HT Technology provides two logical processors for each physical processor. While both logical processors can execute two threads simultaneously, one logical processor may halt to allow the other logical processor to execute without sharing execution resources between two logical processors.

Non-halted Clockticks can be set up to count the number of processor clock cycles for each logical processor whenever the logical processor is not halted (the count may include some portion of the clock cycles for that logical processor to complete a transition to a halted state). Physical processors that support Intel HT Technology enter into a power-saving state if all logical processors halt.

The Non-sleep Clockticks mechanism uses a filtering mechanism in CCCRs. The mechanism will continue to increment as long as one logical processor is not halted or in a power-saving state. Applications may cause a processor to enter into a power-saving state by using an OS service that transfers control to an OS's idle loop. The idle loop then may place the processor into a power-saving state after an implementation-dependent period if there is no work for the processor.

18.6.5 Performance Monitoring and Dual-Core Technology

The performance monitoring capability of dual-core processors duplicates the microarchitectural resources of a single-core processor implementation. Each processor core has dedicated performance monitoring resources.

In the case of Pentium D processor, each logical processor is associated with dedicated resources for performance monitoring. In the case of Pentium processor Extreme edition, each processor core has dedicated resources, but two logical processors in the same core share performance monitoring resources (see Section 18.6.4, "Performance Monitoring and Intel Hyper-Threading Technology in Processors Based on Intel NetBurst[®] Microarchitecture").

18.6.6 Performance Monitoring on 64-bit Intel Xeon Processor MP with Up to 8-MByte L3 Cache

The 64-bit Intel Xeon processor MP with up to 8-MByte L3 cache has a CPUID signature of family [0FH], model [03H or 04H]. Performance monitoring capabilities available to Pentium 4 and Intel Xeon processors with the same values (see Section 18.1 and Section 18.6.4) apply to the 64-bit Intel Xeon processor MP with an L3 cache.

The level 3 cache is connected between the system bus and IOQ through additional control logic. See Figure 18-51.

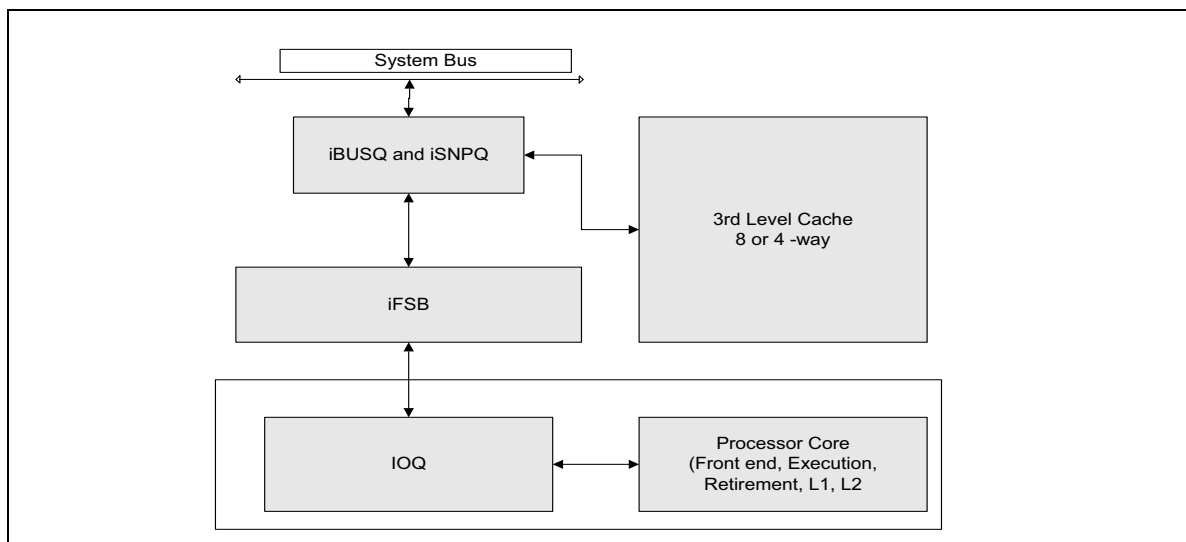


Figure 18-51. Block Diagram of 64-bit Intel Xeon Processor MP with 8-MByte L3

Additional performance monitoring capabilities and facilities unique to 64-bit Intel Xeon processor MP with an L3 cache are described in this section. The facility for monitoring events consists of a set of dedicated model-specific registers (MSRs), each dedicated to a specific event. Programming of these MSRs requires using RDMSR/WRMSR instructions with 64-bit values.

The lower 32-bits of the MSRs at addresses 107CC through 107D3 are treated as 32 bit performance counter registers. These performance counters can be accessed using RDPMC instruction with the index starting from 18 through 25. The EDX register returns zero when reading these 8 PMCs.

The performance monitoring capabilities consist of four events. These are:

- IBUSQ event** — This event detects the occurrence of micro-architectural conditions related to the iBUSQ unit. It provides two MSRs: MSR_IFSB_IBUSQ0 and MSR_IFSB_IBUSQ1. Configure sub-event qualification and enable/disable functions using the high 32 bits of these MSRs. The low 32 bits act as a 32-bit event counter. Counting starts after software writes a non-zero value to one or more of the upper 32 bits. See Figure 18-52.

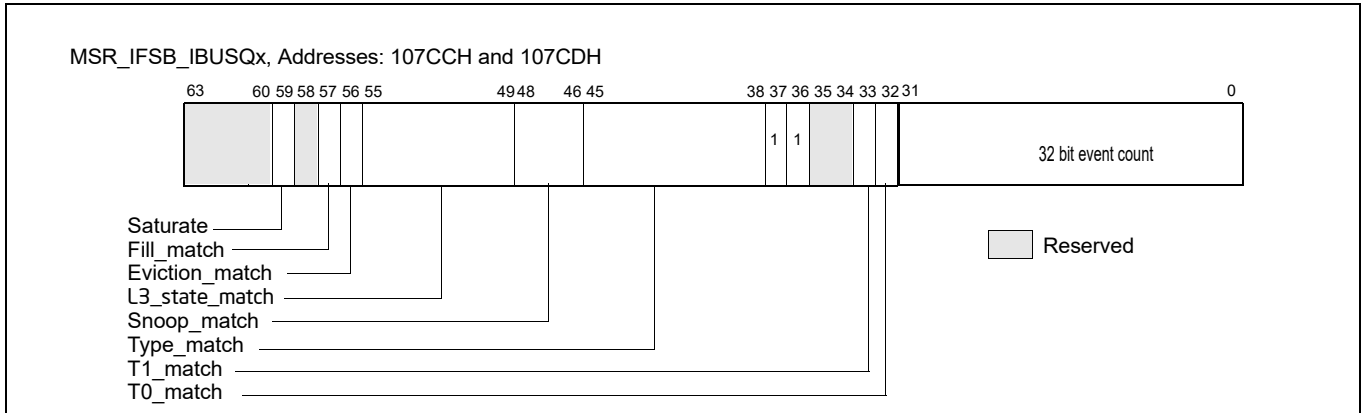


Figure 18-52. MSR_IFSB_IBUSQx, Addresses: 107CCH and 107CDH

- ISNPQ event** — This event detects the occurrence of microarchitectural conditions related to the iSNPQ unit. It provides two MSRs: MSR_IFSB_ISNPQ0 and MSR_IFSB_ISNPQ1. Configure sub-event qualifications and enable/disable functions using the high 32 bits of the MSRs. The low 32-bits act as a 32-bit event counter. Counting starts after software writes a non-zero value to one or more of the upper 32-bits. See Figure 18-53.

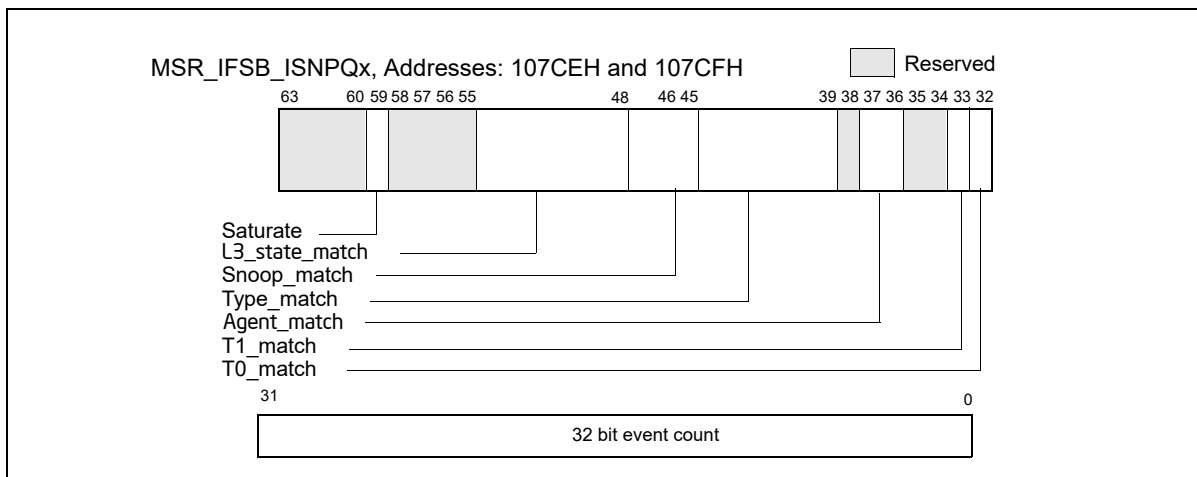


Figure 18-53. MSR_IFSB_ISNPQx, Addresses: 107CEH and 107CFH

- EFSB event** — This event can detect the occurrence of micro-architectural conditions related to the iFSB unit or system bus. It provides two MSRs: MSR_EFSB_DRDY0 and MSR_EFSB_DRDY1. Configure sub-event qualifications and enable/disable functions using the high 32 bits of the 64-bit MSR. The low 32-bit act as a 32-bit event counter. Counting starts after software writes a non-zero value to one or more of the qualification bits in the upper 32-bits of the MSR. See Figure 18-54.

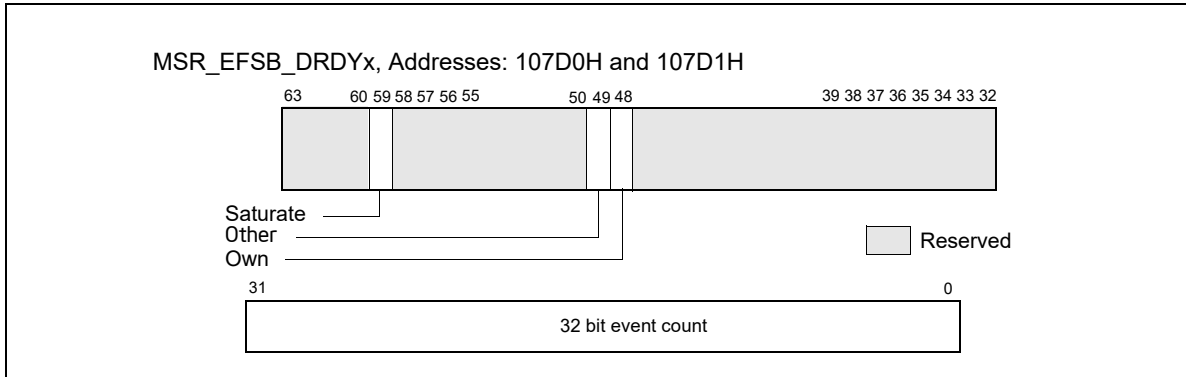


Figure 18-54. MSR_EFSB_DRDYx, Addresses: 107D0H and 107D1H

- IBUSQ Latency event** — This event accumulates weighted cycle counts for latency measurement of transactions in the iBUSQ unit. The count is enabled by setting MSR_IFSB_CTRL6[bit 26] to 1; the count freezes after software sets MSR_IFSB_CTRL6[bit 26] to 0. MSR_IFSB_CNTR7 acts as a 64-bit event counter for this event. See Figure 18-55.

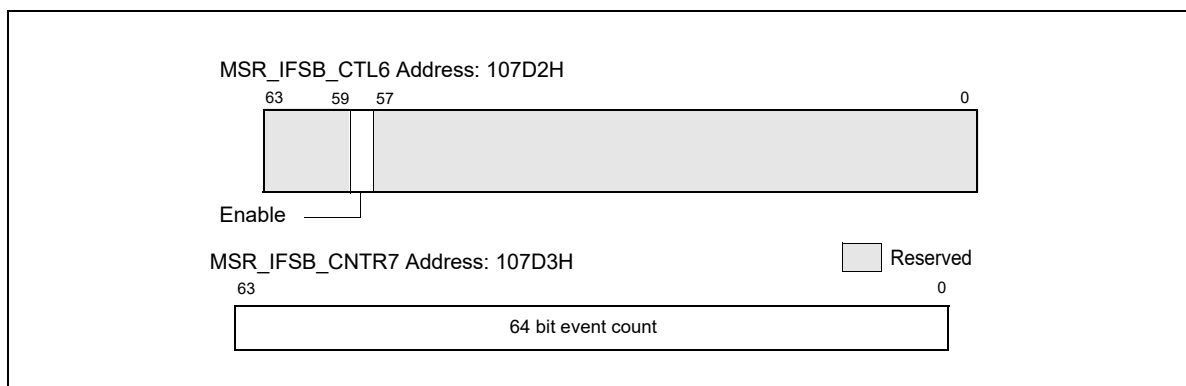


Figure 18-55. MSR_IFSB_CTL6, Address: 107D2H;
 MSR_IFSB_CNTR7, Address: 107D3H

18.6.7 Performance Monitoring on L3 and Caching Bus Controller Sub-Systems

The Intel Xeon processor 7400 series and Dual-Core Intel Xeon processor 7100 series employ a distinct L3/caching bus controller sub-system. These sub-system have a unique set of performance monitoring capability and programming interfaces that are largely common between these two processor families.

Intel Xeon processor 7400 series are based on 45 nm enhanced Intel Core microarchitecture. The CPUID signature is indicated by DisplayFamily_DisplayModel value of 06_1DH (see CPUID instruction in Chapter 3, "Instruction Set Reference, A-L" in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 2A*). Intel Xeon processor 7400 series have six processor cores that share an L3 cache.

Dual-Core Intel Xeon processor 7100 series are based on Intel NetBurst microarchitecture, have a CPUID signature of family [0FH], model [06H] and a unified L3 cache shared between two cores. Each core in an Intel Xeon processor 7100 series supports Intel Hyper-Threading Technology, providing two logical processors per core.

Both Intel Xeon processor 7400 series and Intel Xeon processor 7100 series support multi-processor configurations using system bus interfaces. In Intel Xeon processor 7400 series, the L3/caching bus controller sub-system provides three Simple Direct Interface (SDI) to service transactions originated the XQ-replacement SDI logic in each dual-core modules. In Intel Xeon processor 7100 series, the IOQ logic in each processor core is replaced with a Simple Direct Interface (SDI) logic. The L3 cache is connected between the system bus and the SDI through

additional control logic. See Figure 18-56 for the block configuration of six processor cores and the L3/Caching bus controller sub-system in Intel Xeon processor 7400 series. Figure 18-56 shows the block configuration of two processor cores (four logical processors) and the L3/Caching bus controller sub-system in Intel Xeon processor 7100 series.

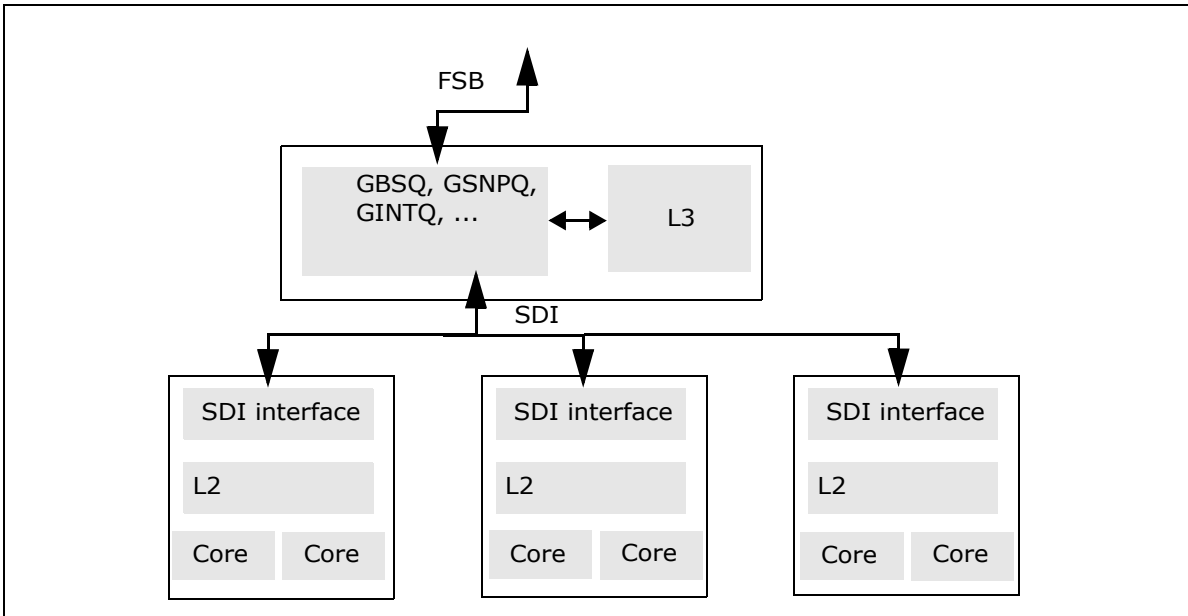


Figure 18-56. Block Diagram of Intel Xeon Processor 7400 Series

Almost all of the performance monitoring capabilities available to processor cores with the same CPUID signatures (see Section 18.1 and Section 18.6.4) apply to Intel Xeon processor 7100 series. The MSR's used by performance monitoring interface are shared between two logical processors in the same processor core.

The performance monitoring capabilities available to processor with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel signature 06_17H also apply to Intel Xeon processor 7400 series. Each processor core provides its own set of MSR's for performance monitoring interface.

The IOQ_allocation and IOQ_active_entries events are not supported in Intel Xeon processor 7100 series and 7400 series. Additional performance monitoring capabilities applicable to the L3/caching bus controller sub-system are described in this section.

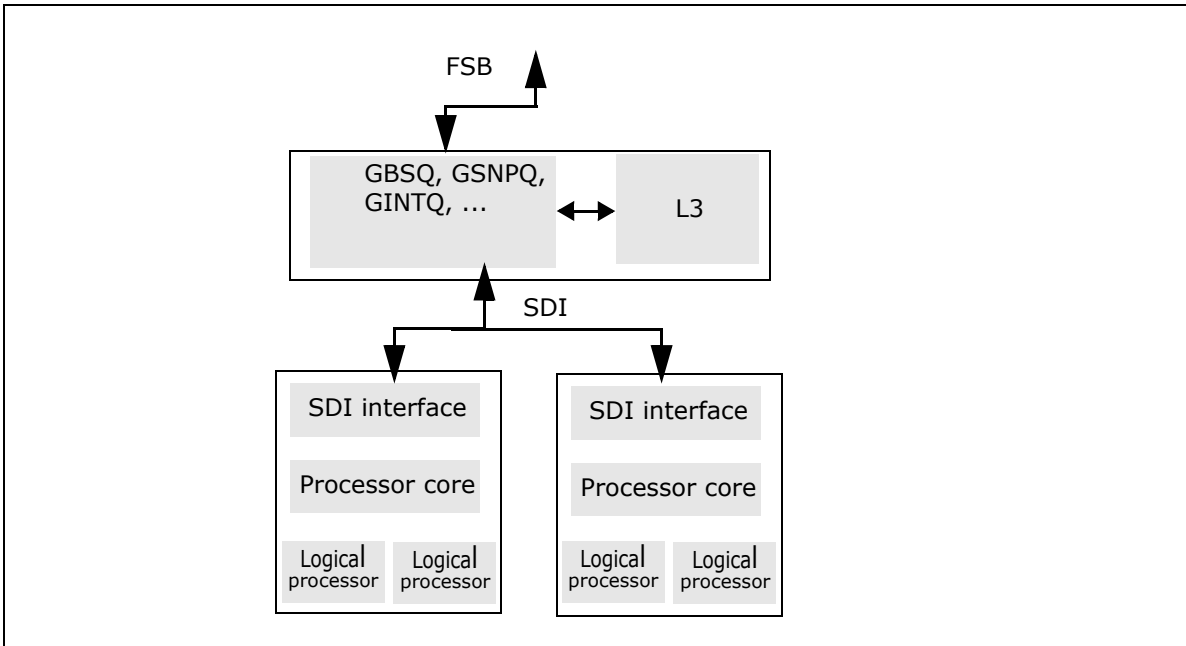


Figure 18-57. Block Diagram of Intel Xeon Processor 7100 Series

18.6.7.1 Overview of Performance Monitoring with L3/Caching Bus Controller

The facility for monitoring events consists of a set of dedicated model-specific registers (MSRs). There are eight event select/counting MSRs that are dedicated to counting events associated with specified microarchitectural conditions. Programming of these MSRs requires using RDMSR/WRMSR instructions with 64-bit values. In addition, an MSR MSR_EMON_L3_GL_CTL provides simplified interface to control freezing, resetting, re-enabling operation of any combination of these event select/counting MSRs.

The eight MSRs dedicated to count occurrences of specific conditions are further divided to count three sub-classes of microarchitectural conditions:

- Two MSRs (MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL0 and MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL1) are dedicated to counting GBSQ events. Up to two GBSQ events can be programmed and counted simultaneously.
- Two MSRs (MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL2 and MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL3) are dedicated to counting GSNPQ events. Up to two GSNPQ events can be programmed and counted simultaneously.
- Four MSRs (MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL4, MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL5, MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL6, and MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL7) are dedicated to counting external bus operations.

The bit fields in each of eight MSRs share the following common characteristics:

- Bits 63:32 is the event control field that includes an event mask and other bit fields that control counter operation. The event mask field specifies details of the microarchitectural condition, and its definition differs across GBSQ, GSNPQ, FSB.
- Bits 31:0 is the event count field. If the specified condition is met during each relevant clock domain of the event logic, the matched condition signals the counter logic to increment the associated event count field. The lower 32-bits of these 8 MSRs at addresses 107CC through 107D3 are treated as 32 bit performance counter registers.

In Dual-Core Intel Xeon processor 7100 series, the uncore performance counters can be accessed using RDPMC instruction with the index starting from 18 through 25. The EDX register returns zero when reading these 8 PMCs.

In Intel Xeon processor 7400 series, RDPMC with ECX between 2 and 9 can be used to access the eight uncore performance counter/control registers.

18.6.7.2 GBSQ Event Interface

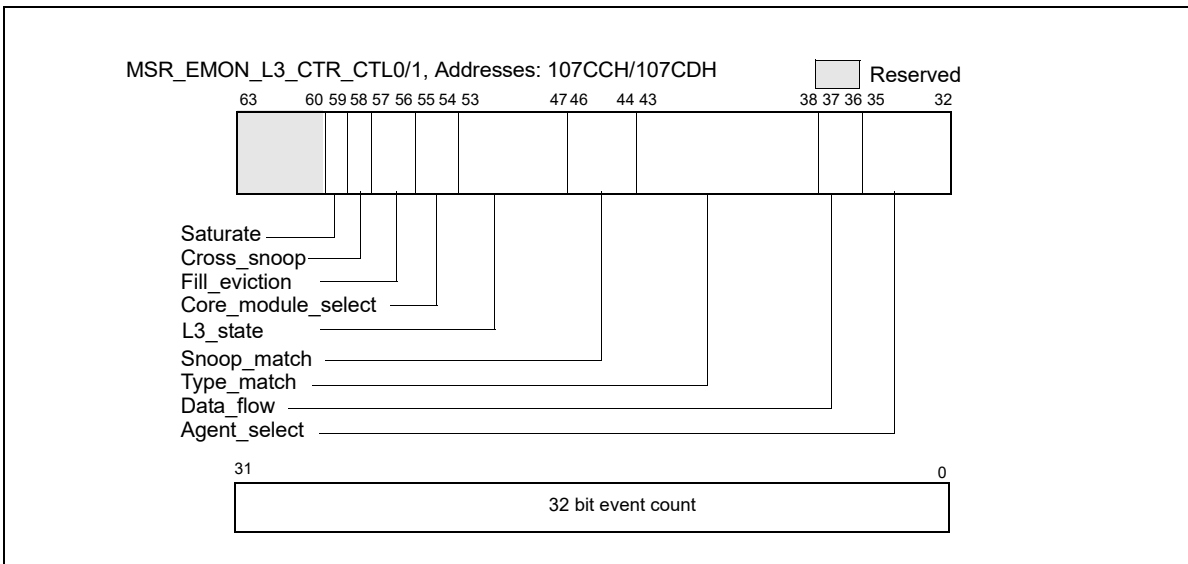
The layout of MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL0 and MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL1 is given in Figure 18-58. Counting starts after software writes a non-zero value to one or more of the upper 32 bits.

The event mask field (bits 58:32) consists of the following eight attributes:

- Agent_Select (bits 35:32): The definition of this field differs slightly between Intel Xeon processor 7100 and 7400.

For Intel Xeon processor 7100 series, each bit specifies a logical processor in the physical package. The lower two bits corresponds to two logical processors in the first processor core, the upper two bits corresponds to two logical processors in the second processor core. 0FH encoding matches transactions from any logical processor.

For Intel Xeon processor 7400 series, each bit of [34:32] specifies the SDI logic of a dual-core module as the originator of the transaction. A value of 0111B in bits [35:32] specifies transaction from any processor core.



- 11B: Match transaction from more than one dual-core modules in the physical package
- Fill_Eviction (bits 57:56): The valid encodings are
 - 00B: Match any transactions
 - 01B: Match transactions that fill L3
 - 10B: Match transactions that fill L3 without an eviction
 - 11B: Match transaction fill L3 with an eviction
- Cross_Snoop (bit 58): The encodings are
 - 0B: Match any transactions
 - 1B: Match cross snoop transactions

For each counting clock domain, if all eight attributes match, event logic signals to increment the event count field.

18.6.7.3 GSNPQ Event Interface

The layout of MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL2 and MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL3 is given in Figure 18-59. Counting starts after software writes a non-zero value to one or more of the upper 32 bits.

The event mask field (bits 58:32) consists of the following six attributes:

- Agent_Select (bits 37:32): The definition of this field differs slightly between Intel Xeon processor 7100 and 7400.
- For Intel Xeon processor 7100 series, each of the lowest 4 bits specifies a logical processor in the physical package. The lowest two bits corresponds to two logical processors in the first processor core, the next two bits corresponds to two logical processors in the second processor core. Bit 36 specifies other symmetric agent transactions. Bit 37 specifies central agent transactions. 3FH encoding matches transactions from any logical processor.

For Intel Xeon processor 7400 series, each of the lowest 3 bits specifies a dual-core module in the physical package. Bit 37 specifies central agent transactions.

- Type_Match (bits 43:38): Specifies transaction types. If all six bits are set, event count will include any transaction types.
- Snoop_Match: (bits 46:44): The three bits specify (in ascending bit position) clean snoop result, HIT snoop result, and HITM snoop results respectively.
- L2_State (bits 53:47): Each bit specifies an L3 coherency state.
- Core_Module_Select (bits 56:54): Bit 56 enables Core_Module_Select matching. If bit 56 is clear, Core_Module_Select encoding is ignored. The valid encodings for the lower two bits (bit 55, 54) differ slightly between Intel Xeon processor 7100 and 7400.

For Intel Xeon processor 7100 series, if bit 56 is set, the valid encodings for the lower two bits (bit 55, 54) are

- 00B: Match transactions from only one core (irrespective which core) in the physical package
- 01B: Match transactions from this core and not the other core
- 10B: Match transactions from the other core in the physical package, but not this core
- 11B: Match transaction from both cores in the physical package

For Intel Xeon processor 7400 series, if bit 56 is set, the valid encodings for the lower two bits (bit 55, 54) are

- 00B: Match transactions from only one dual-core module (irrespective which module) in the physical package.
- 01B: Match transactions from one or more dual-core modules.
- 10B: Match transactions from two or more dual-core modules.
- 11B: Match transaction from all three dual-core modules in the physical package.

- Block_Snoop (bit 57): specifies blocked snoop.

For each counting clock domain, if all six attributes match, event logic signals to increment the event count field.

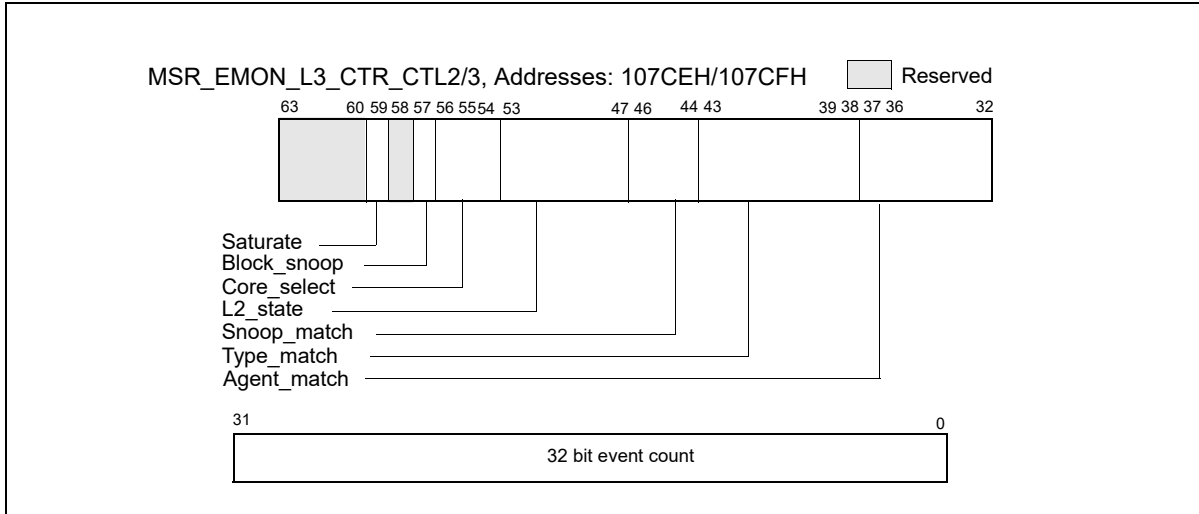


Figure 18-59. MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL2/3, Addresses: 107CEH/107CFH

18.6.7.4 FSB Event Interface

The layout of MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL4 through MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL7 is given in Figure 18-60. Counting starts after software writes a non-zero value to one or more of the upper 32 bits.

The event mask field (bits 58:32) is organized as follows:

- Bit 58: must set to 1.
- FSB_Submask (bits 57:32): Specifies FSB-specific sub-event mask.

The FSB sub-event mask defines a set of independent attributes. The event logic signals to increment the associated event count field if one of the attribute matches. Some of the sub-event mask bit counts durations. A duration event increments at most once per cycle.

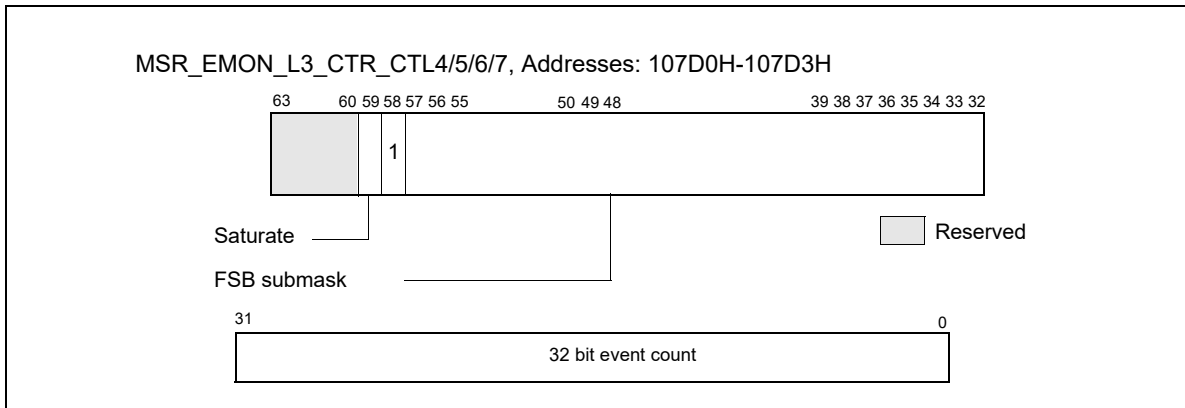


Figure 18-60. MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL4/5/6/7, Addresses: 107D0H-107D3H

18.6.7.4.1 FSB Sub-Event Mask Interface

- FSB_type (bit 37:32): Specifies different FSB transaction types originated from this physical package.
- FSB_L_clear (bit 38): Count clean snoop results from any source for transaction originated from this physical package.
- FSB_L_hit (bit 39): Count HIT snoop results from any source for transaction originated from this physical package.

- FSB_L_hitm (bit 40): Count HITM snoop results from any source for transaction originated from this physical package.
- FSB_L_defer (bit 41): Count DEFER responses to this processor's transactions.
- FSB_L_retry (bit 42): Count RETRY responses to this processor's transactions.
- FSB_L_snoop_stall (bit 43): Count snoop stalls to this processor's transactions.
- FSB_DBSY (bit 44): Count DBSY assertions by this processor (without a concurrent DRDY).
- FSB_DRDY (bit 45): Count DRDY assertions by this processor.
- FSB_BNR (bit 46): Count BNR assertions by this processor.
- FSB_IOQ_empty (bit 47): Counts each bus clocks when the IOQ is empty.
- FSB_IOQ_full (bit 48): Counts each bus clocks when the IOQ is full.
- FSB_IOQ_active (bit 49): Counts each bus clocks when there is at least one entry in the IOQ.
- FSB_WW_data (bit 50): Counts back-to-back write transaction's data phase.
- FSB_WW_issue (bit 51): Counts back-to-back write transaction request pairs issued by this processor.
- FSB_WR_issue (bit 52): Counts back-to-back write-read transaction request pairs issued by this processor.
- FSB_RW_issue (bit 53): Counts back-to-back read-write transaction request pairs issued by this processor.
- FSB_other_DBSY (bit 54): Count DBSY assertions by another agent (without a concurrent DRDY).
- FSB_other_DRDY (bit 55): Count DRDY assertions by another agent.
- FSB_other_snoop_stall (bit 56): Count snoop stalls on the FSB due to another agent.
- FSB_other_BNR (bit 57): Count BNR assertions from another agent.

18.6.7.5 Common Event Control Interface

The MSR_EMON_L3_GL_CTL MSR provides simplified access to query overflow status of the GBSQ, GSNPQ, FSB event counters. It also provides control bit fields to freeze, unfreeze, or reset those counters. The following bit fields are supported:

- GL_freeze_cmd (bit 0): Freeze the event counters specified by the GL_event_select field.
- GL_unfreeze_cmd (bit 1): Unfreeze the event counters specified by the GL_event_select field.
- GL_reset_cmd (bit 2): Clear the event count field of the event counters specified by the GL_event_select field. The event select field is not affected.
- GL_event_select (bit 23:16): Selects one or more event counters to subject to specified command operations indicated by bits 2:0. Bit 16 corresponds to MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL0, bit 23 corresponds to MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL7.
- GL_event_status (bit 55:48): Indicates the overflow status of each event counters. Bit 48 corresponds to MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL0, bit 55 corresponds to MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL7.

In the event control field (bits 63:32) of each MSR, if the saturate control (bit 59, see Figure 18-58 for example) is set, the event logic forces the value FFFF_FFFFH into the event count field instead of incrementing it.

18.6.8 Performance Monitoring (P6 Family Processor)

The P6 family processors provide two 40-bit performance counters, allowing two types of events to be monitored simultaneously. These can either count events or measure duration. When counting events, a counter increments each time a specified event takes place or a specified number of events takes place. When measuring duration, it counts the number of processor clocks that occur while a specified condition is true. The counters can count events or measure durations that occur at any privilege level.

Table 19-40, Chapter 19, lists the events that can be counted with the P6 family performance monitoring counters.

NOTE

The performance-monitoring events listed in Chapter 19 are intended to be used as guides for performance tuning. Counter values reported are not guaranteed to be accurate and should be used as a relative guide for tuning. Known discrepancies are documented where applicable.

The performance-monitoring counters are supported by four MSR: the performance event select MSRs (PerfEvtSel0 and PerfEvtSel1) and the performance counter MSRs (PerfCtr0 and PerfCtr1). These registers can be read from and written to using the RDMSR and WRMSR instructions, respectively. They can be accessed using these instructions only when operating at privilege level 0. The PerfCtr0 and PerfCtr1 MSRs can be read from any privilege level using the RDPMC (read performance-monitoring counters) instruction.

NOTE

The PerfEvtSel0, PerfEvtSel1, PerfCtr0, and PerfCtr1 MSRs and the events listed in Table 19-40 are model-specific for P6 family processors. They are not guaranteed to be available in other IA-32 processors.

18.6.8.1 PerfEvtSel0 and PerfEvtSel1 MSRs

The PerfEvtSel0 and PerfEvtSel1 MSRs control the operation of the performance-monitoring counters, with one register used to set up each counter. They specify the events to be counted, how they should be counted, and the privilege levels at which counting should take place. Figure 18-61 shows the flags and fields in these MSRs.

The functions of the flags and fields in the PerfEvtSel0 and PerfEvtSel1 MSRs are as follows:

- **Event select field (bits 0 through 7)** — Selects the event logic unit to detect certain microarchitectural conditions (see Table 19-40, for a list of events and their 8-bit codes).
- **Unit mask (UMASK) field (bits 8 through 15)** — Further qualifies the event logic unit selected in the event select field to detect a specific microarchitectural condition. For example, for some cache events, the mask is used as a MESI-protocol qualifier of cache states (see Table 19-40).

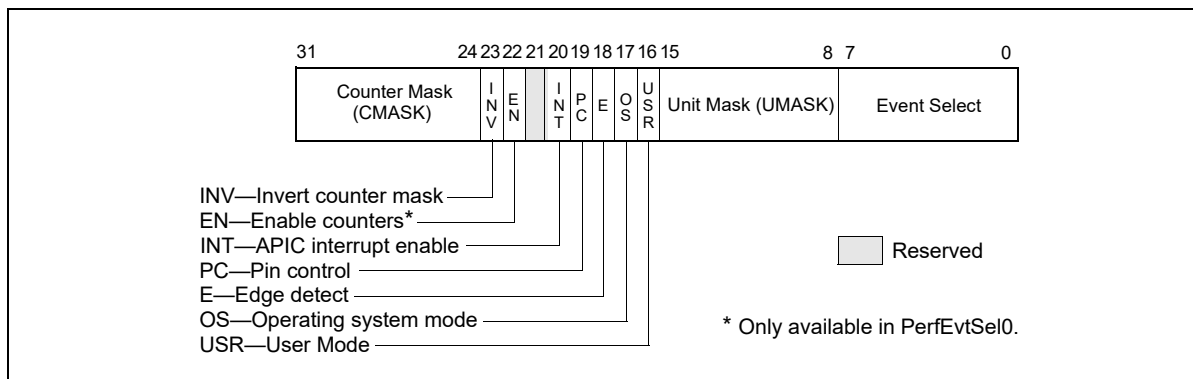


Figure 18-61. PerfEvtSel0 and PerfEvtSel1 MSRs

- **USR (user mode) flag (bit 16)** — Specifies that events are counted only when the processor is operating at privilege levels 1, 2 or 3. This flag can be used in conjunction with the OS flag.
- **OS (operating system mode) flag (bit 17)** — Specifies that events are counted only when the processor is operating at privilege level 0. This flag can be used in conjunction with the USR flag.
- **E (edge detect) flag (bit 18)** — Enables (when set) edge detection of events. The processor counts the number of deasserted to asserted transitions of any condition that can be expressed by the other fields. The mechanism is limited in that it does not permit back-to-back assertions to be distinguished. This mechanism allows software to measure not only the fraction of time spent in a particular state, but also the average length of time spent in such a state (for example, the time spent waiting for an interrupt to be serviced).

- **PC (pin control) flag (bit 19)** — When set, the processor toggles the PMi pins and increments the counter when performance-monitoring events occur; when clear, the processor toggles the PMi pins when the counter overflows. The toggling of a pin is defined as assertion of the pin for a single bus clock followed by deassertion.
- **INT (APIC interrupt enable) flag (bit 20)** — When set, the processor generates an exception through its local APIC on counter overflow.
- **EN (Enable Counters) Flag (bit 22)** — This flag is only present in the PerfEvtSel0 MSR. When set, performance counting is enabled in both performance-monitoring counters; when clear, both counters are disabled.
- **INV (invert) flag (bit 23)** — When set, inverts the counter-mask (CMASK) comparison, so that both greater than or equal to and less than comparisons can be made (0: greater than or equal; 1: less than). Note if counter-mask is programmed to zero, INV flag is ignored.
- **Counter mask (CMASK) field (bits 24 through 31)** — When nonzero, the processor compares this mask to the number of events counted during a single cycle. If the event count is greater than or equal to this mask, the counter is incremented by one. Otherwise the counter is not incremented. This mask can be used to count events only if multiple occurrences happen per clock (for example, two or more instructions retired per clock). If the counter-mask field is 0, then the counter is incremented each cycle by the number of events that occurred that cycle.

18.6.8.2 PerfCtr0 and PerfCtr1 MSRs

The performance-counter MSRs (PerfCtr0 and PerfCtr1) contain the event or duration counts for the selected events being counted. The RDPMC instruction can be used by programs or procedures running at any privilege level and in virtual-8086 mode to read these counters. The PCE flag in control register CR4 (bit 8) allows the use of this instruction to be restricted to only programs and procedures running at privilege level 0.

The RDPMC instruction is not serializing or ordered with other instructions. Thus, it does not necessarily wait until all previous instructions have been executed before reading the counter. Similarly, subsequent instructions may begin execution before the RDPMC instruction operation is performed.

Only the operating system, executing at privilege level 0, can directly manipulate the performance counters, using the RDMSR and WRMSR instructions. A secure operating system would clear the PCE flag during system initialization to disable direct user access to the performance-monitoring counters, but provide a user-accessible programming interface that emulates the RDPMC instruction.

The WRMSR instruction cannot arbitrarily write to the performance-monitoring counter MSRs (PerfCtr0 and PerfCtr1). Instead, the lower-order 32 bits of each MSR may be written with any value, and the high-order 8 bits are sign-extended according to the value of bit 31. This operation allows writing both positive and negative values to the performance counters.

18.6.8.3 Starting and Stopping the Performance-Monitoring Counters

The performance-monitoring counters are started by writing valid setup information in the PerfEvtSel0 and/or PerfEvtSel1 MSRs and setting the enable counters flag in the PerfEvtSel0 MSR. If the setup is valid, the counters begin counting following the execution of a WRMSR instruction that sets the enable counter flag. The counters can be stopped by clearing the enable counters flag or by clearing all the bits in the PerfEvtSel0 and PerfEvtSel1 MSRs. Counter 1 alone can be stopped by clearing the PerfEvtSel1 MSR.

18.6.8.4 Event and Time-Stamp Monitoring Software

To use the performance-monitoring counters and time-stamp counter, the operating system needs to provide an event-monitoring device driver. This driver should include procedures for handling the following operations:

- Feature checking.
- Initialize and start counters.
- Stop counters.
- Read the event counters.
- Read the time-stamp counter.

The event monitor feature determination procedure must check whether the current processor supports the performance-monitoring counters and time-stamp counter. This procedure compares the family and model of the processor returned by the CPUID instruction with those of processors known to support performance monitoring. (The Pentium and P6 family processors support performance counters.) The procedure also checks the MSR and TSC flags returned to register EDX by the CPUID instruction to determine if the MSRs and the RDTSC instruction are supported.

The initialize and start counters procedure sets the PerfEvtSel0 and/or PerfEvtSel1 MSRs for the events to be counted and the method used to count them and initializes the counter MSRs (PerfCtr0 and PerfCtr1) to starting counts. The stop counters procedure stops the performance counters (see Section 18.6.8.3, “Starting and Stopping the Performance-Monitoring Counters”).

The read counters procedure reads the values in the PerfCtr0 and PerfCtr1 MSRs, and a read time-stamp counter procedure reads the time-stamp counter. These procedures would be provided in lieu of enabling the RDTSC and RDPMC instructions that allow application code to read the counters.

18.6.8.5 Monitoring Counter Overflow

The P6 family processors provide the option of generating a local APIC interrupt when a performance-monitoring counter overflows. This mechanism is enabled by setting the interrupt enable flag in either the PerfEvtSel0 or the PerfEvtSel1 MSR. The primary use of this option is for statistical performance sampling.

To use this option, the operating system should do the following things on the processor for which performance events are required to be monitored:

- Provide an interrupt vector for handling the counter-overflow interrupt.
- Initialize the APIC PERF local vector entry to enable handling of performance-monitor counter overflow events.
- Provide an entry in the IDT that points to a stub exception handler that returns without executing any instructions.
- Provide an event monitor driver that provides the actual interrupt handler and modifies the reserved IDT entry to point to its interrupt routine.

When interrupted by a counter overflow, the interrupt handler needs to perform the following actions:

- Save the instruction pointer (EIP register), code-segment selector, TSS segment selector, counter values and other relevant information at the time of the interrupt.
- Reset the counter to its initial setting and return from the interrupt.

An event monitor application utility or another application program can read the information collected for analysis of the performance of the profiled application.

18.6.9 Performance Monitoring (Pentium Processors)

The Pentium processor provides two 40-bit performance counters, which can be used to count events or measure duration. The counters are supported by three MSRs: the control and event select MSR (CESR) and the performance counter MSRs (CTR0 and CTR1). These can be read from and written to using the RDMSR and WRMSR instructions, respectively. They can be accessed using these instructions only when operating at privilege level 0.

Each counter has an associated external pin (PM0/BP0 and PM1/BP1), which can be used to indicate the state of the counter to external hardware.

NOTES

The CESR, CTR0, and CTR1 MSRs and the events listed in Table 19-41 are model-specific for the Pentium processor.

The performance-monitoring events listed in Chapter 19 are intended to be used as guides for performance tuning. Counter values reported are not guaranteed to be accurate and should be used as a relative guide for tuning. Known discrepancies are documented where applicable.

18.6.9.1 Control and Event Select Register (CESR)

The 32-bit control and event select MSR (CESR) controls the operation of performance-monitoring counters CTR0 and CTR1 and the associated pins (see Figure 18-62). To control each counter, the CESR register contains a 6-bit event select field (ES0 and ES1), a pin control flag (PC0 and PC1), and a 3-bit counter control field (CC0 and CC1). The functions of these fields are as follows:

- **ES0 and ES1 (event select) fields (bits 0-5, bits 16-21)** — Selects (by entering an event code in the field) up to two events to be monitored. See Table 19-41 for a list of available event codes.

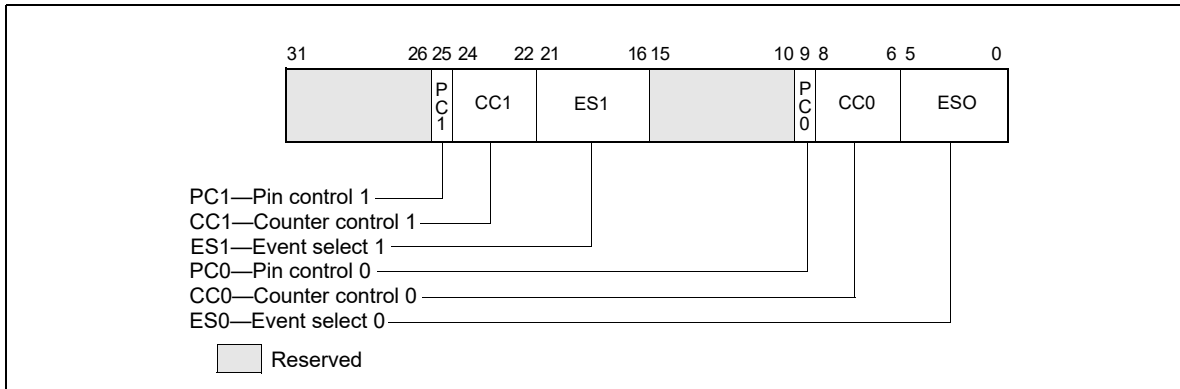


Figure 18-62. CESR MSR (Pentium Processor Only)

- **CC0 and CC1 (counter control) fields (bits 6-8, bits 22-24)** — Controls the operation of the counter. Control codes are as follows:

- 000 — Count nothing (counter disabled).
- 001 — Count the selected event while CPL is 0, 1, or 2.
- 010 — Count the selected event while CPL is 3.
- 011 — Count the selected event regardless of CPL.
- 100 — Count nothing (counter disabled).
- 101 — Count clocks (duration) while CPL is 0, 1, or 2.
- 110 — Count clocks (duration) while CPL is 3.
- 111 — Count clocks (duration) regardless of CPL.

The highest order bit selects between counting events and counting clocks (duration); the middle bit enables counting when the CPL is 3; and the low-order bit enables counting when the CPL is 0, 1, or 2.

- **PC0 and PC1 (pin control) flags (bits 9, 25)** — Selects the function of the external performance-monitoring counter pin (PM0/BP0 and PM1/BP1). Setting one of these flags to 1 causes the processor to assert its associated pin when the counter has overflowed; setting the flag to 0 causes the pin to be asserted when the counter has been incremented. These flags permit the pins to be individually programmed to indicate the overflow or incremented condition. The external signalling of the event on the pins will lag the internal event by a few clocks as the signals are latched and buffered.

While a counter need not be stopped to sample its contents, it must be stopped and cleared or preset before switching to a new event. It is not possible to set one counter separately. If only one event needs to be changed, the CESR register must be read, the appropriate bits modified, and all bits must then be written back to CESR. At reset, all bits in the CESR register are cleared.

18.6.9.2 Use of the Performance-Monitoring Pins

When performance-monitor pins PM0/BP0 and/or PM1/BP1 are configured to indicate when the performance-monitor counter has incremented and an "occurrence event" is being counted, the associated pin is asserted (high) each time the event occurs. When a "duration event" is being counted, the associated PM pin is asserted for the

entire duration of the event. When the performance-monitor pins are configured to indicate when the counter has overflowed, the associated PM pin is asserted when the counter has overflowed.

When the PM0/BP0 and/or PM1/BP1 pins are configured to signal that a counter has incremented, it should be noted that although the counters may increment by 1 or 2 in a single clock, the pins can only indicate that the event occurred. Moreover, since the internal clock frequency may be higher than the external clock frequency, a single external clock may correspond to multiple internal clocks.

A “count up to” function may be provided when the event pin is programmed to signal an overflow of the counter. Because the counters are 40 bits, a carry out of bit 39 indicates an overflow. A counter may be preset to a specific value less than $2^{40} - 1$. After the counter has been enabled and the prescribed number of events has transpired, the counter will overflow.

Approximately 5 clocks later, the overflow is indicated externally and appropriate action, such as signaling an interrupt, may then be taken.

The PM0/BP0 and PM1/BP1 pins also serve to indicate breakpoint matches during in-circuit emulation, during which time the counter increment or overflow function of these pins is not available. After RESET, the PM0/BP0 and PM1/BP1 pins are configured for performance monitoring, however a hardware debugger may reconfigure these pins to indicate breakpoint matches.

18.6.9.3 Events Counted

Events that performance-monitoring counters can be set to count and record (using CTR0 and CTR1) are divided in two categories: occurrence and duration:

- **Occurrence events** — Counts are incremented each time an event takes place. If PM0/BP0 or PM1/BP1 pins are used to indicate when a counter increments, the pins are asserted each clock counters increment. But if an event happens twice in one clock, the counter increments by 2 (the pins are asserted only once).
- **Duration events** — Counters increment the total number of clocks that the condition is true. When used to indicate when counters increment, PM0/BP0 and/or PM1/BP1 pins are asserted for the duration.

18.7 COUNTING CLOCKS

The count of cycles, also known as clockticks, forms the basis for measuring how long a program takes to execute. Clockticks are also used as part of efficiency ratios like cycles per instruction (CPI). Processor clocks may stop ticking under circumstances like the following:

- The processor is halted when there is nothing for the CPU to do. For example, the processor may halt to save power while the computer is servicing an I/O request. When Intel Hyper-Threading Technology is enabled, both logical processors must be halted for performance-monitoring counters to be powered down.
- The processor is asleep as a result of being halted or because of a power-management scheme. There are different levels of sleep. In the some deep sleep levels, the time-stamp counter stops counting.

In addition, processor core clocks may undergo transitions at different ratios relative to the processor’s bus clock frequency. Some of the situations that can cause processor core clock to undergo frequency transitions include:

- TM2 transitions.
- Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology transitions (P-state transitions).

For Intel processors that support TM2, the processor core clocks may operate at a frequency that differs from the Processor Base frequency (as indicated by processor frequency information reported by CPUID instruction). See Section 18.7.2 for more detail.

Due to the above considerations there are several important clocks referenced in this manual:

- **Base Clock** — The frequency of this clock is the frequency of the processor when the processor is not in turbo mode, and not being throttled via Intel SpeedStep.
- **Maximum Clock** — This is the maximum frequency of the processor when turbo mode is at the highest point.
- **Bus Clock** — These clockticks increment at a fixed frequency and help coordinate the bus on some systems.

- **Core Crystal Clock** — This is a clock that runs at fixed frequency; it coordinates the clocks on all packages across the system.
- **Non-halted Clockticks** — Measures clock cycles in which the specified logical processor is not halted and is not in any power-saving state. When Intel Hyper-Threading Technology is enabled, ticks can be measured on a per-logical-processor basis. There are also performance events on dual-core processors that measure clockticks per logical processor when the processor is not halted.
- **Non-sleep Clockticks** — Measures clock cycles in which the specified physical processor is not in a sleep mode or in a power-saving state. These ticks cannot be measured on a logical-processor basis.
- **Time-stamp Counter** — See Section 17.17, “Time-Stamp Counter”.
- **Reference Clockticks** — TM2 or Enhanced Intel SpeedStep technology are two examples of processor features that can cause processor core clockticks to represent non-uniform tick intervals due to change of bus ratios. Performance events that counts clockticks of a constant reference frequency was introduced Intel Core Duo and Intel Core Solo processors. The mechanism is further enhanced on processors based on Intel Core microarchitecture.

Some processor models permit clock cycles to be measured when the physical processor is not in deep sleep (by using the time-stamp counter and the RDTSC instruction). Note that such ticks cannot be measured on a per-logical-processor basis. See Section 17.17, “Time-Stamp Counter,” for detail on processor capabilities.

The first two methods use performance counters and can be set up to cause an interrupt upon overflow (for sampling). They may also be useful where it is easier for a tool to read a performance counter than to use a time stamp counter (the timestamp counter is accessed using the RDTSC instruction).

For applications with a significant amount of I/O, there are two ratios of interest:

- **Non-halted CPI** — Non-halted clockticks/instructions retired measures the CPI for phases where the CPU was being used. This ratio can be measured on a logical-processor basis when Intel Hyper-Threading Technology is enabled.
- **Nominal CPI** — Time-stamp counter ticks/instructions retired measures the CPI over the duration of a program, including those periods when the machine halts while waiting for I/O.

18.7.1 Non-Halted Reference Clockticks

Software can use UnHalted Reference Cycles on either a general purpose performance counter using event mask 0x3C and umask 0x01 or on fixed function performance counter 2 to count at a constant rate. These events count at a consistent rate irrespective of P-state, TM2, or frequency transitions that may occur to the processor. The UnHalted Reference Cycles event may count differently on the general purpose event and fixed counter.

18.7.2 Cycle Counting and Opportunistic Processor Operation

As a result of the state transitions due to opportunistic processor performance operation (see Chapter 14, “Power and Thermal Management”), a logical processor or a processor core can operate at frequency different from the Processor Base frequency.

The following items are expected to hold true irrespective of when opportunistic processor operation causes state transitions:

- The time stamp counter operates at a fixed-rate frequency of the processor.
- The IA32_MPERF counter increments at a fixed frequency irrespective of any transitions caused by opportunistic processor operation.
- The IA32_FIXED_CTR2 counter increments at the same TSC frequency irrespective of any transitions caused by opportunistic processor operation.
- The Local APIC timer operation is unaffected by opportunistic processor operation.
- The TSC, IA32_MPERF, and IA32_FIXED_CTR2 operate at close to the maximum non-turbo frequency, which is equal to the product of scalable bus frequency and maximum non-turbo ratio.

18.7.3 Determining the Processor Base Frequency

For Intel processors in which the nominal core crystal clock frequency is enumerated in CPUID.15H.ECX and the core crystal clock ratio is encoded in CPUID.15H (see Table 3-8 “Information Returned by CPUID Instruction”), the nominal TSC frequency can be determined by using the following equation:

$$\text{Nominal TSC frequency} = (\text{CPUID.15H.ECX}[31:0] * \text{CPUID.15H.EBX}[31:0]) \div \text{CPUID.15H.EAX}[31:0]$$

For Intel processors in which CPUID.15H.EBX[31:0] ÷ CPUID.0x15.EAX[31:0] is enumerated but CPUID.15H.ECX is not enumerated, Table 18-75 can be used to look up the nominal core crystal clock frequency.

Table 18-75. Nominal Core Crystal Clock Frequency

Processor Families/Processor Number Series ¹	Nominal Core Crystal Clock Frequency
Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family with CPUID signature 06_55H.	25 MHz
6th and 7th generation Intel® Core™ processors and Intel® Xeon® W Processor Family.	24 MHz
Next Generation Intel® Atom™ processors based on Goldmont Microarchitecture with CPUID signature 06_5CH (does not include Intel Xeon processors).	19.2 MHz

NOTES:

1. For any processor in which CPUID.15H is enumerated and MSR_PLATFORM_INFO[15:8] (which gives the scalable bus frequency) is available, a more accurate frequency can be obtained by using CPUID.15H.

18.7.3.1 For Intel® Processors Based on Microarchitecture Code Name Sandy Bridge, Ivy Bridge, Haswell and Broadwell

The scalable bus frequency is encoded in the bit field MSR_PLATFORM_INFO[15:8] and the nominal TSC frequency can be determined by multiplying this number by a bus speed of 100 MHz.

18.7.3.2 For Intel® Processors Based on Microarchitecture Code Name Nehalem

The scalable bus frequency is encoded in the bit field MSR_PLATFORM_INFO[15:8] and the nominal TSC frequency can be determined by multiplying this number by a bus speed of 133.33 MHz.

18.7.3.3 For Intel® Atom™ Processors Based on the Silvermont Microarchitecture (Including Intel Processors Based on Airmont Microarchitecture)

The scalable bus frequency is encoded in the bit field MSR_PLATFORM_INFO[15:8] and the nominal TSC frequency can be determined by multiplying this number by the scalable bus frequency. The scalable bus frequency is encoded in the bit field MSR_FSB_FREQ[2:0] for Intel Atom processors based on the Silvermont microarchitecture, and in bit field MSR_FSB_FREQ[3:0] for processors based on the Airmont microarchitecture; see Chapter 2, “Model-Specific Registers (MSRs)” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 4*.

18.7.3.4 For Intel® Core™ 2 Processor Family and for Intel® Xeon® Processors Based on Intel Core Microarchitecture

For processors based on Intel Core microarchitecture, the scalable bus frequency is encoded in the bit field MSR_FSB_FREQ[2:0] at (0CDH), see Chapter 2, “Model-Specific Registers (MSRs)” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 4*. The maximum resolved bus ratio can be read from the following bit field:

- If XE operation is disabled, the maximum resolved bus ratio can be read in MSR_PLATFORM_ID[12:8]. It corresponds to the Processor Base frequency.
- IF XE operation is enabled, the maximum resolved bus ratio is given in MSR_PERF_STATUS[44:40], it corresponds to the maximum XE operation frequency configured by BIOS.

XE operation of an Intel 64 processor is implementation specific. XE operation can be enabled only by BIOS. If MSR_PERF_STATUS[31] is set, XE operation is enabled. The MSR_PERF_STATUS[31] field is read-only.

18.8 IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES MSR ENUMERATION

The layout of IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES MSR is shown in Figure 18-63, it provides enumeration of a variety of interfaces:

- IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES.LBR_FMT[bits 5:0]: encodes the LBR format, details are described in Section 17.4.8.1.
- IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES.PEBSTrap[6]: Trap/Fault-like indicator of PEBS recording assist, see Section 18.6.2.4.2.
- IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES.PEBSArchRegs[7]: Indicator of PEBS assist save architectural registers, see Section 18.6.2.4.2.
- IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES.PEBS_FMT[bits 11:8]: Specifies the encoding of the layout of PEBS records, see Section 18.6.2.4.2.
- IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES.FREEZE_WHILE_SMM[12]: Indicates IA32_DEBUGCTL.FREEZE_WHILE_SMM is supported if 1, see Section 18.8.1.
- IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES.FULL_WRITE[13]: Indicates the processor supports IA32_A_PMCx interface for updating bits 32 and above of IA32_PMCx, see Section 18.2.5.

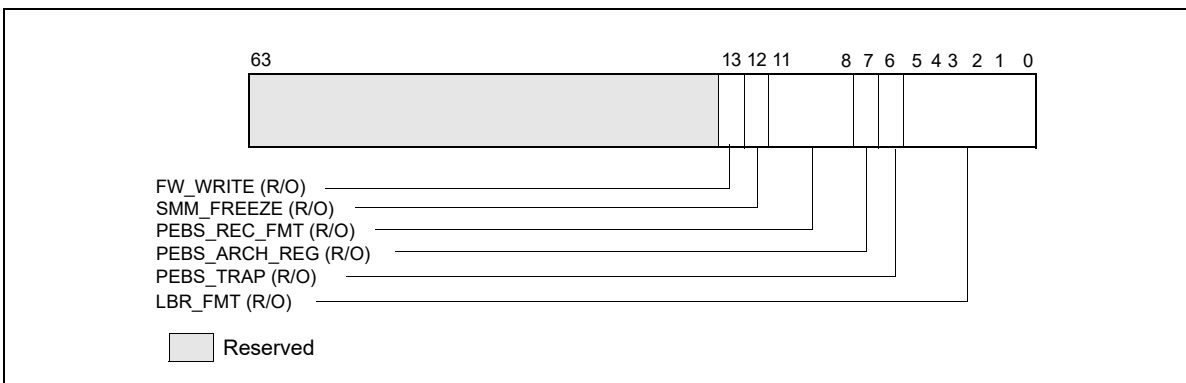


Figure 18-63. Layout of IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES MSR

18.8.1 Filtering of SMM Handler Overhead

When performance monitoring facilities and/or branch profiling facilities (see Section 17.5, “Last Branch, Interrupt, and Exception Recording (Intel® Core™ 2 Duo and Intel® Atom™ Processors)”) are enabled, these facilities capture event counts, branch records and branch trace messages occurring in a logical processor. The occurrence of interrupts, instruction streams due to various interrupt handlers all contribute to the results recorded by these facilities.

If CPUID.01H:ECX.PDCM[bit 15] is 1, the processor supports the IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES MSR. If IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES.FREEZE_WHILE_SMM[Bit 12] is 1, the processor supports the ability for system software using performance monitoring and/or branch profiling facilities to filter out the effects of servicing system management interrupts.

If the FREEZE_WHILE_SMM capability is enabled on a logical processor and after an SMI is delivered, the processor will clear all the enable bits of IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL, save a copy of the content of IA32_DEBUGCTL and disable LBR, BTF, TR, and BTS fields of IA32_DEBUGCTL before transferring control to the SMI handler.

The enable bits of IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL will be set to 1, the saved copy of IA32_DEBUGCTL prior to SMI delivery will be restored, after the SMI handler issues RSM to complete its servicing.

It is the responsibility of the SMM code to ensure the state of the performance monitoring and branch profiling facilities are preserved upon entry or until prior to exiting the SMM. If any of this state is modified due to actions by the SMM code, the SMM code is required to restore such state to the values present at entry to the SMM handler.

System software is allowed to set IA32_DEBUGCTL.FREEZE_WHILE_SMM[bit 14] to 1 only supported as indicated by IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES.FREEZE_WHILE_SMM[Bit 12] reporting 1.

12. Updates to Chapter 24, Volume 3B

Change bars show changes to Chapter 24 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3B: System Programming Guide, Part 2*.

Changes to this chapter: Update to bit 28 (Enable ENCLV exiting) in the "Definitions of Secondary Processor-Based VM-Execution Controls" table. Updated description of bit 16 in "Format of Exit Reason" table. Several additional minor updates throughout chapter.

24.1 OVERVIEW

A logical processor uses **virtual-machine control data structures (VMCSs)** while it is in VMX operation. These manage transitions into and out of VMX non-root operation (VM entries and VM exits) as well as processor behavior in VMX non-root operation. This structure is manipulated by the new instructions VMCLEAR, VMPTRLD, VMREAD, and VMWRITE.

A VMM can use a different VMCS for each virtual machine that it supports. For a virtual machine with multiple logical processors (virtual processors), the VMM can use a different VMCS for each virtual processor.

A logical processor associates a region in memory with each VMCS. This region is called the **VMCS region**.¹ Software references a specific VMCS using the 64-bit physical address of the region (a **VMCS pointer**). VMCS pointers must be aligned on a 4-KByte boundary (bits 11:0 must be zero). These pointers must not set bits beyond the processor's physical-address width.^{2,3}

A logical processor may maintain a number of VMCSs that are **active**. The processor may optimize VMX operation by maintaining the state of an active VMCS in memory, on the processor, or both. At any given time, at most one of the active VMCSs is the **current** VMCS. (This document frequently uses the term "the VMCS" to refer to the current VMCS.) The VMLAUNCH, VMREAD, VMRESUME, and VMWRITE instructions operate only on the current VMCS.

The following items describe how a logical processor determines which VMCSs are active and which is current:

- The memory operand of the VMPTRLD instruction is the address of a VMCS. After execution of the instruction, that VMCS is both active and current on the logical processor. Any other VMCS that had been active remains so, but no other VMCS is current.
- The VMCS link pointer field in the current VMCS (see Section 24.4.2) is itself the address of a VMCS. If VM entry is performed successfully with the 1-setting of the "VMCS shadowing" VM-execution control, the VMCS referenced by the VMCS link pointer field becomes active on the logical processor. The identity of the current VMCS does not change.
- The memory operand of the VMCLEAR instruction is also the address of a VMCS. After execution of the instruction, that VMCS is neither active nor current on the logical processor. If the VMCS had been current on the logical processor, the logical processor no longer has a current VMCS.

The VMPTRST instruction stores the address of the logical processor's current VMCS into a specified memory location (it stores the value FFFFFFFF_FFFFFFFFH if there is no current VMCS).

The **launch state** of a VMCS determines which VM-entry instruction should be used with that VMCS: the VMLAUNCH instruction requires a VMCS whose launch state is "clear"; the VMRESUME instruction requires a VMCS whose launch state is "launched". A logical processor maintains a VMCS's launch state in the corresponding VMCS region. The following items describe how a logical processor manages the launch state of a VMCS:

- If the launch state of the current VMCS is "clear", successful execution of the VMLAUNCH instruction changes the launch state to "launched".
- The memory operand of the VMCLEAR instruction is the address of a VMCS. After execution of the instruction, the launch state of that VMCS is "clear".
- There are no other ways to modify the launch state of a VMCS (it cannot be modified using VMWRITE) and there is no direct way to discover it (it cannot be read using VMREAD).

1. The amount of memory required for a VMCS region is at most 4 KBytes. The exact size is implementation specific and can be determined by consulting the VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_BASIC to determine the size of the VMCS region (see Appendix A.1).

2. Software can determine a processor's physical-address width by executing CPUID with 80000008H in EAX. The physical-address width is returned in bits 7:0 of EAX.

3. If IA32_VMX_BASIC[48] is read as 1, these pointers must not set any bits in the range 63:32; see Appendix A.1.

Figure 24-1 illustrates the different states of a VMCS. It uses "X" to refer to the VMCS and "Y" to refer to any other VMCS. Thus: "VMPTRLD X" always makes X current and active; "VMPTRLD Y" always makes X not current (because it makes Y current); VMLAUNCH makes the launch state of X "launched" if X was current and its launch state was "clear"; and VMCLEAR X always makes X inactive and not current and makes its launch state "clear".

The figure does not illustrate operations that do not modify the VMCS state relative to these parameters (e.g., execution of VMPTRLD X when X is already current). Note that VMCLEAR X makes X "inactive, not current, and clear," even if X's current state is not defined (e.g., even if X has not yet been initialized). See Section 24.11.3.

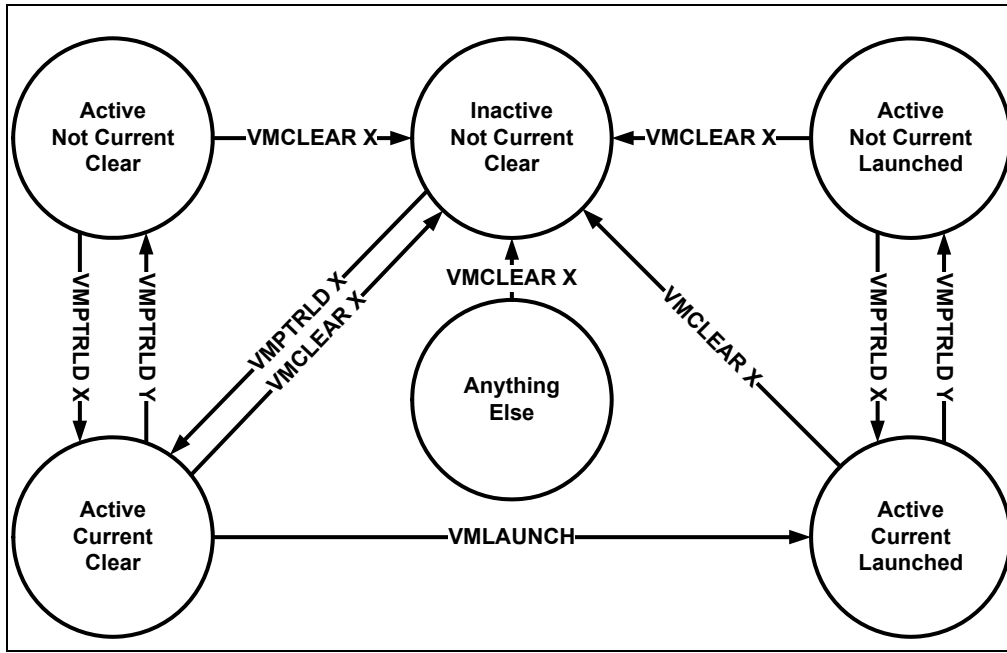


Figure 24-1. States of VMCS X

Because a shadow VMCS (see Section 24.10) cannot be used for VM entry, the launch state of a shadow VMCS is not meaningful. Figure 24-1 does not illustrate all the ways in which a shadow VMCS may be made active.

24.2 FORMAT OF THE VMCS REGION

A VMCS region comprises up to 4-KBytes.¹ The format of a VMCS region is given in Table 24-1.

Table 24-1. Format of the VMCS Region

Byte Offset	Contents
0	Bits 30:0: VMCS revision identifier Bit 31: shadow-VMCS indicator (see Section 24.10)
4	VMX-abort indicator
8	VMCS data (implementation-specific format)

The first 4 bytes of the VMCS region contain the **VMCS revision identifier** at bits 30:0.² Processors that maintain VMCS data in different formats (see below) use different VMCS revision identifiers. These identifiers enable soft-

1. The exact size is implementation specific and can be determined by consulting the VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_BASIC to determine the size of the VMCS region (see Appendix A.1).

ware to avoid using a VMCS region formatted for one processor on a processor that uses a different format.¹ Bit 31 of this 4-byte region indicates whether the VMCS is a shadow VMCS (see Section 24.10).

Software should write the VMCS revision identifier to the VMCS region before using that region for a VMCS. The VMCS revision identifier is never written by the processor; VMPTRLD fails if its operand references a VMCS region whose VMCS revision identifier differs from that used by the processor. (VMPTRLD also fails if the shadow-VMCS indicator is 1 and the processor does not support the 1-setting of the “VMCS shadowing” VM-execution control; see Section 24.6.2.) Software can discover the VMCS revision identifier that a processor uses by reading the VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_BASIC (see Appendix A.1).

Software should clear or set the shadow-VMCS indicator depending on whether the VMCS is to be an ordinary VMCS or a shadow VMCS (see Section 24.10). VMPTRLD fails if the shadow-VMCS indicator is set and the processor does not support the 1-setting of the “VMCS shadowing” VM-execution control. Software can discover support for this setting by reading the VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_PROCBASED_CTL2 (see Appendix A.3.3).

The next 4 bytes of the VMCS region are used for the **VMX-abort indicator**. The contents of these bits do not control processor operation in any way. A logical processor writes a non-zero value into these bits if a VMX abort occurs (see Section 27.7). Software may also write into this field.

The remainder of the VMCS region is used for **VMCS data** (those parts of the VMCS that control VMX non-root operation and the VMX transitions). The format of these data is implementation-specific. VMCS data are discussed in Section 24.3 through Section 24.9. To ensure proper behavior in VMX operation, software should maintain the VMCS region and related structures (enumerated in Section 24.11.4) in writeback cacheable memory. Future implementations may allow or require a different memory type². Software should consult the VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_BASIC (see Appendix A.1).

24.3 ORGANIZATION OF VMCS DATA

The VMCS data are organized into six logical groups:

- **Guest-state area.** Processor state is saved into the guest-state area on VM exits and loaded from there on VM entries.
- **Host-state area.** Processor state is loaded from the host-state area on VM exits.
- **VM-execution control fields.** These fields control processor behavior in VMX non-root operation. They determine in part the causes of VM exits.
- **VM-exit control fields.** These fields control VM exits.
- **VM-entry control fields.** These fields control VM entries.
- **VM-exit information fields.** These fields receive information on VM exits and describe the cause and the nature of VM exits. On some processors, these fields are read-only.³

The VM-execution control fields, the VM-exit control fields, and the VM-entry control fields are sometimes referred to collectively as VMX controls.

2. Earlier versions of this manual specified that the VMCS revision identifier was a 32-bit field. For all processors produced prior to this change, bit 31 of the VMCS revision identifier was 0.

1. Logical processors that use the same VMCS revision identifier use the same size for VMCS regions.

2. Alternatively, software may map any of these regions or structures with the UC memory type. Doing so is strongly discouraged unless necessary as it will cause the performance of transitions using those structures to suffer significantly. In addition, the processor will continue to use the memory type reported in the VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_BASIC with exceptions noted in Appendix A.1.

3. Software can discover whether these fields can be written by reading the VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_MISC (see Appendix A.6).

24.4 GUEST-STATE AREA

This section describes fields contained in the guest-state area of the VMCS. VM entries load processor state from these fields and VM exits store processor state into these fields. See Section 26.3.2 and Section 27.3 for details.

24.4.1 Guest Register State

The following fields in the guest-state area correspond to processor registers:

- Control registers CR0, CR3, and CR4 (64 bits each; 32 bits on processors that do not support Intel 64 architecture).
- Debug register DR7 (64 bits; 32 bits on processors that do not support Intel 64 architecture).
- RSP, RIP, and RFLAGS (64 bits each; 32 bits on processors that do not support Intel 64 architecture).¹
- The following fields for each of the registers CS, SS, DS, ES, FS, GS, LDTR, and TR:
 - Selector (16 bits).
 - Base address (64 bits; 32 bits on processors that do not support Intel 64 architecture). The base-address fields for CS, SS, DS, and ES have only 32 architecturally-defined bits; nevertheless, the corresponding VMCS fields have 64 bits on processors that support Intel 64 architecture.
 - Segment limit (32 bits). The limit field is always a measure in bytes.
 - Access rights (32 bits). The format of this field is given in Table 24-2 and detailed as follows:
 - The low 16 bits correspond to bits 23:8 of the upper 32 bits of a 64-bit segment descriptor. While bits 19:16 of code-segment and data-segment descriptors correspond to the upper 4 bits of the segment limit, the corresponding bits (bits 11:8) are reserved in this VMCS field.
 - Bit 16 indicates an **unusable segment**. Attempts to use such a segment fault except in 64-bit mode. In general, a segment register is unusable if it has been loaded with a null selector.²
 - Bits 31:17 are reserved.

Table 24-2. Format of Access Rights

Bit Position(s)	Field
3:0	Segment type
4	S — Descriptor type (0 = system; 1 = code or data)
6:5	DPL — Descriptor privilege level
7	P — Segment present
11:8	Reserved
12	AVL — Available for use by system software

1. This chapter uses the notation RAX, RIP, RSP, RFLAGS, etc. for processor registers because most processors that support VMX operation also support Intel 64 architecture. For processors that do not support Intel 64 architecture, this notation refers to the 32-bit forms of those registers (EAX, EIP, ESP, EFLAGS, etc.). In a few places, notation such as EAX is used to refer specifically to lower 32 bits of the indicated register.

2. There are a few exceptions to this statement. For example, a segment with a non-null selector may be unusable following a task switch that fails after its commit point; see “Interrupt 10—Invalid TSS Exception (#TS)” in Section 6.14, “Exception and Interrupt Handling in 64-bit Mode,” of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*. In contrast, the TR register is usable after processor reset despite having a null selector; see Table 10-1 in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

Table 24-2. Format of Access Rights (Contd.)

Bit Position(s)	Field
13	Reserved (except for CS) L — 64-bit mode active (for CS only)
14	D/B — Default operation size (0 = 16-bit segment; 1 = 32-bit segment)
15	G — Granularity
16	Segment unusable (0 = usable; 1 = unusable)
31:17	Reserved

The base address, segment limit, and access rights compose the “hidden” part (or “descriptor cache”) of each segment register. These data are included in the VMCS because it is possible for a segment register’s descriptor cache to be inconsistent with the segment descriptor in memory (in the GDT or the LDT) referenced by the segment register’s selector.

The value of the DPL field for SS is always equal to the logical processor’s current privilege level (CPL).¹

On some processors, executions of VMWRITE ignore attempts to write non-zero values to any of bits 11:8 or bits 31:17. On such processors, VMREAD always returns 0 for those bits, and VM entry treats those bits as if they were all 0 (see Section 26.3.1.2).

- The following fields for each of the registers GDTR and IDTR:
 - Base address (64 bits; 32 bits on processors that do not support Intel 64 architecture).
 - Limit (32 bits). The limit fields contain 32 bits even though these fields are specified as only 16 bits in the architecture.
- The following MSRs:
 - IA32_DEBUGCTL (64 bits)
 - IA32_SYSENTER_CS (32 bits)
 - IA32_SYSENTER_ESP and IA32_SYSENTER_EIP (64 bits; 32 bits on processors that do not support Intel 64 architecture)
 - IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL (64 bits). This field is supported only on processors that support the 1-setting of the “load IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL” VM-entry control.
 - IA32_PAT (64 bits). This field is supported only on processors that support either the 1-setting of the “load IA32_PAT” VM-entry control or that of the “save IA32_PAT” VM-exit control.
 - IA32_EFER (64 bits). This field is supported only on processors that support either the 1-setting of the “load IA32_EFER” VM-entry control or that of the “save IA32_EFER” VM-exit control.
 - IA32_BNDCFGS (64 bits). This field is supported only on processors that support either the 1-setting of the “load IA32_BNDCFGS” VM-entry control or that of the “clear IA32_BNDCFGS” VM-exit control.
- The register SMBASE (32 bits). This register contains the base address of the logical processor’s SMRAM image.

1. In protected mode, CPL is also associated with the RPL field in the CS selector. However, the RPL fields are not meaningful in real-address mode or in virtual-8086 mode.

24.4.2 Guest Non-Register State

In addition to the register state described in Section 24.4.1, the guest-state area includes the following fields that characterize guest state but which do not correspond to processor registers:

- **Activity state** (32 bits). This field identifies the logical processor’s activity state. When a logical processor is executing instructions normally, it is in the **active state**. Execution of certain instructions and the occurrence of certain events may cause a logical processor to transition to an **inactive state** in which it ceases to execute instructions.

The following activity states are defined:¹

- 0: **Active**. The logical processor is executing instructions normally.
- 1: **HLT**. The logical processor is inactive because it executed the HLT instruction.
- 2: **Shutdown**. The logical processor is inactive because it incurred a **triple fault**² or some other serious error.
- 3: **Wait-for-SIPI**. The logical processor is inactive because it is waiting for a startup-IPI (SIPI).

Future processors may include support for other activity states. Software should read the VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_MISC (see Appendix A.6) to determine what activity states are supported.

- **Interruptibility state** (32 bits). The IA-32 architecture includes features that permit certain events to be blocked for a period of time. This field contains information about such blocking. Details and the format of this field are given in Table 24-3.

Table 24-3. Format of Interruptibility State

Bit Position(s)	Bit Name	Notes
0	Blocking by STI	See the “STI—Set Interrupt Flag” section in Chapter 4 of the <i>Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2B</i> . Execution of STI with RFLAGS.IF = 0 blocks maskable interrupts on the instruction boundary following its execution. ¹ Setting this bit indicates that this blocking is in effect.
1	Blocking by MOV SS	See Section 6.8.3, “Masking Exceptions and Interrupts When Switching Stacks,” in the <i>Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A</i> . Execution of a MOV to SS or a POP to SS blocks or suppresses certain debug exceptions as well as interrupts (maskable and nonmaskable) on the instruction boundary following its execution. Setting this bit indicates that this blocking is in effect. ² This document uses the term “blocking by MOV SS,” but it applies equally to POP SS.
2	Blocking by SMI	See Section 34.2, “System Management Interrupt (SMI).” System-management interrupts (SMIs) are disabled while the processor is in system-management mode (SMM). Setting this bit indicates that blocking of SMIs is in effect.
3	Blocking by NMI	See Section 6.7.1, “Handling Multiple NMIs,” in the <i>Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A</i> and Section 34.8, “NMI Handling While in SMM.” Delivery of a non-maskable interrupt (NMI) or a system-management interrupt (SMI) blocks subsequent NMIs until the next execution of IRET. See Section 25.3 for how this behavior of IRET may change in VMX non-root operation. Setting this bit indicates that blocking of NMIs is in effect. Clearing this bit does not imply that NMIs are not (temporarily) blocked for other reasons. If the “virtual NMIs” VM-execution control (see Section 24.6.1) is 1, this bit does not control the blocking of NMIs. Instead, it refers to “virtual-NMI blocking” (the fact that guest software is not ready for an NMI).

1. Execution of the MWAIT instruction may put a logical processor into an inactive state. However, this VMCS field never reflects this state. See Section 27.1.

2. A triple fault occurs when a logical processor encounters an exception while attempting to deliver a double fault.

Table 24-3. Format of Interruptibility State (Contd.)

Bit Position(s)	Bit Name	Notes
4	Enclave interruption	A VM exit saves this bit as 1 to indicate that the VM exit was incident to enclave mode.
31:5	Reserved	VM entry will fail if these bits are not 0. See Section 26.3.1.5.

NOTES:

1. Nonmaskable interrupts and system-management interrupts may also be inhibited on the instruction boundary following such an execution of STI.
 2. System-management interrupts may also be inhibited on the instruction boundary following such an execution of MOV or POP.
- **Pending debug exceptions** (64 bits; 32 bits on processors that do not support Intel 64 architecture). IA-32 processors may recognize one or more debug exceptions without immediately delivering them.¹ This field contains information about such exceptions. This field is described in Table 24-4.

Table 24-4. Format of Pending-Debug-Exceptions

Bit Position(s)	Bit Name	Notes
3:0	B3 - B0	When set, each of these bits indicates that the corresponding breakpoint condition was met. Any of these bits may be set even if the corresponding enabling bit in DR7 is not set.
11:4	Reserved	VM entry fails if these bits are not 0. See Section 26.3.1.5.
12	Enabled breakpoint	When set, this bit indicates that at least one data or I/O breakpoint was met and was enabled in DR7.
13	Reserved	VM entry fails if this bit is not 0. See Section 26.3.1.5.
14	BS	When set, this bit indicates that a debug exception would have been triggered by single-step execution mode.
15	Reserved	VM entry fails if this bit is not 0. See Section 26.3.1.5.
16	RTM	When set, this bit indicates that a debug exception (#DB) or a breakpoint exception (#BP) occurred inside an RTM region while advanced debugging of RTM transactional regions was enabled (see Section 16.3.7, "RTM-Enabled Debugger Support," of <i>Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 1</i>). ¹
63:17	Reserved	VM entry fails if these bits are not 0. See Section 26.3.1.5. Bits 63:32 exist only on processors that support Intel 64 architecture.

NOTES:

1. In general, the format of this field matches that of DR6. However, DR6 **clears** bit 16 to indicate an RTM-related exception, while this field **sets** the bit to indicate that condition.
- **VMCS link pointer** (64 bits). If the "VMCS shadowing" VM-execution control is 1, the VMREAD and VMWRITE instructions access the VMCS referenced by this pointer (see Section 24.10). Otherwise, software should set this field to FFFFFFFF_FFFFFFFFH to avoid VM-entry failures (see Section 26.3.1.5).

1. For example, execution of a MOV to SS or a POP to SS may inhibit some debug exceptions for one instruction. See Section 6.8.3 of *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3A*. In addition, certain events incident to an instruction (for example, an INIT signal) may take priority over debug traps generated by that instruction. See Table 6-2 in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3A*.

- **VMX-preemption timer value** (32 bits). This field is supported only on processors that support the 1-setting of the “activate VMX-preemption timer” VM-execution control. This field contains the value that the VMX-preemption timer will use following the next VM entry with that setting. See Section 25.5.1 and Section 26.6.4.
- **Page-directory-pointer-table entries** (PDPTEs; 64 bits each). These four (4) fields (PDPTE0, PDPTE1, PDPTE2, and PDPTE3) are supported only on processors that support the 1-setting of the “enable EPT” VM-execution control. They correspond to the PDPTEs referenced by CR3 when PAE paging is in use (see Section 4.4 in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*). They are used only if the “enable EPT” VM-execution control is 1.
- **Guest interrupt status** (16 bits). This field is supported only on processors that support the 1-setting of the “virtual-interrupt delivery” VM-execution control. It characterizes part of the guest’s virtual-APIC state and does not correspond to any processor or APIC registers. It comprises two 8-bit subfields:
 - **Requesting virtual interrupt (RVI)**. This is the low byte of the guest interrupt status. The processor treats this value as the vector of the highest priority virtual interrupt that is requesting service. (The value 0 implies that there is no such interrupt.)
 - **Servicing virtual interrupt (SVI)**. This is the high byte of the guest interrupt status. The processor treats this value as the vector of the highest priority virtual interrupt that is in service. (The value 0 implies that there is no such interrupt.)
 See Chapter 29 for more information on the use of this field.
- **PML index** (16 bits). This field is supported only on processors that support the 1-setting of the “enable PML” VM-execution control. It contains the logical index of the next entry in the page-modification log. Because the page-modification log comprises 512 entries, the PML index is typically a value in the range 0–511. Details of the page-modification log and use of the PML index are given in Section 28.2.5.

24.5 HOST-STATE AREA

This section describes fields contained in the host-state area of the VMCS. As noted earlier, processor state is loaded from these fields on every VM exit (see Section 27.5).

All fields in the host-state area correspond to processor registers:

- CR0, CR3, and CR4 (64 bits each; 32 bits on processors that do not support Intel 64 architecture).
- RSP and RIP (64 bits each; 32 bits on processors that do not support Intel 64 architecture).
- Selector fields (16 bits each) for the segment registers CS, SS, DS, ES, FS, GS, and TR. There is no field in the host-state area for the LDTR selector.
- Base-address fields for FS, GS, TR, GDTR, and IDTR (64 bits each; 32 bits on processors that do not support Intel 64 architecture).
- The following MSRs:
 - IA32_SYSENTER_CS (32 bits)
 - IA32_SYSENTER_ESP and IA32_SYSENTER_EIP (64 bits; 32 bits on processors that do not support Intel 64 architecture).
 - IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL (64 bits). This field is supported only on processors that support the 1-setting of the “load IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL” VM-exit control.
 - IA32_PAT (64 bits). This field is supported only on processors that support the 1-setting of the “load IA32_PAT” VM-exit control.
 - IA32_EFER (64 bits). This field is supported only on processors that support the 1-setting of the “load IA32_EFER” VM-exit control.

In addition to the state identified here, some processor state components are loaded with fixed values on every VM exit; there are no fields corresponding to these components in the host-state area. See Section 27.5 for details of how state is loaded on VM exits.

24.6 VM-EXECUTION CONTROL FIELDS

The VM-execution control fields govern VMX non-root operation. These are described in Section 24.6.1 through Section 24.6.8.

24.6.1 Pin-Based VM-Execution Controls

The pin-based VM-execution controls constitute a 32-bit vector that governs the handling of asynchronous events (for example: interrupts).¹ Table 24-5 lists the controls. See Chapter 27 for how these controls affect processor behavior in VMX non-root operation.

Table 24-5. Definitions of Pin-Based VM-Execution Controls

Bit Position(s)	Name	Description
0	External-interrupt exiting	If this control is 1, external interrupts cause VM exits. Otherwise, they are delivered normally through the guest interrupt-descriptor table (IDT). If this control is 1, the value of RFLAGS.IF does not affect interrupt blocking.
3	NMI exiting	If this control is 1, non-maskable interrupts (NMIs) cause VM exits. Otherwise, they are delivered normally using descriptor 2 of the IDT. This control also determines interactions between IRET and blocking by NMI (see Section 25.3).
5	Virtual NMIs	If this control is 1, NMIs are never blocked and the “blocking by NMI” bit (bit 3) in the interruptibility-state field indicates “virtual-NMI blocking” (see Table 24-3). This control also interacts with the “NMI-window exiting” VM-execution control (see Section 24.6.2).
6	Activate VMX-preemption timer	If this control is 1, the VMX-preemption timer counts down in VMX non-root operation; see Section 25.5.1. A VM exit occurs when the timer counts down to zero; see Section 25.2.
7	Process posted interrupts	If this control is 1, the processor treats interrupts with the posted-interrupt notification vector (see Section 24.6.8) specially, updating the virtual-APIC page with posted-interrupt requests (see Section 29.6).

All other bits in this field are reserved, some to 0 and some to 1. Software should consult the VMX capability MSRs IA32_VMX_PINBASED_CTLs and IA32_VMX_TRUE_PINBASED_CTLs (see Appendix A.3.1) to determine how to set reserved bits. Failure to set reserved bits properly causes subsequent VM entries to fail (see Section 26.2.1.1).

The first processors to support the virtual-machine extensions supported only the 1-settings of bits 1, 2, and 4. The VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_PINBASED_CTLs will always report that these bits must be 1. Logical processors that support the 0-settings of any of these bits will support the VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_TRUE_PINBASED_CTLs MSR, and software should consult this MSR to discover support for the 0-settings of these bits. Software that is not aware of the functionality of any one of these bits should set that bit to 1.

24.6.2 Processor-Based VM-Execution Controls

The processor-based VM-execution controls constitute two 32-bit vectors that govern the handling of synchronous events, mainly those caused by the execution of specific instructions.² These are the **primary processor-based VM-execution controls** and the **secondary processor-based VM-execution controls**.

Table 24-6 lists the primary processor-based VM-execution controls. See Chapter 25 for more details of how these controls affect processor behavior in VMX non-root operation.

1. Some asynchronous events cause VM exits regardless of the settings of the pin-based VM-execution controls (see Section 25.2).
2. Some instructions cause VM exits regardless of the settings of the processor-based VM-execution controls (see Section 25.1.2), as do task switches (see Section 25.2).

Table 24-6. Definitions of Primary Processor-Based VM-Execution Controls

Bit Position(s)	Name	Description
2	Interrupt-window exiting	If this control is 1, a VM exit occurs at the beginning of any instruction if RFLAGS.IF = 1 and there are no other blocking of interrupts (see Section 24.4.2).
3	Use TSC offsetting	This control determines whether executions of RDTSC, executions of RDTSCP, and executions of RDMSR that read from the IA32_TIME_STAMP_COUNTER MSR return a value modified by the TSC offset field (see Section 24.6.5 and Section 25.3).
7	HLT exiting	This control determines whether executions of HLT cause VM exits.
9	INVLPG exiting	This determines whether executions of INVLPG cause VM exits.
10	MWAIT exiting	This control determines whether executions of MWAIT cause VM exits.
11	RDPMC exiting	This control determines whether executions of RDPMC cause VM exits.
12	RDTSC exiting	This control determines whether executions of RDTSC and RDTSCP cause VM exits.
15	CR3-load exiting	In conjunction with the CR3-target controls (see Section 24.6.7), this control determines whether executions of MOV to CR3 cause VM exits. See Section 25.1.3. The first processors to support the virtual-machine extensions supported only the 1-setting of this control.
16	CR3-store exiting	This control determines whether executions of MOV from CR3 cause VM exits. The first processors to support the virtual-machine extensions supported only the 1-setting of this control.
19	CR8-load exiting	This control determines whether executions of MOV to CR8 cause VM exits.
20	CR8-store exiting	This control determines whether executions of MOV from CR8 cause VM exits.
21	Use TPR shadow	Setting this control to 1 enables TPR virtualization and other APIC-virtualization features. See Chapter 29.
22	NMI-window exiting	If this control is 1, a VM exit occurs at the beginning of any instruction if there is no virtual-NMI blocking (see Section 24.4.2).
23	MOV-DR exiting	This control determines whether executions of MOV DR cause VM exits.
24	Unconditional I/O exiting	This control determines whether executions of I/O instructions (IN, INS/INSB/INSW/INSD, OUT, and OUTS/OUTSB/OUTSW/OUTSD) cause VM exits.
25	Use I/O bitmaps	This control determines whether I/O bitmaps are used to restrict executions of I/O instructions (see Section 24.6.4 and Section 25.1.3). For this control, “0” means “do not use I/O bitmaps” and “1” means “use I/O bitmaps.” If the I/O bitmaps are used, the setting of the “unconditional I/O exiting” control is ignored.
27	Monitor trap flag	If this control is 1, the monitor trap flag debugging feature is enabled. See Section 25.5.2.
28	Use MSR bitmaps	This control determines whether MSR bitmaps are used to control execution of the RDMSR and WRMSR instructions (see Section 24.6.9 and Section 25.1.3). For this control, “0” means “do not use MSR bitmaps” and “1” means “use MSR bitmaps.” If the MSR bitmaps are not used, all executions of the RDMSR and WRMSR instructions cause VM exits.
29	MONITOR exiting	This control determines whether executions of MONITOR cause VM exits.
30	PAUSE exiting	This control determines whether executions of PAUSE cause VM exits.
31	Activate secondary controls	This control determines whether the secondary processor-based VM-execution controls are used. If this control is 0, the logical processor operates as if all the secondary processor-based VM-execution controls were also 0.

All other bits in this field are reserved, some to 0 and some to 1. Software should consult the VMX capability MSRs IA32_VMX_PROCBASED_CTLs and IA32_VMX_TRUE_PROCBASED_CTLs (see Appendix A.3.2) to determine how to set reserved bits. Failure to set reserved bits properly causes subsequent VM entries to fail (see Section 26.2.1.1).

The first processors to support the virtual-machine extensions supported only the 1-settings of bits 1, 4–6, 8, 13–16, and 26. The VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_PROCBASED_CTLs will always report that these bits must be 1. Logical processors that support the 0-settings of any of these bits will support the VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_TRUE_PROCBASED_CTLs MSR, and software should consult this MSR to discover support for the 0-settings of these bits. Software that is not aware of the functionality of any one of these bits should set that bit to 1.

Bit 31 of the primary processor-based VM-execution controls determines whether the secondary processor-based VM-execution controls are used. If that bit is 0, VM entry and VMX non-root operation function as if all the secondary processor-based VM-execution controls were 0. Processors that support only the 0-setting of bit 31 of the primary processor-based VM-execution controls do not support the secondary processor-based VM-execution controls.

Table 24-7 lists the secondary processor-based VM-execution controls. See Chapter 25 for more details of how these controls affect processor behavior in VMX non-root operation.

Table 24-7. Definitions of Secondary Processor-Based VM-Execution Controls

Bit Position(s)	Name	Description
0	Virtualize APIC accesses	If this control is 1, the logical processor treats specially accesses to the page with the APIC-access address. See Section 29.4.
1	Enable EPT	If this control is 1, extended page tables (EPT) are enabled. See Section 28.2.
2	Descriptor-table exiting	This control determines whether executions of LGDT, LIDT, LLDT, LTR, SGDT, SIDT, SLDT, and STR cause VM exits.
3	Enable RDTSCP	If this control is 0, any execution of RDTSCP causes an invalid-opcode exception (#UD).
4	Virtualize x2APIC mode	If this control is 1, the logical processor treats specially RDMSR and WRMSR to APIC MSRs (in the range 800H–8FFH). See Section 29.5.
5	Enable VPID	If this control is 1, cached translations of linear addresses are associated with a virtual-processor identifier (VPID). See Section 28.1.
6	WBINVD exiting	This control determines whether executions of WBINVD cause VM exits.
7	Unrestricted guest	This control determines whether guest software may run in unpagged protected mode or in real-address mode.
8	APIC-register virtualization	If this control is 1, the logical processor virtualizes certain APIC accesses. See Section 29.4 and Section 29.5.
9	Virtual-interrupt delivery	This controls enables the evaluation and delivery of pending virtual interrupts as well as the emulation of writes to the APIC registers that control interrupt prioritization.
10	PAUSE-loop exiting	This control determines whether a series of executions of PAUSE can cause a VM exit (see Section 24.6.13 and Section 25.1.3).
11	RDRAND exiting	This control determines whether executions of RDRAND cause VM exits.
12	Enable INVPCID	If this control is 0, any execution of INVPCID causes a #UD.
13	Enable VM functions	Setting this control to 1 enables use of the VMFUNC instruction in VMX non-root operation. See Section 25.5.5.
14	VMCS shadowing	If this control is 1, executions of VMREAD and VMWRITE in VMX non-root operation may access a shadow VMCS (instead of causing VM exits). See Section 24.10 and Section 30.3.
15	Enable ENCLS exiting	If this control is 1, executions of ENCLS consult the ENCLS-exiting bitmap to determine whether the instruction causes a VM exit. See Section 24.6.16 and Section 25.1.3.
16	RDSEED exiting	This control determines whether executions of RDSEED cause VM exits.
17	Enable PML	If this control is 1, an access to a guest-physical address that sets an EPT dirty bit first adds an entry to the page-modification log. See Section 28.2.5.

Table 24-7. Definitions of Secondary Processor-Based VM-Execution Controls (Contd.)

Bit Position(s)	Name	Description
18	EPT-violation #VE	If this control is 1, EPT violations may cause virtualization exceptions (#VE) instead of VM exits. See Section 25.5.6.
19	Conceal VMX from PT	If this control is 1, Intel Processor Trace suppresses from PIPs an indication that the processor was in VMX non-root operation and omits a VMCS packet from any PSB+ produced in VMX non-root operation (see Chapter 35).
20	Enable XSAVES/XRSTORS	If this control is 0, any execution of XSAVES or XRSTORS causes a #UD.
22	Mode-based execute control for EPT	If this control is 1, EPT execute permissions are based on whether the linear address being accessed is supervisor mode or user mode. See Chapter 28.
25	Use TSC scaling	This control determines whether executions of RDTSC, executions of RDTSCP, and executions of RDMSR that read from the IA32_TIME_STAMP_COUNTER MSR return a value modified by the TSC multiplier field (see Section 24.6.5 and Section 25.3).
28	Enable ENCLV exiting	If this control is 1, executions of ENCLV consult the ENCLV-exiting bitmap to determine whether the instruction causes a VM exit. See Section 24.6.17 and Section 25.1.3.

All other bits in this field are reserved to 0. Software should consult the VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_PROCBASED_CTL2 (see Appendix A.3.3) to determine which bits may be set to 1. Failure to clear reserved bits causes subsequent VM entries to fail (see Section 26.2.1.1).

24.6.3 Exception Bitmap

The **exception bitmap** is a 32-bit field that contains one bit for each exception. When an exception occurs, its vector is used to select a bit in this field. If the bit is 1, the exception causes a VM exit. If the bit is 0, the exception is delivered normally through the IDT, using the descriptor corresponding to the exception’s vector.

Whether a page fault (exception with vector 14) causes a VM exit is determined by bit 14 in the exception bitmap as well as the error code produced by the page fault and two 32-bit fields in the VMCS (the **page-fault error-code mask** and **page-fault error-code match**). See Section 25.2 for details.

24.6.4 I/O-Bitmap Addresses

The VM-execution control fields include the 64-bit physical addresses of **I/O bitmaps** A and B (each of which are 4 KBytes in size). I/O bitmap A contains one bit for each I/O port in the range 0000H through 7FFFH; I/O bitmap B contains bits for ports in the range 8000H through FFFFH.

A logical processor uses these bitmaps if and only if the “use I/O bitmaps” control is 1. If the bitmaps are used, execution of an I/O instruction causes a VM exit if any bit in the I/O bitmaps corresponding to a port it accesses is 1. See Section 25.1.3 for details. If the bitmaps are used, their addresses must be 4-KByte aligned.

24.6.5 Time-Stamp Counter Offset and Multiplier

The VM-execution control fields include a 64-bit **TSC-offset** field. If the “RDTSC exiting” control is 0 and the “use TSC offsetting” control is 1, this field controls executions of the RDTSC and RDTSCP instructions. It also controls executions of the RDMSR instruction that read from the IA32_TIME_STAMP_COUNTER MSR. For all of these, the value of the TSC offset is added to the value of the time-stamp counter, and the sum is returned to guest software in EDX:EAX.

Processors that support the 1-setting of the “use TSC scaling” control also support a 64-bit **TSC-multiplier** field. If this control is 1 (and the “RDTSC exiting” control is 0 and the “use TSC offsetting” control is 1), this field also affects the executions of the RDTSC, RDTSCP, and RDMSR instructions identified above. Specifically, the contents of the time-stamp counter is first multiplied by the TSC multiplier before adding the TSC offset.

See Chapter 27 for a detailed treatment of the behavior of RDTSC, RDTSCP, and RDMSR in VMX non-root operation.

24.6.6 Guest/Host Masks and Read Shadows for CR0 and CR4

VM-execution control fields include **guest/host masks** and **read shadows** for the CR0 and CR4 registers. These fields control executions of instructions that access those registers (including CLTS, LMSW, MOV CR, and SMSW). They are 64 bits on processors that support Intel 64 architecture and 32 bits on processors that do not.

In general, bits set to 1 in a guest/host mask correspond to bits “owned” by the host:

- Guest attempts to set them (using CLTS, LMSW, or MOV to CR) to values differing from the corresponding bits in the corresponding read shadow cause VM exits.
- Guest reads (using MOV from CR or SMSW) return values for these bits from the corresponding read shadow.

Bits cleared to 0 correspond to bits “owned” by the guest; guest attempts to modify them succeed and guest reads return values for these bits from the control register itself.

See Chapter 27 for details regarding how these fields affect VMX non-root operation.

24.6.7 CR3-Target Controls

The VM-execution control fields include a set of 4 **CR3-target values** and a **CR3-target count**. The CR3-target values each have 64 bits on processors that support Intel 64 architecture and 32 bits on processors that do not. The CR3-target count has 32 bits on all processors.

An execution of MOV to CR3 in VMX non-root operation does not cause a VM exit if its source operand matches one of these values. If the CR3-target count is n , only the first n CR3-target values are considered; if the CR3-target count is 0, MOV to CR3 always causes a VM exit.

There are no limitations on the values that can be written for the CR3-target values. VM entry fails (see Section 26.2) if the CR3-target count is greater than 4.

Future processors may support a different number of CR3-target values. Software should read the VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_MISC (see Appendix A.6) to determine the number of values supported.

24.6.8 Controls for APIC Virtualization

There are three mechanisms by which software accesses registers of the logical processor’s local APIC:

- If the local APIC is in xAPIC mode, it can perform memory-mapped accesses to addresses in the 4-KByte page referenced by the physical address in the IA32_APIC_BASE MSR (see Section 10.4.4, “Local APIC Status and Location” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A* and *Intel® 64 Architecture Processor Topology Enumeration*).¹
- If the local APIC is in x2APIC mode, it can access the local APIC’s registers using the RDMSR and WRMSR instructions (see *Intel® 64 Architecture Processor Topology Enumeration*).
- In 64-bit mode, it can access the local APIC’s task-priority register (TPR) using the MOV CR8 instruction.

There are five processor-based VM-execution controls (see Section 24.6.2) that control such accesses. There are “use TPR shadow”, “virtualize APIC accesses”, “virtualize x2APIC mode”, “virtual-interrupt delivery”, and “APIC-register virtualization”. These controls interact with the following fields:

- **APIC-access address** (64 bits). This field contains the physical address of the 4-KByte **APIC-access page**. If the “virtualize APIC accesses” VM-execution control is 1, access to this page may cause VM exits or be virtualized by the processor. See Section 29.4.
The APIC-access address exists only on processors that support the 1-setting of the “virtualize APIC accesses” VM-execution control.
- **Virtual-APIC address** (64 bits). This field contains the physical address of the 4-KByte **virtual-APIC page**. The processor uses the virtual-APIC page to virtualize certain accesses to APIC registers and to manage virtual interrupts; see Chapter 29.

1. If the local APIC does not support x2APIC mode, it is always in xAPIC mode.

Depending on the setting of the controls indicated earlier, the virtual-APIC page may be accessed by the following operations:

- The MOV CR8 instructions (see Section 29.3).
- Accesses to the APIC-access page if, in addition, the “virtualize APIC accesses” VM-execution control is 1 (see Section 29.4).
- The RDMSR and WRMSR instructions if, in addition, the value of ECX is in the range 800H–8FFH (indicating an APIC MSR) and the “virtualize x2APIC mode” VM-execution control is 1 (see Section 29.5).

If the “use TPR shadow” VM-execution control is 1, VM entry ensures that the virtual-APIC address is 4-KByte aligned. The virtual-APIC address exists only on processors that support the 1-setting of the “use TPR shadow” VM-execution control.

- **TPR threshold** (32 bits). Bits 3:0 of this field determine the threshold below which bits 7:4 of VTPR (see Section 29.1.1) cannot fall. If the “virtual-interrupt delivery” VM-execution control is 0, a VM exit occurs after an operation (e.g., an execution of MOV to CR8) that reduces the value of those bits below the TPR threshold. See Section 29.1.2.

The TPR threshold exists only on processors that support the 1-setting of the “use TPR shadow” VM-execution control.

- **EOI-exit bitmap** (4 fields; 64 bits each). These fields are supported only on processors that support the 1-setting of the “virtual-interrupt delivery” VM-execution control. They are used to determine which virtualized writes to the APIC’s EOI register cause VM exits:

- EOI_EXIT0 contains bits for vectors from 0 (bit 0) to 63 (bit 63).
- EOI_EXIT1 contains bits for vectors from 64 (bit 0) to 127 (bit 63).
- EOI_EXIT2 contains bits for vectors from 128 (bit 0) to 191 (bit 63).
- EOI_EXIT3 contains bits for vectors from 192 (bit 0) to 255 (bit 63).

See Section 29.1.4 for more information on the use of this field.

- **Posted-interrupt notification vector** (16 bits). This field is supported only on processors that support the 1-setting of the “process posted interrupts” VM-execution control. Its low 8 bits contain the interrupt vector that is used to notify a logical processor that virtual interrupts have been posted. See Section 29.6 for more information on the use of this field.
- **Posted-interrupt descriptor address** (64 bits). This field is supported only on processors that support the 1-setting of the “process posted interrupts” VM-execution control. It is the physical address of a 64-byte aligned posted interrupt descriptor. See Section 29.6 for more information on the use of this field.

24.6.9 MSR-Bitmap Address

On processors that support the 1-setting of the “use MSR bitmaps” VM-execution control, the VM-execution control fields include the 64-bit physical address of four contiguous **MSR bitmaps**, which are each 1-KByte in size. This field does not exist on processors that do not support the 1-setting of that control. The four bitmaps are:

- **Read bitmap for low MSRs** (located at the MSR-bitmap address). This contains one bit for each MSR address in the range 00000000H to 00001FFFH. The bit determines whether an execution of RDMSR applied to that MSR causes a VM exit.
- **Read bitmap for high MSRs** (located at the MSR-bitmap address plus 1024). This contains one bit for each MSR address in the range C0000000H to C0001FFFH. The bit determines whether an execution of RDMSR applied to that MSR causes a VM exit.
- **Write bitmap for low MSRs** (located at the MSR-bitmap address plus 2048). This contains one bit for each MSR address in the range 00000000H to 00001FFFH. The bit determines whether an execution of WRMSR applied to that MSR causes a VM exit.
- **Write bitmap for high MSRs** (located at the MSR-bitmap address plus 3072). This contains one bit for each MSR address in the range C0000000H to C0001FFFH. The bit determines whether an execution of WRMSR applied to that MSR causes a VM exit.

A logical processor uses these bitmaps if and only if the “use MSR bitmaps” control is 1. If the bitmaps are used, an execution of RDMSR or WRMSR causes a VM exit if the value of RCX is in neither of the ranges covered by the bitmaps or if the appropriate bit in the MSR bitmaps (corresponding to the instruction and the RCX value) is 1. See Section 25.1.3 for details. If the bitmaps are used, their address must be 4-KByte aligned.

24.6.10 Executive-VMCS Pointer

The executive-VMCS pointer is a 64-bit field used in the dual-monitor treatment of system-management interrupts (SMIs) and system-management mode (SMM). SMM VM exits save this field as described in Section 34.15.2. VM entries that return from SMM use this field as described in Section 34.15.4.

24.6.11 Extended-Page-Table Pointer (EPTP)

The **extended-page-table pointer** (EPTP) contains the address of the base of EPT PML4 table (see Section 28.2.2), as well as other EPT configuration information. The format of this field is shown in Table 24-8.

Table 24-8. Format of Extended-Page-Table Pointer

Bit Position(s)	Field
2:0	EPT paging-structure memory type (see Section 28.2.6): 0 = Uncacheable (UC) 6 = Write-back (WB) Other values are reserved. ¹
5:3	This value is 1 less than the EPT page-walk length (see Section 28.2.2)
6	Setting this control to 1 enables accessed and dirty flags for EPT (see Section 28.2.4) ²
11:7	Reserved
N-1:12	Bits N-1:12 of the physical address of the 4-KByte aligned EPT PML4 table ³
63:N	Reserved

NOTES:

1. Software should read the VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_EPT_VPID_CAP (see Appendix A.10) to determine what EPT paging-structure memory types are supported.
2. Not all processors support accessed and dirty flags for EPT. Software should read the VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_EPT_VPID_CAP (see Appendix A.10) to determine whether the processor supports this feature.
3. N is the physical-address width supported by the logical processor. Software can determine a processor’s physical-address width by executing CPUID with 80000008H in EAX. The physical-address width is returned in bits 7:0 of EAX.

The EPTP exists only on processors that support the 1-setting of the “enable EPT” VM-execution control.

24.6.12 Virtual-Processor Identifier (VPID)

The **virtual-processor identifier** (VPID) is a 16-bit field. It exists only on processors that support the 1-setting of the “enable VPID” VM-execution control. See Section 28.1 for details regarding the use of this field.

24.6.13 Controls for PAUSE-Loop Exiting

On processors that support the 1-setting of the “PAUSE-loop exiting” VM-execution control, the VM-execution control fields include the following 32-bit fields:

- **PLE_Gap.** Software can configure this field as an upper bound on the amount of time between two successive executions of PAUSE in a loop.
- **PLE_Window.** Software can configure this field as an upper bound on the amount of time a guest is allowed to execute in a PAUSE loop.

These fields measure time based on a counter that runs at the same rate as the timestamp counter (TSC). See Section 25.1.3 for more details regarding PAUSE-loop exiting.

24.6.14 VM-Function Controls

The **VM-function controls** constitute a 64-bit vector that governs use of the VMFUNC instruction in VMX non-root operation. This field is supported only on processors that support the 1-settings of both the “activate secondary controls” primary processor-based VM-execution control and the “enable VM functions” secondary processor-based VM-execution control.

Table 24-9 lists the VM-function controls. See Section 25.5.5 for more details of how these controls affect processor behavior in VMX non-root operation.

Table 24-9. Definitions of VM-Function Controls

Bit Position(s)	Name	Description
0	EPTP switching	The EPTP-switching VM function changes the EPT pointer to a value chosen from the EPTP list. See Section 25.5.5.3.

All other bits in this field are reserved to 0. Software should consult the VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_VMFUNC (see Appendix A.11) to determine which bits are reserved. Failure to clear reserved bits causes subsequent VM entries to fail (see Section 26.2.1.1).

Processors that support the 1-setting of the “EPTP switching” VM-function control also support a 64-bit field called the **EPTP-list address**. This field contains the physical address of the 4-KByte **EPTP list**. The EPTP list comprises 512 8-Byte entries (each an EPTP value) and is used by the EPTP-switching VM function (see Section 25.5.5.3).

24.6.15 VMCS Shadowing Bitmap Addresses

On processors that support the 1-setting of the “VMCS shadowing” VM-execution control, the VM-execution control fields include the 64-bit physical addresses of the **VMREAD bitmap** and the **VMWRITE bitmap**. Each bitmap is 4 KBytes in size and thus contains 32 KBits. The addresses are the **VMREAD-bitmap address** and the **VMWRITE-bitmap address**.

If the “VMCS shadowing” VM-execution control is 1, executions of VMREAD and VMWRITE may consult these bitmaps (see Section 24.10 and Section 30.3).

24.6.16 ENCLS-Exiting Bitmap

The **ENCLS-exiting bitmap** is a 64-bit field. If the “enable ENCLS exiting” VM-execution control is 1, execution of ENCLS causes a VM exit if the bit in this field corresponding to the value of EAX is 1. If the bit is 0, the instruction executes normally. See Section 25.1.3 for more information.

24.6.17 ENCLV-Exiting Bitmap

The **ENCLV-exiting bitmap** is a 64-bit field. If the “enable ENCLV exiting” VM-execution control is 1, execution of ENCLV causes a VM exit if the bit in this field corresponding to the value of EAX is 1. If the bit is 0, the instruction executes normally. See Section 25.1.3 for more information.

24.6.18 Control Field for Page-Modification Logging

The **PML address** is a 64-bit field. It is the 4-KByte aligned address of the **page-modification log**. The page-modification log consists of 512 64-bit entries. It is used for the page-modification logging feature. Details of the page-modification logging are given in Section 28.2.5.

If the “enable PML” VM-execution control is 1, VM entry ensures that the PML address is 4-KByte aligned. The PML address exists only on processors that support the 1-setting of the “enable PML” VM-execution control.

24.6.19 Controls for Virtualization Exceptions

On processors that support the 1-setting of the “EPT-violation #VE” VM-execution control, the VM-execution control fields include the following:

- **Virtualization-exception information address** (64 bits). This field contains the physical address of the **virtualization-exception information area**. When a logical processor encounters a virtualization exception, it saves virtualization-exception information at the virtualization-exception information address; see Section 25.5.6.2.
- **EPTP index** (16 bits). When an EPT violation causes a virtualization exception, the processor writes the value of this field to the virtualization-exception information area. The EPTP-switching VM function updates this field (see Section 25.5.5.3).

24.6.20 XSS-Exiting Bitmap

On processors that support the 1-setting of the “enable XSAVES/XRSTORS” VM-execution control, the VM-execution control fields include a 64-bit **XSS-exiting bitmap**. If the “enable XSAVES/XRSTORS” VM-execution control is 1, executions of XSAVES and XRSTORS may consult this bitmap (see Section 25.1.3 and Section 25.3).

24.7 VM-EXIT CONTROL FIELDS

The VM-exit control fields govern the behavior of VM exits. They are discussed in Section 24.7.1 and Section 24.7.2.

24.7.1 VM-Exit Controls

The **VM-exit controls** constitute a 32-bit vector that governs the basic operation of VM exits. Table 24-10 lists the controls supported. See Chapter 27 for complete details of how these controls affect VM exits.

Table 24-10. Definitions of VM-Exit Controls

Bit Position(s)	Name	Description
2	Save debug controls	This control determines whether DR7 and the IA32_DEBUGCTL MSR are saved on VM exit. The first processors to support the virtual-machine extensions supported only the 1-setting of this control.
9	Host address-space size	On processors that support Intel 64 architecture, this control determines whether a logical processor is in 64-bit mode after the next VM exit. Its value is loaded into CS.L, IA32_EFER.LME, and IA32_EFER.LMA on every VM exit. ¹ This control must be 0 on processors that do not support Intel 64 architecture.
12	Load IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL	This control determines whether the IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL MSR is loaded on VM exit.

Table 24-10. Definitions of VM-Exit Controls (Contd.)

Bit Position(s)	Name	Description
15	Acknowledge interrupt on exit	This control affects VM exits due to external interrupts: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ If such a VM exit occurs and this control is 1, the logical processor acknowledges the interrupt controller, acquiring the interrupt's vector. The vector is stored in the VM-exit interruption-information field, which is marked valid. ▪ If such a VM exit occurs and this control is 0, the interrupt is not acknowledged and the VM-exit interruption-information field is marked invalid.
18	Save IA32_PAT	This control determines whether the IA32_PAT MSR is saved on VM exit.
19	Load IA32_PAT	This control determines whether the IA32_PAT MSR is loaded on VM exit.
20	Save IA32_EFER	This control determines whether the IA32_EFER MSR is saved on VM exit.
21	Load IA32_EFER	This control determines whether the IA32_EFER MSR is loaded on VM exit.
22	Save VMX-preemption timer value	This control determines whether the value of the VMX-preemption timer is saved on VM exit.
23	Clear IA32_BNDCFGS	This control determines whether the IA32_BNDCFGS MSR is cleared on VM exit.
24	Conceal VMX from PT	If this control is 1, Intel Processor Trace does not produce a paging information packet (PIP) on a VM exit or a VMCS packet on an SMM VM exit (see Chapter 35).

NOTES:

1. Since the Intel 64 architecture specifies that IA32_EFER.LMA is always set to the logical-AND of CRO.PG and IA32_EFER.LME, and since CRO.PG is always 1 in VMX root operation, IA32_EFER.LMA is always identical to IA32_EFER.LME in VMX root operation.

All other bits in this field are reserved, some to 0 and some to 1. Software should consult the VMX capability MSRs IA32_VMX_EXIT_CTLS and IA32_VMX_TRUE_EXIT_CTLS (see Appendix A.4) to determine how it should set the reserved bits. Failure to set reserved bits properly causes subsequent VM entries to fail (see Section 26.2.1.2).

The first processors to support the virtual-machine extensions supported only the 1-settings of bits 0–8, 10, 11, 13, 14, 16, and 17. The VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_EXIT_CTLS always reports that these bits must be 1. Logical processors that support the 0-settings of any of these bits will support the VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_TRUE_EXIT_CTLS MSR, and software should consult this MSR to discover support for the 0-settings of these bits. Software that is not aware of the functionality of any one of these bits should set that bit to 1.

24.7.2 VM-Exit Controls for MSRs

A VMM may specify lists of MSRs to be stored and loaded on VM exits. The following VM-exit control fields determine how MSRs are stored on VM exits:

- **VM-exit MSR-store count** (32 bits). This field specifies the number of MSRs to be stored on VM exit. It is recommended that this count not exceed 512.¹ Otherwise, unpredictable processor behavior (including a machine check) may result during VM exit.
- **VM-exit MSR-store address** (64 bits). This field contains the physical address of the VM-exit MSR-store area. The area is a table of entries, 16 bytes per entry, where the number of entries is given by the VM-exit MSR-store count. The format of each entry is given in Table 24-11. If the VM-exit MSR-store count is not zero, the address

1. Future implementations may allow more MSRs to be stored reliably. Software should consult the VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_MISC to determine the number supported (see Appendix A.6).

must be 16-byte aligned.

Table 24-11. Format of an MSR Entry

Bit Position(s)	Contents
31:0	MSR index
63:32	Reserved
127:64	MSR data

See Section 27.4 for how this area is used on VM exits.

The following VM-exit control fields determine how MSRs are loaded on VM exits:

- **VM-exit MSR-load count** (32 bits). This field contains the number of MSRs to be loaded on VM exit. It is recommended that this count not exceed 512. Otherwise, unpredictable processor behavior (including a machine check) may result during VM exit.¹
- **VM-exit MSR-load address** (64 bits). This field contains the physical address of the VM-exit MSR-load area. The area is a table of entries, 16 bytes per entry, where the number of entries is given by the VM-exit MSR-load count (see Table 24-11). If the VM-exit MSR-load count is not zero, the address must be 16-byte aligned.

See Section 27.6 for how this area is used on VM exits.

24.8 VM-ENTRY CONTROL FIELDS

The VM-entry control fields govern the behavior of VM entries. They are discussed in Sections 24.8.1 through 24.8.3.

24.8.1 VM-Entry Controls

The **VM-entry controls** constitute a 32-bit vector that governs the basic operation of VM entries. Table 24-12 lists the controls supported. See Chapter 24 for how these controls affect VM entries.

Table 24-12. Definitions of VM-Entry Controls

Bit Position(s)	Name	Description
2	Load debug controls	This control determines whether DR7 and the IA32_DEBUGCTL MSR are loaded on VM entry. The first processors to support the virtual-machine extensions supported only the 1-setting of this control.
9	IA-32e mode guest	On processors that support Intel 64 architecture, this control determines whether the logical processor is in IA-32e mode after VM entry. Its value is loaded into IA32_EFER.LMA as part of VM entry. ¹ This control must be 0 on processors that do not support Intel 64 architecture.
10	Entry to SMM	This control determines whether the logical processor is in system-management mode (SMM) after VM entry. This control must be 0 for any VM entry from outside SMM.
11	Deactivate dual-monitor treatment	If set to 1, the default treatment of SMIs and SMM is in effect after the VM entry (see Section 34.15.7). This control must be 0 for any VM entry from outside SMM.
13	Load IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL	This control determines whether the IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL MSR is loaded on VM entry.
14	Load IA32_PAT	This control determines whether the IA32_PAT MSR is loaded on VM entry.

1. Future implementations may allow more MSRs to be loaded reliably. Software should consult the VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_MISC to determine the number supported (see Appendix A.6).

Table 24-12. Definitions of VM-Entry Controls (Contd.)

Bit Position(s)	Name	Description
15	Load IA32_EFER	This control determines whether the IA32_EFER MSR is loaded on VM entry.
16	Load IA32_BNDCFGS	This control determines whether the IA32_BNDCFGS MSR is loaded on VM entry.
17	Conceal VMX from PT	If this control is 1, Intel Processor Trace does not produce a paging information packet (PIP) on a VM entry or a VMCS packet on a VM entry that returns from SMM (see Chapter 35).

NOTES:

1. Bit 5 of the IA32_VMX_MISC MSR is read as 1 on any logical processor that supports the 1-setting of the “unrestricted guest” VM-execution control. If it is read as 1, every VM exit stores the value of IA32_EFER.LMA into the “IA-32e mode guest” VM-entry control (see Section 27.2).

All other bits in this field are reserved, some to 0 and some to 1. Software should consult the VMX capability MSRs IA32_VMX_ENTRY_CTLS and IA32_VMX_TRUE_ENTRY_CTLS (see Appendix A.5) to determine how it should set the reserved bits. Failure to set reserved bits properly causes subsequent VM entries to fail (see Section 26.2.1.3).

The first processors to support the virtual-machine extensions supported only the 1-settings of bits 0–8 and 12. The VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_ENTRY_CTLS always reports that these bits must be 1. Logical processors that support the 0-settings of any of these bits will support the VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_TRUE_ENTRY_CTLS MSR, and software should consult this MSR to discover support for the 0-settings of these bits. Software that is not aware of the functionality of any one of these bits should set that bit to 1.

24.8.2 VM-Entry Controls for MSRs

A VMM may specify a list of MSRs to be loaded on VM entries. The following VM-entry control fields manage this functionality:

- **VM-entry MSR-load count** (32 bits). This field contains the number of MSRs to be loaded on VM entry. It is recommended that this count not exceed 512. Otherwise, unpredictable processor behavior (including a machine check) may result during VM entry.¹
- **VM-entry MSR-load address** (64 bits). This field contains the physical address of the VM-entry MSR-load area. The area is a table of entries, 16 bytes per entry, where the number of entries is given by the VM-entry MSR-load count. The format of entries is described in Table 24-11. If the VM-entry MSR-load count is not zero, the address must be 16-byte aligned.

See Section 26.4 for details of how this area is used on VM entries.

24.8.3 VM-Entry Controls for Event Injection

VM entry can be configured to conclude by delivering an event through the IDT (after all guest state and MSRs have been loaded). This process is called **event injection** and is controlled by the following three VM-entry control fields:

- **VM-entry interruption-information field** (32 bits). This field provides details about the event to be injected. Table 24-13 describes the field.

1. Future implementations may allow more MSRs to be loaded reliably. Software should consult the VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_MISC to determine the number supported (see Appendix A.6).

Table 24-13. Format of the VM-Entry Interruption-Information Field

Bit Position(s)	Content
7:0	Vector of interrupt or exception
10:8	Interruption type: 0: External interrupt 1: Reserved 2: Non-maskable interrupt (NMI) 3: Hardware exception (e.g., #PF) 4: Software interrupt (INT <i>n</i>) 5: Privileged software exception (INT1) 6: Software exception (INT3 or INTO) 7: Other event
11	Deliver error code (0 = do not deliver; 1 = deliver)
30:12	Reserved
31	Valid

- The **vector** (bits 7:0) determines which entry in the IDT is used or which other event is injected.
- The **interruption type** (bits 10:8) determines details of how the injection is performed. In general, a VMM should use the type hardware exception for all exceptions **other than** the following:
 - breakpoint exceptions (#BP; a VMM should use the type software exception);
 - overflow exceptions (#OF a VMM should use the use type software exception); and
 - those debug exceptions (#DB) that are generated by INT1 (a VMM should use the use type privileged software exception).¹

The type **other event** is used for injection of events that are not delivered through the IDT.²

- For exceptions, the **deliver-error-code bit** (bit 11) determines whether delivery pushes an error code on the guest stack.
- VM entry injects an event if and only if the **valid bit** (bit 31) is 1. The valid bit in this field is cleared on every VM exit (see Section 27.2).
- **VM-entry exception error code** (32 bits). This field is used if and only if the valid bit (bit 31) and the deliver-error-code bit (bit 11) are both set in the VM-entry interruption-information field.
- **VM-entry instruction length** (32 bits). For injection of events whose type is software interrupt, software exception, or privileged software exception, this field is used to determine the value of RIP that is pushed on the stack.

See Section 26.5 for details regarding the mechanics of event injection, including the use of the interruption type and the VM-entry instruction length.

VM exits clear the valid bit (bit 31) in the VM-entry interruption-information field.

24.9 VM-EXIT INFORMATION FIELDS

The VMCS contains a section of fields that contain information about the most recent VM exit.

On some processors, attempts to write to these fields with VMWRITE fail (see “VMWRITE—Write Field to Virtual-Machine Control Structure” in Chapter 30).³

-
1. The type hardware exception should be used for all other debug exceptions.
 2. INT1 and INT3 refer to the instructions with opcodes F1 and CC, respectively, and not to INT *n* with values 1 or 3 for *n*.
 3. Software can discover whether these fields can be written by reading the VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_MISC (see Appendix A.6).

24.9.1 Basic VM-Exit Information

The following VM-exit information fields provide basic information about a VM exit:

- **Exit reason** (32 bits). This field encodes the reason for the VM exit and has the structure given in Table 24-14.

Table 24-14. Format of Exit Reason

Bit Position(s)	Contents
15:0	Basic exit reason
16	Always cleared to 0
26:17	Reserved (cleared to 0)
27	A VM exit saves this bit as 1 to indicate that the VM exit was incident to enclave mode.
28	Pending MTF VM exit
29	VM exit from VMX root operation
30	Reserved (cleared to 0)
31	VM-entry failure (0 = true VM exit; 1 = VM-entry failure)

- Bits 15:0 provide basic information about the cause of the VM exit (if bit 31 is clear) or of the VM-entry failure (if bit 31 is set). Appendix C enumerates the basic exit reasons.
- Bit 16 is always cleared to 0.
- Bit 28 is set only by an SMM VM exit (see Section 34.15.2) that took priority over an MTF VM exit (see Section 25.5.2) that would have occurred had the SMM VM exit not occurred. See Section 34.15.2.3.
- Bit 29 is set if and only if the processor was in VMX root operation at the time the VM exit occurred. This can happen only for SMM VM exits. See Section 34.15.2.
- Because some VM-entry failures load processor state from the host-state area (see Section 26.7), software must be able to distinguish such cases from true VM exits. Bit 31 is used for that purpose.
- **Exit qualification** (64 bits; 32 bits on processors that do not support Intel 64 architecture). This field contains additional information about the cause of VM exits due to the following: debug exceptions; page-fault exceptions; start-up IPIs (SIPIs); task switches; INVEPT; INVLPG; INVVPID; LGDT; LIDT; LLDT; LTR; SGDT; SIDT; SLDT; STR; VMCLEAR; VMPTRLD; VMPTRST; VMREAD; VMWRITE; VMXON; XRSTORS; XSAVES; control-register accesses; MOV DR; I/O instructions; and MWAIT. The format of the field depends on the cause of the VM exit. See Section 27.2.1 for details.
- **Guest-linear address** (64 bits; 32 bits on processors that do not support Intel 64 architecture). This field is used in the following cases:
 - VM exits due to attempts to execute LMSW with a memory operand.
 - VM exits due to attempts to execute INS or OUTS.
 - VM exits due to system-management interrupts (SMIs) that arrive immediately after retirement of I/O instructions.
 - Certain VM exits due to EPT violations
 See Section 27.2.1 and Section 34.15.2.3 for details of when and how this field is used.
- **Guest-physical address** (64 bits). This field is used VM exits due to EPT violations and EPT misconfigurations. See Section 27.2.1 for details of when and how this field is used.

24.9.2 Information for VM Exits Due to Vectored Events

Event-specific information is provided for VM exits due to the following vectored events: exceptions (including those generated by the instructions INT3, INTO, INT1, BOUND, UD0, UD1, and UD2); external interrupts that occur

while the “acknowledge interrupt on exit” VM-exit control is 1; and non-maskable interrupts (NMIs). This information is provided in the following fields:

- **VM-exit interruption information** (32 bits). This field receives basic information associated with the event causing the VM exit. Table 24-15 describes this field.

Table 24-15. Format of the VM-Exit Interruption-Information Field

Bit Position(s)	Content
7:0	Vector of interrupt or exception
10:8	Interruption type: 0: External interrupt 1: Not used 2: Non-maskable interrupt (NMI) 3: Hardware exception 4: Not used 5: Privileged software exception 6: Software exception 7: Not used
11	Error code valid (0 = invalid; 1 = valid)
12	NMI unblocking due to IRET
30:13	Reserved (cleared to 0)
31	Valid

- **VM-exit interruption error code** (32 bits). For VM exits caused by hardware exceptions that would have delivered an error code on the stack, this field receives that error code.

Section 27.2.2 provides details of how these fields are saved on VM exits.

24.9.3 Information for VM Exits That Occur During Event Delivery

Additional information is provided for VM exits that occur during event delivery in VMX non-root operation.¹ This information is provided in the following fields:

- **IDT-vectoring information** (32 bits). This field receives basic information associated with the event that was being delivered when the VM exit occurred. Table 24-16 describes this field.

Table 24-16. Format of the IDT-Vectoring Information Field

Bit Position(s)	Content
7:0	Vector of interrupt or exception
10:8	Interruption type: 0: External interrupt 1: Not used 2: Non-maskable interrupt (NMI) 3: Hardware exception 4: Software interrupt 5: Privileged software exception 6: Software exception 7: Not used
11	Error code valid (0 = invalid; 1 = valid)
12	Undefined
30:13	Reserved (cleared to 0)

1. This includes cases in which the event delivery was caused by event injection as part of VM entry; see Section 26.5.1.2.

Table 24-16. Format of the IDT-Vectoring Information Field (Contd.)

Bit Position(s)	Content
31	Valid

- **IDT-vectoring error code** (32 bits). For VM exits that occur during delivery of hardware exceptions that would have delivered an error code on the stack, this field receives that error code.

See Section 27.2.3 provides details of how these fields are saved on VM exits.

24.9.4 Information for VM Exits Due to Instruction Execution

The following fields are used for VM exits caused by attempts to execute certain instructions in VMX non-root operation:

- **VM-exit instruction length** (32 bits). For VM exits resulting from instruction execution, this field receives the length in bytes of the instruction whose execution led to the VM exit.¹ See Section 27.2.4 for details of when and how this field is used.
- **VM-exit instruction information** (32 bits). This field is used for VM exits due to attempts to execute `INS`, `INVEPT`, `INVVPID`, `LIDT`, `LGDT`, `LLDT`, `LTR`, `OUTS`, `SIDT`, `SGDT`, `SLDT`, `STR`, `VMCLEAR`, `VMPTRLD`, `VMPTRST`, `VMREAD`, `VMWRITE`, or `VMXON`.² The format of the field depends on the cause of the VM exit. See Section 27.2.4 for details.

The following fields (64 bits each; 32 bits on processors that do not support Intel 64 architecture) are used only for VM exits due to SMIs that arrive immediately after retirement of I/O instructions. They provide information about that I/O instruction:

- **I/O RCX**. The value of RCX before the I/O instruction started.
- **I/O RSI**. The value of RSI before the I/O instruction started.
- **I/O RDI**. The value of RDI before the I/O instruction started.
- **I/O RIP**. The value of RIP before the I/O instruction started (the RIP that addressed the I/O instruction).

24.9.5 VM-Instruction Error Field

The 32-bit **VM-instruction error field** does not provide information about the most recent VM exit. In fact, it is not modified on VM exits. Instead, it provides information about errors encountered by a non-faulting execution of one of the VMX instructions.

24.10 VMCS TYPES: ORDINARY AND SHADOW

Every VMCS is either an **ordinary VMCS** or a **shadow VMCS**. A VMCS's type is determined by the shadow-VMCS indicator in the VMCS region (this is the value of bit 31 of the first 4 bytes of the VMCS region; see Table 24-1): 0 indicates an ordinary VMCS, while 1 indicates a shadow VMCS. Shadow VMCSs are supported only on processors that support the 1-setting of the "VMCS shadowing" VM-execution control (see Section 24.6.2).

A shadow VMCS differs from an ordinary VMCS in two ways:

- An ordinary VMCS can be used for VM entry but a shadow VMCS cannot. Attempts to perform VM entry when the current VMCS is a shadow VMCS fail (see Section 26.1).
- The `VMREAD` and `VMWRITE` instructions can be used in VMX non-root operation to access a shadow VMCS but not an ordinary VMCS. This fact results from the following:

1. This field is also used for VM exits that occur during the delivery of a software interrupt or software exception.
 2. Whether the processor provides this information on VM exits due to attempts to execute `INS` or `OUTS` can be determined by consulting the VMX capability MSR `IA32_VMX_BASIC` (see Appendix A.1).

- If the “VMCS shadowing” VM-execution control is 0, execution of the VMREAD and VMWRITE instructions in VMX non-root operation always cause VM exits (see Section 25.1.3).
- If the “VMCS shadowing” VM-execution control is 1, execution of the VMREAD and VMWRITE instructions in VMX non-root operation can access the VMCS referenced by the VMCS link pointer (see Section 30.3).
- If the “VMCS shadowing” VM-execution control is 1, VM entry ensures that any VMCS referenced by the VMCS link pointer is a shadow VMCS (see Section 26.3.1.5).

In VMX root operation, both types of VMCSs can be accessed with the VMREAD and VMWRITE instructions.

Software should not modify the shadow-VMCS indicator in the VMCS region of a VMCS that is active. Doing so may cause the VMCS to become corrupted (see Section 24.11.1). Before modifying the shadow-VMCS indicator, software should execute VMCLEAR for the VMCS to ensure that it is not active.

24.11 SOFTWARE USE OF THE VMCS AND RELATED STRUCTURES

This section details guidelines that software should observe when using a VMCS and related structures. It also provides descriptions of consequences for failing to follow guidelines.

24.11.1 Software Use of Virtual-Machine Control Structures

To ensure proper processor behavior, software should observe certain guidelines when using an active VMCS.

No VMCS should ever be active on more than one logical processor. If a VMCS is to be “migrated” from one logical processor to another, the first logical processor should execute VMCLEAR for the VMCS (to make it inactive on that logical processor and to ensure that all VMCS data are in memory) before the other logical processor executes VMPTRLD for the VMCS (to make it active on the second logical processor).¹ A VMCS that is made active on more than one logical processor may become **corrupted** (see below).

Software should not modify the shadow-VMCS indicator (see Table 24-1) in the VMCS region of a VMCS that is active. Doing so may cause the VMCS to become corrupted. Before modifying the shadow-VMCS indicator, software should execute VMCLEAR for the VMCS to ensure that it is not active.

Software should use the VMREAD and VMWRITE instructions to access the different fields in the current VMCS (see Section 24.11.2). Software should never access or modify the VMCS data of an active VMCS using ordinary memory operations, in part because the format used to store the VMCS data is implementation-specific and not architecturally defined, and also because a logical processor may maintain some VMCS data of an active VMCS on the processor and not in the VMCS region. The following items detail some of the hazards of accessing VMCS data using ordinary memory operations:

- Any data read from a VMCS with an ordinary memory read does not reliably reflect the state of the VMCS. Results may vary from time to time or from logical processor to logical processor.
- Writing to a VMCS with an ordinary memory write is not guaranteed to have a deterministic effect on the VMCS. Doing so may cause the VMCS to become corrupted (see below).

(Software can avoid these hazards by removing any linear-address mappings to a VMCS region before executing a VMPTRLD for that region and by not remapping it until after executing VMCLEAR for that region.)

If a logical processor leaves VMX operation, any VMCSs active on that logical processor may be corrupted (see below). To prevent such corruption of a VMCS that may be used either after a return to VMX operation or on another logical processor, software should execute VMCLEAR for that VMCS before executing the VMXOFF instruction or removing power from the processor (e.g., as part of a transition to the S3 and S4 power states).

This section has identified operations that may cause a VMCS to become corrupted. These operations may cause the VMCS’s data to become undefined. Behavior may be unpredictable if that VMCS used subsequently on any logical processor. The following items detail some hazards of VMCS corruption:

1. As noted in Section 24.1, execution of the VMPTRLD instruction makes a VMCS is active. In addition, VM entry makes active any shadow VMCS referenced by the VMCS link pointer in the current VMCS. If a shadow VMCS is made active by VM entry, it is necessary to execute VMCLEAR for that VMCS before allowing that VMCS to become active on another logical processor.

- VM entries may fail for unexplained reasons or may load undesired processor state.
- The processor may not correctly support VMX non-root operation as documented in Chapter 27 and may generate unexpected VM exits.
- VM exits may load undesired processor state, save incorrect state into the VMCS, or cause the logical processor to transition to a shutdown state.

24.11.2 VMREAD, VMWRITE, and Encodings of VMCS Fields

Every field of the VMCS is associated with a 32-bit value that is its **encoding**. The encoding is provided in an operand to VMREAD and VMWRITE when software wishes to read or write that field. These instructions fail if given, in 64-bit mode, an operand that sets an encoding bit beyond bit 32. See Chapter 30 for a description of these instructions.

The structure of the 32-bit encodings of the VMCS components is determined principally by the width of the fields and their function in the VMCS. See Table 24-17.

Table 24-17. Structure of VMCS Component Encoding

Bit Position(s)	Contents
0	Access type (0 = full; 1 = high); must be full for 16-bit, 32-bit, and natural-width fields
9:1	Index
11:10	Type: 0: control 1: VM-exit information 2: guest state 3: host state
12	Reserved (must be 0)
14:13	Width: 0: 16-bit 1: 64-bit 2: 32-bit 3: natural-width
31:15	Reserved (must be 0)

The following items detail the meaning of the bits in each encoding:

- **Field width.** Bits 14:13 encode the width of the field.
 - A value of 0 indicates a 16-bit field.
 - A value of 1 indicates a 64-bit field.
 - A value of 2 indicates a 32-bit field.
 - A value of 3 indicates a **natural-width** field. Such fields have 64 bits on processors that support Intel 64 architecture and 32 bits on processors that do not.

Fields whose encodings use value 1 are specially treated to allow 32-bit software access to all 64 bits of the field. Such access is allowed by defining, for each such field, an encoding that allows direct access to the high 32 bits of the field. See below.

- **Field type.** Bits 11:10 encode the type of VMCS field: control, guest-state, host-state, or VM-exit information. (The last category also includes the VM-instruction error field.)
- **Index.** Bits 9:1 distinguish components with the same field width and type.
- **Access type.** Bit 0 must be 0 for all fields except for 64-bit fields (those with field-width 1; see above). A VMREAD or VMWRITE using an encoding with this bit cleared to 0 accesses the entire field. For a 64-bit field

with field-width 1, a VMREAD or VMWRITE using an encoding with this bit set to 1 accesses only the high 32 bits of the field.

Appendix B gives the encodings of all fields in the VMCS.

The following describes the operation of VMREAD and VMWRITE based on processor mode, VMCS-field width, and access type:

- 16-bit fields:
 - A VMREAD returns the value of the field in bits 15:0 of the destination operand; other bits of the destination operand are cleared to 0.
 - A VMWRITE writes the value of bits 15:0 of the source operand into the VMCS field; other bits of the source operand are not used.
- 32-bit fields:
 - A VMREAD returns the value of the field in bits 31:0 of the destination operand; in 64-bit mode, bits 63:32 of the destination operand are cleared to 0.
 - A VMWRITE writes the value of bits 31:0 of the source operand into the VMCS field; in 64-bit mode, bits 63:32 of the source operand are not used.
- 64-bit fields and natural-width fields using the full access type outside IA-32e mode.
 - A VMREAD returns the value of bits 31:0 of the field in its destination operand; bits 63:32 of the field are ignored.
 - A VMWRITE writes the value of its source operand to bits 31:0 of the field and clears bits 63:32 of the field.
- 64-bit fields and natural-width fields using the full access type in 64-bit mode (only on processors that support Intel 64 architecture).
 - A VMREAD returns the value of the field in bits 63:0 of the destination operand
 - A VMWRITE writes the value of bits 63:0 of the source operand into the VMCS field.
- 64-bit fields using the high access type.
 - A VMREAD returns the value of bits 63:32 of the field in bits 31:0 of the destination operand; in 64-bit mode, bits 63:32 of the destination operand are cleared to 0.
 - A VMWRITE writes the value of bits 31:0 of the source operand to bits 63:32 of the field; in 64-bit mode, bits 63:32 of the source operand are not used.

Software seeking to read a 64-bit field outside IA-32e mode can use VMREAD with the full access type (reading bits 31:0 of the field) and VMREAD with the high access type (reading bits 63:32 of the field); the order of the two VMREAD executions is not important. Software seeking to modify a 64-bit field outside IA-32e mode should first use VMWRITE with the full access type (establishing bits 31:0 of the field while clearing bits 63:32) and then use VMWRITE with the high access type (establishing bits 63:32 of the field).

24.11.3 Initializing a VMCS

Software should initialize fields in a VMCS (using VMWRITE) before using the VMCS for VM entry. Failure to do so may result in unpredictable behavior; for example, a VM entry may fail for unexplained reasons, or a successful transition (VM entry or VM exit) may load processor state with unexpected values.

It is not necessary to initialize fields that the logical processor will not use. (For example, it is not necessary to initialize the MSR-bitmap address if the “use MSR bitmaps” VM-execution control is 0.)

A processor maintains some VMCS information that cannot be modified with the VMWRITE instruction; this includes a VMCS’s launch state (see Section 24.1). Such information may be stored in the VMCS data portion of a VMCS region. Because the format of this information is implementation-specific, there is no way for software to know, when it first allocates a region of memory for use as a VMCS region, how the processor will determine this information from the contents of the memory region.

In addition to its other functions, the VMCLEAR instruction initializes any implementation-specific information in the VMCS region referenced by its operand. To avoid the uncertainties of implementation-specific behavior, soft-

ware should execute VMCLEAR on a VMCS region before making the corresponding VMCS active with VMPTRLD for the first time. (Figure 24-1 illustrates how execution of VMCLEAR puts a VMCS into a well-defined state.)

The following software usage is consistent with these limitations:

- VMCLEAR should be executed for a VMCS before it is used for VM entry for the first time.
- VMLAUNCH should be used for the first VM entry using a VMCS after VMCLEAR has been executed for that VMCS.
- VMRESUME should be used for any subsequent VM entry using a VMCS (until the next execution of VMCLEAR for the VMCS).

It is expected that, in general, VMRESUME will have lower latency than VMLAUNCH. Since “migrating” a VMCS from one logical processor to another requires use of VMCLEAR (see Section 24.11.1), which sets the launch state of the VMCS to “clear”, such migration requires the next VM entry to be performed using VMLAUNCH. Software developers can avoid the performance cost of increased VM-entry latency by avoiding unnecessary migration of a VMCS from one logical processor to another.

24.11.4 Software Access to Related Structures

In addition to data in the VMCS region itself, VMX non-root operation can be controlled by data structures that are referenced by pointers in a VMCS (for example, the I/O bitmaps). While the pointers to these data structures are parts of the VMCS, the data structures themselves are not. They are not accessible using VMREAD and VMWRITE but by ordinary memory writes.

Software should ensure that each such data structure is modified only when no logical processor with a current VMCS that references it is in VMX non-root operation. Doing otherwise may lead to unpredictable behavior (including behaviors identified in Section 24.11.1).

24.11.5 VMXON Region

Before executing VMXON, software allocates a region of memory (called the VMXON region)¹ that the logical processor uses to support VMX operation. The physical address of this region (the VMXON pointer) is provided in an operand to VMXON. The VMXON pointer is subject to the limitations that apply to VMCS pointers:

- The VMXON pointer must be 4-KByte aligned (bits 11:0 must be zero).
- The VMXON pointer must not set any bits beyond the processor’s physical-address width.^{2,3}

Before executing VMXON, software should write the VMCS revision identifier (see Section 24.2) to the VMXON region. (Specifically, it should write the 31-bit VMCS revision identifier to bits 30:0 of the first 4 bytes of the VMXON region; bit 31 should be cleared to 0.) It need not initialize the VMXON region in any other way. Software should use a separate region for each logical processor and should not access or modify the VMXON region of a logical processor between execution of VMXON and VMXOFF on that logical processor. Doing otherwise may lead to unpredictable behavior (including behaviors identified in Section 24.11.1).

1. The amount of memory required for the VMXON region is the same as that required for a VMCS region. This size is implementation specific and can be determined by consulting the VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_BASIC (see Appendix A.1).

2. Software can determine a processor’s physical-address width by executing CPUID with 80000008H in EAX. The physical-address width is returned in bits 7:0 of EAX.

3. If IA32_VMX_BASIC[48] is read as 1, the VMXON pointer must not set any bits in the range 63:32; see Appendix A.1.

13. Updates to Chapter 25, Volume 3C

Change bars show changes to Chapter 25 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3C: System Programming Guide, Part 3*.

Changes to this chapter: Addition of ENCLV to section 25.1.3 "Instructions That Cause VM Exits Conditionally".

In a virtualized environment using VMX, the guest software stack typically runs on a logical processor in VMX non-root operation. This mode of operation is similar to that of ordinary processor operation outside of the virtualized environment. This chapter describes the differences between VMX non-root operation and ordinary processor operation with special attention to causes of VM exits (which bring a logical processor from VMX non-root operation to root operation). The differences between VMX non-root operation and ordinary processor operation are described in the following sections:

- Section 25.1, “Instructions That Cause VM Exits”
- Section 25.2, “Other Causes of VM Exits”
- Section 25.3, “Changes to Instruction Behavior in VMX Non-Root Operation”
- Section 25.4, “Other Changes in VMX Non-Root Operation”
- Section 25.5, “Features Specific to VMX Non-Root Operation”
- Section 25.6, “Unrestricted Guests”

Chapter 26, “VM Entries,” describes the data control structures that govern VMX non-root operation. Chapter 26, “VM Entries,” describes the operation of VM entries by which the processor transitions from VMX root operation to VMX non-root operation. Chapter 25, “VMX Non-Root Operation,” describes the operation of VM exits by which the processor transitions from VMX non-root operation to VMX root operation.

Chapter 28, “VMX Support for Address Translation,” describes two features that support address translation in VMX non-root operation. Chapter 29, “APIC Virtualization and Virtual Interrupts,” describes features that support virtualization of interrupts and the Advanced Programmable Interrupt Controller (APIC) in VMX non-root operation.

25.1 INSTRUCTIONS THAT CAUSE VM EXITS

Certain instructions may cause VM exits if executed in VMX non-root operation. Unless otherwise specified, such VM exits are “fault-like,” meaning that the instruction causing the VM exit does not execute and no processor state is updated by the instruction. Section 27.1 details architectural state in the context of a VM exit.

Section 25.1.1 defines the prioritization between faults and VM exits for instructions subject to both. Section 25.1.2 identifies instructions that cause VM exits whenever they are executed in VMX non-root operation (and thus can never be executed in VMX non-root operation). Section 25.1.3 identifies instructions that cause VM exits depending on the settings of certain VM-execution control fields (see Section 24.6).

25.1.1 Relative Priority of Faults and VM Exits

The following principles describe the ordering between existing faults and VM exits:

- Certain exceptions have priority over VM exits. These include invalid-opcode exceptions, faults based on privilege level,¹ and general-protection exceptions that are based on checking I/O permission bits in the task-state segment (TSS). For example, execution of RDMSR with CPL = 3 generates a general-protection exception and not a VM exit.²
- Faults incurred while fetching instruction operands have priority over VM exits that are conditioned based on the contents of those operands (see LMSW in Section 25.1.3).
- VM exits caused by execution of the INS and OUTS instructions (resulting either because the “unconditional I/O exiting” VM-execution control is 1 or because the “use I/O bitmaps control is 1”) have priority over the following faults:

1. These include faults generated by attempts to execute, in virtual-8086 mode, privileged instructions that are not recognized in that mode.

2. MOV DR is an exception to this rule; see Section 25.1.3.

- A general-protection fault due to the relevant segment (ES for INS; DS for OUTS unless overridden by an instruction prefix) being unusable
- A general-protection fault due to an offset beyond the limit of the relevant segment
- An alignment-check exception
- Fault-like VM exits have priority over exceptions other than those mentioned above. For example, RDMSR of a non-existent MSR with CPL = 0 generates a VM exit and not a general-protection exception.

When Section 25.1.2 or Section 25.1.3 (below) identify an instruction execution that may lead to a VM exit, it is assumed that the instruction does not incur a fault that takes priority over a VM exit.

25.1.2 Instructions That Cause VM Exits Unconditionally

The following instructions cause VM exits when they are executed in VMX non-root operation: CPUID, GETSEC,¹ INVD, and XSETBV. This is also true of instructions introduced with VMX, which include: INVEPT, INVVPID, VMCALL,² VMCLEAR, VMLAUNCH, VMPTRLD, VMPTRST, VMRESUME, VMXOFF, and VMXON.

25.1.3 Instructions That Cause VM Exits Conditionally

Certain instructions cause VM exits in VMX non-root operation depending on the setting of the VM-execution controls. The following instructions can cause “fault-like” VM exits based on the conditions described:³

- **CLTS.** The CLTS instruction causes a VM exit if the bits in position 3 (corresponding to CR0.TS) are set in both the CR0 guest/host mask and the CR0 read shadow.
- **ENCLS.** The ENCLS instruction causes a VM exit if the “enable ENCLS exiting” VM-execution control is 1 and one of the following is true:
 - The value of EAX is less than 63 and the corresponding bit in the ENCLS-exiting bitmap is 1 (see Section 24.6.16).
 - The value of EAX is greater than or equal to 63 and bit 63 in the ENCLS-exiting bitmap is 1.
- **ENCLV.** The ENCLV instruction causes a VM exit if the “enable ENCLV exiting” VM-execution control is 1 and one of the following is true:
 - The value of EAX is less than 63 and the corresponding bit in the ENCLV-exiting bitmap is 1 (see Section 24.6.17).
 - The value of EAX is greater than or equal to 63 and bit 63 in the ENCLV-exiting bitmap is 1.
- **HLT.** The HLT instruction causes a VM exit if the “HLT exiting” VM-execution control is 1.
- **IN, INS/INSB/INSW/INSD, OUT, OUTS/OUTSB/OUTSW/OUTSD.** The behavior of each of these instructions is determined by the settings of the “unconditional I/O exiting” and “use I/O bitmaps” VM-execution controls:
 - If both controls are 0, the instruction executes normally.
 - If the “unconditional I/O exiting” VM-execution control is 1 and the “use I/O bitmaps” VM-execution control is 0, the instruction causes a VM exit.
 - If the “use I/O bitmaps” VM-execution control is 1, the instruction causes a VM exit if it attempts to access an I/O port corresponding to a bit set to 1 in the appropriate I/O bitmap (see Section 24.6.4). If an I/O operation “wraps around” the 16-bit I/O-port space (accesses ports FFFFH and 0000H), the I/O instruction

1. An execution of GETSEC in VMX non-root operation causes a VM exit if CR4.SMXE[Bit 14] = 1 regardless of the value of CPL or RAX. An execution of GETSEC causes an invalid-opcode exception (#UD) if CR4.SMXE[Bit 14] = 0.

2. Under the dual-monitor treatment of SMIs and SMM, executions of VMCALL cause SMM VM exits in VMX root operation outside SMM. See Section 34.15.2.

3. Many of the items in this section refer to secondary processor-based VM-execution controls. If bit 31 of the primary processor-based VM-execution controls is 0, VMX non-root operation functions as if these controls were all 0. See Section 24.6.2.

causes a VM exit (the “unconditional I/O exiting” VM-execution control is ignored if the “use I/O bitmaps” VM-execution control is 1).

See Section 25.1.1 for information regarding the priority of VM exits relative to faults that may be caused by the INS and OUTS instructions.

- **INVLPG.** The INVLPG instruction causes a VM exit if the “INVLPG exiting” VM-execution control is 1.
- **INVPCID.** The INVPCID instruction causes a VM exit if the “INVLPG exiting” and “enable INVPCID” VM-execution controls are both 1.
- **LGDT, LIDT, LLDT, LTR, SGDT, SIDT, SLDT, STR.** These instructions cause VM exits if the “descriptor-table exiting” VM-execution control is 1.
- **LMSW.** In general, the LMSW instruction causes a VM exit if it would write, for any bit set in the low 4 bits of the CR0 guest/host mask, a value different than the corresponding bit in the CR0 read shadow. LMSW never clears bit 0 of CR0 (CR0.PE); thus, LMSW causes a VM exit if either of the following are true:
 - The bits in position 0 (corresponding to CR0.PE) are set in both the CR0 guest/host mask and the source operand, and the bit in position 0 is clear in the CR0 read shadow.
 - For any bit position in the range 3:1, the bit in that position is set in the CR0 guest/host mask and the values of the corresponding bits in the source operand and the CR0 read shadow differ.
- **MONITOR.** The MONITOR instruction causes a VM exit if the “MONITOR exiting” VM-execution control is 1.
- **MOV from CR3.** The MOV from CR3 instruction causes a VM exit if the “CR3-store exiting” VM-execution control is 1. The first processors to support the virtual-machine extensions supported only the 1-setting of this control.
- **MOV from CR8.** The MOV from CR8 instruction causes a VM exit if the “CR8-store exiting” VM-execution control is 1.
- **MOV to CR0.** The MOV to CR0 instruction causes a VM exit unless the value of its source operand matches, for the position of each bit set in the CR0 guest/host mask, the corresponding bit in the CR0 read shadow. (If every bit is clear in the CR0 guest/host mask, MOV to CR0 cannot cause a VM exit.)
- **MOV to CR3.** The MOV to CR3 instruction causes a VM exit unless the “CR3-load exiting” VM-execution control is 0 or the value of its source operand is equal to one of the CR3-target values specified in the VMCS. Only the first n CR3-target values are considered, where n is the CR3-target count. If the “CR3-load exiting” VM-execution control is 1 and the CR3-target count is 0, MOV to CR3 always causes a VM exit.
The first processors to support the virtual-machine extensions supported only the 1-setting of the “CR3-load exiting” VM-execution control. These processors always consult the CR3-target controls to determine whether an execution of MOV to CR3 causes a VM exit.
- **MOV to CR4.** The MOV to CR4 instruction causes a VM exit unless the value of its source operand matches, for the position of each bit set in the CR4 guest/host mask, the corresponding bit in the CR4 read shadow.
- **MOV to CR8.** The MOV to CR8 instruction causes a VM exit if the “CR8-load exiting” VM-execution control is 1.
- **MOV DR.** The MOV DR instruction causes a VM exit if the “MOV-DR exiting” VM-execution control is 1. Such VM exits represent an exception to the principles identified in Section 25.1.1 in that they take priority over the following: general-protection exceptions based on privilege level; and invalid-opcode exceptions that occur because CR4.DE=1 and the instruction specified access to DR4 or DR5.
- **MWAIT.** The MWAIT instruction causes a VM exit if the “MWAIT exiting” VM-execution control is 1. If this control is 0, the behavior of the MWAIT instruction may be modified (see Section 25.3).
- **PAUSE.** The behavior of each of this instruction depends on CPL and the settings of the “PAUSE exiting” and “PAUSE-loop exiting” VM-execution controls:
 - CPL = 0.
 - If the “PAUSE exiting” and “PAUSE-loop exiting” VM-execution controls are both 0, the PAUSE instruction executes normally.
 - If the “PAUSE exiting” VM-execution control is 1, the PAUSE instruction causes a VM exit (the “PAUSE-loop exiting” VM-execution control is ignored if CPL = 0 and the “PAUSE exiting” VM-execution control is 1).

- If the “PAUSE exiting” VM-execution control is 0 and the “PAUSE-loop exiting” VM-execution control is 1, the following treatment applies.

The processor determines the amount of time between this execution of PAUSE and the previous execution of PAUSE at CPL 0. If this amount of time exceeds the value of the VM-execution control field PLE_Gap, the processor considers this execution to be the first execution of PAUSE in a loop. (It also does so for the first execution of PAUSE at CPL 0 after VM entry.)

Otherwise, the processor determines the amount of time since the most recent execution of PAUSE that was considered to be the first in a loop. If this amount of time exceeds the value of the VM-execution control field PLE_Window, a VM exit occurs.

For purposes of these computations, time is measured based on a counter that runs at the same rate as the timestamp counter (TSC).

— CPL > 0.

- If the “PAUSE exiting” VM-execution control is 0, the PAUSE instruction executes normally.
- If the “PAUSE exiting” VM-execution control is 1, the PAUSE instruction causes a VM exit.

The “PAUSE-loop exiting” VM-execution control is ignored if CPL > 0.

- **RDMSR.** The RDMSR instruction causes a VM exit if any of the following are true:

- The “use MSR bitmaps” VM-execution control is 0.
- The value of ECX is not in the ranges 00000000H – 00001FFFH and C0000000H – C0001FFFH.
- The value of ECX is in the range 00000000H – 00001FFFH and bit *n* in read bitmap for low MSRs is 1, where *n* is the value of ECX.
- The value of ECX is in the range C0000000H – C0001FFFH and bit *n* in read bitmap for high MSRs is 1, where *n* is the value of ECX & 00001FFFH.

See Section 24.6.9 for details regarding how these bitmaps are identified.

- **RDPMC.** The RDPMC instruction causes a VM exit if the “RDPMC exiting” VM-execution control is 1.
- **RDRAND.** The RDRAND instruction causes a VM exit if the “RDRAND exiting” VM-execution control is 1.
- **RDSEED.** The RDSEED instruction causes a VM exit if the “RDSEED exiting” VM-execution control is 1.
- **RDTSC.** The RDTSC instruction causes a VM exit if the “RDTSC exiting” VM-execution control is 1.
- **RDTSCP.** The RDTSCP instruction causes a VM exit if the “RDTSC exiting” and “enable RDTSCP” VM-execution controls are both 1.
- **RSM.** The RSM instruction causes a VM exit if executed in system-management mode (SMM).¹
- **VMREAD.** The VMREAD instruction causes a VM exit if any of the following are true:

- The “VMCS shadowing” VM-execution control is 0.
- Bits 63:15 (bits 31:15 outside 64-bit mode) of the register source operand are not all 0.
- Bit *n* in VMREAD bitmap is 1, where *n* is the value of bits 14:0 of the register source operand. See Section 24.6.15 for details regarding how the VMREAD bitmap is identified.

If the VMREAD instruction does not cause a VM exit, it reads from the VMCS referenced by the VMCS link pointer. See Chapter 30, “VMREAD—Read Field from Virtual-Machine Control Structure” for details of the operation of the VMREAD instruction.

- **VMWRITE.** The VMWRITE instruction causes a VM exit if any of the following are true:
- The “VMCS shadowing” VM-execution control is 0.
- Bits 63:15 (bits 31:15 outside 64-bit mode) of the register source operand are not all 0.
- Bit *n* in VMWRITE bitmap is 1, where *n* is the value of bits 14:0 of the register source operand. See Section 24.6.15 for details regarding how the VMWRITE bitmap is identified.

1. Execution of the RSM instruction outside SMM causes an invalid-opcode exception regardless of whether the processor is in VMX operation. It also does so in VMX root operation in SMM; see Section 34.15.3.

If the VMWRITE instruction does not cause a VM exit, it writes to the VMCS referenced by the VMCS link pointer. See Chapter 30, “VMWRITE—Write Field to Virtual-Machine Control Structure” for details of the operation of the VMWRITE instruction.

- **WBINVD.** The WBINVD instruction causes a VM exit if the “WBINVD exiting” VM-execution control is 1.
- **WRMSR.** The WRMSR instruction causes a VM exit if any of the following are true:
 - The “use MSR bitmaps” VM-execution control is 0.
 - The value of ECX is not in the ranges 00000000H – 00001FFFH and C0000000H – C0001FFFH.
 - The value of ECX is in the range 00000000H – 00001FFFH and bit *n* in write bitmap for low MSRs is 1, where *n* is the value of ECX.
 - The value of ECX is in the range C0000000H – C0001FFFH and bit *n* in write bitmap for high MSRs is 1, where *n* is the value of ECX & 00001FFFH.

See Section 24.6.9 for details regarding how these bitmaps are identified.

- **XRSTORS.** The XRSTORS instruction causes a VM exit if the “enable XSAVES/XRSTORS” VM-execution control is 1 and any bit is set in the logical-AND of the following three values: EDX:EAX, the IA32_XSS MSR, and the XSS-exiting bitmap (see Section 24.6.20).
- **XSAVES.** The XSAVES instruction causes a VM exit if the “enable XSAVES/XRSTORS” VM-execution control is 1 and any bit is set in the logical-AND of the following three values: EDX:EAX, the IA32_XSS MSR, and the XSS-exiting bitmap (see Section 24.6.20).

25.2 OTHER CAUSES OF VM EXITS

In addition to VM exits caused by instruction execution, the following events can cause VM exits:

- **Exceptions.** Exceptions (faults, traps, and aborts) cause VM exits based on the exception bitmap (see Section 24.6.3). If an exception occurs, its vector (in the range 0–31) is used to select a bit in the exception bitmap. If the bit is 1, a VM exit occurs; if the bit is 0, the exception is delivered normally through the guest IDT. This use of the exception bitmap applies also to exceptions generated by the instructions INT1, INT3, INTO, BOUND, UD0, UD1, and UD2.¹

Page faults (exceptions with vector 14) are specially treated. When a page fault occurs, a processor consults (1) bit 14 of the exception bitmap; (2) the error code produced with the page fault [PFEC]; (3) the page-fault error-code mask field [PFEC_MASK]; and (4) the page-fault error-code match field [PFEC_MATCH]. It checks if PFEC & PFEC_MASK = PFEC_MATCH. If there is equality, the specification of bit 14 in the exception bitmap is followed (for example, a VM exit occurs if that bit is set). If there is inequality, the meaning of that bit is reversed (for example, a VM exit occurs if that bit is clear).

Thus, if software desires VM exits on all page faults, it can set bit 14 in the exception bitmap to 1 and set the page-fault error-code mask and match fields each to 00000000H. If software desires VM exits on no page faults, it can set bit 14 in the exception bitmap to 1, the page-fault error-code mask field to 00000000H, and the page-fault error-code match field to FFFFFFFFH.

- **Triple fault.** A VM exit occurs if the logical processor encounters an exception while attempting to call the double-fault handler and that exception itself does not cause a VM exit due to the exception bitmap. This applies to the case in which the double-fault exception was generated within VMX non-root operation, the case in which the double-fault exception was generated during event injection by VM entry, and to the case in which VM entry is injecting a double-fault exception.
- **External interrupts.** An external interrupt causes a VM exit if the “external-interrupt exiting” VM-execution control is 1. (See Section 25.6 for an exception.) Otherwise, the interrupt is delivered normally through the IDT. (If a logical processor is in the shutdown state or the wait-for-SIPI state, external interrupts are blocked. The interrupt is not delivered through the IDT and no VM exit occurs.)
- **Non-maskable interrupts (NMIs).** An NMI causes a VM exit if the “NMI exiting” VM-execution control is 1. Otherwise, it is delivered using descriptor 2 of the IDT. (If a logical processor is in the wait-for-SIPI state, NMIs are blocked. The NMI is not delivered through the IDT and no VM exit occurs.)

1. INT1 and INT3 refer to the instructions with opcodes F1 and CC, respectively, and not to INT *n* with value 1 or 3 for *n*.

- **INIT signals.** INIT signals cause VM exits. A logical processor performs none of the operations normally associated with these events. Such exits do not modify register state or clear pending events as they would outside of VMX operation. (If a logical processor is in the wait-for-SIPI state, INIT signals are blocked. They do not cause VM exits in this case.)
- **Start-up IPIs (SIPIs). SIPIs cause VM exits.** If a logical processor is not in the wait-for-SIPI activity state when a SIPI arrives, no VM exit occurs and the SIPI is discarded. VM exits due to SIPIs do not perform any of the normal operations associated with those events: they do not modify register state as they would outside of VMX operation. (If a logical processor is not in the wait-for-SIPI state, SIPIs are blocked. They do not cause VM exits in this case.)
- **Task switches.** Task switches are not allowed in VMX non-root operation. Any attempt to effect a task switch in VMX non-root operation causes a VM exit. See Section 25.4.2.
- **System-management interrupts (SMIs).** If the logical processor is using the dual-monitor treatment of SMIs and system-management mode (SMM), SMIs cause SMM VM exits. See Section 34.15.2.¹
- **VMX-preemption timer.** A VM exit occurs when the timer counts down to zero. See Section 25.5.1 for details of operation of the VMX-preemption timer.

Debug-trap exceptions and higher priority events take priority over VM exits caused by the VMX-preemption timer. VM exits caused by the VMX-preemption timer take priority over VM exits caused by the “NMI-window exiting” VM-execution control and lower priority events.

These VM exits wake a logical processor from the same inactive states as would a non-maskable interrupt. Specifically, they wake a logical processor from the shutdown state and from the states entered using the HLT and MWAIT instructions. These VM exits do not occur if the logical processor is in the wait-for-SIPI state.

In addition, there are controls that cause VM exits based on the readiness of guest software to receive interrupts:

- If the “interrupt-window exiting” VM-execution control is 1, a VM exit occurs before execution of any instruction if RFLAGS.IF = 1 and there is no blocking of events by STI or by MOV SS (see Table 24-3). Such a VM exit occurs immediately after VM entry if the above conditions are true (see Section 26.6.5).

Non-maskable interrupts (NMIs) and higher priority events take priority over VM exits caused by this control. VM exits caused by this control take priority over external interrupts and lower priority events.

These VM exits wake a logical processor from the same inactive states as would an external interrupt. Specifically, they wake a logical processor from the states entered using the HLT and MWAIT instructions. These VM exits do not occur if the logical processor is in the shutdown state or the wait-for-SIPI state.

- If the “NMI-window exiting” VM-execution control is 1, a VM exit occurs before execution of any instruction if there is no virtual-NMI blocking and there is no blocking of events by MOV SS (see Table 24-3). (A logical processor may also prevent such a VM exit if there is blocking of events by STI.) Such a VM exit occurs immediately after VM entry if the above conditions are true (see Section 26.6.6).

VM exits caused by the VMX-preemption timer and higher priority events take priority over VM exits caused by this control. VM exits caused by this control take priority over non-maskable interrupts (NMIs) and lower priority events.

These VM exits wake a logical processor from the same inactive states as would an NMI. Specifically, they wake a logical processor from the shutdown state and from the states entered using the HLT and MWAIT instructions. These VM exits do not occur if the logical processor is in the wait-for-SIPI state.

25.3 CHANGES TO INSTRUCTION BEHAVIOR IN VMX NON-ROOT OPERATION

The behavior of some instructions is changed in VMX non-root operation. Some of these changes are determined by the settings of certain VM-execution control fields. The following items detail such changes:²

1. Under the dual-monitor treatment of SMIs and SMM, SMIs also cause SMM VM exits if they occur in VMX root operation outside SMM. If the processor is using the default treatment of SMIs and SMM, SMIs are delivered as described in Section 34.14.1.
2. Some of the items in this section refer to secondary processor-based VM-execution controls. If bit 31 of the primary processor-based VM-execution controls is 0, VMX non-root operation functions as if these controls were all 0. See Section 24.6.2.

- **CLTS.** Behavior of the CLTS instruction is determined by the bits in position 3 (corresponding to CR0.TS) in the CR0 guest/host mask and the CR0 read shadow:
 - If bit 3 in the CR0 guest/host mask is 0, CLTS clears CR0.TS normally (the value of bit 3 in the CR0 read shadow is irrelevant in this case), unless CR0.TS is fixed to 1 in VMX operation (see Section 23.8), in which case CLTS causes a general-protection exception.
 - If bit 3 in the CR0 guest/host mask is 1 and bit 3 in the CR0 read shadow is 0, CLTS completes but does not change the contents of CR0.TS.
 - If the bits in position 3 in the CR0 guest/host mask and the CR0 read shadow are both 1, CLTS causes a VM exit.
- **INVPCID.** Behavior of the INVPCID instruction is determined first by the setting of the “enable INVPCID” VM-execution control:
 - If the “enable INVPCID” VM-execution control is 0, INVPCID causes an invalid-opcode exception (#UD). This exception takes priority over any other exception the instruction may incur.
 - If the “enable INVPCID” VM-execution control is 1, treatment is based on the setting of the “INVLPG exiting” VM-execution control:
 - If the “INVLPG exiting” VM-execution control is 0, INVPCID operates normally.
 - If the “INVLPG exiting” VM-execution control is 1, INVPCID causes a VM exit.
- **IRET.** Behavior of IRET with regard to NMI blocking (see Table 24-3) is determined by the settings of the “NMI exiting” and “virtual NMIs” VM-execution controls:
 - If the “NMI exiting” VM-execution control is 0, IRET operates normally and unblocks NMIs. (If the “NMI exiting” VM-execution control is 0, the “virtual NMIs” control must be 0; see Section 26.2.1.1.)
 - If the “NMI exiting” VM-execution control is 1, IRET does not affect blocking of NMIs. If, in addition, the “virtual NMIs” VM-execution control is 1, the logical processor tracks virtual-NMI blocking. In this case, IRET removes any virtual-NMI blocking.

The unblocking of NMIs or virtual NMIs specified above occurs even if IRET causes a fault.

- **LMSW.** Outside of VMX non-root operation, LMSW loads its source operand into CR0[3:0], but it does not clear CR0.PE if that bit is set. In VMX non-root operation, an execution of LMSW that does not cause a VM exit (see Section 25.1.3) leaves unmodified any bit in CR0[3:0] corresponding to a bit set in the CR0 guest/host mask. An attempt to set any other bit in CR0[3:0] to a value not supported in VMX operation (see Section 23.8) causes a general-protection exception. Attempts to clear CR0.PE are ignored without fault.
- **MOV from CR0.** The behavior of MOV from CR0 is determined by the CR0 guest/host mask and the CR0 read shadow. For each position corresponding to a bit clear in the CR0 guest/host mask, the destination operand is loaded with the value of the corresponding bit in CR0. For each position corresponding to a bit set in the CR0 guest/host mask, the destination operand is loaded with the value of the corresponding bit in the CR0 read shadow. Thus, if every bit is cleared in the CR0 guest/host mask, MOV from CR0 reads normally from CR0; if every bit is set in the CR0 guest/host mask, MOV from CR0 returns the value of the CR0 read shadow.

Depending on the contents of the CR0 guest/host mask and the CR0 read shadow, bits may be set in the destination that would never be set when reading directly from CR0.
- **MOV from CR3.** If the “enable EPT” VM-execution control is 1 and an execution of MOV from CR3 does not cause a VM exit (see Section 25.1.3), the value loaded from CR3 is a guest-physical address; see Section 28.2.1.
- **MOV from CR4.** The behavior of MOV from CR4 is determined by the CR4 guest/host mask and the CR4 read shadow. For each position corresponding to a bit clear in the CR4 guest/host mask, the destination operand is loaded with the value of the corresponding bit in CR4. For each position corresponding to a bit set in the CR4 guest/host mask, the destination operand is loaded with the value of the corresponding bit in the CR4 read shadow. Thus, if every bit is cleared in the CR4 guest/host mask, MOV from CR4 reads normally from CR4; if every bit is set in the CR4 guest/host mask, MOV from CR4 returns the value of the CR4 read shadow.

Depending on the contents of the CR4 guest/host mask and the CR4 read shadow, bits may be set in the destination that would never be set when reading directly from CR4.
- **MOV from CR8.** If the MOV from CR8 instruction does not cause a VM exit (see Section 25.1.3), its behavior is modified if the “use TPR shadow” VM-execution control is 1; see Section 29.3.

- **MOV to CR0.** An execution of MOV to CR0 that does not cause a VM exit (see Section 25.1.3) leaves unmodified any bit in CR0 corresponding to a bit set in the CR0 guest/host mask. Treatment of attempts to modify other bits in CR0 depends on the setting of the “unrestricted guest” VM-execution control:
 - If the control is 0, MOV to CR0 causes a general-protection exception if it attempts to set any bit in CR0 to a value not supported in VMX operation (see Section 23.8).
 - If the control is 1, MOV to CR0 causes a general-protection exception if it attempts to set any bit in CR0 other than bit 0 (PE) or bit 31 (PG) to a value not supported in VMX operation. It remains the case, however, that MOV to CR0 causes a general-protection exception if it would result in CR0.PE = 0 and CR0.PG = 1 or if it would result in CR0.PG = 1, CR4.PAE = 0, and IA32_EFER.LME = 1.
- **MOV to CR3.** If the “enable EPT” VM-execution control is 1 and an execution of MOV to CR3 does not cause a VM exit (see Section 25.1.3), the value loaded into CR3 is treated as a guest-physical address; see Section 28.2.1.
 - If PAE paging is not being used, the instruction does not use the guest-physical address to access memory and it does not cause it to be translated through EPT.¹
 - If PAE paging is being used, the instruction translates the guest-physical address through EPT and uses the result to load the four (4) page-directory-pointer-table entries (PDPTs). The instruction does not use the guest-physical addresses the PDPTs to access memory and it does not cause them to be translated through EPT.
- **MOV to CR4.** An execution of MOV to CR4 that does not cause a VM exit (see Section 25.1.3) leaves unmodified any bit in CR4 corresponding to a bit set in the CR4 guest/host mask. Such an execution causes a general-protection exception if it attempts to set any bit in CR4 (not corresponding to a bit set in the CR4 guest/host mask) to a value not supported in VMX operation (see Section 23.8).
- **MOV to CR8.** If the MOV to CR8 instruction does not cause a VM exit (see Section 25.1.3), its behavior is modified if the “use TPR shadow” VM-execution control is 1; see Section 29.3.
- **MWAIT.** Behavior of the MWAIT instruction (which always causes an invalid-opcode exception—#UD—if CPL > 0) is determined by the setting of the “MWAIT exiting” VM-execution control:
 - If the “MWAIT exiting” VM-execution control is 1, MWAIT causes a VM exit.
 - If the “MWAIT exiting” VM-execution control is 0, MWAIT operates normally if one of the following are true: (1) ECX[0] is 0; (2) RFLAGS.IF = 1; or both of the following are true: (a) the “interrupt-window exiting” VM-execution control is 0; and (b) the logical processor has not recognized a pending virtual interrupt (see Section 29.2.1).
 - If the “MWAIT exiting” VM-execution control is 0, ECX[0] = 1, and RFLAGS.IF = 0, MWAIT does not cause the processor to enter an implementation-dependent optimized state if either the “interrupt-window exiting” VM-execution control is 1 or the logical processor has recognized a pending virtual interrupt; instead, control passes to the instruction following the MWAIT instruction.
- **RDMSR.** Section 25.1.3 identifies when executions of the RDMSR instruction cause VM exits. If such an execution causes neither a fault due to CPL > 0 nor a VM exit, the instruction’s behavior may be modified for certain values of ECX:
 - If ECX contains 10H (indicating the IA32_TIME_STAMP_COUNTER MSR), the value returned by the instruction is determined by the setting of the “use TSC offsetting” VM-execution control:
 - If the control is 0, RDMSR operates normally, loading EAX:EDX with the value of the IA32_TIME_STAMP_COUNTER MSR.
 - If the control is 1, the value returned is determined by the setting of the “use TSC scaling” VM-execution control:
 - If the control is 0, RDMSR loads EAX:EDX with the sum of the value of the IA32_TIME_STAMP_COUNTER MSR and the value of the TSC offset.
 - If the control is 1, RDMSR first computes the product of the value of the IA32_TIME_STAMP_COUNTER MSR and the value of the TSC multiplier. It then shifts the value of

1. A logical processor uses PAE paging if CR0.PG = 1, CR4.PAE = 1 and IA32_EFER.LMA = 0. See Section 4.4 in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

the product right 48 bits and loads EAX:EDX with the sum of that shifted value and the value of the TSC offset.

The 1-setting of the “use TSC-offsetting” VM-execution control does not affect executions of RDMSR if ECX contains 6E0H (indicating the IA32_TSC_DEADLINE MSR). Such executions return the APIC-timer deadline relative to the actual timestamp counter without regard to the TSC offset.

- If ECX is in the range 800H–8FFH (indicating an APIC MSR), instruction behavior may be modified if the “virtualize x2APIC mode” VM-execution control is 1; see Section 29.5.
- **RDPID.** Behavior of the RDPID instruction is determined first by the setting of the “enable RDTSCP” VM-execution control:
 - If the “enable RDTSCP” VM-execution control is 0, RDPID causes an invalid-opcode exception (#UD).
 - If the “enable RDTSCP” VM-execution control is 1, RDPID operates normally.
- **RDTSR.** Behavior of the RDTSR instruction is determined by the settings of the “RDTSR exiting” and “use TSC offsetting” VM-execution controls:
 - If both controls are 0, RDTSR operates normally.
 - If the “RDTSR exiting” VM-execution control is 0 and the “use TSC offsetting” VM-execution control is 1, the value returned is determined by the setting of the “use TSC scaling” VM-execution control:
 - If the control is 0, RDTSR loads EAX:EDX with the sum of the value of the IA32_TIME_STAMP_COUNTER MSR and the value of the TSC offset.
 - If the control is 1, RDTSR first computes the product of the value of the IA32_TIME_STAMP_COUNTER MSR and the value of the TSC multiplier. It then shifts the value of the product right 48 bits and loads EAX:EDX with the sum of that shifted value and the value of the TSC offset.
 - If the “RDTSR exiting” VM-execution control is 1, RDTSR causes a VM exit.
- **RDTSCP.** Behavior of the RDTSCP instruction is determined first by the setting of the “enable RDTSCP” VM-execution control:
 - If the “enable RDTSCP” VM-execution control is 0, RDTSCP causes an invalid-opcode exception (#UD). This exception takes priority over any other exception the instruction may incur.
 - If the “enable RDTSCP” VM-execution control is 1, treatment is based on the settings of the “RDTSR exiting” and “use TSC offsetting” VM-execution controls:
 - If both controls are 0, RDTSCP operates normally.
 - If the “RDTSR exiting” VM-execution control is 0 and the “use TSC offsetting” VM-execution control is 1, the value returned is determined by the setting of the “use TSC scaling” VM-execution control:
 - If the control is 0, RDTSCP loads EAX:EDX with the sum of the value of the IA32_TIME_STAMP_COUNTER MSR and the value of the TSC offset.
 - If the control is 1, RDTSCP first computes the product of the value of the IA32_TIME_STAMP_COUNTER MSR and the value of the TSC multiplier. It then shifts the value of the product right 48 bits and loads EAX:EDX with the sum of that shifted value and the value of the TSC offset.

In either case, RDTSCP also loads ECX with the value of bits 31:0 of the IA32_TSC_AUX MSR.

 - If the “RDTSR exiting” VM-execution control is 1, RDTSCP causes a VM exit.- **SMSW.** The behavior of SMSW is determined by the CR0 guest/host mask and the CR0 read shadow. For each position corresponding to a bit clear in the CR0 guest/host mask, the destination operand is loaded with the value of the corresponding bit in CR0. For each position corresponding to a bit set in the CR0 guest/host mask, the destination operand is loaded with the value of the corresponding bit in the CR0 read shadow. Thus, if every bit is cleared in the CR0 guest/host mask, SMSW reads normally from CR0; if every bit is set in the CR0 guest/host mask, SMSW returns the value of the CR0 read shadow.

Note the following: (1) for any memory destination or for a 16-bit register destination, only the low 16 bits of the CR0 guest/host mask and the CR0 read shadow are used (bits 63:16 of a register destination are left unchanged); (2) for a 32-bit register destination, only the low 32 bits of the CR0 guest/host mask and the CR0 read shadow are used (bits 63:32 of the destination are cleared); and (3) depending on the contents of the

CR0 guest/host mask and the CR0 read shadow, bits may be set in the destination that would never be set when reading directly from CR0.

- **WRMSR.** Section 25.1.3 identifies when executions of the WRMSR instruction cause VM exits. If such an execution neither a fault due to CPL > 0 nor a VM exit, the instruction's behavior may be modified for certain values of ECX:
 - If ECX contains 79H (indicating IA32_BIOS_UPDT_TRIG MSR), no microcode update is loaded, and control passes to the next instruction. This implies that microcode updates cannot be loaded in VMX non-root operation.
 - On processors that support Intel PT but which do not allow it to be used in VMX operation, if ECX contains 570H (indicating the IA32_RTIT_CTL MSR), the instruction causes a general-protection exception.¹
 - If ECX contains 808H (indicating the TPR MSR), 80BH (the EOI MSR), or 83FH (self-IPI MSR), instruction behavior may be modified if the "virtualize x2APIC mode" VM-execution control is 1; see Section 29.5.
- **XRSTORS.** Behavior of the XRSTORS instruction is determined first by the setting of the "enable XSAVES/XRSTORS" VM-execution control:
 - If the "enable XSAVES/XRSTORS" VM-execution control is 0, XRSTORS causes an invalid-opcode exception (#UD).
 - If the "enable XSAVES/XRSTORS" VM-execution control is 1, treatment is based on the value of the XSS-exiting bitmap (see Section 24.6.20):
 - XRSTORS causes a VM exit if any bit is set in the logical-AND of the following three values: EDX:EAX, the IA32_XSS MSR, and the XSS-exiting bitmap.
 - Otherwise, XRSTORS operates normally.
- **XSAVES.** Behavior of the XSAVES instruction is determined first by the setting of the "enable XSAVES/XRSTORS" VM-execution control:
 - If the "enable XSAVES/XRSTORS" VM-execution control is 0, XSAVES causes an invalid-opcode exception (#UD).
 - If the "enable XSAVES/XRSTORS" VM-execution control is 1, treatment is based on the value of the XSS-exiting bitmap (see Section 24.6.20):
 - XSAVES causes a VM exit if any bit is set in the logical-AND of the following three values: EDX:EAX, the IA32_XSS MSR, and the XSS-exiting bitmap.
 - Otherwise, XSAVES operates normally.

25.4 OTHER CHANGES IN VMX NON-ROOT OPERATION

Treatments of event blocking and of task switches differ in VMX non-root operation as described in the following sections.

25.4.1 Event Blocking

Event blocking is modified in VMX non-root operation as follows:

- If the "external-interrupt exiting" VM-execution control is 1, RFLAGS.IF does not control the blocking of external interrupts. In this case, an external interrupt that is not blocked for other reasons causes a VM exit (even if RFLAGS.IF = 0).
- If the "external-interrupt exiting" VM-execution control is 1, external interrupts may or may not be blocked by STI or by MOV SS (behavior is implementation-specific).
- If the "NMI exiting" VM-execution control is 1, non-maskable interrupts (NMIs) may or may not be blocked by STI or by MOV SS (behavior is implementation-specific).

1. Software should read the VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_MISC to determine whether the processor allows Intel PT to be used in VMX operation (see Appendix A.6).

25.4.2 Treatment of Task Switches

Task switches are not allowed in VMX non-root operation. Any attempt to effect a task switch in VMX non-root operation causes a VM exit. However, the following checks are performed (in the order indicated), possibly resulting in a fault, before there is any possibility of a VM exit due to task switch:

1. If a task gate is being used, appropriate checks are made on its P bit and on the proper values of the relevant privilege fields. The following cases detail the privilege checks performed:
 - a. If CALL, INT n , INT1, INT3, INTO, or JMP accesses a task gate in IA-32e mode, a general-protection exception occurs.
 - b. If CALL, INT n , INT3, INTO, or JMP accesses a task gate outside IA-32e mode, privilege-levels checks are performed on the task gate but, if they pass, privilege levels are not checked on the referenced task-state segment (TSS) descriptor.
 - c. If CALL or JMP accesses a TSS descriptor directly in IA-32e mode, a general-protection exception occurs.
 - d. If CALL or JMP accesses a TSS descriptor directly outside IA-32e mode, privilege levels are checked on the TSS descriptor.
 - e. If a non-maskable interrupt (NMI), an exception, or an external interrupt accesses a task gate in the IDT in IA-32e mode, a general-protection exception occurs.
 - f. If a non-maskable interrupt (NMI), an exception other than breakpoint exceptions (#BP) and overflow exceptions (#OF), or an external interrupt accesses a task gate in the IDT outside IA-32e mode, no privilege checks are performed.
 - g. If IRET is executed with RFLAGS.NT = 1 in IA-32e mode, a general-protection exception occurs.
 - h. If IRET is executed with RFLAGS.NT = 1 outside IA-32e mode, a TSS descriptor is accessed directly and no privilege checks are made.
2. Checks are made on the new TSS selector (for example, that is within GDT limits).
3. The new TSS descriptor is read. (A page fault results if a relevant GDT page is not present).
4. The TSS descriptor is checked for proper values of type (depends on type of task switch), P bit, S bit, and limit.

Only if checks 1–4 all pass (do not generate faults) might a VM exit occur. However, the ordering between a VM exit due to a task switch and a page fault resulting from accessing the old TSS or the new TSS is implementation-specific. Some processors may generate a page fault (instead of a VM exit due to a task switch) if accessing either TSS would cause a page fault. Other processors may generate a VM exit due to a task switch even if accessing either TSS would cause a page fault.

If an attempt at a task switch through a task gate in the IDT causes an exception (before generating a VM exit due to the task switch) and that exception causes a VM exit, information about the event whose delivery that accessed the task gate is recorded in the IDT-vectoring information fields and information about the exception that caused the VM exit is recorded in the VM-exit interruption-information fields. See Section 27.2. The fact that a task gate was being accessed is not recorded in the VMCS.

If an attempt at a task switch through a task gate in the IDT causes VM exit due to the task switch, information about the event whose delivery accessed the task gate is recorded in the IDT-vectoring fields of the VMCS. Since the cause of such a VM exit is a task switch and not an interruption, the valid bit for the VM-exit interruption information field is 0. See Section 27.2.

25.5 FEATURES SPECIFIC TO VMX NON-ROOT OPERATION

Some VM-execution controls support features that are specific to VMX non-root operation. These are the VMX-preemption timer (Section 25.5.1) and the monitor trap flag (Section 25.5.2), translation of guest-physical addresses (Section 25.5.3), VM functions (Section 25.5.5), and virtualization exceptions (Section 25.5.6).

25.5.1 VMX-Preemption Timer

If the last VM entry was performed with the 1-setting of “activate VMX-preemption timer” VM-execution control, the **VMX-preemption timer** counts down (from the value loaded by VM entry; see Section 26.6.4) in VMX non-root operation. When the timer counts down to zero, it stops counting down and a VM exit occurs (see Section 25.2).

The VMX-preemption timer counts down at rate proportional to that of the timestamp counter (TSC). Specifically, the timer counts down by 1 every time bit X in the TSC changes due to a TSC increment. The value of X is in the range 0–31 and can be determined by consulting the VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_MISC (see Appendix A.6).

The VMX-preemption timer operates in the C-states C0, C1, and C2; it also operates in the shutdown and wait-for-SIPI states. If the timer counts down to zero in any state other than the wait-for SIPI state, the logical processor transitions to the C0 C-state and causes a VM exit; the timer does not cause a VM exit if it counts down to zero in the wait-for-SIPI state. The timer is not decremented in C-states deeper than C2.

Treatment of the timer in the case of system management interrupts (SMIs) and system-management mode (SMM) depends on whether the treatment of SMIs and SMM:

- If the default treatment of SMIs and SMM (see Section 34.14) is active, the VMX-preemption timer counts across an SMI to VMX non-root operation, subsequent execution in SMM, and the return from SMM via the RSM instruction. However, the timer can cause a VM exit only from VMX non-root operation. If the timer expires during SMI, in SMM, or during RSM, a timer-induced VM exit occurs immediately after RSM with its normal priority unless it is blocked based on activity state (Section 25.2).
- If the dual-monitor treatment of SMIs and SMM (see Section 34.15) is active, transitions into and out of SMM are VM exits and VM entries, respectively. The treatment of the VMX-preemption timer by those transitions is mostly the same as for ordinary VM exits and VM entries; Section 34.15.2 and Section 34.15.4 detail some differences.

25.5.2 Monitor Trap Flag

The **monitor trap flag** is a debugging feature that causes VM exits to occur on certain instruction boundaries in VMX non-root operation. Such VM exits are called **MTF VM exits**. An MTF VM exit may occur on an instruction boundary in VMX non-root operation as follows:

- If the “monitor trap flag” VM-execution control is 1 and VM entry is injecting a vectored event (see Section 26.5.1), an MTF VM exit is pending on the instruction boundary before the first instruction following the VM entry.
- If VM entry is injecting a pending MTF VM exit (see Section 26.5.2), an MTF VM exit is pending on the instruction boundary before the first instruction following the VM entry. This is the case even if the “monitor trap flag” VM-execution control is 0.
- If the “monitor trap flag” VM-execution control is 1, VM entry is not injecting an event, and a pending event (e.g., debug exception or interrupt) is delivered before an instruction can execute, an MTF VM exit is pending on the instruction boundary following delivery of the event (or any nested exception).
- Suppose that the “monitor trap flag” VM-execution control is 1, VM entry is not injecting an event, and the first instruction following VM entry is a REP-prefixed string instruction:
 - If the first iteration of the instruction causes a fault, an MTF VM exit is pending on the instruction boundary following delivery of the fault (or any nested exception).
 - If the first iteration of the instruction does not cause a fault, an MTF VM exit is pending on the instruction boundary after that iteration.
- Suppose that the “monitor trap flag” VM-execution control is 1, VM entry is not injecting an event, and the first instruction following VM entry is the XBEGIN instruction. In this case, an MTF VM exit is pending at the fallback instruction address of the XBEGIN instruction. This behavior applies regardless of whether advanced debugging of RTM transactional regions has been enabled (see Section 16.3.7, “RTM-Enabled Debugger Support,” of *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 1*).
- Suppose that the “monitor trap flag” VM-execution control is 1, VM entry is not injecting an event, and the first instruction following VM entry is neither a REP-prefixed string instruction or the XBEGIN instruction:

- If the instruction causes a fault, an MTF VM exit is pending on the instruction boundary following delivery of the fault (or any nested exception).¹
- If the instruction does not cause a fault, an MTF VM exit is pending on the instruction boundary following execution of that instruction. If the instruction is INT1, INT3, or INTO, this boundary follows delivery of any software exception. If the instruction is INT *n*, this boundary follows delivery of a software interrupt. If the instruction is HLT, the MTF VM exit will be from the HLT activity state.

No MTF VM exit occurs if another VM exit occurs before reaching the instruction boundary on which an MTF VM exit would be pending (e.g., due to an exception or triple fault).

An MTF VM exit occurs on the instruction boundary on which it is pending unless a higher priority event takes precedence or the MTF VM exit is blocked due to the activity state:

- System-management interrupts (SMIs), INIT signals, and higher priority events take priority over MTF VM exits. MTF VM exits take priority over debug-trap exceptions and lower priority events.
- No MTF VM exit occurs if the processor is in either the shutdown activity state or wait-for-SIPI activity state. If a non-maskable interrupt subsequently takes the logical processor out of the shutdown activity state without causing a VM exit, an MTF VM exit is pending after delivery of that interrupt.

Special treatment may apply to Intel SGX instructions or if the logical processor is in enclave mode. See Section 42.2 for details.

25.5.3 Translation of Guest-Physical Addresses Using EPT

The extended page-table mechanism (EPT) is a feature that can be used to support the virtualization of physical memory. When EPT is in use, certain physical addresses are treated as guest-physical addresses and are not used to access memory directly. Instead, guest-physical addresses are translated by traversing a set of EPT paging structures to produce physical addresses that are used to access memory.

Details of the EPT mechanism are given in Section 28.2.

25.5.4 APIC Virtualization

APIC virtualization is a collection of features that can be used to support the virtualization of interrupts and the Advanced Programmable Interrupt Controller (APIC). When APIC virtualization is enabled, the processor emulates many accesses to the APIC, tracks the state of the virtual APIC, and delivers virtual interrupts — all in VMX non-root operation without a VM exit.

Details of the APIC virtualization are given in Chapter 29.

25.5.5 VM Functions

A **VM function** is an operation provided by the processor that can be invoked from VMX non-root operation without a VM exit. VM functions are enabled and configured by the settings of different fields in the VMCS. Software in VMX non-root operation invokes a VM function with the **VMFUNC** instruction; the value of EAX selects the specific VM function being invoked.

Section 25.5.5.1 explains how VM functions are enabled. Section 25.5.5.2 specifies the behavior of the VMFUNC instruction. Section 25.5.5.3 describes a specific VM function called **EPTP switching**.

25.5.5.1 Enabling VM Functions

Software enables VM functions generally by setting the “enable VM functions” VM-execution control. A specific VM function is enabled by setting the corresponding VM-function control.

1. This item includes the cases of an invalid opcode exception—#UD—generated by the UD0, UD1, and UD2 instructions and a BOUND-range exceeded exception—#BR—generated by the BOUND instruction.

Suppose, for example, that software wants to enable EPTP switching (VM function 0; see Section 24.6.14). To do so, it must set the “activate secondary controls” VM-execution control (bit 31 of the primary processor-based VM-execution controls), the “enable VM functions” VM-execution control (bit 13 of the secondary processor-based VM-execution controls) and the “EPTP switching” VM-function control (bit 0 of the VM-function controls).

25.5.5.2 General Operation of the VMFUNC Instruction

The VMFUNC instruction causes an invalid-opcode exception (#UD) if the “enable VM functions” VM-execution controls is 0¹ or the value of EAX is greater than 63 (only VM functions 0–63 can be enable). Otherwise, the instruction causes a VM exit if the bit at position EAX is 0 in the VM-function controls (the selected VM function is not enabled). If such a VM exit occurs, the basic exit reason used is 59 (3BH), indicating “VMFUNC”, and the length of the VMFUNC instruction is saved into the VM-exit instruction-length field. If the instruction causes neither an invalid-opcode exception nor a VM exit due to a disabled VM function, it performs the functionality of the VM function specified by the value in EAX.

Individual VM functions may perform additional fault checking (e.g., one might cause a general-protection exception if CPL > 0). In addition, specific VM functions may include checks that might result in a VM exit. If such a VM exit occurs, VM-exit information is saved as described in the previous paragraph. The specification of a VM function may indicate that additional VM-exit information is provided.

The specific behavior of the EPTP-switching VM function (including checks that result in VM exits) is given in Section 25.5.5.3.

25.5.5.3 EPTP Switching

EPTP switching is VM function 0. This VM function allows software in VMX non-root operation to load a new value for the EPT pointer (EPTP), thereby establishing a different EPT paging-structure hierarchy (see Section 28.2 for details of the operation of EPT). Software is limited to selecting from a list of potential EPTP values configured in advance by software in VMX root operation.

Specifically, the value of ECX is used to select an entry from the EPTP list, the 4-KByte structure referenced by the EPTP-list address (see Section 24.6.14; because this structure contains 512 8-Byte entries, VMFUNC causes a VM exit if ECX ≥ 512). If the selected entry is a valid EPTP value (it would not cause VM entry to fail; see Section 26.2.1.1), it is stored in the EPTP field of the current VMCS and is used for subsequent accesses using guest-physical addresses. The following pseudocode provides details:

```

IF ECX ≥ 512
    THEN VM exit;
ELSE
    tent_EPTP ← 8 bytes from EPTP-list address + 8 * ECX;
    IF tent_EPTP is not a valid EPTP value (would cause VM entry to fail if in EPTP)
        THEN VM exit;
    ELSE
        write tent_EPTP to the EPTP field in the current VMCS;
        use tent_EPTP as the new EPTP value for address translation;
        IF processor supports the 1-setting of the “EPT-violation #VE” VM-execution control
            THEN
                write ECX[15:0] to EPTP-index field in current VMCS;
                use ECX[15:0] as EPTP index for subsequent EPT-violation virtualization exceptions (see Section 25.5.6.2);
        FI;
    FI;
FI;

```

Execution of the EPTP-switching VM function does not modify the state of any registers; no flags are modified.

1. “Enable VM functions” is a secondary processor-based VM-execution control. If bit 31 of the primary processor-based VM-execution controls is 0, VMX non-root operation functions as if the “enable VM functions” VM-execution control were 0. See Section 24.6.2.

As noted in Section 25.5.5.2, an execution of the EPTP-switching VM function that causes a VM exit (as specified above), uses the basic exit reason 59, indicating “VMFUNC”. The length of the VMFUNC instruction is saved into the VM-exit instruction-length field. No additional VM-exit information is provided.

An execution of VMFUNC loads EPTP from the EPTP list (and thus does not cause a fault or VM exit) is called an **EPTP-switching VMFUNC**. After an EPTP-switching VMFUNC, control passes to the next instruction. The logical processor starts creating and using guest-physical and combined mappings associated with the new value of bits 51:12 of EPTP; the combined mappings created and used are associated with the current VPID and PCID (these are not changed by VMFUNC).¹ If the “enable VPID” VM-execution control is 0, an EPTP-switching VMFUNC invalidates combined mappings associated with VPID 0000H (for all PCIDs and for all EP4TA values, where EP4TA is the value of bits 51:12 of EPTP).

Because an EPTP-switching VMFUNC may change the translation of guest-physical addresses, it may affect use of the guest-physical address in CR3. The EPTP-switching VMFUNC cannot itself cause a VM exit due to an EPT violation or an EPT misconfiguration due to the translation of that guest-physical address through the new EPT paging structures. The following items provide details that apply if CR0.PG = 1:

- If 32-bit paging or 4-level paging² is in use (either CR4.PAE = 0 or IA32_EFER.LMA = 1), the next memory access with a linear address uses the translation of the guest-physical address in CR3 through the new EPT paging structures. As a result, this access may cause a VM exit due to an EPT violation or an EPT misconfiguration encountered during that translation.
- If PAE paging is in use (CR4.PAE = 1 and IA32_EFER.LMA = 0), an EPTP-switching VMFUNC **does not** load the four page-directory-pointer-table entries (PDPTes) from the guest-physical address in CR3. The logical processor continues to use the four guest-physical addresses already present in the PDPTes. The guest-physical address in CR3 is not translated through the new EPT paging structures (until some operation that would load the PDPTes).

The EPTP-switching VMFUNC cannot itself cause a VM exit due to an EPT violation or an EPT misconfiguration encountered during the translation of a guest-physical address in any of the PDPTes. A subsequent memory access with a linear address uses the translation of the guest-physical address in the appropriate PDPTE through the new EPT paging structures. As a result, such an access may cause a VM exit due to an EPT violation or an EPT misconfiguration encountered during that translation.

If an EPTP-switching VMFUNC establishes an EPTP value that enables accessed and dirty flags for EPT (by setting bit 6), subsequent memory accesses may fail to set those flags as specified if there has been no appropriate execution of INVEPT since the last use of an EPTP value that does not enable accessed and dirty flags for EPT (because bit 6 is clear) and that is identical to the new value on bits 51:12.

If the processor supports the 1-setting of the “EPT-violation #VE” VM-execution control, an EPTP-switching VMFUNC loads the value in ECX[15:0] into to EPTP-index field in current VMCS. Subsequent EPT-violation virtualization exceptions will save this value into the virtualization-exception information area (see Section 25.5.6.2);

25.5.6 Virtualization Exceptions

A **virtualization exception** is a new processor exception. It uses vector 20 and is abbreviated #VE.

A virtualization exception can occur only in VMX non-root operation. Virtualization exceptions occur only with certain settings of certain VM-execution controls. Generally, these settings imply that certain conditions that would normally cause VM exits instead cause virtualization exceptions

In particular, the 1-setting of the “EPT-violation #VE” VM-execution control causes some EPT violations to generate virtualization exceptions instead of VM exits. Section 25.5.6.1 provides the details of how the processor determines whether an EPT violation causes a virtualization exception or a VM exit.

When the processor encounters a virtualization exception, it saves information about the exception to the virtualization-exception information area; see Section 25.5.6.2.

After saving virtualization-exception information, the processor delivers a virtualization exception as it would any other exception; see Section 25.5.6.3 for details.

1. If the “enable VPID” VM-execution control is 0, the current VPID is 0000H; if CR4.PCIDE = 0, the current PCID is 000H.

2. Earlier versions of this manual used the term “IA-32e paging” to identify 4-level paging.

25.5.6.1 Convertible EPT Violations

If the “EPT-violation #VE” VM-execution control is 0 (e.g., on processors that do not support this feature), EPT violations always cause VM exits. If instead the control is 1, certain EPT violations may be converted to cause virtualization exceptions instead; such EPT violations are **convertible**.

The values of certain EPT paging-structure entries determine which EPT violations are convertible. Specifically, bit 63 of certain EPT paging-structure entries may be defined to mean **suppress #VE**:

- If bits 2:0 of an EPT paging-structure entry are all 0, the entry is not **present**.¹ If the processor encounters such an entry while translating a guest-physical address, it causes an EPT violation. The EPT violation is convertible if and only if bit 63 of the entry is 0.
- If an EPT paging-structure entry is present, the following cases apply:
 - If the value of the EPT paging-structure entry is not supported, the entry is **misconfigured**. If the processor encounters such an entry while translating a guest-physical address, it causes an EPT misconfiguration (not an EPT violation). EPT misconfigurations always cause VM exits.
 - If the value of the EPT paging-structure entry is supported, the following cases apply:
 - If bit 7 of the entry is 1, or if the entry is an EPT PTE, the entry maps a page. If the processor uses such an entry to translate a guest-physical address, and if an access to that address causes an EPT violation, the EPT violation is convertible if and only if bit 63 of the entry is 0.
 - If bit 7 of the entry is 0 and the entry is not an EPT PTE, the entry references another EPT paging structure. The processor does not use the value of bit 63 of the entry to determine whether any subsequent EPT violation is convertible.

If an access to a guest-physical address causes an EPT violation, bit 63 of exactly one of the EPT paging-structure entries used to translate that address is used to determine whether the EPT violation is convertible: either a entry that is not present (if the guest-physical address does not translate to a physical address) or an entry that maps a page (if it does).

A convertible EPT violation instead causes a virtualization exception if the following all hold:

- CR0.PE = 1;
- the logical processor is not in the process of delivering an event through the IDT; and
- the 32 bits at offset 4 in the virtualization-exception information area are all 0.

Delivery of virtualization exceptions writes the value FFFFFFFFH to offset 4 in the virtualization-exception information area (see Section 25.5.6.2). Thus, once a virtualization exception occurs, another can occur only if software clears this field.

25.5.6.2 Virtualization-Exception Information

Virtualization exceptions save data into the virtualization-exception information area (see Section 24.6.19). Table 25-1 enumerates the data saved and the format of the area.

Table 25-1. Format of the Virtualization-Exception Information Area

Byte Offset	Contents
0	The 32-bit value that would have been saved into the VMCS as an exit reason had a VM exit occurred instead of the virtualization exception. For EPT violations, this value is 48 (00000030H)
4	FFFFFFFFH
8	The 64-bit value that would have been saved into the VMCS as an exit qualification had a VM exit occurred instead of the virtualization exception

1. If the “mode-based execute control for EPT” VM-execution control is 1, an EPT paging-structure entry is present if any of bits 2:0 or bit 10 is 1.

Table 25-1. Format of the Virtualization-Exception Information Area (Contd.)

Byte Offset	Contents
16	The 64-bit value that would have been saved into the VMCS as a guest-linear address had a VM exit occurred instead of the virtualization exception
24	The 64-bit value that would have been saved into the VMCS as a guest-physical address had a VM exit occurred instead of the virtualization exception
32	The current 16-bit value of the EPTP index VM-execution control (see Section 24.6.19 and Section 25.5.5.3)

25.5.6.3 Delivery of Virtualization Exceptions

After saving virtualization-exception information, the processor treats a virtualization exception as it does other exceptions:

- If bit 20 (#VE) is 1 in the exception bitmap in the VMCS, a virtualization exception causes a VM exit (see below). If the bit is 0, the virtualization exception is delivered using gate descriptor 20 in the IDT.
- Virtualization exceptions produce no error code. Delivery of a virtualization exception pushes no error code on the stack.
- With respect to double faults, virtualization exceptions have the same severity as page faults. If delivery of a virtualization exception encounters a nested fault that is either contributory or a page fault, a double fault (#DF) is generated. See Chapter 6, “Interrupt 8—Double Fault Exception (#DF)” in *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*.

It is not possible for a virtualization exception to be encountered while delivering another exception (see Section 25.5.6.1).

If a virtualization exception causes a VM exit directly (because bit 20 is 1 in the exception bitmap), information about the exception is saved normally in the VM-exit interruption information field in the VMCS (see Section 27.2.2). Specifically, the event is reported as a hardware exception with vector 20 and no error code. Bit 12 of the field (NMI unblocking due to IRET) is set normally.

If a virtualization exception causes a VM exit indirectly (because bit 20 is 0 in the exception bitmap and delivery of the exception generates an event that causes a VM exit), information about the exception is saved normally in the IDT-vectoring information field in the VMCS (see Section 27.2.3). Specifically, the event is reported as a hardware exception with vector 20 and no error code.

25.6 UNRESTRICTED GUESTS

The first processors to support VMX operation require CR0.PE and CR0.PG to be 1 in VMX operation (see Section 23.8). This restriction implies that guest software cannot be run in unpagged protected mode or in real-address mode. Later processors support a VM-execution control called “unrestricted guest”.¹ If this control is 1, CR0.PE and CR0.PG may be 0 in VMX non-root operation. Such processors allow guest software to run in unpagged protected mode or in real-address mode. The following items describe the behavior of such software:

- The MOV CR0 instructions does not cause a general-protection exception simply because it would set either CR0.PE and CR0.PG to 0. See Section 25.3 for details.
- A logical processor treats the values of CR0.PE and CR0.PG in VMX non-root operation just as it does outside VMX operation. Thus, if CR0.PE = 0, the processor operates as it does normally in real-address mode (for example, it uses the 16-bit **interrupt table** to deliver interrupts and exceptions). If CR0.PG = 0, the processor operates as it does normally when paging is disabled.
- Processor operation is modified by the fact that the processor is in VMX non-root operation and by the settings of the VM-execution controls just as it is in protected mode or when paging is enabled. Instructions, interrupts,

1. “Unrestricted guest” is a secondary processor-based VM-execution control. If bit 31 of the primary processor-based VM-execution controls is 0, VMX non-root operation functions as if the “unrestricted guest” VM-execution control were 0. See Section 24.6.2.

and exceptions that cause VM exits in protected mode or when paging is enabled also do so in real-address mode or when paging is disabled. The following examples should be noted:

- If CR0.PG = 0, page faults do not occur and thus cannot cause VM exits.
- If CR0.PE = 0, invalid-TSS exceptions do not occur and thus cannot cause VM exits.
- If CR0.PE = 0, the following instructions cause invalid-opcode exceptions and do not cause VM exits: INVEPT, INVVPID, LLDT, LTR, SLDT, STR, VMCLEAR, VMLAUNCH, VMPTRLD, VMPTRST, VMREAD, VMRESUME, VMWRITE, VMXOFF, and VMXON.
- If CR0.PG = 0, each linear address is passed directly to the EPT mechanism for translation to a physical address.¹ The guest memory type passed on to the EPT mechanism is WB (writeback).

1. As noted in Section 26.2.1.1, the “enable EPT” VM-execution control must be 1 if the “unrestricted guest” VM-execution control is 1.

14. Updates to Chapter 27, Volume 3C

Change bars show changes to Chapter 27 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3C: System Programming Guide, Part 3*.

Changes to this chapter: Update to "Qualification for Debug Exceptions" table. Update to section 27.3 "Saving Guest State".

VM exits occur in response to certain instructions and events in VMX non-root operation as detailed in Section 25.1 through Section 25.2. VM exits perform the following operations:

1. Information about the cause of the VM exit is recorded in the VM-exit information fields and VM-entry control fields are modified as described in Section 27.2.
2. Processor state is saved in the guest-state area (Section 27.3).
3. MSRs may be saved in the VM-exit MSR-store area (Section 27.4). This step is not performed for SMM VM exits that activate the dual-monitor treatment of SMIs and SMM.
4. The following may be performed in parallel and in any order (Section 27.5):
 - Processor state is loaded based in part on the host-state area and some VM-exit controls. This step is not performed for SMM VM exits that activate the dual-monitor treatment of SMIs and SMM. See Section 34.15.6 for information on how processor state is loaded by such VM exits.
 - Address-range monitoring is cleared.
5. MSRs may be loaded from the VM-exit MSR-load area (Section 27.6). This step is not performed for SMM VM exits that activate the dual-monitor treatment of SMIs and SMM.

VM exits are not logged with last-branch records, do not produce branch-trace messages, and do not update the branch-trace store.

Section 27.1 clarifies the nature of the architectural state before a VM exit begins. The steps described above are detailed in Section 27.2 through Section 27.6.

Section 34.15 describes the dual-monitor treatment of system-management interrupts (SMIs) and system-management mode (SMM). Under this treatment, ordinary transitions to SMM are replaced by VM exits to a separate SMM monitor. Called **SMM VM exits**, these are caused by the arrival of an SMI or the execution of VMCALL in VMX root operation. SMM VM exits differ from other VM exits in ways that are detailed in Section 34.15.2.

27.1 ARCHITECTURAL STATE BEFORE A VM EXIT

This section describes the architectural state that exists before a VM exit, especially for VM exits caused by events that would normally be delivered through the IDT. Note the following:

- An exception causes a VM exit **directly** if the bit corresponding to that exception is set in the exception bitmap. A non-maskable interrupt (NMI) causes a VM exit directly if the “NMI exiting” VM-execution control is 1. An external interrupt causes a VM exit directly if the “external-interrupt exiting” VM-execution control is 1. A start-up IPI (SIPI) that arrives while a logical processor is in the wait-for-SIPI activity state causes a VM exit directly. INIT signals that arrive while the processor is not in the wait-for-SIPI activity state cause VM exits directly.
- An exception, NMI, external interrupt, or software interrupt causes a VM exit **indirectly** if it does not do so directly but delivery of the event causes a nested exception, double fault, task switch, APIC access (see Section 27.4), EPT violation, EPT misconfiguration, or page-modification log-full event that causes a VM exit.
- An event **results** in a VM exit if it causes a VM exit (directly or indirectly).

The following bullets detail when architectural state is and is not updated in response to VM exits:

- If an event causes a VM exit directly, it does not update architectural state as it would have if it had it not caused the VM exit:
 - A debug exception does not update DR6, DR7.GD, or IA32_DEBUGCTL.LBR. (Information about the nature of the debug exception is saved in the exit qualification field.)
 - A page fault does not update CR2. (The linear address causing the page fault is saved in the exit-qualification field.)
 - An NMI causes subsequent NMIs to be blocked, but only after the VM exit completes.

- An external interrupt does not acknowledge the interrupt controller and the interrupt remains pending, unless the “acknowledge interrupt on exit” VM-exit control is 1. In such a case, the interrupt controller is acknowledged and the interrupt is no longer pending.
 - The flags L0 – L3 in DR7 (bit 0, bit 2, bit 4, and bit 6) are not cleared when a task switch causes a VM exit.
 - If a task switch causes a VM exit, none of the following are modified by the task switch: old task-state segment (TSS); new TSS; old TSS descriptor; new TSS descriptor; RFLAGS.NT¹; or the TR register.
 - No last-exception record is made if the event that would do so directly causes a VM exit.
 - If a machine-check exception causes a VM exit directly, this does not prevent machine-check MSR from being updated. These are updated by the machine-check event itself and not the resulting machine-check exception.
 - If the logical processor is in an inactive state (see Section 24.4.2) and not executing instructions, some events may be blocked but others may return the logical processor to the active state. Unblocked events may cause VM exits.² If an unblocked event causes a VM exit directly, a return to the active state occurs only after the VM exit completes.³ The VM exit generates any special bus cycle that is normally generated when the active state is entered from that activity state.
- MTF VM exits (see Section 25.5.2 and Section 26.6.8) are not blocked in the HLT activity state. If an MTF VM exit occurs in the HLT activity state, the logical processor returns to the active state only after the VM exit completes. MTF VM exits are blocked the shutdown state and the wait-for-SIPI state.
- If an event causes a VM exit indirectly, the event does update architectural state:
 - A debug exception updates DR6, DR7, and the IA32_DEBUGCTL MSR. No debug exceptions are considered pending.
 - A page fault updates CR2.
 - An NMI causes subsequent NMIs to be blocked before the VM exit commences.
 - An external interrupt acknowledges the interrupt controller and the interrupt is no longer pending.
 - If the logical processor had been in an inactive state, it enters the active state and, before the VM exit commences, generates any special bus cycle that is normally generated when the active state is entered from that activity state.
 - There is no blocking by STI or by MOV SS when the VM exit commences.
 - Processor state that is normally updated as part of delivery through the IDT (CS, RIP, SS, RSP, RFLAGS) is not modified. However, the incomplete delivery of the event may write to the stack.
 - The treatment of last-exception records is implementation dependent:
 - Some processors make a last-exception record when beginning the delivery of an event through the IDT (before it can encounter a nested exception). Such processors perform this update even if the event encounters a nested exception that causes a VM exit (including the case where nested exceptions lead to a triple fault).
 - Other processors delay making a last-exception record until event delivery has reached some event handler successfully (perhaps after one or more nested exceptions). Such processors do not update the last-exception record if a VM exit or triple fault occurs before an event handler is reached.
 - If the “virtual NMIs” VM-execution control is 1, VM entry injects an NMI, and delivery of the NMI causes a nested exception, double fault, task switch, or APIC access that causes a VM exit, virtual-NMI blocking is in effect before the VM exit commences.

1. This chapter uses the notation RAX, RIP, RSP, RFLAGS, etc. for processor registers because most processors that support VMX operation also support Intel 64 architecture. For processors that do not support Intel 64 architecture, this notation refers to the 32-bit forms of those registers (EAX, EIP, ESP, EFLAGS, etc.). In a few places, notation such as EAX is used to refer specifically to lower 32 bits of the indicated register.

2. If a VM exit takes the processor from an inactive state resulting from execution of a specific instruction (HLT or MWAIT), the value saved for RIP by that VM exit will reference the following instruction.

3. An exception is made if the logical processor had been inactive due to execution of MWAIT; in this case, it is considered to have become active before the VM exit.

- If a VM exit results from a fault, EPT violation, EPT misconfiguration, or page-modification log-full event is encountered during execution of IRET and the “NMI exiting” VM-execution control is 0, any blocking by NMI is cleared before the VM exit commences. However, the previous state of blocking by NMI may be recorded in the exit qualification or in the VM-exit interruption-information field; see Section 27.2.1 and Section 27.2.2.
- If a VM exit results from a fault, EPT violation, EPT misconfiguration, or page-modification log-full event is encountered during execution of IRET and the “virtual NMIs” VM-execution control is 1, virtual-NMI blocking is cleared before the VM exit commences. However, the previous state of blocking by NMI may be recorded in the exit qualification or in the VM-exit interruption-information field; see Section 27.2.1 and Section 27.2.2.
- Suppose that a VM exit is caused directly by an x87 FPU Floating-Point Error (#MF) or by any of the following events if the event was unblocked due to (and given priority over) an x87 FPU Floating-Point Error: an INIT signal, an external interrupt, an NMI, an SMI; or a machine-check exception. In these cases, there is no blocking by STI or by MOV SS when the VM exit commences.
- Normally, a last-branch record may be made when an event is delivered through the IDT. However, if such an event results in a VM exit before delivery is complete, no last-branch record is made.
- If machine-check exception results in a VM exit, processor state is suspect and may result in suspect state being saved to the guest-state area. A VM monitor should consult the RIPV and EIPV bits in the IA32_MCG_STATUS MSR before resuming a guest that caused a VM exit resulting from a machine-check exception.
- If a VM exit results from a fault, APIC access (see Section 29.4), EPT violation, EPT misconfiguration, or page-modification log-full event is encountered while executing an instruction, data breakpoints due to that instruction may have been recognized and information about them may be saved in the pending debug exceptions field (unless the VM exit clears that field; see Section 27.3.4).
- The following VM exits are considered to happen after an instruction is executed:
 - VM exits resulting from debug traps (single-step, I/O breakpoints, and data breakpoints).
 - VM exits resulting from debug exceptions (data breakpoints) whose recognition was delayed by blocking by MOV SS.
 - VM exits resulting from some machine-check exceptions.
 - Trap-like VM exits due to execution of MOV to CR8 when the “CR8-load exiting” VM-execution control is 0 and the “use TPR shadow” VM-execution control is 1 (see Section 29.3). (Such VM exits can occur only from 64-bit mode and thus only on processors that support Intel 64 architecture.)
 - Trap-like VM exits due to execution of WRMSR when the “use MSR bitmaps” VM-execution control is 1; the value of ECX is in the range 800H–8FFH; and the bit corresponding to the ECX value in write bitmap for low MSRs is 0; and the “virtualize x2APIC mode” VM-execution control is 1. See Section 29.5.
 - VM exits caused by APIC-write emulation (see Section 29.4.3.2) that result from APIC accesses as part of instruction execution.

For these VM exits, the instruction’s modifications to architectural state complete before the VM exit occurs. Such modifications include those to the logical processor’s interruptibility state (see Table 24-3). If there had been blocking by MOV SS, POP SS, or STI before the instruction executed, such blocking is no longer in effect.

A VM exit that occurs in enclave mode sets bit 27 of the exit-reason field and bit 4 of the guest interruptibility-state field. Before such a VM exit is delivered, an Asynchronous Enclave Exit (AEX) occurs (see Chapter 39, “Enclave Exiting Events”). An AEX modifies architectural state (Section 39.3). In particular, the processor establishes the following architectural state as indicated:

- The following bits in RFLAGS are cleared: CF, PF, AF, ZF, SF, OF, and RF.
- FS and GS are restored to the values they had prior to the most recent enclave entry.
- RIP is loaded with the AEP of interrupted enclave thread.
- RSP is loaded from the URSP field in the enclave’s state-save area (SSA).

27.2 RECORDING VM-EXIT INFORMATION AND UPDATING VM-ENTRY CONTROL FIELDS

VM exits begin by recording information about the nature of and reason for the VM exit in the VM-exit information fields. Section 27.2.1 to Section 27.2.4 detail the use of these fields.

In addition to updating the VM-exit information fields, the valid bit (bit 31) is cleared in the VM-entry interruption-information field. If bit 5 of the IA32_VMX_MISC MSR (index 485H) is read as 1 (see Appendix A.6), the value of IA32_EFER.LMA is stored into the “IA-32e mode guest” VM-entry control.¹

27.2.1 Basic VM-Exit Information

Section 24.9.1 defines the basic VM-exit information fields. The following items detail their use.

- **Exit reason.**
 - Bits 15:0 of this field contain the basic exit reason. It is loaded with a number indicating the general cause of the VM exit. Appendix C lists the numbers used and their meaning.
 - Bit 27 of this field is set to 1 if the VM exit occurred while the logical processor was in enclave mode. Such VM exits includes those caused by interrupts, non-maskable interrupts, system-management interrupts, INIT signals, and exceptions occurring in enclave mode as well as exceptions encountered during the delivery of such events incident to enclave mode. A VM exit also sets this bit if it is incident to delivery of an event injected by VM entry and the guest interruptibility-state field indicates an enclave interrupt (bit 4 of the field is 1).
 - The remainder of the field (bits 31:28 and bits 26:16) is cleared to 0 (certain SMM VM exits may set some of these bits; see Section 34.15.2.3).²
- **Exit qualification.** This field is saved for VM exits due to the following causes: debug exceptions; page-fault exceptions; start-up IPIs (SIPIs); system-management interrupts (SMIs) that arrive immediately after the retirement of I/O instructions; task switches; INVEPT; INVLPG; INVPCID; INVVPID; LGDT; LIDT; LLDT; LTR; SGDT; SIDT; SLDT; STR; VMCLEAR; VMPTRLD; VMPTRST; VMREAD; VMWRITE; VMXON; XRSTORS; XSAVES; control-register accesses; MOV DR; I/O instructions; MWAIT; accesses to the APIC-access page (see Section 29.4); EPT violations; EOI virtualization (see Section 29.1.4); APIC-write emulation (see Section 29.4.3.3); and page-modification log full (see Section 28.2.5). For all other VM exits, this field is cleared. The following items provide details:
 - For a debug exception, the exit qualification contains information about the debug exception. The information has the format given in Table 27-1.

Table 27-1. Exit Qualification for Debug Exceptions

Bit Position(s)	Contents
3:0	B3 - B0. When set, each of these bits indicates that the corresponding breakpoint condition was met. Any of these bits may be set even if its corresponding enabling bit in DR7 is not set.
12:4	Reserved (cleared to 0).
13	BD. When set, this bit indicates that the cause of the debug exception is “debug register access detected.”
14	BS. When set, this bit indicates that the cause of the debug exception is either the execution of a single instruction (if RFLAGS.TF = 1 and IA32_DEBUGCTL.BTF = 0) or a taken branch (if RFLAGS.TF = DEBUGCTL.BTF = 1).
15	Reserved (cleared to 0).

1. Bit 5 of the IA32_VMX_MISC MSR is read as 1 on any logical processor that supports the 1-setting of the “unrestricted guest” VM-execution control.
 2. Bit 31 of this field is set on certain VM-entry failures; see Section 26.7.

Table 27-1. Exit Qualification for Debug Exceptions (Contd.)

Bit Position(s)	Contents
16	RTM. When set, this bit indicates that a debug exception (#DB) or a breakpoint exception (#BP) occurred inside an RTM region while advanced debugging of RTM transactional regions was enabled (see Section 16.3.7, "RTM-Enabled Debugger Support," of the <i>Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 1</i>). ¹
63:17	Reserved (cleared to 0). Bits 63:32 exist only on processors that support Intel 64 architecture.

NOTES:

1. In general, the format of this field matches that of DR6. However, DR6 **clears** bit 16 to indicate an RTM-related exception, while this field **sets** the bit to indicate that condition.

- For a page-fault exception, the exit qualification contains the linear address that caused the page fault. On processors that support Intel 64 architecture, bits 63:32 are cleared if the logical processor was not in 64-bit mode before the VM exit.

If the page-fault exception occurred during execution of an instruction in enclave mode (and not during delivery of an event incident to enclave mode), bits 11:0 of the exit qualification are cleared.
- For a start-up IPI (SIPI), the exit qualification contains the SIPI vector information in bits 7:0. Bits 63:8 of the exit qualification are cleared to 0.
- For a task switch, the exit qualification contains details about the task switch, encoded as shown in Table 27-2.
- For INVLPG, the exit qualification contains the linear-address operand of the instruction.
 - On processors that support Intel 64 architecture, bits 63:32 are cleared if the logical processor was not in 64-bit mode before the VM exit.
 - If the INVLPG source operand specifies an unusable segment, the linear address specified in the exit qualification will match the linear address that the INVLPG would have used if no VM exit occurred. This address is not architecturally defined and may be implementation-specific.

Table 27-2. Exit Qualification for Task Switch

Bit Position(s)	Contents
15:0	Selector of task-state segment (TSS) to which the guest attempted to switch
29:16	Reserved (cleared to 0)
31:30	Source of task switch initiation: 0: CALL instruction 1: IRET instruction 2: JMP instruction 3: Task gate in IDT
63:32	Reserved (cleared to 0). These bits exist only on processors that support Intel 64 architecture.

- For INVEPT, INVPCID, INVVPID, LGDT, LIDT, LLDT, LTR, SGDT, SIDT, SLDT, STR, VMCLEAR, VMPTRLD, VMPTRST, VMREAD, VMWRITE, VMXON, XRSTORS, and XSAVES, the exit qualification receives the value of the instruction's displacement field, which is sign-extended to 64 bits if necessary (32 bits on processors that do not support Intel 64 architecture). If the instruction has no displacement (for example, has a register operand), zero is stored into the exit qualification.

On processors that support Intel 64 architecture, an exception is made for RIP-relative addressing (used only in 64-bit mode). Such addressing causes an instruction to use an address that is the sum of the displacement field and the value of RIP that references the following instruction. In this case, the exit qualification is loaded with the sum of the displacement field and the appropriate RIP value.

In all cases, bits of this field beyond the instruction’s address size are undefined. For example, suppose that the address-size field in the VM-exit instruction-information field (see Section 24.9.4 and Section 27.2.4) reports an *n*-bit address size. Then bits 63:*n* (bits 31:*n* on processors that do not support Intel 64 architecture) of the instruction displacement are undefined.

- For a control-register access, the exit qualification contains information about the access and has the format given in Table 27-3.
- For MOV DR, the exit qualification contains information about the instruction and has the format given in Table 27-4.
- For an I/O instruction, the exit qualification contains information about the instruction and has the format given in Table 27-5.
- For MWAIT, the exit qualification contains a value that indicates whether address-range monitoring hardware was armed. The exit qualification is set either to 0 (if address-range monitoring hardware is not armed) or to 1 (if address-range monitoring hardware is armed).
- For an APIC-access VM exit resulting from a linear access or a guest-physical access to the APIC-access page (see Section 29.4), the exit qualification contains information about the access and has the format given in Table 27-6.¹

If the access to the APIC-access page occurred during execution of an instruction in enclave mode (and not during delivery of an event incident to enclave mode), bits 11:0 of the exit qualification are cleared.

Such a VM exit that set bits 15:12 of the exit qualification to 0000b (data read during instruction execution) or 0001b (data write during instruction execution) set bit 12—which distinguishes data read from data write—to that which would have been stored in bit 1—W/R—of the page-fault error code had the access caused a page fault instead of an APIC-access VM exit. This implies the following:

- For an APIC-access VM exit caused by the CLFLUSH and CLFLUSHOPT instructions, the access type is “data read during instruction execution.”
- For an APIC-access VM exit caused by the ENTER instruction, the access type is “data write during instruction execution.”

Table 27-3. Exit Qualification for Control-Register Accesses

Bit Positions	Contents
3:0	Number of control register (0 for CLTS and LMSW). Bit 3 is always 0 on processors that do not support Intel 64 architecture as they do not support CR8.
5:4	Access type: 0 = MOV to CR 1 = MOV from CR 2 = CLTS 3 = LMSW
6	LMSW operand type: 0 = register 1 = memory For CLTS and MOV CR, cleared to 0
7	Reserved (cleared to 0)

1. The exit qualification is undefined if the access was part of the logging of a branch record or a processor-event-based-sampling (PEBS) record to the DS save area. It is recommended that software configure the paging structures so that no address in the DS save area translates to an address on the APIC-access page.

Table 27-3. Exit Qualification for Control-Register Accesses (Contd.)

Bit Positions	Contents
11:8	For MOV CR, the general-purpose register: 0 = RAX 1 = RCX 2 = RDX 3 = RBX 4 = RSP 5 = RBP 6 = RSI 7 = RDI 8-15 represent R8-R15, respectively (used only on processors that support Intel 64 architecture) For CLTS and LMSW, cleared to 0
15:12	Reserved (cleared to 0)
31:16	For LMSW, the LMSW source data For CLTS and MOV CR, cleared to 0
63:32	Reserved (cleared to 0). These bits exist only on processors that support Intel 64 architecture.

- For an APIC-access VM exit caused by the MASKMOVQ instruction or the MASKMOVDQU instruction, the access type is "data write during instruction execution."
- For an APIC-access VM exit caused by the MONITOR instruction, the access type is "data read during instruction execution."

Such a VM exit stores 1 for bit 31 for IDT-vectoring information field (see Section 27.2.3) if and only if it sets bits 15:12 of the exit qualification to 0011b (linear access during event delivery) or 1010b (guest-physical access during event delivery).

See Section 29.4.4 for further discussion of these instructions and APIC-access VM exits.

For APIC-access VM exits resulting from physical accesses to the APIC-access page (see Section 29.4.6), the exit qualification is undefined.

- For an EPT violation, the exit qualification contains information about the access causing the EPT violation and has the format given in Table 27-7.

As noted in that table, the format and meaning of the exit qualification depends on the setting of the "mode-based execute control for EPT" VM-execution control and whether the processor supports advanced VM-exit information for EPT violations.¹

An EPT violation that occurs during as a result of execution of a read-modify-write operation sets bit 1 (data write). Whether it also sets bit 0 (data read) is implementation-specific and, for a given implementation, may differ for different kinds of read-modify-write operations.

Table 27-4. Exit Qualification for MOV DR

Bit Position(s)	Contents
2:0	Number of debug register
3	Reserved (cleared to 0)
4	Direction of access (0 = MOV to DR; 1 = MOV from DR)

1. Software can determine whether advanced VM-exit information for EPT violations is supported by consulting the VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_EPT_VPID_CAP (see Appendix A.10).

Table 27-4. Exit Qualification for MOV DR (Contd.)

Bit Position(s)	Contents
7:5	Reserved (cleared to 0)
11:8	General-purpose register: 0 = RAX 1 = RCX 2 = RDX 3 = RBX 4 = RSP 5 = RBP 6 = RSI 7 = RDI 8 - 15 = R8 - R15, respectively
63:12	Reserved (cleared to 0)

Table 27-5. Exit Qualification for I/O Instructions

Bit Position(s)	Contents
2:0	Size of access: 0 = 1-byte 1 = 2-byte 3 = 4-byte Other values not used
3	Direction of the attempted access (0 = OUT, 1 = IN)
4	String instruction (0 = not string; 1 = string)
5	REP prefixed (0 = not REP; 1 = REP)
6	Operand encoding (0 = DX, 1 = immediate)
15:7	Reserved (cleared to 0)
31:16	Port number (as specified in DX or in an immediate operand)
63:32	Reserved (cleared to 0). These bits exist only on processors that support Intel 64 architecture.

Bit 12 is undefined in any of the following cases:

- If the “NMI exiting” VM-execution control is 1 and the “virtual NMIs” VM-execution control is 0.
- If the VM exit sets the valid bit in the IDT-vectoring information field (see Section 27.2.3).

Otherwise, bit 12 is defined as follows:

- If the “virtual NMIs” VM-execution control is 0, the EPT violation was caused by a memory access as part of execution of the IRET instruction, and blocking by NMI (see Table 24-3) was in effect before execution of IRET, bit 12 is set to 1.

Table 27-6. Exit Qualification for APIC-Access VM Exits from Linear Accesses and Guest-Physical Accesses

Bit Position(s)	Contents
11:0	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ If the APIC-access VM exit is due to a linear access, the offset of access within the APIC page. ▪ Undefined if the APIC-access VM exit is due a guest-physical access
15:12	<p>Access type:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0 = linear access for a data read during instruction execution 1 = linear access for a data write during instruction execution 2 = linear access for an instruction fetch 3 = linear access (read or write) during event delivery 10 = guest-physical access during event delivery 15 = guest-physical access for an instruction fetch or during instruction execution <p>Other values not used</p>
63:16	Reserved (cleared to 0). Bits 63:32 exist only on processors that support Intel 64 architecture.

- If the “virtual NMIs” VM-execution control is 1, the EPT violation was caused by a memory access as part of execution of the IRET instruction, and virtual-NMI blocking was in effect before execution of IRET, bit 12 is set to 1.
- For all other relevant VM exits, bit 12 is cleared to 0.
- For VM exits caused as part of EOI virtualization (Section 29.1.4), bits 7:0 of the exit qualification are set to vector of the virtual interrupt that was dismissed by the EOI virtualization. Bits above bit 7 are cleared.
- For APIC-write VM exits (Section 29.4.3.3), bits 11:0 of the exit qualification are set to the page offset of the write access that caused the VM exit.¹ Bits above bit 11 are cleared.
- For a VM exit due to a page-modification log-full event (Section 28.2.5), only bit 12 of the exit qualification is defined, and only in some cases. It is undefined in the following cases:
 - If the “NMI exiting” VM-execution control is 1 and the “virtual NMIs” VM-execution control is 0.
 - If the VM exit sets the valid bit in the IDT-vectoring information field (see Section 27.2.3).

Otherwise, it is defined as follows:

- If the “virtual NMIs” VM-execution control is 0, the page-modification log-full event was caused by a memory access as part of execution of the IRET instruction, and blocking by NMI (see Table 24-3) was in effect before execution of IRET, bit 12 is set to 1.
- If the “virtual NMIs” VM-execution control is 1, the page-modification log-full event was caused by a memory access as part of execution of the IRET instruction, and virtual-NMI blocking was in effect before execution of IRET, bit 12 is set to 1.
- For all other relevant VM exits, bit 12 is cleared to 0.

For these VM exits, all bits other than bit 12 are undefined.

- **Guest-linear address.** For some VM exits, this field receives a linear address that pertains to the VM exit. The field is set for different VM exits as follows:
 - VM exits due to attempts to execute LMSW with a memory operand. In these cases, this field receives the linear address of that operand. Bits 63:32 are cleared if the logical processor was not in 64-bit mode before the VM exit.
 - VM exits due to attempts to execute INS or OUTS for which the relevant segment is usable (if the relevant segment is not usable, the value is undefined). (ES is always the relevant segment for INS; for OUTS, the relevant segment is DS unless overridden by an instruction prefix.) The linear address is the base address of relevant segment plus (E)DI (for INS) or (E)SI (for OUTS). Bits 63:32 are cleared if the logical processor was not in 64-bit mode before the VM exit.

1. Execution of WRMSR with ECX = 83FH (self-IPI MSR) can lead to an APIC-write VM exit; the exit qualification for such an APIC-write VM exit is 3FOH.

Table 27-7. Exit Qualification for EPT Violations

Bit Position(s)	Contents
0	Set if the access causing the EPT violation was a data read. ¹
1	Set if the access causing the EPT violation was a data write. ¹
2	Set if the access causing the EPT violation was an instruction fetch.
3	The logical-AND of bit 0 in the EPT paging-structure entries used to translate the guest-physical address of the access causing the EPT violation (indicates whether the guest-physical address was readable). ²
4	The logical-AND of bit 1 in the EPT paging-structure entries used to translate the guest-physical address of the access causing the EPT violation (indicates whether the guest-physical address was writeable).
5	The logical-AND of bit 2 in the EPT paging-structure entries used to translate the guest-physical address of the access causing the EPT violation. If the “mode-based execute control for EPT” VM-execution control is 0, this indicates whether the guest-physical address was executable. If that control is 1, this indicates whether the guest-physical address was executable for supervisor-mode linear addresses.
6	If the “mode-based execute control” VM-execution control is 0, the value of this bit is undefined. If that control is 1, this bit is the logical-AND of bit 10 in the EPT paging-structures entries used to translate the guest-physical address of the access causing the EPT violation. In this case, it indicates whether the guest-physical address was executable for user-mode linear addresses.
7	Set if the guest linear-address field is valid. The guest linear-address field is valid for all EPT violations except those resulting from an attempt to load the guest PDPTes as part of the execution of the MOV CR instruction.
8	If bit 7 is 1: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Set if the access causing the EPT violation is to a guest-physical address that is the translation of a linear address. ▪ Clear if the access causing the EPT violation is to a paging-structure entry as part of a page walk or the update of an accessed or dirty bit. Reserved if bit 7 is 0 (cleared to 0).
9	If bit 7 is 1, bit 8 is 1, and the processor supports advanced VM-exit information for EPT violations, ³ this bit is 0 if the linear address is a supervisor-mode linear address and 1 if it is a user-mode linear address. (If CRO.PG = 0, the translation of every linear address is a user-mode linear address and thus this bit will be 1.) Otherwise, this bit is undefined.
10	If bit 7 is 1, bit 8 is 1, and the processor supports advanced VM-exit information for EPT violations, ³ this bit is 0 if paging translates the linear address to a read-only page and 1 if it translates to a read/write page. (If CRO.PG = 0, every linear address is read/write and thus this bit will be 1.) Otherwise, this bit is undefined.
11	If bit 7 is 1, bit 8 is 1, and the processor supports advanced VM-exit information for EPT violations, ³ this bit is 0 if paging translates the linear address to an executable page and 1 if it translates to an execute-disable page. (If CRO.PG = 0, CR4.PAE = 0, or IA32_EFER.NXE = 0, every linear address is executable and thus this bit will be 0.) Otherwise, this bit is undefined.
12	NMI unblocking due to IRET
63:13	Reserved (cleared to 0).

NOTES:

1. If accessed and dirty flags for EPT are enabled, processor accesses to guest paging-structure entries are treated as writes with regard to EPT violations (see Section 28.2.3.2). If such an access causes an EPT violation, the processor sets both bit 0 and bit 1 of the exit qualification.

2. Bits 5:3 are cleared to 0 if any of EPT paging-structure entries used to translate the guest-physical address of the access causing the EPT violation is not present (see Section 28.2.2).
3. Software can determine whether advanced VM-exit information for EPT violations is supported by consulting the VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_EPT_VPID_CAP (see Appendix A.10).

- VM exits due to EPT violations that set bit 7 of the exit qualification (see Table 27-7; these are all EPT violations except those resulting from an attempt to load the PDPTEs as of execution of the MOV CR instruction). The linear address may translate to the guest-physical address whose access caused the EPT violation. Alternatively, translation of the linear address may reference a paging-structure entry whose access caused the EPT violation. Bits 63:32 are cleared if the logical processor was not in 64-bit mode before the VM exit.

If the EPT violation occurred during execution of an instruction in enclave mode (and not during delivery of an event incident to enclave mode), bits 11:0 of this field are cleared.

- For all other VM exits, the field is undefined.

- **Guest-physical address.** For a VM exit due to an EPT violation or an EPT misconfiguration, this field receives the guest-physical address that caused the EPT violation or EPT misconfiguration. For all other VM exits, the field is undefined.

If the EPT violation or EPT misconfiguration occurred during execution of an instruction in enclave mode (and not during delivery of an event incident to enclave mode), bits 11:0 of this field are cleared.

27.2.2 Information for VM Exits Due to Vectored Events

Section 24.9.2 defines fields containing information for VM exits due to the following events: exceptions (including those generated by the instructions INT1, INT3, INTO, BOUND, UD0, UD1, and UD2); external interrupts that occur while the “acknowledge interrupt on exit” VM-exit control is 1; and non-maskable interrupts (NMIs).¹ Such VM exits include those that occur on an attempt at a task switch that causes an exception before generating the VM exit due to the task switch that causes the VM exit.

The following items detail the use of these fields:

- **VM-exit interruption information** (format given in Table 24-15). The following items detail how this field is established for VM exits due to these events:

- For an exception, bits 7:0 receive the exception vector (at most 31). For an NMI, bits 7:0 are set to 2. For an external interrupt, bits 7:0 receive the vector.
- Bits 10:8 are set to 0 (external interrupt), 2 (non-maskable interrupt), 3 (hardware exception), 5 (privileged software exception), or 6 (software exception). Hardware exceptions comprise all exceptions except the following:
 - Debug exceptions (#DB) generated by the INT1 instruction; these are privileged software exceptions. (Other debug exceptions are considered hardware exceptions, as are those caused by executions of INT1 in enclave mode.)
 - Breakpoint exceptions (#BP; generated by INT3) and overflow exceptions (#OF; generated by INTO); these are software exceptions. (A #BP that occurs in enclave mode is considered a hardware exception.)

BOUND-range exceeded exceptions (#BR; generated by BOUND) and invalid opcode exceptions (#UD) generated by UD0, UD1, and UD2 are hardware exceptions.

- Bit 11 is set to 1 if the VM exit is caused by a hardware exception that would have delivered an error code on the stack. This bit is always 0 if the VM exit occurred while the logical processor was in real-address mode (CR0.PE=0).² If bit 11 is set to 1, the error code is placed in the VM-exit interruption error code (see below).

1. INT1 and INT3 refer to the instructions with opcodes F1 and CC, respectively, and not to INT *n* with value 1 or 3 for *n*.

2. If the capability MSR IA32_VMX_CRO_FIXED0 reports that CR0.PE must be 1 in VMX operation, a logical processor cannot be in real-address mode unless the “unrestricted guest” VM-execution control and bit 31 of the primary processor-based VM-execution controls are both 1.

- Bit 12 is undefined in any of the following cases:
 - If the “NMI exiting” VM-execution control is 1 and the “virtual NMIs” VM-execution control is 0.
 - If the VM exit sets the valid bit in the IDT-vectoring information field (see Section 27.2.3).
 - If the VM exit is due to a double fault (the interruption type is hardware exception and the vector is 8).

Otherwise, bit 12 is defined as follows:

- If the “virtual NMIs” VM-execution control is 0, the VM exit is due to a fault on the IRET instruction (other than a debug exception for an instruction breakpoint), and blocking by NMI (see Table 24-3) was in effect before execution of IRET, bit 12 is set to 1.
 - If the “virtual NMIs” VM-execution control is 1, the VM exit is due to a fault on the IRET instruction (other than a debug exception for an instruction breakpoint), and virtual-NMI blocking was in effect before execution of IRET, bit 12 is set to 1.
 - For all other relevant VM exits, bit 12 is cleared to 0.¹
- Bits 30:13 are always set to 0.
 - Bit 31 is always set to 1.

For other VM exits (including those due to external interrupts when the “acknowledge interrupt on exit” VM-exit control is 0), the field is marked invalid (by clearing bit 31) and the remainder of the field is undefined.

- VM-exit interruption error code.
 - For VM exits that set both bit 31 (valid) and bit 11 (error code valid) in the VM-exit interruption-information field, this field receives the error code that would have been pushed on the stack had the event causing the VM exit been delivered normally through the IDT. The EXT bit is set in this field exactly when it would be set normally. For exceptions that occur during the delivery of double fault (if the IDT-vectoring information field indicates a double fault), the EXT bit is set to 1, assuming that (1) that the exception would produce an error code normally (if not incident to double-fault delivery) and (2) that the error code uses the EXT bit (not for page faults, which use a different format).
 - For other VM exits, the value of this field is undefined.

27.2.3 Information for VM Exits During Event Delivery

Section 24.9.3 defined fields containing information for VM exits that occur while delivering an event through the IDT and as a result of any of the following cases:²

- A fault occurs during event delivery and causes a VM exit (because the bit associated with the fault is set to 1 in the exception bitmap).
- A task switch is invoked through a task gate in the IDT. The VM exit occurs due to the task switch only after the initial checks of the task switch pass (see Section 25.4.2).
- Event delivery causes an APIC-access VM exit (see Section 29.4).
- An EPT violation, EPT misconfiguration, or page-modification log-full event that occurs during event delivery.

These fields are used for VM exits that occur during delivery of events injected as part of VM entry (see Section 26.5.1.2).

A VM exit is not considered to occur during event delivery in any of the following circumstances:

- The original event causes the VM exit directly (for example, because the original event is a non-maskable interrupt (NMI) and the “NMI exiting” VM-execution control is 1).
- The original event results in a double-fault exception that causes the VM exit directly.
- The VM exit occurred as a result of fetching the first instruction of the handler invoked by the event delivery.

1. The conditions imply that, if the “NMI exiting” VM-execution control is 0 or the “virtual NMIs” VM-execution control is 1, bit 12 is always cleared to 0 by VM exits due to debug exceptions.

2. This includes the case in which a VM exit occurs while delivering a software interrupt (INT *n*) through the 16-bit IVT (interrupt vector table) that is used in virtual-8086 mode with virtual-machine extensions (if RFLAGS.VM = CR4.VME = 1).

- The VM exit is caused by a triple fault.

The following items detail the use of these fields:

- IDT-vectoring information (format given in Table 24-16). The following items detail how this field is established for VM exits that occur during event delivery:
 - If the VM exit occurred during delivery of an exception, bits 7:0 receive the exception vector (at most 31). If the VM exit occurred during delivery of an NMI, bits 7:0 are set to 2. If the VM exit occurred during delivery of an external interrupt, bits 7:0 receive the vector.
 - Bits 10:8 are set to indicate the type of event that was being delivered when the VM exit occurred: 0 (external interrupt), 2 (non-maskable interrupt), 3 (hardware exception), 4 (software interrupt), 5 (privileged software interrupt), or 6 (software exception).

Hardware exceptions comprise all exceptions except the following:¹

- Debug exceptions (#DB) generated by the INT1 instruction; these are privileged software exceptions. (Other debug exceptions are considered hardware exceptions, as are those caused by executions of INT1 in enclave mode.)
- Breakpoint exceptions (#BP; generated by INT3) and overflow exceptions (#OF; generated by INTO); these are software exceptions. (A #BP that occurs in enclave mode is considered a hardware exception.)

BOUND-range exceeded exceptions (#BR; generated by BOUND) and invalid opcode exceptions (#UD) generated by UD0, UD1, and UD2 are hardware exceptions.

- Bit 11 is set to 1 if the VM exit occurred during delivery of a hardware exception that would have delivered an error code on the stack. This bit is always 0 if the VM exit occurred while the logical processor was in real-address mode (CR0.PE=0).² If bit 11 is set to 1, the error code is placed in the IDT-vectoring error code (see below).
- Bit 12 is undefined.
- Bits 30:13 are always set to 0.
- Bit 31 is always set to 1.

For other VM exits, the field is marked invalid (by clearing bit 31) and the remainder of the field is undefined.

- IDT-vectoring error code.
 - For VM exits that set both bit 31 (valid) and bit 11 (error code valid) in the IDT-vectoring information field, this field receives the error code that would have been pushed on the stack by the event that was being delivered through the IDT at the time of the VM exit. The EXT bit is set in this field when it would be set normally.
 - For other VM exits, the value of this field is undefined.

27.2.4 Information for VM Exits Due to Instruction Execution

Section 24.9.4 defined fields containing information for VM exits that occur due to instruction execution. (The VM-exit instruction length is also used for VM exits that occur during the delivery of a software interrupt or software exception.) The following items detail their use.

- **VM-exit instruction length.** This field is used in the following cases:
 - For fault-like VM exits due to attempts to execute one of the following instructions that cause VM exits unconditionally (see Section 25.1.2) or based on the settings of VM-execution controls (see Section 25.1.3): CLTS, CPUID, ENCLS, GETSEC, HLT, IN, INS, INVVD, INVEPT, INVLPG, INVPCID, INVVPID, LGDT,

1. In the following items, INT1 and INT3 refer to the instructions with opcodes F1 and CC, respectively, and not to INT *n* with value 1 or 3 for *n*.

2. If the capability MSR IA32_VMX_CRO_FIXED0 reports that CR0.PE must be 1 in VMX operation, a logical processor cannot be in real-address mode unless the “unrestricted guest” VM-execution control and bit 31 of the primary processor-based VM-execution controls are both 1.

LIDT, LLDT, LMSW, LTR, MONITOR, MOV CR, MOV DR, MWAIT, OUT, OUTS, PAUSE, RDMSR, RDPMSR, RDRAND, RDSEED, RDTSC, RDTSCP, RSM, SGDT, SIDT, SLDT, STR, VMCALL, VMCLEAR, VMLAUNCH, VMPTRLD, VMPTRST, VMREAD, VMRESUME, VMWRITE, VMXOFF, VMXON, WBINVD, WRMSR, XRSTORS, XSETBV, and XSAVES.¹

- For VM exits due to software exceptions (those generated by executions of INT3 or INTO) or privileged software exceptions (those generated by executions of INT1).
- For VM exits due to faults encountered during delivery of a software interrupt, privileged software exception, or software exception.
- For VM exits due to attempts to effect a task switch via instruction execution. These are VM exits that produce an exit reason indicating task switch and either of the following:
 - An exit qualification indicating execution of CALL, IRET, or JMP instruction.
 - An exit qualification indicating a task gate in the IDT and an IDT-vectoring information field indicating that the task gate was encountered during delivery of a software interrupt, privileged software exception, or software exception.
- For APIC-access VM exits and for VM exits caused by EPT violations and page-modification log-full events encountered during delivery of a software interrupt, privileged software exception, or software exception.²
- For VM exits due to executions of VMFUNC that fail because one of the following is true:
 - EAX indicates a VM function that is not enabled (the bit at position EAX is 0 in the VM-function controls; see Section 25.5.5.2).
 - EAX = 0 and either ECX ≥ 512 or the value of ECX selects an invalid tentative EPTP value (see Section 25.5.5.3).

In all the above cases, this field receives the length in bytes (1–15) of the instruction (including any instruction prefixes) whose execution led to the VM exit (see the next paragraph for one exception).

The cases of VM exits encountered during delivery of a software interrupt, privileged software exception, or software exception include those encountered during delivery of events injected as part of VM entry (see Section 26.5.1.2). If the original event was injected as part of VM entry, this field receives the value of the VM-entry instruction length.

All VM exits other than those listed in the above items leave this field undefined.

If the VM exit occurred in enclave mode, this field is cleared (none of the previous items apply).

Table 27-8. Format of the VM-Exit Instruction-Information Field as Used for INS and OUTS

Bit Position(s)	Content
6:0	Undefined.
9:7	Address size: 0: 16-bit 1: 32-bit 2: 64-bit (used only on processors that support Intel 64 architecture) Other values not used.
14:10	Undefined.

1. This item applies only to fault-like VM exits. It does not apply to trap-like VM exits following executions of the MOV to CR8 instruction when the “use TPR shadow” VM-execution control is 1 or to those following executions of the WRMSR instruction when the “virtualize x2APIC mode” VM-execution control is 1.

2. The VM-exit instruction-length field is not defined following APIC-access VM exits resulting from physical accesses (see Section 29.4.6) even if encountered during delivery of a software interrupt, privileged software exception, or software exception.

Table 27-8. Format of the VM-Exit Instruction-Information Field as Used for INS and OUTS (Contd.)

Bit Position(s)	Content
17:15	Segment register: 0: ES 1: CS 2: SS 3: DS 4: FS 5: GS Other values not used. Undefined for VM exits due to execution of INS.
31:18	Undefined.

- VM-exit instruction information.** For VM exits due to attempts to execute INS, INVEPT, INVPCID, INVVPID, LIDT, LGDT, LLDT, LTR, OUTS, RDRAND, RDSEED, SIDT, SGDT, SLDT, STR, VMCLEAR, VMPTRLD, VMPTRST, VMREAD, VMWRITE, VMXON, XRSTORS, or XSAVES, this field receives information about the instruction that caused the VM exit. The format of the field depends on the identity of the instruction causing the VM exit:
 - For VM exits due to attempts to execute INS or OUTS, the field has the format is given in Table 27-8.¹
 - For VM exits due to attempts to execute INVEPT, INVPCID, or INVVPID, the field has the format is given in Table 27-9.
 - For VM exits due to attempts to execute LIDT, LGDT, SIDT, or SGDT, the field has the format is given in Table 27-10.
 - For VM exits due to attempts to execute LLDT, LTR, SLDT, or STR, the field has the format is given in Table 27-11.
 - For VM exits due to attempts to execute RDRAND or RDSEED, the field has the format is given in Table 27-12.
 - For VM exits due to attempts to execute VMCLEAR, VMPTRLD, VMPTRST, VMXON, XRSTORS, or XSAVES, the field has the format is given in Table 27-13.
 - For VM exits due to attempts to execute VMREAD or VMWRITE, the field has the format is given in Table 27-14.

For all other VM exits, the field is undefined, unless the VM exit occurred in enclave mode, in which case the field is cleared.
- I/O RCX, I/O RSI, I/O RDI, I/O RIP.** These fields are undefined except for SMM VM exits due to system-management interrupts (SMIs) that arrive immediately after retirement of I/O instructions. See Section 34.15.2.3. Note that, if the VM exit occurred in enclave mode, these fields are all cleared.

Table 27-9. Format of the VM-Exit Instruction-Information Field as Used for INVEPT, INVPCID, and INVVPID

Bit Position(s)	Content
1:0	Scaling: 0: no scaling 1: scale by 2 2: scale by 4 3: scale by 8 (used only on processors that support Intel 64 architecture) Undefined for instructions with no index register (bit 22 is set).
6:2	Undefined.

1. The format of the field was undefined for these VM exits on the first processors to support the virtual-machine extensions. Software can determine whether the format specified in Table 27-8 is used by consulting the VMX capability MSR IA32_VMX_BASIC (see Appendix A.1).

Table 27-9. Format of the VM-Exit Instruction-Information Field as Used for INVEPT, INVPCID, and INVVPID (Contd.)

Bit Position(s)	Content
9:7	Address size: 0: 16-bit 1: 32-bit 2: 64-bit (used only on processors that support Intel 64 architecture) Other values not used.
10	Cleared to 0.
14:11	Undefined.
17:15	Segment register: 0: ES 1: CS 2: SS 3: DS 4: FS 5: GS Other values not used.
21:18	IndexReg: 0 = RAX 1 = RCX 2 = RDX 3 = RBX 4 = RSP 5 = RBP 6 = RSI 7 = RDI 8-15 represent R8-R15, respectively (used only on processors that support Intel 64 architecture) Undefined for instructions with no index register (bit 22 is set).
22	IndexReg invalid (0 = valid; 1 = invalid)
26:23	BaseReg (encoded as IndexReg above) Undefined for memory instructions with no base register (bit 27 is set).
27	BaseReg invalid (0 = valid; 1 = invalid)
31:28	Reg2 (same encoding as IndexReg above)

Table 27-10. Format of the VM-Exit Instruction-Information Field as Used for LIDT, LGDT, SIDT, or SGDT

Bit Position(s)	Content
1:0	Scaling: 0: no scaling 1: scale by 2 2: scale by 4 3: scale by 8 (used only on processors that support Intel 64 architecture) Undefined for instructions with no index register (bit 22 is set).
6:2	Undefined.
9:7	Address size: 0: 16-bit 1: 32-bit 2: 64-bit (used only on processors that support Intel 64 architecture) Other values not used.

Table 27-10. Format of the VM-Exit Instruction-Information Field as Used for LIDT, LGDT, SIDT, or SGDT (Contd.)

Bit Position(s)	Content
10	Cleared to 0.
11	Operand size: 0: 16-bit 1: 32-bit Undefined for VM exits from 64-bit mode.
14:12	Undefined.
17:15	Segment register: 0: ES 1: CS 2: SS 3: DS 4: FS 5: GS Other values not used.
21:18	IndexReg: 0 = RAX 1 = RCX 2 = RDX 3 = RBX 4 = RSP 5 = RBP 6 = RSI 7 = RDI 8-15 represent R8-R15, respectively (used only on processors that support Intel 64 architecture) Undefined for instructions with no index register (bit 22 is set).
22	IndexReg invalid (0 = valid; 1 = invalid)
26:23	BaseReg (encoded as IndexReg above) Undefined for instructions with no base register (bit 27 is set).
27	BaseReg invalid (0 = valid; 1 = invalid)
29:28	Instruction identity: 0: SGDT 1: SIDT 2: LGDT 3: LIDT
31:30	Undefined.

Table 27-11. Format of the VM-Exit Instruction-Information Field as Used for LLDT, LTR, SLDT, and STR

Bit Position(s)	Content
1:0	Scaling: 0: no scaling 1: scale by 2 2: scale by 4 3: scale by 8 (used only on processors that support Intel 64 architecture) Undefined for register instructions (bit 10 is set) and for memory instructions with no index register (bit 10 is clear and bit 22 is set).
2	Undefined.

Table 27-11. Format of the VM-Exit Instruction-Information Field as Used for LLDT, LTR, SLDT, and STR (Contd.)

Bit Position(s)	Content
6:3	Reg1: 0 = RAX 1 = RCX 2 = RDX 3 = RBX 4 = RSP 5 = RBP 6 = RSI 7 = RDI 8-15 represent R8-R15, respectively (used only on processors that support Intel 64 architecture) Undefined for memory instructions (bit 10 is clear).
9:7	Address size: 0: 16-bit 1: 32-bit 2: 64-bit (used only on processors that support Intel 64 architecture) Other values not used. Undefined for register instructions (bit 10 is set).
10	Mem/Reg (0 = memory; 1 = register).
14:11	Undefined.
17:15	Segment register: 0: ES 1: CS 2: SS 3: DS 4: FS 5: GS Other values not used. Undefined for register instructions (bit 10 is set).
21:18	IndexReg (encoded as Reg1 above) Undefined for register instructions (bit 10 is set) and for memory instructions with no index register (bit 10 is clear and bit 22 is set).
22	IndexReg invalid (0 = valid; 1 = invalid) Undefined for register instructions (bit 10 is set).
26:23	BaseReg (encoded as Reg1 above) Undefined for register instructions (bit 10 is set) and for memory instructions with no base register (bit 10 is clear and bit 27 is set).
27	BaseReg invalid (0 = valid; 1 = invalid) Undefined for register instructions (bit 10 is set).
29:28	Instruction identity: 0: SLDT 1: STR 2: LLDT 3: LTR
31:30	Undefined.

Table 27-12. Format of the VM-Exit Instruction-Information Field as Used for RDRAND and RDSEED

Bit Position(s)	Content
2:0	Undefined.

Table 27-12. Format of the VM-Exit Instruction-Information Field as Used for RDRAND and RDSEED

Bit Position(s)	Content
6:3	Destination register: 0 = RAX 1 = RCX 2 = RDX 3 = RBX 4 = RSP 5 = RBP 6 = RSI 7 = RDI 8-15 represent R8-R15, respectively (used only on processors that support Intel 64 architecture)
10:7	Undefined.
12:11	Operand size: 0: 16-bit 1: 32-bit 2: 64-bit The value 3 is not used.
31:13	Undefined.

Table 27-13. Format of the VM-Exit Instruction-Information Field as Used for VMCLEAR, VMPTRLD, VMPTRST, VMXON, XRSTORS, and XSAVES

Bit Position(s)	Content
1:0	Scaling: 0: no scaling 1: scale by 2 2: scale by 4 3: scale by 8 (used only on processors that support Intel 64 architecture) Undefined for instructions with no index register (bit 22 is set).
6:2	Undefined.
9:7	Address size: 0: 16-bit 1: 32-bit 2: 64-bit (used only on processors that support Intel 64 architecture) Other values not used.
10	Cleared to 0.
14:11	Undefined.
17:15	Segment register: 0: ES 1: CS 2: SS 3: DS 4: FS 5: GS Other values not used.

Table 27-13. Format of the VM-Exit Instruction-Information Field as Used for VMCLEAR, VMPTRLD, VMPTRST, VMXON, XRSTORS, and XSAVES (Contd.)

Bit Position(s)	Content
21:18	IndexReg: 0 = RAX 1 = RCX 2 = RDX 3 = RBX 4 = RSP 5 = RBP 6 = RSI 7 = RDI 8-15 represent R8-R15, respectively (used only on processors that support Intel 64 architecture) Undefined for instructions with no index register (bit 22 is set).
22	IndexReg invalid (0 = valid; 1 = invalid)
26:23	BaseReg (encoded as IndexReg above) Undefined for instructions with no base register (bit 27 is set).
27	BaseReg invalid (0 = valid; 1 = invalid)
31:28	Undefined.

Table 27-14. Format of the VM-Exit Instruction-Information Field as Used for VMREAD and VMWRITE

Bit Position(s)	Content
1:0	Scaling: 0: no scaling 1: scale by 2 2: scale by 4 3: scale by 8 (used only on processors that support Intel 64 architecture) Undefined for register instructions (bit 10 is set) and for memory instructions with no index register (bit 10 is clear and bit 22 is set).
2	Undefined.
6:3	Reg1: 0 = RAX 1 = RCX 2 = RDX 3 = RBX 4 = RSP 5 = RBP 6 = RSI 7 = RDI 8-15 represent R8-R15, respectively (used only on processors that support Intel 64 architecture) Undefined for memory instructions (bit 10 is clear).
9:7	Address size: 0: 16-bit 1: 32-bit 2: 64-bit (used only on processors that support Intel 64 architecture) Other values not used. Undefined for register instructions (bit 10 is set).
10	Mem/Reg (0 = memory; 1 = register).
14:11	Undefined.

Table 27-14. Format of the VM-Exit Instruction-Information Field as Used for VMREAD and VMWRITE (Contd.)

Bit Position(s)	Content
17:15	Segment register: 0: ES 1: CS 2: SS 3: DS 4: FS 5: GS Other values not used. Undefined for register instructions (bit 10 is set).
21:18	IndexReg (encoded as Reg1 above) Undefined for register instructions (bit 10 is set) and for memory instructions with no index register (bit 10 is clear and bit 22 is set).
22	IndexReg invalid (0 = valid; 1 = invalid) Undefined for register instructions (bit 10 is set).
26:23	BaseReg (encoded as Reg1 above) Undefined for register instructions (bit 10 is set) and for memory instructions with no base register (bit 10 is clear and bit 27 is set).
27	BaseReg invalid (0 = valid; 1 = invalid) Undefined for register instructions (bit 10 is set).
31:28	Reg2 (same encoding as Reg1 above)

27.3 SAVING GUEST STATE

VM exits save certain components of processor state into corresponding fields in the guest-state area of the VMCS (see Section 24.4). On processors that support Intel 64 architecture, the full value of each natural-width field (see Section 24.11.2) is saved regardless of the mode of the logical processor before and after the VM exit.

In general, the state saved is that which was in the logical processor at the time the VM exit commences. See Section 27.1 for a discussion of which architectural updates occur at that time.

Section 27.3.1 through Section 27.3.4 provide details for how various components of processor state are saved. These sections reference VMCS fields that correspond to processor state. Unless otherwise stated, these references are to fields in the guest-state area.

27.3.1 Saving Control Registers, Debug Registers, and MSRs

Contents of certain control registers, debug registers, and MSRs is saved as follows:

- The contents of CR0, CR3, CR4, and the IA32_SYSENTER_CS, IA32_SYSENTER_ESP, and IA32_SYSENTER_EIP MSRs are saved into the corresponding fields. Bits 63:32 of the IA32_SYSENTER_CS MSR are not saved. On processors that do not support Intel 64 architecture, bits 63:32 of the IA32_SYSENTER_ESP and IA32_SYSENTER_EIP MSRs are not saved.
- If the “save debug controls” VM-exit control is 1, the contents of DR7 and the IA32_DEBUGCTL MSR are saved into the corresponding fields. The first processors to support the virtual-machine extensions supported only the 1-setting of this control and thus always saved data into these fields.
- If the “save IA32_PAT” VM-exit control is 1, the contents of the IA32_PAT MSR are saved into the corresponding field.
- If the “save IA32_EFER” VM-exit control is 1, the contents of the IA32_EFER MSR are saved into the corresponding field.

- If the processor supports either the 1-setting of the “load IA32_BNDCFGS” VM-entry control or that of the “clear IA32_BNDCFGS” VM-exit control, the contents of the IA32_BNDCFGS MSR are saved into the corresponding field.
- The value of the SMBASE field is undefined after all VM exits except SMM VM exits. See Section 34.15.2.

27.3.2 Saving Segment Registers and Descriptor-Table Registers

For each segment register (CS, SS, DS, ES, FS, GS, LDTR, or TR), the values saved for the base-address, segment-limit, and access rights are based on whether the register was unusable (see Section 24.4.1) before the VM exit:

- If the register was unusable, the values saved into the following fields are undefined: (1) base address; (2) segment limit; and (3) bits 7:0 and bits 15:12 in the access-rights field. The following exceptions apply:
 - CS.
 - The base-address and segment-limit fields are saved.
 - The L, D, and G bits are saved in the access-rights field.
 - SS.
 - DPL is saved in the access-rights field.
 - On processors that support Intel 64 architecture, bits 63:32 of the value saved for the base address are always zero.
 - DS and ES. On processors that support Intel 64 architecture, bits 63:32 of the values saved for the base addresses are always zero.
 - FS and GS. The base-address field is saved.
 - LDTR. The value saved for the base address is always canonical.
- If the register was not unusable, the values saved into the following fields are those which were in the register before the VM exit: (1) base address; (2) segment limit; and (3) bits 7:0 and bits 15:12 in access rights.
- Bits 31:17 and 11:8 in the access-rights field are always cleared. Bit 16 is set to 1 if and only if the segment is unusable.

The contents of the GDTR and IDTR registers are saved into the corresponding base-address and limit fields.

27.3.3 Saving RIP, RSP, and RFLAGS

The contents of the RIP, RSP, and RFLAGS registers are saved as follows:

- The value saved in the RIP field is determined by the nature and cause of the VM exit:
 - If the VM exit occurred in enclave mode, the value saved is the AEP of interrupted enclave thread (the remaining items do not apply).
 - If the VM exit occurs due to by an attempt to execute an instruction that causes VM exits unconditionally or that has been configured to cause a VM exit via the VM-execution controls, the value saved references that instruction.
 - If the VM exit is caused by an occurrence of an INIT signal, a start-up IPI (SIPI), or system-management interrupt (SMI), the value saved is that which was in RIP before the event occurred.
 - If the VM exit occurs due to the 1-setting of either the “interrupt-window exiting” VM-execution control or the “NMI-window exiting” VM-execution control, the value saved is that which would be in the register had the VM exit not occurred.
 - If the VM exit is due to an external interrupt, non-maskable interrupt (NMI), or hardware exception (as defined in Section 27.2.2), the value saved is the return pointer that would have been saved (either on the

stack had the event been delivered through a trap or interrupt gate,¹ or into the old task-state segment had the event been delivered through a task gate).

- If the VM exit is due to a triple fault, the value saved is the return pointer that would have been saved (either on the stack had the event been delivered through a trap or interrupt gate, or into the old task-state segment had the event been delivered through a task gate) had delivery of the double fault not encountered the nested exception that caused the triple fault.
- If the VM exit is due to a software exception (due to an execution of INT3 or INTO) or a privileged software exception (due to an execution of INT1), the value saved references the INT3, INTO, or INT1 instruction that caused that exception.
- Suppose that the VM exit is due to a task switch that was caused by execution of CALL, IRET, or JMP or by execution of a software interrupt (INT *n*), software exception (due to execution of INT3 or INTO), or privileged software exception (due to execution of INT1) that encountered a task gate in the IDT. The value saved references the instruction that caused the task switch (CALL, IRET, JMP, INT *n*, INT3, INTO, INT1).
- Suppose that the VM exit is due to a task switch that was caused by a task gate in the IDT that was encountered for any reason except the direct access by a software interrupt or software exception. The value saved is that which would have been saved in the old task-state segment had the task switch completed normally.
- If the VM exit is due to an execution of MOV to CR8 or WRMSR that reduced the value of bits 7:4 of VTPR (see Section 29.1.1) below that of TPR threshold VM-execution control field (see Section 29.1.2), the value saved references the instruction following the MOV to CR8 or WRMSR.
- If the VM exit was caused by APIC-write emulation (see Section 29.4.3.2) that results from an APIC access as part of instruction execution, the value saved references the instruction following the one whose execution caused the APIC-write emulation.
- The contents of the RSP register are saved into the RSP field.
- With the exception of the resume flag (RF; bit 16), the contents of the RFLAGS register is saved into the RFLAGS field. RFLAGS.RF is saved as follows:
 - If the VM exit occurred in enclave mode, the value saved is 0 (the remaining items do not apply).
 - If the VM exit is caused directly by an event that would normally be delivered through the IDT, the value saved is that which would appear in the saved RFLAGS image (either that which would be saved on the stack had the event been delivered through a trap or interrupt gate² or into the old task-state segment had the event been delivered through a task gate) had the event been delivered through the IDT. See below for VM exits due to task switches caused by task gates in the IDT.
 - If the VM exit is caused by a triple fault, the value saved is that which the logical processor would have in RF in the RFLAGS register had the triple fault taken the logical processor to the shutdown state.
 - If the VM exit is caused by a task switch (including one caused by a task gate in the IDT), the value saved is that which would have been saved in the RFLAGS image in the old task-state segment (TSS) had the task switch completed normally without exception.
 - If the VM exit is caused by an attempt to execute an instruction that unconditionally causes VM exits or one that was configured to do with a VM-execution control, the value saved is 0.³
 - For APIC-access VM exits and for VM exits caused by EPT violations, EPT misconfigurations, and page-modification log-full events, the value saved depends on whether the VM exit occurred during delivery of an event through the IDT:

-
1. The reference here is to the full value of RIP before any truncation that would occur had the stack width been only 32 bits or 16 bits.
 2. The reference here is to the full value of RFLAGS before any truncation that would occur had the stack width been only 32 bits or 16 bits.
 3. This is true even if RFLAGS.RF was 1 before the instruction was executed. If, in response to such a VM exit, a VM monitor re-enters the guest to re-execute the instruction that caused the VM exit (for example, after clearing the VM-execution control that caused the VM exit), the instruction may encounter a code breakpoint that has already been processed. A VM monitor can avoid this by setting the guest value of RFLAGS.RF to 1 before resuming guest software.

- If the VM exit stored 0 for bit 31 for IDT-vectoring information field (because the VM exit did not occur during delivery of an event through the IDT; see Section 27.2.3), the value saved is 1.
- If the VM exit stored 1 for bit 31 for IDT-vectoring information field (because the VM exit did occur during delivery of an event through the IDT), the value saved is the value that would have appeared in the saved RFLAGS image had the event been delivered through the IDT (see above).
- For all other VM exits, the value saved is the value RFLAGS.RF had before the VM exit occurred.

27.3.4 Saving Non-Register State

Information corresponding to guest non-register state is saved as follows:

- The activity-state field is saved with the logical processor's activity state before the VM exit.¹ See Section 27.1 for details of how events leading to a VM exit may affect the activity state.
- The interruptibility-state field is saved to reflect the logical processor's interruptibility before the VM exit.
 - See Section 27.1 for details of how events leading to a VM exit may affect this state.
 - VM exits that end outside system-management mode (SMM) save bit 2 (blocking by SMI) as 0 regardless of the state of such blocking before the VM exit.
 - Bit 3 (blocking by NMI) is treated specially if the "virtual NMIs" VM-execution control is 1. In this case, the value saved for this field does not indicate the blocking of NMIs but rather the state of virtual-NMI blocking.
 - Bit 4 (enclave interruption) is set to 1 if the VM exit occurred while the logical processor was in enclave mode.

Such VM exits includes those caused by interrupts, non-maskable interrupts, system-management interrupts, INIT signals, and exceptions occurring in enclave mode as well as exceptions encountered during the delivery of such events incident to enclave mode.

A VM exit that is incident to delivery of an event injected by VM entry leaves this bit unmodified.

- The pending debug exceptions field is saved as clear for all VM exits except the following:
 - A VM exit caused by an INIT signal, a machine-check exception, or a system-management interrupt (SMI).
 - A VM exit with basic exit reason "TPR below threshold",² "virtualized EOI", "APIC write", or "monitor trap flag."
 - VM exits that are not caused by debug exceptions and that occur while there is MOV-SS blocking of debug exceptions.

For VM exits that do not clear the field, the value saved is determined as follows:

- Each of bits 3:0 may be set if it corresponds to a matched breakpoint. This may be true even if the corresponding breakpoint is not enabled in DR7.
- Suppose that a VM exit is due to an INIT signal, a machine-check exception, or an SMI; or that a VM exit has basic exit reason "TPR below threshold" or "monitor trap flag." In this case, the value saved sets bits corresponding to the causes of any debug exceptions that were pending at the time of the VM exit.

If the VM exit occurs immediately after VM entry, the value saved may match that which was loaded on VM entry (see Section 26.6.3). Otherwise, the following items apply:

- Bit 12 (enabled breakpoint) is set to 1 in any of the following cases:
 - If there was at least one matched data or I/O breakpoint that was enabled in DR7.
 - If it had been set on VM entry, causing there to be valid pending debug exceptions (see Section 26.6.3) and the VM exit occurred before those exceptions were either delivered or lost.
 - If the XBEGIN instruction was executed immediately before the VM exit and advanced debugging of RTM transactional regions had been enabled (see Section 16.3.7, "RTM-Enabled Debugger

1. If this activity state was an inactive state resulting from execution of a specific instruction (HLT or MWAIT), the value saved for RIP by that VM exit will reference the following instruction.

2. This item includes VM exits that occur as a result of certain VM entries (Section 26.6.7).

Support,” of *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 1*). (This does not apply to VM exits with basic exit reason “monitor trap flag.”)

In other cases, bit 12 is cleared to 0.

- Bit 14 (BS) is set if RFLAGS.TF = 1 in either of the following cases:
 - IA32_DEBUGCTL.BTF = 0 and the cause of a pending debug exception was the execution of a single instruction.
 - IA32_DEBUGCTL.BTF = 1 and the cause of a pending debug exception was a taken branch.
- Bit 16 (RTM) is set if a debug exception (#DB) or a breakpoint exception (#BP) occurred inside an RTM region while advanced debugging of RTM transactional regions had been enabled. (This does not apply to VM exits with basic exit reason “monitor trap flag.”)
- Suppose that a VM exit is due to another reason (but not a debug exception) and occurs while there is MOV-SS blocking of debug exceptions. In this case, the value saved sets bits corresponding to the causes of any debug exceptions that were pending at the time of the VM exit. If the VM exit occurs immediately after VM entry (no instructions were executed in VMX non-root operation), the value saved may match that which was loaded on VM entry (see Section 26.6.3). Otherwise, the following items apply:
 - Bit 12 (enabled breakpoint) is set to 1 if there was at least one matched data or I/O breakpoint that was enabled in DR7. Bit 12 is also set if it had been set on VM entry, causing there to be valid pending debug exceptions (see Section 26.6.3) and the VM exit occurred before those exceptions were either delivered or lost. In other cases, bit 12 is cleared to 0.
 - The setting of bit 14 (BS) is implementation-specific. However, it is not set if RFLAGS.TF = 0 or IA32_DEBUGCTL.BTF = 1.
- The reserved bits in the field are cleared.
- If the “save VMX-preemption timer value” VM-exit control is 1, the value of timer is saved into the VMX-preemption timer-value field. This is the value loaded from this field on VM entry as subsequently decremented (see Section 25.5.1). VM exits due to timer expiration save the value 0. Other VM exits may also save the value 0 if the timer expired during VM exit. (If the “save VMX-preemption timer value” VM-exit control is 0, VM exit does not modify the value of the VMX-preemption timer-value field.)
- If the logical processor supports the 1-setting of the “enable EPT” VM-execution control, values are saved into the four (4) PDPTE fields as follows:
 - If the “enable EPT” VM-execution control is 1 and the logical processor was using PAE paging at the time of the VM exit, the PDPTE values currently in use are saved:¹
 - The values saved into bits 11:9 of each of the fields is undefined.
 - If the value saved into one of the fields has bit 0 (present) clear, the value saved into bits 63:1 of that field is undefined. That value need not correspond to the value that was loaded by VM entry or to any value that might have been loaded in VMX non-root operation.
 - If the value saved into one of the fields has bit 0 (present) set, the value saved into bits 63:12 of the field is a guest-physical address.
 - If the “enable EPT” VM-execution control is 0 or the logical processor was not using PAE paging at the time of the VM exit, the values saved are undefined.

27.4 SAVING MSRS

After processor state is saved to the guest-state area, values of MSRs may be stored into the VM-exit MSR-store area (see Section 24.7.2). Specifically each entry in that area (up to the number specified in the VM-exit MSR-store

1. A logical processor uses PAE paging if CR0.PG = 1, CR4.PAE = 1 and IA32_EFER.LMA = 0. See Section 4.4 in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3A*. “Enable EPT” is a secondary processor-based VM-execution control. If bit 31 of the primary processor-based VM-execution controls is 0, VM exit functions as if the “enable EPT” VM-execution control were 0. See Section 24.6.2.

count) is processed in order by storing the value of the MSR indexed by bits 31:0 (as they would be read by RDMSR) into bits 127:64. Processing of an entry fails in either of the following cases:

- The value of bits 31:8 is 000008H, meaning that the indexed MSR is one that allows access to an APIC register when the local APIC is in x2APIC mode.
- The value of bits 31:0 indicates an MSR that can be read only in system-management mode (SMM) and the VM exit will not end in SMM. (IA32_SMBASE is an MSR that can be read only in SMM.)
- The value of bits 31:0 indicates an MSR that cannot be saved on VM exits for model-specific reasons. A processor may prevent certain MSRs (based on the value of bits 31:0) from being stored on VM exits, even if they can normally be read by RDMSR. Such model-specific behavior is documented in Chapter 2, “Model-Specific Registers (MSRs)” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 4*.
- Bits 63:32 of the entry are not all 0.
- An attempt to read the MSR indexed by bits 31:0 would cause a general-protection exception if executed via RDMSR with CPL = 0.

A VMX abort occurs if processing fails for any entry. See Section 27.7.

27.5 LOADING HOST STATE

Processor state is updated on VM exits in the following ways:

- Some state is loaded from or otherwise determined by the contents of the host-state area.
- Some state is determined by VM-exit controls.
- Some state is established in the same way on every VM exit.
- The page-directory pointers are loaded based on the values of certain control registers.

This loading may be performed in any order.

On processors that support Intel 64 architecture, the full values of each 64-bit field loaded (for example, the base address for GDTR) is loaded regardless of the mode of the logical processor before and after the VM exit.

The loading of host state is detailed in Section 27.5.1 to Section 27.5.5. These sections reference VMCS fields that correspond to processor state. Unless otherwise stated, these references are to fields in the host-state area.

A logical processor is in IA-32e mode after a VM exit only if the “host address-space size” VM-exit control is 1. If the logical processor was in IA-32e mode before the VM exit and this control is 0, a VMX abort occurs. See Section 27.7.

In addition to loading host state, VM exits clear address-range monitoring (Section 27.5.6).

After the state loading described in this section, VM exits may load MSRs from the VM-exit MSR-load area (see Section 27.6). This loading occurs only after the state loading described in this section.

27.5.1 Loading Host Control Registers, Debug Registers, MSRs

VM exits load new values for controls registers, debug registers, and some MSRs:

- CR0, CR3, and CR4 are loaded from the CR0 field, the CR3 field, and the CR4 field, respectively, with the following exceptions:
 - The following bits are not modified:
 - For CR0, ET, CD, NW; bits 63:32 (on processors that support Intel 64 architecture), 28:19, 17, and 15:6; and any bits that are fixed in VMX operation (see Section 23.8).¹
 - For CR3, bits 63:52 and bits in the range 51:32 beyond the processor’s physical-address width (they are cleared to 0).² (This item applies only to processors that support Intel 64 architecture.)

1. Bits 28:19, 17, and 15:6 of CR0 and CR0.ET are unchanged by executions of MOV to CR0. CR0.ET is always 1 and the other bits are always 0.

- For CR4, any bits that are fixed in VMX operation (see Section 23.8).
 - CR4.PAE is set to 1 if the “host address-space size” VM-exit control is 1.
 - CR4.PCIDE is set to 0 if the “host address-space size” VM-exit control is 0.
- DR7 is set to 400H.
- The following MSR are established as follows:
 - The IA32_DEBUGCTL MSR is cleared to 00000000_00000000H.
 - The IA32_SYSENTER_CS MSR is loaded from the IA32_SYSENTER_CS field. Since that field has only 32 bits, bits 63:32 of the MSR are cleared to 0.
 - IA32_SYSENTER_ESP MSR and IA32_SYSENTER_EIP MSR are loaded from the IA32_SYSENTER_ESP field and the IA32_SYSENTER_EIP field, respectively.

If the processor does not support the Intel 64 architecture, these fields have only 32 bits; bits 63:32 of the MSRs are cleared to 0.

If the processor does support the Intel 64 architecture and the processor supports $N < 64$ linear-address bits, each of bits 63:N is set to the value of bit $N-1$.¹

- The following steps are performed on processors that support Intel 64 architecture:
 - The MSRs FS.base and GS.base are loaded from the base-address fields for FS and GS, respectively (see Section 27.5.2).
 - The LMA and LME bits in the IA32_EFER MSR are each loaded with the setting of the “host address-space size” VM-exit control.
- If the “load IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL” VM-exit control is 1, the IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL MSR is loaded from the IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL field. Bits that are reserved in that MSR are maintained with their reserved values.
- If the “load IA32_PAT” VM-exit control is 1, the IA32_PAT MSR is loaded from the IA32_PAT field. Bits that are reserved in that MSR are maintained with their reserved values.
- If the “load IA32_EFER” VM-exit control is 1, the IA32_EFER MSR is loaded from the IA32_EFER field. Bits that are reserved in that MSR are maintained with their reserved values.
- If the “clear IA32_BNDCFGS” VM-exit control is 1, the IA32_BNDCFGS MSR is cleared to 00000000_00000000H; otherwise, it is not modified.

With the exception of FS.base and GS.base, any of these MSRs is subsequently overwritten if it appears in the VM-exit MSR-load area. See Section 27.6.

27.5.2 Loading Host Segment and Descriptor-Table Registers

Each of the registers CS, SS, DS, ES, FS, GS, and TR is loaded as follows (see below for the treatment of LDTR):

- The selector is loaded from the selector field. The segment is unusable if its selector is loaded with zero. The checks specified Section 26.3.1.2 limit the selector values that may be loaded. In particular, CS and TR are never loaded with zero and are thus never unusable. SS can be loaded with zero only on processors that support Intel 64 architecture and only if the VM exit is to 64-bit mode (64-bit mode allows use of segments marked unusable).
- The base address is set as follows:
 - CS. Cleared to zero.
 - SS, DS, and ES. Undefined if the segment is unusable; otherwise, cleared to zero.

2. Software can determine a processor’s physical-address width by executing CPUID with 80000008H in EAX. The physical-address width is returned in bits 7:0 of EAX.

1. Software can determine the number N by executing CPUID with 80000008H in EAX. The number of linear-address bits supported is returned in bits 15:8 of EAX.

- FS and GS. Undefined (but, on processors that support Intel 64 architecture, canonical) if the segment is unusable and the VM exit is not to 64-bit mode; otherwise, loaded from the base-address field.
If the processor supports the Intel 64 architecture and the processor supports $N < 64$ linear-address bits, each of bits 63:N is set to the value of bit N-1.¹ The values loaded for base addresses for FS and GS are also manifest in the FS.base and GS.base MSRs.
- TR. Loaded from the host-state area. If the processor supports the Intel 64 architecture and the processor supports $N < 64$ linear-address bits, each of bits 63:N is set to the value of bit N-1.
- The segment limit is set as follows:
 - CS. Set to FFFFFFFFH (corresponding to a descriptor limit of FFFFFFFH and a G-bit setting of 1).
 - SS, DS, ES, FS, and GS. Undefined if the segment is unusable; otherwise, set to FFFFFFFFH.
 - TR. Set to 00000067H.
- The type field and S bit are set as follows:
 - CS. Type set to 11 and S set to 1 (execute/read, accessed, non-conforming code segment).
 - SS, DS, ES, FS, and GS. Undefined if the segment is unusable; otherwise, type set to 3 and S set to 1 (read/write, accessed, expand-up data segment).
 - TR. Type set to 11 and S set to 0 (busy 32-bit task-state segment).
- The DPL is set as follows:
 - CS, SS, and TR. Set to 0. The current privilege level (CPL) will be 0 after the VM exit completes.
 - DS, ES, FS, and GS. Undefined if the segment is unusable; otherwise, set to 0.
- The P bit is set as follows:
 - CS, TR. Set to 1.
 - SS, DS, ES, FS, and GS. Undefined if the segment is unusable; otherwise, set to 1.
- On processors that support Intel 64 architecture, CS.L is loaded with the setting of the “host address-space size” VM-exit control. Because the value of this control is also loaded into IA32_EFER.LMA (see Section 27.5.1), no VM exit is ever to compatibility mode (which requires IA32_EFER.LMA = 1 and CS.L = 0).
- D/B.
 - CS. Loaded with the inverse of the setting of the “host address-space size” VM-exit control. For example, if that control is 0, indicating a 32-bit guest, CS.D/B is set to 1.
 - SS. Set to 1.
 - DS, ES, FS, and GS. Undefined if the segment is unusable; otherwise, set to 1.
 - TR. Set to 0.
- G.
 - CS. Set to 1.
 - SS, DS, ES, FS, and GS. Undefined if the segment is unusable; otherwise, set to 1.
 - TR. Set to 0.

The host-state area does not contain a selector field for LDTR. LDTR is established as follows on all VM exits: the selector is cleared to 0000H, the segment is marked unusable and is otherwise undefined (although the base address is always canonical).

The base addresses for GDTR and IDTR are loaded from the GDTR base-address field and the IDTR base-address field, respectively. If the processor supports the Intel 64 architecture and the processor supports $N < 64$ linear-address bits, each of bits 63:N of each base address is set to the value of bit N-1 of that base address. The GDTR and IDTR limits are each set to FFFFH.

1. Software can determine the number N by executing CPUID with 80000008H in EAX. The number of linear-address bits supported is returned in bits 15:8 of EAX.

27.5.3 Loading Host RIP, RSP, and RFLAGS

RIP and RSP are loaded from the RIP field and the RSP field, respectively. RFLAGS is cleared, except bit 1, which is always set.

27.5.4 Checking and Loading Host Page-Directory-Pointer-Table Entries

If $CR0.PG = 1$, $CR4.PAE = 1$, and $IA32_EFER.LMA = 0$, the logical processor uses **PAE paging**. See Section 4.4 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3A*.¹ When in PAE paging is in use, the physical address in CR3 references a table of **page-directory-pointer-table entries** (PDPTEs). A MOV to CR3 when PAE paging is in use checks the validity of the PDPTEs and, if they are valid, loads them into the processor (into internal, non-architectural registers).

A VM exit is to a VMM that uses PAE paging if (1) bit 5 (corresponding to CR4.PAE) is set in the CR4 field in the host-state area of the VMCS; and (2) the "host address-space size" VM-exit control is 0. Such a VM exit may check the validity of the PDPTEs referenced by the CR3 field in the host-state area of the VMCS. Such a VM exit must check their validity if either (1) PAE paging was not in use before the VM exit; or (2) the value of CR3 is changing as a result of the VM exit. A VM exit to a VMM that does not use PAE paging must not check the validity of the PDPTEs.

A VM exit that checks the validity of the PDPTEs uses the same checks that are used when CR3 is loaded with MOV to CR3 when PAE paging is in use. If MOV to CR3 would cause a general-protection exception due to the PDPTEs that would be loaded (e.g., because a reserved bit is set), a VMX abort occurs (see Section 27.7). If a VM exit to a VMM that uses PAE does not cause a VMX abort, the PDPTEs are loaded into the processor as would MOV to CR3, using the value of CR3 being load by the VM exit.

27.5.5 Updating Non-Register State

VM exits affect the non-register state of a logical processor as follows:

- A logical processor is always in the active state after a VM exit.
- Event blocking is affected as follows:
 - There is no blocking by STI or by MOV SS after a VM exit.
 - VM exits caused directly by non-maskable interrupts (NMIs) cause blocking by NMI (see Table 24-3). Other VM exits do not affect blocking by NMI. (See Section 27.1 for the case in which an NMI causes a VM exit indirectly.)
- There are no pending debug exceptions after a VM exit.

Section 28.3 describes how the VMX architecture controls how a logical processor manages information in the TLBs and paging-structure caches. The following items detail how VM exits invalidate cached mappings:

- If the "enable VPID" VM-execution control is 0, the logical processor invalidates linear mappings and combined mappings associated with VPID 0000H (for all PCIDs); combined mappings for VPID 0000H are invalidated for all EP4TA values (EP4TA is the value of bits 51:12 of EPTP).
- VM exits are not required to invalidate any guest-physical mappings, nor are they required to invalidate any linear mappings or combined mappings if the "enable VPID" VM-execution control is 1.

27.5.6 Clearing Address-Range Monitoring

The Intel 64 and IA-32 architectures allow software to monitor a specified address range using the MONITOR and MWAIT instructions. See Section 8.10.4 in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3A*. VM exits clear any address-range monitoring that may be in effect.

1. On processors that support Intel 64 architecture, the physical-address extension may support more than 36 physical-address bits. Software can determine a processor's physical-address width by executing CPUID with 80000008H in EAX. The physical-address width is returned in bits 7:0 of EAX.

27.6 LOADING MSRS

VM exits may load MSRs from the VM-exit MSR-load area (see Section 24.7.2). Specifically each entry in that area (up to the number specified in the VM-exit MSR-load count) is processed in order by loading the MSR indexed by bits 31:0 with the contents of bits 127:64 as they would be written by WRMSR.

Processing of an entry fails in any of the following cases:

- The value of bits 31:0 is either C0000100H (the IA32_FS_BASE MSR) or C0000101H (the IA32_GS_BASE MSR).
- The value of bits 31:8 is 000008H, meaning that the indexed MSR is one that allows access to an APIC register when the local APIC is in x2APIC mode.
- The value of bits 31:0 indicates an MSR that can be written only in system-management mode (SMM) and the VM exit will not end in SMM. (IA32_SMM_MONITOR_CTL is an MSR that can be written only in SMM.)
- The value of bits 31:0 indicates an MSR that cannot be loaded on VM exits for model-specific reasons. A processor may prevent loading of certain MSRs even if they can normally be written by WRMSR. Such model-specific behavior is documented in Chapter 2, “Model-Specific Registers (MSRs)” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 4*.
- Bits 63:32 are not all 0.
- An attempt to write bits 127:64 to the MSR indexed by bits 31:0 of the entry would cause a general-protection exception if executed via WRMSR with CPL = 0.¹

If processing fails for any entry, a VMX abort occurs. See Section 27.7.

If any MSR is being loaded in such a way that would architecturally require a TLB flush, the TLBs are updated so that, after VM exit, the logical processor does not use any translations that were cached before the transition.

27.7 VMX ABORTS

A problem encountered during a VM exit leads to a **VMX abort**. A VMX abort takes a logical processor into a shutdown state as described below.

A VMX abort does not modify the VMCS data in the VMCS region of any active VMCS. The contents of these data are thus suspect after the VMX abort.

On a VMX abort, a logical processor saves a nonzero 32-bit VMX-abort indicator field at byte offset 4 in the VMCS region of the VMCS whose misconfiguration caused the failure (see Section 24.2). The following values are used:

1. There was a failure in saving guest MSRs (see Section 27.4).
2. Host checking of the page-directory-pointer-table entries (PDPTes) failed (see Section 27.5.4).
3. The current VMCS has been corrupted (through writes to the corresponding VMCS region) in such a way that the logical processor cannot complete the VM exit properly.
4. There was a failure on loading host MSRs (see Section 27.6).
5. There was a machine-check event during VM exit (see Section 27.8).
6. The logical processor was in IA-32e mode before the VM exit and the “host address-space size” VM-entry control was 0 (see Section 27.5).

Some of these causes correspond to failures during the loading of state from the host-state area. Because the loading of such state may be done in any order (see Section 27.5) a VM exit that might lead to a VMX abort for multiple reasons (for example, the current VMCS may be corrupt and the host PDPTes might not be properly configured). In such cases, the VMX-abort indicator could correspond to any one of those reasons.

A logical processor never reads the VMX-abort indicator in a VMCS region and writes it only with one of the non-zero values mentioned above. The VMX-abort indicator allows software on one logical processor to diagnose the

-
1. Note the following about processors that support Intel 64 architecture. If CR0.PG = 1, WRMSR to the IA32_EFER MSR causes a general-protection exception if it would modify the LME bit. Since CR0.PG is always 1 in VMX operation, the IA32_EFER MSR should not be included in the VM-exit MSR-load area for the purpose of modifying the LME bit.

VMX-abort on another. For this reason, it is recommended that software running in VMX root operation zero the VMX-abort indicator in the VMCS region of any VMCS that it uses.

After saving the VMX-abort indicator, operation of a logical processor experiencing a VMX abort depends on whether the logical processor is in SMX operation:¹

- If the logical processor is in SMX operation, an Intel® TXT shutdown condition occurs. The error code used is 000DH, indicating “VMX abort.” See *Intel® Trusted Execution Technology Measured Launched Environment Programming Guide*.
- If the logical processor is outside SMX operation, it issues a special bus cycle (to notify the chipset) and enters the **VMX-abort shutdown state**. RESET is the only event that wakes a logical processor from the VMX-abort shutdown state. The following events do not affect a logical processor in this state: machine-check events; INIT signals; external interrupts; non-maskable interrupts (NMIs); start-up IPIs (SIPIs); and system-management interrupts (SMIs).

27.8 MACHINE-CHECK EVENTS DURING VM EXIT

If a machine-check event occurs during VM exit, one of the following occurs:

- The machine-check event is handled as if it occurred before the VM exit:
 - If CR4.MCE = 0, operation of the logical processor depends on whether the logical processor is in SMX operation:²
 - If the logical processor is in SMX operation, an Intel® TXT shutdown condition occurs. The error code used is 000CH, indicating “unrecoverable machine-check condition.”
 - If the logical processor is outside SMX operation, it goes to the shutdown state.
 - If CR4.MCE = 1, a machine-check exception (#MC) is generated:
 - If bit 18 (#MC) of the exception bitmap is 0, the exception is delivered through the guest IDT.
 - If bit 18 of the exception bitmap is 1, the exception causes a VM exit.
- The machine-check event is handled after VM exit completes:
 - If the VM exit ends with CR4.MCE = 0, operation of the logical processor depends on whether the logical processor is in SMX operation:
 - If the logical processor is in SMX operation, an Intel® TXT shutdown condition occurs with error code 000CH (unrecoverable machine-check condition).
 - If the logical processor is outside SMX operation, it goes to the shutdown state.
 - If the VM exit ends with CR4.MCE = 1, a machine-check exception (#MC) is delivered through the host IDT.
- A VMX abort is generated (see Section 27.7). The logical processor blocks events as done normally in VMX abort. The VMX abort indicator is 5, for “machine-check event during VM exit.”

The first option is not used if the machine-check event occurs after any host state has been loaded. The second option is used only if VM entry is able to load all host state.

1. A logical processor is in SMX operation if GETSEC[SEXIT] has not been executed since the last execution of GETSEC[SENDER]. A logical processor is outside SMX operation if GETSEC[SENDER] has not been executed or if GETSEC[SEXIT] was executed after the last execution of GETSEC[SENDER]. See Chapter 6, “Safer Mode Extensions Reference,” in *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2B*.

2. A logical processor is in SMX operation if GETSEC[SEXIT] has not been executed since the last execution of GETSEC[SENDER]. A logical processor is outside SMX operation if GETSEC[SENDER] has not been executed or if GETSEC[SEXIT] was executed after the last execution of GETSEC[SENDER]. See Chapter 6, “Safer Mode Extensions Reference,” in *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2B*.

15. Updates to Chapter 29, Volume 3C

Change bars show changes to Chapter 29 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3C: System Programming Guide, Part 3*.

Changes to this chapter: Minor typo corrections.

CHAPTER 29

APIC VIRTUALIZATION AND VIRTUAL INTERRUPTS

The VMCS includes controls that enable the virtualization of interrupts and the Advanced Programmable Interrupt Controller (APIC).

When these controls are used, the processor will emulate many accesses to the APIC, track the state of the virtual APIC, and deliver virtual interrupts — all in VMX non-root operation with out a VM exit.¹

The processor tracks the state of the virtual APIC using a virtual-APIC page identified by the virtual-machine monitor (VMM). Section 29.1 discusses the virtual-APIC page and how the processor uses it to track the state of the virtual APIC.

The following are the VM-execution controls relevant to APIC virtualization and virtual interrupts (see Section 24.6 for information about the locations of these controls):

- **Virtual-interrupt delivery.** This control enables the evaluation and delivery of pending virtual interrupts (Section 29.2). It also enables the emulation of writes (memory-mapped or MSR-based, as enabled) to the APIC registers that control interrupt prioritization.
- **Use TPR shadow.** This control enables emulation of accesses to the APIC's task-priority register (TPR) via CR8 (Section 29.3) and, if enabled, via the memory-mapped or MSR-based interfaces.
- **Virtualize APIC accesses.** This control enables virtualization of memory-mapped accesses to the APIC (Section 29.4) by causing VM exits on accesses to a VMM-specified APIC-access page. Some of the other controls, if set, may cause some of these accesses to be emulated rather than causing VM exits.
- **Virtualize x2APIC mode.** This control enables virtualization of MSR-based accesses to the APIC (Section 29.5).
- **APIC-register virtualization.** This control allows memory-mapped and MSR-based reads of most APIC registers (as enabled) by satisfying them from the virtual-APIC page. It directs memory-mapped writes to the APIC-access page to the virtual-APIC page, following them by VM exits for VMM emulation.
- **Process posted interrupts.** This control allows software to post virtual interrupts in a data structure and send a notification to another logical processor; upon receipt of the notification, the target processor will process the posted interrupts by copying them into the virtual-APIC page (Section 29.6).

"Virtualize APIC accesses", "virtualize x2APIC mode", "virtual-interrupt delivery", and "APIC-register virtualization" are all secondary processor-based VM-execution controls. If bit 31 of the primary processor-based VM-execution controls is 0, the processor operates as if these controls were all 0. See Section 24.6.2.

29.1 VIRTUAL APIC STATE

The **virtual-APIC page** is a 4-KByte region of memory that the processor uses to virtualize certain accesses to APIC registers and to manage virtual interrupts. The physical address of the virtual-APIC page is the **virtual-APIC address**, a 64-bit VM-execution control field in the VMCS (see Section 24.6.8).

Depending on the settings of certain VM-execution controls, the processor may virtualize certain fields on the virtual-APIC page with functionality analogous to that performed by the local APIC. Section 29.1.1 identifies and defines these fields. Section 29.1.2, Section 29.1.3, Section 29.1.4, and Section 29.1.5 detail the actions taken to virtualize updates to some of these fields.

29.1.1 Virtualized APIC Registers

Depending on the setting of certain VM-execution controls, a logical processor may virtualize certain accesses to APIC registers using the following fields on the virtual-APIC page:

- **Virtual task-priority register (VTPR):** the 32-bit field located at offset 080H on the virtual-APIC page.

1. In most cases, it is not necessary for a virtual-machine monitor (VMM) to inject virtual interrupts as part of VM entry.

- **Virtual processor-priority register (VPPR):** the 32-bit field located at offset 0A0H on the virtual-APIC page.
- **Virtual end-of-interrupt register (VEOI):** the 32-bit field located at offset 0B0H on the virtual-APIC page.
- **Virtual interrupt-service register (VISR):** the 256-bit value comprising eight non-contiguous 32-bit fields at offsets 100H, 110H, 120H, 130H, 140H, 150H, 160H, and 170H on the virtual-APIC page. Bit x of the VISR is at bit position $(x \& 1FH)$ at offset $(100H \mid ((x \& E0H) \gg 1))$. The processor uses only the low 4 bytes of each of the 16-byte fields at offsets 100H, 110H, 120H, 130H, 140H, 150H, 160H, and 170H.
- **Virtual interrupt-request register (VIRR):** the 256-bit value comprising eight non-contiguous 32-bit fields at offsets 200H, 210H, 220H, 230H, 240H, 250H, 260H, and 270H on the virtual-APIC page. Bit x of the VIRR is at bit position $(x \& 1FH)$ at offset $(200H \mid ((x \& E0H) \gg 1))$. The processor uses only the low 4 bytes of each of the 16-Byte fields at offsets 200H, 210H, 220H, 230H, 240H, 250H, 260H, and 270H.
- **Virtual interrupt-command register (VICR_LO):** the 32-bit field located at offset 300H on the virtual-APIC page
- **Virtual interrupt-command register (VICR_HI):** the 32-bit field located at offset 310H on the virtual-APIC page.

29.1.2 TPR Virtualization

The processor performs **TPR virtualization** in response to the following operations: (1) virtualization of the MOV to CR8 instruction; (2) virtualization of a write to offset 080H on the APIC-access page; and (3) virtualization of the WRMSR instruction with ECX = 808H. See Section 29.3, Section 29.4.3, and Section 29.5 for details of when TPR virtualization is performed.

The following pseudocode details the behavior of TPR virtualization:

```

IF "virtual-interrupt delivery" is 0
    THEN
        IF VTPR[7:4] < TPR threshold (see Section 24.6.8)
            THEN cause VM exit due to TPR below threshold;
        FI;
    ELSE
        perform PPR virtualization (see Section 29.1.3);
        evaluate pending virtual interrupts (see Section 29.2.1);
    FI;

```

Any VM exit caused by TPR virtualization is trap-like: the instruction causing TPR virtualization completes before the VM exit occurs (for example, the value of CS:RIP saved in the guest-state area of the VMCS references the next instruction).

29.1.3 PPR Virtualization

The processor performs **PPR virtualization** in response to the following operations: (1) VM entry; (2) TPR virtualization; and (3) EOI virtualization. See Section 26.3.2.5, Section 29.1.2, and Section 29.1.4 for details of when PPR virtualization is performed.

PPR virtualization uses the guest interrupt status (specifically, SVI; see Section 24.4.2) and VTPR. The following pseudocode details the behavior of PPR virtualization:

```

IF VTPR[7:4] ≥ SVI[7:4]
    THEN VPPR ← VTPR & FFH;
    ELSE VPPR ← SVI & FOH;
FI;

```

PPR virtualization always clears bytes 3:1 of VPPR.

PPR virtualization is caused only by TPR virtualization, EOI virtualization, and VM entry. Delivery of a virtual interrupt also modifies VPPR, but in a different way (see Section 29.2.2). No other operations modify VPPR, even if they modify SVI, VISR, or VTPR.

29.1.4 EOI Virtualization

The processor performs **EOI virtualization** in response to the following operations: (1) virtualization of a write to offset 0B0H on the APIC-access page; and (2) virtualization of the WRMSR instruction with ECX = 80BH. See Section 29.4.3 and Section 29.5 for details of when EOI virtualization is performed. EOI virtualization occurs only if the “virtual-interrupt delivery” VM-execution control is 1.

EOI virtualization uses and updates the guest interrupt status (specifically, SVI; see Section 24.4.2). The following pseudocode details the behavior of EOI virtualization:

```

Vector ← SVI;
VISR[Vector] ← 0; (see Section 29.1.1 for definition of VISR)
IF any bits set in VISR
    THEN SVI ← highest index of bit set in VISR
    ELSE SVI ← 0;
FI;
perform PPR virtualiation (see Section 29.1.3);
IF EOI_exit_bitmap[Vector] = 1 (see Section 24.6.8 for definition of EOI_exit_bitmap)
    THEN cause EOI-induced VM exit with Vector as exit qualification;
    ELSE evaluate pending virtual interrupts; (see Section 29.2.1)
FI;
```

Any VM exit caused by EOI virtualization is trap-like: the instruction causing EOI virtualization completes before the VM exit occurs (for example, the value of CS:RIP saved in the guest-state area of the VMCS references the next instruction).

29.1.5 Self-IPI Virtualization

The processor performs **self-IPI virtualization** in response to the following operations: (1) virtualization of a write to offset 300H on the APIC-access page; and (2) virtualization of the WRMSR instruction with ECX = 83FH. See Section 29.4.3 and Section 29.5 for details of when self-IPI virtualization is performed. Self-IPI virtualization occurs only if the “virtual-interrupt delivery” VM-execution control is 1.

Each operation that leads to self-IPI virtualization provides an 8-bit vector (see Section 29.4.3 and Section 29.5). Self-IPI virtualization updates the guest interrupt status (specifically, RVI; see Section 24.4.2). The following pseudocode details the behavior of self-IPI virtualization:

```

VIRR[Vector] ← 1; (see Section 29.1.1 for definition of VIRR)
RVI ← max[RVI,Vector];
evaluate pending virtual interrupts; (see Section 29.2.1)
```

29.2 EVALUATION AND DELIVERY OF VIRTUAL INTERRUPTS

If the “virtual-interrupt delivery” VM-execution control is 1, certain actions in VMX non-root operation or during VM entry cause the processor to evaluate and deliver virtual interrupts.

Evaluation of virtual interrupts is triggered by certain actions change the state of the virtual-APIC page and is described in Section 29.2.1. This evaluation may result in recognition of a virtual interrupt. Once a virtual interrupt is recognized, the processor may deliver it within VMX non-root operation without a VM exit. Virtual-interrupt delivery is described in Section 29.2.2.

29.2.1 Evaluation of Pending Virtual Interrupts

If the “virtual-interrupt delivery” VM-execution control is 1, certain actions cause a logical processor to **evaluate pending virtual interrupts**.

The following actions cause the evaluation of pending virtual interrupts: VM entry; TPR virtualization; EOI virtualization; self-IPI virtualization; and posted-interrupt processing. See Section 26.3.2.5, Section 29.1.2, Section

29.1.4, Section 29.1.5, and Section 29.6 for details of when evaluation of pending virtual interrupts is performed. No other operations cause the evaluation of pending virtual interrupts, even if they modify RVI or VPPR.

Evaluation of pending virtual interrupts uses the guest interrupt status (specifically, RVI; see Section 24.4.2). The following pseudocode details the evaluation of pending virtual interrupts:

```

IF "interrupt-window exiting" is 0 AND
RVI[7:4] > VPPR[7:4] (see Section 29.1.1 for definition of VPPR)
    THEN recognize a pending virtual interrupt;
ELSE
    do not recognize a pending virtual interrupt;
FI;

```

Once recognized, a virtual interrupt may be delivered in VMX non-root operation; see Section 29.2.2.

Evaluation of pending virtual interrupts is caused only by VM entry, TPR virtualization, EOI virtualization, self-IPI virtualization, and posted-interrupt processing. No other operations do so, even if they modify RVI or VPPR. The logical processor ceases recognition of a pending virtual interrupt following the delivery of a virtual interrupt.

29.2.2 Virtual-Interrupt Delivery

If a virtual interrupt has been recognized (see Section 29.2.1), it is delivered at an instruction boundary when the following conditions all hold: (1) RFLAGS.IF = 1; (2) there is no blocking by STI; (3) there is no blocking by MOV SS or by POP SS; and (4) the "interrupt-window exiting" VM-execution control is 0.

Virtual-interrupt delivery has the same priority as that of VM exits due to the 1-setting of the "interrupt-window exiting" VM-execution control.² Thus, non-maskable interrupts (NMIs) and higher priority events take priority over delivery of a virtual interrupt; delivery of a virtual interrupt takes priority over external interrupts and lower priority events.

Virtual-interrupt delivery wakes a logical processor from the same inactive activity states as would an external interrupt. Specifically, it wakes a logical processor from the states entered using the HLT and MWAIT instructions. It does not wake a logical processor in the shutdown state or in the wait-for-SIPI state.

Virtual-interrupt delivery updates the guest interrupt status (both RVI and SVI; see Section 24.4.2) and delivers an event within VMX non-root operation without a VM exit. The following pseudocode details the behavior of virtual-interrupt delivery (see Section 29.1.1 for definition of VISR, VIRR, and VPPR):

```

Vector ← RVI;
VISR[Vector] ← 1;
SVI ← Vector;
VPPR ← Vector & FOH;
VIRR[Vector] ← 0;
IF any bits set in VIRR
    THEN RVI ← highest index of bit set in VIRR
    ELSE RVI ← 0;
FI;
deliver interrupt with Vector through IDT;
cease recognition of any pending virtual interrupt;

```

If a logical processor is in enclave mode, an Asynchronous Enclave Exit (AEX) occurs before delivery of a virtual interrupt (see Chapter 39, "Enclave Exiting Events").

2. A logical processor never recognizes or delivers a virtual interrupt if the "interrupt-window exiting" VM-execution control is 1. Because of this, the relative priority of virtual-interrupt delivery and VM exits due to the 1-setting of that control is not defined.

29.3 VIRTUALIZING CR8-BASED TPR ACCESSES

In 64-bit mode, software can access the local APIC's task-priority register (TPR) through CR8. Specifically, software uses the MOV from CR8 and MOV to CR8 instructions (see Section 10.8.6, "Task Priority in IA-32e Mode"). This section describes how these accesses can be virtualized.

A virtual-machine monitor can virtualize these CR8-based APIC accesses by setting the "CR8-load exiting" and "CR8-store exiting" VM-execution controls, ensuring that the accesses cause VM exits (see Section 25.1.3). Alternatively, there are methods for virtualizing some CR8-based APIC accesses without VM exits.

Normally, an execution of MOV from CR8 or MOV to CR8 that does not fault or cause a VM exit accesses the APIC's TPR. However, such an execution are treated specially if the "use TPR shadow" VM-execution control is 1. The following items provide details:

- **MOV from CR8.** The instruction loads bits 3:0 of its destination operand with bits 7:4 of VTPR (see Section 29.1.1). Bits 63:4 of the destination operand are cleared.
- **MOV to CR8.** The instruction stores bits 3:0 of its source operand into bits 7:4 of VTPR; the remainder of VTPR (bits 3:0 and bits 31:8) are cleared. Following this, the processor performs TPR virtualization (see Section 29.1.2).

29.4 VIRTUALIZING MEMORY-MAPPED APIC ACCESSES

When the local APIC is in xAPIC mode, software accesses the local APIC's control registers using a memory-mapped interface. Specifically, software uses linear addresses that translate to physical addresses on page frame indicated by the base address in the IA32_APIC_BASE MSR (see Section 10.4.4, "Local APIC Status and Location"). This section describes how these accesses can be virtualized.

A virtual-machine monitor (VMM) can virtualize these memory-mapped APIC accesses by ensuring that any access to a linear address that would access the local APIC instead causes a VM exit. This could be done using paging or the extended page-table mechanism (EPT). Another way is by using the 1-setting of the "virtualize APIC accesses" VM-execution control.

If the "virtualize APIC accesses" VM-execution control is 1, the logical processor treats specially memory accesses using linear addresses that translate to physical addresses in the 4-KByte **APIC-access page**.³ (The APIC-access page is identified by the **APIC-access address**, a field in the VMCS; see Section 24.6.8.)

In general, an access to the APIC-access page causes an **APIC-access VM exit**. APIC-access VM exits provide a VMM with information about the access causing the VM exit. Section 29.4.1 discusses the priority of APIC-access VM exits.

Certain VM-execution controls enable the processor to virtualize certain accesses to the APIC-access page without a VM exit. In general, this virtualization causes these accesses to be made to the virtual-APIC page instead of the APIC-access page.

NOTES

Unless stated otherwise, this section characterizes only linear accesses to the APIC-access page; an access to the APIC-access page is a linear access if (1) it results from a memory access using a linear address; and (2) the access's physical address is the translation of that linear address. Section 29.4.6 discusses accesses to the APIC-access page that are not linear accesses.

The distinction between the APIC-access page and the virtual-APIC page allows a VMM to share paging structures or EPT paging structures among the virtual processors of a virtual machine (the shared paging structures referencing the same APIC-access address, which appears in the VMCS of

3. Even when addresses are translated using EPT (see Section 28.2), the determination of whether an APIC-access VM exit occurs depends on an access's physical address, not its guest-physical address. Even when CR0.PG = 0, ordinary memory accesses by software use linear addresses; the fact that CR0.PG = 0 means only that the identity translation is used to convert linear addresses to physical (or guest-physical) addresses.

all the virtual processors) while giving each virtual processor its own virtual APIC (the VMCS of each virtual processor will have a unique virtual-APIC address).

Section 29.4.2 discusses when and how the processor may virtualize read accesses from the APIC-access page. Section 29.4.3 does the same for write accesses. When virtualizing a write to the APIC-access page, the processor typically takes actions in addition to passing the write through to the virtual-APIC page.

The discussion in those sections uses the concept of an **operation** within which these memory accesses may occur. For those discussions, an “operation” can be an iteration of a REP-prefixed string instruction, an execution of any other instruction, or delivery of an event through the IDT.

The 1-setting of the “virtualize APIC accesses” VM-execution control may also affect accesses to the APIC-access page that do not result directly from linear addresses. This is discussed in Section 29.4.6.

Special treatment may apply to Intel SGX instructions or if the logical processor is in enclave mode. See Section 41.5.3 for details.

29.4.1 Priority of APIC-Access VM Exits

The following items specify the priority of APIC-access VM exits relative to other events.

- The priority of an APIC-access VM exit due to a memory access is below that of any page fault or EPT violation that that access may incur. That is, an access does not cause an APIC-access VM exit if it would cause a page fault or an EPT violation.
- A memory access does not cause an APIC-access VM exit until after the accessed flags are set in the paging structures (including EPT paging structures, if enabled).
- A write access does not cause an APIC-access VM exit until after the dirty flags are set in the appropriate paging structure and EPT paging structure (if enabled).
- With respect to all other events, any APIC-access VM exit due to a memory access has the same priority as any page fault or EPT violation that the access could cause. (This item applies to other events that the access may generate as well as events that may be generated by other accesses by the same operation.)

These principles imply, among other things, that an APIC-access VM exit may occur during the execution of a repeated string instruction (including INS and OUTS). Suppose, for example, that the first n iterations (n may be 0) of such an instruction do not access the APIC-access page and that the next iteration does access that page. As a result, the first n iterations may complete and be followed by an APIC-access VM exit. The instruction pointer saved in the VMCS references the repeated string instruction and the values of the general-purpose registers reflect the completion of n iterations.

29.4.2 Virtualizing Reads from the APIC-Access Page

A read access from the APIC-access page causes an APIC-access VM exit if any of the following are true:

- The “use TPR shadow” VM-execution control is 0.
- The access is for an instruction fetch.
- The access is more than 32 bits in size.
- The access is part of an operation for which the processor has already virtualized a write to the APIC-access page.
- The access is not entirely contained within the low 4 bytes of a naturally aligned 16-byte region. That is, bits 3:2 of the access’s address are 0, and the same is true of the address of the highest byte accessed.

If none of the above are true, whether a read access is virtualized depends on the setting of the “APIC-register virtualization” VM-execution control:

- If “APIC-register virtualization” is 0, a read access is virtualized if its page offset is 080H (task priority); otherwise, the access causes an APIC-access VM exit.
- If “APIC-register virtualization” is 1, a read access is virtualized if it is entirely within one the following ranges of offsets:

- 020H–023H (local APIC ID);
- 030H–033H (local APIC version);
- 080H–083H (task priority);
- 0B0H–0B3H (end of interrupt);
- 0D0H–0D3H (logical destination);
- 0E0H–0E3H (destination format);
- 0F0H–0F3H (spurious-interrupt vector);
- 100H–103H, 110H–113H, 120H–123H, 130H–133H, 140H–143H, 150H–153H, 160H–163H, or 170H–173H (in-service);
- 180H–183H, 190H–193H, 1A0H–1A3H, 1B0H–1B3H, 1C0H–1C3H, 1D0H–1D3H, 1E0H–1E3H, or 1F0H–1F3H (trigger mode);
- 200H–203H, 210H–213H, 220H–223H, 230H–233H, 240H–243H, 250H–253H, 260H–263H, or 270H–273H (interrupt request);
- 280H–283H (error status);
- 300H–303H or 310H–313H (interrupt command);
- 320H–323H, 330H–333H, 340H–343H, 350H–353H, 360H–363H, or 370H–373H (LVT entries);
- 380H–383H (initial count); or
- 3E0H–3E3H (divide configuration).

In all other cases, the access causes an APIC-access VM exit.

A read access from the APIC-access page that is virtualized returns data from the corresponding page offset on the virtual-APIC page.⁴

29.4.3 Virtualizing Writes to the APIC-Access Page

Whether a write access to the APIC-access page is virtualized depends on the settings of the VM-execution controls and the page offset of the access. Section 29.4.3.1 details when APIC-write virtualization occurs.

Unlike reads, writes to the local APIC have side effects; because of this, virtualization of writes to the APIC-access page may require emulation specific to the access's page offset (which identifies the APIC register being accessed). Section 29.4.3.2 describes this **APIC-write emulation**.

For some page offsets, it is necessary for software to complete the virtualization after a write completes. In these cases, the processor causes an **APIC-write VM exit** to invoke VMM software. Section 29.4.3.3 discusses APIC-write VM exits.

29.4.3.1 Determining Whether a Write Access is Virtualized

A write access to the APIC-access page causes an APIC-access VM exit if any of the following are true:

- The "use TPR shadow" VM-execution control is 0.
- The access is more than 32 bits in size.
- The access is part of an operation for which the processor has already virtualized a write (with a different page offset or a different size) to the APIC-access page.
- The access is not entirely contained within the low 4 bytes of a naturally aligned 16-byte region. That is, bits 3:2 of the access's address are 0, and the same is true of the address of the highest byte accessed.

If none of the above are true, whether a write access is virtualized depends on the settings of the "APIC-register virtualization" and "virtual-interrupt delivery" VM-execution controls:

4. The memory type used for accesses that read from the virtual-APIC page is reported in bits 53:50 of the IA32_VMX_BASIC MSR (see Appendix A.1).

- If the “APIC-register virtualization” and “virtual-interrupt delivery” VM-execution controls are both 0, a write access is virtualized if its page offset is 080H; otherwise, the access causes an APIC-access VM exit.
- If the “APIC-register virtualization” VM-execution control is 0 and the “virtual-interrupt delivery” VM-execution control is 1, a write access is virtualized if its page offset is 080H (task priority), 0B0H (end of interrupt), and 300H (interrupt command — low); otherwise, the access causes an APIC-access VM exit.
- If the “APIC-register virtualization” VM-execution control is 1, a write access is virtualized if it is entirely within one the following ranges of offsets:
 - 020H–023H (local APIC ID);
 - 080H–083H (task priority);
 - 0B0H–0B3H (end of interrupt);
 - 0D0H–0D3H (logical destination);
 - 0E0H–0E3H (destination format);
 - 0F0H–0F3H (spurious-interrupt vector);
 - 280H–283H (error status);
 - 300H–303H or 310H–313H (interrupt command);
 - 320H–323H, 330H–333H, 340H–343H, 350H–353H, 360H–363H, or 370H–373H (LVT entries);
 - 380H–383H (initial count); or
 - 3E0H–3E3H (divide configuration).

In all other cases, the access causes an APIC-access VM exit.

The processor virtualizes a write access to the APIC-access page by writing data to the corresponding page offset on the virtual-APIC page.⁵ Following this, the processor performs certain actions after completion of the operation of which the access was a part.⁶ APIC-write emulation is described in Section 29.4.3.2.

29.4.3.2 APIC-Write Emulation

If the processor virtualizes a write access to the APIC-access page, it performs additional actions after completion of an operation of which the access was a part. These actions are called **APIC-write emulation**.

The details of APIC-write emulation depend upon the page offset of the virtualized write access:⁷

- 080H (task priority). The processor clears bytes 3:1 of VTPR and then causes TPR virtualization (Section 29.1.2).
- 0B0H (end of interrupt). If the “virtual-interrupt delivery” VM-execution control is 1, the processor clears VEOI and then causes EOI virtualization (Section 29.1.4); otherwise, the processor causes an APIC-write VM exit (Section 29.4.3.3).
- 300H (interrupt command — low). If the “virtual-interrupt delivery” VM-execution control is 1, the processor checks the value of VICR_LO to determine whether the following are all true:
 - Reserved bits (31:20, 17:16, 13) and bit 12 (delivery status) are all 0.
 - Bits 19:18 (destination shorthand) are 01B (self).
 - Bit 15 (trigger mode) is 0 (edge).
 - Bits 10:8 (delivery mode) are 000B (fixed).
 - Bits 7:4 (the upper half of the vector) are **not** 0000B.

5. The memory type used for accesses that write to the virtual-APIC page is reported in bits 53:50 of the IA32_VMX_BASIC MSR (see Appendix A.1).

6. Recall that, for the purposes of this discussion, an operation is an iteration of a REP-prefixed string instruction, an execution of any other instruction, or delivery of an event through the IDT.

7. For any operation, there can be only one page offset for which a write access was virtualized. This is because a write access is not virtualized if the processor has already virtualized a write access for the same operation with a different page offset.

If all of the items above are true, the processor performs self-IPI virtualization using the 8-bit vector in byte 0 of VICR_LO (Section 29.1.5).

If the “virtual-interrupt delivery” VM-execution control is 0, or if any of the items above are false, the processor causes an APIC-write VM exit (Section 29.4.3.3).

- 310H–313H (interrupt command — high). The processor clears bytes 2:0 of VICR_HI. No other virtualization or VM exit occurs.
- Any other page offset. The processor causes an APIC-write VM exit (Section 29.4.3.3).

APIC-write emulation takes priority over system-management interrupts (SMIs), INIT signals, and lower priority events. APIC-write emulation is not blocked if RFLAGS.IF = 0 or by the MOV SS, POP SS, or STI instructions.

If an operation causes a fault after a write access to the APIC-access page and before APIC-write emulation, and that fault is delivered without a VM exit, APIC-write emulation occurs after the fault is delivered and before the fault handler can execute. If an operation causes a VM exit (perhaps due to a fault) after a write access to the APIC-access page and before APIC-write emulation, the APIC-write emulation does not occur.

29.4.3.3 APIC-Write VM Exits

In certain cases, VMM software must be invoked to complete the virtualization of a write access to the APIC-access page. In this case, APIC-write emulation causes an **APIC-write VM exit**. (Section 29.4.3.2 details the cases that causes APIC-write VM exits.)

APIC-write VM exits are invoked by APIC-write emulation, and APIC-write emulation occurs after an operation that performs a write access to the APIC-access page. Because of this, every APIC-write VM exit is trap-like: it occurs after completion of the operation containing the write access that caused the VM exit (for example, the value of CS:RIP saved in the guest-state area of the VMCS references the next instruction).

The basic exit reason for an APIC-write VM exit is “APIC write.” The exit qualification is the page offset of the write access that led to the VM exit.

As noted in Section 29.5, execution of WRMSR with ECX = 83FH (self-IPI MSR) can lead to an APIC-write VM exit if the “virtual-interrupt delivery” VM-execution control is 1. The exit qualification for such an APIC-write VM exit is 3F0H.

29.4.4 Instruction-Specific Considerations

Certain instructions that use linear address may cause page faults even though they do not use those addresses to access memory. The APIC-virtualization features may affect these instructions as well:

- **CLFLUSH, CLFLUSHOPT.** With regard to faulting, the processor operates as if each of these instructions reads from the linear address in its source operand. If that address translates to one on the APIC-access page, the instruction may cause an APIC-access VM exit. If it does not, it will flush the corresponding cache line on the virtual-APIC page instead of the APIC-access page.
- **ENTER.** With regard to faulting, the processor operates if ENTER writes to the byte referenced by the final value of the stack pointer (even though it does not if its size operand is non-zero). If that value translates to an address on the APIC-access page, the instruction may cause an APIC-access VM exit. If it does not, it will cause the APIC-write emulation appropriate to the address’s page offset.
- **MASKMOVQ and MAKSMOVDQU.** Even if the instruction’s mask is zero, the processor may operate with regard to faulting as if MASKMOVQ or MASKMOVDQU writes to memory (the behavior is implementation-specific). In such a situation, an APIC-access VM exit may occur.
- **MONITOR.** With regard to faulting, the processor operates as if MONITOR reads from the effective address in RAX. If the resulting linear address translates to one on the APIC-access page, the instruction may cause an APIC-access VM exit.⁸ If it does not, it will monitor the corresponding address on the virtual-APIC page instead of the APIC-access page.

8. This chapter uses the notation RAX, RIP, RSP, RFLAGS, etc. for processor registers because most processors that support VMX operation also support Intel 64 architecture. For IA-32 processors, this notation refers to the 32-bit forms of those registers (EAX, EIP, ESP, EFLAGS, etc.). In a few places, notation such as EAX is used to refer specifically to lower 32 bits of the indicated register.

- **PREFETCH.** An execution of the PREFETCH instruction that would result in an access to the APIC-access page does not cause an APIC-access VM exit. Such an access may prefetch data; if so, it is from the corresponding address on the virtual-APIC page.

Virtualization of accesses to the APIC-access page is principally intended for basic instructions such as AND, MOV, OR, TEST, XCHG, and XOR. Use of an instruction that normally operates on floating-point, SSE, AVX, or AVX-512 registers may cause an APIC-access VM exit unconditionally regardless of the page offset it accesses on the APIC-access page.

29.4.5 Issues Pertaining to Page Size and TLB Management

The 1-setting of the “virtualize APIC accesses” VM-execution is guaranteed to apply only if translations to the APIC-access address use a 4-KByte page. The following items provide details:

- If EPT is not in use, any linear address that translates to an address on the APIC-access page should use a 4-KByte page. Any access to a linear address that translates to the APIC-access page using a larger page may operate as if the “virtualize APIC accesses” VM-execution control were 0.
- If EPT is in use, any guest-physical address that translates to an address on the APIC-access page should use a 4-KByte page. Any access to a linear address that translates to a guest-physical address that in turn translates to the APIC-access page using a larger page may operate as if the “virtualize APIC accesses” VM-execution control were 0. (This is true also for guest-physical accesses to the APIC-access page; see Section 29.4.6.1.)

In addition, software should perform appropriate TLB invalidation when making changes that may affect APIC-virtualization. The specifics depend on whether VPIDs or EPT is being used:

- **VPIDs being used but EPT not being used.** Suppose that there is a VPID that has been used before and that software has since made either of the following changes: (1) set the “virtualize APIC accesses” VM-execution control when it had previously been 0; or (2) changed the paging structures so that some linear address translates to the APIC-access address when it previously did not. In that case, software should execute INVVPID (see “INVVPID— Invalidate Translations Based on VPID” in Section 30.3) before performing on the same logical processor and with the same VPID.⁹
- **EPT being used.** Suppose that there is an EPTP value that has been used before and that software has since made either of the following changes: (1) set the “virtualize APIC accesses” VM-execution control when it had previously been 0; or (2) changed the EPT paging structures so that some guest-physical address translates to the APIC-access address when it previously did not. In that case, software should execute INVEPT (see “INVEPT— Invalidate Translations Derived from EPT” in Section 30.3) before performing on the same logical processor and with the same EPTP value.¹⁰
- **Neither VPIDs nor EPT being used.** No invalidation is required.

Failure to perform the appropriate TLB invalidation may result in the logical processor operating as if the “virtualize APIC accesses” VM-execution control were 0 in responses to accesses to the affected address. (No invalidation is necessary if neither VPIDs nor EPT is being used.)

29.4.6 APIC Accesses Not Directly Resulting From Linear Addresses

Section 29.4 has described the treatment of accesses that use linear addresses that translate to addresses on the APIC-access page. This section considers memory accesses that do not result directly from linear addresses.

- An access is called a **guest-physical access** if (1) CR0.PG = 1;¹¹ (2) the “enable EPT” VM-execution control is 1;¹² (3) the access’s physical address is the result of an EPT translation; and (4) either (a) the access was not generated by a linear address; or (b) the access’s guest-physical address is not the translation of the

9. INVVPID should use either (1) the all-contexts INVVPID type; (2) the single-context INVVPID type with the VPID in the INVVPID descriptor; or (3) the individual-address INVVPID type with the linear address and the VPID in the INVVPID descriptor.

10. INVEPT should use either (1) the global INVEPT type; or (2) the single-context INVEPT type with the EPTP value in the INVEPT descriptor.

11. If the capability MSR IA32_VMX_CR0_FIXED0 reports that CR0.PG must be 1 in VMX operation, CR0.PG must be 1 unless the “unrestricted guest” VM-execution control and bit 31 of the primary processor-based VM-execution controls are both 1.

access's linear address. Section 29.4.6.1 discusses the treatment of guest-physical accesses to the APIC-access page.

- An access is called a **physical access** if (1) either (a) the "enable EPT" VM-execution control is 0; or (b) the access's physical address is not the result of a translation through the EPT paging structures; and (2) either (a) the access is not generated by a linear address; or (b) the access's physical address is not the translation of its linear address. Section 29.4.6.2 discusses the treatment of physical accesses to the APIC-access page.

29.4.6.1 Guest-Physical Accesses to the APIC-Access Page

Guest-physical accesses include the following when guest-physical addresses are being translated using EPT:

- Reads from the guest paging structures when translating a linear address (such an access uses a guest-physical address that is not the translation of that linear address).
- Loads of the page-directory-pointer-table entries by MOV to CR when the logical processor is using (or that causes the logical processor to use) PAE paging (see Section 4.4).
- Updates to the accessed and dirty flags in the guest paging structures when using a linear address (such an access uses a guest-physical address that is not the translation of that linear address).

Every guest-physical access to an address on the APIC-access page causes an APIC-access VM exit. Such accesses are never virtualized regardless of the page offset.

The following items specify the priority relative to other events of APIC-access VM exits caused by guest-physical accesses to the APIC-access page.

- The priority of an APIC-access VM exit caused by a guest-physical access to memory is below that of any EPT violation that that access may incur. That is, a guest-physical access does not cause an APIC-access VM exit if it would cause an EPT violation.
- With respect to all other events, any APIC-access VM exit caused by a guest-physical access has the same priority as any EPT violation that the guest-physical access could cause.

29.4.6.2 Physical Accesses to the APIC-Access Page

Physical accesses include the following:

- If the "enable EPT" VM-execution control is 0:
 - Reads from the paging structures when translating a linear address.
 - Loads of the page-directory-pointer-table entries by MOV to CR when the logical processor is using (or that causes the logical processor to use) PAE paging (see Section 4.4).
 - Updates to the accessed and dirty flags in the paging structures.
- If the "enable EPT" VM-execution control is 1, accesses to the EPT paging structures (including updates to the accessed and dirty flags for EPT).
- Any of the following accesses made by the processor to support VMX non-root operation:
 - Accesses to the VMCS region.
 - Accesses to data structures referenced (directly or indirectly) by physical addresses in VM-execution control fields in the VMCS. These include the I/O bitmaps, the MSR bitmaps, and the virtual-APIC page.
- Accesses that effect transitions into and out of SMM.¹³ These include the following:
 - Accesses to SMRAM during SMI delivery and during execution of RSM.
 - Accesses during SMM VM exits (including accesses to MSEG) and during VM entries that return from SMM.

12. "Enable EPT" is a secondary processor-based VM-execution control. If bit 31 of the primary processor-based VM-execution controls is 0, VMX non-root operation functions as if the "enable EPT" VM-execution control were 0. See Section 24.6.2.

13. Technically, these accesses do not occur in VMX non-root operation. They are included here for clarity.

A physical access to the APIC-access page may or may not cause an APIC-access VM exit. If it does not cause an APIC-access VM exit, it may access the APIC-access page or the virtual-APIC page. Physical write accesses to the APIC-access page may or may not cause APIC-write emulation or APIC-write VM exits.

The priority of an APIC-access VM exit caused by physical access is not defined relative to other events that the access may cause.

It is recommended that software not set the APIC-access address to any of the addresses used by physical memory accesses (identified above). For example, it should not set the APIC-access address to the physical address of any of the active paging structures if the “enable EPT” VM-execution control is 0.

29.5 VIRTUALIZING MSR-BASED APIC ACCESSES

When the local APIC is in x2APIC mode, software accesses the local APIC’s control registers using the MSR interface. Specifically, software uses the RDMSR and WRMSR instructions, setting ECX (identifying the MSR being accessed) to values in the range 800H–8FFH (see Section 10.12, “Extended XAPIC (x2APIC)”). This section describes how these accesses can be virtualized.

A virtual-machine monitor can virtualize these MSR-based APIC accesses by configuring the MSR bitmaps (see Section 24.6.9) to ensure that the accesses cause VM exits (see Section 25.1.3). Alternatively, there are methods for virtualizing some MSR-based APIC accesses without VM exits.

Normally, an execution of RDMSR or WRMSR that does not fault or cause a VM exit accesses the MSR indicated in ECX. However, such an execution treats some values of ECX in the range 800H–8FFH specially if the “virtualize x2APIC mode” VM-execution control is 1. The following items provide details:

- **RDMSR.** The instruction’s behavior depends on the setting of the “APIC-register virtualization” VM-execution control.
 - If the “APIC-register virtualization” VM-execution control is 0, behavior depends upon the value of ECX.
 - If ECX contains 808H (indicating the TPR MSR), the instruction reads the 8 bytes from offset 080H on the virtual-APIC page (VTPR and the 4 bytes above it) into EDX:EAX. This occurs even if the local APIC is not in x2APIC mode (no general-protection fault occurs because the local APIC is not x2APIC mode).
 - If ECX contains any other value in the range 800H–8FFH, the instruction operates normally. If the local APIC is in x2APIC mode and ECX indicates a readable APIC register, EDX and EAX are loaded with the value of that register. If the local APIC is not in x2APIC mode or ECX does not indicate a readable APIC register, a general-protection fault occurs.
 - If “APIC-register virtualization” is 1 and ECX contains a value in the range 800H–8FFH, the instruction reads the 8 bytes from offset X on the virtual-APIC page into EDX:EAX, where $X = (ECX \& FFH) \ll 4$. This occurs even if the local APIC is not in x2APIC mode (no general-protection fault occurs because the local APIC is not in x2APIC mode).
- **WRMSR.** The instruction’s behavior depends on the value of ECX and the setting of the “virtual-interrupt delivery” VM-execution control.

Special processing applies in the following cases: (1) ECX contains 808H (indicating the TPR MSR); (2) ECX contains 80BH (indicating the EOI MSR) and the “virtual-interrupt delivery” VM-execution control is 1; and (3) ECX contains 83FH (indicating the self-IPI MSR) and the “virtual-interrupt delivery” VM-execution control is 1.

If special processing applies, no general-protection exception is produced due to the fact that the local APIC is in xAPIC mode. However, WRMSR does perform the normal reserved-bit checking:

- If ECX contains 808H or 83FH, a general-protection fault occurs if either EDX or EAX[31:8] is non-zero.
- If ECX contains 80BH, a general-protection fault occurs if either EDX or EAX is non-zero.

If there is no fault, WRMSR stores EDX:EAX at offset X on the virtual-APIC page, where $X = (ECX \& FFH) \ll 4$. Following this, the processor performs an operation depending on the value of ECX:

- If ECX contains 808H, the processor performs TPR virtualization (see Section 29.1.2).
- If ECX contains 80BH, the processor performs EOI virtualization (see Section 29.1.4).
- If ECX contains 83FH, the processor then checks the value of EAX[7:4] and proceeds as follows:

- If the value is non-zero, the logical processor performs self-IPI virtualization with the 8-bit vector in EAX[7:0] (see Section 29.1.5).
- If the value is zero, the logical processor causes an APIC-write VM exit as if there had been a write access to page offset 3F0H on the APIC-access page (see Section 29.4.3.3).

If special processing does not apply, the instruction operates normally. If the local APIC is in x2APIC mode and ECX indicates a writable APIC register, the value in EDX:EAX is written to that register. If the local APIC is not in x2APIC mode or ECX does not indicate a writable APIC register, a general-protection fault occurs.

29.6 POSTED-INTERRUPT PROCESSING

Posted-interrupt processing is a feature by which a processor processes the virtual interrupts by recording them as pending on the virtual-APIC page.

Posted-interrupt processing is enabled by setting the “process posted interrupts” VM-execution control. The processing is performed in response to the arrival of an interrupt with the **posted-interrupt notification vector**. In response to such an interrupt, the processor processes virtual interrupts recorded in a data structure called a **posted-interrupt descriptor**. The posted-interrupt notification vector and the address of the posted-interrupt descriptor are fields in the VMCS; see Section 24.6.8.

If the “process posted interrupts” VM-execution control is 1, a logical processor uses a 64-byte posted-interrupt descriptor located at the posted-interrupt descriptor address. The posted-interrupt descriptor has the following format:

Table 29-1. Format of Posted-Interrupt Descriptor

Bit Position(s)	Name	Description
255:0	Posted-interrupt requests	One bit for each interrupt vector. There is a posted-interrupt request for a vector if the corresponding bit is 1
256	Outstanding notification	If this bit is set, there is a notification outstanding for one or more posted interrupts in bits 255:0
511:257	Reserved for software and other agents	These bits may be used by software and by other agents in the system (e.g., chipset). The processor does not modify these bits.

The notation **PIR** (posted-interrupt requests) refers to the 256 posted-interrupt bits in the posted-interrupt descriptor.

Use of the posted-interrupt descriptor differs from that of other data structures that are referenced by pointers in a VMCS. There is a general requirement that software ensure that each such data structure is modified only when no logical processor with a current VMCS that references it is in VMX non-root operation. That requirement does not apply to the posted-interrupt descriptor. There is a requirement, however, that such modifications be done using locked read-modify-write instructions.

If the “external-interrupt exiting” VM-execution control is 1, any unmasked external interrupt causes a VM exit (see Section 25.2). If the “process posted interrupts” VM-execution control is also 1, this behavior is changed and the processor handles an external interrupt as follows:¹⁴

1. The local APIC is acknowledged; this provides the processor core with an interrupt vector, called here the **physical vector**.
2. If the physical vector equals the posted-interrupt notification vector, the logical processor continues to the next step. Otherwise, a VM exit occurs as it would normally due to an external interrupt; the vector is saved in the VM-exit interruption-information field.
3. The processor clears the outstanding-notification bit in the posted-interrupt descriptor. This is done atomically so as to leave the remainder of the descriptor unmodified (e.g., with a locked AND operation).

14. VM entry ensures that the “process posted interrupts” VM-execution control is 1 only if the “external-interrupt exiting” VM-execution control is also 1. See Section 26.2.1.1.

4. The processor writes zero to the EOI register in the local APIC; this dismisses the interrupt with the posted-interrupt notification vector from the local APIC.
5. The logical processor performs a logical-OR of PIR into VIRR and clears PIR. No other agent can read or write a PIR bit (or group of bits) between the time it is read (to determine what to OR into VIRR) and when it is cleared.
6. The logical processor sets RVI to be the maximum of the old value of RVI and the highest index of all bits that were set in PIR; if no bit was set in PIR, RVI is left unmodified.
7. The logical processor evaluates pending virtual interrupts as described in Section 29.2.1.

The logical processor performs the steps above in an uninterruptible manner. If step #7 leads to recognition of a virtual interrupt, the processor may deliver that interrupt immediately.

Steps #1 to #7 above occur when the interrupt controller delivers an unmasked external interrupt to the CPU core. The following items consider certain cases of interrupt delivery:

- Interrupt delivery can occur between iterations of a REP-prefixed instruction (after at least one iteration has completed but before all iterations have completed). If this occurs, the following items characterize processor state after posted-interrupt processing completes and before guest execution resumes:
 - RIP references the REP-prefixed instruction;
 - RCX, RSI, and RDI are updated to reflect the iterations completed; and
 - RFLAGS.RF = 1.
- Interrupt delivery can occur when the logical processor is in the active, HLT, or MWAIT states. If the logical processor had been in the active or MWAIT state before the arrival of the interrupt, it is in the active state following completion of step #7; if it had been in the HLT state, it returns to the HLT state after step #7 (if a pending virtual interrupt was recognized, the logical processor may immediately wake from the HLT state).
- Interrupt delivery can occur while the logical processor is in enclave mode. If the logical processor had been in enclave mode before the arrival of the interrupt, an Asynchronous Enclave Exit (AEX) may occur before the steps #1 to #7 (see Chapter 39, "Enclave Exiting Events"). If no AEX occurs before step #1 and a VM exit occurs at step #2, an AEX occurs before the VM exit is delivered.

16. Updates to Chapter 35, Volume 3C

Change bars show changes to Chapter 35 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3C: System Programming Guide, Part 3*.

Changes to this chapter: Several updates throughout chapter.

CHAPTER 35

INTEL® PROCESSOR TRACE

35.1 OVERVIEW

Intel® Processor Trace (**Intel PT**) is an extension of Intel® Architecture that captures information about software execution using dedicated hardware facilities that cause only minimal performance perturbation to the software being traced. This information is collected in **data packets**. The initial implementations of Intel PT offer **control flow tracing**, which generates a variety of packets to be processed by a software decoder. The packets include timing, program flow information (e.g. branch targets, branch taken/not taken indications) and program-induced mode related information (e.g. Intel TSX state transitions, CR3 changes). These packets may be buffered internally before being sent to the memory subsystem or other output mechanism available in the platform. Debug software can process the trace data and reconstruct the program flow.

Later generations include additional trace sources, including software trace instrumentation using PTWRITE, and Power Event tracing.

35.1.1 Features and Capabilities

Intel PT's control flow trace generates a variety of packets that, when combined with the binaries of a program by a post-processing tool, can be used to produce an exact execution trace. The packets record flow information such as instruction pointers (IP), indirect branch targets, and directions of conditional branches within contiguous code regions (basic blocks).

Intel PT can also be configured to log software-generated packets using PTWRITE, and packets describing processor power management events.

In addition, the packets record other contextual, timing, and bookkeeping information that enables both functional and performance debugging of applications. Intel PT has several control and filtering capabilities available to customize the tracing information collected and to append other processor state and timing information to enable debugging. For example, there are modes that allow packets to be filtered based on the current privilege level (CPL) or the value of CR3.

Configuration of the packet generation and filtering capabilities are programmed via a set of MSRs. The MSRs generally follow the naming convention of IA32_RTIT_*. The capability provided by these configuration MSRs are enumerated by CPUID, see Section 35.3. Details of the MSRs for configuring Intel PT are described in Section 35.2.7.

35.1.1.1 Packet Summary

After a tracing tool has enabled and configured the appropriate MSRs, the processor will collect and generate trace information in the following categories of packets (for more details on the packets, see Section 35.4):

- Packets about basic information on program execution; these include:
 - Packet Stream Boundary (**PSB**) packets: PSB packets act as 'heartbeats' that are generated at regular intervals (e.g., every 4K trace packet bytes). These packets allow the packet decoder to find the packet boundaries within the output data stream; a PSB packet should be the first packet that a decoder looks for when beginning to decode a trace.
 - Paging Information Packet (**PIP**): PIPs record modifications made to the CR3 register. This information, along with information from the operating system on the CR3 value of each process, allows the debugger to attribute linear addresses to their correct application source.
 - Time-Stamp Counter (**TSC**) packets: TSC packets aid in tracking wall-clock time, and contain some portion of the software-visible time-stamp counter.
 - Core Bus Ratio (**CBR**) packets: CBR packets contain the core:bus clock ratio.

- Overflow (**OVF**) packets: OVF packets are sent when the processor experiences an internal buffer overflow, resulting in packets being dropped. This packet notifies the decoder of the loss and can help the decoder to respond to this situation.
- Packets about control flow information:
 - Taken Not-Taken (**TNT**) packets: TNT packets track the “direction” of direct conditional branches (taken or not taken).
 - Target IP (**TIP**) packets: TIP packets record the target IP of indirect branches, exceptions, interrupts, and other branches or events. These packets can contain the IP, although that IP value may be compressed by eliminating upper bytes that match the last IP. There are various types of TIP packets; they are covered in more detail in Section 35.4.2.2.
 - Flow Update Packets (**FUP**): FUPs provide the source IP addresses for asynchronous events (interrupt and exceptions), as well as other cases where the source address cannot be determined from the binary.
 - **MODE** packets: These packets provide the decoder with important processor execution information so that it can properly interpret the dis-assembled binary and trace log. MODE packets have a variety of formats that indicate details such as the execution mode (16-bit, 32-bit, or 64-bit).
- Packets inserted by software:
 - PTWRITE (PTW) packets: includes the value of the operand passed to the PTWRITE instruction (see “PTWRITE - Write Data to a Processor Trace Packet” in *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2B*).
- Packets about processor power management events:
 - MWAIT packets: Indicate successful completion of an MWAIT operation to a C-state deeper than C0.0.
 - Power State Entry (PWRE) packets: Indicate entry to a C-state deeper than C0.0.
 - Power State Exit (PWRX) packets: Indicate exit from a C-state deeper than C0.0, returning to C0.
 - Execution Stopped (EXSTOP) packets: Indicate that software execution has stopped, due to events such as P-state change, C-state change, or thermal throttling.

35.2 INTEL® PROCESSOR TRACE OPERATIONAL MODEL

This section describes the overall Intel Processor Trace mechanism and the essential concepts relevant to how it operates.

35.2.1 Change of Flow Instruction (COFI) Tracing

A basic program block is a section of code where no jumps or branches occur. The instruction pointers (IPs) in this block of code need not be traced, as the processor will execute them from start to end without redirecting code flow. Instructions such as branches, and events such as exceptions or interrupts, can change the program flow. These instructions and events that change program flow are called Change of Flow Instructions (COFI). There are three categories of COFI:

- Direct transfer COFI.
- Indirect transfer COFI.
- Far transfer COFI.

The following subsections describe the COFI events that result in trace packet generation. Table 35-1 lists branch instruction by COFI types. For detailed description of specific instructions, see *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual*.

Table 35-1. COFI Type for Branch Instructions

COFI Type	Instructions
Conditional Branch	JA, JAE, JB, JBE, JC, JCXZ, JECXZ, JRCXZ, JE, JG, JGE, JL, JLE, JNA, JNAE, JNB, JNBE, JNC, JNE, JNG, JNGE, JNL, JNLE, JNO, JNP, JNS, JNZ, JO, JP, JPE, JPO, JS, JZ, LOOP, LOOPE, LOOPNE, LOOPNZ, LOOPZ

Table 35-1. COFI Type for Branch Instructions

COFI Type	Instructions
Unconditional Direct Branch	JMP (E9 xx, EB xx), CALL (E8 xx)
Indirect Branch	JMP (FF /4), CALL (FF /2)
Near Ret	RET (C3, C2 xx)
Far Transfers	INT1, INT3, INT <i>n</i> , INTO, IRET, IRETD, IRETQ, JMP (EA xx, FF /5), CALL (9A xx, FF /3), RET (CB, CA xx), SYSCALL, SYSRET, SYSENTER, SYSEXIT, VMLAUNCH, VMRESUME

35.2.1.1 Direct Transfer COFI

Direct Transfer COFI are relative branches. This means that their target is an IP whose offset from the current IP is embedded in the instruction bytes. It is not necessary to indicate target of these instructions in the trace output since it can be obtained through the source disassembly. Conditional branches need to indicate only whether the branch is taken or not. Unconditional branches do not need any recording in the trace output. There are two sub-categories:

- **Conditional Branch (Jcc, J*CXZ) and LOOP**

To track this type of instruction, the processor encodes a single bit (taken or not taken — TNT) to indicate the program flow after the instruction.

Jcc, J*CXZ, and LOOP can be traced with TNT bits. To improve the trace packet output efficiency, the processor will compact several TNT bits into a single packet.

- **Unconditional Direct Jumps**

There is no trace output required for direct unconditional jumps (like JMP near relative or CALL near relative) since they can be directly inferred from the application assembly. Direct unconditional jumps do not generate a TNT bit or a Target IP packet, though TIP.PGD and TIP.PGE packets can be generated by unconditional direct jumps that toggle Intel PT enables (see Section 35.2.5).

35.2.1.2 Indirect Transfer COFI

Indirect transfer instructions involve updating the IP from a register or memory location. Since the register or memory contents can vary at any time during execution, there is no way to know the target of the indirect transfer until the register or memory contents are read. As a result, the disassembled code is not sufficient to determine the target of this type of COFI. Therefore, tracing hardware must send out the destination IP in the trace packet for debug software to determine the target address of the COFI. Note that this IP may be a linear or effective address (see Section 35.3.1.1).

An indirect transfer instruction generates a Target IP Packet (TIP) that contains the target address of the branch. There are two sub-categories:

- **Near JMP Indirect and Near Call Indirect**

As previously mentioned, the target of an indirect COFI resides in the contents of either a register or memory location. Therefore, the processor must generate a packet that includes this target address to allow the decoder to determine the program flow.

- **Near RET**

When a CALL instruction executes, it pushes onto the stack the address of the next instruction following the CALL. Upon completion of the call procedure, the RET instruction is often used to pop the return address off of the call stack and redirect code flow back to the instruction following the CALL.

A RET instruction simply transfers program flow to the address it popped off the stack. Because a called procedure may change the return address on the stack before executing the RET instruction, debug software can be misled if it assumes that code flow will return to the instruction following the last CALL. Therefore, even for near RET, a Target IP Packet may be sent.

- **RET Compression**

A special case is applied if the target of the RET is consistent with what would be expected from tracking the CALL stack. If it is assured that the decoder has seen the corresponding CALL (with “corresponding” defined

as the CALL with matching stack depth), and the RET target is the instruction after that CALL, the RET target may be “compressed”. In this case, only a single TNT bit of “taken” is generated instead of a Target IP Packet. To ensure that the decoder will not be confused in cases of RET compression, only RETs that correspond to CALLs which have been seen since the last PSB packet may be compressed in a given logical processor. For details, see “Indirect Transfer Compression for Returns (RET)” in Section 35.4.2.2.

35.2.1.3 Far Transfer COFI

All operations that change the instruction pointer and are not near jumps are “far transfers”. This includes exceptions, interrupts, traps, TSX aborts, and instructions that do far transfers.

All far transfers will produce a Target IP (TIP) packet, which provides the destination IP address. For those far transfers that cannot be inferred from the binary source (e.g., asynchronous events such as exceptions and interrupts), the TIP will be preceded by a Flow Update packet (FUP), which provides the source IP address at which the event was taken. Table 35-23 indicates exactly which IP will be included in the FUP generated by a far transfer.

35.2.2 Software Trace Instrumentation with PTWRITE

PTWRITE provides a mechanism by which software can instrument the Intel PT trace. PTWRITE is a ring3-accessible instruction that can be passed to a register or memory variable, see “PTWRITE - Write Data to a Processor Trace Packet” in *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 2B* for details. The contents of that variable will be used as the payload for the PTW packet (see Table 35-40 “PTW Packet Definition”), inserted at the time of PTWRITE retirement, assuming PTWRITE is enabled and all other filtering conditions are met. Decode and analysis software will then be able to determine the meaning of the PTWRITE packet based on the IP of the associated PTWRITE instruction.

PTWRITE is enabled via IA32_RTIT_CTL.PTWEn[12] (see Table 35-6). Optionally, the user can use IA32_RTIT_CTL.FUPonPTW[5] to enable PTW packets to be followed by FUP packets containing the IP of the associated PTWRITE instruction. Support for PTWRITE is introduced in Intel® Atom™ processors based on the Goldmont Plus microarchitecture.

35.2.3 Power Event Tracing

Power Event Trace is a capability that exposes core- and thread-level sleep state and power down transition information. When this capability is enabled, the trace will expose information about:

- Scenarios where software execution stops.
 - Due to sleep state entry, frequency change, or other powerdown.
 - Includes the IP, when in the tracing context.
- The requested and resolved hardware thread C-state.
 - Including indication of hardware autonomous C-state entry.
- The last and deepest core C-state achieved during a sleep session.
- The reason for C-state wake.

This information is in addition to the bus ratio (CBR) information provided by default after any powerdown, and the timing information (TSC, TMA, MTC, CYC) provided during or after a powerdown state.

Power Event Trace is enabled via IA32_RTIT_CTL.PwrEvtEn[4]. Support for Power Event Tracing is introduced in Intel® Atom™ processors based on the Goldmont Plus microarchitecture.

35.2.4 Trace Filtering

Intel Processor Trace provides filtering capabilities, by which the debug/profile tool can control what code is traced.

35.2.4.1 Filtering by Current Privilege Level (CPL)

Intel PT provides the ability to configure a logical processor to generate trace packets only when CPL = 0, when CPL > 0, or regardless of CPL.

CPL filtering ensures that no IPs or other architectural state information associated with the filtered CPL can be seen in the log. For example, if the processor is configured to trace only when CPL > 0, and software executes SYSCALL (changing the CPL to 0), the destination IP of the SYSCALL will be suppressed from the generated packet (see the discussion of TIP.PGD in Section 35.4.2.5).

It should be noted that CPL is always 0 in real-address mode and that CPL is always 3 in virtual-8086 mode. To trace code in these modes, filtering should be configured accordingly.

When software is executing in a non-enabled CPL, ContextEn is cleared. See Section 35.2.5.1 for details.

35.2.4.2 Filtering by CR3

Intel PT supports a CR3-filtering mechanism by which the generation of packets containing architectural states can be enabled or disabled based on the value of CR3. A debugger can use CR3 filtering to trace only a single application without context switching the state of the RTIT MSRs. For the reconstruction of traces from software with multiple threads, debug software may wish to context-switch for the state of the RTIT MSRs (if the operating system does not provide context-switch support) to separate the output for the different threads (see Section 35.3.5, "Context Switch Consideration").

To trace for only a single CR3 value, software can write that value to the IA32_RTIT_CR3_MATCH MSR, and set IA32_RTIT_CTL.CR3Filter. When CR3 value does not match IA32_RTIT_CR3_MATCH and IA32_RTIT_CTL.CR3Filter is 1, ContextEn is forced to 0, and packets containing architectural states will not be generated. Some other packets can be generated when ContextEn is 0; see Section 35.2.5.3 for details. When CR3 does match IA32_RTIT_CR3_MATCH (or when IA32_RTIT_CTL.CR3Filter is 0), CR3 filtering does not force ContextEn to 0 (although it could be 0 due to other filters or modes).

CR3 matches IA32_RTIT_CR3_MATCH if the two registers are identical for bits 63:12, or 63:5 when in PAE paging mode; the lower 5 bits of CR3 and IA32_RTIT_CR3_MATCH are ignored. CR3 filtering is independent of the value of CR0.PG.

When CR3 filtering is in use, PIP packets may still be seen in the log if the processor is configured to trace when CPL = 0 (IA32_RTIT_CTL.OS = 1). If not, no PIP packets will be seen.

35.2.4.3 Filtering by IP

Trace packet generation with configurable filtering by IP is supported if CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0):EBX[bit 2] = 1. Intel PT can be configured to enable the generation of packets containing architectural states only when the processor is executing code within certain IP ranges. If the IP is outside of these ranges, generation of some packets is blocked.

IP filtering is enabled using the ADDRn_CFG fields in the IA32_RTIT_CTL MSR (Section 35.2.7.2), where the digit 'n' is a zero-based number that selects which address range is being configured. Each ADDRn_CFG field configures the use of the register pair IA32_RTIT_ADDRn_A and IA32_RTIT_ADDRn_B (Section 35.2.7.5). IA32_RTIT_ADDRn_A defines the base and IA32_RTIT_ADDRn_B specifies the limit of the range in which tracing is enabled. Thus each range, referred to as the ADDRn range, is defined by [IA32_RTIT_ADDRn_A, IA32_RTIT_ADDRn_B]. There can be multiple such ranges, software can query CPUID (Section 35.3.1) for the number of ranges supported on a processor.

Default behavior (ADDRn_CFG=0) defines no IP filter range, meaning FilterEn is always set. In this case code at any IP can be traced, though other filters, such as CR3 or CPL, could limit tracing. When ADDRn_CFG is set to enable IP filtering (see Section 35.3.1), tracing will commence when a taken branch or event is seen whose target address is in the ADDRn range.

While inside a tracing region and with FilterEn is set, leaving the tracing region may only be detected once a taken branch or event with a target outside the range is retired. If an ADDRn range is entered or exited by executing the next sequential instruction, rather than by a control flow transfer, FilterEn may not toggle immediately. See Section 35.2.5.5 for more details on FilterEn.

Note that these address range base and limit values are inclusive, such that the range includes the first and last instruction whose first instruction byte is in the ADDRn range.

Depending upon processor implementation, IP filtering may be based on linear or effective address. This can cause different behavior between implementations if CSbase is not equal to zero or in real mode. See Section 35.3.1.1 for details. Software can query CPUID to determine filters are based on linear or effective address (Section 35.3.1).

Note that some packets, such as MTC (Section 35.3.7) and other timing packets, do not depend on FilterEn. For details on which packets depend on FilterEn, and hence are impacted by IP filtering, see Section 35.4.1.

TraceStop

The ADDRn ranges can also be configured to cause tracing to be disabled upon entry to the specified region. This is intended for cases where unexpected code is executed, and the user wishes to immediately stop generating packets in order to avoid overwriting previously written packets.

The TraceStop mechanism works much the same way that IP filtering does, and uses the same address comparison logic. The TraceStop region base and limit values are programmed into one or more ADDRn ranges, but IA32_RTIT_CTL.ADDRn_CFG is configured with the TraceStop encoding. Like FilterEn, TraceStop is detected when a taken branch or event lands in a TraceStop region.

Further, TraceStop requires that TriggerEn=1 at the beginning of the branch/event, and ContextEn=1 upon completion of the branch/event. When this happens, the CPU will set IA32_RTIT_STATUS.Stopped, thereby clearing TriggerEn and hence disabling packet generation. This may generate a TIP.PGD packet with the target IP of the branch or event that entered the TraceStop region. Finally, a TraceStop packet will be inserted, to indicate that the condition was hit.

If a TraceStop condition is encountered during buffer overflow (Section 35.3.8), it will not be dropped, but will instead be signaled once the overflow has resolved.

Note that a TraceStop event does not guarantee that all internally buffered packets are flushed out of internal buffers. To ensure that this has occurred, the user should clear TraceEn.

To resume tracing after a TraceStop event, the user must first disable Intel PT by clearing IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn before the IA32_RTIT_STATUS.Stopped bit can be cleared. At this point Intel PT can be reconfigured, and tracing resumed.

Note that the IA32_RTIT_STATUS.Stopped bit can also be set using the ToPA STOP bit. See Section 35.2.6.2.

IP Filtering Example

The following table gives an example of IP filtering behavior. Assume that IA32_RTIT_ADDRn_A = the IP of RangeBase, and that IA32_RTIT_ADDRn_B = the IP of RangeLimit, while IA32_RTIT_CTL.ADDRn_CFG = 0x1 (enable ADDRn range as a FilterEn range).

Table 35-2. IP Filtering Packet Example

Code Flow	Packets
<pre> Bar: jmp RangeBase // jump into filter range RangeBase: jcc Foo // not taken add eax, 1 Foo: jmp RangeLimit+1 // jump out of filter range RangeLimit: nop jcc Bar </pre>	<pre> TIP.PGE(RangeBase) TNT(0) TIP.PGD(RangeLimit+1) </pre>

IP Filtering and TraceStop

It is possible for the user to configure IP filter range(s) and TraceStop range(s) that overlap. In this case, code executing in the non-overlapping portion of either range will behave as would be expected from that range. Code executing in the overlapping range will get TraceStop behavior.

35.2.5 Packet Generation Enable Controls

Intel Processor Trace includes a variety of controls that determine whether a packet is generated. In general, most packets are sent only if Packet Enable (**PacketEn**) is set. PacketEn is an internal state maintained in hardware in response to software configurable enable controls, PacketEn is not visible to software directly. The relationship of PacketEn to the software-visible controls in the configuration MSRs is described in this section.

35.2.5.1 Packet Enable (PacketEn)

When PacketEn is set, the processor is in the mode that Intel PT is monitoring and all packets can be generated to log what is being executed. PacketEn is composed of other states according to this relationship:

$$\text{PacketEn} \leftarrow \text{TriggerEn} \text{ AND } \text{ContextEn} \text{ AND } \text{FilterEn} \text{ AND } \text{BranchEn}$$

These constituent controls are detailed in the following subsections.

PacketEn ultimately determines when the processor is tracing. When PacketEn is set, all control flow packets are enabled. When PacketEn is clear, no control flow packets are generated, though other packets (timing and book-keeping packets) may still be sent. See Section 35.2.6 for details of PacketEn and packet generation.

Note that, on processors that do not support IP filtering (i.e., CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0):EBX.IPFILT_WRSTPRSV[bit 2] = 0), FilterEn is treated as always set.

35.2.5.2 Trigger Enable (TriggerEn)

Trigger Enable (**TriggerEn**) is the primary indicator that trace packet generation is active. TriggerEn is set when IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn is set, and cleared by any of the following conditions:

- TraceEn is cleared by software.
- A TraceStop condition is encountered and IA32_RTIT_STATUS.Stopped is set.
- IA32_RTIT_STATUS.Error is set due to an operational error (see Section 35.3.9).

Software can discover the current TriggerEn value by reading the IA32_RTIT_STATUS.TriggerEn bit. When TriggerEn is clear, tracing is inactive and no packets are generated.

35.2.5.3 Context Enable (ContextEn)

Context Enable (**ContextEn**) indicates whether the processor is in the state or mode that software configured hardware to trace. For example, if execution with CPL = 0 code is not being traced (IA32_RTIT_CTL.OS = 0), then ContextEn will be 0 when the processor is in CPL0.

Software can discover the current ContextEn value by reading the IA32_RTIT_STATUS.ContextEn bit. ContextEn is defined as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{ContextEn} = & !((\text{IA32_RTIT_CTL.OS} = 0 \text{ AND } \text{CPL} = 0) \text{ OR} \\ & (\text{IA32_RTIT_CTL.USER} = 0 \text{ AND } \text{CPL} > 0) \text{ OR } (\text{IS_IN_A_PRODUCTION_ENCLAVE}^1) \text{ OR} \\ & (\text{IA32_RTIT_CTL.CR3Filter} = 1 \text{ AND } \text{IA32_RTIT_CR3_MATCH} \text{ does not match CR3})) \end{aligned}$$

If the clearing of ContextEn causes PacketEn to be cleared, a Packet Generation Disable (TIP.PGD) packet is generated, but its IP payload is suppressed. If the setting of ContextEn causes PacketEn to be set, a Packet Generation Enable (TIP.PGE) packet is generated.

When ContextEn is 0, control flow packets (TNT, FUP, TIP.*, MODE.*) are not generated, and no Linear Instruction Pointers (LIPs) are exposed. However, some packets, such as MTC and PSB (see Section 35.4.2.16 and Section 35.4.2.17), may still be generated while ContextEn is 0. For details of which packets are generated only when ContextEn is set, see Section 35.4.1.

The processor does not update ContextEn when TriggerEn = 0.

The value of ContextEn will toggle only when TriggerEn = 1.

1. Trace packets generation is disabled in a production enclave, see Section 35.2.8.5. See *Intel® Software Guard Extensions Programming Reference* about differences between a production enclave and a debug enclave.

35.2.5.4 Branch Enable (BranchEn)

This value is based purely on the IA32_RTIT_CTL.BranchEn value. If **BranchEn** is not set, then relevant COFI packets (TNT, TIP*, FUP, MODE.*) are suppressed. Other packets related to timing (TSC, TMA, MTC, CYC), as well as PSB, will be generated normally regardless. Further, PIP and VMCS continue to be generated, as indicators of what software is running.

35.2.5.5 Filter Enable (FilterEn)

Filter Enable indicates that the Instruction Pointer (IP) is within the range of IPs that Intel PT is configured to watch. Software can get the state of Filter Enable by a RDMSR of IA32_RTIT_STATUS.FilterEn. For details on configuration and use of IP filtering, see Section 35.2.4.3.

On clearing of FilterEn that also clears PacketEn, a Packet Generation Disable (TIP.PGD) will be generated, but unlike the ContextEn case, the IP payload may not be suppressed. For direct, unconditional branches, as well as for indirect branches (including RETs), the PGD generated by leaving the tracing region and clearing FilterEn will contain the target IP. This means that IPs from outside the configured range can be exposed in the trace, as long as they are within context.

When FilterEn is 0, control flow packets are not generated (e.g., TNT, TIP). However, some packets, such as PIP, MTC, and PSB, may still be generated while FilterEn is clear. For details on packet enable dependencies, see Section 35.4.1.

After TraceEn is set, FilterEn is set to 1 at all times if there is no IP filter range configured by software (IA32_RTIT_CTL.ADDRn_CFG != 1, for all n), or if the processor does not support IP filtering (i.e., CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0):EBX.IPFILT_WRSTPRSV[bit 2] = 0). FilterEn will toggle only when TraceEn=1 and ContextEn=1, and when at least one range is configured for IP filtering.

35.2.6 Trace Output

Intel PT output should be viewed independently from trace content and filtering mechanisms. The options available for trace output can vary across processor generations and platforms.

Trace output is written out using one of the following output schemes, as configured by the ToPA and FabricEn bit fields of IA32_RTIT_CTL (see Section 35.2.7.2):

- A single, contiguous region of physical address space.
- A collection of variable-sized regions of physical memory. These regions are linked together by tables of pointers to those regions, referred to as Table of Physical Addresses (**ToPA**). The trace output stores bypass the caches and the TLBs, but are not serializing. This is intended to minimize the performance impact of the output.
- A platform-specific trace transport subsystem.

Regardless of the output scheme chosen, Intel PT stores bypass the processor caches by default. This ensures that they don't consume precious cache space, but they do not have the serializing aspects associated with un-cacheable (UC) stores. Software should avoid using MTRRs to mark any portion of the Intel PT output region as UC, as this may override the behavior described above and force Intel PT stores to UC, thereby incurring severe performance impact.

There is no guarantee that a packet will be written to memory or other trace endpoint after some fixed number of cycles after a packet-producing instruction executes. The only way to assure that all packets generated have reached their endpoint is to clear TraceEn and follow that with a store, fence, or serializing instruction; doing so ensures that all buffered packets are flushed out of the processor.

35.2.6.1 Single Range Output

When IA32_RTIT_CTL.ToPA and IA32_RTIT_CTL.FabricEn bits are clear, trace packet output is sent to a single, contiguous memory (or MMIO if DRAM is not available) range defined by a base address in IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_BASE (Section 35.2.7.7) and mask value in IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS (Section 35.2.7.8). The current write pointer in this range is also stored in IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS. This output range is circular, meaning that when the writes wrap around the end of the buffer they begin again at the base address.

This output method is best suited for cases where Intel PT output is either:

- Configured to be directed to a sufficiently large contiguous region of DRAM.
- Configured to go to an MMIO debug port, in order to route Intel PT output to a platform-specific trace endpoint (e.g., JTAG). In this scenario, a specific range of addresses is written in a circular manner, and SoC will intercept these writes and direct them to the proper device. Repeated writes to the same address do not overwrite each other, but are accumulated by the debugger, and hence no data is lost by the circular nature of the buffer.

The processor will determine the address to which to write the next trace packet output byte as follows:

```
OutputBase [63:0] ← IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_BASE [63:0]
OutputMask [63:0] ← ZeroExtend64 (IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS [31:0])
OutputOffset [63:0] ← ZeroExtend64 (IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS [63:32])
trace_store_phys_addr ← (OutputBase & ~OutputMask) + (OutputOffset & OutputMask)
```

Single-Range Output Errors

If the output base and mask are not properly configured by software, an operational error (see Section 35.3.9) will be signaled, and tracing disabled. Error scenarios with single-range output are:

- Mask value is non-contiguous.
IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS.MaskOrTablePointer value has a 0 in a less significant bit position than the most significant bit containing a 1.
- Base address and Mask are mis-aligned, and have overlapping bits set.
IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_BASE && IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS[31:0] > 0.
- Illegal Output Offset
IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS.OutputOffset is greater than the mask value IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS[31:0].

Also note that errors can be signaled due to trace packet output overlapping with restricted memory, see Section 35.2.6.4.

35.2.6.2 Table of Physical Addresses (ToPA)

When IA32_RTIT_CTL.ToPA is set and IA32_RTIT_CTL.FabricEn is clear, the ToPA output mechanism is utilized. The ToPA mechanism uses a linked list of tables; see Figure 35-1 for an illustrative example. Each entry in the table contains some attribute bits, a pointer to an output region, and the size of the region. The last entry in the table may hold a pointer to the next table. This pointer can either point to the top of the current table (for circular array) or to the base of another table. The table size is not fixed, since the link to the next table can exist at any entry.

The processor treats the various output regions referenced by the ToPA table(s) as a unified buffer. This means that a single packet may span the boundary between one output region and the next.

The ToPA mechanism is controlled by three values maintained by the processor:

- **proc_trace_table_base.**
This is the physical address of the base of the current ToPA table. When tracing is enabled, the processor loads this value from the IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_BASE MSR. While tracing is enabled, the processor updates the IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_BASE MSR with changes to proc_trace_table_base, but these updates may not be synchronous to software execution. When tracing is disabled, the processor ensures that the MSR contains the latest value of proc_trace_table_base.
- **proc_trace_table_offset.**
This indicates the entry of the current table that is currently in use. (This entry contains the address of the current output region.) When tracing is enabled, the processor loads the value from bits 31:7 (MaskOrTableOffset) of the IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS into bits 27:3 of proc_trace_table_offset. While tracing is enabled, the processor updates IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS.MaskOrTableOffset with changes to proc_trace_table_offset, but these updates may not be synchronous to software execution. When tracing is disabled, the processor ensures that the MSR contains the latest value of proc_trace_table_offset.
- **proc_trace_output_offset.**
This is a pointer into the current output region and indicates the location of the next write. When tracing is

enabled, the processor loads this value from bits 63:32 (OutputOffset) of the IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS. While tracing is enabled, the processor updates IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS.OutputOffset with changes to proc_trace_output_offset, but these updates may not be synchronous to software execution. When tracing is disabled, the processor ensures that the MSR contains the latest value of proc_trace_output_offset.

Figure 35-1 provides an illustration (not to scale) of the table and associated pointers.

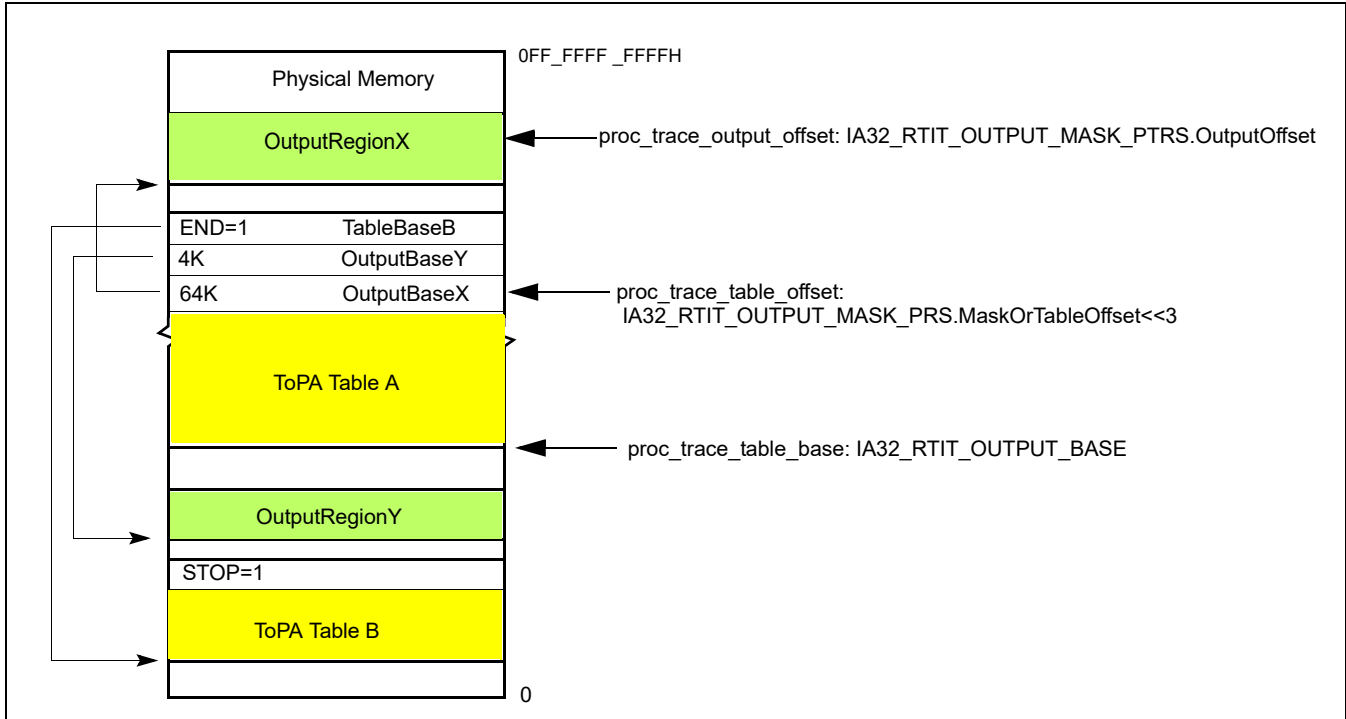


Figure 35-1. ToPA Memory Illustration

With the ToPA mechanism, the processor writes packets to the current output region (identified by `proc_trace_table_base` and the `proc_trace_table_offset`). The offset within that region to which the next byte will be written is identified by `proc_trace_output_offset`. When that region is filled with packet output (thus `proc_trace_output_offset = RegionSize-1`), `proc_trace_table_offset` is moved to the next ToPA entry, `proc_trace_output_offset` is set to 0, and packet writes begin filling the new output region specified by `proc_trace_table_offset`.

As packets are written out, each store derives its physical address as follows:

$$\text{trace_store_phys_addr} \leftarrow \text{Base address from current ToPA table entry} + \text{proc_trace_output_offset}$$

Eventually, the regions represented by all entries in the table may become full, and the final entry of the table is reached. An entry can be identified as the final entry because it has either the END or STOP attribute. The END attribute indicates that the address in the entry does not point to another output region, but rather to another ToPA table. The STOP attribute indicates that tracing will be disabled once the corresponding region is filled. See Table 35-3 and the section that follows for details on STOP.

When an END entry is reached, the processor loads `proc_trace_table_base` with the base address held in this END entry, thereby moving the current table pointer to this new table. The `proc_trace_table_offset` is reset to 0, as is the `proc_trace_output_offset`, and packet writes will resume at the base address indicated in the first entry.

If the table has no STOP or END entry, and trace-packet generation remains enabled, eventually the maximum table size will be reached (`proc_trace_table_offset = 0FFFFFF8H`). In this case, the `proc_trace_table_offset` and `proc_trace_output_offset` are reset to 0 (wrapping back to the beginning of the current table) once the last output region is filled.

It is important to note that processor updates to the IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_BASE and IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS MSRs are asynchronous to instruction execution. Thus, reads of these MSRs while Intel PT is enabled may return stale values. Like all IA32_RTIT_* MSRs, the values of these MSRs should not be trusted or saved unless trace packet generation is first disabled by clearing IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn. This ensures that the output MSR values account for all packets generated to that point, after which the processor will cease updating the output MSR values until tracing resumes.¹

The processor may cache internally any number of entries from the current table or from tables that it references (directly or indirectly). If tracing is enabled, the processor may ignore or delay detection of modifications to these tables. To ensure that table changes are detected by the processor in a predictable manner, software should clear TraceEn before modifying the current table (or tables that it references) and only then re-enable packet generation.

Single Output Region ToPA Implementation

The first processor generation to implement Intel PT supports only ToPA configurations with a single ToPA entry followed by an END entry that points back to the first entry (creating one circular output buffer). Such processors enumerate CPUID.(EAX=14H,ECX=0):ECX.MENTRY[bit 1] = 0 and CPUID.(EAX=14H,ECX=0):ECX.TOPAOUT[bit 0] = 1.

If CPUID.(EAX=14H,ECX=0):ECX.MENTRY[bit 1] = 0, ToPA tables can hold only one output entry, which must be followed by an END=1 entry which points back to the base of the table. Hence only one contiguous block can be used as output.

The lone output entry can have INT or STOP set, but nonetheless must be followed by an END entry as described above. Note that, if INT=1, the PMI will actually be delivered before the region is filled.

ToPA Table Entry Format

The format of ToPA table entries is shown in Figure 35-2. The size of the address field is determined by the processor’s physical-address width (MAXPHYADDR) in bits, as reported in CPUID.80000008H:EAX[7:0].

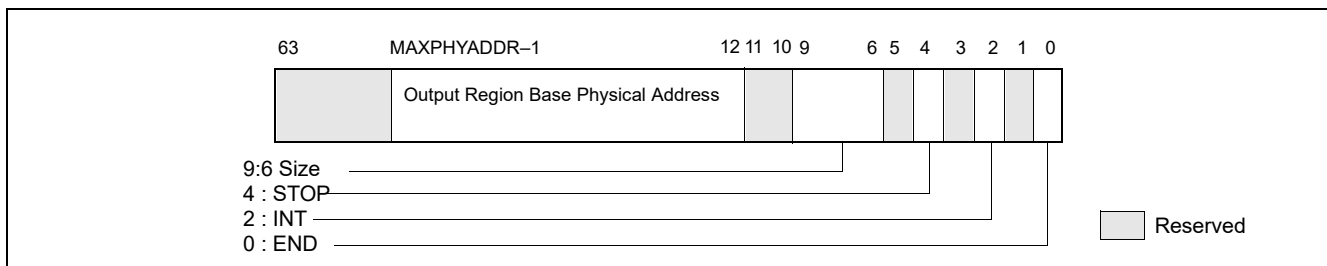


Figure 35-2. Layout of ToPA Table Entry

Table 35-3 describes the details of the ToPA table entry fields. If reserved bits are set to 1, an error is signaled.

Table 35-3. ToPA Table Entry Fields

ToPA Entry Field	Description
Output Region Base Physical Address	If END=0, this is the base physical address of the output region specified by this entry. Note that all regions must be aligned based on their size. Thus a 2M region must have bits 20:12 clear. If the region is not properly aligned, an operational error will be signaled when the entry is reached. If END=1, this is the 4K-aligned base physical address of the next ToPA table (which may be the base of the current table, or the first table in the linked list if a circular buffer is desired). If the processor supports only a single ToPA output region (see above), this address must be the value currently in the IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_BASE MSR.

1. Although WRMSR is a serializing instruction, the execution of WRMSR that forces packet writes by clearing TraceEn does not itself cause these writes to be globally observed.

Table 35-3. ToPA Table Entry Fields (Contd.)

ToPA Entry Field	Description
Size	Indicates the size of the associated output region. Encodings are: 0: 4K, 1: 8K, 2: 16K, 3: 32K, 4: 64K, 5: 128K, 6: 256K, 7: 512K, 8: 1M, 9: 2M, 10: 4M, 11: 8M, 12: 16M, 13: 32M, 14: 64M, 15: 128M This field is ignored if END=1.
STOP	When the output region indicated by this entry is filled, software should disable packet generation. This will be accomplished by setting IA32_RTIT_STATUS.Stopped, which clears TriggerEn. This bit must be 0 if END=1; otherwise it is treated as reserved bit violation (see ToPA Errors).
INT	When the output region indicated by this entry is filled, signal Perfmon LVT interrupt. Note that if both INT and STOP are set in the same entry, the STOP will happen before the INT. Thus the interrupt handler should expect that the IA32_RTIT_STATUS.Stopped bit will be set, and will need to be reset before tracing can be resumed. This bit must be 0 if END=1; otherwise it is treated as reserved bit violation (see ToPA Errors).
END	If set, indicates that this is an END entry, and thus the address field points to a table base rather than an output region base. If END=1, INT and STOP must be set to 0; otherwise it is treated as reserved bit violation (see ToPA Errors). The Size field is ignored in this case. If the processor supports only a single ToPA output region (see above), END must be set in the second table entry.

ToPA STOP

Each ToPA entry has a STOP bit. If this bit is set, the processor will set the IA32_RTIT_STATUS.Stopped bit when the corresponding trace output region is filled. This will clear TriggerEn and thereby cease packet generation. See Section 35.2.7.4 for details on IA32_RTIT_STATUS.Stopped. This sequence is known as “ToPA Stop”.

No TIP.PGD packet will be seen in the output when the ToPA stop occurs, since the disable happens only when the region is already full. When this occurs, output ceases after the last byte of the region is filled, which may mean that a packet is cut off in the middle. Any packets remaining in internal buffers are lost and cannot be recovered.

When ToPA stop occurs, the IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_BASE MSR will hold the base address of the table whose entry had STOP=1. IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS.MaskOffsetTableOffset will hold the index value for that entry, and the IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS.OutputOffset should be set to the size of the region.

Note that this means the offset pointer is pointing to the next byte after the end of the region, a configuration that would produce an operational error if the configuration remained when tracing is re-enabled with IA32_RTIT_STATUS.Stopped cleared.

ToPA PMI

Each ToPA entry has an INT bit. If this bit is set, the processor will signal a performance-monitoring interrupt (PMI) when the corresponding trace output region is filled. This interrupt is not precise, and it is thus likely that writes to the next region will occur by the time the interrupt is taken.

The following steps should be taken to configure this interrupt:

1. Enable PMI via the LVT Performance Monitor register (at MMIO offset 340H in xAPIC mode; via MSR 834H in x2APIC mode). See *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3B* for more details on this register. For ToPA PMI, set all fields to 0, save for the interrupt vector, which can be selected by software.
2. Set up an interrupt handler to service the interrupt vector that a ToPA PMI can raise.
3. Set the interrupt flag by executing STI.
4. Set the INT bit in the ToPA entry of interest and enable packet generation, using the ToPA output option. Thus, TraceEn=ToPA=1 in the IA32_RTIT_CTL MSR.

Once the INT region has been filled with packet output data, the interrupt will be signaled. This PMI can be distinguished from others by checking bit 55 (Trace_ToPA_PMI) of the IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS MSR (MSR 38EH). Once the ToPA PMI handler has serviced the relevant buffer, writing 1 to bit 55 of the MSR at 390H (IA32_GLOBAL_STATUS_RESET) clears IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS.Trace_ToPA_PMI.

Intel PT is not frozen on PMI, and thus the interrupt handler will be traced (though filtering can prevent this). The Freeze_Perfmon_on_PMI and Freeze_LBRs_on_PMI settings in IA32_DEBUGCTL will be applied on ToPA PMI just as on other PMIs, and hence Perfmon counters are frozen.

Assuming the PMI handler wishes to read any buffered packets for persistent output, or wishes to modify any Intel PT MSRs, software should first disable packet generation by clearing TraceEn. This ensures that all buffered packets are written to memory and avoids tracing of the PMI handler. The configuration MSRs can then be used to determine where tracing has stopped. If packet generation is disabled by the handler, it should then be manually re-enabled before the IRET if continued tracing is desired.

In rare cases, it may be possible to trigger a second ToPA PMI before the first is handled. This can happen if another ToPA region with INT=1 is filled before, or shortly after, the first PMI is taken, perhaps due to EFLAGS.IF being cleared for an extended period of time. This can manifest in two ways: either the second PMI is triggered before the first is taken, and hence only one PMI is taken, or the second is triggered after the first is taken, and thus will be taken when the handler for the first completes. Software can minimize the likelihood of the second case by clearing TraceEn at the beginning of the PMI handler. Further, it can detect such cases by then checking the Interrupt Request Register (IRR) for PMI pending, and checking the ToPA table base and off-set pointers (in IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_BASE and IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS) to see if multiple entries with INT=1 have been filled.

When IA32_RTIT_CTL.InjectPsbPmiOnEnable[56] = 1, the PMI handler should take the following actions:

1. Ignore ToPA PMIs that are taken when TraceEn = 0, because the Intel PT MSR state may have already been saved by XSAVES, and because the PMI will be re-injected when Intel PT is re-enabled.
2. Clear the new IA32_RTIT_STATUS.PendTopaPMI[7] bit once the PMI has been handled. This bit should not be cleared in cases where a PMI is ignored due to TraceEn = 0.

ToPA PMI and Single Output Region ToPA Implementation

A processor that supports only a single ToPA output region implementation (such that only one output region is supported; see above) will attempt to signal a ToPA PMI interrupt before the output wraps and overwrites the top of the buffer. To support this functionality, the PMI handler should disable packet generation as soon as possible.

Due to PMI skid, it is possible that, in rare cases, the wrap will have occurred before the PMI is delivered. Software can avoid this by setting the STOP bit in the ToPA entry (see Table 35-3); this will disable tracing once the region is filled, and no wrap will occur. This approach has the downside of disabling packet generation so that some of the instructions that led up to the PMI will not be traced. If the PMI skid is significant enough to cause the region to fill and tracing to be disabled, the PMI handler will need to clear the IA32_RTIT_STATUS.Stopped indication before tracing can resume.

ToPA PMI and XSAVES/XRSTORS State Handling

In some cases the ToPA PMI may be taken after completion of an XSAVES instruction that switches Intel PT state, and in such cases any modification of Intel PT MSRs within the PMI handler will not persist when the saved Intel PT context is later restored with XRSTORS. To account for such a scenario, it is recommended that the Intel PT output configuration be modified by altering the ToPA tables themselves, rather than the Intel PT output MSRs. On processors that support PMI preservation (CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0):EBX.INJECTPSBPMI[6] = 1), setting IA32_RTIT_CTL.InjectPsbPmiOnEnable[56] = 1 will ensure that a PMI that is pending at the time PT is disabled will be recorded by setting IA32_RTIT_STATUS.PendTopaPMI[7] = 1. A PMI will then be pended when the saved PT context is later restored.

Table 35-4 depicts a recommended PMI handler algorithm for managing multi-region ToPA output and handling ToPA PMIs that may arrive between XSAVES and XRSTORS. This algorithm is flexible to allow software to choose between adding entries to the current ToPA table, adding a new ToPA table, or using the current ToPA table as a circular buffer. It assumes that the ToPA entry that triggers the PMI is not the last entry in the table, which is the recommended treatment.

Table 35-4. Algorithm to Manage Intel PT ToPA PMI and XSAVES/XRSTORS

Pseudo Code Flow
<pre> IF (IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS.ToPA) Save IA32_RTIT_CTL value; IF (IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEN) Disable Intel PT by clearing TraceEn; FI; IF (there is space available to grow the current ToPA table) Add one or more ToPA entries after the last entry in the ToPA table; Point new ToPA entry address field(s) to new output region base(s); ELSE Modify an upcoming ToPA entry in the current table to have END=1; IF (output should transition to a new ToPA table) Point the address of the "END=1" entry of the current table to the new table base; ELSE /* Continue to use the current ToPA table, make a circular. */ Point the address of the "END=1" entry to the base of the current table; Modify the ToPA entry address fields for filled output regions to point to new, unused output regions; /* Filled regions are those with index in the range of 0 to (IA32_RTIT_MASK_PTRS.MaskOrTableOffset -1). */ FI; FI; Restore saved IA32_RTIT_CTL.value; FI; </pre>

ToPA Errors

When a malformed ToPA entry is found, an **operational error** results (see Section 35.3.9). A malformed entry can be any of the following:

1. **ToPA entry reserved bit violation.**
This describes cases where a bit marked as reserved in Section 35.2.6.2 above is set to 1.
2. **ToPA alignment violation.**
This includes cases where illegal ToPA entry base address bits are set to 1:
 - a. ToPA table base address is not 4KB-aligned. The table base can be from a WRMSR to IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_BASE, or from a ToPA entry with END=1.
 - b. ToPA entry base address is not aligned to the ToPA entry size (e.g., a 2MB region with base address[20:12] not equal to 0), for ToPA entries with END=0.
 - c. ToPA entry base address sets upper physical address bits not supported by the processor.
3. **Illegal ToPA Output Offset.**
IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS.OutputOffset is greater than or equal to the size of the current ToPA output region size.
4. **ToPA rules violations.**
These are similar to ToPA entry reserved bit violations; they are cases when a ToPA entry is encountered with illegal field combinations. They include the following:
 - a. Setting the STOP or INT bit on an entry with END=1.
 - b. Setting the END bit in entry 0 of a ToPA table.
 - c. On processors that support only a single ToPA entry (see above), two additional illegal settings apply:
 - i) ToPA table entry 1 with END=0.
 - ii) ToPA table entry 1 with base address not matching the table base.

In all cases, the error will be logged by setting `IA32_RTIT_STATUS.Error`, thereby disabling tracing when the problematic ToPA entry is reached (when `proc_trace_table_offset` points to the entry containing the error). Any packet bytes that are internally buffered when the error is detected may be lost.

Note that operational errors may also be signaled due to attempts to access restricted memory. See Section 35.2.6.4 for details.

A tracing software have a range of flexibility using ToPA to manage the interaction of Intel PT with application buffers, see Section 35.5.

35.2.6.3 Trace Transport Subsystem

When `IA32_RTIT_CTL.FabricEn` is set, the `IA32_RTIT_CTL.ToPA` bit is ignored, and trace output is written to the trace transport subsystem. The endpoints of this transport are platform-specific, and details of configuration options should refer to the specific platform documentation. The `FabricEn` bit is available to be set if `CPUID(EAX=14H,ECX=0):EBX[bit 3] = 1`.

35.2.6.4 Restricted Memory Access

Packet output cannot be directed to any regions of memory that are restricted by the platform. In particular, all memory accesses on behalf of packet output are checked against the SMRR regions. If there is any overlap with these regions, trace data collection will not function properly. Exact processor behavior is implementation-dependent; Table 35-5 summarizes several scenarios.

Table 35-5. Behavior on Restricted Memory Access

Scenario	Description
ToPA output region overlaps with SMRR	Stores to the restricted memory region will be dropped, and that packet data will be lost. Any attempt to read from that restricted region will return all 1s. The processor also may signal an error (Section 35.3.9) and disable tracing when the output pointer reaches the restricted region. If packet generation remains enabled, then packet output may continue once stores are no longer directed to restricted memory (on wrap, or if the output region is larger than the restricted memory region).
ToPA table overlaps with SMRR	The processor will signal an error (Section 35.3.9) and disable tracing when the ToPA write pointer (<code>IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_BASE + proc_trace_table_offset</code>) enters the restricted region.

It should also be noted that packet output should not be routed to the 4KB APIC MMIO region, as defined by the `IA32_APIC_BASE` MSR. For details about the APIC, refer to *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3A*. No error is signaled for this case.

Modifications to Restricted Memory Regions

It is recommended that software disable packet generation before modifying the SMRRs to change the scope of the SMRR regions. This is because the processor reserves the right to cache any number of ToPA table entries internally, after checking them against restricted memory ranges. Once cached, the entries will not be checked again, meaning one could potentially route packet output to a newly restricted region. Software can ensure that any cached entries are written to memory by clearing `IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn`.

35.2.7 Enabling and Configuration MSRs

35.2.7.1 General Considerations

Trace packet generation is enabled and configured by a collection of model-specific registers (MSRs), which are detailed below. Some notes on the configuration MSR behavior:

- If Intel Processor Trace is not supported by the processor (see Section 35.3.1), RDMSR or WRMSR of the `IA32_RTIT_*` MSRs will cause `#GP`.
- A WRMSR to any of these configuration MSRs that begins and ends with `IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn` set will `#GP` fault. Packet generation must be disabled before the configuration MSRs can be changed.

Note: Software may write the same value back to IA32_RTIT_CTL without #GP, even if TraceEn=1.

- All configuration MSRs for Intel PT are duplicated per logical processor
- For each configuration MSR, any MSR write that attempts to change bits marked reserved, or utilize encodings marked reserved, will cause a #GP fault.
- All configuration MSRs for Intel PT are cleared on a cold RESET.
 - If CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0):EBX.IPFILT_WRSTPRSV[bit 2] = 1, only the TraceEn bit is cleared on warm RESET; though this may have the impact of clearing other bits in IA32_RTIT_STATUS. Other MSR values of the trace configuration MSRs are preserved on warm RESET.
- The semantics of MSR writes to trace configuration MSRs in this chapter generally apply to explicit WRMSR to these registers, using VM-exit or VM-entry MSR load list to these MSRs, XRSTORS with requested feature bit map including XSAVE map component of state_8 (corresponding to IA32_XSS[bit 8]), and the write to IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn by XSAVES (Section 35.3.5.2).

35.2.7.2 IA32_RTIT_CTL MSR

IA32_RTIT_CTL, at address 570H, is the primary enable and control MSR for trace packet generation. Bit positions are listed in Table 35-6.

Table 35-6. IA32_RTIT_CTL MSR

Position	Bit Name	At Reset	Bit Description
0	TraceEn	0	If 1, enables tracing; else tracing is disabled. When this bit transitions from 1 to 0, all buffered packets are flushed out of internal buffers. A further store, fence, or architecturally serializing instruction may be required to ensure that packet data can be observed at the trace endpoint. See Section 35.2.7.3 for details of enabling and disabling packet generation. Note that the processor will clear this bit on #SMI (Section) and warm reset. Other MSR bits of IA32_RTIT_CTL (and other trace configuration MSRs) are not impacted by these events.
1	CYCEn	0	0: Disables CYC Packet (see Section 35.4.2.14). 1: Enables CYC Packet. This bit is reserved if CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0):EBX.CPSB_CAM[bit 1] = 0.
2	OS	0	0: Packet generation is disabled when CPL = 0. 1: Packet generation may be enabled when CPL = 0.
3	User	0	0: Packet generation is disabled when CPL > 0. 1: Packet generation may be enabled when CPL > 0.
4	PwrEvtEn	0	0: Power Event Trace packets are disabled. 1: Power Event Trace packets are enabled (see Section 35.2.3, “Power Event Tracing”).
5	FUPonPTW	0	0: PTW packets are not followed by FUPs. 1: PTW packets are followed by FUPs.
6	FabricEn	0	0: Trace output is directed to the memory subsystem, mechanism depends on IA32_RTIT_CTL.ToPA. 1: Trace output is directed to the trace transport subsystem, IA32_RTIT_CTL.ToPA is ignored. This bit is reserved if CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0):ECX[bit 3] = 0.
7	CR3Filter	0	0: Disables CR3 filtering. 1: Enables CR3 filtering.

Table 35-6. IA32_RTIT_CTL MSR (Contd.)

Position	Bit Name	At Reset	Bit Description
8	ToPA	0	0: Single-range output scheme enabled if CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0):ECX.SNGLRGNOUT[bit 2] = 1 and IA32_RTIT_CTL.FabricEn=0. 1: ToPA output scheme enabled (see Section 35.2.6.2) if CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0):ECX.TOPA[bit 0] = 1, and IA32_RTIT_CTL.FabricEn=0. Note: WRMSR to IA32_RTIT_CTL that sets TraceEn but clears this bit and FabricEn would cause #GP, if CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0):ECX.SNGLRGNOUT[bit 2] = 0. WRMSR to IA32_RTIT_CTL that sets this bit causes #GP, if CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0):ECX.TOPA[bit 0] = 0.
9	MTCEn	0	0: Disables MTC Packet (see Section 35.4.2.16). 1: Enables MTC Packet. This bit is reserved if CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0):EBX.MTC[bit 3] = 0.
10	TSCEn	0	0: Disable TSC packets. 1: Enable TSC packets (see Section 35.4.2.11).
11	DisRETC	0	0: Enable RET compression. 1: Disable RET compression (see Section 35.2.1.2).
12	PTWEn	0	0: PTWRITE packet generation disabled. 1: PTWRITE packet generation enabled (see Table 35-40 “PTW Packet Definition”).
13	BranchEn	0	0: Disable COFI-based packets. 1: Enable COFI-based packets: FUP, TIP, TIP.PGE, TIP.PGD, TNT, MODE.Exec, MODE.TSX. See Section 35.2.5.4 for details on BranchEn.
17:14	MTCFreq	0	Defines MTC packet Frequency, which is based on the core crystal clock, or Always Running Timer (ART). MTC will be sent each time the selected ART bit toggles. The following Encodings are defined: 0: ART(0), 1: ART(1), 2: ART(2), 3: ART(3), 4: ART(4), 5: ART(5), 6: ART(6), 7: ART(7), 8: ART(8), 9: ART(9), 10: ART(10), 11: ART(11), 12: ART(12), 13: ART(13), 14: ART(14), 15: ART(15) Software must use CPUID to query the supported encodings in the processor, see Section 35.3.1. Use of unsupported encodings will result in a #GP fault. This field is reserved if CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0):EBX.MTC[bit 3] = 0.
18	Reserved	0	Must be 0.
22:19	CycThresh	0	CYC packet threshold, see Section 35.3.6 for details. CYC packets will be sent with the first eligible packet after N cycles have passed since the last CYC packet. If CycThresh is 0 then N=0, otherwise N is defined as $2^{(CycThresh-1)}$. The following Encodings are defined: 0: 0, 1: 1, 2: 2, 3: 4, 4: 8, 5: 16, 6: 32, 7: 64, 8: 128, 9: 256, 10: 512, 11: 1024, 12: 2048, 13: 4096, 14: 8192, 15: 16384 Software must use CPUID to query the supported encodings in the processor, see Section 35.3.1. Use of unsupported encodings will result in a #GP fault. This field is reserved if CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0):EBX.CPSB_CAM[bit 1] = 0.
23	Reserved	0	Must be 0.

Table 35-6. IA32_RTIT_CTL MSR (Contd.)

Position	Bit Name	At Reset	Bit Description
27:24	PSBFreq	0	Indicates the frequency of PSB packets. PSB packet frequency is based on the number of Intel PT packet bytes output, so this field allows the user to determine the increment of IA32_RTIT_STATUS.PacketByteCnt that should cause a PSB to be generated. Note that PSB insertion is not precise, but the average output bytes per PSB should approximate the SW selected period. The following Encodings are defined: 0: 2K, 1: 4K, 2: 8K, 3: 16K, 4: 32K, 5: 64K, 6: 128K, 7: 256K, 8: 512K, 9: 1M, 10: 2M, 11: 4M, 12: 8M, 13: 16M, 14: 32M, 15: 64M Software must use CPUID to query the supported encodings in the processor, see Section 35.3.1. Use of unsupported encodings will result in a #GP fault. This field is reserved if CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0):EBX.CPSB_CAM[bit 1] = 0.
31:28	Reserved	0	Must be 0.
35:32	ADDR0_CFG	0	Configures the base/limit register pair IA32_RTIT_ADDR0_A/B based on the following encodings: 0: ADDR0 range unused. 1: The [IA32_RTIT_ADDR0_A..IA32_RTIT_ADDR0_B] range defines a FilterEn range. FilterEn will only be set when the IP is within this range, though other FilterEn ranges can additionally be used. See Section 35.2.4.3 for details on IP filtering. 2: The [IA32_RTIT_ADDR0_A..IA32_RTIT_ADDR0_B] range defines a TraceStop range. TraceStop will be asserted if code branches into this range. See 4.2.8 for details on TraceStop. 3..15: Reserved (#GP). This field is reserved if CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=1):EBX.RANGE CNT[2:0] >= 0.
39:36	ADDR1_CFG	0	Configures the base/limit register pair IA32_RTIT_ADDR1_A/B based on the following encodings: 0: ADDR1 range unused. 1: The [IA32_RTIT_ADDR1_A..IA32_RTIT_ADDR1_B] range defines a FilterEn range. FilterEn will only be set when the IP is within this range, though other FilterEn ranges can additionally be used. See Section 35.2.4.3 for details on IP filtering. 2: The [IA32_RTIT_ADDR1_A..IA32_RTIT_ADDR1_B] range defines a TraceStop range. TraceStop will be asserted if code branches into this range. See Section 35.4.2.10 for details on TraceStop. 3..15: Reserved (#GP). This field is reserved if CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=1):EBX.RANGE CNT[2:0] < 2.
43:40	ADDR2_CFG	0	Configures the base/limit register pair IA32_RTIT_ADDR2_A/B based on the following encodings: 0: ADDR2 range unused. 1: The [IA32_RTIT_ADDR2_A..IA32_RTIT_ADDR2_B] range defines a FilterEn range. FilterEn will only be set when the IP is within this range, though other FilterEn ranges can additionally be used. See Section 35.2.4.3 for details on IP filtering. 2: The [IA32_RTIT_ADDR2_A..IA32_RTIT_ADDR2_B] range defines a TraceStop range. TraceStop will be asserted if code branches into this range. See Section 35.4.2.10 for details on TraceStop. 3..15: Reserved (#GP). This field is reserved if CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=1):EBX.RANGE CNT[2:0] < 3.

Table 35-6. IA32_RTIT_CTL MSR (Contd.)

Position	Bit Name	At Reset	Bit Description
47:44	ADDR3_CFG	0	Configures the base/limit register pair IA32_RTIT_ADDR3_A/B based on the following encodings: 0: ADDR3 range unused. 1: The [IA32_RTIT_ADDR3_A..IA32_RTIT_ADDR3_B] range defines a FilterEn range. FilterEn will only be set when the IP is within this range, though other FilterEn ranges can additionally be used. See Section 35.2.4.3 for details on IP filtering. 2: The [IA32_RTIT_ADDR3_A..IA32_RTIT_ADDR3_B] range defines a TraceStop range. TraceStop will be asserted if code branches into this range. See Section 35.4.2.10 for details on TraceStop. 3..15: Reserved (#GP). This field is reserved if CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=1):EBX.RANGECONT[2:0] < 4.
55:48	Reserved	0	Reserved only for future trace content enables, or address filtering configuration enables. Must be 0.
56	InjectPsbPmiOnEnable	0	1: Enables use of IA32_RTIT_STATUS bits PendPSB[6] and PendTopaPMI[7], see Section 35.2.7.4, "IA32_RTIT_STATUS MSR" for behavior of these bits. 0: IA32_RTIT_STATUS bits 6 and 7 are ignored. This field is reserved if CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0):EBX.INJECTPSBPMI[6] = 0.
59:57	Reserved	0	Reserved only for future trace content enables, or address filtering configuration enables. Must be 0.
63:60	Reserved	0	Must be 0.

35.2.7.3 Enabling and Disabling Packet Generation with TraceEn

When TraceEn transitions from 0 to 1, Intel Processor Trace is enabled, and a series of packets may be generated. These packets help ensure that the decoder is aware of the state of the processor when the trace begins, and that it can keep track of any timing or state changes that may have occurred while packet generation was disabled. A full PSB+ (see Section 35.4.2.17) will be generated if IA32_RTIT_STATUS.PacketByteCnt=0, and may be generated in other cases as well. Otherwise, timing packets will be generated, including TSC, TMA, and CBR (see Section 35.4.2).

In addition to the packets discussed above, if and when PacketEn (Section 35.2.5.1) transitions from 0 to 1 (which may happen immediately, depending on filtering settings), a TIP.PGE packet (Section 35.4.2.3) will be generated.

When TraceEn is set, the processor may read ToPA entries from memory and cache them internally. For this reason, software should disable packet generation before making modifications to the ToPA tables (or changing the configuration of restricted memory regions). See Section 35.7 for more details of packets that may be generated with modifications to TraceEn.

Disabling Packet Generation

Clearing TraceEn causes any packet data buffered within the logical processor to be flushed out, after which the output MSRs (IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_BASE and IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS) will have stable values. When output is directed to memory, a store, fence, or architecturally serializing instruction may be required to ensure that the packet data is globally observed. No special packets are generated by disabling packet generation, though a TIP.PGD may result if PacketEn=1 at the time of disable.

Other Writes to IA32_RTIT_CTL

Any attempt to modify IA32_RTIT_CTL while TraceEn is set will result in a general-protection fault (#GP) unless the same write also clears TraceEn. However, writes to IA32_RTIT_CTL that do not modify any bits will not cause a #GP, even if TraceEn remains set.

35.2.7.4 IA32_RTIT_STATUS MSR

The IA32_RTIT_STATUS MSR is readable and writable by software, but some bits (ContextEn, TriggerEn) are read-only and cannot be directly modified. The WRMSR instruction ignores these bits in the source operand (attempts to modify these bits are ignored and do not cause WRMSR to fault).

This MSR can only be written when IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn is 0; otherwise WRMSR causes a general-protection fault (#GP). The processor does not modify the value of this MSR while TraceEn is 0 (software can modify it with WRMSR).

Table 35-7. IA32_RTIT_STATUS MSR

Position	Bit Name	At Reset	Bit Description
0	FilterEn	0	This bit is written by the processor, and indicates that tracing is allowed for the current IP, see Section 35.2.5.5. Writes are ignored.
1	ContextEn	0	The processor sets this bit to indicate that tracing is allowed for the current context. See Section 35.2.5.3. Writes are ignored.
2	TriggerEn	0	The processor sets this bit to indicate that tracing is enabled. See Section 35.2.5.2. Writes are ignored.
3	Reserved	0	Must be 0.
4	Error	0	The processor sets this bit to indicate that an operational error has been encountered. When this bit is set, TriggerEn is cleared to 0 and packet generation is disabled. For details, see "ToPA Errors" in Section 35.2.6.2. When TraceEn is cleared, software can write this bit. Once it is set, only software can clear it. It is not recommended that software ever set this bit, except in cases where it is restoring a prior saved state.
5	Stopped	0	The processor sets this bit to indicate that a ToPA Stop condition has been encountered. When this bit is set, TriggerEn is cleared to 0 and packet generation is disabled. For details, see "ToPA STOP" in Section 35.2.6.2. When TraceEn is cleared, software can write this bit. Once it is set, only software can clear it. It is not recommended that software ever set this bit, except in cases where it is restoring a prior saved state.
6	PendPSB	0	If IA32_RTIT_CTL.InjectPsbPmiOnEnable[56] = 1, the processor sets this bit when the threshold for a PSB+ to be inserted has been reached. The processor will clear this bit when the PSB+ has been inserted into the trace. If PendPSB = 1 and InjectPsbPmiOnEnable = 1 when IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn[0] transitions from 0 to 1, a PSB+ will be inserted into the trace. This field is reserved if CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0):EBX.INJECTPSBPMI[6] = 1.
7	PendTopaPMI	0	If IA32_RTIT_CTL.InjectPsbPmiOnEnable[56] = 1, the processor sets this bit when the threshold for a ToPA PMI to be inserted has been reached. Software should clear this bit once the ToPA PMI has been handled, see "ToPA PMI" for details. If PendTopaPMI = 1 and InjectPsbPmiOnEnable = 1 when IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn[0] transitions from 0 to 1, a PMI will be pended. This field is reserved if CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0):EBX.INJECTPSBPMI[6] = 1.
31:8	Reserved	0	Must be 0.
48:32	PacketByteCnt	0	This field is written by the processor, and holds a count of packet bytes that have been sent out. The processor also uses this field to determine when the next PSB packet should be inserted. Note that the processor may clear or modify this field at any time while IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn=1. It will have a stable value when IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn=0. See Section 35.4.2.17 for details.
63:49	Reserved	0	Must be 0.

35.2.7.5 IA32_RTIT_ADDRn_A and IA32_RTIT_ADDRn_B MSRs

The role of the IA32_RTIT_ADDRn_A/B register pairs, for each n, is determined by the corresponding ADDRn_CFG fields in IA32_RTIT_CTL (see Section 35.2.7.2). The number of these register pairs is enumerated by CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=1):EAX.RANGECNT[2:0].

- Processors that enumerate support for 1 range support:
IA32_RTIT_ADDR0_A, IA32_RTIT_ADDR0_B
- Processors that enumerate support for 2 ranges support:
IA32_RTIT_ADDR0_A, IA32_RTIT_ADDR0_B
IA32_RTIT_ADDR1_A, IA32_RTIT_ADDR1_B
- Processors that enumerate support for 3 ranges support:
IA32_RTIT_ADDR0_A, IA32_RTIT_ADDR0_B
IA32_RTIT_ADDR1_A, IA32_RTIT_ADDR1_B
IA32_RTIT_ADDR2_A, IA32_RTIT_ADDR2_B
- Processors that enumerate support for 4 ranges support:
IA32_RTIT_ADDR0_A, IA32_RTIT_ADDR0_B
IA32_RTIT_ADDR1_A, IA32_RTIT_ADDR1_B
IA32_RTIT_ADDR2_A, IA32_RTIT_ADDR2_B
IA32_RTIT_ADDR3_A, IA32_RTIT_ADDR3_B

Each register has a single 64-bit field that holds a linear address value. Writes must ensure that the address is in canonical form, otherwise a #GP fault will result.

35.2.7.6 IA32_RTIT_CR3_MATCH MSR

The IA32_RTIT_CR3_MATCH register is compared against CR3 when IA32_RTIT_CTL.CR3Filter is 1. Bits 63:5 hold the CR3 address value to match, bits 4:0 are reserved to 0. For more details on CR3 filtering and the treatment of this register, see Section 35.2.4.2.

This MSR can be written only when IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn is 0; otherwise WRMSR causes a general-protection fault (#GP). IA32_RTIT_CR3_MATCH[4:0] are reserved and must be 0; an attempt to set those bits using WRMSR causes a #GP.

35.2.7.7 IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_BASE MSR

This MSR is used to configure the trace output destination, when output is directed to memory (IA32_RTIT_CTL.FabricEn = 0). The size of the address field is determined by the maximum physical address width (MAXPHYADDR), as reported by CPUID.80000008H:EAX[7:0].

When the ToPA output scheme is used, the processor may update this MSR when packet generation is enabled, and those updates are asynchronous to instruction execution. Therefore, the values in this MSR should be considered unreliable unless packet generation is disabled (IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn = 0).

Accesses to this MSR are supported only if Intel PT output to memory is supported, hence when either CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0):ECX[bit 0] or CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0):ECX[bit 2] are set. Otherwise WRMSR or RDMSR cause a general-protection fault (#GP). If supported, this MSR can be written only when IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn is 0; otherwise WRMSR causes a general-protection fault (#GP).

Table 35-8. IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_BASE MSR

Position	Bit Name	At Reset	Bit Description
6:0	Reserved	0	Must be 0.
MAXPHYADDR-1:7	BasePhysAddr	0	<p>The base physical address. How this address is used depends on the value of IA32_RTIT_CTL.ToPA:</p> <p>0: This is the base physical address of a single, contiguous physical output region. This could be mapped to DRAM or to MMIO, depending on the value.</p> <p>The base address should be aligned with the size of the region, such that none of the 1s in the mask value(Section 35.2.7.8) overlap with 1s in the base address. If the base is not aligned, an operational error will result (see Section 35.3.9).</p> <p>1: The base physical address of the current ToPA table. The address must be 4K aligned. Writing an address in which bits 11:7 are non-zero will not cause a #GP, but an operational error will be signaled once TraceEn is set. See “ToPA Errors” in Section 35.2.6.2 as well as Section 35.3.9.</p>
63:MAXPHYADDR	Reserved	0	Must be 0.

35.2.7.8 IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS MSR

This MSR holds any mask or pointer values needed to indicate where the next byte of trace output should be written. The meaning of the values held in this MSR depend on whether the ToPA output mechanism is in use. See Section 35.2.6.2 for details.

The processor updates this MSR while when packet generation is enabled, and those updates are asynchronous to instruction execution. Therefore, the values in this MSR should be considered unreliable unless packet generation is disabled (IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn = 0).

Accesses to this MSR are supported only if Intel PT output to memory is supported, hence when either CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0):ECX[bit 0] or CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0):ECX[bit 2] are set. Otherwise WRMSR or RDMSR cause a general-protection fault (#GP). If supported, this MSR can be written only when IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn is 0; otherwise WRMSR causes a general-protection fault (#GP).

Table 35-9. IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS MSR

Position	Bit Name	At Reset	Bit Description
6:0	LowerMask	7FH	Forced to 1, writes are ignored.
31:7	MaskOrTableOffset	0	<p>The use of this field depends on the value of IA32_RTIT_CTL.ToPA:</p> <p>0: This field holds bits 31:7 of the mask value for the single, contiguous physical output region. The size of this field indicates that regions can be of size 128B up to 4GB. This value (combined with the lower 7 bits, which are reserved to 1) will be ANDed with the OutputOffset field to determine the next write address. All 1s in this field should be consecutive and starting at bit 7, otherwise the region will not be contiguous, and an operational error (Section 35.3.9) will be signaled when TraceEn is set.</p> <p>1: This field holds bits 27:3 of the offset pointer into the current ToPA table. This value can be added to the IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_BASE value to produce a pointer to the current ToPA table entry, which itself is a pointer to the current output region. In this scenario, the lower 7 reserved bits are ignored. This field supports tables up to 256 MBytes in size.</p>

Table 35-9. IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS MSR (Contd.)

Position	Bit Name	At Reset	Bit Description
63:32	OutputOffset	0	<p>The use of this field depends on the value of IA32_RTIT_CTL.ToPA:</p> <p>0: This is bits 31:0 of the offset pointer into the single, contiguous physical output region. This value will be added to the IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_BASE value to form the physical address at which the next byte of packet output data will be written. This value must be less than or equal to the MaskOffsetTableOffset field, otherwise an operational error (Section 35.3.9) will be signaled when TraceEn is set.</p> <p>1: This field holds bits 31:0 of the offset pointer into the current ToPA output region. This value will be added to the output region base field, found in the current ToPA table entry, to form the physical address at which the next byte of trace output data will be written. This value must be less than the ToPA entry size, otherwise an operational error (Section 35.3.9) will be signaled when TraceEn is set.</p>

35.2.8 Interaction of Intel® Processor Trace and Other Processor Features

35.2.8.1 Intel® Transactional Synchronization Extensions (Intel® TSX)

The operation of Intel TSX is described in Chapter 14 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 1*. For tracing purpose, packet generation does not distinguish between hardware lock elision (HLE) and restricted transactional memory (RTM), but speculative execution does have impacts on the trace output. Specifically, packets are generated as instructions complete, even for instructions in a transactional region that is later aborted. For this reason, debugging software will need indication of the beginning and end of a transactional region; this will allow software to understand when instructions are part of a transactional region and whether that region has been committed.

To enable this, TSX information is included in a MODE packet leaf. The mode bits in the leaf are:

- **InTX:** Set to 1 on an TSX transaction begin, and cleared on transaction commit or abort.
- **TXAbort:** Set to 1 only when InTX transitions from 1 to 0 on an abort. Cleared otherwise.

If BranchEn=1, this MODE packet will be sent each time the transaction status changes. See Table 35-10 for details.

Table 35-10. TSX Packet Scenarios

TSX Event	Instruction	Packets
Transaction Begin	Either XBEGIN or XACQUIRE lock (the latter if executed transactionally)	MODE(TXAbort=0, InTX=1), FUP(CurrentIP)
Transaction Commit	Either XEND or XRELEASE lock, if transactional execution ends. This happens only on the outermost commit	MODE(TXAbort=0, InTX=0), FUP(CurrentIP)
Transaction Abort	XABORT or other transactional abort	MODE(TXAbort=1, InTX=0), FUP(CurrentIP), TIP(TargetIP)
Other	One of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Nested XBEGIN or XACQUIRE lock ▪ An outer XACQUIRE lock that doesn't begin a transaction (InTX not set) ▪ Non-outermost XEND or XRELEASE lock 	None. No change to TSX mode bits for these cases.

The CurrentIP listed above is the IP of the associated instruction. The TargetIP is the IP of the next instruction to be executed; for HLE, this is the XACQUIRE lock; for RTM, this is the fallback handler.

Intel PT stores are non-transactional, and thus packet writes are not rolled back on TSX abort.

35.2.8.2 TSX and IP Filtering

A complication with tracking transactions is handling transactions that start or end outside of the tracing region. Transactions can't span across a change in ContextEn, because CPL changes and CR3 changes each cause aborts. But a transaction can start within the IP filter region and end outside it.

To assist the decoder handling this situation, MODE.TSX packets can be sent even if FilterEn=0, though there will be no FUP attached. Instead, they will merely serve to indicate to the decoder when transactions are active and when they are not. When tracing resumes (due to PacketEn=1), the last MODE.TSX preceding the TIP.PGE will indicate the current transaction status.

35.2.8.3 System Management Mode (SMM)

SMM code has special privileges that non-SMM code does not have. Intel Processor Trace can be used to trace SMM code, but special care is taken to ensure that SMM handler context is not exposed in any non-SMM trace collection. Additionally, packet output from tracing non-SMM code cannot be written into memory space that is either protected by SMRR or used by the SMM handler.

SMM is entered via a system management interrupt (SMI). SMI delivery saves the value of IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn into SMRAM and then clears it, thereby disabling packet generation.

The saving and clearing of IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn ensures two things:

1. All internally buffered packet data is flushed before entering SMM (see Section 35.2.7.2).
2. Packet generation ceases before entering SMM, so any tracing that was configured outside SMM does not continue into SMM. No SMM instruction pointers or other state will be exposed in the non-SMM trace.

When the RSM instruction is executed to return from SMM, the TraceEn value that was saved by SMI delivery is restored, allowing tracing to be resumed. As is done any time packet generation is enabled, ContextEn is re-evaluated, based on the values of CPL, CR3, etc., established by RSM.

Like other interrupts, delivery of an SMI produces a FUP containing the IP of the next instruction to execute. By toggling TraceEn, SMI and RSM can produce TIP.PGD and TIP.PGE packets, respectively, indicating that tracing was disabled or re-enabled. See Table 35.7 for more information about packets entering and leaving SMM.

Although #SMI and RSM change CR3, PIP packets are not generated in these cases. With #SMI tracing is disabled before the CR3 change; with RSM TraceEn is restored after CR3 is written.

TraceEn must be cleared before executing RSM, otherwise it will cause a shutdown. Further, on processors that restrict use of Intel PT with LBRs (see Section 35.3.1.2), any RSM that results in enabling of both will cause a shutdown.

Intel PT can support tracing of System Transfer Monitor operating in SMM, see Section 35.6.

35.2.8.4 Virtual-Machine Extensions (VMX)

Initial implementations of Intel Processor Trace do not support tracing in VMX operation. Such processors indicate this by returning 0 for IA32_VMX_MISC[bit 14]. On these processors, execution of the VMXON instruction clears IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn and any attempt to write IA32_RTIT_CTL in VMX operation causes a general-protection exception (#GP).

Processors that support Intel Processor Trace in VMX operation return 1 for IA32_VMX_MISC[bit 14]. Details of tracing in VMX operation are described in Section 35.5.

35.2.8.5 Intel® Software Guard Extensions (Intel® SGX)

Intel SGX provides an application with the ability to instantiate a protective container (an enclave) with confidentiality and integrity (see the *Intel® Software Guard Extensions Programming Reference*). On a processor with both Intel PT and Intel SGX enabled, when executing code within a production enclave, no control flow packets are produced by Intel PT. An enclave entry will clear ContextEn, thereby blocking control flow packet generation. A TIP.PGD packet will be generated if PacketEn=1 at the time of the entry.

Upon enclave exit, ContextEn will no longer be forced to 0. If other enables are set at the time, a TIP.PGE may be generated to indicate that tracing is resumed.

During the enclave execution, Intel PT remains enabled, and periodic or timing packets such as PSB, TSC, MTC, or CBR can still be generated. No IPs or other architectural state will be exposed.

For packet generation examples on enclave entry or exit, see Section 35.7.

Debug Enclaves

Intel SGX allows an enclave to be configured with relaxed protection of confidentiality for debug purposes, see the *Intel® Software Guard Extensions Programming Reference*. In a debug enclave, Intel PT continues to function normally. Specifically, ContextEn is not impacted by an enclave entry or exit. Hence, the generation of ContextEn-dependent packets within a debug enclave is allowed.

35.2.8.6 SENTER/ENTERACCS and ACM

GETSEC[SENDER] and GETSEC[ENTERACCS] instructions clear TraceEn, and it is not restored when those instruction complete. SENTER also causes TraceEn to be cleared on other logical processors when they rendezvous and enter the SENTER sleep state. In these two cases, the disabling of packet generation is not guaranteed to flush internally buffered packets. Some packets may be dropped.

When executing an authenticated code module (ACM), packet generation is silently disabled during ACRAM setup. TraceEn will be cleared, but no TIP.PGD packet is generated. After completion of the module, the TraceEn value will be restored. There will be no TIP.PGE packet, but timing packets, like TSC and CBR, may be produced.

35.2.8.7 Intel® Memory Protection Extensions (Intel® MPX)

Bounds exceptions (#BR) caused by Intel MPX are treated like other exceptions, producing FUP and TIP packets that indicate the source and destination IPs.

35.3 CONFIGURATION AND PROGRAMMING GUIDELINE

35.3.1 Detection of Intel Processor Trace and Capability Enumeration

Processor support for Intel Processor Trace is indicated by CPUID.(EAX=07H,ECX=0H):EBX[bit 25] = 1. CPUID function 14H is dedicated to enumerate the resource and capability of processors that report CPUID.(EAX=07H,ECX=0H):EBX[bit 25] = 1. Different processor generations may have architecturally-defined variation in capabilities. Table 35-11 describes details of the enumerable capabilities that software must use across generations of processors that support Intel Processor Trace.

Table 35-11. CPUID Leaf 14H Enumeration of Intel Processor Trace Capabilities

CPUID.(EAX=14H,ECX=0)		Name	Description Behavior
Register	Bits		
EAX	31:0	Maximum valid sub-leaf Index	Specifies the index of the maximum valid sub-leaf for this CPUID leaf
EBX	0	CR3 Filtering Support	1: Indicates that IA32_RTIT_CTL.CR3Filter can be set to 1, and that IA32_RTIT_CR3_MATCH MSR can be accessed. See Section 35.2.7. 0: Indicates that writes that set IA32_RTIT_CTL.CR3Filter to 1, or any access to IA32_RTIT_CR3_MATCH, will #GP fault.
	1	Configurable PSB and Cycle-Accurate Mode Supported	1: (a) IA32_RTIT_CTL.PSBFreq can be set to a non-zero value, in order to select the preferred PSB frequency (see below for allowed values). (b) IA32_RTIT_STATUS.PacketByteCnt can be set to a non-zero value, and will be incremented by the processor when tracing to indicate progress towards the next PSB. If trace packet generation is enabled by setting TraceEn, a PSB will only be generated if PacketByteCnt=0. (c) IA32_RTIT_CTL.CYCEn can be set to 1 to enable Cycle-Accurate Mode. See Section 35.2.7. 0: (a) Any attempt to set IA32_RTIT_CTL.PSBFreq, to set IA32_RTIT_CTL.CYCEn, or write a non-zero value to IA32_RTIT_STATUS.PacketByteCnt any access to IA32_RTIT_CR3_MATCH, will #GP fault. (b) If trace packet generation is enabled by setting TraceEn, a PSB is always generated. (c) Any attempt to set IA32_RTIT_CTL.CYCEn will #GP fault.
	2	IP Filtering and TraceStop supported, and Preserve Intel PT MSRs across warm reset	1: (a) IA32_RTIT_CTL provides at one or more ADDRn_CFG field to configure the corresponding address range MSRs for IP Filtering or IP TraceStop. Each ADDRn_CFG field accepts a value in the range of 0:2 inclusive. The number of ADDRn_CFG fields is reported by CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=1):EAX.RANGECNT[2:0]. (b) At least one register pair IA32_RTIT_ADDRn_A and IA32_RTIT_ADDRn_B are provided to configure address ranges for IP filtering or IP TraceStop. (c) On warm reset, all Intel PT MSRs will retain their pre-reset values, though IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn will be cleared. The Intel PT MSRs are listed in Section 35.2.7. 0: (a) An Attempt to write IA32_RTIT_CTL.ADDRn_CFG with non-zero encoding values will cause #GP. (b) Any access to IA32_RTIT_ADDRn_A and IA32_RTIT_ADDRn_B, will #GP fault. (c) On warm reset, all Intel PT MSRs will be cleared.
	3	MTC Supported	1: IA32_RTIT_CTL.MTCEn can be set to 1, and MTC packets will be generated. See Section 35.2.7. 0: An attempt to set IA32_RTIT_CTL.MTCEn or IA32_RTIT_CTL.MTCFreq to a non-zero value will #GP fault.
	4	PTWRITE Supported	1: Writes can set IA32_RTIT_CTL[12] (PTWEn) and IA32_RTIT_CTL[5] (FUPonPTW), and PTWRITE can generate packets. 0: Writes that set IA32_RTIT_CTL[12] or IA32_RTIT_CTL[5] will #GP, and PTWRITE will #UD fault.
	5	Power Event Trace Supported	1: Writes can set IA32_RTIT_CTL[4] (PwrEvtEn), enabling Power Event Trace packet generation. 0: Writes that set IA32_RTIT_CTL[4] will #GP.
		31:6	Reserved

Table 35-11. CPUID Leaf 14H Enumeration of Intel Processor Trace Capabilities (Contd.)

CPUID.(EAX=14H,ECX=0)		Name	Description Behavior
Register	Bits		
ECX	0	ToPA Output Supported	1: Tracing can be enabled with IA32_RTIT_CTL.ToPA = 1, hence utilizing the ToPA output scheme (Section 35.2.6.2) IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_BASE and IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS MSRs can be accessed. 0: Unless CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0);ECX.SNGLRNGOUT[bit 2] = 1. writes to IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_BASE or IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS. MSRs will #GP fault.
	1	ToPA Tables Allow Multiple Output Entries	1: ToPA tables can hold any number of output entries, up to the maximum allowed by the MaskOffsetTableOffset field of IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS. 0: ToPA tables can hold only one output entry, which must be followed by an END=1 entry which points back to the base of the table. Further, ToPA PMIs will be delivered before the region is filled. See ToPA PMI in Section 35.2.6.2. If there is more than one output entry before the END entry, or if the END entry has the wrong base address, an operational error will be signaled (see “ToPA Errors” in Section 35.2.6.2).
	2	Single-Range Output Supported	1: Enabling tracing (TraceEn=1) with IA32_RTIT_CTL.ToPA=0 is supported. 0: Unless CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0);ECX.TOPAOUT[bit 0] = 1. writes to IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_BASE or IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS. MSRs will #GP fault.
	3	Output to Trace Transport Subsystem Supported	1: Setting IA32_RTIT_CTL.FabricEn to 1 is supported. 0: IA32_RTIT_CTL.FabricEn is reserved. Write 1 to IA32_RTIT_CTL.FabricEn will #GP fault.
	30:4	Reserved	
	31	IP Payloads are LIP	1: Generated packets which contain IP payloads have LIP values, which include the CS base component. 0: Generated packets which contain IP payloads have RIP values, which are the offset from CS base.
EDX	31:0	Reserved	

If CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0):EAX reports a non-zero value, additional capabilities of Intel Processor Trace are described in the sub-leaves of CPUID leaf 14H.

Table 35-12. CPUID Leaf 14H, sub-leaf 1H Enumeration of Intel Processor Trace Capabilities

CPUID.(EAX=14H,ECX=1)		Name	Description Behavior
Register	Bits		
EAX	2:0	Number of Address Ranges	A non-zero value specifies the number ADDRn_CFG field supported in IA32_RTIT_CTL and the number of register pair IA32_RTIT_ADDRn_A/IA32_RTIT_ADDRn_B supported for IP filtering and IP TraceStop. NOTE: Currently, no processors support more than 4 address ranges.
	15:3	Reserved	
	31:16	Bitmap of supported MTC Period Encodings	The non-zero bit positions indicate the map of supported encoding values for the IA32_RTIT_CTL.MTCFreq field. This applies only if CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0);EBX.MTC[bit 3] = 1 (MTC Packet generation is supported), otherwise the MTCFreq field is reserved to 0. Each bit position in this field represents 1 encoding value in the 4-bit MTCFreq field (ie, bit 0 is associated with encoding value 0). For each bit: 1: MTCFreq can be assigned the associated encoding value. 0: MTCFreq cannot be assigned to the associated encoding value. A write to IA32_RTIT_CTL.MTCFreq with unsupported encoding will cause #GP fault.
EBX	15:0	Bitmap of supported Cycle Threshold values	The non-zero bit positions indicate the map of supported encoding for the IA32_RTIT_CTL.CycThresh field. This applies only if CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0);EBX.CPSB_CAM[bit 1] = 1 (Cycle-Accurate Mode is Supported), otherwise the CycThresh field is reserved to 0. See Section 35.2.7. Each bit position in this field represents 1 encoding value in the 4-bit CycThresh field (ie, bit 0 is associated with encoding value 0). For each bit: 1: CycThresh can be assigned the associated encoding value. 0: CycThresh cannot be assigned to the associated encoding value. A write to CycThresh with unsupported encoding will cause #GP fault.
	31:16	Bitmap of supported Configurable PSB Frequency encoding	The non-zero bit positions indicate the map of supported encoding for the IA32_RTIT_CTL.PSBFreq field. This applies only if CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0);EBX.CPSB_CAM[bit 1] = 1 (Configurable PSB is supported), otherwise the PSBFreq field is reserved to 0. See Section 35.2.7. Each bit position in this field represents 1 encoding value in the 4-bit PSBFreq field (ie, bit 0 is associated with encoding value 0). For each bit: 1: PSBFreq can be assigned the associated encoding value. 0: PSBFreq cannot be assigned to the associated encoding value. A write to PSBFreq with unsupported encoding will cause #GP fault.
ECX	31:0	Reserved	
EDX	31:0	Reserved	

35.3.1.1 Packet Decoding of RIP versus LIP

FUP, TIP, TIP.PGE, and TIP.PGE packets can contain an instruction pointer (IP) payload. On some processor generations, this payload will be an effective address (RIP), while on others this will be a linear address (LIP). In the former case, the payload is the offset from the current CS base address, while in the latter it is the sum of the offset and the CS base address (Note that in real mode, the CS base address is the value of CS<<4, while in protected mode the CS base address is the base linear address of the segment indicated by the CS register.). Which IP type is in use is indicated by enumeration (see CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0):ECX.LIP[bit 31] in Table 35-11).

For software that executes while the CS base address is 0 (including all software executing in 64-bit mode), the difference is indistinguishable. A trace decoder must account for cases where the CS base address is not 0 and the resolved LIP will not be evident in a trace generated on a CPU that enumerates use of RIP. This is likely to cause problems when attempting to link the trace with the associated binaries.

Note that IP comparison logic, for IP filtering and TraceStop range calculation, is based on the same IP type as these IP packets. For processors that output RIP, the IP comparison mechanism is also based on RIP, and hence on those processors RIP values should be written to IA32_RTIT_ADDRn_[AB] MSRs. This can produce differing behavior if the same trace configuration setting is run on processors reporting different IP types, i.e. CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0):ECX.LIP[bit 31]. Care should be taken to check CPUID when configuring IP filters.

35.3.1.2 Model Specific Capability Restrictions

Some processor generations impose restrictions that prevent use of LBRs/BTS/BTM/LEAs when software has enabled tracing with Intel Processor Trace. On these processors, when TraceEn is set, updates of LBR, BTS, BTM, LEAs are suspended but the states of the corresponding IA32_DEBUGCTL control fields remained unchanged as if it were still enabled. When TraceEn is cleared, the LBR array is reset, and LBR/BTS/BTM/LEAs updates will resume. Further, reads of these registers will return 0, and writes will be dropped.

The list of MSRs whose updates/accesses are restricted follows.

- MSR_LASTBRANCH_x_TO_IP, MSR_LASTBRANCH_x_FROM_IP, MSR_LBR_INFO_x, MSR_LASTBRANCH_TOS
- MSR_LER_FROM_LIP, MSR_LER_TO_LIP
- MSR_LBR_SELECT

For processor with CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel signature of 06_3DH, 06_47H, 06_4EH, 06_4FH, 06_56H and 06_5EH, the use of Intel PT and LBRs are mutually exclusive.

35.3.2 Enabling and Configuration of Trace Packet Generation

To configure trace packets, enable packet generation, and capture packets, software starts with using CPUID instruction to detect its feature flag, CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0H):EBX[bit 25] = 1; followed by enumerating the capabilities described in Section 35.3.1.

Based on the capability queried from Section 35.3.1, software must configure a number of model-specific registers. This section describes programming considerations related to those MSRs.

35.3.2.1 Enabling Packet Generation

When configuring and enabling packet generation, the IA32_RTIT_CTL MSR should be written after any other Intel PT MSRs have been written, since writes to the other configuration MSRs cause a general-protection fault (#GP) if TraceEn = 1. If a prior trace collection context is not being restored, then software should first clear IA32_RTIT_STATUS. This is important since the Stopped, and Error fields are writable; clearing the MSR clears any values that may have persisted from prior trace packet collection contexts. See Section 35.2.7.2 for details of packets generated by setting TraceEn to 1.

If setting TraceEn to 1 causes an operational error (see Section 35.3.9), there may be a delay after the WRMSR completes before the error is signaled in the IA32_RTIT_STATUS MSR.

While packet generation is enabled, the values of some configuration MSRs (e.g., IA32_RTIT_STATUS and IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_*) are transient, and reads may return values that are out of date. Only after packet generation is disabled (by clearing TraceEn) do reads of these MSRs return reliable values.

35.3.2.2 Disabling Packet Generation

After disabling packet generation by clearing IA32_RTIT_CTL, it is advisable to read the IA32_RTIT_STATUS MSR (Section 35.2.7.4):

- If the Error bit is set, an operational error was encountered, and the trace is most likely compromised. Software should check the source of the error (by examining the output MSR values), correct the source of the problem, and then attempt to gather the trace again. For details on operational errors, see Section 35.3.9. Software should clear IA32_RTIT_STATUS.Error before re-enabling packet generation.
- If the Stopped bit is set, software execution encountered an IP TraceStop (see Section 35.2.4.3) or the ToPA Stop condition (see “ToPA STOP” in Section 35.2.6.2) before packet generation was disabled.

35.3.3 Flushing Trace Output

Packets are first buffered internally and then written out asynchronously. To collect packet output for post-processing, a collector needs first to ensure that all packet data has been flushed from internal buffers. Software can ensure this by stopping packet generation by clearing IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn (see “Disabling Packet Generation” in Section 35.2.7.2).

When software clears IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn to flush out internally buffered packets, the logical processor issues an SFENCE operation which ensures that WC trace output stores will be ordered with respect to the next store, or serializing operation. A subsequent read from the same logical processor will see the flushed trace data, while a read from another logical processor should be preceded by a store, fence, or architecturally serializing operation on the tracing logical processor.

When the flush operations complete, the IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_* MSR values indicate where the trace ended. While TraceEn is set, these MSRs may hold stale values. Further, if a ToPA region with INT=1 is filled, meaning a ToPA PMI has been triggered, IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS.Trace_ToPA_PMI[55] will be set by the time the flush completes.

35.3.4 Warm Reset

The MSRs software uses to program Intel Processor Trace are cleared after a power-on RESET (or cold RESET). On a warm RESET, the contents of those MSRs can retain their values from before the warm RESET with the exception that IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn will be cleared (which may have the side effect of clearing some bits in IA32_RTIT_STATUS).

35.3.5 Context Switch Consideration

To facilitate construction of instruction execution traces at the granularity of a software process or thread context, software can save and restore the states of the trace configuration MSRs across the process or thread context switch boundary. The principle is the same as saving and restoring the typical architectural processor states across context switches.

35.3.5.1 Manual Trace Configuration Context Switch

The configuration can be saved and restored through a sequence of instructions of RDMSR, management of MSR content and WRMSR. To stop tracing and to ensure that all configuration MSRs contain stable values, software must clear IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn before reading any other trace configuration MSRs. The recommended method for saving trace configuration context manually follows:

1. RDMSR IA32_RTIT_CTL, save value to memory
2. WRMSR IA32_RTIT_CTL with saved value from RDMSR above and TraceEn cleared
3. RDMSR all other configuration MSRs whose values had changed from previous saved value, save changed values to memory

When restoring the trace configuration context, IA32_RTIT_CTL should be restored last:

1. Read saved configuration MSR values, aside from IA32_RTIT_CTL, from memory, and restore them with WRMSR
2. Read saved IA32_RTIT_CTL value from memory, and restore with WRMSR.

35.3.5.2 Trace Configuration Context Switch Using XSAVES/XRSTORS

On processors whose XSAVE feature set supports XSAVES and XRSTORS, the Trace configuration state can be saved using XSAVES and restored by XRSTORS, in conjunction with the bit field associated with supervisory state component in IA32_XSS. See Chapter 13, “Managing State Using the XSAVE Feature Set” of *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 1*.

The layout of the trace configuration component state in the XSAVE area is shown in Table 35-13.¹

Table 35-13. Memory Layout of the Trace Configuration State Component

Offset within Component Area	Field	Offset within Component Area	Field
0H	IA32_RTIT_CTL	08H	IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_BASE
10H	IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS	18H	IA32_RTIT_STATUS
20H	IA32_RTIT_CR3_MATCH	28H	IA32_RTIT_ADDR0_A
30H	IA32_RTIT_ADDR0_B	38H	IA32_RTIT_ADDR1_A
40H	IA32_RTIT_ADDR1_B	48H-End	Reserved

The IA32_XSS MSR is zero coming out of RESET. Once IA32_XSS[bit 8] is set, system software operating at CPL=0 can use XSAVES/XRSTORS with the appropriate requested-feature bitmap (RFBM) to manage supervisor state components in the XSAVE map. See Chapter 13, “Managing State Using the XSAVE Feature Set” of *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 1*.

35.3.6 Cycle-Accurate Mode

Intel PT can be run in a cycle-accurate mode which enables CYC packets (see Section 35.4.2.14) that provide low-level information in the processor core clock domain. This cycle counter data in CYC packets can be used to compute IPC (Instructions Per Cycle), or to track wall-clock time on a fine-grain level.

To enable cycle-accurate mode packet generation, software should set IA32_RTIT_CTL.CYCEn=1. It is recommended that software also set TSCEn=1 anytime cycle-accurate mode is in use. With this, all CYC-eligible packets will be preceded by a CYC packet, the payload of which indicates the number of core clock cycles since the last CYC packet. In cases where multiple CYC-eligible packets are generated in a single cycle, only a single CYC will be generated before the CYC-eligible packets, otherwise each CYC-eligible packet will be preceded by its own CYC. The CYC-eligible packets are:

- TNT, TIP, TIP.PGE, TIP.PGD, MODE.EXEC, MODE.TSX, PIP, VMCS, OVF, MTC, TSC, PTWRITE, EXSTOP

TSC packets are generated when there is insufficient information to reconstruct wall-clock time, due to tracing being disabled (TriggerEn=0), or power down scenarios like a transition to a deep-sleep MWAIT C-state. In this case, the CYC that is generated along with the TSC will indicate the number of cycles actively tracing (those powered up, with TriggerEn=1) executed between the last CYC packet and the TSC packet. And hence the amount of time spent while tracing is inactive can be inferred from the difference in time between that expected based on the CYC value, and the actual time indicated by the TSC.

Additional CYC packets may be sent stand-alone, so that the processor can ensure that the decoder is aware of the number of cycles that have passed before the internal hardware counter wraps, or is reset due to other micro-architectural condition. There is no guarantee at what intervals these standalone CYC packets will be sent, except that they will be sent before the wrap occurs. An illustration is given below.

1. Table 35-13 documents support for the MSRs defining address ranges 0 and 1. Processors that provide XSAVE support for Intel Processor Trace support only those address ranges.

Example 35-1. An Illustrative CYC Packet Example

Time (cycles)	Instruction Snapshot	Generated Packets	Comment
x	call %eax	CYC(?), TIP	?Elapsed cycles from the previous CYC unknown
x + 2	call %ebx	CYC(2), TIP	1 byte CYC packet; 2 cycles elapsed from the previous CYC
x + 8	jnz Foo (not taken)	CYC(6)	1 byte CYC packet
x + 9	ret (compressed)		
x + 12	jnz Bar (taken)		
x + 16	ret (uncompressed)	TNT, CYC(8), TIP	1 byte CYC packet
x + 4111		CYC(4095)	2 byte CYC packet
x + 12305		CYC(8194)	3 byte CYC packet
x + 16332	mov cr3, %ebx	CYC(4027), PIP	2 byte CYC packet

35.3.6.1 Cycle Counter

The cycle counter is implemented in hardware (independent of the time stamp counter or performance monitoring counters), and is a simple incrementing counter that does not saturate, but rather wraps. The size of the counter is implementation specific.

The cycle counter is reset to zero any time that TriggerEn is cleared, and when a CYC packet is sent. The cycle counter will continue to count when ContextEn or FilterEn are cleared, and cycle packets will still be generated. It will not count during sleep states that result in Intel PT logic being powered-down, but will count up to the point where clocks are disabled, and resume counting once they are re-enabled.

35.3.6.2 Cycle Packet Semantics

Cycle-accurate mode adheres to the following protocol:

- All packets that precede a CYC packet represent instructions or events that took place before the CYC time.
- All packets that follow a CYC packet represent instructions or events that took place at the same time as, or after, the CYC time.
- The CYC-eligible packet that immediately follows a CYC packet represents an instruction or event that took place at the same time as the CYC time.

These items above give the decoder a means to apply CYC packets to a specific instruction in the assembly stream. Most packets represent a single instruction or event, and hence the CYC packet that precedes each of those packets represents the retirement time of that instruction or event. In the case of TNT packets, up to 6 conditional branches and/or compressed RETs may be contained in the packet. In this case, the preceding CYC packet provides the retirement time of the first branch in the packet. It is possible that multiple branches retired in the same cycle as that first branch in the TNT, but the protocol will not make that obvious. Also note that a MTC packet could be generated in the same cycle as the first JCC in the TNT packet. In this case, the CYC would precede both the MTC and the TNT, and apply to both.

Note that there are times when the cycle counter will stop counting, though cycle-accurate mode is enabled. After any such scenario, a CYC packet followed by TSC packet will be sent. See Section 35.8.3.2 to understand how to interpret the payload values

Multi-packet Instructions or Events

Some operations, such as interrupts or task switches, generate multiple packets. In these cases, multiple CYC packets may be sent for the operation, preceding each CYC-eligible packet in the operation. An example, using a task switch on a software interrupt, is shown below.

Example 35-2. An Example of CYC in the Presence of Multi-Packet Operations

Time (cycles)	Instruction Snapshot	Generated Packets
x	jnz Foo (not taken)	CYC(?),
x + 2	ret (compressed)	
x + 8	jnz Bar (taken)	
x + 9	jmp %eax	TNT, CYC(9), TIP
x + 12	jnz Bar (not taken)	CYC(3)
x + 32	int3 (task gate)	TNT, FUP, CYC(10), PIP, CYC(20), MODE.Exec, TIP

35.3.6.3 Cycle Thresholds

Software can opt to reduce the frequency of cycle packets, a trade-off to save bandwidth and intrusion at the expense of precision. This is done by utilizing a cycle threshold (see Section 35.2.7.2).

IA32_RTIT_CTL.CycThresh indicates to the processor the minimum number of cycles that must pass before the next CYC packet should be sent. If this value is 0, no threshold is used, and CYC packets can be sent every cycle in which a CYC-eligible packet is generated. If this value is greater than 0, the hardware will wait until the associated number of cycles have passed since the last CYC packet before sending another. CPUID provides the threshold options for CycThresh, see Section 35.3.1.

Note that the cycle threshold does not dictate how frequently a CYC packet will be posted, it merely assigns the maximum frequency. If the cycle threshold is 16, a CYC packet can be posted no more frequently than every 16 cycles. However, once that threshold of 16 cycles has passed, it still requires a new CYC-eligible packet to be generated before a CYC will be inserted. Table 35-14 illustrates the threshold behavior.

Table 35-14. An Illustrative CYC Packet Example

Time (cycles)	Instruction Snapshot	Threshold			
		0	16	32	64
x	jmp %eax	CYC, TIP	CYC, TIP	CYC, TIP	CYC, TIP
x + 9	call %ebx	CYC, TIP	TIP	TIP	TIP
x + 15	call %ecx	CYC, TIP	TIP	TIP	TIP
x + 30	jmp %edx	CYC, TIP	CYC, TIP	TIP	TIP
x + 38	mov cr3, %eax	CYC, PIP	PIP	CYC, PIP	PIP
x + 46	jmp [%eax]	CYC, TIP	CYC, TIP	TIP	TIP
x + 64	call %edx	CYC, TIP	CYC, TIP	TIP	CYC, TIP
x + 71	jmp %edx	CYC, TIP	TIP	CYC, TIP	TIP

35.3.7 Decoder Synchronization (PSB+)

The PSB packet (Section 35.4.2.17) serves as a synchronization point for a trace-packet decoder. It is a pattern in the trace log for which the decoder can quickly scan to align packet boundaries. No legal packet combination can result in such a byte sequence. As such, it serves as the starting point for packet decode. To decode a trace log properly, the decoder needs more than simply to be aligned: it needs to know some state and potentially some timing information as well. The decoder should never need to retain any information (e.g., LastIP, call stack, compound packet event) across a PSB; all compound packet events will be completed before a PSB, and any compression state will be reset.

When a PSB packet is generated, it is followed by a PSBEND packet (Section 35.4.2.18). One or more packets may be generated in between those two packets, and these inform the decoder of the current state of the processor. These packets, known collectively as PSB+, should be interpreted as “status only”, since they do not imply any change of state at the time of the PSB, nor are they associated directly with any instruction or event. Thus, the

normal binding and ordering rules that apply to these packets outside of PSB+ can be ignored when these packets are between a PSB and PSBEND. They inform the decoder of the state of the processor at the time of the PSB.

PSB+ can include:

- Timestamp (TSC), if IA32_RTIT_CTL.TSCEn=1.
- Timestamp-MTC Align (TMA), if IA32_RTIT_CTL.TSCEn=1 && IA32_RTIT_CTL.MTCEn=1.
- Paging Information Packet (PIP), if ContextEn=1 and IA32_RTIT_CTL.OS=1. The non-root bit (NR) is set if the logical processor is in VMX non-root operation and the “conceal VMX from PT” VM-execution control is 0.
- VMCS packet, if either the logical is in VMX root operation or the logical processor is in VMX non-root operation and the “conceal VMX from PT” VM-execution control is 0.
- Core Bus Ratio (CBR).
- MODE.TSX, if ContextEn=1 and BranchEn = 1.
- MODE.Exec, if PacketEn=1.
- Flow Update Packet (FUP), if PacketEn=1.

PSB is generated only when TriggerEn=1; hence PSB+ has the same dependencies. The ordering of packets within PSB+ is not fixed. Timing packets such as CYC and MTC may be generated between PSB and PSBEND, and their meanings are the same as outside PSB+.

A PSB+ can be lost in some scenarios. If IA32_RTIT_STATUS.TriggerEn is cleared just as the PSB threshold is reached, the PSB+ may not be generated. TriggerEn can be cleared by a WRMSR that clears IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn, a VM-exit that clears IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn, an #SMI, or any time that either IA32_RTIT_STATUS.Stopped is set (e.g., by a TraceStop or ToPA stop condition) or IA32_RTIT_STATUS.Error is set (e.g., by an Intel PT output error).

Note that an overflow can occur during PSB+, and this could cause the PSBEND packet to be lost. For this reason, the OVF packet should also be viewed as terminating PSB+. If IA32_RTIT_STATUS.TriggerEn is cleared just as the PSB threshold is reached, the PSB+ may not be generated. TriggerEn can be cleared by a WRMSR that clears IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn, a VM-exit that clears IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn, an #SMI, or any time that either IA32_RTIT_STATUS.Stopped is set (e.g., by a TraceStop or ToPA stop condition) or IA32_RTIT_STATUS.Error is set (e.g., by an Intel PT output error). On processors that support PSB preservation (CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0):EBX.INJECTPSBPMI[6] = 1), setting IA32_RTIT_CTL.InjectPsbPmiOnEnable[56] = 1 will ensure that a PSB+ that is pending at the time PT is disabled will be recorded by setting IA32_RTIT_STATUS.PendPSB[6] = 1. A PSB will then be pended when the saved PT context is later restored.

35.3.8 Internal Buffer Overflow

In the rare circumstances when new packets need to be generated but the processor’s dedicated internal buffers are all full, an “internal buffer overflow” occurs. On such an overflow packet generation ceases (as packets would need to enter the processor’s internal buffer) until the overflow resolves. Once resolved, packet generation resumes.

When the buffer overflow is cleared, an OVF packet (Section 35.4.2.16) is generated, and the processor ensures that packets which follow the OVF are not compressed (IP compression or RET compression) against packets that were lost.

If IA32_RTIT_CTL.BranchEn = 1, the OVF packet will be followed by a FUP if the overflow resolves while PacketEn=1. If the overflow resolves while PacketEn = 0 no packet is generated, but a TIP.PGE will naturally be generated later, once PacketEn = 1. The payload of the FUP or TIP.PGE will be the Current IP of the first instruction upon which tracing resumes after the overflow is cleared. If the overflow resolves while PacketEn=1, only timing packets may come between the OVF and the FUP. If the overflow resolves while PacketEn=0, any other packets that are not dependent on PacketEn may come between the OVF and the TIP.PGE.

35.3.8.1 Overflow Impact on Enables

The address comparisons to ADDRn ranges, for IP filtering and TraceStop (Section 35.2.4.3), continue during a buffer overflow, and TriggerEn, ContextEn, and FilterEn may change during a buffer overflow. Like other packets, however, any TIP.PGE or TIP.PGD packets that would have been generated will be lost. Further, IA32_RTIT_STATUS.PacketByteCnt will not increment, since it is only incremented when packets are generated.

If a TraceStop event occurs during the buffer overflow, IA32_RTIT_STATUS.Stopped will still be set, tracing will cease as a result. However, the TraceStop packet, and any TIP.PGD that result from the TraceStop, may be dropped.

35.3.8.2 Overflow Impact on Timing Packets

Any timing packets that are generated during a buffer overflow will be dropped. If only a few MTC packets are dropped, a decoder should be able to detect this by noticing that the time value in the first MTC packet after the buffer overflow incremented by more than one. If the buffer overflow lasted long enough that 256 MTC packets are lost (and thus the MTC packet 'wraps' its 8-bit CTC value), then the decoder may be unable to properly understand the trace. This is not an expected scenario. No CYC packets are generated during overflow, even if the cycle counter wraps.

Note that, if cycle-accurate mode is enabled, the OVF packet will generate a CYC packet. Because the cycle counter counts during overflows, this CYC packet can provide the duration of the overflow. However, there is a risk that the cycle counter wrapped during the overflow, which could render this CYC misleading.

35.3.9 Operational Errors

Errors are detected as a result of packet output configuration problems, which can include output alignment issues, ToPA reserved bit violations, or overlapping packet output with restricted memory. See "ToPA Errors" in Section 35.2.6.2 for details on ToPA errors, and Section 35.2.6.4 for details on restricted memory errors. Operational errors are only detected and signaled when TraceEn=1.

When an operational error is detected, tracing is disabled and the error is logged. Specifically, IA32_RTIT_STATUS.Error is set, which will cause IA32_RTIT_STATUS.TriggerEn to be 0. This will disable generation of all packets. Some causes of operational errors may lead to packet bytes being dropped.

It should be noted that the timing of error detection may not be predictable. Errors are signaled when the processor encounters the problematic configuration. This could be as soon as packet generation is enabled but could also be later when the problematic entry or field needs to be used.

Once an error is signaled, software should disable packet generation by clearing TraceEn, diagnose and fix the error condition, and clear IA32_RTIT_STATUS.Error. At this point, packet generation can be re-enabled.

35.4 TRACE PACKETS AND DATA TYPES

This section details the data packets generated by Intel Processor Trace. It is useful for developers writing the interpretation code that will decode the data packets and apply it to the traced source code.

35.4.1 Packet Relationships and Ordering

This section introduces the concept of packet "binding", which involves determining the IP in a binary disassembly at which the change indicated by a given packet applies. Some packets have the associated IP as the payload (FUP, TIP), while for others the decoder need only search for the next instance of a particular instruction (or instructions) to bind the packet (TNT). However, in many cases, the decoder will need to consider the relationship between packets, and to use this packet context to determine how to bind the packet.

Section 35.4.2 below provides detailed descriptions of the packets, including how packets bind to IPs in the disassembly, to other packets, or to nothing at all. Many packets listed are simple to bind, because they are generated in only a few scenarios. Those that require more consideration are typically part of "compound packet events", such as interrupts, exceptions, and some instructions, where multiple packets are generated by a single operation (instruction or event). These compound packet events frequently begin with a FUP to indicate the source address (if it is not clear from the disassembly), and are concluded by a TIP or TIP.PGD packet that indicates the destination address (if one is provided). In this scenario, the FUP is said to be "coupled" with the TIP packet.

Other packets could be in between the coupled FUP and TIP packet. Timing packets, such as TSC, MTC, CYC, or CBR, could arrive at any time, and hence could intercede in a compound packet event. If an operation changes CR3 or the processor's mode of execution, a state update packet (i.e., PIP or MODE) is generated. The state changes

indicated by these intermediate packets should be applied at the IP of the TIP* packet. A summary of compound packet events is provided in Table 35-15; see Section 35.4.2 for more per-packet details and Section 35.7 for more detailed packet generation examples.

Table 35-15. Compound Packet Event Summary

Event Type	Beginning	Middle	End	Comment
Unconditional, uncompressed control-flow transfer	FUP or none	Any combination of PIP, VMCS, MODE.Exec, or none	TIP or TIP.PGD	FUP only for asynchronous events. Order of middle packets may vary. PIP/VMCS/MODE only if the operation modifies the state tracked by these respective packets.
TSX Update	MODE.TSX, and (FUP or none)	None	TIP, TIP.PGD, or none	FUP TIP/TIP.PGD only for TSX abort cases.
Overflow	OVF	PSB, PSBEND, or none	FUP or TIP.PGE	FUP if overflow resolves while ContextEn=1, else TIP.PGE.

35.4.2 Packet Definitions

The following description of packet definitions are in tabular format. Figure 35-3 explains how to interpret them. Packet bits listed as "RSVD" are not guaranteed to be 0.

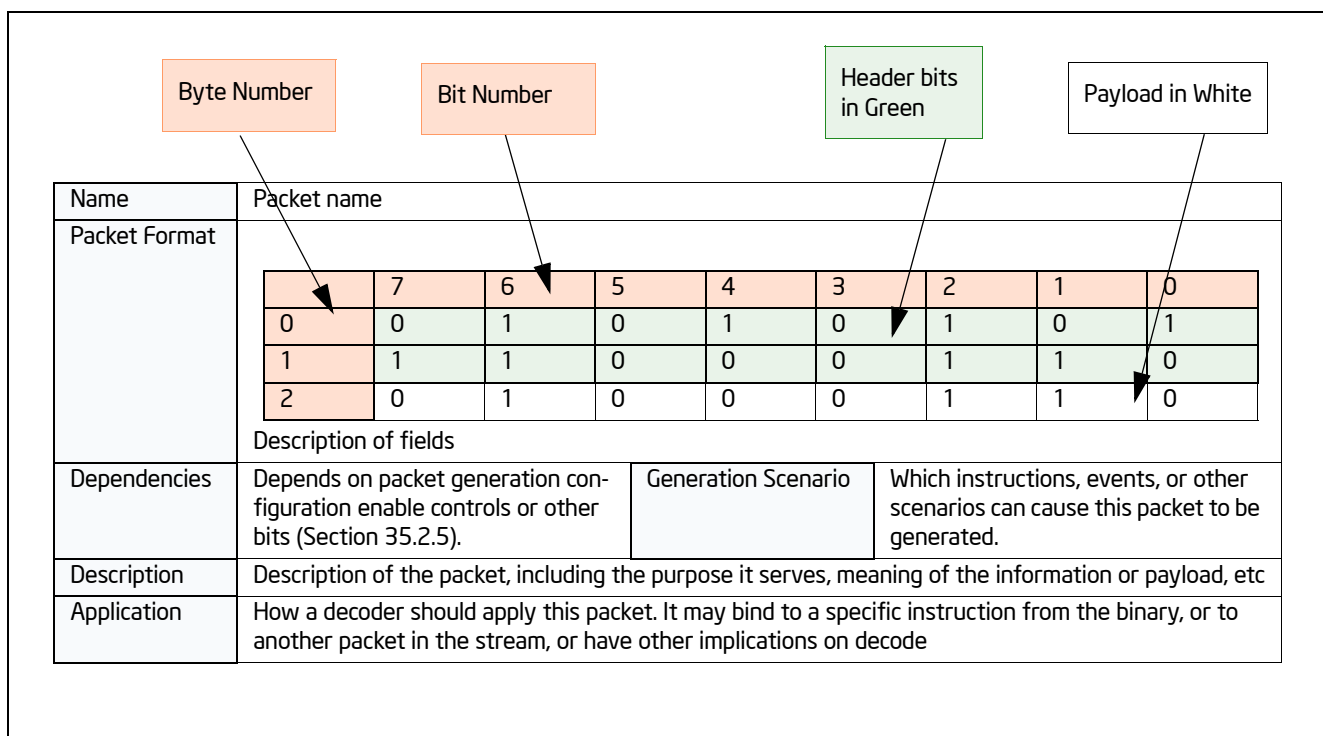


Figure 35-3. Interpreting Tabular Definition of Packet Format

35.4.2.1 Taken/Not-taken (TNT) Packet

Table 35-16. TNT Packet Definition

Name	Taken/Not-taken (TNT) Packet																																																																																												
Packet Format	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>7</th> <th>6</th> <th>5</th> <th>4</th> <th>3</th> <th>2</th> <th>1</th> <th>0</th> <th></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>B₁</td> <td>B₂</td> <td>B₃</td> <td>B₄</td> <td>B₅</td> <td>B₆</td> <td>0</td> <td>Short TNT</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>											7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0		0	1	B ₁	B ₂	B ₃	B ₄	B ₅	B ₆	0	Short TNT																																																															
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0																																																																																				
0	1	B ₁	B ₂	B ₃	B ₄	B ₅	B ₆	0	Short TNT																																																																																				
	B ₁ ...B _N represent the last N conditional branch or compressed RET (Section 35.4.2.2) results, such that B ₁ is oldest and B _N is youngest. The short TNT packet can contain from 1 to 6 TNT bits. The long TNT packet can contain from 1 to 47 TNT bits.																																																																																												
	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>7</th> <th>6</th> <th>5</th> <th>4</th> <th>3</th> <th>2</th> <th>1</th> <th>0</th> <th></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td rowspan="8">Long TNT</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>B₄₀</td> <td>B₄₁</td> <td>B₄₂</td> <td>B₄₃</td> <td>B₄₄</td> <td>B₄₅</td> <td>B₄₆</td> <td>B₄₇</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>B₃₂</td> <td>B₃₃</td> <td>B₃₄</td> <td>B₃₅</td> <td>B₃₆</td> <td>B₃₇</td> <td>B₃₈</td> <td>B₃₉</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>B₂₄</td> <td>B₂₅</td> <td>B₂₆</td> <td>B₂₇</td> <td>B₂₈</td> <td>B₂₉</td> <td>B₃₀</td> <td>B₃₁</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td>B₁₆</td> <td>B₁₇</td> <td>B₁₈</td> <td>B₁₉</td> <td>B₂₀</td> <td>B₂₁</td> <td>B₂₂</td> <td>B₂₃</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td>B₈</td> <td>B₉</td> <td>B₁₀</td> <td>B₁₁</td> <td>B₁₂</td> <td>B₁₃</td> <td>B₁₄</td> <td>B₁₅</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7</td> <td>1</td> <td>B₁</td> <td>B₂</td> <td>B₃</td> <td>B₄</td> <td>B₅</td> <td>B₆</td> <td>B₇</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>											7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	Long TNT	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	2	B ₄₀	B ₄₁	B ₄₂	B ₄₃	B ₄₄	B ₄₅	B ₄₆	B ₄₇	3	B ₃₂	B ₃₃	B ₃₄	B ₃₅	B ₃₆	B ₃₇	B ₃₈	B ₃₉	4	B ₂₄	B ₂₅	B ₂₆	B ₂₇	B ₂₈	B ₂₉	B ₃₀	B ₃₁	5	B ₁₆	B ₁₇	B ₁₈	B ₁₉	B ₂₀	B ₂₁	B ₂₂	B ₂₃	6	B ₈	B ₉	B ₁₀	B ₁₁	B ₁₂	B ₁₃	B ₁₄	B ₁₅	7	1	B ₁	B ₂	B ₃	B ₄	B ₅	B ₆	B ₇
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0																																																																																					
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	Long TNT																																																																																				
1	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	1																																																																																					
2	B ₄₀	B ₄₁	B ₄₂	B ₄₃	B ₄₄	B ₄₅	B ₄₆	B ₄₇																																																																																					
3	B ₃₂	B ₃₃	B ₃₄	B ₃₅	B ₃₆	B ₃₇	B ₃₈	B ₃₉																																																																																					
4	B ₂₄	B ₂₅	B ₂₆	B ₂₇	B ₂₈	B ₂₉	B ₃₀	B ₃₁																																																																																					
5	B ₁₆	B ₁₇	B ₁₈	B ₁₉	B ₂₀	B ₂₁	B ₂₂	B ₂₃																																																																																					
6	B ₈	B ₉	B ₁₀	B ₁₁	B ₁₂	B ₁₃	B ₁₄	B ₁₅																																																																																					
7	1	B ₁	B ₂	B ₃	B ₄	B ₅	B ₆	B ₇																																																																																					
	<p>Irrespective of how many TNT bits is in a packet, the last valid TNT bit is followed by a trailing 1, or Stop bit, as shown above. If the TNT packet is not full (fewer than 6 TNT bits for the Short TNT, or fewer than 47 TNT bits for the Long TNT), the Stop bit moves up, and the trailing bits of the packet are filled with 0s. Examples of these "partial TNTs" are shown below.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>7</th> <th>6</th> <th>5</th> <th>4</th> <th>3</th> <th>2</th> <th>1</th> <th>0</th> <th></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>B₁</td> <td>B₂</td> <td>B₃</td> <td>B₄</td> <td>0</td> <td>Short TNT</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>											7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0		0	0	0	1	B ₁	B ₂	B ₃	B ₄	0	Short TNT																																																															
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0																																																																																					
0	0	0	1	B ₁	B ₂	B ₃	B ₄	0	Short TNT																																																																																				
	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>7</th> <th>6</th> <th>5</th> <th>4</th> <th>3</th> <th>2</th> <th>1</th> <th>0</th> <th></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td rowspan="8">Long TNT</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>B₂₄</td> <td>B₂₅</td> <td>B₂₆</td> <td>B₂₇</td> <td>B₂₈</td> <td>B₂₉</td> <td>B₃₀</td> <td>B₃₁</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>B₁₆</td> <td>B₁₇</td> <td>B₁₈</td> <td>B₁₉</td> <td>B₂₀</td> <td>B₂₁</td> <td>B₂₂</td> <td>B₂₃</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>B₈</td> <td>B₉</td> <td>B₁₀</td> <td>B₁₁</td> <td>B₁₂</td> <td>B₁₃</td> <td>B₁₄</td> <td>B₁₅</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td>1</td> <td>B₁</td> <td>B₂</td> <td>B₃</td> <td>B₄</td> <td>B₅</td> <td>B₆</td> <td>B₇</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>											7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	Long TNT	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	2	B ₂₄	B ₂₅	B ₂₆	B ₂₇	B ₂₈	B ₂₉	B ₃₀	B ₃₁	3	B ₁₆	B ₁₇	B ₁₈	B ₁₉	B ₂₀	B ₂₁	B ₂₂	B ₂₃	4	B ₈	B ₉	B ₁₀	B ₁₁	B ₁₂	B ₁₃	B ₁₄	B ₁₅	5	1	B ₁	B ₂	B ₃	B ₄	B ₅	B ₆	B ₇	6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	7	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0																																																																																					
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	Long TNT																																																																																				
1	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	1																																																																																					
2	B ₂₄	B ₂₅	B ₂₆	B ₂₇	B ₂₈	B ₂₉	B ₃₀	B ₃₁																																																																																					
3	B ₁₆	B ₁₇	B ₁₈	B ₁₉	B ₂₀	B ₂₁	B ₂₂	B ₂₃																																																																																					
4	B ₈	B ₉	B ₁₀	B ₁₁	B ₁₂	B ₁₃	B ₁₄	B ₁₅																																																																																					
5	1	B ₁	B ₂	B ₃	B ₄	B ₅	B ₆	B ₇																																																																																					
6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0																																																																																					
7	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0																																																																																					
Dependencies	PacketEn			Generation Scenario		On a conditional branch or compressed RET, if it fills the TNT. Also, partial TNTs may be generated at any time, as a result of other packets being generated, or certain micro-architectural conditions occurring, before the TNT is full.																																																																																							

Table 35-16. TNT Packet Definition (Contd.)

Description	Provides the taken/not-taken results for the last 1-N conditional branches (Jcc, J*CXZ, or LOOP) or compressed RETs (Section 35.4.2.2). The TNT payload bits should be interpreted as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ 1 indicates a taken conditional branch, or a compressed RET ▪ 0 indicates a not-taken conditional branch
Application	Each valid payload bit (that is, bits between the header bits and the trailing Stop bit) applies to an upcoming conditional branch or RET instruction. Once a decoder consumes a TNT packet with N valid payload bits, these bits should be applied to (and hence provide the destination for) the next N conditional branches or RETs

35.4.2.2 Target IP (TIP) Packet

Table 35-17. IP Packet Definition

Name	Target IP (TIP) Packet																																																																																												
Packet Format	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 10%;"></th> <th style="width: 10%;">7</th> <th style="width: 10%;">6</th> <th style="width: 10%;">5</th> <th style="width: 10%;">4</th> <th style="width: 10%;">3</th> <th style="width: 10%;">2</th> <th style="width: 10%;">1</th> <th style="width: 10%;">0</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td colspan="3">IPBytes</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td colspan="8">TargetIP[7:0]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td colspan="8">TargetIP[15:8]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td colspan="8">TargetIP[23:16]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td colspan="8">TargetIP[31:24]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td colspan="8">TargetIP[39:32]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td colspan="8">TargetIP[47:40]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7</td> <td colspan="8">TargetIP[55:48]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>8</td> <td colspan="8">TargetIP[63:56]</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>				7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	0	IPBytes			0	1	1	0	1	1	TargetIP[7:0]								2	TargetIP[15:8]								3	TargetIP[23:16]								4	TargetIP[31:24]								5	TargetIP[39:32]								6	TargetIP[47:40]								7	TargetIP[55:48]								8	TargetIP[63:56]							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0																																																																																					
0	IPBytes			0	1	1	0	1																																																																																					
1	TargetIP[7:0]																																																																																												
2	TargetIP[15:8]																																																																																												
3	TargetIP[23:16]																																																																																												
4	TargetIP[31:24]																																																																																												
5	TargetIP[39:32]																																																																																												
6	TargetIP[47:40]																																																																																												
7	TargetIP[55:48]																																																																																												
8	TargetIP[63:56]																																																																																												
Dependencies	PacketEn	Generation Scenario	Indirect branch (including un-compressed RET), far branch, interrupt, exception, INIT, SIPI, VM exit, VM entry, TSX abort, EENTER, EEXIT, ERESUME, AEX ¹ .																																																																																										
Description	Provides the target for some control flow transfers																																																																																												
Application	<p>Anytime a TIP is encountered, it indicates that control was transferred to the IP provided in the payload.</p> <p>The source of this control flow change, and hence the IP or instruction to which it binds, depends on the packets that precede the TIP. If a TIP is encountered and all preceding packets have already been bound, then the TIP will apply to the upcoming indirect branch, far branch, or VMRESUME. However, if there was a preceding FUP that remains unbound, it will bind to the TIP. Here, the TIP provides the target of an asynchronous event or TSX abort that occurred at the IP given in the FUP payload. Note that there may be other packets, in addition to the FUP, which will bind to the TIP packet. See the packet application descriptions for other packets for details.</p>																																																																																												

NOTES:

1. EENTER, EEXIT, ERESUME, AEX would be possible only for a debug enclave.

IP Compression

The IP payload in a TIP, FUP, TIP.PGE, or TIP.PGD packet can vary in size, based on the mode of execution, and the use of IP compression. IP compression is an optional compression technique the processor may choose to employ to reduce bandwidth. With IP compression, the IP to be represented in the payload is compared with the last IP sent out, via any of FUP, TIP, TIP.PGE, or TIP.PGD. If that previous IP had the same upper (most significant) address bytes, those matching bytes may be suppressed in the current packet. The processor maintains an internal state of the "Last IP" that was encoded in trace packets, thus the decoder will need to keep track of the "Last IP" state in software, to match fidelity with packets generated by hardware. "Last IP" is initialized to zero, hence if the first IP in the trace may be compressed if the upper bytes are zeroes.

The “IPBytes” field of the IP packets (FUP, TIP, TIP.PGE, TIP.PGD) serves to indicate how many bytes of payload are provided, and how the decoder should fill in any suppressed bytes. The algorithm for reconstructing the IP for a TIP/FUP packet is shown in the table below.

Table 35-18. FUP/TIP IP Reconstruction

IPBytes	Uncompressed IP Value							
	63:56	55:48	47:40	39:32	31:24	23:16	15:8	7:0
000b	None, IP is out of context							
001b	Last IP[63:16]						IP Payload[15:0]	
010b	Last IP[63:32]				IP Payload[31:0]			
011b	IP Payload[47] extended		IP Payload[47:0]					
100b	Last IP [63:48]		IP Payload[47:0]					
101b	Reserved							
110b	IP Payload[63:0]							
111b	Reserved							

The processor-internal Last IP state is guaranteed to be reset to zero when a PSB is sent out. This means that the IP that follows the PSB with either be un-compressed (011b or 110b, see Table 35-18), or compressed against zero.

At times, “IPbytes” will have a value of 0. As shown above, this does not mean that the IP payload matches the full address of the last IP, but rather that the IP for this packet was suppressed. This is used for cases where the IP that applies to the packet is out of context. An example is the TIP.PGD sent on a SYSCALL, when tracing only USR code. In that case, no TargetIP will be included in the packet, since that would expose an instruction point at CPL = 0. When the IP payload is suppressed in this manner, Last IP is not cleared, and instead refers to the last IP packet with a non-zero IPBytes field.

On processors that support a maximum linear address size of 32 bits, IP payloads may never exceed 32 bits (IPBytes <= 010b).

Indirect Transfer Compression for Returns (RET)

In addition to IP compression, TIP packets for near return (RET) instructions can also be compressed. If the RET target matches the next IP of the corresponding CALL, then the TIP packet is unneeded, since the decoder can deduce the target IP by maintaining a CALL/RET stack of its own.

A CALL/RET stack can be maintained by the decoder by doing the following:

1. Allocate space to store 64 RET targets.
2. For near CALLs, push the Next IP onto the stack. Once the stack is full, new CALLs will force the oldest entry off the end of the stack, such that only the youngest 64 entries are stored. Note that this excludes zero-length CALLs, which are direct near CALLs with displacement zero (to the next IP). These CALLs typically don't have matching RETs.
3. For near RETs, pop the top (youngest) entry off the stack. This will be the target of the RET.

In cases where the RET is compressed, the target is guaranteed to match the value produced in 2) above. If the target is not compressed, a TIP packet will be generated with the RET target, which may differ from 2).

The hardware ensure that packets read by the decoder will always have seen the CALL that corresponds to any compressed RET. The processor will never compress a RET across a PSB, a buffer overflow, or scenario where PacketEn=0. This means that a RET whose corresponding CALL executed while PacketEn=0, or before the last PSB, etc., will not be compressed.

If the CALL/RET stack is manipulated or corrupted by software, and thereby causes a RET to transfer control to a target that is inconsistent with the CALL/RET stack, then the RET will not be compressed, and will produce a TIP packet. This can happen, for example, if software executes a PUSH instruction to push a target onto the stack, and a later RET uses this target.

When a RET is compressed, a Taken indication is added to the TNT buffer. Because it sends no TIP packet, it also does not update the internal Last IP value, and thus the decoder should treat it the same way. If the RET is not compressed, it will generate a TIP packet (just like when RET compression is disabled, via IA32_RTIT_CTL.DisRETC). For processors that employ deferred TIPS (Section 35.4.2.3), an uncompressed RET will not be deferred, and hence will force out any accumulated TNTs or TIPS. This serves to avoid ambiguity, and make clear to the decoder whether the near RET was compressed, and hence a bit in the in-progress TNT should be consumed, or uncompressed, in which case there will be no in-progress TNT and thus a TIP should be consumed.

Note that in the unlikely case that a RET executes in a different execution mode than the associated CALL, the decoder will need to model the same behavior with its CALL stack. For instance, if a CALL executes in 64-bit mode, a 64-bit IP value will be pushed onto the software stack. If the corresponding RET executes in 32-bit mode, then only the lower 32 target bits will be popped off of the stack, which may mean that the RET does not go to the CALL's Next IP. This is architecturally correct behavior, and this RET could be compressed, thus the decoder should match this behavior

35.4.2.3 Deferred TIPS

The processor may opt to defer sending out the TNT when TIPS are generated. Thus, rather than sending a partial TNT followed by a TIP, both packets will be deferred while the TNT accumulates more Jcc/RET results. Any number of TIP packets may be accumulated this way, such that only once the TNT is filled, or once another packet (e.g., FUP) is generated, the TNT will be sent, followed by all the deferred TIP packets, and finally terminated by the other packet(s) that forced out the TNT and TIP packets. Generation of many other packets (see list below) will force out the TNT and any accumulated TIP packets. This is an optional optimization in hardware to reduce the bandwidth consumption, and hence the performance impact, incurred by tracing.

Table 35-19. TNT Examples with Deferred TIPS

Code Flow	Packets, Non-Deferred TIPS	Packets, Deferred TIPS
0x1000 cmp %rcx, 0 0x1004 jnz Foo // not-taken 0x1008 jmp %rdx	TNT(0b0), TIP(0x1308)	
0x1308 cmp %rcx, 1 0x130c jnz Bar // not-taken 0x1310 cmp %rcx, 2 0x1314 jnz Baz // taken 0x1500 cmp %eax, 7 0x1504 jg Exit // not-taken 0x1508 jmp %r15	TNT(0b010), TIP(0x1100)	
0x1100 cmp %rbx, 1 0x1104 jg Start // not-taken 0x1108 add %rcx, %eax 0x110c ... // an asynchronous interrupt arrives INThandler: 0xcc00 pop %rdx	TNT(0b0), FUP(0x110c), TIP(0xcc00)	TNT(0b00100), TIP(0x1308), TIP(0x1100), FUP(0x110c), TIP(0xcc00)

35.4.2.4 Packet Generation Enable (TIP.PGE) Packet

Table 35-20. TIP.PGE Packet Definition

Name	Target IP - Packet Generation Enable (TIP.PGE) Packet								
Packet Format		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	0	IPBytes			1	0	0	0	1
	1	TargetIP[7:0]							
	2	TargetIP[15:8]							
	3	TargetIP[23:16]							
	4	TargetIP[31:24]							
	5	TargetIP[39:32]							
	6	TargetIP[47:40]							
	7	TargetIP[55:48]							
	8	TargetIP[63:56]							
Dependencies	PacketEn transitions to 1			Generation Scenario	Any branch instruction, control flow transfer, or MOV CR3 that sets PacketEn, a WRMSR that enables packet generation and sets PacketEn				
Description	<p>Indicates that PacketEn has transitioned to 1. It provides the IP at which the tracing begins. This can occur due to any of the enables that comprise PacketEn transitioning from 0 to 1, as long as all the others are asserted. Examples:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ TriggerEn: This is set on software write to set IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn as long as the Stopped and Error bits in IA32_RTIT_STATUS are clear. The IP payload will be the Next IP of the WRMSR. ▪ FilterEn: This is set when software jumps into the tracing region. This region is defined by enabling IP filtering in IA32_RTIT_CTL.ADDRn_CFG, and defining the range in IA32_RTIT_ADDRn_[AB], see. Section 35.2.4.3. The IP payload will be the target of the branch. ▪ ContextEn: This is set on a CPL change, a CR3 write or any other means of changing ContextEn. The IP payload will be the Next IP of the instruction that changes context if it is not a branch, otherwise it will be the target of the branch. 								
Application	TIP.PGE packets bind to the instruction at the IP given in the payload.								

35.4.2.5 Packet Generation Disable (TIP.PGD) Packet

Table 35-21. TIP.PGD Packet Definition

Name	Target IP - Packet Generation Disable (TIP.PGD) Packet																																																																																																	
Packet Format	<table border="1"> <tr> <td></td> <td>7</td> <td>6</td> <td>5</td> <td>4</td> <td>3</td> <td>2</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td colspan="3">IPBytes</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td colspan="8">TargetIP[7:0]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td colspan="8">TargetIP[15:8]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td colspan="8">TargetIP[23:16]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td colspan="8">TargetIP[31:24]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td colspan="8">TargetIP[39:32]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td colspan="8">TargetIP[47:40]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7</td> <td colspan="8">TargetIP[55:48]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>8</td> <td colspan="8">TargetIP[63:56]</td> </tr> </table>									7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	0	IPBytes			0	0	0	0	1	1	TargetIP[7:0]								2	TargetIP[15:8]								3	TargetIP[23:16]								4	TargetIP[31:24]								5	TargetIP[39:32]								6	TargetIP[47:40]								7	TargetIP[55:48]								8	TargetIP[63:56]							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0																																																																																										
0	IPBytes			0	0	0	0	1																																																																																										
1	TargetIP[7:0]																																																																																																	
2	TargetIP[15:8]																																																																																																	
3	TargetIP[23:16]																																																																																																	
4	TargetIP[31:24]																																																																																																	
5	TargetIP[39:32]																																																																																																	
6	TargetIP[47:40]																																																																																																	
7	TargetIP[55:48]																																																																																																	
8	TargetIP[63:56]																																																																																																	
Dependencies	PacketEn transitions to 0	Generation Scenario	Any branch instruction, control flow transfer, or MOV CR3 that clears PacketEn, a WRMSR that disables packet generation and clears PacketEn																																																																																															
Description	<p>Indicates that PacketEn has transitioned to 0. It will include the IP at which the tracing ends, unless ContextEn = 0 or TraceEn=0 at the conclusion of the instruction or event that cleared PacketEn.</p> <p>PacketEn can be cleared due to any of the enables that comprise PacketEn transitioning from 1 to 0. Examples:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ TriggerEn: This is cleared on software write to clear IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn, or when IA32_RTIT_STATUS.Stopped is set, or on operational error. The IP payload will be suppressed in this case, and the “IPBytes” field will have the value 0. ▪ FilterEn: This is cleared when software jumps out of the tracing region. This region is defined by enabling IP filtering in IA32_RTIT_CTL.ADDRn_CFG, and defining the range in IA32_RTIT_ADDRn_[AB], see. Section 35.2.4.3. The IP payload will depend on the type of the branch. For conditional branches, the payload is suppressed (IPBytes = 0), and in this case the destination can be inferred from the disassembly. For any other type of branch, the IP payload will be the target of the branch. ▪ ContextEn: This can happen on a CPL change, a CR3 write or any other means of changing ContextEn. See Section 35.2.4.3 for details. In this case, when ContextEn is cleared, there will be no IP payload. The “IPBytes” field will have value 0. <p>Note that, in cases where a branch that would normally produce a TIP packet (i.e., far transfer, indirect branch, interrupt, etc) or TNT update (conditional branch or compressed RT) causes PacketEn to transition from 1 to 0, the TIP or TNT bit will be replaced with TIP.PGD. The payload of the TIP.PGD will be the target of the branch, unless the result of the instruction causes TraceEn or ContextEn to be cleared (ie, SYSCALL when IA32_RTIT_CTL.OS=0, In the case where a conditional branch clears FilterEn and hence PacketEn, there will be no TNT bit for this branch, replaced instead by the TIP.PGD.</p>																																																																																																	
Application	<p>TIP.PGD can be produced by any branch instructions, as well as some non-branch instructions, that clear PacketEn. When produced by a branch, it replaces any TIP or TNT update that the branch would normally produce.</p> <p>In cases where there is an unbound FUP preceding the TIP.PGD, then the TIP.PGD is part of compound operation (i.e., asynchronous event or TSX abort) which cleared PacketEn. For most such cases, the TIP.PGD is simply replacing a TIP, and should be treated the same way. The TIP.PGD may or may not have an IP payload, depending on whether the operation cleared ContextEn.</p> <p>If there is not an associated FUP, the binding will depend on whether there is an IP payload. If there is an IP payload, then the TIP.PGD should be applied to either the next direct branch whose target matches the TIP.PGD payload, or the next branch that would normally generate a TIP or TNT packet. If there is no IP payload, then the TIP.PGD should apply to the next branch or MOV CR3 instruction.</p>																																																																																																	

35.4.2.6 Flow Update (FUP) Packet

Table 35-22. FUP Packet Definition

Name	Flow Update (FUP) Packet																																																																																												
Packet Format	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>7</th> <th>6</th> <th>5</th> <th>4</th> <th>3</th> <th>2</th> <th>1</th> <th>0</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td colspan="3">IPBytes</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td colspan="8">IP[7:0]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td colspan="8">IP[15:8]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td colspan="8">IP[23:16]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td colspan="8">IP[31:24]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td colspan="8">IP[39:32]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td colspan="8">IP[47:40]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7</td> <td colspan="8">IP[55:48]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>8</td> <td colspan="8">IP[63:56]</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>				7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	0	IPBytes			1	1	1	0	1	1	IP[7:0]								2	IP[15:8]								3	IP[23:16]								4	IP[31:24]								5	IP[39:32]								6	IP[47:40]								7	IP[55:48]								8	IP[63:56]							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0																																																																																					
0	IPBytes			1	1	1	0	1																																																																																					
1	IP[7:0]																																																																																												
2	IP[15:8]																																																																																												
3	IP[23:16]																																																																																												
4	IP[31:24]																																																																																												
5	IP[39:32]																																																																																												
6	IP[47:40]																																																																																												
7	IP[55:48]																																																																																												
8	IP[63:56]																																																																																												
Dependencies	TriggerEn & ContextEn. (Typically depends on BranchEn and FilterEn as well, see Section 35.2.4 for details.)	Generation Scenario	Asynchronous Events (interrupts, exceptions, INIT, SIPI, SMI, VM exit, #MC), XBEGIN, XEND, XABORT, XACQUIRE, XRELEASE, EENTER, EEXIT, ERESUME, EEE, AEX, ¹ INTO, INT1, INT3, INT <i>n</i> , a WRMSR that disables packet generation.																																																																																										
Description	Provides the source address for asynchronous events, and some other instructions. Is never sent alone, always sent with an associated TIP or MODE packet, and potentially others.																																																																																												
Application	<p>FUP packets provide the IP to which they bind. However, they are never standalone, but are coupled with other packets.</p> <p>In TSX cases, the FUP is immediately preceded by a MODE.TSX, which binds to the same IP. A TIP will follow only in the case of TSX aborts, see Section 35.4.2.8 for details.</p> <p>Otherwise, FUPs are part of compound packet events (see Section 35.4.1). In these compound cases, the FUP provides the source IP for an instruction or event, while a following TIP (or TIP.PGD) packet will provide the destination IP. Other packets may be included in the compound event between the FUP and TIP.</p>																																																																																												

NOTES:

1. EENTER, EEXIT, ERESUME, EEE, AEX apply only if Intel Software Guard Extensions is supported.

FUP IP Payload

Flow Update Packet gives the source address of an instruction when it is needed. In general, branch instructions do not need a FUP, because the source address is clear from the disassembly. For asynchronous events, however, the source address cannot be inferred from the source, and hence a FUP will be sent. Table 35-23 illustrates cases where FUPs are sent, and which IP can be expected in those cases.

Table 35-23. FUP Cases and IP Payload

Event	Flow Update IP	Comment
External Interrupt, NMI/SMI, Traps, Machine Check (trap-like), INIT/SIPI	Address of next instruction (Next IP) that would have been executed	Functionally, this matches the LBR FROM field value and also the EIP value which is saved onto the stack.
Exceptions/Faults, Machine check (fault-like)	Address of the instruction which took the exception/fault (Current IP)	This matches the similar functionality of LBR FROM field value and also the EIP value which is saved onto the stack.
Software Interrupt	Address of the software interrupt instruction (Current IP)	This matches the similar functionality of LBR FROM field value, but does not match the EIP value which is saved onto the stack (Next Linear Instruction Pointer - NLIP).
EENTER, EEXIT, ERESUME, Enclave Exiting Event (EEE), AEX ¹	Current IP of the instruction	This matches the LBR FROM field value and also the EIP value which is saved onto the stack.
XACQUIRE	Address of the X* instruction	
XRELEASE, XBEGIN, XEND, XABORT, other transactional abort	Current IP	
#SMI	IP that is saved into SMRAM	
WRMSR that clears TraceEn	Current IP	

NOTES:

1. Information on EENTER, EEXIT, ERESUME, EEE, Asynchronous Enclave eXit (AEX) can be found in *Intel® Software Guard Extensions Programming Reference*.

On a canonical fault due to sequentially fetching an instruction in non-canonical space (as opposed to jumping to non-canonical space), the IP of the fault (and thus the payload of the FUP) will be a non-canonical address. This is consistent with what is pushed on the stack for such faulting cases.

If there are post-commit task switch faults, the IP value of the FUP will be the original IP when the task switch started. This is the same value as would be seen in the LBR_FROM field. But it is a different value as is saved on the stack or VMCS.

35.4.2.7 Paging Information (PIP) Packet

Table 35-24. PIP Packet Definition

Name	Paging Information (PIP) Packet								
Packet Format		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0
	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	1
	2	CR3[11:5] or 0							RSVD/NR
	3	CR3[19:12]							
	4	CR3[27:20]							
	5	CR3[35:28]							
	6	CR3[43:36]							
	7	CR3[51:44]							
Dependencies	TriggerEn && ContextEn && IA32_RTIT_CTL.OS			Generation Scenario	MOV CR3, Task switch, INIT, SIPI, PSB+, VM exit, VM entry				
Description	<p>The CR3 payload shown includes only the address portion of the CR3 value. For PAE paging, CR3[11:5] are thus included. For other paging modes (32-bit and 4-level paging¹), these bits are 0.</p> <p>This packet holds the CR3 address value. It will be generated on operations that modify CR3:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ MOV CR3 operation ▪ Task Switch ▪ INIT and SIPI ▪ VM exit, if “conceal VMX from PT” VM-exit control is 0 (see Section 35.5.1) ▪ VM entry, if “conceal VMX from PT” VM-entry control is 0 <p>PIPs are not generated, despite changes to CR3, on SMI and RSM. This is due to the special behavior on these operations, see Section 35.2.8.3 for details. Note that, for some cases of task switch where CR3 is not modified, no PIP will be produced.</p> <p>The purpose of the PIP is to indicate to the decoder which application is running, so that it can apply the proper binaries to the linear addresses that are being traced.</p> <p>The PIP packet contains the new CR3 value when CR3 is written.</p> <p>PIPs generated by VM entries set the NR bit. PIPs generated in VMX non-root operation set the NR bit if the “conceal VMX from PT” VM-execution control is 0 (see Section 35.5.1). All other PIPs clear the NR bit.</p>								
Application	<p>The purpose of the PIP packet is to help the decoder uniquely identify what software is running at any given time. When a PIP is encountered, a decoder should do the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) If there was a prior unbound FUP (that is, a FUP not preceded by a packet such as MODE.TSX that consumes it, and it hence pairs with a TIP that has not yet been seen), then this PIP is part of a compound packet event (Section 35.4.1). Find the ending TIP and apply the new CR3/NR values to the TIP payload IP. 2) Otherwise, look for the next MOV CR3, far branch, or VMRESUME/VMLAUNCH in the disassembly, and apply the new CR3 to the next (or target) IP. <p>For examples of the packets generated by these flows, see Section 35.7.</p>								

NOTES:

1. Earlier versions of this manual used the term “IA-32e paging” to identify 4-level paging.

35.4.2.8 MODE Packets

MODE packets keep the decoder informed of various processor modes about which it needs to know in order to properly manage the packet output, or to properly disassemble the associated binaries. MODE packets include a header and a mode byte, as shown below.

Table 35-25. General Form of MODE Packets

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	1
1	Leaf ID			Mode				

The MODE Leaf ID indicates which set of mode bits are held in the lower bits.

MODE.Exec Packet

Table 35-26. MODE.Exec Packet Definition

Name	MODE.Exec Packet																																		
Packet Format	<table border="1"> <tr> <td></td> <td>7</td> <td>6</td> <td>5</td> <td>4</td> <td>3</td> <td>2</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>CS.D</td> <td>(CS.L & LMA)</td> </tr> </table>									7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	CS.D	(CS.L & LMA)
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0																											
0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	1																											
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	CS.D	(CS.L & LMA)																											
Dependencies	PacketEn	Generation Scenario	Far branch, interrupt, exception, VM exit, and VM entry, if the mode changes. PSB+, and any scenario that can generate a TIP.PGE, such that the mode may have changed since the last MODE.Exec.																																
Description	<p>Indicates whether software is in 16, 32, or 64-bit mode, by providing the CS.D and (CS.L & IA32_EFER.LMA) values. Essential for the decoder to properly disassemble the associated binary.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>CS.D</th> <th>(CS.L & IA32_EFER.LMA)</th> <th>Addressing Mode</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>N/A</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>64-bit mode</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>32-bit mode</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>16-bit mode</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>MODE.Exec is sent at the time of a mode change, if PacketEn=1 at the time, or when tracing resumes, if necessary. In the former case, the MODE.Exec packet is generated along with other packets that result from the far transfer operation that changes the mode. In cases where the mode changes while PacketEn=0, the processor will send out a MODE.Exec along with the TIP.PGE when tracing resumes. The processor may opt to suppress the MODE.Exec when tracing resumes if the mode matches that from the last MODE.Exec packet, if there was no PSB in between.</p>								CS.D	(CS.L & IA32_EFER.LMA)	Addressing Mode	1	1	N/A	0	1	64-bit mode	1	0	32-bit mode	0	0	16-bit mode												
CS.D	(CS.L & IA32_EFER.LMA)	Addressing Mode																																	
1	1	N/A																																	
0	1	64-bit mode																																	
1	0	32-bit mode																																	
0	0	16-bit mode																																	
Application	MODE.Exec always immediately precedes a TIP or TIP.PGE. The mode change applies to the IP address in the payload of the next TIP or TIP.PGE.																																		

MODE.TSX Packet

Table 35-27. MODE.TSX Packet Definition

Name	MODE.TSX Packet																																		
Packet Format	<table border="1"> <tr> <td></td> <td>7</td> <td>6</td> <td>5</td> <td>4</td> <td>3</td> <td>2</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>TXAbort</td> <td>InTX</td> </tr> </table>									7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	TXAbort	InTX
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0																										
	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	1																										
1	0	0	1	0	0	0	TXAbort	InTX																											
Dependencies	TriggerEn and ContextEn	Generation Scenario	XBEGIN, XEND, XABORT, XACQUIRE, XRELEASE, if InTX changes, Asynchronous TSX Abort, PSB+																																
Description	Indicates when a TSX transaction (either HLE or RTM) begins, commits, or aborts. Instructions executed transactionally will be “rolled back” if the transaction is aborted.																																		
	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>TXAbort</th> <th>InTX</th> <th>Implication</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>N/A</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>Transaction begins, or executing transactionally</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>Transaction aborted</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>Transaction committed, or not executing transactionally</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>								TXAbort	InTX	Implication	1	1	N/A	0	1	Transaction begins, or executing transactionally	1	0	Transaction aborted	0	0	Transaction committed, or not executing transactionally												
	TXAbort	InTX	Implication																																
	1	1	N/A																																
	0	1	Transaction begins, or executing transactionally																																
	1	0	Transaction aborted																																
0	0	Transaction committed, or not executing transactionally																																	
Application	<p>If PacketEn=1, MODE.TSX always immediately precedes a FUP. If the TXAbort bit is zero, then the mode change applies to the IP address in the payload of the FUP. If TXAbort=1, then the FUP will be followed by a TIP, and the mode change will apply to the IP address in the payload of the TIP.</p> <p>MODE.TSX packets may be generated when PacketEn=0, due to FilterEn=0. In this case, only the last MODE.TSX generated before TIP.PGE need be applied.</p>																																		

35.4.2.9 TraceStop Packet

Table 35-28. TraceStop Packet Definition

Name	TraceStop Packet																													
Packet Format	<table border="1"> <tr> <td></td> <td>7</td> <td>6</td> <td>5</td> <td>4</td> <td>3</td> <td>2</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> </tr> </table>				7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	1
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0																						
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0																						
1	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	1																						
Dependencies	TriggerEn && ContextEn	Generation Scenario	Taken branch with target in TraceStop IP region, MOV CR3 in TraceStop IP region, or WRMSR that sets TraceEn in TraceStop IP region.																											
Description	<p>Indicates when software has entered a user-configured TraceStop region. When the IP matches a TraceStop range while ContextEn and TriggerEn are set, a TraceStop action occurs. This disables tracing by setting IA32_RTIT_STATUS.Stopped, thereby clearing TriggerEn, and causes a TraceStop packet to be generated.</p> <p>The TraceStop action also forces FilterEn to 0. Note that TraceStop may not force a flush of internally buffered packets, and thus trace packet generation should still be manually disabled by clearing IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn before examining output. See Section 35.2.4.3 for more details.</p>																													
Application	<p>If TraceStop follows a TIP.PGD (before the next TIP.PGE), then it was triggered either by the instruction that cleared PacketEn, or it was triggered by some later instruction that executed while FilterEn=0. In either case, the TraceStop can be applied at the IP of the TIP.PGD (if any).</p> <p>If TraceStop follows a TIP.PGE (before the next TIP.PGD), it should be applied at the last known IP.</p>																													

35.4.2.10 Core:Bus Ratio (CBR) Packet

Table 35-29. CBR Packet Definition

Name	Core:Bus Ratio (CBR) Packet																																															
Packet Format	<table border="1"> <tr> <td></td> <td>7</td> <td>6</td> <td>5</td> <td>4</td> <td>3</td> <td>2</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td colspan="8">Core:Bus Ratio</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td colspan="8">Reserved</td> </tr> </table>				7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	2	Core:Bus Ratio								3	Reserved							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0																																								
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0																																								
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1																																								
2	Core:Bus Ratio																																															
3	Reserved																																															
Dependencies	TriggerEn	Generation Scenario	After any frequency change, on C-state wake up, PSB+, and after enabling trace packet generation.																																													
Description	Indicates the core:bus ratio of the processor core. Useful for correlating wall-clock time and cycle time.																																															
Application	The CBR packet indicates the point in the trace when a frequency transition has occurred. On some implementations, software execution will continue during transitions to a new frequency, while on others software execution ceases during frequency transitions. There is not a precise IP provided, to which to bind the CBR packet.																																															

35.4.2.11 Timestamp Counter (TSC) Packet

Table 35-30. TSC Packet Definition

Name	Timestamp Counter (TSC) Packet																																																																																			
Packet Format	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>7</th> <th>6</th> <th>5</th> <th>4</th> <th>3</th> <th>2</th> <th>1</th> <th>0</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td colspan="8">SW TSC[7:0]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td colspan="8">SW TSC[15:8]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td colspan="8">SW TSC[23:16]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td colspan="8">SW TSC[31:24]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td colspan="8">SW TSC[39:32]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td colspan="8">SW TSC[47:40]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7</td> <td colspan="8">SW TSC[55:48]</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>				7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	SW TSC[7:0]								2	SW TSC[15:8]								3	SW TSC[23:16]								4	SW TSC[31:24]								5	SW TSC[39:32]								6	SW TSC[47:40]								7	SW TSC[55:48]							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0																																																																												
0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	1																																																																												
1	SW TSC[7:0]																																																																																			
2	SW TSC[15:8]																																																																																			
3	SW TSC[23:16]																																																																																			
4	SW TSC[31:24]																																																																																			
5	SW TSC[39:32]																																																																																			
6	SW TSC[47:40]																																																																																			
7	SW TSC[55:48]																																																																																			
Dependencies	IA32_RTIT_CTL.TSCEn && TriggerEn	Generation Scenario	Sent after any event that causes the processor clocks or Intel PT timing packets (such as MTC or CYC) to stop, This may include P-state changes, wake from C-state, or clock modulation. Also on transition of TraceEn from 0 to 1.																																																																																	
Description	When enabled by software, a TSC packet provides the lower 7 bytes of the current TSC value, as returned by the RDTSC instruction. This may be useful for tracking wall-clock time, and synchronizing the packets in the log with other timestamped logs.																																																																																			
Application	TSC packet provides a wall-clock proxy of the event which generated it (packet generation enable, sleep state wake, etc). In all cases, TSC does not precisely indicate the time of any control flow packets; however, all preceding packets represent instructions that executed before the indicated TSC time, and all subsequent packets represent instructions that executed after it. There is not a precise IP to which to bind the TSC packet.																																																																																			

35.4.2.12 Mini Time Counter (MTC) Packet

Table 35-31. MTC Packet Definition

Name	Mini time Counter (MTC) Packet																													
Packet Format	<table border="1"> <tr> <td></td> <td>7</td> <td>6</td> <td>5</td> <td>4</td> <td>3</td> <td>2</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td colspan="8">CTC[N+7:N]</td> </tr> </table>				7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	CTC[N+7:N]							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0																						
0	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	1																						
1	CTC[N+7:N]																													
Dependencies	IA32_RTIT_CTL.MTCEn && TriggerEn	Generation Scenario	Periodic, based on the core crystal clock, or Always Running Timer (ART).																											
Description	<p>When enabled by software, an MTC packet provides a periodic indication of wall-clock time. The 8-bit CTC (Common Timestamp Copy) payload value is set to $(ART \gg N) \& FFH$. The frequency of the ART is related to the Maximum Non-Turbo frequency, and the ratio can be determined from CPUID leaf 15H, as described in Section 35.8.3. Software can select the threshold N, which determines the MTC frequency by setting the IA32_RTIT_CTL.MTCFreq field (see Section 35.2.7.2) to a supported value using the lookup enumerated by CPUID (see Section 35.3.1). See Section 35.8.3 for details on how to use the MTC payload to track TSC time.</p> <p>MTC provides 8 bits from the ART, starting with the bit selected by MTCFreq to dictate the frequency of the packet. Whenever that 8-bit range being watched changes, an MTC packet will be sent out with the new value of that 8-bit range. This allows the decoder to keep track of how much wall-clock time has elapsed since the last TSC packet was sent, by keeping track of how many MTC packets were sent and what their value was. The decoder can infer the truncated bits, CTC[N-1:0], are 0 at the time of the MTC packet.</p> <p>There are cases in which MTC packet can be dropped, due to overflow or other micro-architectural conditions. The decoder should be able to recover from such cases by checking the 8-bit payload of the next MTC packet, to determine how many MTC packets were dropped. It is not expected that >256 consecutive MTC packets should ever be dropped.</p>																													
Application	MTC does not precisely indicate the time of any other packet, nor does it bind to any IP. However, all preceding packets represent instructions or events that executed before the indicated ART time, and all subsequent packets represent instructions that executed after, or at the same time as, the ART time.																													

35.4.2.13 TSC/MTC Alignment (TMA) Packet

Table 35-32. TMA Packet Definition

Name	TSC/MTC Alignment (TMA) Packet																																																																										
Packet Format	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>7</th> <th>6</th> <th>5</th> <th>4</th> <th>3</th> <th>2</th> <th>1</th> <th>0</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td colspan="8">CTC[7:0]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td colspan="8">CTC[15:8]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td colspan="7">Reserved</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td colspan="8">FastCounter[7:0]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td colspan="7">Reserved</td> <td>FC[8]</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>				7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	2	CTC[7:0]								3	CTC[15:8]								4	Reserved							0	5	FastCounter[7:0]								6	Reserved							FC[8]
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0																																																																			
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0																																																																			
1	0	1	1	1	0	0	1	1																																																																			
2	CTC[7:0]																																																																										
3	CTC[15:8]																																																																										
4	Reserved							0																																																																			
5	FastCounter[7:0]																																																																										
6	Reserved							FC[8]																																																																			
Dependencies	IA32_RTIT_CTL.MTCEn && IA32_RTIT_CTL.TSCEn && TriggerEn	Generation Scenario	Sent with any TSC packet.																																																																								
Description	The TMA packet serves to provide the information needed to allow the decoder to correlate MTC packets with TSC packets. With this packet, when a MTC packet is encountered, the decoder can determine how many timestamp counter ticks have passed since the last TSC or MTC packet. See Section 35.8.3.2 for details on how to make this calculation.																																																																										
Application	TMA is always sent immediately following a TSC packet, and the payload values are consistent with the TSC payload value. Thus the application of TMA matches that of TSC.																																																																										

35.4.2.14 Cycle Count (CYC) Packet

Table 35-33. Cycle Count Packet Definition

Name	Cycle Count (CYC) Packet																																															
Packet Format	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 10%;"></th> <th style="width: 10%;">7</th> <th style="width: 10%;">6</th> <th style="width: 10%;">5</th> <th style="width: 10%;">4</th> <th style="width: 10%;">3</th> <th style="width: 10%;">2</th> <th style="width: 10%;">1</th> <th style="width: 10%;">0</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td colspan="5">Cycle Counter[4:0]</td> <td>Exp</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td colspan="7">Cycle Counter[11:5]</td> <td>Exp</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td colspan="7">Cycle Counter[18:12]</td> <td>Exp</td> </tr> <tr> <td>...</td> <td colspan="8">... (if Exp = 1 in the previous byte)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>				7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	0	Cycle Counter[4:0]					Exp	1	1	1	Cycle Counter[11:5]							Exp	2	Cycle Counter[18:12]							Exp (if Exp = 1 in the previous byte)							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0																																								
0	Cycle Counter[4:0]					Exp	1	1																																								
1	Cycle Counter[11:5]							Exp																																								
2	Cycle Counter[18:12]							Exp																																								
...	... (if Exp = 1 in the previous byte)																																															
Dependencies	IA32_RTIT_CTL.CYCEn && TriggerEn	Generation Scenario	Can be sent at any time, though a maximum of one CYC packet is sent per core clock cycle. See Section 35.3.6 for CYC-eligible packets.																																													
Description	<p>The Cycle Counter field increments at the same rate as the processor core clock ticks, but with a variable length format (using a trailing EXP bit field) and a range-capped byte length.</p> <p>If the CYC value is less than 32, a 1-byte CYC will be generated, with Exp=0. If the CYC value is between 32 and 4095 inclusive, a 2-byte CYC will be generated, with byte 0 Exp=1 and byte 1 Exp=0. And so on.</p> <p>CYC provides the number of core clocks that have passed since the last CYC packet. CYC can be configured to be sent in every cycle in which an eligible packet is generated, or software can opt to use a threshold to limit the number of CYC packets, at the expense of some precision. These settings are configured using the IA32_RTIT_CTL.CycThresh field (see Section 35.2.7.2). For details on Cycle-Accurate Mode, IPC calculation, etc, see Section 35.3.6.</p> <p>When CycThresh=0, and hence no threshold is in use, then a CYC packet will be generated in any cycle in which any CYC-eligible packet is generated. The CYC packet will precede the other packets generated in the cycle, and provides the precise cycle time of the packets that follow.</p> <p>In addition to these CYC packets generated with other packets, CYC packets can be sent stand-alone. These packets serve simply to update the decoder with the number of cycles passed, and are used to ensure that a wrap of the processor's internal cycle counter doesn't cause cycle information to be lost. These stand-alone CYC packets do not indicate the cycle time of any other packet or operation, and will be followed by another CYC packet before any other CYC-eligible packet is seen.</p> <p>When CycThresh>0, CYC packets are generated only after a minimum number of cycles have passed since the last CYC packet. Once this threshold has passed, the behavior above resumes, where CYC will either be sent in the next cycle that produces other CYC-eligible packets, or could be sent stand-alone.</p> <p>When using CYC thresholds, only the cycle time of the operation (instruction or event) that generates the CYC packet is truly known. Other operations simply have their execution time bounded: they completed at or after the last CYC time, and before the next CYC time.</p>																																															
Application	<p>CYC provides the offset cycle time (since the last CYC packet) for the CYC-eligible packet that follows. If another CYC is encountered before the next CYC-eligible packet, the cycle values should be accumulated and applied to the next CYC-eligible packet.</p> <p>If a CYC packet is generated by a TNT, note that the cycle time provided by the CYC packet applies to the first branch in the TNT packet.</p>																																															

35.4.2.15 VMCS Packet

Table 35-34. VMCS Packet Definition

Name	VMCS Packet																																																																										
Packet Format	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>7</th> <th>6</th> <th>5</th> <th>4</th> <th>3</th> <th>2</th> <th>1</th> <th>0</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td colspan="8">VMCS pointer [19:12]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td colspan="8">VMCS pointer [27:20]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td colspan="8">VMCS pointer [35:28]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td colspan="8">VMCS pointer [43:36]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td colspan="8">VMCS pointer [51:44]</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>				7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	2	VMCS pointer [19:12]								3	VMCS pointer [27:20]								4	VMCS pointer [35:28]								5	VMCS pointer [43:36]								6	VMCS pointer [51:44]							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0																																																																			
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0																																																																			
1	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	0																																																																			
2	VMCS pointer [19:12]																																																																										
3	VMCS pointer [27:20]																																																																										
4	VMCS pointer [35:28]																																																																										
5	VMCS pointer [43:36]																																																																										
6	VMCS pointer [51:44]																																																																										
Dependencies	TriggerEn && ContextEn; Also in VMX operation.	Generation Scenario	Generated on successful VMPTRLD, and optionally on SMM VM exits and VM entries that return from SMM (see Section 35.5).																																																																								
Description	<p>The VMCS packet provides a VMCS pointer for a decoder to determine the transition of code contexts:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On a successful VMPTRLD (i.e., a VMPTRLD that doesn't fault, fail, or VM exit), the VMCS packet contains the logical processor's VMCS pointer established by VMPTRLD (for subsequent execution of a VM guest context). An SMM VM exit loads the logical processor's VMCS pointer with the SMM-transfer VMCS pointer. If the "conceal VMX from PT" VM-exit control is 0 (see Section 35.5.1), a VMCS packet provides this pointer. See Section 35.6 on tracing inside and outside STM. A VM entry that returns from SMM loads the logical processor's VMCS pointer from a field in the SMM-transfer VMCS. If the "conceal VMX from PT" VM-entry control is 0, a VMCS packet provides this pointer. Whether the VM entry is to VMX root operation or VMX non-root operation is indicated by the PIP.NR bit. <p>A VMCS packet generated before a VMCS pointer has been loaded, or after the VMCS pointer has been cleared will set all 64 bits in the VMCS pointer field.</p> <p>VMCS packets will not be seen on processors with IA32_VMX_MISC[bit 14]=0, as these processors do not allow TraceEn to be set in VMX operation.</p>																																																																										
Application	<p>The purpose of the VMCS packet is to help the decoder uniquely identify changes in the executing software context in situations that CR3 may not be unique.</p> <p>When a VMCS packet is encountered, a decoder should do the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If there was a prior unbound FUP (that is, a FUP not preceded by a packet such as MODE.TSX that consumes it, and it hence pairs with a TIP that has not yet been seen), then this VMCS is part of a compound packet event (Section 35.4.1). Find the ending TIP and apply the new VMCS base pointer value to the TIP payload IP. Otherwise, look for the next VMPTRLD, VMRESUME, or VMLAUNCH in the disassembly, and apply the new VMCS base pointer on the next VM entry. <p>For examples of the packets generated by these flows, see Section 35.7.</p>																																																																										

35.4.2.16 Overflow (OVF) Packet

Table 35-35. OVF Packet Definition

Name	Overflow (OVF) Packet																																		
Packet Format	<table border="1"> <tr> <td></td> <td>7</td> <td>6</td> <td>5</td> <td>4</td> <td>3</td> <td>2</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> </tr> </table>									7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	1
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0																										
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0																										
	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	1																										
Dependencies	TriggerEn	Generation Scenario	On resolution of internal buffer overflow																																
Description	OVF simply indicates to the decoder that an internal buffer overflow occurred, and packets were likely lost. If BranchEN= 1, OVF is followed by a FUP or TIP.PGE which will provide the IP at which packet generation resumes. See Section 35.3.8.																																		
Application	When an OVF packet is encountered, the decoder should skip to the IP given in the subsequent FUP or TIP.PGE. The cycle counter for the CYC packet will be reset at the time the OVF packet is sent. Software should reset its call stack depth on overflow, since no RET compression is allowed across an overflow. Similarly, any IP compression that follows the OVF is guaranteed to use as a reference LastIP the IP payload of an IP packet that preceded the overflow.																																		

35.4.2.17 Packet Stream Boundary (PSB) Packet

Table 35-36. PSB Packet Definition

Name	Packet Stream Boundary (PSB) Packet																																																																																																																																																																
Packet Format	<table border="1"> <tr> <td></td> <td>7</td> <td>6</td> <td>5</td> <td>4</td> <td>3</td> <td>2</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>8</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>9</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>10</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>11</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>12</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>13</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>14</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>15</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> </table>									7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	3	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	4	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	5	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	6	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	7	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	8	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	9	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	10	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	11	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	12	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	13	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	14	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	15	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0
		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0																																																																																																																																																								
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0																																																																																																																																																								
	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0																																																																																																																																																								
	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0																																																																																																																																																								
	3	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0																																																																																																																																																								
	4	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0																																																																																																																																																								
	5	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0																																																																																																																																																								
	6	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0																																																																																																																																																								
	7	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0																																																																																																																																																								
	8	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0																																																																																																																																																								
	9	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0																																																																																																																																																								
	10	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0																																																																																																																																																								
	11	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0																																																																																																																																																								
	12	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0																																																																																																																																																								
	13	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0																																																																																																																																																								
14	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0																																																																																																																																																									
15	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0																																																																																																																																																									

Table 35-36. PSB Packet Definition (Contd.)

Dependencies	TriggerEn	Generation Scenario	Periodic, based on the number of output bytes generated while tracing. PSB is sent when IA32_RTIT_STATUS.PacketByteCnt=0, and each time it crosses the software selected threshold after that. May be sent for other micro-architectural conditions as well.
Description	PSB is a unique pattern in the packet output log, and hence serves as a sync point for the decoder. It is a pattern that the decoder can search for in order to get aligned on packet boundaries. This packet is periodic, based on the number of output bytes, as indicated by IA32_RTIT_STATUS.PacketByteCnt. The period is chosen by software, via IA32_RTIT_CTL.PSBFreq (see Section 35.2.7.2). Note, however, that the PSB period is not precise, it simply reflects the average number of output bytes that should pass between PSBs. The processor will make a best effort to insert PSB as quickly after the selected threshold is reached as possible. The processor also may send extra PSB packets for some micro-architectural conditions. PSB also serves as the leading packet for a set of “status-only” packets collectively known as PSB+ (Section 35.3.7).		
Application	When a PSB is seen, the decoder should interpret all following packets as “status only”, until either a PSBEND or OVF packet is encountered. “Status only” implies that the binding and ordering rules to which these packets normally adhere are ignored, and the state they carry can instead be applied to the IP payload in the FUP packet that is included.		

35.4.2.18 PSBEND Packet

Table 35-37. PSBEND Packet Definition

Name	PSBEND Packet																																		
Packet Format	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>7</th> <th>6</th> <th>5</th> <th>4</th> <th>3</th> <th>2</th> <th>1</th> <th>0</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <th>0</th> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <th>1</th> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>									7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	1
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0																											
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0																											
1	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	1																											
Dependencies	TriggerEn	Generation Scenario	Always follows PSB packet, separated by PSB+ packets																																
Description	PSBEND is simply a terminator for the series of “status only” (PSB+) packets that follow PSB (Section 35.3.7).																																		
Application	When a PSBEND packet is seen, the decoder should cease to treat packets as “status only”.																																		

35.4.2.19 Maintenance (MNT) Packet

Table 35-38. MNT Packet Definition

Name	Maintenance (MNT) Packet																																																																																																														
Packet Format	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>7</th> <th>6</th> <th>5</th> <th>4</th> <th>3</th> <th>2</th> <th>1</th> <th>0</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td colspan="8">Payload[7:0]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td colspan="8">Payload[15:8]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td colspan="8">Payload[23:16]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td colspan="8">Payload[31:24]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7</td> <td colspan="8">Payload[39:32]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>8</td> <td colspan="8">Payload[47:40]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>9</td> <td colspan="8">Payload[55:48]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>10</td> <td colspan="8">Payload[63:56]</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>				7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	1	1	2	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	3	Payload[7:0]								4	Payload[15:8]								5	Payload[23:16]								6	Payload[31:24]								7	Payload[39:32]								8	Payload[47:40]								9	Payload[55:48]								10	Payload[63:56]							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0																																																																																																							
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0																																																																																																							
1	1	1	0	0	0	0	1	1																																																																																																							
2	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0																																																																																																							
3	Payload[7:0]																																																																																																														
4	Payload[15:8]																																																																																																														
5	Payload[23:16]																																																																																																														
6	Payload[31:24]																																																																																																														
7	Payload[39:32]																																																																																																														
8	Payload[47:40]																																																																																																														
9	Payload[55:48]																																																																																																														
10	Payload[63:56]																																																																																																														
Dependencies	TriggerEn	Generation Scenario	Implementation specific.																																																																																																												
Description	This packet is generated by hardware, the payload meaning is model-specific.																																																																																																														
Application	Unless a decoder has been extended for a particular family/model/stepping to interpret MNT packet payloads, this packet should simply be ignored. It does not bind to any IP.																																																																																																														

35.4.2.20 PAD Packet

Table 35-39. PAD Packet Definition

Name	PAD Packet																				
Packet Format	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>7</th> <th>6</th> <th>5</th> <th>4</th> <th>3</th> <th>2</th> <th>1</th> <th>0</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>				7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0													
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0													
Dependencies	TriggerEn	Generation Scenario	Implementation specific																		
Description	PAD is simply a NOP packet. Processor implementations may choose to add pad packets to improve packet alignment or for implementation-specific reasons.																				
Application	Ignore PAD packets.																				

35.4.2.21 PTWRITE (PTW) Packet

Table 35-40. PTW Packet Definition

Name	PTW Packet																																																																																																										
Packet Format	<table border="1"> <tr> <td></td> <td>7</td> <td>6</td> <td>5</td> <td>4</td> <td>3</td> <td>2</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>IP</td> <td colspan="2">PayloadBytes</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td colspan="8">Payload[7:0]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td colspan="8">Payload[15:8]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td colspan="8">Payload[23:16]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td colspan="8">Payload[31:24]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td colspan="8">Payload[39:32]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7</td> <td colspan="8">Payload[47:40]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>8</td> <td colspan="8">Payload[55:48]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>9</td> <td colspan="8">Payload[63:56]</td> </tr> </table>									7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	IP	PayloadBytes		1	0	0	1	0	2	Payload[7:0]								3	Payload[15:8]								4	Payload[23:16]								5	Payload[31:24]								6	Payload[39:32]								7	Payload[47:40]								8	Payload[55:48]								9	Payload[63:56]							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0																																																																																																			
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0																																																																																																			
1	IP	PayloadBytes		1	0	0	1	0																																																																																																			
2	Payload[7:0]																																																																																																										
3	Payload[15:8]																																																																																																										
4	Payload[23:16]																																																																																																										
5	Payload[31:24]																																																																																																										
6	Payload[39:32]																																																																																																										
7	Payload[47:40]																																																																																																										
8	Payload[55:48]																																																																																																										
9	Payload[63:56]																																																																																																										
	<p>The PayloadBytes field indicates the number of bytes of payload that follow the header bytes. Encodings are as follows:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>PayloadBytes</th> <th>Bytes of Payload</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>'00</td> <td>4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>'01</td> <td>8</td> </tr> <tr> <td>'10</td> <td>Reserved</td> </tr> <tr> <td>'11</td> <td>Reserved</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>IP bit indicates if a FUP, whose payload will be the IP of the PTWRITE instruction, will follow.</p>								PayloadBytes	Bytes of Payload	'00	4	'01	8	'10	Reserved	'11	Reserved																																																																																									
PayloadBytes	Bytes of Payload																																																																																																										
'00	4																																																																																																										
'01	8																																																																																																										
'10	Reserved																																																																																																										
'11	Reserved																																																																																																										
Dependencies	TriggerEn & ContextEn & FilterEn & PTWEn	Generation Scenario	PTWRITE Instruction																																																																																																								
Description	<p>Contains the value held in the PTWRITE operand. This packet is CYC-eligible, and hence will generate a CYC packet if IA32_RTIT_CTL.CYCEn=1 and any CYC Threshold has been reached.</p>																																																																																																										
Application	<p>Binds to the associated PTWRITE instruction. The IP of the PTWRITE will be provided by a following FUP, when PTW.IP=1.</p>																																																																																																										

35.4.2.22 Execution Stop (EXSTOP) Packet

Table 35-41. EXSTOP Packet Definition

Name	EXSTOP Packet																													
Packet Format	<table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td></td> <td>7</td> <td>6</td> <td>5</td> <td>4</td> <td>3</td> <td>2</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>IP</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> </table> <p>IP bit indicates if a FUP will follow.</p>				7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	IP	1	1	0	0	0	1	0
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0																						
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0																						
1	IP	1	1	0	0	0	1	0																						
Dependencies	TriggerEn & PwrEvtEn	Generation Scenario	C-state entry, P-state change, or other processor clock power-down. Includes : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Entry to C-state deeper than C0.0 ▪ TM1/2 ▪ STPCLK# ▪ Frequency change due to IA32_CLOCK_MODULATION, Turbo 																											
Description	This packet indicates that software execution has stopped due to processor clock powerdown. Later packets will indicate when execution resumes. If EXSTOP is generated while ContextEn is set, the IP bit will be set, and EXSTOP will be followed by a FUP packet containing the IP at which execution stopped. More precisely, this will be the IP of the oldest instruction that has not yet completed. This packet is CYC-eligible, and hence will generate a CYC packet if IA32_RTIT_CTL.CYCEn=1 and any CYC Threshold has been reached.																													
Application	If a FUP follows EXSTOP (hence IP bit set), the EXSTOP can be bound to the FUP IP. Otherwise the IP is not known. Time of powerdown can be inferred from the preceding CYC, if CYCEn=1. Combined with the TSC at the time of wake (if TSCEn=1), this can be used to determine the duration of the powerdown.																													

35.4.2.23 MWAIT Packet

Table 35-42. MWAIT Packet Definition

Name	MWAIT Packet																																																																																																											
Packet Format	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>7</th> <th>6</th> <th>5</th> <th>4</th> <th>3</th> <th>2</th> <th>1</th> <th>0</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td colspan="8">MWAIT Hints[7:0]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td colspan="8">Reserved</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td colspan="8">Reserved</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td colspan="8">Reserved</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td colspan="6">Reserved</td> <td colspan="2">EXT[1:0]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7</td> <td colspan="8">Reserved</td> </tr> <tr> <td>8</td> <td colspan="8">Reserved</td> </tr> <tr> <td>9</td> <td colspan="8">Reserved</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>										7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	2	MWAIT Hints[7:0]								3	Reserved								4	Reserved								5	Reserved								6	Reserved						EXT[1:0]		7	Reserved								8	Reserved								9	Reserved							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0																																																																																																				
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0																																																																																																				
1	1	1	0	0	0	0	1	0																																																																																																				
2	MWAIT Hints[7:0]																																																																																																											
3	Reserved																																																																																																											
4	Reserved																																																																																																											
5	Reserved																																																																																																											
6	Reserved						EXT[1:0]																																																																																																					
7	Reserved																																																																																																											
8	Reserved																																																																																																											
9	Reserved																																																																																																											
Dependencies	TriggerEn & PwrEvtEn & ContextEn	Generation Scenario	MWAIT instruction, or I/O redirection to MWAIT, that complete without fault or VMexit.																																																																																																									
Description	Indicates that an MWAIT operation to C-state deeper than C0.0 completed. The MWAIT hints and extensions passed in by software are exposed in the payload. This packet is CYC-eligible, and hence will generate a CYC packet if IA32_RTIT_CTL.CYCEn=1 and any CYC Threshold has been reached.																																																																																																											
Application	The MWAIT packet should bind to the IP of the next FUP, which will be the IP of the instruction that caused the MWAIT. This FUP will be shared with EXSTOP.																																																																																																											

35.4.2.24 Power Entry (PWRE) Packet

Table 35-43. PWRE Packet Definition

Name	PWRE Packet																																															
Packet Format	<table border="1"> <tr> <td></td> <td>7</td> <td>6</td> <td>5</td> <td>4</td> <td>3</td> <td>2</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>HW</td> <td colspan="7">Reserved</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td colspan="4">Resolved Thread C-State</td> <td colspan="4">Resolved Thread Sub C-State</td> </tr> </table>				7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	2	HW	Reserved							3	Resolved Thread C-State				Resolved Thread Sub C-State			
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0																																								
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0																																								
1	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	0																																								
2	HW	Reserved																																														
3	Resolved Thread C-State				Resolved Thread Sub C-State																																											
Dependencies	TriggerEn & PwrEvtEn	Generation Scenario	Transition to a C-state deeper than C0.0.																																													
Description	<p>Indicates processor entry to the resolved thread C-state and sub C-state indicated. The processor will remain in this C-state until either another PWRE indicates the processor has moved to a C-state deeper than C0.0, or a PWRX packet indicates a return to C0.</p> <p>Note that some CPUs may allow MWAIT to request a deeper C-state than is supported by the core. These deeper C-states may have platform-level implications that differentiate them. However, the PWRE packet will provide only the resolved thread C-state, which will not exceed that supported by the core.</p> <p>If the C-state entry was initiated by hardware, rather than a direct software request (such as MWAIT, HLT, or shut-down), the HW bit will be set to indicate this. Hardware Duty Cycling (see Section 14.5, "Hardware Duty Cycling (HDC)" in the <i>Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3B</i>) is an example of such a case.</p>																																															
Application	<p>When transitioning from C0.0 to a deeper C-state, the PWRE packet will be followed by an EXSTOP. If that EXSTOP packet has the IP bit set, then the following FUP will provide the IP at which the C-state entry occurred. Subsequent PWRE packets generated before the next PWRX should bind to the same IP.</p>																																															

35.4.2.25 Power Exit (PWRX) Packet

Table 35-44. PWRX Packet Definition

Name	PWRX Packet																																																																										
Packet Format	<table border="1"> <tr> <td></td> <td>7</td> <td>6</td> <td>5</td> <td>4</td> <td>3</td> <td>2</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td colspan="4">Last Core C-State</td> <td colspan="4">Deepest Core C-State</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td colspan="4">Reserved</td> <td colspan="4">Wake Reason</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td colspan="8">Reserved</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td colspan="8">Reserved</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td colspan="8">Reserved</td> </tr> </table>				7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	2	Last Core C-State				Deepest Core C-State				3	Reserved				Wake Reason				4	Reserved								5	Reserved								6	Reserved							
	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0																																																																			
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0																																																																			
1	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	0																																																																			
2	Last Core C-State				Deepest Core C-State																																																																						
3	Reserved				Wake Reason																																																																						
4	Reserved																																																																										
5	Reserved																																																																										
6	Reserved																																																																										
Dependencies	TriggerEn & PwrEvtEn	Generation Scenario	Transition from a C-state deeper than C0.0 to C0.																																																																								
Description	<p>Indicates processor return to thread C0 from a C-state deeper than C0.0. The Last Core C-State field provides the MWAIT encoding for the core C-state at the time of the wake. The Deepest Core C-State provides the MWAIT encoding for the deepest core C-state achieved during the sleep session, or since leaving thread C0. MWAIT encodings for C-states can be found in Table 4-11 in the <i>Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 2B</i>. Note that these values reflect only the core C-state, and hence will not exceed the maximum supported core C-state, even if deeper C-states can be requested. The Wake Reason field is one-hot, encoded as follows:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Bit</th> <th>Field</th> <th>Meaning</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Interrupt</td> <td>Wake due to external interrupt received.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Reserved</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>Store to Monitored Address</td> <td>Wake due to store to monitored address.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>HW Wake</td> <td>Wake due to hardware autonomous condition, such as HDC.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>			Bit	Field	Meaning	0	Interrupt	Wake due to external interrupt received.	1	Reserved		2	Store to Monitored Address	Wake due to store to monitored address.	3	HW Wake	Wake due to hardware autonomous condition, such as HDC.																																																									
Bit	Field	Meaning																																																																									
0	Interrupt	Wake due to external interrupt received.																																																																									
1	Reserved																																																																										
2	Store to Monitored Address	Wake due to store to monitored address.																																																																									
3	HW Wake	Wake due to hardware autonomous condition, such as HDC.																																																																									
Application	PWRX will always apply to the same IP as the PWRE. The time of wake can be discerned from (optional) timing packets that precede PWRX.																																																																										

35.5 TRACING IN VMX OPERATION

On processors that IA32_VMX_MISC[bit 14] reports 1, TraceEn can be set in VMX operation. A series of mechanisms exist to allow the VMM to configure tracing based on the desired trace domain, and on the consumer of the trace output. The VMM can configure specific VMX controls to control what virtualization-specific data are included within the trace packets (see Section 35.5.1 for details). The MSR-load areas used by VMX transitions can be employed by the VMM to restrict tracing to the desired context (see Section 35.5.2 for details). These configuration options are summarized in Table 35-45. Table 35-45 covers common Intel PT usages while SMIs are handled by the default SMM treatment. Tracing with SMM Transfer Monitor is described in Section 35.6.

Table 35-45. Common Usages of Intel PT and VMX

Target Domain	Output Consumer	Virtualize Output	Configure VMX Controls	TraceEN Configuration	Save/Restore MSR states of Trace Configuration
System-Wide (VMM + VMs)	Host	N/A	Default setting (no suppression)	WRMSR or XRSTORS by Host	N/A
VMM Only	Intel PT Aware VMM	N/A	Enable suppression	Use VMX MSR-load areas to disable tracing in VM, enable tracing on VM exits	N/A
VM Only	Intel PT Aware VMM	N/A	Enable suppression	Use VMX MSR-load areas to enable tracing in VM, disable tracing on VM exits	N/A
Intel PT Aware Guest(s)	Per Guest	VMM adds trace output virtualization	Enable suppression	Use VMX MSR-load areas to enable tracing in VM, disable tracing on VM exits	VMM updates guest state on VM exits due to XRSTORS

35.5.1 VMX-Specific Packets and VMCS Controls

In all of the usages of VMX and Intel PT, a decoder in the host or VMM context can identify the occurrences of VMX transitions with the aid of VMX-specific packets. There are two kinds of packets relevant to VMX:

- **VMCS packet.** The VMX transitions of individual VMs can be distinguished by a decoder using the VMCS-pointer field in a VMCS packet. A VMCS packet is sent on a successful execution of VMPTRLD, and its VMCS-pointer field stores the VMCS pointer loaded by that execution. See Section 35.4.2.15 for details.
- **The NR (non-root) bit in a PIP packet.** Normally, the NR bit is set in any PIP packet generated in VMX non-root operation. In addition, PIP packets are generated with each VM entry and VM exit. Thus a transition of the NR bit from 0 to 1 indicates the occurrence of a VM entry, and a transition of 1 to 0 indicates the occurrence of a VM exit.

There are VMX controls that a VMM can set to conceal some of this VMX-specific information (by suppressing its recording) and thereby prevent it from leaking across virtualization boundaries. There is one of these controls (each of which is called “conceal VMX from PT”) of each type of VMX control.

Table 35-46. VMX Controls For Intel Processor Trace

Type of VMX Control	Bit Position ¹	Value	Behavior
Secondary processor-based VM-execution control	19	0	Each PIP generated in VM non-root operation will set the NR bit. PSB+ in VMX non-root operation will include the VMCS packet, to ensure that the decoder knows which guest is currently in use.
		1	Each PIP generated in VMX non-root operation will clear the NR bit. PSB+ in VMX non-root operation will not include the VMCS packet.
VM-exit control	24	0	Each VM exit generates a PIP in which the NR bit is clear. In addition, SMM VM exits generate VMCS packets.
		1	VM exits do not generate PIPs, and no VMCS packets are generated on SMM VM exits.
VM-entry control	17	0	Each VM entry generates a PIP in which the NR bit is set (except VM entries that return from SMM to VMX root operation). In addition, VM entries that return from SMM generate VMCS packets.
		1	VM entries do not generate PIPs, and no VMCS packets are generated on VM entries that return from SMM.

NOTES:

1. These are the positions of the control bits in the relevant VMX control fields.

The 0-settings of these VMX controls enable all VMX-specific packet information. The scenarios that would use these default settings also do not require the VMM to use VMX MSR-load areas to enable and disable trace-packet generation across VMX transitions.

If IA32_VMX_MISC[bit 14] reports 0, the 1-settings of the VMX controls in Table 35-46 are not supported, and VM entry will fail on any attempt to set them.

35.5.2 Managing Trace Packet Generation Across VMX Transitions

In tracing scenarios that collect packets for both VMX root operation and VMX non-root operation, a host executive can manage the MSRs associated with trace packet generation directly. The states of these MSRs need not be modified using MSR load areas across VMX transitions.

For tracing scenarios that collect packets only within VMX root operation or only within VMX non-root operation, the VMM can use the MSR load areas to toggle IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn.

35.5.2.1 System-Wide Tracing

When a host or VMM configures Intel PT to collect trace packets of the entire system, it can leave the relevant VMX controls clear to allow VMX-specific packets to provide information across VMX transitions. The VMX MSR-load areas need not be used to load Intel PT MSRs on VM exits or VM entries.

The decoder will desire to identify the occurrence of VMX transitions. The packets of interests to a decoder are shown in Table 35-47.

Table 35-47. Packets on VMX Transitions (System-Wide Tracing)

Event	Packets	Description
VM exit	FUP(GuestIP)	The FUP indicates at which point in the guest flow the VM exit occurred. This is important, since VM exit can be an asynchronous event. The IP will match that written into the VMCS.
	PIP(HostCR3, NR=0)	The PIP packet provides the new host CR3 value, as well as indication that the logical processor is entering VMX root operation. This allows the decoder to identify the change of executing context from guest to host and load the appropriate set of binaries to continue decode.
	TIP(HostIP)	The TIP indicates the destination IP, the IP of the first instruction to be executed in VMX root operation. Note, this packet could be preceded by a MODE.Exec packet (Section 35.4.2.8). This is generated only in cases where CS.D or (CS.L & EFER.LMA) change during the transition.
VM entry	PIP(GuestCR3, NR=1)	The PIP packet provides the new guest CR3 value, as well as indication that the logical processor is entering VMX non-root operation. This allows the decoder to identify the change of executing context from host to guest and load the appropriate set of binaries to continue decode.
	TIP(GuestIP)	The TIP indicates the destination IP, the IP of the first instruction to be executed in VMX non-root operation. This should match the RIP loaded from the VMCS. Note, this packet could be preceded by a MODE.Exec packet (Section 35.4.2.8). This is generated only in cases where CS.D or (CS.L & EFER.LMA) change during the transition.

Since the VMX controls that suppress packet generation are cleared, a VMCS packet will be included in all PSB+ for this usage scenario. Additionally, VMPTRLD will generate such a packet. Thus the decoder can distinguish the execution context of different VMs.

When the host VMM configures a system to collect trace packets in this scenario, it should emulate CPUID to report CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EBX[bit 26] as 0 to guests, indicating to guests that Intel PT is not available.

VMX TSC Manipulation

The TSC packets generated while in VMX non-root operation will include any changes resulting from the use of a VMM's use of the TSC offsetting or TSC scaling VMX controls (see Chapter 25, "VMX Non-Root Operation"). In this system-wide usage model, the decoder may need to account for the effect of per-VM adjustments in the TSC

packets generated in VMX non-root operation and the absence of TSC adjustments in TSC packets generated in VMX root operation. The VMM can supply this information to the decoder.

35.5.2.2 Host-Only Tracing

When trace packets in VMX non-root operation are not desired, the VMM can use the VM-entry MSR-load area to load IA32_RTIT_CTL (clearing TraceEn) to disable trace-packet generation in guests, and use the VM-exit MSR-load area to load IA32_RTIT_CTL to set TraceEn.

When tracing only the host, the decoder does not need information about the guests, and the VMX controls for suppressing VMX-specific packets can be set to reduce the packets generated. VMCS packets will still be generated on execution of VMPTRLD and in PSB+ generated in the host, but these will be unused by the decoder.

The packets of interests to a decoder when trace packets are collected for host-only tracing are shown in Table 35-48.

Table 35-48. Packets on VMX Transitions (Host-Only Tracing)

Event	Packets	Description
VM exit	TIP.PGE(HostIP)	The TIP.PGE indicates that trace packet generation is enabled and gives the IP of the first instruction to be executed in VMX root operation. Note, this packet could be preceded by a MODE.Exec packet (Section 35.4.2.8). This is generated only in cases where CS.D or (CS.L & EFER.LMA) change during the transition.
VM entry	TIP.PGD()	The TIP indicates that trace packet generation was disabled. This ensure that all buffered packets are flushed out.

35.5.2.3 Guest-Only Tracing

A VMM can configure trace-packet generation while in VMX non-root operation for guests executing normally. This is accomplished by utilizing the VMX MSR-load areas on VM exits (see Section 24.7.2, “VM-Exit Controls for MSRs”) and VM entries (see Section 24.8.2, “VM-Entry Controls for MSRs”) to limit trace-packet generation to the guest environment.

For this usage, the VM-entry MSR load area is programmed to enable trace packet generation; the VM-exit MSR load area is used to clear IA32_RTIT_CTL.TraceEn so as to disable trace-packet generation in the host. Further, if it is preferred that the guest packet stream contain no indication that execution was in VMX non-root operation, the VMM should set to 1 all the VMX controls enumerated in Table 35-46.

35.5.2.4 Virtualization of Guest Output Packet Streams

Each Intel PT aware guest OS can produce one or more output packet streams to destination addresses specified as guest physical address using by context-switching IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_BASE within the guest. The processor generates trace packets to the physical address specified in IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_BASE, and those specified in the ToPA tables. Thus, a VMM that supports Intel PT aware guest OS may wish to virtualize the output configurations of IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_BASE and ToPA for each trace configuration state of all the guests.

35.5.2.5 Emulation of Intel PT Traced State

If a VMM emulates an element of processor state by taking a VM exit on reads and/or writes to that piece of state, and the state element impacts Intel PT packet generation or values, it may be incumbent upon the VMM to insert or modify the output trace data.

If a VM exit is taken on a guest write to CR3 (including “MOV CR3” as well as task switches), the PIP packet normally generated on the CR3 write will be missing.

To avoid decoder confusion when the guest trace is decoded, the VMM should emulate the missing PIP by writing it into the guest output buffer. If the guest CR3 value is manipulated, the VMM may also need to manipulate the IA32_RTIT_CR3_MATCH value, in order to ensure the trace behavior matches the guest's expectation.

Similarly, if a VMM emulates the TSC value by taking a VM exit on RDTSC, the TSC packets generated in the trace may mismatch the TSC values returned by the VMM on RDTSC. To ensure that the trace can be properly aligned

with software logs based on RDTSC, the VMM should either make corresponding modifications to the TSC packet values in the guest trace, or use mechanisms such as TSC offsetting or TSC scaling in place of exiting.

35.5.2.6 TSC Scaling

When TSC scaling is enabled for a guest using Intel PT, the VMM should ensure that the value of Maximum Non-Turbo Ratio[15:8] in MSR_PLATFORM_INFO (MSR 0CEH) and the TSC/"core crystal clock" ratio (EBX/EAX) in CPUID leaf 15H are set in a manner consistent with the resulting TSC rate that will be visible to the VM. This will allow the decoder to properly apply TSC packets, MTC packets (based on the core crystal clock or ART, whose frequency is indicated by CPUID leaf 15H), and CBR packets (which indicate the ratio of the processor frequency to the Max Non-Turbo frequency). Absent this, or separate indication of the scaling factor, the decoder will be unable to properly track time in the trace. See Section 35.8.3 for details on tracking time within an Intel PT trace.

35.5.2.7 Failed VM Entry

The packets generated by a failed VM entry depend both on the VMCS configuration, as well as on the type of failure. The results to expect are summarized in the table below. Note that packets in *italics* may or may not be generated, depending on implementation choice, and the point of failure.

Table 35-49. Packets on a Failed VM Entry

Usage Model	Entry Configuration	Early Failure (fall through to next IP)	Late Failure (VM-exit like)
System-Wide	No use of VM-entry MSR-load area	TIP (NextIP)	PIP(Guest CR3, NR=1), TraceEn 0->1 Packets (See Section 35.2.7.3), PIP(HostCR3, NR=0), TIP(HostIP)
VMM Only	VM-entry MSR-load area used to clear TraceEn	TIP (NextIP)	TraceEn 0->1 Packets (See Section 35.2.7.3), TIP(HostIP)
VM Only	VM-entry MSR-load area used to set TraceEn	None	None

35.5.2.8 VMX Abort

VMX abort conditions take the processor into a shutdown state. On a VM exit that leads to VMX abort, some packets (FUP, PIP) may be generated, but any expected TIP, TIP.PGE, or TIP.PGD may be dropped.

35.6 TRACING AND SMM TRANSFER MONITOR (STM)

The SMM-transfer monitor (STM) is a VMM that operates inside SMM while in VMX root operation. An STM operates in conjunction with an executive monitor. The latter operates outside SMM and in VMX root operation. Transitions from the executive monitor or its VMs to the STM are called SMM VM exits. The STM returns from SMM via a VM entry to the VM in VMX non-root operation or the executive monitor in VMX root operation.

Intel PT supports tracing in an STM similar to tracing support for VMX operation as described above in Section 35.5. As a result, on a SMM VM exit resulting from #SMI, TraceEn is not saved and then cleared. Software can save the state of the trace configuration MSRs and clear TraceEn using the MSR load/save lists.

35.7 PACKET GENERATION SCENARIOS

Table 35-50 and Table 35-52 illustrate the packets generated in various scenarios. In the heading row, PacketEn is abbreviated as PktEn, ContextEn as CntxEn. Note that this assumes that TraceEn=1 in IA32_RTIT_CTL, while TriggerEn=1 and Error=0 in IA32_RTIT_STATUS, unless otherwise specified. Entries that do not matter in packet generation are marked "D.C." Packets followed by a "?" imply that these packets depend on additional factors, which are listed in the "Other Dependencies" column.

The following acronyms are used in the packet examples below:

- CLIP - Current LIP
- NLIP - Next Sequential LIP
- BLIP - Branch Target LIP

In Table 35-50, PktEn is evaluated based on TiggerEn & ContextEn & FilterEn & BranchEn.

Table 35-50. Packet Generation under Different Enable Conditions

Case	Operation	PktEn Before	PktEn After	CntxEn After	Other Dependencies	Packets Output
1a	Normal non-jump operation	0	0	D.C.		None
1b	Normal non-jump operation	1	1	1		None
2a	WRMSR/XRSTORS/RSM that changes TraceEn 0 -> 1, with PacketByteCnt >0	0	0	D.C.	*TSC if TSCEn=1; *TMA if TSCEn=MTCEn=1	TSC?, TMA?, CBR
2b	WRMSR/XRSTORS/RSM that changes TraceEn 0 -> 1, with PacketByteCnt =0	0	0	D.C.	*TSC if TSCEn=1; *TMA if TSCEn=MTCEn=1	PSB, PSBEND (see Section 35.4.2.17)
2d	WRMSR/XRSTORS/RSM that changes TraceEn 0 -> 1, with PacketByteCnt >0	0	1	1	TSC if TSCEn=1; TMA if TSCEn=MTCEn=1	TSC?, TMA?, CBR, MODE.Exec, TIP.PGE(NLIP)
2e	WRMSR/XRSTORS/RSM that changes TraceEn 0 -> 1, with PacketByteCnt =0	0	1	1		MODE.Exec, TIP.PGE(NLIP), PSB, PSBEND (see Section 35.4.2.8, 35.4.2.7, 35.4.2.13, 35.4.2.15, 35.4.2.17)
3a	WRMSR that changes TraceEn 1 -> 0	0	0	D.C.		None
3b	WRMSR that changes TraceEn 1 -> 0	1	0	D.C.		FUP(CLIP), TIP.PGD()
5a	MOV to CR3	0	0	0		None
5f	MOV to CR3	0	0	1	TraceStop if executed in a TraceStop region	PIP(NewCR3,NR?), TraceStop?
5b	MOV to CR3	0	1	1	*PIP.NR=1 if not in root operation and the "conceal VMX from PT" VM-execution control is 0 *MODE.Exec if the mode has changed since the last MODE.Exec, or if no MODE.Exec since last PSB	PIP(NewCR3, NR?), MODE.Exec?, TIP.PGE(NLIP)
5c	MOV to CR3	1	0	0		TIP.PGD()
5e	MOV to CR3	1	0	1	*PIP.NR=1 if not in root operation and the "conceal VMX from PT" VM-execution control is 0 *TraceStop if executed in a TraceStop region	PIP(NewCR3, NR?), TIP.PGD(NLIP), TraceStop?
5d	MOV to CR3	1	1	1	*PIP.NR=1 if not in root operation and the "conceal VMX from PT" VM-execution control is 0	PIP(NewCR3, NR?)
6a	Unconditional direct near jump	0	0	D.C.		None
6b	Unconditional direct near jump	1	0	1	TraceStop if BLIP is in a TraceStop region	TIP.PGD(BLIP), TraceStop?

Table 35-50. Packet Generation under Different Enable Conditions (Contd.)

Case	Operation	PktEn Before	PktEn After	CntxEn After	Other Dependencies	Packets Output
6c	Unconditional direct near jump	0	1	1	MODE.Exec if the mode has changed since the last MODE.Exec, or if no MODE.Exec since last PSB	MODE.Exec?, TIP.PGE(BLIP)
6d	Unconditional direct near jump	1	1	1		None
7a	Conditional taken jump or compressed RET that does not fill up the internal TNT buffer	0	0	D.C.		None
7b	Conditional taken jump or compressed RET	0	1	1	MODE.Exec if the mode has changed since the last MODE.Exec, or if no MODE.Exec since last PSB	MODE.Exec?, TIP.PGE(BLIP)
7e	Conditional taken jump or compressed RET, with empty TNT buffer	1	0	1	TraceStop if BLIP is in a TraceStop region	TIP.PGD(), TraceStop?
7f	Conditional taken jump or compressed RET, with non-empty TNT buffer	1	0	1	TraceStop if BLIP is in a TraceStop region	TNT, TIP.PGD(), TraceStop?
7d	Conditional taken jump or compressed RET that fills up the internal TNT buffer	1	1	1		TNT
8a	Conditional non-taken jump	0	0	D.C.		None
8d	Conditional not-taken jump that fills up the internal TNT buffer	1	1	1		TNT
9a	Near indirect jump (JMP, CALL, or uncompressed RET)	0	0	D.C.		None
9b	Near indirect jump (JMP, CALL, or uncompressed RET)	0	1	1	MODE.Exec if the mode has changed since the last MODE.Exec, or if no MODE.Exec since last PSB	MODE.Exec?, TIP.PGE(BLIP)
9c	Near indirect jump (JMP, CALL, or uncompressed RET)	1	0	1	TraceStop if BLIP is in a TraceStop region	TIP.PGD(BLIP), TraceStop?
9d	Near indirect jump (JMP, CALL, or uncompressed RET)	1	1	1		TIP(BLIP)
10a	Far Branch (CALL/JMP/RET)	0	0	0		None
10f	Far Branch (CALL/JMP/RET)	0	0	1	*PIP if CR3 is updated (i.e., task switch), and OS=1; *PIP.NR=1 if destination is not root operation and the "conceal VMX from PT" VM-execution control is 0; *TraceStop if BLIP is in a TraceStop region	PIP(new CR3, NR?), TraceStop?

Table 35-50. Packet Generation under Different Enable Conditions (Contd.)

Case	Operation	PktEn Before	PktEn After	CntxEn After	Other Dependencies	Packets Output
10b	Far Branch (CALL/JMP/RET)	0	1	1	*PIP if CR3 is updated (i.e., task switch), and OS=1; *PIP.NR=1 if destination is not root operation and the “conceal VMX from PT” VM-execution control is 0; *MODE.Exec if the mode has changed since the last MODE.Exec, or if no MODE.Exec since last PSB	PIP(new CR3, NR?), MODE.Exec?, TIP.PGE(BLIP)
10c	Far Branch (CALL/JMP/RET)	1	0	0		TIP.PGD()
10d	Far Branch (CALL/JMP/RET)	1	0	1	*PIP if CR3 is updated (i.e., task switch), and OS=1; *PIP.NR=1 if destination is not root operation and the “conceal VMX from PT” VM-execution control is 0; *TraceStop if BLIP is in a TraceStop region	PIP(new CR3, NR?), TIP.PGD(BLIP), TraceStop?
10e	Far Branch (CALL/JMP/RET)	1	1	1	*PIP if CR3 is updated (i.e., task switch), and OS=1 *PIP.NR=1 if destination is not root operation and the “conceal VMX from PT” VM-execution control is 0; * MODE.Exec if the operation changes CS.L/D or IA32_EFER.LMA	PIP(NewCR3, NR?)?, MODE.Exec?, TIP(BLIP)
11a	HW Interrupt	0	0	0		None
11f	HW Interrupt	0	0	1	*PIP if CR3 is updated (i.e., task switch), and OS=1; *PIP.NR=1 if destination is not root operation and the “conceal VMX from PT” VM-execution control is 0; *TraceStop if BLIP is in a TraceStop region	PIP(new CR3, NR?), Trace-Stop?
11b	HW Interrupt	0	1	1	*PIP if CR3 is updated (i.e., task switch), and OS=1; *PIP.NR=1 if destination is not root operation and the “conceal VMX from PT” VM-execution control is 0; * MODE.Exec if the mode has changed since the last MODE.Exec, or if no MODE.Exec since last PSB	PIP(new CR3, NR?), MODE.Exec?, TIP.PGE(BLIP)
11c	HW Interrupt	1	0	0		FUP(NLIP), TIP.PGD()

Table 35-50. Packet Generation under Different Enable Conditions (Contd.)

Case	Operation	PktEn Before	PktEn After	CntxEn After	Other Dependencies	Packets Output
11d	HW Interrupt	1	0	1	* PIP if CR3 is updated (i.e., task switch), and OS=1 *PIP.NR=1 if destination is not root operation and the "conceal VMX from PT" VM-execution control is 0; *TraceStop if BLIP is in a TraceStop region	FUP(NLIP), PIP(NewCR3, NR?)?, TIP.PGD(BLIP), TraceStop?
11e	HW Interrupt	1	1	1	* PIP if CR3 is updated (i.e., task switch), and OS=1 *PIP.NR=1 if destination is not root operation and the "conceal VMX from PT" VM-execution control is 0; * MODE.Exec if the operation changes CS.L/D or IA32_EFER.LMA	FUP(NLIP), PIP(NewCR3, NR?)?, MODE.Exec?, TIP(BLIP)
12a	SW Interrupt	0	0	0		None
12f	SW Interrupt	0	0	1	* PIP if CR3 is updated (i.e., task switch), and OS=1 *PIP.NR=1 if destination is not root operation and the "conceal VMX from PT" VM-execution control is 0; *TraceStop if BLIP is in a TraceStop region	PIP(NewCR3, NR?)?, TraceStop?
12b	SW Interrupt	0	1	1	* PIP if CR3 is updated (i.e., task switch), and OS=1 *PIP.NR=1 if destination is not root operation and the "conceal VMX from PT" VM-execution control is 0; *MODE.Exec if the mode has changed since the last MODE.Exec, or if no MODE.Exec since last PSB	PIP(NewCR3, NR?)?, MODE.Exec?, TIP.PGE(BLIP)
12c	SW Interrupt	1	0	0		FUP(CLIP), TIP.PGD()
12d	SW Interrupt	1	0	1	* PIP if CR3 is updated (i.e., task switch), and OS=1 *PIP.NR=1 if destination is not root operation and the "conceal VMX from PT" VM-execution control is 0; *TraceStop if BLIP is in a TraceStop region	FUP(CLIP), PIP(NewCR3, NR?)?, TIP.PGD(BLIP), TraceStop?

Table 35-50. Packet Generation under Different Enable Conditions (Contd.)

Case	Operation	PktEn Before	PktEn After	CntxEn After	Other Dependencies	Packets Output
12e	SW Interrupt	1	1	1	* PIP if CR3 is updated (i.e., task switch), and OS=1 *PIP.NR=1 if destination is not root operation and the "conceal VMX from PT" VM-execution control is 0; * MODE.Exec if the operation changes CS.L/D or IA32_EFER.LMA	FUP(CLIP), PIP(NewCR3, NR?)?, MODE.Exec?, TIP(BLIP)
13a	Exception/Fault	0	0	0		None
13f	Exception/Fault	0	0	1	* PIP if CR3 is updated (i.e., task switch), and OS=1 *PIP.NR=1 if destination is not root operation and the "conceal VMX from PT" VM-execution control is 0; *TraceStop if BLIP is in a TraceStop region	PIP(NewCR3, NR?)?, TraceStop?
13b	Exception/Fault	0	1	1	* PIP if CR3 is updated (i.e., task switch), and OS=1 *PIP.NR=1 if destination is not root operation and the "conceal VMX from PT" VM-execution control is 0; *MODE.Exec if the mode has changed since the last MODE.Exec, or if no MODE.Exec since last PSB	PIP(NewCR3, NR?)?, MODE.Exec?, TIP.PGE(BLIP)
13c	Exception/Fault	1	0	0		FUP(CLIP), TIP.PGD()
13d	Exception/Fault	1	0	1	* PIP if CR3 is updated (i.e., task switch), and OS=1 *PIP.NR=1 if destination is not root operation and the "conceal VMX from PT" VM-execution control is 0; *TraceStop if BLIP is in a TraceStop region	FUP(CLIP), PIP(NewCR3, NR?)?, TIP.PGD(BLIP), TraceStop?
13e	Exception/Fault	1	1	1	* PIP if CR3 is updated (i.e., task switch), and OS=1 *PIP.NR=1 if destination is not root operation and the "conceal VMX from PT" VM-execution control is 0; * MODE.Exec if the operation changes CS.L/D or IA32_EFER.LMA	FUP(CLIP), PIP(NewCR3, NR?)?, MODE.Exec?, TIP(BLIP)
14a	SMI (TraceEn cleared)	0	0	D.C.		None
14b	SMI (TraceEn cleared)	1	0	0		FUP(SMRAM.LIP), TIP.PGD()
14f	SMI (TraceEn cleared)	1	0	1		NA

Table 35-50. Packet Generation under Different Enable Conditions (Contd.)

Case	Operation	PktEn Before	PktEn After	CntxEn After	Other Dependencies	Packets Output
14c	SMI (TraceEn cleared)	1	1	1		NA
15a	RSM, TraceEn restored to 0	0	0	0		None
15b	RSM, TraceEn restored to 1	0	0	D.C.		See WRMSR cases for packets on enable
15c	RSM, TraceEn restored to 1	0	1	1		See WRMSR cases for packets on enable. FUP/TIP.PGE IP is SMRAM.LIP
15e	RSM (TraceEn=1, goes to shutdown)	1	0	0		None
15f	RSM (TraceEn=1, goes to shutdown)	1	0	1		None
15d	RSM (TraceEn=1, goes to shutdown)	1	1	1		None
16i	VM exit	0	0	0		None
16a	VM exit	0	0	1	*PIP if OF=1 and the "conceal VMX from PT" VM-exit control is 0; *TraceStop if VMCSH.LIP is in a TraceStop region	PIP(HostCR3, NR=0)?, TraceStop?
16b	VM exit, MSR list sets TraceEn=1	0	0	0		See WRMSR cases for packets on enable. FUP IP is VMCSH.LIP
16c	VM exit, MSR list sets TraceEn=1	0	1	1		See WRMSR cases for packets on enable. FUP/TIP.PGE IP is VMCSH.LIP
16e	VM exit	0	1	1	*PIP if OF=1 and the "conceal VMX from PT" VM-exit control is 0; *MODE.Exec if the value is different, since last TIP.PGD	PIP(HostCR3, NR=0)?, MODE.Exec?, TIP.PGE(VMCSH.LIP)
16f	VM exit, MSR list clears TraceEn=0	1	0	0	*PIP if OF=1 and the "conceal VMX from PT" VM-exit control is 0;	FUP(VMCSG.LIP), PIP(HostCR3, NR=0)?, TIP.PGD
16j	VM exit, ContextEN 1->0	1	0	0		FUP(VMCSG.LIP), TIP.PGD
16g	VM exit	1	0	1	*PIP if OF=1 and the "conceal VMX from PT" VM-exit control is 0; *TraceStop if VMCSH.LIP is in a TraceStop region	FUP(VMCSG.LIP), PIP(HostCR3, NR=0)?, TIP.PGD(VMCSH.LIP), TraceStop?
16h	VM exit	1	1	1	*PIP if OF=1 and the "conceal VMX from PT" VM-exit control is 0; *MODE.Exec if the value is different, since last TIP.PGD	FUP(VMCSG.LIP), PIP(HostCR3, NR=0)?, MODE.Exec, TIP(VMCSH.LIP)
17a	VM entry	0	0	0		None

Table 35-50. Packet Generation under Different Enable Conditions (Contd.)

Case	Operation	PktEn Before	PktEn After	CntxEn After	Other Dependencies	Packets Output
17b	VM entry	0	0	1	*PIP if OF=1 and the “conceal VMX from PT” VM-entry control is 0; *TraceStop if VMCSg.LIP is in a TraceStop region	PIP(GuestCR3, NR=1)?, TraceStop?
17c	VM entry, MSR load list sets TraceEn=1	0	0	1		See WRMSR cases for packets on enable. FUP IP is VMCSg.LIP
17d	VM entry, MSR load list sets TraceEn=1	0	1	1		See WRMSR cases for packets on enable. FUP/TIP.PGE IP is VMCSg.LIP
17f	VM entry, FilterEN 0->1	0	1	1	*PIP if OF=1 and the “conceal VMX from PT” VM-entry control is 0; *MODE.Exec if the value is different, since last TIP.PGD	PIP(GuestCR3, NR=1)?, MODE.Exec?, TIP.PGE(VMCSg.LIP)
17j	VM entry, ContextEN 0->1	0	1	1	*MODE.Exec if the value is different, since last TIP.PGD	MODE.Exec, TIP.PGE(VMCSg.LIP)
17g	VM entry, MSR list clears TraceEn=0	1	0	0	*PIP if OF=1 and the “conceal VMX from PT” VM-entry control is 0;	PIP(GuestCR3, NR=1)?, TIP.PGD
17h	VM entry	1	0	1	*PIP if OF=1 and the “conceal VMX from PT” VM-entry control is 0; *TraceStop if VMCSg.LIP is in a TraceStop region	PIP(GuestCR3, NR=1)?, TIP.PGD(VMCSg.LIP), TraceStop?
17i	VM entry	1	1	1	*PIP if OF=1 and the “conceal VMX from PT” VM-entry control is 0; *MODE.Exec if the value is different, since last TIP.PGD	PIP(GuestCR3, NR=1)?, MODE.Exec, TIP(VMCSg.LIP)
20a	EENTER/ERESUME to non-debug enclave	0	0	0		None
20c	EENTER/ERESUME to non-debug enclave	1	0	0		FUP(CLIP), TIP.PGD()
21a	EEXIT from non-debug enclave	0	0	D.C.		None
21b	EEXIT from non-debug enclave	0	1	1	*MODE.Exec if the value is different, since last TIP.PGD	MODE.Exec?, TIP.PGE(BLIP)
22a	AEX/EEE from non-debug enclave	0	0	D.C.		None
22b	AEX/EEE from non-debug enclave	0	1	1	*MODE.Exec if the value is different, since last TIP.PGD	MODE.Exec?, TIP.PGE(AEP.LIP)
23a	EENTER/ERESUME to debug enclave	0	0	D.C.		None
23b	EENTER/ERESUME to debug enclave	0	1	1	*MODE.Exec if the value is different, since last TIP.PGD	MODE.Exec?, TIP.PGE(BLIP)
23c	EENTER/ERESUME to debug enclave	1	0	0		FUP(CLIP), TIP.PGD()

Table 35-50. Packet Generation under Different Enable Conditions (Contd.)

Case	Operation	PktEn Before	PktEn After	CntxEn After	Other Dependencies	Packets Output
23d	EENTER/ERESUME to debug enclave	0	0	1	*TraceStop if BLIP is in a TraceStop region	FUP(CLIP), TIP.PGD(BLIP), TraceStop?
23e	EENTER/ERESUME to debug enclave	1	1	1		FUP(CLIP), TIP(BLIP)
24f	EEXIT from debug enclave	0	0	D.C.		None
24b	EEXIT from debug enclave	0	1	1	*MODE.Exec if the value is different, since last TIP.PGD	MODE.Exec?, TIP.PGE(BLIP)
24d	EEXIT from debug enclave	1	0	1	*TraceStop if BLIP is in a TraceStop region	FUP(CLIP), TIP.PGD(BLIP), TraceStop?
24e	EEXIT from debug enclave	1	1	1		FUP(CLIP), TIP(BLIP)
25a	AEX/EEE from debug enclave	0	0	D.C.		None
25b	AEX/EEE from debug enclave	0	1	1	*MODE.Exec if the value is different, since last TIP.PGD	MODE.Exec?, TIP.PGE(AEP.LIP)
25d	AEX/EEE from debug enclave	1	0	1	*For AEX, FUP IP could be NLIP, for trap-like events	FUP(CLIP), TIP.PGD(AEP.LIP)
25e	AEX/EEE from debug enclave	1	1	1	*MODE.Exec if the value is different, since last TIP.PGD *For AEX, FUP IP could be NLIP, for trap-like events	FUP(CLIP), MODE.Exec?, TIP(AEP.LIP)
26a	XBEGIN/XACQUIRE	0	0	D.C.		None
26d	XBEGIN/XACQUIRE that does not set InTX	1	1	1		None
26e	XBEGIN/XACQUIRE that sets InTX	1	1	1		MODE.TSX(InTX=1, TXAbort=0), FUP(CLIP)
27a	XEND/XRELEASE	0	0	D.C.		None
27d	XEND/XRELEASE that does not clear InTX	1	1	1		None
27e	XEND/XRELEASE that clears InTX	1	1	1		MODE.TSX(InTX=0, TXAbort=0), FUP(CLIP)
28a	XABORT(Async XAbort, or other)	0	0	0		None
28e	XABORT(Async XAbort, or other)	0	0	1	*TraceStop if BLIP is in a TraceStop region	MODE.TSX(InTX=0, TXAbort=1), TraceStop?
28b	XABORT(Async XAbort, or other)	0	1	1		MODE.TSX(InTX=0, TXAbort=1), TIP.PGE(BLIP)
28c	XABORT(Async XAbort, or other)	1	0	1	*TraceStop if BLIP is in a TraceStop region	MODE.TSX(InTX=0, TXAbort=1), TIP.PGD(BLIP), TraceStop?
28d	XABORT(Async XAbort, or other)	1	1	1		MODE.TSX(InTX=0, TXAbort=1), FUP(CLIP), TIP(BLIP)
30a	INIT (BSP)	0	0	0		None
30b	INIT (BSP)	0	0	1	*TraceStop if RESET.LIP is in a TraceStop region	PIP(0), TraceStop?

Table 35-50. Packet Generation under Different Enable Conditions (Contd.)

Case	Operation	PktEn Before	PktEn After	CntxEn After	Other Dependencies	Packets Output
30c	INIT (BSP)	0	1	1	* MODE.Exec if the value is different, since last TIP.PGD	MODE.Exec?, PIP(0), TIP.PGE(ResetLIP)
30d	INIT (BSP)	1	0	0		FUP(NLIP), TIP.PGD()
30e	INIT (BSP)	1	0	1	* PIP if OS=1 *TraceStop if RESET.LIP is in a TraceStop region	FUP(NLIP), PIP(0), TIP.PGD, TraceStop?
30f	INIT (BSP)	1	1	1	* MODE.Exec if the mode has changed since the last MODE.Exec, or if no MODE.Exec since last PSB * PIP if OS=1	FUP(NLIP), PIP(0)?, MODE.Exec?, TIP(ResetLIP)
31a	INIT (AP, goes to wait-for-SIPI)	0	D.C.	D.C.		None
31b	INIT (AP, goes to wait-for-SIPI)	1	D.C.	D.C.	* PIP if OS=1	FUP(NLIP), PIP(0)
32a	SIPI	0	0	0		None
32c	SIPI	0	1	1	* MODE.Exec if the mode has changed since the last MODE.Exec, or if no MODE.Exec since last PSB	MODE.Exec?, TIP.PGE(SIPI-LIP)
32d	SIPI	1	0	0		TIP.PGD
32e	SIPI	1	0	1	*TraceStop if SIPI LIP is in a TraceStop region	TIP.PGD(SIPI LIP); TraceStop?
32f	SIPI	1	1	1	* MODE.Exec if the mode has changed since the last MODE.Exec, or if no MODE.Exec since last PSB	MODE.Exec?, TIP(SIPI LIP)
33a	MWAIT (to C0)	D.C.	D.C.	D.C.		None
33b	MWAIT (to higher-numbered C-State, packet sent on wake)	D.C.	D.C.	D.C.	*TSC if TSCEn=1 *TMA if TSCEn=MTCEn=1	TSC?, TMA?, CBR

In Table 35-52, PktEn is evaluated based on (TiggerEn & ContextEn & FilterEn & BranchEn & PwrEvtEn).

Table 35-51. PwrEvtEn and PTWEn Packet Generation under Different Enable Conditions

Case	Operation	PktEn Before	PktEn After	CntxEn After	Other Dependencies	Packets Output
16.1	MWAIT or I/O redir to MWAIT, gets #UD or #GP fault	D.C.	D.C.	D.C.		None
16.2	MWAIT or I/O redir to MWAIT, VM exits	D.C.	D.C.	D.C.		See VM exit examples (16[a-z] in Table 35-50) for BranchEn packets.
16.3	MWAIT or I/O redir to MWAIT, requests C0, or monitor not armed, or VMX virtual-interrupt delivery	D.C.	D.C.	D.C.		None
16.4a	MWAIT(X) or I/O redir to MWAIT, goes to C-state Y (Y>0)	D.C.	0	0		PWRE(Cx), EXSTOP

Table 35-51. PwrEvtEn and PTWEn Packet Generation under Different Enable Conditions (Contd.)

Case	Operation	PktEn Before	PktEn After	CntxEEn After	Other Dependencies	Packets Output
16.4b	MWAIT(X) or I/O redir to MWAIT, goes to C-state Y (Y>0)	D.C.	D.C.	1		MWAIT(Cy), PWRE(Cx), EXSTOP(IP), FUP(CLIP)
16.5a	MWAIT(X) or I/O redir to MWAIT, Pending event after resolving to go to C-state Y (Y>0)	D.C.	0	0	* TSC if TSCEn=1 * TMA if TSCEn=MTCEn=1	PWRE(Cx), EXSTOP, TSC?, TMA?, CBR, PWRX(LCC, DCC, 0)
16.5b	MWAIT(X) or I/O redir to MWAIT, Pending event after resolving to go to C-state Y (Y>0)	D.C.	D.C.	1	* TSC if TSCEn=1 * TMA if TSCEn=MTCEn=1	PWRE(Cx), EXSTOP(IP), FUP(CLIP), TSC?, TMA?, CBR, PWRX(LCC, DCC, 0)
16.6a	MWAIT(5) or I/O redir to MWAIT, other thread(s) in core in CO/C1	D.C.	0	0		PWRE(C1), EXSTOP
16.6b	MWAIT(5) or I/O redir to MWAIT, other thread(s) in core in CO/C1	D.C.	D.C.	1		MWAIT(5), PWRE(C1), EXSTOP(IP), FUP(CLIP)
16.9a	HLT, Triple-fault shutdown, #MC with CR4.MCE=0, RSM to Cx (x>0)	D.C.	0	0		PWRE(C1), EXSTOP
16.9b	HLT, Triple-fault shutdown, #MC with CR4.MCE=1, RSM to Cx (x>0)	D.C.	D.C.			PWRE(C1), EXSTOP(IP), FUP(CLIP)
16.10a	VMX abort	D.C.	0	0		See "VMX Abort" (cases 16* and 18* in Table 35-50) for BranchEn packets that precede PWRE(C1), EXSTOP
16.10b	VMX abort	D.C.	D.C.	1		See "VMX Abort" (cases 16* and 18* in Table 35-50) for BranchEn packets that precede PWRE(C1), EXSTOP(IP), FUP(CLIP)
16.11a	RSM to Shutdown	D.C.	0	0		See "RSM to Shutdown" (cases 15[def] in Table 35-50) for BranchEn packets that precede PWRE(C1), EXSTOP
16.11b	RSM to Shutdown	D.C.	D.C.	1		See "RSM to Shutdown" (cases 15[def] in Table 35-50) for BranchEn packets that precede PWRE(C1), EXSTOP(IP), FUP(CLIP)
16.12a	INIT (BSP)	D.C.	0	0		See "INIT (BSP)" (cases 30[a-z] in Table 35-50) for BranchEn packets that precede PWRE(C1), EXSTOP

Table 35-51. PwrEvtEn and PTWEn Packet Generation under Different Enable Conditions (Contd.)

Case	Operation	PktEn Before	PktEn After	CntxEn After	Other Dependencies	Packets Output
16.12b	INIT (BSP)	D.C.	D.C.	1		See "INIT (BSP)" (cases 30[a-z] in Table 35-50) for BranchEn packets that precede PWRE(C1), EXSTOP(IP), FUP(NLIP)
16.13a	INIT (AP, goes to Wait-for-SIPI)	D.C.	0	0		See "INIT (AP, goes to Wait-for-SIPI)" (cases 31[a-z] in Table 35-50) for BranchEn packets that precede PWRE(C1), EXSTOP
16.13b	INIT (AP, goes to Wait-for-SIPI)	D.C.	D.C.	1		See "INIT (AP, goes to Wait-for-SIPI)" (cases 31[a-z] in Table 35-50) for BranchEn packets that precede PWRE(C1), EXSTOP(IP), FUP(NLIP)
16.14a	Hardware Duty Cycling (HDC)	D.C.	0	0	* TSC if TSCEn=1 * TMA if TSCEn=MTCEEn=1	PWRE(HW, C6), EXSTOP, TSC?, TMA?, CBR, PWRX(CC6, CC6, 0x8)
16.14b	Hardware Duty Cycling (HDC)	D.C.	D.C.	1	* TSC if TSCEn=1 * TMA if TSCEn=MTCEEn=1	PWRE(HW, C6), EXSTOP(IP), FUP(NLIP), TSC?, TMA?, CBR, PWRX(CC6, CC6, 0x8)
16.15a	VM entry to HLT or Shutdown	D.C.	0	0		See "VM entry" (cases 17[a-z] in Table 35-50) for BranchEn packets that precede PWRE(C1), EXSTOP
16.15b	VM entry to HLT or Shutdown	D.C.	D.C.	1		See "VM entry" (cases 17[a-z] in Table 35-50) for BranchEn packets that precede PWRE(C1), EXSTOP(IP), FUP(CLIP)
16.16a	EIST in C0, S1/TM1/TM2, or STP-CLK#	D.C.	0	0	* TSC if TSCEn=1 * TMA if TSCEn=MTCEEn=1	EXSTOP, TSC?, TMA?, CBR
16.16b	EIST in C0, S1/TM1/TM2, or STP-CLK#	D.C.	D.C.	1	* TSC if TSCEn=1 * TMA if TSCEn=MTCEEn=1	EXSTOP(IP), FUP(NLIP), TSC?, TMA?, CBR
16.17	EIST in Cx (x>0)	D.C.	D.C.	D.C.		None

Table 35-51. PwrEvtEn and PTWEn Packet Generation under Different Enable Conditions (Contd.)

Case	Operation	PktEn Before	PktEn After	CntxEEn After	Other Dependencies	Packets Output
16.18	INTR during Cx (x>0)	D.C.	D.C.	D.C.	* TSC if TSCEn=1 * TMA if TSCEn=MTCEn=1	TSC?, TMA?, CBR, PWRX(LCC, DCC, 0x1) See “HW Interrupt” (cases 11[a-z] in Table 35-50) for BranchEn packets that follow.
16.18	SMI during Cx (x>0)	D.C.	D.C.	D.C.	* TSC if TSCEn=1 * TMA if TSCEn=MTCEn=1	TSC?, TMA?, CBR, PWRX(LCC, DCC, 0) See “HW Interrupt” (cases 14[a-z] in Table 35-50) for BranchEn packets that follow.
16.19	NMI during Cx (x>0)	D.C.	D.C.	D.C.	* TSC if TSCEn=1 * TMA if TSCEn=MTCEn=1	TSC?, TMA?, CBR, PWRX(LCC, DCC, 0) See “HW Interrupt” (cases 11[a-z] in Table 35-50) for BranchEn packets that follow.
16.20	Store to monitored address during Cx (x>0)	D.C.	D.C.	D.C.	* TSC if TSCEn=1 * TMA if TSCEn=MTCEn=1	TSC?, TMA?, CBR, PWRX(LCC, DCC, 0x4)
16.22	#MC, IERR, TSC deadline timer expiration, or APIC counter under-flow during Cx (x>0)	D.C.	D.C.	D.C.	* TSC if TSCEn=1 * TMA if TSCEn=MTCEn=1	TSC?, TMA?, CBR, PWRX(LCC, DCC, 0)

In Table 35-52, PktEn is evaluated based on (TiggerEn & ContextEn & FilterEn & BranchEn & PTWEn).

Table 35-52. PwrEvtEn and PTWEn Packet Generation under Different Enable Conditions

Case	Operation	PktEn Before	PktEn After	CntxEEn After	Other Dependencies	Packets Output
16.24a	PTWRITE rm32/64, no fault	D.C.	D.C.	D.C.		None
16.24b	PTWRITE rm32/64, no fault	D.C.	0	0		None
16.24d	PTWRITE rm32, no fault	D.C.	1	1	* FUP, IP=1 if FUPonPTW=1	PTW(IP=1?, 4B, rm32_value), FUP(CLIP)?
16.24e	PTWRITE rm64, no fault	D.C.	1	1	* FUP, IP=1 if FUPonPTW=1	PTW(IP=1?, 8B, rm64_value), FUP(CLIP)?
16.25a	PTWRITE mem32/64, fault	D.C.	D.C.	D.C.		See “Exception/fault” (cases 13[a-z] in Table 35-50) for BranchEn packets.

35.8 SOFTWARE CONSIDERATIONS

35.8.1 Tracing SMM Code

Nothing prevents an SMM handler from configuring and enabling packet generation for its own use. As described in Section 35.2.8.3, SMI will always clear TraceEn, so the SMM handler would have to set TraceEn in order to enable tracing. There are some unique aspects and guidelines involved with tracing SMM code, which follow:

1. SMM should save away the existing values of any configuration MSRs that SMM intends to modify for tracing. This will allow the non-SMM tracing context to be restored before RSM.
2. It is recommended that SMM wait until it sets CSbase to 0 before enabling packet generation, to avoid possible LIP vs RIP confusion.
3. Packet output cannot be directed to SMRR memory, even while tracing in SMM.
4. Before performing RSM, SMM should take care to restore modified configuration MSRs to the values they had immediately after #SMI. This involves first disabling packet generation by clearing TraceEn, then restoring any other configuration MSRs that were modified.
5. RSM
 - Software must ensure that TraceEn=0 at the time of RSM. Tracing RSM is not a supported usage model, and the packets generated by RSM are undefined.
 - For processors on which Intel PT and LBR use are mutually exclusive (see Section 35.3.1.2), any RSM during which TraceEn is restored to 1 will suspend any LBR or BTS logging.

35.8.2 Cooperative Transition of Multiple Trace Collection Agents

A third-party trace-collection tool should take into consideration the fact that it may be deployed on a processor that supports Intel PT but may run under any operating system.

In such a deployment scenario, Intel recommends that tool agents follow similar principles of cooperative transition of single-use hardware resources, similar to how performance monitoring tools handle performance monitoring hardware:

- Respect the “in-use” ownership of an agent who already configured the trace configuration MSRs, see architectural MSRs with the prefix “IA32_RTIT_” in Chapter 2, “Model-Specific Registers (MSRs)” in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 4*, where “in-use” can be determined by reading the “enable bits” in the configuration MSRs.
- Relinquish ownership of the trace configuration MSRs by clearing the “enabled bits” of those configuration MSRs.

35.8.3 Tracking Time

This section describes the relationships of several clock counters whose update frequencies reside in different domains that feed into the timing packets. To track time, the decoder also needs to know the regularity or irregularity of the occurrences of various timing packets that store those clock counters.

Intel PT provides time information for three different but related domains:

- Processor timestamp counter

This counter increments at the max non-turbo or P1 frequency, and its value is returned on a RDTSC. Its frequency is fixed. The TSC packet holds the lower 7 bytes of the timestamp counter value. The TSC packet occurs occasionally and are much less frequent than the frequency of the time stamp counter. The timestamp counter will continue to increment when the processor is in deep C-States, with the exception of processors reporting CPUID.80000007H:EDX.InvariantTSC[bit 8] =0.
- Core crystal clock

The ratio of the core crystal clock to timestamp counter frequency is known as P, and can be calculated as CPUID.15H:EBX[31:0] / CPUID.15H:EAX[31:0]. The frequency of the core crystal clock is fixed and lower than

that of the timestamp counter. The periodic MTC packet is generated based on software-selected multiples of the crystal clock frequency. The MTC packet is expected to occur more frequently than the TSC packet.

- Processor core clock

The processor core clock frequency can vary due to P-state and thermal conditions. The CYC packet provides elapsed time as measured in processor core clock cycles relative to the last CYC packet.

A decoder can use all or some combination of these packets to track time at different resolutions throughout the trace packets.

35.8.3.1 Time Domain Relationships

The three domains are related by the following formula:

$$\text{TimeStampValue} = (\text{CoreCrystalClockValue} * P) + \text{AdjustedProcessorCycles} + \text{Software_Offset};$$

The CoreCrystalClockValue can provide the coarse-grained component of the TSC value. P, or the TSC/"core crystal clock" ratio, can be derived from CPUID leaf 15H, as described in Section 35.8.3.

The AdjustedProcessorCycles component provides the fine-grained distance from the rising edge of the last core crystal clock. Specifically, it is a cycle count in the same frequency as the timestamp counter from the last crystal clock rising edge. The value is adjusted based on the ratio of the processor core clock frequency to the Maximum Non-Turbo (or P1) frequency.

The Software_Offsets component includes software offsets that are factored into the timestamp value, such as IA32_TSC_ADJUST.

35.8.3.2 Estimating TSC within Intel PT

For many usages, it may be useful to have an estimated timestamp value for all points in the trace. The formula provided in Section 35.8.3.1 above provides the framework for how such an estimate can be calculated from the various timing packets present in the trace.

The TSC packet provides the precise timestamp value at the time it is generated; however, TSC packets are infrequent, and estimates of the current timestamp value based purely on TSC packets are likely to be very inaccurate for this reason. In order to get more precise timing information between TSC packets, CYC packets and/or MTC packets should be enabled.

MTC packets provide incremental updates of the CoreCrystalClockValue. On processors that support CPUID leaf 15H, the frequency of the timestamp counter and the core crystal clock is fixed, thus MTC packets provide a means to update the running timestamp estimate. Between two MTC packets A and B, the number of crystal clock cycles passed is calculated from the 8-bit payloads of respective MTC packets:

$$(\text{CTC}_B - \text{CTC}_A), \text{ where } \text{CTC}_i = \text{MTC}_i[15:8] \ll \text{IA32_RTIT_CTL.MTCFreq} \text{ and } i = A, B.$$

The time from a TSC packet to the subsequent MTC packet can be calculated using the TMA packet that follows the TSC packet. The TMA packet provides both the crystal clock value (lower 16 bits, in the CTC field) and the AdjustedProcessorCycles value (in the FastCounter field) that can be used in the calculation of the corresponding core crystal clock value of the TSC packet.

When the next MTC after a pair of TSC/TMA is seen, the number of crystal clocks passed since the TSC packet can be calculated by subtracting the TMA.CTC value from the time indicated by the MTC_{Next} packet by

$$\text{CTC}_{\text{Delta}}[15:0] = (\text{CTC}_{\text{Next}}[15:0] - \text{TMA.CTC}[15:0]), \text{ where } \text{CTC}_{\text{Next}} = \text{MTC}_{\text{Payload}} \ll \text{IA32_RTIT_CTL.MTCFreq}.$$

The TMA.FastCounter field provides the fractional component of the TSC packet into the next crystal clock cycle.

CYC packets can provide further precision of an estimated timestamp value to many non-timing packets, by providing an indication of the time passed between other timing packets (MTCs or TSCs).

When enabled, CYC packets are sent preceding each CYC-eligible packet, and provide the number of processor core clock cycles that have passed since the last CYC packet. Thus between MTCs and TSCs, the accumulated CYC values can be used to estimate the adjusted_processor_cycles component of the timestamp value. The accumulated CPU cycles will have to be adjusted to account for the difference in frequency between the processor core clock and the P1 frequency. The necessary adjustment can be estimated using the core:bus ratio value given in the CBR packet, by multiplying the accumulated cycle count value by P1/CBR_{payload}.

Note that stand-alone TSC packets (that is, TSC packets that are not a part of a PSB+) are typically generated only when generation of other timing packets (MTCs and CYCs) has ceased for a period of time. Example scenarios include when Intel PT is re-enabled, or on wake after a sleep state. Thus any calculation of ART or cycle time leading up to a TSC packet will likely result in a discrepancy, which the TSC packet serves to correct.

A greater level of precision may be achieved by calculating the CPU clock frequency, see Section 35.8.3.4 below for a method to do so using Intel PT packets.

CYCs can be used to estimate time between TSCs even without MTCs, though this will likely result in a reduction in estimated TSC precision.

35.8.3.3 VMX TSC Manipulation

When software executes in non-Root operation, additional offset and scaling factors may be applied to the TSC value. These are optional, but may be enabled via VMCS controls on a per-VM basis. See Chapter 25, “VMX Non-Root Operation” for details on VMX TSC offsetting and TSC scaling.

Like the value returned by RDTSC, TSC packets will include these adjustments, but other timing packets (such as MTC, CYC, and CBR) are not impacted. In order to use the algorithm above to estimate the TSC value when TSC scaling is in use, it will be necessary for software to account for the scaling factor. See Section 35.5.2.6 for details.

35.8.3.4 Calculating Frequency with Intel PT

Because Intel PT can provide both wall-clock time and processor clock cycle time, it can be used to measure the processor core clock frequency. Either TSC or MTC packets can be used to track the wall-clock time. By using CYC packets to count the number of processor core cycles that pass in between a pair of wall-clock time packets, the ratio between processor core clock frequency and TSC frequency can be derived. If the P1 frequency is known, it can be applied to determine the CPU frequency. See Section 35.8.3.1 above for details on the relationship between TSC, MTC, and CYC.

17. Updates to Chapter 36, Volume 3D

Change bars show changes to Chapter 36 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3D: System Programming Guide, Part 4*.

Changes to this chapter: Updated wording in Section 36.1 "Overview" and Section 36.2 "Enclave Interaction and Protection".

CHAPTER 36

INTRODUCTION TO INTEL® SOFTWARE GUARD EXTENSIONS

36.1 OVERVIEW

Intel® Software Guard Extensions (Intel® SGX) is a set of instructions and mechanisms for memory accesses added to Intel® Architecture processors. Intel SGX can encompass two collections of instruction extensions, referred to as SGX1 and SGX2, see Table 36-1 and Table 36-2. The SGX1 extensions allow an application to instantiate a protected container, referred to as an enclave. The enclave is a trusted area of memory, where critical aspects of the application functionality have hardware-enhanced confidentiality and integrity protections. New access controls to restrict access to software not resident in the enclave are also introduced. The SGX2 extensions allow additional flexibility in runtime management of enclave resources and thread execution within an enclave.

Chapter 37 covers main concepts, objects and data structure formats that interact within the Intel SGX architecture. Chapter 38 covers operational aspects ranging from preparing an enclave, transferring control to enclave code, and programming considerations for the enclave code and system software providing support for enclave execution. Chapter 39 describes the behavior of Asynchronous Enclave Exit (AEX) caused by events while executing enclave code. Chapter 40 covers the syntax and operational details of the instruction and associated leaf functions available in Intel SGX. Chapter 41 describes interaction of various aspects of IA32 and Intel® 64 architectures with Intel SGX. Chapter 42 covers Intel SGX support for application debug, profiling and performance monitoring.

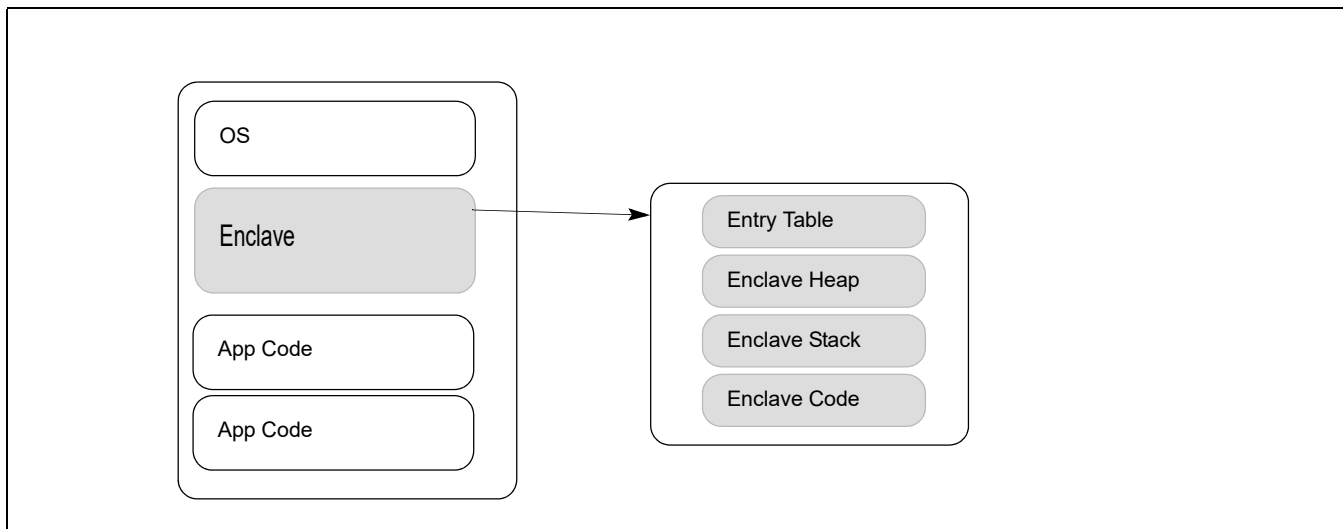


Figure 36-1. An Enclave Within the Application's Virtual Address Space

36.2 ENCLAVE INTERACTION AND PROTECTION

Intel SGX allows the protected portion of an application to be distributed in the clear. Before the enclave is built, the enclave code and data are free for inspection and analysis. The protected portion is loaded into an enclave where its code and data is measured. Once the application's protected portion of the code and data are loaded into an enclave, memory access controls are in place to restrict access by external software. An enclave can prove its identity to a remote party and provide the necessary building-blocks for secure provisioning of keys and credentials. The application can also request an enclave-specific and platform-specific key that it can use to protect keys and data that it wishes to store outside the enclave.¹

1. For additional information, see white papers on Intel SGX at <http://software.intel.com/en-us/intel-isa-extensions>.

Intel SGX introduces two significant capabilities to the Intel Architecture. First is the change in enclave memory access semantics. The second is protection of the address mappings of the application.

36.3 ENCLAVE LIFE CYCLE

Enclave memory management is divided into two parts: address space allocation and memory commitment. Address space allocation is the specification of the range of logical addresses that the enclave may use. This range is called the ELRANGE. No actual resources are committed to this region. Memory commitment is the assignment of actual memory resources (as pages) within the allocated address space. This two-phase technique allows flexibility for enclaves to control their memory usage and to adjust dynamically without overusing memory resources when enclave needs are low. Commitment adds physical pages to the enclave. An operating system may support separate allocate and commit operations.

During enclave creation, code and data for an enclave are loaded from a clear-text source, i.e. from non-enclave memory.

Untrusted application code starts using an initialized enclave typically by using the EENTER leaf function provided by Intel SGX to transfer control to the enclave code residing in the protected Enclave Page Cache (EPC). The enclave code returns to the caller via the EEXIT leaf function. Upon enclave entry, control is transferred by hardware to software inside the enclave. The software inside the enclave switches the stack pointer to one inside the enclave. When returning back from the enclave, the software swaps back the stack pointer then executes the EEXIT leaf function.

On processors that support the SGX2 extensions, an enclave writer may add memory to an enclave using the SGX2 instruction set, after the enclave is built and running. These instructions allow adding additional memory resources to the enclave for use in such areas as the heap. In addition, SGX2 instructions allow the enclave to add new threads to the enclave. The SGX2 features provide additional capabilities to the software model without changing the security properties of the Intel SGX architecture.

Calling an external procedure from an enclave could be done using the EEXIT leaf function. Software would use EEXIT and a software convention between the trusted section and the untrusted section.

An active enclave consumes resources from the Enclave Page Cache (EPC, see Section 36.5). Intel SGX provides the EREMOVE instruction that an EPC manager can use to reclaim EPC pages committed to an enclave. The EPC manager uses EREMOVE on every enclave page when the enclave is torn down. After successful execution of EREMOVE the EPC page is available for allocation to another enclave.

36.4 DATA STRUCTURES AND ENCLAVE OPERATION

There are 2 main data structures associated with operating an enclave, the SGX Enclave Control Structure (SECS, see Section 37.7) and the Thread Control Structure (TCS, see Section 37.8).

There is one SECS for each enclave. The SECS contains meta-data about the enclave which is used by the hardware and cannot be directly accessed by software. Included in the SECS is a field that stores the enclave build measurement value. This field, MRENCLAVE, is initialized by the ECREATE instruction and updated by every EADD and EEXTEND. It is locked by EINIT.

Every enclave contains one or more TCS structures. The TCS contains meta-data used by the hardware to save and restore thread specific information when entering/exiting the enclave. There is one field, FLAGS, that may be accessed by software. This field can only be accessed by debug enclaves. The flag bit, DBGOPTIN, allows to single step into the thread associated with the TCS. (see Section 37.8.1)

The SECS is created when ECREATE (see Table 36-1) is executed. The TCS can be created using the EADD instruction or the SGX2 instructions (see Table 36-2).

36.5 ENCLAVE PAGE CACHE

The Enclave Page Cache (EPC) is the secure storage used to store enclave pages when they are a part of an executing enclave. For an EPC page, hardware performs additional access control checks to restrict access to the page. After the current page access checks and translations are performed, the hardware checks that the EPC page

is accessible to the program currently executing. Generally an EPC page is only accessed by the owner of the executing enclave or an instruction which is setting up an EPC page

The EPC is divided into EPC pages. An EPC page is 4KB in size and always aligned on a 4KB boundary.

Pages in the EPC can either be valid or invalid. Every valid page in the EPC belongs to one enclave instance. Each enclave instance has an EPC page that holds its SECS. The security metadata for each EPC page is held in an internal micro-architectural structure called Enclave Page Cache Map (EPCM, see Section 36.5.1).

The EPC is managed by privileged software. Intel SGX provides a set of instructions for adding and removing content to and from the EPC. The EPC may be configured by BIOS at boot time. On implementations in which EPC memory is part of system DRAM, the contents of the EPC are protected by an encryption engine.

36.5.1 Enclave Page Cache Map (EPCM)

The EPCM is a secure structure used by the processor to track the contents of the EPC. The EPCM holds one entry for each page in the EPC. The format of the EPCM is micro-architectural, and consequently is implementation dependent. However, the EPCM contains the following architectural information:

- The status of EPC page with respect to validity and accessibility.
- An SECS identifier (see Section 37.19) of the enclave to which the page belongs.
- The type of page: regular, SECS, TCS or VA.
- The linear address through which the enclave is allowed to access the page.
- The specified read/write/execute permissions on that page.

The EPCM structure is used by the CPU in the address-translation flow to enforce access-control on the EPC pages. The EPCM structure is described in Table 37-27, and the conceptual access-control flow is described in Section 37.5.

The EPCM entries are managed by the processor as part of various instruction flows.

36.6 ENCLAVE INSTRUCTIONS AND INTEL® SGX

The enclave instructions available with Intel SGX are organized as leaf functions under three instruction mnemonics: ENCLS (ring 0), ENCLU (ring 3), and ENCLV (VT root mode). Each leaf function uses EAX to specify the leaf function index, and may require additional implicit input registers as parameters. The use of EAX is implied implicitly by the ENCLS, ENCLU, and ENCLV instructions; ModR/M byte encoding is not used with ENCLS, ENCLU, and ENCLV. The use of additional registers does not use ModR/M encoding and is implied implicitly by the respective leaf function index.

Each leaf function index is also associated with a unique, leaf-specific mnemonic. A long-form expression of Intel SGX instruction takes the form of ENCLx[LEAF_MNEMONIC], where 'x' is either 'S', 'U', or 'V'. The long-form expression provides clear association of the privilege-level requirement of a given "leaf mnemonic". For simplicity, the unique "Leaf_Mnemonic" name is used (omitting the ENCLx for convenience) throughout in this document.

Details of individual SGX leaf functions are described in Chapter 40. Table 36-1 provides a summary of the instruction leaves that are available in the initial implementation of Intel SGX, which is introduced in the 6th generation Intel Core processors. Table 36-2 summarizes enhancement of Intel SGX for future Intel processors.

Table 36-1. Supervisor and User Mode Enclave Instruction Leaf Functions in Long-Form of SGX1

Supervisor Instruction	Description	User Instruction	Description
ENCLS[EADD]	Add an EPC page to an enclave.	ENCLU[EENTER]	Enter an enclave.
ENCLS[EBLOCK]	Block an EPC page.	ENCLU[EEXIT]	Exit an enclave.
ENCLS[ECREATE]	Create an enclave.	ENCLU[EGETKEY]	Create a cryptographic key.
ENCLS[EDBGDRD]	Read data from a debug enclave by debugger.	ENCLU[EREPORT]	Create a cryptographic report.

Table 36-1. Supervisor and User Mode Enclave Instruction Leaf Functions in Long-Form of SGX1

Supervisor Instruction	Description	User Instruction	Description
ENCLS[EDBGWR]	Write data into a debug enclave by debugger.	ENCLU[ERESUME]	Re-enter an enclave.
ENCLS[EEXTEND]	Extend EPC page measurement.		
ENCLS[EINIT]	Initialize an enclave.		
ENCLS[ELDB]	Load an EPC page in blocked state.		
ENCLS[ELDU]	Load an EPC page in unblocked state.		
ENCLS[EPA]	Add an EPC page to create a version array.		
ENCLS[EREMOVE]	Remove an EPC page from an enclave.		
ENCLS[ETRACK]	Activate EBLOCK checks.		
ENCLS[EWB]	Write back/invalidate an EPC page.		

Table 36-2. Supervisor and User Mode Enclave Instruction Leaf Functions in Long-Form of SGX2

Supervisor Instruction	Description	User Instruction	Description
ENCLS[EAUG]	Allocate EPC page to an existing enclave.	ENCLU[EACCEPT]	Accept EPC page into the enclave.
ENCLS[EMODPR]	Restrict page permissions.	ENCLU[EMODPE]	Enhance page permissions.
ENCLS[EMODT]	Modify EPC page type.	ENCLU[EACCEPTCOPY]	Copy contents to an augmented EPC page and accept the EPC page into the enclave.

Table 36-3. VMX Operation and Supervisor Mode Enclave Instruction Leaf Functions in Long-Form of OVERSUB

Supervisor Instruction	Description	User Instruction	Description
ENCLV[EDECVRTCHILD]	Decrement the virtual child page count.	ENCLS[ERDINFO]	Read information about EPC page.
ENCLV[EINCVIRTCHILD]	Increment the virtual child page count.	ENCLS[TRACKC]	Activate EBLOCK checks with conflict reporting.
ENCLV[ESETCONTEXT]	Set virtualization context.	ENCLS[ELDBC/UC]	Load an EPC page with conflict reporting.

36.7 DISCOVERING SUPPORT FOR INTEL® SGX AND ENABLING ENCLAVE INSTRUCTIONS

Detection of support of Intel SGX and enumeration of available and enabled Intel SGX resources are queried using the CPUID instruction. The enumeration interface comprises the following:

- Processor support of Intel SGX is enumerated by a feature flag in CPUID leaf 07H: CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0H):EBX.SGX[bit 2]. If CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0H):EBX.SGX = 1, the processor has support for Intel SGX, and requires opt-in enabling by BIOS via IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL MSR.
If CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0H):EBX.SGX = 1, CPUID will report via the available sub-leaves of CPUID.(EAX=12H) on available and/or configured Intel SGX resources.
- The available and configured Intel SGX resources enumerated by the sub-leaves of CPUID.(EAX=12H) depend on the state of BIOS configuration.

36.7.1 Intel® SGX Opt-In Configuration

On processors that support Intel SGX, IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL provides the SGX_ENABLE field (bit 18). Before system software can configure and enable Intel SGX resources, BIOS is required to set IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL.SGX_ENABLE = 1 to opt-in the use of Intel SGX by system software.

The semantics of setting SGX_ENABLE follows the rules of IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL.LOCK (bit 0). Software is considered to have opted into Intel SGX if and only if IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL.SGX_ENABLE and IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL.LOCK are set to 1. The setting of IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL.SGX_ENABLE (bit 18) is not reflected by CPUID.

Table 36-4. Intel® SGX Opt-in and Enabling Behavior

CPUID.(07H,0H):EBX.SGX	CPUID.(12H)	FEATURE_CONTROL.LOCK	FEATURE_CONTROL.SGX_ENABLE	Enclave Instruction
0	Invalid	X	X	#UD
1	Valid*	X	X	#UD**
1	Valid*	0	X	#GP
1	Valid*	1	0	#GP
1	Valid*	1	1	Available (see Table 36-5 for details of SGX1 and SGX2).

* Leaf 12H enumeration results are dependent on enablement.
 ** See list of conditions in the #UD section of the reference pages of ENCLS and ENCLU

36.7.2 Intel® SGX Resource Enumeration Leaves

If CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0H):EBX.SGX = 1, the processor also supports querying CPUID with EAX=12H on Intel SGX resource capability and configuration. The number of available sub-leaves in leaf 12H depends on the Opt-in and system software configuration. Information returned by CPUID.12H is thread specific; software should not assume that if Intel SGX instructions are supported on one hardware thread, they are also supported elsewhere.

A properly configured processor exposes Intel SGX functionality with CPUID.EAX=12H reporting valid information (non-zero content) in three or more sub-leaves, see Table 36-5.

- CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=0H) enumerates Intel SGX capability, including enclave instruction opcode support.
- CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=1H) enumerates Intel SGX capability of processor state configuration and enclave configuration in the SECS structure (see Table 37-3).
- CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX > 1) enumerates available EPC resources.

Table 36-5. CPUID Leaf 12H, Sub-Leaf 0 Enumeration of Intel® SGX Capabilities

CPUID.(EAX=12H,ECX=0)		Description Behavior
Register	Bits	
EAX	0	SGX1: If 1, indicates leaf functions of SGX1 instruction listed in Table 36-1 are supported.
	1	SGX2: If 1, indicates leaf functions of SGX2 instruction listed in Table 36-2 are supported.
	4:2	Reserved (0)
	5	OVERSUB: If 1, indicates Intel SGX supports instructions: EINCVRTCHILD, EDECVRTCHILD, and ESETCONTEXT.
	6	OVERSUB: If 1, indicates Intel SGX supports instructions: ETRACKC, ERDINFO, ELDBC, and ELDUC.
	31:7	Reserved (0)
EBX	31:0	MISCSELECT: Reports the bit vector of supported extended features that can be written to the MISC region of the SSA.
ECX	31:0	Reserved (0).

Table 36-5. CPUID Leaf 12H, Sub-Leaf 0 Enumeration of Intel® SGX Capabilities

CPUID.(EAX=12H,ECX=0)		Description Behavior
Register	Bits	
EDX	7:0	MaxEnclaveSize_Not64: the maximum supported enclave size is 2^(EDX[7:0]) bytes when not in 64-bit mode.
	15:8	MaxEnclaveSize_64: the maximum supported enclave size is 2^(EDX[15:8]) bytes when operating in 64-bit mode.
	31:16	Reserved (0).

Table 36-6. CPUID Leaf 12H, Sub-Leaf 1 Enumeration of Intel® SGX Capabilities

CPUID.(EAX=12H,ECX=1)		Description Behavior
Register	Bits	
EAX	31:0	Report the valid bits of SECS.ATTRIBUTES[31:0] that software can set with ECREATE. SECS.ATTRIBUTES[n] can be set to 1 using ECREATE only if EAX[n] is 1, where n < 32.
EBX	31:0	Report the valid bits of SECS.ATTRIBUTES[63:32] that software can set with ECREATE. SECS.ATTRIBUTES[n+32] can be set to 1 using ECREATE only if EBX[n] is 1, where n < 32.
ECX	31:0	Report the valid bits of SECS.ATTRIBUTES[95:64] that software can set with ECREATE. SECS.ATTRIBUTES[n+64] can be set to 1 using ECREATE only if ECX[n] is 1, where n < 32.
EDX	31:0	Report the valid bits of SECS.ATTRIBUTES[127:96] that software can set with ECREATE. SECS.ATTRIBUTES[n+96] can be set to 1 using ECREATE only if EDX[n] is 1, where n < 32.

On processors that support Intel SGX1 and SGX2, CPUID leaf 12H sub-leaf 2 report physical memory resources available for use with Intel SGX. These physical memory sections are typically allocated by BIOS as **Processor Reserved Memory**, and available to the OS to manage as EPC.

To enumerate how many EPC sections are available to the EPC manager, software can enumerate CPUID leaf 12H with sub-leaf index starting from 2, and decode the sub-leaf-type encoding (returned in EAX[3:0]) until the sub-leaf type is invalid. All invalid sub-leaves of CPUID leaf 12H return EAX/EBX/ECX/EDX with 0.

Table 36-7. CPUID Leaf 12H, Sub-Leaf Index 2 or Higher Enumeration of Intel® SGX Resources

CPUID.(EAX=12H,ECX > 1)		Description Behavior
Register	Bits	
EAX	3:0	0000b: This sub-leaf is invalid; EDX:ECX:EBX:EAX return 0. 0001b: This sub-leaf enumerates an EPC section. EBX:EAX and EDX:ECX provide information on the Enclave Page Cache (EPC) section. All other encoding are reserved.
	11:4	Reserved (enumerate 0).
	31:12	If EAX[3:0] = 0001b, these are bits 31:12 of the physical address of the base of the EPC section.
EBX	19:0	If EAX[3:0] = 0001b, these are bits 51:32 of the physical address of the base of the EPC section.
	31:20	Reserved.
ECX	3:0	If EAX[3:0] 0000b, then all bits of the EDX:ECX pair are enumerated as 0. If EAX[3:0] 0001b, then this section has confidentiality and integrity protection. All other encoding are reserved.
	11:4	Reserved (enumerate 0).
	31:12	If EAX[3:0] = 0001b, these are bits 31:12 of the size of the corresponding EPC section within the Processor Reserved Memory.

Table 36-7. CPUID Leaf 12H, Sub-Leaf Index 2 or Higher Enumeration of Intel® SGX Resources

CPUID.(EAX=12H,ECX > 1)		Description Behavior
Register	Bits	
EDX	19: 0	If EAX[3:0] = 0001b, these are bits 51:32 of the size of the corresponding EPC section within the Processor Reserved Memory.
	31:20	Reserved.

18. Updates to Chapter 37, Volume 3D

Change bars show changes to Chapter 37 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3D: System Programming Guide, Part 4*.

Changes to chapter: Updated wording in Section 37.5.1 "Access-control for Accesses that Originate from non-SGX Instructions".

CHAPTER 37

ENCLAVE ACCESS CONTROL AND DATA STRUCTURES

37.1 OVERVIEW OF ENCLAVE EXECUTION ENVIRONMENT

When an enclave is created, it has a range of linear addresses to which the processor applies enhanced access control. This range is called the ELRANGE (see Section 36.3). When an enclave generates a memory access, the existing IA32 segmentation and paging architecture are applied. Additionally, linear addresses inside the ELRANGE must map to an EPC page otherwise when an enclave attempts to access that linear address a fault is generated.

The EPC pages need not be physically contiguous. System software allocates EPC pages to various enclaves. Enclaves must abide by OS/VMM imposed segmentation and paging policies. OS/VMM-managed page tables and extended page tables provide address translation for the enclave pages. Hardware requires that these pages are properly mapped to EPC (any failure generates an exception).

Enclave entry must happen through specific enclave instructions:

- ENCLU[EENTER], ENCLU[ERESUME].

Enclave exit must happen through specific enclave instructions or events:

- ENCLU[EEXIT], Asynchronous Enclave Exit (AEX).

Attempts to execute, read, or write to linear addresses mapped to EPC pages when not inside an enclave will result in the processor altering the access to preserve the confidentiality and integrity of the enclave. The exact behavior may be different between implementations. As an example a read of an enclave page may result in the return of all one's or return of cyphertext of the cache line. Writing to an enclave page may result in a dropped write or a machine check at a later time. The processor will provide the protections as described in Section 37.4 and Section 37.5 on such accesses.

37.2 TERMINOLOGY

A memory access to the ELRANGE and initiated by an instruction executed by an enclave is called a Direct Enclave Access (Direct EA).

Memory accesses initiated by certain Intel® SGX instruction leaf functions such as ECREATE, EADD, EDBGRD, EDBGWR, ELDU/ELDB, EWB, EREMOVE, EENTER, and ERESUME to EPC pages are called Indirect Enclave Accesses (Indirect EA). Table 37-1 lists additional details of the indirect EA of SGX1 and SGX2 extensions.

Direct EAs and Indirect EAs together are called Enclave Accesses (EAs).

Any memory access that is not an Enclave Access is called a non-enclave access.

37.3 ACCESS-CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

Enclave accesses have the following access-control attributes:

- All memory accesses must conform to segmentation and paging protection mechanisms.
- Code fetches from inside an enclave to a linear address outside that enclave result in a #GP(0) exception.
- Non-enclave accesses to EPC memory result in undefined behavior. EPC memory is protected as described in Section 37.4 and Section 37.5 on such accesses.
- EPC pages of page types PT_REG, PT_TCS and PT_TRIM must be mapped to ELRANGE at the linear address specified when the EPC page was allocated to the enclave using ENCLS[EADD] or ENCLS[EAUG] leaf functions. Enclave accesses through other linear address result in a #PF with the PFEC.SGX bit set.
- Direct EAs to any EPC pages must conform to the currently defined security attributes for that EPC page in the EPCM. These attributes may be defined at enclave creation time (EADD) or when the enclave sets them using SGX2 instructions. The failure of these checks results in a #PF with the PFEC.SGX bit set.

- Target page must belong to the currently executing enclave.
- Data may be written to an EPC page if the EPCM allow write access.
- Data may be read from an EPC page if the EPCM allow read access.
- Instruction fetches from an EPC page are allowed if the EPCM allows execute access.
- Target page must not have a restricted page type¹ (PT_SECS, PT_TCS, PT_VA, or PT_TRIM).
- The EPC page must not be BLOCKED.
- The EPC page must not be PENDING.
- The EPC page must not be MODIFIED.

37.4 SEGMENT-BASED ACCESS CONTROL

Intel SGX architecture does not modify the segment checks performed by a logical processor. All memory accesses arising from a logical processor in protected mode (including enclave access) are subject to segmentation checks with the applicable segment register.

To ensure that outside entities do not modify the enclave's logical-to-linear address translation in an unexpected fashion, ENCLU[EENTER] and ENCLU[ERESUME] check that CS, DS, ES, and SS, if usable (i.e., not null), have segment base value of zero. A non-zero segment base value for these registers results in a #GP(0).

On enclave entry either via EENTER or ERESUME, the processor saves the contents of the external FS and GS registers, and loads these registers with values stored in the TCS at build time to enable the enclave's use of these registers for accessing the thread-local storage inside the enclave. On EEXIT and AEX, the contents at time of entry are restored. On AEX, the values of FS and GS are saved in the SSA frame. On ERESUME, FS and GS are restored from the SSA frame. The details of these operations can be found in the descriptions of EENTER, ERESUME, EEXIT, and AEX flows.

37.5 PAGE-BASED ACCESS CONTROL

37.5.1 Access-control for Accesses that Originate from non-SGX Instructions

Intel SGX builds on the processor's paging mechanism to provide page-granular access-control for enclave pages. Enclave pages are designed to be accessible only from inside the currently executing enclave if they belong to that enclave. In addition, enclave accesses must conform to the access control requirements described in Section 37.3. or through certain Intel SGX instructions. Attempts to execute, read, or write to linear addresses mapped to EPC pages when not inside an enclave will result in the processor altering the access to preserve the confidentiality and integrity of the enclave. The exact behavior may be different between implementations.

37.5.2 Memory Accesses that Split across ELRANGE

Memory data accesses are allowed to split across ELRANGE (i.e., a part of the access is inside ELRANGE and a part of the access is outside ELRANGE) while the processor is inside an enclave. If an access splits across ELRANGE, the processor splits the access into two sub-accesses (one inside ELRANGE and the other outside ELRANGE), and each access is evaluated. A code-fetch access that splits across ELRANGE results in a #GP due to the portion that lies outside of the ELRANGE.

37.5.3 Implicit vs. Explicit Accesses

Memory accesses originating from Intel SGX instruction leaf functions are categorized as either explicit accesses or implicit accesses. Table 37-1 lists the implicit and explicit memory accesses made by Intel SGX leaf functions.

1. EPCM may allow write, read or execute access only for pages with page type PT_REG.

37.5.3.1 Explicit Accesses

Accesses to memory locations provided as explicit operands to Intel SGX instruction leaf functions, or their linked data structures are called explicit accesses.

Explicit accesses are always made using logical addresses. These accesses are subject to segmentation, paging, extended paging, and APIC-virtualization checks, and trigger any faults/exit associated with these checks when the access is made.

The interaction of explicit memory accesses with data breakpoints is leaf-function-specific, and is documented in Section 42.3.4.

37.5.3.2 Implicit Accesses

Accesses to data structures whose physical addresses are cached by the processor are called implicit accesses. These addresses are not passed as operands of the instruction but are implied by use of the instruction.

These accesses do not trigger any access-control faults/exits or data breakpoints. Table 37-1 lists memory objects that Intel SGX instruction leaf functions access either by explicit access or implicit access. The addresses of explicit access objects are passed via register operands with the second through fourth column of Table 37-1 matching implicitly encoded registers RBX, RCX, RDX.

Physical addresses used in different implicit accesses are cached via different instructions and for different durations. The physical address of SECS associated with each EPC page is cached at the time the page is added to the enclave via ENCLS[EADD] or ENCLS[EAUG], or when the page is loaded to EPC via ENCLS[ELDB] or ENCLS[ELDU]. This binding is severed when the corresponding page is removed from the EPC via ENCLS[EREMOVE] or ENCLS[EWB]. Physical addresses of TCS and SSA pages are cached at the time of most-recent enclave entry. Exit from an enclave (ENCLU[EEXIT] or AEX) flushes this caching. Details of Asynchronous Enclave Exit is described in Chapter 39.

The physical addresses that are cached for use by implicit accesses are derived from logical (or linear) addresses after checks such as segmentation, paging, EPT, and APIC virtualization checks. These checks may trigger exceptions or VM exits. Note, however, that such exception or VM exits may not occur after a physical address is cached and used for an implicit access.

Table 37-1. List of Implicit and Explicit Memory Access by Intel® SGX Enclave Instructions

Instr. Leaf	Enum.	Explicit 1	Explicit 2	Explicit 3	Implicit
EACCEPT	SGX2	SECINFO	EPCPAGE		SECS
EACCEPTCOPY	SGX2	SECINFO	EPCPAGE (Src)	EPCPAGE (Dst)	
EADD	SGX1	PAGEINFO and linked structures	EPCPAGE		
EAUG	SGX2	PAGEINFO and linked structures	EPCPAGE		SECS
EBLOCK	SGX1	EPCPAGE			SECS
ECREATE	SGX1	PAGEINFO and linked structures	EPCPAGE		
EDBGRD	SGX1	EPCADDR	Destination		SECS
EDBGWR	SGX1	EPCADDR	Source		SECS
EDECVIRTCHILD	OVERSUB	EPCPAGE	SECS		
EENTER	SGX1	TCS and linked SSA			SECS
EEXIT	SGX1				SECS, TCS
EEXTEND	SGX1	SECS	EPCPAGE		
EGETKEY	SGX1	KEYREQUEST	KEY		SECS
EINCVIRTCHILD	OVERSUB	EPCPAGE	SECS		
EINIT	SGX1	SIGSTRUCT	SECS	EINITTOKEN	
ELDB/ELDU	SGX1	PAGEINFO and linked structures, PCMD	EPCPAGE	VAPAGE	
ELDBC/ELDUC	OVERSUB	PAGEINFO and linked structures	EPCPAGE	VAPAGE	

Table 37-1. List of Implicit and Explicit Memory Access by Intel® SGX Enclave Instructions (Contd.)

Instr. Leaf	Enum.	Explicit 1	Explicit 2	Explicit 3	Implicit
EMODPE	SGX2	SECINFO	EPCPAGE		
EMODPR	SGX2	SECINFO	EPCPAGE		SECS
EMODT	SGX2	SECINFO	EPCPAGE		SECS
EPA	SGX1	EPCADDR			
ERDINFO	OVERSUB	RDINFO	EPCPAGE		
EREMOVE	SGX1	EPCPAGE			SECS
EREPOR	SGX1	TARGETINFO	REPORTDATA	OUTPUTDATA	SECS
ERESUME	SGX1	TCS and linked SSA			SECS
ESETCONTEXT	OVERSUB		SECS	ContextValue	
ETRACK	SGX1	EPCPAGE			
ETRACKC	OVERSUB		EPCPAGE		
EWB	SGX1	PAGEINFO and linked structures, PCMD	EPCPAGE	VAPAGE	SECS
Asynchronous Enclave Exit*					SECS, TCS, SSA
*Details of Asynchronous Enclave Exit (AEX) is described in Section 39.4					

37.6 INTEL® SGX DATA STRUCTURES OVERVIEW

Enclave operation is managed via a collection of data structures. Many of the top-level data structures contain sub-structures. The top-level data structures relate to parameters that may be used in enclave setup/maintenance, by Intel SGX instructions, or AEX event. The top-level data structures are:

- SGX Enclave Control Structure (SECS)
- Thread Control Structure (TCS)
- State Save Area (SSA)
- Page Information (PAGEINFO)
- Security Information (SECINFO)
- Paging Crypto MetaData (PCMD)
- Enclave Signature Structure (SIGSTRUCT)
- EINIT Token Structure (EINITTOKEN)
- Report Structure (REPORT)
- Report Target Info (TARGETINFO)
- Key Request (KEYREQUEST)
- Version Array (VA)
- Enclave Page Cache Map (EPCM)
- Read Info (RDINFO)

Details of the top-level data structures and associated sub-structures are listed in Section 37.7 through Section 37.19.

37.7 SGX ENCLAVE CONTROL STRUCTURE (SECS)

The SECS data structure requires 4K-Bytes alignment.

Table 37-2. Layout of SGX Enclave Control Structure (SECS)

Field	OFFSET (Bytes)	Size (Bytes)	Description
SIZE	0	8	Size of enclave in bytes; must be power of 2.
BASEADDR	8	8	Enclave Base Linear Address must be naturally aligned to size.
SSAFRAMESIZE	16	4	Size of one SSA frame in pages, including XSAVE, pad, GPR, and MISC (if CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=0):EBX != 0).
MISCSELECT	20	4	Bit vector specifying which extended features are saved to the MISC region (see Section 37.7.2) of the SSA frame when an AEX occurs.
RESERVED	24	24	
ATTRIBUTES	48	16	Attributes of the Enclave, see Table 37-3.
MRENCLAVE	64	32	Measurement Register of enclave build process. See SIGSTRUCT for format.
RESERVED	96	32	
MRSIGNER	128	32	Measurement Register extended with the public key that verified the enclave. See SIGSTRUCT for format.
RESERVED	160	32	
CONFIGID	192	64	Post EINIT configuration identity.
ISVPRODID	256	2	Product ID of enclave.
ISVSVN	258	2	Security version number (SVN) of the enclave.
CONFIGSVN	260	2	Post EINIT configuration security version number (SVN).
RESERVED	260	3834	<p>The RESERVED field consists of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ EID: An 8 byte Enclave Identifier. Its location is implementation specific. ▪ PAD: A 352 bytes padding pattern from the Signature (used for key derivation strings). It's location is implementation specific. ▪ VIRTCHILDCNT: An 8 byte Count of virtual children that have been paged out by a VMM. Its location is implementation specific. ▪ ENCLAVECONTEXT: An 8 byte Enclave context pointer. Its location is implementation specific. ▪ ISVFAMILYID: A 16 byte value assigned to identify the family of products the enclave belongs to. ▪ ISVEXTPRODID: A 16 byte value assigned to identify the product identity of the enclave. ▪ The remaining 3226 bytes are reserved area. <p>The entire 3836 byte field must be cleared prior to executing ECREATE.</p>

37.7.1 ATTRIBUTES

The ATTRIBUTES data structure is comprised of bit-granular fields that are used in the SECS, the REPORT and the KEYREQUEST structures. CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=1) enumerates a bitmap of permitted 1-setting of bits in ATTRIBUTES.

Table 37-3. Layout of ATTRIBUTES Structure

Field	Bit Position	Description
INIT	0	This bit indicates if the enclave has been initialized by EINIT. It must be cleared when loaded as part of ECREATE. For EREPORT instruction, TARGET_INFO.ATTRIBUTES[ENIT] must always be 1 to match the state after EINIT has initialized the enclave.
DEBUG	1	If 1, the enclave permit debugger to read and write enclave data using EDBGDR and EDBGWR.
MODE64BIT	2	Enclave runs in 64-bit mode.
RESERVED	3	Must be Zero.
PROVISIONKEY	4	Provisioning Key is available from EGETKEY.

Table 37-3. Layout of ATTRIBUTES Structure

Field	Bit Position	Description
EINITOKEN_KEY	5	EINIT token key is available from EGETKEY.
RESERVED	6	Must be zero.
KSS	7	Key Separation and Sharing Enabled.
RESERVED	63:8	Must be zero.
XFRM	127:64	XSAVE Feature Request Mask. See Section 41.7.

37.7.2 SECS.MISCSELECT Field

CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=0):EBX[31:0] enumerates which extended information that the processor can save into the MISC region of SSA when an AEX occurs. An enclave writer can specify via SIGSTRUCT how to set the SECS.MISCSELECT field. The bit vector of MISCSELECT selects which extended information is to be saved in the MISC region of the SSA frame when an AEX is generated. The bit vector definition of extended information is listed in Table 37-4.

If CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=0):EBX[31:0] = 0, SECS.MISCSELECT field must be all zeros.

The SECS.MISCSELECT field determines the size of MISC region of the SSA frame, see Section 37.9.2.

Table 37-4. Bit Vector Layout of MISCSELECT Field of Extended Information

Field	Bit Position	Description
EXINFO	0	Report information about page fault and general protection exception that occurred inside an enclave.
Reserved	31:1	Reserved (0).

37.8 THREAD CONTROL STRUCTURE (TCS)

Each executing thread in the enclave is associated with a Thread Control Structure. It requires 4K-Bytes alignment.

Table 37-5. Layout of Thread Control Structure (TCS)

Field	OFFSET (Bytes)	Size (Bytes)	Description
STAGE	0	8	Enclave execution state of the thread controlled by this TCS. A value of 0 indicates that this TCS is available for enclave entry. A value of 1 indicates that a processor is currently executing an enclave in the context of this TCS.
FLAGS	8	8	The thread's execution flags (see Section 37.8.1).
OSSA	16	8	Offset of the base of the State Save Area stack, relative to the enclave base. Must be page aligned.
CSSA	24	4	Current slot index of an SSA frame, cleared by EADD and EACCEPT.
NSSA	28	4	Number of available slots for SSA frames.
OENTRY	32	8	Offset in enclave to which control is transferred on EENTER relative to the base of the enclave.
AEP	40	8	The value of the Asynchronous Exit Pointer that was saved at EENTER time.
OFSBASGX	48	8	Offset to add to the base address of the enclave for producing the base address of FS segment inside the enclave. Must be page aligned.
OGSBASGX	56	8	Offset to add to the base address of the enclave for producing the base address of GS segment inside the enclave. Must be page aligned.
FSLIMIT	64	4	Size to become the new FS limit in 32-bit mode.

Table 37-5. Layout of Thread Control Structure (TCS)

Field	OFFSET (Bytes)	Size (Bytes)	Description
GSLIMIT	68	4	Size to become the new GS limit in 32-bit mode.
RESERVED	72	4024	Must be zero.

37.8.1 TCS.FLAGS

Table 37-6. Layout of TCS.FLAGS Field

Field	Bit Position	Description
DBGOPTIN	0	If set, allows debugging features (single-stepping, breakpoints, etc.) to be enabled and active while executing in the enclave on this TCS. Hardware clears this bit on EADD. A debugger may later modify it if the enclave's ATTRIBUTES.DEBUG is set.
RESERVED	63:1	

37.8.2 State Save Area Offset (OSSA)

The OSSA points to a stack of State Save Area (SSA) frames (see Section 37.9) used to save the processor state when an interrupt or exception occurs while executing in the enclave.

37.8.3 Current State Save Area Frame (CSSA)

CSSA is the index of the current SSA frame that will be used by the processor to determine where to save the processor state on an interrupt or exception that occurs while executing in the enclave. It is an index into the array of frames addressed by OSSA. CSSA is incremented on an AEX and decremented on an ERESUME.

37.8.4 Number of State Save Area Frames (NSSA)

NSSA specifies the number of SSA frames available for this TCS. There must be at least one available SSA frame when EENTER-ing the enclave or the EENTER will fail.

37.9 STATE SAVE AREA (SSA) FRAME

When an AEX occurs while running in an enclave, the architectural state is saved in the thread's current SSA frame, which is pointed to by TCS.CSSA. An SSA frame must be page aligned, and contains the following regions:

- The XSAVE region starts at the base of the SSA frame, this region contains extended feature register state in an XSAVE/FXSAVE-compatible non-compacted format.
- A Pad region: software may choose to maintain a pad region separating the XSAVE region and the MISC region. Software choose the size of the pad region according to the sizes of the MISC and GPRSGX regions.
- The GPRSGX region. The GPRSGX region is the last region of an SSA frame (see Table 37-7). This is used to hold the processor general purpose registers (RAX ... R15), the RIP, the outside RSP and RBP, RFLAGS and the AEX information.
- The MISC region (If CPUIDEAX=12H, ECX=0):EBX[31:0] != 0). The MISC region is adjacent to the GRPSGX region, and may contain zero or more components of extended information that would be saved when an AEX occurs. If the MISC region is absent, the region between the GPRSGX and XSAVE regions is the pad region that software can use. If the MISC region is present, the region between the MISC and XSAVE regions is the pad region that software can use. See additional details in Section 37.9.2.

Table 37-7. Top-to-Bottom Layout of an SSA Frame

Region	Offset (Byte)	Size (Bytes)	Description
XSAVE	0	Calculate using CPUID leaf ODH information	The size of XSAVE region in SSA is derived from the enclave's support of the collection of processor extended states that would be managed by XSAVE. The enablement of those processor extended state components in conjunction with CPUID leaf ODH information determines the XSAVE region size in SSA.
Pad	End of XSAVE region	Chosen by enclave writer	Ensure the end of GPRSGX region is aligned to the end of a 4KB page.
MISC	base of GPRSGX - sizeof(MISC)	Calculate from highest set bit of SECS.MISCSELECT	See Section 37.9.2.
GPRSGX	SSAFRAMESIZE - 176	176	See Table 37-8 for layout of the GPRSGX region.

37.9.1 GPRSGX Region

The layout of the GPRSGX region is shown in Table 37-8.

Table 37-8. Layout of GPRSGX Portion of the State Save Area

Field	OFFSET (Bytes)	Size (Bytes)	Description
RAX	0	8	
RCX	8	8	
RDX	16	8	
RBX	24	8	
RSP	32	8	
RBP	40	8	
RSI	48	8	
RDI	56	8	
R8	64	8	
R9	72	8	
R10	80	8	
R11	88	8	
R12	96	8	
R13	104	8	
R14	112	8	
R15	120	8	
RFLAGS	128	8	Flag register.
RIP	136	8	Instruction pointer.
URSP	144	8	Non-Enclave (outside) stack pointer. Saved by EENTER, restored on AEX.
URBP	152	8	Non-Enclave (outside) RBP pointer. Saved by EENTER, restored on AEX.
EXITINFO	160	4	Contains information about exceptions that cause AEXs, which might be needed by enclave software (see Section 37.9.1.1).
RESERVED	164	4	
FSBASE	168	8	FS BASE.
GSBASE	176	8	GS BASE.

37.9.1.1 EXITINFO

EXITINFO contains the information used to report exit reasons to software inside the enclave. It is a 4 byte field laid out as in Table 37-9. The VALID bit is set only for the exceptions conditions which are reported inside an enclave. See Table 37-10 for which exceptions are reported inside the enclave. If the exception condition is not one reported inside the enclave then VECTOR and EXIT_TYPE are cleared.

Table 37-9. Layout of EXITINFO Field

Field	Bit Position	Description
VECTOR	7:0	Exception number of exceptions reported inside enclave.
EXIT_TYPE	10:8	011b: Hardware exceptions. 110b: Software exceptions. Other values: Reserved.
RESERVED	30:11	Reserved as zero.
VALID	31	0: unsupported exceptions. 1: Supported exceptions. Includes two categories: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unconditionally supported exceptions: #DE, #DB, #BP, #BR, #UD, #MF, #AC, #XM. • Conditionally supported exception: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – #PF, #GP if SECS.MISCSELECT.EXITINFO = 1.

37.9.1.2 VECTOR Field Definition

Table 37-10 contains the VECTOR field. This field contains information about some exceptions which occur inside the enclave. These vector values are the same as the values that would be used when vectoring into regular exception handlers. All values not shown are not reported inside an enclave.

Table 37-10. Exception Vectors

Name	Vector #	Description
#DE	0	Divider exception.
#DB	1	Debug exception.
#BP	3	Breakpoint exception.
#BR	5	Bound range exceeded exception.
#UD	6	Invalid opcode exception.
#GP	13	General protection exception. Only reported if SECS.MISCSELECT.EXITINFO = 1.
#PF	14	Page fault exception. Only reported if SECS.MISCSELECT.EXITINFO = 1.
#MF	16	x87 FPU floating-point error.
#AC	17	Alignment check exceptions.
#XM	19	SIMD floating-point exceptions.

37.9.2 MISC Region

The layout of the MISC region is shown in Table 37-11. The number of components that the processor supports in the MISC region corresponds to the bits of CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=0):EBX[31:0] set to 1. Each set bit in CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=0):EBX[31:0] has a defined size for the corresponding component, as shown in Table 37-11. Enclave writers needs to do the following:

- Decide which MISC region components will be supported for the enclave.
- Allocate an SSA frame large enough to hold the components chosen above.
- Instruct each enclave builder software to set the appropriate bits in SECS.MISCSELECT.

The first component, EXINFO, starts next to the GPRSGX region. Additional components in the MISC region grow in ascending order within the MISC region towards the XSAVE region.

The size of the MISC region is calculated as follows:

- If CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=0):EBX[31:0] = 0, MISC region is not supported.
- If CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=0):EBX[31:0] != 0, the size of MISC region is derived from sum of the highest bit set in SECS.MISCSELECT and the size of the MISC component corresponding to that bit. Offset and size information of currently defined MISC components are listed in Table 37-11. For example, if the highest bit set in SECS.MISCSELECT is bit 0, the MISC region offset is OFFSET(GPRSGX)-16 and size is 16 bytes.
- The processor saves a MISC component *i* in the MISC region if and only if SECS.MISCSELECT[*i*] is 1.

Table 37-11. Layout of MISC region of the State Save Area

MISC Components	OFFSET (Bytes)	Size (Bytes)	Description
EXINFO	Offset(GPRSGX) -16	16	If CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=0):EBX[0] = 1, exception information on #GP or #PF that occurred inside an enclave can be written to the EXINFO structure if specified by SECS.MISCSELECT[0] = 1.
Future Extension	Below EXINFO	TBD	Reserved. (Zero size if CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=0):EBX[31:1] =0).

37.9.2.1 EXINFO Structure

Table 37-12 contains the layout of the EXINFO structure that provides additional information.

Table 37-12. Layout of EXINFO Structure

Field	OFFSET (Bytes)	Size (Bytes)	Description
MADDR	0	8	If #PF: contains the page fault linear address that caused a page fault. If #GP: the field is cleared.
ERRCD	8	4	Exception error code for either #GP or #PF.
RESERVED	12	4	

37.9.2.2 Page Fault Error Code

Table 37-13 contains page fault error code that may be reported in EXINFO.ERRCD.

Table 37-13. Page Fault Error Code

Name	Bit Position	Description
P	0	Same as non-SGX page fault exception P flag.
W/R	1	Same as non-SGX page fault exception W/R flag.
U/S ¹	2	Always set to 1 (user mode reference).
RSVD	3	Same as non-SGX page fault exception RSVD flag.
I/D	4	Same as non-SGX page fault exception I/D flag.
PK	5	Protection Key induced fault.
RSVD	14:6	Reserved.
SGX	15	EPCM induced fault.
RSVD	31:5	Reserved.

NOTES:

1. Page faults incident to enclave mode that report U/S=0 are not reported in EXINFO.

37.10 PAGE INFORMATION (PAGEINFO)

PAGEINFO is an architectural data structure that is used as a parameter to the EPC-management instructions. It requires 32-Byte alignment.

Table 37-14. Layout of PAGEINFO Data Structure

Field	OFFSET (Bytes)	Size (Bytes)	Description
LINADDR	0	8	Enclave linear address.
SRCPGE	8	8	Effective address of the page where contents are located.
SECINFO/PCMD	16	8	Effective address of the SECINFO or PCMD (for ELDU, ELDB, EWB) structure for the page.
SECS	24	8	Effective address of EPC slot that currently contains the SECS.

37.11 SECURITY INFORMATION (SECINFO)

The SECINFO data structure holds meta-data about an enclave page.

Table 37-15. Layout of SECINFO Data Structure

Field	OFFSET (Bytes)	Size (Bytes)	Description
FLAGS	0	8	Flags describing the state of the enclave page.
RESERVED	8	56	Must be zero.

37.11.1 SECINFO.FLAGS

The SECINFO.FLAGS are a set of fields describing the properties of an enclave page.

Table 37-16. Layout of SECINFO.FLAGS Field

Field	Bit Position	Description
R	0	If 1 indicates that the page can be read from inside the enclave; otherwise the page cannot be read from inside the enclave.
W	1	If 1 indicates that the page can be written from inside the enclave; otherwise the page cannot be written from inside the enclave.
X	2	If 1 indicates that the page can be executed from inside the enclave; otherwise the page cannot be executed from inside the enclave.
PENDING	3	If 1 indicates that the page is in the PENDING state; otherwise the page is not in the PENDING state.
MODIFIED	4	If 1 indicates that the page is in the MODIFIED state; otherwise the page is not in the MODIFIED state.
PR	5	If 1 indicates that a permission restriction operation on the page is in progress, otherwise a permission restriction operation is not in progress.
RESERVED	7:6	Must be zero.
PAGE_TYPE	15:8	The type of page that the SECINFO is associated with.
RESERVED	63:16	Must be zero.

37.11.2 PAGE_TYPE Field Definition

The SECINFO flags and EPC flags contain bits indicating the type of page.

Table 37-17. Supported PAGE_TYPE

TYPE	Value	Description
PT_SECS	0	Page is an SECS.
PT_TCS	1	Page is a TCS.
PT_REG	2	Page is a regular page.
PT_VA	3	Page is a Version Array.
PT_TRIM	4	Page is in trimmed state.
	All other	Reserved.

37.12 PAGING CRYPTO METADATA (PCMD)

The PCMD structure is used to keep track of crypto meta-data associated with a paged-out page. Combined with PAGEINFO, it provides enough information for the processor to verify, decrypt, and reload a paged-out EPC page. The size of the PCMD structure (128 bytes) is architectural.

EWB calculates the Message Authentication Code (MAC) value and writes out the PCMD. ELDB/U reads the fields and checks the MAC.

The format of PCMD is as follows:

Table 37-18. Layout of PCMD Data Structure

Field	OFFSET (Bytes)	Size (Bytes)	Description
SECINFO	0	64	Flags describing the state of the enclave page; R/W by software.
ENCLAVEID	64	8	Enclave Identifier used to establish a cryptographic binding between paged-out page and the enclave.
RESERVED	72	40	Must be zero.
MAC	112	16	Message Authentication Code for the page, page meta-data and reserved field.

37.13 ENCLAVE SIGNATURE STRUCTURE (SIGSTRUCT)

SIGSTRUCT is a structure created and signed by the enclave developer that contains information about the enclave. SIGSTRUCT is processed by the EINIT leaf function to verify that the enclave was properly built.

SIGSTRUCT includes ENCLAVEHASH as SHA256 digest, as defined in FIPS PUB 180-4. The digests are byte strings of length 32. Each of the 8 HASH dwords is stored in little-endian order.

SIGSTRUCT includes four 3072-bit integers (MODULUS, SIGNATURE, Q1, Q2). Each such integer is represented as a byte strings of length 384, with the most significant byte at the position "offset + 383", and the least significant byte at position "offset".

The (3072-bit integer) SIGNATURE should be an RSA signature, where: a) the RSA modulus (MODULUS) is a 3072-bit integer; b) the public exponent is set to 3; c) the signing procedure uses the EMSA-PKCS1-v1.5 format with DER encoding of the "DigestInfo" value as specified in of PKCS#1 v2.1/RFC 3447.

The 3072-bit integers Q1 and Q2 are defined by:

$$q1 = \text{floor}(\text{Signature}^2 / \text{Modulus});$$

$$q2 = \text{floor}((\text{Signature}^3 - q1 * \text{Signature} * \text{Modulus}) / \text{Modulus});$$

SIGSTRUCT must be page aligned

In column 5 of Table 37-19, 'Y' indicates that this field should be included in the signature generated by the developer.

Table 37-19. Layout of Enclave Signature Structure (SIGSTRUCT)

Field	OFFSET (Bytes)	Size (Bytes)	Description	Signed
HEADER	0	16	Must be byte stream 06000000E1000000000010000000000H	Y
VENDOR	16	4	Intel Enclave: 00008086H Non-Intel Enclave: 00000000H	Y
DATE	20	4	Build date is yyyyymmdd in hex: yyyy=4 digit year, mm=1-12, dd=1-31	Y
HEADER2	24	16	Must be byte stream 01010000600000006000000001000000H	Y
SWDEFINED	40	4	Available for software use.	Y
RESERVED	44	84	Must be zero.	Y
MODULUS	128	384	Module Public Key (keylength=3072 bits).	N
EXPONENT	512	4	RSA Exponent = 3.	N
SIGNATURE	516	384	Signature over Header and Body.	N
MISCSELECT*	900	4	Bit vector specifying Extended SSA frame feature set to be used.	Y
MISCMASK*	904	4	Bit vector mask of MISCSELECT to enforce.	Y
RESERVED	908	4	Must be zero.	Y
ISVFAMILYID	912	16	ISV assigned Product Family ID.	Y
ATTRIBUTES	928	16	Enclave Attributes that must be set.	Y
ATTRIBUTEMASK	944	16	Mask of Attributes to enforce.	Y
ENCLAVEHASH	960	32	MRENCLAVE of enclave this structure applies to.	Y
RESERVED	992	16	Must be zero.	Y
ISVEXTPRODID	1008	16	ISV assigned extended Product ID.	Y
ISVPRODID	1024	2	ISV assigned Product ID.	Y
ISVSVN	1026	2	ISV assigned SVN (security version number).	Y
RESERVED	1028	12	Must be zero.	N
Q1	1040	384	Q1 value for RSA Signature Verification.	N
Q2	1424	384	Q2 value for RSA Signature Verification.	N
<p>* If CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=0):EBX[31:0] = 0, MISCSELECT must be 0. If CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=0):EBX[31:0] !=0, enclave writers must specify MISCSELECT such that each cleared bit in MISCMASK must also specify the corresponding bit as 0 in MISCSELECT.</p>				

37.14 EINIT TOKEN STRUCTURE (EINITTOKEN)

The EINIT token is used by EINIT to verify that the enclave is permitted to launch. EINIT token is generated by an enclave in possession of the EINITTOKEN key (the Launch Enclave).

EINIT token must be 512-Byte aligned.

Table 37-20. Layout of EINIT Token (EINITTOKEN)

Field	OFFSET (Bytes)	Size (Bytes)	MACed	Description
Valid	0	4	Y	Bit 0: 1: Valid; 0: Invalid. All other bits reserved.
RESERVED	4	44	Y	Must be zero.
ATTRIBUTES	48	16	Y	ATTRIBUTES of the Enclave.
MRENCLAVE	64	32	Y	MRENCLAVE of the Enclave.
RESERVED	96	32	Y	Reserved.
MRSIGNER	128	32	Y	MRSIGNER of the Enclave.
RESERVED	160	32	Y	Reserved.
CPUSVNLE	192	16	N	Launch Enclave's CPUSVN.
ISVPRODIDLE	208	02	N	Launch Enclave's ISVPRODID.
ISVSVNLE	210	02	N	Launch Enclave's ISVSVN.
RESERVED	212	24	N	Reserved.
MASKEDMISCSELECTLE	236	4		Launch Enclave's MASKEDMISCSELECT: set by the LE to the resolved MISCSELECT value, used by EGETKEY (after applying KEYREQUEST's masking).
MASKEDATTRIBUTESLE	240	16	N	Launch Enclave's MASKEDATTRIBUTES: This should be set to the LE's ATTRIBUTES masked with ATTRIBUTEMASK of the LE's KEYREQUEST.
KEYID	256	32	N	Value for key wear-out protection.
MAC	288	16	N	Message Authentication Code on EINITTOKEN using EINITTOKEN_KEY.

37.15 REPORT (REPORT)

The REPORT structure is the output of the EREPORT instruction, and must be 512-Byte aligned.

Table 37-21. Layout of REPORT

Field	OFFSET (Bytes)	Size (Bytes)	Description
CPUSVN	0	16	The security version number of the processor.
MISCSELECT	16	4	Bit vector specifying which extended features are saved to the MISC region of the SSA frame when an AEX occurs.
RESERVED	20	12	Zero.
ISVEXTNPRODID	32	16	The value of SECS.ISVEXTPRODID.
ATTRIBUTES	48	16	ATTRIBUTES of the Enclave. See Section 37.7.1.
MRENCLAVE	64	32	The value of SECS.MRENCLAVE.
RESERVED	96	32	Zero.
MRSIGNER	128	32	The value of SECS.MRSIGNER.
RESERVED	160	32	Zero.
CONFIGID	192	64	Value provided by SW to identify enclave's post EINIT configuration.
ISVPRODID	256	2	Product ID of enclave.
ISVSVN	258	2	Security version number (SVN) of the enclave.
CONFIGSVN	260	2	Value provided by SW to indicate expected SVN of enclave's post EINIT configuration.
RESERVED	262	42	Zero.
ISVFAMILYID	304	16	The value of SECS.ISVFAMILYID.

Table 37-21. Layout of REPORT

Field	OFFSET (Bytes)	Size (Bytes)	Description
REPORTDATA	320	64	Data provided by the user and protected by the REPORT's MAC, see Section 37.15.1.
KEYID	384	32	Value for key wear-out protection.
MAC	416	16	Message Authentication Code on the report using report key.

37.15.1 REPORTDATA

REPORTDATA is a 64-Byte data structure that is provided by the enclave and included in the REPORT. It can be used to securely pass information from the enclave to the target enclave.

37.16 REPORT TARGET INFO (TARGETINFO)

This structure is an input parameter to the EREPORT leaf function. The address of TARGETINFO is specified as an effective address in RBX. It is used to identify the target enclave which will be able to cryptographically verify the REPORT structure returned by EREPORT. TARGETINFO must be 512-Byte aligned.

Table 37-22. Layout of TARGETINFO Data Structure

Field	OFFSET (Bytes)	Size (Bytes)	Description
MEASUREMENT	0	32	The MRENCLAVE of the target enclave.
ATTRIBUTES	32	16	The ATTRIBUTES field of the target enclave.
RESERVED	48	2	Must be zero.
CONFIGSVN	50	2	CONFIGSVN of the target enclave.
MISCSELECT	52	4	The MISCSELECT of the target enclave.
RESERVED	56	8	Must be zero.
CONFIGID	64	64	CONFIGID of target enclave.
RESERVED	128	384	Must be zero.

37.17 KEY REQUEST (KEYREQUEST)

This structure is an input parameter to the EGETKEY leaf function. It is passed in as an effective address in RBX and must be 512-Byte aligned. It is used for selecting the appropriate key and any additional parameters required in the derivation of that key.

Table 37-23. Layout of KEYREQUEST Data Structure

Field	OFFSET (Bytes)	Size (Bytes)	Description
KEYNAME	0	2	Identifies the Key Required.
KEYPOLICY	2	2	Identifies which inputs are required to be used in the key derivation.
ISVSVN	4	2	The ISV security version number that will be used in the key derivation.
RESERVED	6	2	Must be zero.
CPUSVN	8	16	The security version number of the processor used in the key derivation.
ATTRIBUTEMASK	24	16	A mask defining which ATTRIBUTES bits will be included in key derivation.
KEYID	40	32	Value for key wear-out protection.
MISCMASK	72	4	A mask defining which MISCSELECT bits will be included in key derivation.

Table 37-23. Layout of KEYREQUEST Data Structure

Field	OFFSET (Bytes)	Size (Bytes)	Description
CONFIGSVN	76	2	Identifies which enclave Configuration's Security Version should be used in key derivation.
RESERVED	78	434	

37.17.1 KEY REQUEST KeyNames

Table 37-24. Supported KEYName Values

Key Name	Value	Description
EINITTOKEN_KEY	0	EINIT_TOKEN key
PROVISION_KEY	1	Provisioning Key
PROVISION_SEAL_KEY	2	Provisioning Seal Key
REPORT_KEY	3	Report Key
SEAL_KEY	4	Seal Key
	All other	Reserved

37.17.2 Key Request Policy Structure

Table 37-25. Layout of KEYPOLICY Field

Field	Bit Position	Description
MRENCLAVE	0	If 1, derive key using the enclave's MRENCLAVE measurement register.
MRSIGNER	1	If 1, derive key using the enclave's MRSIGNER measurement register.
NOISVPRODID	2	If 1, derive key WITHOUT using the enclave's ISVPRODID value.
CONFIGID	3	If 1, derive key using the enclave's CONFIGID value.
ISVFAMILYID	4	If 1, derive key using the enclave ISVFAMILYID value.
ISVEXTPRODID	5	If 1, derive key using enclave's ISVEXTPRODID value.
RESERVED	15:6	Must be zero.

37.18 VERSION ARRAY (VA)

In order to securely store the versions of evicted EPC pages, Intel SGX defines a special EPC page type called a Version Array (VA). Each VA page contains 512 slots, each of which can contain an 8-byte version number for a page evicted from the EPC. When an EPC page is evicted, software chooses an empty slot in a VA page; this slot receives the unique version number of the page being evicted. When the EPC page is reloaded, there must be a VA slot that must hold the version of the page. If the page is successfully reloaded, the version in the VA slot is cleared.

VA pages can be evicted, just like any other EPC page. When evicting a VA page, a version slot in some other VA page must be used to hold the version for the VA being evicted. A Version Array Page must be 4K-Bytes aligned.

Table 37-26. Layout of Version Array Data Structure

Field	OFFSET (Bytes)	Size (Bytes)	Description
Slot 0	0	8	Version Slot 0
Slot 1	8	8	Version Slot 1
...			
Slot 511	4088	8	Version Slot 511

37.19 ENCLAVE PAGE CACHE MAP (EPCM)

EPCM is a secure structure used by the processor to track the contents of the EPC. The EPCM holds exactly one entry for each page that is currently loaded into the EPC. EPCM is not accessible by software, and the layout of EPCM fields is implementation specific.

Table 37-27. Content of an Enclave Page Cache Map Entry

Field	Description
VALID	Indicates whether the EPCM entry is valid.
R	Read access; indicates whether enclave accesses for reads are allowed from the EPC page referenced by this entry.
W	Write access; indicates whether enclave accesses for writes are allowed to the EPC page referenced by this entry.
X	Execute access; indicates whether enclave accesses for instruction fetches are allowed from the EPC page referenced by this entry.
PT	EPCM page type (PT_SECS, PT_TCS, PT_REG, PT_VA, PT_TRIM).
ENCLAVESECS	SECS identifier of the enclave to which the EPC page belongs.
ENCLAVEADDRESS	Linear enclave address of the EPC page.
BLOCKED	Indicates whether the EPC page is in the blocked state.
PENDING	Indicates whether the EPC page is in the pending state.
MODIFIED	Indicates whether the EPC page is in the modified state.
PR	Indicates whether the EPC page is in a permission restriction state.

37.20 READ INFO (RDINFO)

The RDINFO structure contains status information about an EPC page. It must be aligned to 32-Bytes.

Table 37-28. Layout of RDINFO Structure

Field	OFFSET (Bytes)	Size (Bytes)	Description
STATUS	0	8	Page status information.
FLAGS	8	8	EPCM state of the page.
ENCLAVECONTEXT	16	8	Context pointer describing the page's parent location.

37.20.1 RDINFO Status Structure

Table 37-29. Layout of RDINFO STATUS Structure

Field	Bit Position	Description
CHILDPRESENT	0	Indicates that the page has one or more child pages present (always zero for non-SECS pages). In VMX non-root operation includes the presence of virtual children.
VIRTCHLDPRESENT	1	Indicates that the page has one or more virtual child pages present (always zero for non-SECS pages). In VMX non-root operation this value is always zero.
RESERVED	63:2	

37.20.2 RDINFO Flags Structure

Table 37-30. Layout of RDINFO FLAGS Structure

Field	Bit Position	Description
R	0	Read access; indicates whether enclave accesses for reads are allowed from the EPC page referenced by this entry.
W	1	Write access; indicates whether enclave accesses for writes are allowed to the EPC page referenced by this entry.
X	2	Execute access; indicates whether enclave accesses for instruction fetches are allowed from the EPC page referenced by this entry.
PENDING	3	Indicates whether the EPC page is in the pending state.
MODIFIED	4	Indicates whether the EPC page is in the modified state.
PR	5	Indicates whether the EPC page is in a permission restriction state.
RESERVED	7:6	
PAGE_TYPE	15:8	Indicates the page type of the EPC page.
RESERVED	62:16	
BLOCKED	63	Indicates whether the EPC page is in the blocked state.

19. Updates to Chapter 38, Volume 3D

Change bars show changes to Chapter 38 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3D: System Programming Guide, Part 4*.

Changes to this chapter: Minor typo corrections.

CHAPTER 38 ENCLAVE OPERATION

The following aspects of enclave operation are described in this chapter:

- Enclave creation: Includes loading code and data from outside of enclave into the EPC and establishing the enclave entity.
- Adding pages and measuring the enclave.
- Initialization of an enclave: Finalizes the cryptographic log and establishes the enclave identity and sealing identity.
- Enclave entry and exiting including:
 - Controlled entry and exit.
 - Asynchronous Enclave Exit (AEX) and resuming execution after an AEX.

38.1 CONSTRUCTING AN ENCLAVE

Figure 38-1 illustrates a typical Enclave memory layout.

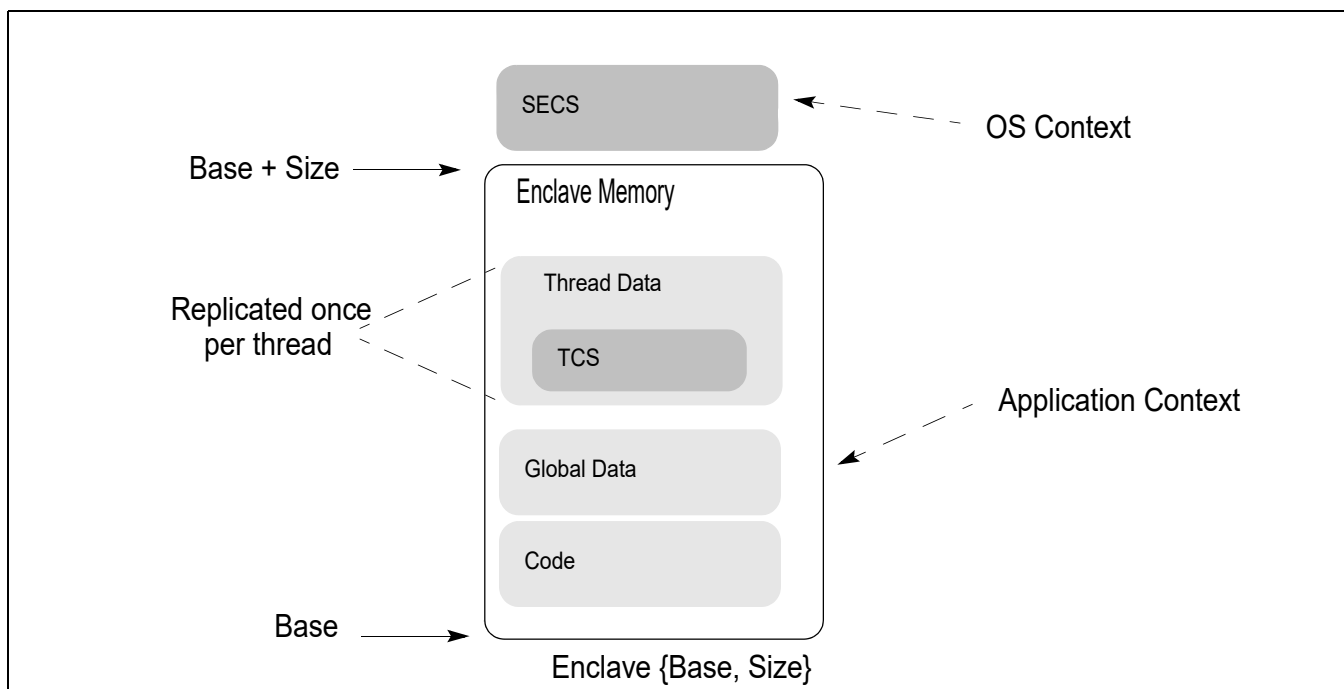


Figure 38-1. Enclave Memory Layout

The enclave creation, commitment of memory resources, and finalizing the enclave's identity with measurement comprises multiple phases. This process can be illustrated by the following exemplary steps:

1. The application hands over the enclave content along with additional information required by the enclave creation API to the enclave creation service running at privilege level 0.
2. The enclave creation service running at privilege level 0 uses the ECREATE leaf function to set up the initial environment, specifying base address and size of the enclave. This address range, the ELRANGE, is part of the application's address space. This reserves the memory range. The enclave will now reside in this address

region. ECREATE also allocates an Enclave Page Cache (EPC) page for the SGX Enclave Control Structure (SECS). Note that this page is not required to be a part of the enclave linear address space and is not required to be mapped into the process.

3. The enclave creation service uses the EADD leaf function to commit EPC pages to the enclave, and use EEXTEND to measure the committed memory content of the enclave. For each page to be added to the enclave:
 - Use EADD to add the new page to the enclave.
 - If the enclave developer requires measurement of the page as a proof for the content, use EEXTEND to add a measurement for 256 bytes of the page. Repeat this operation until the entire page is measured.
4. The enclave creation service uses the EINIT leaf function to complete the enclave creation process and finalize the enclave measurement to establish the enclave identity. Until an EINIT is executed, the enclave is not permitted to execute any enclave code (i.e. entering the enclave by executing EENTER would result in a fault).

38.1.1 ECREATE

The ECREATE leaf function sets up the initial environment for the enclave by reading an SGX Enclave Control Structure (SECS) that contains the enclave's address range (ELRANGE) as defined by BASEADDR and SIZE, the ATTRIBUTES and MISCSELECT bitmaps, and the SSAFRAMESIZE. It then securely stores this information in an Enclave Page Cache (EPC) page. ELRANGE is part of the application's address space. ECREATE also initializes a cryptographic log of the enclave's build process.

38.1.2 EADD and EEXTEND Interaction

Once the SECS has been created, enclave pages can be added to the enclave via EADD. This involves converting a free EPC page into either a PT_REG or a PT_TCS page.

When EADD is invoked, the processor will update the EPCM entry with the type of page (PT_REG or PT_TCS), the linear address used by the enclave to access the page, and the enclave access permissions for the page. It associates the page to the SECS provided as input. The EPCM entry information is used by hardware to manage access control to the page. EADD records EPCM information in the cryptographic log stored in the SECS and copies 4 KBytes of data from unprotected memory outside the EPC to the allocated EPC page.

System software is responsible for selecting a free EPC page. System software is also responsible for providing the type of page to be added, the attributes of the page, the contents of the page, and the SECS (enclave) to which the page is to be added as requested by the application. Incorrect data would lead to a failure of EADD or to an incorrect cryptographic log and a failure at EINIT time.

After a page has been added to an enclave, software can measure a 256 byte region as determined by the developer by invoking EEXTEND. Thus to measure an entire 4KB page, system software must execute EEXTEND 16 times. Each invocation of EEXTEND adds to the cryptographic log information about which region is being measured and the measurement of the section.

Entries in the cryptographic log define the measurement of the enclave and are critical in gaining assurance that the enclave was correctly constructed by the untrusted system software.

38.1.3 EINIT Interaction

Once system software has completed the process of adding and measuring pages, the enclave needs to be initialized by the EINIT leaf function. After an enclave is initialized, EADD and EEXTEND are disabled for that enclave (An attempt to execute EADD/EEXTEND to enclave after enclave initialization will result in a fault). The initialization process finalizes the cryptographic log and establishes the **enclave identity** and **sealing identity** used by EGETKEY and EREPORT.

A cryptographic hash of the log is stored as the **enclave identity**. Correct construction of the enclave results in the cryptographic hash matching the one built by the enclave owner and included as the ENCLAVEHASH field of SIGSTRUCT. The **enclave identity** provided by the EREPORT leaf function can be verified by a remote party.

The EINIT leaf function checks the EINIT token to validate that the enclave has been enabled on this platform. If the enclave is not correctly constructed, or the EINIT token is not valid for the platform, or SIGSTRUCT isn't properly signed, then EINIT will fail. See the EINIT leaf function for details on the error reporting.

The **enclave identity** is a cryptographic hash that reflects the enclave attributes and MISCSELECT value, content of the enclave, the order in which it was built, the addresses it occupies in memory, the security attributes, and access right permissions of each page. The **enclave identity** is established by the EINIT leaf function.

The **sealing identity** is managed by a sealing authority represented by the hash of the public key used to sign the SIGSTRUCT structure processed by EINIT. The sealing authority assigns a product ID (ISVPROPID) and security version number (ISVSVN) to a particular enclave identity.

EINIT establishes the sealing identity using the following steps:

1. Verifies that SIGSTRUCT is properly signed using the public key enclosed in the SIGSTRUCT.
2. Checks that the measurement of the enclave matches the measurement of the enclave specified in SIGSTRUCT.
3. Checks that the enclave's attributes and MISCSELECT values are compatible with those specified in SIGSTRUCT.
4. Finalizes the measurement of the enclave and records the **sealing identity** (the sealing authority, product id and security version number) and **enclave identity** in the SECS.
5. Sets the ATTRIBUTES.INIT bit for the enclave.

38.1.4 Intel® SGX Launch Control Configuration

Intel® SGX Launch Control is a set of controls that govern the creation of enclaves. Before the EINIT leaf function will successfully initialize an enclave, a designated Launch Enclave must create an EINITTOKEN for that enclave. Launch Enclaves have SECS.ATTRIBUTES.EINITTOKEN_KEY = 1, granting them access to the EINITTOKEN_KEY from the EGETKEY leaf function. EINITTOKEN_KEY must be used by the Launch Enclave when computing EINITTOKEN.MAC, the Message Authentication Code of the EINITTOKEN.

The hash of the public key used to sign the SIGSTRUCT of the Launch Enclave must equal the value in the IA32_SGXLEPUBKEYHASH MSRs. Only Launch Enclaves are allowed to launch without a valid token.

The IA32_SGXLEPUBKEYHASH MSRs are provided to designate the platform's Launch Enclave. IA32_SGXLEPUBKEYHASH defaults to digest of Intel's launch enclave signing key after reset.

IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL bit 17 controls the permissions on the IA32_SGXLEPUBKEYHASH MSRs when CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=00H):EAX[0] = 1. If IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL is locked with bit 17 set, IA32_SGXLEPUBKEYHASH MSRs are reconfigurable (writeable). If either IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL is not locked or bit 17 is clear, the MSRs are read only. By leaving these MSRs writable, system SW or a VMM can support a plurality of Launch Enclaves for hosting multiple execution environments. See Table 42.2.2 for more details.

38.2 ENCLAVE ENTRY AND EXITING

38.2.1 Controlled Entry and Exit

The EENTER leaf function is the method to enter the enclave under program control. To execute EENTER, software must supply an address of a TCS that is part of the enclave to be entered. The TCS holds the location inside the enclave to transfer control to and a pointer to the SSA frame inside the enclave that an AEX should store the register state to.

When a logical processor enters an enclave, the TCS is considered busy until the logical processors exits the enclave. An attempt to enter an enclave through a busy TCS results in a fault. Intel® SGX allows an enclave builder to define multiple TCSs, thereby providing support for multithreaded enclaves.

Software must also supply to EENTER the Asynchronous Exit Pointer (AEP) parameter. AEP is an address external to the enclave which an exception handler will return to using IRET. Typically the location would contain the ERESUME instruction. ERESUME transfers control back to the enclave, to the address retrieved from the enclave thread's saved state.

EENTER performs the following operations:

ENCLAVE OPERATION

1. Check that TCS is not busy and flush all cached linear-to-physical mappings.
2. Change the mode of operation to be in enclave mode.
3. Save the old RSP, RBP for later restore on AEX (Software is responsible for setting up the new RSP, RBP to be used inside enclave).
4. Save XCR0 and replace it with the XFRM value for the enclave.
5. Check if software wishes to debug (applicable to a debuggable enclave):
 - If not debugging, then configure hardware so the enclave appears as a single instruction.
 - If debugging, then configure hardware to allow traps, breakpoints, and single steps inside the enclave.
6. Set the TCS as busy.
7. Transfer control from outside enclave to predetermined location inside the enclave specified by the TCS.

The EEXIT leaf function is the method of leaving the enclave under program control. EEXIT receives the target address outside of the enclave that the enclave wishes to transfer control to. It is the responsibility of enclave software to erase any secret from the registers prior to invoking EEXIT. To allow enclave software to easily perform an external function call and re-enter the enclave (using EEXIT and EENTER leaf functions), EEXIT returns the value of the AEP that was used when the enclave was entered.

EEXIT performs the following operations:

1. Clear enclave mode and flush all cached linear-to-physical mappings.
2. Mark TCS as not busy.
3. Transfer control from inside the enclave to a location on the outside specified as parameter to the EEXIT leaf function.

38.2.2 Asynchronous Enclave Exit (AEX)

Asynchronous and synchronous events, such as exceptions, interrupts, traps, SMIs, and VM exits may occur while executing inside an enclave. These events are referred to as Enclave Exiting Events (EEE). Upon an EEE, the processor state is securely saved inside the enclave (in the thread's current SSA frame) and then replaced by a synthetic state to prevent leakage of secrets. The process of securely saving state and establishing the synthetic state is called an Asynchronous Enclave Exit (AEX). Details of AEX is described in Chapter 39, "Enclave Exiting Events".

As part of most EEEs, the AEP is pushed onto the stack as the location of the eventing address. This is the location where control will return to after executing the IRET. The ERESUME leaf function can be executed from that point to reenter the enclave and resume execution from the interrupted point.

After AEX has completed, the logical processor is no longer in enclave mode and the exiting event is processed normally. Any new events that occur after the AEX has completed are treated as having occurred outside the enclave (e.g. a #PF in dispatching to an interrupt handler).

38.2.3 Resuming Execution after AEX

After system software has serviced the event that caused the logical processor to exit an enclave, the logical processor can continue enclave execution using ERESUME. ERESUME restores processor state and returns control to where execution was interrupted.

If the cause of the exit was an exception or a fault and was not resolved, the event will be triggered again if the enclave is re-entered using ERESUME. For example, if an enclave performs a divide by 0 operation, executing ERESUME will cause the enclave to attempt to re-execute the faulting instruction and result in another divide by 0 exception. Intel® SGX provides the means for an enclave developer to handle enclave exceptions from within the enclave. Software can enter the enclave at a different location and invoke the exception handler within the enclave by executing the EENTER leaf function. The exception handler within the enclave can read the fault information from the SSA frame and attempt to resolve the faulting condition or simply return and indicate to software that the enclave should be terminated (e.g. using EEXIT).

38.2.3.1 ERESUME Interaction

ERESUME restores registers depending on the mode of the enclave (32 or 64 bit).

- In 32-bit mode (IA32_EFER.LMA = 0 || CS.L = 0), the low 32-bits of the legacy registers (EAX, EBX, ECX, EDX, ESP, EBP, ESI, EDI, EIP and EFLAGS) are restored from the thread's GPR area of the current SSA frame. Neither the upper 32 bits of the legacy registers nor the 64-bit registers (R8 ... R15) are loaded.
- In 64-bit mode (IA32_EFER.LMA = 1 && CS.L = 1), all 64 bits of the general processor registers (RAX, RBX, RCX, RDX, RSP, RBP, RSI, RDI, R8 ... R15, RIP and RFLAGS) are loaded.

Extended features specified by SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM are restored from the XSAVE area of the current SSA frame. The layout of the x87 area depends on the current values of IA32_EFER.LMA and CS.L:

- IA32_EFER.LMA = 0 || CS.L = 0
 - 32-bit load in the same format that XSAVE/FXSAVE uses with these values.
- IA32_EFER.LMA = 1 && CS.L = 1
 - 64-bit load in the same format that XSAVE/FXSAVE uses with these values as if REX.W = 1.

38.3 CALLING ENCLAVE PROCEDURES

38.3.1 Calling Convention

In standard call conventions subroutine parameters are generally pushed onto the stack. The called routine, being aware of its own stack layout, knows how to find parameters based on compile-time-computable offsets from the SP or BP register (depending on runtime conventions used by the compiler).

Because of the stack switch when calling an enclave, stack-located parameters cannot be found in this manner. Entering the enclave requires a modified parameter passing convention.

For example, the caller might push parameters onto the untrusted stack and then pass a pointer to those parameters in RAX to the enclave software. The exact choice of calling conventions is up to the writer of the edge routines; be those routines hand-coded or compiler generated.

38.3.2 Register Preservation

As with most systems, it is the responsibility of the callee to preserve all registers except that used for returning a value. This is consistent with conventional usage and tends to optimize the number of register save/restore operations that need be performed. It has the additional security result that it ensures that data is scrubbed from any registers that were used by enclave to temporarily contain secrets.

38.3.3 Returning to Caller

No registers are modified during EEXIT. It is the responsibility of software to remove secrets in registers before executing EEXIT.

38.4 INTEL® SGX KEY AND ATTESTATION

38.4.1 Enclave Measurement and Identification

During the enclave build process, two "measurements" are taken of each enclave and are stored in two 256-bit Measurement Registers (MR): MRENCLAVE and MRSIGNER. MRENCLAVE represents the enclave's contents and build process. MRSIGNER represents the entity that signed the enclave's SIGSTRUCT.

The values of the Measurement Registers are included in attestations to identify the enclave to remote parties. The MRs are also included in most keys, binding keys to enclaves with specific MRs.

38.4.1.1 MRENCLAVE

MRENCLAVE is a unique 256 bit value that identifies the code and data that was loaded into the enclave during the initial launch. It is computed as a SHA256 hash that is initialized by the ECREATE leaf function. EADD and EEXTEND leaf functions record information about each page and the content of those pages. The EINIT leaf function finalizes the hash, which is stored in SECS.MRENCLAVE. Any tampering with the build process, contents of a page, page permissions, etc will result in a different MRENCLAVE value.

Figure 38-2 illustrates a simplified flow of changes to the MRENCLAVE register when building an enclave:

- Enclave creation with ECREATE.
- Copying a non-enclave source page into the EPC of an un-initialized enclave with EADD.
- Updating twice of the MRENCLAVE after modifying the enclave’s page content, i.e. EEXTEND twice.
- Finalizing the enclave build with EINIT.

Details on specific values inserted in the hash are available in the individual instruction definitions.

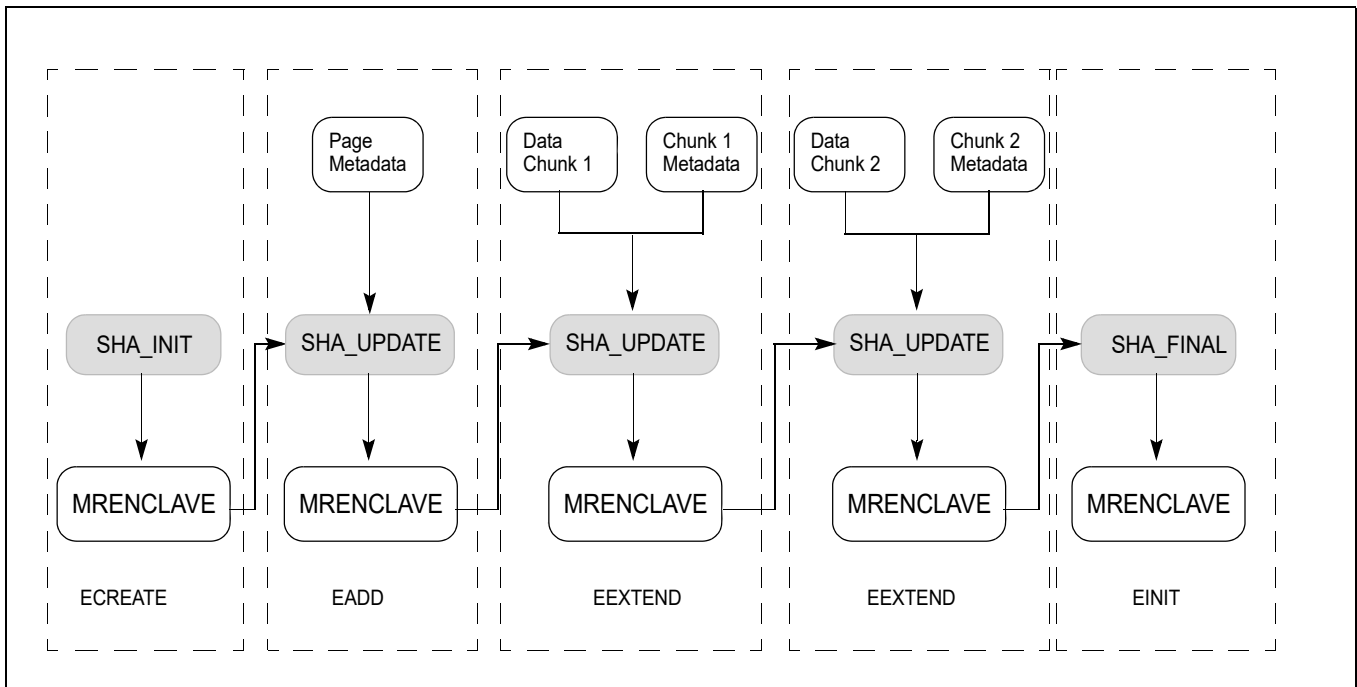


Figure 38-2. Measurement Flow of Enclave Build Process

38.4.1.2 MRSIGNER

Each enclave is signed using a 3072 bit RSA key. The signature is stored in the SIGSTRUCT. In the SIGSTRUCT, the enclave's signer also assigns a product ID (ISVPRODID) and a security version (ISVSVN) to the enclave.

MRSIGNER is the SHA-256 hash of the signer's public key. For platforms that support Key Separation and Sharing (CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=1).EAX.KSS[7]) the SIGSTRUCT can additionally specify an 16 byte extended product ID (ISVEXTPRODID), and a 16 byte family ID (ISVFAMILYID).

In attestation, MRSIGNER can be used to allow software to approve of an enclave based on the author rather than maintaining a list of MRENCLAVES. It is used in key derivation to allow software to create a lineage of an application. By signing multiple enclaves with the same key, the enclaves will share the same keys and data. Combined

with security version numbering, the author can release multiple versions of an application which can access keys for previous versions, but not future versions of that application.

38.4.1.3 CONFIGID

For platforms that support enhancements for key separation and sharing (CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=1).EAX.KSS[7]) when the enclave is created the platform can additionally provide 32-byte configuration identifier (CONFIGID). How this value is used is dependent on the enclave but it is intended to allow enclave creators to indicate what additional content may be accepted by the enclave post-initialization.

38.4.2 Security Version Numbers (SVN)

Intel® SGX supports a versioning system that allows the signer to identify different versions of the same software released by an author. The security version is independent of the functional version an author uses and is intended to specify security equivalence. Multiple releases with functional enhancements may all share the same SVN if they all have the same security properties or posture. Each enclave has an SVN and the underlying hardware has an SVN.

The SVNs are attested to in EREPORT and are included in the derivation of most keys, thus providing separation between data for older/newer versions.

38.4.2.1 Enclave Security Version

In the SIGSTRUCT, the MRSIGNER is associated with a 16-bit Product ID (ISVPRODID) and a 16 bit integer SVN (ISVSVN). Together they define a specific group of versions of a specific product. Most keys, including the Seal Key, can be bound to this pair.

To support upgrading from one release to another, EGETKEY will return keys corresponding to any value less than or equal to the software's ISVSVN.

38.4.2.2 Hardware Security Version

CPUSVN is a 128 bit value that reflects the microcode update version and authenticated code modules supported by the processor. Unlike ISVSVN, CPUSVN is not an integer and cannot be compared mathematically. Not all values are valid CPUSVNs.

Software must ensure that the CPUSVN provided to EGETKEY is valid. EREPORT will return the CPUSVN of the current environment. Software can execute EREPORT with TARGETINFO set to zeros to retrieve a CPUSVN from REPORTDATA. Software can access keys for a CPUSVN recorded previously, provided that each of the elements reflected in CPUSVN are the same or have been upgraded.

38.4.2.3 CONFIGID Security Version

The CONFIGID field can be used to contain the hash of a signing key for verifying the additional content. In this case, similar to the relationship between MRSIGNER and ISVSVN, CONFIGID needs a CONFIGID Security Version Number. CONFIGIDSVN can be specified at the same time as CONFIGID.

38.4.3 Keys

Intel® SGX provides software with access to keys unique to each processor and rooted in HW keys inserted into the processor during manufacturing.

Each enclave requests keys using the EGETKEY leaf function. The key is based on enclave parameters such as measurement, the enclave signing key, security attributes of the enclave, and the Hardware Security version of the processor itself. A full list of parameter options is specified in the KEYREQUEST structure, see details in Section 37.17.

By deriving keys using enclave properties, SGX guarantees that if two enclaves call EGETKEY, they will receive a unique key only accessible by the respective enclave. It also guarantees that the enclave will receive the same key

on every future execution of EGETKEY. Some parameters are optional or configurable by software. For example, a Seal key can be based on the signer of the enclave, resulting in a key available to multiple enclaves signed by the same party.

The EGETKEY leaf function provides several key types. Each key is specific to the processor, CPUSVN, and the enclave that executed EGETKEY. The EGETKEY instruction definition details how each of these keys is derived, see Table 40-64. Additionally,

- **SEAL Key:** The Seal key is a general purpose key for the enclave to use to protect secrets. Typical uses of the Seal key are encrypting and calculating MAC of secrets on disk. There are 2 types of Seal Key described in Section 38.4.3.1.
- **REPORT Key:** This key is used to compute the MAC on the REPORT structure. The EREPORT leaf function is used to compute this MAC, and destination enclave uses the Report key to verify the MAC. The software usage flow is detailed in Section 38.4.3.2.
- **EINITTOKEN_KEY:** This key is used by Launch Enclaves to compute the MAC on EINITTOKENS. These tokens are then verified in the EINIT leaf function. The key is only available to enclaves with ATTRIBUTE.EINITTOKEN_KEY set to 1.
- **PROVISIONING Key and PROVISIONING SEAL Key:** These keys are used by attestation key provisioning software to prove to remote parties that the processor is genuine and identify the currently executing TCB. These keys are only available to enclaves with ATTRIBUTE.PROVISIONKEY set to 1.

38.4.3.1 Sealing Enclave Data

Enclaves can protect persistent data using Seal keys to provide encryption and/or integrity protection. EGETKEY provides two types of Seal keys specified in KEYREQUEST.KEYPOLICY field: MRENCLAVE-based key and MRSIGNER-based key.

The MRENCLAVE-based keys are available only to enclave instances sharing the same MRENCLAVE. If a new version of the enclave is released, the Seal keys will be different. Retrieving previous data requires additional software support.

The MRSIGNER-based keys are bound to the 3 tuple (MRSIGNER, ISVPRODID, ISVSVN). These keys are available to any enclave with the same MRSIGNER and ISVPRODID and an ISVSVN equal to or greater than the key in questions. This is valuable for allowing new versions of the same software to retrieve keys created before an upgrade.

For platforms that support enhancements for key separation and sharing (CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=1).EAX.KSS[7]) four additional key policies for seal key derivation are provided. These add the ISVEXTPRODID, ISVFAMILYID and CONFIGID/CONFIGSVN to the key derivation. Additionally there is a policy to remove ISVPRODID from a key derivation to create a shared between different products that share the same MRSIGNER.

38.4.3.2 Using REPORTs for Local Attestation

SGX provides a means for enclaves to securely identify one another, this is referred to as "Local Attestation". SGX provides a hardware assertion, REPORT that contains calling enclaves Attributes, Measurements and User supplied data (described in detail in Section 37.15). Figure 38-3 shows the basic flow of information.

1. The source enclave determines the identity of the target enclave to populate TARGETINFO.
2. The source enclave calls EREPORT instruction to generate a REPORT structure. The EREPORT instruction conducts the following:
 - Populates the REPORT with identify information about the calling enclave.
 - Derives the Report Key that is returned when the target enclave executes the EGETKEY. TARGETINFO provides information about the target.
 - Computes a MAC over the REPORT using derived target enclave Report Key.
3. Non-enclave software copies the REPORT from source to destination.
4. The target enclave executes the EGETKEY instruction to request its REPORT key, which is the same key used by EREPORT at the source.
5. The target enclave verifies the MAC and can then inspect the REPORT to identify the source.

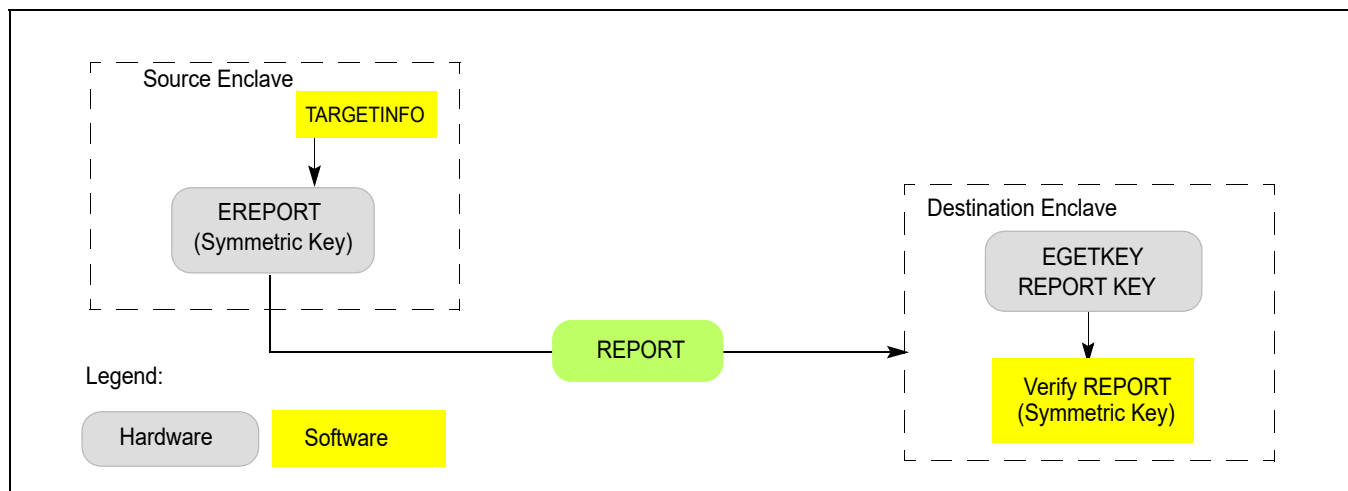


Figure 38-3. SGX Local Attestation

38.5 EPC AND MANAGEMENT OF EPC PAGES

EPC layout is implementation specific, and is enumerated through CPUID (see Table 36-7 for EPC layout). EPC is typically configured by BIOS at system boot time.

38.5.1 EPC Implementation

EPC must be properly protected against attacks. One example of EPC implementation could use a Memory Encryption Engine (MEE). An MEE provides a cost-effective mechanism of creating cryptographically protected volatile storage using platform DRAM. These units provide integrity, replay, and confidentiality protection. Details are implementation specific.

38.5.2 OS Management of EPC Pages

The EPC is a finite resource. SGX1 (i.e. CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=0):EAX.SGX1 = 1 but CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=0):EAX.SGX2 = 0) provides the EPC manager with leaf functions to manage this resource and properly swap pages out of and into the EPC. For that, the EPC manager would need to keep track of all EPC entries, type and state, context affiliation, and SECS affiliation.

Enclave pages that are candidates for eviction should be moved to BLOCKED state using EBLOCK instruction that ensures no new cached virtual to physical address mappings can be created by attempts to reference a BLOCKED page.

Before evicting blocked pages, EPC manager should execute ETRACK leaf function on that enclave and ensure that there are no stale cached virtual to physical address mappings for the blocked pages remain on any thread on the platform.

After removing all stale translations from blocked pages, system software should use the EWB leaf function for securely evicting pages out of the EPC. EWB encrypts a page in the EPC, writes it to unprotected memory, and invalidates the copy in EPC. In addition, EWB also creates a cryptographic MAC (PCMD.MAC) of the page and stores it in unprotected memory. A page can be reloaded back to the processor only if the data and MAC match. To ensure that only the latest version of the evicted page can be loaded back, the version of the evicted page is stored securely in a Version Array (VA) in EPC.

SGX1 includes two instructions for reloading pages that have been evicted by system software: ELDU and ELDB. The difference between the two instructions is the value of the paging state at the end of the instruction. ELDU results in a page being reloaded and set to an UNBLOCKED state, while ELDB results in a page loaded to a BLOCKED state.

ELDB is intended for use by a Virtual Machine Monitor (VMM). When a VMM reloads an evicted page, it needs to restore it to the correct state of the page (BLOCKED vs. UNBLOCKED) as it existed at the time the page was evicted. Based on the state of the page at eviction, the VMM chooses either ELDB or ELDU.

38.5.2.1 Enhancement to Managing EPC Pages

On processors supporting SGX2 (i.e. CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=0):EAX.SGX2 = 1), the EPC manager can manage EPC resources (while enclave is running) with more flexibility provided by the SGX2 leaf functions. The additional flexibility is described in Section 38.5.7 through Section 38.5.11.

38.5.3 Eviction of Enclave Pages

Intel SGX paging is optimized to allow the Operating System (OS) to evict multiple pages out of the EPC under a single synchronization.

The suggested flow for evicting a list of pages from the EPC is:

1. For each page to be evicted from the EPC:
 - a. Select an empty slot in a Version Array (VA) page.
 - If no empty VA page slots exist, create a new VA page using the EPA leaf function.
 - b. Remove linear-address to physical-address mapping from the enclave context's mapping tables (page table and EPT tables).
 - c. Execute the EBLOCK leaf function for the target page. This sets the target page state to BLOCKED. At this point no new mappings of the page will be created. So any access which does not have the mapping cached in the TLB will generate a #PF.
2. For each enclave containing pages selected in step 1:
 - Execute an ETRACK leaf function pointing to that enclave's SECS. This initiates the tracking process that ensures that all caching of linear-address to physical-address translations for the blocked pages is cleared.
3. For all logical processors executing in processes (OS) or guests (VMM) that contain the enclaves selected in step 1:
 - Issue an IPI (inter-processor interrupt) to those threads. This causes those logical processors to asynchronously exit any enclaves they might be in, and as a result flush cached linear-address to physical-address translations that might hold stale translations to blocked pages. There is no need for additional measures such as performing a "TLB shutdown".
4. After enclaves exit, allow logical processors to resume normal operation, including enclave re-entry as the tracking logic keeps track of the activity.
5. For each page to be evicted:
 - Evict the page using the EWB leaf function with parameters include the effective-address pointer to the EPC page, the VA slot, a 4K byte buffer to hold the encrypted page contents, and a 128 byte buffer to hold page metadata. The last three elements are tied together cryptographically and must be used to later reload the page.

At this point, system software has the only copy of each page data encrypted with its page metadata in main memory.

38.5.4 Loading an Enclave Page

To reload a previously evicted page, system software needs four elements: the VA slot used when the page was evicted, a buffer containing the encrypted page contents, a buffer containing the page metadata, and the parent SECS to associate this page with. If the VA page or the parent SECS are not already in the EPC, they must be reloaded first.

1. Execute ELDB/ELDU (depending on the desired BLOCKED state for the page), passing as parameters: the EPC page linear address, the VA slot, the encrypted page, and the page metadata.

2. Create a mapping in the enclave context's mapping tables (page tables and EPT tables) to allow the application to access that page (OS: system page table; VMM: EPT).

The ELDB/ELDU instruction marks the VA slot empty so that the page cannot be replayed at a later date.

38.5.5 Eviction of an SECS Page

The eviction of an SECS page is similar to the eviction of an enclave page. The only difference is that an SECS page cannot be evicted until all other pages belonging to the enclave have been evicted. Since all other pages have been evicted, there will be no threads executing inside the enclave and tracking with ETRACK isn't necessary. When reloading an enclave, the SECS page must be reloaded before all other constituent pages.

1. Ensure all pages are evicted from enclave.
2. Select an empty slot in a Version Array page.
 - If no VA page exists with an empty slot, create a new one using the EPA function leaf.
3. Evict the page using the EWB leaf function with parameters include the effective-address pointer to the EPC page, the VA slot, a 4K byte buffer to hold the encrypted page contents and a 128 byte buffer to hold page metadata. The last three elements are tied together cryptographically and must be used to later reload the page.

38.5.6 Eviction of a Version Array Page

VA pages do not belong to any enclave and tracking with ETRACK isn't necessary. When evicting the VA page, a slot in a different VA page must be specified in order to provide versioning of the evicted VA page.

1. Select a slot in a Version Array page other than the page being evicted.
 - If no VA page exists with an empty slot, create a new one using the EPA leaf function.
2. Evict the page using the EWB leaf function with parameters include the effective-address pointer to the EPC page, the VA slot, a 4K byte buffer to hold the encrypted page contents, and a 128 byte buffer to hold page metadata. The last three elements are tied together cryptographically and must be used to later reload the page.

38.5.7 Allocating a Regular Page

On processors that support SGX2, allocating a new page to an already initialized enclave is accomplished by invoking the EAUG leaf function. Typically, the enclave requests that the OS allocates a new page at a particular location within the enclave's address space. Once allocated, the page remains in a pending state until the enclave executes the corresponding EACCEPT leaf function to accept the new page into the enclave. Page allocation operations may be batched to improve efficiency.

The typical process for allocating a regular page is as follows:

1. Enclave requests additional memory from OS when the current allocation becomes insufficient.
2. The OS invokes the EAUG leaf function to add a new memory page to the enclave.
 - a. EAUG may only be called on a free EPC page.
 - b. Successful completion of the EAUG instruction places the target page in the VALID and PENDING state.
 - c. All dynamically created pages have the type PT_REG and content of all zeros.
3. The OS maps the page in the enclave context's mapping tables.
4. The enclave issues an EACCEPT instruction, which verifies the page's attributes and clears the PENDING state. At that point the page becomes accessible for normal enclave use.

38.5.8 Allocating a TCS Page

On processors that support SGX2, allocating a new TCS page to an already initialized enclave is a two-step process. First the OS allocates a regular page with a call to EAUG. This page must then be accepted and initialized by the enclave to which it belongs. Once the page has been initialized with appropriate values for a TCS page, the enclave requests the OS to change the page's type to PT_TCS. This change must also be accepted. As with allocating a regular page, TCS allocation operations may be batched.

A typical process for allocating a TCS page is as follows:

1. Enclave requests an additional page from the OS.
2. The OS invokes EAUG to add a new regular memory page to the enclave.
 - a. EAUG may only be called on a free EPC page.
 - b. Successful completion of the EAUG instruction places the target page in the VALID and PENDING state.
3. The OS maps the page in the enclave context's mapping tables.
4. The enclave issues an EACCEPT instruction, at which point the page becomes accessible for normal enclave use.
5. The enclave initializes the contents of the new page.
6. The enclave requests that the OS convert the page from type PT_REG to PT_TCS.
7. OS issues an EMODT instruction on the page.
 - a. The parameters to EMODT indicate that the regular page should be converted into a TCS.
 - b. EMODT forces all access rights to a page to be removed because TCS pages may not be accessed by enclave code.
8. The enclave issues an EACCEPT instruction to confirm the requested modification.

38.5.9 Trimming a Page

On processors that support SGX2, Intel SGX supports the trimming of an enclave page as a special case of EMODT. Trimming allows an enclave to actively participate in the process of removing a page from the enclave (deallocation) by splitting the process into first removing it from the enclave's access and then removing it from the EPC using the EREMOVE leaf function. The page type PT_TRIM indicates that a page has been trimmed from the enclave's address space and that the page is no longer accessible to enclave software. Modifications to a page in the PT_TRIM state are not permitted; the page must be removed and then reallocated by the OS before the enclave may use the page again. Page deallocation operations may be batched to improve efficiency.

The typical process for trimming a page from an enclave is as follows:

1. Enclave signals OS that a particular page is no longer in use.
2. OS invokes the EMODT leaf function on the page, requesting that the page's type be changed to PT_TRIM.
 - a. SECS and VA pages cannot be trimmed in this way, so the initial type of the page must be PT_REG or PT_TCS.
 - b. EMODT may only be called on valid enclave pages.
3. OS invokes the ETRACK leaf function on the enclave containing the page to track removal the TLB addresses from all the processors.
4. Issue an IPI (inter-processor interrupt) to flush the stale linear-address to physical-address translations for all logical processors executing in processes that contain the enclave.
5. Enclave issues an EACCEPT leaf function.
6. The OS may now permanently remove the page from the EPC (by issuing EREMOVE).

38.5.10 Restricting the EPCM Permissions of a Page

On processors that support SGX2, restricting the EPCM permissions associated with an enclave page is accomplished using the EMODPR leaf function. This operation requires the cooperation of the OS to flush stale entries to

the page and to update the page-table permissions of the page to match. Permissions restriction operations may be batched.

The typical process for restricting the permissions of an enclave page is as follows:

1. Enclave requests that the OS to restrict the permissions of an EPC page.
2. OS performs permission restriction, flushing cached linear-address to physical-address translations, and page-table modifications.
 - a. Invokes the EMODPR leaf function to restrict permissions (EMODPR may only be called on VALID pages).
 - b. Invokes the ETRACK leaf function on the enclave containing the page to track removal of the TLB addresses from all the processor.
 - c. Issue an IPI (inter-processor interrupt) to flush the stale linear-address to physical-address translations for all logical processors executing in processes that contain the enclave.
 - d. Sends IPIs to trigger enclave thread exit and TLB shutdown.
 - e. OS informs the Enclave that all logical processors should now see the new restricted permissions.
3. Enclave invokes the EACCEPT leaf function.
 - a. Enclave may access the page throughout the entire process.
 - b. Successful call to EACCEPT guarantees that no stale cached linear-address to physical-address translations are present.

38.5.11 Extending the EPCM Permissions of a Page

On processors that support SGX2, extending the EPCM permissions associated with an enclave page is accomplished directly by the enclave using the EMODPE leaf function. After performing the EPCM permission extension, the enclave requests the OS to update the page table permissions to match the extended permission. Security wise, permission extension does not require enclave threads to leave the enclave as TLBs with stale references to the more restrictive permissions will be flushed on demand, but to allow forward progress, an OS needs to be aware that an application might signal a page fault.

The typical process for extending the permissions of an enclave page is as follows:

1. Enclave invokes EMODPE to extend the EPCM permissions associated with an EPC page (EMODPE may only be called on VALID pages).
2. Enclave requests that OS update the page tables to match the new EPCM permissions.
3. Enclave code resumes.
 - a. If cached linear-address to physical-address translations are present to the more restrictive permissions, the enclave thread will page fault. The SGX2-aware OS will see that the page tables permit the access and resume the thread, which can now successfully access the page because exiting cleared the TLB.
 - b. If cached linear-address to physical-address translations are not present, access to the page with the new permissions will succeed without an enclave exit.

38.5.12 VMM Oversubscription of EPC

On processors supporting oversubscription enhancements (i.e. CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=0):EAX[5]=1 & EAX[6] = 1) a Virtual Machine Monitor or other executive can more efficiently manage the EPC space available on the platform between virtualized entities. A typical process for using these instructions to support oversubscribing the physical EPC space on the platform is as follows:

1. VMM creates data structures for SECS tracking including a count of child pages.
2. VMM selects possible EPC victim pages.
3. VMM ages the victim pages. Some of the selected pages will be accessed by the guest. In this case the VMM will remove these pages from the victim pool and return them to the guest.
4. VMM makes remaining pages not present in EPT. It then issues IPI on each page to remove TLB mappings.

5. For every EPC victim page the VMM obtains the victim's SECS page info using ERDINFO.
 - a. ENCLAVECONTEXT field in RDINFO structure will indicate the location of SECS, and the PAGE_TYPE field will indicate the page type.
 - b. Child pages of SECS can be evicted.
 - c. SECS pages may be evicted if the child count is zero.
 - d. Some pages may be returned to active state depending on such things as page type or child count.
6. VMM increments its evicted page count for the SECS of each page (stored in the data structure created in 1).
7. If this is the first evicted page of that SECS, set Marker on SECS of the victim page (EINCVIRTCHILD). This locks the SECS in the guest. The guest cannot page out the SECS.
8. EBLOCK, ETRACK, EWB eviction sequence is executed for page.
9. After loading an SECS page back in, the VMM will set the correct ENCLAVECONTEXT for the guest using ESETCONTEXT instruction.

38.6 CHANGES TO INSTRUCTION BEHAVIOR INSIDE AN ENCLAVE

This section covers instructions whose behavior changes when executed in enclave mode.

38.6.1 Illegal Instructions

The instructions listed in Table 38-1 are ring 3 instructions which become illegal when executed inside an enclave. Executing these instructions inside an enclave will generate an exception.

The first row of Table 38-1 enumerates instructions that may cause a VM exit for VMM emulation. Since a VMM cannot emulate enclave execution, execution of any of these instructions inside an enclave results in an invalid-opcode exception (#UD) and no VM exit.

The second row of Table 38-1 enumerates I/O instructions that may cause a fault or a VM exit for emulation. Again, enclave execution cannot be emulated, so execution of any of these instructions inside an enclave results in #UD.

The third row of Table 38-1 enumerates instructions that load descriptors from the GDT or the LDT or that change privilege level. The former class is disallowed because enclave software should not depend on the contents of the descriptor tables and the latter because enclave execution must be entirely with CPL = 3. Again, execution of any of these instructions inside an enclave results in #UD.

The fourth row of Table 38-1 enumerates instructions that provide access to kernel information from user mode and can be used to aid kernel exploits from within enclave. Execution of any of these instructions inside an enclave results in #UD.

Table 38-1. Illegal Instructions Inside an Enclave

Instructions	Result	Comment
CPUID, GETSEC, RDPDPC, SGDT, SIDT, SLDT, STR, VMCALL, VMFUNC	#UD	Might cause VM exit.
IN, INS/INSB/INSW/INSD, OUT, OUTS/OUTSB/OUTSW/OUTSD	#UD	I/O fault may not safely recover. May require emulation.
Far call, Far jump, Far Ret, INT n/INTO, IRET, LDS/LES/LFS/LGS/LSS, MOV to DS/ES/SS/FS/GS, POP DS/ES/SS/FS/GS, SYSCALL, SYSENTER	#UD	Access segment register could change privilege level.
SMSW	#UD	Might provide access to kernel information.
ENCLU[EENTER], ENCLU[ERESUME]	#GP	Cannot enter an enclave from within an enclave.

RDTSC and RDTSCP are legal inside an enclave for processors that support SGX2 (subject to the value of CR4.TSD). For processors which support SGX1 but not SGX2, RDTSC and RDTSCP will cause #UD.

RDTSC and RDTSCP instructions may cause a VM exit when inside an enclave.

Software developers must take into account that the RDTSC/RDTSCP results are not immune to influences by other software, e.g. the TSC can be manipulated by software outside the enclave.

38.6.2 RDRAND and RDSEED Instructions

These instructions may cause a VM exit if the “RDRAND exiting” VM-execution control is 1. Unlike other instructions that can cause VM exits, these instructions are legal inside an enclave. As noted in Section 27.1 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer’s Manual, Volume 3C*, any VM exit originating on an instruction boundary inside an enclave sets bit 27 of the exit-reason field of the VMCS. If a VMM receives a VM exit due to an attempt to execute either of these instructions determines (by that bit) that the execution was inside an enclave, it can do either of two things. It can clear the “RDRAND exiting” VM-execution control and execute VMRESUME; this will result in the enclave executing RDRAND or RDSEED again, and this time a VM exit will not occur. Alternatively, the VMM might choose to discontinue execution of this virtual machine.

NOTE

It is expected that VMMs that virtualize Intel SGX will not set “RDRAND exiting” to 1.

38.6.3 PAUSE Instruction

The PAUSE instruction may cause a VM exit from an enclave if the “PAUSE exiting” VM-execution control is 1. Unlike other instructions that can cause VM exits, the PAUSE instruction is legal inside an enclave. If a VMM receives a VM exit due to the 1-setting of “PAUSE exiting”, it can do either of two things. It can clear the “PAUSE exiting” VM-execution control and execute VMRESUME; this will result in the enclave executing PAUSE again, but this time a VM exit will not occur. Alternatively, the VMM might choose to discontinue execution of this virtual machine.

The PAUSE instruction may also cause a VM exit outside of an enclave if the “PAUSE-loop exiting” VM-execution control is 1, but as the “PAUSE-loop exiting” control is ignored at CPL > 0 (see Section 25.1.3), VM exit from an enclave due to the 1-setting of “PAUSE-LOOP exiting” will never occur.

NOTE

It is expected that VMMs that virtualize Intel SGX will not set “PAUSE exiting” to 1.

38.6.4 Executions of INT1 and INT3 Inside an Enclave

The INT1 and INT3 instructions are legal inside an enclave, however, their behavior inside an enclave differs from that outside an enclave. See Section 42.4.1 for details.

38.6.5 INVD Handling when Enclaves Are Enabled

Once processor reserved memory protections are activated (see Section 38.5), any execution of INVD will result in a #GP(0).

20. Updates to Chapter 40, Volume 3D

Change bars show changes to Chapter 40 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3D: System Programming Guide, Part 4*.

Changes to this chapter: Minor typo correction.

CHAPTER 40

SGX INSTRUCTION REFERENCES

This chapter describes the supervisor and user level instructions provided by Intel® Software Guard Extensions (Intel® SGX). In general, various functionality is encoded as leaf functions within the ENCLS (supervisor), ENCLU (user), and the ENCLV (virtualization operation) instruction mnemonics. Different leaf functions are encoded by specifying an input value in the EAX register of the respective instruction mnemonic.

40.1 INTEL® SGX INSTRUCTION SYNTAX AND OPERATION

ENCLS, ENCLU and ENCLV instruction mnemonics for all leaf functions are covered in this section.

For all instructions, the value of CS.D is ignored; addresses and operands are 64 bits in 64-bit mode and are otherwise 32 bits. Aside from EAX specifying the leaf number as input, each instruction leaf may require all or some subset of the RBX/RCX/RDX as input parameters. Some leaf functions may return data or status information in one or more of the general purpose registers.

40.1.1 ENCLS Register Usage Summary

Table 40-1 summarizes the implicit register usage of supervisor mode enclave instructions.

Table 40-1. Register Usage of Privileged Enclave Instruction Leaf Functions

Instr. Leaf	EAX	RBX	RCX	RDX
ECREATE	00H (In)	PAGEINFO (In, EA)	EPCPAGE (In, EA)	
EADD	01H (In)	PAGEINFO (In, EA)	EPCPAGE (In, EA)	
EINIT	02H (In)	SIGSTRUCT (In, EA)	SECS (In, EA)	EINITTOKEN (In, EA)
EREMOVE	03H (In)		EPCPAGE (In, EA)	
EDBGGRD	04H (In)	Result Data (Out)	EPCPAGE (In, EA)	
EDBGWR	05H (In)	Source Data (In)	EPCPAGE (In, EA)	
EEXTEND	06H (In)	SECS (In, EA)	EPCPAGE (In, EA)	
ELDB	07H (In)	PAGEINFO (In, EA)	EPCPAGE (In, EA)	VERSION (In, EA)
ELDU	08H (In)	PAGEINFO (In, EA)	EPCPAGE (In, EA)	VERSION (In, EA)
EBLOCK	09H (In)		EPCPAGE (In, EA)	
EPA	0AH (In)	PT_VA (In)	EPCPAGE (In, EA)	
EWB	0BH (In)	PAGEINFO (In, EA)	EPCPAGE (In, EA)	VERSION (In, EA)
ETRACK	0CH (In)		EPCPAGE (In, EA)	
EAUG	0DH (In)	PAGEINFO (In, EA)	EPCPAGE (In, EA)	
EMODPR	0EH (In)	SECINFO (In, EA)	EPCPAGE (In, EA)	
EMODT	0FH (In)	SECINFO (In, EA)	EPCPAGE (In, EA)	
ERDINFO	010H (In)	RDINFO (In, EA*)	EPCPAGE (In, EA)	
ETRACKC	011H (In)		EPCPAGE (In, EA)	
ELDBC	012H (In)	PAGEINFO (In, EA*)	EPCPAGE (In, EA)	VERSION (In, EA)
ELDUC	013H (In)	PAGEINFO (In, EA*)	EPCPAGE (In, EA)	VERSION (In, EA)

EA: Effective Address

40.1.2 ENCLU Register Usage Summary

Table 40-2 summarizes the implicit register usage of user mode enclave instructions.

Table 40-2. Register Usage of Unprivileged Enclave Instruction Leaf Functions

Instr. Leaf	EAX	RBX	RCX	RDX
EReport	00H (In)	TARGETINFO (In, EA)	REPORTDATA (In, EA)	OUTPUTDATA (In, EA)
EGetKey	01H (In)	KEYREQUEST (In, EA)	KEY (In, EA)	
EEnter	02H (In)	TCS (In, EA)	AEP (In, EA)	
	RBX.CSSA (Out)		Return (Out, EA)	
EResume	03H (In)	TCS (In, EA)	AEP (In, EA)	
EExit	04H (In)	Target (In, EA)	Current AEP (Out)	
EAccept	05H (In)	SECINFO (In, EA)	EPCPAGE (In, EA)	
EModPE	06H (In)	SECINFO (In, EA)	EPCPAGE (In, EA)	
EAcceptCopy	07H (In)	SECINFO (In, EA)	EPCPAGE (In, EA)	EPCPAGE (In, EA)
EA: Effective Address				

40.1.3 ENCLV Register Usage Summary

Table 40-3 summarizes the implicit register usage of virtualization operation enclave instructions.

Table 40-3. Register Usage of Virtualization Operation Enclave Instruction Leaf Functions

Instr. Leaf	EAX	RBX	RCX	RDX
EDECvirtChild	00H (In)	EPCPAGE (In, EA)	SECS (In, EA)	
EINCvirtChild	01H (In)	EPCPAGE (In, EA)	SECS (In, EA)	
ESETCONTEXT	02H (In)		EPCPAGE (In, EA)	Context Value (In, EA)
EA: Effective Address				

40.1.4 Information and Error Codes

Information and error codes are reported by various instruction leaf functions to show an abnormal termination of the instruction or provide information which may be useful to the developer. Table 40-4 shows the various codes and the instruction which generated the code. Details of the meaning of the code is provided in the individual instruction.

Table 40-4. Error or Information Codes for Intel® SGX Instructions

Name	Value	Returned By
No Error	0	
SGX_INVALID_SIG_STRUCT	1	EINIT
SGX_INVALID_ATTRIBUTE	2	EINIT, EGETKEY
SGX_BLSTATE	3	EBLOCK
SGX_INVALID_MEASUREMENT	4	EINIT
SGX_NOTBLOCKABLE	5	EBLOCK
SGX_PG_INVLD	6	EBLOCK, ERDINFO, ETRACKC
SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT	7	EBLOCK, EMODPR, EMODT, ERDINFO, EDECvirtChild, EINCvirtChild, ELDBC, ELDUC, ESETCONTEXT, ETRACKC

Table 40-4. Error or Information Codes for Intel® SGX Instructions

Name	Value	Returned By
SGX_INVALID_SIGNATURE	8	EINIT
SGX_MAC_COMPARE_FAIL	9	ELDB, ELDU, ELDBC, ELDUC
SGX_PAGE_NOT_BLOCKED	10	EWB
SGX_NOT_TRACKED	11	EWB, EACCEPT
SGX_VA_SLOT_OCCUPIED	12	EWB
SGX_CHILD_PRESENT	13	EWB, EREMOVE
SGX_ENCLAVE_ACT	14	EREMOVE
SGX_ENTRYEPOCH_LOCKED	15	EBLOCK
SGX_INVALID_EINITTOKEN	16	EINIT
SGX_PREV_TRK_INCMPL	17	ETRACK, ETRACKC
SGX_PG_IS_SECS	18	EBLOCK
SGX_PAGE_ATTRIBUTES_MISMATCH	19	EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY
SGX_PAGE_NOT_MODIFIABLE	20	EMODPR, EMODT
SGX_PAGE_NOT_DEBUGGABLE	21	EDBGRD, EDBGWR
SGX_INVALID_COUNTER	25	EDECVRTCHILD
SGX_PG_NONEPC	26	ERDINFO
SGX_TRACK_NOT_REQUIRED	27	ETRACKC
SGX_INVALID_CPUSVN	32	EINIT, EGETKEY
SGX_INVALID_ISVSVN	64	EGETKEY
SGX_UNMASKED_EVENT	128	EINIT
SGX_INVALID_KEYNAME	256	EGETKEY

40.1.5 Internal CREGs

The CREGs as shown in Table 5-4 are hardware specific registers used in this document to indicate values kept by the processor. These values are used while executing in enclave mode or while executing an Intel SGX instruction. These registers are not software visible and are implementation specific. The values in Table 40-5 appear at various places in the pseudo-code of this document. They are used to enhance understanding of the operations.

Table 40-5. List of Internal CREG

Name	Size (Bits)	Scope
CR_ENCLAVE_MODE	1	LP
CR_DBGOPTIN	1	LP
CR_TCS_LA	64	LP
CR_TCS_PA	64	LP
CR_ACTIVE_SECS	64	LP
CR_EL RANGE	128	LP
CR_SAVE_TF	1	LP
CR_SAVE_FS	64	LP
CR_GPR_PA	64	LP
CR_XSAVE_PAGE_n	64	LP
CR_SAVE_DR7	64	LP
CR_SAVE_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL	64	LP

Table 40-5. List of Internal CREG

Name	Size (Bits)	Scope
CR_SAVE_DEBUGCTL	64	LP
CR_SAVE_PEBS_ENABLE	64	LP
CR_CPUSVN	128	PACKAGE
CR_SGXOWNEREPOCH	128	PACKAGE
CR_SAVE_XCRO	64	LP
CR_SGX_ATTRIBUTES_MASK	128	LP
CR_PAGING_VERSION	64	PACKAGE
CR_VERSION_THRESHOLD	64	PACKAGE
CR_NEXT_EID	64	PACKAGE
CR_BASE_PK	128	PACKAGE
CR_SEAL_FUSES	128	PACKAGE

40.1.6 Concurrent Operation Restrictions

Under certain conditions, Intel SGX disallows certain leaf functions from operating concurrently. Listed below are some examples of concurrency that are not allowed.

- For example, Intel SGX disallows the following leaves to concurrently operate on the same EPC page.
 - ECREATE, EADD, and EREMOVE are not allowed to operate on the same EPC page concurrently with themselves.
 - EADD, EEXTEND, and EINIT leaves are not allowed to operate on the same SECS concurrently.
- Intel SGX disallows the EREMOVE leaf from removing pages from an enclave that is in use.
- Intel SGX disallows entry (EENTER and ERESUME) to an enclave while a page from that enclave is being removed.

When disallowed operation is detected, a leaf function may do one of the following:

- Return an SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT error code in RAX.
- Cause a #GP(0) exception.

To prevent such exceptions, software must serialize leaf functions or prevent these leaf functions from accessing the same EPC page.

40.1.6.1 Concurrency Tables of Intel® SGX Instructions

The tables below detail the concurrent operation restrictions of all SGX leaf functions. For each leaf function, the table has a separate line for each of the EPC pages the leaf function accesses.

For each such EPC page, the base concurrency requirements are detailed as follows:

- **Exclusive Access** means that no other leaf function that requires either shared or exclusive access to the same EPC page may be executed concurrently. For example, EADD requires an exclusive access to the target page it accesses.
- **Shared Access** means that no other leaf function that requires an exclusive access to the same EPC page may be executed concurrently. Other leaf functions that require shared access may run concurrently. For example, EADD requires a shared access to the SECS page it accesses.
- **Concurrent Access** means that any other leaf function that requires any access to the same EPC page may be executed concurrently. For example, EGETKEY has no concurrency requirements for the KEYREQUEST page.

In addition to the base concurrency requirements, additional concurrency requirements are listed, which apply only to specific sets of leaf functions. For example, there are additional requirements that apply for EADD, EEXTEND and EINIT. EADD and EEXTEND can't execute concurrently on the same SECS page.

The tables also detail the leaf function's behavior when a conflict happens, i.e., a concurrency requirement is not met. In this case, the leaf function may return an SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT error code in RAX, or it may cause an exception. In addition, the tables detail those conflicts where a VM Exit may be triggered, and list the Exit Qualification code that is provided in such cases.

Table 40-6. Base Concurrency Restrictions

Leaf	Parameter		Base Concurrency Restrictions		
			Access	On Conflict	SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification
EACCEPT	Target	[DS:RCX]	Shared	#GP	
	SECINFO	[DS:RBX]	Concurrent		
EACCEPTCOPY	Target	[DS:RCX]	Concurrent		
	Source	[DS:RDX]	Concurrent		
	SECINFO	[DS:RBX]	Concurrent		
EADD	Target	[DS:RCX]	Exclusive	#GP	EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_EXCEPTION
	SECS	[DS:RBX]PAGEINFO. SECS	Shared	#GP	
EAUG	Target	[DS:RCX]	Exclusive	#GP	EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_EXCEPTION
	SECS	[DS:RBX]PAGEINFO. SECS	Shared	#GP	
EBLOCK	Target	[DS:RCX]	Shared	SGX_EPC_PAGE _CONFLICT	
ECREATE	SECS	[DS:RCX]	Exclusive	#GP	EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_EXCEPTION
EDBGGRD	Target	[DS:RCX]	Shared	#GP	
EDBGWR	Target	[DS:RCX]	Shared	#GP	
EDECVIRTCHILD	Target	[DS:RBX]	Shared	SGX_EPC_PAGE _CONFLICT	
	SECS	[DS:RCX]	Concurrent		
EENTERTCS	SECS	[DS:RBX]	Shared	#GP	
EEXIT			Concurrent		
EEXTEND	Target	[DS:RCX]	Shared	#GP	
	SECS	[DS:RBX]	Concurrent		
EGETKEY	KEYREQUEST	[DS:RBX]	Concurrent		
	OUTPUTDATA	[DS:RCX]	Concurrent		
EINCVIRTCHILD	Target	[DS:RBX]	Shared	SGX_EPC_PAGE _CONFLICT	
	SECS	[DS:RCX]	Concurrent		
EINIT	SECS	[DS:RCX]	Shared	#GP	
ELDB/ELDU	Target	[DS:RCX]	Exclusive	#GP	EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_EXCEPTION
	VA	[DS:RDX]	Shared	#GP	
	SECS	[DS:RBX]PAGEINFO. SECS	Shared	#GP	

Table 40-6. Base Concurrency Restrictions

Leaf	Parameter		Base Concurrency Restrictions		
			Access	On Conflict	SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification
EDLBC/ELDUC	Target	[DS:RCX]	Exclusive	SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT	EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_ERROR
	VA	[DS:RDX]	Shared	SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT	
	SECS	[DS:RBX]PAGEINFO. SECS	Shared	SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT	
EMODPE	Target	[DS:RCX]	Concurrent		
	SECINFO	[DS:RBX]	Concurrent		
EMODPR	Target	[DS:RCX]	Shared	#GP	
EMODT	Target	[DS:RCX]	Exclusive	SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT	EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_ERROR
EPA	VA	[DS:RCX]	Exclusive	#GP	EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_EXCEPTION
ERDINFO	Target	[DS:RCX]	Shared	SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT	
EREMOVE	Target	[DS:RCX]	Exclusive	#GP	EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_EXCEPTION
EREPORT	TARGETINFO	[DS:RBX]	Concurrent		
	REPORTDATA	[DS:RCX]	Concurrent		
	OUTPUTDATA	[DS:RDX]	Concurrent		
ERESUME	TCS	[DS:RBX]	Shared	#GP	
ESETCONTEXT	SECS	[DS:RCX]	Shared	SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT	
ETRACK	SECS	[DS:RCX]	Shared	#GP	
ETRACKC	Target	[DS:RCX]	Shared	SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT	
	SECS	Implicit	Concurrent		
EWB	Source	[DS:RCX]	Exclusive	#GP	EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_EXCEPTION
	VA	[DS:RDX]	Shared	#GP	

Table 40-7. Additional Concurrency Restrictions

Leaf	Parameter		Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
			vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRACK, ETRACKC	
			Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
EACCEPT	Target	[DS:RCX]	Exclusive	#GP	Concurrent		Concurrent	
	SECINFO	[DS:RBX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
EACCEPTCOPY	Target	[DS:RCX]	Exclusive	#GP	Concurrent		Concurrent	
	Source	[DS:RDX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
	SECINFO	[DS:RBX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	

Table 40-7. Additional Concurrency Restrictions

Leaf	Parameter		Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
			vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRACK, ETRACKC	
			Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
EADD	Target	[DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
	SECS	[DS:RBX]PAGEINFO. SECS	Concurrent		Exclusive	#GP	Concurrent	
EAUG	Target	[DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
	SECS	[DS:RBX]PAGEINFO. SECS	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
EBLOCK	Target	[DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
ECREATE	SECS	[DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
EDBGDR	Target	[DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
EDBGWR	Target	[DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
EDECVRTCHILD	Target	[DS:RBX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
	SECS	[DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
EENTERTCS	SECS	[DS:RBX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
EEXIT			Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
EEXTEND	Target	[DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
	SECS	[DS:RBX]	Concurrent		Exclusive	#GP	Concurrent	
EGETKEY	KEYREQUEST	[DS:RBX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
	OUTPUTDATA	[DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
EINCVIRTCHILD	Target	[DS:RBX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
	SECS	[DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
EINIT	SECS	[DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Exclusive	#GP	Concurrent	
ELDB/ELDU	Target	[DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
	VA	[DS:RDX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
	SECS	[DS:RBX]PAGEINFO. SECS	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
EDLBC/ELDUC	Target	[DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
	VA	[DS:RDX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
	SECS	[DS:RBX]PAGEINFO. SECS	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
EMODPE	Target	[DS:RCX]	Exclusive	#GP	Concurrent		Concurrent	
	SECINFO	[DS:RBX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
EMODPR	Target	[DS:RCX]	Exclusive	SGX_EPC_ PAGE_CON FLICT	Concurrent		Concurrent	
EMODT	Target	[DS:RCX]	Exclusive	SGX_EPC_ PAGE_CON FLICT	Concurrent		Concurrent	
EPA	VA	[DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	

Table 40-7. Additional Concurrency Restrictions

Leaf	Parameter		Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
			vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRACK, ETRACKC	
			Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
ERDINFO	Target	[DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
EREMOVE	Target	[DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
EREPORT	TARGETINFO	[DS:RBX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
	REPORTDATA	[DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
	OUTPUTDATA	[DS:RDX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
ERESUME	TCS	[DS:RBX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
ESETCONTEXT	SECS	[DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
ETRACK	SECS	[DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Exclusive	SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT ¹
ETRACKC	Target	[DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
	SECS	Implicit	Concurrent		Concurrent		Exclusive	SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT ¹
EWB	Source	[DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
	VA	[DS:RDX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	

NOTES:

1. SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification =TRACKING_RESOURCE_CONFLICT.

40.2 INTEL® SGX INSTRUCTION REFERENCE

ENCLS—Execute an Enclave System Function of Specified Leaf Number

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F 01 CF ENCLS	NP	V/V	NA	This instruction is used to execute privileged Intel SGX leaf functions that are used for managing and debugging the enclaves.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Implicit Register Operands
NP	NA	NA	NA	See Section 40.3

Description

The ENCLS instruction invokes the specified privileged Intel SGX leaf function for managing and debugging enclaves. Software specifies the leaf function by setting the appropriate value in the register EAX as input. The registers RBX, RCX, and RDX have leaf-specific purpose, and may act as input, as output, or may be unused. In 64-bit mode, the instruction ignores upper 32 bits of the RAX register.

The ENCLS instruction produces an invalid-opcode exception (#UD) if CR0.PE = 0 or RFLAGS.VM = 1, or if it is executed in system-management mode (SMM). Additionally, any attempt to execute the instruction when CPL > 0 results in #UD. The instruction produces a general-protection exception (#GP) if CR0.PG = 0 or if an attempt is made to invoke an undefined leaf function.

In VMX non-root operation, execution of ENCLS may cause a VM exit if the “enable ENCLS exiting” VM-execution control is 1. In this case, execution of individual leaf functions of ENCLS is governed by the ENCLS-exiting bitmap field in the VMCS. Each bit in that field corresponds to the index of an ENCLS leaf function (as provided in EAX).

Software in VMX root operation can thus intercept the invocation of various ENCLS leaf functions in VMX non-root operation by setting the “enable ENCLS exiting” VM-execution control and setting the corresponding bits in the ENCLS-exiting bitmap.

Addresses and operands are 32 bits outside 64-bit mode (IA32_EFER.LMA = 0 || CS.L = 0) and are 64 bits in 64-bit mode (IA32_EFER.LMA = 1 || CS.L = 1). CS.D value has no impact on address calculation. The DS segment is used to create linear addresses.

Segment override prefixes and address-size override prefixes are ignored, and is the REX prefix in 64-bit mode.

Operation

IF TSX_ACTIVE

THEN GOTO TSX_ABORT_PROCESSING; FI;

IF CR0.PE = 0 or RFLAGS.VM = 1 or in SMM or CPUID.SGX_LEAF.0:EAX.SE1 = 0

THEN #UD; FI;

IF (CPL > 0)

THEN #UD; FI;

IF in VMX non-root operation and the “enable ENCLS exiting” VM-execution control is 1

THEN

IF EAX < 63 and ENCLS_exiting_bitmap[EAX] = 1 or EAX > 62 and ENCLS_exiting_bitmap[63] = 1

THEN VM exit;

FI;

FI;

IF IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL.LOCK = 0 or IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL.SGX_ENABLE = 0

THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (EAX is an invalid leaf number)

THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF CR0.PG = 0
THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* DS must not be an expanded down segment *)
IF not in 64-bit mode and DS.Type is expand-down data
THEN #GP(0); FI;

Jump to leaf specific flow

Flags Affected

See individual leaf functions

Protected Mode Exceptions

#UD If any of the LOCK/OSIZE/REP/VEX prefix is used.
 If current privilege level is not 0.
 If CPUID.(EAX=12H,ECX=0):EAX.SGX1 [bit 0] = 0.
 If logical processor is in SMM.

#GP(0) If IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL.LOCK = 0.
 If IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL.SGX_ENABLE = 0.
 If input value in EAX encodes an unsupported leaf.
 If data segment expand down.
 If CR0.PG=0.

Real-Address Mode Exceptions

#UD ENCLS is not recognized in real mode.

Virtual-8086 Mode Exceptions

#UD ENCLS is not recognized in virtual-8086 mode.

Compatibility Mode Exceptions

Same exceptions as in protected mode.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#UD If any of the LOCK/OSIZE/REP/VEX prefix is used.
 If current privilege level is not 0.
 If CPUID.(EAX=12H,ECX=0):EAX.SGX1 [bit 0] = 0.
 If logical processor is in SMM.

#GP(0) If IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL.LOCK = 0.
 If IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL.SGX_ENABLE = 0.
 If input value in EAX encodes an unsupported leaf.

ENCLU—Execute an Enclave User Function of Specified Leaf Number

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP 0F 01 D7 ENCLU	NP	V/V	NA	This instruction is used to execute non-privileged Intel SGX leaf functions.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Implicit Register Operands
NP	NA	NA	NA	See Section 40.4

Description

The ENCLU instruction invokes the specified non-privileged Intel SGX leaf functions. Software specifies the leaf function by setting the appropriate value in the register EAX as input. The registers RBX, RCX, and RDX have leaf-specific purpose, and may act as input, as output, or may be unused. In 64-bit mode, the instruction ignores upper 32 bits of the RAX register.

The ENCLU instruction produces an invalid-opcode exception (#UD) if CR0.PE = 0 or RFLAGS.VM = 1, or if it is executed in system-management mode (SMM). Additionally, any attempt to execute this instruction when CPL < 3 results in #UD. The instruction produces a general-protection exception (#GP) if either CR0.PG or CR0.NE is 0, or if an attempt is made to invoke an undefined leaf function. The ENCLU instruction produces a device not available exception (#NM) if CR0.TS = 1.

Addresses and operands are 32 bits outside 64-bit mode (IA32_EFER.LMA = 0 or CS.L = 0) and are 64 bits in 64-bit mode (IA32_EFER.LMA = 1 and CS.L = 1). CS.D value has no impact on address calculation. The DS segment is used to create linear addresses.

Segment override prefixes and address-size override prefixes are ignored, as is the REX prefix in 64-bit mode.

Operation

IN_64BIT_MODE ← 0;

IF TSX_ACTIVE

THEN GOTO TSX_ABORT_PROCESSING; FI;

IF CR0.PE = 0 or RFLAGS.VM = 1 or in SMM or CPUID.SGX_LEAF.0:EAX.SE1 = 0

THEN #UD; FI;

IF CR0.TS = 1

THEN #NM; FI;

IF CPL < 3

THEN #UD; FI;

IF IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL.LOCK = 0 or IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL.SGX_ENABLE = 0

THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF EAX is invalid leaf number

THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF CR0.PG = 0 or CR0.NE = 0

THEN #GP(0); FI;

IN_64BIT_MODE ← IA32_EFER.LMA AND CS.L ? 1 : 0;

(* Check not in 16-bit mode and DS is not a 16-bit segment *)

IF not in 64-bit mode and (CS.D = 0 or DS.B = 0)

THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF CR_ENCLAVE_MODE = 1 and (EAX = 2 or EAX = 3) (* EENTER or ERESUME *)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF CR_ENCLAVE_MODE = 0 and (EAX = 0 or EAX = 1 or EAX = 4 or EAX = 5 or EAX = 6 or EAX = 7)
(* EREPORT, EGETKEY, EEXIT, EACCEPT, EMODPE, or EACCEPTCOPY *)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

Jump to leaf specific flow

Flags Affected

See individual leaf functions

Protected Mode Exceptions

#UD	If any of the LOCK/OSIZE/REP/VEX prefix is used. If current privilege level is not 3. If CPUID.(EAX=12H,ECX=0):EAX.SGX1 [bit 0] = 0. If logical processor is in SMM.
#GP(0)	If IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL.LOCK = 0. If IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL.SGX_ENABLE = 0. If input value in EAX encodes an unsupported leaf. If input value in EAX encodes EENTER/ERESUME and ENCLAVE_MODE = 1. If input value in EAX encodes EGETKEY/EREPORT/EEXIT/EACCEPT/EACCEPTCOPY/EMODPE and ENCLAVE_MODE = 0. If operating in 16-bit mode. If data segment is in 16-bit mode. If CR0.PG = 0 or CR0.NE = 0.
#NM	If CR0.TS = 1.

Real-Address Mode Exceptions

#UD	ENCLS is not recognized in real mode.
-----	---------------------------------------

Virtual-8086 Mode Exceptions

#UD	ENCLS is not recognized in virtual-8086 mode.
-----	---

Compatibility Mode Exceptions

Same exceptions as in protected mode.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#UD	If any of the LOCK/OSIZE/REP/VEX prefix is used. If current privilege level is not 3. If CPUID.(EAX=12H,ECX=0):EAX.SGX1 [bit 0] = 0. If logical processor is in SMM.
#GP(0)	If IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL.LOCK = 0. If IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL.SGX_ENABLE = 0. If input value in EAX encodes an unsupported leaf. If input value in EAX encodes EENTER/ERESUME and ENCLAVE_MODE = 1. If input value in EAX encodes EGETKEY/EREPORT/EEXIT/EACCEPT/EACCEPTCOPY/EMODPE and ENCLAVE_MODE = 0. If CR0.NE = 0.
#NM	If CR0.TS = 1.

ENCLV—Execute an Enclave VMM Function of Specified Leaf Number

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
NP OF 01 C0 ENCLV	NP	V/V	NA	This instruction is used to execute privileged SGX leaf functions that are reserved for VMM use. They are used for managing the enclaves.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	Operand 1	Operand 2	Operand 3	Implicit Register Operands
NP	NA	NA	NA	See Section 40.3

Description

The ENCLV instruction invokes the virtualization SGX leaf functions for managing enclaves in a virtualized environment. Software specifies the leaf function by setting the appropriate value in the register EAX as input. The registers RBX, RCX, and RDX have leaf-specific purpose, and may act as input, as output, or may be unused. In non 64-bit mode, the instruction ignores upper 32 bits of the RAX register.

The ENCLV instruction produces an invalid-opcode exception (#UD) if CR0.PE = 0 or RFLAGS.VM = 1, if it is executed in system-management mode (SMM), or not in VMX operation. Additionally, any attempt to execute the instruction when CPL > 0 results in #UD. The instruction produces a general-protection exception (#GP) if CR0.PG = 0 or if an attempt is made to invoke an undefined leaf function.

Software in VMX root mode of operation can enable execution of the ENCLV instruction in VMX non-root mode by setting enable ENCLV execution control in the VMCS. If enable ENCLV execution control in the VMCS is clear, execution of the ENCLV instruction in VMX non-root mode results in #UD.

When execution of ENCLV instruction in VMX non-root mode is enabled, software in VMX root operation can intercept the invocation of various ENCLV leaf functions in VMX non-root operation by setting the corresponding bits in the ENCLV-exiting bitmap.

Addresses and operands are 32 bits in 32-bit mode (IA32_EFER.LMA == 0 || CS.L == 0) and are 64 bits in 64-bit mode (IA32_EFER.LMA == 1 && CS.L == 1). CS.D value has no impact on address calculation.

Segment override prefixes and address-size override prefixes are ignored, as is the REX prefix in 64-bit mode.

Operation

```

IF TSX_ACTIVE
    THEN GOTO TSX_ABORT_PROCESSING; FI;

IF CR0.PE = 0 or RFLAGS.VM = 1 or in SMM or CPUID.SGX_LEAF.0:EAX.OSS = 0
    THEN #UD; FI;

IF in VMX non-root operation and IA32_EFER.LMA = 1 and CS.L = 1
    THEN #UD; FI;

IF (CPL > 0)
    THEN #UD; FI;

IF in VMX non-root operation
    IF "enable ENCLV exiting" VM-execution control is 1
        THEN
            IF EAX < 63 and ENCLV_exiting_bitmap[EAX] = 1 or EAX > 62 and ENCLV_exiting_bitmap[63] = 1
                THEN VM exit;
            FI;
        ELSE
            #UD; FI;
    
```

FI;

IF IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL.LOCK = 0 or IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL.SGX_ENABLE = 0
THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (EAX is an invalid leaf number)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF CR0.PG = 0
THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* DS must not be an expanded down segment *)
IF not in 64-bit mode and DS.Type is expand-down data
THEN #GP(0); FI;

Jump to leaf specific flow

Flags Affected

See individual leaf functions.

Protected Mode Exceptions

#UD	If any of the LOCK/OSIZE/REP/VEX prefix is used. If current privilege level is not 0. If CPUID.(EAX=12H,ECX=0):EAX.OSS [bit 5] = 0. If logical processor is in SMM.
#GP(0)	If IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL.LOCK = 0. If IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL.SGX_ENABLE = 0. If input value in EAX encodes an unsupported leaf. If data segment expand down. If CR0.PG=0.

Real-Address Mode Exceptions

#UD	ENCLV is not recognized in real mode.
-----	---------------------------------------

Virtual-8086 Mode Exceptions

#UD	ENCLV is not recognized in virtual-8086 mode.
-----	---

Compatibility Mode Exceptions

Same exceptions as in protected mode.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#UD	If any of the LOCK/OSIZE/REP/VEX prefix is used. If current privilege level is not 0. If CPUID.(EAX=12H,ECX=0):EAX.OSS [bit 5] = 0. If logical processor is in SMM.
#GP(0)	If IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL.LOCK = 0. If IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL.SGX_ENABLE = 0. If input value in EAX encodes an unsupported leaf.

40.3 INTEL® SGX SYSTEM LEAF FUNCTION REFERENCE

Leaf functions available with the ENCLS instruction mnemonic are covered in this section. In general, each instruction leaf requires EAX to specify the leaf function index and/or additional implicit registers specifying leaf-specific input parameters. An instruction operand encoding table provides details of each implicit register usage and associated input/output semantics.

In many cases, an input parameter specifies an effective address associated with a memory object inside or outside the EPC, the memory addressing semantics of these memory objects are also summarized in a separate table.

EADD—Add a Page to an Uninitialized Enclave

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EAX = 01H ENCLS[EADD]	IR	V/V	SGX1	This leaf function adds a page to an uninitialized enclave.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	EAX	RBX	RCX
IR	EADD (In)	Address of a PAGEINFO (In)	Address of the destination EPC page (In)

Description

This leaf function copies a source page from non-enclave memory into the EPC, associates the EPC page with an SECS page residing in the EPC, and stores the linear address and security attributes in EPCM. As part of the association, the enclave offset and the security attributes are measured and extended into the SECS.MRENCLAVE. This instruction can only be executed when current privilege level is 0.

RBX contains the effective address of a PAGEINFO structure while RCX contains the effective address of an EPC page. The table below provides additional information on the memory parameter of EADD leaf function.

EADD Memory Parameter Semantics

PAGEINFO	PAGEINFO.SECS	PAGEINFO.SRCPGE	PAGEINFO.SECINFO	EPCPAGE
Read access permitted by Non Enclave	Read/Write access permitted by Enclave	Read access permitted by Non Enclave	Read access permitted by Non Enclave	Write access permitted by Enclave

The instruction faults if any of the following:

EADD Faulting Conditions

The operands are not properly aligned.	Unsupported security attributes are set.
Refers to an invalid SECS.	Reference is made to an SECS that is locked by another thread.
The EPC page is locked by another thread.	RCX does not contain an effective address of an EPC page.
The EPC page is already valid.	If security attributes specifies a TCS and the source page specifies unsupported TCS values or fields.
The SECS has been initialized.	The specified enclave offset is outside of the enclave address space.

Concurrency Restrictions

Table 40-8. Base Concurrency Restrictions of EADD

Leaf	Parameter	Base Concurrency Restrictions		
		Access	On Conflict	SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification
EADD	Target [DS:RCX]	Exclusive	#GP	EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_EXCEPTION
	SECS [DS:RBX]PAGEINFO.SECS	Shared	#GP	

Table 40-9. Additional Concurrency Restrictions of EADD

Leaf	Parameter	Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
		vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRACK, ETRACKC	
		Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
EADD	Target [DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
	SECS [DS:RBX]PAGE-INFO.SECS	Concurrent		Exclusive	#GP	Concurrent	

Operation

Temp Variables in EADD Operational Flow

Name	Type	Size (bits)	Description
TMP_SRCPGE	Effective Address	32/64	Effective address of the source page.
TMP_SECS	Effective Address	32/64	Effective address of the SECS destination page.
TMP_SECINFO	Effective Address	32/64	Effective address of an SECINFO structure which contains security attributes of the page to be added.
SCRATCH_SECINFO	SECINFO	512	Scratch storage for holding the contents of DS:TMP_SECINFO.
TMP_LINADDR	Unsigned Integer	64	Holds the linear address to be stored in the EPCM and used to calculate TMP_ENCLAVEOFFSET.
TMP_ENCLAVEOFFSET	Enclave Offset	64	The page displacement from the enclave base address.
TMPUPDATEFIELD	SHA256 Buffer	512	Buffer used to hold data being added to TMP_SECS.MRENCLAVE.

IF (DS:RBX is not 32Byte Aligned)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:RCX is not 4KByte Aligned)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:RCX does not resolve within an EPC)
THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

TMP_SRCPGE ← DS:RBX.SRCPGE;
TMP_SECS ← DS:RBX.SECS;
TMP_SECINFO ← DS:RBX.SECINFO;
TMP_LINADDR ← DS:RBX.LINADDR;

IF (DS:TMP_SRCPGE is not 4KByte aligned or DS:TMP_SECS is not 4KByte aligned or DS:TMP_SECINFO is not 64Byte aligned or TMP_LINADDR is not 4KByte aligned)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:TMP_SECS does not resolve within an EPC)
THEN #PF(DS:TMP_SECS); FI;

SCRATCH_SECINFO ← DS:TMP_SECINFO;

(* Check for misconfigured SECINFO flags*)
IF (SCRATCH_SECINFO reserved fields are not zero or

```

!(SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.PT is PT_REG or SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.PT is PT_TCS)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* Check the EPC page for concurrency *)
IF (EPC page is not available for EADD)
THEN
    IF (<<VMX non-root operation>> AND <<ENABLE_EPC_VIRTUALIZATION_EXTENSIONS>>)
    THEN
        VMCS.Exit_reason ← SGX_CONFLICT;
        VMCS.Exit_qualification.code ← EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_EXCEPTION;
        VMCS.Exit_qualification.error ← 0;
        VMCS.Guest-physical_address ← << translation of DS:RCX produced by paging >>;
        VMCS.Guest-linear_address ← DS:RCX;
        Deliver VMEXIT;
    ELSE
        #GP(0);
    FI;
FI;

IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID ≠ 0)
THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

(* Check the SECS for concurrency *)
IF (SECS is not available for EADD)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (EPCM(DS:TMP_SECS).VALID = 0 or EPCM(DS:TMP_SECS).PT ≠ PT_SECS)
THEN #PF(DS:TMP_SECS); FI;

(* Copy 4KBytes from source page to EPC page*)
DS:RCX[32767:0] ← DS:TMP_SRCPGE[32767:0];

CASE (SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.PT)

    PT_TCS:
        IF (DS:RCX.RESERVED ≠ 0) #GP(0); FI;
        IF ( (DS:TMP_SECS.ATTRIBUTES.MODE64BIT = 0) and
            ((DS:TCS.FSLIMIT & 0FFFH ≠ 0FFFH) or (DS:TCS.GSLIMIT & 0FFFH ≠ 0FFFH)) ) #GP(0); FI;
        BREAK;
    PT_REG:
        IF (SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.W = 1 and SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.R = 0) #GP(0); FI;
        BREAK;
ESAC;

(* Check the enclave offset is within the enclave linear address space *)
IF (TMP_LINADDR < DS:TMP_SECS.BASEADDR or TMP_LINADDR ≥ DS:TMP_SECS.BASEADDR + DS:TMP_SECS.SIZE)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* Check concurrency of measurement resource*)
IF (Measurement being updated)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* Check if the enclave to which the page will be added is already in Initialized state *)
IF (DS:TMP_SECS already initialized)

```

THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* For TCS pages, force EPCM.rwx bits to 0 and no debug access *)

IF (SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.PT = PT_TCS)

THEN

SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.R ← 0;
 SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.W ← 0;
 SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.X ← 0;
 (DS:RCX).FLAGS.DBGOPTIN ← 0; // force TCS.FLAGS.DBGOPTIN off
 DS:RCX.CSSA ← 0;
 DS:RCX.AEP ← 0;
 DS:RCX.STATE ← 0;

FI;

(* Add enclave offset and security attributes to MRENCLAVE *)

TMP_ENCLAVEOFFSET ← TMP_LINADDR - DS:TMP_SECS.BASEADDR;
 TMPUPDATEFIELD[63:0] ← 0000000044444145H; // "EADD"
 TMPUPDATEFIELD[127:64] ← TMP_ENCLAVEOFFSET;
 TMPUPDATEFIELD[511:128] ← SCRATCH_SECINFO[375:0]; // 48 bytes
 DS:TMP_SECS.MRENCLAVE ← SHA256UPDATE(DS:TMP_SECS.MRENCLAVE, TMPUPDATEFIELD)
 INC enclave's MRENCLAVE update counter;

(* Add enclave offset and security attributes to MRENCLAVE *)

EPCM(DS:RCX).R ← SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.R;
 EPCM(DS:RCX).W ← SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.W;
 EPCM(DS:RCX).X ← SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.X;
 EPCM(DS:RCX).PT ← SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.PT;
 EPCM(DS:RCX).ENCLAVEADDRESS ← TMP_LINADDR;

(* associate the EPCPAGE with the SECS by storing the SECS identifier of DS:TMP_SECS *)

Update EPCM(DS:RCX) SECS identifier to reference DS:TMP_SECS identifier;

(* Set EPCM entry fields *)

EPCM(DS:RCX).BLOCKED ← 0;
 EPCM(DS:RCX).PENDING ← 0;
 EPCM(DS:RCX).MODIFIED ← 0;
 EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID ← 1;

Flags Affected

None

Protected Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	If a memory operand effective address is outside the DS segment limit. If a memory operand is not properly aligned. If an enclave memory operand is outside of the EPC. If an enclave memory operand is the wrong type. If a memory operand is locked. If the enclave is initialized. If the enclave's MRENCLAVE is locked. If the TCS page reserved bits are set.
#PF(error code)	If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands. If the EPC page is valid.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	If a memory operand is non-canonical form. If a memory operand is not properly aligned. If an enclave memory operand is outside of the EPC. If an enclave memory operand is the wrong type. If a memory operand is locked. If the enclave is initialized. If the enclave's MRENCLAVE is locked. If the TCS page reserved bits are set.
#PF(error code)	If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands. If the EPC page is valid.

EAUG—Add a Page to an Initialized Enclave

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EAX = 0DH ENCLS[EAUG]	IR	V/V	SGX2	This leaf function adds a page to an initialized enclave.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	EAX	RBX	RCX
IR	EAUG (In)	Address of a SECFINFO (In)	Address of the destination EPC page (In)

Description

This leaf function zeroes a page of EPC memory, associates the EPC page with an SECS page residing in the EPC, and stores the linear address and security attributes in the EPCM. As part of the association, the security attributes are configured to prevent access to the EPC page until a corresponding invocation of the EACCEPT leaf or EACCEPT-COPY leaf confirms the addition of the new page into the enclave. This instruction can only be executed when current privilege level is 0.

RBX contains the effective address of a PAGEINFO structure while RCX contains the effective address of an EPC page. The table below provides additional information on the memory parameter of the EAUG leaf function.

EAUG Memory Parameter Semantics

PAGEINFO	PAGEINFO.SECS	PAGEINFO.SRCPGE	PAGEINFO.SECINFO	EPCPAGE
Read access permitted by Non Enclave	Read/Write access permitted by Enclave	Must be zero	Read access permitted by Non Enclave	Write access permitted by Enclave

The instruction faults if any of the following:

EAUG Faulting Conditions

The operands are not properly aligned.	Unsupported security attributes are set.
Refers to an invalid SECS.	Reference is made to an SECS that is locked by another thread.
The EPC page is locked by another thread.	RCX does not contain an effective address of an EPC page.
The EPC page is already valid.	The specified enclave offset is outside of the enclave address space.
The SECS has been initialized.	

Concurrency Restrictions

Table 40-10. Base Concurrency Restrictions of EAUG

Leaf	Parameter	Base Concurrency Restrictions		
		Access	On Conflict	SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification
EAUG	Target [DS:RCX]	Exclusive	#GP	EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_EXCEPTION
	SECS [DS:RBX]PAGEINFO.SECS	Shared	#GP	

Table 40-11. Additional Concurrency Restrictions of EAUG

Leaf	Parameter	Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
		vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRACK, ETRACKC	
		Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
EAUG	Target [DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
	SECS [DS:RBX]PAGE-INFO.SECS	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	

Operation

Temp Variables in EAUG Operational Flow

Name	Type	Size (bits)	Description
TMP_SECS	Effective Address	32/64	Effective address of the SECS destination page.
TMP_SECINFO	Effective Address	32/64	Effective address of an SECINFO structure which contains security attributes of the page to be added.
SCRATCH_SECINFO	SECINFO	512	Scratch storage for holding the contents of DS:TMP_SECINFO.
TMP_LINADDR	Unsigned Integer	64	Holds the linear address to be stored in the EPCM and used to calculate TMP_ENCLAVEOFFSET.

IF (DS:RBX is not 32Byte Aligned)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:RCX is not 4KByte Aligned)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:RCX does not resolve within an EPC)
THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

TMP_SECS ← DS:RBX.SECS;
TMP_LINADDR ← DS:RBX.LINADDR;

IF (DS:TMP_SECS is not 4KByte aligned or TMP_LINADDR is not 4KByte aligned)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF ((DS:RBX.SRCPAGE is not 0) or (DS:RBX.SECINFO is not 0))
THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:TMP_SECS does not resolve within an EPC)
THEN #PF(DS:TMP_SECS); FI;

(* Check the EPC page for concurrency *)
IF (EPC page in use)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID ≠ 0)
THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

(* Check the SECS for concurrency *)

SGX INSTRUCTION REFERENCES

IF (SECS is not available for EAUG)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (EPCM(DS:TMP_SECS).VALID = 0 or EPCM(DS:TMP_SECS).PT ≠ PT_SECS)
THEN #PF(DS:TMP_SECS); FI;

(* Check if the enclave to which the page will be added is in the Initialized state *)
IF (DS:TMP_SECS is not initialized)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* Check the enclave offset is within the enclave linear address space *)
IF ((TMP_LINADDR < DS:TMP_SECS.BASEADDR) or (TMP_LINADDR ≥ DS:TMP_SECS.BASEADDR + DS:TMP_SECS.SIZE))
THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* Clear the content of EPC page*)
DS:RCX[32767:0] ← 0;

(* Set EPCM security attributes *)
EPCM(DS:RCX).R ← 1;
EPCM(DS:RCX).W ← 1;
EPCM(DS:RCX).X ← 0;
EPCM(DS:RCX).PT ← PT_REG;
EPCM(DS:RCX).ENCLAVEADDRESS ← TMP_LINADDR;
EPCM(DS:RCX).BLOCKED ← 0;
EPCM(DS:RCX).PENDING ← 1;
EPCM(DS:RCX).MODIFIED ← 0;
EPCM(DS:RCX).PR ← 0;

(* associate the EPCPAGE with the SECS by storing the SECS identifier of DS:TMP_SECS *)
Update EPCM(DS:RCX) SECS identifier to reference DS:TMP_SECS identifier;

(* Set EPCM valid fields *)
EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID ← 1;

Flags Affected

None

Protected Mode Exceptions

#GP(0) If a memory operand effective address is outside the DS segment limit.
 If a memory operand is not properly aligned.
 If a memory operand is locked.
 If the enclave is not initialized.

#PF(error code) If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#GP(0) If a memory operand is non-canonical form.
 If a memory operand is not properly aligned.
 If a memory operand is locked.
 If the enclave is not initialized.

#PF(error code) If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.

EBLOCK—Mark a page in EPC as Blocked

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EAX = 09H ENCLS[EBLOCK]	IR	V/V	SGX1	This leaf function marks a page in the EPC as blocked.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	EAX		RCX
IR	EBLOCK (In)	Return error code (Out)	Effective address of the EPC page (In)

Description

This leaf function causes an EPC page to be marked as BLOCKED. This instruction can only be executed when current privilege level is 0.

The content of RCX is an effective address of an EPC page. The DS segment is used to create linear address. Segment override is not supported.

An error code is returned in RAX.

The table below provides additional information on the memory parameter of EBLOCK leaf function.

EBLOCK Memory Parameter Semantics

EPCPAGE
Read/Write access permitted by Enclave

The error codes are:

Table 40-12. EBLOCK Return Value in RAX

Error Code (see Table 40-4)	Description
No Error	EBLOCK successful.
SGX_BLKSTATE	Page already blocked. This value is used to indicate to a VMM that the page was already in BLOCKED state as a result of EBLOCK and thus will need to be restored to this state when it is eventually reloaded (using ELDB).
SGX_ENTRYEPOCH_LOCKED	SECS locked for Entry Epoch update. This value indicates that an ETRACK is currently executing on the SECS. The EBLOCK should be reattempted.
SGX_NOTBLOCKABLE	Page type is not one which can be blocked.
SGX_PG_INVLD	Page is not valid and cannot be blocked.
SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT	Page is being written by EADD, EAUG, ECREATE, ELDU/B, EMODT, or EWB.

Concurrency Restrictions

Table 40-13. Base Concurrency Restrictions of EBLOCK

Leaf	Parameter	Base Concurrency Restrictions		
		Access	On Conflict	SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification
EBLOCK	Target [DS:RCX]	Shared	SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT	

Table 40-14. Additional Concurrency Restrictions of EBLOCK

Leaf	Parameter	Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
		vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRACK, ETRACKC	
		Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
EBLOCK	Target [DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	

Operation

Temp Variables in EBLOCK Operational Flow

Name	Type	Size (Bits)	Description
TMP_BLKSTATE	Integer	64	Page is already blocked.

IF (DS:RCX is not 4KByte Aligned)
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:RCX does not resolve within an EPC)
 THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

RFLAGS.ZF,CF,PF,AF,OF,SF ← 0;
 RAX ← 0;

(* Check the EPC page for concurrency*)

IF (EPC page in use)
 THEN
 RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
 RAX ← SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT;
 GOTO DONE;

FI;

IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID = 0)
 THEN
 RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
 RAX ← SGX_PG_INVLD;
 GOTO DONE;

FI;

IF ((EPCM(DS:RCX).PT ≠ PT_REG) and (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT ≠ PT_TCS) and (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT ≠ PT_TRIM))
 THEN
 RFLAGS.CF ← 1;
 IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT = PT_SECS)
 THEN RAX ← SGX_PG_IS_SECS;
 ELSE RAX ← SGX_NOTBLOCKABLE;
 FI;
 GOTO DONE;

FI;

(* Check if the page is already blocked and report blocked state *)

TMP_BLKSTATE ← EPCM(DS:RCX).BLOCKED;

```
(* at this point, the page must be valid and PT_TCS or PT_REG or PT_TRIM*)
IF (TMP_BLKSTATE = 1)
  THEN
    RFLAGS.CF ← 1;
    RAX ← SGX_BLKSTATE;
  ELSE
    EPCM(DS:RCX).BLOCKED ← 1
FI;
DONE;
```

Flags Affected

Sets ZF if SECS is in use or invalid, otherwise cleared. Sets CF if page is BLOCKED or not blockable, otherwise cleared. Clears PF, AF, OF, SF.

Protected Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	If a memory operand effective address is outside the DS segment limit. If a memory operand is not properly aligned. If the specified EPC resource is in use.
#PF(error code)	If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands. If a memory operand is not an EPC page.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	If a memory operand is non-canonical form. If a memory operand is not properly aligned. If the specified EPC resource is in use.
#PF(error code)	If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands. If a memory operand is not an EPC page.

ECREATE—Create an SECS page in the Enclave Page Cache

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EAX = 00H ENCLS[ECREATE]	IR	V/V	SGX1	This leaf function begins an enclave build by creating an SECS page in EPC.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	EAX	RBX	RCX
IR	ECREATE (In)	Address of a PAGEINFO (In)	Address of the destination SECS page (In)

Description

ENCLS[ECREATE] is the first instruction executed in the enclave build process. ECREATE copies an SECS structure outside the EPC into an SECS page inside the EPC. The internal structure of SECS is not accessible to software.

ECREATE will set up fields in the protected SECS and mark the page as valid inside the EPC. ECREATE initializes or checks unused fields.

Software sets the following fields in the source structure: SECS:BASEADDR, SECS:SIZE in bytes, ATTRIBUTES, CONFIGID and CONFIGSVN. SECS:BASEADDR must be naturally aligned on an SECS.SIZE boundary. SECS.SIZE must be at least 2 pages (8192).

The source operand RBX contains an effective address of a PAGEINFO structure. PAGEINFO contains an effective address of a source SECS and an effective address of an SECINFO. The SECS field in PAGEINFO is not used.

The RCX register is the effective address of the destination SECS. It is an address of an empty slot in the EPC. The SECS structure must be page aligned. SECINFO flags must specify the page as an SECS page.

ECREATE Memory Parameter Semantics

PAGEINFO	PAGEINFO.SRCPGE	PAGEINFO.SECINFO	EPCPAGE
Read access permitted by Non Enclave	Read access permitted by Non Enclave	Read access permitted by Non Enclave	Write access permitted by Enclave

ECREATE will fault if the SECS target page is in use; already valid; outside the EPC. It will also fault if addresses are not aligned; unused PAGEINFO fields are not zero.

If the amount of space needed to store the SSA frame is greater than the amount specified in SECS.SSAFRAME-SIZE, a #GP(0) results. The amount of space needed for an SSA frame is computed based on DS:TMP_SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM size. Details of computing the size can be found Section 41.7.

Concurrency Restrictions

Table 40-15. Base Concurrency Restrictions of ECREATE

Leaf	Parameter	Base Concurrency Restrictions		
		Access	On Conflict	SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification
ECREATE	SECS [DS:RCX]	Exclusive	#GP	EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_EXCEPTION

Table 40-16. Additional Concurrency Restrictions of ECREATE

Leaf	Parameter	Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
		vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRACK, ETRACKC	
		Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
ECREATE	SECS [DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	

Operation

Temp Variables in ECREATE Operational Flow

Name	Type	Size (Bits)	Description
TMP_SRCPGE	Effective Address	32/64	Effective address of the SECS source page.
TMP_SECS	Effective Address	32/64	Effective address of the SECS destination page.
TMP_SECINFO	Effective Address	32/64	Effective address of an SECINFO structure which contains security attributes of the SECS page to be added.
TMP_XSIZE	SSA Size	64	The size calculation of SSA frame.
TMP_MISC_SIZE	MISC Field Size	64	Size of the selected MISC field components.
TMPUPDATEFIELD	SHA256 Buffer	512	Buffer used to hold data being added to TMP_SECS.MRENCLAVE.

IF (DS:RBX is not 32Byte Aligned)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:RCX is not 4KByte Aligned)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:RCX does not resolve within an EPC)
THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

TMP_SRCPGE ← DS:RBX.SRCPGE;
TMP_SECINFO ← DS:RBX.SECINFO;

IF (DS:TMP_SRCPGE is not 4KByte aligned or DS:TMP_SECINFO is not 64Byte aligned)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:RBX.LINADDR != 0 or DS:RBX.SECS ≠ 0)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* Check for misconfigured SECINFO flags*)

IF (DS:TMP_SECINFO reserved fields are not zero or DS:TMP_SECINFO.FLAGS.PT ≠ PT_SECS)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

TMP_SECS ← RCX;

IF (EPC entry in use)
THEN

IF (<<VMX non-root operation>> AND <<ENABLE_EPC_VIRTUALIZATION_EXTENSIONS>>)
THEN

VMCS.Exit_reason ← SGX_CONFLICT;

```

        VMCS.Exit_qualification.code ← EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_EXCEPTION;
        VMCS.Exit_qualification.error ← 0;
        VMCS.Guest-physical_address ←
            << translation of DS:TMP_SECS produced by paging >>;
        VMCS.Guest-linear_address ← DS:TMP_SECS;
    Deliver VMEXIT;
    ELSE
        #GP(0);
FI;

FI;

IF (EPC entry in use)
    THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID = 1)
    THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

(* Copy 4KBytes from source page to EPC page*)
DS:RCX[32767:0] ← DS:TMP_SRCPAGE[32767:0];

(* Check lower 2 bits of XFRM are set *)
IF ( ( DS:TMP_SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM BitwiseAND 03H) ≠ 03H)
    THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (XFRM is illegal)
    THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* Make sure that the SECS does not have any unsupported MISCSELECT options*)
IF ( !(CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=0):EBX[31:0] & DS:TMP_SECS.MISCSELECT[31:0]) )
    THEN
        EPCM(DS:TMP_SECS).EntryLock.Release();
        #GP(0);
FI;

(* Compute size of MISC area *)
TMP_MISC_SIZE ← compute_misc_region_size();

(* Compute the size required to save state of the enclave on async exit, see Section 41.7.2.2*)
TMP_XSIZE ← compute_xsave_size(DS:TMP_SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM) + GPR_SIZE + TMP_MISC_SIZE;

(* Ensure that the declared area is large enough to hold XSAVE and GPR stat *)
IF ( DS:TMP_SECS.SSAFRAMESIZE*4096 < TMP_XSIZE)
    THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF ( (DS:TMP_SECS.ATTRIBUTES.MODE64BIT = 1) and (DS:TMP_SECS.BASEADDR is not canonical) )
    THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF ( (DS:TMP_SECS.ATTRIBUTES.MODE64BIT = 0) and (DS:TMP_SECS.BASEADDR and 0FFFFFFF00000000H) )
    THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF ( (DS:TMP_SECS.ATTRIBUTES.MODE64BIT = 0) and (DS:TMP_SECS.SIZE ≥ 2 ^ (CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=0):.EDX[7:0]) ) )
    THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF ( (DS:TMP_SECS.ATTRIBUTES.MODE64BIT = 1) and (DS:TMP_SECS.SIZE ≥ 2 ^ (CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=0):.EDX[15:8]) ) )

```

```
THEN #GP(0); FI;
```

```
(* Enclave size must be at least 8192 bytes and must be power of 2 in bytes*)
```

```
IF (DS:TMP_SECS.SIZE < 8192 or popcnt(DS:TMP_SECS.SIZE) > 1)
```

```
THEN #GP(0); FI;
```

```
(* Ensure base address of an enclave is aligned on size*)
```

```
IF ( ( DS:TMP_SECS.BASEADDR and (DS:TMP_SECS.SIZE-1) ) )
```

```
THEN #GP(0); FI;
```

```
(* Ensure the SECS does not have any unsupported attributes*)
```

```
IF ( DS:TMP_SECS.ATTRIBUTES and (~CR_SGX_ATTRIBUTES_MASK) )
```

```
THEN #GP(0); FI;
```

```
IF ( DS:TMP_SECS reserved fields are not zero)
```

```
THEN #GP(0); FI;
```

```
(* Verify that CONFIGID/CONFIGSVN are not set with attribute *)
```

```
IF ( ((DS:TMP_SECS.CONFIGID ≠ 0) or (DS:TMP_SECS.CONFIGSVN ≠ 0)) AND (DS:TMP_SECS.ATTRIBUTES.KSS == 0) )
```

```
THEN #GP(0); FI;
```

```
Clear DS:TMP_SECS to Uninitialized;
```

```
DS:TMP_SECS.MRENCLAVE ← SHA256INITIALIZE(DS:TMP_SECS.MRENCLAVE);
```

```
DS:TMP_SECS.ISVSVN ← 0;
```

```
DS:TMP_SECS.ISVPRODID ← 0;
```

```
(* Initialize hash updates etc*)
```

```
Initialize enclave's MRENCLAVE update counter;
```

```
(* Add "ECREATE" string and SECS fields to MRENCLAVE *)
```

```
TMPUPDATEFIELD[63:0] ← 0045544145524345H; // "ECREATE"
```

```
TMPUPDATEFIELD[95:64] ← DS:TMP_SECS.SSAFRAMESIZE;
```

```
TMPUPDATEFIELD[159:96] ← DS:TMP_SECS.SIZE;
```

```
TMPUPDATEFIELD[511:160] ← 0;
```

```
DS:TMP_SECS.MRENCLAVE ← SHA256UPDATE(DS:TMP_SECS.MRENCLAVE, TMPUPDATEFIELD)
```

```
INC enclave's MRENCLAVE update counter;
```

```
(* Set EID *)
```

```
DS:TMP_SECS.EID ← LockedXAdd(CR_NEXT_EID, 1);
```

```
(* Initialize the virtual child count to zero *)
```

```
DS:TMP_SECS.VIRTCHILDCNT ← 0;
```

```
(* Load ENCLAVECONTEXT with Address out of paging of SECS *)
```

```
<< store translation of DS:RCX produced by paging in SECS(DS:RCX).ENCLAVECONTEXT >>
```

```
(* Set the EPCM entry, first create SECS identifier and store the identifier in EPCM *)
```

```
EPCM(DS:TMP_SECS).PT ← PT_SECS;
```

```
EPCM(DS:TMP_SECS).ENCLAVEADDRESS ← 0;
```

```
EPCM(DS:TMP_SECS).R ← 0;
```

```
EPCM(DS:TMP_SECS).W ← 0;
```

```
EPCM(DS:TMP_SECS).X ← 0;
```

```
(* Set EPCM entry fields *)
```

SGX INSTRUCTION REFERENCES

EPCM(DS:RCX).BLOCKED ← 0;
EPCM(DS:RCX).PENDING ← 0;
EPCM(DS:RCX).MODIFIED ← 0;
EPCM(DS:RCX).PR ← 0;
EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID ← 1;

Flags Affected

None

Protected Mode Exceptions

#GP(0) If a memory operand effective address is outside the DS segment limit.
 If a memory operand is not properly aligned.
 If the reserved fields are not zero.
 If PAGEINFO.SECS is not zero.
 If PAGEINFO.LINADDR is not zero.
 If the SECS destination is locked.
 If SECS.SSAFRAMESIZE is insufficient.

#PF(error code) If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.
 If the SECS destination is outside the EPC.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#GP(0) If a memory address is non-canonical form.
 If a memory operand is not properly aligned.
 If the reserved fields are not zero.
 If PAGEINFO.SECS is not zero.
 If PAGEINFO.LINADDR is not zero.
 If the SECS destination is locked.
 If SECS.SSAFRAMESIZE is insufficient.

#PF(error code) If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.
 If the SECS destination is outside the EPC.

EDBGRD—Read From a Debug Enclave

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EAX = 04H ENCLS[EDBGRD]	IR	V/V	SGX1	This leaf function reads a dword/quadword from a debug enclave.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	EAX	RBX	RCX
IR	EDBGRD (In)	Data read from a debug enclave (Out)	Address of source memory in the EPC (In)

Description

This leaf function copies a quadword/doubleword from an EPC page belonging to a debug enclave into the RBX register. Eight bytes are read in 64-bit mode, four bytes are read in non-64-bit modes. The size of data read cannot be overridden.

The effective address of the source location inside the EPC is provided in the register RCX.

EDBGRD Memory Parameter Semantics

EPCQW
Read access permitted by Enclave

The error codes are:

Table 40-17. EDBGRD Return Value in RAX

Error Code (see Table 40-4)	Description
No Error	EDBGRD successful.
SGX_PAGE_NOT_DEBUGGABLE	The EPC page cannot be accessed because it is in the PENDING or MODIFIED state.

The instruction faults if any of the following:

EDBGRD Faulting Conditions

RCX points into a page that is an SECS.	RCX does not resolve to a naturally aligned linear address.
RCX points to a page that does not belong to an enclave that is in debug mode.	RCX points to a location inside a TCS that is beyond the architectural size of the TCS (SGX_TCS_LIMIT).
An operand causing any segment violation.	May page fault.
CPL > 0.	

This instruction ignores the EPCM RWX attributes on the enclave page. Consequently, violation of EPCM RWX attributes via EDBGRD does not result in a #GP.

Concurrency Restrictions

Table 40-18. Base Concurrency Restrictions of EDBGRD

Leaf	Parameter	Base Concurrency Restrictions		
		Access	On Conflict	SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification
EDBGRD	Target [DS:RCX]	Shared	#GP	

Table 40-19. Additional Concurrency Restrictions of EDBGRD

Leaf	Parameter	Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
		vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRACK, ETRACKC	
		Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
EDBGRD	Target [DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	

Operation

Temp Variables in EDBGRD Operational Flow

Name	Type	Size (Bits)	Description
TMP_MODE64	Binary	1	((IA32_EFER.LMA = 1) && (CS.L = 1))
TMP_SECS		64	Physical address of SECS of the enclave to which source operand belongs.

TMP_MODE64 ← ((IA32_EFER.LMA = 1) && (CS.L = 1));

IF ((TMP_MODE64 = 1) and (DS:RCX is not 8Byte Aligned))
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF ((TMP_MODE64 = 0) and (DS:RCX is not 4Byte Aligned))
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:RCX does not resolve within an EPC)
 THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

(* make sure no other Intel SGX instruction is accessing EPCM *)

IF (Other EPCM modifying instructions executing)
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID = 0)
 THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

(* make sure that DS:RCX (SOURCE) is pointing to a PT_REG or PT_TCS or PT_VA *)

IF ((EPCM(DS:RCX).PT ≠ PT_REG) and (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT ≠ PT_TCS) and (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT ≠ PT_VA))
 THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

(* make sure that DS:RCX points to an accessible EPC page *)

IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).PENDING is not 0 or (EPCM(DS:RCX).MODIFIED is not 0))
 THEN
 RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
 RAX ← SGX_PAGE_NOT_DEBUGGABLE;

```

    GOTO DONE;
FI;

(* If source is a TCS, then make sure that the offset into the page is not beyond the TCS size*)
IF ( ( EPCM(DS:RCX).PT = PT_TCS) and ((DS:RCX) & FFFH ≥ SGX_TCS_LIMIT) )
    THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* make sure the enclave owning the PT_REG or PT_TCS page allow debug *)
IF ( (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT = PT_REG) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT = PT_TCS) )
    THEN
        TMP_SECS ← GET_SECS_ADDRESS;
        IF (TMP_SECS.ATTRIBUTES.DEBUG = 0)
            THEN #GP(0); FI;
        IF ( (TMP_MODE64 = 1) )
            THEN RBX[63:0] ← (DS:RCX)[63:0];
            ELSE EBX[31:0] ← (DS:RCX)[31:0];
        FI;
    ELSE
        TMP_64BIT_VAL[63:0] ← (DS:RCX)[63:0] & (~07H); // Read contents from VA slot
        IF (TMP_MODE64 = 1)
            THEN
                IF (TMP_64BIT_VAL ≠ 0H)
                    THEN RBX[63:0] ← 0FFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFH;
                    ELSE RBX[63:0] ← 0H;
                FI;
            ELSE
                IF (TMP_64BIT_VAL ≠ 0H)
                    THEN EBX[31:0] ← 0FFFFFFFFH;
                    ELSE EBX[31:0] ← 0H;
                FI;
        FI;

    FI;

(* clear EAX and ZF to indicate successful completion *)
RAX ← 0;
RFLAGS.ZF ← 0;

DONE:
(* clear flags *)
RFLAGS.CF,PF,AF,OF,SF ← 0;

```

Flags Affected

None

Protected Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	<p>If the address in RCS violates DS limit or access rights.</p> <p>If DS segment is unusable.</p> <p>If RCX points to a memory location not 4Byte-aligned.</p> <p>If the address in RCX points to a page belonging to a non-debug enclave.</p> <p>If the address in RCX points to a page which is not PT_TCS, PT_REG or PT_VA.</p> <p>If the address in RCX points to a location inside TCS that is beyond SGX_TCS_LIMIT.</p>
--------	--

SGX INSTRUCTION REFERENCES

#PF(error code) If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.
 If the address in RCX points to a non-EPC page.
 If the address in RCX points to an invalid EPC page.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#GP(0) If RCX is non-canonical form.
 If RCX points to a memory location not 8Byte-aligned.
 If the address in RCX points to a page belonging to a non-debug enclave.
 If the address in RCX points to a page which is not PT_TCS, PT_REG or PT_VA.
 If the address in RCX points to a location inside TCS that is beyond SGX_TCS_LIMIT.

#PF(error code) If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.
 If the address in RCX points to a non-EPC page.
 If the address in RCX points to an invalid EPC page.

EDBGWR—Write to a Debug Enclave

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EAX = 05H ENCLS[EDBGWR]	IR	V/V	SGX1	This leaf function writes a dword/quadword to a debug enclave.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	EAX	RBX	RCX
IR	EDBGWR (In)	Data to be written to a debug enclave (In)	Address of Target memory in the EPC (In)

Description

This leaf function copies the content in EBX/RBX to an EPC page belonging to a debug enclave. Eight bytes are written in 64-bit mode, four bytes are written in non-64-bit modes. The size of data cannot be overridden.

The effective address of the source location inside the EPC is provided in the register RCX.

EDBGWR Memory Parameter Semantics

EPCQW
Write access permitted by Enclave

The instruction faults if any of the following:

EDBGWR Faulting Conditions

RCX points into a page that is an SECS.	RCX does not resolve to a naturally aligned linear address.
RCX points to a page that does not belong to an enclave that is in debug mode.	RCX points to a location inside a TCS that is not the FLAGS word.
An operand causing any segment violation.	May page fault.
CPL > 0.	

The error codes are:

Table 40-20. EDBGWR Return Value in RAX

Error Code (see Table 40-4)	Description
No Error	EDBGWR successful.
SGX_PAGE_NOT_DEBUGGABLE	The EPC page cannot be accessed because it is in the PENDING or MODIFIED state.

This instruction ignores the EPCM RWX attributes on the enclave page. Consequently, violation of EPCM RWX attributes via EDBGWR does not result in a #GP.

Concurrency Restrictions

Table 40-21. Base Concurrency Restrictions of EDBGWR

Leaf	Parameter	Base Concurrency Restrictions		
		Access	On Conflict	SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification
EDBGWR	Target [DS:RCX]	Shared	#GP	

Table 40-22. Additional Concurrency Restrictions of EDBGWR

Leaf	Parameter	Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
		vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRACK, ETRACKC	
		Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
EDBGWR	Target [DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	

Operation

Temp Variables in EDBGWR Operational Flow

Name	Type	Size (Bits)	Description
TMP_MODE64	Binary	1	((IA32_EFER.LMA = 1) && (CS.L = 1)).
TMP_SECS		64	Physical address of SECS of the enclave to which source operand belongs.

TMP_MODE64 ← ((IA32_EFER.LMA = 1) && (CS.L = 1));

IF ((TMP_MODE64 = 1) and (DS:RCX is not 8Byte Aligned))
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF ((TMP_MODE64 = 0) and (DS:RCX is not 4Byte Aligned))
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:RCX does not resolve within an EPC)
 THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

(* make sure no other Intel SGX instruction is accessing EPCM *)
 IF (Other EPCM modifying instructions executing)
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID = 0)
 THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

(* make sure that DS:RCX (DST) is pointing to a PT_REG or PT_TCS *)
 IF ((EPCM(DS:RCX).PT ≠ PT_REG) and (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT ≠ PT_TCS))
 THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

(* make sure that DS:RCX points to an accessible EPC page *)
 IF ((EPCM(DS:RCX).PENDING is not 0) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).MODIFIED is not 0))
 THEN
 RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
 RAX ← SGX_PAGE_NOT_DEBUGGABLE;
 GOTO DONE;

FI;

(* If destination is a TCS, then make sure that the offset into the page can only point to the FLAGS field*)
 IF ((EPCM(DS:RCX).PT = PT_TCS) and ((DS:RCX) & FF8H ≠ offset_of_FLAGS & 0FF8H))
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* Locate the SECS for the enclave to which the DS:RCX page belongs *)

```
TMP_SECS ← GET_SECS_PHYS_ADDRESS(EPCM(DS:RCX).ENCLAVESECS);
```

```
(* make sure the enclave owning the PT_REG or PT_TCS page allow debug *)
```

```
IF (TMP_SECS.ATTRIBUTES.DEBUG = 0)
```

```
    THEN #GP(0); FI;
```

```
IF ( (TMP_MODE64 = 1) )
```

```
    THEN (DS:RCX)[63:0] ← RBX[63:0];
```

```
    ELSE (DS:RCX)[31:0] ← EBX[31:0];
```

```
FI;
```

```
(* clear EAX and ZF to indicate successful completion *)
```

```
RAX ← 0;
```

```
RFLAGS.ZF ← 0;
```

```
DONE:
```

```
(* clear flags *)
```

```
RFLAGS.CF,PF,AF,OF,SF ← 0
```

Flags Affected

None

Protected Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	<p>If the address in RCS violates DS limit or access rights.</p> <p>If DS segment is unusable.</p> <p>If RCX points to a memory location not 4Byte-aligned.</p> <p>If the address in RCX points to a page belonging to a non-debug enclave.</p> <p>If the address in RCX points to a page which is not PT_TCS or PT_REG.</p> <p>If the address in RCX points to a location inside TCS that is not the FLAGS word.</p>
#PF(error code)	<p>If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.</p> <p>If the address in RCX points to a non-EPC page.</p> <p>If the address in RCX points to an invalid EPC page.</p>

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	<p>If RCX is non-canonical form.</p> <p>If RCX points to a memory location not 8Byte-aligned.</p> <p>If the address in RCX points to a page belonging to a non-debug enclave.</p> <p>If the address in RCX points to a page which is not PT_TCS or PT_REG.</p> <p>If the address in RCX points to a location inside TCS that is not the FLAGS word.</p>
#PF(error code)	<p>If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.</p> <p>If the address in RCX points to a non-EPC page.</p> <p>If the address in RCX points to an invalid EPC page.</p>

EEXTEND—Extend Uninitialized Enclave Measurement by 256 Bytes

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EAX = 06H ENCLS[EEXTEND]	IR	V/V	SGX1	This leaf function measures 256 bytes of an uninitialized enclave page.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	EAX	EBX	RCX
IR	EEXTEND (In)	Effective address of the SECS of the data chunk (In)	Effective address of a 256-byte chunk in the EPC (In)

Description

This leaf function updates the MRENCLAVE measurement register of an SECS with the measurement of an EXTEND string comprising of “EEXTEND” || ENCLAVEOFFSET || PADDING || 256 bytes of the enclave page. This instruction can only be executed when current privilege level is 0 and the enclave is uninitialized.

RBX contains the effective address of the SECS of the region to be measured. The address must be the same as the one used to add the page into the enclave.

RCX contains the effective address of the 256 byte region of an EPC page to be measured. The DS segment is used to create linear addresses. Segment override is not supported.

EEXTEND Memory Parameter Semantics

EPC[RCX]
Read access by Enclave

The instruction faults if any of the following:

EEXTEND Faulting Conditions

RBX points to an address not 4KBytes aligned.	RBX does not resolve to an SECS.
RBX does not point to an SECS page.	RBX does not point to the SECS page of the data chunk.
RCX points to an address not 256B aligned.	RCX points to an unused page or a SECS.
RCX does not resolve in an EPC page.	If SECS is locked.
If the SECS is already initialized.	May page fault.
CPL > 0.	

Concurrency Restrictions

Table 40-23. Base Concurrency Restrictions of EEXTEND

Leaf	Parameter	Base Concurrency Restrictions		
		Access	On Conflict	SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification
EEXTEND	Target [DS:RCX]	Shared	#GP	
	SECS [DS:RBX]	Concurrent		

Table 40-24. Additional Concurrency Restrictions of EEXTEND

Leaf	Parameter	Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
		vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRACK, ETRACKC	
		Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
EEXTEND	Target [DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
	SECS [DS:RBX]	Concurrent		Exclusive	#GP	Concurrent	

Operation

Temp Variables in EEXTEND Operational Flow

Name	Type	Size (Bits)	Description
TMP_SECS		64	Physical address of SECS of the enclave to which source operand belongs.
TMP_ENCLAVEOFFS ET	Enclave Offset	64	The page displacement from the enclave base address.
TMPUPDATEFIELD	SHA256 Buffer	512	Buffer used to hold data being added to TMP_SECS.MRENCLAVE.

TMP_MODE64 ← ((IA32_EFER.LMA = 1) && (CS.L = 1));

IF (DS:RBX is not 4096 Byte Aligned)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:RBX does resolve to an EPC page)
THEN #PF(DS:RBX); FI;

IF (DS:RCX is not 256Byte Aligned)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:RCX does not resolve within an EPC)
THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

(* make sure no other Intel SGX instruction is accessing EPCM *)
IF (Other instructions accessing EPCM)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID = 0)
THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

(* make sure that DS:RCX (DST) is pointing to a PT_REG or PT_TCS *)
IF ((EPCM(DS:RCX).PT ≠ PT_REG) and (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT ≠ PT_TCS))
THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

TMP_SECS ← Get_SECS_ADDRESS();

IF (DS:RBX does not resolve to TMP_SECS)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* make sure no other instruction is accessing MRENCLAVE or ATTRIBUTES.INIT *)
IF ((Other instruction accessing MRENCLAVE) or (Other instructions checking or updating the initialized state of the SECS))
THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* Calculate enclave offset *)

TMP_ENCLAVEOFFSET ← EPCM(DS:RCX).ENCLAVEADDRESS - TMP_SECS.BASEADDR;
 TMP_ENCLAVEOFFSET ← TMP_ENCLAVEOFFSET + (DS:RCX & 0FFFH)

(* Add EEXTEND message and offset to MRENCLAVE *)

TMPUPDATEFIELD[63:0] ← 00444E4554584545H; // "EEXTEND"
 TMPUPDATEFIELD[127:64] ← TMP_ENCLAVEOFFSET;
 TMPUPDATEFIELD[511:128] ← 0; // 48 bytes
 TMP_SECS.MRENCLAVE ← SHA256UPDATE(TMP_SECS.MRENCLAVE, TMPUPDATEFIELD)
 INC enclave's MRENCLAVE update counter;

(*Add 256 bytes to MRENCLAVE, 64 byte at a time *)

TMP_SECS.MRENCLAVE ← SHA256UPDATE(TMP_SECS.MRENCLAVE, DS:RCX[511:0]);
 TMP_SECS.MRENCLAVE ← SHA256UPDATE(TMP_SECS.MRENCLAVE, DS:RCX[1023: 512]);
 TMP_SECS.MRENCLAVE ← SHA256UPDATE(TMP_SECS.MRENCLAVE, DS:RCX[1535: 1024]);
 TMP_SECS.MRENCLAVE ← SHA256UPDATE(TMP_SECS.MRENCLAVE, DS:RCX[2047: 1536]);
 INC enclave's MRENCLAVE update counter by 4;

Flags Affected

None

Protected Mode Exceptions

#GP(0) If the address in RBX is outside the DS segment limit.
 If RBX points to an SECS page which is not the SECS of the data chunk.
 If the address in RCX is outside the DS segment limit.
 If RCX points to a memory location not 256Byte-aligned.
 If another instruction is accessing MRENCLAVE.
 If another instruction is checking or updating the SECS.
 If the enclave is already initialized.

#PF(error code) If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.
 If the address in RBX points to a non-EPC page.
 If the address in RCX points to a page which is not PT_TCS or PT_REG.
 If the address in RCX points to a non-EPC page.
 If the address in RCX points to an invalid EPC page.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#GP(0) If RBX is non-canonical form.
 If RBX points to an SECS page which is not the SECS of the data chunk.
 If RCX is non-canonical form.
 If RCX points to a memory location not 256 Byte-aligned.
 If another instruction is accessing MRENCLAVE.
 If another instruction is checking or updating the SECS.
 If the enclave is already initialized.

#PF(error code) If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.
 If the address in RBX points to a non-EPC page.
 If the address in RCX points to a page which is not PT_TCS or PT_REG.
 If the address in RCX points to a non-EPC page.
 If the address in RCX points to an invalid EPC page.

EINIT—Initialize an Enclave for Execution

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EAX = 02H ENCLS[EINIT]	IR	V/V	SGX1	This leaf function initializes the enclave and makes it ready to execute enclave code.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	EAX		RBX	RCX	RDX
IR	EINIT (In)	Error code (Out)	Address of SIGSTRUCT (In)	Address of SECS (In)	Address of EINITTOKEN (In)

Description

This leaf function is the final instruction executed in the enclave build process. After EINIT, the MRENCLAVE measurement is complete, and the enclave is ready to start user code execution using the EENTER instruction.

EINIT takes the effective address of a SIGSTRUCT and EINITTOKEN. The SIGSTRUCT describes the enclave including MRENCLAVE, ATTRIBUTES, ISVSVN, a 3072 bit RSA key, and a signature using the included key. SIGSTRUCT must be populated with two values, q1 and q2. These are calculated using the formulas shown below:

$$q1 = \text{floor}(\text{Signature}^2 / \text{Modulus});$$

$$q2 = \text{floor}((\text{Signature}^3 - q1 * \text{Signature} * \text{Modulus}) / \text{Modulus});$$

The EINITTOKEN contains the MRENCLAVE, MRSIGNER, and ATTRIBUTES. These values must match the corresponding values in the SECS. If the EINITTOKEN was created with a debug launch key, the enclave must be in debug mode as well.

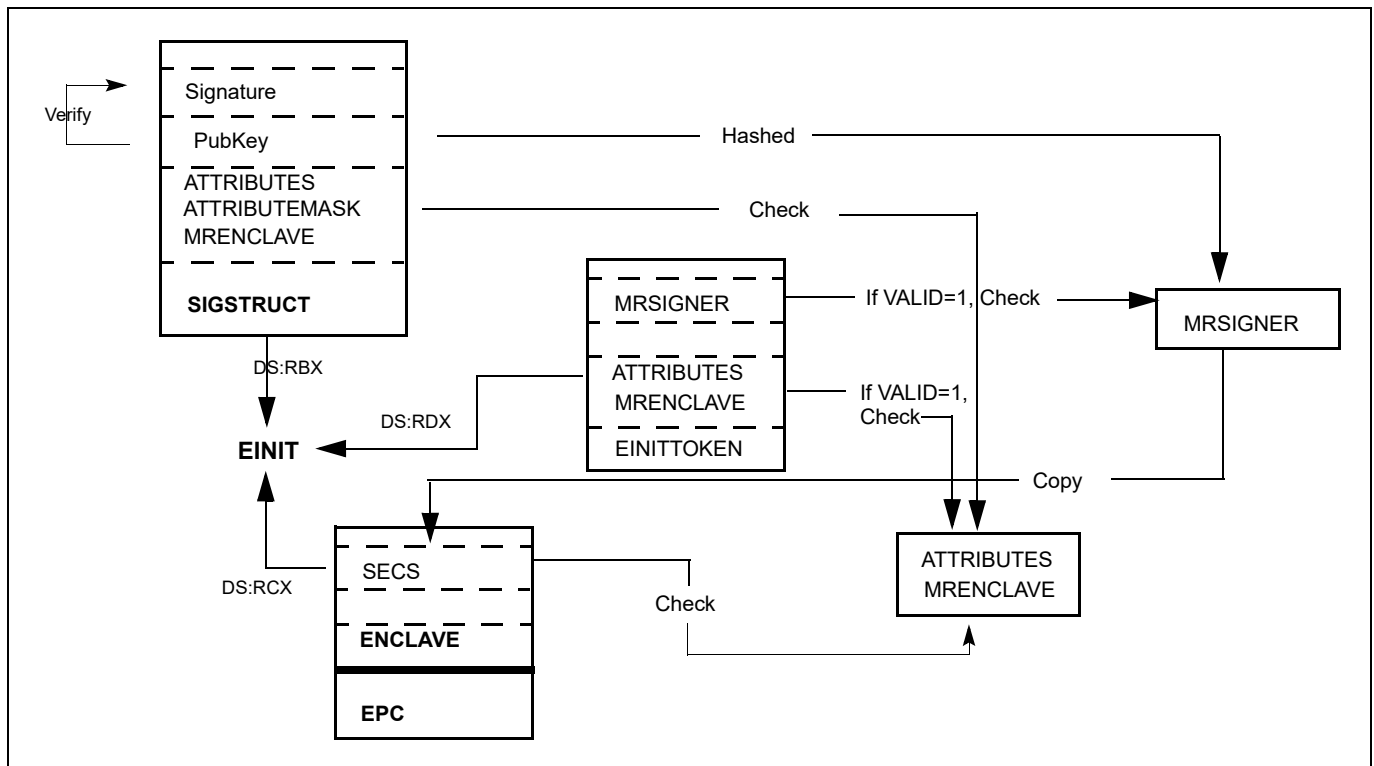


Figure 40-1. Relationships Between SECS, SIGSTRUCT and EINITTOKEN

EINIT Memory Parameter Semantics

SIGSTRUCT	SECS	EINITOKEN
Access by non-Enclave	Read/Write access by Enclave	Access by non-Enclave

EINIT performs the following steps, which can be seen in Figure 40-1:

Validates that SIGSTRUCT is signed using the enclosed public key.

Checks that the completed computation of SECS.MRENCLAVE equals SIGSTRUCT.HASHENCLAVE.

Checks that no reserved bits are set to 1 in SIGSTRUCT.ATTRIBUTES and no reserved bits in SIGSTRUCT.ATTRIBUTESMASK are set to 0.

Checks that no controlled ATTRIBUTES bits are set in SIGSTRUCT.ATTRIBUTES unless the SHA256 digest of SIGSTRUCT.MODULUS equals IA32_SGX_LEPUBKEYHASH.

Checks that SIGSTRUCT.ATTRIBUTES equals the result of logically and-ing SIGSTRUCT.ATTRIBUTESMASK with SECS.ATTRIBUTES.

If EINITOKEN.VALID is 0, checks that the SHA256 digest of SIGSTRUCT.MODULUS equals IA32_SGX_LEPUBKEYHASH.

If EINITOKEN.VALID is 1, checks the validity of EINITOKEN.

If EINITOKEN.VALID is 1, checks that EINITOKEN.MRENCLAVE equals SECS.MRENCLAVE.

If EINITOKEN.VALID is 1 and EINITOKEN.ATTRIBUTES.DEBUG is 1, SECS.ATTRIBUTES.DEBUG must be 1.

Commits SECS.MRENCLAVE, and sets SECS.MRSIGNER, SECS.ISVSVN, and SECS.ISVPRODID based on SIGSTRUCT.

Update the SECS as Initialized.

Periodically, EINIT polls for certain asynchronous events. If such an event is detected, it completes with failure code (ZF=1 and RAX = SGX_UNMASKED_EVENT), and RIP is incremented to point to the next instruction. These events includes external interrupts, non-maskable interrupts, system-management interrupts, machine checks, INIT signals, and the VMX-preemption timer. EINIT does not fail if the pending event is inhibited (e.g., external interrupts could be inhibited due to blocking by MOV SS blocking or by STI).

The following bits in RFLAGS are cleared: CF, PF, AF, OF, and SF. When the instruction completes with an error, RFLAGS.ZF is set to 1, and the corresponding error bit is set in RAX. If no error occurs, RFLAGS.ZF is cleared and RAX is set to 0.

The error codes are:

Table 40-25. EINIT Return Value in RAX

Error Code (see Table 40-4)	Description
No Error	EINIT successful.
SGX_INVALID_SIG_STRUCT	If SIGSTRUCT contained an invalid value.
SGX_INVALID_ATTRIBUTE	If SIGSTRUCT contains an unauthorized attributes mask.
SGX_INVALID_MEASUREMENT	If SIGSTRUCT contains an incorrect measurement. If EINITOKEN contains an incorrect measurement.
SGX_INVALID_SIGNATURE	If signature does not validate with enclosed public key.
SGX_INVALID_LICENSE	If license is invalid.
SGX_INVALID_CPUSVN	If license SVN is unsupported.
SGX_UNMASKED_EVENT	If an unmasked event is received before the instruction completes its operation.

Concurrency Restrictions

Table 40-26. Base Concurrency Restrictions of EINIT

Leaf	Parameter	Base Concurrency Restrictions		
		Access	On Conflict	SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification
EINIT	SECS [DS:RCX]	Shared	#GP	

Table 40-27. Additional Concurrency Restrictions of ENIT

Leaf	Parameter	Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
		vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRACK, ETRACKC	
		Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
EINIT	SECS [DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Exclusive	#GP	Concurrent	

Operation

Temp Variables in EINIT Operational Flow

Name	Type	Size	Description
TMP_SIG	SIGSTRUCT	1808Bytes	Temp space for SIGSTRUCT.
TMP_TOKEN	EINITTOKEN	304Bytes	Temp space for EINITTOKEN.
TMP_MRENCLAVE		32Bytes	Temp space for calculating MRENCLAVE.
TMP_MRSIGNER		32Bytes	Temp space for calculating MRSIGNER.
CONTROLLED_ATTRIBUTES	ATTRIBUTES	16Bytes	Constant mask of all ATTRIBUTE bits that can only be set for authorized enclaves.
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES	Buffer	224Bytes	Temp space for key derivation.
TMP_EINITTOKENKEY		16Bytes	Temp space for the derived EINITTOKEN Key.
TMP_SIG_PADDING	PKCS Padding Buffer	352Bytes	The value of the top 352 bytes from the computation of Signature ³ modulo MRSIGNER.

(* make sure SIGSTRUCT and SECS are aligned *)

IF ((DS:RBX is not 4KByte Aligned) or (DS:RCX is not 4KByte Aligned))
THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* make sure the EINITTOKEN is aligned *)

IF (DS:RDX is not 512Byte Aligned)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* make sure the SECS is inside the EPC *)

IF (DS:RCX does not resolve within an EPC)
THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

TMP_SIG[14463:0] ← DS:RBX[14463:0]; // 1808 bytes

TMP_TOKEN[2423:0] ← DS:RDX[2423:0]; // 304 bytes

SGX INSTRUCTION REFERENCES

(* Verify SIGSTRUCT Header. *)

```
IF ( (TMP_SIG.HEADER ≠ 06000000E10000000000010000000000h) or
    ((TMP_SIG.VENDOR ≠ 0) and (TMP_SIG.VENDOR ≠ 00008086h) ) or
    (TMP_SIG.HEADER2 ≠ 01010000600000006000000001000000h) or
    (TMP_SIG.EXPONENT ≠ 00000003h) or (Reserved space is not 0's) )
THEN
    RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
    RAX ← SGX_INVALID_SIG_STRUCT;
    GOTO EXIT;
```

FI;

(* Open "Event Window" Check for Interrupts. Verify signature using embedded public key, q1, and q2. Save upper 352 bytes of the PKCS1.5 encoded message into the TMP_SIG_PADDING*)

```
IF (interrupt was pending) THEN
    RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
    RAX ← SGX_UNMASKED_EVENT;
    GOTO EXIT;
```

FI

```
IF (signature failed to verify) THEN
    RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
    RAX ← SGX_INVALID_SIGNATURE;
    GOTO EXIT;
```

FI;

(*Close "Event Window" *)

(* make sure no other Intel SGX instruction is modifying SECS*)

```
IF (Other instructions modifying SECS)
    THEN #GP(0); FI;
```

```
IF ( (EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID = 0) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT ≠ PT_SECS) )
    THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;
```

(* Verify ISVFAMILYID is not used on an enclave with KSS disabled *)

```
IF ((TMP_SIG.ISVFAMILYID != 0) AND (DS:RCX.ATTRIBUTES.KSS == 0))
    THEN
    RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
    RAX ← SGX_INVALID_SIG_STRUCT;
    GOTO EXIT;
```

FI;

(* make sure no other instruction is accessing MRENCLAVE or ATTRIBUTES.INIT *)

```
IF ( (Other instruction modifying MRENCLAVE) or (Other instructions modifying the SECS's Initialized state))
    THEN #GP(0); FI;
```

(* Calculate finalized version of MRENCLAVE *)

(* SHA256 algorithm requires one last update that compresses the length of the hashed message into the output SHA256 digest *)

```
TMP_ENCLAVE ← SHA256FINAL( (DS:RCX).MRENCLAVE, enclave's MRENCLAVE update count *512);
```

(* Verify MRENCLAVE from SIGSTRUCT *)

```
IF (TMP_SIG.ENCLAVEHASH ≠ TMP_MRENCLAVE)
    RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
    RAX ← SGX_INVALID_MEASUREMENT;
    GOTO EXIT;
```

FI;

```
TMP_MRSIGNER ← SHA256(TMP_SIG.MODULUS)
```

```
(* if controlled ATTRIBUTES are set, SIGSTRUCT must be signed using an authorized key *)
```

```
CONTROLLED_ATTRIBUTES ← 000000000000020H;
```

```
IF ( ( (DS:RCX.ATTRIBUTES & CONTROLLED_ATTRIBUTES) ≠ 0) and (TMP_MRSIGNER ≠ IA32_SGXLEPUBKEYHASH) )
```

```
    RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
```

```
    RAX ← SGX_INVALID_ATTRIBUTE;
```

```
    GOTO EXIT;
```

```
FI;
```

```
(* Verify SIGSTRUCT.ATTRIBUTE requirements are met *)
```

```
IF ( (DS:RCX.ATTRIBUTES & TMP_SIG.ATTRIBUTEMASK) ≠ (TMP_SIG.ATTRIBUTE & TMP_SIG.ATTRIBUTEMASK) )
```

```
    RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
```

```
    RAX ← SGX_INVALID_ATTRIBUTE;
```

```
    GOTO EXIT;
```

```
FI;
```

```
(*Verify SIGSTRUCT.MISCSELECT requirements are met *)
```

```
IF ( (DS:RCX.MISCSELECT & TMP_SIG.MISCMASK) ≠ (TMP_SIG.MISCSELECT & TMP_SIG.MISCMASK) )
```

```
    THEN
```

```
        RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
```

```
        RAX ← SGX_INVALID_ATTRIBUTE;
```

```
    GOTO EXIT
```

```
FI;
```

```
(* if EINITTOKEN.VALID[0] is 0, verify the enclave is signed by an authorized key *)
```

```
IF (TMP_TOKEN.VALID[0] = 0)
```

```
    IF (TMP_MRSIGNER ≠ IA32_SGXLEPUBKEYHASH)
```

```
        RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
```

```
        RAX ← SGX_INVALID_EINITTOKEN;
```

```
        GOTO EXIT;
```

```
    FI;
```

```
    GOTO COMMIT;
```

```
FI;
```

```
(* Debug Launch Enclave cannot launch Production Enclaves *)
```

```
IF ( (DS:RDX.MASKEDATTRIBUTESLE.DEBUG = 1) and (DS:RCX.ATTRIBUTES.DEBUG = 0) )
```

```
    RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
```

```
    RAX ← SGX_INVALID_EINITTOKEN;
```

```
    GOTO EXIT;
```

```
FI;
```

```
(* Check reserve space in EINIT token includes reserved regions and upper bits in valid field *)
```

```
IF (TMP_TOKEN reserved space is not clear)
```

```
    RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
```

```
    RAX ← SGX_INVALID_EINITTOKEN;
```

```
    GOTO EXIT;
```

```
FI;
```

```
(* EINIT token must be ≤ CR_CPUSVN *)
```

```
IF (TMP_TOKEN.CPUSVN > CR_CPUSVN)
```

```
    RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
```

```
    RAX ← SGX_INVALID_CPUSVN;
```

SGX INSTRUCTION REFERENCES

```
GOTO EXIT;
FI;
```

```
(* Derive Launch key used to calculate EINITTOKEN.MAC *)
```

```
HARDCODED_PKCS1_5_PADDING[15:0] ← 0100H;
HARDCODED_PKCS1_5_PADDING[2655:16] ← SignExtend330Byte(-1); // 330 bytes of 0FFH
HARDCODED_PKCS1_5_PADDING[2815:2656] ← 2004000501020403650148866009060D30313000H;
```

```
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.KEYNAME ← EINITTOKEN_KEY;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ISVFAMILYID ← 0;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ISVEXTPRODID ← 0;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ISVPRODID ← TMP_TOKEN.ISVPRODIDLE;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ISVSVN ← TMP_TOKEN.ISVSVN;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.SGXOWNERPOUCH ← CR_SGXOWNERPOUCH;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ATTRIBUTES ← TMP_TOKEN.MASKEDATTRIBUTESLE;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ATTRIBUTESMASK ← 0;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.MRENCLAVE ← 0;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.MRSIGNER ← IA32_SGXLEPUBKEYHASH;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.KEYID ← TMP_TOKEN.KEYID;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.SEAL_KEY_FUSES ← CR_SEAL_FUSES;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.CPUSVN ← TMP_TOKEN.CPUSVN;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.MISCSELECT ← TMP_TOKEN.MASKEDMISCSELECTLE;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.MISCMASK ← 0;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.PADDING ← HARDCODED_PKCS1_5_PADDING;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.KEYPOLICY ← 0;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.CONFIGID ← 0;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.CONFIGSVN ← 0;
```

```
(* Calculate the derived key*)
```

```
TMP_EINITTOKENKEY ← derivekey(TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES);
```

```
(* Verify EINITTOKEN was generated using this CPU's Launch key and that it has not been modified since issuing by the Launch Enclave. Only 192 bytes of EINITTOKEN are CMACed *)
```

```
IF (TMP_TOKEN.MAC ≠ CMAC(TMP_EINITTOKENKEY, TMP_TOKEN[1535:0] ))
    RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
    RAX ← SGX_INVALID_EINITTOKEN;
    GOTO EXIT;
```

```
FI;
```

```
(* Verify EINITTOKEN (RDX) is for this enclave *)
```

```
IF ( (TMP_TOKEN.MRENCLAVE ≠ TMP_MRENCLAVE) or (TMP_TOKEN.MRSIGNER ≠ TMP_MRSIGNER) )
    RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
    RAX ← SGX_INVALID_MEASUREMENT;
    GOTO EXIT;
```

```
FI;
```

```
(* Verify ATTRIBUTES in EINITTOKEN are the same as the enclave's *)
```

```
IF (TMP_TOKEN.ATTRIBUTES ≠ DS:RCX.ATTRIBUTES)
    RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
    RAX ← SGX_INVALID_EINIT_ATTRIBUTE;
    GOTO EXIT;
```

```
FI;
```

```
COMMIT:
```

(* Commit changes to the SECS; Set ISVPRODID, ISVSVN, MRSIGNER, INIT ATTRIBUTE fields in SECS (RCX) *)

DS:RCX.MRENCLAVE ← TMP_MRENCLAVE;

(* MRSIGNER stores a SHA256 in little endian implemented natively on x86 *)

DS:RCX.MRSIGNER ← TMP_MRSIGNER;

DS:RCX.ISVEXTPRODID ← TMP_SIG.ISVEXTPRODID;

DS:RCX.ISVPRODID ← TMP_SIG.ISVPRODID;

DS:RCX.ISVSVN ← TMP_SIG.ISVSVN;

DS:RCX.ISVFAMILYID ← TMP_SIG.ISVFAMILYID;

DS:RCX.PADDING ← TMP_SIG_PADDING;

(* Mark the SECS as initialized *)

Update DS:RCX to initialized;

(* Set RAX and ZF for success*)

RFLAGS.ZF ← 0;

RAX ← 0;

EXIT:

RFLAGS.CF,PF,AF,OF,SF ← 0;

Flags Affected

ZF is cleared if successful, otherwise ZF is set and RAX contains the error code. CF, PF, AF, OF, SF are cleared.

Protected Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	<p>If a memory operand is not properly aligned.</p> <p>If another instruction is modifying the SECS.</p> <p>If the enclave is already initialized.</p> <p>If the SECS.MRENCLAVE is in use.</p>
#PF(error code)	<p>If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.</p> <p>If RCX does not resolve in an EPC page.</p> <p>If the memory address is not a valid, uninitialized SECS.</p>

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	<p>If a memory operand is not properly aligned.</p> <p>If another instruction is modifying the SECS.</p> <p>If the enclave is already initialized.</p> <p>If the SECS.MRENCLAVE is in use.</p>
#PF(error code)	<p>If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.</p> <p>If RCX does not resolve in an EPC page.</p> <p>If the memory address is not a valid, uninitialized SECS.</p>

ELDB/ELDU/ELDBC/ELBUC—Load an EPC Page and Mark its State

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EAX = 07H ENCLS[ELDB]	IR	V/V	SGX1	This leaf function loads, verifies an EPC page and marks the page as blocked.
EAX = 08H ENCLS[ELDU]	IR	V/V	SGX1	This leaf function loads, verifies an EPC page and marks the page as unblocked.
EAX = 12H ENCLS[ELDBC]	IR	V/V	EAX[5]	This leaf function behaves like ELDB but with improved conflict handling for oversubscription.
EAX = 13H ENCLS[ELBUC]	IR	V/V	EAX[5]	This leaf function behaves like ELDU but with improved conflict handling for oversubscription.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	EAX		RBX	RCX	RDX
IR	ELDB/ELDU (In)	Return error code (Out)	Address of the PAGEINFO (In)	Address of the EPC page (In)	Address of the version- array slot (In)

Description

This leaf function copies a page from regular main memory to the EPC. As part of the copying process, the page is cryptographically authenticated and decrypted. This instruction can only be executed when current privilege level is 0.

The ELDB leaf function sets the BLOCK bit in the EPCM entry for the destination page in the EPC after copying. The ELDU leaf function clears the BLOCK bit in the EPCM entry for the destination page in the EPC after copying.

RBX contains the effective address of a PAGEINFO structure; RCX contains the effective address of the destination EPC page; RDX holds the effective address of the version array slot that holds the version of the page.

The ELDBC/ELBUC leafs are very similar to ELDB and ELDU. They provide an error code on the concurrency conflict for any of the pages which need to acquire a lock. These include the destination, SECS, and VA slot.

The table below provides additional information on the memory parameter of ELDB/ELDU leaf functions.

ELDB/ELDU/ELDBC/ELBUC Memory Parameter Semantics

PAGEINFO	PAGEINFO.SRCPGE	PAGEINFO.PCMD	PAGEINFO.SECS	EPCPAGE	Version-Array Slot
Non-enclave read access	Non-enclave read access	Non-enclave read access	Enclave read/write access	Read/Write access permitted by Enclave	Read/Write access permitted by Enclave

The error codes are:

Table 40-28. ELDB/ELDU/ELDBC/ELBUC Return Value in RAX

Error Code (see Table 40-4)	Description
No Error	ELDB/ELDU successful.
SGX_MAC_COMPARE_FAIL	If the MAC check fails.

Concurrency Restrictions

Table 40-29. Base Concurrency Restrictions of ELDB/ELDU/ELDBC/ELBUC

Leaf	Parameter	Base Concurrency Restrictions		
		Access	On Conflict	SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification
ELDB/ELDU/	Target [DS:RCX]	Exclusive	#GP	EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_EXCEPTION
	VA [DS:RDX]	Shared	#GP	
	SECS [DS:RBX]PAGEINFO.SECS	Shared	#GP	
ELDBC/ELBUC	Target [DS:RCX]	Exclusive	SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT	EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_ERROR
	VA [DS:RDX]	Shared	SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT	
	SECS [DS:RBX]PAGEINFO.SECS	Shared	SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT	

Table 40-30. Additional Concurrency Restrictions of ELDB/ELDU/ELDBC/ELBUC

Leaf	Parameter	Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
		vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRACK, ETRACKC	
		Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
ELDB/ELDU/	Target [DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
	VA [DS:RDX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
	SECS [DS:RBX]PAGEINFO.SECS	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
ELDBC/ELBUC	Target [DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
	VA [DS:RDX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
	SECS [DS:RBX]PAGEINFO.SECS	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	

Operation

Temp Variables in ELDB/ELDU/ELDBC/ELBUC Operational Flow

Name	Type	Size (Bits)	Description
TMP_SRCPGE	Memory page	4KBytes	
TMP_SECS	Memory page	4KBytes	
TMP_PCMD	PCMD	128 Bytes	
TMP_HEADER	MACHEADER	128 Bytes	
TMP_VER	UINT64	64	
TMP_MAC	UINT128	128	
TMP_PK	UINT128	128	Page encryption/MAC key.
SCRATCH_PCMD	PCMD	128 Bytes	

(* Check PAGEINFO and EPCPAGE alignment *)

IF ((DS:RBX is not 32Byte Aligned) or (DS:RCX is not 4KByte Aligned))
THEN #GP(0); FI;

SGX INSTRUCTION REFERENCES

```
IF (DS:RCX does not resolve within an EPC)
    THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;
```

```
(* Check VASLOT alignment *)
IF (DS:RDX is not 8Byte aligned)
    THEN #GP(0); FI;
```

```
IF (DS:RDX does not resolve within an EPC)
    THEN #PF(DS:RDX); FI;
```

```
TMP_SRCPGE ← DS:RBX.SRCPGE;
TMP_SECS ← DS:RBX.SECONDS;
TMP_PCMD ← DS:RBX.PCMD;
```

```
(* Check alignment of PAGEINFO (RBX) linked parameters. Note: PCMD pointer is overlaid on top of PAGEINFO.SECINFO field *)
IF ( (DS:TMP_PCMD is not 128Byte aligned) or (DS:TMP_SRCPGE is not 4KByte aligned) )
    THEN #GP(0); FI;
```

```
(* Check concurrency of EPC by other Intel SGX instructions *)
IF (other instructions accessing EPC)
    THEN
        IF ((EAX==07h) OR (EAX==08h)) (* ELDB/ELDU *)
            THEN
                IF (<<VMX non-root operation>> AND
                    <<ENABLE_EPC_VIRTUALIZATION_EXTENSIONS>>)
                    THEN
                        VMCS.Exit_reason ← SGX_CONFLICT;
                        VMCS.Exit_qualification.code ← EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_EXCEPTION;
                        VMCS.Exit_qualification.error ← 0;
                        VMCS.Guest-physical_address ←
                            << translation of DS:RCX produced by paging >>;
                        VMCS.Guest-linear_address ← DS:RCX;
                        Deliver VMEXIT;
                    ELSE
                        #GP(0);
                FI;
            ELSE (* ELDBC/ELDUC *)
                IF (<<VMX non-root operation>> AND
                    <<ENABLE_EPC_VIRTUALIZATION_EXTENSIONS>>)
                    THEN
                        VMCS.Exit_reason ← SGX_CONFLICT;
                        VMCS.Exit_qualification.code ← EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_ERROR;
                        VMCS.Exit_qualification.error ← SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT;
                        VMCS.Guest-physical_address ←
                            << translation of DS:RCX produced by paging >>;
                        VMCS.Guest-linear_address ← DS:RCX;
                        Deliver VMEXIT;
                    ELSE
                        RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
                        RFLAGS.CF ← 0;
                        RAX ← SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT;
                        GOTO ERROR_EXIT;
                FI;
```



```

    FI;
FI;

(* Check concurrency of EPC and VASLOT by other Intel SGX instructions *)
IF (Other instructions modifying VA slot)
    THEN
        IF ((EAX==07h) OR (EAX==08h)) (* ELDB/ELDU *)
            #GP(0);
            FI;
        ELSE (* ELDBC/ELDUC *)
            RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
            RFLAGS.CF ← 0;
            RAX ← SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT;
            GOTO ERROR_EXIT;
        FI;
FI;

(* Verify EPCM attributes of EPC page, VA, and SECS *)
IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID = 1)
    THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

IF ( (EPCM(DS:RDX & ~OFFFH).VALID = 0) or (EPCM(DS:RDX & ~OFFFH).PT ≠ PT_VA) )
    THEN #PF(DS:RDX); FI;

(* Copy PCMD into scratch buffer *)
SCRATCH_PCMD[1023: 0] ← DS:TMP_PCMD[1023:0];

(* Zero out TMP_HEADER*)
TMP_HEADER[sizeof(TMP_HEADER)-1: 0] ← 0;

TMP_HEADER.SECINFO ← SCRATCH_PCMD.SECINFO;
TMP_HEADER.RSVD ← SCRATCH_PCMD.RSVD;
TMP_HEADER.LINADDR ← DS:RBX.LINADDR;

(* Verify various attributes of SECS parameter *)
IF ( (TMP_HEADER.SECINFO.FLAGS.PT = PT_REG) or (TMP_HEADER.SECINFO.FLAGS.PT = PT_TCS) or
    (TMP_HEADER.SECINFO.FLAGS.PT = PT_TRIM) )
    THEN
        IF ( DS:TMP_SECS is not 4KByte aligned)
            THEN #GP(0) FI;
        IF (DS:TMP_SECS does not resolve within an EPC)
            THEN #PF(DS:TMP_SECS) FI;
        IF ( Other instructions modifying SECS)
            THEN
                IF ((EAX==07h) OR (EAX==08h)) (* ELDB/ELDU *)
                    #GP(0);
                    FI;
                ELSE (* ELDBC/ELDUC *)
                    RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
                    RFLAGS.CF ← 0;
                    RAX ← SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT;
                    GOTO ERROR_EXIT;
                FI;
            FI;
    FI;
FI;

```

SGX INSTRUCTION REFERENCES

```
IF ( (TMP_HEADER.SECINFO.FLAGS.PT = PT_REG) or (TMP_HEADER.SECINFO.FLAGS.PT = PT_TCS) or
    (TMP_HEADER.SECINFO.FLAGS.PT = PT_TRIM) )
    THEN
        TMP_HEADER.EID ← DS:TMP_SECS.EID;
    ELSE
        (* These pages do not have any parent, and hence no EID binding *)
        TMP_HEADER.EID ← 0;
FI;

(* Copy 4KBytes SRCPGE to secure location *)
DS:RCX[32767: 0] ← DS:TMP_SRCPGE[32767: 0];
TMP_VER ← DS:RDX[63:0];

(* Decrypt and MAC page. AES_GCM_DEC has 2 outputs, {plain text, MAC} *)
(* Parameters for AES_GCM_DEC {Key, Counter, ..} *)
{DS:RCX, TMP_MAC} ← AES_GCM_DEC(CR_BASE_PK, TMP_VER << 32, TMP_HEADER, 128, DS:RCX, 4096);

IF ( (TMP_MAC ≠ DS:TMP_PCMD.MAC) )
    THEN
        RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
        RAX ← SGX_MAC_COMPARE_FAIL;
        GOTO ERROR_EXIT;
FI;

(* Check version before committing *)
IF (DS:RDX ≠ 0)
    THEN #GP(0);
    ELSE
        DS:RDX ← TMP_VER;
FI;

(* Commit EPCM changes *)
EPCM(DS:RCX).PT ← TMP_HEADER.SECINFO.FLAGS.PT;
EPCM(DS:RCX).RWX ← TMP_HEADER.SECINFO.FLAGS.RWX;
EPCM(DS:RCX).PENDING ← TMP_HEADER.SECINFO.FLAGS.PENDING;
EPCM(DS:RCX).MODIFIED ← TMP_HEADER.SECINFO.FLAGS.MODIFIED;
EPCM(DS:RCX).PR ← TMP_HEADER.SECINFO.FLAGS.PR;
EPCM(DS:RCX).ENCLAVEADDRESS ← TMP_HEADER.LINADDR;

IF ( ((EAX = 07H) or (EAX = 12H)) and (TMP_HEADER.SECINFO.FLAGS.PT is NOT PT_SECS or PT_VA) )
    THEN
        EPCM(DS:RCX).BLOCKED ← 1;
    ELSE
        EPCM(DS:RCX).BLOCKED ← 0;
FI;

IF (TMP_HEADER.SECINFO.FLAGS.PT is PT_SECS)
    << store translation of DS:RCX produced by paging in SECS(DS:RCX).ENCLAVECONTEXT >>
FI;

EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID ← 1;

RAX ← 0;
RFLAGS.ZF ← 0;
```

ERROR_EXIT:
RFLAGS.CF,PF,AF,OF,SF ← 0;

Flags Affected

Sets ZF if unsuccessful, otherwise cleared and RAX returns error code. Clears CF, PF, AF, OF, SF.

Protected Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If a memory operand effective address is outside the DS segment limit. If a memory operand is not properly aligned. If the instruction's EPC resource is in use by others. If the instruction fails to verify MAC. If the version-array slot is in use. If the parameters fail consistency checks.
#PF(error code)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands. If a memory operand expected to be in EPC does not resolve to an EPC page. If one of the EPC memory operands has incorrect page type. If the destination EPC page is already valid.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If a memory operand is non-canonical form. If a memory operand is not properly aligned. If the instruction's EPC resource is in use by others. If the instruction fails to verify MAC. If the version-array slot is in use. If the parameters fail consistency checks.
#PF(error code)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands. If a memory operand expected to be in EPC does not resolve to an EPC page. If one of the EPC memory operands has incorrect page type. If the destination EPC page is already valid.

EMODPR—Restrict the Permissions of an EPC Page

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EAX = 0EH ENCLS[EMODPR]	IR	V/V	SGX2	This leaf function restricts the access rights associated with a EPC page in an initialized enclave.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	EAX		RBX	RCX
IR	EMODPR (In)	Return Error Code (Out)	Address of a SECINFO (In)	Address of the destination EPC page (In)

Description

This leaf function restricts the access rights associated with an EPC page in an initialized enclave. THE RWX bits of the SECINFO parameter are treated as a permissions mask; supplying a value that does not restrict the page permissions will have no effect. This instruction can only be executed when current privilege level is 0.

RBX contains the effective address of a SECINFO structure while RCX contains the effective address of an EPC page. The table below provides additional information on the memory parameter of the EMODPR leaf function.

EMODPR Memory Parameter Semantics

SECINFO	EPCPAGE
Read access permitted by Non Enclave	Read/Write access permitted by Enclave

The instruction faults if any of the following:

EMODPR Faulting Conditions

The operands are not properly aligned.	If unsupported security attributes are set.
The Enclave is not initialized.	SECS is locked by another thread.
The EPC page is locked by another thread.	RCX does not contain an effective address of an EPC page in the running enclave.
The EPC page is not valid.	

The error codes are:

Table 40-31. EMODPR Return Value in RAX

Error Code (see Table 40-4)	Description
No Error	EMODPR successful.
SGX_PAGE_NOT_MODIFIABLE	The EPC page cannot be modified because it is in the PENDING or MODIFIED state.
SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT	Page is being written by EADD, EAUG, ECREATE, ELDU/B, EMODT, or EWB.

Concurrency Restrictions

Table 40-32. Base Concurrency Restrictions of EMODPR

Leaf	Parameter	Base Concurrency Restrictions		
		Access	On Conflict	SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification
EMODPR	Target [DS:RCX]	Shared	#GP	

Table 40-33. Additional Concurrency Restrictions of EMODPR

Leaf	Parameter	Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
		vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRACK, ETRACKC	
		Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
EMODPR	Target [DS:RCX]	Exclusive	SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT	Concurrent		Concurrent	

Operation

Temp Variables in EMODPR Operational Flow

Name	Type	Size (bits)	Description
TMP_SECS	Effective Address	32/64	Physical address of SECS to which EPC operand belongs.
SCRATCH_SECINFO	SECINFO	512	Scratch storage for holding the contents of DS:RBX.

IF (DS:RBX is not 64Byte Aligned)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:RCX is not 4KByte Aligned)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:RCX does not resolve within an EPC)
THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

SCRATCH_SECINFO ← DS:RBX;

(* Check for misconfigured SECINFO flags*)

IF ((SCRATCH_SECINFO reserved fields are not zero) or
(SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.R is 0 and SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.W is not 0))
THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* Check concurrency with SGX1 or SGX2 instructions on the EPC page *)

IF (SGX1 or other SGX2 instructions accessing EPC page)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID is 0)
THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

(* Check the EPC page for concurrency *)

IF (EPC page in use by another SGX2 instruction)
THEN
RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
RAX ← SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT;
GOTO DONE;

FI;

IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).PENDING is not 0 or (EPCM(DS:RCX).MODIFIED is not 0))

THEN
RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
RAX ← SGX_PAGE_NOT_MODIFIABLE;

SGX INSTRUCTION REFERENCES

```
GOTO DONE;
FI;

IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT is not PT_REG)
    THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

TMP_SECS ← GET_SECS_ADDRESS

IF (TMP_SECS.ATTRIBUTES.INIT = 0)
    THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* Set the PR bit to indicate that permission restriction is in progress *)
EPCM(DS:RCX).PR ← 1;

(* Update EPCM permissions *)
EPCM(DS:RCX).R ← EPCM(DS:RCX).R & SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.R;
EPCM(DS:RCX).W ← EPCM(DS:RCX).W & SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.W;
EPCM(DS:RCX).X ← EPCM(DS:RCX).X & SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.X;

RFLAGS.ZF ← 0;
RAX ← 0;

DONE:
RFLAGS.CF,PF,AF,OF,SF ← 0;
```

Flags Affected

Sets ZF if page is not modifiable or if other SGX2 instructions are executing concurrently, otherwise cleared. Clears CF, PF, AF, OF, SF.

Protected Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	If a memory operand effective address is outside the DS segment limit. If a memory operand is not properly aligned. If a memory operand is locked.
#PF(error code)	If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands. If a memory operand is not an EPC page.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	If a memory operand is non-canonical form. If a memory operand is not properly aligned. If a memory operand is locked.
#PF(error code)	If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands. If a memory operand is not an EPC page.

EMODT—Change the Type of an EPC Page

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EAX = 0FH ENCLS[EMODT]	IR	V/V	SGX2	This leaf function changes the type of an existing EPC page.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	EAX		RBX	RCX
IR	EMODT (In)	Return Error Code (Out)	Address of a SECINFO (In)	Address of the destination EPC page (In)

Description

This leaf function modifies the type of an EPC page. The security attributes are configured to prevent access to the EPC page at its new type until a corresponding invocation of the EACCEPT leaf confirms the modification. This instruction can only be executed when current privilege level is 0.

RBX contains the effective address of a SECINFO structure while RCX contains the effective address of an EPC page. The table below provides additional information on the memory parameter of the EMODT leaf function.

EMODT Memory Parameter Semantics

SECINFO	EPCPAGE
Read access permitted by Non Enclave	Read/Write access permitted by Enclave

The instruction faults if any of the following:

EMODT Faulting Conditions

The operands are not properly aligned.	If unsupported security attributes are set.
The Enclave is not initialized.	SECS is locked by another thread.
The EPC page is locked by another thread.	RCX does not contain an effective address of an EPC page in the running enclave.
The EPC page is not valid.	

The error codes are:

Table 40-34. EMODT Return Value in RAX

Error Code (see Table 40-4)	Description
No Error	EMODT successful.
SGX_PAGE_NOT_MODIFIABLE	The EPC page cannot be modified because it is in the PENDING or MODIFIED state.
SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT	Page is being written by EADD, EAUG, ECREATE, ELDU/B, EMODPR, or EWB.

Concurrency Restrictions

Table 40-35. Base Concurrency Restrictions of EMODT

Leaf	Parameter	Base Concurrency Restrictions		
		Access	On Conflict	SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification
EMODT	Target [DS:RCX]	Exclusive	SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT	EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_ERROR

Table 40-36. Additional Concurrency Restrictions of EMODT

Leaf	Parameter	Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
		vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRACK, ETRACKC	
		Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
EMODT	Target [DS:RCX]	Exclusive	SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT	Concurrent		Concurrent	

Operation

Temp Variables in EMODT Operational Flow

Name	Type	Size (bits)	Description
TMP_SECS	Effective Address	32/64	Physical address of SECS to which EPC operand belongs.
SCRATCH_SECINFO	SECINFO	512	Scratch storage for holding the contents of DS:RBX.

IF (DS:RBX is not 64Byte Aligned)
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:RCX is not 4KByte Aligned)
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:RCX does not resolve within an EPC)
 THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

SCRATCH_SECINFO ← DS:RBX;

(* Check for misconfigured SECINFO flags*)

IF ((SCRATCH_SECINFO reserved fields are not zero) or
 !(SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.PT is PT_TCS or SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.PT is PT_TRIM))
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* Check concurrency with SGX1 instructions on the EPC page *)

IF (other SGX1 instructions accessing EPC page)
 THEN
 RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
 RAX ← SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT;
 GOTO DONE;

FI;

IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID is 0)
 THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

(* Check the EPC page for concurrency *)

IF (EPC page in use by another SGX2 instruction)
 THEN
 RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
 RAX ← SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT;
 GOTO DONE;


```

FI;

IF (!(EPCM(DS:RCX).PT is PT_REG or
      (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT is PT_TCS and SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.PT is PT_TRIM)))
    THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).PENDING is not 0 or (EPCM(DS:RCX).MODIFIED is not 0) )
    THEN
        RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
        RAX ← SGX_PAGE_NOT_MODIFIABLE;
        GOTO DONE;
FI;

TMP_SECS ← GET_SECS_ADDRESS

IF (TMP_SECS.ATTRIBUTES.INIT = 0)
    THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* Update EPCM fields *)
EPCM(DS:RCX).PR ← 0;
EPCM(DS:RCX).MODIFIED ← 1;
EPCM(DS:RCX).R ← 0;
EPCM(DS:RCX).W ← 0;
EPCM(DS:RCX).X ← 0;
EPCM(DS:RCX).PT ← SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.PT;

RFLAGS.ZF ← 0;
RAX ← 0;

DONE:
RFLAGS.CF,PF,AF,OF,SF ← 0;

```

Flags Affected

Sets ZF if page is not modifiable or if other SGX2 instructions are executing concurrently, otherwise cleared. Clears CF, PF, AF, OF, SF.

Protected Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	If a memory operand effective address is outside the DS segment limit. If a memory operand is not properly aligned. If a memory operand is locked.
#PF(error code)	If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands. If a memory operand is not an EPC page.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	If a memory operand is non-canonical form. If a memory operand is not properly aligned. If a memory operand is locked.
#PF(error code)	If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands. If a memory operand is not an EPC page.

EPA—Add Version Array

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EAX = 0AH ENCLS[EPA]	IR	V/V	SGX1	This leaf function adds a Version Array to the EPC.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	EAX	RBX	RCX
IR	EPA (In)	PT_VA (In, Constant)	Effective address of the EPC page (In)

Description

This leaf function creates an empty version array in the EPC page whose logical address is given by DS:RCX, and sets up EPCM attributes for that page. At the time of execution of this instruction, the register RBX must be set to PT_VA.

The table below provides additional information on the memory parameter of EPA leaf function.

EPA Memory Parameter Semantics

EPCPAGE
Write access permitted by Enclave

Concurrency Restrictions

Table 40-37. Base Concurrency Restrictions of EPA

Leaf	Parameter	Base Concurrency Restrictions		
		Access	On Conflict	SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification
EPA	VA [DS:RCX]	Exclusive	#GP	EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_EXCEPTION

Table 40-38. Additional Concurrency Restrictions of EPA

Leaf	Parameter	Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
		vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRACK, ETRACKC	
		Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
EPA	VA [DS:RCX]	Concurrent	L	Concurrent		Concurrent	

Operation

IF (RBX ≠ PT_VA or DS:RCX is not 4KByte Aligned)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:RCX does not resolve within an EPC)
THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

(* Check concurrency with other Intel SGX instructions *)

IF (Other Intel SGX instructions accessing the page)
THEN

IF (<<VMX non-root operation>> AND <<ENABLE_EPC_VIRTUALIZATION_EXTENSIONS>>)

```

THEN
    VMCS.Exit_reason ← SGX_CONFLICT;
    VMCS.Exit_qualification.code ← EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_EXCEPTION;
    VMCS.Exit_qualification.error ← 0;
    VMCS.Guest-physical_address ← <<< translation of DS:RCX produced by paging >>;
    VMCS.Guest-linear_address ← DS:RCX;
    Deliver VMEXIT;
ELSE
    #GP(0);
FI;
FI;

```

(* Check EPC page must be empty *)

```

IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID ≠ 0)
    THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

```

(* Clears EPC page *)

```

DS:RCX[32767:0] ← 0;

```

```

EPCM(DS:RCX).PT ← PT_VA;
EPCM(DS:RCX).ENCLAVEADDRESS ← 0;
EPCM(DS:RCX).BLOCKED ← 0;
EPCM(DS:RCX).PENDING ← 0;
EPCM(DS:RCX).MODIFIED ← 0;
EPCM(DS:RCX).PR ← 0;
EPCM(DS:RCX).RWX ← 0;
EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID ← 1;

```

Flags Affected

None

Protected Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If a memory operand effective address is outside the DS segment limit. If a memory operand is not properly aligned. If another Intel SGX instruction is accessing the EPC page. If RBX is not set to PT_VA.
#PF(error code)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands. If a memory operand is not an EPC page. If the EPC page is valid.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If a memory operand is non-canonical form. If a memory operand is not properly aligned. If another Intel SGX instruction is accessing the EPC page. If RBX is not set to PT_VA.
#PF(error code)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands. If a memory operand is not an EPC page. If the EPC page is valid.

ERDINFO—Read Type and Status Information About an EPC Page

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EAX = 10H ENCLS[ERDINFO]	IR	V/V	EAX[6]	This leaf function returns type and status information about an EPC page.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	EAX	RBX	RCX
IR	ERDINFO (In)	Address of a RDINFO structure (In)	Address of the destination EPC page (In)

Description

This instruction reads type and status information about an EPC page and returns it in a RDINFO structure. The STATUS field of the structure describes the status of the page and determines the validity of the remaining fields. The FLAGS field returns the EPCM permissions of the page; the page type; and the BLOCKED, PENDING, MODIFIED, and PR status of the page. For enclave pages, the ENCLAVECONTEXT field of the structure returns the value of SECS.ENCLAVECONTEXT. For non-enclave pages (e.g., VA) ENCLAVECONTEXT returns 0.

For invalid or non-EPC pages, the instruction returns an information code indicating the page's status, in addition to populating the STATUS field.

ERDINFO returns an error code if the destination EPC page is being modified by a concurrent SGX instruction.

RBX contains the effective address of a RDINFO structure while RCX contains the effective address of an EPC page. The table below provides additional information on the memory parameter of ERDINFO leaf function.

ERDINFO Memory Parameter Semantics

RDINFO	EPCPAGE
Read/Write access permitted by Non Enclave	Read access permitted by Enclave

The instruction faults if any of the following:

ERDINFO Faulting Conditions

A memory operand effective address is outside the DS segment limit (32b mode).	A memory operand is not properly aligned.
DS segment is unusable (32b mode).	A page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.
A memory address is in a non-canonical form (64b mode).	

The error codes are:

Table 40-39. ERDINFO Return Value in RAX

Error Code	Value	Description
No Error	0	ERDINFO successful.
SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT		Failure due to concurrent operation of another SGX instruction.
SGX_PG_INVLD		Target page is not a valid EPC page.
SGX_PG_NONEPC		Page is not an EPC page.

Concurrency Restrictions

Table 40-40. Base Concurrency Restrictions of ERDINFO

Leaf	Parameter	Base Concurrency Restrictions		
		Access	On Conflict	SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification
ERDINFO	Target [DS:RCX]	Shared	SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT	

Table 40-41. Additional Concurrency Restrictions of ERDINFO

Leaf	Parameter	Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
		vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRACK, ETRACKC	
		Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
ERDINFO	Target [DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	

Operation

Temp Variables in ERDINFO Operational Flow

Name	Type	Size (Bits)	Description
TMP_SECS	Physical Address	64	Physical address of the SECS of the page being modified.
TMP_RDINFO	Linear Address	64	Address of the RDINFO structure.

(* check alignment of RDINFO structure (RBX) *)
 IF (DS:RBX is not 32Byte Aligned) THEN
 #GP(0); FI;

(* check alignment of the EPCPAGE (RCX) *)
 IF (DS:RCX is not 4KByte Aligned) THEN
 #GP(0); FI;

(* check that EPCPAGE (DS:RCX) is the address of an EPC page *)
 IF (DS:RCX does not resolve within EPC) THEN
 RFLAGS.CF \leftarrow 1;
 RFLAGS.ZF \leftarrow 0;
 RAX \leftarrow SGX_PG_NONEPC;
 goto DONE;
 FI;

(* Check the EPC page for concurrency *)
 IF (EPC page is being modified) THEN
 RFLAGS.ZF = 1;
 RFLAGS.CF = 0;
 RAX = SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT;
 goto DONE;
 FI;

(* check page validity *)
 IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID = 0) THEN
 RFLAGS.CF = 1;

SGX INSTRUCTION REFERENCES

```
RFLAGS.ZF = 0;
RAX = SGX_PG_INVLD;
goto DONE;
FI;

(* clear the fields of the RDINFO structure *)
TMP_RDINFO ← DS:RBX;
TMP_RDINFO.STATUS ← 0;
TMP_RDINFO.FLAGS ← 0;
TMP_RDINFO.ENCLAVECONTEXT ← 0;

(* store page info in RDINFO structure *)
TMP_RDINFO.FLAGS.RWX ← EPCM(DS:RCX).RWX;
TMP_RDINFO.FLAGS.PENDING ← EPCM(DS:RCX).PENDING;
TMP_RDINFO.FLAGS.MODIFIED ← EPCM(DS:RCX).MODIFIED;
TMP_RDINFO.FLAGS.PR ← EPCM(DS:RCX).PR;
TMP_RDINFO.FLAGS.PAGE_TYPE ← EPCM(DS:RCX).PAGE_TYPE;
TMP_RDINFO.FLAGS.BLOCKED ← EPCM(DS:RCX).BLOCKED;

(* read SECS.ENCLAVECONTEXT for enclave child pages *)
IF ((EPCM(DS:RCX).PAGE_TYPE = PT_REG) or
    (EPCM(DS:RCX).PAGE_TYPE = PT_TCS) or
    (EPCM(DS:RCX).PAGE_TYPE = PT_TRIM)
    ) THEN
    TMP_SECS ← Address of SECS for (DS:RCX);
    TMP_RDINFO.ENCLAVECONTEXT ← SECS(TMP_SECS).ENCLAVECONTEXT;
FI;

(* populate enclave information for SECS pages *)
IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).PAGE_TYPE = PT_SECS) THEN
    IF ((VMX non-root mode) and
        (ENABLE_EPC_VIRTUALIZATION_EXTENSIONS Execution Control = 1)
        ) THEN
        TMP_RDINFO.STATUS.CHILDPRESENT ←
            ((SECS(DS:RCX).CHLDCNT ≠ 0) or
             SECS(DS:RCX).VIRTCHILDCNT ≠ 0);
    ELSE
        TMP_RDINFO.STATUS.CHILDPRESENT ← (SECS(DS:RCX).CHLDCNT ≠ 0);
        TMP_RDINFO.STATUS.VIRTCHILDPRESENT ←
            (SECS(DS:RCX).VIRTCHILDCNT ≠ 0);
        TMP_RDINFO.ENCLAVECONTEXT ← SECS(DS:RCX).ENCLAVECONTEXT;
    FI;
FI;

RAX ← 0;
RFLAGS.ZF ← 0;
RFLAGS.CF ← 0;

DONE:
(* clear flags *)
RFLAGS.PF ← 0;
RFLAGS.AF ← 0;
RFLAGS.OF ← 0;
RFLAGS.SF ← 0;
```

Flags Affected

ZF is set if ERDINFO fails due to concurrent operation with another SGX instruction; otherwise cleared.

CF is set if page is not a valid EPC page or not an EPC page; otherwise cleared.

PF, AF, OF and SF are cleared.

Protected Mode Exceptions

- #GP(0) If a memory operand effective address is outside the DS segment limit.
 If DS segment is unusable.
 If a memory operand is not properly aligned.
- #PF(error code) If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

- #GP(0) If the memory address is in a non-canonical form.
 If a memory operand is not properly aligned.
- #PF(error code) If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.

EREMOVE—Remove a page from the EPC

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EAX = 03H ENCLS[EREMOVE]	IR	V/V	SGX1	This leaf function removes a page from the EPC.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	EAX	RCX
IR	EREMOVE (In)	Effective address of the EPC page (In)

Description

This leaf function causes an EPC page to be un-associated with its SECS and be marked as unused. This instruction leaf can only be executed when the current privilege level is 0.

The content of RCX is an effective address of an EPC page. The DS segment is used to create linear address. Segment override is not supported.

The instruction fails if the operand is not properly aligned or does not refer to an EPC page or the page is in use by another thread, or other threads are running in the enclave to which the page belongs. In addition the instruction fails if the operand refers to an SECS with associations.

EREMOVE Memory Parameter Semantics

EPCPAGE
Write access permitted by Enclave

The instruction faults if any of the following:

EREMOVE Faulting Conditions

The memory operand is not properly aligned.	The memory operand does not resolve in an EPC page.
Refers to an invalid SECS.	Refers to an EPC page that is locked by another thread.
Another Intel SGX instruction is accessing the EPC page.	RCX does not contain an effective address of an EPC page.
the EPC page refers to an SECS with associations.	

The error codes are:

Table 40-42. EREMOVE Return Value in RAX

Error Code (see Table 40-4)	Description
No Error	EREMOVE successful.
SGX_CHILD_PRESENT	If the SECS still have enclave pages loaded into EPC.
SGX_ENCLAVE_ACT	If there are still logical processors executing inside the enclave.

Concurrency Restrictions

Table 40-43. Base Concurrency Restrictions of EREMOVE

Leaf	Parameter	Base Concurrency Restrictions		
		Access	On Conflict	SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification
EREMOVE	Target [DS:RCX]	Exclusive	#GP	EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_EXCEPTION

Table 40-44. Additional Concurrency Restrictions of EREMOVE

Leaf	Parameter	Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
		vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRACK, ETRACKC	
		Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
EREMOVE	Target [DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	

Operation

Temp Variables in EREMOVE Operational Flow

Name	Type	Size (Bits)	Description
TMP_SECS	Effective Address	32/64	Effective address of the SECS destination page.

IF (DS:RCX is not 4KByte Aligned)
THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:RCX does not resolve to an EPC page)
THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

TMP_SECS ← Get_SECS_ADDRESS();

(* Check the EPC page for concurrency *)

IF (EPC page being referenced by another Intel SGX instruction)
THEN

IF (<<VMX non-root operation>> AND <<ENABLE_EPC_VIRTUALIZATION_EXTENSIONS>>)

THEN

VMCS.Exit_reason ← SGX_CONFLICT;

VMCS.Exit_qualification.code ← EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_EXCEPTION;

VMCS.Exit_qualification.error ← 0;

VMCS.Guest-physical_address ← << translation of DS:RCX produced by paging >>;

VMCS.Guest-linear_address ← DS:RCX;

Deliver VMEXIT;

ELSE

#GP(0);

FI;

FI;

(* if DS:RCX is already unused, nothing to do*)

IF ((EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID = 0) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT = PT_TRIM AND EPCM(DS:RCX).MODIFIED = 0))
THEN GOTO DONE;

FI;

SGX INSTRUCTION REFERENCES

```
IF ( (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT = PT_VA) OR
      ((EPCM(DS:RCX).PT = PT_TRIM) AND (EPCM(DS:RCX).MODIFIED = 0)) )
  THEN
    EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID ← 0;
    GOTO DONE;
FI;

IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT = PT_SECS)
  THEN
    IF (DS:RCX has an EPC page associated with it)
      THEN
        RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
        RAX ← SGX_CHILD_PRESENT;
        GOTO ERROR_EXIT;

    FI;
    (* treat SECS as having a child page when VIRTCHILDCNT is non-zero *)
    IF (<<in VMX non-root operation>> AND
        <<ENABLE_EPC_VIRTUALIZATION_EXTENSIONS>> AND
        (SECS(DS:RCX).VIRTCHILDCNT ≠ 0))
      THEN
        RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
        RAX ← SGX_CHILD_PRESENT
        GOTO ERROR_EXIT

    FI;
    EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID ← 0;
    GOTO DONE;
FI;

IF (Other threads active using SECS)
  THEN
    RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
    RAX ← SGX_ENCLAVE_ACT;
    GOTO ERROR_EXIT;
FI;

IF ( (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT is PT_REG) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT is PT_TCS) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT is PT_TRIM) )
  THEN
    EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID ← 0;
    GOTO DONE;
FI;

DONE:
RAX ← 0;
RFLAGS.ZF ← 0;

ERROR_EXIT:
RFLAGS.CF,PF,AF,OF,SF ← 0;
```

Flags Affected

Sets ZF if unsuccessful, otherwise cleared and RAX returns error code. Clears CF, PF, AF, OF, SF.

Protected Mode Exceptions

- #GP(0) If a memory operand effective address is outside the DS segment limit.
 If a memory operand is not properly aligned.
 If another Intel SGX instruction is accessing the page.
- #PF(error code) If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.
 If the memory operand is not an EPC page.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

- #GP(0) If the memory operand is non-canonical form.
 If a memory operand is not properly aligned.
 If another Intel SGX instruction is accessing the page.
- #PF(error code) If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.
 If the memory operand is not an EPC page.

ETRAK—Activates EBLOCK Checks

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EAX = 0CH ENCLS[ETRAK]	IR	V/V	SGX1	This leaf function activates EBLOCK checks.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	EAX	RCX
IR	ETRAK (In) Return error code (Out)	Pointer to the SECS of the EPC page (In)

Description

This leaf function provides the mechanism for hardware to track that software has completed the required TLB address clears successfully. The instruction can only be executed when the current privilege level is 0.

The content of RCX is an effective address of an EPC page.

The table below provides additional information on the memory parameter of ETRAK leaf function.

ETRAK Memory Parameter Semantics

EPCPAGE
Read/Write access permitted by Enclave

The error codes are:

Table 40-45. ETRAK Return Value in RAX

Error Code (see Table 40-4)	Description
No Error	ETRAK successful.
SGX_PREV_TRK_INCMPL	All processors did not complete the previous shoot-down sequence.

Concurrency Restrictions

Table 40-46. Base Concurrency Restrictions of ETRAK

Leaf	Parameter	Base Concurrency Restrictions		
		Access	On Conflict	SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification
ETRAK	SECS [DS:RCX]	Shared	#GP	

Table 40-47. Additional Concurrency Restrictions of ETRAK

Leaf	Parameter	Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
		vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRAK, ETRAKC	
		Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
ETRAK	SECS [DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Exclusive	SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT

Operation

```

IF (DS:RCX is not 4KByte Aligned)
    THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:RCX does not resolve within an EPC)
    THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

(* Check concurrency with other Intel SGX instructions *)
IF (Other Intel SGX instructions using tracking facility on this SECS)
    THEN
        IF (<<VMX non-root operation>> AND <<ENABLE_EPC_VIRTUALIZATION_EXTENSIONS>>)
            THEN
                VMCS.Exit_reason ← SGX_CONFLICT;
                VMCS.Exit_qualification.code ← TRACKING_RESOURCE_CONFLICT;
                VMCS.Exit_qualification.error ← 0;
                VMCS.Guest-physical_address ← SECS(TMP_SECS).ENCLAVECONTEXT;
                VMCS.Guest-linear_address ← 0;
                Deliver VMEXIT;
            ELSE
                #GP(0);
        FI;
    FI;

IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID = 0)
    THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT ≠ PT_SECS)
    THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

(* All processors must have completed the previous tracking cycle*)
IF ( (DS:RCX).TRACKING ≠ 0 )
    THEN
        IF (<<VMX non-root operation>> AND <<ENABLE_EPC_VIRTUALIZATION_EXTENSIONS>>)
            THEN
                VMCS.Exit_reason ← SGX_CONFLICT;
                VMCS.Exit_qualification.code ← TRACKING_REFERENCE_CONFLICT;
                VMCS.Exit_qualification.error ← 0;
                VMCS.Guest-physical_address ← SECS(TMP_SECS).ENCLAVECONTEXT;
                VMCS.Guest-linear_address ← 0;
                Deliver VMEXIT;
            FI;
        RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
        RAX ← SGX_PREV_TRK_INCMPL;
        GOTO DONE;
    ELSE
        RAX ← 0;
        RFLAGS.ZF ← 0;
    FI;

DONE:
RFLAGS.CF,PF,AF,OF,SF ← 0;

```

Flags Affected

Sets ZF if SECS is in use or invalid, otherwise cleared. Clears CF, PF, AF, OF, SF.

Protected Mode Exceptions

- #GP(0) If a memory operand effective address is outside the DS segment limit.
 If a memory operand is not properly aligned.
 If another thread is concurrently using the tracking facility on this SECS.
- #PF(error code) If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.
 If a memory operand is not an EPC page.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

- #GP(0) If a memory operand is non-canonical form.
 If a memory operand is not properly aligned.
 If the specified EPC resource is in use.
- #PF(error code) If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.
 If a memory operand is not an EPC page.

ETRACKC—Activates EBLOCK Checks

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EAX = 11H ENCLS[ETRACKC]	IR	V/V	EAX[6]	This leaf function activates EBLOCK checks.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	EAX		RCX	
IR	ETRACK (In)	Return error code (Out)	Address of the destination EPC page (In, EA)	Address of the SECS page (In, EA)

Description

The ETRACKC instruction is thread safe variant of ETRACK leaf and can be executed concurrently with other CPU threads operating on the same SECS.

This leaf function provides the mechanism for hardware to track that software has completed the required TLB address clears successfully. The instruction can only be executed when the current privilege level is 0.

The content of RCX is an effective address of an EPC page.

The table below provides additional information on the memory parameter of ETRACK leaf function.

ETRACKC Memory Parameter Semantics

EPCPAGE
Read/Write access permitted by Enclave

The error codes are:

Table 40-48. ETRACKC Return Value in RAX

Error Code	Value	Description
No Error	0	ETRACKC successful.
SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT	7	Failure due to concurrent operation of another SGX instruction.
SGX_PG_INVLD	6	Target page is not a VALID EPC page.
SGX_PREV_TRK_INCMPL	17	All processors did not complete the previous tracking sequence.
SGX_TRACK_NOT_REQUIRED	27	Target page type does not require tracking.

Concurrency Restrictions

Table 40-49. Base Concurrency Restrictions of ETRACKC

Leaf	Parameter	Base Concurrency Restrictions		
		Access	On Conflict	SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification
ETRACKC	Target [DS:RCX]	Shared	SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT	
	SECS implicit	Concurrent		

Table 40-50. Additional Concurrency Restrictions of ETRACKC

Leaf	Parameter	Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
		vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRACK, ETRACKC	
		Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
ETRACKC	Target [DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
	SECS implicit	Concurrent		Concurrent		Exclusive	SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT

Operation

Temp Variables in ETRACKC Operational Flow

Name	Type	Size (Bits)	Description
TMP_SECS	Physical Address	64	Physical address of the SECS of the page being modified.

(* check alignment of EPCPAGE (RCX) *)
 IF (DS:RCX is not 4KByte Aligned) THEN
 #GP(0); FI;

(* check that EPCPAGE (DS:RCX) is the address of an EPC page *)
 IF (DS:RCX does not resolve within an EPC) THEN
 #PF(DS:RCX, PFEC.SGX); FI;

(* Check the EPC page for concurrency *)
 IF (EPC page is being modified) THEN
 RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
 RFLAGS.CF ← 0;
 RAX ← SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT;
 goto DONE_POST_LOCK_RELEASE;
 FI;

(* check to make sure the page is valid *)
 IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID = 0) THEN
 RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
 RFLAGS.CF ← 0;
 RAX ← SGX_PG_INVLD;
 GOTO DONE;
 FI;

(* find out the target SECS page *)
 IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT is PT_REG or PT_TCS or PT_TRIM) THEN
 TMP_SECS ← Obtain SECS through EPCM(DS:RCX).ENCLAVESECS;
 ELSE IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT is PT_SECS) THEN
 TMP_SECS ← Obtain SECS through (DS:RCX);
 ELSE
 RFLAGS.ZF ← 0;
 RFLAGS.CF ← 1;
 RAX ← SGX_TRACK_NOT_REQUIRED;
 GOTO DONE;
 FI;


```
(* Check concurrency with other Intel SGX instructions *)
IF (Other Intel SGX instructions using tracking facility on this SECS) THEN
  IF ((VMX non-root mode) and
    (ENABLE_EPC_VIRTUALIZATION_EXTENSIONS Execution Control = 1)) THEN
    VMCS.Exit_reason ← SGX_CONFLICT;
    VMCS.Exit_qualification.code ← TRACKING_RESOURCE_CONFLICT;
    VMCS.Exit_qualification.error ← 0;
    VMCS.Guest-physical_address ←
      SECS(TMP_SECS).ENCLAVECONTEXT;
    VMCS.Guest-linear_address ← 0;
    Deliver VMEXIT;
  FI;
```

```
RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
RFLAGS.CF ← 0;
RAX ← SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT;
GOTO DONE;
```

```
FI;

(* All processors must have completed the previous tracking cycle*)
IF ((TMP_SECS).TRACKING ≠ 0)
THEN
  IF ((VMX non-root mode) and
    (ENABLE_EPC_VIRTUALIZATION_EXTENSIONS Execution Control = 1)) THEN
    VMCS.Exit_reason ← SGX_CONFLICT;
    VMCS.Exit_qualification.code ← TRACKING_REFERENCE_CONFLICT;
    VMCS.Exit_qualification.error ← 0;
    VMCS.Guest-physical_address ←
      SECS(TMP_SECS).ENCLAVECONTEXT;
    VMCS.Guest-linear_address ← 0;
    Deliver VMEXIT;
  FI;
```

```
RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
RFLAGS.CF ← 0;
RAX ← SGX_PREV_TRK_INCMPL;
GOTO DONE;
```

```
FI;
```

```
RFLAGS.ZF ← 0;
RFLAGS.CF ← 0;
RAX ← 0;
```

```
DONE:
(* clear flags *)
RFLAGS.PF,AF,OF,SF ← 0;
```

Flags Affected

ZF is set if ETRACKC fails due to concurrent operations with another SGX instructions or target page is an invalid EPC page or tracking is not completed on SECS page; otherwise cleared.

CF is set if target page is not of a type that requires tracking; otherwise cleared.

PF, AF, OF and SF are cleared.

Protected Mode Exceptions

- #GP(0) If the memory operand violates access-control policies of DS segment.
 If DS segment is unusable.
- #PF(error code) If the memory operand is not properly aligned.
 If the memory operand expected to be in EPC does not resolve to an EPC page.
 If a page fault occurs in access memory operand.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

- #GP(0) If a memory address is in a non-canonical form.
- #PF(error code) If a memory operand is not properly aligned.
 If the memory operand expected to be in EPC does not resolve to an EPC page.
 If a page fault occurs in access memory operand.

EWB—Invalidate an EPC Page and Write out to Main Memory

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EAX = 0BH ENCLS[EWB]	IR	V/V	SGX1	This leaf function invalidates an EPC page and writes it out to main memory.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	EAX		RBX	RCX	RDX
IR	EWB (In)	Error code (Out)	Address of an PAGEINFO (In)	Address of the EPC page (In)	Address of a VA slot (In)

Description

This leaf function copies a page from the EPC to regular main memory. As part of the copying process, the page is cryptographically protected. This instruction can only be executed when current privilege level is 0.

The table below provides additional information on the memory parameter of EPA leaf function.

EWB Memory Parameter Semantics

PAGEINFO	PAGEINFO.SRCPGE	PAGEINFO.PCMD	EPCPAGE	VASLOT
Non-EPC R/W access	Non-EPC R/W access	Non-EPC R/W access	EPC R/W access	EPC R/W access

The error codes are:

Table 40-51. EWB Return Value in RAX

Error Code (see Table 40-4)	Description
No Error	EWB successful.
SGX_PAGE_NOT_BLOCKED	If page is not marked as blocked.
SGX_NOT_TRACKED	If EWB is racing with ETRACK instruction.
SGX_VA_SLOT_OCCUPIED	Version array slot contained valid entry.
SGX_CHILD_PRESENT	Child page present while attempting to page out enclave.

Concurrency Restrictions

Table 40-52. Base Concurrency Restrictions of EWB

Leaf	Parameter	Base Concurrency Restrictions		
		Access	On Conflict	SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification
EWB	Source [DS:RCX]	Exclusive	#GP	EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_EXCEPTION
	VA [DS:RDX]	Shared	#GP	

Table 40-53. Additional Concurrency Restrictions of EWB

Leaf	Parameter	Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
		vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRACK, ETRACKC	
		Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
EWB	Source [DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
	VA [DS:RDX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Exclusive	

Operation

Temp Variables in EWB Operational Flow

Name	Type	Size (Bytes)	Description
TMP_SRCPGE	Memory page	4096	
TMP_PCMD	PCMD	128	
TMP_SECS	SECS	4096	
TMP_BPEPOCH	UINT64	8	
TMP_BPREFCOUNT	UINT64	8	
TMP_HEADER	MAC Header	128	
TMP_PCMD_ENCLAVEID	UINT64	8	
TMP_VER	UINT64	8	
TMP_PK	UINT128	16	

IF ((DS:RBX is not 32Byte Aligned) or (DS:RCX is not 4KByte Aligned))
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:RCX does not resolve within an EPC)
 THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

IF (DS:RDX is not 8Byte Aligned)
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:RDX does not resolve within an EPC)
 THEN #PF(DS:RDX); FI;

(* EPCPAGE and VASLOT should not resolve to the same EPC page*)
 IF (DS:RCX and DS:RDX resolve to the same EPC page)
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

TMP_SRCPGE ← DS:RBX.SRCPGE;
 (* Note PAGEINFO.PCMD is overlaid on top of PAGEINFO.SECINFO *)
 TMP_PCMD ← DS:RBX.PCMD;

If (DS:RBX.LINADDR ≠ 0) OR (DS:RBX.SECS ≠ 0)
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF ((DS:TMP_PCMD is not 128Byte Aligned) or (DS:TMP_SRCPGE is not 4KByte Aligned))
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* Check for concurrent Intel SGX instruction access to the page *)
 IF (Other Intel SGX instruction is accessing page)
 THEN
 IF (<<VMX non-root operation>> AND <<ENABLE_EPC_VIRTUALIZATION_EXTENSIONS>>)
 THEN
 VMCS.Exit_reason ← SGX_CONFLICT;
 VMCS.Exit_qualification.code ← EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_EXCEPTION;
 VMCS.Exit_qualification.error ← 0;
 VMCS.Guest-physical_address ← << translation of DS:RCX produced by paging >>;

```

        VMCS.Guest-linear_address ← DS:RCX;
        Deliver VMEXIT;
    ELSE
        #GP(0);
FI;
FI;

(*Check if the VA Page is being removed or changed*)
IF (VA Page is being modified)
    THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* Verify that EPCPAGE and VASLOT page are valid EPC pages and DS:RDX is VA *)
IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID = 0)
    THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

IF ( (EPCM(DS:RDX & ~OFFFH).VALID = 0) or (EPCM(DS:RDX & ~FFFH).PT is not PT_VA) )
    THEN #PF(DS:RDX); FI;

(* Perform page-type-specific exception checks *)
IF ( (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT is PT_REG) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT is PT_TCS) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT is PT_TRIM) )
    THEN
        TMP_SECS = Obtain SECS through EPCM(DS:RCX)
        (* Check that EBLOCK has occurred correctly *)
        IF (EBLOCK is not correct)
            THEN #GP(0); FI;
FI;

RFLAGS.ZF,CF,PF,AF,OF,SF ← 0;
RAX ← 0;

(* Perform page-type-specific checks *)
IF ( (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT is PT_REG) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT is PT_TCS) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT is PT_TRIM) )
    THEN
        (* check to see if the page is evictable *)
        IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).BLOCKED = 0)
            THEN
                RAX ← SGX_PAGE NOT_BLOCKED;
                RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
                GOTO ERROR_EXIT;
        FI;
        (* Check if tracking done correctly *)
        IF (Tracking not correct)
            THEN
                RAX ← SGX_NOT_TRACKED;
                RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
                GOTO ERROR_EXIT;
        FI;

        (* Obtain EID to establish cryptographic binding between the paged-out page and the enclave *)
        TMP_HEADER.EID ← TMP_SECS.EID;

        (* Obtain EID as an enclave handle for software *)
        TMP_PCMD_ENCLAVEID ← TMP_SECS.EID;
    ELSE IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT is PT_SECS)

```

```

(*check that there are no child pages inside the enclave *)
IF (DS:RCX has an EPC page associated with it)
    THEN
        RAX ← SGX_CHILD_PRESENT;
        RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
        GOTO ERROR_EXIT;
FI;
(* treat SECS as having a child page when VIRTCHILDCNT is non-zero *)
IF (<<in VMX non-root operation>> AND
<<ENABLE_EPC_VIRTUALIZATION_EXTENSIONS>> AND
(SECS(DS:RCX).VIRTCHILDCNT ≠ 0))
    THEN
        RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
        RAX ← SGX_CHILD_PRESENT;
        GOTO ERROR_EXIT;
FI;
TMP_HEADER.EID ← 0;
(* Obtain EID as an enclave handle for software *)
TMP_PCMD_ENCLAVEID ← (DS:RCX).EID;
ELSE IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT is PT_VA)
    TMP_HEADER.EID ← 0; // Zero is not a special value
    (* No enclave handle for VA pages*)
    TMP_PCMD_ENCLAVEID ← 0;
FI;

(* Zero out TMP_HEADER*)
TMP_HEADER[ sizeof(TMP_HEADER)-1 : 0] ← 0;

TMP_HEADER.LINADDR ← EPCM(DS:RCX).ENCLAVEADDRESS;
TMP_HEADER.SECINFO.FLAGS.PT ← EPCM(DS:RCX).PT;
TMP_HEADER.SECINFO.FLAGS.RWX ← EPCM(DS:RCX).RWX;
TMP_HEADER.SECINFO.FLAGS.PENDING ← EPCM(DS:RCX).PENDING;
TMP_HEADER.SECINFO.FLAGS.MODIFIED ← EPCM(DS:RCX).MODIFIED;
TMP_HEADER.SECINFO.FLAGS.PR ← EPCM(DS:RCX).PR;

(* Encrypt the page, DS:RCX could be encrypted in place. AES-GCM produces 2 values, {ciphertext, MAC}. *)
(* AES-GCM input parameters: key, GCM Counter, MAC_HDR, MAC_HDR_SIZE, SRC, SRC_SIZE*)
{DS:TMP_SRCPGE, DS:TMP_PCMD.MAC} ← AES_GCM_ENC(CR_BASE_PK), (TMP_VER << 32),
    TMP_HEADER, 128, DS:RCX, 4096);

(* Write the output *)
Zero out DS:TMP_PCMD.SECINFO
DS:TMP_PCMD.SECINFO.FLAGS.PT ← EPCM(DS:RCX).PT;
DS:TMP_PCMD.SECINFO.FLAGS.RWX ← EPCM(DS:RCX).RWX;
DS:TMP_PCMD.SECINFO.FLAGS.PENDING ← EPCM(DS:RCX).PENDING;
DS:TMP_PCMD.SECINFO.FLAGS.MODIFIED ← EPCM(DS:RCX).MODIFIED;
DS:TMP_PCMD.SECINFO.FLAGS.PR ← EPCM(DS:RCX).PR;
DS:TMP_PCMD.RESERVED ← 0;
DS:TMP_PCMD.ENCLAVEID ← TMP_PCMD_ENCLAVEID;
DS:RBX.LINADDR ← EPCM(DS:RCX).ENCLAVEADDRESS;

(*Check if version array slot was empty *)
IF ([DS.RDX])
    THEN

```

```
RAX ← SGX_VA_SLOT_OCCUPIED
RFLAGS.CF ← 1;
```

```
FI;
```

```
(* Write version to Version Array slot *)
[DS.RDX] ← TMP_VER;
```

```
(* Free up EPCM Entry *)
EPCM.(DS:RCX).VALID ← 0;
ERROR_EXIT:
```

Flags Affected

ZF is set if page is not blocked, not tracked, or a child is present. Otherwise cleared.

CF is set if VA slot is previously occupied, Otherwise cleared.

Protected Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If a memory operand effective address is outside the DS segment limit. If a memory operand is not properly aligned. If the EPC page and VASLOT resolve to the same EPC page. If another Intel SGX instruction is concurrently accessing either the target EPC, VA, or SECS pages. If the tracking resource is in use. If the EPC page or the version array page is invalid. If the parameters fail consistency checks.
#PF(error code)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands. If a memory operand is not an EPC page. If one of the EPC memory operands has incorrect page type.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If a memory operand is non-canonical form. If a memory operand is not properly aligned. If the EPC page and VASLOT resolve to the same EPC page. If another Intel SGX instruction is concurrently accessing either the target EPC, VA, or SECS pages. If the tracking resource is in use. If the EPC page or the version array page in invalid. If the parameters fail consistency checks.
#PF(error code)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands. If a memory operand is not an EPC page. If one of the EPC memory operands has incorrect page type.

40.4 INTEL® SGX USER LEAF FUNCTION REFERENCE

Leaf functions available with the ENCLU instruction mnemonic are covered in this section. In general, each instruction leaf requires EAX to specify the leaf function index and/or additional registers specifying leaf-specific input parameters. An instruction operand encoding table provides details of the implicitly-encoded register usage and associated input/output semantics.

In many cases, an input parameter specifies an effective address associated with a memory object inside or outside the EPC, the memory addressing semantics of these memory objects are also summarized in a separate table.

EACCEPT—Accept Changes to an EPC Page

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EAX = 05H ENCLU[EACCEPT]	IR	V/V	SGX2	This leaf function accepts changes made by system software to an EPC page in the running enclave.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	EAX		RBX	RCX
IR	EACCEPT (In)	Return Error Code (Out)	Address of a SECINFO (In)	Address of the destination EPC page (In)

Description

This leaf function accepts changes to a page in the running enclave by verifying that the security attributes specified in the SECINFO match the security attributes of the page in the EPCM. This instruction leaf can only be executed when inside the enclave.

RBX contains the effective address of a SECINFO structure while RCX contains the effective address of an EPC page. The table below provides additional information on the memory parameter of the EACCEPT leaf function.

EACCEPT Memory Parameter Semantics

SECINFO	EPCPAGE (Destination)
Read access permitted by Non Enclave	Read access permitted by Enclave

The instruction faults if any of the following:

EACCEPT Faulting Conditions

The operands are not properly aligned.	RBX does not contain an effective address in an EPC page in the running enclave.
The EPC page is locked by another thread.	RCX does not contain an effective address of an EPC page in the running enclave.
The EPC page is not valid.	Page type is PT_REG and MODIFIED bit is 0.
SECINFO contains an invalid request.	Page type is PT_TCS or PT_TRIM and PENDING bit is 0 and MODIFIED bit is 1.
If security attributes of the SECINFO page make the page inaccessible.	

The error codes are:

Table 40-54. EACCEPT Return Value in RAX

Error Code (see Table 40-4)	Description
No Error	EACCEPT successful.
SGX_PAGE_ATTRIBUTES_MISMATCH	The attributes of the target EPC page do not match the expected values.
SGX_NOT_TRACKED	The OS did not complete an ETRACK on the target page.

Concurrency Restrictions

Table 40-55. Base Concurrency Restrictions of EACCEPT

Leaf	Parameter	Base Concurrency Restrictions		
		Access	On Conflict	SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification
EACCEPT	Target [DS:RCX]	Shared	#GP	
	SECINFO [DS:RBX]	Concurrent		

Table 40-56. Additional Concurrency Restrictions of EACCEPT

Leaf	Parameter	Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
		vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRACK, ETRACKC	
		Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
EACCEPT	Target [DS:RCX]	Exclusive	#GP	Concurrent		Concurrent	
	SECINFO [DS:RBX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	

Operation

Temp Variables in EACCEPT Operational Flow

Name	Type	Size (bits)	Description
TMP_SECS	Effective Address	32/64	Physical address of SECS to which EPC operands belongs.
SCRATCH_SECINFO	SECINFO	512	Scratch storage for holding the contents of DS:RBX.

IF (DS:RBX is not 64Byte Aligned)
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:RBX is not within CR_ELRANGE)
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:RBX does not resolve within an EPC)
 THEN #PF(DS:RBX); FI;

IF ((EPCM(DS:RBX &~FFFH).VALID = 0) or (EPCM(DS:RBX &~FFFH).R = 0) or (EPCM(DS:RBX &~FFFH).PENDING ≠ 0) or
 (EPCM(DS:RBX &~FFFH).MODIFIED ≠ 0) or (EPCM(DS:RBX &~FFFH).BLOCKED ≠ 0) or
 (EPCM(DS:RBX &~FFFH).PT ≠ PT_REG) or (EPCM(DS:RBX &~FFFH).ENCLAVESECS ≠ CR_ACTIVE_SECS) or
 (EPCM(DS:RBX &~FFFH).ENCLAVEADDRESS ≠ (DS:RBX & FFFH)))
 THEN #PF(DS:RBX); FI;

(* Copy 64 bytes of contents *)
 SCRATCH_SECINFO ← DS:RBX;

(* Check for misconfigured SECINFO flags*)
 IF (SCRATCH_SECINFO reserved fields are not zero)
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:RCX is not 4KByte Aligned)
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

```
IF (DS:RCX is not within CR_ELRANGE)
    THEN #GP(0); FI;
```

```
IF (DS:RCX does not resolve within an EPC)
    THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;
```

(* Check that the combination of requested PT, PENDING and MODIFIED is legal *)

```
IF (NOT (((SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.PT is PT_REG) and
    ((SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.PR is 1) or
    (SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.PENDING is 1)) and
    (SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.MODIFIED is 0)) or
    ((SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.PT is PT_TCS or PT_TRIM) and
    (SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.PR is 0) and
    (SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.PENDING is 0) and
    (SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.MODIFIED is 1) )))
    THEN #GP(0); FI
```

(* Check security attributes of the destination EPC page *)

```
IF ( (EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID is 0) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).BLOCKED is not 0) or
    ((EPCM(DS:RCX).PT is not PT_REG) and (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT is not PT_TCS) and (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT is not PT_TRIM)) or
    (EPCM(DS:RCX).ENCLAVESECS ≠ CR_ACTIVE_SECS))
    THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;
```

(* Check the destination EPC page for concurrency *)

```
IF ( EPC page in use )
    THEN #GP(0); FI;
```

(* Re-Check security attributes of the destination EPC page *)

```
IF ( (EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID is 0) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).ENCLAVESECS ≠ CR_ACTIVE_SECS) )
    THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;
```

(* Verify that accept request matches current EPC page settings *)

```
IF ( (EPCM(DS:RCX).ENCLAVEADDRESS ≠ DS:RCX) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).PENDING ≠ SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.PENDING) or
    (EPCM(DS:RCX).MODIFIED ≠ SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.MODIFIED) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).R ≠ SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.R) or
    (EPCM(DS:RCX).W ≠ SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.W) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).X ≠ SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.X) or
    (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT ≠ SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.PT) )
    THEN
        RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
        RAX ← SGX_PAGE_ATTRIBUTES_MISMATCH;
        GOTO DONE;
```

```
FI;
```

(* Check that all required threads have left enclave *)

```
IF (Tracking not correct)
    THEN
        RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
        RAX ← SGX_NOT_TRACKED;
        GOTO DONE;
```

```
FI;
```

(* Get pointer to the SECS to which the EPC page belongs *)

```
TMP_SECS = << Obtain physical address of SECS through EPCM(DS:RCX)>>
```

(* For TCS pages, perform additional checks *)

```
IF (SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.PT = PT_TCS)
    THEN
```

SGX INSTRUCTION REFERENCES

```
IF (DS:RCX.RESERVED ≠ 0) #GP(0); FI;  
FI;
```

(* Check that TCS.FLAGS.DBGOPTIN, TCS stack, and TCS status are correctly initialized *)

```
IF ( ((DS:RCX).FLAGS.DBGOPTIN is not 0) or ((DS:RCX).CSSA ≥ (DS:RCX).NSSA) or ((DS:RCX).AEP is not 0) or ((DS:RCX).STATE is not 0) )  
THEN #GP(0); FI;
```

(* Check consistency of FS & GS Limit *)

```
IF ( (TMP_SECS.ATTRIBUTES.MODE64BIT is 0) and ((DS:RCX).FSLIMIT & FFFH ≠ FFFH) or (DS:RCX.GSLIMIT & FFFH ≠ FFFH) )  
THEN #GP(0); FI;
```

(* Clear PENDING/MODIFIED flags to mark accept operation complete *)

```
EPCM(DS:RCX).PENDING ← 0;  
EPCM(DS:RCX).MODIFIED ← 0;  
EPCM(DS:RCX).PR ← 0;
```

(* Clear EAX and ZF to indicate successful completion *)

```
RFLAGS.ZF ← 0;  
RAX ← 0;
```

DONE:

```
RFLAGS.CF,PF,AF,OF,SF ← 0;
```

Flags Affected

Sets ZF if page cannot be accepted, otherwise cleared. Clears CF, PF, AF, OF, SF

Protected Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	If executed outside an enclave. If a memory operand effective address is outside the DS segment limit. If a memory operand is not properly aligned. If a memory operand is locked.
#PF(error code)	If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands. If a memory operand is not an EPC page. If EPC page has incorrect page type or security attributes.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	If executed outside an enclave. If a memory operand is non-canonical form. If a memory operand is not properly aligned. If a memory operand is locked.
#PF(error code)	If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands. If a memory operand is not an EPC page. If EPC page has incorrect page type or security attributes.

EACCEPTCOPY—Initialize a Pending Page

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EAX = 07H ENCLU[EACCEPTCOPY]	IR	V/V	SGX2	This leaf function initializes a dynamically allocated EPC page from another page in the EPC.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	EAX		RBX	RCX	RDX
IR	EACCEPTCOPY (In)	Return Error Code (Out)	Address of a SECINFO (In)	Address of the destination EPC page (In)	Address of the source EPC page (In)

Description

This leaf function copies the contents of an existing EPC page into an uninitialized EPC page (created by EAUG). After initialization, the instruction may also modify the access rights associated with the destination EPC page. This instruction leaf can only be executed when inside the enclave.

RBX contains the effective address of a SECINFO structure while RCX and RDX each contain the effective address of an EPC page. The table below provides additional information on the memory parameter of the EACCEPTCOPY leaf function.

EACCEPTCOPY Memory Parameter Semantics

SECINFO	EPCPAGE (Destination)	EPCPAGE (Source)
Read access permitted by Non Enclave	Read/Write access permitted by Enclave	Read access permitted by Enclave

The instruction faults if any of the following:

EACCEPTCOPY Faulting Conditions

The operands are not properly aligned.	If security attributes of the SECINFO page make the page inaccessible.
The EPC page is locked by another thread.	If security attributes of the source EPC page make the page inaccessible.
The EPC page is not valid.	RBX does not contain an effective address in an EPC page in the running enclave.
SECINFO contains an invalid request.	RCX/RDX does not contain an effective address of an EPC page in the running enclave.

The error codes are:

Table 40-57. EACCEPTCOPY Return Value in RAX

Error Code (see Table 40-4)	Description
No Error	EACCEPTCOPY successful.
SGX_PAGE_ATTRIBUTES_MISMATCH	The attributes of the target EPC page do not match the expected values.

Concurrency Restrictions

Table 40-58. Base Concurrency Restrictions of EACCEPTCOPY

Leaf	Parameter	Base Concurrency Restrictions		
		Access	On Conflict	SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification
EACCEPTCOPY	Target [DS:RCX]	Concurrent		
	Source [DS:RDX]	Concurrent		
	SECINFO [DS:RBX]	Concurrent		

Table 40-59. Additional Concurrency Restrictions of EACCEPTCOPY

Leaf	Parameter	Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
		vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRACK, ETRACKC	
		Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
EACCEPTCOPY	Target [DS:RCX]	Exclusive	#GP	Concurrent		Concurrent	
	Source [DS:RDX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
	SECINFO [DS:RBX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	

Operation

Temp Variables in EACCEPTCOPY Operational Flow

Name	Type	Size (bits)	Description
SCRATCH_SECINFO	SECINFO	512	Scratch storage for holding the contents of DS:RBX.

IF (DS:RBX is not 64Byte Aligned)
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF ((DS:RCX is not 4KByte Aligned) or (DS:RDX is not 4KByte Aligned))
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF ((DS:RBX is not within CR_ELRANGE) or (DS:RCX is not within CR_ELRANGE) or (DS:RDX is not within CR_ELRANGE))
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:RBX does not resolve within an EPC)
 THEN #PF(DS:RBX); FI;

IF (DS:RCX does not resolve within an EPC)
 THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

IF (DS:RDX does not resolve within an EPC)
 THEN #PF(DS:RDX); FI;

IF ((EPCM(DS:RBX &~FFFH).VALID = 0) or (EPCM(DS:RBX &~FFFH).R = 0) or (EPCM(DS:RBX &~FFFH).PENDING ≠ 0) or
 (EPCM(DS:RBX &~FFFH).MODIFIED ≠ 0) or (EPCM(DS:RBX &~FFFH).BLOCKED ≠ 0) or (EPCM(DS:RBX &~FFFH).PT ≠ PT_REG) or
 (EPCM(DS:RBX &~FFFH).ENCLAVESECS ≠ CR_ACTIVE_SECS) or
 (EPCM(DS:RBX &~FFFH).ENCLAVEADDRESS ≠ DS:RBX))
 THEN #PF(DS:RBX); FI;

(* Copy 64 bytes of contents *)
 SCRATCH_SECINFO ← DS:RBX;

(* Check for misconfigured SECINFO flags*)
 IF ((SCRATCH_SECINFO reserved fields are not zero) or (SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.R=0) AND(SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.W≠0) or
 (SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.PT is not PT_REG))
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* Check security attributes of the source EPC page *)
 IF ((EPCM(DS:RDX).VALID = 0) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).R = 0) or (EPCM(DS:RDX).PENDING ≠ 0) or (EPCM(DS:RDX).MODIFIED ≠ 0) or
 (EPCM(DS:RDX).BLOCKED ≠ 0) or (EPCM(DS:RDX).PT ≠ PT_REG) or (EPCM(DS:RDX).ENCLAVESECS ≠ CR_ACTIVE_SECS) or
 (EPCM(DS:RDX).ENCLAVEADDRESS ≠ DS:RDX))
 THEN #PF(DS:RDX); FI;

(* Check security attributes of the destination EPC page *)
 IF ((EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID = 0) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).PENDING ≠ 1) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).MODIFIED ≠ 0) or
 (EPCM(DS:RDX).BLOCKED ≠ 0) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT ≠ PT_REG) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).ENCLAVESECS ≠ CR_ACTIVE_SECS))
 THEN
 RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
 RAX ← SGX_PAGE_ATTRIBUTES_MISMATCH;
 GOTO DONE;
 FI;

(* Check the destination EPC page for concurrency *)
 IF (destination EPC page in use)
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* Re-Check security attributes of the destination EPC page *)
 IF ((EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID = 0) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).PENDING ≠ 1) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).MODIFIED ≠ 0) or
 (EPCM(DS:RCX).R ≠ 1) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).W ≠ 1) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).X ≠ 0) or
 (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT ≠ SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.PT) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).ENCLAVESECS ≠ CR_ACTIVE_SECS) or
 (EPCM(DS:RCX).ENCLAVEADDRESS ≠ DS:RCX))
 THEN
 RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
 RAX ← SGX_PAGE_ATTRIBUTES_MISMATCH;
 GOTO DONE;
 FI;

(* Copy 4KBytes form the source to destination EPC page*)
 DS:RCX[32767:0] ← DS:RDX[32767:0];

(* Update EPCM permissions *)
 EPCM(DS:RCX).R ← SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.R;
 EPCM(DS:RCX).W ← SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.W;
 EPCM(DS:RCX).X ← SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.X;
 EPCM(DS:RCX).PENDING ← 0;

RFLAGS.ZF ← 0;
 RAX ← 0;

DONE:
 RFLAGS.CF,PF,AF,OF,SF ← 0;

Flags Affected

Sets ZF if page is not modifiable, otherwise cleared. Clears CF, PF, AF, OF, SF

Protected Mode Exceptions

- #GP(0)
 - If executed outside an enclave.
 - If a memory operand effective address is outside the DS segment limit.
 - If a memory operand is not properly aligned.
 - If a memory operand is locked.
- #PF(error code)
 - If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.
 - If a memory operand is not an EPC page.
 - If EPC page has incorrect page type or security attributes.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

- #GP(0)
 - If executed outside an enclave.
 - If a memory operand is non-canonical form.
 - If a memory operand is not properly aligned.
 - If a memory operand is locked.
- #PF(error code)
 - If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.
 - If a memory operand is not an EPC page.
 - If EPC page has incorrect page type or security attributes.

EENTER—Enters an Enclave

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EAX = 02H ENCLU[EENTER]	IR	V/V	SGX1	This leaf function is used to enter an enclave.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	EAX		RBX	RCX	
IR	EENTER (In)	Content of RBX.CSSA (Out)	Address of a TCS (In)	Address of AEP (In)	Address of IP following EENTER (Out)

Description

The ENCLU[EENTER] instruction transfers execution to an enclave. At the end of the instruction, the logical processor is executing in enclave mode at the RIP computed as EnclaveBase + TCS.OENTRY. If the target address is not within the CS segment (32-bit) or is not canonical (64-bit), a #GP(0) results.

EENTER Memory Parameter Semantics

TCS
Enclave access

EENTER is a serializing instruction. The instruction faults if any of the following occurs:

Address in RBX is not properly aligned.	Any TCS.FLAGS's must-be-zero bit is not zero.
TCS pointed to by RBX is not valid or available or locked.	Current 32/64 mode does not match the enclave mode in SECS.ATTRIBUTES.MODE64.
The SECS is in use.	Either of TCS-specified FS and GS segment is not a subsets of the current DS segment.
Any one of DS, ES, CS, SS is not zero.	If XSAVE available, CR4.OSXSAVE = 0, but SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM ≠ 3.
CR4.OSFXSR ≠ 1.	If CR4.OSXSAVE = 1, SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM is not a subset of XCR0.

The following operations are performed by EENTER:

- RSP and RBP are saved in the current SSA frame on EENTER and are automatically restored on EEXIT or interrupt.
- The AEP contained in RCX is stored into the TCS for use by AEXs. FS and GS (including hidden portions) are saved and new values are constructed using TCS.OFSBASE/GSBASE (32 and 64-bit mode) and TCS.OFSLIMIT/GSLIMIT (32-bit mode only). The resulting segments must be a subset of the DS segment.
- If CR4.OSXSAVE == 1, XCR0 is saved and replaced by SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM. The effect of RFLAGS.TF depends on whether the enclave entry is opt-in or opt-out (see Section 42.1.2):
 - On opt-out entry, TF is saved and cleared (it is restored on EEXIT or AEX). Any attempt to set TF via a POPF instruction while inside the enclave clears TF (see Section 42.2.5).
 - On opt-in entry, a single-step debug exception is pended on the instruction boundary immediately after EENTER (see Section 42.2.2).
- All code breakpoints that do not overlap with ELRANGE are also suppressed. If the entry is an opt-out entry, all code and data breakpoints that overlap with the ELRANGE are suppressed.
- On opt-out entry, a number of performance monitoring counters and behaviors are modified or suppressed (see Section 42.2.3):

- All performance monitoring activity on the current thread is suppressed except for incrementing and firing of FIXED_CTR1 and FIXED_CTR2.
- PEBS is suppressed.
- AnyThread counting on other threads is demoted to MyThread mode and IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS[60] on that thread is set
- If the opt-out entry on a hardware thread results in suppression of any performance monitoring, then the processor sets IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS[60] and IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS[63].

Concurrency Restrictions

Table 40-60. Base Concurrency Restrictions of EENTER

Leaf	Parameter	Base Concurrency Restrictions		
		Access	On Conflict	SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification
EENTER	TCS [DS:RBX]	Shared	#GP	

Table 40-61. Additional Concurrency Restrictions of EENTER

Leaf	Parameter	Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
		vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRACK, ETRACKC	
		Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
EENTER	TCS [DS:RBX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	

Operation

Temp Variables in EENTER Operational Flow

Name	Type	Size (Bits)	Description
TMP_FSBASE	Effective Address	32/64	Proposed base address for FS segment.
TMP_GSBASE	Effective Address	32/64	Proposed base address for GS segment.
TMP_FSLIMIT	Effective Address	32/64	Highest legal address in proposed FS segment.
TMP_GSLIMIT	Effective Address	32/64	Highest legal address in proposed GS segment.
TMP_XSIZE	integer	64	Size of XSAVE area based on SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM.
TMP_SSA_PAGE	Effective Address	32/64	Pointer used to iterate over the SSA pages in the current frame.
TMP_GPR	Effective Address	32/64	Address of the GPR area within the current SSA frame.

TMP_MODE64 ← ((IA32_EFER.LMA = 1) && (CS.L = 1));

(* Make sure DS is usable, expand up *)

IF (TMP_MODE64 = 0 and (DS not usable or ((DS[S] = 1) and (DS[bit 11] = 0) and DS[bit 10] = 1)))
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* Check that CS, SS, DS, ES.base is 0 *)

IF (TMP_MODE64 = 0)
 THEN
 IF(CS.base ≠ 0 or DS.base ≠ 0) #GP(0); FI;
 IF(ES usable and ES.base ≠ 0) #GP(0); FI;
 IF(SS usable and SS.base ≠ 0) #GP(0); FI;
 IF(SS usable and SS.B = 0) #GP(0); FI;

```

FI;

IF (DS:RBX is not 4KByte Aligned)
  THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:RBX does not resolve within an EPC)
  THEN #PF(DS:RBX); FI;

(* Check AEP is canonical*)
IF (TMP_MODE64 = 1 and (CS:RCX is not canonical) )
  THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* Check concurrency of TCS operation*)
IF (Other Intel SGX instructions is operating on TCS)
  THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* TCS verification *)
IF (EPCM(DS:RBX).VALID = 0)
  THEN #PF(DS:RBX); FI;

IF (EPCM(DS:RBX).BLOCKED = 1)
  THEN #PF(DS:RBX); FI;

IF ( ( EPCM(DS:RBX).ENCLAVEADDRESS ≠ DS:RBX) or (EPCM(DS:RBX).PT ≠ PT_TCS) )
  THEN #PF(DS:RBX); FI;

IF ((EPCM(DS:RBX).PENDING = 1) or (EPCM(DS:RBX).MODIFIED = 1))
  THEN #PF(DS:RBX); FI;

IF ( (DS:RBX).OSSA is not 4KByte Aligned)
  THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* Check proposed FS and GS *)
IF ( ( (DS:RBX).OFSBASE is not 4KByte Aligned) or ( (DS:RBX).OGSBASE is not 4KByte Aligned) )
  THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* Get the SECS for the enclave in which the TCS resides *)
TMP_SECS ← Address of SECS for TCS;

(* Check proposed FS/GS segments fall within DS *)
IF (TMP_MODE64 = 0)
  THEN
    TMP_FSBASE ← (DS:RBX).OFSBASE + TMP_SECS.BASEADDR;
    TMP_FSLIMIT ← (DS:RBX).OFSBASE + TMP_SECS.BASEADDR + (DS:RBX).FSLIMIT;
    TMP_GSBASE ← (DS:RBX).OGSBASE + TMP_SECS.BASEADDR;
    TMP_GSLIMIT ← (DS:RBX).OGSBASE + TMP_SECS.BASEADDR + (DS:RBX).GSLIMIT;
    (* if FS wrap-around, make sure DS has no holes*)
    IF (TMP_FSLIMIT < TMP_FSBASE)
      THEN
        IF (DS.limit < 4GB) THEN #GP(0); FI;
        ELSE
          IF (TMP_FSLIMIT > DS.limit) THEN #GP(0); FI;
    FI;
    (* if GS wrap-around, make sure DS has no holes*)

```

```

    IF (TMP_GSLIMIT < TMP_GSBASE)
        THEN
            IF (DS.limit < 4GB) THEN #GP(0); FI;
        ELSE
            IF (TMP_GSLIMIT > DS.limit) THEN #GP(0); FI;
    FI;
ELSE
    TMP_FSBASE ← (DS:RBX).OFSBASE + TMP_SECS.BASEADDR;
    TMP_GSBASE ← (DS:RBX).OGSBASE + TMP_SECS.BASEADDR;
    IF ( (TMP_FSBASE is not canonical) or (TMP_GSBASE is not canonical))
        THEN #GP(0); FI;
FI;

(* Ensure that the FLAGS field in the TCS does not have any reserved bits set *)
IF ( ( (DS:RBX).FLAGS & FFFFFFFF7FFF) ≠ 0 )
    THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* SECS must exist and enclave must have previously been EINITted *)
IF (the enclave is not already initialized)
    THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* make sure the logical processor's operating mode matches the enclave *)
IF ( (TMP_MODE64 ≠ TMP_SECS.ATTRIBUTES.MODE64BIT) )
    THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (CR4.OSFXSR = 0)
    THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* Check for legal values of SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM *)
IF (CR4.OSXSAVE = 0)
    THEN
        IF (TMP_SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM ≠ 03H) THEN #GP(0); FI;
    ELSE
        IF ( (TMP_SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM & XCRO) ≠ TMP_SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM) THEN #GP(0); FI;
FI;

(* Make sure the SSA contains at least one more frame *)
IF ( (DS:RBX).CSSA ≥ (DS:RBX).NSSA)
    THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* Compute linear address of SSA frame *)
TMP_SSA ← (DS:RBX).OSSA + TMP_SECS.BASEADDR + 4096 * TMP_SECS.SSAFRAMESIZE * (DS:RBX).CSSA;
TMP_XSIZE ← compute_XSAVE_frame_size(TMP_SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM);

FOR EACH TMP_SSA_PAGE = TMP_SSA to TMP_SSA + TMP_XSIZE
    (* Check page is read/write accessible *)
    Check that DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE is read/write accessible;
    If a fault occurs, release locks, abort and deliver that fault;

    IF (DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE does not resolve to EPC page)
        THEN #PF(DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE); FI;
    IF (EPCM(DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE).VALID = 0)
        THEN #PF(DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE); FI;
    IF (EPCM(DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE).BLOCKED = 1)

```

```

    THEN #PF(DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE); FI;
  IF ((EPCM(DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE).PENDING = 1) or (EPCM(DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE).MODIFIED = 1))
    THEN #PF(DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE); FI;
  IF ( ( EPCM(DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE).ENCLAVEADDRESS ≠ DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE) or (EPCM(DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE).PT ≠ PT_REG) or
    (EPCM(DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE).ENCLAVESECS ≠ EPCM(DS:RBX).ENCLAVESECS) or
    (EPCM(DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE).R = 0) or (EPCM(DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE).W = 0) )
    THEN #PF(DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE); FI;
  CR_XSAVE_PAGE_n ← Physical_Address(DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE);
ENDFOR

```

(* Compute address of GPR area*)

```
TMP_GPR ← TMP_SSA + 4096 * DS:TMP_SECS.SSAFRAMESIZE - sizeof(GPRSGX_AREA);
```

If a fault occurs; release locks, abort and deliver that fault;

```

IF (DS:TMP_GPR does not resolve to EPC page)
  THEN #PF(DS:TMP_GPR); FI;
IF (EPCM(DS:TMP_GPR).VALID = 0)
  THEN #PF(DS:TMP_GPR); FI;
IF (EPCM(DS:TMP_GPR).BLOCKED = 1)
  THEN #PF(DS:TMP_GPR); FI;
IF ((EPCM(DS:TMP_GPR).PENDING = 1) or (EPCM(DS:TMP_GPR).MODIFIED = 1))
  THEN #PF(DS:TMP_GPR); FI;
IF ( ( EPCM(DS:TMP_GPR).ENCLAVEADDRESS ≠ DS:TMP_GPR) or (EPCM(DS:TMP_GPR).PT ≠ PT_REG) or
  (EPCM(DS:TMP_GPR).ENCLAVESECS ≠ EPCM(DS:RBX).ENCLAVESECS) or
  (EPCM(DS:TMP_GPR).R = 0) or (EPCM(DS:TMP_GPR).W = 0) )
  THEN #PF(DS:TMP_GPR); FI;

```

```

IF (TMP_MODE64 = 0)
  THEN
    IF (TMP_GPR + (GPR_SIZE - 1) is not in DS segment) THEN #GP(0); FI;
FI;

```

```
CR_GPR_PA ← Physical_Address (DS: TMP_GPR);
```

(* Validate TCS.OENTRY *)

```
TMP_TARGET ← (DS:RBX).OENTRY + TMP_SECS.BASEADDR;
```

```

IF (TMP_MODE64 = 1)
  THEN
    IF (TMP_TARGET is not canonical) THEN #GP(0); FI;
  ELSE
    IF (TMP_TARGET > CS limit) THEN #GP(0); FI;
FI;

```

(* Ensure the enclave is not already active and this thread is the only one using the TCS*)

```

IF (DS:RBX.STATE = ACTIVE)
  THEN #GP(0); FI;

```

```

CR_ENCLAVE_MODE ← 1;
CR_ACTIVE_SECS ← TMP_SECS;
CR_ELRRANGE ← (TMPSECS.BASEADDR, TMP_SECS.SIZE);

```

(* Save state for possible AEXs *)

```
CR_TCS_PA ← Physical_Address (DS:RBX);
```

```
CR_TCS_LA ← RBX;
```

SGX INSTRUCTION REFERENCES

CR_TCS_LA.AEP ← RCX;

(* Save the hidden portions of FS and GS *)

CR_SAVE_FS_selector ← FS.selector;

CR_SAVE_FS_base ← FS.base;

CR_SAVE_FS_limit ← FS.limit;

CR_SAVE_FS_access_rights ← FS.access_rights;

CR_SAVE_GS_selector ← GS.selector;

CR_SAVE_GS_base ← GS.base;

CR_SAVE_GS_limit ← GS.limit;

CR_SAVE_GS_access_rights ← GS.access_rights;

(* If XSAVE is enabled, save XCRO and replace it with SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM*)

IF (CR4.OSXSAVE = 1)

 CR_SAVE_XCRO ← XCRO;

 XCRO ← TMP_SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM;

FI;

RCX ← RIP;

RIP ← TMP_TARGET;

RAX ← (DS:RBX).CSSA;

(* Save the outside RSP and RBP so they can be restored on interrupt or EEXIT *)

DS:TMP_SSA.U_RSP ← RSP;

DS:TMP_SSA.U_RBP ← RBP;

(* Do the FS/GS swap *)

FS.base ← TMP_FSBASE;

FS.limit ← DS:RBX.FSLIMIT;

FS.type ← 0001b;

FS.W ← DS.W;

FS.S ← 1;

FS.DPL ← DS.DPL;

FS.G ← 1;

FS.B ← 1;

FS.P ← 1;

FS.AVL ← DS.AVL;

FS.L ← DS.L;

FS.unusable ← 0;

FS.selector ← 0BH;

GS.base ← TMP_GSBASE;

GS.limit ← DS:RBX.GSLIMIT;

GS.type ← 0001b;

GS.W ← DS.W;

GS.S ← 1;

GS.DPL ← DS.DPL;

GS.G ← 1;

GS.B ← 1;

GS.P ← 1;

GS.AVL ← DS.AVL;

GS.L ← DS.L;

GS.unusable ← 0;

GS.selector ← 0BH;

```

CR_DBGOPTIN ← TCS.FLAGS.DBGOPTIN;
Suppress_all_code_breakpoints_that_are_outside_ELRANGE;

IF (CR_DBGOPTIN = 0)
  THEN
    Suppress_all_code_breakpoints_that_overlap_with_ELRANGE;
    CR_SAVE_TF ← RFLAGS.TF;
    RFLAGS.TF ← 0;
    Suppress_monitor_trap_flag for the source of the execution of the enclave;
    Suppress any pending debug exceptions;
    Suppress any pending MTF VM exit;
  ELSE
    IF RFLAGS.TF = 1
      THEN pend a single-step #DB at the end of EENTER; FI;
    IF the "monitor trap flag" VM-execution control is set
      THEN pend an MTF VM exit at the end of EENTER; FI;
  FI;

Flush_linear_context;
Allow_front_end_to_begin_fetch_at_new_RIP;

```

Flags Affected

RFLAGS.TF is cleared on opt-out entry

Protected Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If DS:RBX is not page aligned. If the enclave is not initialized. If part or all of the FS or GS segment specified by TCS is outside the DS segment or not properly aligned. If the thread is not in the INACTIVE state. If CS, DS, ES or SS bases are not all zero. If executed in enclave mode. If any reserved field in the TCS FLAG is set. If the target address is not within the CS segment. If CR4.OSFXSR = 0. If CR4.OSXSAVE = 0 and SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM ≠ 3. If CR4.OSXSAVE = 1 and SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM is not a subset of XCRO.
#PF(error code)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If a page fault occurs in accessing memory. If DS:RBX does not point to a valid TCS. If one or more pages of the current SSA frame are not readable/writable, or do not resolve to a valid PT_REG EPC page.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

- #GP(0)
 - If DS:RBX is not page aligned.
 - If the enclave is not initialized.
 - If the thread is not in the INACTIVE state.
 - If CS, DS, ES or SS bases are not all zero.
 - If executed in enclave mode.
 - If part or all of the FS or GS segment specified by TCS is outside the DS segment or not properly aligned.
 - If the target address is not canonical.
 - If CR4.OSFXSR = 0.
 - If CR4.OSXSAVE = 0 and SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM ≠ 3.
 - If CR4.OSXSAVE = 1 and SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM is not a subset of XCR0.
- #PF(error code)
 - If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.
 - If DS:RBX does not point to a valid TCS.
 - If one or more pages of the current SSA frame are not readable/writable, or do not resolve to a valid PT_REG EPC page.

EEXIT—Exits an Enclave

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EAX = 04H ENCLU[EEXIT]	IR	V/V	SGX1	This leaf function is used to exit an enclave.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	EAX	RBX	RCX
IR	EEXIT (In)	Target address outside the enclave (In)	Address of the current AEP (In)

Description

The ENCLU[EEXIT] instruction exits the currently executing enclave and branches to the location specified in RBX. RCX receives the current AEP. If RBX is not within the CS (32-bit mode) or is not canonical (64-bit mode) a #GP(0) results.

EEXIT Memory Parameter Semantics

Target Address
Non-Enclave read and execute access

If RBX specifies an address that is inside the enclave, the instruction will complete normally. The fetch of the next instruction will occur in non-enclave mode, but will attempt to fetch from inside the enclave. This fetch returns a fixed data pattern.

If secrets are contained in any registers, it is responsibility of enclave software to clear those registers.

If XCR0 was modified on enclave entry, it is restored to the value it had at the time of the most recent EENTER or ERESUME.

If the enclave is opt-out, RFLAGS.TF is loaded from the value previously saved on EENTER.

Code and data breakpoints are unsuppressed.

Performance monitoring counters are unsuppressed.

Concurrency Restrictions

Table 40-62. Base Concurrency Restrictions of EEXIT

Leaf	Parameter	Base Concurrency Restrictions		
		Access	On Conflict	SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification
EEXIT		Concurrent		

Table 40-63. Additional Concurrency Restrictions of EEXIT

Leaf	Parameter	Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
		vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRACK, ETRACKC	
		Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
EEXIT		Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	

Operation

Temp Variables in EEXIT Operational Flow

Name	Type	Size (Bits)	Description
TMP_RIP	Effective Address	32/64	Saved copy of CRIP for use when creating LBR.

TMP_MODE64 ← ((IA32_EFER.LMA = 1) && (CS.L = 1));

```
IF (TMP_MODE64 = 1)
    THEN
        IF (RBX is not canonical) THEN #GP(0); FI;
    ELSE
        IF (RBX > CS limit) THEN #GP(0); FI;
FI;
```

TMP_RIP ← CRIP;
RIP ← RBX;

(* Return current AEP in RCX *)
RCX ← CR_TCS_PA.AEP;

(* Do the FS/GS swap *)
FS.selector ← CR_SAVE_FS.selector;
FS.base ← CR_SAVE_FS.base;
FS.limit ← CR_SAVE_FS.limit;
FS.access_rights ← CR_SAVE_FS.access_rights;
GS.selector ← CR_SAVE_GS.selector;
GS.base ← CR_SAVE_GS.base;
GS.limit ← CR_SAVE_GS.limit;
GS.access_rights ← CR_SAVE_GS.access_rights;

(* Restore XCRO if needed *)
IF (CR4.OSXSAVE = 1)
 XCRO ← CR_SAVE__XCRO;
FI;

Unsuppress_all_code_breakpoints_that_are_outside_ELRANGE;

```
IF (CR_DBGOPTIN = 0)
    THEN
        UnSuppress_all_code_breakpoints_that_overlap_with_ELRANGE;
        Restore suppressed breakpoint matches;
        RFLAGS.TF ← CR_SAVE_TF;
        UnSuppress_montior_trap_flag;
        UnSuppress_LBR_Generation;
        UnSuppress_performance_monitoring_activity;
        Restore performance monitoring counter AnyThread demotion to MyThread in enclave back to AnyThread
FI;
```

```
IF RFLAGS.TF = 1
    THEN Pend Single-Step #DB at the end of EEXIT;
FI;
```

IF the “monitor trap flag” VM-execution control is set
 THEN pend a MTF VM exit at the end of EEXIT;
 FI;

CR_ENCLAVE_MODE ← 0;
 CR_TCS_PA.STATE ← INACTIVE;

(* Assure consistent translations *)
 Flush_linear_context;

Flags Affected

RFLAGS.TF is restored from the value previously saved in EENTER or ERESUME.

Protected Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	If executed outside an enclave. If RBX is outside the CS segment.
#PF(error code)	If a page fault occurs in accessing memory.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	If executed outside an enclave. If RBX is not canonical.
#PF(error code)	If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.

EGETKEY—Retrieves a Cryptographic Key

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EAX = 01H ENCLU[EGETKEY]	IR	V/V	SGX1	This leaf function retrieves a cryptographic key.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	EAX	RBX	RCX
IR	EGETKEY (In)	Address to a KEYREQUEST (In)	Address of the OUTPUTDATA (In)

Description

The ENCLU[EGETKEY] instruction returns a 128-bit secret key from the processor specific key hierarchy. The register RBX contains the effective address of a KEYREQUEST structure, which the instruction interprets to determine the key being requested. The Requesting Keys section below provides a description of the keys that can be requested. The RCX register contains the effective address where the key will be returned. Both the addresses in RBX & RCX should be locations inside the enclave.

EGETKEY derives keys using a processor unique value to create a specific key based on a number of possible inputs. This instruction leaf can only be executed inside an enclave.

EGETKEY Memory Parameter Semantics

KEYREQUEST	OUTPUTDATA
Enclave read access	Enclave write access

After validating the operands, the instruction determines which key is to be produced and performs the following actions:

- The instruction assembles the derivation data for the key based on the Table 40-64.
- Computes derived key using the derivation data and package specific value.
- Outputs the calculated key to the address in RCX.

The instruction fails with #GP(0) if the operands are not properly aligned. Successful completion of the instruction will clear RFLAGS.{ZF, CF, AF, OF, SF, PF}. The instruction returns an error code if the user tries to request a key based on an invalid CPUSVN or ISVSVN (when the user request is accepted, see the table below), requests a key for which it has not been granted the attribute to request, or requests a key that is not supported by the hardware. These checks may be performed in any order. Thus, an indication by error number of one cause (for example, invalid attribute) does not imply that there are not also other errors. Different processors may thus give different error numbers for the same Enclave. The correctness of software should not rely on the order resulting from the checks documented in this section. In such cases the ZF flag is set and the corresponding error bit (SGX_INVALID_SVN, SGX_INVALID_ATTRIBUTE, SGX_INVALID_KEYNAME) is set in RAX and the data at the address specified by RCX is unmodified.

Requesting Keys

The KEYREQUEST structure (see Section 37.17.1) identifies the key to be provided. The Keyrequest.KeyName field identifies which type of key is requested.

Deriving Keys

Key derivation is based on a combination of the enclave specific values (see Table 40-64) and a processor key. Depending on the key being requested a field may either be included by definition or the value may be included from the KeyRequest. A “yes” in Table 40-64 indicates the value for the field is included from its default location, identified in the source row, and a “request” indicates the values for the field is included from its corresponding KeyRequest field.

Table 40-64. Key Derivation

	Key Name	Attributes	Owner Epoch	CPU SVN	ISV SVN	ISV PRODIG	ISVEXT PRODIG	ISVFAM ILYID	MRENCLAVE	MRSIGNER	CONFIG ID	CONFIGS VN	RAND
Source	Key Dependent Constant	Y← SECS.ATTRIBUTES and SECS.MISCSELECT;	CR_SGX OWNER EPOCH	Y← CPUSVN Register;	R← Req.ISV SVN;	SECS. ISVID	SECS.IS VEXTPR ODID	SECS.IS VFAMIL YID	SECS. MRENCLAVE	SECS. MRSIGNER	SECS.CO NFIGID	SECS.CO NFIGSVN	Req. KEYID
		R← AttrbMask & SECS.ATTRIBUTES and SECS.MISCSELECT;		R← Req.CPU SVN;									
EINITTOKEN	Yes	Request	Yes	Request	Request	Yes	No	No	No	Yes	No	No	Request
Report	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	No	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Request
Seal	Yes	Request	Yes	Request	Request	Request	Request	Request	Request	Request	Request	Request	Request
Provisioning	Yes	Request	No	Request	Request	Yes	No	No	No	Yes	No	No	Yes
Provisioning Seal	Yes	Request	No	Request	Request	Request	Request	Request	No	Yes	Request	Request	Yes

Keys that permit the specification of a CPU or ISV's code's, or enclave configuration's SVNs have additional requirements. The caller may not request a key for an SVN beyond the current CPU, ISV or enclave configuration's SVN, respectively.

Several keys are access controlled. Access to the Provisioning Key and Provisioning Seal key requires the enclave's ATTRIBUTES.PROVISIONKEY be set. The EINITTOKEN Key requires ATTRIBUTES.EINITTOKEN_KEY be set and SECS.MRSIGNER equal IA32_SGXLEPUBKEYHASH.

Some keys are derived based on a hardcoded PKCS padding constant (352 byte string):

HARDCODED_PKCS1_5_PADDING[15:0] ← 0100H;

HARDCODED_PKCS1_5_PADDING[2655:16] ← SignExtend330Byte(-1); // 330 bytes of 0FFH

HARDCODED_PKCS1_5_PADDING[2815:2656] ← 2004000501020403650148866009060D30313000H;

The error codes are:

Table 40-65. EGETKEY Return Value in RAX

Error Code (see Table 40-4)	Value	Description
No Error	0	EGETKEY successful.
SGX_INVALID_ATTRIBUTE		The KEYREQUEST contains a KEYNAME for which the enclave is not authorized.
SGX_INVALID_CPUSVN		If KEYREQUEST.CPUSVN is an unsupported platforms CPUSVN value.
SGX_INVALID_ISVSVN		If KEYREQUEST software SVN (ISVSVN or CONFIGSVN) is greater than the enclave's corresponding SVN.
SGX_INVALID_KEYNAME		If KEYREQUEST.KEYNAME is an unsupported value.

Concurrency Restrictions

Table 40-66. Base Concurrency Restrictions of EGETKEY

Leaf	Parameter	Base Concurrency Restrictions		
		Access	On Conflict	SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification
EGETKEY	KEYREQUEST [DS:RBX]	Concurrent		
	OUTPUTDATA [DS:RCX]	Concurrent		

Table 40-67. Additional Concurrency Restrictions of EGETKEY

Leaf	Parameter	Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
		vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRACK, ETRACKC	
		Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
EGETKEY	KEYREQUEST [DS:RBX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
	OUTPUTDATA [DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	

Operation

Temp Variables in EGETKEY Operational Flow

Name	Type	Size (Bits)	Description
TMP_CURRENTSECS			Address of the SECS for the currently executing enclave.
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES			Temp space for key derivation.
TMP_ATTRIBUTES		128	Temp Space for the calculation of the sealable Attributes.
TMP_ISVEXTPRODID		16 bytes	Temp Space for ISVEXTPRODID.
TMP_ISVPRODID		2 bytes	Temp Space for ISVPRODID.
TMP_ISVFAMILYID		16 bytes	Temp Space for ISVFAMILYID.
TMP_CONFIGID		64 bytes	Temp Space for CONFIGID.
TMP_CONFIGSVN		2 bytes	Temp Space for CONFIGSVN.
TMP_OUTPUTKEY		128	Temp Space for the calculation of the key.

(* Make sure KEYREQUEST is properly aligned and inside the current enclave *)

IF ((DS:RBX is not 512Byte aligned) or (DS:RBX is within CR_ELRANGE))
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* Make sure DS:RBX is an EPC address and the EPC page is valid *)

IF ((DS:RBX does not resolve to an EPC address) or (EPCM(DS:RBX).VALID = 0))
 THEN #PF(DS:RBX); FI;

IF (EPCM(DS:RBX).BLOCKED = 1)

THEN #PF(DS:RBX); FI;

(* Check page parameters for correctness *)

IF ((EPCM(DS:RBX).PT ≠ PT_REG) or (EPCM(DS:RBX).ENCLAVESECS ≠ CR_ACTIVE_SECS) or (EPCM(DS:RBX).PENDING = 1) or
 (EPCM(DS:RBX).MODIFIED = 1) or (EPCM(DS:RBX).ENCLAVEADDRESS ≠ (DS:RBX & ~0FFFH)) or (EPCM(DS:RBX).R = 0))
 THEN #PF(DS:RBX);

FI;

(* Make sure OUTPUTDATA is properly aligned and inside the current enclave *)

IF ((DS:RCX is not 16Byte aligned) or (DS:RCX is not within CR_ELRANGE))
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* Make sure DS:RCX is an EPC address and the EPC page is valid *)

IF ((DS:RCX does not resolve to an EPC address) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID = 0))

```

THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).BLOCKED = 1)
  THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

(* Check page parameters for correctness *)
IF ( (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT ≠ PT_REG) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).ENCLAVESECS ≠ CR_ACTIVE_SECS) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).PENDING = 1) or
  (EPCM(DS:RCX).MODIFIED = 1) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).ENCLAVEADDRESS ≠ (DS:RCX & ~0FFFH) ) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).W = 0) )
  THEN #PF(DS:RCX);
FI;

(* Verify RESERVED spaces in KEYREQUEST are valid *)
IF ( (DS:RBX).RESERVED ≠ 0) or (DS:RBX.KEYPOLICY.RESERVED ≠ 0) )
  THEN #GP(0); FI;

TMP_CURRENTSECS ← CR_ACTIVE_SECS;

(* Verify that CONFIGSVN & New Policy bits are not used if KSS is not enabled *)
IF ((TMP_CURRENTSECS.ATTRIBUTES.KSS == 0) AND ((DS:RBX.KEYPOLICY & 0x003C ≠ 0) OR (DS:RBX.CONFIGSVN > 0)))
  THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* Determine which enclave attributes that must be included in the key. Attributes that must always be include INIT & DEBUG *)
REQUIRED_SEALING_MASK[127:0] ← 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000003H;
TMP_ATTRIBUTES ← (DS:RBX.ATTRIBUTEMASK | REQUIRED_SEALING_MASK) & TMP_CURRENTSECS.ATTRIBUTES;

(* Compute MISCSELECT fields to be included *)
TMP_MISCSELECT ← DS:RBX.MISCMASK & TMP_CURRENTSECS.MISCSELECT

CASE (DS:RBX.KEYNAME)
  SEAL_KEY:
    IF (DS:RBX.CPUSVN is beyond current CPU configuration)
      THEN
        RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
        RAX ← SGX_INVALID_CPUSVN;
        GOTO EXIT;
    FI;
    IF (DS:RBX.ISVSVN > TMP_CURRENTSECS.ISVSVN)
      THEN
        RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
        RAX ← SGX_INVALID_ISVSVN;
        GOTO EXIT;
    FI;
    IF (DS:RBX.CONFIGSVN > TMP_CURRENTSECS.CONFIGSVN)
      THEN
        RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
        RAX ← SGX_INVALID_ISVSVN;
        GOTO EXIT;
    FI;

    (*Include enclave identity?*)
    TMP_MRENCLAVE ← 0;
    IF (DS:RBX.KEYPOLICY.MRENCLAVE = 1)
      THEN TMP_MRENCLAVE ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.MRENCLAVE;
    FI;

    (*Include enclave author?*)

```

SGX INSTRUCTION REFERENCES

```
TMP_MRSIGNER ← 0;
IF (DS:RBX.KEYPOLICY.MRSIGNER = 1)
    THEN TMP_MRSIGNER ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.MRSIGNER;
FI;

(* Include enclave product family ID? *)
TMP_ISVFAMILYID ← 0;
IF (DS:RBX.KEYPOLICY.ISVFAMILYID = 1)
    THEN TMP_ISVFAMILYID ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.ISVFAMILYID;
FI;

(* Include enclave product ID? *)
TMP_ISVPRODID ← 0;
IF (DS:RBX.KEYPOLICY.NOISVPRODID = 0)
    TMP_ISVPRODID ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.ISVPRODID;
FI;

(* Include enclave Config ID? *)
TMP_CONFIGID ← 0;
TMP_CONFIGSVN ← 0;
IF (DS:RBX.KEYPOLICY.CONFIGID = 1)
    TMP_CONFIGID ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.CONFIGID;
    TMP_CONFIGSVN ← DS:RBX.CONFIGSVN;
FI;

(* Include enclave extended product ID? *)
TMP_ISVEXTPRODID ← 0;
IF (DS:RBX.KEYPOLICY.ISVEXTPRODID = 1 )
    TMP_ISVEXTPRODID ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.ISVEXTPRODID;
FI;

//Determine values key is based on
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.KEYNAME ← SEAL_KEY;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ISVFAMILYID ← TMP_ISVFAMILYID;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ISVEXTPRODID ← TMP_ISVEXTPRODID;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ISVPRODID ← TMP_ISVPRODID;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ISVSVN ← DS:RBX.ISVSVN;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.SGXOWNEREPOCH ← CR_SGXOWNEREPOCH;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ATTRIBUTES ← TMP_ATTRIBUTES;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ATTRIBUTESMASK ← DS:RBX.ATTRIBUTEMASK;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.MRENCLAVE ← TMP_MRENCLAVE;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.MRSIGNER ← TMP_MRSIGNER;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.KEYID ← DS:RBX.KEYID;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.SEAL_KEY_FUSES ← CR_SEAL_FUSES;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.CPUSVN ← DS:RBX.CPUSVN;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.PADDING ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.PADDING;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.MISCSELECT ← TMP_MISCSELECT;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.MISCMASK ← ~DS:RBX.MISCMASK;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.KEYPOLICY ← DS:RBX.KEYPOLICY;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.CONFIGID ← TMP_CONFIGID;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.CONFIGSVN ← TMP_CONFIGSVN;
BREAK;
REPORT_KEY:
//Determine values key is based on
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.KEYNAME ← REPORT_KEY;
```



```

TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ISVFAMILYID ← 0;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ISVEXTPRODID ← 0;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ISVPRODID ← 0;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ISVSVN ← 0;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.SGXOWNEREPOCH ← CR_SGXOWNEREPOCH;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ATTRIBUTES ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.ATTRIBUTES;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ATTRIBUTESMASK ← 0;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.MRENCLAVE ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.MRENCLAVE;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.MRSIGNER ← 0;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.KEYID ← DS:RBX.KEYID;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.SEAL_KEY_FUSES ← CR_SEAL_FUSES;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.CPUSVN ← CR_CPUSVN;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.PADDING ← HARDCODED_PKCS1_5_PADDING;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.MISCSELECT ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.MISCSELECT;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.MISCMASK ← 0;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.KEYPOLICY ← 0;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.CONFIGID ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.CONFIGID;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.CONFIGSVN ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.CONFIGSVN;
BREAK;

```

EINITTOKEN_KEY:

```

(* Check ENCLAVE has LAUNCH capability *)
IF (TMP_CURRENTSECS.ATTRIBUTES.LAUNCHKEY = 0)
    THEN
        RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
        RAX ← SGX_INVALID_ATTRIBUTE;
        GOTO EXIT;
FI;
IF (DS:RBX.CPUSVN is beyond current CPU configuration)
    THEN
        RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
        RAX ← SGX_INVALID_CPUSVN;
        GOTO EXIT;
FI;
IF (DS:RBX.ISVSVN > TMP_CURRENTSECS.ISVSVN)
    THEN
        RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
        RAX ← SGX_INVALID_ISVSVN;
        GOTO EXIT;

```

```

FI;
(* Determine values key is based on *)
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.KEYNAME ← EINITTOKEN_KEY;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ISVFAMILYID ← 0;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ISVEXTPRODID ← 0;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ISVPRODID ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.ISVPRODID;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ISVSVN ← DS:RBX.ISVSVN;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.SGXOWNEREPOCH ← CR_SGXOWNEREPOCH;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ATTRIBUTES ← TMP_ATTRIBUTES;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ATTRIBUTESMASK ← 0;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.MRENCLAVE ← 0;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.MRSIGNER ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.MRSIGNER;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.KEYID ← DS:RBX.KEYID;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.SEAL_KEY_FUSES ← CR_SEAL_FUSES;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.CPUSVN ← DS:RBX.CPUSVN;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.PADDING ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.PADDING;

```

```

    TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.MISCSELECT ← TMP_MISCSELECT;
    TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.MISCMASK ← 0;
    TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.KEYPOLICY ← 0;
    TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.CONFIGID ← 0;
    TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.CONFIGSVN ← 0;
    BREAK;
PROVISION_KEY:
(* Check ENCLAVE has PROVISIONING capability *)
    IF (TMP_CURRENTSECS.ATTRIBUTES.PROVISIONKEY = 0)
        THEN
            RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
            RAX ← SGX_INVALID_ATTRIBUTE;
            GOTO EXIT;
    FI;
    IF (DS:RBX.CPUSVN is beyond current CPU configuration)
        THEN
            RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
            RAX ← SGX_INVALID_CPUSVN;
            GOTO EXIT;
    FI;
    IF (DS:RBX.ISVSVN > TMP_CURRENTSECS.ISVSVN)
        THEN
            RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
            RAX ← SGX_INVALID_ISVSVN;
            GOTO EXIT;
    FI;
(* Determine values key is based on *)
    TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.KEYNAME ← PROVISION_KEY;
    TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ISVFAMILYID ← 0;
    TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ISVEXTPRODID ← 0;
    TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ISVPRODID ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.ISVPRODID;
    TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ISVSVN ← DS:RBX.ISVSVN;
    TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.SGXOWNEREPOCH ← 0;
    TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ATTRIBUTES ← TMP_ATTRIBUTES;
    TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ATTRIBUTESMASK ← DS:RBX.ATTRIBUTEMASK;
    TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.MRENCLAVE ← 0;
    TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.MRSIGNER ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.MRSIGNER;
    TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.KEYID ← 0;
    TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.SEAL_KEY_FUSES ← 0;
    TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.CPUSVN ← DS:RBX.CPUSVN;
    TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.PADDING ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.PADDING;
    TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.MISCSELECT ← TMP_MISCSELECT;
    TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.MISCMASK ← ~DS:RBX.MISCMASK;
    TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.KEYPOLICY ← 0;
    TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.CONFIGID ← 0;
    BREAK;
PROVISION_SEAL_KEY:
(* Check ENCLAVE has PROVISIONING capability *)
    IF (TMP_CURRENTSECS.ATTRIBUTES.PROVISIONKEY = 0)
        THEN
            RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
            RAX ← SGX_INVALID_ATTRIBUTE;
            GOTO EXIT;
    FI;

```

```

IF (DS:RBX.CPUSVN is beyond current CPU configuration)
  THEN
    RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
    RAX ← SGX_INVALID_CPUSVN;
    GOTO EXIT;
FI;
IF (DS:RBX.ISVSVN > TMP_CURRENTSECS.ISVSVN)
  THEN
    RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
    RAX ← SGX_INVALID_ISVSVN;
    GOTO EXIT;
FI;
(* Include enclave product family ID? *)
TMP_ISVFAMILYID ← 0;
IF (DS:RBX.KEYPOLICY.ISVFAMILYID = 1)
  THEN TMP_ISVFAMILYID ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.ISVFAMILYID;
FI;

(* Include enclave product ID? *)
TMP_ISVPRODID ← 0;
IF (DS:RBX.KEYPOLICY.NOISVPRODID = 0)
  TMP_ISVPRODID ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.ISVPRODID;
FI;

(* Include enclave Config ID? *)
TMP_CONFIGID ← 0;
TMP_CONFIGSVN ← 0;
IF (DS:RBX.KEYPOLICY.CONFIGID = 1)
  TMP_CONFIGID ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.CONFIGID;
  TMP_CONFIGSVN ← DS:RBX.CONFIGSVN;
FI;

(* Include enclave extended product ID? *)
TMP_ISVEXTPRODID ← 0;
IF (DS:RBX.KEYPOLICY.ISVEXTPRODID = 1)
  TMP_ISVEXTPRODID ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.ISVEXTPRODID;
FI;

(* Determine values key is based on *)
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.KEYNAME ← PROVISION_SEAL_KEY;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ISVFAMILYID ← TMP_ISVFAMILYID;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ISVEXTPRODID ← TMP_ISVEXTPRODID;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ISVPRODID ← TMP_ISVPRODID;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ISVSVN ← DS:RBX.ISVSVN;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.SGXOWNEREPOCH ← 0;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ATTRIBUTES ← TMP_ATTRIBUTES;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ATTRIBUTESMASK ← DS:RBX.ATTRIBUTEMASK;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.MRENCLAVE ← 0;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.MRSIGNER ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.MRSIGNER;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.KEYID ← 0;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.SEAL_KEY_FUSES ← CR_SEAL_FUSES;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.CPUSVN ← DS:RBX.CPUSVN;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.PADDING ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.PADDING;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.MISCSELECT ← TMP_MISCSELECT;

```

```

TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.MISCMASK ← ~DS:RBX.MISCMASK;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.KEYPOLICY ← DS:RBX.KEYPOLICY;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.CONFIGID ← TMP_CONFIGID;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.CONFIGSVN ← TMP_CONFIGSVN;
BREAK;

```

DEFAULT:

```

(* The value of KEYNAME is invalid *)
RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
RAX ← SGX_INVALID_KEYNAME;
GOTO EXIT;

```

ESAC;

(* Calculate the final derived key and output to the address in RCX *)

```

TMP_OUTPUTKEY ← derivekey(TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES);
DS:RCX[15:0] ← TMP_OUTPUTKEY;
RAX ← 0;
RFLAGS.ZF ← 0;

```

EXIT:

```

RFLAGS.CF ← 0;
RFLAGS.PF ← 0;
RFLAGS.AF ← 0;
RFLAGS.OF ← 0;
RFLAGS.SF ← 0;

```

Flags Affected

ZF is cleared if successful, otherwise ZF is set. CF, PF, AF, OF, SF are cleared.

Protected Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	<p>If executed outside an enclave.</p> <p>If a memory operand effective address is outside the current enclave.</p> <p>If an effective address is not properly aligned.</p> <p>If an effective address is outside the DS segment limit.</p> <p>If KEYREQUEST format is invalid.</p>
#PF(error code)	If a page fault occurs in accessing memory.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	<p>If executed outside an enclave.</p> <p>If a memory operand effective address is outside the current enclave.</p> <p>If an effective address is not properly aligned.</p> <p>If an effective address is not canonical.</p> <p>If KEYREQUEST format is invalid.</p>
#PF(error code)	If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.

EMODPE—Extend an EPC Page Permissions

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EAX = 06H ENCLU[EMODPE]	IR	V/V	SGX2	This leaf function extends the access rights of an existing EPC page.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	EAX	RBX	RCX
IR	EMODPE (In)	Address of a SECINFO (In)	Address of the destination EPC page (In)

Description

This leaf function extends the access rights associated with an existing EPC page in the running enclave. THE RWX bits of the SECINFO parameter are treated as a permissions mask; supplying a value that does not extend the page permissions will have no effect. This instruction leaf can only be executed when inside the enclave.

RBX contains the effective address of a SECINFO structure while RCX contains the effective address of an EPC page. The table below provides additional information on the memory parameter of the EMODPE leaf function.

EMODPE Memory Parameter Semantics

SECINFO	EPCPAGE
Read access permitted by Non Enclave	Read access permitted by Enclave

The instruction faults if any of the following:

EMODPE Faulting Conditions

The operands are not properly aligned.	If security attributes of the SECINFO page make the page inaccessible.
The EPC page is locked by another thread.	RBX does not contain an effective address in an EPC page in the running enclave.
The EPC page is not valid.	RCX does not contain an effective address of an EPC page in the running enclave.
SECINFO contains an invalid request.	

Concurrency Restrictions

Table 40-68. Base Concurrency Restrictions of EMODPE

Leaf	Parameter	Base Concurrency Restrictions		
		Access	On Conflict	SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification
EMODPE	Target [DS:RCX]	Concurrent		
	SECINFO [DS:RBX]	Concurrent		

Table 40-69. Additional Concurrency Restrictions of EMODPE

Leaf	Parameter	Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
		vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRACK, ETRACKC	
		Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
EMODPE	Target [DS:RCX]	Exclusive	#GP	Concurrent		Concurrent	
	SECINFO [DS:RBX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	

Operation

Temp Variables in EMODPE Operational Flow

Name	Type	Size (bits)	Description
SCRATCH_SECINFO	SECINFO	512	Scratch storage for holding the contents of DS:RBX.

IF (DS:RBX is not 64Byte Aligned)
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:RCX is not 4KByte Aligned)
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF ((DS:RBX is not within CR_ELRANGE) or (DS:RCX is not within CR_ELRANGE))
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:RBX does not resolve within an EPC)
 THEN #PF(DS:RBX); FI;

IF (DS:RCX does not resolve within an EPC)
 THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

IF ((EPCM(DS:RBX).VALID = 0) or (EPCM(DS:RBX).R = 0) or (EPCM(DS:RBX).PENDING ≠ 0) or (EPCM(DS:RBX).MODIFIED ≠ 0) or
 (EPCM(DS:RBX).BLOCKED ≠ 0) or (EPCM(DS:RBX).PT ≠ PT_REG) or (EPCM(DS:RBX).ENCLAVESECS ≠ CR_ACTIVE_SECS) or
 (EPCM(DS:RBX).ENCLAVEADDRESS ≠ (DS:RBX & ~0xFFF)))
 THEN #PF(DS:RBX); FI;

SCRATCH_SECINFO ← DS:RBX;

(* Check for misconfigured SECINFO flags*)
 IF (SCRATCH_SECINFO reserved fields are not zero)
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* Check security attributes of the EPC page *)
 IF ((EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID = 0) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).PENDING ≠ 0) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).MODIFIED ≠ 0) or
 (EPCM(DS:RCX).BLOCKED ≠ 0) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT ≠ PT_REG) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).ENCLAVESECS ≠ CR_ACTIVE_SECS))
 THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

(* Check the EPC page for concurrency *)
 IF (EPC page in use by another SGX2 instruction)
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* Re-Check security attributes of the EPC page *)
 IF ((EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID = 0) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).PENDING ≠ 0) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).MODIFIED ≠ 0) or
 (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT ≠ PT_REG) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).ENCLAVESECS ≠ CR_ACTIVE_SECS) or
 (EPCM(DS:RCX).ENCLAVEADDRESS ≠ DS:RCX))
 THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;

(* Check for misconfigured SECINFO flags*)
 IF ((EPCM(DS:RCX).R = 0) and (SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.R = 0) and (SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.W ≠ 0))
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

(* Update EPCM permissions *)

EPCM(DS:RCX).R ← EPCM(DS:RCX).R | SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.R;
 EPCM(DS:RCX).W ← EPCM(DS:RCX).W | SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.W;
 EPCM(DS:RCX).X ← EPCM(DS:RCX).X | SCRATCH_SECINFO.FLAGS.X;

Flags Affected

None

Protected Mode Exceptions

#GP(0) If executed outside an enclave.
 If a memory operand effective address is outside the DS segment limit.
 If a memory operand is not properly aligned.
 If a memory operand is locked.
 #PF(error code) If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#GP(0) If executed outside an enclave.
 If a memory operand is non-canonical form.
 If a memory operand is not properly aligned.
 If a memory operand is locked.
 #PF(error code) If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.

EReport—Create a Cryptographic Report of the Enclave

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EAX = 00H ENCLU[EReport]	IR	V/V	SGX1	This leaf function creates a cryptographic report of the enclave.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	EAX	RBX	RCX	RDX
IR	EReport (In)	Address of TARGETINFO (In)	Address of REPORTDATA (In)	Address where the REPORT is written to in an OUTPUTDATA (In)

Description

This leaf function creates a cryptographic REPORT that describes the contents of the enclave. This instruction leaf can only be executed when inside the enclave. The cryptographic report can be used by other enclaves to determine that the enclave is running on the same platform.

RBX contains the effective address of the MRENCLAVE value of the enclave that will authenticate the REPORT output, using the REPORT key delivered by EGETKEY command for that enclave. RCX contains the effective address of a 64-byte REPORTDATA structure, which allows the caller of the instruction to associate data with the enclave from which the instruction is called. RDX contains the address where the REPORT will be output by the instruction.

EReport Memory Parameter Semantics

TARGETINFO	REPORTDATA	OUTPUTDATA
Read access by Enclave	Read access by Enclave	Read/Write access by Enclave

This instruction leaf perform the following:

1. Validate the 3 operands (RBX, RCX, RDX) are inside the enclave.
2. Compute a report key for the target enclave, as indicated by the value located in RBX(TARGETINFO).
3. Assemble the enclave SECS data to complete the REPORT structure (including the data provided using the RCX (REPORTDATA) operand).
4. Computes a cryptographic hash over REPORT structure.
5. Add the computed hash to the REPORT structure.
6. Output the completed REPORT structure to the address in RDX (OUTPUTDATA).

The instruction fails if the operands are not properly aligned.

CR_REPORT_KEYID, used to provide key wearout protection, is populated with a statistically unique value on boot of the platform by a trusted entity within the SGX TCB.

The instruction faults if any of the following:

EReport Faulting Conditions

An effective address not properly aligned.	An memory address does not resolve in an EPC page.
If accessing an invalid EPC page.	If the EPC page is blocked.
May page fault.	

Concurrency Restrictions

Table 40-70. Base Concurrency Restrictions of EREPORT

Leaf	Parameter	Base Concurrency Restrictions		
		Access	On Conflict	SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification
EREPORT	TARGETINFO [DS:RBX]	Concurrent		
	REPORTDATA [DS:RCX]	Concurrent		
	OUTPUTDATA [DS:RDX]	Concurrent		

Table 40-71. Additional Concurrency Restrictions of EREPORT

Leaf	Parameter	Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
		vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRACK, ETRACKC	
		Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
EREPORT	TARGETINFO [DS:RBX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
	REPORTDATA [DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
	OUTPUTDATA [DS:RDX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	

Operation

Temp Variables in EREPORT Operational Flow

Name	Type	Size (bits)	Description
TMP_ATTRIBUTES		32	Physical address of SECS of the enclave to which source operand belongs.
TMP_CURRENTSECS			Address of the SECS for the currently executing enclave.
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES			Temp space for key derivation.
TMP_REPORTKEY		128	REPORTKEY generated by the instruction.
TMP_REPORT		3712	

TMP_MODE64 ← ((IA32_EFER.LMA = 1) && (CS.L = 1));

(* Address verification for TARGETINFO (RBX) *)

IF ((DS:RBX is not 512Byte Aligned) or (DS:RBX is not within CR_ELRange))
THEN #GP(0); FI;

IF (DS:RBX does not resolve within an EPC)
THEN #PF(DS:RBX); FI;

IF (EPCM(DS:RBX).VALID = 0)
THEN #PF(DS:RBX); FI;

IF (EPCM(DS:RBX).BLOCKED = 1)
THEN #PF(DS:RBX); FI;

(* Check page parameters for correctness *)

IF ((EPCM(DS:RBX).PT ≠ PT_REG) or (EPCM(DS:RBX).ENCLAVESECS ≠ CR_ACTIVE_SECS) or (EPCM(DS:RBX).PENDING = 1) or
(EPCM(DS:RBX).MODIFIED = 1) or (EPCM(DS:RBX).ENCLAVEADDRESS ≠ (DS:RBX & ~0FFFH)) or (EPCM(DS:RBX).R = 0))

SGX INSTRUCTION REFERENCES

```
THEN #PF(DS:RBX);  
FI;
```

```
(* Address verification for REPORTDATA (RCX) *)  
IF ( (DS:RCX is not 128Byte Aligned) or (DS:RCX is not within CR_ELRANGE) )  
    THEN #GP(0); FI;
```

```
IF (DS:RCX does not resolve within an EPC)  
    THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;
```

```
IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID = 0)  
    THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;
```

```
IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).BLOCKED = 1)  
    THEN #PF(DS:RCX); FI;
```

```
(* Check page parameters for correctness *)  
IF ( (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT ≠ PT_REG) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).ENCLAVESECS ≠ CR_ACTIVE_SECS) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).PENDING = 1) or  
    (EPCM(DS:RCX).MODIFIED = 1) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).ENCLAVEADDRESS ≠ (DS:RCX & ~OFFFH) ) or (EPCM(DS:RCX).R = 0) )  
    THEN #PF(DS:RCX);  
FI;
```

```
(* Address verification for OUTPUTDATA (RDX) *)  
IF ( (DS:RDX is not 512Byte Aligned) or (DS:RDX is not within CR_ELRANGE) )  
    THEN #GP(0); FI;
```

```
IF (DS:RDX does not resolve within an EPC)  
    THEN #PF(DS:RDX); FI;
```

```
IF (EPCM(DS:RDX).VALID = 0)  
    THEN #PF(DS:RDX); FI;
```

```
IF (EPCM(DS:RDX).BLOCKED = 1)  
    THEN #PF(DS:RDX); FI;
```

```
(* Check page parameters for correctness *)  
IF ( (EPCM(DS:RDX).PT ≠ PT_REG) or (EPCM(DS:RDX).ENCLAVESECS ≠ CR_ACTIVE_SECS) or (EPCM(DS:RDX).PENDING = 1) or  
    (EPCM(DS:RDX).MODIFIED = 1) or (EPCM(DS:RDX).ENCLAVEADDRESS ≠ (DS:RDX & ~OFFFH) ) or (EPCM(DS:RDX).W = 0) )  
    THEN #PF(DS:RDX);  
FI;
```

```
(* REPORT MAC needs to be computed over data which cannot be modified *)  
TMP_REPORT.CPUSVN ← CR_CPUSVN;  
TMP_REPORT.ISVFAMILYID ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.ISVFAMILYID;  
TMP_REPORT.ISVEXTPRODID ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.ISVEXTPRODID;  
TMP_REPORT.ISVPRODID ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.ISVPRODID;  
TMP_REPORT.ISVSVN ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.ISVSVN;  
TMP_REPORT.ATTRIBUTES ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.ATTRIBUTES;  
TMP_REPORT.REPORTDATA ← DS:RCX[511:0];  
TMP_REPORT.MRENCLAVE ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.MRENCLAVE;  
TMP_REPORT.MRSIGNER ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.MRSIGNER;  
TMP_REPORT.MRRESERVED ← 0;  
TMP_REPORT.KEYID[255:0] ← CR_REPORT_KEYID;  
TMP_REPORT.MISCSELECT ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.MISCSELECT;
```

```
TMP_REPORT.CONFIGID ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.CONFIGID;
TMP_REPORT.CONFIGSVN ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.CONFIGSVN;
```

(* Derive the report key *)

```
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.KEYNAME ← REPORT_KEY;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ISVFAMILYID ← 0;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ISVEXTPRODID ← 0;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ISVPRODID ← 0;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ISVSVN ← 0;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.SGXOWNEREPOCH ← CR_SGXOWNEREPOCH;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ATTRIBUTES ← DS:RBX.ATTRIBUTES;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.ATTRIBUTESMASK ← 0;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.MRENCLAVE ← DS:RBX.MEASUREMENT;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.MRSIGNER ← 0;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.KEYID ← TMP_REPORT.KEYID;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.SEAL_KEY_FUSES ← CR_SEAL_FUSES;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.CPUSVN ← CR_CPUSVN;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.PADDING ← TMP_CURRENTSECS.PADDING;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.MISCSELECT ← DS:RBX.MISCSELECT;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.MISCMASK ← 0;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.KEYPOLICY ← 0;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.CONFIGID ← DS:RBX.CONFIGID;
TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES.CONFIGSVN ← DS:RBX.CONFIGSVN;
```

(* Calculate the derived key*)

```
TMP_REPORTKEY ← derive_key(TMP_KEYDEPENDENCIES);
```

(* call cryptographic CMAC function, CMAC data are not including MAC&KEYID *)

```
TMP_REPORT.MAC ← cmac(TMP_REPORTKEY, TMP_REPORT[3071:0]);
DS:RDX[3455:0] ← TMP_REPORT;
```

Flags Affected

None

Protected Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	If executed outside an enclave. If the address in RCS is outside the DS segment limit. If a memory operand is not properly aligned. If a memory operand is not in the current enclave.
#PF(error code)	If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	If executed outside an enclave. If RCX is non-canonical form. If a memory operand is not properly aligned. If a memory operand is not in the current enclave.
#PF(error code)	If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.

ERESUME—Re-Enters an Enclave

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EAX = 03H ENCLU[ERESUME]	IR	V/V	SGX1	This leaf function is used to re-enter an enclave after an interrupt.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	RAX	RBX	RCX
IR	ERESUME (In)	Address of a TCS (In)	Address of AEP (In)

Description

The ENCLU[ERESUME] instruction resumes execution of an enclave that was interrupted due to an exception or interrupt, using the machine state previously stored in the SSA.

ERESUME Memory Parameter Semantics

TCS
Enclave read/write access

The instruction faults if any of the following:

Address in RBX is not properly aligned.	Any TCS.FLAGS's must-be-zero bit is not zero.
TCS pointed to by RBX is not valid or available or locked.	Current 32/64 mode does not match the enclave mode in SECS.ATTRIBUTES.MODE64.
The SECS is in use by another enclave.	Either of TCS-specified FS and GS segment is not a subset of the current DS segment.
Any one of DS, ES, CS, SS is not zero.	If XSAVE available, CR4.OSXSAVE = 0, but SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM ≠ 3.
CR4.OSFXSR ≠ 1.	If CR4.OSXSAVE = 1, SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM is not a subset of XCR0.
Offsets 520-535 of the XSAVE area not 0.	The bit vector stored at offset 512 of the XSAVE area must be a subset of SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM.
The SSA frame is not valid or in use.	

The following operations are performed by ERESUME:

- RSP and RBP are saved in the current SSA frame on EENTER and are automatically restored on EEXIT or an asynchronous exit due to any Interrupt event.
- The AEP contained in RCX is stored into the TCS for use by AEXs. FS and GS (including hidden portions) are saved and new values are constructed using TCS.OFSBASE/GSBASE (32 and 64-bit mode) and TCS.OFSLIMIT/GSLIMIT (32-bit mode only). The resulting segments must be a subset of the DS segment.
- If CR4.OSXSAVE == 1, XCR0 is saved and replaced by SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM. The effect of RFLAGS.TF depends on whether the enclave entry is opt-in or opt-out (see Section 42.1.2):
 - On opt-out entry, TF is saved and cleared (it is restored on EEXIT or AEX). Any attempt to set TF via a POPF instruction while inside the enclave clears TF (see Section 42.2.5).
 - On opt-in entry, a single-step debug exception is pending on the instruction boundary immediately after EENTER (see Section 42.2.3).
- All code breakpoints that do not overlap with ELRANGE are also suppressed. If the entry is an opt-out entry, all code and data breakpoints that overlap with the ELRANGE are suppressed.

- On opt-out entry, a number of performance monitoring counters and behaviors are modified or suppressed (see Section 42.2.3):
 - All performance monitoring activity on the current thread is suppressed except for incrementing and firing of FIXED_CTR1 and FIXED_CTR2.
 - PEBS is suppressed.
 - AnyThread counting on other threads is demoted to MyThread mode and IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS[60] on that thread is set.
 - If the opt-out entry on a hardware thread results in suppression of any performance monitoring, then the processor sets IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS[60] and IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS[63].

Concurrency Restrictions

Table 40-72. Base Concurrency Restrictions of ERESUME

Leaf	Parameter	Base Concurrency Restrictions		
		Access	On Conflict	SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification
ERESUME	TCS [DS:RBX]	Shared	#GP	

Table 40-73. Additional Concurrency Restrictions of ERESUME

Leaf	Parameter	Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
		vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRACK, ETRACKC	
		Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
ERESUME	TCS [DS:RBX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	

Operation

Temp Variables in ERESUME Operational Flow

Name	Type	Size	Description
TMP_FSBASE	Effective Address	32/64	Proposed base address for FS segment.
TMP_GSBASE	Effective Address	32/64	Proposed base address for GS segment.
TMP_FSLIMIT	Effective Address	32/64	Highest legal address in proposed FS segment.
TMP_GSLIMIT	Effective Address	32/64	Highest legal address in proposed GS segment.
TMP_TARGET	Effective Address	32/64	Address of first instruction inside enclave at which execution is to resume.
TMP_SECS	Effective Address	32/64	Physical address of SECS for this enclave.
TMP_SSA	Effective Address	32/64	Address of current SSA frame.
TMP_XSIZE	integer	64	Size of XSAVE area based on SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM.
TMP_SSA_PAGE	Effective Address	32/64	Pointer used to iterate over the SSA pages in the current frame.
TMP_GPR	Effective Address	32/64	Address of the GPR area within the current SSA frame.
TMP_BRANCH_RECORD	LBR Record		From/to addresses to be pushed onto the LBR stack.

TMP_MODE64 ← ((IA32_EFER.LMA = 1) && (CS.L = 1));

(* Make sure DS is usable, expand up *)

IF (TMP_MODE64 = 0 and (DS not usable or ((DS[S] = 1) and (DS[bit 11] = 0) and DS[bit 10] = 1)))
 THEN #GP(0); FI;

SGX INSTRUCTION REFERENCES

(* Check that CS, SS, DS, ES.base is 0 *)

```
IF (TMP_MODE64 = 0)
  THEN
    IF(CS.base ≠ 0 or DS.base ≠ 0) #GP(0); FI;
    IF(ES.usable and ES.base ≠ 0) #GP(0); FI;
    IF(SS.usable and SS.base ≠ 0) #GP(0); FI;
    IF(SS.usable and SS.B = 0) #GP(0); FI;
FI;
```

```
IF (DS:RBX is not 4KByte Aligned)
  THEN #GP(0); FI;
```

```
IF (DS:RBX does not resolve within an EPC)
  THEN #PF(DS:RBX); FI;
```

(* Check AEP is canonical*)

```
IF (TMP_MODE64 = 1 and (CS:RCX is not canonical) )
  THEN #GP(0); FI;
```

(* Check concurrency of TCS operation*)

```
IF (Other Intel SGX instructions is operating on TCS)
  THEN #GP(0); FI;
```

(* TCS verification *)

```
IF (EPCM(DS:RBX).VALID = 0)
  THEN #PF(DS:RBX); FI;
```

```
IF (EPCM(DS:RBX).BLOCKED = 1)
  THEN #PF(DS:RBX); FI;
```

```
IF ((EPCM(DS:RBX).PENDING = 1) or (EPCM(DS:RBX).MODIFIED = 1))
  THEN #PF(DS:RBX); FI;
```

```
IF ( (EPCM(DS:RBX).ENCLAVEADDRESS ≠ DS:RBX) or (EPCM(DS:RBX).PT ≠ PT_TCS) )
  THEN #PF(DS:RBX); FI;
```

```
IF ( (DS:RBX).OSSA is not 4KByte Aligned)
  THEN #GP(0); FI;
```

(* Check proposed FS and GS *)

```
IF ( ( (DS:RBX).OFSBASE is not 4KByte Aligned) or ( (DS:RBX).OGSBASE is not 4KByte Aligned) )
  THEN #GP(0); FI;
```

(* Get the SECS for the enclave in which the TCS resides *)

```
TMP_SECS ← Address of SECS for TCS;
```

(* Make sure that the FLAGS field in the TCS does not have any reserved bits set *)

```
IF ( ( (DS:RBX).FLAGS & FFFFFFFF00000000H) ≠ 0)
  THEN #GP(0); FI;
```

(* SECS must exist and enclave must have previously been EINITted *)

```
IF (the enclave is not already initialized)
  THEN #GP(0); FI;
```

(* make sure the logical processor's operating mode matches the enclave *)

```
IF ( (TMP_MODE64 ≠ TMP_SECS.ATTRIBUTES.MODE64BIT) )
  THEN #GP(0); FI;
```

```
IF (CR4.OSFXSR = 0)
  THEN #GP(0); FI;
```

(* Check for legal values of SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM *)

```
IF (CR4.OSXSAVE = 0)
  THEN
    IF (TMP_SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM ≠ 03H) THEN #GP(0); FI;
  ELSE
    IF ( (TMP_SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM & XCR0) ≠ TMP_SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM) THEN #GP(0); FI;
  FI;
```

(* Make sure the SSA contains at least one active frame *)

```
IF ( (DS:RBX).CSSA = 0)
  THEN #GP(0); FI;
```

(* Compute linear address of SSA frame *)

```
TMP_SSA ← (DS:RBX).OSSA + TMP_SECS.BASEADDR + 4096 * TMP_SECS.SSAFRAMESIZE * ( (DS:RBX).CSSA - 1);
TMP_XSIZE ← compute_XSAVE_frame_size(TMP_SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM);
```

```
FOR EACH TMP_SSA_PAGE = TMP_SSA to TMP_SSA + TMP_XSIZE
```

```
  (* Check page is read/write accessible *)
```

```
  Check that DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE is read/write accessible;
```

```
  If a fault occurs, release locks, abort and deliver that fault;
```

```
  IF (DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE does not resolve to EPC page)
```

```
    THEN #PF(DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE); FI;
```

```
  IF (EPCM(DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE).VALID = 0)
```

```
    THEN #PF(DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE); FI;
```

```
  IF (EPCM(DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE).BLOCKED = 1)
```

```
    THEN #PF(DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE); FI;
```

```
  IF ((EPCM(DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE).PENDING = 1) or (EPCM(DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE).MODIFIED = 1))
```

```
    THEN #PF(DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE); FI;
```

```
  IF ( ( EPCM(DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE).ENCLAVEADDRESS ≠ DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE) or (EPCM(DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE).PT ≠ PT_REG) or
```

```
    (EPCM(DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE).ENCLAVESECS ≠ EPCM(DS:RBX).ENCLAVESECS) or
```

```
    (EPCM(DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE).R = 0) or (EPCM(DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE).W = 0) )
```

```
    THEN #PF(DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE); FI;
```

```
    CR_XSAVE_PAGE_n ← Physical_Address(DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE);
```

```
ENDFOR
```

(* Compute address of GPR area*)

```
TMP_GPR ← TMP_SSA + 4096 * DS:TMP_SECS.SSAFRAMESIZE - sizeof(GPRSGX_AREA);
```

```
Check that DS:TMP_SSA_PAGE is read/write accessible;
```

```
If a fault occurs, release locks, abort and deliver that fault;
```

```
IF (DS:TMP_GPR does not resolve to EPC page)
```

```
  THEN #PF(DS:TMP_GPR); FI;
```

```
IF (EPCM(DS:TMP_GPR).VALID = 0)
```

```
  THEN #PF(DS:TMP_GPR); FI;
```

```
IF (EPCM(DS:TMP_GPR).BLOCKED = 1)
```

```
  THEN #PF(DS:TMP_GPR); FI;
```

```
IF ((EPCM(DS:TMP_GPR).PENDING = 1) or (EPCM(DS:TMP_GPR).MODIFIED = 1))
```

```
  THEN #PF(DS:TMP_GPR); FI;
```

SGX INSTRUCTION REFERENCES

```
IF ( ( EPCM(DS:TMP_GPR).ENCLAVEADDRESS ≠ DS:TMP_GPR) or (EPCM(DS:TMP_GPR).PT ≠ PT_REG) or
(EPCM(DS:TMP_GPR).ENCLAVESECS ≠ EPCM(DS:RBX).ENCLAVESECS) or
(EPCM(DS:TMP_GPR).R = 0) or (EPCM(DS:TMP_GPR).W = 0) )
THEN #PF(DS:TMP_GPR); FI;
```

```
IF (TMP_MODE64 = 0)
THEN
    IF (TMP_GPR + (GPR_SIZE - 1) is not in DS segment) THEN #GP(0); FI;
FI;
```

```
CR_GPR_PA ← Physical_Address (DS: TMP_GPR);
```

```
TMP_TARGET ← (DS:TMP_GPR).RIP;
IF (TMP_MODE64 = 1)
THEN
    IF (TMP_TARGET is not canonical) THEN #GP(0); FI;
ELSE
    IF (TMP_TARGET > CS limit) THEN #GP(0); FI;
FI;
```

(* Check proposed FS/GS segments fall within DS *)

```
IF (TMP_MODE64 = 0)
THEN
    TMP_FSBASE ← (DS:RBX).OFSBASE + TMP_SECS.BASEADDR;
    TMP_FSLIMIT ← (DS:RBX).OFSBASE + TMP_SECS.BASEADDR + (DS:RBX).FSLIMIT;
    TMP_GSBASE ← (DS:RBX).OGSBASE + TMP_SECS.BASEADDR;
    TMP_GSLIMIT ← (DS:RBX).OGSBASE + TMP_SECS.BASEADDR + (DS:RBX).GSLIMIT;
    (* if FS wrap-around, make sure DS has no holes*)
    IF (TMP_FSLIMIT < TMP_FSBASE)
    THEN
        IF (DS.limit < 4GB) THEN #GP(0); FI;
    ELSE
        IF (TMP_FSLIMIT > DS.limit) THEN #GP(0); FI;
    FI;
    (* if GS wrap-around, make sure DS has no holes*)
    IF (TMP_GSLIMIT < TMP_GSBASE)
    THEN
        IF (DS.limit < 4GB) THEN #GP(0); FI;
    ELSE
        IF (TMP_GSLIMIT > DS.limit) THEN #GP(0); FI;
    FI;
ELSE
    TMP_FSBASE ← DS:TMP_GPR.FSBASE;
    TMP_GSBASE ← DS:TMP_GPR.GSBASE;
    IF ( (TMP_FSBASE is not canonical) or (TMP_GSBASE is not canonical))
    THEN #GP(0); FI;
FI;
```

(* Ensure the enclave is not already active and this thread is the only one using the TCS*)

```
IF (DS:RBX.STATE = ACTIVE)
THEN #GP(0); FI;
```

(* SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM selects the features to be saved. *)

(* CR_XSAVE_PAGE_n: A list of 1 or more physical address of pages that contain the XSAVE area. *)


```
XRSTOR(TMP_MODE64, SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM, CR_XSAVE_PAGE_n);
```

```
IF (XRSTOR failed with #GP)
```

```
  THEN
```

```
    DS:RBX.STATE ← INACTIVE;
```

```
    #GP(0);
```

```
FI;
```

```
CR_ENCLAVE_MODE ← 1;
```

```
CR_ACTIVE_SECS ← TMP_SECS;
```

```
CR_ELRRANGE ← (TMP_SECS.BASEADDR, TMP_SECS.SIZE);
```

```
(* Save state for possible AEXs *)
```

```
CR_TCS_PA ← Physical_Address (DS:RBX);
```

```
CR_TCS_LA ← RBX;
```

```
CR_TCS_LA.AEP ← RCX;
```

```
(* Save the hidden portions of FS and GS *)
```

```
CR_SAVE_FS_selector ← FS.selector;
```

```
CR_SAVE_FS_base ← FS.base;
```

```
CR_SAVE_FS_limit ← FS.limit;
```

```
CR_SAVE_FS_access_rights ← FS.access_rights;
```

```
CR_SAVE_GS_selector ← GS.selector;
```

```
CR_SAVE_GS_base ← GS.base;
```

```
CR_SAVE_GS_limit ← GS.limit;
```

```
CR_SAVE_GS_access_rights ← GS.access_rights;
```

```
RIP ← TMP_TARGET;
```

```
Restore_GPRs from DS:TMP_GPR;
```

```
(*Restore the RFLAGS values from SSA*)
```

```
RFLAGS.CF ← DS:TMP_GPR.RFLAGS.CF;
```

```
RFLAGS.PF ← DS:TMP_GPR.RFLAGS.PF;
```

```
RFLAGS.AF ← DS:TMP_GPR.RFLAGS.AF;
```

```
RFLAGS.ZF ← DS:TMP_GPR.RFLAGS.ZF;
```

```
RFLAGS.SF ← DS:TMP_GPR.RFLAGS.SF;
```

```
RFLAGS.DF ← DS:TMP_GPR.RFLAGS.DF;
```

```
RFLAGS.OF ← DS:TMP_GPR.RFLAGS.OF;
```

```
RFLAGS.NT ← DS:TMP_GPR.RFLAGS.NT;
```

```
RFLAGS.AC ← DS:TMP_GPR.RFLAGS.AC;
```

```
RFLAGS.ID ← DS:TMP_GPR.RFLAGS.ID;
```

```
RFLAGS.RF ← DS:TMP_GPR.RFLAGS.RF;
```

```
RFLAGS.VM ← 0;
```

```
IF (RFLAGS.IOPL = 3)
```

```
  THEN RFLAGS.IF ← DS:TMP_GPR.RFLAGS.IF; FI;
```

```
IF (TCS.FLAGS.OPTIN = 0)
```

```
  THEN RFLAGS.TF ← 0; FI;
```

```
(* If XSAVE is enabled, save XCRO and replace it with SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM*)
```

```
IF (CR4.OSXSAVE = 1)
```

```
  CR_SAVE_XCRO ← XCRO;
```

```
  XCRO ← TMP_SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM;
```

SGX INSTRUCTION REFERENCES

FI;

(* Pop the SSA stack*)
(DS:RBX).CSSA \leftarrow (DS:RBX).CSSA - 1;

(* Do the FS/GS swap *)
FS.base \leftarrow TMP_FSBASE;
FS.limit \leftarrow DS:RBX.FSLIMIT;
FS.type \leftarrow 0001b;
FS.W \leftarrow DS.W;
FS.S \leftarrow 1;
FS.DPL \leftarrow DS.DPL;
FS.G \leftarrow 1;
FS.B \leftarrow 1;
FS.P \leftarrow 1;
FS.AVL \leftarrow DS.AVL;
FS.L \leftarrow DS.L;
FS.unusable \leftarrow 0;
FS.selector \leftarrow 0BH;

GS.base \leftarrow TMP_GSBASE;
GS.limit \leftarrow DS:RBX.GSLIMIT;
GS.type \leftarrow 0001b;
GS.W \leftarrow DS.W;
GS.S \leftarrow 1;
GS.DPL \leftarrow DS.DPL;
GS.G \leftarrow 1;
GS.B \leftarrow 1;
GS.P \leftarrow 1;
GS.AVL \leftarrow DS.AVL;
GS.L \leftarrow DS.L;
GS.unusable \leftarrow 0;
GS.selector \leftarrow 0BH;

CR_DBGOPTIN \leftarrow TCS.FLAGS.DBGOPTIN;
Suppress all code breakpoints that are outside ELRANGE;

IF (CR_DBGOPTIN = 0)
 THEN
 Suppress all code breakpoints that overlap with ELRANGE;
 CR_SAVE_TF \leftarrow RFLAGS.TF;
 RFLAGS.TF \leftarrow 0;
 Suppress any MTF VM exits during execution of the enclave;
 Clear all pending debug exceptions;
 Clear any pending MTF VM exit;
 ELSE
 Clear all pending debug exceptions;
 Clear pending MTF VM exits;
FI;

(* Assure consistent translations *)
Flush_linear_context;
Clear_Monitor_FSM;
Allow_front_end_to_begin_fetch_at_new_RIP;

Flags Affected

RFLAGS.TF is cleared on opt-out entry

Protected Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	<p>If DS:RBX is not page aligned.</p> <p>If the enclave is not initialized.</p> <p>If the thread is not in the INACTIVE state.</p> <p>If CS, DS, ES or SS bases are not all zero.</p> <p>If executed in enclave mode.</p> <p>If part or all of the FS or GS segment specified by TCS is outside the DS segment.</p> <p>If any reserved field in the TCS FLAG is set.</p> <p>If the target address is not within the CS segment.</p> <p>If CR4.OSFXSR = 0.</p> <p>If CR4.OSXSAVE = 0 and SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM ≠ 3.</p> <p>If CR4.OSXSAVE = 1 and SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM is not a subset of XCR0.</p>
#PF(error code)	<p>If a page fault occurs in accessing memory.</p> <p>If DS:RBX does not point to a valid TCS.</p> <p>If one or more pages of the current SSA frame are not readable/writable, or do not resolve to a valid PT_REG EPC page.</p>

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	<p>If DS:RBX is not page aligned.</p> <p>If the enclave is not initialized.</p> <p>If the thread is not in the INACTIVE state.</p> <p>If CS, DS, ES or SS bases are not all zero.</p> <p>If executed in enclave mode.</p> <p>If part or all of the FS or GS segment specified by TCS is outside the DS segment.</p> <p>If any reserved field in the TCS FLAG is set.</p> <p>If the target address is not canonical.</p> <p>If CR4.OSFXSR = 0.</p> <p>If CR4.OSXSAVE = 0 and SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM ≠ 3.</p> <p>If CR4.OSXSAVE = 1 and SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM is not a subset of XCR0.</p>
#PF(error code)	<p>If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.</p> <p>If DS:RBX does not point to a valid TCS.</p> <p>If one or more pages of the current SSA frame are not readable/writable, or do not resolve to a valid PT_REG EPC page.</p>

40.5 INTEL® SGX VIRTUALIZATION LEAF FUNCTION REFERENCE

Leaf functions available with the ENCLV instruction mnemonic are covered in this section. In general, each instruction leaf requires EAX to specify the leaf function index and/or additional implicit registers specifying leaf-specific input parameters. An instruction operand encoding table provides details of each implicit register usage and associated input/output semantics.

In many cases, an input parameter specifies an effective address associated with a memory object inside or outside the EPC, the memory addressing semantics of these memory objects are also summarized in a separate table.

EDECVIRTCHILD—Decrement VIRTCHILDCNT in SECS

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EAX = 00H ENCLV[EDECVIRTCHILD]	IR	V/V	EAX[5]	This leaf function decrements the SECS VIRTCHILDCNT field.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	EAX	RBX	RCX
IR	EDECVIRTCHILD (In)	Address of an enclave page (In)	Address of an SECS page (In)

Description

This instruction decrements the SECS VIRTCHILDCNT field. This instruction can only be executed when current privilege level is 0.

The content of RCX is an effective address of an EPC page. The DS segment is used to create linear address. Segment override is not supported.

EDECVIRTCHILD Memory Parameter Semantics

EPCPAGE	SECS
Read/Write access permitted by Non Enclave	Read access permitted by Enclave

The instruction faults if any of the following:

EDECVIRTCHILD Faulting Conditions

A memory operand effective address is outside the DS segment limit (32b mode).	A page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.
DS segment is unusable (32b mode).	RBX does not refer to an enclave page (REG, TCS, TRIM, SECS).
A memory address is in a non-canonical form (64b mode).	RCX does not refer to an SECS page.
A memory operand is not properly aligned.	RBX does not refer to an enclave page associated with SECS referenced in RCX.

Concurrency Restrictions**Table 40-74. Base Concurrency Restrictions of EDECVIRTCHILD**

Leaf	Parameter	Base Concurrency Restrictions		
		Access	On Conflict	SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification
EDECVIRTCHILD	Target [DS:RBX]	Shared	SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT	
	SECS [DS:RCX]	Concurrent		

Table 40-75. Additional Concurrency Restrictions of EDECVIRTCHILD

Leaf	Parameter	Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
		vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRACK, ETRACKC	
		Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
EDECVIRTCHILD	Target [DS:RBX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
	SECS [DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	

Operation

Temp Variables in EDECVIRTCHILD Operational Flow

Name	Type	Size (bits)	Description
TMP_SECS	Physical Address	64	Physical address of the SECS of the page being modified.
TMP_VIRTCHILDCNT	Integer	64	Number of virtual child pages.

EDECVIRTCHILD Return Value in RAX

Error	Value	Description
No Error	0	EDECVIRTCHILD Successful.
SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT		Failure due to concurrent operation of another SGX instruction.
SGX_INVALID_COUNTER		Attempt to decrement counter that is already zero.

(* check alignment of DS:RBX *)

```
IF (DS:RBX is not 4K aligned) THEN
    #GP(0); FI;
```

(* check DS:RBX is an linear address of an EPC page *)

```
IF (DS:RBX does not resolve within an EPC) THEN
    #PF(DS:RBX, PFEC.SGX); FI;
```

(* check DS:RCX is an linear address of an EPC page *)

```
IF (DS:RCX does not resolve within an EPC) THEN
    #PF(DS:RCX, PFEC.SGX); FI;
```

(* Check the EPCPAGE for concurrency *)

```
IF (EPCPAGE is being modified) THEN
    RFLAGS.ZF = 1;
    RAX = SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT;
    goto DONE;
FI;
```

(* check that the EPC page is valid *)

```
IF (EPCM(DS:RBX).VALID = 0) THEN
    #PF(DS:RBX, PFEC.SGX); FI;
```

(* check that the EPC page has the correct type and that the back pointer matches the pointer passed as the pointer to parent *)

```
IF ((EPCM(DS:RBX).PAGE_TYPE = PT_REG) or
    (EPCM(DS:RBX).PAGE_TYPE = PT_TCS) or
```

```

(EPCM(DS:RBX).PAGE_TYPE = PT_TRIM)
THEN
  (* get the SECS of DS:RBX *)
  TMP_SECS ← Address of SECS for (DS:RBX);
ELSE IF (EPCM(DS:RBX).PAGE_TYPE = PT_SECS) THEN
  (* get the physical address of DS:RBX *)
  TMP_SECS ← Physical_Address(DS:RBX);
ELSE
  (* EDECVIRTCHILD called on page of incorrect type *)
  #PF(DS:RBX, PFEC.SGX); FI;

IF (TMP_SECS ≠ Physical_Address(DS:RCX)) THEN
  #GP(0); FI;

(* Atomically decrement virtchild counter and check for underflow *)
Locked_Decrement(SECS(TMP_SECS).VIRTCHILDCNT);
IF (There was an underflow) THEN
  Locked_Increment(SECS(TMP_SECS).VIRTCHILDCNT);
  RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
  RAX ← SGX_INVALID_COUNTER;
  goto DONE;
FI;

RFLAGS.ZF ← 0;
RAX ← 0;

DONE:
(* clear flags *)
RFLAGS.CF ← 0;
RFLAGS.PF ← 0;
RFLAGS.AF ← 0;
RFLAGS.OF ← 0;
RFLAGS.SF ← 0;

```

Flags Affected

ZF is set if EDECVIRTCHILD fails due to concurrent operation with another SGX instruction, or if there is a VIRTCHILDCNT underflow. Otherwise cleared.

Protected Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	<p>If a memory operand effective address is outside the DS segment limit.</p> <p>If DS segment is unusable.</p> <p>If a memory operand is not properly aligned.</p> <p>RBX does not refer to an enclave page associated with SECS referenced in RCX.</p>
#PF(error code)	<p>If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.</p> <p>If RBX does not refer to an enclave page (REG, TCS, TRIM, SECS).</p> <p>If RCX does not refer to an SECS page.</p>

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

- #GP(0) If a memory address is in a non-canonical form.
 If a memory operand is not properly aligned.
 RBX does not refer to an enclave page associated with SECS referenced in RCX.
- #PF(error code) If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.
 If RBX does not refer to an enclave page (REG, TCS, TRIM, SECS).
 If RCX does not refer to an SECS page.

EINCVIRTCHILD—Increment VIRTCHILDCNT in SECS

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EAX = 01H ENCLV[EINCVIRTCHILD]	IR	V/V	EAX[5]	This leaf function increments the SECS VIRTCHILDCNT field.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	EAX	RBX	RCX
IR	EINCVIRTCHILD (In)	Address of an enclave page (In)	Address of an SECS page (In)

Description

This instruction increments the SECS VIRTCHILDCNT field. This instruction can only be executed when the current privilege level is 0.

The content of RCX is an effective address of an EPC page. The DS segment is used to create a linear address. Segment override is not supported.

EINCVIRTCHILD Memory Parameter Semantics

EPCPAGE	SECS
Read/Write access permitted by Non Enclave	Read access permitted by Enclave

The instruction faults if any of the following:

EINCVIRTCHILD Faulting Conditions

A memory operand effective address is outside the DS segment limit (32b mode).	A page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.
DS segment is unusable (32b mode).	RBX does not refer to an enclave page (REG, TCS, TRIM, SECS).
A memory address is in a non-canonical form (64b mode).	RCX does not refer to an SECS page.
A memory operand is not properly aligned.	RBX does not refer to an enclave page associated with SECS referenced in RCX.

Concurrency Restrictions**Table 40-76. Base Concurrency Restrictions of EINCVIRTCHILD**

Leaf	Parameter	Base Concurrency Restrictions		
		Access	On Conflict	SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification
EINCVIRTCHILD	Target [DS:RBX]	Shared	SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT	
	SECS [DS:RCX]	Concurrent		

Table 40-77. Additional Concurrency Restrictions of EINCVRTCHILD

Leaf	Parameter	Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
		vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRACK, ETRACKC	
		Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
EINCVRTCHILD	Target [DS:RBX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	
	SECS [DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	

Operation

Temp Variables in EINCVRTCHILD Operational Flow

Name	Type	Size (bits)	Description
TMP_SECS	Physical Address	64	Physical address of the SECS of the page being modified.

EINCVRTCHILD Return Value in RAX

Error	Value	Description
No Error	0	EINCVRTCHILD Successful.
SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT		Failure due to concurrent operation of another SGX instruction.

(* check alignment of DS:RBX *)
 IF (DS:RBX is not 4K aligned) THEN
 #GP(0); FI;

(* check DS:RBX is an linear address of an EPC page *)
 IF (DS:RBX does not resolve within an EPC) THEN
 #PF(DS:RBX, PFEC.SGX); FI;

(* check DS:RCX is an linear address of an EPC page *)
 IF (DS:RCX does not resolve within an EPC) THEN
 #PF(DS:RCX, PFEC.SGX); FI;

(* Check the EPCPAGE for concurrency *)
 IF (EPCPAGE is being modified) THEN
 RFLAGS.ZF = 1;
 RAX = SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT;
 goto DONE;
 FI;

(* check that the EPC page is valid *)
 IF (EPCM(DS:RBX).VALID = 0) THEN
 #PF(DS:RBX, PFEC.SGX); FI;

(* check that the EPC page has the correct type and that the back pointer matches the pointer passed as the pointer to parent *)
 IF ((EPCM(DS:RBX).PAGE_TYPE = PT_REG) or
 (EPCM(DS:RBX).PAGE_TYPE = PT_TCS) or
 (EPCM(DS:RBX).PAGE_TYPE = PT_TRIM))
 THEN
 (* get the SECS of DS:RBX *)

```

    TMP_SECS ← Address of SECS for (DS:RBX);
ELSE IF (EPCM(DS:RBX).PAGE_TYPE = PT_SECS) THEN
    (* get the physical address of DS:RBX *)
    TMP_SECS ← Physical_Address(DS:RBX);
ELSE
    (* EINCVIRTCHILD called on page of incorrect type *)
    #PF(DS:RBX, PFEC.SGX); FI;

IF (TMP_SECS ≠ Physical_Address(DS:RCX)) THEN
    #GP(0); FI;

```

```

(* Atomically increment virtchild counter *)
Locked_Increment(SECS(TMP_SECS).VIRTCHILDCNT);

```

```

RFLAGS.ZF ← 0;
RAX ← 0;

```

```

DONE:
(* clear flags *)
RFLAGS.CF ← 0;
RFLAGS.PF ← 0;
RFLAGS.AF ← 0;
RFLAGS.OF ← 0;
RFLAGS.SF ← 0;

```

Flags Affected

ZF is set if EINCVIRTCHILD fails due to concurrent operation with another SGX instruction; otherwise cleared.

Protected Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	If a memory operand effective address is outside the DS segment limit. If DS segment is unusable. If a memory operand is not properly aligned. RBX does not refer to an enclave page associated with SECS referenced in RCX.
#PF(error code)	If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands. If RBX does not refer to an enclave page (REG, TCS, TRIM, SECS). If RCX does not refer to an SECS page.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	If a memory address is in a non-canonical form. If a memory operand is not properly aligned. RBX does not refer to an enclave page associated with SECS referenced in RCX.
#PF(error code)	If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands. If RBX does not refer to an enclave page (REG, TCS, TRIM, SECS). If RCX does not refer to an SECS page.

ESETCONTEXT—Set the ENCLAVECONTEXT Field in SECS

Opcode/ Instruction	Op/En	64/32 bit Mode Support	CPUID Feature Flag	Description
EAX = 02H ENCLV[ESETCONTEXT]	IR	V/V	EAX[5]	This leaf function sets the ENCLAVECONTEXT field in SECS.

Instruction Operand Encoding

Op/En	EAX	RCX	RDX
IR	ESETCONTEXT (In)	Address of the destination EPC page (In, EA)	Context Value (In, EA)

Description

The ESETCONTEXT leaf overwrites the ENCLAVECONTEXT field in the SECS. ECREATE and ELD of an SECS set the ENCLAVECONTEXT field in the SECS to the address of the SECS (for access later in ERDINFO). The ESETCONTEXT instruction allows a VMM to overwrite the default context value if necessary, for example, if the VMM is emulating ECREATE or ELD on behalf of the guest.

The content of RCX is an effective address of the SECS page to be updated, RDX contains the address pointing to the value to be stored in the SECS. The DS segment is used to create linear address. Segment override is not supported.

The instruction fails if:

- The operand is not properly aligned.
- RCX does not refer to an SECS page.

ESETCONTEXT Memory Parameter Semantics

EPCPAGE	CONTEXT
Read access permitted by Enclave	Read/Write access permitted by Non Enclave

The instruction faults if any of the following:

ESETCONTEXT Faulting Conditions

A memory operand effective address is outside the DS segment limit (32b mode).	A memory operand is not properly aligned.
DS segment is unusable (32b mode).	A page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.
A memory address is in a non-canonical form (64b mode).	

Concurrency Restrictions

Table 40-78. Base Concurrency Restrictions of ESETCONTEXT

Leaf	Parameter	Base Concurrency Restrictions		
		Access	On Conflict	SGX_CONFLICT VM Exit Qualification
ESETCONTEXT	SECS [DS:RCX]	Shared	SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT	

Table 40-79. Additional Concurrency Restrictions of ESETCONTEXT

Leaf	Parameter	Additional Concurrency Restrictions					
		vs. EACCEPT, EACCEPTCOPY, EMODPE, EMODPR, EMODT		vs. EADD, EEXTEND, EINIT		vs. ETRACK, ETRACKC	
		Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict	Access	On Conflict
ESETCONTEXT	SECS [DS:RCX]	Concurrent		Concurrent		Concurrent	

Operation

Temp Variables in ESETCONTEXT Operational Flow

Name	Type	Size (bits)	Description
TMP_SECS	Physical Address	64	Physical address of the SECS of the page being modified.
TMP_CONTEXT	CONTEXT	64	Data Value of CONTEXT.

ESETCONTEXT Return Value in RAX

Error	Value	Description
No Error	0	ESETCONTEXT Successful.
SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT		Failure due to concurrent operation of another SGX instruction.

(* check alignment of the EPCPAGE (RCX) *)

```
IF (DS:RCX is not 4KByte Aligned) THEN
    #GP(0); FI;
```

(* check that EPCPAGE (DS:RCX) is the address of an EPC page *)

```
IF (DS:RCX does not resolve within an EPC) THEN
    #PF(DS:RCX, PFEC.SGX); FI;
```

(* check alignment of the CONTEXT field (RDX) *)

```
IF (DS:RDX is not 8Byte Aligned) THEN
    #GP(0); FI;
```

(* Load CONTEXT into local variable *)

```
TMP_CONTEXT ← DS:RDX
```

(* Check the EPC page for concurrency *)

```
IF (EPC page is being modified) THEN
    RFLAGS.ZF ← 1;
    RFLAGS.CF ← 0;
    RAX ← SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT;
    goto DONE;
FI;
```

(* check page validity *)

```
IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).VALID = 0) THEN
    #PF(DS:RCX, PFEC.SGX);
FI;
```

(* check EPC page is an SECS page *)

SGX INSTRUCTION REFERENCES

```
IF (EPCM(DS:RCX).PT is not PT_SECS) THEN
  #PF(DS:RCX, PFEC.SGX);
FI;
```

```
(* load the context value into SECS(DS:RCX).ENCLAVECONTEXT *)
SECS(DS:RCX).ENCLAVECONTEXT ← TMP_CONTEXT;
```

```
RAX ← 0;
RFLAGS.ZF ← 0;
```

```
DONE:
(* clear flags *)
RFLAGS.CF,PF,AF,OF,SF ← 0;
```

Flags Affected

ZF is set if ESETCONTEXT fails due to concurrent operation with another SGX instruction; otherwise cleared. CF, PF, AF, OF and SF are cleared.

Protected Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	If a memory operand effective address is outside the DS segment limit. If DS segment is unusable. If a memory operand is not properly aligned.
#PF(error code)	If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.

64-Bit Mode Exceptions

#GP(0)	If a memory address is in a non-canonical form. If a memory operand is not properly aligned.
#PF(error code)	If a page fault occurs in accessing memory operands.

21. Updates to Chapter 41, Volume 3D

Change bars show changes to Chapter 41 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3D: System Programming Guide, Part 4*.

Changes to this chapter: Minor typo correction.

CHAPTER 41

INTEL® SGX INTERACTIONS WITH IA32 AND INTEL® 64 ARCHITECTURE

Intel® SGX provides Intel® Architecture with a collection of enclave instructions for creating protected execution environments on processors supporting IA32 and Intel® 64 architectures. These Intel SGX instructions are designed to work with legacy software and the various IA32 and Intel 64 modes of operation.

41.1 INTEL® SGX AVAILABILITY IN VARIOUS PROCESSOR MODES

The Intel SGX extensions (see Table 36-1) are available only when the processor is executing in protected mode of operation. Additionally, the extensions are not available in System Management Mode (SMM) of operation or in Virtual 8086 (VM86) mode of operation. Finally, all leaf functions of ENCLU and ENCLS require CR0.PG enabled.

The exact details of exceptions resulting from illegal modes and their priority are listed in the reference pages of ENCLS and ENCLU.

41.2 IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL

IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL MSR provides two new bits related to two aspects of Intel SGX: using the instruction extensions and launch control configuration.

41.2.1 Availability of Intel SGX

IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL[bit 18] allows BIOS to control the availability of Intel SGX extensions. For Intel SGX extensions to be available on a logical processor, bit 18 in the IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL MSR on that logical processor must be set, and IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL MSR on that logical processor must be locked (bit 0 must be set). See Section 36.7.1 for additional details. OS is expected to examine the value of bit 18 prior to enabling Intel SGX on the thread, as the settings of bit 18 is not reflected by CPUID.

41.2.2 Intel SGX Launch Control Configuration

The IA32_SGXLEPUBKEYHASHn MSRs used to configure authorized launch enclaves' MRSIGNER digest value. They are present on logical processors that support the collection of SGX1 leaf functions (i.e. CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=00H):EAX[0] = 1) and that CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=00H):ECX[30] = 1. IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL[bit 17] allows to BIOS to enable write access to these MSRs. If IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL.LE_WR (bit 17) is set to 1 and IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL is locked on that logical processor, IA32_SGXLEPUBKEYHASH MSRs on that logical processor are writeable. If this bit 17 is not set or IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL is not locked, IA32_SGXLEPUBKEYHASH MSRs are read only. See Section 38.1.4 for additional details.

41.3 INTERACTIONS WITH SEGMENTATION

41.3.1 Scope of Interaction

Intel SGX extensions are available only when the processor is executing in a protected mode operation (see Section 41.1 for Intel SGX availability in various processor modes). Enclaves abide by all the segmentation policies set up by the OS, but they can be more restrictive than the OS.

Intel SGX interacts with segmentation at two levels:

- The Intel SGX instruction (see the enclave instruction in Table 36-1).

- While executing inside an enclave (legacy instructions and enclave instructions permitted inside an enclave).

41.3.2 Interactions of Intel® SGX Instructions with Segment, Operand, and Addressing Prefixes

All the memory operands used by the Intel SGX instructions are interpreted as offsets within the data segment (DS). The segment-override prefix on Intel SGX instructions is ignored.

Operand size is fixed for each enclave instruction. The operand-size prefix is reserved, and results in a #UD exception if used.

All address sizes are determined by the operating mode of the processor. The address-size prefix is ignored. This implies that while operating in 64-bit mode of operation, the address size is always 64 bits, and while operating in 32-bit mode of operation, the address size is always 32 bits. Additionally, when operating in 16-bit addressing, memory operands used by enclave instructions use 32 bit addressing; the value of CS.D is ignored.

41.3.3 Interaction of Intel® SGX Instructions with Segmentation

All leaf functions of ENCLU and ENCLS instructions require that the DS segment be usable, and be an expand-up segment. Failing this check results in generation of a #GP(0) exception.

The Intel SGX leaf functions used for entering the enclave (ENCLU[EENTER] and ENCLU[ERESUME]) operate as follows:

- All usable segment registers except for FS and GS have a zero base.
- The contents of the FS/GS segment registers (including the hidden portion) is saved in the processor.
- New FS and GS values compatible with enclave security are loaded from the TCS
- The linear ranges and access rights available under the newly-loaded FS and GS must abide to OS policies by ensuring they are subsets of the linear-address range and access rights available for the DS segment.
- The CS segment mode (64-bit, compatible, or 32 bit modes) must be consistent with the segment mode for which the enclave was created, as indicated by the SECS.ATTRIBUTES.MODE64 bit, and that the CPL of the logical processor is 3

An exit from the enclave either via ENCLU[EEXIT] or via an AEX restores the saved values of FS/GS segment registers.

41.3.4 Interactions of Enclave Execution with Segmentation

During the course of execution, enclave code abides by all segmentation policies as dictated by IA32 and Intel 64 Architectures, and generates appropriate exceptions on violations.

Additionally, any attempt by software executing inside an enclave to modify the processor's segmentation state (e.g. via MOV seg register, POP seg register, LDS, far jump, etc; excluding WRFSBASE/WRGSBASE) results in the generation of a #UD. See Section 38.6.1 for more information.

Upon enclave entry via the EENTER leaf function, FS is loaded from the (TCS.OFSBASE + SECS.BASEADDR) and TCS.FSLIMIT fields and GS is loaded from the (TCS.OGSBASE + SECS.BASEADDR) and TCS.GSLIMIT fields.

Execution of WRFSBASE and WRGSBASE from inside a 64-bit enclave is allowed. The processor will save the new values into the current SSA frame on an asynchronous exit (AEX) and restore them back on enclave entry via ENCLU[ERESUME] instruction.

41.4 INTERACTIONS WITH PAGING

Intel SGX instructions are available only when the processor is executing in a protected mode of operation. Additionally, all Intel SGX leaf functions except for EDBGD and EDBGW are available only if paging is enabled. Any attempt to execute these leaf functions with paging disabled results in an invalid-opcode exception (#UD). As with

segmentation, enclaves abide by all the paging policies set up by the OS, but they can be more restrictive than the OS.

All the memory operands passed into Intel SGX instructions are interpreted as offsets within the DS segment, and the linear addresses generated by combining these offsets with DS segment register are subject to paging-based access control if paging is enabled at the time of the execution of the leaf function.

Since the ENCLU[EENTER] and ENCLU[ERESUME] can only be executed when paging is enabled, and since paging cannot be disabled by software running inside an enclave (recall that enclaves always run with CPL = 3), enclave execution is always subject to paging-based access control. The Intel SGX access control itself is implemented as an extension to the existing paging modes. See Section 37.5 for details.

Execution of Intel SGX instructions may set accessed and dirty flags on accesses to EPC pages that do not fault even if the instruction later causes a fault for some other reason.

41.5 INTERACTIONS WITH VMX

Intel SGX functionality (including SGX1 and SGX2) can be made available to software running in either VMX root operation or VMX non-root operation, as long as the processor is using a legal mode of operation (see Section 41.1).

A VMM has the flexibility to configure a VMCS to permit a guest to use any subset of the ENCLS leaf functions. Availability of the ENCLU leaf functions in VMX non-root operation has the same requirement as ENCLU leaf functions outside of a virtualized environment.

Details of the VMCS control to allow VMM to configure support of Intel SGX in VMX non-root operation is described in Section 41.5.1

41.5.1 VMM Controls to Configure Guest Support of Intel® SGX

Intel SGX capabilities are primarily exposed to the software via the CPUID instruction. VMMs can virtualize CPUID instruction to expose/hide this capability to/from guests.

Some of Intel SGX resources are exposed/controlled via model-specific registers (see Section 36.7). VMMs can virtualize these MSRs for the guests using the MSR bitmaps referenced by pointers in the VMCS.

The VMM can partition the Enclave Page Cache, and assign various partitions to (a subset of) its guests via the usual memory-virtualization techniques such as paging or the extended page table mechanism (EPT).

The VMM can set the “enable ENCLS exiting” VM-execution controls to cause a VM exit when the ENCLS instruction is executed in VMX non-root operation. If the “enable ENCLS exiting” control is 0, all of the ENCLS leaf functions are permitted in VMX non-root operation. If the “enable ENCLS exiting” control is 1, execution of ENCLS leaf functions in VMX non-root operation is governed by consulting the bits in a new 64-bit VM-execution control field called the ENCLS-exiting bitmap (Each bit in the bitmap corresponds to an ENCLS leaf function with an EAX value that is identical to the bit’s position). When bits in the “ENCLS-exiting bitmap” are set, attempts to execute the corresponding ENCLS leaf functions in VMX non-root operation causes VM exits. The checking for these VM exits occurs immediately after checking that CPL = 0.

41.5.2 Interactions with the Extended Page Table Mechanism (EPT)

Intel SGX instructions are fully compatible with the extended page-table mechanism (EPT; see Section 28.2).

All the memory operands passed into Intel SGX instructions are interpreted as offsets within the DS segment, and the linear addresses generated by combining these offsets with DS segment register are subject to paging and EPT. As with paging, enclaves abide by all the policies set up by the VMM.

The Intel SGX access control itself is implemented as an extension to paging and EPT, and may be more restrictive. See Section 41.4 for details of this extension.

An execution of an Intel SGX instruction may set accessed and dirty flags for EPT (when enabled; see Section 28.2.4) on accesses to EPC pages that do not fault or cause VM exits even if the instruction later causes a fault or VM exit for some other reason.

41.5.3 Interactions with APIC Virtualization

This section applies to Intel SGX in VMX non-root operation when the “virtualize APIC accesses” VM-execution control is 1.

A memory access by an enclave instruction that implicitly uses a cached physical address is never checked for overlap with the APIC-access page. Such accesses never cause APIC-access VM exits and are never redirected to the virtual-APIC page. Implicit memory accesses can only be made to the SECS, the TCS, or the SSA of an enclave (see Section 37.5.3.2).

An explicit Enclave Access (a linear memory access which is either from within an enclave into its ELRANGE, or an access by an Intel SGX instruction that is expected to be in the EPC) that overlaps with the APIC-access page causes a #PF exception (APIC page is expected to be outside of EPC).

Non-Enclave accesses made either by an Intel SGX instruction or by a logical processor inside an enclave to an address that without SGX would have caused redirection to the virtual-APIC page instead cause an APIC-access VM exit.

Other than implicit accesses made by Intel SGX instructions, guest-physical and physical accesses are not considered “enclave accesses”; consequently, such accesses result in undefined behavior if these accesses eventually reach EPC. This applies to any non-enclave physical accesses.

While a logical processor is executing inside an enclave, an attempt to execute an instruction outside of ELRANGE results in a #GP(0), even if the linear address would translate to a physical address that overlaps the APIC-access page.

41.5.4 Interactions with VT and SGX concurrency

In some cases, a VMM is required to handle conflicts between its own operation and a guest operation on EPC pages that are present in both guest and VMM address space. These conflict would otherwise cause the guest to experience an unexpected behavior (vs. running directly on the h/w). These conflict cases are:

- ETRACK/ETRAKCK failure due to Entry Epoch Object Lock conflict or reference tracking check failure.
- EPC Page Resource conflict.

A new exit reason is defined for all those cases: SGX_CONFLICT (value 71). The VMCS exit qualification field details the specific case as follows:

Table 41-1. SGX Conflict Exit Qualification

Bits	Size (bits)	Name	Description
15:0	16	Code	Exit qualification code. The following values are defined: 0: TRACKING_RESOURCE_CONFLICT 1: TRACKING_REFERENCE_CONFLICT 2: EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_EXCEPTION 3: EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_ERROR Other: Reserved
31:16	16	Error	Error code. Applicable only if the exit qualification code is EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_ERROR; contains the error code that would be returned in RAX if the instruction was executed on bare metal platform or if the ENABLE_EPC_VIRTUALIZATION_EXTENSIONS bit in the secondary processor control field is not set. In other cases this field is reserved as 0.
63:32	32	Reserved	Always 0.

This SGX_CONFLICT exiting behavior is controlled by a VM execution control called ENABLE_EPC_VIRTUALIZATION_EXTENSIONS (bit 29 of the secondary processor control field).

Details for various SGX_CONFLICT VMEXIT cases are provided in the following sections.

41.5.5 Virtual Child Tracking

SGX oversubscription support adds the ability to associate virtual children with each enclave using the ENCLV[EINCVIRTCHILD] and ENCLV[EDECVIRTCHILD] instructions. The VMM enables checking of the virtual child count by EREMOVE and EWB in guests with a new VM execution control called ENABLE_EPC_VIRTUALIZATION_EXTENSIONS.

When in VMX non-root operation and the ENABLE_EPC_VIRTUALIZATION_EXTENSIONS control enabled, the following instructions change their behavior:

- EWB and EREMOVE return the SGX_CHILD_PRESENT error code if any virtual or physical children are associated with the enclave.
- ERDINFO set STATUS.CHILDPRESENT if any virtual or physical children are associated with the enclave.

41.5.6 Handling EPCM Entry Lock Conflicts

When performing paging within a VMM, it is possible for a contention on the EPC page to happen in the following case:

- The VMM performs an ELDB/ELDU/ELDBC/ELDUC of an enclave page, and the guest attempts to perform some SGX instruction (e.g., EREMOVE) where the same SECS parent page is required.

A similar conflict may occur if the VMM uses EINCVIRTCHILD or EDECVIRTCHILD pointing to an SECS page. In all other cases where a SGX instruction executed by the VMM the applicable EPC page should not be mapped to the guest, thus no resource conflict occurs.

This conflicting situation can cause the guest's instruction to fail and cause guest instability. To help the VMM manage such conflicts, the SGX VMM paging extensions introduce a new VM-Exit that will be triggered whenever the guest encounters a resource conflict.

The exit reason is SGX_CONFLICT. The exit qualification field is used to distinguish the two kinds of resource conflicts:

- A value of EPCM_RESOURCE_CONFLICT_EXCEPTION (2) in the exit qualification code field indicates that a resource conflict occurred that would result in a #GP. In that case, the exit qualification error field is set to zero.
- A value of EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_ERROR (3) in the exit qualification code field indicates that a resource conflict occurred that would result in an error code being return in RAX. In that case, the exit qualification error field is set to SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT.

The Guest Linear Address and Guest Physical Address fields are set to the guest linear and guest physical addresses respectively of the EPC page on which the conflict occurred. The VMM may determine which instruction induced the exit by reading RAX. The exit also populates the VM-exit instruction length field.

The VMM can determine whether the conflict may be due to its own operation, e.g., by setting a per-enclave busy indicator before executing ELD*, and clearing it afterwards. In that case, the VMM can handle an SGX Conflict (EPCM_PAGE_CONFLICT_*) exit by resuming guest execution at the same instruction, allowing the guest to re-execute the instruction. The VMM may also take steps to throttle its own paging thread to reduce contention with the guest.

If the VMM determines that the conflict is not due to its own operation, it may inject a #GP (in case of EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_EXCEPTION), or emulate an error code as the guest instruction would return (in case of EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT_ERROR) by setting ZF and copying the error value provided in the exit qualification to guest RAX.

To gracefully handle resource contention on the VMM side, the VMM should use the new ELDBC and ELDUC instructions. These are similar to ELDB and ELDU respectively, except that on EPC resource contention they return an SGX_EPC_PAGE_CONFLICT error instead of issuing a #GP. In case of an error, the VMM can retry the instruction, possibly throttling the guest to assure progress.

When using EDECVIRTCHILD and EINCVIRTCHILD, the VMM should preferably point to the enclave child page, not to the SECS page, avoiding resource conflict on the SECS. If the VMM chooses to point to the SECS page, it should handle conflicts in the same way as handling the ELD* case.

41.5.7 Context Tracking

The ENCLAVECONTEXT field in the SECS is available for use by the VMM to track context information associated with that enclave, such as the GPA of the SECS in the context of the appropriate guest. This field is initialized by the successful execution of ECREATE and ELD of an SECS page. The value stored in the ENCLAVECONTEXT field will be the translation of the target page address produced by paging (GPA in VMMs that have EPTs turned on). VMMs may override this default value by calling the ENCLV[ESETCONTEXT] instruction, which allows the VMM to store an arbitrary 64-bit value in the ENCLAVECONTEXT field. The VMM may later access the ENCLAVECONTEXT field by calling ENCLS[ERDINFO] on any member page of the enclave, including the SECS.

For nested virtualization cases, the lowest level VMM can make SGX oversubscription instructions higher level guest VMMs. In that case the lower level VMM can simply inject #GP to higher level VMMs when attempting to execute these instructions.

However, if VMMs expose SGX oversubscription instructions to higher level VMMs, then VMMs have to use ENCLV[ESETCONTEXT] instruction to properly manage the ENCLAVECONTEXT field of SECS during paging operations. That may involve emulating ECREATE, ELD, ESETCONTEXT and ERDINFO instructions apart from managing ENCLAVECONTEXT values.

41.6 INTEL® SGX INTERACTIONS WITH ARCHITECTURALLY-VISIBLE EVENTS

All architecturally visible vectored events (IA32 exceptions, interrupts, SMI, NMI, INIT, VM exit) can be detected while inside an enclave and will cause an asynchronous enclave exit if they are not blocked. Additionally, INT3, and the SignalTXTMsg[SENDER] (i.e. GETSEC[SENDER]'s rendezvous event message) events also cause asynchronous enclave exits. Note that SignalTXTMsg[SEXIT] (i.e. GETSEC[SEXIT]'s teardown message) does not cause an AEX.

On an AEX, information about the event causing the AEX is stored in the SSA (see Section 39.4 for details of AEX). The information stored in the SSA only describes the first event that triggered the AEX. If parsing/delivery of the first event results in detection of further events (e.g. VM exit, double fault, etc.), then the event information in the SSA is not updated to reflect these subsequently detected events.

41.7 INTERACTIONS WITH THE PROCESSOR EXTENDED STATE AND MISCELLANEOUS STATE

41.7.1 Requirements and Architecture Overview

Processor extended states are the ISA features that are enabled by the settings of CR4.OSXSAVE and the XCR0 register. Processor extended states are normally saved/restored by software via XSAVE/XRSTOR instructions. Details of discovery of processor extended states and management of these states are described in CHAPTER 13 of *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3A*.

Additionally, the following requirements apply to Intel SGX:

- On an AEX, the Intel SGX architecture must protect the processor extended state and miscellaneous state by saving them in the enclave's state-save area (SSA), and clear the secrets from the processor extended state that is used by an enclave.
- Intel SGX architecture must verify that the SSA frame size is large enough to contain all the processor extended states and miscellaneous state used by the enclave.
- Intel SGX architecture must ensure that enclaves can only use processor extended state that is enabled by system software in XCR0.
- Enclave software should be able to discover only those processor extended state and miscellaneous state for which such protection is enabled.
- The processor extended states that are enabled inside the enclave must be approved by the enclave developer:
 - Certain processor extended state (e.g., Memory Protection Extensions, see Chapter 17, "Intel® MPX" of *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 1*) modify the behavior of the

legacy ISA software. If such features are enabled for enclaves that do not understand those features, then such a configuration could lead to a compromise of the enclave's security.

- The processor extended states that are enabled inside the enclave must form an integral part of the enclave's identity. This requirement has two implications:
 - Service providers may decide to assign different trust level to the same enclave depending on the ISA features the enclave is using.

To meet these requirements, the Intel SGX architecture defines a sub-field called X-Feature Request Mask (XFRM) in the ATTRIBUTES field of the SECS. On enclave creation (ENCLS[ECREATE] leaf function), the required SSA frame size is calculated by the processor from the list of enabled extended and miscellaneous states and verified against the actual SSA frame size defined by SECS.SSAFRAMESIZE.

On enclave entry, after verifying that XFRM is only enabling features that are already enabled in XCR0, the value in the XCR0 is saved internally by the processor, and is replaced by the XFRM. On enclave exit, the original value of XCR0 is restored. Consequently, while inside the enclave, the processor extended states enabled in XFRM are in enabled state, and those that are disabled in XFRM are in disabled state.

The entire ATTRIBUTES field, including the XFRM subfield is integral part of enclave's identity (i.e., its value is included in reports generated by ENCLU[EREPORT], and select bits from this field can be included in key-derivation for keys obtained via the ENCLU[EGETKEY] leaf function).

Enclave developers can create their enclave to work with certain features and fallback to another code path in case those features aren't available (e.g. optimize for AVX and fallback to SSE). For this purpose Intel SGX provides the following fields in SIGSTRUCT: ATTRIBUTES, ATTRIBUTESMASK, MISCSELECT, and MISCMASK. EINIT ensures that the final SECS.ATTRIBUTES and SECS.MISCSELECT comply with the enclave developer's requirements as follows:

SIGSTRUCT.ATTRIBUTES & SIGSTRUCT.ATTRIBUTESMASK = SECS.ATTRIBUTES & SIGSTRUCT.ATTRIBUTESMASK

SIGSTRUCT.MISCSELECT & SIGSTRUCT.MISCMASK = SECS.MISCSELECT & SIGSTRUCT.MISCMASK.

On an asynchronous enclave exit, the processor extended states enabled by XFRM are saved in the current SSA frame, and overwritten by synthetic state (see Section 39.3 for the definition of the synthetic state). When the interrupted enclave is resumed via the ENCLU[ERESUME] leaf function, the saved state for processor extended states enabled by XFRM is restored.

41.7.2 Relevant Fields in Various Data Structures

41.7.2.1 SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM

The ATTRIBUTES field of the SECS data structure (see Section 37.7) contains a sub-field called XSAVE-Feature Request Mask (XFRM). Software populates this field at the time of enclave creation according to the features that are enabled by the operating system and approved by the enclave developer.

Intel SGX architecture guarantees that during enclave execution, the processor extended state configuration of the processor is identical to what is required by the XFRM sub-field. All the processor extended states enabled in XFRM are saved on AEX from the enclave and restored on ERESUME.

The XFRM sub-field has the same layout as XCR0, and has consistency requirements that are similar to those for XCR0. Specifically, the consistency requirements on XFRM values depend on the processor implementation and the set of features enabled in CR4.

Legal values for SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM conform to these requirements:

- XFRM[1:0] must be set to 0x3.
- If the processor does not support XSAVE, or if the system software has not enabled XSAVE, then XFRM[63:2] must be zero.
- If the processor does support XSAVE, XFRM must contain a value that would be legal if loaded into XCR0.

The various consistency requirements are enforced at different times in the enclave's life cycle, and the exact enforcement mechanisms are elaborated in Section 41.7.3 through Section 41.7.6.

On processors not supporting XSAVE, software should initialize XFRM to 0x3. On processors supporting XSAVE, software should initialize XFRM to be a subset of XCR0 that would be present at the time of enclave execution.

Because bits 0 and 1 of XFRM must always be set, the use of Intel SGX requires that SSE be enabled (CR4.OSFXSR = 1).

41.7.2.2 SECS.SSAFRAMESIZE

The SSAFRAMESIZE field in the SECS data structure specifies the number of pages which software allocated¹ for each SSA frame, including both the GPRSGX area, MISC area, the XSAVE area (x87 and XMM states are stored in the latter area), and optionally padding between the MISC and XSAVE area. The GPRSGX area must hold all the general-purpose registers and additional Intel SGX specific information. The MISC area must hold the Miscellaneous state as specified by SECS.MISCSELECT, the XSAVE area holds the set of processor extended states specified by SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM (see Section 37.9 for the layout of SSA and Section 41.7.3 for ECREATE's consistency checks). The SSA is always in non-compacted format.

If the processor does not support XSAVE, the XSAVE area will always be 576 bytes; a copy of XFRM (which will be set to 0x3) is saved at offset 512 on an AEX.

If the processor does support XSAVE, the length of the XSAVE area depends on SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM. The length would be equal to what CPUID.(EAX=0DH, ECX= 0):EBX would return if XCR0 were set to XFRM. The following pseudo code illustrates how software can calculate this length using XFRM as the input parameter without modifying XCR0:

```
offset = 576;
size_last_x = 0;
For x=2 to 63
  IF (XFRM[x] != 0) Then
    tmp_offset = CPUID.(EAX=0DH, ECX= x):EBX[31:0];
    IF (tmp_offset >= offset + size_last_x) Then
      offset = tmp_offset;
      size_last_x = CPUID.(EAX=0DH, ECX= x):EAX[31:0];
    FI;
  FI;
EndFor
return (offset + size_last_x); (* compute_xsave_size(XFRM), see "ECREATE—Create an SECS page in the Enclave Page Cache"*)
```

Where the non-zero bits in XFRM are a subset of non-zero bit fields in XCR0.

The size of the MISC region depends on the setting of SECS.MISCSELECT and can be calculated using the layout information described in Section 37.9.2

41.7.2.3 XSAVE Area in SSA

The XSAVE area of an SSA frame begins at offset 0 of the frame.

41.7.2.4 MISC Area in SSA

The MISC area of an SSA frame is positioned immediately before the GPRSGX region.

41.7.2.5 SIGSTRUCT Fields

Intel SGX provides the flexibility for an enclave developer to choose the enclave's code path according to the features that are enabled on the platform (e.g. optimize for AVX and fallback to SSE). See Section 41.7.1 for details.

1. It is the responsibility of the enclave to actually allocate this memory.

SIGSTRUCT includes the following fields:

SIGSTRUCT.ATTRIBUTES, SIGSTRUCT.ATTRIBUTEMASK, SIGSTRUCT.MISCSELECT, SIGSTRUCT.MISCMASK.

41.7.2.6 REPORT.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM and REPORT.MISCSELECT

The processor extended states and miscellaneous states that are enabled inside the enclave form an integral part of the enclave's identity and are therefore included in the enclave's report, as provided by the ENCLU[EREPORT] leaf function. The REPORT structure includes the enclave's XFRM and MISCSELECT configurations.

41.7.2.7 KEYREQUEST

An enclave developer can specify which bits out of XFRM and MISCSELECT ENCLU[EGETKEY] should include in the derivation of the sealing key by specifying ATTRIBUTEMASK and MISCMASK in the KEYREQUEST structure.

41.7.3 Processor Extended States and ENCLS[ECREATE]

The ECREATE leaf function of the ENCLS instruction enforces a number of consistency checks described earlier. The execution of ENCLS[ECREATE] leaf function results in a #GP(0) in any of the following cases:

- SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM[1:0] is not 3.
- The processor does not support XSAVE and any of the following is true:
 - SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM[63:2] is not 0.
 - SECS.SSAFRAMESIZE is 0.
- The processor supports XSAVE and any of the following is true:
 - XSETBV would fault on an attempt to load XFRM into XCR0.
 - XFRM[63]=1.
 - The SSAFRAME is too small to hold required, enabled states (see Section 41.7.2.2).

41.7.4 Processor Extended States and ENCLU[EENTER]

41.7.4.1 Fault Checking

The EENTER leaf function of the ENCLU instruction enforces a number of consistency requirements described earlier. The execution of the ENCLU[EENTER] leaf function results in a #GP(0) in any of the following cases:

- If CR4.OSFXSR=0.
- If The processor supports XSAVE and either of the following is true:
 - CR4.OSXSAVE=0 and SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM is not 3.
 - (SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM & XCR0) != SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM

41.7.4.2 State Loading

If ENCLU[EENTER] is successful, the current value of XCR0 is saved internally by the processor and replaced by SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM.

41.7.5 Processor Extended States and AEX

41.7.5.1 State Saving

On an AEX, processor extended states are saved into the XSAVE area of the SSA frame in a compatible format with XSAVE that was executed with $EDX:EAX = SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM$, with the memory operand being the XSAVE area, and (for 64-bit enclaves) as if $REX.W=1$. The $XSTATE_BV$ part of the XSAVE header is saved with 0 for every bit that is 0 in XFRM. Other bits may be saved as 0 if the state saved is initialized.

Note that enclave entry ensures that if $CR4.OSXSAVE$ is set to 0, then $SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM$ is set to 3. It should also be noted that it is not possible to enter an enclave with FXSAVE disabled.

41.7.5.2 State Synthesis

After saving the extended state, the processor restores XCR0 to the value it held at the time of the most recent enclave entry.

The state of features corresponding to bits set in XFRM is synthesized. In general, these states are initialized. Details of state synthesis on AEX are documented in Section 39.3.1.

41.7.6 Processor Extended States and ENCLU[ERESUME]

41.7.6.1 Fault Checking

The ERESUME leaf function of the ENCLU instruction enforces a number of consistency requirements described earlier. Specifically, the ENCLU[ERESUME] leaf function results in a #GP(0) in any of the following cases:

- $CR4.OSFXSR=0$.
- The processor supports XSAVE and either of the following is true:
 - $CR4.OSXSAVE=0$ and $SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM$ is not 3.
 - $(SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM \& XCR0) \neq SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM$.

A successful execution of ENCLU[ERESUME] loads state from the XSAVE area of the SSA frame in a fashion similar to that used by the XRSTOR instruction. Data in the XSAVE area that would cause the XRSTOR instruction to fault will cause the ENCLU[ERESUME] leaf function to fault. Examples include, but are not restricted to the following:

- A bit is set in the $XSTATE_BV$ field and clear in XFRM.
- The required bytes in the header are not clear.
- Loading data would set a reserved bit in MXCSR.

Any of these conditions will cause ERESUME to fault, even if $CR4.OSXSAVE=0$.

41.7.6.2 State Loading

If ENCLU[ERESUME] is successful, the current value of XCR0 is saved internally by the processor and replaced by $SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM$.

State is loaded from the XSAVE area of the SSA frame as if the XRSTOR instruction were executed with $XCR0=XFRM$, $EDX:EAX = XFRM$, with the memory operand being the XSAVE area, and (for 64-bit enclaves) as if $REX.W=1$.

ENCLU[ERESUME] ensures that a subsequent execution of XSAVEOPT inside the enclave will operate properly (e.g., by marking all state as modified).

41.7.7 Processor Extended States and ENCLU[EEXIT]

The ENCLU[EEXIT] leaf function does not perform any X-feature specific consistency checks, nor performs any state synthesis. It is the responsibility of enclave software to clear any sensitive data from the registers before

executing EEXIT. However, successful execution of the ENCLU[EEXIT] leaf function restores XCR0 to the value it held at the time of the most recent enclave entry.

41.7.8 Processor Extended States and ENCLU[EREPORT]

The ENCLU[EREPORT] leaf function creates the MAC-protected REPORT structure that reports on the enclave's identity. ENCLU[EREPORT] includes in the report the values of SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM and SECS.MISCSELECT.

41.7.9 Processor Extended States and ENCLU[EGETKEY]

The ENCLU[EGETKEY] leaf function returns a cryptographic key based on the information provided by the KEYREQUEST structure. Intel SGX provides the means for isolation between different operating conditions by allowing an enclave developer to select which bits out of XFRM and MISCSELECT need to be included in the derivation of the keys.

41.8 INTERACTIONS WITH SMM

41.8.1 Availability of Intel® SGX instructions in SMM

Enclave instructions are not available in SMM, and any attempt to execute ENCLS or ENCLU instructions inside SMM results in an invalid-opcode exception (#UD).

41.8.2 SMI while Inside an Enclave

If the logical processor executing inside an enclave receives an SMI, the logical processor exits the enclave asynchronously. The response to an SMI received while executing inside an enclave depends on whether the dual-monitor treatment is enabled. For detailed discussion of transfer to SMM, see Chapter 34, "System Management Mode" of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3C*.

If the logical processor executing inside an enclave receives an SMI when dual-monitor treatment is not enabled, the logical processor exits the enclave asynchronously, and transfers the control to the SMM handler. In addition to saving the synthetic architectural state to the SMRAM State Save Map (SSM), the logical processor also sets the "Enclave Interruption" bit in the SMRAM SSM (bit position 1 in SMRAM field at offset 7EE0H).

If the logical processor executing inside an enclave receives an SMI when dual-monitor treatment is enabled, the logical processor exits the enclave asynchronously, and transfers the control to the SMM monitor via SMM VM exit. The SMM VM exit sets the "Enclave Interruption" bit in the Exit Reason (see Table 41-2) and in the Guest Interruptibility State field (see Table 41-3) of the SMM VMCS.

41.8.3 SMRAM Synthetic State of AEX Triggered by SMI

All processor registers saved in the SMRAM have the same synthetic values listed in Section 39.3. Additional SMRAM fields that are treated specially on SMI are:

Table 41-2. SMRAM Synthetic States on Asynchronous Enclave Exit

Position	Field	Value	Writable
SMRAM Offset 07EE0H.Bit 1	ENCLAVE_INTERRUPTION	Set to 1 if exit occurred in enclave mode	No

41.9 INTERACTIONS OF INIT, SIPI, AND WAIT-FOR-SIPI WITH INTEL® SGX

INIT received inside an enclave, while the logical processor is not in VMX operation, causes the logical processor to exit the enclave asynchronously. After the AEX, the processor's architectural state is initialized to "Power-on" state (Table 9.1 in *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3A*). If the logical processor is BSP, then it proceeds to execute the BIOS initialization code. If the logical processor is an AP, it enters wait-for-SIPI state.

INIT received inside an enclave, while the logical processor (LP) is in VMX root operation, follows regular Intel Architecture behavior and is blocked.

INIT received inside an enclave, while the logical processor is in VMX non-root operation, causes an AEX. Subsequent to the AEX, the INIT causes a VM exit with the Enclave Interruption bit in the exit-reason field in the VMCS.

A processor cannot be inside an enclave in the wait-for-SIPI state. Consequently, a SIPI received while inside an enclave is lost.

Intel SGX does not change the behavior of the processor in the wait-for-SIPI state.

The SGX-related processor states after INIT-SIPI-SIPI is as follows:

- EPC Settings: Unchanged
- EPCM: Unchanged
- CPUID.LEAF_12H.*: Unchanged
- ENCLAVE_MODE: 0 (LP exits enclave asynchronously)
- MEE state: Unchanged

Software should be aware that following INIT-SIPI-SIPI, the EPC might contain valid pages and should take appropriate measures such as initialize the EPC with the EREMOVE leaf function.

41.10 INTERACTIONS WITH DMA

DMA is not allowed to access any Processor Reserved Memory.

41.11 INTERACTIONS WITH TXT

41.11.1 Enclaves Created Prior to Execution of GETSEC

Enclaves which have been created before the GETSEC[SENDER] leaf function are available for execution after the successful completion of GETSEC[SENDER] and the corresponding SINIT ACM. Actions that a TXT Launched Environment performs in preparation to execute code in the Launched Environment, also applies to enclave code that would run after GETSEC[SENDER].

41.11.2 Interaction of GETSEC with Intel® SGX

All leaf functions of the GETSEC instruction are illegal inside an enclave, and results in an invalid-opcode exception (#UD).

Responding Logical Processors (RLP) which are executing inside an enclave at the time a GETSEC[SENDER] event occurs perform an AEX from the enclave and then enter the Wait-for-SIPI state.

RLP executing inside an enclave at the time of GETSEC[SEXIT], behave as defined for GETSEC[SEXIT]-that is, the RLPs pause during execution of SEXIT and resume after the completion of SEXIT.

The execution of a TXT launch does not affect Intel SGX configuration or security parameters.

41.11.3 Interactions with Authenticated Code Modules (ACMs)

Intel SGX only allows launching ACMs with an Intel SGX SVN that is at the same level or higher than the expected Intel SGX SVN. The expected Intel SGX SVN is specified by BIOS and locked down by the processor on the first successful execution of an Intel SGX instruction that doesn't return an error code. Intel SGX provides interfaces for system software to discover whether a non-faulting Intel SGX instruction has been executed, and evaluate the suitability of the Intel SGX SVN value of any ACM that is expected to be launched by the OS or the VMM.

These interfaces are provided through a read-only MSR called the IA32_SGX_SVN_STATUS MSR (MSR address 500h). The IA32_SGX_SVN_STATUS MSR has the format shown in Table 41-3.

Table 41-3. Layout of the IA32_SGX_SVN_STATUS MSR

Bit Position	Name	ACM Module ID	Value
0	Lock	N.A.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ If 1, indicates that a non-faulting Intel SGX instruction has been executed, consequently, launching a properly signed ACM but with Intel SGX SVN value less than the BIOS specified Intel SGX SVN threshold would lead to an TXT shutdown. ▪ If 0, indicates that the processor will allow a properly signed ACM to launch irrespective of the Intel SGX SVN value of the ACM.
15:1	RSVD	N.A.	0
23:16	SGX_SVN_SINIT	SINIT ACM	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ If CPUID.01H:ECX.SMX = 1, this field reflects the expected threshold of Intel SGX SVN for the SINIT ACM. ▪ If CPUID.01H:ECX.SMX = 0, this field is reserved (0).
63:24	RSVD	N.A.	0

OS/VMM that wishes to launch an architectural ACM such as SINIT is expected to read the IA32_SGX_SVN_STATUS MSR to determine whether the ACM can be launched or a new ACM is needed:

- If either the Intel SGX SVN of the ACM is greater than the value reported by IA32_SGX_SVN_STATUS, or the lock bit in the IA32_SGX_SVN_STATUS is not set, then the OS/VMM can safely launch the ACM.
- If the Intel SGX SVN value reported in the corresponding component of the IA32_SGX_SVN_STATUS is greater than the Intel SGX SVN value in the ACM's header, and if bit 0 of IA32_SGX_SVN_STATUS is 1, then the OS/VMM should not launch that version of the ACM. It should obtain an updated version of the ACM either from the BIOS or from an external resource.

However, OSVs/VMMs are strongly advised to update their version of the ACM any time they detect that the Intel SGX SVN of the ACM carried by the OS/VMM is lower than that reported by IA32_SGX_SVN_STATUS MSR, irrespective of the setting of the lock bit.

41.12 INTERACTIONS WITH CACHING OF LINEAR-ADDRESS TRANSLATIONS

Entering and exiting an enclave causes the logical processor to flush all the global linear-address context as well as the linear-address context associated with the current VPID and PCID. The MONITOR FSM is also cleared.

41.13 INTERACTIONS WITH INTEL® TRANSACTIONAL SYNCHRONIZATION EXTENSIONS (INTEL® TSX)

1. ENCLU or ENCLS instructions inside an HLE region will cause the flow to be aborted and restarted non-speculatively. ENCLU or ENCLS instructions inside an RTM region will cause the flow to be aborted and transfer control to the fallback handler.
2. If XBEGIN is executed inside an enclave, the processor does NOT check whether the address of the fallback handler is within the enclave.
3. If an RTM transaction is executing inside an enclave and there is an attempt to fetch an instruction outside the enclave, the transaction is aborted and control is transferred to the fallback handler. No #GP is delivered.

4. If an RTM transaction is executing inside an enclave and there is a data access to an address within the enclave that denied due to EPCM content (e.g., to a page belonging to a different enclave), the transaction is aborted and control is transferred to the fallback handler. No #GP is delivered.

5. If an RTM transaction executing inside an enclave aborts and the address of the fallback handler is outside the enclave, a #GP is delivered after the abort (EIP reported is that of the fallback handler).

41.13.1 HLE and RTM Debug

RTM debug will be suppressed on opt-out enclave entry. After opt-out entry, the logical processor will behave as if IA32_DEBUG_CTL[15]=0. Any #DB detected inside an RTM transaction region will just cause an abort with no exception delivered.

After opt-in entry, if either DR7[11] = 0 OR IA32_DEBUGCTL[15] = 0, any #DB or #BP detected inside an RTM transaction region will just cause an abort with no exception delivered.

After opt-in entry, if DR7[11] = 1 AND IA32_DEBUGCTL[15] = 1, any #DB or #BP detected inside an RTM transaction will

- terminate speculative execution,
- set RIP to the address of the XBEGIN instruction, and
- be delivered as #DB (implying an Intel SGX AEX; any #BP is converted to #DB).
- DR6[16] will be cleared, indicating RTM debug (if the #DB causes a VM exit, DR6 is not modified but bit 16 of the pending debug exceptions field in the VMCS will be set).

41.14 INTEL® SGX INTERACTIONS WITH S STATES

Whenever an Intel SGX enabled processor enters S3-S5 state, enclaves are destroyed. This is due to the EPC being destroyed when power down occurs. It is the application runtime's responsibility to re-instantiate an enclave after a power transition for which the enclaves were destroyed.

41.15 INTEL® SGX INTERACTIONS WITH MACHINE CHECK ARCHITECTURE (MCA)

41.15.1 Interactions with MCA Events

All architecturally visible machine check events (#MC and CMCI) that are detected while inside an enclave cause an asynchronous enclave exit.

Any machine check exception (#MC) that occurs after Intel SGX is first enables causes Intel SGX to be disabled, (CPUID.SGX_Leaf.0:EAX[SGX1] == 0). It cannot be enabled until after the next reset.

41.15.2 Machine Check Enables (IA32_MCi_CTL)

All supported IA32_MCi_CTL bits for all the machine check banks must be set for Intel SGX to be available (CPUID.SGX_Leaf.0:EAX[SGX1] == 1). Any act of clearing bits from '1' to '0' in any of the IA32_MCi_CTL register may disable Intel SGX (set CPUID.SGX_Leaf.0:EAX[SGX1] to 0) until the next reset.

41.15.3 CR4.MCE

CR4.MCE can be set or cleared with no interactions with Intel SGX.

41.16 INTEL® SGX INTERACTIONS WITH PROTECTED MODE VIRTUAL INTERRUPTS

ENCLS[EENTER] modifies neither EFLAGS.VIP nor EFLAGS.VIF.

ENCLS[ERESUME] loads EFLAGS in a manner similar to that of an execution of IRET with CPL = 3. This means that ERESUME modifies neither EFLAGS.VIP nor EFLAGS.VIF regardless of the value of the EFLAGS image in the SSA frame.

AEX saves EFLAGS.VIP and EFLAGS.VIF unmodified into the EFLAGS image in the SSA frame. AEX modifies neither EFLAGS.VIP nor EFLAGS.VIF after saving EFLAGS.

If CR4.PVI = 1, CPL = 3, EFLAGS.VM = 0, IOPL < 3, EFLAGS.VIP = 1, and EFLAGS.VIF = 0, execution of STI causes a #GP fault. In this case, STI modifies neither EFLAGS.IF nor EFLAGS.VIF. This behavior applies without change within an enclave (where CPL is always 3). Note that, if IOPL = 3, STI always sets EFLAGS.IF without fault; CR4.PVI, EFLAGS.VIP, and EFLAGS.VIF are neither consulted nor modified in this case.

41.17 INTEL SGX INTERACTION WITH PROTECTION KEYS

SGX interactions with PKRU are as follows:

- CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=1):ECX.PKRU indicates whether SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM.PKRU can be set. If SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM.PKRU is set, then PKRU is saved and cleared as part of AEX and is restored as part of ERESUME. If CR4.PKE is set, an enclave can execute RDPKRU and WRKRU independent of whether SECS.ATTRIBUTES.XFRM.PKRU is set.

SGX interactions with domain permission checks are as follows:

- 1) If CR4.PKE is not set, then legacy and SGX permission checks are not effected.
- 2) If CR4.PKE is set, then domain permission checks are applied to all non-enclave access and enclave accesses to user pages in addition to legacy and SGX permission checks at a higher priority than SGX permission checks.
- 3) Implicit accesses aren't subject to domain permission checks.

22. Updates to Appendix C, Volume 3D

Change bars show changes to Appendix C of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3D: System Programming Guide, Part 4*.

Changes to this chapter: Update to Basic Exit Reason 37.

APPENDIX C VMX BASIC EXIT REASONS

Every VM exit writes a 32-bit exit reason to the VMCS (see Section 24.9.1). Certain VM-entry failures also do this (see Section 26.7). The low 16 bits of the exit-reason field form the basic exit reason which provides basic information about the cause of the VM exit or VM-entry failure.

Table C-1 lists values for basic exit reasons and explains their meaning. Entries apply to VM exits, unless otherwise noted.

Table C-1. Basic Exit Reasons

Basic Exit Reason	Description
0	Exception or non-maskable interrupt (NMI). Either: 1: Guest software caused an exception and the bit in the exception bitmap associated with exception's vector was 1. This case includes executions of BOUND that cause #BR, executions of INT1 (they cause #DB), executions of INT3 (they cause #BP), executions of INTO that cause #OF, and executions of UDO, UD1, and UD2 (they cause #UD). 2: An NMI was delivered to the logical processor and the "NMI exiting" VM-execution control was 1.
1	External interrupt. An external interrupt arrived and the "external-interrupt exiting" VM-execution control was 1.
2	Triple fault. The logical processor encountered an exception while attempting to call the double-fault handler and that exception did not itself cause a VM exit due to the exception bitmap.
3	INIT signal. An INIT signal arrived
4	Start-up IPI (SIPI). A SIPI arrived while the logical processor was in the "wait-for-SIPI" state.
5	I/O system-management interrupt (SMI). An SMI arrived immediately after retirement of an I/O instruction and caused an SMM VM exit (see Section 34.15.2).
6	Other SMI. An SMI arrived and caused an SMM VM exit (see Section 34.15.2) but not immediately after retirement of an I/O instruction.
7	Interrupt window. At the beginning of an instruction, RFLAGS.IF was 1; events were not blocked by STI or by MOV SS; and the "interrupt-window exiting" VM-execution control was 1.
8	NMI window. At the beginning of an instruction, there was no virtual-NMI blocking; events were not blocked by MOV SS; and the "NMI-window exiting" VM-execution control was 1.
9	Task switch. Guest software attempted a task switch.
10	CPUID. Guest software attempted to execute CPUID.
11	GETSEC. Guest software attempted to execute GETSEC.
12	HLT. Guest software attempted to execute HLT and the "HLT exiting" VM-execution control was 1.
13	INVD. Guest software attempted to execute INVD.
14	INVLPG. Guest software attempted to execute INVLPG and the "INVLPG exiting" VM-execution control was 1.
15	RDPMC. Guest software attempted to execute RDPMC and the "RDPMC exiting" VM-execution control was 1.
16	RDTSC. Guest software attempted to execute RDTSC and the "RDTSC exiting" VM-execution control was 1.
17	RSM. Guest software attempted to execute RSM in SMM.
18	VMCALL. VMCALL was executed either by guest software (causing an ordinary VM exit) or by the executive monitor (causing an SMM VM exit; see Section 34.15.2).
19	VMCLEAR. Guest software attempted to execute VMCLEAR.
20	VMLAUNCH. Guest software attempted to execute VMLAUNCH.
21	VMPTRLD. Guest software attempted to execute VMPTRLD.
22	VMPTRST. Guest software attempted to execute VMPTRST.

Table C-1. Basic Exit Reasons (Contd.)

Basic Exit Reason	Description
23	VMREAD. Guest software attempted to execute VMREAD.
24	VMRESUME. Guest software attempted to execute VMRESUME.
25	VMWRITE. Guest software attempted to execute VMWRITE.
26	VMXOFF. Guest software attempted to execute VMXOFF.
27	VMXON. Guest software attempted to execute VMXON.
28	Control-register accesses. Guest software attempted to access CR0, CR3, CR4, or CR8 using CLTS, LMSW, or MOV CR and the VM-execution control fields indicate that a VM exit should occur (see Section 25.1 for details). This basic exit reason is not used for trap-like VM exits following executions of the MOV to CR8 instruction when the “use TPR shadow” VM-execution control is 1. Such VM exits instead use basic exit reason 43.
29	MOV DR. Guest software attempted a MOV to or from a debug register and the “MOV-DR exiting” VM-execution control was 1.
30	I/O instruction. Guest software attempted to execute an I/O instruction and either: 1: The “use I/O bitmaps” VM-execution control was 0 and the “unconditional I/O exiting” VM-execution control was 1. 2: The “use I/O bitmaps” VM-execution control was 1 and a bit in the I/O bitmap associated with one of the ports accessed by the I/O instruction was 1.
31	RDMSR. Guest software attempted to execute RDMSR and either: 1: The “use MSR bitmaps” VM-execution control was 0. 2: The value of RCX is neither in the range 00000000H - 00001FFFFH nor in the range C0000000H - C0001FFFFH. 3: The value of RCX was in the range 00000000H - 00001FFFFH and the n^{th} bit in read bitmap for low MSRs is 1, where n was the value of RCX. 4: The value of RCX is in the range C0000000H - C0001FFFFH and the n^{th} bit in read bitmap for high MSRs is 1, where n is the value of RCX & 00001FFFFH.
32	WRMSR. Guest software attempted to execute WRMSR and either: 1: The “use MSR bitmaps” VM-execution control was 0. 2: The value of RCX is neither in the range 00000000H - 00001FFFFH nor in the range C0000000H - C0001FFFFH. 3: The value of RCX was in the range 00000000H - 00001FFFFH and the n^{th} bit in write bitmap for low MSRs is 1, where n was the value of RCX. 4: The value of RCX is in the range C0000000H - C0001FFFFH and the n^{th} bit in write bitmap for high MSRs is 1, where n is the value of RCX & 00001FFFFH.
33	VM-entry failure due to invalid guest state. A VM entry failed one of the checks identified in Section 26.3.1.
34	VM-entry failure due to MSR loading. A VM entry failed in an attempt to load MSRs. See Section 26.4.
36	MWAIT. Guest software attempted to execute MWAIT and the “MWAIT exiting” VM-execution control was 1.
37	Monitor trap flag. A VM exit occurred due to the 1-setting of the “monitor trap flag” VM-execution control (see Section 25.5.2) or VM entry injected a pending MTF VM exit as part of VM entry (see Section 26.5.2).
39	MONITOR. Guest software attempted to execute MONITOR and the “MONITOR exiting” VM-execution control was 1.
40	PAUSE. Either guest software attempted to execute PAUSE and the “PAUSE exiting” VM-execution control was 1 or the “PAUSE-loop exiting” VM-execution control was 1 and guest software executed a PAUSE loop with execution time exceeding PLE_Window (see Section 25.1.3).
41	VM-entry failure due to machine-check event. A machine-check event occurred during VM entry (see Section 26.8).
43	TPR below threshold. The logical processor determined that the value of bits 7:4 of the byte at offset 080H on the virtual-APIC page was below that of the TPR threshold VM-execution control field while the “use TPR shadow” VM-execution control was 1 either as part of TPR virtualization (Section 29.1.2) or VM entry (Section 26.6.7).
44	APIC access. Guest software attempted to access memory at a physical address on the APIC-access page and the “virtualize APIC accesses” VM-execution control was 1 (see Section 29.4).
45	Virtualized EOI. EOI virtualization was performed for a virtual interrupt whose vector indexed a bit set in the EOI-exit bitmap.

Table C-1. Basic Exit Reasons (Contd.)

Basic Exit Reason	Description
46	Access to GDTR or IDTR. Guest software attempted to execute LGDT, LIDT, SGDT, or SIDT and the “descriptor-table exiting” VM-execution control was 1.
47	Access to LDTR or TR. Guest software attempted to execute LLDT, LTR, SLDT, or STR and the “descriptor-table exiting” VM-execution control was 1.
48	EPT violation. An attempt to access memory with a guest-physical address was disallowed by the configuration of the EPT paging structures.
49	EPT misconfiguration. An attempt to access memory with a guest-physical address encountered a misconfigured EPT paging-structure entry.
50	INVEPT. Guest software attempted to execute INVEPT.
51	RDTSCP. Guest software attempted to execute RDTSCP and the “enable RDTSCP” and “RDTSC exiting” VM-execution controls were both 1.
52	VMX-preemption timer expired. The preemption timer counted down to zero.
53	INVPID. Guest software attempted to execute INVVPID.
54	WBINVD. Guest software attempted to execute WBINVD and the “WBINVD exiting” VM-execution control was 1.
55	XSETBV. Guest software attempted to execute XSETBV.
56	APIC write. Guest software completed a write to the virtual-APIC page that must be virtualized by VMM software (see Section 29.4.3.3).
57	RDRAND. Guest software attempted to execute RDRAND and the “RDRAND exiting” VM-execution control was 1.
58	INVPCID. Guest software attempted to execute INVPCID and the “enable INVPCID” and “INVLPG exiting” VM-execution controls were both 1.
59	VMFUNC. Guest software invoked a VM function with the VMFUNC instruction and the VM function either was not enabled or generated a function-specific condition causing a VM exit.
60	ENCLS. Guest software attempted to execute ENCLS and “enable ENCLS exiting” VM-execution control was 1 and either (1) EAX < 63 and the corresponding bit in the ENCLS-exiting bitmap is 1; or (2) EAX ≥ 63 and bit 63 in the ENCLS-exiting bitmap is 1.
61	RDSEED. Guest software attempted to execute RDSEED and the “RDSEED exiting” VM-execution control was 1.
62	Page-modification log full. The processor attempted to create a page-modification log entry and the value of the PML index was not in the range 0-511.
63	XSAVES. Guest software attempted to execute XSAVES, the “enable XSAVES/XRSTORS” was 1, and a bit was set in the logical-AND of the following three values: EDX:EAX, the IA32_XSS MSR, and the XSS-exiting bitmap.
64	XRSTORS. Guest software attempted to execute XRSTORS, the “enable XSAVES/XRSTORS” was 1, and a bit was set in the logical-AND of the following three values: EDX:EAX, the IA32_XSS MSR, and the XSS-exiting bitmap.

23. Updates to Chapter 2, Volume 4

Change bars show changes to Chapter 2 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 4: Model-Specific MSRs*.

Change to chapter: Architectural MSR additions related to security features. Update to MSR_LER_FROM_LIP and MSR_LER_TO_LIP to add write capability (R/W). Updates to the opening paragraphs related to CPUID package definition changes, defining scope of a processor and further clarifications on processor package.

CHAPTER 2 MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

This chapter lists MSRs across Intel processor families. All MSRs listed can be read with the RDMSR and written with the WRMSR instructions. The scope of an MSR defines the set of processors that access the same MSR with RDMSR and WRMSR. Thread-scope MSRs are unique to every logical processor. Core-scope MSRs are shared by the threads in the same core; similarly for module-scope, die-scope, and package-scope.

When a processor package contains a single die, die-scope and package-scope are synonymous. When a package contains multiple die, they are distinct.

NOTE

For information on hierarchical level types supported, refer to the CPUID Leaf 1FH definition for the actual level type numbers: "V2 Extended Topology Enumeration Leaf" in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 2A*. Also see Section 8.9.1, "Hierarchical Mapping of Shared Resources" in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 3A*.

Register addresses are given in both hexadecimal and decimal. The register name is the mnemonic register name and the bit description describes individual bits in registers.

Model specific registers and its bit-fields may be supported for a finite range of processor families/models. To distinguish between different processor family and/or models, software must use CPUID.01H leaf function to query the combination of DisplayFamily and DisplayModel to determine model-specific availability of MSRs (see CPUID instruction in Chapter 3, "Instruction Set Reference, A-L" in the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 2A*). Table 2-1 lists the signature values of DisplayFamily and DisplayModel for various processor families or processor number series.

Table 2-1. CPUID Signature Values of DisplayFamily_DisplayModel

DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Processor Families/Processor Number Series
06_85H	Intel® Xeon Phi™ Processor 7215, 7285, 7295 Series based on Knights Mill microarchitecture
06_57H	Intel® Xeon Phi™ Processor 3200, 5200, 7200 Series based on Knights Landing microarchitecture
06_66H	Future Intel® Core™ processors based on Cannon Lake microarchitecture
06_8EH, 06_9EH	7th generation Intel® Core™ processors based on Kaby Lake microarchitecture and 8th generation Intel® Core™ processors based on Coffee Lake microarchitecture
06_55H	Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family based on Skylake microarchitecture
06_4EH, 06_5EH	6th generation Intel Core processors and Intel Xeon processor E3-1500m v5 product family and E3-1200 v5 product family based on Skylake microarchitecture
06_56H	Intel Xeon processor D-1500 product family based on Broadwell microarchitecture
06_4FH	Intel Xeon processor E5 v4 Family based on Broadwell microarchitecture, Intel Xeon processor E7 v4 Family, Intel Core i7-69xx Processor Extreme Edition
06_47H	5th generation Intel Core processors, Intel Xeon processor E3-1200 v4 product family based on Broadwell microarchitecture
06_3DH	Intel Core M-5xxx Processor, 5th generation Intel Core processors based on Broadwell microarchitecture
06_3FH	Intel Xeon processor E5-4600/2600/1600 v3 product families, Intel Xeon processor E7 v3 product families based on Haswell-E microarchitecture, Intel Core i7-59xx Processor Extreme Edition
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	4th Generation Intel Core processor and Intel Xeon processor E3-1200 v3 product family based on Haswell microarchitecture

Table 2-1. CPUID Signature (Contd.)Values of DisplayFamily_DisplayModel (Contd.)

DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Processor Families/Processor Number Series
06_3EH	Intel Xeon processor E7-8800/4800/2800 v2 product families based on Ivy Bridge-E microarchitecture
06_3EH	Intel Xeon processor E5-2600/1600 v2 product families and Intel Xeon processor E5-2400 v2 product family based on Ivy Bridge-E microarchitecture, Intel Core i7-49xx Processor Extreme Edition
06_3AH	3rd Generation Intel Core Processor and Intel Xeon processor E3-1200 v2 product family based on Ivy Bridge microarchitecture
06_2DH	Intel Xeon processor E5 Family based on Intel microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge, Intel Core i7-39xx Processor Extreme Edition
06_2FH	Intel Xeon Processor E7 Family
06_2AH	Intel Xeon processor E3-1200 product family; 2nd Generation Intel Core i7, i5, i3 Processors 2xxx Series
06_2EH	Intel Xeon processor 7500, 6500 series
06_25H, 06_2CH	Intel Xeon processors 3600, 5600 series, Intel Core i7, i5 and i3 Processors
06_1EH, 06_1FH	Intel Core i7 and i5 Processors
06_1AH	Intel Core i7 Processor, Intel Xeon processor 3400, 3500, 5500 series
06_1DH	Intel Xeon processor MP 7400 series
06_17H	Intel Xeon processor 3100, 3300, 5200, 5400 series, Intel Core 2 Quad processors 8000, 9000 series
06_0FH	Intel Xeon processor 3000, 3200, 5100, 5300, 7300 series, Intel Core 2 Quad processor 6000 series, Intel Core 2 Extreme 6000 series, Intel Core 2 Duo 4000, 5000, 6000, 7000 series processors, Intel Pentium dual-core processors
06_0EH	Intel Core Duo, Intel Core Solo processors
06_0DH	Intel Pentium M processor
06_7AH	Intel® Atom™ processors based on Goldmont Plus Microarchitecture
06_5FH	Intel Atom processors based on Goldmont Microarchitecture (code name Denverton)
06_5CH	Intel Atom processors based on Goldmont Microarchitecture
06_4CH	Intel Atom processor X7-Z8000 and X5-Z8000 series based on Airmont Microarchitecture
06_5DH	Intel Atom processor X3-C3000 based on Silvermont Microarchitecture
06_5AH	Intel Atom processor Z3500 series
06_4AH	Intel Atom processor Z3400 series
06_37H	Intel Atom processor E3000 series, Z3600 series, Z3700 series
06_4DH	Intel Atom processor C2000 series
06_36H	Intel Atom processor S1000 Series
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H	Intel Atom processor family, Intel Atom processor D2000, N2000, E2000, Z2000, C1000 series
0F_06H	Intel Xeon processor 7100, 5000 Series, Intel Xeon Processor MP, Intel Pentium 4, Pentium D processors
0F_03H, 0F_04H	Intel Xeon processor, Intel Xeon processor MP, Intel Pentium 4, Pentium D processors
06_09H	Intel Pentium M processor
0F_02H	Intel Xeon Processor, Intel Xeon processor MP, Intel Pentium 4 processors
0F_0H, 0F_01H	Intel Xeon Processor, Intel Xeon processor MP, Intel Pentium 4 processors
06_7H, 06_08H, 06_0AH, 06_0BH	Intel Pentium III Xeon processor, Intel Pentium III processor
06_03H, 06_05H	Intel Pentium II Xeon processor, Intel Pentium II processor

Table 2-1. CPUID Signature (Contd.)Values of DisplayFamily_DisplayModel (Contd.)

DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Processor Families/Processor Number Series
06_01H	Intel Pentium Pro processor
05_01H, 05_02H, 05_04H	Intel Pentium processor, Intel Pentium processor with MMX Technology

The Intel® Quark™ SoC X1000 processor can be identified by the signature of DisplayFamily_DisplayModel = 05_09H and SteppingID = 0

2.1 ARCHITECTURAL MSRS

Many MSRs have carried over from one generation of IA-32 processors to the next and to Intel 64 processors. A subset of MSRs and associated bit fields, which do not change on future processor generations, are now considered architectural MSRs. For historical reasons (beginning with the Pentium 4 processor), these “architectural MSRs” were given the prefix “IA32_”. Table 2-2 lists the architectural MSRs, their addresses, their current names, their names in previous IA-32 processors, and bit fields that are considered architectural. MSR addresses outside Table 2-2 and certain bit fields in an MSR address that may overlap with architectural MSR addresses are model-specific. Code that accesses a machine specified MSR and that is executed on a processor that does not support that MSR will generate an exception.

Architectural MSR or individual bit fields in an architectural MSR may be introduced or transitioned at the granularity of certain processor family/model or the presence of certain CPUID feature flags. The right-most column of Table 2-2 provides information on the introduction of each architectural MSR or its individual fields. This information is expressed either as signature values of “DF_DM” (see Table 2-1) or via CPUID flags.

Certain bit field position may be related to the maximum physical address width, the value of which is expressed as “MAXPHYADDR” in Table 2-2. “MAXPHYADDR” is reported by CPUID.8000_0008H leaf.

MSR address range between 40000000H - 400000FFH is marked as a specially reserved range. All existing and future processors will not implement any features using any MSR in this range.

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
0H	0	IA32_P5_MC_ADDR (P5_MC_ADDR)	See Section 2.22, “MSRs in Pentium Processors.”	Pentium Processor (05_01H)
1H	1	IA32_P5_MC_TYPE (P5_MC_TYPE)	See Section 2.22, “MSRs in Pentium Processors.”	DF_DM = 05_01H
6H	6	IA32_MONITOR_FILTER_SIZE	See Section 8.10.5, “Monitor/Mwait Address Range Determination.”	0F_03H
10H	16	IA32_TIME_STAMP_COUNTER (TSC)	See Section 17.17, “Time-Stamp Counter.”	05_01H
17H	23	IA32_PLATFORM_ID (MSR_PLATFORM_ID)	Platform ID (RO) The operating system can use this MSR to determine “slot” information for the processor and the proper microcode update to load.	06_01H
		49:0	Reserved	

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
		52:50	Platform Id (RO) Contains information concerning the intended platform for the processor. 52 51 50 0 0 0 Processor Flag 0 0 0 1 Processor Flag 1 0 1 0 Processor Flag 2 0 1 1 Processor Flag 3 1 0 0 Processor Flag 4 1 0 1 Processor Flag 5 1 1 0 Processor Flag 6 1 1 1 Processor Flag 7	
		63:53	Reserved	
1BH	27	IA32_APIC_BASE (APIC_BASE)	This register holds the APIC base address, permitting the relocation of the APIC memory map. See Section 10.4.4, "Local APIC Status and Location" and Section 10.4.5, "Relocating the Local APIC Registers".	06_01H
		7:0	Reserved	
		8	BSP flag (R/W)	
		9	Reserved	
		10	Enable x2APIC mode.	06_1AH
		11	APIC Global Enable (R/W)	
		(MAXPHYADDR - 1):12	APIC Base (R/W)	
	63: MAXPHYADDR	Reserved		
3AH	58	IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL	Control Features in Intel 64 Processor (R/W)	If any one enumeration condition for defined bit field holds.
		0	Lock bit (R/WO): (1 = locked). When set, locks this MSR from being written; writes to this bit will result in GP(0). Note: Once the Lock bit is set, the contents of this register cannot be modified. Therefore the lock bit must be set after configuring support for Intel Virtualization Technology and prior to transferring control to an option ROM or the OS. Hence, once the Lock bit is set, the entire IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL contents are preserved across RESET when PWRGOOD is not deasserted.	If any one enumeration condition for defined bit field position greater than bit 0 holds.

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
		1	Enable VMX inside SMX operation (R/WL): This bit enables a system executive to use VMX in conjunction with SMX to support Intel® Trusted Execution Technology. BIOS must set this bit only when the CPUID function 1 returns VMX feature flag and SMX feature flag set (ECX bits 5 and 6 respectively).	If CPUID.01H:ECX[5] = 1 && CPUID.01H:ECX[6] = 1
		2	Enable VMX outside SMX operation (R/WL): This bit enables VMX for a system executive that does not require SMX. BIOS must set this bit only when the CPUID function 1 returns the VMX feature flag set (ECX bit 5).	If CPUID.01H:ECX[5] = 1
		7:3	Reserved	
		14:8	SENTER Local Function Enables (R/WL): When set, each bit in the field represents an enable control for a corresponding SENTER function. This field is supported only if CPUID.1:ECX.[bit 6] is set.	If CPUID.01H:ECX[6] = 1
		15	SENTER Global Enable (R/WL): This bit must be set to enable SENTER leaf functions. This bit is supported only if CPUID.1:ECX.[bit 6] is set.	If CPUID.01H:ECX[6] = 1
		16	Reserved	
		17	SGX Launch Control Enable (R/WL): This bit must be set to enable runtime re-configuration of SGX Launch Control via the IA32_SGXLEPUBKEYHASHn MSR.	If CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0H): ECX[30] = 1
		18	SGX Global Enable (R/WL): This bit must be set to enable SGX leaf functions.	If CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0H): EBX[2] = 1
		19	Reserved	
		20	LMCE On (R/WL): When set, system software can program the MSRs associated with LMCE to configure delivery of some machine check exceptions to a single logical processor.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[27] = 1
		63:21	Reserved	
3BH	59	IA32_TSC_ADJUST	Per Logical Processor TSC Adjust (R/Write to clear)	If CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0H): EBX[1] = 1
		63:0	THREAD_ADJUST: Local offset value of the IA32_TSC for a logical processor. Reset value is zero. A write to IA32_TSC will modify the local offset in IA32_TSC_ADJUST and the content of IA32_TSC, but does not affect the internal invariant TSC hardware.	

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
48H	72	IA32_SPEC_CTRL	Speculation Control (R/W) The MSR bits are defined as logical processor scope. On some core implementations, the bits may impact sibling logical processors on the same core. This MSR has a value of 0 after reset and is unaffected by INIT# or SIPI#.	If any one of the enumeration conditions for defined bit field positions holds.
		0	Indirect Branch Restricted Speculation (IBRS). Restricts speculation of indirect branch.	If CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EDX[26]=1
		1	Single Thread Indirect Branch Predictors (STIBP). Prevents indirect branch predictions on all logical processors on the core from being controlled by any sibling logical processor in the same core.	If CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EDX[27]=1
		2	Speculative Store Bypass Disable (SSBD) delays speculative execution of a load until the addresses for all older stores are known.	If CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EDX[31]=1
		63:3	Reserved	
49H	73	IA32_PRED_CMD	Prediction Command (W0) Gives software a way to issue commands that affect the state of predictors.	If any one of the enumeration conditions for defined bit field positions holds.
		0	Indirect Branch Prediction Barrier (IBPB).	If CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EDX[26]=1
		63:1	Reserved	
79H	121	IA32_BIOS_UPDT_TRIG (BIOS_UPDT_TRIG)	BIOS Update Trigger (W) Executing a WRMSR instruction to this MSR causes a microcode update to be loaded into the processor. See Section 9.11.6, "Microcode Update Loader." A processor may prevent writing to this MSR when loading guest states on VM entries or saving guest states on VM exits.	06_01H
8BH	139	IA32_BIOS_SIGN_ID (BIOS_SIGN/BBL_CR_D3)	BIOS Update Signature (RO) Returns the microcode update signature following the execution of CPUID.01H. A processor may prevent writing to this MSR when loading guest states on VM entries or saving guest states on VM exits.	06_01H
		31:0	Reserved	

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
		63:32	It is recommended that this field be pre-loaded with zero prior to executing CPUID. If the field remains zero following the execution of CPUID, this indicates that no microcode update is loaded. Any non-zero value is the microcode update signature.	
8CH	140	IA32_SGXLEPUBKEYHASH0	IA32_SGXLEPUBKEYHASH[63:0] (R/W) Bits 63:0 of the SHA256 digest of the SIGSTRUCT.MODULUS for SGX Launch Enclave. On reset, the default value is the digest of Intel's signing key.	Read permitted if CPUID.(EAX=12H,ECX=0H): EAX[0]=1 && CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0H):ECX[30]=1. Write permitted if CPUID.(EAX=12H,ECX=0H): EAX[0]=1 && IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL[17] = 1 && IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL[0] = 1.
8DH	141	IA32_SGXLEPUBKEYHASH1	IA32_SGXLEPUBKEYHASH[127:64] (R/W) Bits 127:64 of the SHA256 digest of the SIGSTRUCT.MODULUS for SGX Launch Enclave. On reset, the default value is the digest of Intel's signing key.	
8EH	142	IA32_SGXLEPUBKEYHASH2	IA32_SGXLEPUBKEYHASH[191:128] (R/W) Bits 191:128 of the SHA256 digest of the SIGSTRUCT.MODULUS for SGX Launch Enclave. On reset, the default value is the digest of Intel's signing key.	
8FH	143	IA32_SGXLEPUBKEYHASH3	IA32_SGXLEPUBKEYHASH[255:192] (R/W) Bits 255:192 of the SHA256 digest of the SIGSTRUCT.MODULUS for SGX Launch Enclave. On reset, the default value is the digest of Intel's signing key.	
9BH	155	IA32_SMM_MONITOR_CTL	SMM Monitor Configuration (R/W)	If CPUID.01H: ECX[5]=1 CPUID.01H: ECX[6] = 1
		0	Valid (R/W)	
		1	Reserved	
		2	Controls SMI unblocking by VMXOFF (see Section 34.14.4).	If IA32_VMX_MISC[28]
		11:3	Reserved	
		31:12	MSEG Base (R/W)	
		63:32	Reserved	
9EH	158	IA32_SMBASE	Base address of the logical processor's SMRAM image (RO, SMM only).	If IA32_VMX_MISC[15]
C1H	193	IA32_PMC0 (PERFCTR0)	General Performance Counter 0 (R/W)	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 0
C2H	194	IA32_PMC1 (PERFCTR1)	General Performance Counter 1 (R/W)	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 1
C3H	195	IA32_PMC2	General Performance Counter 2 (R/W)	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 2

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
C4H	196	IA32_PMC3	General Performance Counter 3 (R/W)	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 3
C5H	197	IA32_PMC4	General Performance Counter 4 (R/W)	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 4
C6H	198	IA32_PMC5	General Performance Counter 5 (R/W)	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 5
C7H	199	IA32_PMC6	General Performance Counter 6 (R/W)	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 6
C8H	200	IA32_PMC7	General Performance Counter 7 (R/W)	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 7
E7H	231	IA32_MPERF	TSC Frequency Clock Counter (R/Write to clear)	If CPUID.06H: ECX[0] = 1
		63:0	CO_MCNT: C0 TSC Frequency Clock Count Increments at fixed interval (relative to TSC freq.) when the logical processor is in C0. Cleared upon overflow / wrap-around of IA32_APERF.	
E8H	232	IA32_APERF	Actual Performance Clock Counter (R/Write to clear)	If CPUID.06H: ECX[0] = 1
		63:0	CO_ACNT: C0 Actual Frequency Clock Count Accumulates core clock counts at the coordinated clock frequency, when the logical processor is in C0. Cleared upon overflow / wrap-around of IA32_MPERF.	
FEH	254	IA32_MTRRCAP (MTRRcap)	MTRR Capability (RO) See Section 11.11.2.1, "IA32_MTRR_DEF_TYPE MSR."	06_01H
		7:0	VCNT: The number of variable memory type ranges in the processor.	
		8	Fixed range MTRRs are supported when set.	
		9	Reserved	
		10	WC Supported when set.	
		11	SMRR Supported when set.	
		12	PRMRR supported when set.	
		63:13	Reserved	
10AH	266	IA32_ARCH_CAPABILITIES	Enumeration of Architectural Features (RO)	If CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EDX[29]=1
		0	RDCL_NO: The processor is not susceptible to Rogue Data Cache Load (RDCL).	
		1	IBRS_ALL: The processor supports enhanced IBRS.	

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
		2	RSBA: The processor supports RSB Alternate. Alternative branch predictors may be used by RET instructions when the RSB is empty. SW using retpoline may be affected by this behavior.	
		3	SKIP_L1DFL_VMENTRY: A value of 1 indicates the hypervisor need not flush the L1D on VM entry.	
		4	SSB_NO: Processor is not susceptible to Speculative Store Bypass.	
		63:5	Reserved	
10BH	267	IA32_FLUSH_CMD	Flush Command (WO) Gives software a way to invalidate structures with finer granularity than other architectural methods.	If any one of the enumeration conditions for defined bit field positions holds.
		0	L1D_FLUSH: Writeback and invalidate the L1 data cache.	If CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EDX[28]=1
		63:1	Reserved	
174H	372	IA32_SYSENTER_CS	SYSENTER_CS_MSR (R/W)	06_01H
		15:0	CS Selector.	
		31:16	Not used.	Can be read and written.
		63:32	Not used.	Writes ignored; reads return zero.
175H	373	IA32_SYSENTER_ESP	SYSENTER_ESP_MSR (R/W)	06_01H
176H	374	IA32_SYSENTER_EIP	SYSENTER_EIP_MSR (R/W)	06_01H
179H	377	IA32_MCG_CAP (MCG_CAP)	Global Machine Check Capability (RO)	06_01H
		7:0	Count: Number of reporting banks.	
		8	MCG_CTL_P: IA32_MCG_CTL is present if this bit is set.	
		9	MCG_EXT_P: Extended machine check state registers are present if this bit is set.	
		10	MCP_CMCI_P: Support for corrected MC error event is present.	06_01H
		11	MCG_TES_P: Threshold-based error status register are present if this bit is set.	
		15:12	Reserved	
		23:16	MCG_EXT_CNT: Number of extended machine check state registers present.	
		24	MCG_SER_P: The processor supports software error recovery if this bit is set.	
		25	Reserved	

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
		26	MCG_ELOG_P: Indicates that the processor allows platform firmware to be invoked when an error is detected so that it may provide additional platform specific information in an ACPI format "Generic Error Data Entry" that augments the data included in machine check bank registers.	06_3EH
		27	MCG_LMCE_P: Indicates that the processor supports extended state in IA32_MCG_STATUS and associated MSR necessary to configure Local Machine Check Exception (LMCE).	06_3EH
		63:28	Reserved	
17AH	378	IA32_MCG_STATUS (MCG_STATUS)	Global Machine Check Status (R/W0)	06_01H
		0	RIPV. Restart IP valid.	06_01H
		1	EIPV. Error IP valid.	06_01H
		2	MCIP. Machine check in progress.	06_01H
		3	LMCE_S	If IA32_MCG_CAP.LMCE_P[2:7] = 1
		63:4	Reserved	
17BH	379	IA32_MCG_CTL (MCG_CTL)	Global Machine Check Control (R/W)	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CTL_P[8] = 1
180H-185H	384-389	Reserved		06_0EH ¹
186H	390	IA32_PERFEVTSELO (PERFEVTSELO)	Performance Event Select Register 0 (R/W)	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 0
		7:0	Event Select: Selects a performance event logic unit.	
		15:8	UMask: Qualifies the microarchitectural condition to detect on the selected event logic.	
		16	USR: Counts while in privilege level is not ring 0.	
		17	OS: Counts while in privilege level is ring 0.	
		18	Edge: Enables edge detection if set.	
		19	PC: Enables pin control.	
		20	INT: Enables interrupt on counter overflow.	

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
		21	AnyThread: When set to 1, it enables counting the associated event conditions occurring across all logical processors sharing a processor core. When set to 0, the counter only increments the associated event conditions occurring in the logical processor which programmed the MSR.	
		22	EN: Enables the corresponding performance counter to commence counting when this bit is set.	
		23	INV: Invert the CMASK.	
		31:24	CMASK: When CMASK is not zero, the corresponding performance counter increments each cycle if the event count is greater than or equal to the CMASK.	
		63:32	Reserved	
187H	391	IA32_PERFEVTSEL1 (PERFEVTSEL1)	Performance Event Select Register 1 (R/W)	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 1
188H	392	IA32_PERFEVTSEL2	Performance Event Select Register 2 (R/W)	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 2
189H	393	IA32_PERFEVTSEL3	Performance Event Select Register 3 (R/W)	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 3
18AH-197H	394-407	Reserved		06_0EH ²
198H	408	IA32_PERF_STATUS	Current Performance Status (RO) See Section 14.1.1, "Software Interface For Initiating Performance State Transitions".	0F_03H
		15:0	Current performance State Value.	
		63:16	Reserved	
199H	409	IA32_PERF_CTL	Performance Control MSR (R/W) Software makes a request for a new Performance state (P-State) by writing this MSR. See Section 14.1.1, "Software Interface For Initiating Performance State Transitions".	0F_03H
		15:0	Target performance State Value.	
		31:16	Reserved	
		32	IDA Engage (R/W) When set to 1: disengages IDA.	06_0FH (Mobile only)
		63:33	Reserved	
19AH	410	IA32_CLOCK_MODULATION	Clock Modulation Control (R/W) See Section 14.7.3, "Software Controlled Clock Modulation."	If CPUID.01H:EDX[22] = 1

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
		0	Extended On-Demand Clock Modulation Duty Cycle.	If CPUID.06H:EAX[5] = 1
		3:1	On-Demand Clock Modulation Duty Cycle: Specific encoded values for target duty cycle modulation.	If CPUID.01H:EDX[22] = 1
		4	On-Demand Clock Modulation Enable: Set 1 to enable modulation.	If CPUID.01H:EDX[22] = 1
		63:5	Reserved	
19BH	411	IA32_THERM_INTERRUPT	Thermal Interrupt Control (R/W) Enables and disables the generation of an interrupt on temperature transitions detected with the processor's thermal sensors and thermal monitor. See Section 14.7.2, "Thermal Monitor."	If CPUID.01H:EDX[22] = 1
		0	High-Temperature Interrupt Enable	If CPUID.01H:EDX[22] = 1
		1	Low-Temperature Interrupt Enable	If CPUID.01H:EDX[22] = 1
		2	PROCHOT# Interrupt Enable	If CPUID.01H:EDX[22] = 1
		3	FORCEPR# Interrupt Enable	If CPUID.01H:EDX[22] = 1
		4	Critical Temperature Interrupt Enable	If CPUID.01H:EDX[22] = 1
		7:5	Reserved	
		14:8	Threshold #1 Value	If CPUID.01H:EDX[22] = 1
		15	Threshold #1 Interrupt Enable	If CPUID.01H:EDX[22] = 1
		22:16	Threshold #2 Value	If CPUID.01H:EDX[22] = 1
		23	Threshold #2 Interrupt Enable	If CPUID.01H:EDX[22] = 1
		24	Power Limit Notification Enable	If CPUID.06H:EAX[4] = 1
19CH	412	IA32_THERM_STATUS	Thermal Status Information (RO) Contains status information about the processor's thermal sensor and automatic thermal monitoring facilities. See Section 14.7.2, "Thermal Monitor".	If CPUID.01H:EDX[22] = 1
		0	Thermal Status (RO)	If CPUID.01H:EDX[22] = 1
		1	Thermal Status Log (R/W)	If CPUID.01H:EDX[22] = 1
		2	PROCHOT # or FORCEPR# event (RO)	If CPUID.01H:EDX[22] = 1
		3	PROCHOT # or FORCEPR# log (R/WCO)	If CPUID.01H:EDX[22] = 1
		4	Critical Temperature Status (RO)	If CPUID.01H:EDX[22] = 1
		5	Critical Temperature Status log (R/WCO)	If CPUID.01H:EDX[22] = 1
		6	Thermal Threshold #1 Status (RO)	If CPUID.01H:ECX[8] = 1
		7	Thermal Threshold #1 log (R/WCO)	If CPUID.01H:ECX[8] = 1

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
		8	Thermal Threshold #2 Status (RO)	If CPUID.01H:ECX[8] = 1
		9	Thermal Threshold #2 log (R/WCO)	If CPUID.01H:ECX[8] = 1
		10	Power Limitation Status (RO)	If CPUID.06H:EAX[4] = 1
		11	Power Limitation log (R/WCO)	If CPUID.06H:EAX[4] = 1
		12	Current Limit Status (RO)	If CPUID.06H:EAX[7] = 1
		13	Current Limit log (R/WCO)	If CPUID.06H:EAX[7] = 1
		14	Cross Domain Limit Status (RO)	If CPUID.06H:EAX[7] = 1
		15	Cross Domain Limit log (R/WCO)	If CPUID.06H:EAX[7] = 1
		22:16	Digital Readout (RO)	If CPUID.06H:EAX[0] = 1
		26:23	Reserved	
		30:27	Resolution in Degrees Celsius (RO)	If CPUID.06H:EAX[0] = 1
		31	Reading Valid (RO)	If CPUID.06H:EAX[0] = 1
		63:32	Reserved	
1A0H	416	IA32_MISC_ENABLE	Enable Misc. Processor Features (R/W) Allows a variety of processor functions to be enabled and disabled.	
		0	Fast-Strings Enable When set, the fast-strings feature (for REP MOVS and REP STORS) is enabled (default). When clear, fast-strings are disabled.	OF_OH
		2:1	Reserved	
		3	Automatic Thermal Control Circuit Enable (R/W) 1 = Setting this bit enables the thermal control circuit (TCC) portion of the Intel Thermal Monitor feature. This allows the processor to automatically reduce power consumption in response to TCC activation. 0 = Disabled. Note: In some products clearing this bit might be ignored in critical thermal conditions, and TM1, TM2 and adaptive thermal throttling will still be activated. The default value of this field varies with product . See respective tables where default value is listed.	OF_OH
		6:4	Reserved	
		7	Performance Monitoring Available (R) 1 = Performance monitoring enabled. 0 = Performance monitoring disabled.	OF_OH
		10:8	Reserved	

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
		11	Branch Trace Storage Unavailable (RO) 1 = Processor doesn't support branch trace storage (BTS). 0 = BTS is supported.	0F_0H
		12	Processor Event Based Sampling (PEBS) Unavailable (RO) 1 = PEBS is not supported. 0 = PEBS is supported.	06_0FH
		15:13	Reserved	
		16	Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology Enable (R/W) 0 = Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology disabled. 1 = Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology enabled.	If CPUID.01H: ECX[7] = 1
		17	Reserved	
		18	ENABLE MONITOR FSM (R/W) When this bit is set to 0, the MONITOR feature flag is not set (CPUID.01H:ECX[bit 3] = 0). This indicates that MONITOR/MWAIT are not supported. Software attempts to execute MONITOR/MWAIT will cause #UD when this bit is 0. When this bit is set to 1 (default), MONITOR/MWAIT are supported (CPUID.01H:ECX[bit 3] = 1). If the SSE3 feature flag ECX[0] is not set (CPUID.01H:ECX[bit 0] = 0), the OS must not attempt to alter this bit. BIOS must leave it in the default state. Writing this bit when the SSE3 feature flag is set to 0 may generate a #GP exception.	0F_03H
		21:19	Reserved	

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
		22	<p>Limit CPUID Maxval (R/W)</p> <p>When this bit is set to 1, CPUID.00H returns a maximum value in EAX[7:0] of 2.</p> <p>BIOS should contain a setup question that allows users to specify when the installed OS does not support CPUID functions greater than 2.</p> <p>Before setting this bit, BIOS must execute the CPUID.0H and examine the maximum value returned in EAX[7:0]. If the maximum value is greater than 2, this bit is supported.</p> <p>Otherwise, this bit is not supported. Setting this bit when the maximum value is not greater than 2 may generate a #GP exception.</p> <p>Setting this bit may cause unexpected behavior in software that depends on the availability of CPUID leaves greater than 2.</p>	0F_03H
		23	<p>xTPR Message Disable (R/W)</p> <p>When set to 1, xTPR messages are disabled. xTPR messages are optional messages that allow the processor to inform the chipset of its priority.</p>	If CPUID.01H:ECX[14] = 1
		33:24	Reserved	
		34	<p>XD Bit Disable (R/W)</p> <p>When set to 1, the Execute Disable Bit feature (XD Bit) is disabled and the XD Bit extended feature flag will be clear (CPUID.80000001H: EDX[20]=0).</p> <p>When set to a 0 (default), the Execute Disable Bit feature (if available) allows the OS to enable PAE paging and take advantage of data only pages.</p> <p>BIOS must not alter the contents of this bit location, if XD bit is not supported. Writing this bit to 1 when the XD Bit extended feature flag is set to 0 may generate a #GP exception.</p>	If CPUID.80000001H:EDX[20] = 1
		63:35	Reserved	
1B0H	432	IA32_ENERGY_PERF_BIAS	Performance Energy Bias Hint (R/W)	If CPUID.6H:ECX[3] = 1
		3:0	<p>Power Policy Preference:</p> <p>0 indicates preference to highest performance.</p> <p>15 indicates preference to maximize energy saving.</p>	
		63:4	Reserved	

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
1B1H	433	IA32_PACKAGE_THERM_STATUS	Package Thermal Status Information (RO) Contains status information about the package's thermal sensor. See Section 14.8, "Package Level Thermal Management."	If CPUID.06H: EAX[6] = 1
		0	Pkg Thermal Status (RO)	
		1	Pkg Thermal Status Log (R/W)	
		2	Pkg PROCHOT # event (RO)	
		3	Pkg PROCHOT # log (R/WCO)	
		4	Pkg Critical Temperature Status (RO)	
		5	Pkg Critical Temperature Status Log (R/WCO)	
		6	Pkg Thermal Threshold #1 Status (RO)	
		7	Pkg Thermal Threshold #1 log (R/WCO)	
		8	Pkg Thermal Threshold #2 Status (RO)	
		9	Pkg Thermal Threshold #1 log (R/WCO)	
		10	Pkg Power Limitation Status (RO)	
		11	Pkg Power Limitation log (R/WCO)	
		15:12	Reserved	
		22:16	Pkg Digital Readout (RO)	
63:23	Reserved			
1B2H	434	IA32_PACKAGE_THERM_INTERRUPT	Pkg Thermal Interrupt Control (R/W) Enables and disables the generation of an interrupt on temperature transitions detected with the package's thermal sensor. See Section 14.8, "Package Level Thermal Management."	If CPUID.06H: EAX[6] = 1
		0	Pkg High-Temperature Interrupt Enable	
		1	Pkg Low-Temperature Interrupt Enable	
		2	Pkg PROCHOT# Interrupt Enable	
		3	Reserved	
		4	Pkg Overheat Interrupt Enable	
		7:5	Reserved	
		14:8	Pkg Threshold #1 Value	
		15	Pkg Threshold #1 Interrupt Enable	
		22:16	Pkg Threshold #2 Value	
		23	Pkg Threshold #2 Interrupt Enable	
		24	Pkg Power Limit Notification Enable	

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
		63:25	Reserved	
1D9H	473	IA32_DEBUGCTL (MSR_DEBUGCTLA, MSR_DEBUGCTLB)	Trace/Profile Resource Control (R/W)	06_0EH
		0	LBR: Setting this bit to 1 enables the processor to record a running trace of the most recent branches taken by the processor in the LBR stack.	06_01H
		1	BTF: Setting this bit to 1 enables the processor to treat EFLAGS.TF as single-step on branches instead of single-step on instructions.	06_01H
		5:2	Reserved	
		6	TR: Setting this bit to 1 enables branch trace messages to be sent.	06_0EH
		7	BTS: Setting this bit enables branch trace messages (BTMs) to be logged in a BTS buffer.	06_0EH
		8	BTINT: When clear, BTMs are logged in a BTS buffer in circular fashion. When this bit is set, an interrupt is generated by the BTS facility when the BTS buffer is full.	06_0EH
		9	1: BTS_OFF_OS: When set, BTS or BTM is skipped if CPL = 0.	06_0FH
		10	BTS_OFF_USR: When set, BTS or BTM is skipped if CPL > 0.	06_0FH
		11	FREEZE_LBRS_ON_PMI: When set, the LBR stack is frozen on a PMI request.	If CPUID.01H: ECX[15] = 1 && CPUID.0AH: EAX[7:0] > 1
		12	FREEZE_PERFMON_ON_PMI: When set, each ENABLE bit of the global counter control MSR are frozen (address 38FH) on a PMI request.	If CPUID.01H: ECX[15] = 1 && CPUID.0AH: EAX[7:0] > 1
		13	ENABLE_UNCORE_PMI: When set, enables the logical processor to receive and generate PMI on behalf of the uncore.	06_1AH
		14	FREEZE_WHILE_SMM: When set, freezes perfmon and trace messages while in SMM.	If IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES[12] = 1
		15	RTM_DEBUG: When set, enables DR7 debug bit on XBEGIN.	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EBX[11] = 1)
		63:16	Reserved	
1F2H	498	IA32_SMRR_PHYSBASE	SMRR Base Address (Writeable only in SMM) Base address of SMM memory range.	If IA32_MTRRCAP.SMRR[11] = 1
		7:0	Type. Specifies memory type of the range.	

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
		11:8	Reserved	
		31:12	PhysBase SMRR physical Base Address.	
		63:32	Reserved	
1F3H	499	IA32_SMRR_PHYSMASK	SMRR Range Mask (Writeable only in SMM) Range Mask of SMM memory range.	If IA32_MTRRCAP[SMRR] = 1
		10:0	Reserved	
		11	Valid Enable range mask.	
		31:12	PhysMask SMRR address range mask.	
		63:32	Reserved	
1F8H	504	IA32_PLATFORM_DCA_CAP	DCA Capability (R)	If CPUID.01H: ECX[18] = 1
1F9H	505	IA32_CPU_DCA_CAP	If set, CPU supports Prefetch-Hint type.	If CPUID.01H: ECX[18] = 1
1FAH	506	IA32_DCA_0_CAP	DCA type 0 Status and Control register.	If CPUID.01H: ECX[18] = 1
		0	DCA_ACTIVE: Set by HW when DCA is fuse-enabled and no defeatures are set.	
		2:1	TRANSACTION	
		6:3	DCA_TYPE	
		10:7	DCA_QUEUE_SIZE	
		12:11	Reserved	
		16:13	DCA_DELAY: Writes will update the register but have no HW side-effect.	
		23:17	Reserved	
		24	Sw_BLOCK: SW can request DCA block by setting this bit.	
		25	Reserved	
		26	HW_BLOCK: Set when DCA is blocked by HW (e.g. CRO.CD = 1).	
31:27	Reserved			
200H	512	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE0 (MTRRphysBase0)	See Section 11.11.2.3, "Variable Range MTRRs."	If CPUID.01H: EDX.MTRR[12] = 1
201H	513	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK0	MTRRphysMask0	If CPUID.01H: EDX.MTRR[12] = 1
202H	514	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE1	MTRRphysBase1	If CPUID.01H: EDX.MTRR[12] = 1
203H	515	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK1	MTRRphysMask1	If CPUID.01H: EDX.MTRR[12] = 1
204H	516	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE2	MTRRphysBase2	If CPUID.01H: EDX.MTRR[12] = 1

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
205H	517	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK2	MTRRphysMask2	If CPUID.01H: EDX.MTRR[12] = 1
206H	518	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE3	MTRRphysBase3	If CPUID.01H: EDX.MTRR[12] = 1
207H	519	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK3	MTRRphysMask3	If CPUID.01H: EDX.MTRR[12] = 1
208H	520	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE4	MTRRphysBase4	If CPUID.01H: EDX.MTRR[12] = 1
209H	521	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK4	MTRRphysMask4	If CPUID.01H: EDX.MTRR[12] = 1
20AH	522	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE5	MTRRphysBase5	If CPUID.01H: EDX.MTRR[12] = 1
20BH	523	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK5	MTRRphysMask5	If CPUID.01H: EDX.MTRR[12] = 1
20CH	524	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE6	MTRRphysBase6	If CPUID.01H: EDX.MTRR[12] = 1
20DH	525	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK6	MTRRphysMask6	If CPUID.01H: EDX.MTRR[12] = 1
20EH	526	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE7	MTRRphysBase7	If CPUID.01H: EDX.MTRR[12] = 1
20FH	527	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK7	MTRRphysMask7	If CPUID.01H: EDX.MTRR[12] = 1
210H	528	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE8	MTRRphysBase8	if IA32_MTRRCAP[7:0] > 8
211H	529	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK8	MTRRphysMask8	if IA32_MTRRCAP[7:0] > 8
212H	530	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE9	MTRRphysBase9	if IA32_MTRRCAP[7:0] > 9
213H	531	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK9	MTRRphysMask9	if IA32_MTRRCAP[7:0] > 9
250H	592	IA32_MTRR_FIX64K_00000	MTRRfix64K_00000	If CPUID.01H: EDX.MTRR[12] = 1
258H	600	IA32_MTRR_FIX16K_80000	MTRRfix16K_80000	If CPUID.01H: EDX.MTRR[12] = 1
259H	601	IA32_MTRR_FIX16K_A0000	MTRRfix16K_A0000	If CPUID.01H: EDX.MTRR[12] = 1
268H	616	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_C0000 (MTRRfix4K_C0000)	See Section 11.11.2.2, "Fixed Range MTRRs."	If CPUID.01H: EDX.MTRR[12] = 1
269H	617	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_C8000	MTRRfix4K_C8000	If CPUID.01H: EDX.MTRR[12] = 1
26AH	618	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_D0000	MTRRfix4K_D0000	If CPUID.01H: EDX.MTRR[12] = 1
26BH	619	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_D8000	MTRRfix4K_D8000	If CPUID.01H: EDX.MTRR[12] = 1
26CH	620	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_E0000	MTRRfix4K_E0000	If CPUID.01H: EDX.MTRR[12] = 1

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
26DH	621	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_E8000	MTRRfix4K_E8000	If CPUID.01H: EDX.MTRR[12] = 1
26EH	622	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_F0000	MTRRfix4K_F0000	If CPUID.01H: EDX.MTRR[12] = 1
26FH	623	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_F8000	MTRRfix4K_F8000	If CPUID.01H: EDX.MTRR[12] = 1
277H	631	IA32_PAT	IA32_PAT (R/W)	If CPUID.01H: EDX.MTRR[16] = 1
		2:0	PA0	
		7:3	Reserved	
		10:8	PA1	
		15:11	Reserved	
		18:16	PA2	
		23:19	Reserved	
		26:24	PA3	
		31:27	Reserved	
		34:32	PA4	
		39:35	Reserved	
		42:40	PA5	
		47:43	Reserved	
		50:48	PA6	
		55:51	Reserved	
58:56	PA7			
63:59	Reserved			
280H	640	IA32_MCO_CTL2	MSR to enable/disable CMCI capability for bank 0. (R/W) See Section 15.3.2.5, "IA32_MCI_CTL2 MSRs".	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 0
		14:0	Corrected error count threshold.	
		29:15	Reserved	
		30	CMCI_EN	
		63:31	Reserved	
281H	641	IA32_MC1_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 1
282H	642	IA32_MC2_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 2
283H	643	IA32_MC3_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 3

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
284H	644	IA32_MC4_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 4
285H	645	IA32_MC5_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 5
286H	646	IA32_MC6_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 6
287H	647	IA32_MC7_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 7
288H	648	IA32_MC8_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 8
289H	649	IA32_MC9_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 9
28AH	650	IA32_MC10_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 10
28BH	651	IA32_MC11_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 11
28CH	652	IA32_MC12_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 12
28DH	653	IA32_MC13_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 13
28EH	654	IA32_MC14_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 14
28FH	655	IA32_MC15_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 15
290H	656	IA32_MC16_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 16
291H	657	IA32_MC17_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 17
292H	658	IA32_MC18_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 18

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
293H	659	IA32_MC19_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 19
294H	660	IA32_MC20_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 20
295H	661	IA32_MC21_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 21
296H	662	IA32_MC22_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 22
297H	663	IA32_MC23_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 23
298H	664	IA32_MC24_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 24
299H	665	IA32_MC25_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 25
29AH	666	IA32_MC26_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 26
29BH	667	IA32_MC27_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 27
29CH	668	IA32_MC28_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 28
29DH	669	IA32_MC29_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 29
29EH	670	IA32_MC30_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 30
29FH	671	IA32_MC31_CTL2	(R/W) Same fields as IA32_MCO_CTL2.	If IA32_MCG_CAP[10] = 1 && IA32_MCG_CAP[7:0] > 31
2FFH	767	IA32_MTRR_DEF_TYPE	MTRRdefType (R/W)	If CPUID.01H: EDX.MTRR[12] = 1
		2:0	Default Memory Type	
		9:3	Reserved	
		10	Fixed Range MTRR Enable	
		11	MTRR Enable	

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
		63:12	Reserved	
309H	777	IA32_FIXED_CTR0 (MSR_PERF_FIXED_CTR0)	Fixed-Function Performance Counter 0 (R/W): Counts Instr_Retired.Any.	If CPUID.0AH: EDX[4:0] > 0
30AH	778	IA32_FIXED_CTR1 (MSR_PERF_FIXED_CTR1)	Fixed-Function Performance Counter 1 (R/W): Counts CPU_CLK_Unhalted.Core.	If CPUID.0AH: EDX[4:0] > 1
30BH	779	IA32_FIXED_CTR2 (MSR_PERF_FIXED_CTR2)	Fixed-Function Performance Counter 2 (R/W): Counts CPU_CLK_Unhalted.Ref.	If CPUID.0AH: EDX[4:0] > 2
345H	837	IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES	Read Only MSR that enumerates the existence of performance monitoring features. (RO)	If CPUID.01H: ECX[15] = 1
		5:0	LBR format	
		6	PEBS Trap	
		7	PEBSSaveArchRegs	
		11:8	PEBS Record Format	
		12	1: Freeze while SMM is supported.	
		13	1: Full width of counter writable via IA32_A_PMCx.	
		63:14	Reserved	
38DH	909	IA32_FIXED_CTR_CTRL	Fixed-Function Performance Counter Control (R/W) Counter increments while the results of ANDing respective enable bit in IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL with the corresponding OS or USR bits in this MSR is true.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[7:0] > 1
		0	ENO_OS: Enable Fixed Counter 0 to count while CPL = 0.	
		1	ENO_Usr: Enable Fixed Counter 0 to count while CPL > 0.	
		2	AnyThread: When set to 1, it enables counting the associated event conditions occurring across all logical processors sharing a processor core. When set to 0, the counter only increments the associated event conditions occurring in the logical processor which programmed the MSR.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[7:0] > 2
		3	ENO_PMI: Enable PMI when fixed counter 0 overflows.	
		4	EN1_OS: Enable Fixed Counter 1 to count while CPL = 0.	
		5	EN1_Usr: Enable Fixed Counter 1 to count while CPL > 0.	

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
		6	AnyThread: When set to 1, it enables counting the associated event conditions occurring across all logical processors sharing a processor core. When set to 0, the counter only increments the associated event conditions occurring in the logical processor which programmed the MSR.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[7:0] > 2
		7	EN1_PMI: Enable PMI when fixed counter 1 overflows.	
		8	EN2_OS: Enable Fixed Counter 2 to count while CPL = 0.	
		9	EN2_Usr: Enable Fixed Counter 2 to count while CPL > 0.	
		10	AnyThread: When set to 1, it enables counting the associated event conditions occurring across all logical processors sharing a processor core. When set to 0, the counter only increments the associated event conditions occurring in the logical processor which programmed the MSR.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[7:0] > 2
		11	EN2_PMI: Enable PMI when fixed counter 2 overflows.	
		63:12	Reserved	
38EH	910	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS	Global Performance Counter Status (RO)	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[7:0] > 0
		0	Ovf_PMC0: Overflow status of IA32_PMC0.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 0
		1	Ovf_PMC1: Overflow status of IA32_PMC1.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 1
		2	Ovf_PMC2: Overflow status of IA32_PMC2.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 2
		3	Ovf_PMC3: Overflow status of IA32_PMC3.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 3
		31:4	Reserved	
		32	Ovf_FixedCtr0: Overflow status of IA32_FIXED_CTR0.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[7:0] > 1
		33	Ovf_FixedCtr1: Overflow status of IA32_FIXED_CTR1.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[7:0] > 1
		34	Ovf_FixedCtr2: Overflow status of IA32_FIXED_CTR2.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[7:0] > 1
		54:35	Reserved	
		55	Trace_ToPA_PMI: A PMI occurred due to a ToPA entry memory buffer that was completely filled.	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EBX[25] = 1) && IA32_RTIT_CTL.ToPA = 1
		57:56	Reserved	

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
		58	LBR_Frz. LBRs are frozen due to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> IA32_DEBUGCTL.FREEZE_LBR_ON_PMI=1. The LBR stack overflowed. 	If CPUID.OAH: EAX[7:0] > 3
		59	CTR_Frz. Performance counters in the core PMU are frozen due to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> IA32_DEBUGCTL.FREEZE_PERFMON_ON_PMI=1. One or more core PMU counters overflowed. 	If CPUID.OAH: EAX[7:0] > 3
		60	ASCI: Data in the performance counters in the core PMU may include contributions from the direct or indirect operation Intel SGX to protect an enclave.	If CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EBX[2] = 1
		61	Ovf_Uncore: Uncore counter overflow status.	If CPUID.OAH: EAX[7:0] > 2
		62	OvfBuf: DS SAVE area Buffer overflow status.	If CPUID.OAH: EAX[7:0] > 0
		63	CondChgd: Status bits of this register have changed.	If CPUID.OAH: EAX[7:0] > 0
38FH	911	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL	Global Performance Counter Control (R/W) Counter increments while the result of ANDing the respective enable bit in this MSR with the corresponding OS or USR bits in the general-purpose or fixed counter control MSR is true.	If CPUID.OAH: EAX[7:0] > 0
		0	EN_PMC0	If CPUID.OAH: EAX[15:8] > 0
		1	EN_PMC1	If CPUID.OAH: EAX[15:8] > 1
		2	EN_PMC2	If CPUID.OAH: EAX[15:8] > 2
		n	EN_PMCn	If CPUID.OAH: EAX[15:8] > n
		31:n+1	Reserved	
		32	EN_FIXED_CTR0	If CPUID.OAH: EDX[4:0] > 0
		33	EN_FIXED_CTR1	If CPUID.OAH: EDX[4:0] > 1
		34	EN_FIXED_CTR2	If CPUID.OAH: EDX[4:0] > 2
		63:35	Reserved	
390H	912	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL	Global Performance Counter Overflow Control (R/W)	If CPUID.OAH: EAX[7:0] > 0 && CPUID.OAH: EAX[7:0] <= 3
		0	Set 1 to Clear Ovf_PMC0 bit.	If CPUID.OAH: EAX[15:8] > 0
		1	Set 1 to Clear Ovf_PMC1 bit.	If CPUID.OAH: EAX[15:8] > 1

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
		2	Set 1 to Clear Ovf_PMC2 bit.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 2
		n	Set 1 to Clear Ovf_PMCn bit.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > n
		31:n	Reserved	
		32	Set 1 to Clear Ovf_FIXED_CTR0 bit.	If CPUID.0AH: EDX[4:0] > 0
		33	Set 1 to Clear Ovf_FIXED_CTR1 bit.	If CPUID.0AH: EDX[4:0] > 1
		34	Set 1 to Clear Ovf_FIXED_CTR2 bit.	If CPUID.0AH: EDX[4:0] > 2
		54:35	Reserved	
		55	Set 1 to Clear Trace_ToPA_PMI bit.	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EBX[25] = 1) && IA32_RTIT_CTL.ToPA = 1
		60:56	Reserved	
		61	Set 1 to Clear Ovf_Uncore bit.	06_2EH
		62	Set 1 to Clear OvfBuf bit.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[7:0] > 0
		63	Set 1 to clear CondChgd bit.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[7:0] > 0
390H	912	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS_RESET	Global Performance Counter Overflow Reset Control (R/W)	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[7:0] > 3
		0	Set 1 to Clear Ovf_PMC0 bit.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 0
		1	Set 1 to Clear Ovf_PMC1 bit.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 1
		2	Set 1 to Clear Ovf_PMC2 bit.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 2
		n	Set 1 to Clear Ovf_PMCn bit.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > n
		31:n	Reserved	
		32	Set 1 to Clear Ovf_FIXED_CTR0 bit.	If CPUID.0AH: EDX[4:0] > 0
		33	Set 1 to Clear Ovf_FIXED_CTR1 bit.	If CPUID.0AH: EDX[4:0] > 1
		34	Set 1 to Clear Ovf_FIXED_CTR2 bit.	If CPUID.0AH: EDX[4:0] > 2
		54:35	Reserved	
		55	Set 1 to Clear Trace_ToPA_PMI bit.	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EBX[25] = 1) && IA32_RTIT_CTL.ToPA[8] = 1
		57:56	Reserved	
		58	Set 1 to Clear LBR_Frz bit.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[7:0] > 3
		59	Set 1 to Clear CTR_Frz bit.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[7:0] > 3
		58	Set 1 to Clear ASCII bit.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[7:0] > 3
61	Set 1 to Clear Ovf_Uncore bit.	06_2EH		
62	Set 1 to Clear OvfBuf bit.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[7:0] > 0		

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
		63	Set 1 to clear CondChgd bit.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[7:0] > 0
391H	913	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS_SET	Global Performance Counter Overflow Set Control (R/W)	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[7:0] > 3
		0	Set 1 to cause Ovf_PMC0 = 1.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[7:0] > 3
		1	Set 1 to cause Ovf_PMC1 = 1.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 1
		2	Set 1 to cause Ovf_PMC2 = 1.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 2
		n	Set 1 to cause Ovf_PMCn = 1.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > n
		31:n	Reserved	
		32	Set 1 to cause Ovf_FIXED_CTR0 = 1.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[7:0] > 3
		33	Set 1 to cause Ovf_FIXED_CTR1 = 1.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[7:0] > 3
		34	Set 1 to cause Ovf_FIXED_CTR2 = 1.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[7:0] > 3
		54:35	Reserved	
		55	Set 1 to cause Trace_ToPA_PMI = 1.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[7:0] > 3
		57:56	Reserved	
		58	Set 1 to cause LBR_Frz = 1.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[7:0] > 3
		59	Set 1 to cause CTR_Frz = 1.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[7:0] > 3
		58	Set 1 to cause ASCI = 1.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[7:0] > 3
		61	Set 1 to cause Ovf_Uncore = 1.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[7:0] > 3
		62	Set 1 to cause OvfBuf = 1.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[7:0] > 3
63	Reserved			
392H	914	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_INUSE	Indicator that core perfmon interface is in use. (RO)	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[7:0] > 3
		0	IA32_PERFEVTSELO in use.	
		1	IA32_PERFEVTSEL1 in use.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 1
		2	IA32_PERFEVTSEL2 in use.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 2
		n	IA32_PERFEVTSELn in use.	If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > n
		31:n+1	Reserved	
		32	IA32_FIXED_CTR0 in use.	
		33	IA32_FIXED_CTR1 in use.	
		34	IA32_FIXED_CTR2 in use.	
		62:35	Reserved or model specific.	
		63	PMI in use.	
3F1H	1009	IA32_PEBS_ENABLE	PEBS Control (R/W)	

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
		0	Enable PEBS on IA32_PMC0.	06_0FH
		3:1	Reserved or model specific.	
		31:4	Reserved	
		35:32	Reserved or model specific.	
		63:36	Reserved	
400H	1024	IA32_MCO_CTL	MC0_CTL	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >0
401H	1025	IA32_MCO_STATUS	MC0_STATUS	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >0
402H	1026	IA32_MCO_ADDR ¹	MC0_ADDR	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >0
403H	1027	IA32_MCO_MISC	MC0_MISC	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >0
404H	1028	IA32_MC1_CTL	MC1_CTL	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >1
405H	1029	IA32_MC1_STATUS	MC1_STATUS	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >1
406H	1030	IA32_MC1_ADDR ²	MC1_ADDR	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >1
407H	1031	IA32_MC1_MISC	MC1_MISC	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >1
408H	1032	IA32_MC2_CTL	MC2_CTL	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >2
409H	1033	IA32_MC2_STATUS	MC2_STATUS	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >2
40AH	1034	IA32_MC2_ADDR ¹	MC2_ADDR	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >2
40BH	1035	IA32_MC2_MISC	MC2_MISC	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >2
40CH	1036	IA32_MC3_CTL	MC3_CTL	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >3
40DH	1037	IA32_MC3_STATUS	MC3_STATUS	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >3
40EH	1038	IA32_MC3_ADDR ¹	MC3_ADDR	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >3
40FH	1039	IA32_MC3_MISC	MC3_MISC	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >3
410H	1040	IA32_MC4_CTL	MC4_CTL	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >4
411H	1041	IA32_MC4_STATUS	MC4_STATUS	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >4
412H	1042	IA32_MC4_ADDR ¹	MC4_ADDR	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >4
413H	1043	IA32_MC4_MISC	MC4_MISC	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >4
414H	1044	IA32_MC5_CTL	MC5_CTL	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >5
415H	1045	IA32_MC5_STATUS	MC5_STATUS	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >5
416H	1046	IA32_MC5_ADDR ¹	MC5_ADDR	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >5
417H	1047	IA32_MC5_MISC	MC5_MISC	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >5
418H	1048	IA32_MC6_CTL	MC6_CTL	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >6
419H	1049	IA32_MC6_STATUS	MC6_STATUS	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >6
41AH	1050	IA32_MC6_ADDR ¹	MC6_ADDR	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >6
41BH	1051	IA32_MC6_MISC	MC6_MISC	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >6
41CH	1052	IA32_MC7_CTL	MC7_CTL	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >7
41DH	1053	IA32_MC7_STATUS	MC7_STATUS	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >7
41EH	1054	IA32_MC7_ADDR ¹	MC7_ADDR	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >7
41FH	1055	IA32_MC7_MISC	MC7_MISC	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >7

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
420H	1056	IA32_MC8_CTL	MC8_CTL	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >8
421H	1057	IA32_MC8_STATUS	MC8_STATUS	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >8
422H	1058	IA32_MC8_ADDR ¹	MC8_ADDR	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >8
423H	1059	IA32_MC8_MISC	MC8_MISC	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >8
424H	1060	IA32_MC9_CTL	MC9_CTL	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >9
425H	1061	IA32_MC9_STATUS	MC9_STATUS	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >9
426H	1062	IA32_MC9_ADDR ¹	MC9_ADDR	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >9
427H	1063	IA32_MC9_MISC	MC9_MISC	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >9
428H	1064	IA32_MC10_CTL	MC10_CTL	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >10
429H	1065	IA32_MC10_STATUS	MC10_STATUS	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >10
42AH	1066	IA32_MC10_ADDR ¹	MC10_ADDR	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >10
42BH	1067	IA32_MC10_MISC	MC10_MISC	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >10
42CH	1068	IA32_MC11_CTL	MC11_CTL	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >11
42DH	1069	IA32_MC11_STATUS	MC11_STATUS	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >11
42EH	1070	IA32_MC11_ADDR ¹	MC11_ADDR	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >11
42FH	1071	IA32_MC11_MISC	MC11_MISC	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >11
430H	1072	IA32_MC12_CTL	MC12_CTL	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >12
431H	1073	IA32_MC12_STATUS	MC12_STATUS	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >12
432H	1074	IA32_MC12_ADDR ¹	MC12_ADDR	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >12
433H	1075	IA32_MC12_MISC	MC12_MISC	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >12
434H	1076	IA32_MC13_CTL	MC13_CTL	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >13
435H	1077	IA32_MC13_STATUS	MC13_STATUS	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >13
436H	1078	IA32_MC13_ADDR ¹	MC13_ADDR	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >13
437H	1079	IA32_MC13_MISC	MC13_MISC	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >13
438H	1080	IA32_MC14_CTL	MC14_CTL	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >14
439H	1081	IA32_MC14_STATUS	MC14_STATUS	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >14
43AH	1082	IA32_MC14_ADDR ¹	MC14_ADDR	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >14
43BH	1083	IA32_MC14_MISC	MC14_MISC	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >14
43CH	1084	IA32_MC15_CTL	MC15_CTL	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >15
43DH	1085	IA32_MC15_STATUS	MC15_STATUS	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >15
43EH	1086	IA32_MC15_ADDR ¹	MC15_ADDR	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >15
43FH	1087	IA32_MC15_MISC	MC15_MISC	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >15
440H	1088	IA32_MC16_CTL	MC16_CTL	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >16
441H	1089	IA32_MC16_STATUS	MC16_STATUS	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >16
442H	1090	IA32_MC16_ADDR ¹	MC16_ADDR	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >16
443H	1091	IA32_MC16_MISC	MC16_MISC	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >16
444H	1092	IA32_MC17_CTL	MC17_CTL	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >17

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
445H	1093	IA32_MC17_STATUS	MC17_STATUS	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >17
446H	1094	IA32_MC17_ADDR ¹	MC17_ADDR	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >17
447H	1095	IA32_MC17_MISC	MC17_MISC	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >17
448H	1096	IA32_MC18_CTL	MC18_CTL	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >18
449H	1097	IA32_MC18_STATUS	MC18_STATUS	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >18
44AH	1098	IA32_MC18_ADDR ¹	MC18_ADDR	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >18
44BH	1099	IA32_MC18_MISC	MC18_MISC	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >18
44CH	1100	IA32_MC19_CTL	MC19_CTL	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >19
44DH	1101	IA32_MC19_STATUS	MC19_STATUS	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >19
44EH	1102	IA32_MC19_ADDR ¹	MC19_ADDR	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >19
44FH	1103	IA32_MC19_MISC	MC19_MISC	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >19
450H	1104	IA32_MC20_CTL	MC20_CTL	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >20
451H	1105	IA32_MC20_STATUS	MC20_STATUS	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >20
452H	1106	IA32_MC20_ADDR ¹	MC20_ADDR	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >20
453H	1107	IA32_MC20_MISC	MC20_MISC	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >20
454H	1108	IA32_MC21_CTL	MC21_CTL	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >21
455H	1109	IA32_MC21_STATUS	MC21_STATUS	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >21
456H	1110	IA32_MC21_ADDR ¹	MC21_ADDR	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >21
457H	1111	IA32_MC21_MISC	MC21_MISC	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >21
458H	1112	IA32_MC22_CTL	MC22_CTL	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >22
459H	1113	IA32_MC22_STATUS	MC22_STATUS	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >22
45AH	1114	IA32_MC22_ADDR ¹	MC22_ADDR	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >22
45BH	1115	IA32_MC22_MISC	MC22_MISC	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >22
45CH	1116	IA32_MC23_CTL	MC23_CTL	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >23
45DH	1117	IA32_MC23_STATUS	MC23_STATUS	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >23
45EH	1118	IA32_MC23_ADDR ¹	MC23_ADDR	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >23
45FH	1119	IA32_MC23_MISC	MC23_MISC	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >23
460H	1120	IA32_MC24_CTL	MC24_CTL	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >24
461H	1121	IA32_MC24_STATUS	MC24_STATUS	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >24
462H	1122	IA32_MC24_ADDR ¹	MC24_ADDR	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >24
463H	1123	IA32_MC24_MISC	MC24_MISC	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >24
464H	1124	IA32_MC25_CTL	MC25_CTL	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >25
465H	1125	IA32_MC25_STATUS	MC25_STATUS	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >25
466H	1126	IA32_MC25_ADDR ¹	MC25_ADDR	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >25
467H	1127	IA32_MC25_MISC	MC25_MISC	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >25
468H	1128	IA32_MC26_CTL	MC26_CTL	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >26
469H	1129	IA32_MC26_STATUS	MC26_STATUS	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT >26

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
46AH	1130	IA32_MC26_ADDR ¹	MC26_ADDR	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT > 26
46BH	1131	IA32_MC26_MISC	MC26_MISC	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT > 26
46CH	1132	IA32_MC27_CTL	MC27_CTL	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT > 27
46DH	1133	IA32_MC27_STATUS	MC27_STATUS	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT > 27
46EH	1134	IA32_MC27_ADDR ¹	MC27_ADDR	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT > 27
46FH	1135	IA32_MC27_MISC	MC27_MISC	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT > 27
470H	1136	IA32_MC28_CTL	MC28_CTL	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT > 28
471H	1137	IA32_MC28_STATUS	MC28_STATUS	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT > 28
472H	1138	IA32_MC28_ADDR ¹	MC28_ADDR	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT > 28
473H	1139	IA32_MC28_MISC	MC28_MISC	If IA32_MCG_CAP.CNT > 28
480H	1152	IA32_VMX_BASIC	Reporting Register of Basic VMX Capabilities (R/O) See Appendix A.1, "Basic VMX Information."	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[5] = 1
481H	1153	IA32_VMX_PINBASED_CTL	Capability Reporting Register of Pin-Based VM-Execution Controls (R/O) See Appendix A.3.1, "Pin-Based VM-Execution Controls."	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[5] = 1
482H	1154	IA32_VMX_PROCBASED_CTL	Capability Reporting Register of Primary Processor-Based VM-Execution Controls (R/O) See Appendix A.3.2, "Primary Processor-Based VM-Execution Controls."	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[5] = 1
483H	1155	IA32_VMX_EXIT_CTL	Capability Reporting Register of VM-Exit Controls (R/O) See Appendix A.4, "VM-Exit Controls."	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[5] = 1
484H	1156	IA32_VMX_ENTRY_CTL	Capability Reporting Register of VM-Entry Controls (R/O) See Appendix A.5, "VM-Entry Controls."	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[5] = 1
485H	1157	IA32_VMX_MISC	Reporting Register of Miscellaneous VMX Capabilities (R/O) See Appendix A.6, "Miscellaneous Data."	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[5] = 1
486H	1158	IA32_VMX_CR0_FIXED0	Capability Reporting Register of CR0 Bits Fixed to 0 (R/O) See Appendix A.7, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CR0."	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[5] = 1
487H	1159	IA32_VMX_CR0_FIXED1	Capability Reporting Register of CR0 Bits Fixed to 1 (R/O) See Appendix A.7, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CR0."	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[5] = 1
488H	1160	IA32_VMX_CR4_FIXED0	Capability Reporting Register of CR4 Bits Fixed to 0 (R/O) See Appendix A.8, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CR4."	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[5] = 1

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
489H	1161	IA32_VMX_CR4_FIXED1	Capability Reporting Register of CR4 Bits Fixed to 1 (R/O) See Appendix A.8, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CR4."	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[5] = 1
48AH	1162	IA32_VMX_VMCS_ENUM	Capability Reporting Register of VMCS Field Enumeration (R/O) See Appendix A.9, "VMCS Enumeration."	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[5] = 1
48BH	1163	IA32_VMX_PROCBASED_CTL2	Capability Reporting Register of Secondary Processor-Based VM-Execution Controls (R/O) See Appendix A.3.3, "Secondary Processor-Based VM-Execution Controls."	If (CPUID.01H:ECX.[5] && IA32_VMX_PROCBASED_CTL2[63])
48CH	1164	IA32_VMX_EPT_VPID_CAP	Capability Reporting Register of EPT and VPID (R/O) See Appendix A.10, "VPID and EPT Capabilities."	If (CPUID.01H:ECX.[5] && IA32_VMX_PROCBASED_CTL2[63] && (IA32_VMX_PROCBASED_CTL2[33] IA32_VMX_PROCBASED_CTL2[37]))
48DH	1165	IA32_VMX_TRUE_PINBASED_CTL2	Capability Reporting Register of Pin-Based VM-Execution Flex Controls (R/O) See Appendix A.3.1, "Pin-Based VM-Execution Controls."	If (CPUID.01H:ECX.[5] = 1 && IA32_VMX_BASIC[55])
48EH	1166	IA32_VMX_TRUE_PROCBASED_CTL2	Capability Reporting Register of Primary Processor-Based VM-Execution Flex Controls (R/O) See Appendix A.3.2, "Primary Processor-Based VM-Execution Controls."	If (CPUID.01H:ECX.[5] = 1 && IA32_VMX_BASIC[55])
48FH	1167	IA32_VMX_TRUE_EXIT_CTL2	Capability Reporting Register of VM-Exit Flex Controls (R/O) See Appendix A.4, "VM-Exit Controls."	If (CPUID.01H:ECX.[5] = 1 && IA32_VMX_BASIC[55])
490H	1168	IA32_VMX_TRUE_ENTRY_CTL2	Capability Reporting Register of VM-Entry Flex Controls (R/O) See Appendix A.5, "VM-Entry Controls."	If (CPUID.01H:ECX.[5] = 1 && IA32_VMX_BASIC[55])
491H	1169	IA32_VMX_VMFUNC	Capability Reporting Register of VM-Function Controls (R/O)	If (CPUID.01H:ECX.[5] = 1 && IA32_VMX_BASIC[55])
4C1H	1217	IA32_A_PMC0	Full Width Writable IA32_PMC0 Alias (R/W)	(If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 0) && IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES[13] = 1
4C2H	1218	IA32_A_PMC1	Full Width Writable IA32_PMC1 Alias (R/W)	(If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 1) && IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES[13] = 1

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
4C3H	1219	IA32_A_PMC2	Full Width Writable IA32_PMC2 Alias (R/W)	(If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 2) && IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES[13] = 1
4C4H	1220	IA32_A_PMC3	Full Width Writable IA32_PMC3 Alias (R/W)	(If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 3) && IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES[13] = 1
4C5H	1221	IA32_A_PMC4	Full Width Writable IA32_PMC4 Alias (R/W)	(If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 4) && IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES[13] = 1
4C6H	1222	IA32_A_PMC5	Full Width Writable IA32_PMC5 Alias (R/W)	(If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 5) && IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES[13] = 1
4C7H	1223	IA32_A_PMC6	Full Width Writable IA32_PMC6 Alias (R/W)	(If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 6) && IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES[13] = 1
4C8H	1224	IA32_A_PMC7	Full Width Writable IA32_PMC7 Alias (R/W)	(If CPUID.0AH: EAX[15:8] > 7) && IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES[13] = 1
4D0H	1232	IA32_MCG_EXT_CTL	Allows software to signal some MCEs to only a single logical processor in the system. (R/W) See Section 15.3.1.4, "IA32_MCG_EXT_CTL MSR".	If IA32_MCG_CAP.LMCE_P = 1
		0	LMCE_EN	
		63:1	Reserved	
500H	1280	IA32_SGX_SVN_STATUS	Status and SVN Threshold of SGX Support for ACM (RO).	If CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0H): EBX[2] = 1
		0	Lock	See Section 41.11.3, "Interactions with Authenticated Code Modules (ACMs)".
		15:1	Reserved	
		23:16	SGX_SVN_SINIT	See Section 41.11.3, "Interactions with Authenticated Code Modules (ACMs)".
		63:24	Reserved	

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
560H	1376	IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_BASE	Trace Output Base Register (R/W)	If ((CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EBX[25] = 1) && (CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0):ECX[0] = 1) (CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0):ECX[2] = 1)))
		6:0	Reserved	
		MAXPHYADDR ³ -1:7	Base physical address.	
		63:MAXPHYADDR	Reserved	
561H	1377	IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS	Trace Output Mask Pointers Register (R/W)	If ((CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EBX[25] = 1) && (CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0):ECX[0] = 1) (CPUID.(EAX=14H, ECX=0):ECX[2] = 1)))
		6:0	Reserved	
		31:7	MaskOrTableOffset	
		63:32	Output Offset	
570H	1392	IA32_RTIT_CTL	Trace Control Register (R/W)	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EBX[25] = 1)
		0	TraceEn	
		1	CYCEn	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EBX[1] = 1)
		2	OS	
		3	User	
		4	PwrEvtEn	
		5	FUPonPTW	
		6	FabricEn	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):ECX[3] = 1)
		7	CR3 filter	
		8	ToPA	
		9	MTCEn	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EBX[3] = 1)
		10	TSCEn	
		11	DisRETC	
		12	PTWEn	
		13	BranchEn	
17:14	MTCFreq	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EBX[3] = 1)		
18	Reserved, must be zero.			
22:19	CYCThresh	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EBX[1] = 1)		

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
		23	Reserved, must be zero.	
		27:24	PSBFreq	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EBX[1] = 1)
		31:28	Reserved, must be zero.	
		35:32	ADDR0_CFG	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=1):EAX[2:0] > 0)
		39:36	ADDR1_CFG	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=1):EAX[2:0] > 1)
		43:40	ADDR2_CFG	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=1):EAX[2:0] > 2)
		47:44	ADDR3_CFG	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=1):EAX[2:0] > 3)
		63:48	Reserved, must be zero.	
571H	1393	IA32_RTIT_STATUS	Tracing Status Register (R/W)	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EBX[25] = 1)
		0	FilterEn (writes ignored)	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EBX[2] = 1)
		1	ContexEn (writes ignored)	
		2	TriggerEn (writes ignored)	
		3	Reserved	
		4	Error	
		5	Stopped	
		31:6	Reserved, must be zero.	
		48:32	PacketByteCnt	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EBX[1] > 3)
63:49	Reserved			
572H	1394	IA32_RTIT_CR3_MATCH	Trace Filter CR3 Match Register (R/W)	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EBX[25] = 1)
		4:0	Reserved	
		63:5	CR3[63:5] value to match.	
580H	1408	IA32_RTIT_ADDR0_A	Region 0 Start Address (R/W)	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=1):EAX[2:0] > 0)
		47:0	Virtual Address	
		63:48	SignExt_VA	
581H	1409	IA32_RTIT_ADDR0_B	Region 0 End Address (R/W)	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=1):EAX[2:0] > 0)
		47:0	Virtual Address	
		63:48	SignExt_VA	
582H	1410	IA32_RTIT_ADDR1_A	Region 1 Start Address (R/W)	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=1):EAX[2:0] > 1)
		47:0	Virtual Address	

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
		63:48	SignExt_VA	
583H	1411	IA32_RTIT_ADDR1_B	Region 1 End Address (R/W)	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=1):EAX[2:0] > 1)
		47:0	Virtual Address	
		63:48	SignExt_VA	
584H	1412	IA32_RTIT_ADDR2_A	Region 2 Start Address (R/W)	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=1):EAX[2:0] > 2)
		47:0	Virtual Address	
		63:48	SignExt_VA	
585H	1413	IA32_RTIT_ADDR2_B	Region 2 End Address (R/W)	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=1):EAX[2:0] > 2)
		47:0	Virtual Address	
		63:48	SignExt_VA	
586H	1414	IA32_RTIT_ADDR3_A	Region 3 Start Address (R/W)	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=1):EAX[2:0] > 3)
		47:0	Virtual Address	
		63:48	SignExt_VA	
587H	1415	IA32_RTIT_ADDR3_B	Region 3 End Address (R/W)	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=1):EAX[2:0] > 3)
		47:0	Virtual Address	
		63:48	SignExt_VA	
600H	1536	IA32_DS_AREA	DS Save Area (R/W) Points to the linear address of the first byte of the DS buffer management area, which is used to manage the BTS and PEBS buffers. See Section 18.6.3.4, "Debug Store (DS) Mechanism."	If (CPUID.01H:EDX.DS[21] = 1)
		63:0	The linear address of the first byte of the DS buffer management area, if IA-32e mode is active.	
		31:0	The linear address of the first byte of the DS buffer management area, if not in IA-32e mode.	
		63:32	Reserved if not in IA-32e mode.	
6E0H	1760	IA32_TSC_DEADLINE	TSC Target of Local APIC's TSC Deadline Mode (R/W)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[24] = 1
770H	1904	IA32_PM_ENABLE	Enable/disable HWP (R/W)	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[7] = 1
		0	HWP_ENABLE (R/W1-Once) See Section 14.4.2, "Enabling HWP".	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[7] = 1
		63:1	Reserved	
771H	1905	IA32_HWP_CAPABILITIES	HWP Performance Range Enumeration (RO)	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[7] = 1

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
		7:0	Highest_Performance See Section 14.4.3, "HWP Performance Range and Dynamic Capabilities".	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[7] = 1
		15:8	Guaranteed_Performance See Section 14.4.3, "HWP Performance Range and Dynamic Capabilities".	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[7] = 1
		23:16	Most_Efficient_Performance See Section 14.4.3, "HWP Performance Range and Dynamic Capabilities".	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[7] = 1
		31:24	Lowest_Performance See Section 14.4.3, "HWP Performance Range and Dynamic Capabilities".	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[7] = 1
		63:32	Reserved	
772H	1906	IA32_HWP_REQUEST_PKG	Power Management Control Hints for All Logical Processors in a Package (R/W)	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[11] = 1
		7:0	Minimum_Performance See Section 14.4.4, "Managing HWP".	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[11] = 1
		15:8	Maximum_Performance See Section 14.4.4, "Managing HWP".	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[11] = 1
		23:16	Desired_Performance See Section 14.4.4, "Managing HWP".	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[11] = 1
		31:24	Energy_Performance_Preference See Section 14.4.4, "Managing HWP".	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[11] = 1 && CPUID.06H:EAX.[10] = 1
		41:32	Activity_Window See Section 14.4.4, "Managing HWP".	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[11] = 1 && CPUID.06H:EAX.[9] = 1
		63:42	Reserved	
773H	1907	IA32_HWP_INTERRUPT	Control HWP Native Interrupts (R/W)	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[8] = 1
		0	EN_Guaranteed_Performance_Change See Section 14.4.6, "HWP Notifications".	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[8] = 1
		1	EN_Excursion_Minimum See Section 14.4.6, "HWP Notifications".	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[8] = 1
		63:2	Reserved	
774H	1908	IA32_HWP_REQUEST	Power Management Control Hints to a Logical Processor (R/W)	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[7] = 1
		7:0	Minimum_Performance See Section 14.4.4, "Managing HWP".	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[7] = 1
		15:8	Maximum_Performance See Section 14.4.4, "Managing HWP".	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[7] = 1

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
		23:16	Desired_Performance See Section 14.4.4, "Managing HWP".	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[7] = 1
		31:24	Energy_Performance_Preference See Section 14.4.4, "Managing HWP".	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[7] = 1 && CPUID.06H:EAX.[10] = 1
		41:32	Activity_Window See Section 14.4.4, "Managing HWP".	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[7] = 1 && CPUID.06H:EAX.[9] = 1
		42	Package_Control See Section 14.4.4, "Managing HWP".	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[7] = 1 && CPUID.06H:EAX.[11] = 1
		63:43	Reserved	
777H	1911	IA32_HWP_STATUS	Log bits indicating changes to Guaranteed & excursions to Minimum (R/W)	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[7] = 1
		0	Guaranteed_Performance_Change (R/WCO) See Section 14.4.5, "HWP Feedback".	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[7] = 1
		1	Reserved	
		2	Excursion_To_Minimum (R/WCO) See Section 14.4.5, "HWP Feedback".	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[7] = 1
		63:3	Reserved	
802H	2050	IA32_X2APIC_APICID	x2APIC ID Register (R/O) See x2APIC Specification.	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
803H	2051	IA32_X2APIC_VERSION	x2APIC Version Register (R/O)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
808H	2056	IA32_X2APIC_TPR	x2APIC Task Priority Register (R/W)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
80AH	2058	IA32_X2APIC_PPR	x2APIC Processor Priority Register (R/O)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
80BH	2059	IA32_X2APIC_EOI	x2APIC EOI Register (W/O)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
80DH	2061	IA32_X2APIC_LDR	x2APIC Logical Destination Register (R/O)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
80FH	2063	IA32_X2APIC_SIVR	x2APIC Spurious Interrupt Vector Register (R/W)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
810H	2064	IA32_X2APIC_ISR0	x2APIC In-Service Register Bits 31:0 (R/O)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
811H	2065	IA32_X2APIC_ISR1	x2APIC In-Service Register Bits 63:32 (R/O)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
812H	2066	IA32_X2APIC_ISR2	x2APIC In-Service Register Bits 95:64 (R/O)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
813H	2067	IA32_X2APIC_ISR3	x2APIC In-Service Register Bits 127:96 (R/O)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
814H	2068	IA32_X2APIC_ISR4	x2APIC In-Service Register Bits 159:128 (R/O)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
815H	2069	IA32_X2APIC_ISR5	x2APIC In-Service Register Bits 191:160 (R/O)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
816H	2070	IA32_X2APIC_ISR6	x2APIC In-Service Register Bits 223:192 (R/O)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
817H	2071	IA32_X2APIC_ISR7	x2APIC In-Service Register Bits 255:224 (R/O)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
818H	2072	IA32_X2APIC_TMR0	x2APIC Trigger Mode Register Bits 31:0 (R/O)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
819H	2073	IA32_X2APIC_TMR1	x2APIC Trigger Mode Register Bits 63:32 (R/O)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
81AH	2074	IA32_X2APIC_TMR2	x2APIC Trigger Mode Register Bits 95:64 (R/O)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
81BH	2075	IA32_X2APIC_TMR3	x2APIC Trigger Mode Register Bits 127:96 (R/O)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
81CH	2076	IA32_X2APIC_TMR4	x2APIC Trigger Mode Register Bits 159:128 (R/O)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
81DH	2077	IA32_X2APIC_TMR5	x2APIC Trigger Mode Register Bits 191:160 (R/O)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
81EH	2078	IA32_X2APIC_TMR6	x2APIC Trigger Mode Register Bits 223:192 (R/O)	If (CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1)
81FH	2079	IA32_X2APIC_TMR7	x2APIC Trigger Mode Register Bits 255:224 (R/O)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
820H	2080	IA32_X2APIC_IRR0	x2APIC Interrupt Request Register Bits 31:0 (R/O)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
821H	2081	IA32_X2APIC_IRR1	x2APIC Interrupt Request Register Bits 63:32 (R/O)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
822H	2082	IA32_X2APIC_IRR2	x2APIC Interrupt Request Register Bits 95:64 (R/O)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
823H	2083	IA32_X2APIC_IRR3	x2APIC Interrupt Request Register Bits 127:96 (R/O)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
824H	2084	IA32_X2APIC_IRR4	x2APIC Interrupt Request Register Bits 159:128 (R/O)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
825H	2085	IA32_X2APIC_IRR5	x2APIC Interrupt Request Register Bits 191:160 (R/O)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
826H	2086	IA32_X2APIC_IRR6	x2APIC Interrupt Request Register Bits 223:192 (R/O)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
827H	2087	IA32_X2APIC_IRR7	x2APIC Interrupt Request Register Bits 255:224 (R/O)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
828H	2088	IA32_X2APIC_ESR	x2APIC Error Status Register (R/W)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
82FH	2095	IA32_X2APIC_LVT_CMCI	x2APIC LVT Corrected Machine Check Interrupt Register (R/W)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
830H	2096	IA32_X2APIC_ICR	x2APIC Interrupt Command Register (R/W)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
832H	2098	IA32_X2APIC_LVT_TIMER	x2APIC LVT Timer Interrupt Register (R/W)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
833H	2099	IA32_X2APIC_LVT_THERMAL	x2APIC LVT Thermal Sensor Interrupt Register (R/W)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
834H	2100	IA32_X2APIC_LVT_PMI	x2APIC LVT Performance Monitor Interrupt Register (R/W)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
835H	2101	IA32_X2APIC_LVT_LINT0	x2APIC LVT LINT0 Register (R/W)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
836H	2102	IA32_X2APIC_LVT_LINT1	x2APIC LVT LINT1 Register (R/W)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
837H	2103	IA32_X2APIC_LVT_ERROR	x2APIC LVT Error Register (R/W)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
838H	2104	IA32_X2APIC_INIT_COUNT	x2APIC Initial Count Register (R/W)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
839H	2105	IA32_X2APIC_CUR_COUNT	x2APIC Current Count Register (R/O)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
83EH	2110	IA32_X2APIC_DIV_CONF	x2APIC Divide Configuration Register (R/W)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
83FH	2111	IA32_X2APIC_SELF_IPI	x2APIC Self IPI Register (W/O)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[21] = 1 && IA32_APIC_BASE.[10] = 1
C80H	3200	IA32_DEBUG_INTERFACE	Silicon Debug Feature Control (R/W)	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[11] = 1
		0	Enable (R/W) BIOS set 1 to enable Silicon debug features. Default is 0.	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[11] = 1
		29:1	Reserved	
		30	Lock (R/W): If 1, locks any further change to the MSR. The lock bit is set automatically on the first SMI assertion even if not explicitly set by BIOS. Default is 0.	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[11] = 1
		31	Debug Occurred (R/O): This "sticky bit" is set by hardware to indicate the status of bit 0. Default is 0.	If CPUID.01H:ECX.[11] = 1
		63:32	Reserved	
C81H	3201	IA32_L3_QOS_CFG	L3 QOS Configuration (R/W)	If (CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1):ECX.[2] = 1)
		0	Enable (R/W) Set 1 to enable L3 CAT masks and COS to operate in Code and Data Prioritization (CDP) mode.	
		63:1	Reserved. Attempts to write to reserved bits result in a #GP(0).	
C82H	3202	IA32_L2_QOS_CFG	L2 QOS Configuration (R/W)	If (CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=2):ECX.[2] = 1)
		0	Enable (R/W) Set 1 to enable L2 CAT masks and COS to operate in Code and Data Prioritization (CDP) mode.	

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
		63:1	Reserved. Attempts to write to reserved bits result in a #GP(0).	
C8DH	3213	IA32_QM_EVTSEL	Monitoring Event Select Register (R/W)	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EBX.[12] = 1)
		7:0	Event ID: ID of a supported monitoring event to report via IA32_QM_CTR.	
		31:8	Reserved	
		N+31:32	Resource Monitoring ID: ID for monitoring hardware to report monitored data via IA32_QM_CTR.	N = Ceil (Log ₂ (CPUID.(EAX= 0FH, ECX=0H).EBX[31:0] +1))
		63:N+32	Reserved	
C8EH	3214	IA32_QM_CTR	Monitoring Counter Register (R/O)	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EBX.[12] = 1)
		61:0	Resource Monitored Data	
		62	Unavailable: If 1, indicates data for this RMID is not available or not monitored for this resource or RMID.	
		63	Error: If 1, indicates an unsupported RMID or event type was written to IA32_PQR_QM_EVTSEL.	
C8FH	3215	IA32_PQR_ASSOC	Resource Association Register (R/W)	If ((CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EBX[12] = 1) or (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EBX[15] = 1))
		N-1:0	Resource Monitoring ID (R/W): ID for monitoring hardware to track internal operation, e.g., memory access.	N = Ceil (Log ₂ (CPUID.(EAX= 0FH, ECX=0H).EBX[31:0] +1))
		31:N	Reserved	
		63:32	COS (R/W): The class of service (COS) to enforce (on writes); returns the current COS when read.	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EBX.[15] = 1)
C90H - D8FH		Reserved MSR Address Space for CAT Mask Registers	See Section 17.19.4.1, "Enumeration and Detection Support of Cache Allocation Technology".	
C90H	3216	IA32_L3_MASK_0	L3 CAT Mask for COS0 (R/W)	If (CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=0H):EBX[1] != 0)
		31:0	Capacity Bit Mask (R/W)	
		63:32	Reserved	
C90H+ n	3216+n	IA32_L3_MASK_n	L3 CAT Mask for COSn (R/W)	n = CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1H):EDX[15:0]
		31:0	Capacity Bit Mask (R/W)	

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
		63:32	Reserved	
D10H-D4FH		Reserved MSR Address Space for L2 CAT Mask Registers	See Section 17.19.4.1, "Enumeration and Detection Support of Cache Allocation Technology".	
D10H	3344	IA32_L2_MASK_0	L2 CAT Mask for COS0 (R/W)	If (CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=0H):EBX[2] != 0)
		31:0	Capacity Bit Mask (R/W)	
		63:32	Reserved	
D10H+n	3344+n	IA32_L2_MASK_n	L2 CAT Mask for COSn (R/W)	n = CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=2H):EDX[15:0]
		31:0	Capacity Bit Mask (R/W)	
		63:32	Reserved	
D90H	3472	IA32_BNDCFGS	Supervisor State of MPX Configuration (R/W)	If (CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0H):EBX[14] = 1)
		0	EN: Enable Intel MPX in supervisor mode.	
		1	BNDPRESERVE: Preserve the bounds registers for near branch instructions in the absence of the BND prefix.	
		11:2	Reserved, must be zero.	
		63:12	Base Address of Bound Directory.	
DA0H	3488	IA32_XSS	Extended Supervisor State Mask (R/W)	If (CPUID.(0DH, 1):EAX.[3] = 1)
		7:0	Reserved	
		8	Trace Packet Configuration State (R/W)	
		63:9	Reserved.	
DB0H	3504	IA32_PKG_HDC_CTL	Package Level Enable/disable HDC (R/W)	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[13] = 1
		0	HDC_Pkg_Enable (R/W) Force HDC idling or wake up HDC-idled logical processors in the package. See Section 14.5.2, "Package level Enabling HDC".	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[13] = 1
		63:1	Reserved	
DB1H	3505	IA32_PM_CTL1	Enable/disable HWP (R/W)	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[13] = 1
		0	HDC_Allow_Block (R/W) Allow/Block this logical processor for package level HDC control. See Section 14.5.3.	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[13] = 1
		63:1	Reserved	

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
DB2H	3506	IA32_THREAD_STALL	Per-Logical_Processor HDC Idle Residency (R/O)	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[13] = 1
		63:0	Stall_Cycle_Cnt (R/W) Stalled cycles due to HDC forced idle on this logical processor. See Section 14.5.4.1.	If CPUID.06H:EAX.[13] = 1
4000_0000H - 4000_00FFH		Reserved MSR Address Space	All existing and future processors will not implement MSRs in this range.	
C000_0080H		IA32_EFER	Extended Feature Enables	If (CPUID.80000001H:EDX.[20] CPUID.80000001H:EDX.[29])
		0	SYSCALL Enable: IA32_EFER.SCE (R/W) Enables SYSCALL/SYSRET instructions in 64-bit mode.	
		7:1	Reserved	
		8	IA-32e Mode Enable: IA32_EFER.LME (R/W) Enables IA-32e mode operation.	
		9	Reserved	
		10	IA-32e Mode Active: IA32_EFER.LMA (R) Indicates IA-32e mode is active when set.	
		11	Execute Disable Bit Enable: IA32_EFER.NXE (R/W)	
		63:12	Reserved	
C000_0081H		IA32_STAR	System Call Target Address (R/W)	If CPUID.80000001:EDX.[29] = 1
C000_0082H		IA32_LSTAR	IA-32e Mode System Call Target Address (R/W) Target RIP for the called procedure when SYSCALL is executed in 64-bit mode.	If CPUID.80000001:EDX.[29] = 1
C000_0083H		IA32_CSTAR	IA-32e Mode System Call Target Address (R/W) Not used, as the SYSCALL instruction is not recognized in compatibility mode.	If CPUID.80000001:EDX.[29] = 1
C000_0084H		IA32_FMASK	System Call Flag Mask (R/W)	If CPUID.80000001:EDX.[29] = 1
C000_0100H		IA32_FS_BASE	Map of BASE Address of FS (R/W)	If CPUID.80000001:EDX.[29] = 1

Table 2-2. IA-32 Architectural MSRs (Contd.)

Register Address		Architectural MSR Name / Bit Fields (Former MSR Name)	MSR/Bit Description	Comment
Hex	Decimal			
C000_0101H		IA32_GS_BASE	Map of BASE Address of GS (R/W)	If CPUID.80000001:EDX.[29] = 1
C000_0102H		IA32_KERNEL_GS_BASE	Swap Target of BASE Address of GS (R/W)	If CPUID.80000001:EDX.[29] = 1
C000_0103H		IA32_TSC_AUX	Auxiliary TSC (RW)	If CPUID.80000001H: EDX[27] = 1 or CPUID.(EAX=7,ECX=0):ECX [bit 22] = 1
		31:0	AUX: Auxiliary signature of TSC.	
		63:32	Reserved	

NOTES:

1. In processors based on Intel NetBurst® microarchitecture, MSR addresses 180H-197H are supported, software must treat them as model-specific. Starting with Intel Core Duo processors, MSR addresses 180H-185H, 188H-197H are reserved.
2. The *_ADDR MSRs may or may not be present; this depends on flag settings in IA32_MCI_STATUS. See Section 15.3.2.3 and Section 15.3.2.4 for more information.
3. MAXPHYADDR is reported by CPUID.80000008H:EAX[7:0].

2.2 MSRS IN THE INTEL® CORE™ 2 PROCESSOR FAMILY

Table 2-3 lists model-specific registers (MSRs) for Intel Core 2 processor family and for Intel Xeon processors based on Intel Core microarchitecture, architectural MSR addresses are also included in Table 2-3. These processors have a CPUID signature with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel of 06_0FH, see Table 2-1.

MSRs listed in Table 2-2 and Table 2-3 are also supported by processors based on the Enhanced Intel Core microarchitecture. Processors based on the Enhanced Intel Core microarchitecture have the CPUID signature DisplayFamily_DisplayModel of 06_17H.

The column “Shared/Unique” applies to multi-core processors based on Intel Core microarchitecture. “Unique” means each processor core has a separate MSR, or a bit field in an MSR governs only a core independently. “Shared” means the MSR or the bit field in an MSR address governs the operation of both processor cores.

Table 2-3. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Core™ Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
0H	0	IA32_P5_MC_ADDR	Unique	See Section 2.22, “MSRs in Pentium Processors.”
1H	1	IA32_P5_MC_TYPE	Unique	See Section 2.22, “MSRs in Pentium Processors.”
6H	6	IA32_MONITOR_FILTER_SIZE	Unique	See Section 8.10.5, “Monitor/Mwait Address Range Determination.” and Table 2-2.
10H	16	IA32_TIME_STAMP_COUNTER	Unique	See Section 17.17, “Time-Stamp Counter,” and see Table 2-2.
17H	23	IA32_PLATFORM_ID	Shared	Platform ID (R) See Table 2-2.

Table 2-3. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Core™ Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
17H	23	MSR_PLATFORM_ID	Shared	Model Specific Platform ID (R)
		7:0		Reserved
		12:8		Maximum Qualified Ratio (R) The maximum allowed bus ratio.
		49:13		Reserved
		52:50		See Table 2-2.
		63:53		Reserved
1BH	27	IA32_APIC_BASE	Unique	See Section 10.4.4, "Local APIC Status and Location" and Table 2-2.
2AH	42	MSR_EBL_CR_POWERON	Shared	Processor Hard Power-On Configuration (R/W) Enables and disables processor features; (R) indicates current processor configuration.
		0		Reserved
		1		Data Error Checking Enable (R/W) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled Note: Not all processors implement R/W.
		2		Response Error Checking Enable (R/W) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled Note: Not all processor implements R/W.
		3		MCERR# Drive Enable (R/W) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled Note: Not all processors implement R/W.
		4		Address Parity Enable (R/W) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled Note: Not all processors implement R/W.
		5		Reserved
		6		Reserved
		7		BINIT# Driver Enable (R/W) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled Note: Not all processors implement R/W.
		8		Output Tri-state Enabled (R/O) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled
		9		Execute BIST (R/O) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled
		10		MCERR# Observation Enabled (R/O) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled
11	Intel TXT Capable Chipset. (R/O) 1 = Present; 0 = Not Present			

Table 2-3. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Core™ Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		12		BINIT# Observation Enabled (R/O) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled
		13		Reserved
		14		1 MByte Power on Reset Vector (R/O) 1 = 1 MByte; 0 = 4 GBytes
		15		Reserved
		17:16		APIC Cluster ID (R/O)
		18		N/2 Non-Integer Bus Ratio (R/O) 0 = Integer ratio; 1 = Non-integer ratio
		19		Reserved
		21:20		Symmetric Arbitration ID (R/O)
		26:22		Integer Bus Frequency Ratio (R/O)
3AH	58	MSR_FEATURE_CONTROL	Unique	Control Features in Intel 64 Processor (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		3	Unique	SMRR Enable (R/W/L) When this bit is set and the lock bit is set, this makes the SMRR_PHYS_BASE and SMRR_PHYS_MASK registers read visible and writeable while in SMM.
40H	64	MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP	Unique	Last Branch Record 0 From IP (R/W) One of four pairs of last branch record registers on the last branch record stack. The From_IP part of the stack contains pointers to the source instruction. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Last Branch Record Stack TOS at 1C9H. ▪ Section 17.5.
41H	65	MSR_LASTBRANCH_1_FROM_IP	Unique	Last Branch Record 1 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
42H	66	MSR_LASTBRANCH_2_FROM_IP	Unique	Last Branch Record 2 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
43H	67	MSR_LASTBRANCH_3_FROM_IP	Unique	Last Branch Record 3 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
60H	96	MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP	Unique	Last Branch Record 0 To IP (R/W) One of four pairs of last branch record registers on the last branch record stack. This To_IP part of the stack contains pointers to the destination instruction.
61H	97	MSR_LASTBRANCH_1_TO_IP	Unique	Last Branch Record 1 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
62H	98	MSR_LASTBRANCH_2_TO_IP	Unique	Last Branch Record 2 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.

Table 2-3. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Core™ Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
63H	99	MSR_LASTBRANCH_3_TO_IP	Unique	Last Branch Record 3 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
79H	121	IA32_BIOS_UPDT_TRIG	Unique	BIOS Update Trigger Register (W) See Table 2-2.
8BH	139	IA32_BIOS_SIGN_ID	Unique	BIOS Update Signature ID (RO) See Table 2-2.
A0H	160	MSR_SMRR_PHYSBASE	Unique	System Management Mode Base Address register (WO in SMM) Model-specific implementation of SMRR-like interface, read visible and write only in SMM.
		11:0		Reserved
		31:12		PhysBase: SMRR physical Base Address.
		63:32		Reserved
A1H	161	MSR_SMRR_PHYSMASK	Unique	System Management Mode Physical Address Mask register (WO in SMM) Model-specific implementation of SMRR-like interface, read visible and write only in SMM.
		10:0		Reserved
		11		Valid: Physical address base and range mask are valid.
		31:12		PhysMask: SMRR physical address range mask.
		63:32		Reserved
C1H	193	IA32_PMC0	Unique	Performance Counter Register See Table 2-2.
C2H	194	IA32_PMC1	Unique	Performance Counter Register See Table 2-2.
CDH	205	MSR_FSB_FREQ	Shared	Scaleable Bus Speed(RO) This field indicates the intended scaleable bus clock speed for processors based on Intel Core microarchitecture.
		2:0		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ 101B: 100 MHz (FSB 400) ▪ 001B: 133 MHz (FSB 533) ▪ 011B: 167 MHz (FSB 667) ▪ 010B: 200 MHz (FSB 800) ▪ 000B: 267 MHz (FSB 1067) ▪ 100B: 333 MHz (FSB 1333)
				133.33 MHz should be utilized if performing calculation with System Bus Speed when encoding is 001B. 166.67 MHz should be utilized if performing calculation with System Bus Speed when encoding is 011B.

Table 2-3. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Core™ Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
				266.67 MHz should be utilized if performing calculation with System Bus Speed when encoding is 000B. 333.33 MHz should be utilized if performing calculation with System Bus Speed when encoding is 100B.
		63:3		Reserved
CDH	205	MSR_FSB_FREQ	Shared	Scaleable Bus Speed(RO) This field indicates the intended scaleable bus clock speed for processors based on Enhanced Intel Core microarchitecture.
		2:0		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ 101B: 100 MHz (FSB 400) ▪ 001B: 133 MHz (FSB 533) ▪ 011B: 167 MHz (FSB 667) ▪ 010B: 200 MHz (FSB 800) ▪ 000B: 267 MHz (FSB 1067) ▪ 100B: 333 MHz (FSB 1333) ▪ 110B: 400 MHz (FSB 1600)
				133.33 MHz should be utilized if performing calculation with System Bus Speed when encoding is 001B. 166.67 MHz should be utilized if performing calculation with System Bus Speed when encoding is 011B.
				266.67 MHz should be utilized if performing calculation with System Bus Speed when encoding is 110B. 333.33 MHz should be utilized if performing calculation with System Bus Speed when encoding is 111B.
		63:3		Reserved
E7H	231	IA32_MPERF	Unique	Maximum Performance Frequency Clock Count (RW) See Table 2-2.
E8H	232	IA32_APERF	Unique	Actual Performance Frequency Clock Count (RW) See Table 2-2.
FEH	254	IA32_MTRRCAP	Unique	See Table 2-2.
		11	Unique	SMRR Capability Using MSR OAOH and OA1H (R)
174H	372	IA32_SYSENTER_CS	Unique	See Table 2-2.
175H	373	IA32_SYSENTER_ESP	Unique	See Table 2-2.
176H	374	IA32_SYSENTER_EIP	Unique	See Table 2-2.
179H	377	IA32_MCG_CAP	Unique	See Table 2-2.
17AH	378	IA32_MCG_STATUS	Unique	Global Machine Check Status
		0		RIPV When set, bit indicates that the instruction addressed by the instruction pointer pushed on the stack (when the machine check was generated) can be used to restart the program. If cleared, the program cannot be reliably restarted.

Table 2-3. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Core™ Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		1		EIPV When set, bit indicates that the instruction addressed by the instruction pointer pushed on the stack (when the machine check was generated) is directly associated with the error.
		2		MCIP When set, bit indicates that a machine check has been generated. If a second machine check is detected while this bit is still set, the processor enters a shutdown state. Software should write this bit to 0 after processing a machine check exception.
		63:3		Reserved
186H	390	IA32_PERFEVTSELO	Unique	See Table 2-2.
187H	391	IA32_PERFEVTSEL1	Unique	See Table 2-2.
198H	408	IA32_PERF_STATUS	Shared	See Table 2-2.
198H	408	MSR_PERF_STATUS	Shared	Current performance status. See Section 14.1.1, "Software Interface For Initiating Performance State Transitions".
		15:0		Current Performance State Value
		30:16		Reserved
		31		XE Operation (R/O). If set, XE operation is enabled. Default is cleared.
		39:32		Reserved
		44:40		Maximum Bus Ratio (R/O) Indicates maximum bus ratio configured for the processor.
		45		Reserved
		46		Non-Integer Bus Ratio (R/O) Indicates non-integer bus ratio is enabled. Applies processors based on Enhanced Intel Core microarchitecture.
		63:47		Reserved
199H	409	IA32_PERF_CTL	Unique	See Table 2-2.
19AH	410	IA32_CLOCK_MODULATION	Unique	Clock Modulation (R/W) See Table 2-2. IA32_CLOCK_MODULATION MSR was originally named IA32_THERM_CONTROL MSR.
19BH	411	IA32_THERM_INTERRUPT	Unique	Thermal Interrupt Control (R/W) See Table 2-2.
19CH	412	IA32_THERM_STATUS	Unique	Thermal Monitor Status (R/W) See Table 2-2.

Table 2-3. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Core™ Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
19DH	413	MSR_THERM2_CTL	Unique	Thermal Monitor 2 Control
		15:0		Reserved
		16		TM_SELECT (R/W) Mode of automatic thermal monitor: 0 = Thermal Monitor 1 (thermally-initiated on-die modulation of the stop-clock duty cycle). 1 = Thermal Monitor 2 (thermally-initiated frequency transitions). If bit 3 of the IA32_MISC_ENABLE register is cleared, TM_SELECT has no effect. Neither TM1 nor TM2 are enabled.
		63:16		Reserved
1A0H	416	IA32_MISC_ENABLE		Enable Misc. Processor Features (R/W) Allows a variety of processor functions to be enabled and disabled.
		0		Fast-Strings Enable See Table 2-2.
		2:1		Reserved
		3	Unique	Automatic Thermal Control Circuit Enable (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		6:4		Reserved
		7	Shared	Performance Monitoring Available (R) See Table 2-2.
		8		Reserved
		9		Hardware Prefetcher Disable (R/W) When set, disables the hardware prefetcher operation on streams of data. When clear (default), enables the prefetch queue. Disabling of the hardware prefetcher may impact processor performance.
		10	Shared	FERR# Multiplexing Enable (R/W) 1 = FERR# asserted by the processor to indicate a pending break event within the processor. 0 = Indicates compatible FERR# signaling behavior. This bit must be set to 1 to support XAPIC interrupt model usage.
		11	Shared	Branch Trace Storage Unavailable (RO) See Table 2-2.
12	Shared	Processor Event Based Sampling Unavailable (RO) See Table 2-2.		

Table 2-3. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Core™ Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		13	Shared	<p>TM2 Enable (R/W)</p> <p>When this bit is set (1) and the thermal sensor indicates that the die temperature is at the pre-determined threshold, the Thermal Monitor 2 mechanism is engaged. TM2 will reduce the bus to core ratio and voltage according to the value last written to MSR_THERM2_CTL bits 15:0.</p>
				<p>When this bit is clear (0, default), the processor does not change the VID signals or the bus to core ratio when the processor enters a thermally managed state.</p> <p>The BIOS must enable this feature if the TM2 feature flag (CPUID.1:ECX[8]) is set; if the TM2 feature flag is not set, this feature is not supported and BIOS must not alter the contents of the TM2 bit location.</p> <p>The processor is operating out of specification if both this bit and the TM1 bit are set to 0.</p>
		15:14		Reserved
		16	Shared	Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology Enable (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		18	Shared	ENABLE MONITOR FSM (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		19	Shared	<p>Adjacent Cache Line Prefetch Disable (R/W)</p> <p>When set to 1, the processor fetches the cache line that contains data currently required by the processor. When set to 0, the processor fetches cache lines that comprise a cache line pair (128 bytes).</p> <p>Single processor platforms should not set this bit. Server platforms should set or clear this bit based on platform performance observed in validation and testing.</p> <p>BIOS may contain a setup option that controls the setting of this bit.</p>
		20	Shared	<p>Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology Select Lock (R/WO)</p> <p>When set, this bit causes the following bits to become read-only:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology Select Lock (this bit). ▪ Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology Enable bit. <p>The bit must be set before an Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology transition is requested. This bit is cleared on reset.</p>
		21		Reserved
		22	Shared	Limit CPUID Maxval (R/W) See Table 2-2.

Table 2-3. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Core™ Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		23	Shared	xTPR Message Disable (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		33:24		Reserved
		34	Unique	XD Bit Disable (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		36:35		Reserved
		37	Unique	DCU Prefetcher Disable (R/W) When set to 1, the DCU L1 data cache prefetcher is disabled. The default value after reset is 0. BIOS may write '1' to disable this feature. The DCU prefetcher is an L1 data cache prefetcher. When the DCU prefetcher detects multiple loads from the same line done within a time limit, the DCU prefetcher assumes the next line will be required. The next line is prefetched in to the L1 data cache from memory or L2.
		38	Shared	IDA Disable (R/W) When set to 1 on processors that support IDA, the Intel Dynamic Acceleration feature (IDA) is disabled and the IDA_Enable feature flag will be cleared (CPUID.06H: EAX[1]=0). When set to a 0 on processors that support IDA, CPUID.06H: EAX[1] reports the processor's support of IDA is enabled. Note: The power-on default value is used by BIOS to detect hardware support of IDA. If the power-on default value is 1, IDA is available in the processor. If the power-on default value is 0, IDA is not available.
		39	Unique	IP Prefetcher Disable (R/W) When set to 1, the IP prefetcher is disabled. The default value after reset is 0. BIOS may write '1' to disable this feature. The IP prefetcher is an L1 data cache prefetcher. The IP prefetcher looks for sequential load history to determine whether to prefetch the next expected data into the L1 cache from memory or L2.
		63:40		Reserved
1C9H	457	MSR_LASTBRANCH_TOS	Unique	Last Branch Record Stack TOS (R/W) Contains an index (bits 0-3) that points to the MSR containing the most recent branch record. See MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP (at 40H).
1D9H	473	IA32_DEBUGCTL	Unique	Debug Control (R/W) See Table 2-2.

Table 2-3. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Core™ Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
1DDH	477	MSR_LER_FROM_LIP	Unique	Last Exception Record From Linear IP (R/W) Contains a pointer to the last branch instruction that the processor executed prior to the last exception that was generated or the last interrupt that was handled.
1DEH	478	MSR_LER_TO_LIP	Unique	Last Exception Record To Linear IP (R/W) This area contains a pointer to the target of the last branch instruction that the processor executed prior to the last exception that was generated or the last interrupt that was handled.
200H	512	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE0	Unique	See Table 2-2.
201H	513	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK0	Unique	See Table 2-2.
202H	514	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE1	Unique	See Table 2-2.
203H	515	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK1	Unique	See Table 2-2.
204H	516	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE2	Unique	See Table 2-2.
205H	517	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK2	Unique	See Table 2-2.
206H	518	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE3	Unique	See Table 2-2.
207H	519	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK3	Unique	See Table 2-2.
208H	520	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE4	Unique	See Table 2-2.
209H	521	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK4	Unique	See Table 2-2.
20AH	522	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE5	Unique	See Table 2-2.
20BH	523	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK5	Unique	See Table 2-2.
20CH	524	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE6	Unique	See Table 2-2.
20DH	525	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK6	Unique	See Table 2-2.
20EH	526	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE7	Unique	See Table 2-2.
20FH	527	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK7	Unique	See Table 2-2.
250H	592	IA32_MTRR_FIX64K_00000	Unique	See Table 2-2.
258H	600	IA32_MTRR_FIX16K_80000	Unique	See Table 2-2.
259H	601	IA32_MTRR_FIX16K_A0000	Unique	See Table 2-2.
268H	616	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_C0000	Unique	See Table 2-2.
269H	617	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_C8000	Unique	See Table 2-2.
26AH	618	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_D0000	Unique	See Table 2-2.
26BH	619	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_D8000	Unique	See Table 2-2.
26CH	620	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_E0000	Unique	See Table 2-2.
26DH	621	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_E8000	Unique	See Table 2-2.
26EH	622	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_F0000	Unique	See Table 2-2.
26FH	623	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_F8000	Unique	See Table 2-2.
277H	631	IA32_PAT	Unique	See Table 2-2.

Table 2-3. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Core™ Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
2FFH	767	IA32_MTRR_DEF_TYPE	Unique	Default Memory Types (R/W) See Table 2-2.
309H	777	IA32_FIXED_CTR0	Unique	Fixed-Function Performance Counter Register 0 (R/W) See Table 2-2.
309H	777	MSR_PERF_FIXED_CTR0	Unique	Fixed-Function Performance Counter Register 0 (R/W)
30AH	778	IA32_FIXED_CTR1	Unique	Fixed-Function Performance Counter Register 1 (R/W) See Table 2-2.
30AH	778	MSR_PERF_FIXED_CTR1	Unique	Fixed-Function Performance Counter Register 1 (R/W)
30BH	779	IA32_FIXED_CTR2	Unique	Fixed-Function Performance Counter Register 2 (R/W) See Table 2-2.
30BH	779	MSR_PERF_FIXED_CTR2	Unique	Fixed-Function Performance Counter Register 2 (R/W)
345H	837	IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES	Unique	See Table 2-2. See Section 17.4.1, "IA32_DEBUGCTL MSR."
345H	837	MSR_PERF_CAPABILITIES	Unique	RO. This applies to processors that do not support architectural perfmon version 2.
		5:0		LBR Format. See Table 2-2.
		6		PEBS Record Format
		7		PEBSSaveArchRegs. See Table 2-2.
		63:8		Reserved
38DH	909	IA32_FIXED_CTR_CTRL	Unique	Fixed-Function-Counter Control Register (R/W) See Table 2-2.
38DH	909	MSR_PERF_FIXED_CTR_CTRL	Unique	Fixed-Function-Counter Control Register (R/W)
38EH	910	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS	Unique	See Table 2-2. See Section 18.6.2.2, "Global Counter Control Facilities."
38EH	910	MSR_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS	Unique	See Section 18.6.2.2, "Global Counter Control Facilities."
38FH	911	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL	Unique	See Table 2-2. See Section 18.6.2.2, "Global Counter Control Facilities."
38FH	911	MSR_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL	Unique	See Section 18.6.2.2, "Global Counter Control Facilities."
390H	912	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL	Unique	See Table 2-2. See Section 18.6.2.2, "Global Counter Control Facilities."
390H	912	MSR_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL	Unique	See Section 18.6.2.2, "Global Counter Control Facilities."
3F1H	1009	MSR_PEBS_ENABLE	Unique	See Table 2-2. See Section 18.6.2.4, "Processor Event Based Sampling (PEBS)."
		0		Enable PEBS on IA32_PMC0. (R/W)
400H	1024	IA32_MCO_CTL	Unique	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCI_CTL MSRs."
401H	1025	IA32_MCO_STATUS	Unique	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCI_STATUS MSRs."

Table 2-3. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Core™ Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
402H	1026	IA32_MCO_ADDR	Unique	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The IA32_MCO_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the IA32_MCO_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
404H	1028	IA32_MC1_CTL	Unique	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
405H	1029	IA32_MC1_STATUS	Unique	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs."
406H	1030	IA32_MC1_ADDR	Unique	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The IA32_MC1_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the IA32_MC1_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
408H	1032	IA32_MC2_CTL	Unique	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
409H	1033	IA32_MC2_STATUS	Unique	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs."
40AH	1034	IA32_MC2_ADDR	Unique	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The IA32_MC2_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the IA32_MC2_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
40CH	1036	IA32_MC4_CTL	Unique	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
40DH	1037	IA32_MC4_STATUS	Unique	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs."
40EH	1038	IA32_MC4_ADDR	Unique	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The MSR_MC4_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the MSR_MC4_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
410H	1040	IA32_MC3_CTL		See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
411H	1041	IA32_MC3_STATUS		See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs."
412H	1042	IA32_MC3_ADDR	Unique	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The MSR_MC3_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the MSR_MC3_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.

Table 2-3. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Core™ Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
413H	1043	IA32_MC3_MISC	Unique	Machine Check Error Reporting Register: Contains additional information describing the machine-check error if the MISCV flag in the IA32_MCI_STATUS register is set.
414H	1044	IA32_MC5_CTL	Unique	Machine Check Error Reporting Register: Controls signaling of #MC for errors produced by a particular hardware unit (or group of hardware units).
415H	1045	IA32_MC5_STATUS	Unique	Machine Check Error Reporting Register: Contains information related to a machine-check error if its VAL (valid) flag is set. Software is responsible for clearing IA32_MCI_STATUS MSRs by explicitly writing 0s to them; writing 1s to them causes a general-protection exception.
416H	1046	IA32_MC5_ADDR	Unique	Machine Check Error Reporting Register: Contains the address of the code or data memory location that produced the machine-check error if the ADDR_V flag in the IA32_MCI_STATUS register is set.
417H	1047	IA32_MC5_MISC	Unique	Machine Check Error Reporting Register: Contains additional information describing the machine-check error if the MISCV flag in the IA32_MCI_STATUS register is set.
419H	1045	IA32_MC6_STATUS	Unique	Applies to Intel Xeon processor 7400 series (processor signature 06_1D) only. See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCI_STATUS MSRS" and Chapter 23.
480H	1152	IA32_VMX_BASIC	Unique	Reporting Register of Basic VMX Capabilities (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.1, "Basic VMX Information."
481H	1153	IA32_VMX_PINBASED_CTL	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of Pin-Based VM-Execution Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.3, "VM-Execution Controls."
482H	1154	IA32_VMX_PROCBASED_CTL	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of Primary Processor-Based VM-Execution Controls (R/O) See Appendix A.3, "VM-Execution Controls."
483H	1155	IA32_VMX_EXIT_CTL	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of VM-Exit Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.4, "VM-Exit Controls."
484H	1156	IA32_VMX_ENTRY_CTL	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of VM-Entry Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.5, "VM-Entry Controls."
485H	1157	IA32_VMX_MISC	Unique	Reporting Register of Miscellaneous VMX Capabilities (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.6, "Miscellaneous Data."

Table 2-3. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Core™ Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
486H	1158	IA32_VMX_CR0_FIXED0	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of CR0 Bits Fixed to 0 (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.7, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CR0."
487H	1159	IA32_VMX_CR0_FIXED1	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of CR0 Bits Fixed to 1 (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.7, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CR0."
488H	1160	IA32_VMX_CR4_FIXED0	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of CR4 Bits Fixed to 0 (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.8, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CR4."
489H	1161	IA32_VMX_CR4_FIXED1	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of CR4 Bits Fixed to 1 (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.8, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CR4."
48AH	1162	IA32_VMX_VMCS_ENUM	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of VMCS Field Enumeration (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.9, "VMCS Enumeration."
48BH	1163	IA32_VMX_PROCBASED_CTL2	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of Secondary Processor-Based VM-Execution Controls (R/O) See Appendix A.3, "VM-Execution Controls."
600H	1536	IA32_DS_AREA	Unique	DS Save Area (R/W) See Table 2-2. See Section 18.6.3.4, "Debug Store (DS) Mechanism."
107CH		MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL0	Unique	GBUSQ Event Control/Counter Register (R/W) Applies to Intel Xeon processor 7400 series (processor signature 06_1D) only. See Section 17.2.2
107CDH		MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL1	Unique	GBUSQ Event Control/Counter Register (R/W) Applies to Intel Xeon processor 7400 series (processor signature 06_1D) only. See Section 17.2.2
107CEH		MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL2	Unique	GSNPQ Event Control/Counter Register (R/W) Applies to Intel Xeon processor 7400 series (processor signature 06_1D) only. See Section 17.2.2
107CFH		MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL3	Unique	GSNPQ Event Control/Counter Register (R/W) Applies to Intel Xeon processor 7400 series (processor signature 06_1D) only. See Section 17.2.2
107D0H		MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL4	Unique	FSB Event Control/Counter Register (R/W) Applies to Intel Xeon processor 7400 series (processor signature 06_1D) only. See Section 17.2.2
107D1H		MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL5	Unique	FSB Event Control/Counter Register (R/W) Applies to Intel Xeon processor 7400 series (processor signature 06_1D) only. See Section 17.2.2

Table 2-3. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Core™ Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
107D2 H		MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL6	Unique	FSB Event Control/Counter Register (R/W) Applies to Intel Xeon processor 7400 series (processor signature 06_1D) only. See Section 17.2.2
107D3 H		MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL7	Unique	FSB Event Control/Counter Register (R/W) Applies to Intel Xeon processor 7400 series (processor signature 06_1D) only. See Section 17.2.2
107D8 H		MSR_EMON_L3_GL_CTL	Unique	L3/FSB Common Control Register (R/W) Applies to Intel Xeon processor 7400 series (processor signature 06_1D) only. See Section 17.2.2
C000_ 0080H		IA32_EFER	Unique	Extended Feature Enables See Table 2-2.
C000_ 0081H		IA32_STAR	Unique	System Call Target Address (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_ 0082H		IA32_LSTAR	Unique	IA-32e Mode System Call Target Address (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_ 0084H		IA32_FMASK	Unique	System Call Flag Mask (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_ 0100H		IA32_FS_BASE	Unique	Map of BASE Address of FS (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_ 0101H		IA32_GS_BASE	Unique	Map of BASE Address of GS (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_ 0102H		IA32_KERNEL_GS_BASE	Unique	Swap Target of BASE Address of GS (R/W) See Table 2-2.

2.3 MSRS IN THE 45 NM AND 32 NM INTEL® ATOM™ PROCESSOR FAMILY

Table 2-4 lists model-specific registers (MSRs) for 45 nm and 32 nm Intel Atom processors, architectural MSR addresses are also included in Table 2-4. These processors have a CPUID signature with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel of 06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H and 06_36H; see Table 2-1.

The column “Shared/Unique” applies to logical processors sharing the same core in processors based on the Intel Atom microarchitecture. “Unique” means each logical processor has a separate MSR, or a bit field in an MSR governs only a logical processor. “Shared” means the MSR or the bit field in an MSR address governs the operation of both logical processors in the same core.

Table 2-4. MSRs in 45 nm and 32 nm Intel® Atom™ Processor Family

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
0H	0	IA32_P5_MC_ADDR	Shared	See Section 2.22, “MSRs in Pentium Processors.”
1H	1	IA32_P5_MC_TYPE	Shared	See Section 2.22, “MSRs in Pentium Processors.”

Table 2-4. MSRs in 45 nm and 32 nm Intel® Atom™ Processor Family (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
6H	6	IA32_MONITOR_FILTER_SIZE	Unique	See Section 8.10.5, "Monitor/Mwait Address Range Determination." and Table 2-2.
10H	16	IA32_TIME_STAMP_COUNTER	Unique	See Section 17.17, "Time-Stamp Counter," and see Table 2-2.
17H	23	IA32_PLATFORM_ID	Shared	Platform ID (R) See Table 2-2.
17H	23	MSR_PLATFORM_ID	Shared	Model Specific Platform ID (R)
		7:0		Reserved
		12:8		Maximum Qualified Ratio (R) The maximum allowed bus ratio.
		63:13		Reserved
1BH	27	IA32_APIC_BASE	Unique	See Section 10.4.4, "Local APIC Status and Location" and Table 2-2.
2AH	42	MSR_EBL_CR_POWERON	Shared	Processor Hard Power-On Configuration (R/W) Enables and disables processor features; (R) indicates current processor configuration.
		0		Reserved
		1		Data Error Checking Enable (R/W) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled Always 0.
		2		Response Error Checking Enable (R/W) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled Always 0.
		3		AERR# Drive Enable (R/W) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled Always 0.
		4		BERR# Enable for initiator bus requests (R/W) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled Always 0.
		5		Reserved
		6		Reserved
		7		BINIT# Driver Enable (R/W) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled Always 0.
		8		Reserved
		9		Execute BIST (R/O) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled
		10		AERR# Observation Enabled (R/O) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled Always 0.

Table 2-4. MSRs in 45 nm and 32 nm Intel® Atom™ Processor Family (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		11		Reserved
		12		BINIT# Observation Enabled (R/O) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled Always 0.
		13		Reserved
		14		1 MByte Power on Reset Vector (R/O) 1 = 1 MByte; 0 = 4 GBytes
		15		Reserved
		17:16		APIC Cluster ID (R/O) Always 00B.
		19:18		Reserved
		21:20		Symmetric Arbitration ID (R/O) Always 00B.
		26:22		Integer Bus Frequency Ratio (R/O)
3AH	58	IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL	Unique	Control Features in Intel 64Processor (R/W) See Table 2-2.
40H	64	MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP	Unique	Last Branch Record 0 From IP (R/W) One of eight pairs of last branch record registers on the last branch record stack. The From_IP part of the stack contains pointers to the source instruction . See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Last Branch Record Stack TOS at 1C9H. ▪ Section 17.5.
41H	65	MSR_LASTBRANCH_1_FROM_IP	Unique	Last Branch Record 1 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
42H	66	MSR_LASTBRANCH_2_FROM_IP	Unique	Last Branch Record 2 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
43H	67	MSR_LASTBRANCH_3_FROM_IP	Unique	Last Branch Record 3 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
44H	68	MSR_LASTBRANCH_4_FROM_IP	Unique	Last Branch Record 4 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
45H	69	MSR_LASTBRANCH_5_FROM_IP	Unique	Last Branch Record 5 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
46H	70	MSR_LASTBRANCH_6_FROM_IP	Unique	Last Branch Record 6 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
47H	71	MSR_LASTBRANCH_7_FROM_IP	Unique	Last Branch Record 7 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
60H	96	MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP	Unique	Last Branch Record 0 To IP (R/W) One of eight pairs of last branch record registers on the last branch record stack. The To_IP part of the stack contains pointers to the destination instruction.

Table 2-4. MSRs in 45 nm and 32 nm Intel® Atom™ Processor Family (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
61H	97	MSR_LASTBRANCH_1_TO_IP	Unique	Last Branch Record 1 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
62H	98	MSR_LASTBRANCH_2_TO_IP	Unique	Last Branch Record 2 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
63H	99	MSR_LASTBRANCH_3_TO_IP	Unique	Last Branch Record 3 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
64H	100	MSR_LASTBRANCH_4_TO_IP	Unique	Last Branch Record 4 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
65H	101	MSR_LASTBRANCH_5_TO_IP	Unique	Last Branch Record 5 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
66H	102	MSR_LASTBRANCH_6_TO_IP	Unique	Last Branch Record 6 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
67H	103	MSR_LASTBRANCH_7_TO_IP	Unique	Last Branch Record 7 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
79H	121	IA32_BIOS_UPDT_TRIG	Shared	BIOS Update Trigger Register (W) See Table 2-2.
8BH	139	IA32_BIOS_SIGN_ID	Unique	BIOS Update Signature ID (RO) See Table 2-2.
C1H	193	IA32_PMC0	Unique	Performance counter register See Table 2-2.
C2H	194	IA32_PMC1	Unique	Performance Counter Register See Table 2-2.
CDH	205	MSR_FSB_FREQ	Shared	Scaleable Bus Speed(RO) This field indicates the intended scaleable bus clock speed for processors based on Intel Atom microarchitecture.
		2:0		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ 111B: 083 MHz (FSB 333) ▪ 101B: 100 MHz (FSB 400) ▪ 001B: 133 MHz (FSB 533) ▪ 011B: 167 MHz (FSB 667) 133.33 MHz should be utilized if performing calculation with System Bus Speed when encoding is 001B. 166.67 MHz should be utilized if performing calculation with System Bus Speed when encoding is 011B.
		63:3		Reserved
E7H	231	IA32_MPERF	Unique	Maximum Performance Frequency Clock Count (RW) See Table 2-2.
E8H	232	IA32_APERF	Unique	Actual Performance Frequency Clock Count (RW) See Table 2-2.
FEH	254	IA32_MTRRCAP	Shared	Memory Type Range Register (R) See Table 2-2.

Table 2-4. MSRs in 45 nm and 32 nm Intel® Atom™ Processor Family (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
11EH	281	MSR_BBL_CR_CTL3	Shared	Control Register 3 Used to configure the L2 Cache.
		0		L2 Hardware Enabled (RO) 1 = Indicates the L2 is hardware-enabled. 0 = Indicates the L2 is hardware-disabled.
		7:1		Reserved
		8		L2 Enabled (R/W) 1 = L2 cache has been initialized. 0 = Disabled (default). Until this bit is set, the processor will not respond to the WBINVD instruction or the assertion of the FLUSH# input.
		22:9		Reserved
		23		L2 Not Present (RO) 0 = L2 Present 1 = L2 Not Present
		63:24		Reserved
174H	372	IA32_SYSENTER_CS	Unique	See Table 2-2.
175H	373	IA32_SYSENTER_ESP	Unique	See Table 2-2.
176H	374	IA32_SYSENTER_EIP	Unique	See Table 2-2.
179H	377	IA32_MCG_CAP	Unique	See Table 2-2.
17AH	378	IA32_MCG_STATUS	Unique	Global Machine Check Status
		0		RIPV When set, bit indicates that the instruction addressed by the instruction pointer pushed on the stack (when the machine check was generated) can be used to restart the program. If cleared, the program cannot be reliably restarted.
		1		EIPV When set, bit indicates that the instruction addressed by the instruction pointer pushed on the stack (when the machine check was generated) is directly associated with the error.
		2		MCIP When set, bit indicates that a machine check has been generated. If a second machine check is detected while this bit is still set, the processor enters a shutdown state. Software should write this bit to 0 after processing a machine check exception.
		63:3		Reserved
186H	390	IA32_PERFVTSELO	Unique	See Table 2-2.
187H	391	IA32_PERFVTSEL1	Unique	See Table 2-2.
198H	408	IA32_PERF_STATUS	Shared	See Table 2-2.

Table 2-4. MSRs in 45 nm and 32 nm Intel® Atom™ Processor Family (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
198H	408	MSR_PERF_STATUS	Shared	Performance Status
		15:0		Current Performance State Value
		39:16		Reserved
		44:40		Maximum Bus Ratio (R/O) Indicates maximum bus ratio configured for the processor.
		63:45		Reserved
199H	409	IA32_PERF_CTL	Unique	See Table 2-2.
19AH	410	IA32_CLOCK_MODULATION	Unique	Clock Modulation (R/W) See Table 2-2. IA32_CLOCK_MODULATION MSR was originally named IA32_THERM_CONTROL MSR.
19BH	411	IA32_THERM_INTERRUPT	Unique	Thermal Interrupt Control (R/W) See Table 2-2.
19CH	412	IA32_THERM_STATUS	Unique	Thermal Monitor Status (R/W) See Table 2-2.
19DH	413	MSR_THERM2_CTL	Shared	Thermal Monitor 2 Control
		15:0		Reserved
		16		TM_SELECT (R/W) Mode of automatic thermal monitor: 0 = Thermal Monitor 1 (thermally-initiated on-die modulation of the stop-clock duty cycle). 1 = Thermal Monitor 2 (thermally-initiated frequency transitions). If bit 3 of the IA32_MISC_ENABLE register is cleared, TM_SELECT has no effect. Neither TM1 nor TM2 are enabled.
		63:17		Reserved
1A0H	416	IA32_MISC_ENABLE	Unique	Enable Misc. Processor Features (R/W) Allows a variety of processor functions to be enabled and disabled.
		0		Fast-Strings Enable See Table 2-2.
		2:1		Reserved
		3	Unique	Automatic Thermal Control Circuit Enable (R/W) See Table 2-2. Default value is 0.
		6:4		Reserved
		7	Shared	Performance Monitoring Available (R) See Table 2-2.
		8		Reserved
		9		Reserved

Table 2-4. MSRs in 45 nm and 32 nm Intel® Atom™ Processor Family (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		10	Shared	FERR# Multiplexing Enable (R/W) 1 = FERR# asserted by the processor to indicate a pending break event within the processor. 0 = Indicates compatible FERR# signaling behavior. This bit must be set to 1 to support XAPIC interrupt model usage.
		11	Shared	Branch Trace Storage Unavailable (RO) See Table 2-2.
		12	Shared	Processor Event Based Sampling Unavailable (RO) See Table 2-2.
		13	Shared	TM2 Enable (R/W) When this bit is set (1) and the thermal sensor indicates that the die temperature is at the pre-determined threshold, the Thermal Monitor 2 mechanism is engaged. TM2 will reduce the bus to core ratio and voltage according to the value last written to MSR_THERM2_CTL bits 15:0.
				When this bit is cleared (0, default), the processor does not change the VID signals or the bus to core ratio when the processor enters a thermally managed state. The BIOS must enable this feature if the TM2 feature flag (CPUID.1:ECX[8]) is set; if the TM2 feature flag is not set, this feature is not supported and BIOS must not alter the contents of the TM2 bit location. The processor is operating out of specification if both this bit and the TM1 bit are set to 0.
		15:14		Reserved
		16	Shared	Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology Enable (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		18	Shared	ENABLE MONITOR FSM (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		19		Reserved
		20	Shared	Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology Select Lock (R/WO) When set, this bit causes the following bits to become read-only: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology Select Lock (this bit). ▪ Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology Enable bit. The bit must be set before an Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology transition is requested. This bit is cleared on reset.
		21		Reserved
		22	Unique	Limit CPUID Maxval (R/W) See Table 2-2.

Table 2-4. MSRs in 45 nm and 32 nm Intel® Atom™ Processor Family (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		23	Shared	xTPR Message Disable (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		33:24		Reserved
		34	Unique	XD Bit Disable (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		63:35		Reserved
1C9H	457	MSR_LASTBRANCH_TOS	Unique	Last Branch Record Stack TOS (R/W) Contains an index (bits 0-2) that points to the MSR containing the most recent branch record. See MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP (at 40H).
1D9H	473	IA32_DEBUGCTL	Unique	Debug Control (R/W) See Table 2-2.
1DDH	477	MSR_LER_FROM_LIP	Unique	Last Exception Record From Linear IP (R) Contains a pointer to the last branch instruction that the processor executed prior to the last exception that was generated or the last interrupt that was handled.
1DEH	478	MSR_LER_TO_LIP	Unique	Last Exception Record To Linear IP (R) This area contains a pointer to the target of the last branch instruction that the processor executed prior to the last exception that was generated or the last interrupt that was handled.
200H	512	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE0	Shared	See Table 2-2.
201H	513	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK0	Shared	See Table 2-2.
202H	514	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE1	Shared	See Table 2-2.
203H	515	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK1	Shared	See Table 2-2.
204H	516	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE2	Shared	See Table 2-2.
205H	517	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK2	Shared	See Table 2-2.
206H	518	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE3	Shared	See Table 2-2.
207H	519	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK3	Shared	See Table 2-2.
208H	520	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE4	Shared	See Table 2-2.
209H	521	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK4	Shared	See Table 2-2.
20AH	522	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE5	Shared	See Table 2-2.
20BH	523	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK5	Shared	See Table 2-2.
20CH	524	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE6	Shared	See Table 2-2.
20DH	525	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK6	Shared	See Table 2-2.
20EH	526	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE7	Shared	See Table 2-2.
20FH	527	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK7	Shared	See Table 2-2.
250H	592	IA32_MTRR_FIX64K_00000	Shared	See Table 2-2.
258H	600	IA32_MTRR_FIX16K_80000	Shared	See Table 2-2.
259H	601	IA32_MTRR_FIX16K_A0000	Shared	See Table 2-2.

Table 2-4. MSRs in 45 nm and 32 nm Intel® Atom™ Processor Family (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
268H	616	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_C0000	Shared	See Table 2-2.
269H	617	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_C8000	Shared	See Table 2-2.
26AH	618	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_D0000	Shared	See Table 2-2.
26BH	619	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_D8000	Shared	See Table 2-2.
26CH	620	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_E0000	Shared	See Table 2-2.
26DH	621	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_E8000	Shared	See Table 2-2.
26EH	622	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_F0000	Shared	See Table 2-2.
26FH	623	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_F8000	Shared	See Table 2-2.
277H	631	IA32_PAT	Unique	See Table 2-2.
309H	777	IA32_FIXED_CTR0	Unique	Fixed-Function Performance Counter Register 0 (R/W) See Table 2-2.
30AH	778	IA32_FIXED_CTR1	Unique	Fixed-Function Performance Counter Register 1 (R/W) See Table 2-2.
30BH	779	IA32_FIXED_CTR2	Unique	Fixed-Function Performance Counter Register 2 (R/W) See Table 2-2.
345H	837	IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES	Shared	See Table 2-2. See Section 17.4.1, "IA32_DEBUGCTL MSR."
38DH	909	IA32_FIXED_CTR_CTRL	Unique	Fixed-Function-Counter Control Register (R/W) See Table 2-2.
38EH	910	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS	Unique	See Table 2-2. See Section 18.6.2.2, "Global Counter Control Facilities."
38FH	911	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL	Unique	See Table 2-2. See Section 18.6.2.2, "Global Counter Control Facilities."
390H	912	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL	Unique	See Table 2-2. See Section 18.6.2.2, "Global Counter Control Facilities."
3F1H	1009	MSR_PEBS_ENABLE	Unique	See Table 2-2. See Section 18.6.2.4, "Processor Event Based Sampling (PEBS)."
		0		Enable PEBS on IA32_PMC0 (R/W)
400H	1024	IA32_MCO_CTL	Shared	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
401H	1025	IA32_MCO_STATUS	Shared	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs."
402H	1026	IA32_MCO_ADDR	Shared	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The IA32_MCO_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the IA32_MCO_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
404H	1028	IA32_MC1_CTL	Shared	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
405H	1029	IA32_MC1_STATUS	Shared	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs."
408H	1032	IA32_MC2_CTL	Shared	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
409H	1033	IA32_MC2_STATUS	Shared	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs."

Table 2-4. MSRs in 45 nm and 32 nm Intel® Atom™ Processor Family (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
40AH	1034	IA32_MC2_ADDR	Shared	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The IA32_MC2_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the IA32_MC2_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
40CH	1036	IA32_MC3_CTL	Shared	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
40DH	1037	IA32_MC3_STATUS	Shared	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs."
40EH	1038	IA32_MC3_ADDR	Shared	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The MSR_MC3_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the MSR_MC3_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
410H	1040	IA32_MC4_CTL	Shared	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
411H	1041	IA32_MC4_STATUS	Shared	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs."
412H	1042	IA32_MC4_ADDR	Shared	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The MSR_MC4_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the MSR_MC4_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
480H	1152	IA32_VMX_BASIC	Unique	Reporting Register of Basic VMX Capabilities (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.1, "Basic VMX Information."
481H	1153	IA32_VMX_PINBASED_CTL	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of Pin-Based VM-Execution Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.3, "VM-Execution Controls."
482H	1154	IA32_VMX_PROCBASED_CTL	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of Primary Processor-Based VM-Execution Controls (R/O) See Appendix A.3, "VM-Execution Controls."
483H	1155	IA32_VMX_EXIT_CTL	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of VM-Exit Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.4, "VM-Exit Controls."
484H	1156	IA32_VMX_ENTRY_CTL	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of VM-Entry Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.5, "VM-Entry Controls."

Table 2-4. MSRs in 45 nm and 32 nm Intel® Atom™ Processor Family (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
485H	1157	IA32_VMX_MISC	Unique	Reporting Register of Miscellaneous VMX Capabilities (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.6, "Miscellaneous Data."
486H	1158	IA32_VMX_CRO_FIXED0	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of CRO Bits Fixed to 0 (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.7, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CRO."
487H	1159	IA32_VMX_CRO_FIXED1	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of CRO Bits Fixed to 1 (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.7, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CRO."
488H	1160	IA32_VMX_CR4_FIXED0	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of CR4 Bits Fixed to 0 (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.8, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CR4."
489H	1161	IA32_VMX_CR4_FIXED1	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of CR4 Bits Fixed to 1 (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.8, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CR4."
48AH	1162	IA32_VMX_VMCS_ENUM	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of VMCS Field Enumeration (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.9, "VMCS Enumeration."
48BH	1163	IA32_VMX_PROCBASED_CTL2	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of Secondary Processor-Based VM-Execution Controls (R/O) See Appendix A.3, "VM-Execution Controls."
600H	1536	IA32_DS_AREA	Unique	DS Save Area (R/W) See Table 2-2. See Section 18.6.3.4, "Debug Store (DS) Mechanism."
C000_0080H		IA32_EFER	Unique	Extended Feature Enables See Table 2-2.
C000_0081H		IA32_STAR	Unique	System Call Target Address (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0082H		IA32_LSTAR	Unique	IA-32e Mode System Call Target Address (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0084H		IA32_FMASK	Unique	System Call Flag Mask (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0100H		IA32_FS_BASE	Unique	Map of BASE Address of FS (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0101H		IA32_GS_BASE	Unique	Map of BASE Address of GS (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0102H		IA32_KERNEL_GS_BASE	Unique	Swap Target of BASE Address of GS (R/W) See Table 2-2.

Table 2-5 lists model-specific registers (MSRs) that are specific to Intel® Atom™ processor with the CPUID signature with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel of 06_27H.

Table 2-5. MSRs Supported by Intel® Atom™ Processors with CPUID Signature 06_27H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
3F8H	1016	MSR_PKG_C2_RESIDENCY	Package	Package C2 Residency Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.
		63:0	Package	Package C2 Residency Counter (R/O) Time that this package is in processor-specific C2 states since last reset. Counts at 1 Mhz frequency.
3F9H	1017	MSR_PKG_C4_RESIDENCY	Package	Package C4 Residency Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.
		63:0	Package	Package C4 Residency Counter. (R/O) Time that this package is in processor-specific C4 states since last reset. Counts at 1 Mhz frequency.
3FAH	1018	MSR_PKG_C6_RESIDENCY	Package	Package C6 Residency Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.
		63:0	Package	Package C6 Residency Counter. (R/O) Time that this package is in processor-specific C6 states since last reset. Counts at 1 Mhz frequency.

2.4 MSRS IN INTEL PROCESSORS BASED ON SILVERMONT MICROARCHITECTURE

Table 2-6 lists model-specific registers (MSRs) common to Intel processors based on the Silvermont microarchitecture. These processors have a CPUID signature with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel of 06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, and 06_5DH; see Table 2-1. The MSRs listed in Table 2-6 are also common to processors based on the Airmont microarchitecture and newer microarchitectures for next generation Intel Atom processors.

Table 2-7 lists MSRs common to processors based on the Silvermont and Airmont microarchitectures, but not newer microarchitectures.

Table 2-8, Table 2-9, and Table 2-10 lists MSRs that are model-specific across processors based on the Silvermont microarchitecture.

In the Silvermont microarchitecture, the scope column indicates the following: "Core" means each processor core has a separate MSR, or a bit field not shared with another processor core. "Module" means the MSR or the bit field is shared by a pair of processor cores in the physical package. "Package" means all processor cores in the physical package share the same MSR or bit interface.

Table 2-6. MSRs Common to the Silvermont Microarchitecture and Newer Microarchitectures for Intel Atom Processors

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
0H	0	IA32_P5_MC_ADDR	Module	See Section 2.22, "MSRs in Pentium Processors."
1H	1	IA32_P5_MC_TYPE	Module	See Section 2.22, "MSRs in Pentium Processors."
6H	6	IA32_MONITOR_FILTER_SIZE	Core	See Section 8.10.5, "Monitor/Mwait Address Range Determination," and Table 2-2.
10H	16	IA32_TIME_STAMP_COUNTER	Core	See Section 17.17, "Time-Stamp Counter," and Table 2-2.
1BH	27	IA32_APIC_BASE	Core	See Section 10.4.4, "Local APIC Status and Location," and Table 2-2.
2AH	42	MSR_EBL_CR_POWERON	Module	Processor Hard Power-On Configuration (R/W) Writes ignored.
		63:0		Reserved
34H	52	MSR_SMI_COUNT	Core	SMI Counter (R/O)
		31:0		SMI Count (R/O) Running count of SMI events since last RESET.
		63:32		Reserved
79H	121	IA32_BIOS_UPDT_TRIG	Core	BIOS Update Trigger Register (W) See Table 2-2.
8BH	139	IA32_BIOS_SIGN_ID	Core	BIOS Update Signature ID (RO) See Table 2-2.
C1H	193	IA32_PMC0	Core	Performance counter register See Table 2-2.
C2H	194	IA32_PMC1	Core	Performance Counter Register See Table 2-2.
E4H	228	MSR_PMG_IO_CAPTURE_BASE	Module	Power Management IO Redirection in C-state (R/W) See http://biosbits.org .
		15:0		LVL_2 Base Address (R/W) Specifies the base address visible to software for IO redirection. If IO MWAIT Redirection is enabled, reads to this address will be consumed by the power management logic and decoded to MWAIT instructions. When IO port address redirection is enabled, this is the IO port address reported to the OS/software.

Table 2-6. MSRs Common to the Silvermont Microarchitecture and Newer Microarchitectures for Intel Atom Processors

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		18:16		C-state Range (R/W) Specifies the encoding value of the maximum C-State code name to be included when IO read to MWAIT redirection is enabled by MSR_PKG_CST_CONFIG_CONTROL[bit10]: 100b - C4 is the max C-State to include 110b - C6 is the max C-State to include 111b - C7 is the max C-State to include
		63:19		Reserved
E7H	231	IA32_MPERF	Core	Maximum Performance Frequency Clock Count (RW) See Table 2-2.
E8H	232	IA32_APERF	Core	Actual Performance Frequency Clock Count (RW) See Table 2-2.
FEH	254	IA32_MTRRCAP	Core	Memory Type Range Register (R) See Table 2-2.
13CH	52	MSR_FEATURE_CONFIG	Core	AES Configuration (RW-L) Privileged post-BIOS agent must provide a #GP handler to handle unsuccessful read of this MSR.
		1:0		AES Configuration (RW-L) Upon a successful read of this MSR, the configuration of AES instruction sets availability is as follows: 11b: AES instructions are not available until next RESET. Otherwise, AES instructions are available. Note: AES instruction set is not available if read is unsuccessful. If the configuration is not 01b, AES instructions can be mis-configured if a privileged agent unintentionally writes 11b.
		63:2		Reserved
174H	372	IA32_SYSENTER_CS	Core	See Table 2-2.
175H	373	IA32_SYSENTER_ESP	Core	See Table 2-2.
176H	374	IA32_SYSENTER_EIP	Core	See Table 2-2.
179H	377	IA32_MCG_CAP	Core	See Table 2-2.
17AH	378	IA32_MCG_STATUS	Core	Global Machine Check Status
		0		RIPV When set, bit indicates that the instruction addressed by the instruction pointer pushed on the stack (when the machine check was generated) can be used to restart the program. If cleared, the program cannot be reliably restarted.

Table 2-6. MSRs Common to the Silvermont Microarchitecture and Newer Microarchitectures for Intel Atom Processors

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		1		EIPV When set, bit indicates that the instruction addressed by the instruction pointer pushed on the stack (when the machine check was generated) is directly associated with the error.
		2		MCIP When set, bit indicates that a machine check has been generated. If a second machine check is detected while this bit is still set, the processor enters a shutdown state. Software should write this bit to 0 after processing a machine check exception.
		63:3		Reserved
186H	390	IA32_PERFEVTSELO	Core	See Table 2-2.
		7:0		Event Select
		15:8		UMask
		16		USR
		17		OS
		18		Edge
		19		PC
		20		INT
		21		Reserved
		22		EN
		23		INV
		31:24		CMASK
		63:32		Reserved
187H	391	IA32_PERFEVTSEL1	Core	See Table 2-2.
198H	408	IA32_PERF_STATUS	Module	See Table 2-2.
199H	409	IA32_PERF_CTL	Core	See Table 2-2.
19AH	410	IA32_CLOCK_MODULATION	Core	Clock Modulation (R/W) See Table 2-2. IA32_CLOCK_MODULATION MSR was originally named IA32_THERM_CONTROL MSR.
19BH	411	IA32_THERM_INTERRUPT	Core	Thermal Interrupt Control (R/W) See Table 2-2.
19CH	412	IA32_THERM_STATUS	Core	Thermal Monitor Status (R/W) See Table 2-2.
1A2H	418	MSR_TEMPERATURE_TARGET	Package	Temperature Target
		15:0		Reserved

Table 2-6. MSRs Common to the Silvermont Microarchitecture and Newer Microarchitectures for Intel Atom Processors

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		23:16		Temperature Target (R) The default thermal throttling or PROCHOT# activation temperature in degrees C. The effective temperature for thermal throttling or PROCHOT# activation is "Temperature Target" + "Target Offset".
		29:24		Target Offset (R/W) Specifies an offset in degrees C to adjust the throttling and PROCHOT# activation temperature from the default target specified in TEMPERATURE_TARGET (bits 23:16).
		63:30		Reserved
1A6H	422	MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_0	Module	Offcore Response Event Select Register (R/W)
1A7H	423	MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_1	Module	Offcore Response Event Select Register (R/W)
1B0H	432	IA32_ENERGY_PERF_BIAS	Core	See Table 2-2.
1D9H	473	IA32_DEBUGCTL	Core	Debug Control (R/W) See Table 2-2.
1DDH	477	MSR_LER_FROM_LIP	Core	Last Exception Record From Linear IP (R/W) Contains a pointer to the last branch instruction that the processor executed prior to the last exception that was generated or the last interrupt that was handled.
1DEH	478	MSR_LER_TO_LIP	Core	Last Exception Record To Linear IP (R/W) This area contains a pointer to the target of the last branch instruction that the processor executed prior to the last exception that was generated or the last interrupt that was handled.
1F2H	498	IA32_SMRR_PHYSBASE	Core	See Table 2-2.
1F3H	499	IA32_SMRR_PHYSMASK	Core	See Table 2-2.
200H	512	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE0	Core	See Table 2-2.
201H	513	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK0	Core	See Table 2-2.
202H	514	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE1	Core	See Table 2-2.
203H	515	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK1	Core	See Table 2-2.
204H	516	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE2	Core	See Table 2-2.
205H	517	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK2	Core	See Table 2-2.
206H	518	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE3	Core	See Table 2-2.
207H	519	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK3	Core	See Table 2-2.
208H	520	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE4	Core	See Table 2-2.
209H	521	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK4	Core	See Table 2-2.
20AH	522	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE5	Core	See Table 2-2.
20BH	523	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK5	Core	See Table 2-2.
20CH	524	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE6	Core	See Table 2-2.

Table 2-6. MSRs Common to the Silvermont Microarchitecture and Newer Microarchitectures for Intel Atom Processors

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
20DH	525	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK6	Core	See Table 2-2.
20EH	526	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE7	Core	See Table 2-2.
20FH	527	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK7	Core	See Table 2-2.
250H	592	IA32_MTRR_FIX64K_00000	Core	See Table 2-2.
258H	600	IA32_MTRR_FIX16K_80000	Core	See Table 2-2.
259H	601	IA32_MTRR_FIX16K_A0000	Core	See Table 2-2.
268H	616	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_C0000	Core	See Table 2-2.
269H	617	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_C8000	Core	See Table 2-2.
26AH	618	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_D0000	Core	See Table 2-2.
26BH	619	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_D8000	Core	See Table 2-2.
26CH	620	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_E0000	Core	See Table 2-2.
26DH	621	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_E8000	Core	See Table 2-2.
26EH	622	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_F0000	Core	See Table 2-2.
26FH	623	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_F8000	Core	See Table 2-2.
277H	631	IA32_PAT	Core	See Table 2-2.
2FFH	767	IA32_MTRR_DEF_TYPE	Core	Default Memory Types (R/W) See Table 2-2.
309H	777	IA32_FIXED_CTR0	Core	Fixed-Function Performance Counter Register 0 (R/W) See Table 2-2.
30AH	778	IA32_FIXED_CTR1	Core	Fixed-Function Performance Counter Register 1 (R/W) See Table 2-2.
30BH	779	IA32_FIXED_CTR2	Core	Fixed-Function Performance Counter Register 2 (R/W) See Table 2-2.
345H	837	IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES	Core	See Table 2-2. See Section 17.4.1, "IA32_DEBUGCTL MSR."
38DH	909	IA32_FIXED_CTR_CTRL	Core	Fixed-Function-Counter Control Register (R/W) See Table 2-2.
38FH	911	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL	Core	See Table 2-2. See Section 18.6.2.2, "Global Counter Control Facilities."
3FDH	1021	MSR_CORE_C6_RESIDENCY	Core	Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.
		63:0		CORE C6 Residency Counter (R/O) Value since last reset that this core is in processor-specific C6 states. Counts at the TSC Frequency.
400H	1024	IA32_MCO_CTL	Module	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
401H	1025	IA32_MCO_STATUS	Module	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS."

Table 2-6. MSRs Common to the Silvermont Microarchitecture and Newer Microarchitectures for Intel Atom Processors

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
402H	1026	IA32_MCO_ADDR	Module	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The IA32_MCO_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the IA32_MCO_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
404H	1028	IA32_MC1_CTL	Module	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
405H	1029	IA32_MC1_STATUS	Module	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs."
408H	1032	IA32_MC2_CTL	Module	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
409H	1033	IA32_MC2_STATUS	Module	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs."
40AH	1034	IA32_MC2_ADDR	Module	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The IA32_MC2_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the IA32_MC2_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
40CH	1036	IA32_MC3_CTL	Core	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
40DH	1037	IA32_MC3_STATUS	Core	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs."
40EH	1038	IA32_MC3_ADDR	Core	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The MSR_MC3_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the MSR_MC3_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
410H	1040	IA32_MC4_CTL	Core	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
411H	1041	IA32_MC4_STATUS	Core	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs."
412H	1042	IA32_MC4_ADDR	Core	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The MSR_MC4_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the MSR_MC4_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
414H	1044	IA32_MC5_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
415H	1045	IA32_MC5_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs."

Table 2-6. MSRs Common to the Silvermont Microarchitecture and Newer Microarchitectures for Intel Atom Processors

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
416H	1046	IA32_MC5_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The MSR_MC4_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the MSR_MC4_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
480H	1152	IA32_VMX_BASIC	Core	Reporting Register of Basic VMX Capabilities (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.1, "Basic VMX Information."
481H	1153	IA32_VMX_PINBASED_CTL	Core	Capability Reporting Register of Pin-Based VM-Execution Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.3, "VM-Execution Controls."
482H	1154	IA32_VMX_PROCBASED_CTL	Core	Capability Reporting Register of Primary Processor-Based VM-Execution Controls (R/O) See Appendix A.3, "VM-Execution Controls."
483H	1155	IA32_VMX_EXIT_CTL	Core	Capability Reporting Register of VM-Exit Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.4, "VM-Exit Controls."
484H	1156	IA32_VMX_ENTRY_CTL	Core	Capability Reporting Register of VM-Entry Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.5, "VM-Entry Controls."
485H	1157	IA32_VMX_MISC	Core	Reporting Register of Miscellaneous VMX Capabilities (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.6, "Miscellaneous Data."
486H	1158	IA32_VMX_CR0_FIXED0	Core	Capability Reporting Register of CR0 Bits Fixed to 0 (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.7, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CR0."
487H	1159	IA32_VMX_CR0_FIXED1	Core	Capability Reporting Register of CR0 Bits Fixed to 1 (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.7, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CR0."
488H	1160	IA32_VMX_CR4_FIXED0	Core	Capability Reporting Register of CR4 Bits Fixed to 0 (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.8, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CR4."

Table 2-6. MSRs Common to the Silvermont Microarchitecture and Newer Microarchitectures for Intel Atom Processors

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
489H	1161	IA32_VMX_CR4_FIXED1	Core	Capability Reporting Register of CR4 Bits Fixed to 1 (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.8, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CR4."
48AH	1162	IA32_VMX_VMCS_ENUM	Core	Capability Reporting Register of VMCS Field Enumeration (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.9, "VMCS Enumeration."
48BH	1163	IA32_VMX_PROCBASED_CTL2	Core	Capability Reporting Register of Secondary Processor-Based VM-Execution Controls (R/O) See Appendix A.3, "VM-Execution Controls."
48CH	1164	IA32_VMX_EPT_VPID_ENUM	Core	Capability Reporting Register of EPT and VPID (R/O) See Table 2-2
48DH	1165	IA32_VMX_TRUE_PINBASED_CTL2	Core	Capability Reporting Register of Pin-Based VM-Execution Flex Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2
48EH	1166	IA32_VMX_TRUE_PROCBASED_CTL2	Core	Capability Reporting Register of Primary Processor-based VM-Execution Flex Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2
48FH	1167	IA32_VMX_TRUE_EXIT_CTL2	Core	Capability Reporting Register of VM-Exit Flex Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2
490H	1168	IA32_VMX_TRUE_ENTRY_CTL2	Core	Capability Reporting Register of VM-Entry Flex Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2
491H	1169	IA32_VMX_FMFUNC	Core	Capability Reporting Register of VM-Function Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2
4C1H	1217	IA32_A_PMC0	Core	See Table 2-2.
4C2H	1218	IA32_A_PMC1	Core	See Table 2-2.
600H	1536	IA32_DS_AREA	Core	DS Save Area (R/W) See Table 2-2. See Section 18.6.3.4, "Debug Store (DS) Mechanism."
660H	1632	MSR_CORE_C1_RESIDENCY	Core	Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.
		63:0		CORE C1 Residency Counter. (R/O) Value since last reset that this core is in processor-specific C1 states. Counts at the TSC frequency.
6E0H	1760	IA32_TSC_DEADLINE	Core	TSC Target of Local APIC's TSC Deadline Mode (R/W) See Table 2-2.

Table 2-6. MSRs Common to the Silvermont Microarchitecture and Newer Microarchitectures for Intel Atom Processors

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
C000_0080H		IA32_EFER	Core	Extended Feature Enables See Table 2-2.
C000_0081H		IA32_STAR	Core	System Call Target Address (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0082H		IA32_LSTAR	Core	IA-32e Mode System Call Target Address (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0084H		IA32_FMASK	Core	System Call Flag Mask (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0100H		IA32_FS_BASE	Core	Map of BASE Address of FS (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0101H		IA32_GS_BASE	Core	Map of BASE Address of GS (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0102H		IA32_KERNEL_GS_BASE	Core	Swap Target of BASE Address of GS (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0103H		IA32_TSC_AUX	Core	AUXILIARY TSC Signature (R/W) See Table 2-2

Table 2-7 lists model-specific registers (MSRs) that are common to Intel[®] Atom[™] processors based on the Silvermont and Airmont microarchitectures but not newer microarchitectures.

Table 2-7. MSRs Common to the Silvermont and Airmont Microarchitectures

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
17H	23	MSR_PLATFORM_ID	Module	Model Specific Platform ID (R)
		7:0		Reserved
		13:8		Maximum Qualified Ratio (R) The maximum allowed bus ratio.
		49:13		Reserved
		52:50		See Table 2-2.
		63:33		Reserved
3AH	58	IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL	Core	Control Features in Intel 64Processor (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		0		Lock (R/WL)
		1		Reserved
		2		Enable VMX outside SMX operation (R/WL)

Table 2-7. MSRs Common to the Silvermont and Airmont Microarchitectures

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
40H	64	MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 0 From IP (R/W) One of eight pairs of last branch record registers on the last branch record stack. The From_IP part of the stack contains pointers to the source instruction. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Last Branch Record Stack TOS at 1C9H. ▪ Section 17.5 and record format in Section 17.4.8.1.
41H	65	MSR_LASTBRANCH_1_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 1 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
42H	66	MSR_LASTBRANCH_2_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 2 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
43H	67	MSR_LASTBRANCH_3_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 3 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
44H	68	MSR_LASTBRANCH_4_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 4 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
45H	69	MSR_LASTBRANCH_5_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 5 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
46H	70	MSR_LASTBRANCH_6_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 6 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
47H	71	MSR_LASTBRANCH_7_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 7 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
60H	96	MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 0 To IP (R/W) One of eight pairs of last branch record registers on the last branch record stack. The To_IP part of the stack contains pointers to the destination instruction.
61H	97	MSR_LASTBRANCH_1_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 1 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
62H	98	MSR_LASTBRANCH_2_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 2 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
63H	99	MSR_LASTBRANCH_3_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 3 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
64H	100	MSR_LASTBRANCH_4_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 4 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
65H	101	MSR_LASTBRANCH_5_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 5 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
66H	102	MSR_LASTBRANCH_6_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 6 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
67H	103	MSR_LASTBRANCH_7_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 7 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.

Table 2-7. MSRs Common to the Silvermont and Airmont Microarchitectures

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
E2H	226	MSR_PKG_CST_CONFIG_CONTROL	Module	C-State Configuration Control (R/W) Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States. See http://biosbits.org .
		2:0		Package C-State Limit (R/W) Specifies the lowest processor-specific C-state code name (consuming the least power) for the package. The default is set as factory-configured package C-state limit. The following C-state code name encodings are supported: 000b: C0 (no package C-state support) 001b: C1 (Behavior is the same as 000b) 100b: C4 110b: C6 111b: C7 (Silvermont only).
		9:3		Reserved
		10		I/O MWAIT Redirection Enable (R/W) When set, will map IO_read instructions sent to IO register specified by MSR_PMG_IO_CAPTURE_BASE to MWAIT instructions.
		14:11		Reserved
		15		CFG Lock (R/WO) When set, locks bits 15:0 of this register until next reset.
		63:16		Reserved
11EH	281	MSR_BBL_CR_CTL3	Module	Control Register 3 Used to configure the L2 Cache.
		0		L2 Hardware Enabled (RO) 1 = If the L2 is hardware-enabled. 0 = Indicates if the L2 is hardware-disabled.
		7:1		Reserved
		8		L2 Enabled (R/W) 1 = L2 cache has been initialized. 0 = Disabled (default). Until this bit is set the processor will not respond to the WBINVD instruction or the assertion of the FLUSH# input.
		22:9		Reserved
		23		L2 Not Present (RO) 0 = L2 Present. 1 = L2 Not Present.
63:24		Reserved		

Table 2-7. MSRs Common to the Silvermont and Airmont Microarchitectures

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
1A0H	416	IA32_MISC_ENABLE		Enable Misc. Processor Features (R/W) Allows a variety of processor functions to be enabled and disabled.
		0	Core	Fast-Strings Enable See Table 2-2.
		2:1		Reserved
		3	Module	Automatic Thermal Control Circuit Enable (R/W) See Table 2-2. Default value is 0.
		6:4		Reserved
		7	Core	Performance Monitoring Available (R) See Table 2-2.
		10:8		Reserved
		11	Core	Branch Trace Storage Unavailable (RO) See Table 2-2.
		12	Core	Processor Event Based Sampling Unavailable (RO) See Table 2-2.
		15:13		Reserved
		16	Module	Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology Enable (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		18	Core	ENABLE MONITOR FSM (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		21:19		Reserved
		22	Core	Limit CPUID Maxval (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		23	Module	xTPR Message Disable (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		33:24		Reserved
		34	Core	XD Bit Disable (R/W) See Table 2-2.
37:35		Reserved		

Table 2-7. MSRs Common to the Silvermont and Airmont Microarchitectures

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		38	Module	<p>Turbo Mode Disable (R/W)</p> <p>When set to 1 on processors that support Intel Turbo Boost Technology, the turbo mode feature is disabled and the IDA_Enable feature flag will be cleared (CPUID.06H: EAX[1]=0).</p> <p>When set to a 0 on processors that support IDA, CPUID.06H: EAX[1] reports the processor's support of turbo mode is enabled.</p> <p>Note: The power-on default value is used by BIOS to detect hardware support of turbo mode. If the power-on default value is 1, turbo mode is available in the processor. If the power-on default value is 0, turbo mode is not available.</p>
		63:39		Reserved
1C8H	456	MSR_LBR_SELECT	Core	Last Branch Record Filtering Select Register (R/W) See Section 17.9.2, "Filtering of Last Branch Records."
		0		CPL_EQ_0
		1		CPL_NEQ_0
		2		JCC
		3		NEAR_REL_CALL
		4		NEAR_IND_CALL
		5		NEAR_RET
		6		NEAR_IND_JMP
		7		NEAR_REL_JMP
		8		FAR_BRANCH
		63:9		Reserved
1C9H	457	MSR_LASTBRANCH_TOS	Core	Last Branch Record Stack TOS (R/W) Contains an index (bits 0-2) that points to the MSR containing the most recent branch record. See MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
38EH	910	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS	Core	See Table 2-2. See Section 18.6.2.2, "Global Counter Control Facilities."
390H	912	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL	Core	See Table 2-2. See Section 18.6.2.2, "Global Counter Control Facilities."
3F1H	1009	MSR_PEBS_ENABLE	Core	See Table 2-2. See Section 18.6.2.4, "Processor Event Based Sampling (PEBS)."
		0		Enable PEBS for precise event on IA32_PMC0 (R/W)
3FAH	1018	MSR_PKG_C6_RESIDENCY	Package	Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.
		63:0		Package C6 Residency Counter (R/O) Value since last reset that this package is in processor-specific C6 states. Counts at the TSC Frequency.

Table 2-7. MSRs Common to the Silvermont and Airmont Microarchitectures

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
664H	1636	MSR_MC6_RESIDENCY_COUNTER	Module	Module C6 Residency Counter (R/O) Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.
		63:0		Time that this module is in module-specific C6 states since last reset. Counts at 1 Mhz frequency.
CEH	206	MSR_PLATFORM_INFO	Package	Platform Information: Contains power management and other model specific features enumeration. See http://biosbits.org .
		7:0		Reserved
		15:8	Package	Maximum Non-Turbo Ratio (R/O) This is the ratio of the maximum frequency that does not require turbo. Frequency = ratio * Scalable Bus Frequency.
		63:16		Reserved

2.4.1 MSRs with Model-Specific Behavior in the Silvermont Microarchitecture

Table 2-8 lists model-specific registers (MSRs) that are specific to Intel® Atom™ processor E3000 Series (CPUID signature with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel of 06_37H) and Intel Atom processors (CPUID signatures with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel of 06_4AH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH).

Table 2-8. Specific MSRs Supported by Intel® Atom™ Processors with CPUID Signatures 06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
606H	1542	MSR_RAPL_POWER_UNIT	Package	Unit Multipliers used in RAPL Interfaces (R/O) See Section 14.9.1, "RAPL Interfaces."
		3:0		Power Units Power related information (in milliWatts) is based on the multiplier, 2^{PU} ; where PU is an unsigned integer represented by bits 3:0. Default value is 0101b, indicating power unit is in 32 milliWatts increment.
		7:4		Reserved
		12:8		Energy Status Units Energy related information (in microJoules) is based on the multiplier, 2^{ESU} ; where ESU is an unsigned integer represented by bits 12:8. Default value is 00101b, indicating energy unit is in 32 microJoules increment.
		15:13		Reserved

Table 2-8. Specific MSRs Supported by Intel® Atom™ Processors with CPUID Signatures 06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		19:16		Time Unit The value is 0000b, indicating time unit is in one second.
		63:20		Reserved
610H	1552	MSR_PKG_POWER_LIMIT	Package	PKG RAPL Power Limit Control (R/W)
		14:0		Package Power Limit #1 (R/W) See Section 14.9.3, "Package RAPL Domain." and MSR_RAPL_POWER_UNIT in Table 2-8.
		15		Enable Power Limit #1 (R/W) See Section 14.9.3, "Package RAPL Domain."
		16		Package Clamping Limitation #1 (R/W) See Section 14.9.3, "Package RAPL Domain."
		23:17		Time Window for Power Limit #1 (R/W) In unit of second. If 0 is specified in bits [23:17], defaults to 1 second window.
		63:24		Reserved
611H	1553	MSR_PKG_ENERGY_STATUS	Package	PKG Energy Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.3, "Package RAPL Domain." and MSR_RAPL_POWER_UNIT in Table 2-8.
639H	1593	MSR_PPO_ENERGY_STATUS	Package	PPO Energy Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.4, "PPO/PP1 RAPL Domains." and MSR_RAPL_POWER_UNIT in Table 2-8.
CDH	205	MSR_FSB_FREQ	Module	Scaleable Bus Speed(RO) This field indicates the intended scaleable bus clock speed for processors based on Silvermont microarchitecture.
		2:0		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ 100B: 080.0 MHz ▪ 000B: 083.3 MHz ▪ 001B: 100.0 MHz ▪ 010B: 133.3 MHz ▪ 011B: 116.7 MHz
		63:3		Reserved

Table 2-9 lists model-specific registers (MSRs) that are specific to Intel® Atom™ processor E3000 Series (CPUID signature with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel of 06_37H).

Table 2-9. Specific MSRs Supported by Intel® Atom™ Processor E3000 Series with CPUID Signature 06_37H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
668H	1640	MSR_CC6_DEMOTION_POLICY_CONFIG	Package	Core C6 Demotion Policy Config MSR
		63:0		Controls per-core C6 demotion policy. Writing a value of 0 disables core level HW demotion policy.

Table 2-9. Specific MSRs Supported by Intel® Atom™ Processor E3000 Series (Contd.)with CPUID Signature 06_37H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
669H	1641	MSR_MC6_DEMOTION_POLICY_CONFIG	Package	Module C6 Demotion Policy Config MSR
		63:0		Controls module (i.e., two cores sharing the second-level cache) C6 demotion policy. Writing a value of 0 disables module level HW demotion policy.
664H	1636	MSR_MC6_RESIDENCY_COUNTER	Module	Module C6 Residency Counter (R/O) Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.
		63:0		Time that this module is in module-specific C6 states since last reset. Counts at 1 Mhz frequency.

Table 2-10 lists model-specific registers (MSRs) that are specific to Intel® Atom™ processor C2000 Series (CPUID signature with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel of 06_4DH).

Table 2-10. Specific MSRs Supported by Intel® Atom™ Processor C2000 Series with CPUID Signature 06_4DH

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
1A4H	420	MSR_MISC_FEATURE_CONTROL		Miscellaneous Feature Control (R/W)
		0	Core	L2 Hardware Prefetcher Disable (R/W) If 1, disables the L2 hardware prefetcher, which fetches additional lines of code or data into the L2 cache.
		1		Reserved
		2	Core	DCU Hardware Prefetcher Disable (R/W) If 1, disables the L1 data cache prefetcher, which fetches the next cache line into L1 data cache.
		63:3		Reserved
1ADH	429	MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit of Turbo Mode (RW)
		7:0	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 1C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 1 core active.
		15:8	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 2C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 2 core active.
		23:16	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 3C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 3 core active.
		31:24	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 4C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 4 core active.
		39:32	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 5C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 5 core active.
		47:40	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 6C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 6 core active.

Table 2-10. Specific MSRs Supported by Intel® Atom™ Processor C2000 Series (Contd.)with CPUID Signature

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		55:48	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 7C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 7 core active.
		63:56	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 8C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 8 core active.
606H	1542	MSR_RAPL_POWER_UNIT	Package	Unit Multipliers used in RAPL Interfaces (R/O) See Section 14.9.1, "RAPL Interfaces."
		3:0		Power Units Power related information (in milliwatts) is based on the multiplier, 2^{PU} ; where PU is an unsigned integer represented by bits 3:0. Default value is 0101b, indicating power unit is in 32 milliwatts increment.
		7:4		Reserved
		12:8		Energy Status Units. Energy related information (in microjoules) is based on the multiplier, 2^{ESU} ; where ESU is an unsigned integer represented by bits 12:8. Default value is 00101b, indicating energy unit is in 32 microjoules increment.
		15:13		Reserved
		19:16		Time Unit The value is 0000b, indicating time unit is in one second.
		63:20		Reserved
610H	1552	MSR_PKG_POWER_LIMIT	Package	PKG RAPL Power Limit Control (R/W) See Section 14.9.3, "Package RAPL Domain."
66EH	1646	MSR_PKG_POWER_INFO	Package	PKG RAPL Parameter (R/O)
		14:0		Thermal Spec Power (R/O) The unsigned integer value is the equivalent of the thermal specification power of the package domain. The unit of this field is specified by the "Power Units" field of MSR_RAPL_POWER_UNIT.
		63:15		Reserved

2.4.2 MSRs In Intel Atom Processors Based on Airmont Microarchitecture

Intel Atom processor X7-Z8000 and X5-Z8000 series are based on the Airmont microarchitecture. These processors support MSRs listed in Table 2-6, Table 2-7, Table 2-8, and Table 2-11. These processors have a CPUID signature with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel including 06_4CH; see Table 2-1.

Table 2-11. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Airmont Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
CDH	205	MSR_FSB_FREQ	Module	Scaleable Bus Speed(RO) This field indicates the intended scaleable bus clock speed for processors based on Airmont microarchitecture.
		3:0		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ 0000B: 083.3 MHz ▪ 0001B: 100.0 MHz ▪ 0010B: 133.3 MHz ▪ 0011B: 116.7 MHz ▪ 0100B: 080.0 MHz ▪ 0101B: 093.3 MHz ▪ 0110B: 090.0 MHz ▪ 0111B: 088.9 MHz ▪ 1000B: 087.5 MHz
		63:5		Reserved
E2H	226	MSR_PKG_CST_CONFIG_CONTROL	Module	C-State Configuration Control (R/W) Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States. See http://biosbits.org .
		2:0		Package C-State Limit (R/W) Specifies the lowest processor-specific C-state code name (consuming the least power) for the package. The default is set as factory-configured package C-state limit. The following C-state code name encodings are supported: 000b: No limit 001b: C1 010b: C2 110b: C6 111b: C7
		9:3		Reserved
		10		I/O MWAIT Redirection Enable (R/W) When set, will map IO_read instructions sent to IO register specified by MSR_PMG_IO_CAPTURE_BASE to MWAIT instructions.
		14:11		Reserved
		15		CFG Lock (R/WO) When set, locks bits 15:0 of this register until next reset.
		63:16		Reserved
E4H	228	MSR_PMG_IO_CAPTURE_BASE	Module	Power Management IO Redirection in C-state (R/W) See http://biosbits.org .

Table 2-11. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Airmont Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		15:0		LVL_2 Base Address (R/W) Specifies the base address visible to software for IO redirection. If IO MWAIT Redirection is enabled, reads to this address will be consumed by the power management logic and decoded to MWAIT instructions. When IO port address redirection is enabled, this is the IO port address reported to the OS/software.
		18:16		C-state Range (R/W) Specifies the encoding value of the maximum C-State code name to be included when IO read to MWAIT redirection is enabled by MSR_PKG_CST_CONFIG_CONTROL[bit10]: 000b - C3 is the max C-State to include. 001b - Deep Power Down Technology is the max C-State. 010b - C7 is the max C-State to include.
		63:19		Reserved
638H	1592	MSR_PPO_POWER_LIMIT	Package	PPO RAPL Power Limit Control (R/W)
		14:0		PPO Power Limit #1 (R/W) See Section 14.9.4, "PPO/PP1 RAPL Domains" and MSR_RAPL_POWER_UNIT in Table 2-8.
		15		Enable Power Limit #1 (R/W) See Section 14.9.4, "PPO/PP1 RAPL Domains."
		16		Reserved
		23:17		Time Window for Power Limit #1 (R/W) Specifies the time duration over which the average power must remain below PPO_POWER_LIMIT #1(14:0). Supported Encodings: 0x0: 1 second time duration. 0x1: 5 second time duration (Default). 0x2: 10 second time duration. 0x3: 15 second time duration. 0x4: 20 second time duration. 0x5: 25 second time duration. 0x6: 30 second time duration. 0x7: 35 second time duration. 0x8: 40 second time duration. 0x9: 45 second time duration. 0xA: 50 second time duration. 0xB-0x7F - reserved.
		63:24		Reserved

2.5 MSRS IN INTEL ATOM PROCESSORS BASED ON GOLDMONT MICROARCHITECTURE

Intel Atom processors based on the Goldmont microarchitecture support MSRs listed in Table 2-6 and Table 2-12. These processors have a CPUID signature with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel of 06_5CH; see Table 2-1.

In the Goldmont microarchitecture, the scope column indicates the following: “Core” means each processor core has a separate MSR, or a bit field not shared with another processor core. “Module” means the MSR or the bit field is shared by a pair of processor cores in the physical package. “Package” means all processor cores in the physical package share the same MSR or bit interface.

Table 2-12. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Goldmont Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
17H	23	MSR_PLATFORM_ID	Module	Model Specific Platform ID (R)
		49:0		Reserved
		52:50		See Table 2-2.
		63:33		Reserved
3AH	58	IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL	Core	Control Features in Intel 64 Processor (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		0		Lock (R/WL)
		1		Enable VMX inside SMX operation (R/WL)
		2		Enable VMX outside SMX operation (R/WL)
		14:8		SENTER local functions enables (R/WL)
		15		SENTER global functions enable (R/WL)
		18		SGX global functions enable (R/WL)
		63:19		Reserved
3BH	59	IA32_TSC_ADJUST	Core	Per-Core TSC ADJUST (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C3H	195	IA32_PMC2	Core	Performance Counter Register See Table 2-2.
C4H	196	IA32_PMC3	Core	Performance Counter Register See Table 2-2.
CEH	206	MSR_PLATFORM_INFO	Package	Platform Information Contains power management and other model specific features enumeration. See http://biosbits.org .
		7:0		Reserved
		15:8	Package	Maximum Non-Turbo Ratio (R/O) This is the ratio of the maximum frequency that does not require turbo. Frequency = ratio * 100 MHz.
		27:16		Reserved

Table 2-12. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Goldmont Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		28	Package	Programmable Ratio Limit for Turbo Mode (R/O) When set to 1, indicates that Programmable Ratio Limit for Turbo mode is enabled. When set to 0, indicates Programmable Ratio Limit for Turbo mode is disabled.
		29	Package	Programmable TDP Limit for Turbo Mode (R/O) When set to 1, indicates that TDP Limit for Turbo mode is programmable. When set to 0, indicates TDP Limit for Turbo mode is not programmable.
		30	Package	Programmable TJ OFFSET (R/O) When set to 1, indicates that MSR_TEMPERATURE_TARGET.[27:24] is valid and writable to specify a temperature offset.
		39:31		Reserved
		47:40	Package	Maximum Efficiency Ratio (R/O) This is the minimum ratio (maximum efficiency) that the processor can operate, in units of 100MHz.
		63:48		Reserved
E2H	226	MSR_PKG_CST_CONFIG_CONTROL	Core	C-State Configuration Control (R/W) Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States. See http://biosbits.org .
		3:0		Package C-State Limit (R/W) Specifies the lowest processor-specific C-state code name (consuming the least power) for the package. The default is set as factory-configured package C-state limit. The following C-state code name encodings are supported: 0000b: No limit 0001b: C1 0010b: C3 0011b: C6 0100b: C7 0101b: C7S 0110b: C8 0111b: C9 1000b: C10
		9:3		Reserved
		10		I/O MWAIT Redirection Enable (R/W) When set, will map IO_read instructions sent to IO register specified by MSR_PMG_IO_CAPTURE_BASE to MWAIT instructions.

Table 2-12. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Goldmont Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		14:11		Reserved
		15		CFG Lock (R/WO) When set, locks bits 15:0 of this register until next reset.
		63:16		Reserved
17DH	381	MSR_SMM_MCA_CAP	Core	Enhanced SMM Capabilities (SMM-RO) Reports SMM capability enhancement. Accessible only while in SMM.
		57:0		Reserved
		58		SMM_Code_Access_Chk (SMM-RO) If set to 1 indicates that the SMM code access restriction is supported and the MSR_SMM_FEATURE_CONTROL is supported.
		59		Long_Flow_Indication (SMM-RO) If set to 1 indicates that the SMM long flow indicator is supported and the MSR_SMM_DELAYED is supported.
		63:60		Reserved
188H	392	IA32_PERFEVTSEL2	Core	See Table 2-2.
189H	393	IA32_PERFEVTSEL3	Core	See Table 2-2.
1A0H	416	IA32_MISC_ENABLE		Enable Misc. Processor Features (R/W) Allows a variety of processor functions to be enabled and disabled.
		0	Core	Fast-Strings Enable See Table 2-2.
		2:1		Reserved
		3	Package	Automatic Thermal Control Circuit Enable (R/W) See Table 2-2. Default value is 1.
		6:4		Reserved
		7	Core	Performance Monitoring Available (R) See Table 2-2.
		10:8		Reserved
		11	Core	Branch Trace Storage Unavailable (RO) See Table 2-2.
		12	Core	Processor Event Based Sampling Unavailable (RO) See Table 2-2.
		15:13		Reserved
		16	Package	Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology Enable (R/W) See Table 2-2.
18	Core	ENABLE MONITOR FSM (R/W) See Table 2-2.		

Table 2-12. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Goldmont Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		21:19		Reserved
		22	Core	Limit CPUID Maxval (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		23	Package	xTPR Message Disable (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		33:24		Reserved
		34	Core	XD Bit Disable (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		37:35		Reserved
		38	Package	Turbo Mode Disable (R/W) When set to 1 on processors that support Intel Turbo Boost Technology, the turbo mode feature is disabled and the IDA_Enable feature flag will be clear (CPUID.06H: EAX[1]=0). When set to a 0 on processors that support IDA, CPUID.06H: EAX[1] reports the processor's support of turbo mode is enabled. Note: The power-on default value is used by BIOS to detect hardware support of turbo mode. If the power-on default value is 1, turbo mode is available in the processor. If the power-on default value is 0, turbo mode is not available.
		63:39		Reserved
1A4H	420	MSR_MISC_FEATURE_CONTROL		Miscellaneous Feature Control (R/W)
		0	Core	L2 Hardware Prefetcher Disable (R/W) If 1, disables the L2 hardware prefetcher, which fetches additional lines of code or data into the L2 cache.
		1		Reserved
		2	Core	DCU Hardware Prefetcher Disable (R/W) If 1, disables the L1 data cache prefetcher, which fetches the next cache line into L1 data cache.
		63:3		Reserved
1AAH	426	MSR_MISC_PWR_MGMT	Package	Miscellaneous Power Management Control Various model specific features enumeration. See http://biosbits.org .
		0		EIST Hardware Coordination Disable (R/W) When 0, enables hardware coordination of Enhanced Intel Speedstep Technology request from processor cores. When 1, disables hardware coordination of Enhanced Intel Speedstep Technology requests.
		21:1		Reserved

Table 2-12. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Goldmont Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		22		Thermal Interrupt Coordination Enable (R/W) If set, then thermal interrupt on one core is routed to all cores.
		63:23		Reserved
1ADH	429	MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit of Turbo Mode by Core Groups (RW) Specifies Maximum Ratio Limit for each Core Group. Max ratio for groups with more cores must decrease monotonically. For groups with less than 4 cores, the max ratio must be 32 or less. For groups with 4-5 cores, the max ratio must be 22 or less. For groups with more than 5 cores, the max ratio must be 16 or less.
		7:0	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for Active Cores in Group 0 Maximum turbo ratio limit when the number of active cores is less than or equal to the Group 0 threshold.
		15:8	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for Active Cores in Group 1 Maximum turbo ratio limit when the number of active cores is less than or equal to the Group 1 threshold, and greater than the Group 0 threshold.
		23:16	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for Active Cores in Group 2 Maximum turbo ratio limit when the number of active cores is less than or equal to the Group 2 threshold, and greater than the Group 1 threshold.
		31:24	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for Active Cores in Group 3 Maximum turbo ratio limit when the number of active cores is less than or equal to the Group 3 threshold, and greater than the Group 2 threshold.
		39:32	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for Active Cores in Group 4 Maximum turbo ratio limit when the number of active cores is less than or equal to the Group 4 threshold, and greater than the Group 3 threshold.
		47:40	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for Active Cores in Group 5 Maximum turbo ratio limit when the number of active cores is less than or equal to the Group 5 threshold, and greater than the Group 4 threshold.
		55:48	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for Active Cores in Group 6 Maximum turbo ratio limit when the number of active cores is less than or equal to the Group 6 threshold, and greater than the Group 5 threshold.
		63:56	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for Active Cores in Group 7 Maximum turbo ratio limit when the number of active cores is less than or equal to the Group 7 threshold, and greater than the Group 6 threshold.

Table 2-12. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Goldmont Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
1AEH	430	MSR_TURBO_GROUP_CORECNT	Package	Group Size of Active Cores for Turbo Mode Operation (RW) Writes of 0 threshold is ignored.
		7:0	Package	Group 0 Core Count Threshold Maximum number of active cores to operate under the Group 0 Max Turbo Ratio limit.
		15:8	Package	Group 1 Core Count Threshold Maximum number of active cores to operate under the Group 1 Max Turbo Ratio limit. Must be greater than the Group 0 Core Count.
		23:16	Package	Group 2 Core Count Threshold Maximum number of active cores to operate under the Group 2 Max Turbo Ratio limit. Must be greater than the Group 1 Core Count.
		31:24	Package	Group 3 Core Count Threshold Maximum number of active cores to operate under the Group 3 Max Turbo Ratio limit. Must be greater than the Group 2 Core Count.
		39:32	Package	Group 4 Core Count Threshold Maximum number of active cores to operate under the Group 4 Max Turbo Ratio limit. Must be greater than the Group 3 Core Count.
		47:40	Package	Group 5 Core Count Threshold Maximum number of active cores to operate under the Group 5 Max Turbo Ratio limit. Must be greater than the Group 4 Core Count.
		55:48	Package	Group 6 Core Count Threshold Maximum number of active cores to operate under the Group 6 Max Turbo Ratio limit. Must be greater than the Group 5 Core Count.
		63:56	Package	Group 7 Core Count Threshold Maximum number of active cores to operate under the Group 7 Max Turbo Ratio limit. Must be greater than the Group 6 Core Count, and not less than the total number of processor cores in the package. E.g., specify 255.
1C8H	456	MSR_LBR_SELECT	Core	Last Branch Record Filtering Select Register (R/W) See Section 17.9.2, "Filtering of Last Branch Records."
		0		CPL_EQ_0
		1		CPL_NEQ_0
		2		JCC
		3		NEAR_REL_CALL
		4		NEAR_IND_CALL
		5		NEAR_RET

Table 2-12. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Goldmont Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		6		NEAR_IND_JMP
		7		NEAR_REL_JMP
		8		FAR_BRANCH
		9		EN_CALL_STACK
		63:10		Reserved
1C9H	457	MSR_LASTBRANCH_TOS	Core	Last Branch Record Stack TOS (R/W) Contains an index (bits 0-4) that points to the MSR containing the most recent branch record. See MSR_LASTBRANCH_O_FROM_IP.
1FCH	508	MSR_POWER_CTL	Core	Power Control Register. See http://biosbits.org .
		0		Reserved
		1	Package	C1E Enable (R/W) When set to '1', will enable the CPU to switch to the Minimum Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology operating point when all execution cores enter MWAIT (C1).
		63:2		Reserved
210H	528	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE8	Core	See Table 2-2.
211H	529	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK8	Core	See Table 2-2.
212H	530	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE9	Core	See Table 2-2.
213H	531	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK9	Core	See Table 2-2.
280H	640	IA32_MC0_CTL2	Module	See Table 2-2.
281H	641	IA32_MC1_CTL2	Module	See Table 2-2.
282H	642	IA32_MC2_CTL2	Core	See Table 2-2.
283H	643	IA32_MC3_CTL2	Module	See Table 2-2.
284H	644	IA32_MC4_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
285H	645	IA32_MC5_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
286H	646	IA32_MC6_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
300H	768	MSR_SGXOWNEREPOCH0	Package	Lower 64 Bit CR_SGXOWNEREPOCH (w) Writes do not update CR_SGXOWNEREPOCH if CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=0):EAX.SGX1 is 1 on any thread in the package.
		63:0		Lower 64 bits of an 128-bit external entropy value for key derivation of an enclave.
301H	769	MSR_SGXOWNEREPOCH1	Package	Upper 64 Bit CR_SGXOWNEREPOCH (w) Writes do not update CR_SGXOWNEREPOCH if CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=0):EAX.SGX1 is 1 on any thread in the package.
		63:0		Upper 64 bits of an 128-bit external entropy value for key derivation of an enclave.

Table 2-12. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Goldmont Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
38EH	910	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS	Core	See Table 2-2. See Section 18.2.4, "Architectural Performance Monitoring Version 4."
		0		Ovf_PMC0
		1		Ovf_PMC1
		2		Ovf_PMC2
		3		Ovf_PMC3
		31:4		Reserved
		32		Ovf_FixedCtr0
		33		Ovf_FixedCtr1
		34		Ovf_FixedCtr2
		54:35		Reserved
		55		Trace_ToPA_PMI
		57:56		Reserved
		58		LBR_Frz.
		59		CTR_Frz.
		60		ASCI
		61		Ovf_Uncore
		62		Ovf_BufDSSAVE
63		CondChgd		
390H	912	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS_RESET	Core	See Table 2-2. See Section 18.2.4, "Architectural Performance Monitoring Version 4."
		0		Set 1 to clear Ovf_PMC0.
		1		Set 1 to clear Ovf_PMC1.
		2		Set 1 to clear Ovf_PMC2.
		3		Set 1 to clear Ovf_PMC3.
		31:4		Reserved
		32		Set 1 to clear Ovf_FixedCtr0.
		33		Set 1 to clear Ovf_FixedCtr1.
		34		Set 1 to clear Ovf_FixedCtr2.
		54:35		Reserved
		55		Set 1 to clear Trace_ToPA_PMI.
		57:56		Reserved
		58		Set 1 to clear LBR_Frz.
		59		Set 1 to clear CTR_Frz.
		60		Set 1 to clear ASCI.
61		Set 1 to clear Ovf_Uncore.		
62		Set 1 to clear Ovf_BufDSSAVE.		

Table 2-12. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Goldmont Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		63		Set 1 to clear CondChgd.
391H	913	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS_SET	Core	See Table 2-2. See Section 18.2.4, "Architectural Performance Monitoring Version 4."
		0		Set 1 to cause Ovf_PMC0 = 1.
		1		Set 1 to cause Ovf_PMC1 = 1.
		2		Set 1 to cause Ovf_PMC2 = 1.
		3		Set 1 to cause Ovf_PMC3 = 1.
		31:4		Reserved
		32		Set 1 to cause Ovf_FixedCtr0 = 1.
		33		Set 1 to cause Ovf_FixedCtr1 = 1.
		34		Set 1 to cause Ovf_FixedCtr2 = 1.
		54:35		Reserved
		55		Set 1 to cause Trace_ToPA_PMI = 1.
		57:56		Reserved
		58		Set 1 to cause LBR_Frz = 1.
		59		Set 1 to cause CTR_Frz = 1.
		60		Set 1 to cause ASCI = 1.
		61		Set 1 to cause Ovf_Uncore.
62		Set 1 to cause Ovf_BufDSSAVE.		
63		Reserved		
392H	914	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_INUSE		See Table 2-2.
3F1H	1009	MSR_PEBS_ENABLE	Core	See Table 2-2. See Section 18.6.2.4, "Processor Event Based Sampling (PEBS)."
		0		Enable PEBS trigger and recording for the programmed event (precise or otherwise) on IA32_PMC0. (R/W)
3F8H	1016	MSR_PKG_C3_RESIDENCY	Package	Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.
		63:0		Package C3 Residency Counter (R/O) Value since last reset that this package is in processor-specific C3 states. Count at the same frequency as the TSC.
3F9H	1017	MSR_PKG_C6_RESIDENCY	Package	Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.
		63:0		Package C6 Residency Counter (R/O) Value since last reset that this package is in processor-specific C6 states. Count at the same frequency as the TSC.

Table 2-12. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Goldmont Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
3FCH	1020	MSR_CORE_C3_RESIDENCY	Core	Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.
		63:0		CORE C3 Residency Counter (R/O) Value since last reset that this core is in processor-specific C3 states. Count at the same frequency as the TSC.
406H	1030	IA32_MC1_ADDR	Module	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The IA32_MC2_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the IA32_MC2_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
418H	1048	IA32_MC6_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
419H	1049	IA32_MC6_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS" and Chapter 16.
41AH	1050	IA32_MC6_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
4C3H	1219	IA32_A_PMC2	Core	See Table 2-2.
4C4H	1220	IA32_A_PMC3	Core	See Table 2-2.
4E0H	1248	MSR_SMM_FEATURE_CONTROL	Package	Enhanced SMM Feature Control (SMM-RW) Reports SMM capability Enhancement. Accessible only while in SMM.
		0		Lock (SMM-RW0) When set to '1' locks this register from further changes.
		1		Reserved
		2		SMM_Code_Chk_En (SMM-RW) This control bit is available only if MSR_SMM_MCA_CAP[58] == 1. When set to '0' (default) none of the logical processors are prevented from executing SMM code outside the ranges defined by the SMRR. When set to '1' any logical processor in the package that attempts to execute SMM code not within the ranges defined by the SMRR will assert an unrecoverable MCE.
		63:3		Reserved
4E2H	1250	MSR_SMM_DELAYED	Package	SMM Delayed (SMM-RO) Reports the interruptible state of all logical processors in the package. Available only while in SMM and MSR_SMM_MCA_CAP[LONG_FLOW_INDICATION] == 1.

Table 2-12. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Goldmont Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		N-1:0		LOG_PROC_STATE (SMM-RO) Each bit represents a processor core of its state in a long flow of internal operation which delays servicing an interrupt. The corresponding bit will be set at the start of long events such as: Microcode Update Load, C6, WBINVD, Ratio Change, Throttle. The bit is automatically cleared at the end of each long event. The reset value of this field is 0. Only bit positions below N = CPUID.(EAX=0BH, ECX=PKG_LVL):EBX[15:0] can be updated.
		63:N		Reserved
4E3H	1251	MSR_SMM_BLOCKED	Package	SMM Blocked (SMM-RO) Reports the blocked state of all logical processors in the package. Available only while in SMM.
		N-1:0		LOG_PROC_STATE (SMM-RO) Each bit represents a processor core of its blocked state to service an SMI. The corresponding bit will be set if the logical processor is in one of the following states: Wait For SIPI or SENTER Sleep. The reset value of this field is OFFFH. Only bit positions below N = CPUID.(EAX=0BH, ECX=PKG_LVL):EBX[15:0] can be updated.
		63:N		Reserved
500H	1280	IA32_SGX_SVN_STATUS	Core	Status and SVN Threshold of SGX Support for ACM (RO)
		0		Lock See Section 41.1.1.3, "Interactions with Authenticated Code Modules (ACMs)".
		15:1		Reserved
		23:16		SGX_SVN_SINIT See Section 41.1.1.3, "Interactions with Authenticated Code Modules (ACMs)".
		63:24		Reserved
560H	1376	IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_BASE	Core	Trace Output Base Register (R/W) See Table 2-2.
561H	1377	IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS	Core	Trace Output Mask Pointers Register (R/W) See Table 2-2.
570H	1392	IA32_RTIT_CTL	Core	Trace Control Register (R/W)
		0		TraceEn
		1		CYCEn
		2		OS
		3		User
		6:4		Reserved, must be zero.

Table 2-12. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Goldmont Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		7		CR3 filter
		8		ToPA Writing 0 will #GP if also setting TraceEn.
		9		MTCEn
		10		TSCEn
		11		DisRETC
		12		Reserved, must be zero.
		13		BranchEn
		17:14		MTCFreq
		18		Reserved, must be zero.
		22:19		CYCThresh
		23		Reserved, must be zero.
		27:24		PSBFreq
		31:28		Reserved, must be zero.
		35:32		ADDRO_CFG
		39:36		ADDR1_CFG
		63:40		Reserved, must be zero.
571H	1393	IA32_RTIT_STATUS	Core	Tracing Status Register (R/W)
		0		FilterEn Writes ignored.
		1		ContexEn Writes ignored.
		2		TriggerEn Writes ignored.
		3		Reserved
		4		Error (R/W)
		5		Stopped
		31:6		Reserved, must be zero.
		48:32		PacketByteCnt
		63:49		Reserved, must be zero.
572H	1394	IA32_RTIT_CR3_MATCH	Core	Trace Filter CR3 Match Register (R/W)
		4:0		Reserved
		63:5		CR3[63:5] value to match.
580H	1408	IA32_RTIT_ADDRO_A	Core	Region 0 Start Address (R/W)
		63:0		See Table 2-2.
581H	1409	IA32_RTIT_ADDRO_B	Core	Region 0 End Address (R/W)
		63:0		See Table 2-2.

Table 2-12. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Goldmont Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
582H	1410	IA32_RTIT_ADDR1_A	Core	Region 1 Start Address (R/W)
		63:0		See Table 2-2.
583H	1411	IA32_RTIT_ADDR1_B	Core	Region 1 End Address (R/W)
		63:0		See Table 2-2.
606H	1542	MSR_RAPL_POWER_UNIT	Package	Unit Multipliers used in RAPL Interfaces (R/O) See Section 14.9.1, "RAPL Interfaces."
		3:0		Power Units Power related information (in Watts) is in unit of $1W/2^{PU}$; where PU is an unsigned integer represented by bits 3:0. Default value is 1000b, indicating power unit is in 3.9 milliWatts increment.
		7:4		Reserved
		12:8		Energy Status Units Energy related information (in Joules) is in unit of $1Joule/2^{ESU}$; where ESU is an unsigned integer represented by bits 12:8. Default value is 01110b, indicating energy unit is in 61 microJoules.
		15:13		Reserved
		19:16		Time Unit Time related information (in seconds) is in unit of $1S/2^{TU}$; where TU is an unsigned integer represented by bits 19:16. Default value is 1010b, indicating power unit is in 0.977 millisecond.
		63:20		Reserved
60AH	1546	MSR_PKGC3_IRTL	Package	Package C3 Interrupt Response Limit (R/W) Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.
		9:0		Interrupt Response Time Limit (R/W) Specifies the limit that should be used to decide if the package should be put into a package C3 state.
		12:10		Time Unit (R/W) Specifies the encoding value of time unit of the interrupt response time limit. See Table 2-19 for supported time unit encodings.
		14:13		Reserved
		15		Valid (R/W) Indicates whether the values in bits 12:0 are valid and can be used by the processor for package C-sate management.
		63:16		Reserved

Table 2-12. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Goldmont Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
60BH	1547	MSR_PKG_C2_IRTL1	Package	Package C6/C7S Interrupt Response Limit 1 (R/W) This MSR defines the interrupt response time limit used by the processor to manage a transition to a package C6 or C7S state. Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-states.
		9:0		Interrupt Response Time Limit (R/W) Specifies the limit that should be used to decide if the package should be put into a package C6 or C7S state.
		12:10		Time Unit (R/W) Specifies the encoding value of time unit of the interrupt response time limit. See Table 2-19 for supported time unit encodings.
		14:13		Reserved
		15		Valid (R/W) Indicates whether the values in bits 12:0 are valid and can be used by the processor for package C-state management.
		63:16		Reserved
60CH	1548	MSR_PKG_C2_IRTL2	Package	Package C7 Interrupt Response Limit 2 (R/W) This MSR defines the interrupt response time limit used by the processor to manage a transition to a package C7 state. Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.
		9:0		Interrupt Response Time Limit (R/W) Specifies the limit that should be used to decide if the package should be put into a package C7 state.
		12:10		Time Unit (R/W) Specifies the encoding value of time unit of the interrupt response time limit. See Table 2-19 for supported time unit encodings.
		14:13		Reserved
		15		Valid (R/W) Indicates whether the values in bits 12:0 are valid and can be used by the processor for package C-state management.
		63:16		Reserved
60DH	1549	MSR_PKG_C2_RESIDENCY	Package	Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-states.

Table 2-12. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Goldmont Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		63:0		Package C2 Residency Counter (R/O) Value since last reset that this package is in processor-specific C2 states. Count at the same frequency as the TSC.
610H	1552	MSR_PKG_POWER_LIMIT	Package	PKG RAPL Power Limit Control (R/W) See Section 14.9.3, "Package RAPL Domain."
611H	1553	MSR_PKG_ENERGY_STATUS	Package	PKG Energy Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.3, "Package RAPL Domain."
613H	1555	MSR_PKG_PERF_STATUS	Package	PKG Perf Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.3, "Package RAPL Domain."
614H	1556	MSR_PKG_POWER_INFO	Package	PKG RAPL Parameters (R/W)
		14:0		Thermal Spec Power (R/W) See Section 14.9.3, "Package RAPL Domain."
		15		Reserved
		30:16		Minimum Power (R/W) See Section 14.9.3, "Package RAPL Domain."
		31		Reserved
		46:32		Maximum Power (R/W) See Section 14.9.3, "Package RAPL Domain."
		47		Reserved
		54:48		Maximum Time Window (R/W) Specified by $2^Y * (1.0 + Z/4.0) * \text{Time_Unit}$, where "Y" is the unsigned integer value represented by bits 52:48, "Z" is an unsigned integer represented by bits 54:53. "Time_Unit" is specified by the "Time Units" field of MSR_RAPL_POWER_UNIT.
63:55		Reserved		
618H	1560	MSR_DRAM_POWER_LIMIT	Package	DRAM RAPL Power Limit Control (R/W) See Section 14.9.5, "DRAM RAPL Domain."
619H	1561	MSR_DRAM_ENERGY_STATUS	Package	DRAM Energy Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.5, "DRAM RAPL Domain."
61BH	1563	MSR_DRAM_PERF_STATUS	Package	DRAM Performance Throttling Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.5, "DRAM RAPL Domain."
61CH	1564	MSR_DRAM_POWER_INFO	Package	DRAM RAPL Parameters (R/W) See Section 14.9.5, "DRAM RAPL Domain."
632H	1586	MSR_PKG_C10_RESIDENCY	Package	Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-states.
		63:0		Package C10 Residency Counter (R/O) Value since last reset that the entire SOC is in an S0i3 state. Count at the same frequency as the TSC.

Table 2-12. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Goldmont Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
639H	1593	MSR_PP0_ENERGY_STATUS	Package	PP0 Energy Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.4, "PP0/PP1 RAPL Domains."
641H	1601	MSR_PP1_ENERGY_STATUS	Package	PP1 Energy Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.4, "PP0/PP1 RAPL Domains."
64CH	1612	MSR_TURBO_ACTIVATION_RATIO	Package	ConfigTDP Control (R/W)
		7:0		MAX_NON_TURBO_RATIO (R/W/L) System BIOS can program this field.
		30:8		Reserved
		31		TURBO_ACTIVATION_RATIO_Lock (R/W/L) When this bit is set, the content of this register is locked until a reset.
		63:32		Reserved
64FH	1615	MSR_CORE_PERF_LIMIT_REASONS	Package	Indicator of Frequency Clipping in Processor Cores (R/W) (Frequency refers to processor core frequency.)
		0		PROCHOT Status (R0) When set, processor core frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to assertion of external PROCHOT.
		1		Thermal Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to a thermal event.
		2		Package-Level Power Limiting PL1 Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to package-level power limiting PL1.
		3		Package-Level PL2 Power Limiting Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to package-level power limiting PL2.
		8:4		Reserved
		9		Core Power Limiting Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to domain-level power limiting.
		10		VR Therm Alert Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to a thermal alert from the Voltage Regulator.
11		Max Turbo Limit Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to multi-core turbo limits.		

Table 2-12. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Goldmont Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		12		Electrical Design Point Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to electrical design point constraints (e.g., maximum electrical current consumption).
		13		Turbo Transition Attenuation Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to Turbo transition attenuation. This prevents performance degradation due to frequent operating ratio changes.
		14		Maximum Efficiency Frequency Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the maximum efficiency frequency.
		15		Reserved
		16		PROCHOT Log When set, indicates that the PROCHOT Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		17		Thermal Log When set, indicates that the Thermal Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		18		Package-Level PL1 Power Limiting Log When set, indicates that the Package Level PL1 Power Limiting Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		19		Package-Level PL2 Power Limiting Log When set, indicates that the Package Level PL2 Power Limiting Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		24:20		Reserved
		25		Core Power Limiting Log When set, indicates that the Core Power Limiting Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.

Table 2-12. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Goldmont Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		26		VR Therm Alert Log When set, indicates that the VR Therm Alert Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		27		Max Turbo Limit Log When set, indicates that the Max Turbo Limit Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		28		Electrical Design Point Log When set, indicates that the EDP Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		29		Turbo Transition Attenuation Log When set, indicates that the Turbo Transition Attenuation Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		30		Maximum Efficiency Frequency Log When set, indicates that the Maximum Efficiency Frequency Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		63:31		Reserved
680H	1664	MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 0 From IP (R/W) One of 32 pairs of last branch record registers on the last branch record stack. The From_IP part of the stack contains pointers to the source instruction . See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Last Branch Record Stack TOS at 1C9H. ▪ Section 17.6 and record format in Section 17.4.8.1.
		0:47		From Linear Address (R/W)
		62:48		Signed extension of bits 47:0.
		63		Mispred
681H	1665	MSR_LASTBRANCH_1_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 1 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
682H	1666	MSR_LASTBRANCH_2_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 2 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
683H	1667	MSR_LASTBRANCH_3_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 3 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.

Table 2-12. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Goldmont Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
684H	1668	MSR_LASTBRANCH_4_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 4 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
685H	1669	MSR_LASTBRANCH_5_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 5 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
686H	1670	MSR_LASTBRANCH_6_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 6 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
687H	1671	MSR_LASTBRANCH_7_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 7 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
688H	1672	MSR_LASTBRANCH_8_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 8 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
689H	1673	MSR_LASTBRANCH_9_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 9 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
68AH	1674	MSR_LASTBRANCH_10_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 10 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
68BH	1675	MSR_LASTBRANCH_11_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 11 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
68CH	1676	MSR_LASTBRANCH_12_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 12 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
68DH	1677	MSR_LASTBRANCH_13_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 13 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
68EH	1678	MSR_LASTBRANCH_14_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 14 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
68FH	1679	MSR_LASTBRANCH_15_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 15 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
690H	1680	MSR_LASTBRANCH_16_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 16 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
691H	1681	MSR_LASTBRANCH_17_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 17 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
692H	1682	MSR_LASTBRANCH_18_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 18 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
693H	1683	MSR_LASTBRANCH_19_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 19 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
694H	1684	MSR_LASTBRANCH_20_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 20 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
695H	1685	MSR_LASTBRANCH_21_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 21 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
696H	1686	MSR_LASTBRANCH_22_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 22 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.

Table 2-12. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Goldmont Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
697H	1687	MSR_LASTBRANCH_23_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 23 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
698H	1688	MSR_LASTBRANCH_24_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 24 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
699H	1689	MSR_LASTBRANCH_25_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 25 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
69AH	1690	MSR_LASTBRANCH_26_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 26 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
69BH	1691	MSR_LASTBRANCH_27_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 27 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
69CH	1692	MSR_LASTBRANCH_28_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 28 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
69DH	1693	MSR_LASTBRANCH_29_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 29 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
69EH	1694	MSR_LASTBRANCH_30_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 30 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
69FH	1695	MSR_LASTBRANCH_31_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 31 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
6C0H	1728	MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 0 To IP (R/W) One of 32 pairs of last branch record registers on the last branch record stack. The To_IP part of the stack contains pointers to the Destination instruction and elapsed cycles from last LBR update. See Section 17.6.
		0:47		Target Linear Address (R/W)
		63:48		Elapsed cycles from last update to the LBR.
6C1H	1729	MSR_LASTBRANCH_1_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 1 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6C2H	1730	MSR_LASTBRANCH_2_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 2 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6C3H	1731	MSR_LASTBRANCH_3_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 3 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6C4H	1732	MSR_LASTBRANCH_4_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 4 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6C5H	1733	MSR_LASTBRANCH_5_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 5 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6C6H	1734	MSR_LASTBRANCH_6_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 6 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6C7H	1735	MSR_LASTBRANCH_7_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 7 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.

Table 2-12. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Goldmont Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
6C8H	1736	MSR_LASTBRANCH_8_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 8 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6C9H	1737	MSR_LASTBRANCH_9_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 9 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6CAH	1738	MSR_LASTBRANCH_10_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 10 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6CBH	1739	MSR_LASTBRANCH_11_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 11 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6CCH	1740	MSR_LASTBRANCH_12_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 12 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6CDH	1741	MSR_LASTBRANCH_13_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 13 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6CEH	1742	MSR_LASTBRANCH_14_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 14 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6CFH	1743	MSR_LASTBRANCH_15_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 15 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6DOH	1744	MSR_LASTBRANCH_16_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 16 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6D1H	1745	MSR_LASTBRANCH_17_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 17 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6D2H	1746	MSR_LASTBRANCH_18_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 18 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6D3H	1747	MSR_LASTBRANCH_19_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 19 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6D4H	1748	MSR_LASTBRANCH_20_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 20 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6D5H	1749	MSR_LASTBRANCH_21_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 21 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6D6H	1750	MSR_LASTBRANCH_22_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 22 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6D7H	1751	MSR_LASTBRANCH_23_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 23 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6D8H	1752	MSR_LASTBRANCH_24_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 24 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6D9H	1753	MSR_LASTBRANCH_25_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 25 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6DAH	1754	MSR_LASTBRANCH_26_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 26 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.

Table 2-12. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Goldmont Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
6DBH	1755	MSR_LASTBRANCH_27_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 27 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6DCH	1756	MSR_LASTBRANCH_28_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 28 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6DDH	1757	MSR_LASTBRANCH_29_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 29 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6DEH	1758	MSR_LASTBRANCH_30_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 30 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6DFH	1759	MSR_LASTBRANCH_31_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 31 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
802H	2050	IA32_X2APIC_APICID	Core	x2APIC ID register (R/O)
803H	2051	IA32_X2APIC_VERSION	Core	x2APIC Version register (R/O)
808H	2056	IA32_X2APIC_TPR	Core	x2APIC Task Priority register (R/W)
80AH	2058	IA32_X2APIC_PPR	Core	x2APIC Processor Priority register (R/O)
80BH	2059	IA32_X2APIC_EOI	Core	x2APIC EOI register (W/O)
80DH	2061	IA32_X2APIC_LDR	Core	x2APIC Logical Destination register (R/O)
80FH	2063	IA32_X2APIC_SIVR	Core	x2APIC Spurious Interrupt Vector register (R/W)
810H	2064	IA32_X2APIC_ISR0	Core	x2APIC In-Service register bits [31:0] (R/O)
811H	2065	IA32_X2APIC_ISR1	Core	x2APIC In-Service register bits [63:32] (R/O)
812H	2066	IA32_X2APIC_ISR2	Core	x2APIC In-Service register bits [95:64] (R/O)
813H	2067	IA32_X2APIC_ISR3	Core	x2APIC In-Service register bits [127:96] (R/O)
814H	2068	IA32_X2APIC_ISR4	Core	x2APIC In-Service register bits [159:128] (R/O)
815H	2069	IA32_X2APIC_ISR5	Core	x2APIC In-Service register bits [191:160] (R/O)
816H	2070	IA32_X2APIC_ISR6	Core	x2APIC In-Service register bits [223:192] (R/O)
817H	2071	IA32_X2APIC_ISR7	Core	x2APIC In-Service register bits [255:224] (R/O)
818H	2072	IA32_X2APIC_TMR0	Core	x2APIC Trigger Mode register bits [31:0] (R/O)
819H	2073	IA32_X2APIC_TMR1	Core	x2APIC Trigger Mode register bits [63:32] (R/O)
81AH	2074	IA32_X2APIC_TMR2	Core	x2APIC Trigger Mode register bits [95:64] (R/O)
81BH	2075	IA32_X2APIC_TMR3	Core	x2APIC Trigger Mode register bits [127:96] (R/O)
81CH	2076	IA32_X2APIC_TMR4	Core	x2APIC Trigger Mode register bits [159:128] (R/O)
81DH	2077	IA32_X2APIC_TMR5	Core	x2APIC Trigger Mode register bits [191:160] (R/O)
81EH	2078	IA32_X2APIC_TMR6	Core	x2APIC Trigger Mode register bits [223:192] (R/O)
81FH	2079	IA32_X2APIC_TMR7	Core	x2APIC Trigger Mode register bits [255:224] (R/O)
820H	2080	IA32_X2APIC_IRR0	Core	x2APIC Interrupt Request register bits [31:0] (R/O)
821H	2081	IA32_X2APIC_IRR1	Core	x2APIC Interrupt Request register bits [63:32] (R/O)
822H	2082	IA32_X2APIC_IRR2	Core	x2APIC Interrupt Request register bits [95:64] (R/O)
823H	2083	IA32_X2APIC_IRR3	Core	x2APIC Interrupt Request register bits [127:96] (R/O)

Table 2-12. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Goldmont Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
824H	2084	IA32_X2APIC_IRR4	Core	x2APIC Interrupt Request register bits [159:128] (R/O)
825H	2085	IA32_X2APIC_IRR5	Core	x2APIC Interrupt Request register bits [191:160] (R/O)
826H	2086	IA32_X2APIC_IRR6	Core	x2APIC Interrupt Request register bits [223:192] (R/O)
827H	2087	IA32_X2APIC_IRR7	Core	x2APIC Interrupt Request register bits [255:224] (R/O)
828H	2088	IA32_X2APIC_ESR	Core	x2APIC Error Status register (R/W)
82FH	2095	IA32_X2APIC_LVT_CMCI	Core	x2APIC LVT Corrected Machine Check Interrupt register (R/W)
830H	2096	IA32_X2APIC_ICR	Core	x2APIC Interrupt Command register (R/W)
832H	2098	IA32_X2APIC_LVT_TIMER	Core	x2APIC LVT Timer Interrupt register (R/W)
833H	2099	IA32_X2APIC_LVT_THERMAL	Core	x2APIC LVT Thermal Sensor Interrupt register (R/W)
834H	2100	IA32_X2APIC_LVT_PMI	Core	x2APIC LVT Performance Monitor register (R/W)
835H	2101	IA32_X2APIC_LVT_LINT0	Core	x2APIC LVT LINT0 register (R/W)
836H	2102	IA32_X2APIC_LVT_LINT1	Core	x2APIC LVT LINT1 register (R/W)
837H	2103	IA32_X2APIC_LVT_ERROR	Core	x2APIC LVT Error register (R/W)
838H	2104	IA32_X2APIC_INIT_COUNT	Core	x2APIC Initial Count register (R/W)
839H	2105	IA32_X2APIC_CUR_COUNT	Core	x2APIC Current Count register (R/O)
83EH	2110	IA32_X2APIC_DIV_CONF	Core	x2APIC Divide Configuration register (R/W)
83FH	2111	IA32_X2APIC_SELF_IPI	Core	x2APIC Self IPI register (W/O)
C8FH	3215	IA32_PQR_ASSOC	Core	Resource Association Register (R/W)
		31:0		Reserved
		33:32		COS (R/W)
		63: 34		Reserved
D10H	3344	IA32_L2_QOS_MASK_0	Module	L2 Class Of Service Mask - COS 0 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1):EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=0.
		0:7		CBM: Bit vector of available L2 ways for COS 0 enforcement.
		63:8		Reserved
D11H	3345	IA32_L2_QOS_MASK_1	Module	L2 Class Of Service Mask - COS 1 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1):EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=1.
		0:7		CBM: Bit vector of available L2 ways for COS 0 enforcement.
		63:8		Reserved
D12H	3346	IA32_L2_QOS_MASK_2	Module	L2 Class Of Service Mask - COS 2 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1):EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=2.
		0:7		CBM: Bit vector of available L2 ways for COS 0 enforcement.

Table 2-12. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Goldmont Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		63:8		Reserved
D13H	3347	IA32_L2_QOS_MASK_3	Package	L2 Class Of Service Mask - COS 3 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1):EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=3.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L2 ways for COS 3 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved
D90H	3472	IA32_BNDCFGS	Core	See Table 2-2.
DA0H	3488	IA32_XSS	Core	See Table 2-2.

See Table 2-6, and Table 2-12 for MSR definitions applicable to processors with CPUID signature 06_5CH.

2.6 MSRS IN INTEL ATOM PROCESSORS BASED ON GOLDMONT PLUS MICROARCHITECTURE

Intel Atom processors based on the Goldmont Plus microarchitecture support MSRs listed in Table 2-6, Table 2-12 and Table 2-13. These processors have a CPUID signature with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel of 06_7AH; see Table 2-1. For an MSR listed in Table 2-13 that also appears in the model-specific tables of prior generations, Table 2-13 supercede prior generation tables.

In the Goldmont Plus microarchitecture, the scope column indicates the following: “Core” means each processor core has a separate MSR, or a bit field not shared with another processor core. “Module” means the MSR or the bit field is shared by a pair of processor cores in the physical package. “Package” means all processor cores in the physical package share the same MSR or bit interface.

Table 2-13. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Goldmont Plus Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
3AH	58	IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL	Core	Control Features in Intel 64Processor (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		0		Lock (R/WL)
		1		Enable VMX inside SMX operation (R/WL)
		2		Enable VMX outside SMX operation (R/WL)
		14:8		SENTER local functions enables (R/WL)
		15		SENTER global functions enable (R/WL)
		17		SGX Launch Control Enable (R/WL) This bit must be set to enable runtime reconfiguration of SGX Launch Control via IA32_SGXLEPUBKEYHASHn MSR. Valid if CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0H): ECX[30] = 1.
		18		SGX global functions enable (R/WL)
		63:19		Reserved
8CH	140	IA32_SGXLEPUBKEYHASH0	Core	See Table 2-2.

Table 2-13. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Goldmont Plus Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
8DH	141	IA32_SGXLEPUBKEYHASH1	Core	See Table 2-2.
8EH	142	IA32_SGXLEPUBKEYHASH2	Core	See Table 2-2.
8FH	143	IA32_SGXLEPUBKEYHASH3	Core	See Table 2-2.
3F1H	1009	MSR_PEBS_ENABLE	Core	(R/W) See Table 2-2. See Section 18.6.2.4, "Processor Event Based Sampling (PEBS)."
		0		Enable PEBS trigger and recording for the programmed event (precise or otherwise) on IA32_PMC0.
		1		Enable PEBS trigger and recording for the programmed event (precise or otherwise) on IA32_PMC1.
		2		Enable PEBS trigger and recording for the programmed event (precise or otherwise) on IA32_PMC2.
		3		Enable PEBS trigger and recording for the programmed event (precise or otherwise) on IA32_PMC3.
		31:4		Reserved
		32		Enable PEBS trigger and recording for IA32_FIXED_CTR0.
		33		Enable PEBS trigger and recording for IA32_FIXED_CTR1.
		34		Enable PEBS trigger and recording for IA32_FIXED_CTR2.
		63:35		Reserved
570H	1392	IA32_RTIT_CTL	Core	Trace Control Register (R/W)
		0		TraceEn
		1		CYCEn
		2		OS
		3		User
		4		PwrEvtEn
		5		FUPonPTW
		6		FabricEn
		7		CR3 filter
		8		ToPA Writing 0 will #GP if also setting TraceEn.
		9		MTCEn
		10		TSCEn
		11		DisRETC
		12		PTWEn
13		BranchEn		

Table 2-13. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Goldmont Plus Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		17:14		MTCFreq
		18		Reserved, must be zero.
		22:19		CYCThresh
		23		Reserved, must be zero.
		27:24		PSBFreq
		31:28		Reserved, must be zero.
		35:32		ADDRO_CFG
		39:36		ADDR1_CFG
		63:40		Reserved, must be zero.
680H	1664	MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 0 From IP (R/W) One of the three MSRs that make up the first entry of the 32-entry LBR stack. The From_IP part of the stack contains pointers to the source instruction. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Last Branch Record Stack TOS at 1C9H. Section 17.7, "Last Branch, Call Stack, Interrupt, and Exception Recording for Processors based on Goldmont Plus Microarchitecture."
681H - 69FH	1665 - 1695	MSR_LASTBRANCH_i_FROM_IP	Core	Last Branch Record <i>i</i> From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP; <i>i</i> = 1-31.
6C0H	1728	MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record 0 To IP (R/W) One of the three MSRs that make up the first entry of the 32-entry LBR stack. The To_IP part of the stack contains pointers to the Destination instruction. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Section 17.7, "Last Branch, Call Stack, Interrupt, and Exception Recording for Processors based on Goldmont Plus Microarchitecture."
6C1H - 6DFH	1729 - 1759	MSR_LASTBRANCH_i_TO_IP	Core	Last Branch Record <i>i</i> To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP; <i>i</i> = 1-31.
DC0H	3520	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0	Core	Last Branch Record 0 Additional Information (R/W) One of the three MSRs that make up the first entry of the 32-entry LBR stack. This part of the stack contains flag and elapsed cycle information. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Last Branch Record Stack TOS at 1C9H. Section 17.9.1, "LBR Stack."
DC1H	3521	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_1	Core	Last Branch Record 1 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.
DC2H	3522	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_2	Core	Last Branch Record 2 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.
DC3H	3523	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_3	Core	Last Branch Record 3 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.

Table 2-13. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Goldmont Plus Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
DC4H	3524	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_4	Core	Last Branch Record 4 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.
DC5H	3525	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_5	Core	Last Branch Record 5 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.
DC6H	3526	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_6	Core	Last Branch Record 6 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.
DC7H	3527	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_7	Core	Last Branch Record 7 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.
DC8H	3528	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_8	Core	Last Branch Record 8 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.
DC9H	3529	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_9	Core	Last Branch Record 9 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.
DCAH	3530	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_10	Core	Last Branch Record 10 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.
DCBH	3531	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_11	Core	Last Branch Record 11 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.
DCCH	3532	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_12	Core	Last Branch Record 12 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.
DCDH	3533	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_13	Core	Last Branch Record 13 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.
DCEH	3534	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_14	Core	Last Branch Record 14 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.
DCFH	3535	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_15	Core	Last Branch Record 15 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.
DD0H	3536	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_16	Core	Last Branch Record 16 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.
DD1H	3537	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_17	Core	Last Branch Record 17 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.
DD2H	3538	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_18	Core	Last Branch Record 18 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.
DD3H	3539	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_19	Core	Last Branch Record 19 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.
DD4H	3520	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_20	Core	Last Branch Record 20 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.
DD5H	3521	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_21	Core	Last Branch Record 21 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.
DD6H	3522	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_22	Core	Last Branch Record 22 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.

Table 2-13. MSRs in Intel Atom Processors Based on the Goldmont Plus Microarchitecture (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
DD7H	3523	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_23	Core	Last Branch Record 23 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.
DD8H	3524	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_24	Core	Last Branch Record 24 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.
DD9H	3525	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_25	Core	Last Branch Record 25 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.
DDAH	3526	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_26	Core	Last Branch Record 26 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.
DDBH	3527	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_27	Core	Last Branch Record 27 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.
DDCH	3528	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_28	Core	Last Branch Record 28 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.
DDDH	3529	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_29	Core	Last Branch Record 29 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.
DDEH	3530	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_30	Core	Last Branch Record 30 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.
DDFH	3531	MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_31	Core	Last Branch Record 31 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0.

See Table 2-6, Table 2-12 and Table 2-13 for MSR definitions applicable to processors with CPUID signature 06_7AH.

2.7 MSRS IN THE INTEL® MICROARCHITECTURE CODE NAME NEHALEM

Table 2-14 lists model-specific registers (MSRs) that are common for Intel® microarchitecture code name Nehalem. These include Intel Core i7 and i5 processor family. These processors have a CPUID signature with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel of 06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH, see Table 2-1. Additional MSRs specific to 06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH are listed in Table 2-15. Some MSRs listed in these tables are used by BIOS. More information about these MSR can be found at <http://biosbits.org>.

The column “Scope” represents the package/core/thread scope of individual bit field of an MSR. “Thread” means this bit field must be programmed on each logical processor independently. “Core” means the bit field must be programmed on each processor core independently, logical processors in the same core will be affected by change of this bit on the other logical processor in the same core. “Package” means the bit field must be programmed once for each physical package. Change of a bit filed with a package scope will affect all logical processors in that physical package.

Table 2-14. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Nehalem

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
0H	0	IA32_P5_MC_ADDR	Thread	See Section 2.22, “MSRs in Pentium Processors.”
1H	1	IA32_P5_MC_TYPE	Thread	See Section 2.22, “MSRs in Pentium Processors.”

Table 2-14. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Nehalem (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
6H	6	IA32_MONITOR_FILTER_SIZE	Thread	See Section 8.10.5, "Monitor/Mwait Address Range Determination" and Table 2-2.
10H	16	IA32_TIME_STAMP_COUNTER	Thread	See Section 17.17, "Time-Stamp Counter," and see Table 2-2.
17H	23	IA32_PLATFORM_ID	Package	Platform ID (R) See Table 2-2.
17H	23	MSR_PLATFORM_ID	Package	Model Specific Platform ID (R)
		49:0		Reserved
		52:50		See Table 2-2.
		63:53		Reserved
1BH	27	IA32_APIC_BASE	Thread	See Section 10.4.4, "Local APIC Status and Location," and Table 2-2.
34H	52	MSR_SMI_COUNT	Thread	SMI Counter (R/O)
		31:0		SMI Count (R/O) Running count of SMI events since last RESET.
		63:32		Reserved
3AH	58	IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL	Thread	Control Features in Intel 64Processor (R/W) See Table 2-2.
79H	121	IA32_BIOS_UPDT_TRIG	Core	BIOS Update Trigger Register (W) See Table 2-2.
8BH	139	IA32_BIOS_SIGN_ID	Thread	BIOS Update Signature ID (RO) See Table 2-2.
C1H	193	IA32_PMC0	Thread	Performance Counter Register See Table 2-2.
C2H	194	IA32_PMC1	Thread	Performance Counter Register See Table 2-2.
C3H	195	IA32_PMC2	Thread	Performance Counter Register See Table 2-2.
C4H	196	IA32_PMC3	Thread	Performance Counter Register See Table 2-2.
CEH	206	MSR_PLATFORM_INFO	Package	Platform Information Contains power management and other model specific features enumeration. See http://biosbits.org .
		7:0		Reserved
		15:8	Package	Maximum Non-Turbo Ratio (R/O) This is the ratio of the frequency that invariant TSC runs at. The invariant TSC frequency can be computed by multiplying this ratio by 133.33 MHz.

Table 2-14. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Nehalem (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		27:16		Reserved
		28	Package	Programmable Ratio Limit for Turbo Mode (R/O) When set to 1, indicates that Programmable Ratio Limit for Turbo mode is enabled. When set to 0, indicates Programmable Ratio Limit for Turbo mode is disabled.
		29	Package	Programmable TDC-TDP Limit for Turbo Mode (R/O) When set to 1, indicates that TDC and TDP Limits for Turbo mode are programmable. When set to 0, indicates TDC and TDP Limits for Turbo mode are not programmable.
		39:30		Reserved
		47:40	Package	Maximum Efficiency Ratio (R/O) This is the minimum ratio (maximum efficiency) that the processor can operate, in units of 133.33MHz.
		63:48		Reserved
E2H	226	MSR_PKG_CST_CONFIG_CONTROL	Core	C-State Configuration Control (R/W) Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States. See http://biosbits.org .
		2:0		Package C-State Limit (R/W) Specifies the lowest processor-specific C-state code name (consuming the least power) for the package. The default is set as factory-configured package C-state limit. The following C-state code name encodings are supported: 000b: C0 (no package C-sate support) 001b: C1 (Behavior is the same as 000b) 010b: C3 011b: C6 100b: C7 101b and 110b: Reserved 111: No package C-state limit. Note: This field cannot be used to limit package C-state to C3.
		9:3		Reserved
		10		I/O MWAIT Redirection Enable (R/W) When set, will map IO_read instructions sent to IO register specified by MSR_PMG_IO_CAPTURE_BASE to MWAIT instructions.
		14:11		Reserved

Table 2-14. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Nehalem (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		15		CFG Lock (R/W) When set, locks bits 15:0 of this register until next reset.
		23:16		Reserved
		24		Interrupt filtering enable (R/W) When set, processor cores in a deep C-State will wake only when the event message is destined for that core. When 0, all processor cores in a deep C-State will wake for an event message.
		25		C3 state auto demotion enable (R/W) When set, the processor will conditionally demote C6/C7 requests to C3 based on uncore auto-demote information.
		26		C1 state auto demotion enable (R/W) When set, the processor will conditionally demote C3/C6/C7 requests to C1 based on uncore auto-demote information.
		27		Enable C3 Undemotion (R/W)
		28		Enable C1 Undemotion (R/W)
		29		Package C State Demotion Enable (R/W)
		30		Package C State UnDemotion Enable (R/W)
		63:31		Reserved
		E4H	228	MSR_PMG_IO_CAPTURE_BASE
15:0				LVL_2 Base Address (R/W) Specifies the base address visible to software for IO redirection. If IO MWAIT Redirection is enabled, reads to this address will be consumed by the power management logic and decoded to MWAIT instructions. When IO port address redirection is enabled, this is the IO port address reported to the OS/software.
18:16				C-state Range (R/W) Specifies the encoding value of the maximum C-State code name to be included when IO read to MWAIT redirection is enabled by MSR_PKG_CST_CONFIG_CONTROL[bit10]: 000b - C3 is the max C-State to include. 001b - C6 is the max C-State to include. 010b - C7 is the max C-State to include.
63:19				Reserved
E7H	231	IA32_MPERF	Thread	Maximum Performance Frequency Clock Count (RW) See Table 2-2.

Table 2-14. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Nehalem (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
E8H	232	IA32_APERF	Thread	Actual Performance Frequency Clock Count (RW) See Table 2-2.
FEH	254	IA32_MTRRCAP	Thread	See Table 2-2.
174H	372	IA32_SYSENTER_CS	Thread	See Table 2-2.
175H	373	IA32_SYSENTER_ESP	Thread	See Table 2-2.
176H	374	IA32_SYSENTER_EIP	Thread	See Table 2-2.
179H	377	IA32_MCG_CAP	Thread	See Table 2-2.
17AH	378	IA32_MCG_STATUS	Thread	Global Machine Check Status
		0		RIPV When set, bit indicates that the instruction addressed by the instruction pointer pushed on the stack (when the machine check was generated) can be used to restart the program. If cleared, the program cannot be reliably restarted.
		1		EIPV When set, bit indicates that the instruction addressed by the instruction pointer pushed on the stack (when the machine check was generated) is directly associated with the error.
		2		MCIP When set, bit indicates that a machine check has been generated. If a second machine check is detected while this bit is still set, the processor enters a shutdown state. Software should write this bit to 0 after processing a machine check exception.
		63:3		Reserved
186H	390	IA32_PERFEVTSELO	Thread	See Table 2-2.
		7:0		Event Select
		15:8		UMask
		16		USR
		17		OS
		18		Edge
		19		PC
		20		INT
		21		AnyThread
		22		EN
		23		INV
		31:24		CMASK
		63:32		Reserved
187H	391	IA32_PERFEVTSEL1	Thread	See Table 2-2.

Table 2-14. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Nehalem (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
188H	392	IA32_PERFEVTSEL2	Thread	See Table 2-2.
189H	393	IA32_PERFEVTSEL3	Thread	See Table 2-2.
198H	408	IA32_PERF_STATUS	Core	See Table 2-2.
		15:0		Current Performance State Value.
		63:16		Reserved
199H	409	IA32_PERF_CTL	Thread	See Table 2-2.
19AH	410	IA32_CLOCK_MODULATION	Thread	Clock Modulation (R/W) See Table 2-2. IA32_CLOCK_MODULATION MSR was originally named IA32_THERM_CONTROL MSR.
		0		Reserved
		3:1		On demand Clock Modulation Duty Cycle (R/W)
		4		On demand Clock Modulation Enable (R/W)
		63:5		Reserved
19BH	411	IA32_THERM_INTERRUPT	Core	Thermal Interrupt Control (R/W) See Table 2-2.
19CH	412	IA32_THERM_STATUS	Core	Thermal Monitor Status (R/W) See Table 2-2.
1A0H	416	IA32_MISC_ENABLE		Enable Misc. Processor Features (R/W) Allows a variety of processor functions to be enabled and disabled.
		0	Thread	Fast-Strings Enable See Table 2-2.
		2:1		Reserved
		3	Thread	Automatic Thermal Control Circuit Enable (R/W) See Table 2-2. Default value is 1.
		6:4		Reserved
		7	Thread	Performance Monitoring Available (R) See Table 2-2.
		10:8		Reserved
		11	Thread	Branch Trace Storage Unavailable (RO) See Table 2-2.
		12	Thread	Processor Event Based Sampling Unavailable (RO) See Table 2-2.
		15:13		Reserved
		16	Package	Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology Enable (R/W) See Table 2-2.
18	Thread	ENABLE MONITOR FSM. (R/W) See Table 2-2.		

Table 2-14. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Nehalem (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		21:19		Reserved
		22	Thread	Limit CPUID Maxval (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		23	Thread	xTPR Message Disable (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		33:24		Reserved
		34	Thread	XD Bit Disable (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		37:35		Reserved
		38	Package	Turbo Mode Disable (R/W) When set to 1 on processors that support Intel Turbo Boost Technology, the turbo mode feature is disabled and the IDA_Enable feature flag will be clear (CPUID.06H: EAX[1]=0). When set to a 0 on processors that support IDA, CPUID.06H: EAX[1] reports the processor's support of turbo mode is enabled. Note: The power-on default value is used by BIOS to detect hardware support of turbo mode. If the power-on default value is 1, turbo mode is available in the processor. If the power-on default value is 0, turbo mode is not available.
		63:39		Reserved
1A2H	418	MSR_TEMPERATURE_TARGET	Thread	Temperature Target
		15:0		Reserved
		23:16		Temperature Target (R) The minimum temperature at which PROCHOT# will be asserted. The value is degrees C.
		63:24		Reserved
1A4H	420	MSR_MISC_FEATURE_CONTROL		Miscellaneous Feature Control (R/W)
		0	Core	L2 Hardware Prefetcher Disable (R/W) If 1, disables the L2 hardware prefetcher, which fetches additional lines of code or data into the L2 cache.
		1	Core	L2 Adjacent Cache Line Prefetcher Disable (R/W) If 1, disables the adjacent cache line prefetcher, which fetches the cache line that comprises a cache line pair (128 bytes).
		2	Core	DCU Hardware Prefetcher Disable (R/W) If 1, disables the L1 data cache prefetcher, which fetches the next cache line into L1 data cache.

Table 2-14. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Nehalem (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		3	Core	DCU IP Prefetcher Disable (R/W) If 1, disables the L1 data cache IP prefetcher, which uses sequential load history (based on instruction pointer of previous loads) to determine whether to prefetch additional lines.
		63:4		Reserved
1A6H	422	MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_0	Thread	Offcore Response Event Select Register (R/W)
1AAH	426	MSR_MISC_PWR_MGMT		Miscellaneous Power Management Control Various model specific features enumeration. See http://biosbits.org .
		0	Package	EIST Hardware Coordination Disable (R/W) When 0, enables hardware coordination of Enhanced Intel Speedstep Technology request from processor cores. When 1, disables hardware coordination of Enhanced Intel Speedstep Technology requests.
		1	Thread	Energy/Performance Bias Enable (R/W) This bit makes the IA32_ENERGY_PERF_BIAS register (MSR 1B0h) visible to software with Ring 0 privileges. This bit's status (1 or 0) is also reflected by CPUID.(EAX=06h):ECX[3].
		63:2		Reserved
1ACH	428	MSR_TURBO_POWER_CURRENT_LIMIT		See http://biosbits.org .
		14:0	Package	TDP Limit (R/W) TDP limit in 1/8 Watt granularity.
		15	Package	TDP Limit Override Enable (R/W) A value = 0 indicates override is not active; a value = 1 indicates override is active.
		30:16	Package	TDC Limit (R/W) TDC limit in 1/8 Amp granularity.
		31	Package	TDC Limit Override Enable (R/W) A value = 0 indicates override is not active; a value = 1 indicates override is active.
		63:32		Reserved
1ADH	429	MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit of Turbo Mode RO if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 0. RW if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 1.
		7:0	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 1C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 1 core active.
		15:8	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 2C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 2 core active.

Table 2-14. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Nehalem (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		23:16	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 3C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 3 core active.
		31:24	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 4C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 4 core active.
		63:32		Reserved
1C8H	456	MSR_LBR_SELECT	Core	Last Branch Record Filtering Select Register (R/W) See Section 17.9.2, "Filtering of Last Branch Records."
		0		CPL_EQ_0
		1		CPL_NEQ_0
		2		JCC
		3		NEAR_REL_CALL
		4		NEAR_IND_CALL
		5		NEAR_RET
		6		NEAR_IND_JMP
		7		NEAR_REL_JMP
		8		FAR_BRANCH
		63:9		Reserved
1C9H	457	MSR_LASTBRANCH_TOS	Thread	Last Branch Record Stack TOS (R/W) Contains an index (bits 0-3) that points to the MSR containing the most recent branch record. See MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP (at 680H).
1D9H	473	IA32_DEBUGCTL	Thread	Debug Control (R/W) See Table 2-2.
1DDH	477	MSR_LER_FROM_LIP	Thread	Last Exception Record From Linear IP (R) Contains a pointer to the last branch instruction that the processor executed prior to the last exception that was generated or the last interrupt that was handled.
1DEH	478	MSR_LER_TO_LIP	Thread	Last Exception Record To Linear IP (R) This area contains a pointer to the target of the last branch instruction that the processor executed prior to the last exception that was generated or the last interrupt that was handled.
1F2H	498	IA32_SMRR_PHYSBASE	Core	See Table 2-2.
1F3H	499	IA32_SMRR_PHYSMASK	Core	See Table 2-2.
1FCH	508	MSR_POWER_CTL	Core	Power Control Register See http://biosbits.org .
		0		Reserved

Table 2-14. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Nehalem (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		1	Package	C1E Enable (R/W) When set to '1', will enable the CPU to switch to the Minimum Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology operating point when all execution cores enter MWAIT (C1).
		63:2		Reserved
200H	512	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE0	Thread	See Table 2-2.
201H	513	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK0	Thread	See Table 2-2.
202H	514	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE1	Thread	See Table 2-2.
203H	515	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK1	Thread	See Table 2-2.
204H	516	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE2	Thread	See Table 2-2.
205H	517	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK2	Thread	See Table 2-2.
206H	518	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE3	Thread	See Table 2-2.
207H	519	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK3	Thread	See Table 2-2.
208H	520	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE4	Thread	See Table 2-2.
209H	521	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK4	Thread	See Table 2-2.
20AH	522	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE5	Thread	See Table 2-2.
20BH	523	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK5	Thread	See Table 2-2.
20CH	524	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE6	Thread	See Table 2-2.
20DH	525	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK6	Thread	See Table 2-2.
20EH	526	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE7	Thread	See Table 2-2.
20FH	527	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK7	Thread	See Table 2-2.
210H	528	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE8	Thread	See Table 2-2.
211H	529	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK8	Thread	See Table 2-2.
212H	530	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE9	Thread	See Table 2-2.
213H	531	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK9	Thread	See Table 2-2.
250H	592	IA32_MTRR_FIX64K_00000	Thread	See Table 2-2.
258H	600	IA32_MTRR_FIX16K_80000	Thread	See Table 2-2.
259H	601	IA32_MTRR_FIX16K_A0000	Thread	See Table 2-2.
268H	616	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_C0000	Thread	See Table 2-2.
269H	617	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_C8000	Thread	See Table 2-2.
26AH	618	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_D0000	Thread	See Table 2-2.
26BH	619	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_D8000	Thread	See Table 2-2.
26CH	620	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_E0000	Thread	See Table 2-2.
26DH	621	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_E8000	Thread	See Table 2-2.
26EH	622	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_F0000	Thread	See Table 2-2.
26FH	623	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_F8000	Thread	See Table 2-2.

Table 2-14. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Nehalem (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
277H	631	IA32_PAT	Thread	See Table 2-2.
280H	640	IA32_MC0_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
281H	641	IA32_MC1_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
282H	642	IA32_MC2_CTL2	Core	See Table 2-2.
283H	643	IA32_MC3_CTL2	Core	See Table 2-2.
284H	644	IA32_MC4_CTL2	Core	See Table 2-2.
285H	645	IA32_MC5_CTL2	Core	See Table 2-2.
286H	646	IA32_MC6_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
287H	647	IA32_MC7_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
288H	648	IA32_MC8_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
2FFH	767	IA32_MTRR_DEF_TYPE	Thread	Default Memory Types (R/W) See Table 2-2.
309H	777	IA32_FIXED_CTR0	Thread	Fixed-Function Performance Counter Register 0 (R/W) See Table 2-2.
30AH	778	IA32_FIXED_CTR1	Thread	Fixed-Function Performance Counter Register 1 (R/W) See Table 2-2.
30BH	779	IA32_FIXED_CTR2	Thread	Fixed-Function Performance Counter Register 2 (R/W) See Table 2-2.
345H	837	IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES	Thread	See Table 2-2. See Section 17.4.1, "IA32_DEBUGCTL MSR."
		5:0		LBR Format See Table 2-2.
		6		PEBS Record Format
		7		PEBSSaveArchRegs See Table 2-2.
		11:8		PEBS_REC_FORMAT See Table 2-2.
		12		SMM_FREEZE See Table 2-2.
		63:13		Reserved
38DH	909	IA32_FIXED_CTR_CTRL	Thread	Fixed-Function-Counter Control Register (R/W) See Table 2-2.
38EH	910	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS	Thread	See Table 2-2. See Section 18.6.2.2, "Global Counter Control Facilities."
38EH	910	MSR_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS	Thread	Provides single-bit status used by software to query the overflow condition of each performance counter. (RO)

Table 2-14. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Nehalem (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		61		UNC_Ovf Uncore overflowed if 1.
38FH	911	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL	Thread	See Table 2-2. See Section 18.6.2.2, "Global Counter Control Facilities."
390H	912	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL	Thread	See Table 2-2. See Section 18.6.2.2, "Global Counter Control Facilities." Allows software to clear counter overflow conditions on any combination of fixed-function PMCs (MSR_PERF_FIXED_CTRx) or general-purpose PMCs via a single WRMSR.
390H	912	MSR_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL	Thread	(R/W)
		61		CLR_UNC_Ovf Set 1 to clear UNC_Ovf.
3F1H	1009	MSR_PEBS_ENABLE	Thread	See Section 18.3.1.1.1, "Processor Event Based Sampling (PEBS)."
		0		Enable PEBS on IA32_PMC0 (R/W)
		1		Enable PEBS on IA32_PMC1 (R/W)
		2		Enable PEBS on IA32_PMC2 (R/W)
		3		Enable PEBS on IA32_PMC3 (R/W)
		31:4		Reserved
		32		Enable Load Latency on IA32_PMC0 (R/W)
		33		Enable Load Latency on IA32_PMC1 (R/W)
		34		Enable Load Latency on IA32_PMC2 (R/W)
		35		Enable Load Latency on IA32_PMC3 (R/W)
		63:36		Reserved
3F6H	1014	MSR_PEBS_LD_LAT	Thread	See Section 18.3.1.1.2, "Load Latency Performance Monitoring Facility."
		15:0		Minimum threshold latency value of tagged load operation that will be counted. (R/W)
		63:36		Reserved
3F8H	1016	MSR_PKG_C3_RESIDENCY	Package	Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.
		63:0		Package C3 Residency Counter (R/O) Value since last reset that this package is in processor-specific C3 states. Count at the same frequency as the TSC.
3F9H	1017	MSR_PKG_C6_RESIDENCY	Package	Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.

Table 2-14. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Nehalem (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		63:0		Package C6 Residency Counter (R/O) Value since last reset that this package is in processor-specific C6 states. Count at the same frequency as the TSC.
3FAH	1018	MSR_PKG_C7_RESIDENCY	Package	Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.
		63:0		Package C7 Residency Counter (R/O) Value since last reset that this package is in processor-specific C7 states. Count at the same frequency as the TSC.
3FCH	1020	MSR_CORE_C3_RESIDENCY	Core	Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.
		63:0		CORE C3 Residency Counter (R/O) Value since last reset that this core is in processor-specific C3 states. Count at the same frequency as the TSC.
3FDH	1021	MSR_CORE_C6_RESIDENCY	Core	Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.
		63:0		CORE C6 Residency Counter (R/O) Value since last reset that this core is in processor-specific C6 states. Count at the same frequency as the TSC.
400H	1024	IA32_MCO_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCI_CTL MSRs."
401H	1025	IA32_MCO_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCI_STATUS MSRs."
402H	1026	IA32_MCO_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCI_ADDR MSRs." The IA32_MCO_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the IA32_MCO_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
403H	1027	IA32_MCO_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCI_MISC MSRs."
404H	1028	IA32_MC1_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCI_CTL MSRs."
405H	1029	IA32_MC1_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCI_STATUS MSRs."
406H	1030	IA32_MC1_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCI_ADDR MSRs." The IA32_MC1_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the IA32_MC1_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.

Table 2-14. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Nehalem (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
407H	1031	IA32_MC1_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
408H	1032	IA32_MC2_CTL	Core	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
409H	1033	IA32_MC2_STATUS	Core	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs."
40AH	1034	IA32_MC2_ADDR	Core	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The IA32_MC2_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the IA32_MC2_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
40BH	1035	IA32_MC2_MISC	Core	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
40CH	1036	IA32_MC3_CTL	Core	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
40DH	1037	IA32_MC3_STATUS	Core	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs."
40EH	1038	IA32_MC3_ADDR	Core	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The MSR_MC4_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the MSR_MC4_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
40FH	1039	IA32_MC3_MISC	Core	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
410H	1040	IA32_MC4_CTL	Core	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
411H	1041	IA32_MC4_STATUS	Core	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs."
412H	1042	IA32_MC4_ADDR	Core	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The MSR_MC3_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the MSR_MC3_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
413H	1043	IA32_MC4_MISC	Core	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
414H	1044	IA32_MC5_CTL	Core	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
415H	1045	IA32_MC5_STATUS	Core	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs."
416H	1046	IA32_MC5_ADDR	Core	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
417H	1047	IA32_MC5_MISC	Core	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
418H	1048	IA32_MC6_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
419H	1049	IA32_MC6_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs" and Chapter 16.
41AH	1050	IA32_MC6_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
41BH	1051	IA32_MC6_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
41CH	1052	IA32_MC7_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."

Table 2-14. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Nehalem (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
41DH	1053	IA32_MC7_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCI_STATUS MSRS" and Chapter 16.
41EH	1054	IA32_MC7_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCI_ADDR MSRs."
41FH	1055	IA32_MC7_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCI_MISC MSRs."
420H	1056	IA32_MC8_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCI_CTL MSRs."
421H	1057	IA32_MC8_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCI_STATUS MSRS" and Chapter 16.
422H	1058	IA32_MC8_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCI_ADDR MSRs."
423H	1059	IA32_MC8_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCI_MISC MSRs."
480H	1152	IA32_VMX_BASIC	Thread	Reporting Register of Basic VMX Capabilities (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.1, "Basic VMX Information."
481H	1153	IA32_VMX_PINBASED_CTL	Thread	Capability Reporting Register of Pin-based VM-execution Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.3, "VM-Execution Controls."
482H	1154	IA32_VMX_PROCBASED_CTL	Thread	Capability Reporting Register of Primary Processor-Based VM-Execution Controls (R/O) See Appendix A.3, "VM-Execution Controls."
483H	1155	IA32_VMX_EXIT_CTL	Thread	Capability Reporting Register of VM-Exit Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.4, "VM-Exit Controls."
484H	1156	IA32_VMX_ENTRY_CTL	Thread	Capability Reporting Register of VM-Entry Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.5, "VM-Entry Controls."
485H	1157	IA32_VMX_MISC	Thread	Reporting Register of Miscellaneous VMX Capabilities (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.6, "Miscellaneous Data."
486H	1158	IA32_VMX_CRO_FIXED0	Thread	Capability Reporting Register of CRO Bits Fixed to 0 (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.7, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CRO."
487H	1159	IA32_VMX_CRO_FIXED1	Thread	Capability Reporting Register of CRO Bits Fixed to 1 (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.7, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CRO."

Table 2-14. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Nehalem (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
488H	1160	IA32_VMX_CR4_FIXED0	Thread	Capability Reporting Register of CR4 Bits Fixed to 0 (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.8, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CR4."
489H	1161	IA32_VMX_CR4_FIXED1	Thread	Capability Reporting Register of CR4 Bits Fixed to 1 (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.8, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CR4."
48AH	1162	IA32_VMX_VMCS_ENUM	Thread	Capability Reporting Register of VMCS Field Enumeration (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.9, "VMCS Enumeration."
48BH	1163	IA32_VMX_PROCBASED_CTL2	Thread	Capability Reporting Register of Secondary Processor-Based VM-Execution Controls (R/O) See Appendix A.3, "VM-Execution Controls."
600H	1536	IA32_DS_AREA	Thread	DS Save Area (R/W) See Table 2-2. See Section 18.6.3.4, "Debug Store (DS) Mechanism."
680H	1664	MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 0 From IP (R/W) One of sixteen pairs of last branch record registers on the last branch record stack. The From_IP part of the stack contains pointers to the source instruction. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Last Branch Record Stack TOS at 1C9H. ▪ Section 17.9.1 and record format in Section 17.4.8.1.
681H	1665	MSR_LASTBRANCH_1_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 1 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
682H	1666	MSR_LASTBRANCH_2_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 2 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
683H	1667	MSR_LASTBRANCH_3_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 3 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
684H	1668	MSR_LASTBRANCH_4_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 4 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
685H	1669	MSR_LASTBRANCH_5_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 5 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
686H	1670	MSR_LASTBRANCH_6_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 6 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
687H	1671	MSR_LASTBRANCH_7_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 7 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
688H	1672	MSR_LASTBRANCH_8_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 8 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.

Table 2-14. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Nehalem (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
689H	1673	MSR_LASTBRANCH_9_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 9 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
68AH	1674	MSR_LASTBRANCH_10_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 10 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
68BH	1675	MSR_LASTBRANCH_11_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 11 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
68CH	1676	MSR_LASTBRANCH_12_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 12 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
68DH	1677	MSR_LASTBRANCH_13_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 13 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
68EH	1678	MSR_LASTBRANCH_14_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 14 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
68FH	1679	MSR_LASTBRANCH_15_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 15 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
6C0H	1728	MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 0 To IP (R/W) One of sixteen pairs of last branch record registers on the last branch record stack. This part of the stack contains pointers to the destination instruction.
6C1H	1729	MSR_LASTBRANCH_1_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 1 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6C2H	1730	MSR_LASTBRANCH_2_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 2 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6C3H	1731	MSR_LASTBRANCH_3_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 3 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6C4H	1732	MSR_LASTBRANCH_4_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 4 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6C5H	1733	MSR_LASTBRANCH_5_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 5 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6C6H	1734	MSR_LASTBRANCH_6_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 6 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6C7H	1735	MSR_LASTBRANCH_7_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 7 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6C8H	1736	MSR_LASTBRANCH_8_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 8 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6C9H	1737	MSR_LASTBRANCH_9_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 9 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6CAH	1738	MSR_LASTBRANCH_10_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 10 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.

Table 2-14. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Nehalem (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
6CBH	1739	MSR_LASTBRANCH_11_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 11 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6CCH	1740	MSR_LASTBRANCH_12_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 12 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6CDH	1741	MSR_LASTBRANCH_13_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 13 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6CEH	1742	MSR_LASTBRANCH_14_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 14 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6CFH	1743	MSR_LASTBRANCH_15_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 15 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
802H	2050	IA32_X2APIC_APICID	Thread	x2APIC ID Register (R/O)
803H	2051	IA32_X2APIC_VERSION	Thread	x2APIC Version Register (R/O)
808H	2056	IA32_X2APIC_TPR	Thread	x2APIC Task Priority Register (R/W)
80AH	2058	IA32_X2APIC_PPR	Thread	x2APIC Processor Priority Register (R/O)
80BH	2059	IA32_X2APIC_EOI	Thread	x2APIC EOI Register (W/O)
80DH	2061	IA32_X2APIC_LDR	Thread	x2APIC Logical Destination Register (R/O)
80FH	2063	IA32_X2APIC_SIVR	Thread	x2APIC Spurious Interrupt Vector Register (R/W)
810H	2064	IA32_X2APIC_ISR0	Thread	x2APIC In-Service Register Bits [31:0] (R/O)
811H	2065	IA32_X2APIC_ISR1	Thread	x2APIC In-Service Register Bits [63:32] (R/O)
812H	2066	IA32_X2APIC_ISR2	Thread	x2APIC In-Service Register Bits [95:64] (R/O)
813H	2067	IA32_X2APIC_ISR3	Thread	x2APIC In-Service Register Bits [127:96] (R/O)
814H	2068	IA32_X2APIC_ISR4	Thread	x2APIC In-Service Register Bits [159:128] (R/O)
815H	2069	IA32_X2APIC_ISR5	Thread	x2APIC In-Service Register Bits [191:160] (R/O)
816H	2070	IA32_X2APIC_ISR6	Thread	x2APIC In-Service Register Bits [223:192] (R/O)
817H	2071	IA32_X2APIC_ISR7	Thread	x2APIC In-Service Register Bits [255:224] (R/O)
818H	2072	IA32_X2APIC_TMR0	Thread	x2APIC Trigger Mode Register Bits [31:0] (R/O)
819H	2073	IA32_X2APIC_TMR1	Thread	x2APIC Trigger Mode Register Bits [63:32] (R/O)
81AH	2074	IA32_X2APIC_TMR2	Thread	x2APIC Trigger Mode Register Bits [95:64] (R/O)
81BH	2075	IA32_X2APIC_TMR3	Thread	x2APIC Trigger Mode Register Bits [127:96] (R/O)
81CH	2076	IA32_X2APIC_TMR4	Thread	x2APIC Trigger Mode Register Bits [159:128] (R/O)
81DH	2077	IA32_X2APIC_TMR5	Thread	x2APIC Trigger Mode Register Bits [191:160] (R/O)
81EH	2078	IA32_X2APIC_TMR6	Thread	x2APIC Trigger Mode Register Bits [223:192] (R/O)
81FH	2079	IA32_X2APIC_TMR7	Thread	x2APIC Trigger Mode Register Bits [255:224] (R/O)
820H	2080	IA32_X2APIC_IRR0	Thread	x2APIC Interrupt Request Register Bits [31:0] (R/O)
821H	2081	IA32_X2APIC_IRR1	Thread	x2APIC Interrupt Request Register Bits [63:32] (R/O)
822H	2082	IA32_X2APIC_IRR2	Thread	x2APIC Interrupt Request Register Bits [95:64] (R/O)

Table 2-14. MSRs in Processors Based on Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Nehalem (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
823H	2083	IA32_X2APIC_IRR3	Thread	x2APIC Interrupt Request Register Bits [127:96] (R/O)
824H	2084	IA32_X2APIC_IRR4	Thread	x2APIC Interrupt Request Register Bits [159:128] (R/O)
825H	2085	IA32_X2APIC_IRR5	Thread	x2APIC Interrupt Request Register Bits [191:160] (R/O)
826H	2086	IA32_X2APIC_IRR6	Thread	x2APIC Interrupt Request Register Bits [223:192] (R/O)
827H	2087	IA32_X2APIC_IRR7	Thread	x2APIC Interrupt Request Register Bits [255:224] (R/O)
828H	2088	IA32_X2APIC_ESR	Thread	x2APIC Error Status Register (R/W)
82FH	2095	IA32_X2APIC_LVT_CMCI	Thread	x2APIC LVT Corrected Machine Check Interrupt Register (R/W)
830H	2096	IA32_X2APIC_ICR	Thread	x2APIC Interrupt Command Register (R/W)
832H	2098	IA32_X2APIC_LVT_TIMER	Thread	x2APIC LVT Timer Interrupt Register (R/W)
833H	2099	IA32_X2APIC_LVT_THERMAL	Thread	x2APIC LVT Thermal Sensor Interrupt Register (R/W)
834H	2100	IA32_X2APIC_LVT_PMI	Thread	x2APIC LVT Performance Monitor Register (R/W)
835H	2101	IA32_X2APIC_LVT_LINT0	Thread	x2APIC LVT LINT0 Register (R/W)
836H	2102	IA32_X2APIC_LVT_LINT1	Thread	x2APIC LVT LINT1 Register (R/W)
837H	2103	IA32_X2APIC_LVT_ERROR	Thread	x2APIC LVT Error Register (R/W)
838H	2104	IA32_X2APIC_INIT_COUNT	Thread	x2APIC Initial Count Register (R/W)
839H	2105	IA32_X2APIC_CUR_COUNT	Thread	x2APIC Current Count Register (R/O)
83EH	2110	IA32_X2APIC_DIV_CONF	Thread	x2APIC Divide Configuration Register (R/W)
83FH	2111	IA32_X2APIC_SELF_IPI	Thread	x2APIC Self IPI Register (W/O)
C000_0080H		IA32_EFER	Thread	Extended Feature Enables See Table 2-2.
C000_0081H		IA32_STAR	Thread	System Call Target Address (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0082H		IA32_LSTAR	Thread	IA-32e Mode System Call Target Address (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0084H		IA32_FMASK	Thread	System Call Flag Mask (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0100H		IA32_FS_BASE	Thread	Map of BASE Address of FS (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0101H		IA32_GS_BASE	Thread	Map of BASE Address of GS (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0102H		IA32_KERNEL_GS_BASE	Thread	Swap Target of BASE Address of GS (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0103H		IA32_TSC_AUX	Thread	AUXILIARY TSC Signature (R/W) See Table 2-2 and Section 17.17.2, "IA32_TSC_AUX Register and RDTSCP Support."

2.7.1 Additional MSRs in the Intel® Xeon® Processor 5500 and 3400 Series

Intel Xeon Processor 5500 and 3400 series support additional model-specific registers listed in Table 2-15. These MSRs also apply to Intel Core i7 and i5 processor family CPUID signature with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel of 06_1AH, 06_1EH and 06_1FH, see Table 2-1.

Table 2-15. Additional MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor 5500 and 3400 Series

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
1ADH	429	MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT	Package	Actual maximum turbo frequency is multiplied by 133.33MHz. (Not available in model 06_2EH.)
		7:0		Maximum Turbo Ratio Limit 1C (R/O) Maximum Turbo mode ratio limit with 1 core active.
		15:8		Maximum Turbo Ratio Limit 2C (R/O) Maximum Turbo mode ratio limit with 2 cores active.
		23:16		Maximum Turbo Ratio Limit 3C (R/O) Maximum Turbo mode ratio limit with 3 cores active.
		31:24		Maximum Turbo Ratio Limit 4C (R/O) Maximum Turbo mode ratio limit with 4 cores active.
		63:32		Reserved
301H	769	MSR_GQ_SNOOP_MESF	Package	
		0		From M to S (R/W)
		1		From E to S (R/W)
		2		From S to S (R/W)
		3		From F to S (R/W)
		4		From M to I (R/W)
		5		From E to I (R/W)
		6		From S to I (R/W)
		7		From F to I (R/W)
63:8	Reserved			
391H	913	MSR_UNCORE_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL	Package	See Section 18.3.1.2.1, "Uncore Performance Monitoring Management Facility."
392H	914	MSR_UNCORE_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS	Package	See Section 18.3.1.2.1, "Uncore Performance Monitoring Management Facility."
393H	915	MSR_UNCORE_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL	Package	See Section 18.3.1.2.1, "Uncore Performance Monitoring Management Facility."
394H	916	MSR_UNCORE_FIXED_CTR0	Package	See Section 18.3.1.2.1, "Uncore Performance Monitoring Management Facility."
395H	917	MSR_UNCORE_FIXED_CTR_CTRL	Package	See Section 18.3.1.2.1, "Uncore Performance Monitoring Management Facility."
396H	918	MSR_UNCORE_ADDR_OPCODE_MATCH	Package	See Section 18.3.1.2.3, "Uncore Address/Opcode Match MSR."
3B0H	960	MSR_UNCORE_PMC0	Package	See Section 18.3.1.2.2, "Uncore Performance Event Configuration Facility."

Table 2-15. Additional MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor 5500 and 3400 Series (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
3B1H	961	MSR_UNCORE_PMC1	Package	See Section 18.3.1.2.2, “Uncore Performance Event Configuration Facility.”
3B2H	962	MSR_UNCORE_PMC2	Package	See Section 18.3.1.2.2, “Uncore Performance Event Configuration Facility.”
3B3H	963	MSR_UNCORE_PMC3	Package	See Section 18.3.1.2.2, “Uncore Performance Event Configuration Facility.”
3B4H	964	MSR_UNCORE_PMC4	Package	See Section 18.3.1.2.2, “Uncore Performance Event Configuration Facility.”
3B5H	965	MSR_UNCORE_PMC5	Package	See Section 18.3.1.2.2, “Uncore Performance Event Configuration Facility.”
3B6H	966	MSR_UNCORE_PMC6	Package	See Section 18.3.1.2.2, “Uncore Performance Event Configuration Facility.”
3B7H	967	MSR_UNCORE_PMC7	Package	See Section 18.3.1.2.2, “Uncore Performance Event Configuration Facility.”
3C0H	944	MSR_UNCORE_PERFEVTSELO	Package	See Section 18.3.1.2.2, “Uncore Performance Event Configuration Facility.”
3C1H	945	MSR_UNCORE_PERFEVTSEL1	Package	See Section 18.3.1.2.2, “Uncore Performance Event Configuration Facility.”
3C2H	946	MSR_UNCORE_PERFEVTSEL2	Package	See Section 18.3.1.2.2, “Uncore Performance Event Configuration Facility.”
3C3H	947	MSR_UNCORE_PERFEVTSEL3	Package	See Section 18.3.1.2.2, “Uncore Performance Event Configuration Facility.”
3C4H	948	MSR_UNCORE_PERFEVTSEL4	Package	See Section 18.3.1.2.2, “Uncore Performance Event Configuration Facility.”
3C5H	949	MSR_UNCORE_PERFEVTSEL5	Package	See Section 18.3.1.2.2, “Uncore Performance Event Configuration Facility.”
3C6H	950	MSR_UNCORE_PERFEVTSEL6	Package	See Section 18.3.1.2.2, “Uncore Performance Event Configuration Facility.”
3C7H	951	MSR_UNCORE_PERFEVTSEL7	Package	See Section 18.3.1.2.2, “Uncore Performance Event Configuration Facility.”

2.7.2 Additional MSRs in the Intel® Xeon® Processor 7500 Series

Intel Xeon Processor 7500 series support MSRs listed in Table 2-14 (except MSR address 1ADH) and additional model-specific registers listed in Table 2-16. These processors have a CPUID signature with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel of 06_2EH.

Table 2-16. Additional MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor 7500 Series

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
1ADH	429	MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT	Package	Reserved Attempt to read/write will cause #UD.

Table 2-16. Additional MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor 7500 Series (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
289H	649	IA32_MC9_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28AH	650	IA32_MC10_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28BH	651	IA32_MC11_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28CH	652	IA32_MC12_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28DH	653	IA32_MC13_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28EH	654	IA32_MC14_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28FH	655	IA32_MC15_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
290H	656	IA32_MC16_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
291H	657	IA32_MC17_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
292H	658	IA32_MC18_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
293H	659	IA32_MC19_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
294H	660	IA32_MC20_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
295H	661	IA32_MC21_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
394H	816	MSR_W_PMON_FIXED_CTR	Package	Uncore W-box perfmon fixed counter.
395H	817	MSR_W_PMON_FIXED_CTR_CTL	Package	Uncore U-box perfmon fixed counter control MSR.
424H	1060	IA32_MC9_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
425H	1061	IA32_MC9_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS" and Chapter 16.
426H	1062	IA32_MC9_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
427H	1063	IA32_MC9_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
428H	1064	IA32_MC10_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
429H	1065	IA32_MC10_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS" and Chapter 16.
42AH	1066	IA32_MC10_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
42BH	1067	IA32_MC10_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
42CH	1068	IA32_MC11_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
42DH	1069	IA32_MC11_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS" and Chapter 16.
42EH	1070	IA32_MC11_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
42FH	1071	IA32_MC11_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
430H	1072	IA32_MC12_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
431H	1073	IA32_MC12_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS" and Chapter 16.
432H	1074	IA32_MC12_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
433H	1075	IA32_MC12_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
434H	1076	IA32_MC13_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
435H	1077	IA32_MC13_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS" and Chapter 16.

Table 2-16. Additional MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor 7500 Series (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
436H	1078	IA32_MC13_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
437H	1079	IA32_MC13_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
438H	1080	IA32_MC14_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
439H	1081	IA32_MC14_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS" and Chapter 16.
43AH	1082	IA32_MC14_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
43BH	1083	IA32_MC14_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
43CH	1084	IA32_MC15_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
43DH	1085	IA32_MC15_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS" and Chapter 16.
43EH	1086	IA32_MC15_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
43FH	1087	IA32_MC15_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
440H	1088	IA32_MC16_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
441H	1089	IA32_MC16_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS" and Chapter 16.
442H	1090	IA32_MC16_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
443H	1091	IA32_MC16_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
444H	1092	IA32_MC17_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
445H	1093	IA32_MC17_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS" and Chapter 16.
446H	1094	IA32_MC17_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
447H	1095	IA32_MC17_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
448H	1096	IA32_MC18_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
449H	1097	IA32_MC18_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS" and Chapter 16.
44AH	1098	IA32_MC18_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
44BH	1099	IA32_MC18_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
44CH	1100	IA32_MC19_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
44DH	1101	IA32_MC19_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS" and Chapter 16.
44EH	1102	IA32_MC19_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
44FH	1103	IA32_MC19_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
450H	1104	IA32_MC20_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
451H	1105	IA32_MC20_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS" and Chapter 16.
452H	1106	IA32_MC20_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
453H	1107	IA32_MC20_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
454H	1108	IA32_MC21_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."

Table 2-16. Additional MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor 7500 Series (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
455H	1109	IA32_MC21_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCI_STATUS MSRS" and Chapter 16.
456H	1110	IA32_MC21_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCI_ADDR MSRS."
457H	1111	IA32_MC21_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCI_MISC MSRS."
C00H	3072	MSR_U_PMON_GLOBAL_CTRL	Package	Uncore U-box perfmon global control MSR.
C01H	3073	MSR_U_PMON_GLOBAL_STATUS	Package	Uncore U-box perfmon global status MSR.
C02H	3074	MSR_U_PMON_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL	Package	Uncore U-box perfmon global overflow control MSR.
C10H	3088	MSR_U_PMON_EVNT_SEL	Package	Uncore U-box perfmon event select MSR.
C11H	3089	MSR_U_PMON_CTR	Package	Uncore U-box perfmon counter MSR.
C20H	3104	MSR_B0_PMON_BOX_CTRL	Package	Uncore B-box 0 perfmon local box control MSR.
C21H	3105	MSR_B0_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore B-box 0 perfmon local box status MSR.
C22H	3106	MSR_B0_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	Package	Uncore B-box 0 perfmon local box overflow control MSR.
C30H	3120	MSR_B0_PMON_EVNT_SELO	Package	Uncore B-box 0 perfmon event select MSR.
C31H	3121	MSR_B0_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore B-box 0 perfmon counter MSR.
C32H	3122	MSR_B0_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	Package	Uncore B-box 0 perfmon event select MSR.
C33H	3123	MSR_B0_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore B-box 0 perfmon counter MSR.
C34H	3124	MSR_B0_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	Package	Uncore B-box 0 perfmon event select MSR.
C35H	3125	MSR_B0_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore B-box 0 perfmon counter MSR.
C36H	3126	MSR_B0_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	Package	Uncore B-box 0 perfmon event select MSR.
C37H	3127	MSR_B0_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore B-box 0 perfmon counter MSR.
C40H	3136	MSR_S0_PMON_BOX_CTRL	Package	Uncore S-box 0 perfmon local box control MSR.
C41H	3137	MSR_S0_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore S-box 0 perfmon local box status MSR.
C42H	3138	MSR_S0_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	Package	Uncore S-box 0 perfmon local box overflow control MSR.
C50H	3152	MSR_S0_PMON_EVNT_SELO	Package	Uncore S-box 0 perfmon event select MSR.
C51H	3153	MSR_S0_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore S-box 0 perfmon counter MSR.
C52H	3154	MSR_S0_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	Package	Uncore S-box 0 perfmon event select MSR.
C53H	3155	MSR_S0_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore S-box 0 perfmon counter MSR.

Table 2-16. Additional MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor 7500 Series (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
C54H	3156	MSR_S0_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	Package	Uncore S-box 0 perfmon event select MSR.
C55H	3157	MSR_S0_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore S-box 0 perfmon counter MSR.
C56H	3158	MSR_S0_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	Package	Uncore S-box 0 perfmon event select MSR.
C57H	3159	MSR_S0_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore S-box 0 perfmon counter MSR.
C60H	3168	MSR_B1_PMON_BOX_CTRL	Package	Uncore B-box 1 perfmon local box control MSR.
C61H	3169	MSR_B1_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore B-box 1 perfmon local box status MSR.
C62H	3170	MSR_B1_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	Package	Uncore B-box 1 perfmon local box overflow control MSR.
C70H	3184	MSR_B1_PMON_EVNT_SELO	Package	Uncore B-box 1 perfmon event select MSR.
C71H	3185	MSR_B1_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore B-box 1 perfmon counter MSR.
C72H	3186	MSR_B1_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	Package	Uncore B-box 1 perfmon event select MSR.
C73H	3187	MSR_B1_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore B-box 1 perfmon counter MSR.
C74H	3188	MSR_B1_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	Package	Uncore B-box 1 perfmon event select MSR.
C75H	3189	MSR_B1_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore B-box 1 perfmon counter MSR.
C76H	3190	MSR_B1_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	Package	Uncore B-box 1 vperfmon event select MSR.
C77H	3191	MSR_B1_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore B-box 1 perfmon counter MSR.
C80H	3120	MSR_W_PMON_BOX_CTRL	Package	Uncore W-box perfmon local box control MSR.
C81H	3121	MSR_W_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore W-box perfmon local box status MSR.
C82H	3122	MSR_W_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	Package	Uncore W-box perfmon local box overflow control MSR.
C90H	3136	MSR_W_PMON_EVNT_SELO	Package	Uncore W-box perfmon event select MSR.
C91H	3137	MSR_W_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore W-box perfmon counter MSR.
C92H	3138	MSR_W_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	Package	Uncore W-box perfmon event select MSR.
C93H	3139	MSR_W_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore W-box perfmon counter MSR.
C94H	3140	MSR_W_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	Package	Uncore W-box perfmon event select MSR.
C95H	3141	MSR_W_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore W-box perfmon counter MSR.
C96H	3142	MSR_W_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	Package	Uncore W-box perfmon event select MSR.
C97H	3143	MSR_W_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore W-box perfmon counter MSR.

Table 2-16. Additional MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor 7500 Series (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
CA0H	3232	MSR_M0_PMON_BOX_CTRL	Package	Uncore M-box 0 perfmon local box control MSR.
CA1H	3233	MSR_M0_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore M-box 0 perfmon local box status MSR.
CA2H	3234	MSR_M0_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	Package	Uncore M-box 0 perfmon local box overflow control MSR.
CA4H	3236	MSR_M0_PMON_TIMESTAMP	Package	Uncore M-box 0 perfmon time stamp unit select MSR.
CA5H	3237	MSR_M0_PMON_DSP	Package	Uncore M-box 0 perfmon DSP unit select MSR.
CA6H	3238	MSR_M0_PMON_ISS	Package	Uncore M-box 0 perfmon ISS unit select MSR.
CA7H	3239	MSR_M0_PMON_MAP	Package	Uncore M-box 0 perfmon MAP unit select MSR.
CA8H	3240	MSR_M0_PMON_MSC_THR	Package	Uncore M-box 0 perfmon MIC THR select MSR.
CA9H	3241	MSR_M0_PMON_PGT	Package	Uncore M-box 0 perfmon PGT unit select MSR.
CAAH	3242	MSR_M0_PMON_PLD	Package	Uncore M-box 0 perfmon PLD unit select MSR.
CABH	3243	MSR_M0_PMON_ZDP	Package	Uncore M-box 0 perfmon ZDP unit select MSR.
CBOH	3248	MSR_M0_PMON_EVNT_SELO	Package	Uncore M-box 0 perfmon event select MSR.
CB1H	3249	MSR_M0_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore M-box 0 perfmon counter MSR.
CB2H	3250	MSR_M0_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	Package	Uncore M-box 0 perfmon event select MSR.
CB3H	3251	MSR_M0_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore M-box 0 perfmon counter MSR.
CB4H	3252	MSR_M0_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	Package	Uncore M-box 0 perfmon event select MSR.
CB5H	3253	MSR_M0_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore M-box 0 perfmon counter MSR.
CB6H	3254	MSR_M0_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	Package	Uncore M-box 0 perfmon event select MSR.
CB7H	3255	MSR_M0_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore M-box 0 perfmon counter MSR.
CB8H	3256	MSR_M0_PMON_EVNT_SEL4	Package	Uncore M-box 0 perfmon event select MSR.
CB9H	3257	MSR_M0_PMON_CTR4	Package	Uncore M-box 0 perfmon counter MSR.
CBAH	3258	MSR_M0_PMON_EVNT_SEL5	Package	Uncore M-box 0 perfmon event select MSR.
CBBH	3259	MSR_M0_PMON_CTR5	Package	Uncore M-box 0 perfmon counter MSR.
CC0H	3264	MSR_S1_PMON_BOX_CTRL	Package	Uncore S-box 1 perfmon local box control MSR.
CC1H	3265	MSR_S1_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore S-box 1 perfmon local box status MSR.
CC2H	3266	MSR_S1_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	Package	Uncore S-box 1 perfmon local box overflow control MSR.
CDOH	3280	MSR_S1_PMON_EVNT_SELO	Package	Uncore S-box 1 perfmon event select MSR.
CD1H	3281	MSR_S1_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore S-box 1 perfmon counter MSR.

Table 2-16. Additional MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor 7500 Series (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
CD2H	3282	MSR_S1_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	Package	Uncore S-box 1 perfmon event select MSR.
CD3H	3283	MSR_S1_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore S-box 1 perfmon counter MSR.
CD4H	3284	MSR_S1_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	Package	Uncore S-box 1 perfmon event select MSR.
CD5H	3285	MSR_S1_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore S-box 1 perfmon counter MSR.
CD6H	3286	MSR_S1_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	Package	Uncore S-box 1 perfmon event select MSR.
CD7H	3287	MSR_S1_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore S-box 1 perfmon counter MSR.
CE0H	3296	MSR_M1_PMON_BOX_CTRL	Package	Uncore M-box 1 perfmon local box control MSR.
CE1H	3297	MSR_M1_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore M-box 1 perfmon local box status MSR.
CE2H	3298	MSR_M1_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	Package	Uncore M-box 1 perfmon local box overflow control MSR.
CE4H	3300	MSR_M1_PMON_TIMESTAMP	Package	Uncore M-box 1 perfmon time stamp unit select MSR.
CE5H	3301	MSR_M1_PMON_DSP	Package	Uncore M-box 1 perfmon DSP unit select MSR.
CE6H	3302	MSR_M1_PMON_ISS	Package	Uncore M-box 1 perfmon ISS unit select MSR.
CE7H	3303	MSR_M1_PMON_MAP	Package	Uncore M-box 1 perfmon MAP unit select MSR.
CE8H	3304	MSR_M1_PMON_MSC_THR	Package	Uncore M-box 1 perfmon MIC THR select MSR.
CE9H	3305	MSR_M1_PMON_PGT	Package	Uncore M-box 1 perfmon PGT unit select MSR.
CEAH	3306	MSR_M1_PMON_PLD	Package	Uncore M-box 1 perfmon PLD unit select MSR.
CEBH	3307	MSR_M1_PMON_ZDP	Package	Uncore M-box 1 perfmon ZDP unit select MSR.
CF0H	3312	MSR_M1_PMON_EVNT_SEL0	Package	Uncore M-box 1 perfmon event select MSR.
CF1H	3313	MSR_M1_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore M-box 1 perfmon counter MSR.
CF2H	3314	MSR_M1_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	Package	Uncore M-box 1 perfmon event select MSR.
CF3H	3315	MSR_M1_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore M-box 1 perfmon counter MSR.
CF4H	3316	MSR_M1_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	Package	Uncore M-box 1 perfmon event select MSR.
CF5H	3317	MSR_M1_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore M-box 1 perfmon counter MSR.
CF6H	3318	MSR_M1_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	Package	Uncore M-box 1 perfmon event select MSR.
CF7H	3319	MSR_M1_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore M-box 1 perfmon counter MSR.
CF8H	3320	MSR_M1_PMON_EVNT_SEL4	Package	Uncore M-box 1 perfmon event select MSR.
CF9H	3321	MSR_M1_PMON_CTR4	Package	Uncore M-box 1 perfmon counter MSR.

Table 2-16. Additional MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor 7500 Series (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
CFAH	3322	MSR_M1_PMON_EVNT_SEL5	Package	Uncore M-box 1 perfmon event select MSR.
CFBH	3323	MSR_M1_PMON_CTR5	Package	Uncore M-box 1 perfmon counter MSR.
DOOH	3328	MSR_C0_PMON_BOX_CTRL	Package	Uncore C-box 0 perfmon local box control MSR.
D01H	3329	MSR_C0_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-box 0 perfmon local box status MSR.
D02H	3330	MSR_C0_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	Package	Uncore C-box 0 perfmon local box overflow control MSR.
D10H	3344	MSR_C0_PMON_EVNT_SELO	Package	Uncore C-box 0 perfmon event select MSR.
D11H	3345	MSR_C0_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-box 0 perfmon counter MSR.
D12H	3346	MSR_C0_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	Package	Uncore C-box 0 perfmon event select MSR.
D13H	3347	MSR_C0_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-box 0 perfmon counter MSR.
D14H	3348	MSR_C0_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	Package	Uncore C-box 0 perfmon event select MSR.
D15H	3349	MSR_C0_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-box 0 perfmon counter MSR.
D16H	3350	MSR_C0_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	Package	Uncore C-box 0 perfmon event select MSR.
D17H	3351	MSR_C0_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-box 0 perfmon counter MSR.
D18H	3352	MSR_C0_PMON_EVNT_SEL4	Package	Uncore C-box 0 perfmon event select MSR.
D19H	3353	MSR_C0_PMON_CTR4	Package	Uncore C-box 0 perfmon counter MSR.
D1AH	3354	MSR_C0_PMON_EVNT_SEL5	Package	Uncore C-box 0 perfmon event select MSR.
D1BH	3355	MSR_C0_PMON_CTR5	Package	Uncore C-box 0 perfmon counter MSR.
D20H	3360	MSR_C4_PMON_BOX_CTRL	Package	Uncore C-box 4 perfmon local box control MSR.
D21H	3361	MSR_C4_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-box 4 perfmon local box status MSR.
D22H	3362	MSR_C4_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	Package	Uncore C-box 4 perfmon local box overflow control MSR.
D30H	3376	MSR_C4_PMON_EVNT_SELO	Package	Uncore C-box 4 perfmon event select MSR.
D31H	3377	MSR_C4_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-box 4 perfmon counter MSR.
D32H	3378	MSR_C4_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	Package	Uncore C-box 4 perfmon event select MSR.
D33H	3379	MSR_C4_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-box 4 perfmon counter MSR.
D34H	3380	MSR_C4_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	Package	Uncore C-box 4 perfmon event select MSR.
D35H	3381	MSR_C4_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-box 4 perfmon counter MSR.

Table 2-16. Additional MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor 7500 Series (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
D36H	3382	MSR_C4_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	Package	Uncore C-box 4 perfmon event select MSR.
D37H	3383	MSR_C4_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-box 4 perfmon counter MSR.
D38H	3384	MSR_C4_PMON_EVNT_SEL4	Package	Uncore C-box 4 perfmon event select MSR.
D39H	3385	MSR_C4_PMON_CTR4	Package	Uncore C-box 4 perfmon counter MSR.
D3AH	3386	MSR_C4_PMON_EVNT_SEL5	Package	Uncore C-box 4 perfmon event select MSR.
D3BH	3387	MSR_C4_PMON_CTR5	Package	Uncore C-box 4 perfmon counter MSR.
D40H	3392	MSR_C2_PMON_BOX_CTRL	Package	Uncore C-box 2 perfmon local box control MSR.
D41H	3393	MSR_C2_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-box 2 perfmon local box status MSR.
D42H	3394	MSR_C2_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	Package	Uncore C-box 2 perfmon local box overflow control MSR.
D50H	3408	MSR_C2_PMON_EVNT_SELO	Package	Uncore C-box 2 perfmon event select MSR.
D51H	3409	MSR_C2_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-box 2 perfmon counter MSR.
D52H	3410	MSR_C2_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	Package	Uncore C-box 2 perfmon event select MSR.
D53H	3411	MSR_C2_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-box 2 perfmon counter MSR.
D54H	3412	MSR_C2_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	Package	Uncore C-box 2 perfmon event select MSR.
D55H	3413	MSR_C2_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-box 2 perfmon counter MSR.
D56H	3414	MSR_C2_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	Package	Uncore C-box 2 perfmon event select MSR.
D57H	3415	MSR_C2_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-box 2 perfmon counter MSR.
D58H	3416	MSR_C2_PMON_EVNT_SEL4	Package	Uncore C-box 2 perfmon event select MSR.
D59H	3417	MSR_C2_PMON_CTR4	Package	Uncore C-box 2 perfmon counter MSR.
D5AH	3418	MSR_C2_PMON_EVNT_SEL5	Package	Uncore C-box 2 perfmon event select MSR.
D5BH	3419	MSR_C2_PMON_CTR5	Package	Uncore C-box 2 perfmon counter MSR.
D60H	3424	MSR_C6_PMON_BOX_CTRL	Package	Uncore C-box 6 perfmon local box control MSR.
D61H	3425	MSR_C6_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-box 6 perfmon local box status MSR.
D62H	3426	MSR_C6_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	Package	Uncore C-box 6 perfmon local box overflow control MSR.
D70H	3440	MSR_C6_PMON_EVNT_SELO	Package	Uncore C-box 6 perfmon event select MSR.

Table 2-16. Additional MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor 7500 Series (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
D71H	3441	MSR_C6_PMON_CTRL0	Package	Uncore C-box 6 perfmon counter MSR.
D72H	3442	MSR_C6_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	Package	Uncore C-box 6 perfmon event select MSR.
D73H	3443	MSR_C6_PMON_CTRL1	Package	Uncore C-box 6 perfmon counter MSR.
D74H	3444	MSR_C6_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	Package	Uncore C-box 6 perfmon event select MSR.
D75H	3445	MSR_C6_PMON_CTRL2	Package	Uncore C-box 6 perfmon counter MSR.
D76H	3446	MSR_C6_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	Package	Uncore C-box 6 perfmon event select MSR.
D77H	3447	MSR_C6_PMON_CTRL3	Package	Uncore C-box 6 perfmon counter MSR.
D78H	3448	MSR_C6_PMON_EVNT_SEL4	Package	Uncore C-box 6 perfmon event select MSR.
D79H	3449	MSR_C6_PMON_CTRL4	Package	Uncore C-box 6 perfmon counter MSR.
D7AH	3450	MSR_C6_PMON_EVNT_SEL5	Package	Uncore C-box 6 perfmon event select MSR.
D7BH	3451	MSR_C6_PMON_CTRL5	Package	Uncore C-box 6 perfmon counter MSR.
D80H	3456	MSR_C1_PMON_BOX_CTRL	Package	Uncore C-box 1 perfmon local box control MSR.
D81H	3457	MSR_C1_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-box 1 perfmon local box status MSR.
D82H	3458	MSR_C1_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	Package	Uncore C-box 1 perfmon local box overflow control MSR.
D90H	3472	MSR_C1_PMON_EVNT_SELO	Package	Uncore C-box 1 perfmon event select MSR.
D91H	3473	MSR_C1_PMON_CTRL0	Package	Uncore C-box 1 perfmon counter MSR.
D92H	3474	MSR_C1_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	Package	Uncore C-box 1 perfmon event select MSR.
D93H	3475	MSR_C1_PMON_CTRL1	Package	Uncore C-box 1 perfmon counter MSR.
D94H	3476	MSR_C1_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	Package	Uncore C-box 1 perfmon event select MSR.
D95H	3477	MSR_C1_PMON_CTRL2	Package	Uncore C-box 1 perfmon counter MSR.
D96H	3478	MSR_C1_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	Package	Uncore C-box 1 perfmon event select MSR.
D97H	3479	MSR_C1_PMON_CTRL3	Package	Uncore C-box 1 perfmon counter MSR.
D98H	3480	MSR_C1_PMON_EVNT_SEL4	Package	Uncore C-box 1 perfmon event select MSR.
D99H	3481	MSR_C1_PMON_CTRL4	Package	Uncore C-box 1 perfmon counter MSR.
D9AH	3482	MSR_C1_PMON_EVNT_SEL5	Package	Uncore C-box 1 perfmon event select MSR.
D9BH	3483	MSR_C1_PMON_CTRL5	Package	Uncore C-box 1 perfmon counter MSR.

Table 2-16. Additional MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor 7500 Series (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
DA0H	3488	MSR_C5_PMON_BOX_CTRL	Package	Uncore C-box 5 perfmon local box control MSR.
DA1H	3489	MSR_C5_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-box 5 perfmon local box status MSR.
DA2H	3490	MSR_C5_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	Package	Uncore C-box 5 perfmon local box overflow control MSR.
DB0H	3504	MSR_C5_PMON_EVNT_SELO	Package	Uncore C-box 5 perfmon event select MSR.
DB1H	3505	MSR_C5_PMON_CTRL0	Package	Uncore C-box 5 perfmon counter MSR.
DB2H	3506	MSR_C5_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	Package	Uncore C-box 5 perfmon event select MSR.
DB3H	3507	MSR_C5_PMON_CTRL1	Package	Uncore C-box 5 perfmon counter MSR.
DB4H	3508	MSR_C5_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	Package	Uncore C-box 5 perfmon event select MSR.
DB5H	3509	MSR_C5_PMON_CTRL2	Package	Uncore C-box 5 perfmon counter MSR.
DB6H	3510	MSR_C5_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	Package	Uncore C-box 5 perfmon event select MSR.
DB7H	3511	MSR_C5_PMON_CTRL3	Package	Uncore C-box 5 perfmon counter MSR.
DB8H	3512	MSR_C5_PMON_EVNT_SEL4	Package	Uncore C-box 5 perfmon event select MSR.
DB9H	3513	MSR_C5_PMON_CTRL4	Package	Uncore C-box 5 perfmon counter MSR.
DBAH	3514	MSR_C5_PMON_EVNT_SEL5	Package	Uncore C-box 5 perfmon event select MSR.
DBBH	3515	MSR_C5_PMON_CTRL5	Package	Uncore C-box 5 perfmon counter MSR.
DC0H	3520	MSR_C3_PMON_BOX_CTRL	Package	Uncore C-box 3 perfmon local box control MSR.
DC1H	3521	MSR_C3_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-box 3 perfmon local box status MSR.
DC2H	3522	MSR_C3_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	Package	Uncore C-box 3 perfmon local box overflow control MSR.
DD0H	3536	MSR_C3_PMON_EVNT_SELO	Package	Uncore C-box 3 perfmon event select MSR.
DD1H	3537	MSR_C3_PMON_CTRL0	Package	Uncore C-box 3 perfmon counter MSR.
DD2H	3538	MSR_C3_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	Package	Uncore C-box 3 perfmon event select MSR.
DD3H	3539	MSR_C3_PMON_CTRL1	Package	Uncore C-box 3 perfmon counter MSR.
DD4H	3540	MSR_C3_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	Package	Uncore C-box 3 perfmon event select MSR.
DD5H	3541	MSR_C3_PMON_CTRL2	Package	Uncore C-box 3 perfmon counter MSR.
DD6H	3542	MSR_C3_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	Package	Uncore C-box 3 perfmon event select MSR.

Table 2-16. Additional MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor 7500 Series (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
DD7H	3543	MSR_C3_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-box 3 perfmon counter MSR.
DD8H	3544	MSR_C3_PMON_EVNT_SEL4	Package	Uncore C-box 3 perfmon event select MSR.
DD9H	3545	MSR_C3_PMON_CTR4	Package	Uncore C-box 3 perfmon counter MSR.
DDAH	3546	MSR_C3_PMON_EVNT_SEL5	Package	Uncore C-box 3 perfmon event select MSR.
DDBH	3547	MSR_C3_PMON_CTR5	Package	Uncore C-box 3 perfmon counter MSR.
DE0H	3552	MSR_C7_PMON_BOX_CTRL	Package	Uncore C-box 7 perfmon local box control MSR.
DE1H	3553	MSR_C7_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-box 7 perfmon local box status MSR.
DE2H	3554	MSR_C7_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	Package	Uncore C-box 7 perfmon local box overflow control MSR.
DF0H	3568	MSR_C7_PMON_EVNT_SELO	Package	Uncore C-box 7 perfmon event select MSR.
DF1H	3569	MSR_C7_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-box 7 perfmon counter MSR.
DF2H	3570	MSR_C7_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	Package	Uncore C-box 7 perfmon event select MSR.
DF3H	3571	MSR_C7_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-box 7 perfmon counter MSR.
DF4H	3572	MSR_C7_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	Package	Uncore C-box 7 perfmon event select MSR.
DF5H	3573	MSR_C7_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-box 7 perfmon counter MSR.
DF6H	3574	MSR_C7_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	Package	Uncore C-box 7 perfmon event select MSR.
DF7H	3575	MSR_C7_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-box 7 perfmon counter MSR.
DF8H	3576	MSR_C7_PMON_EVNT_SEL4	Package	Uncore C-box 7 perfmon event select MSR.
DF9H	3577	MSR_C7_PMON_CTR4	Package	Uncore C-box 7 perfmon counter MSR.
DFAH	3578	MSR_C7_PMON_EVNT_SEL5	Package	Uncore C-box 7 perfmon event select MSR.
DFBH	3579	MSR_C7_PMON_CTR5	Package	Uncore C-box 7 perfmon counter MSR.
E00H	3584	MSR_R0_PMON_BOX_CTRL	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon local box control MSR.
E01H	3585	MSR_R0_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon local box status MSR.
E02H	3586	MSR_R0_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon local box overflow control MSR.
E04H	3588	MSR_R0_PMON_IPERFO_P0	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon IPERFO unit Port 0 select MSR.
E05H	3589	MSR_R0_PMON_IPERFO_P1	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon IPERFO unit Port 1 select MSR.

Table 2-16. Additional MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor 7500 Series (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
E06H	3590	MSR_R0_PMON_IPERF0_P2	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon IPERF0 unit Port 2 select MSR.
E07H	3591	MSR_R0_PMON_IPERF0_P3	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon IPERF0 unit Port 3 select MSR.
E08H	3592	MSR_R0_PMON_IPERF0_P4	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon IPERF0 unit Port 4 select MSR.
E09H	3593	MSR_R0_PMON_IPERF0_P5	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon IPERF0 unit Port 5 select MSR.
E0AH	3594	MSR_R0_PMON_IPERF0_P6	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon IPERF0 unit Port 6 select MSR.
E0BH	3595	MSR_R0_PMON_IPERF0_P7	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon IPERF0 unit Port 7 select MSR.
E0CH	3596	MSR_R0_PMON_QLX_P0	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon QLX unit Port 0 select MSR.
E0DH	3597	MSR_R0_PMON_QLX_P1	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon QLX unit Port 1 select MSR.
E0EH	3598	MSR_R0_PMON_QLX_P2	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon QLX unit Port 2 select MSR.
E0FH	3599	MSR_R0_PMON_QLX_P3	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon QLX unit Port 3 select MSR.
E10H	3600	MSR_R0_PMON_EVNT_SEL0	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon event select MSR.
E11H	3601	MSR_R0_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon counter MSR.
E12H	3602	MSR_R0_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon event select MSR.
E13H	3603	MSR_R0_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon counter MSR.
E14H	3604	MSR_R0_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon event select MSR.
E15H	3605	MSR_R0_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon counter MSR.
E16H	3606	MSR_R0_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon event select MSR.
E17H	3607	MSR_R0_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon counter MSR.
E18H	3608	MSR_R0_PMON_EVNT_SEL4	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon event select MSR.
E19H	3609	MSR_R0_PMON_CTR4	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon counter MSR.
E1AH	3610	MSR_R0_PMON_EVNT_SEL5	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon event select MSR.
E1BH	3611	MSR_R0_PMON_CTR5	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon counter MSR.
E1CH	3612	MSR_R0_PMON_EVNT_SEL6	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon event select MSR.
E1DH	3613	MSR_R0_PMON_CTR6	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon counter MSR.
E1EH	3614	MSR_R0_PMON_EVNT_SEL7	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon event select MSR.
E1FH	3615	MSR_R0_PMON_CTR7	Package	Uncore R-box 0 perfmon counter MSR.

Table 2-16. Additional MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor 7500 Series (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
E20H	3616	MSR_R1_PMON_BOX_CTRL	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon local box control MSR.
E21H	3617	MSR_R1_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon local box status MSR.
E22H	3618	MSR_R1_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon local box overflow control MSR.
E24H	3620	MSR_R1_PMON_IPERF1_P8	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon IPERF1 unit Port 8 select MSR.
E25H	3621	MSR_R1_PMON_IPERF1_P9	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon IPERF1 unit Port 9 select MSR.
E26H	3622	MSR_R1_PMON_IPERF1_P10	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon IPERF1 unit Port 10 select MSR.
E27H	3623	MSR_R1_PMON_IPERF1_P11	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon IPERF1 unit Port 11 select MSR.
E28H	3624	MSR_R1_PMON_IPERF1_P12	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon IPERF1 unit Port 12 select MSR.
E29H	3625	MSR_R1_PMON_IPERF1_P13	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon IPERF1 unit Port 13 select MSR.
E2AH	3626	MSR_R1_PMON_IPERF1_P14	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon IPERF1 unit Port 14 select MSR.
E2BH	3627	MSR_R1_PMON_IPERF1_P15	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon IPERF1 unit Port 15 select MSR.
E2CH	3628	MSR_R1_PMON_QLX_P4	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon QLX unit Port 4 select MSR.
E2DH	3629	MSR_R1_PMON_QLX_P5	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon QLX unit Port 5 select MSR.
E2EH	3630	MSR_R1_PMON_QLX_P6	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon QLX unit Port 6 select MSR.
E2FH	3631	MSR_R1_PMON_QLX_P7	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon QLX unit Port 7 select MSR.
E30H	3632	MSR_R1_PMON_EVNT_SEL8	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon event select MSR.
E31H	3633	MSR_R1_PMON_CTR8	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon counter MSR.
E32H	3634	MSR_R1_PMON_EVNT_SEL9	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon event select MSR.
E33H	3635	MSR_R1_PMON_CTR9	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon counter MSR.
E34H	3636	MSR_R1_PMON_EVNT_SEL10	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon event select MSR.
E35H	3637	MSR_R1_PMON_CTR10	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon counter MSR.
E36H	3638	MSR_R1_PMON_EVNT_SEL11	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon event select MSR.
E37H	3639	MSR_R1_PMON_CTR11	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon counter MSR.
E38H	3640	MSR_R1_PMON_EVNT_SEL12	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon event select MSR.
E39H	3641	MSR_R1_PMON_CTR12	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon counter MSR.

Table 2-16. Additional MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor 7500 Series (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
E3AH	3642	MSR_R1_PMON_EVNT_SEL13	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon event select MSR.
E3BH	3643	MSR_R1_PMON_CTR13	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon counter MSR.
E3CH	3644	MSR_R1_PMON_EVNT_SEL14	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon event select MSR.
E3DH	3645	MSR_R1_PMON_CTR14	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon counter MSR.
E3EH	3646	MSR_R1_PMON_EVNT_SEL15	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon event select MSR.
E3FH	3647	MSR_R1_PMON_CTR15	Package	Uncore R-box 1 perfmon counter MSR.
E45H	3653	MSR_B0_PMON_MATCH	Package	Uncore B-box 0 perfmon local box match MSR.
E46H	3654	MSR_B0_PMON_MASK	Package	Uncore B-box 0 perfmon local box mask MSR.
E49H	3657	MSR_S0_PMON_MATCH	Package	Uncore S-box 0 perfmon local box match MSR.
E4AH	3658	MSR_S0_PMON_MASK	Package	Uncore S-box 0 perfmon local box mask MSR.
E4DH	3661	MSR_B1_PMON_MATCH	Package	Uncore B-box 1 perfmon local box match MSR.
E4EH	3662	MSR_B1_PMON_MASK	Package	Uncore B-box 1 perfmon local box mask MSR.
E54H	3668	MSR_M0_PMON_MM_CONFIG	Package	Uncore M-box 0 perfmon local box address match/mask config MSR.
E55H	3669	MSR_M0_PMON_ADDR_MATCH	Package	Uncore M-box 0 perfmon local box address match MSR.
E56H	3670	MSR_M0_PMON_ADDR_MASK	Package	Uncore M-box 0 perfmon local box address mask MSR.
E59H	3673	MSR_S1_PMON_MATCH	Package	Uncore S-box 1 perfmon local box match MSR.
E5AH	3674	MSR_S1_PMON_MASK	Package	Uncore S-box 1 perfmon local box mask MSR.
E5CH	3676	MSR_M1_PMON_MM_CONFIG	Package	Uncore M-box 1 perfmon local box address match/mask config MSR.
E5DH	3677	MSR_M1_PMON_ADDR_MATCH	Package	Uncore M-box 1 perfmon local box address match MSR.
E5EH	3678	MSR_M1_PMON_ADDR_MASK	Package	Uncore M-box 1 perfmon local box address mask MSR.
3B5H	965	MSR_UNCORE_PMC5	Package	See Section 18.3.1.2.2, "Uncore Performance Event Configuration Facility."

2.8 MSRS IN THE INTEL® XEON® PROCESSOR 5600 SERIES (BASED ON INTEL® MICROARCHITECTURE CODE NAME WESTMERE)

Intel® Xeon® Processor 5600 Series (based on Intel® microarchitecture code name Westmere) supports the MSR interfaces listed in Table 2-14, Table 2-15, plus additional MSR listed in Table 2-17. These MSRs apply to Intel Core i7, i5 and i3 processor family with CPUID signature DisplayFamily_DisplayModel of 06_25H and 06_2CH, see Table 2-1.

**Table 2-17. Additional MSRs Supported by Intel Processors
(Based on Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Westmere)**

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
13CH	52	MSR_FEATURE_CONFIG	Core	AES Configuration (RW-L) Privileged post-BIOS agent must provide a #GP handler to handle unsuccessful read of this MSR.
		1:0		AES Configuration (RW-L) Upon a successful read of this MSR, the configuration of AES instruction set availability is as follows: 11b: AES instructions are not available until next RESET. Otherwise, AES instructions are available. Note, AES instruction set is not available if read is unsuccessful. If the configuration is not 01b, AES instructions can be mis-configured if a privileged agent unintentionally writes 11b.
		63:2		Reserved
1A7H	423	MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_1	Thread	Offcore Response Event Select Register (R/W)
1ADH	429	MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit of Turbo Mode RO if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 0. RW if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 1.
		7:0	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 1C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 1 core active.
		15:8	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 2C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 2 core active.
		23:16	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 3C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 3 core active.
		31:24	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 4C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 4 core active.
		39:32	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 5C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 5 core active.
		47:40	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 6C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 6 core active.
		63:48		Reserved
1B0H	432	IA32_ENERGY_PERF_BIAS	Package	See Table 2-2.

2.9 MSRS IN THE INTEL® XEON® PROCESSOR E7 FAMILY (BASED ON INTEL® MICROARCHITECTURE CODE NAME WESTMERE)

Intel® Xeon® Processor E7 Family (based on Intel® microarchitecture code name Westmere) supports the MSR interfaces listed in Table 2-14 (except MSR address 1ADH), Table 2-15, plus additional MSR listed in Table 2-18. These processors have a CPUID signature with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel of 06_2FH.

Table 2-18. Additional MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor E7 Family

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
13CH	52	MSR_FEATURE_CONFIG	Core	AES Configuration (RW-L) Privileged post-BIOS agent must provide a #GP handler to handle unsuccessful read of this MSR.
		1:0		AES Configuration (RW-L) Upon a successful read of this MSR, the configuration of AES instruction set availability is as follows: 11b: AES instructions are not available until next RESET. Otherwise, AES instructions are available. Note, AES instruction set is not available if read is unsuccessful. If the configuration is not 01b, AES instructions can be mis-configured if a privileged agent unintentionally writes 11b.
		63:2		Reserved
1A7H	423	MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_1	Thread	Offcore Response Event Select Register (R/W)
1ADH	429	MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT	Package	Reserved Attempt to read/write will cause #UD.
1B0H	432	IA32_ENERGY_PERF_BIAS	Package	See Table 2-2.
F40H	3904	MSR_C8_PMON_BOX_CTRL	Package	Uncore C-box 8 perfmon local box control MSR.
F41H	3905	MSR_C8_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-box 8 perfmon local box status MSR.
F42H	3906	MSR_C8_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	Package	Uncore C-box 8 perfmon local box overflow control MSR.
F50H	3920	MSR_C8_PMON_EVNT_SELO	Package	Uncore C-box 8 perfmon event select MSR.
F51H	3921	MSR_C8_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-box 8 perfmon counter MSR.
F52H	3922	MSR_C8_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	Package	Uncore C-box 8 perfmon event select MSR.
F53H	3923	MSR_C8_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-box 8 perfmon counter MSR.
F54H	3924	MSR_C8_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	Package	Uncore C-box 8 perfmon event select MSR.
F55H	3925	MSR_C8_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-box 8 perfmon counter MSR.
F56H	3926	MSR_C8_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	Package	Uncore C-box 8 perfmon event select MSR.
F57H	3927	MSR_C8_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-box 8 perfmon counter MSR.
F58H	3928	MSR_C8_PMON_EVNT_SEL4	Package	Uncore C-box 8 perfmon event select MSR.
F59H	3929	MSR_C8_PMON_CTR4	Package	Uncore C-box 8 perfmon counter MSR.
F5AH	3930	MSR_C8_PMON_EVNT_SEL5	Package	Uncore C-box 8 perfmon event select MSR.
F5BH	3931	MSR_C8_PMON_CTR5	Package	Uncore C-box 8 perfmon counter MSR.

Table 2-18. Additional MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor E7 Family (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
FC0H	4032	MSR_C9_PMON_BOX_CTRL	Package	Uncore C-box 9 perfmon local box control MSR.
FC1H	4033	MSR_C9_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-box 9 perfmon local box status MSR.
FC2H	4034	MSR_C9_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	Package	Uncore C-box 9 perfmon local box overflow control MSR.
FD0H	4048	MSR_C9_PMON_EVNT_SELO	Package	Uncore C-box 9 perfmon event select MSR.
FD1H	4049	MSR_C9_PMON_CTRL0	Package	Uncore C-box 9 perfmon counter MSR.
FD2H	4050	MSR_C9_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	Package	Uncore C-box 9 perfmon event select MSR.
FD3H	4051	MSR_C9_PMON_CTRL1	Package	Uncore C-box 9 perfmon counter MSR.
FD4H	4052	MSR_C9_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	Package	Uncore C-box 9 perfmon event select MSR.
FD5H	4053	MSR_C9_PMON_CTRL2	Package	Uncore C-box 9 perfmon counter MSR.
FD6H	4054	MSR_C9_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	Package	Uncore C-box 9 perfmon event select MSR.
FD7H	4055	MSR_C9_PMON_CTRL3	Package	Uncore C-box 9 perfmon counter MSR.
FD8H	4056	MSR_C9_PMON_EVNT_SEL4	Package	Uncore C-box 9 perfmon event select MSR.
FD9H	4057	MSR_C9_PMON_CTRL4	Package	Uncore C-box 9 perfmon counter MSR.
FDAH	4058	MSR_C9_PMON_EVNT_SEL5	Package	Uncore C-box 9 perfmon event select MSR.
FDBH	4059	MSR_C9_PMON_CTRL5	Package	Uncore C-box 9 perfmon counter MSR.

2.10 MSRS IN INTEL® PROCESSOR FAMILY BASED ON INTEL® MICROARCHITECTURE CODE NAME SANDY BRIDGE

Table 2-19 lists model-specific registers (MSRs) that are common to Intel® processor family based on Intel micro-architecture code name Sandy Bridge. These processors have a CPUID signature with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel of 06_2AH, 06_2DH, see Table 2-1. Additional MSRs specific to 06_2AH are listed in Table 2-20.

Table 2-19. MSRs Supported by Intel® Processors based on Intel® microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
0H	0	IA32_P5_MC_ADDR	Thread	See Section 2.22, “MSRs in Pentium Processors.”
1H	1	IA32_P5_MC_TYPE	Thread	See Section 2.22, “MSRs in Pentium Processors.”
6H	6	IA32_MONITOR_FILTER_SIZE	Thread	See Section 8.10.5, “Monitor/Mwait Address Range Determination” and Table 2-2.

**Table 2-19. MSRs Supported by Intel® Processors
based on Intel® microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge (Contd.)**

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
10H	16	IA32_TIME_STAMP_COUNTER	Thread	See Section 17.17, "Time-Stamp Counter" and see Table 2-2.
17H	23	IA32_PLATFORM_ID	Package	Platform ID (R) See Table 2-2.
1BH	27	IA32_APIC_BASE	Thread	See Section 10.4.4, "Local APIC Status and Location" and Table 2-2.
34H	52	MSR_SMI_COUNT	Thread	SMI Counter (R/O)
		31:0		SMI Count (R/O) Count SMIs.
		63:32		Reserved.
3AH	58	IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL	Thread	Control Features in Intel 64 Processor (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		0		Lock (R/WL)
		1		Enable VMX Inside SMX Operation (R/WL)
		2		Enable VMX Outside SMX Operation (R/WL)
		14:8		SENTER Local Functions Enables (R/WL)
15		SENTER Global Functions Enable (R/WL)		
79H	121	IA32_BIOS_UPDT_TRIG	Core	BIOS Update Trigger Register (W) See Table 2-2.
8BH	139	IA32_BIOS_SIGN_ID	Thread	BIOS Update Signature ID (RO) See Table 2-2.
C1H	193	IA32_PMC0	Thread	Performance Counter Register See Table 2-2.
C2H	194	IA32_PMC1	Thread	Performance Counter Register See Table 2-2.
C3H	195	IA32_PMC2	Thread	Performance Counter Register See Table 2-2.
C4H	196	IA32_PMC3	Thread	Performance Counter Register See Table 2-2.
C5H	197	IA32_PMC4	Core	Performance Counter Register (if core not shared by threads)
C6H	198	IA32_PMC5	Core	Performance Counter Register (if core not shared by threads)
C7H	199	IA32_PMC6	Core	Performance Counter Register (if core not shared by threads)
C8H	200	IA32_PMC7	Core	Performance Counter Register (if core not shared by threads)

**Table 2-19. MSRs Supported by Intel® Processors
based on Intel® microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge (Contd.)**

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
CEH	206	MSR_PLATFORM_INFO	Package	Platform Information Contains power management and other model specific features enumeration. See http://biosbits.org .
		7:0		Reserved
		15:8	Package	Maximum Non-Turbo Ratio (R/O) This is the ratio of the frequency that invariant TSC runs at. Frequency = ratio * 100 MHz.
		27:16		Reserved
		28	Package	Programmable Ratio Limit for Turbo Mode (R/O) When set to 1, indicates that Programmable Ratio Limit for Turbo mode is enabled. When set to 0, indicates Programmable Ratio Limit for Turbo mode is disabled.
		29	Package	Programmable TDP Limit for Turbo Mode (R/O) When set to 1, indicates that TDP Limit for Turbo mode is programmable. When set to 0, indicates TDP Limit for Turbo mode is not programmable.
		39:30		Reserved
		47:40	Package	Maximum Efficiency Ratio (R/O) This is the minimum ratio (maximum efficiency) that the processor can operate, in units of 100MHz.
		63:48		Reserved
E2H	226	MSR_PKG_CST_CONFIG_CONTROL	Core	C-State Configuration Control (R/W) Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States. See http://biosbits.org .
		2:0		Package C-State Limit (R/W) Specifies the lowest processor-specific C-state code name (consuming the least power) for the package. The default is set as factory-configured package C-state limit. The following C-state code name encodings are supported: 000b: C0/C1 (no package C-sate support) 001b: C2 010b: C6 no retention 011b: C6 retention 100b: C7 101b: C7s 111: No package C-state limit Note: This field cannot be used to limit package C-state to C3.
		9:3		Reserved

**Table 2-19. MSRs Supported by Intel® Processors
based on Intel® microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge (Contd.)**

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		10		I/O MWAIT Redirection Enable (R/W) When set, will map IO_read instructions sent to IO register specified by MSR_PMG_IO_CAPTURE_BASE to MWAIT instructions.
		14:11		Reserved
		15		CFG Lock (R/W0) When set, locks bits 15:0 of this register until next reset.
		24:16		Reserved
		25		C3 State Auto Demotion Enable (R/W) When set, the processor will conditionally demote C6/C7 requests to C3 based on uncore auto-demote information.
		26		C1 State Auto Demotion Enable (R/W) When set, the processor will conditionally demote C3/C6/C7 requests to C1 based on uncore auto-demote information.
		27		Enable C3 Undemotion (R/W) When set, enables undemotion from demoted C3.
		28		Enable C1 Undemotion (R/W) When set, enables undemotion from demoted C1.
		63:29		Reserved
E4H	228	MSR_PMG_IO_CAPTURE_BASE	Core	Power Management IO Redirection in C-state (R/W) See http://biosbits.org .
		15:0		LVL_2 Base Address (R/W) Specifies the base address visible to software for IO redirection. If IO MWAIT Redirection is enabled, reads to this address will be consumed by the power management logic and decoded to MWAIT instructions. When IO port address redirection is enabled, this is the IO port address reported to the OS/software.
		18:16		C-State Range (R/W) Specifies the encoding value of the maximum C-State code name to be included when IO read to MWAIT redirection is enabled by MSR_PKG_CST_CONFIG_CONTROL[bit10]: 000b - C3 is the max C-State to include. 001b - C6 is the max C-State to include. 010b - C7 is the max C-State to include.
		63:19		Reserved
E7H	231	IA32_MPERF	Thread	Maximum Performance Frequency Clock Count (RW) See Table 2-2.

**Table 2-19. MSRs Supported by Intel® Processors
based on Intel® microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge (Contd.)**

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
E8H	232	IA32_APERF	Thread	Actual Performance Frequency Clock Count (RW) See Table 2-2.
FEH	254	IA32_MTRRCAP	Thread	See Table 2-2.
13CH	52	MSR_FEATURE_CONFIG	Core	AES Configuration (RW-L) Privileged post-BIOS agent must provide a #GP handler to handle unsuccessful read of this MSR.
		1:0		AES Configuration (RW-L) Upon a successful read of this MSR, the configuration of AES instruction set availability is as follows: 11b: AES instructions are not available until next RESET. Otherwise, AES instructions are available. Note, AES instruction set is not available if read is unsuccessful. If the configuration is not 01b, AES instructions can be mis-configured if a privileged agent unintentionally writes 11b.
		63:2		Reserved
174H	372	IA32_SYSENTER_CS	Thread	See Table 2-2.
175H	373	IA32_SYSENTER_ESP	Thread	See Table 2-2.
176H	374	IA32_SYSENTER_EIP	Thread	See Table 2-2.
179H	377	IA32_MCG_CAP	Thread	See Table 2-2.
17AH	378	IA32_MCG_STATUS	Thread	Global Machine Check Status
		0		RIPV When set, bit indicates that the instruction addressed by the instruction pointer pushed on the stack (when the machine check was generated) can be used to restart the program. If cleared, the program cannot be reliably restarted.
		1		EIPV When set, bit indicates that the instruction addressed by the instruction pointer pushed on the stack (when the machine check was generated) is directly associated with the error.
		2		MCIP When set, bit indicates that a machine check has been generated. If a second machine check is detected while this bit is still set, the processor enters a shutdown state. Software should write this bit to 0 after processing a machine check exception.
63:3		Reserved		
186H	390	IA32_PERFVTSELO	Thread	See Table 2-2.
187H	391	IA32_PERFVTSEL1	Thread	See Table 2-2.

**Table 2-19. MSRs Supported by Intel® Processors
based on Intel® microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge (Contd.)**

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
188H	392	IA32_PERFEVTSEL2	Thread	See Table 2-2.
189H	393	IA32_PERFEVTSEL3	Thread	See Table 2-2.
18AH	394	IA32_PERFEVTSEL4	Core	See Table 2-2. If CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] = 8.
18BH	395	IA32_PERFEVTSEL5	Core	See Table 2-2. If CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] = 8.
18CH	396	IA32_PERFEVTSEL6	Core	See Table 2-2. If CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] = 8.
18DH	397	IA32_PERFEVTSEL7	Core	See Table 2-2. If CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] = 8.
198H	408	IA32_PERF_STATUS	Package	See Table 2-2.
		15:0		Current Performance State Value
		63:16		Reserved
198H	408	MSR_PERF_STATUS	Package	Performance Status
		47:32		Core Voltage (R/O) P-state core voltage can be computed by MSR_PERF_STATUS[37:32] * (float) 1/(2 ¹³).
199H	409	IA32_PERF_CTL	Thread	See Table 2-2.
19AH	410	IA32_CLOCK_MODULATION	Thread	Clock Modulation (R/W) See Table 2-2. IA32_CLOCK_MODULATION MSR was originally named IA32_THERM_CONTROL MSR.
		3:0		On demand Clock Modulation Duty Cycle (R/W) In 6.25% increment.
		4		On demand Clock Modulation Enable (R/W)
		63:5		Reserved
19BH	411	IA32_THERM_INTERRUPT	Core	Thermal Interrupt Control (R/W) See Table 2-2.
19CH	412	IA32_THERM_STATUS	Core	Thermal Monitor Status (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		0		Thermal Status (RO) See Table 2-2.
		1		Thermal Status Log (R/WCO) See Table 2-2.
		2		PROTCHOT # or FORCEPR# Status (RO) See Table 2-2.
		3		PROTCHOT # or FORCEPR# Log (R/WCO) See Table 2-2.
		4		Critical Temperature Status (RO) See Table 2-2.
		5		Critical Temperature Status Log (R/WCO) See Table 2-2.

**Table 2-19. MSRs Supported by Intel® Processors
based on Intel® microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge (Contd.)**

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		6		Thermal Threshold #1 Status (RO) See Table 2-2.
		7		Thermal Threshold #1 Log (R/WCO) See Table 2-2.
		8		Thermal Threshold #2 Status (RO) See Table 2-2.
		9		Thermal Threshold #2 Log (R/WCO) See Table 2-2.
		10		Power Limitation Status (RO) See Table 2-2.
		11		Power Limitation Log (R/WCO) See Table 2-2.
		15:12		Reserved
		22:16		Digital Readout (RO) See Table 2-2.
		26:23		Reserved
		30:27		Resolution in Degrees Celsius (RO) See Table 2-2.
		31		Reading Valid (RO) See Table 2-2.
		63:32		Reserved
1A0H	416	IA32_MISC_ENABLE		Enable Misc. Processor Features (R/W) Allows a variety of processor functions to be enabled and disabled.
		0	Thread	Fast-Strings Enable See Table 2-2
		6:1		Reserved
		7	Thread	Performance Monitoring Available (R) See Table 2-2.
		10:8		Reserved
		11	Thread	Branch Trace Storage Unavailable (RO) See Table 2-2.
		12	Thread	Processor Event Based Sampling Unavailable (RO) See Table 2-2.
		15:13		Reserved
		16	Package	Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology Enable (R/W) See Table 2-2.

**Table 2-19. MSRs Supported by Intel® Processors
based on Intel® microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge (Contd.)**

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		18	Thread	ENABLE MONITOR FSM (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		21:19		Reserved
		22	Thread	Limit CPUID Maxval (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		23	Thread	xTPR Message Disable (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		33:24		Reserved
		34	Thread	XD Bit Disable (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		37:35		Reserved
		38	Package	Turbo Mode Disable (R/W) When set to 1 on processors that support Intel Turbo Boost Technology, the turbo mode feature is disabled and the IDA_Enable feature flag will be clear (CPUID.06H: EAX[1]=0). When set to a 0 on processors that support IDA, CPUID.06H: EAX[1] reports the processor's support of turbo mode is enabled. Note: The power-on default value is used by BIOS to detect hardware support of turbo mode. If the power-on default value is 1, turbo mode is available in the processor. If the power-on default value is 0, turbo mode is not available.
		63:39		Reserved
1A2H	418	MSR_TEMPERATURE_TARGET	Unique	Temperature Target
		15:0		Reserved
		23:16		Temperature Target (R) The minimum temperature at which PROCHOT# will be asserted. The value is degrees C.
		63:24		Reserved
1A4H	420	MSR_MISC_FEATURE_CONTROL		Miscellaneous Feature Control (R/W)
		0	Core	L2 Hardware Prefetcher Disable (R/W) If 1, disables the L2 hardware prefetcher, which fetches additional lines of code or data into the L2 cache.
		1	Core	L2 Adjacent Cache Line Prefetcher Disable (R/W) If 1, disables the adjacent cache line prefetcher, which fetches the cache line that comprises a cache line pair (128 bytes).

**Table 2-19. MSRs Supported by Intel® Processors
based on Intel® microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge (Contd.)**

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		2	Core	DCU Hardware Prefetcher Disable (R/W) If 1, disables the L1 data cache prefetcher, which fetches the next cache line into L1 data cache.
		3	Core	DCU IP Prefetcher Disable (R/W) If 1, disables the L1 data cache IP prefetcher, which uses sequential load history (based on instruction pointer of previous loads) to determine whether to prefetch additional lines.
		63:4		Reserved
1A6H	422	MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_0	Thread	Offcore Response Event Select Register (R/W)
1A7H	422	MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_1	Thread	Offcore Response Event Select Register (R/W)
1AAH	426	MSR_MISC_PWR_MGMT		Miscellaneous Power Management Control Various model specific features enumeration. See http://biosbits.org .
1BOH	432	IA32_ENERGY_PERF_BIAS	Package	See Table 2-2.
1B1H	433	IA32_PACKAGE_THERM_STATUS	Package	See Table 2-2.
1B2H	434	IA32_PACKAGE_THERM_INTERRUPT	Package	See Table 2-2.
1C8H	456	MSR_LBR_SELECT	Thread	Last Branch Record Filtering Select Register (R/W) See Section 17.9.2, "Filtering of Last Branch Records."
		0		CPL_EQ_0
		1		CPL_NEQ_0
		2		JCC
		3		NEAR_REL_CALL
		4		NEAR_IND_CALL
		5		NEAR_RET
		6		NEAR_IND_JMP
		7		NEAR_REL_JMP
		8		FAR_BRANCH
63:9		Reserved		
1C9H	457	MSR_LASTBRANCH_TOS	Thread	Last Branch Record Stack TOS (R/W) Contains an index (bits 0-3) that points to the MSR containing the most recent branch record. See MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP (at 680H).
1D9H	473	IA32_DEBUGCTL	Thread	Debug Control (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		0		LBR: Last Branch Record
		1		BTF
		5:2		Reserved
		6		TR: Branch Trace

**Table 2-19. MSRs Supported by Intel® Processors
based on Intel® microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge (Contd.)**

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		7		BTS: Log Branch Trace Message to BTS buffer
		8		BTINT
		9		BTS_OFF_OS
		10		BTS_OFF_USER
		11		FREEZE_LBR_ON_PMI
		12		FREEZE_PERFMON_ON_PMI
		13		ENABLE_UNCORE_PMI
		14		FREEZE_WHILE_SMM
		63:15		Reserved
1DDH	477	MSR_LER_FROM_LIP	Thread	Last Exception Record From Linear IP (R/W) Contains a pointer to the last branch instruction that the processor executed prior to the last exception that was generated or the last interrupt that was handled.
1DEH	478	MSR_LER_TO_LIP	Thread	Last Exception Record To Linear IP (R/W) This area contains a pointer to the target of the last branch instruction that the processor executed prior to the last exception that was generated or the last interrupt that was handled.
1F2H	498	IA32_SMRR_PHYSBASE	Core	See Table 2-2.
1F3H	499	IA32_SMRR_PHYSMASK	Core	See Table 2-2.
1FCH	508	MSR_POWER_CTL	Core	See http://biosbits.org .
200H	512	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE0	Thread	See Table 2-2.
201H	513	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK0	Thread	See Table 2-2.
202H	514	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE1	Thread	See Table 2-2.
203H	515	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK1	Thread	See Table 2-2.
204H	516	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE2	Thread	See Table 2-2.
205H	517	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK2	Thread	See Table 2-2.
206H	518	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE3	Thread	See Table 2-2.
207H	519	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK3	Thread	See Table 2-2.
208H	520	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE4	Thread	See Table 2-2.
209H	521	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK4	Thread	See Table 2-2.
20AH	522	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE5	Thread	See Table 2-2.
20BH	523	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK5	Thread	See Table 2-2.
20CH	524	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE6	Thread	See Table 2-2.
20DH	525	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK6	Thread	See Table 2-2.
20EH	526	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE7	Thread	See Table 2-2.

**Table 2-19. MSRs Supported by Intel® Processors
based on Intel® microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge (Contd.)**

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
20FH	527	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK7	Thread	See Table 2-2.
210H	528	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE8	Thread	See Table 2-2.
211H	529	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK8	Thread	See Table 2-2.
212H	530	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE9	Thread	See Table 2-2.
213H	531	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK9	Thread	See Table 2-2.
250H	592	IA32_MTRR_FIX64K_00000	Thread	See Table 2-2.
258H	600	IA32_MTRR_FIX16K_80000	Thread	See Table 2-2.
259H	601	IA32_MTRR_FIX16K_A0000	Thread	See Table 2-2.
268H	616	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_C0000	Thread	See Table 2-2.
269H	617	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_C8000	Thread	See Table 2-2.
26AH	618	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_D0000	Thread	See Table 2-2.
26BH	619	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_D8000	Thread	See Table 2-2.
26CH	620	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_E0000	Thread	See Table 2-2.
26DH	621	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_E8000	Thread	See Table 2-2.
26EH	622	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_F0000	Thread	See Table 2-2.
26FH	623	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_F8000	Thread	See Table 2-2.
277H	631	IA32_PAT	Thread	See Table 2-2.
280H	640	IA32_MC0_CTL2	Core	See Table 2-2.
281H	641	IA32_MC1_CTL2	Core	See Table 2-2.
282H	642	IA32_MC2_CTL2	Core	See Table 2-2.
283H	643	IA32_MC3_CTL2	Core	See Table 2-2.
284H	644	IA32_MC4_CTL2	Package	Always 0 (CMCI not supported).
2FFH	767	IA32_MTRR_DEF_TYPE	Thread	Default Memory Types (R/W) See Table 2-2.
309H	777	IA32_FIXED_CTR0	Thread	Fixed-Function Performance Counter Register 0 (R/W) See Table 2-2.
30AH	778	IA32_FIXED_CTR1	Thread	Fixed-Function Performance Counter Register 1 (R/W) See Table 2-2.
30BH	779	IA32_FIXED_CTR2	Thread	Fixed-Function Performance Counter Register 2 (R/W) See Table 2-2.
345H	837	IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES	Thread	See Table 2-2. See Section 17.4.1, "IA32_DEBUGCTL MSR."
		5:0		LBR Format See Table 2-2.
		6		PEBS Record Format.

**Table 2-19. MSRs Supported by Intel® Processors
based on Intel® microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge (Contd.)**

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		7		PEBSSaveArchRegs See Table 2-2.
		11:8		PEBS_REC_FORMAT See Table 2-2.
		12		SMM_FREEZE See Table 2-2.
		63:13		Reserved
38DH	909	IA32_FIXED_CTR_CTRL	Thread	Fixed-Function-Counter Control Register (R/W) See Table 2-2.
38EH	910	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS		See Table 2-2. See Section 18.6.2.2, "Global Counter Control Facilities."
		0	Thread	Ovf_PMC0
		1	Thread	Ovf_PMC1
		2	Thread	Ovf_PMC2
		3	Thread	Ovf_PMC3
		4	Core	Ovf_PMC4 (if CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] > 4)
		5	Core	Ovf_PMC5 (if CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] > 5)
		6	Core	Ovf_PMC6 (if CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] > 6)
		7	Core	Ovf_PMC7 (if CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] > 7)
		31:8		Reserved
		32	Thread	Ovf_FixedCtr0
		33	Thread	Ovf_FixedCtr1
		34	Thread	Ovf_FixedCtr2
		60:35		Reserved
		61	Thread	Ovf_Uncore
		62	Thread	Ovf_BufDSSAVE
63	Thread	CondChgd		
38FH	911	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL	Thread	See Table 2-2. See Section 18.6.2.2, "Global Counter Control Facilities."
		0	Thread	Set 1 to enable PMC0 to count.
		1	Thread	Set 1 to enable PMC1 to count.
		2	Thread	Set 1 to enable PMC2 to count.
		3	Thread	Set 1 to enable PMC3 to count.
		4	Core	Set 1 to enable PMC4 to count (if CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] > 4).
		5	Core	Set 1 to enable PMC5 to count (if CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] > 5).

**Table 2-19. MSRs Supported by Intel® Processors
based on Intel® microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge (Contd.)**

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		6	Core	Set 1 to enable PMC6 to count (if CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] > 6).
		7	Core	Set 1 to enable PMC7 to count (if CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] > 7).
		31:8		Reserved
		32	Thread	Set 1 to enable FixedCtr0 to count.
		33	Thread	Set 1 to enable FixedCtr1 to count.
		34	Thread	Set 1 to enable FixedCtr2 to count.
		63:35		Reserved
390H	912	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL		See Table 2-2. See Section 18.6.2.2, "Global Counter Control Facilities."
		0	Thread	Set 1 to clear Ovf_PMC0.
		1	Thread	Set 1 to clear Ovf_PMC1.
		2	Thread	Set 1 to clear Ovf_PMC2.
		3	Thread	Set 1 to clear Ovf_PMC3.
		4	Core	Set 1 to clear Ovf_PMC4 (if CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] > 4).
		5	Core	Set 1 to clear Ovf_PMC5 (if CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] > 5).
		6	Core	Set 1 to clear Ovf_PMC6 (if CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] > 6).
		7	Core	Set 1 to clear Ovf_PMC7 (if CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] > 7).
		31:8		Reserved
		32	Thread	Set 1 to clear Ovf_FixedCtr0.
		33	Thread	Set 1 to clear Ovf_FixedCtr1.
		34	Thread	Set 1 to clear Ovf_FixedCtr2.
		60:35		Reserved
		3F1H	1009	MSR_PEBS_ENABLE
0				Enable PEBS on IA32_PMC0. (R/W)
1				Enable PEBS on IA32_PMC1. (R/W)
2				Enable PEBS on IA32_PMC2. (R/W)
3				Enable PEBS on IA32_PMC3. (R/W)
31:4				Reserved
32				Enable Load Latency on IA32_PMC0. (R/W)
33				Enable Load Latency on IA32_PMC1. (R/W)
34		Enable Load Latency on IA32_PMC2. (R/W)		

**Table 2-19. MSRs Supported by Intel® Processors
based on Intel® microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge (Contd.)**

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		35		Enable Load Latency on IA32_PMC3. (R/W)
		62:36		Reserved
		63		Enable Precise Store (R/W)
3F6H	1014	MSR_PEBS_LD_LAT	Thread	See Section 18.3.1.1.2, "Load Latency Performance Monitoring Facility."
		15:0		Minimum threshold latency value of tagged load operation that will be counted. (R/W)
		63:36		Reserved
3F8H	1016	MSR_PKG_C3_RESIDENCY	Package	Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.
		63:0		Package C3 Residency Counter (R/O) Value since last reset that this package is in processor-specific C3 states. Count at the same frequency as the TSC.
3F9H	1017	MSR_PKG_C6_RESIDENCY	Package	Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.
		63:0		Package C6 Residency Counter. (R/O) Value since last reset that this package is in processor-specific C6 states. Count at the same frequency as the TSC.
3FAH	1018	MSR_PKG_C7_RESIDENCY	Package	Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.
		63:0		Package C7 Residency Counter (R/O) Value since last reset that this package is in processor-specific C7 states. Count at the same frequency as the TSC.
3FCH	1020	MSR_CORE_C3_RESIDENCY	Core	Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.
		63:0		CORE C3 Residency Counter (R/O) Value since last reset that this core is in processor-specific C3 states. Count at the same frequency as the TSC.
3FDH	1021	MSR_CORE_C6_RESIDENCY	Core	Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.
		63:0		CORE C6 Residency Counter (R/O) Value since last reset that this core is in processor-specific C6 states. Count at the same frequency as the TSC.

**Table 2-19. MSRs Supported by Intel® Processors
based on Intel® microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge (Contd.)**

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
3FEH	1022	MSR_CORE_C7_RESIDENCY	Core	Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.
		63:0		CORE C7 Residency Counter (R/O) Value since last reset that this core is in processor-specific C7 states. Count at the same frequency as the TSC.
400H	1024	IA32_MCO_CTL	Core	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
401H	1025	IA32_MCO_STATUS	Core	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS" and Chapter 16.
402H	1026	IA32_MCO_ADDR	Core	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
403H	1027	IA32_MCO_MISC	Core	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
404H	1028	IA32_MC1_CTL	Core	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
405H	1029	IA32_MC1_STATUS	Core	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS" and Chapter 16.
406H	1030	IA32_MC1_ADDR	Core	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
407H	1031	IA32_MC1_MISC	Core	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
408H	1032	IA32_MC2_CTL	Core	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
409H	1033	IA32_MC2_STATUS	Core	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS" and Chapter 16.
40AH	1034	IA32_MC2_ADDR	Core	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
40BH	1035	IA32_MC2_MISC	Core	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
40CH	1036	IA32_MC3_CTL	Core	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
40DH	1037	IA32_MC3_STATUS	Core	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS" and Chapter 16.
40EH	1038	IA32_MC3_ADDR	Core	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
40FH	1039	IA32_MC3_MISC	Core	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
410H	1040	IA32_MC4_CTL	Core	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
		0		PCU Hardware Error (R/W) When set, enables signaling of PCU hardware detected errors.
		1		PCU Controller Error (R/W) When set, enables signaling of PCU controller detected errors.
		2		PCU Firmware Error (R/W) When set, enables signaling of PCU firmware detected errors.
		63:2		Reserved
411H	1041	IA32_MC4_STATUS	Core	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS" and Chapter 16.

**Table 2-19. MSRs Supported by Intel® Processors
based on Intel® microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge (Contd.)**

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
480H	1152	IA32_VMX_BASIC	Thread	Reporting Register of Basic VMX Capabilities (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.1, "Basic VMX Information."
481H	1153	IA32_VMX_PINBASED_CTL	Thread	Capability Reporting Register of Pin-Based VM-Execution Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.3, "VM-Execution Controls."
482H	1154	IA32_VMX_PROCBASED_CTL	Thread	Capability Reporting Register of Primary Processor-Based VM-Execution Controls (R/O) See Appendix A.3, "VM-Execution Controls."
483H	1155	IA32_VMX_EXIT_CTL	Thread	Capability Reporting Register of VM-Exit Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.4, "VM-Exit Controls."
484H	1156	IA32_VMX_ENTRY_CTL	Thread	Capability Reporting Register of VM-Entry Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.5, "VM-Entry Controls."
485H	1157	IA32_VMX_MISC	Thread	Reporting Register of Miscellaneous VMX Capabilities (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.6, "Miscellaneous Data."
486H	1158	IA32_VMX_CR0_FIXED0	Thread	Capability Reporting Register of CR0 Bits Fixed to 0 (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.7, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CR0."
487H	1159	IA32_VMX_CR0_FIXED1	Thread	Capability Reporting Register of CR0 Bits Fixed to 1 (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.7, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CR0."
488H	1160	IA32_VMX_CR4_FIXED0	Thread	Capability Reporting Register of CR4 Bits Fixed to 0 (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.8, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CR4."
489H	1161	IA32_VMX_CR4_FIXED1	Thread	Capability Reporting Register of CR4 Bits Fixed to 1 (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.8, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CR4."
48AH	1162	IA32_VMX_VMCS_ENUM	Thread	Capability Reporting Register of VMCS Field Enumeration (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.9, "VMCS Enumeration."

**Table 2-19. MSRs Supported by Intel® Processors
based on Intel® microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge (Contd.)**

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
48BH	1163	IA32_VMX_PROCBASED_CTL2	Thread	Capability Reporting Register of Secondary Processor-Based VM-Execution Controls (R/O) See Appendix A.3, "VM-Execution Controls."
48CH	1164	IA32_VMX_EPT_VPID_ENUM	Thread	Capability Reporting Register of EPT and VPID (R/O) See Table 2-2
48DH	1165	IA32_VMX_TRUE_PINBASED_CTL2	Thread	Capability Reporting Register of Pin-Based VM-Execution Flex Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2
48EH	1166	IA32_VMX_TRUE_PROCBASED_CTL2	Thread	Capability Reporting Register of Primary Processor-Based VM-Execution Flex Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2
48FH	1167	IA32_VMX_TRUE_EXIT_CTL2	Thread	Capability Reporting Register of VM-Exit Flex Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2
490H	1168	IA32_VMX_TRUE_ENTRY_CTL2	Thread	Capability Reporting Register of VM-Entry Flex Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2
4C1H	1217	IA32_A_PMC0	Thread	See Table 2-2.
4C2H	1218	IA32_A_PMC1	Thread	See Table 2-2.
4C3H	1219	IA32_A_PMC2	Thread	See Table 2-2.
4C4H	1220	IA32_A_PMC3	Thread	See Table 2-2.
4C5H	1221	IA32_A_PMC4	Core	See Table 2-2.
4C6H	1222	IA32_A_PMC5	Core	See Table 2-2.
4C7H	1223	IA32_A_PMC6	Core	See Table 2-2.
4C8H	1224	IA32_A_PMC7	Core	See Table 2-2.
600H	1536	IA32_DS_AREA	Thread	DS Save Area (R/W) See Table 2-2. See Section 18.6.3.4, "Debug Store (DS) Mechanism."
606H	1542	MSR_RAPL_POWER_UNIT	Package	Unit Multipliers used in RAPL Interfaces (R/O) See Section 14.9.1, "RAPL Interfaces."
60AH	1546	MSR_PKGC3_IRTL	Package	Package C3 Interrupt Response Limit (R/W) Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.
		9:0		Interrupt Response Time Limit (R/W) Specifies the limit that should be used to decide if the package should be put into a package C3 state.

**Table 2-19. MSRs Supported by Intel® Processors
based on Intel® microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge (Contd.)**

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		12:10		Time Unit (R/W) Specifies the encoding value of time unit of the interrupt response time limit. The following time unit encodings are supported: 000b: 1 ns 001b: 32 ns 010b: 1024 ns 011b: 32768 ns 100b: 1048576 ns 101b: 33554432 ns
		14:13		Reserved
		15		Valid (R/W) Indicates whether the values in bits 12:0 are valid and can be used by the processor for package C-state management.
		63:16		Reserved
60BH	1547	MSR_PKGC6_IRTL	Package	Package C6 Interrupt Response Limit (R/W) This MSR defines the budget allocated for the package to exit from a C6 to a C0 state, where an interrupt request can be delivered to the core and serviced. Additional core-exit latency may be applicable depending on the actual C-state the core is in. Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-states.
		9:0		Interrupt Response Time Limit (R/W) Specifies the limit that should be used to decide if the package should be put into a package C6 state.
		12:10		Time Unit (R/W) Specifies the encoding value of time unit of the interrupt response time limit. The following time unit encodings are supported: 000b: 1 ns 001b: 32 ns 010b: 1024 ns 011b: 32768 ns 100b: 1048576 ns 101b: 33554432 ns
		14:13		Reserved
		15		Valid (R/W) Indicates whether the values in bits 12:0 are valid and can be used by the processor for package C-state management.

**Table 2-19. MSRs Supported by Intel® Processors
based on Intel® microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge (Contd.)**

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		63:16		Reserved
60DH	1549	MSR_PKG_C2_RESIDENCY	Package	Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.
		63:0		Package C2 Residency Counter (R/O) Value since last reset that this package is in processor-specific C2 states. Count at the same frequency as the TSC.
610H	1552	MSR_PKG_POWER_LIMIT	Package	PKG RAPL Power Limit Control (R/W) See Section 14.9.3, "Package RAPL Domain."
611H	1553	MSR_PKG_ENERGY_STATUS	Package	PKG Energy Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.3, "Package RAPL Domain."
614H	1556	MSR_PKG_POWER_INFO	Package	PKG RAPL Parameters (R/W) See Section 14.9.3, "Package RAPL Domain."
638H	1592	MSR_PPO_POWER_LIMIT	Package	PPO RAPL Power Limit Control (R/W) See Section 14.9.4, "PPO/PP1 RAPL Domains."
680H	1664	MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 0 From IP (R/W) One of sixteen pairs of last branch record registers on the last branch record stack. This part of the stack contains pointers to the source instruction. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Last Branch Record Stack TOS at 1C9H. ▪ Section 17.9.1 and record format in Section 17.4.8.1.
681H	1665	MSR_LASTBRANCH_1_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 1 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
682H	1666	MSR_LASTBRANCH_2_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 2 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
683H	1667	MSR_LASTBRANCH_3_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 3 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
684H	1668	MSR_LASTBRANCH_4_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 4 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
685H	1669	MSR_LASTBRANCH_5_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 5 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
686H	1670	MSR_LASTBRANCH_6_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 6 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
687H	1671	MSR_LASTBRANCH_7_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 7 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
688H	1672	MSR_LASTBRANCH_8_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 8 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
689H	1673	MSR_LASTBRANCH_9_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 9 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.

**Table 2-19. MSRs Supported by Intel® Processors
based on Intel® microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge (Contd.)**

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
68AH	1674	MSR_LASTBRANCH_10_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 10 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
68BH	1675	MSR_LASTBRANCH_11_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 11 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
68CH	1676	MSR_LASTBRANCH_12_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 12 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
68DH	1677	MSR_LASTBRANCH_13_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 13 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
68EH	1678	MSR_LASTBRANCH_14_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 14 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
68FH	1679	MSR_LASTBRANCH_15_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 15 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
6C0H	1728	MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 0 To IP (R/W) One of sixteen pairs of last branch record registers on the last branch record stack. This part of the stack contains pointers to the destination instruction.
6C1H	1729	MSR_LASTBRANCH_1_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 1 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6C2H	1730	MSR_LASTBRANCH_2_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 2 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6C3H	1731	MSR_LASTBRANCH_3_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 3 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6C4H	1732	MSR_LASTBRANCH_4_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 4 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6C5H	1733	MSR_LASTBRANCH_5_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 5 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6C6H	1734	MSR_LASTBRANCH_6_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 6 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6C7H	1735	MSR_LASTBRANCH_7_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 7 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6C8H	1736	MSR_LASTBRANCH_8_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 8 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6C9H	1737	MSR_LASTBRANCH_9_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 9 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6CAH	1738	MSR_LASTBRANCH_10_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 10 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6CBH	1739	MSR_LASTBRANCH_11_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 11 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.

Table 2-19. MSRs Supported by Intel® Processors based on Intel® microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
6CCH	1740	MSR_LASTBRANCH_12_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 12 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6CDH	1741	MSR_LASTBRANCH_13_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 13 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6CEH	1742	MSR_LASTBRANCH_14_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 14 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6CFH	1743	MSR_LASTBRANCH_15_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 15 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6E0H	1760	IA32_TSC_DEADLINE	Thread	See Table 2-2.
802H-83FH		X2APIC MSRs	Thread	See Table 2-2.
C000_0080H		IA32_EFER	Thread	Extended Feature Enables See Table 2-2.
C000_0081H		IA32_STAR	Thread	System Call Target Address (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0082H		IA32_LSTAR	Thread	IA-32e Mode System Call Target Address (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0084H		IA32_FMASK	Thread	System Call Flag Mask (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0100H		IA32_FS_BASE	Thread	Map of BASE Address of FS (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0101H		IA32_GS_BASE	Thread	Map of BASE Address of GS (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0102H		IA32_KERNEL_GS_BASE	Thread	Swap Target of BASE Address of GS (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0103H		IA32_TSC_AUX	Thread	AUXILIARY TSC Signature (R/W) See Table 2-2 and Section 17.17.2, "IA32_TSC_AUX Register and RDTSCP Support."

2.10.1 MSRs In 2nd Generation Intel® Core™ Processor Family (Based on Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Sandy Bridge)

Table 2-20 and Table 2-21 list model-specific registers (MSRs) that are specific to the 2nd generation Intel® Core™ processor family (based on Intel microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge). These processors have a CPUID signature with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel of 06_2AH; see Table 2-1.

**Table 2-20. MSRs Supported by 2nd Generation Intel® Core™ Processors
(Intel® microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge)**

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
1ADH	429	MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit of Turbo Mode RO if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 0. RW if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 1.
		7:0	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 1C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 1 core active.
		15:8	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 2C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 2 core active.
		23:16	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 3C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 3 core active.
		31:24	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 4C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 4 core active.
		63:32		Reserved
60CH	1548	MSR_PKGC7_IRTL	Package	Package C7 Interrupt Response Limit (R/W) This MSR defines the budget allocated for the package to exit from a C7 to a C0 state, where interrupt request can be delivered to the core and serviced. Additional core-exit latency may be applicable depending on the actual C-state the core is in. Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-states.
		9:0		Interrupt Response Time Limit (R/W) Specifies the limit that should be used to decide if the package should be put into a package C7 state.
		12:10		Time Unit (R/W) Specifies the encoding value of time unit of the interrupt response time limit. The following time unit encodings are supported: 000b: 1 ns 001b: 32 ns 010b: 1024 ns 011b: 32768 ns 100b: 1048576 ns 101b: 33554432 ns
		14:13		Reserved
		15		Valid (R/W) Indicates whether the values in bits 12:0 are valid and can be used by the processor for package C-state management.
		63:16		Reserved

Table 2-20. MSRs Supported by 2nd Generation Intel® Core™ Processors (Intel® microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge) (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
639H	1593	MSR_PP0_ENERGY_STATUS	Package	PP0 Energy Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.4, "PP0/PP1 RAPL Domains."
63AH	1594	MSR_PP0_POLICY	Package	PP0 Balance Policy (R/W) See Section 14.9.4, "PP0/PP1 RAPL Domains."
640H	1600	MSR_PP1_POWER_LIMIT	Package	PP1 RAPL Power Limit Control (R/W) See Section 14.9.4, "PP0/PP1 RAPL Domains."
641H	1601	MSR_PP1_ENERGY_STATUS	Package	PP1 Energy Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.4, "PP0/PP1 RAPL Domains."
642H	1602	MSR_PP1_POLICY	Package	PP1 Balance Policy (R/W) See Section 14.9.4, "PP0/PP1 RAPL Domains."

See Table 2-19, Table 2-20, and Table 2-21 for MSR definitions applicable to processors with CPUID signature 06_2AH.

Table 2-21 lists the MSRs of uncore PMU for Intel processors with CPUID signature 06_2AH.

Table 2-21. Uncore PMU MSRs Supported by 2nd Generation Intel® Core™ Processors

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
391H	913	MSR_UNC_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL	Package	Uncore PMU Global Control
		0		Slice 0 select.
		1		Slice 1 select.
		2		Slice 2 select.
		3		Slice 3 select.
		4		Slice 4 select.
		18:5		Reserved
		29		Enable all uncore counters.
		30		Enable wake on PMI.
		31		Enable Freezing counter when overflow.
63:32	Reserved			
392H	914	MSR_UNC_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS	Package	Uncore PMU Main Status
		0		Fixed counter overflowed.
		1		An ARB counter overflowed.
		2		Reserved
		3		A CBox counter overflowed (on any slice).
		63:4		Reserved
394H	916	MSR_UNC_PERF_FIXED_CTRL	Package	Uncore Fixed Counter Control (R/W)
		19:0		Reserved
		20		Enable overflow propagation.

Table 2-21. Uncore PMU MSRs Supported by 2nd Generation Intel® Core™ Processors

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		21		Reserved
		22		Enable counting.
		63:23		Reserved
395H	917	MSR_UNC_PERF_FIXED_CTR	Package	Uncore Fixed Counter
		47:0		Current count.
		63:48		Reserved
396H	918	MSR_UNC_CBO_CONFIG	Package	Uncore C-Box Configuration Information (R/O)
		3:0		Report the number of C-Box units with performance counters, including processor cores and processor graphics.
		63:4		Reserved
3B0H	946	MSR_UNC_ARB_PERFCTR0	Package	Uncore Arb Unit, Performance Counter 0
3B1H	947	MSR_UNC_ARB_PERFCTR1	Package	Uncore Arb Unit, Performance Counter 1
3B2H	944	MSR_UNC_ARB_PERFEVTSELO	Package	Uncore Arb Unit, Counter 0 Event Select MSR
3B3H	945	MSR_UNC_ARB_PERFEVTSEL1	Package	Uncore Arb unit, Counter 1 Event Select MSR
700H	1792	MSR_UNC_CBO_0_PERFEVTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 0, Counter 0 Event Select MSR
701H	1793	MSR_UNC_CBO_0_PERFEVTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 0, Counter 1 Event Select MSR
702H	1794	MSR_UNC_CBO_0_PERFEVTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 0, Counter 2 Event Select MSR
703H	1795	MSR_UNC_CBO_0_PERFEVTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 0, Counter 3 Event Select MSR
705H	1797	MSR_UNC_CBO_0_UNIT_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-Box 0, Unit Status for Counter 0-3
706H	1798	MSR_UNC_CBO_0_PERFCTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 0, Performance Counter 0
707H	1799	MSR_UNC_CBO_0_PERFCTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 0, Performance Counter 1
708H	1800	MSR_UNC_CBO_0_PERFCTR2	Package	Uncore C-Box 0, Performance Counter 2
709H	1801	MSR_UNC_CBO_0_PERFCTR3	Package	Uncore C-Box 0, Performance Counter 3
710H	1808	MSR_UNC_CBO_1_PERFEVTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 1, Counter 0 Event Select MSR
711H	1809	MSR_UNC_CBO_1_PERFEVTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 1, Counter 1 Event Select MSR
712H	1810	MSR_UNC_CBO_1_PERFEVTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 1, Counter 2 Event Select MSR
713H	1811	MSR_UNC_CBO_1_PERFEVTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 1, Counter 3 Event Select MSR
715H	1813	MSR_UNC_CBO_1_UNIT_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-Box 1, Unit Status for Counter 0-3
716H	1814	MSR_UNC_CBO_1_PERFCTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 1, Performance Counter 0
717H	1815	MSR_UNC_CBO_1_PERFCTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 1, Performance Counter 1
718H	1816	MSR_UNC_CBO_1_PERFCTR2	Package	Uncore C-Box 1, Performance Counter 2
719H	1817	MSR_UNC_CBO_1_PERFCTR3	Package	Uncore C-Box 1, Performance Counter 3
720H	1824	MSR_UNC_CBO_2_PERFEVTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 2, Counter 0 Event Select MSR
721H	1825	MSR_UNC_CBO_2_PERFEVTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 2, Counter 1 Event Select MSR
722H	1826	MSR_UNC_CBO_2_PERFEVTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 2, Counter 2 Event Select MSR

Table 2-21. Uncore PMU MSRs Supported by 2nd Generation Intel® Core™ Processors

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
723H	1827	MSR_UNC_CBO_2_PERFEVTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 2, Counter 3 Event Select MSR
725H	1829	MSR_UNC_CBO_2_UNIT_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-Box 2, Unit Status for Counter 0-3
726H	1830	MSR_UNC_CBO_2_PERFCTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 2, Performance Counter 0
727H	1831	MSR_UNC_CBO_2_PERFCTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 2, Performance Counter 1
728H	1832	MSR_UNC_CBO_3_PERFCTR2	Package	Uncore C-Box 3, Performance Counter 2
729H	1833	MSR_UNC_CBO_3_PERFCTR3	Package	Uncore C-Box 3, Performance Counter 3
730H	1840	MSR_UNC_CBO_3_PERFEVTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 3, Counter 0 Event Select MSR
731H	1841	MSR_UNC_CBO_3_PERFEVTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 3, Counter 1 Event Select MSR
732H	1842	MSR_UNC_CBO_3_PERFEVTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 3, Counter 2 Event Select MSR
733H	1843	MSR_UNC_CBO_3_PERFEVTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 3, counter 3 Event Select MSR
735H	1845	MSR_UNC_CBO_3_UNIT_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-Box 3, Unit Status for Counter 0-3
736H	1846	MSR_UNC_CBO_3_PERFCTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 3, Performance Counter 0
737H	1847	MSR_UNC_CBO_3_PERFCTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 3, Performance Counter 1
738H	1848	MSR_UNC_CBO_3_PERFCTR2	Package	Uncore C-Box 3, Performance Counter 2
739H	1849	MSR_UNC_CBO_3_PERFCTR3	Package	Uncore C-Box 3, Performance Counter 3
740H	1856	MSR_UNC_CBO_4_PERFEVTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 4, Counter 0 Event Select MSR
741H	1857	MSR_UNC_CBO_4_PERFEVTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 4, Counter 1 Event Select MSR
742H	1858	MSR_UNC_CBO_4_PERFEVTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 4, Counter 2 Event Select MSR
743H	1859	MSR_UNC_CBO_4_PERFEVTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 4, Counter 3 Event Select MSR
745H	1861	MSR_UNC_CBO_4_UNIT_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-Box 4, Unit status for Counter 0-3
746H	1862	MSR_UNC_CBO_4_PERFCTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 4, Performance Counter 0
747H	1863	MSR_UNC_CBO_4_PERFCTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 4, Performance Counter 1
748H	1864	MSR_UNC_CBO_4_PERFCTR2	Package	Uncore C-Box 4, Performance Counter 2
749H	1865	MSR_UNC_CBO_4_PERFCTR3	Package	Uncore C-Box 4, Performance Counter 3

2.10.2 MSRs In Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 Family (Based on Intel® Microarchitecture Code Name Sandy Bridge)

Table 2-22 lists additional model-specific registers (MSRs) that are specific to the Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 Family (based on Intel® microarchitecture code name Sandy Bridge). These processors have a CPUID signature with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel of 06_2DH, and also supports MSRs listed in Table 2-19 and Table 2-23.

Table 2-22. Selected MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processors E5 Family (based on Sandy Bridge microarchitecture)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
17FH	383	MSR_ERROR_CONTROL	Package	MC Bank Error Configuration (R/W)
		0		Reserved

**Table 2-22. Selected MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processors E5 Family
(based on Sandy Bridge microarchitecture) (Contd.)**

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		1		MemError Log Enable (R/W) When set, enables IMC status bank to log additional info in bits 36:32.
		63:2		Reserved
1ADH	429	MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit of Turbo Mode RO if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 0, RW if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 1
		7:0	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 1C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 1 core active.
		15:8	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 2C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 2 cores active.
		23:16	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 3C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 3 cores active.
		31:24	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 4C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 4 cores active.
		39:32	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 5C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 5 cores active.
		47:40	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 6C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 6 cores active.
		55:48	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 7C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 7 cores active.
		63:56	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 8C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 8 cores active.
285H	645	IA32_MC5_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
286H	646	IA32_MC6_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
287H	647	IA32_MC7_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
288H	648	IA32_MC8_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
289H	649	IA32_MC9_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28AH	650	IA32_MC10_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28BH	651	IA32_MC11_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28CH	652	IA32_MC12_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28DH	653	IA32_MC13_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28EH	654	IA32_MC14_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28FH	655	IA32_MC15_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
290H	656	IA32_MC16_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
291H	657	IA32_MC17_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
292H	658	IA32_MC18_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
293H	659	IA32_MC19_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.

Table 2-22. Selected MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processors E5 Family (based on Sandy Bridge microarchitecture) (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
39CH	924	MSR_PEBS_NUM_ALT	Package	ENABLE_PEBS_NUM_ALT (RW)
		0		ENABLE_PEBS_NUM_ALT (RW) Write 1 to enable alternate PEBS counting logic for specific events requiring additional configuration, see Table 19-17.
		63:1		Reserved, must be zero.
414H	1044	IA32_MC5_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
415H	1045	IA32_MC5_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs" and Chapter 16.
416H	1046	IA32_MC5_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
417H	1047	IA32_MC5_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
418H	1048	IA32_MC6_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
419H	1049	IA32_MC6_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs" and Chapter 16.
41AH	1050	IA32_MC6_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
41BH	1051	IA32_MC6_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
41CH	1052	IA32_MC7_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
41DH	1053	IA32_MC7_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs" and Chapter 16.
41EH	1054	IA32_MC7_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
41FH	1055	IA32_MC7_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
420H	1056	IA32_MC8_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
421H	1057	IA32_MC8_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs" and Chapter 16.
422H	1058	IA32_MC8_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
423H	1059	IA32_MC8_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
424H	1060	IA32_MC9_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
425H	1061	IA32_MC9_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs" and Chapter 16.
426H	1062	IA32_MC9_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
427H	1063	IA32_MC9_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
428H	1064	IA32_MC10_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
429H	1065	IA32_MC10_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs" and Chapter 16.
42AH	1066	IA32_MC10_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
42BH	1067	IA32_MC10_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
42CH	1068	IA32_MC11_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
42DH	1069	IA32_MC11_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs" and Chapter 16.

**Table 2-22. Selected MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processors E5 Family
(based on Sandy Bridge microarchitecture) (Contd.)**

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
42EH	1070	IA32_MC11_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
42FH	1071	IA32_MC11_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
430H	1072	IA32_MC12_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
431H	1073	IA32_MC12_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS" and Chapter 16.
432H	1074	IA32_MC12_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
433H	1075	IA32_MC12_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
434H	1076	IA32_MC13_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
435H	1077	IA32_MC13_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS" and Chapter 16.
436H	1078	IA32_MC13_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
437H	1079	IA32_MC13_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
438H	1080	IA32_MC14_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
439H	1081	IA32_MC14_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS" and Chapter 16.
43AH	1082	IA32_MC14_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
43BH	1083	IA32_MC14_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
43CH	1084	IA32_MC15_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
43DH	1085	IA32_MC15_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS" and Chapter 16.
43EH	1086	IA32_MC15_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
43FH	1087	IA32_MC15_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
440H	1088	IA32_MC16_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
441H	1089	IA32_MC16_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS" and Chapter 16.
442H	1090	IA32_MC16_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
443H	1091	IA32_MC16_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
444H	1092	IA32_MC17_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
445H	1093	IA32_MC17_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS" and Chapter 16.
446H	1094	IA32_MC17_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
447H	1095	IA32_MC17_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
448H	1096	IA32_MC18_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
449H	1097	IA32_MC18_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS" and Chapter 16.
44AH	1098	IA32_MC18_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
44BH	1099	IA32_MC18_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
44CH	1100	IA32_MC19_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."

Table 2-22. Selected MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processors E5 Family (based on Sandy Bridge microarchitecture) (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
44DH	1101	IA32_MC19_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS" and Chapter 16.
44EH	1102	IA32_MC19_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
44FH	1103	IA32_MC19_MISC	Package	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs."
613H	1555	MSR_PKG_PERF_STATUS	Package	Package RAPL Perf Status (R/O)
618H	1560	MSR_DRAM_POWER_LIMIT	Package	DRAM RAPL Power Limit Control (R/W) See Section 14.9.5, "DRAM RAPL Domain."
619H	1561	MSR_DRAM_ENERGY_STATUS	Package	DRAM Energy Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.5, "DRAM RAPL Domain."
61BH	1563	MSR_DRAM_PERF_STATUS	Package	DRAM Performance Throttling Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.5, "DRAM RAPL Domain."
61CH	1564	MSR_DRAM_POWER_INFO	Package	DRAM RAPL Parameters (R/W) See Section 14.9.5, "DRAM RAPL Domain."
639H	1593	MSR_PPO_ENERGY_STATUS	Package	PPO Energy Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.4, "PPO/PP1 RAPL Domains."

See Table 2-19, Table 2-22, and Table 2-23 for MSR definitions applicable to processors with CPUID signature 06_2DH.

2.10.3 Additional Uncore PMU MSRs in the Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 Family

Intel Xeon Processor E5 family is based on the Sandy Bridge microarchitecture. The MSR-based uncore PMU interfaces are listed in Table 2-23. For complete detail of the uncore PMU, refer to Intel Xeon Processor E5 Product Family Uncore Performance Monitoring Guide. These processors have a CPUID signature with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel of 06_2DH

Table 2-23. Uncore PMU MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 Family

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
C08H		MSR_U_PMON_UCLK_FIXED_CTL	Package	Uncore U-box UCLK Fixed Counter Control
C09H		MSR_U_PMON_UCLK_FIXED_CTR	Package	Uncore U-box UCLK Fixed Counter
C10H		MSR_U_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore U-box Perfmon Event Select for U-box Counter 0
C11H		MSR_U_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore U-box Perfmon Event Select for U-box Counter 1
C16H		MSR_U_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore U-box Perfmon Counter 0
C17H		MSR_U_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore U-box Perfmon Counter 1
C24H		MSR_PCU_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore PCU Perfmon for PCU-box-wide Control
C30H		MSR_PCU_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore PCU Perfmon Event Select for PCU Counter 0
C31H		MSR_PCU_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore PCU Perfmon Event Select for PCU Counter 1
C32H		MSR_PCU_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore PCU Perfmon Event Select for PCU Counter 2

Table 2-23. Uncore PMU MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 Family (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
C33H		MSR_PCU_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore PCU Perfmon Event Select for PCU Counter 3
C34H		MSR_PCU_PMON_BOX_FILTER	Package	Uncore PCU Perfmon box-wide Filter
C36H		MSR_PCU_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore PCU Perfmon Counter 0
C37H		MSR_PCU_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore PCU Perfmon Counter 1
C38H		MSR_PCU_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore PCU Perfmon Counter 2
C39H		MSR_PCU_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore PCU Perfmon Counter 3
D04H		MSR_C0_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-box 0 Perfmon Local Box Wide Control
D10H		MSR_C0_PMON_EVNTSEL0	Package	Uncore C-box 0 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 0 Counter 0
D11H		MSR_C0_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-box 0 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 0 Counter 1
D12H		MSR_C0_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-box 0 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 0 Counter 2
D13H		MSR_C0_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-box 0 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 0 Counter 3
D14H		MSR_C0_PMON_BOX_FILTER	Package	Uncore C-box 0 Perfmon Box Wide Filter
D16H		MSR_C0_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-box 0 Perfmon Counter 0
D17H		MSR_C0_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-box 0 Perfmon Counter 1
D18H		MSR_C0_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-box 0 Perfmon Counter 2
D19H		MSR_C0_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-box 0 Perfmon Counter 3
D24H		MSR_C1_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-box 1 Perfmon Local Box Wide Control
D30H		MSR_C1_PMON_EVNTSEL0	Package	Uncore C-box 1 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 1 Counter 0
D31H		MSR_C1_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-box 1 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 1 Counter 1
D32H		MSR_C1_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-box 1 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 1 Counter 2
D33H		MSR_C1_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-box 1 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 1 Counter 3
D34H		MSR_C1_PMON_BOX_FILTER	Package	Uncore C-box 1 Perfmon Box Wide Filter
D36H		MSR_C1_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-box 1 Perfmon Counter 0
D37H		MSR_C1_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-box 1 Perfmon Counter 1
D38H		MSR_C1_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-box 1 Perfmon Counter 2
D39H		MSR_C1_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-box 1 Perfmon Counter 3
D44H		MSR_C2_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-box 2 Perfmon Local Box Wide Control
D50H		MSR_C2_PMON_EVNTSEL0	Package	Uncore C-box 2 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 2 Counter 0
D51H		MSR_C2_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-box 2 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 2 Counter 1

Table 2-23. Uncore PMU MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 Family (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
D52H		MSR_C2_PMON_EVTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-box 2 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 2 Counter 2
D53H		MSR_C2_PMON_EVTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-box 2 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 2 Counter 3
D54H		MSR_C2_PMON_BOX_FILTER	Package	Uncore C-box 2 Perfmon Box Wide Filter
D56H		MSR_C2_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-box 2 Perfmon Counter 0
D57H		MSR_C2_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-box 2 Perfmon Counter 1
D58H		MSR_C2_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-box 2 Perfmon Counter 2
D59H		MSR_C2_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-box 2 Perfmon Counter 3
D64H		MSR_C3_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-box 3 Perfmon Local Box Wide Control
D70H		MSR_C3_PMON_EVTSEL0	Package	Uncore C-box 3 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 3 Counter 0
D71H		MSR_C3_PMON_EVTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-box 3 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 3 Counter 1
D72H		MSR_C3_PMON_EVTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-box 3 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 3 Counter 2
D73H		MSR_C3_PMON_EVTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-box 3 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 3 Counter 3
D74H		MSR_C3_PMON_BOX_FILTER	Package	Uncore C-box 3 Perfmon Box Wide Filter
D76H		MSR_C3_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-box 3 Perfmon Counter 0
D77H		MSR_C3_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-box 3 Perfmon Counter 1
D78H		MSR_C3_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-box 3 Perfmon Counter 2
D79H		MSR_C3_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-box 3 Perfmon Counter 3
D84H		MSR_C4_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-box 4 Perfmon Local Box Wide Control
D90H		MSR_C4_PMON_EVTSEL0	Package	Uncore C-box 4 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 4 Counter 0
D91H		MSR_C4_PMON_EVTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-box 4 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 4 Counter 1
D92H		MSR_C4_PMON_EVTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-box 4 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 4 Counter 2
D93H		MSR_C4_PMON_EVTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-box 4 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 4 Counter 3
D94H		MSR_C4_PMON_BOX_FILTER	Package	Uncore C-box 4 Perfmon Box Wide Filter
D96H		MSR_C4_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-box 4 Perfmon Counter 0
D97H		MSR_C4_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-box 4 Perfmon Counter 1
D98H		MSR_C4_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-box 4 Perfmon Counter 2
D99H		MSR_C4_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-box 4 Perfmon Counter 3
DA4H		MSR_C5_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-box 5 Perfmon Local Box Wide Control
DB0H		MSR_C5_PMON_EVTSEL0	Package	Uncore C-box 5 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 5 Counter 0

Table 2-23. Uncore PMU MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 Family (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
DB1H		MSR_C5_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-box 5 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 5 Counter 1
DB2H		MSR_C5_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-box 5 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 5 Counter 2
DB3H		MSR_C5_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-box 5 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 5 Counter 3
DB4H		MSR_C5_PMON_BOX_FILTER	Package	Uncore C-box 5 Perfmon Box Wide Filter
DB6H		MSR_C5_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-box 5 Perfmon Counter 0
DB7H		MSR_C5_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-box 5 Perfmon Counter 1
DB8H		MSR_C5_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-box 5 Perfmon Counter 2
DB9H		MSR_C5_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-box 5 Perfmon Counter 3
DC4H		MSR_C6_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-box 6 Perfmon Local Box Wide Control
DD0H		MSR_C6_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore C-box 6 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 6 Counter 0
DD1H		MSR_C6_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-box 6 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 6 Counter 1
DD2H		MSR_C6_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-box 6 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 6 Counter 2
DD3H		MSR_C6_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-box 6 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 6 Counter 3
DD4H		MSR_C6_PMON_BOX_FILTER	Package	Uncore C-box 6 Perfmon Box Wide Filter
DD6H		MSR_C6_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-box 6 Perfmon Counter 0
DD7H		MSR_C6_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-box 6 Perfmon Counter 1
DD8H		MSR_C6_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-box 6 Perfmon Counter 2
DD9H		MSR_C6_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-box 6 Perfmon Counter 3
DE4H		MSR_C7_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-box 7 Perfmon Local Box Wide Control
DF0H		MSR_C7_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore C-box 7 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 7 Counter 0
DF1H		MSR_C7_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-box 7 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 7 Counter 1
DF2H		MSR_C7_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-box 7 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 7 Counter 2
DF3H		MSR_C7_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-box 7 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 7 Counter 3
DF4H		MSR_C7_PMON_BOX_FILTER	Package	Uncore C-box 7 Perfmon Box Wide Filter
DF6H		MSR_C7_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-box 7 Perfmon Counter 0
DF7H		MSR_C7_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-box 7 Perfmon Counter 1
DF8H		MSR_C7_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-box 7 Perfmon Counter 2
DF9H		MSR_C7_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-box 7 Perfmon Counter 3

2.11 MSRS IN THE 3RD GENERATION INTEL® CORE™ PROCESSOR FAMILY (BASED ON INTEL® MICROARCHITECTURE CODE NAME IVY BRIDGE)

The 3rd generation Intel® Core™ processor family and the Intel® Xeon® processor E3-1200v2 product family (based on Intel microarchitecture code name Ivy Bridge) support the MSR interfaces listed in Table 2-19, Table 2-20, Table 2-21, and Table 2-24. These processors have a CPUID signature with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel of 06_3AH.

**Table 2-24. Additional MSRs Supported by 3rd Generation Intel® Core™ Processors
(based on Intel® microarchitecture code name Ivy Bridge)**

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
CEH	206	MSR_PLATFORM_INFO	Package	Platform Information Contains power management and other model specific features enumeration. See http://biosbits.org .
		7:0		Reserved
		15:8	Package	Maximum Non-Turbo Ratio (R/O) This is the ratio of the frequency that invariant TSC runs at. Frequency = ratio * 100 MHz.
		27:16		Reserved
		28	Package	Programmable Ratio Limit for Turbo Mode (R/O) When set to 1, indicates that Programmable Ratio Limit for Turbo mode is enabled. When set to 0, indicates Programmable Ratio Limit for Turbo mode is disabled.
		29	Package	Programmable TDP Limit for Turbo Mode (R/O) When set to 1, indicates that TDP Limit for Turbo mode is programmable. When set to 0, indicates that TDP Limit for Turbo mode is not programmable.
		31:30		Reserved
		32	Package	Low Power Mode Support (LPM) (R/O) When set to 1, indicates that LPM is supported. When set to 0, indicates LPM is not supported.
		34:33	Package	Number of ConfigTDP Levels (R/O) 00: Only Base TDP level available. 01: One additional TDP level available. 02: Two additional TDP level available. 11: Reserved
		39:35		Reserved
		47:40	Package	Maximum Efficiency Ratio (R/O) This is the minimum ratio (maximum efficiency) that the processor can operate, in units of 100MHz.
		55:48	Package	Minimum Operating Ratio (R/O) Contains the minimum supported operating ratio in units of 100 MHz.
63:56		Reserved		

**Table 2-24. Additional MSRs Supported by 3rd Generation Intel® Core™ Processors
(based on Intel® microarchitecture code name Ivy Bridge) (Contd.)**

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
E2H	226	MSR_PKG_CST_CONFIG_CONTROL	Core	C-State Configuration Control (R/W) Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States. See http://biosbits.org .
		2:0		Package C-State Limit (R/W) Specifies the lowest processor-specific C-state code name (consuming the least power) for the package. The default is set as factory-configured package C-state limit. The following C-state code name encodings are supported: 000b: C0/C1 (no package C-state support) 001b: C2 010b: C6 no retention 011b: C6 retention 100b: C7 101b: C7s 111: No package C-state limit. Note: This field cannot be used to limit package C-state to C3.
		9:3		Reserved
		10		I/O MWAIT Redirection Enable (R/W) When set, will map IO_read instructions sent to IO register specified by MSR_PMG_IO_CAPTURE_BASE to MWAIT instructions.
		14:11		Reserved
		15		CFG Lock (R/WO) When set, locks bits 15:0 of this register until next reset.
		24:16		Reserved
		25		C3 State Auto Demotion Enable (R/W) When set, the processor will conditionally demote C6/C7 requests to C3 based on uncore auto-demote information.
		26		C1 State Auto Demotion Enable (R/W) When set, the processor will conditionally demote C3/C6/C7 requests to C1 based on uncore auto-demote information.
		27		Enable C3 Undemotion (R/W) When set, enables undemotion from demoted C3.
28		Enable C1 Undemotion (R/W) When set, enables undemotion from demoted C1.		

Table 2-24. Additional MSRs Supported by 3rd Generation Intel® Core™ Processors (based on Intel® microarchitecture code name Ivy Bridge) (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		63:29		Reserved
639H	1593	MSR_PPO_ENERGY_STATUS	Package	PPO Energy Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.4, "PPO/PP1 RAPL Domains."
648H	1608	MSR_CONFIG_TDP_NOMINAL	Package	Base TDP Ratio (R/O)
		7:0		Config_TDP_Base Base TDP level ratio to be used for this specific processor (in units of 100 MHz).
		63:8		Reserved
649H	1609	MSR_CONFIG_TDP_LEVEL1	Package	ConfigTDP Level 1 ratio and power level (R/O)
		14:0		PKG_TDP_LVL1 Power setting for ConfigTDP Level 1.
		15		Reserved
		23:16		Config_TDP_LVL1_Ratio ConfigTDP level 1 ratio to be used for this specific processor.
		31:24		Reserved
		46:32		PKG_MAX_PWR_LVL1 Max Power setting allowed for ConfigTDP Level 1.
		47		Reserved
		62:48		PKG_MIN_PWR_LVL1 MIN Power setting allowed for ConfigTDP Level 1.
		63		Reserved
64AH	1610	MSR_CONFIG_TDP_LEVEL2	Package	ConfigTDP Level 2 ratio and power level (R/O)
		14:0		PKG_TDP_LVL2 Power setting for ConfigTDP Level 2.
		15		Reserved
		23:16		Config_TDP_LVL2_Ratio ConfigTDP level 2 ratio to be used for this specific processor.
		31:24		Reserved
		46:32		PKG_MAX_PWR_LVL2 Max Power setting allowed for ConfigTDP Level 2.
		47		Reserved
		62:48		PKG_MIN_PWR_LVL2 MIN Power setting allowed for ConfigTDP Level 2.
		63		Reserved
64BH	1611	MSR_CONFIG_TDP_CONTROL	Package	ConfigTDP Control (R/W)

**Table 2-24. Additional MSRs Supported by 3rd Generation Intel® Core™ Processors
(based on Intel® microarchitecture code name Ivy Bridge) (Contd.)**

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		1:0		TDP_LEVEL (RW/L) System BIOS can program this field.
		30:2		Reserved.
		31		Config_TDP_Lock (RW/L) When this bit is set, the content of this register is locked until a reset.
		63:32		Reserved
64CH	1612	MSR_TURBO_ACTIVATION_RATIO	Package	ConfigTDP Control (R/W)
		7:0		MAX_NON_TURBO_RATIO (RW/L) System BIOS can program this field.
		30:8		Reserved
		31		TURBO_ACTIVATION_RATIO_Lock (RW/L) When this bit is set, the content of this register is locked until a reset.
		63:32		Reserved

See Table 2-19, Table 2-20 and Table 2-21 for other MSR definitions applicable to processors with CPUID signature 06_3AH.

2.11.1 MSRs In Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v2 Product Family (Based on Ivy Bridge-E Microarchitecture)

Table 2-25 lists model-specific registers (MSRs) that are specific to the Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v2 Product Family (based on Ivy Bridge-E microarchitecture). These processors have a CPUID signature with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel of 06_3EH, see Table 2-1. These processors supports the MSR interfaces listed in Table 2-19, and Table 2-25.

Table 2-25. MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processors E5 v2 Product Family (based on Ivy Bridge-E microarchitecture)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
4EH	78	MSR_PPIN_CTL	Package	Protected Processor Inventory Number Enable Control (R/W)

Table 2-25. MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processors E5 v2 Product Family (based on Ivy Bridge-E microarchitecture) (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		0		<p>LockOut (R/WO)</p> <p>Set 1 to prevent further writes to MSR_PPIN_CTL. Writing 1 to MSR_PPIN_CTL[bit 0] is permitted only if MSR_PPIN_CTL[bit 1] is clear. Default is 0.</p> <p>BIOS should provide an opt-in menu to enable the user to turn on MSR_PPIN_CTL[bit 1] for privileged inventory initialization agent to access MSR_PPIN. After reading MSR_PPIN, the privileged inventory initialization agent should write '01b' to MSR_PPIN_CTL to disable further access to MSR_PPIN and prevent unauthorized modification to MSR_PPIN_CTL.</p>
		1		<p>Enable_PPIN (R/W)</p> <p>If 1, enables MSR_PPIN to be accessible using RDMSR. Once set, attempt to write 1 to MSR_PPIN_CTL[bit 0] will cause #GP.</p> <p>If 0, an attempt to read MSR_PPIN will cause #GP. Default is 0.</p>
		63:2		Reserved
4FH	79	MSR_PPIN	Package	Protected Processor Inventory Number (R/O)
		63:0		<p>Protected Processor Inventory Number (R/O)</p> <p>A unique value within a given CPUID family/model/stepping signature that a privileged inventory initialization agent can access to identify each physical processor, when access to MSR_PPIN is enabled. Access to MSR_PPIN is permitted only if MSR_PPIN_CTL[bits 1:0] = '10b'.</p>
CEH	206	MSR_PLATFORM_INFO	Package	<p>Platform Information</p> <p>Contains power management and other model specific features enumeration. See http://biosbits.org.</p>
		7:0		Reserved
		15:8	Package	<p>Maximum Non-Turbo Ratio (R/O)</p> <p>This is the ratio of the frequency that invariant TSC runs at. Frequency = ratio * 100 MHz.</p>
		22:16		Reserved
		23	Package	<p>PPIN_CAP (R/O)</p> <p>When set to 1, indicates that Protected Processor Inventory Number (PPIN) capability can be enabled for a privileged system inventory agent to read PPIN from MSR_PPIN.</p> <p>When set to 0, PPIN capability is not supported. An attempt to access MSR_PPIN_CTL or MSR_PPIN will cause #GP.</p>
27:24		Reserved		

Table 2-25. MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processors E5 v2 Product Family (based on Ivy Bridge-E microarchitecture) (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		28	Package	Programmable Ratio Limit for Turbo Mode (R/O) When set to 1, indicates that Programmable Ratio Limit for Turbo mode is enabled. When set to 0, indicates Programmable Ratio Limit for Turbo mode is disabled.
		29	Package	Programmable TDP Limit for Turbo Mode (R/O) When set to 1, indicates that TDP Limit for Turbo mode is programmable. When set to 0, indicates TDP Limit for Turbo mode is not programmable.
		30	Package	Programmable TJ OFFSET (R/O) When set to 1, indicates that MSR_TEMPERATURE_TARGET,[27:24] is valid and writable to specify a temperature offset.
		39:31		Reserved
		47:40	Package	Maximum Efficiency Ratio (R/O) This is the minimum ratio (maximum efficiency) that the processor can operate, in units of 100MHz.
		63:48		Reserved
E2H	226	MSR_PKG_CST_CONFIG_CONTROL	Core	C-State Configuration Control (R/W) Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-states. See http://biosbits.org .
		2:0		Package C-State Limit (R/W) Specifies the lowest processor-specific C-state code name (consuming the least power) for the package. The default is set as factory-configured package C-state limit. The following C-state code name encodings are supported: 000b: C0/C1 (no package C-state support) 001b: C2 010b: C6 no retention 011b: C6 retention 100b: C7 101b: C7s 111: No package C-state limit. Note: This field cannot be used to limit package C-state to C3.
		9:3		Reserved
		10		I/O MWAIT Redirection Enable (R/W) When set, will map IO_read instructions sent to IO register specified by MSR_PMG_IO_CAPTURE_BASE to MWAIT instructions.

Table 2-25. MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processors E5 v2 Product Family (based on Ivy Bridge-E microarchitecture) (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		14:11		Reserved
		15		CFG Lock (R/WO) When set, locks bits 15:0 of this register until next reset.
		63:16		Reserved
179H	377	IA32_MCG_CAP	Thread	Global Machine Check Capability (R/O)
		7:0		Count
		8		MCG_CTL_P
		9		MCG_EXT_P
		10		MCP_CMCI_P
		11		MCG_TES_P
		15:12		Reserved
		23:16		MCG_EXT_CNT
		24		MCG_SER_P
		25		Reserved
		26		MCG_ELOG_P
		63:27		Reserved
17FH	383	MSR_ERROR_CONTROL	Package	MC Bank Error Configuration (R/W)
		0		Reserved
		1		MemError Log Enable (R/W) When set, enables IMC status bank to log additional info in bits 36:32.
		63:2		Reserved
1A2H	418	MSR_TEMPERATURE_TARGET	Package	Temperature Target
		15:0		Reserved
		23:16		Temperature Target (RO) The minimum temperature at which PROCHOT# will be asserted. The value is degrees C.
		27:24		TCC Activation Offset (R/W) Specifies a temperature offset in degrees C from the temperature target (bits 23:16). PROCHOT# will assert at the offset target temperature. Write is permitted only if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[30] is set.
		63:28		Reserved
1AEH	430	MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT1	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit of Turbo Mode RO if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 0. RW if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 1.
		7:0	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 9C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 9 core active.

Table 2-25. MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processors E5 v2 Product Family (based on Ivy Bridge-E microarchitecture) (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		15:8	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 10C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 10 core active.
		23:16	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 11C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 11 core active.
		31:24	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 12C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 12 core active.
		63:32		Reserved
285H	645	IA32_MC5_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
286H	646	IA32_MC6_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
287H	647	IA32_MC7_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
288H	648	IA32_MC8_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
289H	649	IA32_MC9_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28AH	650	IA32_MC10_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28BH	651	IA32_MC11_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28CH	652	IA32_MC12_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28DH	653	IA32_MC13_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28EH	654	IA32_MC14_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28FH	655	IA32_MC15_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
290H	656	IA32_MC16_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
291H	657	IA32_MC17_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
292H	658	IA32_MC18_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
293H	659	IA32_MC19_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
294H	660	IA32_MC20_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
295H	661	IA32_MC21_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
296H	662	IA32_MC22_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
297H	663	IA32_MC23_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
298H	664	IA32_MC24_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
299H	665	IA32_MC25_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
29AH	666	IA32_MC26_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
29BH	667	IA32_MC27_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
29CH	668	IA32_MC28_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
414H	1044	IA32_MC5_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs". Bank MC5 reports MC errors from the Intel QPI module.
415H	1045	IA32_MC5_STATUS	Package	
416H	1046	IA32_MC5_ADDR	Package	
417H	1047	IA32_MC5_MISC	Package	

Table 2-25. MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processors E5 v2 Product Family (based on Ivy Bridge-E microarchitecture) (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
418H	1048	IA32_MC6_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC6 reports MC errors from the integrated I/O module.
419H	1049	IA32_MC6_STATUS	Package	
41AH	1050	IA32_MC6_ADDR	Package	
41BH	1051	IA32_MC6_MISC	Package	
41CH	1052	IA32_MC7_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC7 and MC 8 report MC errors from the two home agents.
41DH	1053	IA32_MC7_STATUS	Package	
41EH	1054	IA32_MC7_ADDR	Package	
41FH	1055	IA32_MC7_MISC	Package	
420H	1056	IA32_MC8_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC7 and MC 8 report MC errors from the two home agents.
421H	1057	IA32_MC8_STATUS	Package	
422H	1058	IA32_MC8_ADDR	Package	
423H	1059	IA32_MC8_MISC	Package	
424H	1060	IA32_MC9_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC9 through MC 16 report MC errors from each channel of the integrated memory controllers.
425H	1061	IA32_MC9_STATUS	Package	
426H	1062	IA32_MC9_ADDR	Package	
427H	1063	IA32_MC9_MISC	Package	
428H	1064	IA32_MC10_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC9 through MC 16 report MC errors from each channel of the integrated memory controllers.
429H	1065	IA32_MC10_STATUS	Package	
42AH	1066	IA32_MC10_ADDR	Package	
42BH	1067	IA32_MC10_MISC	Package	
42CH	1068	IA32_MC11_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs." Bank MC11 reports MC errors from a specific channel of the integrated memory controller.
42DH	1069	IA32_MC11_STATUS	Package	
42EH	1070	IA32_MC11_ADDR	Package	
42FH	1071	IA32_MC11_MISC	Package	
430H	1072	IA32_MC12_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC9 through MC 16 report MC errors from each channel of the integrated memory controllers.
431H	1073	IA32_MC12_STATUS	Package	
432H	1074	IA32_MC12_ADDR	Package	
433H	1075	IA32_MC12_MISC	Package	
434H	1076	IA32_MC13_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC9 through MC 16 report MC errors from each channel of the integrated memory controllers.
435H	1077	IA32_MC13_STATUS	Package	
436H	1078	IA32_MC13_ADDR	Package	
437H	1079	IA32_MC13_MISC	Package	

Table 2-25. MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processors E5 v2 Product Family (based on Ivy Bridge-E microarchitecture) (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
438H	1080	IA32_MC14_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC9 through MC 16 report MC errors from each channel of the integrated memory controllers.
439H	1081	IA32_MC14_STATUS	Package	
43AH	1082	IA32_MC14_ADDR	Package	
43BH	1083	IA32_MC14_MISC	Package	
43CH	1084	IA32_MC15_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC9 through MC 16 report MC errors from each channel of the integrated memory controllers.
43DH	1085	IA32_MC15_STATUS	Package	
43EH	1086	IA32_MC15_ADDR	Package	
43FH	1087	IA32_MC15_MISC	Package	
440H	1088	IA32_MC16_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC9 through MC 16 report MC errors from each channel of the integrated memory controllers.
441H	1089	IA32_MC16_STATUS	Package	
442H	1090	IA32_MC16_ADDR	Package	
443H	1091	IA32_MC16_MISC	Package	
444H	1092	IA32_MC17_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC17 reports MC errors from a specific CBo (core broadcast) and its corresponding slice of L3.
445H	1093	IA32_MC17_STATUS	Package	
446H	1094	IA32_MC17_ADDR	Package	
447H	1095	IA32_MC17_MISC	Package	
448H	1096	IA32_MC18_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC18 reports MC errors from a specific CBo (core broadcast) and its corresponding slice of L3.
449H	1097	IA32_MC18_STATUS	Package	
44AH	1098	IA32_MC18_ADDR	Package	
44BH	1099	IA32_MC18_MISC	Package	
44CH	1100	IA32_MC19_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC19 reports MC errors from a specific CBo (core broadcast) and its corresponding slice of L3.
44DH	1101	IA32_MC19_STATUS	Package	
44EH	1102	IA32_MC19_ADDR	Package	
44FH	1103	IA32_MC19_MISC	Package	
450H	1104	IA32_MC20_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs." Bank MC20 reports MC errors from a specific CBo (core broadcast) and its corresponding slice of L3.
451H	1105	IA32_MC20_STATUS	Package	
452H	1106	IA32_MC20_ADDR	Package	
453H	1107	IA32_MC20_MISC	Package	
454H	1108	IA32_MC21_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC21 reports MC errors from a specific CBo (core broadcast) and its corresponding slice of L3.
455H	1109	IA32_MC21_STATUS	Package	
456H	1110	IA32_MC21_ADDR	Package	
457H	1111	IA32_MC21_MISC	Package	

Table 2-25. MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processors E5 v2 Product Family (based on Ivy Bridge-E microarchitecture) (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
458H	1112	IA32_MC22_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC22 reports MC errors from a specific CBo (core broadcast) and its corresponding slice of L3.
459H	1113	IA32_MC22_STATUS	Package	
45AH	1114	IA32_MC22_ADDR	Package	
45BH	1115	IA32_MC22_MISC	Package	
45CH	1116	IA32_MC23_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC23 reports MC errors from a specific CBo (core broadcast) and its corresponding slice of L3.
45DH	1117	IA32_MC23_STATUS	Package	
45EH	1118	IA32_MC23_ADDR	Package	
45FH	1119	IA32_MC23_MISC	Package	
460H	1120	IA32_MC24_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC24 reports MC errors from a specific CBo (core broadcast) and its corresponding slice of L3.
461H	1121	IA32_MC24_STATUS	Package	
462H	1122	IA32_MC24_ADDR	Package	
463H	1123	IA32_MC24_MISC	Package	
464H	1124	IA32_MC25_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC25 reports MC errors from a specific CBo (core broadcast) and its corresponding slice of L3.
465H	1125	IA32_MC25_STATUS	Package	
466H	1126	IA32_MC25_ADDR	Package	
467H	1127	IA32_MC2MISC	Package	
468H	1128	IA32_MC26_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC26 reports MC errors from a specific CBo (core broadcast) and its corresponding slice of L3.
469H	1129	IA32_MC26_STATUS	Package	
46AH	1130	IA32_MC26_ADDR	Package	
46BH	1131	IA32_MC26_MISC	Package	
46CH	1132	IA32_MC27_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC27 reports MC errors from a specific CBo (core broadcast) and its corresponding slice of L3.
46DH	1133	IA32_MC27_STATUS	Package	
46EH	1134	IA32_MC27_ADDR	Package	
46FH	1135	IA32_MC27_MISC	Package	
470H	1136	IA32_MC28_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC28 reports MC errors from a specific CBo (core broadcast) and its corresponding slice of L3.
471H	1137	IA32_MC28_STATUS	Package	
472H	1138	IA32_MC28_ADDR	Package	
473H	1139	IA32_MC28_MISC	Package	
613H	1555	MSR_PKG_PERF_STATUS	Package	Package RAPL Perf Status (R/O)
618H	1560	MSR_DRAM_POWER_LIMIT	Package	DRAM RAPL Power Limit Control (R/W) See Section 14.9.5, "DRAM RAPL Domain."
619H	1561	MSR_DRAM_ENERGY_STATUS	Package	DRAM Energy Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.5, "DRAM RAPL Domain."
61BH	1563	MSR_DRAM_PERF_STATUS	Package	DRAM Performance Throttling Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.5, "DRAM RAPL Domain."

Table 2-25. MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processors E5 v2 Product Family (based on Ivy Bridge-E microarchitecture) (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
61CH	1564	MSR_DRAM_POWER_INFO	Package	DRAM RAPL Parameters (R/W) See Section 14.9.5, "DRAM RAPL Domain."
639H	1593	MSR_PPO_ENERGY_STATUS	Package	PPO Energy Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.4, "PPO/PP1 RAPL Domains."

See Table 2-19, for other MSR definitions applicable to Intel Xeon processor E5 v2 with CPUID signature 06_3EH.

2.11.2 Additional MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor E7 v2 Family

Intel® Xeon® processor E7 v2 family (based on Ivy Bridge-E microarchitecture) with CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel signature 06_3EH supports the MSR interfaces listed in Table 2-19, Table 2-25, and Table 2-26.

Table 2-26. Additional MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor E7 v2 Family with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel Signature 06_3EH

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
3AH	58	IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL	Thread	Control Features in Intel 64 Processor (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		0		Lock (R/WL)
		1		Enable VMX Inside SMX Operation (R/WL)
		2		Enable VMX Outside SMX Operation (R/WL)
		14:8		SENTER Local Functions Enables (R/WL)
		15		SENTER Global Functions Enable (R/WL)
		63:16		Reserved
179H	377	IA32_MCG_CAP	Thread	Global Machine Check Capability (R/O)
		7:0		Count
		8		MCG_CTL_P
		9		MCG_EXT_P
		10		MCP_CMCI_P
		11		MCG_TES_P
		15:12		Reserved
		23:16		MCG_EXT_CNT
		24		MCG_SER_P
63:25		Reserved		
17AH	378	IA32_MCG_STATUS	Thread	Global Machine Check Status (R/WO)
		0		RIPV
		1		EIPV

Table 2-26. Additional MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor E7 v2 Family with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel Signature 06_3EH

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		2		MCIP
		3		LMCE Signaled
		63:4		Reserved
1AEH	430	MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT1	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit of Turbo Mode RO if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 0. RW if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 1.
		7:0	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 9C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 9 core active.
		15:8	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 10C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 10core active.
		23:16	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 11C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 11 core active.
		31:24	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 12C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 12 core active.
		39:32	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 13C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 13 core active.
		47:40	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 14C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 14 core active.
		55:48	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 15C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 15 core active.
		62:56		Reserved
		63	Package	Semaphore for Turbo Ratio Limit Configuration If 1, the processor uses override configuration ¹ specified in MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT and MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT1. If 0, the processor uses factory-set configuration (Default).
29DH	669	IA32_MC29_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
29EH	670	IA32_MC30_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
29FH	671	IA32_MC31_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
3F1H	1009	MSR_PEBS_ENABLE	Thread	See Section 18.3.1.1.1, "Processor Event Based Sampling (PEBS)."
		0		Enable PEBS on IA32_PMC0 (R/W)
		1		Enable PEBS on IA32_PMC1 (R/W)
		2		Enable PEBS on IA32_PMC2 (R/W)
		3		Enable PEBS on IA32_PMC3 (R/W)
		31:4		Reserved
		32		Enable Load Latency on IA32_PMC0 (R/W)
		33		Enable Load Latency on IA32_PMC1 (R/W)

Table 2-26. Additional MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor E7 v2 Family with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel Signature 06_3EH

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		34		Enable Load Latency on IA32_PMC2 (R/W)
		35		Enable Load Latency on IA32_PMC3 (R/W)
		63:36		Reserved
41BH	1051	IA32_MC6_MISC	Package	Misc MAC Information of Integrated I/O (R/O) See Section 15.3.2.4.
		5:0		Recoverable Address LSB
		8:6		Address Mode
		15:9		Reserved
		31:16		PCI Express Requestor ID
		39:32		PCI Express Segment Number
		63:32		Reserved
474H	1140	IA32_MC29_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC29 reports MC errors from a specific CBo (core broadcast) and its corresponding slice of L3.
475H	1141	IA32_MC29_STATUS	Package	
476H	1142	IA32_MC29_ADDR	Package	
477H	1143	IA32_MC29_MISC	Package	
478H	1144	IA32_MC30_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC30 reports MC errors from a specific CBo (core broadcast) and its corresponding slice of L3.
479H	1145	IA32_MC30_STATUS	Package	
47AH	1146	IA32_MC30_ADDR	Package	
47BH	1147	IA32_MC30_MISC	Package	
47CH	1148	IA32_MC31_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC31 reports MC errors from a specific CBo (core broadcast) and its corresponding slice of L3.
47DH	1149	IA32_MC31_STATUS	Package	
47EH	1150	IA32_MC31_ADDR	Package	
47FH	1147	IA32_MC31_MISC	Package	

See Table 2-19, Table 2-25 for other MSR definitions applicable to Intel Xeon processor E7 v2 with CPUID signature 06_3AH.

NOTES:

1. An override configuration lower than the factory-set configuration is always supported. An override configuration higher than the factory-set configuration is dependent on features specific to the processor and the platform.

2.11.3 Additional Uncore PMU MSRs in the Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v2 and E7 v2 Families

Intel Xeon Processor E5 v2 and E7 v2 families are based on the Ivy Bridge-E microarchitecture. The MSR-based uncore PMU interfaces are listed in Table 2-23 and Table 2-27. For complete detail of the uncore PMU, refer to Intel Xeon Processor E5 v2 Product Family Uncore Performance Monitoring Guide. These processors have a CPUID signature with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel of 06_3EH.

Table 2-27. Uncore PMU MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v2 and E7 v2 Families

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
C00H	3072	MSR_PMON_GLOBAL_CTL	Package	Uncore Perfmon Per-Socket Global Control
C01H	3073	MSR_PMON_GLOBAL_STATUS	Package	Uncore Perfmon Per-Socket Global Status
C06H	3078	MSR_PMON_GLOBAL_CONFIG	Package	Uncore Perfmon Per-Socket Global Configuration
C15H	3093	MSR_U_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore U-box Perfmon U-Box Wide Status
C35H	3125	MSR_PCU_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore PCU Perfmon Box Wide Status
D1AH	3354	MSR_C0_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 0 Perfmon Box Wide Filter1
D3AH	3386	MSR_C1_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 1 Perfmon Box Wide Filter1
D5AH	3418	MSR_C2_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 2 Perfmon Box Wide Filter1
D7AH	3450	MSR_C3_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 3 Perfmon Box Wide Filter1
D9AH	3482	MSR_C4_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 4 Perfmon Box Wide Filter1
DBAH	3514	MSR_C5_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 5 Perfmon Box Wide Filter1
DDAH	3546	MSR_C6_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 6 Perfmon Box Wide Filter1
DFAH	3578	MSR_C7_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 7 Perfmon Box Wide Filter1
E04H	3588	MSR_C8_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-Box 8 Perfmon Local Box Wide Control
E10H	3600	MSR_C8_PMON_EVNTSEL0	Package	Uncore C-Box 8 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 8 Counter 0
E11H	3601	MSR_C8_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 8 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 8 Counter 1
E12H	3602	MSR_C8_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 8 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 8 Counter 2
E13H	3603	MSR_C8_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 8 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 8 Counter 3
E14H	3604	MSR_C8_PMON_BOX_FILTER	Package	Uncore C-Box 8 Perfmon Box Wide Filter
E16H	3606	MSR_C8_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 8 Perfmon Counter 0
E17H	3607	MSR_C8_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 8 Perfmon Counter 1
E18H	3608	MSR_C8_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-Box 8 Perfmon Counter 2
E19H	3609	MSR_C8_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-Box 8 Perfmon Counter 3
E1AH	3610	MSR_C8_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 8 Perfmon Box Wide Filter1
E24H	3620	MSR_C9_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-Box 9 Perfmon Local Box Wide Control
E30H	3632	MSR_C9_PMON_EVNTSEL0	Package	Uncore C-Box 9 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 9 Counter 0
E31H	3633	MSR_C9_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 9 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 9 Counter 1
E32H	3634	MSR_C9_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 9 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 9 Counter 2
E33H	3635	MSR_C9_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 9 Perfmon Event Select for C-box 9 Counter 3
E34H	3636	MSR_C9_PMON_BOX_FILTER	Package	Uncore C-Box 9 Perfmon Box Wide Filter
E36H	3638	MSR_C9_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 9 Perfmon Counter 0

Table 2-27. Uncore PMU MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v2 and E7 v2 Families (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
E37H	3639	MSR_C9_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 9 Perfmon Counter 1
E38H	3640	MSR_C9_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-Box 9 Perfmon Counter 2
E39H	3641	MSR_C9_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-Box 9 Perfmon Counter 3
E3AH	3642	MSR_C9_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 9 Perfmon Box Wide Filter1
E44H	3652	MSR_C10_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-Box 10 Perfmon Local Box Wide Control
E50H	3664	MSR_C10_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 10 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 10 Counter 0
E51H	3665	MSR_C10_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 10 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 10 Counter 1
E52H	3666	MSR_C10_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 10 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 10 Counter 2
E53H	3667	MSR_C10_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 10 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 10 Counter 3
E54H	3668	MSR_C10_PMON_BOX_FILTER	Package	Uncore C-Box 10 Perfmon Box Wide Filter
E56H	3670	MSR_C10_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 10 Perfmon Counter 0
E57H	3671	MSR_C10_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 10 Perfmon Counter 1
E58H	3672	MSR_C10_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-Box 10 Perfmon Counter 2
E59H	3673	MSR_C10_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-Box 10 Perfmon Counter 3
E5AH	3674	MSR_C10_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 10 Perfmon Box Wide Filter1
E64H	3684	MSR_C11_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-Box 11 Perfmon Local Box Wide Control
E70H	3696	MSR_C11_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 11 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 11 Counter 0
E71H	3697	MSR_C11_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 11 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 11 Counter 1
E72H	3698	MSR_C11_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 11 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 11 Counter 2
E73H	3699	MSR_C11_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 11 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 11 Counter 3
E74H	3700	MSR_C11_PMON_BOX_FILTER	Package	Uncore C-Box 11 Perfmon Box Wide Filter
E76H	3702	MSR_C11_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 11 Perfmon Counter 0
E77H	3703	MSR_C11_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 11 Perfmon Counter 1
E78H	3704	MSR_C11_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-Box 11 Perfmon Counter 2
E79H	3705	MSR_C11_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-Box 11 Perfmon Counter 3
E7AH	3706	MSR_C11_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 11 Perfmon Box Wide Filter1
E84H	3716	MSR_C12_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-Box 12 Perfmon Local Box Wide Control
E90H	3728	MSR_C12_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 12 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 12 Counter 0
E91H	3729	MSR_C12_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 12 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 12 Counter 1

Table 2-27. Uncore PMU MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v2 and E7 v2 Families (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
E92H	3730	MSR_C12_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 12 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 12 Counter 2
E93H	3731	MSR_C12_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 12 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 12 Counter 3
E94H	3732	MSR_C12_PMON_BOX_FILTER	Package	Uncore C-Box 12 Perfmon Box Wide Filter
E96H	3734	MSR_C12_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 12 Perfmon Counter 0
E97H	3735	MSR_C12_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 12 Perfmon Counter 1
E98H	3736	MSR_C12_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-Box 12 Perfmon Counter 2
E99H	3737	MSR_C12_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-Box 12 Perfmon Counter 3
E9AH	3738	MSR_C12_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 12 Perfmon Box Wide Filter1
EA4H	3748	MSR_C13_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-Box 13 Perfmon Local Box Wide Control
EBOH	3760	MSR_C13_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 13 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 13 Counter 0
EB1H	3761	MSR_C13_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 13 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 13 Counter 1
EB2H	3762	MSR_C13_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 13 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 13 Counter 2
EB3H	3763	MSR_C13_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 13 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 13 Counter 3
EB4H	3764	MSR_C13_PMON_BOX_FILTER	Package	Uncore C-Box 13 Perfmon Box Wide Filter
EB6H	3766	MSR_C13_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 13 Perfmon Counter 0
EB7H	3767	MSR_C13_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 13 Perfmon Counter 1
EB8H	3768	MSR_C13_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-Box 13 Perfmon Counter 2
EB9H	3769	MSR_C13_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-Box 13 Perfmon Counter 3
EBAH	3770	MSR_C13_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 13 Perfmon Box Wide Filter1
EC4H	3780	MSR_C14_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-Box 14 Perfmon Local Box Wide Control
EDO H	3792	MSR_C14_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 14 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 14 Counter 0
ED1H	3793	MSR_C14_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 14 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 14 Counter 1
ED2H	3794	MSR_C14_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 14 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 14 Counter 2
ED3H	3795	MSR_C14_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 14 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 14 Counter 3
ED4H	3796	MSR_C14_PMON_BOX_FILTER	Package	Uncore C-Box 14 Perfmon Box Wide Filter
ED6H	3798	MSR_C14_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 14 Perfmon Counter 0
ED7H	3799	MSR_C14_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 14 Perfmon Counter 1
ED8H	3800	MSR_C14_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-Box 14 Perfmon Counter 2
ED9H	3801	MSR_C14_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-Box 14 Perfmon Counter 3
EDA H	3802	MSR_C14_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 14 Perfmon Box Wide Filter1

2.12 MSRS IN THE 4TH GENERATION INTEL® CORE™ PROCESSORS (BASED ON HASWELL MICROARCHITECTURE)

The 4th generation Intel® Core™ processor family and Intel® Xeon® processor E3-1200v3 product family (based on Haswell microarchitecture), with CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel signature 06_3CH/06_45H/06_46H, support the MSR interfaces listed in Table 2-19, Table 2-20, Table 2-21, and Table 2-28. For an MSR listed in Table 2-19 that also appears in Table 2-28, Table 2-28 supercede Table 2-19.

The MSRs listed in Table 2-28 also apply to processors based on Haswell-E microarchitecture (see Section 2.13).

Table 2-28. Additional MSRs Supported by Processors based on the Haswell or Haswell-E microarchitectures

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
3BH	59	IA32_TSC_ADJUST	Thread	Per-Logical-Processor TSC ADJUST (R/W) See Table 2-2.
CEH	206	MSR_PLATFORM_INFO	Package	Platform Information Contains power management and other model specific features enumeration. See http://biosbits.org .
		7:0		Reserved
		15:8	Package	Maximum Non-Turbo Ratio (R/O) This is the ratio of the frequency that invariant TSC runs at. Frequency = ratio * 100 MHz.
		27:16		Reserved
		28	Package	Programmable Ratio Limit for Turbo Mode (R/O) When set to 1, indicates that Programmable Ratio Limit for Turbo mode is enabled. When set to 0, indicates Programmable Ratio Limit for Turbo mode is disabled.
		29	Package	Programmable TDP Limit for Turbo Mode (R/O) When set to 1, indicates that TDP Limit for Turbo mode is programmable. When set to 0, indicates TDP Limit for Turbo mode is not programmable.
		31:30		Reserved
		32	Package	Low Power Mode Support (LPM) (R/O) When set to 1, indicates that LPM is supported. When set to 0, indicates LPM is not supported.
		34:33	Package	Number of ConfigTDP Levels (R/O) 00: Only Base TDP level available. 01: One additional TDP level available. 02: Two additional TDP level available. 11: Reserved
		39:35		Reserved
	47:40	Package	Maximum Efficiency Ratio (R/O) This is the minimum ratio (maximum efficiency) that the processor can operate, in units of 100MHz.	

Table 2-28. Additional MSRs Supported by Processors based on the Haswell or Haswell-E microarchitectures

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		55:48	Package	Minimum Operating Ratio (R/O) Contains the minimum supported operating ratio in units of 100 MHz.
		63:56		Reserved
186H	390	IA32_PERFEVTSELO	Thread	Performance Event Select for Counter 0 (R/W) Supports all fields described in Table 2-2 and the fields below.
		32		IN_TX: See Section 18.3.6.5.1. When IN_TX (bit 32) is set, AnyThread (bit 21) should be cleared to prevent incorrect results.
187H	391	IA32_PERFEVTSEL1	Thread	Performance Event Select for Counter 1 (R/W) Supports all fields described in Table 2-2 and the fields below.
		32		IN_TX: See Section 18.3.6.5.1. When IN_TX (bit 32) is set, AnyThread (bit 21) should be cleared to prevent incorrect results.
188H	392	IA32_PERFEVTSEL2	Thread	Performance Event Select for Counter 2 (R/W) Supports all fields described in Table 2-2 and the fields below.
		32		IN_TX: See Section 18.3.6.5.1. When IN_TX (bit 32) is set, AnyThread (bit 21) should be cleared to prevent incorrect results.
		33		IN_TXCP: See Section 18.3.6.5.1. When IN_TXCP=1 & IN_TX=1 and in sampling, a spurious PMI may occur and transactions may continuously abort near overflow conditions. Software should favor using IN_TXCP for counting over sampling. If sampling, software should use large "sample-after" value after clearing the counter configured to use IN_TXCP and also always reset the counter even when no overflow condition was reported.
189H	393	IA32_PERFEVTSEL3	Thread	Performance Event Select for Counter 3 (R/W) Supports all fields described in Table 2-2 and the fields below.
		32		IN_TX: See Section 18.3.6.5.1 When IN_TX (bit 32) is set, AnyThread (bit 21) should be cleared to prevent incorrect results.
1C8H	456	MSR_LBR_SELECT	Thread	Last Branch Record Filtering Select Register (R/W)
		0		CPL_EQ_0
		1		CPL_NEQ_0
		2		JCC
		3		NEAR_REL_CALL

Table 2-28. Additional MSRs Supported by Processors based on the Haswell or Haswell-E microarchitectures

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		4		NEAR_IND_CALL
		5		NEAR_RET
		6		NEAR_IND_JMP
		7		NEAR_REL_JMP
		8		FAR_BRANCH
		9		EN_CALL_STACK
		63:9		Reserved
1D9H	473	IA32_DEBUGCTL	Thread	Debug Control (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		0		LBR: Last Branch Record
		1		BTF
		5:2		Reserved
		6		TR: Branch Trace
		7		BTS: Log Branch Trace Message to BTS Buffer
		8		BTINT
		9		BTS_OFF_OS
		10		BTS_OFF_USER
		11		FREEZE_LBR_ON_PMI
		12		FREEZE_PERFMON_ON_PMI
		13		ENABLE_UNCORE_PMI
		14		FREEZE_WHILE_SMM
		15		RTM_DEBUG
		63:15		Reserved
491H	1169	IA32_VMX_VMFUNC	Thread	Capability Reporting Register of VM-Function Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2.
60BH	1548	MSR_PKG_C7_IRT_L1	Package	Package C6/C7 Interrupt Response Limit 1 (R/W) This MSR defines the interrupt response time limit used by the processor to manage a transition to a package C6 or C7 state. The latency programmed in this register is for the shorter-latency sub C-states used by an MWAIT hint to a C6 or C7 state. Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.
		9:0		Interrupt Response Time Limit (R/W) Specifies the limit that should be used to decide if the package should be put into a package C6 or C7 state.

Table 2-28. Additional MSRs Supported by Processors based on the Haswell or Haswell-E microarchitectures

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		12:10		Time Unit (R/W) Specifies the encoding value of time unit of the interrupt response time limit. See Table 2-19 for supported time unit encodings.
		14:13		Reserved
		15		Valid (R/W) Indicates whether the values in bits 12:0 are valid and can be used by the processor for package C-state management.
		63:16		Reserved
60CH	1548	MSR_PKGC_IRTL2	Package	Package C6/C7 Interrupt Response Limit 2 (R/W) This MSR defines the interrupt response time limit used by the processor to manage a transition to a package C6 or C7 state. The latency programmed in this register is for the longer-latency sub C-states used by an MWAIT hint to a C6 or C7 state. Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.
		9:0		Interrupt response time limit (R/W) Specifies the limit that should be used to decide if the package should be put into a package C6 or C7 state.
		12:10		Time Unit (R/W) Specifies the encoding value of time unit of the interrupt response time limit. See Table 2-19 for supported time unit encodings.
		14:13		Reserved
		15		Valid (R/W) Indicates whether the values in bits 12:0 are valid and can be used by the processor for package C-state management.
		63:16		Reserved
613H	1555	MSR_PKG_PERF_STATUS	Package	PKG Perf Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.3, "Package RAPL Domain."
619H	1561	MSR_DRAM_ENERGY_STATUS	Package	DRAM Energy Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.5, "DRAM RAPL Domain."
61BH	1563	MSR_DRAM_PERF_STATUS	Package	DRAM Performance Throttling Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.5, "DRAM RAPL Domain."
648H	1608	MSR_CONFIG_TDP_NOMINAL	Package	Base TDP Ratio (R/O)
		7:0		Config_TDP_Base Base TDP level ratio to be used for this specific processor (in units of 100 MHz).

Table 2-28. Additional MSRs Supported by Processors based on the Haswell or Haswell-E microarchitectures

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		63:8		Reserved
649H	1609	MSR_CONFIG_TDP_LEVEL1	Package	ConfigTDP Level 1 Ratio and Power Level (R/O)
		14:0		PKG_TDP_LVL1 Power setting for ConfigTDP Level 1.
		15		Reserved
		23:16		Config_TDP_LVL1_Ratio ConfigTDP level 1 ratio to be used for this specific processor.
		31:24		Reserved
		46:32		PKG_MAX_PWR_LVL1 Max Power setting allowed for ConfigTDP Level 1.
		62:47		PKG_MIN_PWR_LVL1 MIN Power setting allowed for ConfigTDP Level 1.
		63		Reserved
64AH	1610	MSR_CONFIG_TDP_LEVEL2	Package	ConfigTDP Level 2 Ratio and Power Level (R/O)
		14:0		PKG_TDP_LVL2 Power setting for ConfigTDP Level 2.
		15		Reserved
		23:16		Config_TDP_LVL2_Ratio ConfigTDP level 2 ratio to be used for this specific processor.
		31:24		Reserved
		46:32		PKG_MAX_PWR_LVL2 Max Power setting allowed for ConfigTDP Level 2.
		62:47		PKG_MIN_PWR_LVL2 MIN Power setting allowed for ConfigTDP Level 2.
		63		Reserved
64BH	1611	MSR_CONFIG_TDP_CONTROL	Package	ConfigTDP Control (R/W)
		1:0		TDP_LEVEL (RW/L) System BIOS can program this field.
		30:2		Reserved
		31		Config_TDP_Lock (RW/L) When this bit is set, the content of this register is locked until a reset.
		63:32		Reserved
64CH	1612	MSR_TURBO_ACTIVATION_RATIO	Package	ConfigTDP Control (R/W)

Table 2-28. Additional MSRs Supported by Processors based on the Haswell or Haswell-E microarchitectures

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		7:0		MAX_NON_TURBO_RATIO (R/W/L) System BIOS can program this field.
		30:8		Reserved
		31		TURBO_ACTIVATION_RATIO_Lock (R/W/L) When this bit is set, the content of this register is locked until a reset.
		63:32		Reserved
C80H	3200	IA32_DEBUG_INTERFACE	Package	Silicon Debug Feature Control (R/W) See Table 2-2.

2.12.1 MSRs in 4th Generation Intel® Core™ Processor Family (based on Haswell Microarchitecture)

Table 2-29 lists model-specific registers (MSRs) that are specific to 4th generation Intel® Core™ processor family and Intel® Xeon® processor E3-1200 v3 product family (based on Haswell microarchitecture). These processors have a CPUID signature with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel of 06_3CH/06_45H/06_46H, see Table 2-1.

Table 2-29. MSRs Supported by 4th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors (Haswell Microarchitecture)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
E2H	226	MSR_PKG_CST_CONFIG_CONTROL	Core	C-State Configuration Control (R/W) Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-states. See http://biosbits.org .
		3:0		Package C-State Limit (R/W) Specifies the lowest processor-specific C-state code name (consuming the least power) for the package. The default is set as factory-configured package C-state limit. The following C-state code name encodings are supported: 0000b: C0/C1 (no package C-state support) 0001b: C2 0010b: C3 0011b: C6 0100b: C7 0101b: C7s Package C states C7 are not available to processors with a signature of 06_3CH.
		9:4		Reserved
		10		I/O MWAIT Redirection Enable (R/W)

Table 2-29. MSRs Supported by 4th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors (Haswell Microarchitecture) (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		14:11		Reserved
		15		CFG Lock (R/WO)
		24:16		Reserved
		25		C3 State Auto Demotion Enable (R/W)
		26		C1 State Auto Demotion Enable (R/W)
		27		Enable C3 Undemotion (R/W)
		28		Enable C1 Undemotion (R/W)
		63:29		Reserved
17DH	390	MSR_SMM_MCA_CAP	THREAD	Enhanced SMM Capabilities (SMM-RO) Reports SMM capability Enhancement. Accessible only while in SMM.
		57:0		Reserved
		58		SMM_Code_Access_Chk (SMM-RO) If set to 1, indicates that the SMM code access restriction is supported and the MSR_SMM_FEATURE_CONTROL is supported.
		59		Long_Flow_Indication (SMM-RO) If set to 1, indicates that the SMM long flow indicator is supported and the MSR_SMM_DELAYED is supported.
		63:60		Reserved
1ADH	429	MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit of Turbo Mode RO if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 0. RW if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 1.
		7:0	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 1C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 1 core active.
		15:8	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 2C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 2 core active.
		23:16	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 3C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 3 core active.
		31:24	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 4C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 4 core active.
		63:32		Reserved
391H	913	MSR_UNC_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL	Package	Uncore PMU Global Control
		0		Core 0 select.
		1		Core 1 select.
		2		Core 2 select.
		3		Core 3 select.
		18:4		Reserved

Table 2-29. MSRs Supported by 4th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors (Haswell Microarchitecture) (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		29		Enable all uncore counters.
		30		Enable wake on PMI.
		31		Enable Freezing counter when overflow.
		63:32		Reserved
392H	914	MSR_UNC_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS	Package	Uncore PMU Main Status
		0		Fixed counter overflowed.
		1		An ARB counter overflowed.
		2		Reserved
		3		A CBox counter overflowed (on any slice).
		63:4		Reserved
394H	916	MSR_UNC_PERF_FIXED_CTRL	Package	Uncore Fixed Counter Control (R/W)
		19:0		Reserved
		20		Enable overflow propagation.
		21		Reserved
		22		Enable counting.
		63:23		Reserved
395H	917	MSR_UNC_PERF_FIXED_CTR	Package	Uncore Fixed Counter
		47:0		Current count.
		63:48		Reserved
396H	918	MSR_UNC_CBO_CONFIG	Package	Uncore C-Box Configuration Information (R/O)
		3:0		Encoded number of C-Box, derive value by "-1".
		63:4		Reserved
3B0H	946	MSR_UNC_ARB_PERFCTR0	Package	Uncore Arb Unit, Performance Counter 0
3B1H	947	MSR_UNC_ARB_PERFCTR1	Package	Uncore Arb Unit, Performance Counter 1
3B2H	944	MSR_UNC_ARB_PERFEVTSELO	Package	Uncore Arb Unit, Counter 0 Event Select MSR
3B3H	945	MSR_UNC_ARB_PERFEVTSEL1	Package	Uncore Arb Unit, Counter 1 Event Select MSR
391H	913	MSR_UNC_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL	Package	Uncore PMU Global Control
		0		Core 0 select.
		1		Core 1 select.
		2		Core 2 select.
		3		Core 3 select.
		18:4		Reserved
		29		Enable all uncore counters.
		30		Enable wake on PMI.
		31		Enable Freezing counter when overflow.
63:32		Reserved		

Table 2-29. MSRs Supported by 4th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors (Haswell Microarchitecture) (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
395H	917	MSR_UNC_PERF_FIXED_CTR	Package	Uncore Fixed Counter
		47:0		Current count.
		63:48		Reserved
3B3H	945	MSR_UNC_ARB_PERFEVTSEL1	Package	Uncore Arb Unit, Counter 1 Event Select MSR
4E0H	1248	MSR_SMM_FEATURE_CONTROL	Package	Enhanced SMM Feature Control (SMM-RW) Reports SMM capability Enhancement. Accessible only while in SMM.
		0		Lock (SMM-RWO) When set to '1' locks this register from further changes.
		1		Reserved
		2		SMM_Code_Chk_En (SMM-RW) This control bit is available only if MSR_SMM_MCA_CAP[58] == 1. When set to '0' (default) none of the logical processors are prevented from executing SMM code outside the ranges defined by the SMRR. When set to '1' any logical processor in the package that attempts to execute SMM code not within the ranges defined by the SMRR will assert an unrecoverable MCE.
		63:3		Reserved
4E2H	1250	MSR_SMM_DELAYED	Package	SMM Delayed (SMM-RO) Reports the interruptible state of all logical processors in the package. Available only while in SMM and MSR_SMM_MCA_CAP[LONG_FLOW_INDICATION] == 1.
		N-1:0		LOG_PROC_STATE (SMM-RO) Each bit represents a logical processor of its state in a long flow of internal operation which delays servicing an interrupt. The corresponding bit will be set at the start of long events such as: Microcode Update Load, C6, WBINVD, Ratio Change, Throttle. The bit is automatically cleared at the end of each long event. The reset value of this field is 0. Only bit positions below N = CPUID.(EAX=0BH, ECX=PKG_LVL):EBX[15:0] can be updated.
		63:N		Reserved
4E3H	1251	MSR_SMM_BLOCKED	Package	SMM Blocked (SMM-RO) Reports the blocked state of all logical processors in the package. Available only while in SMM.

Table 2-29. MSRs Supported by 4th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors (Haswell Microarchitecture) (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		N-1:0		LOG_PROC_STATE (SMM-RO) Each bit represents a logical processor of its blocked state to service an SMI. The corresponding bit will be set if the logical processor is in one of the following states: Wait For SIPI or SENTER Sleep. The reset value of this field is 0FFFH. Only bit positions below N = CPUID.(EAX=0BH, ECX=PKG_LVL):EBX[15:0] can be updated.
		63:N		Reserved
606H	1542	MSR_RAPL_POWER_UNIT	Package	Unit Multipliers Used in RAPL Interfaces (R/O)
		3:0	Package	Power Units See Section 14.9.1, "RAPL Interfaces."
		7:4	Package	Reserved
		12:8	Package	Energy Status Units Energy related information (in Joules) is based on the multiplier, $1/2^{\text{ESU}}$; where ESU is an unsigned integer represented by bits 12:8. Default value is 0EH (or 61 micro-joules).
		15:13	Package	Reserved
		19:16	Package	Time Units See Section 14.9.1, "RAPL Interfaces."
		63:20		Reserved
639H	1593	MSR_PPO_ENERGY_STATUS	Package	PPO Energy Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.4, "PPO/PP1 RAPL Domains."
640H	1600	MSR_PP1_POWER_LIMIT	Package	PP1 RAPL Power Limit Control (R/W) See Section 14.9.4, "PPO/PP1 RAPL Domains."
641H	1601	MSR_PP1_ENERGY_STATUS	Package	PP1 Energy Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.4, "PPO/PP1 RAPL Domains."
642H	1602	MSR_PP1_POLICY	Package	PP1 Balance Policy (R/W) See Section 14.9.4, "PPO/PP1 RAPL Domains."
690H	1680	MSR_CORE_PERF_LIMIT_REASONS	Package	Indicator of Frequency Clipping in Processor Cores (R/W) (Frequency refers to processor core frequency.)
		0		PROCHOT Status (RO) When set, processor core frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to assertion of external PROCHOT.
		1		Thermal Status (RO) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to a thermal event.
		3:2		Reserved

Table 2-29. MSRs Supported by 4th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors (Haswell Microarchitecture) (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		4		Graphics Driver Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to Processor Graphics driver override.
		5		Autonomous Utilization-Based Frequency Control Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request because the processor has detected that utilization is low.
		6		VR Therm Alert Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to a thermal alert from the Voltage Regulator.
		7		Reserved
		8		Electrical Design Point Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to electrical design point constraints (e.g., maximum electrical current consumption).
		9		Core Power Limiting Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to domain-level power limiting.
		10		Package-Level Power Limiting PL1 Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to package-level power limiting PL1.
		11		Package-Level PL2 Power Limiting Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to package-level power limiting PL2.
		12		Max Turbo Limit Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to multi-core turbo limits.
		13		Turbo Transition Attenuation Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to Turbo transition attenuation. This prevents performance degradation due to frequent operating ratio changes.
		15:14		Reserved
		16		PROCHOT Log When set, indicates that the PROCHOT Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.

Table 2-29. MSRs Supported by 4th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors (Haswell Microarchitecture) (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		17		<p>Thermal Log</p> <p>When set, indicates that the Thermal Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared.</p> <p>This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.</p>
		19:18		Reserved
		20		<p>Graphics Driver Log</p> <p>When set, indicates that the Graphics Driver Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared.</p> <p>This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.</p>
		21		<p>Autonomous Utilization-Based Frequency Control Log</p> <p>When set, indicates that the Autonomous Utilization-Based Frequency Control Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared.</p> <p>This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.</p>
		22		<p>VR Therm Alert Log</p> <p>When set, indicates that the VR Therm Alert Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared.</p> <p>This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.</p>
		23		Reserved
		24		<p>Electrical Design Point Log</p> <p>When set, indicates that the EDP Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared.</p> <p>This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.</p>
		25		<p>Core Power Limiting Log</p> <p>When set, indicates that the Core Power Limiting Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared.</p> <p>This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.</p>
		26		<p>Package-Level PL1 Power Limiting Log</p> <p>When set, indicates that the Package Level PL1 Power Limiting Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared.</p> <p>This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.</p>

Table 2-29. MSRs Supported by 4th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors (Haswell Microarchitecture) (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		27		Package-Level PL2 Power Limiting Log When set, indicates that the Package Level PL2 Power Limiting Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		28		Max Turbo Limit Log When set, indicates that the Max Turbo Limit Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		29		Turbo Transition Attenuation Log When set, indicates that the Turbo Transition Attenuation Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		63:30		Reserved
6B0H	1712	MSR_GRAPHICS_PERF_LIMIT_REASONS	Package	Indicator of Frequency Clipping in the Processor Graphics (R/W) (Frequency refers to processor graphics frequency.)
		0		PROCHOT Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to assertion of external PROCHOT.
		1		Thermal Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to a thermal event.
		3:2		Reserved
		4		Graphics Driver Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to Processor Graphics driver override.
		5		Autonomous Utilization-Based Frequency Control Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request because the processor has detected that utilization is low.
		6		VR Therm Alert Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to a thermal alert from the Voltage Regulator.
		7		Reserved

Table 2-29. MSRs Supported by 4th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors (Haswell Microarchitecture) (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		8		Electrical Design Point Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to electrical design point constraints (e.g., maximum electrical current consumption).
		9		Graphics Power Limiting Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to domain-level power limiting.
		10		Package-Level Power Limiting PL1 Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to package-level power limiting PL1.
		11		Package-Level PL2 Power Limiting Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to package-level power limiting PL2.
		15:12		Reserved
		16		PROCHOT Log When set, indicates that the PROCHOT Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		17		Thermal Log When set, indicates that the Thermal Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		19:18		Reserved
		20		Graphics Driver Log When set, indicates that the Graphics Driver Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		21		Autonomous Utilization-Based Frequency Control Log When set, indicates that the Autonomous Utilization-Based Frequency Control Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		22		VR Therm Alert Log When set, indicates that the VR Therm Alert Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.

Table 2-29. MSRs Supported by 4th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors (Haswell Microarchitecture) (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		23		Reserved
		24		Electrical Design Point Log When set, indicates that the EDP Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		25		Core Power Limiting Log When set, indicates that the Core Power Limiting Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		26		Package-Level PL1 Power Limiting Log When set, indicates that the Package Level PL1 Power Limiting Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		27		Package-Level PL2 Power Limiting Log When set, indicates that the Package Level PL2 Power Limiting Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		28		Max Turbo Limit Log When set, indicates that the Max Turbo Limit Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		29		Turbo Transition Attenuation Log When set, indicates that the Turbo Transition Attenuation Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		63:30		Reserved
6B1H	1713	MSR_RING_PERF_LIMIT_REASONS	Package	Indicator of Frequency Clipping in the Ring Interconnect (R/W) (Frequency refers to ring interconnect in the uncore.)
		0		PROCHOT Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to assertion of external PROCHOT.

Table 2-29. MSRs Supported by 4th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors (Haswell Microarchitecture) (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		1		Thermal Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to a thermal event.
		5:2		Reserved
		6		VR Therm Alert Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to a thermal alert from the Voltage Regulator.
		7		Reserved
		8		Electrical Design Point Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to electrical design point constraints (e.g., maximum electrical current consumption).
		9		Reserved
		10		Package-Level Power Limiting PL1 Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to package-level power limiting PL1.
		11		Package-Level PL2 Power Limiting Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to package-level power limiting PL2.
		15:12		Reserved
		16		PROCHOT Log When set, indicates that the PROCHOT Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		17		Thermal Log When set, indicates that the Thermal Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		19:18		Reserved.
		20		Graphics Driver Log When set, indicates that the Graphics Driver Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.

Table 2-29. MSRs Supported by 4th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors (Haswell Microarchitecture) (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		21		Autonomous Utilization-Based Frequency Control Log When set, indicates that the Autonomous Utilization-Based Frequency Control Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		22		VR Therm Alert Log When set, indicates that the VR Therm Alert Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		23		Reserved
		24		Electrical Design Point Log When set, indicates that the EDP Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		25		Core Power Limiting Log When set, indicates that the Core Power Limiting Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		26		Package-Level PL1 Power Limiting Log When set, indicates that the Package Level PL1 Power Limiting Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		27		Package-Level PL2 Power Limiting Log When set, indicates that the Package Level PL2 Power Limiting Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		28		Max Turbo Limit Log When set, indicates that the Max Turbo Limit Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.

Table 2-29. MSRs Supported by 4th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors (Haswell Microarchitecture) (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		29		Turbo Transition Attenuation Log When set, indicates that the Turbo Transition Attenuation Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		63:30		Reserved
700H	1792	MSR_UNC_CBO_0_PERFEVTSEL0	Package	Uncore C-Box 0, Counter 0 Event Select MSR
701H	1793	MSR_UNC_CBO_0_PERFEVTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 0, Counter 1 Event Select MSR
706H	1798	MSR_UNC_CBO_0_PERFCTRO	Package	Uncore C-Box 0, Performance Counter 0
707H	1799	MSR_UNC_CBO_0_PERFCTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 0, Performance Counter 1
710H	1808	MSR_UNC_CBO_1_PERFEVTSEL0	Package	Uncore C-Box 1, Counter 0 Event Select MSR
711H	1809	MSR_UNC_CBO_1_PERFEVTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 1, Counter 1 Event Select MSR
716H	1814	MSR_UNC_CBO_1_PERFCTRO	Package	Uncore C-Box 1, Performance Counter 0
717H	1815	MSR_UNC_CBO_1_PERFCTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 1, Performance Counter 1
720H	1824	MSR_UNC_CBO_2_PERFEVTSEL0	Package	Uncore C-Box 2, Counter 0 Event Select MSR
721H	1824	MSR_UNC_CBO_2_PERFEVTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 2, Counter 1 Event Select MSR
726H	1830	MSR_UNC_CBO_2_PERFCTRO	Package	Uncore C-Box 2, Performance Counter 0
727H	1831	MSR_UNC_CBO_2_PERFCTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 2, Performance Counter 1
730H	1840	MSR_UNC_CBO_3_PERFEVTSEL0	Package	Uncore C-Box 3, Counter 0 Event Select MSR
731H	1841	MSR_UNC_CBO_3_PERFEVTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 3, Counter 1 Event Select MSR
736H	1846	MSR_UNC_CBO_3_PERFCTRO	Package	Uncore C-Box 3, Performance Counter 0
737H	1847	MSR_UNC_CBO_3_PERFCTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 3, Performance Counter 1
See Table 2-19, Table 2-20, Table 2-21, Table 2-24, Table 2-28 for other MSR definitions applicable to processors with CPUID signatures 063CH, 06_46H.				

2.12.2 Additional Residency MSRs Supported in 4th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors

The 4th generation Intel® Core™ processor family (based on Haswell microarchitecture) with CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel signature 06_45H supports the MSR interfaces listed in Table 2-19, Table 2-20, Table 2-28, Table 2-29, and Table 2-30.

Table 2-30. Additional Residency MSRs Supported by 4th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel Signature 06_45H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
E2H	226	MSR_PKG_CST_CONFIG_CONTROL	Core	C-State Configuration Control (R/W) Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-states. See http://biosbits.org .
		3:0		Package C-State Limit (R/W) Specifies the lowest processor-specific C-state code name (consuming the least power) for the package. The default is set as factory-configured package C-state limit. The following C-state code name encodings are supported: 0000b: C0/C1 (no package C-state support) 0001b: C2 0010b: C3 0011b: C6 0100b: C7 0101b: C7s 0110b: C8 0111b: C9 1000b: C10
		9:4		Reserved
		10		I/O MWAIT Redirection Enable (R/W)
		14:11		Reserved
		15		CFG Lock (R/WO)
		24:16		Reserved
		25		C3 State Auto Demotion Enable (R/W)
		26		C1 State Auto Demotion Enable (R/W)
		27		Enable C3 Undemotion (R/W)
		28		Enable C1 Undemotion (R/W)
		63:29		Reserved
630H	1584	MSR_PKG_C8_RESIDENCY	Package	Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.
		59:0		Package C8 Residency Counter (R/O) Value since last reset that this package is in processor-specific C8 states. Count at the same frequency as the TSC.
		63:60		Reserved

Table 2-30. Additional Residency MSRs Supported by 4th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel Signature 06_45H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
631H	1585	MSR_PKG_C9_RESIDENCY	Package	Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.
		59:0		Package C9 Residency Counter (R/O) Value since last reset that this package is in processor-specific C9 states. Count at the same frequency as the TSC.
		63:60		Reserved
632H	1586	MSR_PKG_C10_RESIDENCY	Package	Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-States.
		59:0		Package C10 Residency Counter (R/O) Value since last reset that this package is in processor-specific C10 states. Count at the same frequency as the TSC.
		63:60		Reserved

See Table 2-19, Table 2-20, Table 2-21, Table 2-28, Table 2-29 for other MSR definitions applicable to processors with CPUID signature 06_45H.

2.13 MSRS IN INTEL® XEON® PROCESSOR E5 V3 AND E7 V3 PRODUCT FAMILY

Intel® Xeon® processor E5 v3 family and Intel® Xeon® processor E7 v3 family are based on Haswell-E microarchitecture (CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel = 06_3F). These processors supports the MSR interfaces listed in Table 2-19, Table 2-28, and Table 2-31.

Table 2-31. Additional MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v3 Family

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
35H	53	MSR_CORE_THREAD_COUNT	Package	Configured State of Enabled Processor Core Count and Logical Processor Count (RO) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> After a Power-On RESET, enumerates factory configuration of the number of processor cores and logical processors in the physical package. Following the sequence of (i) BIOS modified a Configuration Mask which selects a subset of processor cores to be active post RESET and (ii) a RESET event after the modification, enumerates the current configuration of enabled processor core count and logical processor count in the physical package.
		15:0		Core_COUNT (RO) The number of processor cores that are currently enabled (by either factory configuration or BIOS configuration) in the physical package.

Table 2-31. Additional MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v3 Family

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		31:16		THREAD_COUNT (RO) The number of logical processors that are currently enabled (by either factory configuration or BIOS configuration) in the physical package.
		63:32		Reserved
53H	83	MSR_THREAD_ID_INFO	Thread	A Hardware Assigned ID for the Logical Processor (RO)
		7:0		Logical_Processor_ID (RO) An implementation-specific numerical value physically assigned to each logical processor. This ID is not related to Initial APIC ID or x2APIC ID, it is unique within a physical package.
		63:8		Reserved
E2H	226	MSR_PKG_CST_CONFIG_CONTROL	Core	C-State Configuration Control (R/W) Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-states. See http://biosbits.org .
		2:0		Package C-State Limit (R/W) Specifies the lowest processor-specific C-state code name (consuming the least power) for the package. The default is set as factory-configured package C-state limit. The following C-state code name encodings are supported: 000b: C0/C1 (no package C-state support) 001b: C2 010b: C6 (non-retention) 011b: C6 (retention) 111b: No Package C state limits. All C states supported by the processor are available.
		9:3		Reserved
		10		I/O MWAIT Redirection Enable (R/W)
		14:11		Reserved
		15		CFG Lock (R/W0)
		24:16		Reserved
		25		C3 State Auto Demotion Enable (R/W)
		26		C1 State Auto Demotion Enable (R/W)
		27		Enable C3 Undemotion (R/W)
		28		Enable C1 Undemotion (R/W)
		29		Package C State Demotion Enable (R/W)
		30		Package C State UnDemotion Enable (R/W)
63:31		Reserved		

Table 2-31. Additional MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v3 Family

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
179H	377	IA32_MCG_CAP	Thread	Global Machine Check Capability (R/O)
		7:0		Count
		8		MCG_CTL_P
		9		MCG_EXT_P
		10		MCP_CMCI_P
		11		MCG_TES_P
		15:12		Reserved
		23:16		MCG_EXT_CNT
		24		MCG_SER_P
		25		MCG_EM_P
		26		MCG_ELOG_P
	63:27		Reserved	
17DH	390	MSR_SMM_MCA_CAP	Thread	Enhanced SMM Capabilities (SMM-RO) Reports SMM capability Enhancement. Accessible only while in SMM.
		57:0		Reserved
		58		SMM_Code_Access_Chk (SMM-RO) If set to 1, indicates that the SMM code access restriction is supported and a host-space interface available to SMM handler.
		59		Long_Flow_Indication (SMM-RO) If set to 1, indicates that the SMM long flow indicator is supported and a host-space interface available to SMM handler.
		63:60		Reserved
17FH	383	MSR_ERROR_CONTROL	Package	MC Bank Error Configuration (R/W)
		0		Reserved
		1		MemError Log Enable (R/W) When set, enables IMC status bank to log additional info in bits 36:32.
		63:2		Reserved
1ADH	429	MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit of Turbo Mode RO if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 0. RW if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 1.
		7:0	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 1C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 1 core active.
		15:8	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 2C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 2 core active.
		23:16	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 3C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 3 core active.

Table 2-31. Additional MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v3 Family

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		31:24	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 4C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 4 core active.
		39:32	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 5C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 5 core active.
		47:40	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 6C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 6 core active.
		55:48	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 7C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 7 core active.
		63:56	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 8C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 8 core active.
1AEH	430	MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT1	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit of Turbo Mode RO if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 0. RW if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 1.
		7:0	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 9C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 9 core active.
		15:8	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 10C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 10 core active.
		23:16	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 11C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 11 core active.
		31:24	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 12C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 12 core active.
		39:32	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 13C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 13 core active.
		47:40	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 14C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 14 core active.
		55:48	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 15C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 15 core active.
		63:56	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 16C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 16 core active.
1AFH	431	MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT2	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit of Turbo Mode RO if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 0. RW if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 1.
		7:0	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 17C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 17 core active.
		15:8	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 18C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 18 core active.
		62:16	Package	Reserved

Table 2-31. Additional MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v3 Family

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		63	Package	Semaphore for Turbo Ratio Limit Configuration If 1, the processor uses override configuration ¹ specified in MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT, MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT1 and MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT2. If 0, the processor uses factory-set configuration (Default).
414H	1044	IA32_MC5_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC5 reports MC errors from the Intel QPI 0 module.
415H	1045	IA32_MC5_STATUS	Package	
416H	1046	IA32_MC5_ADDR	Package	
417H	1047	IA32_MC5_MISC	Package	
418H	1048	IA32_MC6_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC6 reports MC errors from the integrated I/O module.
419H	1049	IA32_MC6_STATUS	Package	
41AH	1050	IA32_MC6_ADDR	Package	
41BH	1051	IA32_MC6_MISC	Package	
41CH	1052	IA32_MC7_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC7 reports MC errors from the home agent HA 0.
41DH	1053	IA32_MC7_STATUS	Package	
41EH	1054	IA32_MC7_ADDR	Package	
41FH	1055	IA32_MC7_MISC	Package	
420H	1056	IA32_MC8_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC8 reports MC errors from the home agent HA 1.
421H	1057	IA32_MC8_STATUS	Package	
422H	1058	IA32_MC8_ADDR	Package	
423H	1059	IA32_MC8_MISC	Package	
424H	1060	IA32_MC9_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC9 through MC 16 report MC errors from each channel of the integrated memory controllers.
425H	1061	IA32_MC9_STATUS	Package	
426H	1062	IA32_MC9_ADDR	Package	
427H	1063	IA32_MC9_MISC	Package	
428H	1064	IA32_MC10_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC9 through MC 16 report MC errors from each channel of the integrated memory controllers.
429H	1065	IA32_MC10_STATUS	Package	
42AH	1066	IA32_MC10_ADDR	Package	
42BH	1067	IA32_MC10_MISC	Package	
42CH	1068	IA32_MC11_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC9 through MC 16 report MC errors from each channel of the integrated memory controllers.
42DH	1069	IA32_MC11_STATUS	Package	
42EH	1070	IA32_MC11_ADDR	Package	
42FH	1071	IA32_MC11_MISC	Package	

Table 2-31. Additional MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v3 Family

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
430H	1072	IA32_MC12_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC9 through MC 16 report MC errors from each channel of the integrated memory controllers.
431H	1073	IA32_MC12_STATUS	Package	
432H	1074	IA32_MC12_ADDR	Package	
433H	1075	IA32_MC12_MISC	Package	
434H	1076	IA32_MC13_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC9 through MC 16 report MC errors from each channel of the integrated memory controllers.
435H	1077	IA32_MC13_STATUS	Package	
436H	1078	IA32_MC13_ADDR	Package	
437H	1079	IA32_MC13_MISC	Package	
438H	1080	IA32_MC14_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC9 through MC 16 report MC errors from each channel of the integrated memory controllers.
439H	1081	IA32_MC14_STATUS	Package	
43AH	1082	IA32_MC14_ADDR	Package	
43BH	1083	IA32_MC14_MISC	Package	
43CH	1084	IA32_MC15_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC9 through MC 16 report MC errors from each channel of the integrated memory controllers.
43DH	1085	IA32_MC15_STATUS	Package	
43EH	1086	IA32_MC15_ADDR	Package	
43FH	1087	IA32_MC15_MISC	Package	
440H	1088	IA32_MC16_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC9 through MC 16 report MC errors from each channel of the integrated memory controllers.
441H	1089	IA32_MC16_STATUS	Package	
442H	1090	IA32_MC16_ADDR	Package	
443H	1091	IA32_MC16_MISC	Package	
444H	1092	IA32_MC17_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC17 reports MC errors from the following pair of CBo/L3 Slices (if the pair is present): CBo0, CBo3, CBo6, CBo9, CBo12, CBo15.
445H	1093	IA32_MC17_STATUS	Package	
446H	1094	IA32_MC17_ADDR	Package	
447H	1095	IA32_MC17_MISC	Package	
448H	1096	IA32_MC18_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC18 reports MC errors from the following pair of CBo/L3 Slices (if the pair is present): CBo1, CBo4, CBo7, CBo10, CBo13, CBo16.
449H	1097	IA32_MC18_STATUS	Package	
44AH	1098	IA32_MC18_ADDR	Package	
44BH	1099	IA32_MC18_MISC	Package	
44CH	1100	IA32_MC19_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC19 reports MC errors from the following pair of CBo/L3 Slices (if the pair is present): CBo2, CBo5, CBo8, CBo11, CBo14, CBo17.
44DH	1101	IA32_MC19_STATUS	Package	
44EH	1102	IA32_MC19_ADDR	Package	
44FH	1103	IA32_MC19_MISC	Package	
450H	1104	IA32_MC20_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC20 reports MC errors from the Intel QPI 1 module.
451H	1105	IA32_MC20_STATUS	Package	
452H	1106	IA32_MC20_ADDR	Package	
453H	1107	IA32_MC20_MISC	Package	

Table 2-31. Additional MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v3 Family

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
454H	1108	IA32_MC21_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC21 reports MC errors from the Intel QPI 2 module.
455H	1109	IA32_MC21_STATUS	Package	
456H	1110	IA32_MC21_ADDR	Package	
457H	1111	IA32_MC21_MISC	Package	
606H	1542	MSR_RAPL_POWER_UNIT	Package	Unit Multipliers Used in RAPL Interfaces (R/O)
		3:0	Package	Power Units See Section 14.9.1, "RAPL Interfaces."
		7:4	Package	Reserved
		12:8	Package	Energy Status Units Energy related information (in Joules) is based on the multiplier, 1/2^ESU; where ESU is an unsigned integer represented by bits 12:8. Default value is 0EH (or 61 micro-joules).
		15:13	Package	Reserved
		19:16	Package	Time Units See Section 14.9.1, "RAPL Interfaces."
		63:20		Reserved
618H	1560	MSR_DRAM_POWER_LIMIT	Package	DRAM RAPL Power Limit Control (R/W) See Section 14.9.5, "DRAM RAPL Domain."
619H	1561	MSR_DRAM_ENERGY_STATUS	Package	DRAM Energy Status (R/O) Energy Consumed by DRAM devices.
		31:0		Energy in 15.3 micro-joules. Requires BIOS configuration to enable DRAM RAPL mode 0 (Direct VR).
		63:32		Reserved
61BH	1563	MSR_DRAM_PERF_STATUS	Package	DRAM Performance Throttling Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.5, "DRAM RAPL Domain."
61CH	1564	MSR_DRAM_POWER_INFO	Package	DRAM RAPL Parameters (R/W) See Section 14.9.5, "DRAM RAPL Domain."
61EH	1566	MSR_PCIE_PLL_RATIO	Package	Configuration of PCIe PLL Relative to BCLK(R/W)
		1:0	Package	PCIe Ratio (R/W) 00b: Use 5:5 mapping for 100MHz operation (default). 01b: Use 5:4 mapping for 125MHz operation. 10b: Use 5:3 mapping for 166MHz operation. 11b: Use 5:2 mapping for 250MHz operation.
		2	Package	LPLL Select (R/W) If 1, use configured setting of PCIe Ratio.
		3	Package	LONG RESET (R/W) If 1, wait an additional time-out before re-locking Gen2/Gen3 PLLs.
		63:4		Reserved

Table 2-31. Additional MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v3 Family

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
620H	1568	MSR_UNCORE_RATIO_LIMIT	Package	Uncore Ratio Limit (R/W) Out of reset, the min_ratio and max_ratio fields represent the widest possible range of uncore frequencies. Writing to these fields allows software to control the minimum and the maximum frequency that hardware will select.
		63:15		Reserved
		14:8		MIN_RATIO Writing to this field controls the minimum possible ratio of the LLC/Ring.
		7		Reserved
		6:0		MAX_RATIO This field is used to limit the max ratio of the LLC/Ring.
639H	1593	MSR_PPO_ENERGY_STATUS	Package	Reserved (R/O) Reads return 0.
690H	1680	MSR_CORE_PERF_LIMIT_REASONS	Package	Indicator of Frequency Clipping in Processor Cores (R/W) (Frequency refers to processor core frequency.)
		0		PROCHOT Status (R0) When set, processor core frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to assertion of external PROCHOT.
		1		Thermal Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to a thermal event.
		2		Power Budget Management Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to PBM limit
		3		Platform Configuration Services Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to PCS limit
		4		Reserved
		5		Autonomous Utilization-Based Frequency Control Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request because the processor has detected that utilization is low.
		6		VR Therm Alert Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to a thermal alert from the Voltage Regulator.
		7		Reserved

Table 2-31. Additional MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v3 Family

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		8		Electrical Design Point Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to electrical design point constraints (e.g., maximum electrical current consumption).
		9		Reserved
		10		Multi-Core Turbo Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to Multi-Core Turbo limits.
		12:11		Reserved
		13		Core Frequency P1 Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below max non-turbo P1.
		14		Core Max N-Core Turbo Frequency Limiting Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below max n-core turbo frequency.
		15		Core Frequency Limiting Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request.
		16		PROCHOT Log When set, indicates that the PROCHOT Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		17		Thermal Log When set, indicates that the Thermal Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		18		Power Budget Management Log When set, indicates that the PBM Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		19		Platform Configuration Services Log When set, indicates that the PCS Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		20		Reserved

Table 2-31. Additional MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v3 Family

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		21		Autonomous Utilization-Based Frequency Control Log When set, indicates that the AUBFC Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		22		VR Therm Alert Log When set, indicates that the VR Therm Alert Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		23		Reserved
		24		Electrical Design Point Log When set, indicates that the EDP Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		25		Reserved
		26		Multi-Core Turbo Log When set, indicates that the Multi-Core Turbo Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		28:27		Reserved
		29		Core Frequency P1 Log When set, indicates that the Core Frequency P1 Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		30		Core Max N-Core Turbo Frequency Limiting Log When set, indicates that the Core Max n-core Turbo Frequency Limiting Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		31		Core Frequency Limiting Log When set, indicates that the Core Frequency Limiting Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		63:32		Reserved
C8DH	3213	IA32_QM_EVTSEL	THREAD	Monitoring Event Select Register (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EBX.RDT-M[bit 12] = 1.

Table 2-31. Additional MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v3 Family

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		7:0		EventID (Rw) Event encoding: 0x0: No monitoring. 0x1: L3 occupancy monitoring. All other encoding reserved.
		31:8		Reserved
		41:32		RMID (Rw)
		63:42		Reserved
C8EH	3214	IA32_QM_CTR	THREAD	Monitoring Counter Register (R/O) If CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EBX.RDT-M[bit 12] = 1.
		61:0		Resource Monitored Data
		62		Unavailable: If 1, indicates data for this RMID is not available or not monitored for this resource or RMID.
		63		Error: If 1, indicates and unsupported RMID or event type was written to IA32_PQR_QM_EVTSEL.
C8FH	3215	IA32_PQR_ASSOC	THREAD	Resource Association Register (R/W)
		9:0		RMID
		63: 10		Reserved

See Table 2-19, Table 2-28 for other MSR definitions applicable to processors with CPUID signature 06_3FH.

NOTES:

1. An override configuration lower than the factory-set configuration is always supported. An override configuration higher than the factory-set configuration is dependent on features specific to the processor and the platform.

2.13.1 Additional Uncore PMU MSRs in the Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v3 Family

Intel Xeon Processor E5 v3 and E7 v3 family are based on the Haswell-E microarchitecture. The MSR-based uncore PMU interfaces are listed in Table 2-32. For complete detail of the uncore PMU, refer to Intel Xeon Processor E5 v3 Product Family Uncore Performance Monitoring Guide. These processors have a CPUID signature with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel of 06_3FH.

Table 2-32. Uncore PMU MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v3 Family

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
700H		MSR_PMON_GLOBAL_CTL	Package	Uncore Perfmon Per-Socket Global Control
701H		MSR_PMON_GLOBAL_STATUS	Package	Uncore Perfmon Per-Socket Global Status
702H		MSR_PMON_GLOBAL_CONFIG	Package	Uncore Perfmon Per-Socket Global Configuration
703H		MSR_U_PMON_UCLK_FIXED_CTL	Package	Uncore U-Box UCLK Fixed Counter Control
704H		MSR_U_PMON_UCLK_FIXED_CTR	Package	Uncore U-Box UCLK Fixed Counter
705H		MSR_U_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore U-Box Perfmon Event Select for U-Box Counter 0

Table 2-32. Uncore PMU MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v3 Family (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
706H		MSR_U_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore U-Box Perfmon Event Select for U-Box Counter 1
708H		MSR_U_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore U-Box Perfmon U-Box Wide Status
709H		MSR_U_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore U-Box Perfmon Counter 0
70AH		MSR_U_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore U-Box Perfmon Counter 1
710H		MSR_PCU_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore PCU Perfmon for PCU-Box-Wide Control
711H		MSR_PCU_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore PCU Perfmon Event Select for PCU Counter 0
712H		MSR_PCU_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore PCU Perfmon Event Select for PCU Counter 1
713H		MSR_PCU_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore PCU Perfmon Event Select for PCU Counter 2
714H		MSR_PCU_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore PCU Perfmon Event Select for PCU Counter 3
715H		MSR_PCU_PMON_BOX_FILTER	Package	Uncore PCU Perfmon Box-Wide Filter
716H		MSR_PCU_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore PCU Perfmon Box Wide Status
717H		MSR_PCU_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore PCU Perfmon Counter 0
718H		MSR_PCU_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore PCU Perfmon Counter 1
719H		MSR_PCU_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore PCU Perfmon Counter 2
71AH		MSR_PCU_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore PCU Perfmon Counter 3
720H		MSR_S0_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore SBo 0 Perfmon for SBo 0 Box-Wide Control
721H		MSR_S0_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore SBo 0 Perfmon Event Select for SBo 0 Counter 0
722H		MSR_S0_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore SBo 0 Perfmon Event Select for SBo 0 Counter 1
723H		MSR_S0_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore SBo 0 Perfmon Event Select for SBo 0 Counter 2
724H		MSR_S0_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore SBo 0 Perfmon Event Select for SBo 0 Counter 3
725H		MSR_S0_PMON_BOX_FILTER	Package	Uncore SBo 0 Perfmon Box-Wide Filter
726H		MSR_S0_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore SBo 0 Perfmon Counter 0
727H		MSR_S0_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore SBo 0 Perfmon Counter 1
728H		MSR_S0_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore SBo 0 Perfmon Counter 2
729H		MSR_S0_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore SBo 0 Perfmon Counter 3
72AH		MSR_S1_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore SBo 1 Perfmon for SBo 1 Box-Wide Control
72BH		MSR_S1_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore SBo 1 Perfmon Event Select for SBo 1 Counter 0
72CH		MSR_S1_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore SBo 1 Perfmon Event Select for SBo 1 Counter 1
72DH		MSR_S1_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore SBo 1 Perfmon Event Select for SBo 1 Counter 2
72EH		MSR_S1_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore SBo 1 Perfmon Event Select for SBo 1 Counter 3
72FH		MSR_S1_PMON_BOX_FILTER	Package	Uncore SBo 1 Perfmon Box-Wide Filter

Table 2-32. Uncore PMU MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v3 Family (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
730H		MSR_S1_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore SBo 1 Perfmon Counter 0
731H		MSR_S1_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore SBo 1 Perfmon Counter 1
732H		MSR_S1_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore SBo 1 Perfmon Counter 2
733H		MSR_S1_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore SBo 1 Perfmon Counter 3
734H		MSR_S2_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore SBo 2 Perfmon for SBo 2 Box-Wide Control
735H		MSR_S2_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore SBo 2 Perfmon Event Select for SBo 2 Counter 0
736H		MSR_S2_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore SBo 2 Perfmon Event Select for SBo 2 Counter 1
737H		MSR_S2_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore SBo 2 Perfmon Event Select for SBo 2 Counter 2
738H		MSR_S2_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore SBo 2 Perfmon Event Select for SBo 2 Counter 3
739H		MSR_S2_PMON_BOX_FILTER	Package	Uncore SBo 2 Perfmon Box-Wide Filter
73AH		MSR_S2_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore SBo 2 Perfmon Counter 0
73BH		MSR_S2_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore SBo 2 Perfmon Counter 1
73CH		MSR_S2_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore SBo 2 Perfmon Counter 2
73DH		MSR_S2_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore SBo 2 Perfmon Counter 3
73EH		MSR_S3_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore SBo 3 Perfmon for SBo 3 Box-Wide Control
73FH		MSR_S3_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore SBo 3 Perfmon Event Select for SBo 3 Counter 0
740H		MSR_S3_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore SBo 3 Perfmon Event Select for SBo 3 Counter 1
741H		MSR_S3_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore SBo 3 Perfmon Event Select for SBo 3 Counter 2
742H		MSR_S3_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore SBo 3 Perfmon Event Select for SBo 3 Counter 3
743H		MSR_S3_PMON_BOX_FILTER	Package	Uncore SBo 3 Perfmon Box-Wide Filter
744H		MSR_S3_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore SBo 3 Perfmon Counter 0
745H		MSR_S3_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore SBo 3 Perfmon Counter 1
746H		MSR_S3_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore SBo 3 Perfmon Counter 2
747H		MSR_S3_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore SBo 3 Perfmon Counter 3
E00H		MSR_CO_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-Box 0 Perfmon for Box-Wide Control
E01H		MSR_CO_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 0 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 0 Counter 0
E02H		MSR_CO_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 0 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 0 Counter 1
E03H		MSR_CO_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 0 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 0 Counter 2
E04H		MSR_CO_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 0 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 0 Counter 3

Table 2-32. Uncore PMU MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v3 Family (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
E05H		MSR_CO_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	Package	Uncore C-Box 0 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 0
E06H		MSR_CO_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 0 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 1
E07H		MSR_CO_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-Box 0 Perfmon Box Wide Status
E08H		MSR_CO_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 0 Perfmon Counter 0
E09H		MSR_CO_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 0 Perfmon Counter 1
E0AH		MSR_CO_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-Box 0 Perfmon Counter 2
E0BH		MSR_CO_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-Box 0 Perfmon Counter 3
E10H		MSR_C1_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-Box 1 Perfmon for Box-Wide Control
E11H		MSR_C1_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 1 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 1 Counter 0
E12H		MSR_C1_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 1 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 1 Counter 1
E13H		MSR_C1_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 1 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 1 Counter 2
E14H		MSR_C1_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 1 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 1 Counter 3
E15H		MSR_C1_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	Package	Uncore C-Box 1 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 0
E16H		MSR_C1_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 1 Perfmon Box Wide Filter1
E17H		MSR_C1_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-Box 1 Perfmon Box Wide Status
E18H		MSR_C1_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 1 Perfmon Counter 0
E19H		MSR_C1_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 1 Perfmon Counter 1
E1AH		MSR_C1_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-Box 1 Perfmon Counter 2
E1BH		MSR_C1_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-Box 1 Perfmon Counter 3
E20H		MSR_C2_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-Box 2 Perfmon for Box-Wide Control
E21H		MSR_C2_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 2 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 2 Counter 0
E22H		MSR_C2_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 2 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 2 Counter 1
E23H		MSR_C2_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 2 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 2 Counter 2
E24H		MSR_C2_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 2 Perfmon Event select for C-Box 2 Counter 3
E25H		MSR_C2_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	Package	Uncore C-Box 2 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 0
E26H		MSR_C2_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 2 Perfmon Box Wide Filter1
E27H		MSR_C2_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-Box 2 Perfmon Box Wide Status
E28H		MSR_C2_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 2 Perfmon Counter 0
E29H		MSR_C2_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 2 Perfmon Counter 1
E2AH		MSR_C2_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-Box 2 Perfmon Counter 2
E2BH		MSR_C2_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-Box 2 Perfmon Counter 3

Table 2-32. Uncore PMU MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v3 Family (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
E30H		MSR_C3_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-Box 3 Perfmon for Box-Wide Control
E31H		MSR_C3_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 3 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 3 Counter 0
E32H		MSR_C3_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 3 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 3 Counter 1
E33H		MSR_C3_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 3 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 3 Counter 2
E34H		MSR_C3_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 3 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 3 Counter 3
E35H		MSR_C3_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	Package	Uncore C-Box 3 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 0
E36H		MSR_C3_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 3 Perfmon Box Wide Filter1
E37H		MSR_C3_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-Box 3 Perfmon Box Wide Status
E38H		MSR_C3_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 3 Perfmon Counter 0
E39H		MSR_C3_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 3 Perfmon Counter 1
E3AH		MSR_C3_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-Box 3 Perfmon Counter 2
E3BH		MSR_C3_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-Box 3 Perfmon Counter 3
E40H		MSR_C4_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-Box 4 Perfmon for Box-Wide Control
E41H		MSR_C4_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 4 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 4 Counter 0
E42H		MSR_C4_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 4 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 4 Counter 1
E43H		MSR_C4_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 4 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 4 Counter 2
E44H		MSR_C4_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 4 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 4 Counter 3
E45H		MSR_C4_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	Package	Uncore C-Box 4 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 0
E46H		MSR_C4_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 4 Perfmon Box Wide Filter1
E47H		MSR_C4_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-Box 4 Perfmon Box Wide Status
E48H		MSR_C4_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 4 Perfmon Counter 0
E49H		MSR_C4_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 4 Perfmon Counter 1
E4AH		MSR_C4_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-Box 4 Perfmon Counter 2
E4BH		MSR_C4_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-Box 4 Perfmon Counter 3
E50H		MSR_C5_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-Box 5 Perfmon for Box-Wide Control
E51H		MSR_C5_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 5 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 5 Counter 0
E52H		MSR_C5_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 5 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 5 Counter 1
E53H		MSR_C5_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 5 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 5 Counter 2
E54H		MSR_C5_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 5 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 5 Counter 3

Table 2-32. Uncore PMU MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v3 Family (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
E55H		MSR_C5_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	Package	Uncore C-Box 5 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 0
E56H		MSR_C5_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 5 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 1
E57H		MSR_C5_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-Box 5 Perfmon Box Wide Status
E58H		MSR_C5_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 5 Perfmon Counter 0
E59H		MSR_C5_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 5 Perfmon Counter 1
E5AH		MSR_C5_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-Box 5 Perfmon Counter 2
E5BH		MSR_C5_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-Box 5 Perfmon Counter 3
E60H		MSR_C6_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-Box 6 Perfmon for Box-Wide Control
E61H		MSR_C6_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 6 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 6 Counter 0
E62H		MSR_C6_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 6 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 6 Counter 1
E63H		MSR_C6_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 6 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 6 Counter 2
E64H		MSR_C6_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 6 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 6 Counter 3
E65H		MSR_C6_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	Package	Uncore C-Box 6 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 0
E66H		MSR_C6_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 6 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 1
E67H		MSR_C6_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-Box 6 Perfmon Box Wide Status
E68H		MSR_C6_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 6 Perfmon Counter 0
E69H		MSR_C6_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 6 Perfmon Counter 1
E6AH		MSR_C6_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-Box 6 Perfmon Counter 2
E6BH		MSR_C6_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-Box 6 Perfmon Counter 3
E70H		MSR_C7_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-Box 7 Perfmon for Box-Wide Control
E71H		MSR_C7_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 7 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 7 Counter 0
E72H		MSR_C7_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 7 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 7 Counter 1
E73H		MSR_C7_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 7 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 7 Counter 2
E74H		MSR_C7_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 7 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 7 Counter 3
E75H		MSR_C7_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	Package	Uncore C-Box 7 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 0
E76H		MSR_C7_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 7 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 1
E77H		MSR_C7_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-Box 7 Perfmon Box Wide Status
E78H		MSR_C7_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 7 Perfmon Counter 0
E79H		MSR_C7_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 7 Perfmon Counter 1
E7AH		MSR_C7_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-Box 7 Perfmon Counter 2
E7BH		MSR_C7_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-Box 7 Perfmon Counter 3

Table 2-32. Uncore PMU MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v3 Family (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
E80H		MSR_C8_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-Box 8 Perfmon Local Box Wide Control
E81H		MSR_C8_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 8 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 8 Counter 0
E82H		MSR_C8_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 8 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 8 Counter 1
E83H		MSR_C8_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 8 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 8 Counter 2
E84H		MSR_C8_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 8 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 8 Counter 3
E85H		MSR_C8_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	Package	Uncore C-Box 8 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 0
E86H		MSR_C8_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 8 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 1
E87H		MSR_C8_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-Box 8 Perfmon Box Wide Status
E88H		MSR_C8_PMON_CTRL0	Package	Uncore C-Box 8 Perfmon Counter 0
E89H		MSR_C8_PMON_CTRL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 8 Perfmon Counter 1
E8AH		MSR_C8_PMON_CTRL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 8 Perfmon Counter 2
E8BH		MSR_C8_PMON_CTRL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 8 Perfmon Counter 3
E90H		MSR_C9_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-Box 9 Perfmon Local Box Wide Control
E91H		MSR_C9_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 9 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 9 Counter 0
E92H		MSR_C9_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 9 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 9 Counter 1
E93H		MSR_C9_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 9 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 9 Counter 2
E94H		MSR_C9_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 9 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 9 Counter 3
E95H		MSR_C9_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	Package	Uncore C-Box 9 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 0
E96H		MSR_C9_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 9 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 1
E97H		MSR_C9_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-Box 9 Perfmon Box Wide Status
E98H		MSR_C9_PMON_CTRL0	Package	Uncore C-Box 9 Perfmon Counter 0
E99H		MSR_C9_PMON_CTRL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 9 Perfmon Counter 1
E9AH		MSR_C9_PMON_CTRL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 9 Perfmon Counter 2
E9BH		MSR_C9_PMON_CTRL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 9 Perfmon Counter 3
EA0H		MSR_C10_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-Box 10 Perfmon Local Box Wide Control
EA1H		MSR_C10_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 10 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 10 Counter 0
EA2H		MSR_C10_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 10 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 10 Counter 1
EA3H		MSR_C10_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 10 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 10 Counter 2
EA4H		MSR_C10_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 10 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 10 Counter 3

Table 2-32. Uncore PMU MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v3 Family (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
EA5H		MSR_C10_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	Package	Uncore C-Box 10 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 0
EA6H		MSR_C10_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 10 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 1
EA7H		MSR_C10_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-Box 10 Perfmon Box Wide Status
EA8H		MSR_C10_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 10 Perfmon Counter 0
EA9H		MSR_C10_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 10 Perfmon Counter 1
EAAH		MSR_C10_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-Box 10 Perfmon Counter 2
EABH		MSR_C10_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-Box 10 Perfmon Counter 3
EBOH		MSR_C11_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-Box 11 Perfmon Local Box Wide Control
EB1H		MSR_C11_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 11 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 11 Counter 0
EB2H		MSR_C11_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 11 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 11 Counter 1
EB3H		MSR_C11_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 11 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 11 Counter 2
EB4H		MSR_C11_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 11 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 11 Counter 3
EB5H		MSR_C11_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	Package	Uncore C-Box 11 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 0
EB6H		MSR_C11_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 11 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 1
EB7H		MSR_C11_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-Box 11 Perfmon Box Wide Status
EB8H		MSR_C11_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 11 Perfmon Counter 0
EB9H		MSR_C11_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 11 Perfmon Counter 1
EBAH		MSR_C11_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-Box 11 Perfmon Counter 2
EBBH		MSR_C11_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-Box 11 Perfmon Counter 3
EC0H		MSR_C12_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-Box 12 Perfmon Local Box Wide Control
EC1H		MSR_C12_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 12 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 12 Counter 0
EC2H		MSR_C12_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 12 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 12 Counter 1
EC3H		MSR_C12_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 12 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 12 Counter 2
EC4H		MSR_C12_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 12 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 12 Counter 3
EC5H		MSR_C12_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	Package	Uncore C-Box 12 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 0
EC6H		MSR_C12_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 12 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 1
EC7H		MSR_C12_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-Box 12 Perfmon Box Wide Status
EC8H		MSR_C12_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 12 Perfmon Counter 0
EC9H		MSR_C12_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 12 Perfmon Counter 1
ECAH		MSR_C12_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-Box 12 Perfmon Counter 2
ECBH		MSR_C12_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-Box 12 Perfmon Counter 3

Table 2-32. Uncore PMU MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v3 Family (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
ED0H		MSR_C13_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-Box 13 Perfmon local box wide control.
ED1H		MSR_C13_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 13 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 13 Counter 0
ED2H		MSR_C13_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 13 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 13 Counter 1
ED3H		MSR_C13_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 13 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 13 Counter 2
ED4H		MSR_C13_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 13 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 13 Counter 3
ED5H		MSR_C13_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	Package	Uncore C-Box 13 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 0
ED6H		MSR_C13_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 13 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 1
ED7H		MSR_C13_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-Box 13 Perfmon Box Wide Status
ED8H		MSR_C13_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 13 Perfmon Counter 0
ED9H		MSR_C13_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 13 Perfmon Counter 1
EDAH		MSR_C13_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-Box 13 Perfmon Counter 2
EDBH		MSR_C13_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-Box 13 Perfmon Counter 3
EE0H		MSR_C14_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-Box 14 Perfmon Local Box Wide Control
EE1H		MSR_C14_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 14 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 14 Counter 0
EE2H		MSR_C14_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 14 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 14 Counter 1
EE3H		MSR_C14_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 14 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 14 Counter 2
EE4H		MSR_C14_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 14 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 14 Counter 3
EE5H		MSR_C14_PMON_BOX_FILTER	Package	Uncore C-Box 14 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 0
EE6H		MSR_C14_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 14 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 1
EE7H		MSR_C14_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-Box 14 Perfmon Box Wide Status
EE8H		MSR_C14_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 14 Perfmon Counter 0
EE9H		MSR_C14_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 14 Perfmon Counter 1
EEAH		MSR_C14_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-Box 14 Perfmon Counter 2
EEBH		MSR_C14_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-Box 14 Perfmon Counter 3
EF0H		MSR_C15_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-Box 15 Perfmon Local Box Wide Control
EF1H		MSR_C15_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 15 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 15 Counter 0
EF2H		MSR_C15_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 15 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 15 Counter 1
EF3H		MSR_C15_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 15 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 15 Counter 2
EF4H		MSR_C15_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 15 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 15 Counter 3

Table 2-32. Uncore PMU MSRs in Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v3 Family (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
EF5H		MSR_C15_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	Package	Uncore C-Box 15 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 0
EF6H		MSR_C15_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 15 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 1
EF7H		MSR_C15_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-Box 15 Perfmon Box Wide Status
EF8H		MSR_C15_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 15 Perfmon Counter 0
EF9H		MSR_C15_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 15 Perfmon Counter 1
EFAH		MSR_C15_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-Box 15 Perfmon Counter 2
EFBH		MSR_C15_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-Box 15 Perfmon Counter 3
F00H		MSR_C16_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-Box 16 Perfmon for Box-Wide Control
F01H		MSR_C16_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 16 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 16 Counter 0
F02H		MSR_C16_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 16 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 16 Counter 1
F03H		MSR_C16_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 16 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 16 Counter 2
F04H		MSR_C16_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 16 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 16 Counter 3
F05H		MSR_C16_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	Package	Uncore C-Box 16 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 0
F06H		MSR_C16_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 16 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 1
F07H		MSR_C16_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-Box 16 Perfmon Box Wide Status
F08H		MSR_C16_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 16 Perfmon Counter 0
F09H		MSR_C16_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 16 Perfmon Counter 1
F0AH		MSR_C16_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-Box 16 Perfmon Counter 2
E0BH		MSR_C16_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-Box 16 Perfmon Counter 3
F10H		MSR_C17_PMON_BOX_CTL	Package	Uncore C-Box 17 Perfmon for Box-Wide Control
F11H		MSR_C17_PMON_EVNTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 17 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 17 Counter 0
F12H		MSR_C17_PMON_EVNTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 17 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 17 Counter 1
F13H		MSR_C17_PMON_EVNTSEL2	Package	Uncore C-Box 17 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 17 Counter 2
F14H		MSR_C17_PMON_EVNTSEL3	Package	Uncore C-Box 17 Perfmon Event Select for C-Box 17 Counter 3
F15H		MSR_C17_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	Package	Uncore C-Box 17 Perfmon Box Wide Filter 0
F16H		MSR_C17_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	Package	Uncore C-Box 17 Perfmon Box Wide Filter1
F17H		MSR_C17_PMON_BOX_STATUS	Package	Uncore C-Box 17 Perfmon Box Wide Status
F18H		MSR_C17_PMON_CTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 17 Perfmon Counter 0
F19H		MSR_C17_PMON_CTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 17 Perfmon Counter 1
F1AH		MSR_C17_PMON_CTR2	Package	Uncore C-Box 17 Perfmon Counter 2
F1BH		MSR_C17_PMON_CTR3	Package	Uncore C-Box 17 Perfmon Counter 3

2.14 MSRS IN INTEL® CORE™ M PROCESSORS AND 5TH GENERATION INTEL CORE PROCESSORS

The Intel® Core™ M-5xxx processors and 5th generation Intel® Core™ Processors, and Intel® Xeon® Processor E3-1200 v4 family are based on the Broadwell microarchitecture. The Intel® Core™ M-5xxx processors and 5th generation Intel® Core™ Processors have CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel signature 06_3DH. Intel® Xeon® Processor E3-1200 v4 family and the 5th generation Intel® Core™ Processors have CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel signature 06_47H. Processors with signatures 06_3DH and 06_47H support the MSR interfaces listed in Table 2-19, Table 2-20, Table 2-21, Table 2-24, Table 2-28, Table 2-29, Table 2-33, and Table 2-34. For an MSR listed in Table 2-34 that also appears in the model-specific tables of prior generations, Table 2-34 supercede prior generation tables.

Table 2-33 lists MSRs that are common to processors based on the Broadwell microarchitectures (including CPUID signatures 06_3DH, 06_47H, 06_4FH, and 06_56H).

Table 2-33. Additional MSRs Common to Processors Based the Broadwell Microarchitectures

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
38EH	910	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS	Thread	See Table 2-2. See Section 18.6.2.2, "Global Counter Control Facilities."
		0		Ovf_PMC0
		1		Ovf_PMC1
		2		Ovf_PMC2
		3		Ovf_PMC3
		31:4		Reserved
		32		Ovf_FixedCtr0
		33		Ovf_FixedCtr1
		34		Ovf_FixedCtr2
		54:35		Reserved
		55		Trace_ToPA_PMI See Section 35.2.6.2, "Table of Physical Addresses (ToPA)."
		60:56		Reserved
		61		Ovf_Uncore
		62		Ovf_BufDSSAVE
63		CondChgd		
390H	912	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL	Thread	See Table 2-2. See Section 18.6.2.2, "Global Counter Control Facilities."
		0		Set 1 to clear Ovf_PMC0
		1		Set 1 to clear Ovf_PMC1
		2		Set 1 to clear Ovf_PMC2
		3		Set 1 to clear Ovf_PMC3
		31:4		Reserved
		32		Set 1 to clear Ovf_FixedCtr0
		33		Set 1 to clear Ovf_FixedCtr1

Table 2-33. Additional MSRs Common to Processors Based the Broadwell Microarchitectures

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		34		Set 1 to clear Ovf_FixedCtr2
		54:35		Reserved.
		55		Set 1 to clear Trace_ToPA_PMI. See Section 35.2.6.2, "Table of Physical Addresses (ToPA)."
		60:56		Reserved
		61		Set 1 to clear Ovf_Uncore
		62		Set 1 to clear Ovf_BufDSSAVE
		63		Set 1 to clear CondChgd
560H	1376	IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_BASE	THREAD	Trace Output Base Register (R/W)
		6:0		Reserved
		MAXPHYADDR ¹ -1:7		Base physical address.
		63:MAXPHYADDR		Reserved
561H	1377	IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS	THREAD	Trace Output Mask Pointers Register (R/W)
		6:0		Reserved
		31:7		MaskOrTableOffset
		63:32		Output Offset.
570H	1392	IA32_RTIT_CTL	Thread	Trace Control Register (R/W)
		0		TraceEn
		1		Reserved, must be zero.
		2		OS
		3		User
		6:4		Reserved, must be zero.
		7		CR3 filter
		8		ToPA Writing 0 will #GP if also setting TraceEn.
		9		Reserved, must be zero.
		10		TSCEn
		11		DisRETC
		12		Reserved, must be zero.
		13		Reserved; writing 0 will #GP if also setting TraceEn.
		63:14		Reserved, must be zero.
571H	1393	IA32_RTIT_STATUS	Thread	Tracing Status Register (R/W)
		0		Reserved, writes ignored.
		1		ContexEn, writes ignored.
		2		TriggerEn, writes ignored.
		3		Reserved

Table 2-33. Additional MSRs Common to Processors Based the Broadwell Microarchitectures

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		4		Error (R/W)
		5		Stopped
		63:6		Reserved, must be zero.
572H	1394	IA32_RTIT_CR3_MATCH	THREAD	Trace Filter CR3 Match Register (R/W)
		4:0		Reserved
		63:5		CR3[63:5] value to match.
620H		MSR_UNCORE_RATIO_LIMIT	Package	Uncore Ratio Limit (R/W) Out of reset, the min_ratio and max_ratio fields represent the widest possible range of uncore frequencies. Writing to these fields allows software to control the minimum and the maximum frequency that hardware will select.
		63:15		Reserved
		14:8		MIN_RATIO Writing to this field controls the minimum possible ratio of the LLC/Ring.
		7		Reserved
		6:0		MAX_RATIO This field is used to limit the max ratio of the LLC/Ring.

NOTES:

1. MAXPHYADDR is reported by CPUID.80000008H:EAX[7:0].

Table 2-34 lists MSRs that are specific to Intel Core M processors and 5th Generation Intel Core Processors.

Table 2-34. Additional MSRs Supported by Intel® Core™ M Processors and 5th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors

Register Address		Register Name	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
E2H	226	MSR_PKG_CST_CONFIG_CONTROL	Core	C-State Configuration Control (R/W) Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-states. See http://biosbits.org .

Table 2-34. Additional MSRs Supported by Intel® Core™ M Processors and 5th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors

Register Address		Register Name	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		3:0		Package C-State Limit (R/W) Specifies the lowest processor-specific C-state code name (consuming the least power) for the package. The default is set as factory-configured package C-state limit. The following C-state code name encodings are supported: 0000b: C0/C1 (no package C-state support) 0001b: C2 0010b: C3 0011b: C6 0100b: C7 0101b: C7s 0110b: C8 0111b: C9 1000b: C10
		9:4		Reserved
		10		I/O MWAIT Redirection Enable (R/W)
		14:11		Reserved
		15		CFG Lock (R/W0)
		24:16		Reserved
		25		C3 State Auto Demotion Enable (R/W)
		26		C1 State Auto Demotion Enable (R/W)
		27		Enable C3 Undemotion (R/W)
		28		Enable C1 Undemotion (R/W)
		29		Enable Package C-State Auto-Demotion (R/W)
		30		Enable Package C-State Undemotion (R/W)
		63:31		Reserved
1ADH	429	MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit of Turbo Mode RO if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 0. RW if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 1.
		7:0	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 1C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 1 core active.
		15:8	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 2C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 2 core active.
		23:16	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 3C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 3 core active.
		31:24	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 4C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 4 core active.

Table 2-34. Additional MSRs Supported by Intel® Core™ M Processors and 5th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors

Register Address		Register Name	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		39:32	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 5C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 5core active.
		47:40	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 6C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 6core active.
		63:48		Reserved
639H	1593	MSR_PPO_ENERGY_STATUS	Package	PPO Energy Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.4, "PPO/PP1 RAPL Domains."

See Table 2-19, Table 2-20, Table 2-21, Table 2-24, Table 2-28, Table 2-29, Table 2-33 for other MSR definitions applicable to processors with CPUID signature 06_3DH.

2.15 MSRS IN INTEL® XEON® PROCESSORS E5 V4 FAMILY

The MSRs listed in Table 2-35 are available and common to Intel® Xeon® Processor D product Family (CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel = 06_56H) and to Intel Xeon processors E5 v4, E7 v4 families (CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel = 06_4FH). They are based on the Broadwell microarchitecture.

See Section 2.15.1 for lists of tables of MSRs that are supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor D Family.

Table 2-35. Additional MSRs Common to Intel® Xeon® Processor D and Intel Xeon Processors E5 v4 Family Based on the Broadwell Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
4EH	78	MSR_PPIN_CTL	Package	Protected Processor Inventory Number Enable Control (R/W)
		0		LockOut (R/W/O) See Table 2-25.
		1		Enable_PPIN (R/W) See Table 2-25.
		63:2		Reserved
4FH	79	MSR_PPIN	Package	Protected Processor Inventory Number (R/O)
		63:0		Protected Processor Inventory Number (R/O) See Table 2-25.
CEH	206	MSR_PLATFORM_INFO	Package	Platform Information Contains power management and other model specific features enumeration. See http://biosbits.org .
		7:0		Reserved
		15:8	Package	Maximum Non-Turbo Ratio (R/O) See Table 2-25.
		22:16		Reserved.

Table 2-35. Additional MSRs Common to Intel® Xeon® Processor D and Intel Xeon Processors E5 v4 Family Based on the Broadwell Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		23	Package	PPIN_CAP (R/O) See Table 2-25.
		27:24		Reserved
		28	Package	Programmable Ratio Limit for Turbo Mode (R/O) See Table 2-25.
		29	Package	Programmable TDP Limit for Turbo Mode (R/O) See Table 2-25.
		30	Package	Programmable TJ OFFSET (R/O) See Table 2-25.
		39:31		Reserved
		47:40	Package	Maximum Efficiency Ratio (R/O) See Table 2-25.
		63:48		Reserved
E2H	226	MSR_PKG_CST_CONFIG_CONTROL	Core	C-State Configuration Control (R/W) Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-states. See http://biosbits.org .
		2:0		Package C-State Limit (R/W) Specifies the lowest processor-specific C-state code name (consuming the least power) for the package. The default is set as factory-configured package C-state limit. The following C-state code name encodings are supported: 000b: C0/C1 (no package C-state support) 001b: C2 010b: C6 (non-retention) 011b: C6 (retention) 111b: No Package C state limits. All C states supported by the processor are available.
		9:3		Reserved
		10		I/O MWAIT Redirection Enable (R/W)
		14:11		Reserved
		15		CFG Lock (R/WO)
		16		Automatic C-State Conversion Enable (R/W) If 1, the processor will convert HALT or MWAIT(C1) to MWAIT(C6).
		24:17		Reserved
		25		C3 State Auto Demotion Enable (R/W)

Table 2-35. Additional MSRs Common to Intel® Xeon® Processor D and Intel Xeon Processors E5 v4 Family Based on the Broadwell Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		26		C1 State Auto Demotion Enable (R/W)
		27		Enable C3 Undemotion (R/W)
		28		Enable C1 Undemotion (R/W)
		29		Package C State Demotion Enable (R/W)
		30		Package C State UnDemotion Enable (R/W)
		63:31		Reserved
179H	377	IA32_MCG_CAP	Thread	Global Machine Check Capability (R/O)
		7:0		Count
		8		MCG_CTL_P
		9		MCG_EXT_P
		10		MCP_CMCI_P
		11		MCG_TES_P
		15:12		Reserved
		23:16		MCG_EXT_CNT
		24		MCG_SER_P
		25		MCG_EM_P
		26		MCG_ELOG_P
		63:27		Reserved
17DH	390	MSR_SMM_MCA_CAP	Thread	Enhanced SMM Capabilities (SMM-RO) Reports SMM capability Enhancement. Accessible only while in SMM.
		57:0		Reserved
		58		SMM_Code_Access_Chk (SMM-RO) If set to 1, indicates that the SMM code access restriction is supported and a host-space interface available to SMM handler.
		59		Long_Flow_Indication (SMM-RO) If set to 1, indicates that the SMM long flow indicator is supported and a host-space interface available to SMM handler.
		63:60		Reserved
19CH	412	IA32_THERM_STATUS	Core	Thermal Monitor Status (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		0		Thermal Status (RO) See Table 2-2.
		1		Thermal Status Log (R/WCO) See Table 2-2.

Table 2-35. Additional MSRs Common to Intel® Xeon® Processor D and Intel Xeon Processors E5 v4 Family Based on the Broadwell Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		2		PROTCHOT # or FORCEPR# Status (RO) See Table 2-2.
		3		PROTCHOT # or FORCEPR# Log (R/WCO) See Table 2-2.
		4		Critical Temperature Status (RO) See Table 2-2.
		5		Critical Temperature Status Log (R/WCO) See Table 2-2.
		6		Thermal Threshold #1 Status (RO) See Table 2-2.
		7		Thermal Threshold #1 Log (R/WCO) See Table 2-2.
		8		Thermal Threshold #2 Status (RO) See Table 2-2.
		9		Thermal Threshold #2 Log (R/WCO) See Table 2-2.
		10		Power Limitation Status (RO) See Table 2-2.
		11		Power Limitation Log (R/WCO) See Table 2-2.
		12		Current Limit Status (RO) See Table 2-2.
		13		Current Limit Log (R/WCO) See Table 2-2.
		14		Cross Domain Limit Status (RO) See Table 2-2.
		15		Cross Domain Limit Log (R/WCO) See Table 2-2.
		22:16		Digital Readout (RO) See Table 2-2.
		26:23		Reserved
		30:27		Resolution in Degrees Celsius (RO) See Table 2-2.
31		Reading Valid (RO) See Table 2-2.		
63:32		Reserved		
1A2H	418	MSR_TEMPERATURE_TARGET	Package	Temperature Target
		15:0		Reserved

Table 2-35. Additional MSRs Common to Intel® Xeon® Processor D and Intel Xeon Processors E5 v4 Family Based on the Broadwell Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		23:16		Temperature Target (RO) See Table 2-25.
		27:24		TCC Activation Offset (R/W) See Table 2-25.
		63:28		Reserved.
1ADH	429	MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit of Turbo Mode RO if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 0. RW if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 1.
		7:0	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 1C
		15:8	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 2C
		23:16	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 3C
		31:24	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 4C
		39:32	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 5C
		47:40	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 6C
		55:48	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 7C
		63:56	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 8C
1AEH	430	MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT1	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit of Turbo Mode RO if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 0. RW if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 1.
		7:0	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 9C
		15:8	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 10C
		23:16	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 11C
		31:24	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 12C
		39:32	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 13C
		47:40	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 14C
		55:48	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 15C
		63:56	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 16C
606H	1542	MSR_RAPL_POWER_UNIT	Package	Unit Multipliers Used in RAPL Interfaces (R/O)
		3:0	Package	Power Units See Section 14.9.1, "RAPL Interfaces."
		7:4	Package	Reserved
		12:8	Package	Energy Status Units Energy related information (in Joules) is based on the multiplier, 1/2^ESU; where ESU is an unsigned integer represented by bits 12:8. Default value is 0EH (or 61 micro-joules).
		15:13	Package	Reserved

Table 2-35. Additional MSRs Common to Intel® Xeon® Processor D and Intel Xeon Processors E5 v4 Family Based on the Broadwell Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		19:16	Package	Time Units See Section 14.9.1, "RAPL Interfaces."
		63:20		Reserved
618H	1560	MSR_DRAM_POWER_LIMIT	Package	DRAM RAPL Power Limit Control (R/W) See Section 14.9.5, "DRAM RAPL Domain."
619H	1561	MSR_DRAM_ENERGY_STATUS	Package	DRAM Energy Status (R/O) Energy consumed by DRAM devices.
		31:0		Energy in 15.3 micro-joules. Requires BIOS configuration to enable DRAM RAPL mode 0 (Direct VR).
		63:32		Reserved
61BH	1563	MSR_DRAM_PERF_STATUS	Package	DRAM Performance Throttling Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.5, "DRAM RAPL Domain."
61CH	1564	MSR_DRAM_POWER_INFO	Package	DRAM RAPL Parameters (R/W) See Section 14.9.5, "DRAM RAPL Domain."
620H	1568	MSR_UNCORE_RATIO_LIMIT	Package	Uncore Ratio Limit (R/W) Out of reset, the min_ratio and max_ratio fields represent the widest possible range of uncore frequencies. Writing to these fields allows software to control the minimum and the maximum frequency that hardware will select.
		63:15		Reserved
		14:8		MIN_RATIO Writing to this field controls the minimum possible ratio of the LLC/Ring.
		7		Reserved
		6:0		MAX_RATIO This field is used to limit the max ratio of the LLC/Ring.
639H	1593	MSR_PPO_ENERGY_STATUS	Package	Reserved (R/O) Reads return 0.
690H	1680	MSR_CORE_PERF_LIMIT_REASONS	Package	Indicator of Frequency Clipping in Processor Cores (R/W) (Frequency refers to processor core frequency.)
		0		PROCHOT Status (R/O) When set, processor core frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to assertion of external PROCHOT.
		1		Thermal Status (R/O) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to a thermal event.

Table 2-35. Additional MSRs Common to Intel® Xeon® Processor D and Intel Xeon Processors E5 v4 Family Based on the Broadwell Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		2		Power Budget Management Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to PBM limit.
		3		Platform Configuration Services Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to PCS limit.
		4		Reserved
		5		Autonomous Utilization-Based Frequency Control Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request because the processor has detected that utilization is low.
		6		VR Therm Alert Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to a thermal alert from the Voltage Regulator.
		7		Reserved
		8		Electrical Design Point Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to electrical design point constraints (e.g., maximum electrical current consumption).
		9		Reserved
		10		Multi-Core Turbo Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to Multi-Core Turbo limits.
		12:11		Reserved
		13		Core Frequency P1 Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below max non-turbo P1.
		14		Core Max N-Core Turbo Frequency Limiting Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below max n-core turbo frequency.
		15		Core Frequency Limiting Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request.
		16		PROCHOT Log When set, indicates that the PROCHOT Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.

Table 2-35. Additional MSRs Common to Intel® Xeon® Processor D and Intel Xeon Processors E5 v4 Family Based on the Broadwell Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		17		Thermal Log When set, indicates that the Thermal Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		18		Power Budget Management Log When set, indicates that the PBM Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		19		Platform Configuration Services Log When set, indicates that the PCS Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		20		Reserved
		21		Autonomous Utilization-Based Frequency Control Log When set, indicates that the AUBFC Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		22		VR Therm Alert Log When set, indicates that the VR Therm Alert Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		23		Reserved
		24		Electrical Design Point Log When set, indicates that the EDP Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		25		Reserved
		26		Multi-Core Turbo Log When set, indicates that the Multi-Core Turbo Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		28:27		Reserved

Table 2-35. Additional MSRs Common to Intel® Xeon® Processor D and Intel Xeon Processors E5 v4 Family Based on the Broadwell Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		29		Core Frequency P1 Log When set, indicates that the Core Frequency P1 Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		30		Core Max N-Core Turbo Frequency Limiting Log When set, indicates that the Core Max n-core Turbo Frequency Limiting Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		31		Core Frequency Limiting Log When set, indicates that the Core Frequency Limiting Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		63:32		Reserved
770H	1904	IA32_PM_ENABLE	Package	See Section 14.4.2, "Enabling HWP".
771H	1905	IA32_HWP_CAPABILITIES	Thread	See Section 14.4.3, "HWP Performance Range and Dynamic Capabilities".
774H	1908	IA32_HWP_REQUEST	Thread	See Section 14.4.4, "Managing HWP".
		7:0		Minimum Performance (R/W)
		15:8		Maximum Performance (R/W)
		23:16		Desired Performance (R/W)
		63:24		Reserved
777H	1911	IA32_HWP_STATUS	Thread	See Section 14.4.5, "HWP Feedback".
		1:0		Reserved
		2		Excursion to Minimum (RO)
		63:3		Reserved
C8DH	3213	IA32_QM_EVTSEL	THREAD	Monitoring Event Select Register (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EBX.RDT-M[bit 12] = 1.
		7:0		EventID (RW) Event encoding: 0x00: No monitoring. 0x01: L3 occupancy monitoring. 0x02: Total memory bandwidth monitoring. 0x03: Local memory bandwidth monitoring. All other encoding reserved.
		31:8		Reserved

Table 2-35. Additional MSRs Common to Intel® Xeon® Processor D and Intel Xeon Processors E5 v4 Family Based on the Broadwell Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		41:32		RMID (Rw)
		63:42		Reserved
C8FH	3215	IA32_PQR_ASSOC	THREAD	Resource Association Register (R/W)
		9:0		RMID
		31:10		Reserved
		51:32		COS (R/W)
		63: 52		Reserved
C90H	3216	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_0	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 0 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1):EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=0.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 0 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved
C91H	3217	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_1	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 1 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1):EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=1.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 1 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved
C92H	3218	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_2	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 2 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1):EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=2.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 2 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved
C93H	3219	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_3	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 3 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1):EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=3.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 3 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved
C94H	3220	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_4	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 4 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1):EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=4.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 4 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved
C95H	3221	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_5	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 5 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1):EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=5.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 5 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved
C96H	3222	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_6	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 6 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1):EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=6.

Table 2-35. Additional MSRs Common to Intel® Xeon® Processor D and Intel Xeon Processors E5 v4 Family Based on the Broadwell Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 6 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved
C97H	3223	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_7	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 7 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1);EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=7.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 7 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved
C98H	3224	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_8	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 8 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1);EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=8.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 8 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved
C99H	3225	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_9	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 9 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1);EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=9.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 9 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved
C9AH	3226	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_10	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 10 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1);EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=10.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 10 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved
C9BH	3227	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_11	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 11 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1);EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=11.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 11 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved
C9CH	3228	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_12	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 12 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1);EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=12.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 12 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved
C9DH	3229	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_13	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 13 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1);EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=13.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 13 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved
C9EH	3230	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_14	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 14 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1);EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=14.

Table 2-35. Additional MSRs Common to Intel® Xeon® Processor D and Intel Xeon Processors E5 v4 Family Based on the Broadwell Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 14 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved
C9FH	3231	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_15	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 15 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1);EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=15.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 15 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved

2.15.1 Additional MSRs Supported in the Intel® Xeon® Processor D Product Family

The MSRs listed in Table 2-36 are available to Intel® Xeon® Processor D Product Family (CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel = 06_56H). The Intel® Xeon® processor D product family is based on the Broadwell microarchitecture and supports the MSR interfaces listed in Table 2-19, Table 2-28, Table 2-33, Table 2-35, and Table 2-36.

Table 2-36. Additional MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor D with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel 06_56H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
1ACH	428	MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT3	Package	Config Ratio Limit of Turbo Mode RO if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 0. RW if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 1.
		62:0	Package	Reserved
		63	Package	Semaphore for Turbo Ratio Limit Configuration If 1, the processor uses override configuration ¹ specified in MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT, MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT1. If 0, the processor uses factory-set configuration (Default).
286H	646	IA32_MC6_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
287H	647	IA32_MC7_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
289H	649	IA32_MC9_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28AH	650	IA32_MC10_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
291H	657	IA32_MC17_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
292H	658	IA32_MC18_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
293H	659	IA32_MC19_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.

Table 2-36. Additional MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor D with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel 06_56H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
418H	1048	IA32_MC6_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC6 reports MC errors from the integrated I/O module.
419H	1049	IA32_MC6_STATUS	Package	
41AH	1050	IA32_MC6_ADDR	Package	
41BH	1051	IA32_MC6_MISC	Package	
41CH	1052	IA32_MC7_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC7 reports MC errors from the home agent HA 0.
41DH	1053	IA32_MC7_STATUS	Package	
41EH	1054	IA32_MC7_ADDR	Package	
41FH	1055	IA32_MC7_MISC	Package	
424H	1060	IA32_MC9_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC9 through MC 10 report MC errors from each channel of the integrated memory controllers.
425H	1061	IA32_MC9_STATUS	Package	
426H	1062	IA32_MC9_ADDR	Package	
427H	1063	IA32_MC9_MISC	Package	
428H	1064	IA32_MC10_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC9 through MC 10 report MC errors from each channel of the integrated memory controllers.
429H	1065	IA32_MC10_STATUS	Package	
42AH	1066	IA32_MC10_ADDR	Package	
42BH	1067	IA32_MC10_MISC	Package	
444H	1092	IA32_MC17_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC17 reports MC errors from the following pair of CBo/L3 Slices (if the pair is present): CBo0, CBo3, CBo6, CBo9, CBo12, CBo15.
445H	1093	IA32_MC17_STATUS	Package	
446H	1094	IA32_MC17_ADDR	Package	
447H	1095	IA32_MC17_MISC	Package	
448H	1096	IA32_MC18_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC18 reports MC errors from the following pair of CBo/L3 Slices (if the pair is present): CBo1, CBo4, CBo7, CBo10, CBo13, CBo16.
449H	1097	IA32_MC18_STATUS	Package	
44AH	1098	IA32_MC18_ADDR	Package	
44BH	1099	IA32_MC18_MISC	Package	
44CH	1100	IA32_MC19_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC19 reports MC errors from the following pair of CBo/L3 Slices (if the pair is present): CBo2, CBo5, CBo8, CBo11, CBo14, CBo17.
44DH	1101	IA32_MC19_STATUS	Package	
44EH	1102	IA32_MC19_ADDR	Package	
44FH	1103	IA32_MC19_MISC	Package	
See Table 2-19, Table 2-28, Table 2-33, and Table 2-35 for other MSR definitions applicable to processors with CPUID signature 06_56H.				

NOTES:

1. An override configuration lower than the factory-set configuration is always supported. An override configuration higher than the factory-set configuration is dependent on features specific to the processor and the platform.

2.15.2 Additional MSRs Supported in Intel® Xeon® Processors E5 v4 and E7 v4 Families

The MSRs listed in Table 2-36 are available to Intel® Xeon® Processor E5 v4 and E7 v4 Families (CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel = 06_4FH). The Intel® Xeon® processor E5 v4 family is based on the Broadwell micro-

architecture and supports the MSR interfaces listed in Table 2-19, Table 2-20, Table 2-28, Table 2-33, Table 2-35, and Table 2-37.

Table 2-37. Additional MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processors with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel 06_4FH

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
1ACH	428	MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT3	Package	Config Ratio Limit of Turbo Mode RO if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 0. RW if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 1.
		62:0	Package	Reserved
		63	Package	Semaphore for Turbo Ratio Limit Configuration If 1, the processor uses override configuration ¹ specified in MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT, MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT1 and MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT2. If 0, the processor uses factory-set configuration (Default).
285H	645	IA32_MC5_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
286H	646	IA32_MC6_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
287H	647	IA32_MC7_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
288H	648	IA32_MC8_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
289H	649	IA32_MC9_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28AH	650	IA32_MC10_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28BH	651	IA32_MC11_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28CH	652	IA32_MC12_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28DH	653	IA32_MC13_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28EH	654	IA32_MC14_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28FH	655	IA32_MC15_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
290H	656	IA32_MC16_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
291H	657	IA32_MC17_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
292H	658	IA32_MC18_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
293H	659	IA32_MC19_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
294H	660	IA32_MC20_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
295H	661	IA32_MC21_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
414H	1044	IA32_MC5_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC5 reports MC errors from the Intel QPI 0 module.
415H	1045	IA32_MC5_STATUS	Package	
416H	1046	IA32_MC5_ADDR	Package	
417H	1047	IA32_MC5_MISC	Package	
418H	1048	IA32_MC6_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC6 reports MC errors from the integrated I/O module.
419H	1049	IA32_MC6_STATUS	Package	
41AH	1050	IA32_MC6_ADDR	Package	
41BH	1051	IA32_MC6_MISC	Package	

Table 2-37. Additional MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processors with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel 06_4FH

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
41CH	1052	IA32_MC7_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC7 reports MC errors from the home agent HA 0.
41DH	1053	IA32_MC7_STATUS	Package	
41EH	1054	IA32_MC7_ADDR	Package	
41FH	1055	IA32_MC7_MISC	Package	
420H	1056	IA32_MC8_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC8 reports MC errors from the home agent HA 1.
421H	1057	IA32_MC8_STATUS	Package	
422H	1058	IA32_MC8_ADDR	Package	
423H	1059	IA32_MC8_MISC	Package	
424H	1060	IA32_MC9_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC9 through MC 16 report MC errors from each channel of the integrated memory controllers.
425H	1061	IA32_MC9_STATUS	Package	
426H	1062	IA32_MC9_ADDR	Package	
427H	1063	IA32_MC9_MISC	Package	
428H	1064	IA32_MC10_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC9 through MC 16 report MC errors from each channel of the integrated memory controllers.
429H	1065	IA32_MC10_STATUS	Package	
42AH	1066	IA32_MC10_ADDR	Package	
42BH	1067	IA32_MC10_MISC	Package	
42CH	1068	IA32_MC11_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC9 through MC 16 report MC errors from each channel of the integrated memory controllers.
42DH	1069	IA32_MC11_STATUS	Package	
42EH	1070	IA32_MC11_ADDR	Package	
42FH	1071	IA32_MC11_MISC	Package	
430H	1072	IA32_MC12_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC9 through MC 16 report MC errors from each channel of the integrated memory controllers.
431H	1073	IA32_MC12_STATUS	Package	
432H	1074	IA32_MC12_ADDR	Package	
433H	1075	IA32_MC12_MISC	Package	
434H	1076	IA32_MC13_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC9 through MC 16 report MC errors from each channel of the integrated memory controllers.
435H	1077	IA32_MC13_STATUS	Package	
436H	1078	IA32_MC13_ADDR	Package	
437H	1079	IA32_MC13_MISC	Package	
438H	1080	IA32_MC14_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC9 through MC 16 report MC errors from each channel of the integrated memory controllers.
439H	1081	IA32_MC14_STATUS	Package	
43AH	1082	IA32_MC14_ADDR	Package	
43BH	1083	IA32_MC14_MISC	Package	
43CH	1084	IA32_MC15_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC9 through MC 16 report MC errors from each channel of the integrated memory controllers.
43DH	1085	IA32_MC15_STATUS	Package	
43EH	1086	IA32_MC15_ADDR	Package	
43FH	1087	IA32_MC15_MISC	Package	

Table 2-37. Additional MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processors with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel 06_4FH

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
440H	1088	IA32_MC16_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC9 through MC 16 report MC errors from each channel of the integrated memory controllers.
441H	1089	IA32_MC16_STATUS	Package	
442H	1090	IA32_MC16_ADDR	Package	
443H	1091	IA32_MC16_MISC	Package	
444H	1092	IA32_MC17_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC17 reports MC errors from the following pair of CBo/L3 Slices (if the pair is present): CBo0, CBo3, CBo6, CBo9, CBo12, CBo15.
445H	1093	IA32_MC17_STATUS	Package	
446H	1094	IA32_MC17_ADDR	Package	
447H	1095	IA32_MC17_MISC	Package	
448H	1096	IA32_MC18_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC18 reports MC errors from the following pair of CBo/L3 Slices (if the pair is present): CBo1, CBo4, CBo7, CBo10, CBo13, CBo16.
449H	1097	IA32_MC18_STATUS	Package	
44AH	1098	IA32_MC18_ADDR	Package	
44BH	1099	IA32_MC18_MISC	Package	
44CH	1100	IA32_MC19_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC19 reports MC errors from the following pair of CBo/L3 Slices (if the pair is present): CBo2, CBo5, CBo8, CBo11, CBo14, CBo17.
44DH	1101	IA32_MC19_STATUS	Package	
44EH	1102	IA32_MC19_ADDR	Package	
44FH	1103	IA32_MC19_MISC	Package	
450H	1104	IA32_MC20_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC20 reports MC errors from the Intel QPI 1 module.
451H	1105	IA32_MC20_STATUS	Package	
452H	1106	IA32_MC20_ADDR	Package	
453H	1107	IA32_MC20_MISC	Package	
454H	1108	IA32_MC21_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC21 reports MC errors from the Intel QPI 2 module.
455H	1109	IA32_MC21_STATUS	Package	
456H	1110	IA32_MC21_ADDR	Package	
457H	1111	IA32_MC21_MISC	Package	
C81H	3201	IA32_L3_QOS_CFG	Package	Cache Allocation Technology Configuration (R/W)
		0		CAT Enable. Set 1 to enable Cache Allocation Technology.
		63:1		Reserved

See Table 2-19, Table 2-20, Table 2-28, and Table 2-29 for other MSR definitions applicable to processors with CPUID signature 06_45H.

NOTES:

1. An override configuration lower than the factory-set configuration is always supported. An override configuration higher than the factory-set configuration is dependent on features specific to the processor and the platform.

2.16 MSRS IN THE 6TH GENERATION, 7TH GENERATION AND 8TH GENERATION INTEL® CORE™ PROCESSORS, INTEL® XEON® PROCESSOR SCALABLE FAMILY, AND FUTURE INTEL® CORE™ PROCESSORS

6th generation Intel® Core™ processors and the Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family are based on the Skylake microarchitecture and have CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel signatures of 06_4EH, 06_5EH, and 06_55H. 7th generation Intel® Core™ processors are based on the Kaby Lake microarchitecture and 8th generation Intel® Core™ processors are based on the Coffee Lake microarchitecture; these processors have CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel signatures of 06_8EH and 06_9EH. Future Intel® Core™ processors are based on Cannon Lake microarchitecture and have a CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel signature of 06_66H. These processors support the MSR interfaces listed in Table 2-19, Table 2-20, Table 2-24, Table 2-28, Table 2-34, Table 2-38, and Table 2-39. For an MSR listed in Table 2-38 that also appears in the model-specific tables of prior generations, Table 2-38 supercede prior generation tables.

The notation of “Platform” in the Scope column (with respect to MSR_PLATFORM_ENERGY_COUNTER and MSR_PLATFORM_POWER_LIMIT) is limited to the power-delivery domain and the specifics of the power delivery integration may vary by platform vendor’s implementation.

Table 2-38. Additional MSRs Supported by 6th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors and the Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family Based on Skylake Microarchitecture, 7th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Kaby Lake Microarchitecture, 8th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Coffee Lake Microarchitecture, and Future Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Cannon Lake Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
3AH	58	IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL	Thread	Control Features in Intel 64 Processor (R/W) See Table 2-2.
FEH	254	IA32_MTRRCAP	Thread	MTRR Capability (RO, Architectural) See Table 2-2
19CH	412	IA32_THERM_STATUS	Core	Thermal Monitor Status (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		0		Thermal Status (RO) See Table 2-2.
		1		Thermal Status Log (R/WCO) See Table 2-2.
		2		PROTCHOT # or FORCEPR# Status (RO) See Table 2-2.
		3		PROTCHOT # or FORCEPR# Log (R/WCO) See Table 2-2.
		4		Critical Temperature Status (RO) See Table 2-2.
		5		Critical Temperature Status Log (R/WCO) See Table 2-2.
		6		Thermal threshold #1 Status (RO) See Table 2-2.
		7		Thermal threshold #1 Log (R/WCO) See Table 2-2.

Table 2-38. Additional MSRs Supported by 6th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors and the Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family Based on Skylake Microarchitecture, 7th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Kaby Lake Microarchitecture, 8th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Coffee Lake Microarchitecture, and Future Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Cannon Lake Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		8		Thermal Threshold #2 Status (RO) See Table 2-2.
		9		Thermal Threshold #2 Log (R/WCO) See Table 2-2.
		10		Power Limitation Status (RO) See Table 2-2.
		11		Power Limitation Log (R/WCO) See Table 2-2.
		12		Current Limit Status (RO) See Table 2-2.
		13		Current Limit Log (R/WCO) See Table 2-2.
		14		Cross Domain Limit Status (RO) See Table 2-2.
		15		Cross Domain Limit Log (R/WCO) See Table 2-2.
		22:16		Digital Readout (RO) See Table 2-2.
		26:23		Reserved
		30:27		Resolution in Degrees Celsius (RO) See Table 2-2.
		31		Reading Valid (RO) See Table 2-2.
		63:32		Reserved
1ADH	429	MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit of Turbo Mode RO if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 0, RW if MSR_PLATFORM_INFO.[28] = 1
		7:0	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 1C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 1 core active.
		15:8	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 2C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 2 core active.
		23:16	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 3C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 3 core active.
		31:24	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for 4C Maximum turbo ratio limit of 4 core active.
		63:32		Reserved

Table 2-38. Additional MSRs Supported by 6th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors and the Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family Based on Skylake Microarchitecture, 7th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Kaby Lake Microarchitecture, 8th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Coffee Lake Microarchitecture, and Future Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Cannon Lake Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
1C9H	457	MSR_LASTBRANCH_TOS	Thread	Last Branch Record Stack TOS (R/W) Contains an index (bits 0-4) that points to the MSR containing the most recent branch record.
1FCH	508	MSR_POWER_CTL	Core	Power Control Register See http://biosbits.org .
		0		Reserved
		1	Package	C1E Enable (R/W) When set to '1', will enable the CPU to switch to the Minimum Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology operating point when all execution cores enter MWAIT (C1).
		18:2		Reserved
		19		Disable Race to Halt Optimization (R/W) Setting this bit disables the Race to Halt optimization and avoids this optimization limitation to execute below the most efficient frequency ratio. Default value is 0 for processors that support Race to Halt optimization. Default value is 1 for processors that do not support Race to Halt optimization.
		20		Disable Energy Efficiency Optimization (R/W) Setting this bit disables the P-States energy efficiency optimization. Default value is 0. Disable/enable the energy efficiency optimization in P-State legacy mode (when IA32_PM_ENABLE[HWP_ENABLE] = 0), has an effect only in the turbo range or into PERF_MIN_CTL value if it is not zero set. In HWP mode (IA32_PM_ENABLE[HWP_ENABLE] == 1), has an effect between the OS desired or OS maximize to the OS minimize performance setting.
300H	768	MSR_SGXOWNEREPOCH0	Package	Lower 64 Bit CR_SGXOWNEREPOCH (W) Writes do not update CR_SGXOWNEREPOCH if CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=0):EAX.SGX1 is 1 on any thread in the package.
		63:0		Lower 64 bits of an 128-bit external entropy value for key derivation of an enclave.
301H	768	MSR_SGXOWNEREPOCH1	Package	Upper 64 Bit CR_SGXOWNEREPOCH (W) Writes do not update CR_SGXOWNEREPOCH if CPUID.(EAX=12H, ECX=0):EAX.SGX1 is 1 on any thread in the package.
		63:0		Upper 64 bits of an 128-bit external entropy value for key derivation of an enclave.

Table 2-38. Additional MSRs Supported by 6th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors and the Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family Based on Skylake Microarchitecture, 7th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Kaby Lake Microarchitecture, 8th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Coffee Lake Microarchitecture, and Future Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Cannon Lake Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
38EH	910	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS		See Table 2-2. See Section 18.2.4, “Architectural Performance Monitoring Version 4.”
		0	Thread	Ovf_PMC0
		1	Thread	Ovf_PMC1
		2	Thread	Ovf_PMC2
		3	Thread	Ovf_PMC3
		4	Thread	Ovf_PMC4 (if CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] > 4)
		5	Thread	Ovf_PMC5 (if CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] > 5)
		6	Thread	Ovf_PMC6 (if CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] > 6)
		7	Thread	Ovf_PMC7 (if CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] > 7)
		31:8		Reserved
		32	Thread	Ovf_FixedCtr0
		33	Thread	Ovf_FixedCtr1
		34	Thread	Ovf_FixedCtr2
		54:35		Reserved
		55	Thread	Trace_ToPA_PMI
		57:56		Reserved
		58	Thread	LBR_Frz
		59	Thread	CTR_Frz
		60	Thread	ASCI
		61	Thread	Ovf_Uncore
62	Thread	Ovf_BufDSSAVE		
63	Thread	CondChgd		
390H	912	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS_RESET		See Table 2-2. See Section 18.2.4, “Architectural Performance Monitoring Version 4.”
		0	Thread	Set 1 to clear Ovf_PMC0.
		1	Thread	Set 1 to clear Ovf_PMC1.
		2	Thread	Set 1 to clear Ovf_PMC2.
		3	Thread	Set 1 to clear Ovf_PMC3.
		4	Thread	Set 1 to clear Ovf_PMC4 (if CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] > 4).
		5	Thread	Set 1 to clear Ovf_PMC5 (if CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] > 5).
		6	Thread	Set 1 to clear Ovf_PMC6 (if CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] > 6).
		7	Thread	Set 1 to clear Ovf_PMC7 (if CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] > 7).
		31:8		Reserved
32	Thread	Set 1 to clear Ovf_FixedCtr0.		

Table 2-38. Additional MSRs Supported by 6th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors and the Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family Based on Skylake Microarchitecture, 7th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Kaby Lake Microarchitecture, 8th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Coffee Lake Microarchitecture, and Future Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Cannon Lake Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		33	Thread	Set 1 to clear Ovf_FixedCtr1.
		34	Thread	Set 1 to clear Ovf_FixedCtr2.
		54:35		Reserved
		55	Thread	Set 1 to clear Trace_ToPA_PMI.
		57:56		Reserved
		58	Thread	Set 1 to clear LBR_Frz.
		59	Thread	Set 1 to clear CTR_Frz.
		60	Thread	Set 1 to clear ASCI.
		61	Thread	Set 1 to clear Ovf_Uncore.
		62	Thread	Set 1 to clear Ovf_BufDSSAVE.
		63	Thread	Set 1 to clear CondChgd.
391H	913	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS_SET		See Table 2-2. See Section 18.2.4, "Architectural Performance Monitoring Version 4."
		0	Thread	Set 1 to cause Ovf_PMC0 = 1.
		1	Thread	Set 1 to cause Ovf_PMC1 = 1.
		2	Thread	Set 1 to cause Ovf_PMC2 = 1.
		3	Thread	Set 1 to cause Ovf_PMC3 = 1.
		4	Thread	Set 1 to cause Ovf_PMC4=1 (if CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] > 4).
		5	Thread	Set 1 to cause Ovf_PMC5=1 (if CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] > 5).
		6	Thread	Set 1 to cause Ovf_PMC6=1 (if CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] > 6).
		7	Thread	Set 1 to cause Ovf_PMC7=1 (if CPUID.0AH:EAX[15:8] > 7).
		31:8		Reserved
		32	Thread	Set 1 to cause Ovf_FixedCtr0 = 1.
		33	Thread	Set 1 to cause Ovf_FixedCtr1 = 1.
		34	Thread	Set 1 to cause Ovf_FixedCtr2 = 1.
		54:35		Reserved
		55	Thread	Set 1 to cause Trace_ToPA_PMI = 1.
		57:56		Reserved
		58	Thread	Set 1 to cause LBR_Frz = 1.
		59	Thread	Set 1 to cause CTR_Frz = 1.
		60	Thread	Set 1 to cause ASCI = 1.
61	Thread	Set 1 to cause Ovf_Uncore.		

Table 2-38. Additional MSRs Supported by 6th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors and the Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family Based on Skylake Microarchitecture, 7th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Kaby Lake Microarchitecture, 8th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Coffee Lake Microarchitecture, and Future Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Cannon Lake Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		62	Thread	Set 1 to cause Ovf_BufDSSAVE.
		63		Reserved
392H	913	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_INUSE		See Table 2-2.
3F7H	1015	MSR_PEBS_FRONTEND	Thread	FrontEnd Precise Event Condition Select (R/W)
		2:0		Event Code Select
		3		Reserved
		4		Event Code Select High
		7:5		Reserved
		19:8		IDQ_Bubble_Length Specifier
		22:20		IDQ_Bubble_Width Specifier
		63:23		Reserved
500H	1280	IA32_SGX_SVN_STATUS	Thread	Status and SVN Threshold of SGX Support for ACM (RO)
		0		Lock See Section 41.11.3, "Interactions with Authenticated Code Modules (ACMs)".
		15:1		Reserved
		23:16		SGX_SVN_SINIT See Section 41.11.3, "Interactions with Authenticated Code Modules (ACMs)".
		63:24		Reserved
560H	1376	IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_BASE	Thread	Trace Output Base Register (R/W) See Table 2-2.
561H	1377	IA32_RTIT_OUTPUT_MASK_PTRS	Thread	Trace Output Mask Pointers Register (R/W) See Table 2-2.
570H	1392	IA32_RTIT_CTL	Thread	Trace Control Register (R/W)
		0		TraceEn
		1		CYCEn
		2		OS
		3		User
		6:4		Reserved, must be zero.
		7		CR3 filter
		8		ToPA Writing 0 will #GP if also setting TraceEn.
		9		MTCEn
		10		TSCEn
		11		DisRETC

Table 2-38. Additional MSRs Supported by 6th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors and the Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family Based on Skylake Microarchitecture, 7th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Kaby Lake Microarchitecture, 8th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Coffee Lake Microarchitecture, and Future Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Cannon Lake Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		12		Reserved, must be zero.
		13		BranchEn
		17:14		MTCFreq
		18		Reserved, must be zero.
		22:19		CYCThresh
		23		Reserved, must be zero.
		27:24		PSBFreq
		31:28		Reserved, must be zero.
		35:32		ADDR0_CFG
		39:36		ADDR1_CFG
		63:40		Reserved, must be zero.
571H	1393	IA32_RTIT_STATUS	Thread	Tracing Status Register (R/W)
		0		FilterEn, writes ignored.
		1		ContexEn, writes ignored.
		2		TriggerEn, writes ignored.
		3		Reserved
		4		Error (R/W)
		5		Stopped
		31:6		Reserved, must be zero.
		48:32		PacketByteCnt
		63:49		Reserved, must be zero.
572H	1394	IA32_RTIT_CR3_MATCH	Thread	Trace Filter CR3 Match Register (R/W)
		4:0		Reserved
		63:5		CR3[63:5] value to match
580H	1408	IA32_RTIT_ADDR0_A	Thread	Region 0 Start Address (R/W)
		63:0		See Table 2-2.
581H	1409	IA32_RTIT_ADDR0_B	Thread	Region 0 End Address (R/W)
		63:0		See Table 2-2.
582H	1410	IA32_RTIT_ADDR1_A	Thread	Region 1 Start Address (R/W)
		63:0		See Table 2-2.
583H	1411	IA32_RTIT_ADDR1_B	Thread	Region 1 End Address (R/W)
		63:0		See Table 2-2.
639H	1593	MSR_PP0_ENERGY_STATUS	Package	PP0 Energy Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.4, "PP0/PP1 RAPL Domains."

Table 2-38. Additional MSRs Supported by 6th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors and the Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family Based on Skylake Microarchitecture, 7th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Kaby Lake Microarchitecture, 8th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Coffee Lake Microarchitecture, and Future Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Cannon Lake Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
64DH	1613	MSR_PLATFORM_ENERGY_COUNTER	Platform*	Platform Energy Counter (R/O) This MSR is valid only if both platform vendor hardware implementation and BIOS enablement support it. This MSR will read 0 if not valid.
		31:0		Total energy consumed by all devices in the platform that receive power from integrated power delivery mechanism, included platform devices are processor cores, SOC, memory, add-on or peripheral devices that get powered directly from the platform power delivery means. The energy units are specified in the MSR_RAPL_POWER_UNIT.Energy_Status_Unit.
		63:32		Reserved
64EH	1614	MSR_PPERF	Thread	Productive Performance Count (R/O)
		63:0		Hardware's view of workload scalability. See Section 14.4.5.1.
64FH	1615	MSR_CORE_PERF_LIMIT_REASONS	Package	Indicator of Frequency Clipping in Processor Cores (R/W) (Frequency refers to processor core frequency.)
		0		PROCHOT Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to assertion of external PROCHOT.
		1		Thermal Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to a thermal event.
		3:2		Reserved
		4		Residency State Regulation Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to residency state regulation limit.
		5		Running Average Thermal Limit Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to Running Average Thermal Limit (RATL).
		6		VR Therm Alert Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to a thermal alert from a processor Voltage Regulator (VR).
		7		VR Therm Design Current Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to VR thermal design current limit.
		8		Other Status (R0) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to electrical or other constraints.

Table 2-38. Additional MSRs Supported by 6th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors and the Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family Based on Skylake Microarchitecture, 7th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Kaby Lake Microarchitecture, 8th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Coffee Lake Microarchitecture, and Future Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Cannon Lake Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		9		Reserved
		10		Package/Platform-Level Power Limiting PL1 Status (RO) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to package/platform-level power limiting PL1.
		11		Package/Platform-Level PL2 Power Limiting Status (RO) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to package/platform-level power limiting PL2/PL3.
		12		Max Turbo Limit Status (RO) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to multi-core turbo limits.
		13		Turbo Transition Attenuation Status (RO) When set, frequency is reduced below the operating system request due to Turbo transition attenuation. This prevents performance degradation due to frequent operating ratio changes.
		15:14		Reserved
		16		PROCHOT Log When set, indicates that the PROCHOT Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		17		Thermal Log When set, indicates that the Thermal Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		19:18		Reserved.
		20		Residency State Regulation Log When set, indicates that the Residency State Regulation Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		21		Running Average Thermal Limit Log When set, indicates that the RATL Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.

Table 2-38. Additional MSRs Supported by 6th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors and the Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family Based on Skylake Microarchitecture, 7th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Kaby Lake Microarchitecture, 8th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Coffee Lake Microarchitecture, and Future Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Cannon Lake Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		22		VR Therm Alert Log When set, indicates that the VR Therm Alert Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		23		VR Thermal Design Current Log When set, indicates that the VR TDC Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		24		Other Log When set, indicates that the Other Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		25		Reserved
		26		Package/Platform-Level PL1 Power Limiting Log When set, indicates that the Package or Platform Level PL1 Power Limiting Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		27		Package/Platform-Level PL2 Power Limiting Log When set, indicates that the Package or Platform Level PL2/PL3 Power Limiting Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		28		Max Turbo Limit Log When set, indicates that the Max Turbo Limit Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		29		Turbo Transition Attenuation Log When set, indicates that the Turbo Transition Attenuation Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		63:30		Reserved
652H	1618	MSR_PKG_HDC_CONFIG	Package	HDC Configuration (R/W)

Table 2-38. Additional MSRs Supported by 6th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors and the Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family Based on Skylake Microarchitecture, 7th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Kaby Lake Microarchitecture, 8th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Coffee Lake Microarchitecture, and Future Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Cannon Lake Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		2:0		PKG_Cx_Monitor Configures Package Cx state threshold for MSR_PKG_HDC_DEEP_RESIDENCY.
		63: 3		Reserved
653H	1619	MSR_CORE_HDC_RESIDENCY	Core	Core HDC Idle Residency (R/O)
		63:0		Core_Cx_Duty_Cycle_Cnt
655H	1621	MSR_PKG_HDC_SHALLOW_RESIDENCY	Package	Accumulate the cycles the package was in C2 state and at least one logical processor was in forced idle (R/O)
		63:0		Pkg_C2_Duty_Cycle_Cnt
656H	1622	MSR_PKG_HDC_DEEP_RESIDENCY	Package	Package Cx HDC Idle Residency (R/O)
		63:0		Pkg_Cx_Duty_Cycle_Cnt
658H	1624	MSR_WEIGHTED_CORE_CO	Package	Core-count Weighted C0 Residency (R/O)
		63:0		Increment at the same rate as the TSC. The increment each cycle is weighted by the number of processor cores in the package that reside in C0. If N cores are simultaneously in C0, then each cycle the counter increments by N.
659H	1625	MSR_ANY_CORE_CO	Package	Any Core C0 Residency (R/O)
		63:0		Increment at the same rate as the TSC. The increment each cycle is one if any processor core in the package is in C0.
65AH	1626	MSR_ANY_GFXE_CO	Package	Any Graphics Engine C0 Residency (R/O)
		63:0		Increment at the same rate as the TSC. The increment each cycle is one if any processor graphic device's compute engines are in C0.
65BH	1627	MSR_CORE_GFXE_OVERLAP_CO	Package	Core and Graphics Engine Overlapped C0 Residency (R/O)
		63:0		Increment at the same rate as the TSC. The increment each cycle is one if at least one compute engine of the processor graphics is in C0 and at least one processor core in the package is also in C0.
65CH	1628	MSR_PLATFORM_POWER_LIMIT	Platform*	Platform Power Limit Control (R/W-L) Allows platform BIOS to limit power consumption of the platform devices to the specified values. The Long Duration power consumption is specified via Platform_Power_Limit_1 and Platform_Power_Limit_1_Time. The Short Duration power consumption limit is specified via the Platform_Power_Limit_2 with duration chosen by the processor. The processor implements an exponential-weighted algorithm in the placement of the time windows.

Table 2-38. Additional MSRs Supported by 6th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors and the Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family Based on Skylake Microarchitecture, 7th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Kaby Lake Microarchitecture, 8th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Coffee Lake Microarchitecture, and Future Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Cannon Lake Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		14:0		Platform Power Limit #1 Average Power limit value which the platform must not exceed over a time window as specified by Power_Limit_1_TIME field. The default value is the Thermal Design Power (TDP) and varies with product skus. The unit is specified in MSR_RAPLPOWER_UNIT.
		15		Enable Platform Power Limit #1 When set, enables the processor to apply control policy such that the platform power does not exceed Platform Power limit #1 over the time window specified by Power Limit #1 Time Window.
		16		Platform Clamping Limitation #1 When set, allows the processor to go below the OS requested P states in order to maintain the power below specified Platform Power Limit #1 value. This bit is writeable only when CPUID (EAX=6):EAX[4] is set.
		23:17		Time Window for Platform Power Limit #1 Specifies the duration of the time window over which Platform Power Limit 1 value should be maintained for sustained long duration. This field is made up of two numbers from the following equation: Time Window = (float) ((1+(X/4))*(2^Y)), where: X = POWER_LIMIT_1_TIME[23:22] Y = POWER_LIMIT_1_TIME[21:17] The maximum allowed value in this field is defined in MSR_PKG_POWER_INFO[PKG_MAX_WIN]. The default value is ODH, The unit is specified in MSR_RAPLPOWER_UNIT[Time Unit].
		31:24		Reserved
		46:32		Platform Power Limit #2 Average Power limit value which the platform must not exceed over the Short Duration time window chosen by the processor. The recommended default value is 1.25 times the Long Duration Power Limit (i.e., Platform Power Limit # 1).
		47		Enable Platform Power Limit #2 When set, enables the processor to apply control policy such that the platform power does not exceed Platform Power limit #2 over the Short Duration time window.

Table 2-38. Additional MSRs Supported by 6th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors and the Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family Based on Skylake Microarchitecture, 7th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Kaby Lake Microarchitecture, 8th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Coffee Lake Microarchitecture, and Future Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Cannon Lake Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		48		Platform Clamping Limitation #2 When set, allows the processor to go below the OS requested P states in order to maintain the power below specified Platform Power Limit #2 value.
		62:49		Reserved
		63		Lock. Setting this bit will lock all other bits of this MSR until system RESET.
690H	1680	MSR_LASTBRANCH_16_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 16 From IP (R/W) One of 32 triplets of last branch record registers on the last branch record stack. This part of the stack contains pointers to the source instruction. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Last Branch Record Stack TOS at 1C9H. ▪ Section 17.12.
691H	1681	MSR_LASTBRANCH_17_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 17 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
692H	1682	MSR_LASTBRANCH_18_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 18 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
693H	1683	MSR_LASTBRANCH_19_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 19 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
694H	1684	MSR_LASTBRANCH_20_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 20 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
695H	1685	MSR_LASTBRANCH_21_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 21 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
696H	1686	MSR_LASTBRANCH_22_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 22 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
697H	1687	MSR_LASTBRANCH_23_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 23 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
698H	1688	MSR_LASTBRANCH_24_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 24 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
699H	1689	MSR_LASTBRANCH_25_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 25 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
69AH	1690	MSR_LASTBRANCH_26_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 26 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
69BH	1691	MSR_LASTBRANCH_27_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 27 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
69CH	1692	MSR_LASTBRANCH_28_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 28 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.

Table 2-38. Additional MSRs Supported by 6th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors and the Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family Based on Skylake Microarchitecture, 7th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Kaby Lake Microarchitecture, 8th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Coffee Lake Microarchitecture, and Future Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Cannon Lake Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
69DH	1693	MSR_LASTBRANCH_29_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 29 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
69EH	1694	MSR_LASTBRANCH_30_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 30 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
69FH	1695	MSR_LASTBRANCH_31_FROM_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 31 From IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
6B0H	1712	MSR_GRAPHICS_PERF_LIMIT_REASONS	Package	Indicator of Frequency Clipping in the Processor Graphics (R/W) (Frequency refers to processor graphics frequency.)
		0		PROCHOT Status (RO) When set, frequency is reduced due to assertion of external PROCHOT.
		1		Thermal Status (RO) When set, frequency is reduced due to a thermal event.
		4:2		Reserved.
		5		Running Average Thermal Limit Status (RO) When set, frequency is reduced due to running average thermal limit.
		6		VR Therm Alert Status (RO) When set, frequency is reduced due to a thermal alert from a processor Voltage Regulator.
		7		VR Thermal Design Current Status (RO) When set, frequency is reduced due to VR TDC limit.
		8		Other Status (RO) When set, frequency is reduced due to electrical or other constraints.
		9		Reserved
		10		Package/Platform-Level Power Limiting PL1 Status (RO) When set, frequency is reduced due to package/platform-level power limiting PL1.
		11		Package/Platform-Level PL2 Power Limiting Status (RO) When set, frequency is reduced due to package/platform-level power limiting PL2/PL3.
		12		Inefficient Operation Status (RO) When set, processor graphics frequency is operating below target frequency.
		15:13		Reserved

Table 2-38. Additional MSRs Supported by 6th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors and the Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family Based on Skylake Microarchitecture, 7th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Kaby Lake Microarchitecture, 8th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Coffee Lake Microarchitecture, and Future Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Cannon Lake Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		16		PROCHOT Log When set, indicates that the PROCHOT Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		17		Thermal Log When set, indicates that the Thermal Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		20:18		Reserved.
		21		Running Average Thermal Limit Log When set, indicates that the RATL Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		22		VR Therm Alert Log When set, indicates that the VR Therm Alert Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		23		VR Thermal Design Current Log When set, indicates that the VR Therm Alert Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		24		Other Log When set, indicates that the OTHER Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		25		Reserved
		26		Package/Platform-Level PL1 Power Limiting Log When set, indicates that the Package/Platform Level PL1 Power Limiting Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.

Table 2-38. Additional MSRs Supported by 6th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors and the Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family Based on Skylake Microarchitecture, 7th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Kaby Lake Microarchitecture, 8th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Coffee Lake Microarchitecture, and Future Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Cannon Lake Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		27		Package/Platform-Level PL2 Power Limiting Log When set, indicates that the Package/Platform Level PL2 Power Limiting Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		28		Inefficient Operation Log When set, indicates that the Inefficient Operation Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		63:29		Reserved
6B1H	1713	MSR_RING_PERF_LIMIT_REASONS	Package	Indicator of Frequency Clipping in the Ring Interconnect (R/W) (Frequency refers to ring interconnect in the uncore.)
		0		PROCHOT Status (RO) When set, frequency is reduced due to assertion of external PROCHOT.
		1		Thermal Status (RO) When set, frequency is reduced due to a thermal event.
		4:2		Reserved
		5		Running Average Thermal Limit Status (RO) When set, frequency is reduced due to running average thermal limit.
		6		VR Therm Alert Status (RO) When set, frequency is reduced due to a thermal alert from a processor Voltage Regulator.
		7		VR Thermal Design Current Status (RO) When set, frequency is reduced due to VR TDC limit.
		8		Other Status (RO) When set, frequency is reduced due to electrical or other constraints.
		9		Reserved
		10		Package/Platform-Level Power Limiting PL1 Status (RO) When set, frequency is reduced due to package/Platform-level power limiting PL1.

Table 2-38. Additional MSRs Supported by 6th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors and the Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family Based on Skylake Microarchitecture, 7th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Kaby Lake Microarchitecture, 8th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Coffee Lake Microarchitecture, and Future Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Cannon Lake Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		11		Package/Platform-Level PL2 Power Limiting Status (RO) When set, frequency is reduced due to package/Platform-level power limiting PL2/PL3.
		15:12		Reserved
		16		PROCHOT Log When set, indicates that the PROCHOT Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		17		Thermal Log When set, indicates that the Thermal Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		20:18		Reserved
		21		Running Average Thermal Limit Log When set, indicates that the RATL Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		22		VR Therm Alert Log When set, indicates that the VR Therm Alert Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		23		VR Thermal Design Current Log When set, indicates that the VR Therm Alert Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		24		Other Log When set, indicates that the OTHER Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		25		Reserved

Table 2-38. Additional MSRs Supported by 6th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors and the Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family Based on Skylake Microarchitecture, 7th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Kaby Lake Microarchitecture, 8th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Coffee Lake Microarchitecture, and Future Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Cannon Lake Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		26		Package/Platform-Level PL1 Power Limiting Log When set, indicates that the Package/Platform Level PL1 Power Limiting Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		27		Package/Platform-Level PL2 Power Limiting Log When set, indicates that the Package/Platform Level PL2 Power Limiting Status bit has asserted since the log bit was last cleared. This log bit will remain set until cleared by software writing 0.
		63:28		Reserved
6D0H	1744	MSR_LASTBRANCH_16_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 16 To IP (R/W) One of 32 triplets of last branch record registers on the last branch record stack. This part of the stack contains pointers to the destination instruction. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Last Branch Record Stack TOS at 1C9H. ▪ Section 17.12.
6D1H	1745	MSR_LASTBRANCH_17_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 17 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6D2H	1746	MSR_LASTBRANCH_18_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 18 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6D3H	1747	MSR_LASTBRANCH_19_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 19 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6D4H	1748	MSR_LASTBRANCH_20_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 20 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6D5H	1749	MSR_LASTBRANCH_21_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 21 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6D6H	1750	MSR_LASTBRANCH_22_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 22 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6D7H	1751	MSR_LASTBRANCH_23_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 23 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6D8H	1752	MSR_LASTBRANCH_24_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 24 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6D9H	1753	MSR_LASTBRANCH_25_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 25 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6DAH	1754	MSR_LASTBRANCH_26_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 26 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.

Table 2-38. Additional MSRs Supported by 6th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors and the Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family Based on Skylake Microarchitecture, 7th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Kaby Lake Microarchitecture, 8th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Coffee Lake Microarchitecture, and Future Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Cannon Lake Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
6DBH	1755	MSR_LASTBRANCH_27_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 27 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6DCH	1756	MSR_LASTBRANCH_28_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 28 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6DDH	1757	MSR_LASTBRANCH_29_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 29 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6DEH	1758	MSR_LASTBRANCH_30_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 30 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
6DFH	1759	MSR_LASTBRANCH_31_TO_IP	Thread	Last Branch Record 31 To IP (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP.
770H	1904	IA32_PM_ENABLE	Package	See Section 14.4.2, "Enabling HWP".
771H	1905	IA32_HWP_CAPABILITIES	Thread	See Section 14.4.3, "HWP Performance Range and Dynamic Capabilities".
772H	1906	IA32_HWP_REQUEST_PKG	Package	See Section 14.4.4, "Managing HWP".
773H	1907	IA32_HWP_INTERRUPT	Thread	See Section 14.4.6, "HWP Notifications".
774H	1908	IA32_HWP_REQUEST	Thread	See Section 14.4.4, "Managing HWP".
		7:0		Minimum Performance (R/W)
		15:8		Maximum Performance (R/W)
		23:16		Desired Performance (R/W)
		31:24		Energy/Performance Preference (R/W)
		41:32		Activity Window (R/W)
		42		Package Control (R/W)
63:43		Reserved		
777H	1911	IA32_HWP_STATUS	Thread	See Section 14.4.5, "HWP Feedback".
D90H	3472	IA32_BNDCFGS	Thread	See Table 2-2.
DA0H	3488	IA32_XSS	Thread	See Table 2-2.
DB0H	3504	IA32_PKG_HDC_CTL	Package	See Section 14.5.2, "Package level Enabling HDC".
DB1H	3505	IA32_PM_CTL1	Thread	See Section 14.5.3, "Logical-Processor Level HDC Control".
DB2H	3506	IA32_THREAD_STALL	Thread	See Section 14.5.4.1, "IA32_THREAD_STALL".
DC0H	3520	MSR_LBR_INFO_0	Thread	Last Branch Record 0 Additional Information (R/W) One of 32 triplet of last branch record registers on the last branch record stack. This part of the stack contains flag, TSX-related and elapsed cycle information. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Last Branch Record Stack TOS at 1C9H. ▪ Section 17.9.1, "LBR Stack."

Table 2-38. Additional MSRs Supported by 6th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors and the Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family Based on Skylake Microarchitecture, 7th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Kaby Lake Microarchitecture, 8th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Coffee Lake Microarchitecture, and Future Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Cannon Lake Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
DC1H	3521	MSR_LBR_INFO_1	Thread	Last Branch Record 1 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.
DC2H	3522	MSR_LBR_INFO_2	Thread	Last Branch Record 2 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.
DC3H	3523	MSR_LBR_INFO_3	Thread	Last Branch Record 3 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.
DC4H	3524	MSR_LBR_INFO_4	Thread	Last Branch Record 4 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.
DC5H	3525	MSR_LBR_INFO_5	Thread	Last Branch Record 5 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.
DC6H	3526	MSR_LBR_INFO_6	Thread	Last Branch Record 6 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.
DC7H	3527	MSR_LBR_INFO_7	Thread	Last Branch Record 7 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.
DC8H	3528	MSR_LBR_INFO_8	Thread	Last Branch Record 8 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.
DC9H	3529	MSR_LBR_INFO_9	Thread	Last Branch Record 9 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.
DCAH	3530	MSR_LBR_INFO_10	Thread	Last Branch Record 10 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.
DCBH	3531	MSR_LBR_INFO_11	Thread	Last Branch Record 11 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.
DCCH	3532	MSR_LBR_INFO_12	Thread	Last Branch Record 12 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.
DCDH	3533	MSR_LBR_INFO_13	Thread	Last Branch Record 13 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.
DCEH	3534	MSR_LBR_INFO_14	Thread	Last Branch Record 14 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.
DCFH	3535	MSR_LBR_INFO_15	Thread	Last Branch Record 15 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.
DD0H	3536	MSR_LBR_INFO_16	Thread	Last Branch Record 16 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.
DD1H	3537	MSR_LBR_INFO_17	Thread	Last Branch Record 17 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.
DD2H	3538	MSR_LBR_INFO_18	Thread	Last Branch Record 18 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.

Table 2-38. Additional MSRs Supported by 6th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors and the Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family Based on Skylake Microarchitecture, 7th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Kaby Lake Microarchitecture, 8th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Coffee Lake Microarchitecture, and Future Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Cannon Lake Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
DD3H	3539	MSR_LBR_INFO_19	Thread	Last Branch Record 19 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.
DD4H	3520	MSR_LBR_INFO_20	Thread	Last Branch Record 20 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.
DD5H	3521	MSR_LBR_INFO_21	Thread	Last Branch Record 21 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.
DD6H	3522	MSR_LBR_INFO_22	Thread	Last Branch Record 22 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.
DD7H	3523	MSR_LBR_INFO_23	Thread	Last Branch Record 23 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.
DD8H	3524	MSR_LBR_INFO_24	Thread	Last Branch Record 24 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.
DD9H	3525	MSR_LBR_INFO_25	Thread	Last Branch Record 25 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.
DDAH	3526	MSR_LBR_INFO_26	Thread	Last Branch Record 26 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.
DDBH	3527	MSR_LBR_INFO_27	Thread	Last Branch Record 27 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.
DDCH	3528	MSR_LBR_INFO_28	Thread	Last Branch Record 28 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.
DDDH	3529	MSR_LBR_INFO_29	Thread	Last Branch Record 29 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.
DDEH	3530	MSR_LBR_INFO_30	Thread	Last Branch Record 30 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.
DDFH	3531	MSR_LBR_INFO_31	Thread	Last Branch Record 31 Additional Information (R/W) See description of MSR_LBR_INFO_0.

Table 2-39 lists the MSRs of uncore PMU for Intel processors with CUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel signatures of 06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, and 06_66H.

Table 2-39. Uncore PMU MSRs Supported by 6th Generation, 7th Generation, and 8th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors, and Future Intel® Core™ Processors

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
394H	916	MSR_UNC_PERF_FIXED_CTRL	Package	Uncore Fixed Counter Control (R/W)
		19:0		Reserved
		20		Enable overflow propagation.

Table 2-39. Uncore PMU MSRs Supported by 6th Generation, 7th Generation, and 8th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors, and Future Intel® Core™ Processors

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		21		Reserved
		22		Enable counting.
		63:23		Reserved
395H	917	MSR_UNC_PERF_FIXED_CTR	Package	Uncore Fixed Counter
		43:0		Current count.
		63:44		Reserved
396H	918	MSR_UNC_CBO_CONFIG	Package	Uncore C-Box Configuration Information (R/O)
		3:0		Specifies the number of C-Box units with programmable counters (including processor cores and processor graphics).
		63:4		Reserved
3B0H	946	MSR_UNC_ARB_PERFCTR0	Package	Uncore Arb Unit, Performance Counter 0
3B1H	947	MSR_UNC_ARB_PERFCTR1	Package	Uncore Arb Unit, Performance Counter 1
3B2H	944	MSR_UNC_ARB_PERFEVTSELO	Package	Uncore Arb Unit, Counter 0 Event Select MSR
3B3H	945	MSR_UNC_ARB_PERFEVTSEL1	Package	Uncore Arb Unit, Counter 1 Event Select MSR
700H	1792	MSR_UNC_CBO_0_PERFEVTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 0, Counter 0 Event Select MSR
701H	1793	MSR_UNC_CBO_0_PERFEVTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 0, Counter 1 Event Select MSR
706H	1798	MSR_UNC_CBO_0_PERFCTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 0, Performance Counter 0
707H	1799	MSR_UNC_CBO_0_PERFCTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 0, Performance Counter 1
710H	1808	MSR_UNC_CBO_1_PERFEVTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 1, Counter 0 Event Select MSR
711H	1809	MSR_UNC_CBO_1_PERFEVTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 1, Counter 1 Event Select MSR
716H	1814	MSR_UNC_CBO_1_PERFCTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 1, Performance Counter 0
717H	1815	MSR_UNC_CBO_1_PERFCTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 1, Performance Counter 1
720H	1824	MSR_UNC_CBO_2_PERFEVTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 2, Counter 0 Event Select MSR
721H	1825	MSR_UNC_CBO_2_PERFEVTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 2, Counter 1 Event Select MSR
726H	1830	MSR_UNC_CBO_2_PERFCTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 2, Performance Counter 0
727H	1831	MSR_UNC_CBO_2_PERFCTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 2, Performance Counter 1
730H	1840	MSR_UNC_CBO_3_PERFEVTSELO	Package	Uncore C-Box 3, Counter 0 Event Select MSR
731H	1841	MSR_UNC_CBO_3_PERFEVTSEL1	Package	Uncore C-Box 3, Counter 1 Event Select MSR
736H	1846	MSR_UNC_CBO_3_PERFCTR0	Package	Uncore C-Box 3, Performance Counter 0
737H	1847	MSR_UNC_CBO_3_PERFCTR1	Package	Uncore C-Box 3, Performance Counter 1
E01H	3585	MSR_UNC_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL	Package	Uncore PMU Global Control
		0		Slice 0 select.
		1		Slice 1 select.
		2		Slice 2 select.
		3		Slice 3 select.
		4		Slice 4select.

Table 2-39. Uncore PMU MSRs Supported by 6th Generation, 7th Generation, and 8th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors, and Future Intel® Core™ Processors

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		18:5		Reserved
		29		Enable all uncore counters.
		30		Enable wake on PMI.
		31		Enable Freezing counter when overflow.
		63:32		Reserved
E02H	3586	MSR_UNC_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS	Package	Uncore PMU Main Status
		0		Fixed counter overflowed.
		1		An ARB counter overflowed.
		2		Reserved
		3		A CBox counter overflowed (on any slice).
		63:4		Reserved

2.16.1 MSRs Specific to 7th Generation and 8th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors based on Kaby Lake Microarchitecture and Coffee Lake Microarchitecture

Table 2-41 lists additional MSRs for 7th generation and 8th generation Intel Core processors with a CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel signatures of 06_8EH and 06_9EH. For an MSR listed in Table 2-41 that also appears in the model-specific tables of prior generations, Table 2-41 supersedes prior generation tables.

Table 2-40. Additional MSRs Supported by 7th Generation and 8th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Kaby Lake Microarchitecture and Coffee Lake Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
80H	128	MSR_TRACE_HUB_STH ACPIBAR_BASE	Package	NPK Address Used by AET Messages (R/W)
		0		Lock Bit If set, this MSR cannot be re-written anymore. Lock bit has to be set in order for the AET packets to be directed to NPK MMIO.
		17:1		Reserved
		63:18		ACPIBAR_BASE_ADDRESS AET target address in NPK MMIO space.
1F4H	500	MSR_PRMRR_PHYS_BASE	Core	Processor Reserved Memory Range Register - Physical Base Control Register (R/W)
		2:0		MemType PRMRR BASE MemType.
		11:3		Reserved
		45:12		Base PRMRR Base Address.
		63:46		Reserved

Table 2-40. Additional MSRs Supported by 7th Generation and 8th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Kaby Lake Microarchitecture and Coffee Lake Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
1F5H	501	MSR_PLMRR_PHYS_MASK	Core	Processor Reserved Memory Range Register - Physical Mask Control Register (R/W)
		9:0		Reserved
		10		Lock Lock bit for the PLMRR.
		11		VLD Enable bit for the PLMRR.
		45:12		Mask PLMRR MASK bits.
		63:46		Reserved
1FBH	507	MSR_PLMRR_VALID_CONFIG	Core	Valid PLMRR Configurations (R/W)
		0		1M supported MEE size.
		4:1		Reserved
		5		32M supported MEE size.
		6		64M supported MEE size.
		7		128M supported MEE size.
		31:8		Reserved
2F4H	756	MSR_UNCORE_PLMRR_PHYS_BASE	Package	(R/W) The PLMRR range is used to protect Xucode memory from unauthorized reads and writes. Any IO access to this range is aborted. This register controls the location of the PLMRR range by indicating its starting address. It functions in tandem with the PLMRR mask register.
		11:0		Reserved
		38:12		Range Base This field corresponds to bits 38:12 of the base address memory range which is allocated to PLMRR memory.
		63:39		Reserved
2F5H	757	MSR_UNCORE_PLMRR_PHYS_MASK	Package	(R/W) This register controls the size of the PLMRR range by indicating which address bits must match the PLMRR base register value.
		9:0		Reserved
		10		Lock Setting this bit locks all writeable settings in this register, including itself.
		11		Range_En Indicates whether the PLMRR range is enabled and valid.

Table 2-40. Additional MSRs Supported by 7th Generation and 8th Generation Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Kaby Lake Microarchitecture and Coffee Lake Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		38:12		Range_Mask This field indicates which address bits must match PRMRR base in order to qualify as an PRMRR access.
		63:39		Reserved
620H	1568	MSR_RING_RATIO_LIMIT	Package	Ring Ratio Limit (R/W) This register provides Min/Max Ratio Limits for the LLC and Ring.
		6:0		MAX_Ratio This field is used to limit the max ratio of the LLC/Ring.
		7		Reserved
		14:8		MIN_Ratio Writing to this field controls the minimum possible ratio of the LLC/Ring.
		63:15		Reserved

2.16.2 MSRs Specific to Future Intel® Core™ Processors

Table 2-41 lists additional MSRs for Future Intel Core processors with a CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel signature of 06_66H. For an MSR listed in Table 2-41 that also appears in the model-specific tables of prior generations, Table 2-41 supersedes prior generation tables.

Table 2-41. Additional MSRs Supported by Future Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Cannon Lake Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
3AH	58	IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL	Thread	Control Features in Intel 64 Processor (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		0		Lock (R/WL)
		1		Enable VMX Inside SMX Operation (R/WL)
		2		Enable VMX Outside SMX Operation (R/WL)
		14:8		SENTER Local Functions Enables (R/WL)
		15		SENTER Global Functions Enable (R/WL)
		17		SGX Launch Control Enable (R/WL) This bit must be set to enable runtime reconfiguration of SGX Launch Control via IA32_SGXLEPUBKEYHASHn MSR. Available only if CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0H): ECX[30] = 1.
		18		SGX Global Functions Enable (R/WL)
		63:21		Reserved

Table 2-41. Additional MSRs Supported by Future Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Cannon Lake Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
350H	848	MSR_BR_DETECT_CTRL		Branch Monitoring Global Control (R/W)
		0		EnMonitoring Global enable for branch monitoring.
		1		EnExcept Enable branch monitoring event signaling on threshold trip. The branch monitoring event handler is signaled via the existing PMI signaling mechanism as programmed from the corresponding local APIC LVT entry.
		2		EnLBRFrz Enable LBR freeze on threshold trip. This will cause the LBR frozen bit 58 to be set in IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS when a triggering condition occurs and this bit is enabled.
		3		DisableInGuest When set to '1', branch monitoring, event triggering and LBR freeze actions are disabled when operating at VMX non-root operation.
		7:4		Reserved
		17:8		WindowSize Window size defined by WindowCntSel. Values 0 - 1023 are supported. Once the Window counter reaches the WindowSize count both the Window Counter and all Branch Monitoring Counters are cleared.
		23:18		Reserved
		25:24		WindowCntSel Window event count select: '00 = Instructions retired. '01 = Branch instructions retired '10 = Return instructions retired. '11 = Indirect branch instructions retired.
		26		CntAndMode When set to '1', the overall branch monitoring event triggering condition is true only if all enabled counters' threshold conditions are true. When '0', the threshold tripping condition is true if any enabled counters' threshold is true.
63:27		Reserved		
351H	849	MSR_BR_DETECT_STATUS		Branch Monitoring Global Status (R/W)
		0		Branch Monitoring Event Signaled When set to '1', Branch Monitoring event signaling is blocked until this bit is cleared by software.

Table 2-41. Additional MSRs Supported by Future Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Cannon Lake Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		1		LBRsValid This status bit is set to '1' if the LBR state is considered valid for sampling by branch monitoring software.
		7:2		Reserved
		8		CntrHit0 Branch monitoring counter #0 threshold hit. This status bit is sticky and once set requires clearing by software. Counter operation continues independent of the state of the bit.
		9		CntrHit1 Branch monitoring counter #1 threshold hit. This status bit is sticky and once set requires clearing by software. Counter operation continues independent of the state of the bit.
		15:10		Reserved Reserved for additional branch monitoring counters threshold hit status.
		25:16		CountWindow The current value of the window counter. The count value is frozen on a valid branch monitoring triggering condition. This is a 10-bit unsigned value.
		31:26		Reserved Reserved for future extension of CountWindow.
		39:32		Count0 The current value of counter 0 updated after each occurrence of the event being counted. The count value is frozen on a valid branch monitoring triggering condition (in which case CntrHit0 will also be set). This is an 8-bit signed value (2's complement). Heuristic events which only increment will saturate and freeze at maximum value 0xFF (256). RET-CALL event counter saturate at maximum value 0x7F (+127) and minimum value 0x80 (-128).
		47:40		Count1 The current value of counter 1 updated after each occurrence of the event being counted. The count value is frozen on a valid branch monitoring triggering condition (in which case CntrHit1 will also be set). This is an 8-bit signed value (2's complement). Heuristic events which only increment will saturate and freeze at maximum value 0xFF (256). RET-CALL event counter saturate at maximum value 0x7F (+127) and minimum value 0x80 (-128).
		63:48		Reserved

Table 2-41. Additional MSRs Supported by Future Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Cannon Lake Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
354H - 355H	852 - 853	MSR_BR_DETECT_COUNTER_CONFIG_i		Branch Monitoring Detect Counter Configuration (R/W)
		0		CntrEn Enable counter.
		7:1		CntrEvSel Event select (other values #GP) '0000000 = RETs. '0000001 = RET-CALL bias. '0000010 = RET mispredicts. '0000011 = Branch (all) mispredicts. '0000100 = Indirect branch mispredicts. '0000101 = Far branch instructions.
		14:8		CntrThreshold Threshold (an unsigned value of 0 to 127 supported). The value 0 of counter threshold will result in event signaled after every instruction. #GP if threshold is < 2.
		15		MispredEventCnt Mispredict events counting behavior: '0 = Mispredict events are counted in a window. '1 = Mispredict events are counted based on a consecutive occurrence. CntrThreshold is treated as # of consecutive mispredicts. This control bit only applies to events specified by CntrEvSel that involve a prediction (0000010, 0000011, 0000100). Setting this bit for other events is ignored.
		63:16		Reserved
3F8H	1016	MSR_PKG_C3_RESIDENCY	Package	Package C3 Residency Counter (R/O)
		63:0		Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-states.
620H	1568	MSR_RING_RATIO_LIMIT	Package	Ring Ratio Limit (R/W) This register provides Min/Max Ratio Limits for the LLC and Ring.
		6:0		MAX_Ratio This field is used to limit the max ratio of the LLC/Ring.
		7		Reserved
		14:8		MIN_Ratio Writing to this field controls the minimum possible ratio of the LLC/Ring.
		63:15		Reserved

Table 2-41. Additional MSRs Supported by Future Intel® Core™ Processors Based on Cannon Lake Microarchitecture

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
660H	1632	MSR_CORE_C1_RESIDENCY	Core	Core C1 Residency Counter (R/O)
		63:0		Value since last reset for the Core C1 residency. Counter rate is the Max Non-Turbo frequency (same as TSC). This counter counts in case both of the core's threads are in an idle state and at least one of the core's thread residency is in a C1 state or in one of its sub states. The counter is updated only after a core C state exit. Note: Always reads 0 if core C1 is unsupported. A value of zero indicates that this processor does not support core C1 or never entered core C1 level state.
662H	1634	MSR_CORE_C3_RESIDENCY	Core	Core C3 Residency Counter (R/O)
		63:0		Will always return 0.

2.16.3 MSRs Specific to Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family

Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family (CUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel = 06_55H) support the MSRs listed in Table 2-42.

Table 2-42. MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel 06_55H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
3AH	58	IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL	Thread	Control Features in Intel 64 Processor (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		0		Lock (R/WL)
		1		Enable VMX Inside SMX Operation (R/WL)
		2		Enable VMX Outside SMX Operation (R/WL)
		14:8		SENTER Local Functions Enables (R/WL)
		15		SENTER Global Functions Enable (R/WL)
		18		SGX Global Functions Enable (R/WL)
		20		LMCE_ON (R/WL)
	63:21	Reserved		
4EH	78	MSR_PPIN_CTL	Package	Protected Processor Inventory Number Enable Control (R/W)
		0		LockOut (R/WO) See Table 2-25.
		1		Enable_PPIN (R/W) See Table 2-25.
		63:2		Reserved
4FH	79	MSR_PPIN	Package	Protected Processor Inventory Number (R/O)

Table 2-42. MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel 06_55H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		63:0		Protected Processor Inventory Number (R/O) See Table 2-25.
CEH	206	MSR_PLATFORM_INFO	Package	Platform Information Contains power management and other model specific features enumeration. See http://biosbits.org .
		7:0		Reserved
		15:8	Package	Maximum Non-Turbo Ratio (R/O) See Table 2-25.
		22:16		Reserved.
		23	Package	PPIN_CAP (R/O) See Table 2-25.
		27:24		Reserved
		28	Package	Programmable Ratio Limit for Turbo Mode (R/O) See Table 2-25.
		29	Package	Programmable TDP Limit for Turbo Mode (R/O) See Table 2-25.
		30	Package	Programmable TJ OFFSET (R/O) See Table 2-25.
		39:31		Reserved
		47:40	Package	Maximum Efficiency Ratio (R/O) See Table 2-25.
		63:48		Reserved
E2H	226	MSR_PKG_CST_CONFIG_CONTROL	Core	C-State Configuration Control (R/W) Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-states. See http://biosbits.org .
		2:0		Package C-State Limit (R/W) Specifies the lowest processor-specific C-state code name (consuming the least power) for the package. The default is set as factory-configured package C-state limit. The following C-state code name encodings are supported: 000b: C0/C1 (no package C-state support) 001b: C2 010b: C6 (non-retention) 011b: C6 (retention) 111b: No Package C state limits. All C states supported by the processor are available.
		9:3		Reserved

Table 2-42. MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel 06_55H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		10		I/O MWAIT Redirection Enable (R/W)
		14:11		Reserved
		15		CFG Lock (R/WO)
		16		Automatic C-State Conversion Enable (R/W) If 1, the processor will convert HALT or MWAIT(C1) to MWAIT(C6).
		24:17		Reserved
		25		C3 State Auto Demotion Enable (R/W)
		26		C1 State Auto Demotion Enable (R/W)
		27		Enable C3 Undemotion (R/W)
		28		Enable C1 Undemotion (R/W)
		29		Package C State Demotion Enable (R/W)
		30		Package C State UnDemotion Enable (R/W)
		63:31		Reserved
179H	377	IA32_MCG_CAP	Thread	Global Machine Check Capability (R/O)
		7:0		Count
		8		MCG_CTL_P
		9		MCG_EXT_P
		10		MCP_CMCI_P
		11		MCG_TES_P
		15:12		Reserved
		23:16		MCG_EXT_CNT
		24		MCG_SER_P
		25		MCG_EM_P
		26		MCG_ELOG_P
		63:27		Reserved
17DH	390	MSR_SMM_MCA_CAP	THREAD	Enhanced SMM Capabilities (SMM-RO) Reports SMM capability Enhancement. Accessible only while in SMM.
		57:0		Reserved
		58		SMM_Code_Access_Chk (SMM-RO) If set to 1 indicates that the SMM code access restriction is supported and a host-space interface is available to SMM handler.
		59		Long_Flow_Indication (SMM-RO) If set to 1 indicates that the SMM long flow indicator is supported and a host-space interface is available to SMM handler.
		63:60		Reserved

Table 2-42. MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel 06_55H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
19CH	412	IA32_THERM_STATUS	Core	Thermal Monitor Status (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		0		Thermal Status (RO) See Table 2-2.
		1		Thermal Status Log (R/WCO) See Table 2-2.
		2		PROTCHOT # or FORCEPR# Status (RO) See Table 2-2.
		3		PROTCHOT # or FORCEPR# Log (R/WCO) See Table 2-2.
		4		Critical Temperature Status (RO) See Table 2-2.
		5		Critical Temperature Status Log (R/WCO) See Table 2-2.
		6		Thermal Threshold #1 Status (RO) See Table 2-2.
		7		Thermal Threshold #1 Log (R/WCO) See Table 2-2.
		8		Thermal Threshold #2 Status (RO) See Table 2-2.
		9		Thermal Threshold #2 Log (R/WCO) See Table 2-2.
		10		Power Limitation Status (RO) See Table 2-2.
		11		Power Limitation Log (R/WCO) See Table 2-2.
		12		Current Limit Status (RO) See Table 2-2.
		13		Current Limit Log (R/WCO) See Table 2-2.
		14		Cross Domain Limit Status (RO) See Table 2-2.
		15		Cross Domain Limit Log (R/WCO) See Table 2-2.
		22:16		Digital Readout (RO) See Table 2-2.
26:23		Reserved		
30:27		Resolution in Degrees Celsius (RO) See Table 2-2.		

Table 2-42. MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel 06_55H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		31		Reading Valid (RO) See Table 2-2.
		63:32		Reserved
1A2H	418	MSR_TEMPERATURE_TARGET	Package	Temperature Target
		15:0		Reserved
		23:16		Temperature Target (RO) See Table 2-25.
		27:24		TCC Activation Offset (R/W) See Table 2-25.
		63:28		Reserved
1ADH	429	MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT	Package	This register defines the ratio limits. $RATIO[0:7]$ must be populated in ascending order. $RATIO[i+1]$ must be less than or equal to $RATIO[i]$. Entries with $RATIO[i]$ will be ignored. If any of the rules above are broken, the configuration is silently rejected. If the programmed ratio is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Above the fused ratio for that core count, it will be clipped to the fuse limits (assuming !OC). ▪ Below the min supported ratio, it will be clipped.
		7:0		RATIO_0 Defines ratio limits.
		15:8		RATIO_1 Defines ratio limits.
		23:16		RATIO_2 Defines ratio limits.
		31:24		RATIO_3 Defines ratio limits.
		39:32		RATIO_4 Defines ratio limits.
		47:40		RATIO_5 Defines ratio limits.
		55:48		RATIO_6 Defines ratio limits.
		63:56		RATIO_7 Defines ratio limits.
		1AEH	430	MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT_CORES

Table 2-42. MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel 06_55H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		7:0		NUMCORE_0 Defines the active core ranges for each frequency point.
		15:8		NUMCORE_1 Defines the active core ranges for each frequency point.
		23:16		NUMCORE_2 Defines the active core ranges for each frequency point.
		31:24		NUMCORE_3 Defines the active core ranges for each frequency point.
		39:32		NUMCORE_4 Defines the active core ranges for each frequency point.
		47:40		NUMCORE_5 Defines the active core ranges for each frequency point.
		55:48		NUMCORE_6 Defines the active core ranges for each frequency point.
		63:56		NUMCORE_7 Defines the active core ranges for each frequency point.
280H	640	IA32_MC0_CTL2	Core	See Table 2-2.
281H	641	IA32_MC1_CTL2	Core	See Table 2-2.
282H	642	IA32_MC2_CTL2	Core	See Table 2-2.
283H	643	IA32_MC3_CTL2	Core	See Table 2-2.
284H	644	IA32_MC4_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
285H	645	IA32_MC5_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
286H	646	IA32_MC6_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
287H	647	IA32_MC7_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
288H	648	IA32_MC8_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
289H	649	IA32_MC9_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28AH	650	IA32_MC10_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28BH	651	IA32_MC11_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28CH	652	IA32_MC12_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28DH	653	IA32_MC13_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28EH	654	IA32_MC14_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
28FH	655	IA32_MC15_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.

Table 2-42. MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel 06_55H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
290H	656	IA32_MC16_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
291H	657	IA32_MC17_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
292H	658	IA32_MC18_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
293H	659	IA32_MC19_CTL2	Package	See Table 2-2.
400H	1024	IA32_MCO_CTL	Core	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MCO reports MC errors from the IFU module.
401H	1025	IA32_MCO_STATUS	Core	
402H	1026	IA32_MCO_ADDR	Core	
403H	1027	IA32_MCO_MISC	Core	
404H	1028	IA32_MC1_CTL	Core	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC1 reports MC errors from the DCU module.
405H	1029	IA32_MC1_STATUS	Core	
406H	1030	IA32_MC1_ADDR	Core	
407H	1031	IA32_MC1_MISC	Core	
408H	1032	IA32_MC2_CTL	Core	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC2 reports MC errors from the DTLB module.
409H	1033	IA32_MC2_STATUS	Core	
40AH	1034	IA32_MC2_ADDR	Core	
40BH	1035	IA32_MC2_MISC	Core	
40CH	1036	IA32_MC3_CTL	Core	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC3 reports MC errors from the MLC module.
40DH	1037	IA32_MC3_STATUS	Core	
40EH	1038	IA32_MC3_ADDR	Core	
40FH	1039	IA32_MC3_MISC	Core	
410H	1040	IA32_MC4_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC4 reports MC errors from the PCU module.
411H	1041	IA32_MC4_STATUS	Package	
412H	1042	IA32_MC4_ADDR	Package	
413H	1043	IA32_MC4_MISC	Package	
414H	1044	IA32_MC5_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC5 reports MC errors from a link interconnect module.
415H	1045	IA32_MC5_STATUS	Package	
416H	1046	IA32_MC5_ADDR	Package	
417H	1047	IA32_MC5_MISC	Package	
418H	1048	IA32_MC6_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC6 reports MC errors from the integrated I/O module.
419H	1049	IA32_MC6_STATUS	Package	
41AH	1050	IA32_MC6_ADDR	Package	
41BH	1051	IA32_MC6_MISC	Package	
41CH	1052	IA32_MC7_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC7 reports MC errors from the M2M 0.
41DH	1053	IA32_MC7_STATUS	Package	
41EH	1054	IA32_MC7_ADDR	Package	
41FH	1055	IA32_MC7_MISC	Package	

Table 2-42. MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel 06_55H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
420H	1056	IA32_MC8_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC8 reports MC errors from the M2M 1.
421H	1057	IA32_MC8_STATUS	Package	
422H	1058	IA32_MC8_ADDR	Package	
423H	1059	IA32_MC8_MISC	Package	
424H	1060	IA32_MC9_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC9 - MC11 report MC errors from the CHA
425H	1061	IA32_MC9_STATUS	Package	
426H	1062	IA32_MC9_ADDR	Package	
427H	1063	IA32_MC9_MISC	Package	
428H	1064	IA32_MC10_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC9 - MC11 report MC errors from the CHA.
429H	1065	IA32_MC10_STATUS	Package	
42AH	1066	IA32_MC10_ADDR	Package	
42BH	1067	IA32_MC10_MISC	Package	
42CH	1068	IA32_MC11_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC9 - MC11 report MC errors from the CHA.
42DH	1069	IA32_MC11_STATUS	Package	
42EH	1070	IA32_MC11_ADDR	Package	
42FH	1071	IA32_MC11_MISC	Package	
430H	1072	IA32_MC12_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC12 report MC errors from each channel of a link interconnect module.
431H	1073	IA32_MC12_STATUS	Package	
432H	1074	IA32_MC12_ADDR	Package	
433H	1075	IA32_MC12_MISC	Package	
434H	1076	IA32_MC13_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC13 through MC 18 report MC errors from the integrated memory controllers.
435H	1077	IA32_MC13_STATUS	Package	
436H	1078	IA32_MC13_ADDR	Package	
437H	1079	IA32_MC13_MISC	Package	
438H	1080	IA32_MC14_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC13 through MC 18 report MC errors from the integrated memory controllers.
439H	1081	IA32_MC14_STATUS	Package	
43AH	1082	IA32_MC14_ADDR	Package	
43BH	1083	IA32_MC14_MISC	Package	
43CH	1084	IA32_MC15_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC13 through MC 18 report MC errors from the integrated memory controllers.
43DH	1085	IA32_MC15_STATUS	Package	
43EH	1086	IA32_MC15_ADDR	Package	
43FH	1087	IA32_MC15_MISC	Package	
440H	1088	IA32_MC16_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC13 through MC 18 report MC errors from the integrated memory controllers
441H	1089	IA32_MC16_STATUS	Package	
442H	1090	IA32_MC16_ADDR	Package	
443H	1091	IA32_MC16_MISC	Package	

Table 2-42. MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel 06_55H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
444H	1092	IA32_MC17_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC13 through MC 18 report MC errors from the integrated memory controllers.
445H	1093	IA32_MC17_STATUS	Package	
446H	1094	IA32_MC17_ADDR	Package	
447H	1095	IA32_MC17_MISC	Package	
448H	1096	IA32_MC18_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Banks MC13 through MC 18 report MC errors from the integrated memory controllers.
449H	1097	IA32_MC18_STATUS	Package	
44AH	1098	IA32_MC18_ADDR	Package	
44BH	1099	IA32_MC18_MISC	Package	
44CH	1100	IA32_MC19_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs" through Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." Bank MC19 reports MC errors from a link interconnect module.
44DH	1101	IA32_MC19_STATUS	Package	
44EH	1102	IA32_MC19_ADDR	Package	
44FH	1103	IA32_MC19_MISC	Package	
606H	1542	MSR_RAPL_POWER_UNIT	Package	Unit Multipliers Used in RAPL Interfaces (R/O)
		3:0	Package	Power Units See Section 14.9.1, "RAPL Interfaces."
		7:4	Package	Reserved
		12:8	Package	Energy Status Units Energy related information (in Joules) is based on the multiplier, $1/2^{\wedge}ESU$; where ESU is an unsigned integer represented by bits 12:8. Default value is 0EH (or 61 micro-joules).
		15:13	Package	Reserved
		19:16	Package	Time Units See Section 14.9.1, "RAPL Interfaces."
		63:20		Reserved
618H	1560	MSR_DRAM_POWER_LIMIT	Package	DRAM RAPL Power Limit Control (R/W) See Section 14.9.5, "DRAM RAPL Domain."
619H	1561	MSR_DRAM_ENERGY_STATUS	Package	DRAM Energy Status (R/O) Energy consumed by DRAM devices.
		31:0		Energy in 15.3 micro-joules. Requires BIOS configuration to enable DRAM RAPL mode 0 (Direct VR).
		63:32		Reserved
61BH	1563	MSR_DRAM_PERF_STATUS	Package	DRAM Performance Throttling Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.5, "DRAM RAPL Domain."
61CH	1564	MSR_DRAM_POWER_INFO	Package	DRAM RAPL Parameters (R/W) See Section 14.9.5, "DRAM RAPL Domain."

Table 2-42. MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel 06_55H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
620H	1568	MSR_UNCORE_RATIO_LIMIT	Package	Uncore Ratio Limit (R/W) Out of reset, the min_ratio and max_ratio fields represent the widest possible range of uncore frequencies. Writing to these fields allows software to control the minimum and the maximum frequency that hardware will select.
		63:15		Reserved
		14:8		MIN_RATIO Writing to this field controls the minimum possible ratio of the LLC/Ring.
		7		Reserved
		6:0		MAX_RATIO This field is used to limit the max ratio of the LLC/Ring.
639H	1593	MSR_PPO_ENERGY_STATUS	Package	Reserved (R/O) Reads return 0.
C8DH	3213	IA32_QM_EVTSEL	THREAD	Monitoring Event Select Register (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=07H, ECX=0):EBX.RDT-M[bit 12] = 1.
		7:0		EventID (RW) Event encoding: 0x00: No monitoring. 0x01: L3 occupancy monitoring. 0x02: Total memory bandwidth monitoring. 0x03: Local memory bandwidth monitoring. All other encoding reserved.
		31:8		Reserved
		41:32		RMID (RW)
		63:42		Reserved
		C8FH		3215
9:0	RMID			
31:10	Reserved			
51:32	COS (R/W)			
63: 52	Reserved			
C90H	3216	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_0	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 0 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1):EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=0.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 0 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved
C91H	3217	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_1	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 1 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1):EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=1.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 1 enforcement.

Table 2-42. MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel 06_55H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		63:20		Reserved
C92H	3218	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_2	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 2 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1):EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=2.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 2 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved
C93H	3219	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_3	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 3 (R/W). If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1):EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=3.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 3 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved
C94H	3220	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_4	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 4 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1):EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=4.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 4 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved
C95H	3221	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_5	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 5 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1):EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=5.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 5 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved
C96H	3222	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_6	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 6 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1):EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=6.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 6 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved
C97H	3223	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_7	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 7 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1):EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=7.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 7 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved
C98H	3224	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_8	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 8 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1):EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=8.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 8 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved
C99H	3225	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_9	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 9 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1):EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=9.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 9 enforcement.

Table 2-42. MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon® Processor Scalable Family with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel 06_55H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		63:20		Reserved
C9AH	3226	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_10	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 10 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1):EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=10.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 10 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved
C9BH	3227	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_11	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 11 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1):EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=11.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 11 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved
C9CH	3228	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_12	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 12 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1):EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=12.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 12 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved
C9DH	3229	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_13	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 13 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1):EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=13.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 13 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved
C9EH	3230	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_14	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 14 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1):EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=14.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 14 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved
C9FH	3231	IA32_L3_QOS_MASK_15	Package	L3 Class Of Service Mask - COS 15 (R/W) If CPUID.(EAX=10H, ECX=1):EDX.COS_MAX[15:0] >=15.
		0:19		CBM: Bit vector of available L3 ways for COS 15 enforcement.
		63:20		Reserved

2.17 MSRS IN INTEL® XEON PHI™ PROCESSOR 3200/5200/7200 SERIES AND INTEL® XEON PHI™ PROCESSOR 7215/7285/7295 SERIES

Intel® Xeon Phi™ processor 3200, 5200, 7200 series, with CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel signature 06_57H, supports the MSR interfaces listed in Table 2-43. These processors are based on the Knights Landing microarchitecture. Intel® Xeon Phi™ processor 7215, 7285, 7295 series, with CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel signature 06_85H, supports the MSR interfaces listed in Table 2-43 and Table 2-44. These processors are based on the Knights Mill microarchitecture. Some MSRs are shared between a pair of processor cores, the scope is marked as module.

Table 2-43. Selected MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon Phi™ Processors with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel Signatures 06_57H and 06_85H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
0H	0	IA32_P5_MC_ADDR	Module	See Section 2.22, "MSRs in Pentium Processors."
1H	1	IA32_P5_MC_TYPE	Module	See Section 2.22, "MSRs in Pentium Processors."
6H	6	IA32_MONITOR_FILTER_SIZE	Thread	See Section 8.10.5, "Monitor/Mwait Address Range Determination." See Table 2-2.
10H	16	IA32_TIME_STAMP_COUNTER	Thread	See Section 17.17, "Time-Stamp Counter," and see Table 2-2.
17H	23	IA32_PLATFORM_ID	Package	Platform ID (R) See Table 2-2.
1BH	27	IA32_APIC_BASE	Thread	See Section 10.4.4, "Local APIC Status and Location," and Table 2-2.
34H	52	MSR_SMI_COUNT	Thread	SMI Counter (R/O)
		31:0		SMI Count (R/O)
		63:32		Reserved
3AH	58	IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL	Thread	Control Features in Intel 64Processor (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		0		Lock (R/WL)
		1		Reserved
		2		Enable VMX outside SMX operation (R/WL)
3BH	59	IA32_TSC_ADJUST	THREAD	Per-Logical-Processor TSC ADJUST (R/W) See Table 2-2.
4EH	78	MSR_PPIN_CTL	Package	Protected Processor Inventory Number Enable Control (R/W)
		0		LockOut (R/WO) Set 1 to prevent further writes to MSR_PPIN_CTL. Writing 1 to MSR_PPIN_CTL[bit 0] is permitted only if MSR_PPIN_CTL[bit 1] is clear. Default is 0. BIOS should provide an opt-in menu to enable the user to turn on MSR_PPIN_CTL[bit 1] for a privileged inventory initialization agent to access MSR_PPIN. After reading MSR_PPIN, the privileged inventory initialization agent should write '01b' to MSR_PPIN_CTL to disable further access to MSR_PPIN and prevent unauthorized modification to MSR_PPIN_CTL.

Table 2-43. Selected MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon Phi™ Processors with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel Signatures 06_57H and 06_85H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		1		Enable_PPIN (R/W) If 1, enables MSR_PPIN to be accessible using RDMSR. Once set, an attempt to write 1 to MSR_PPIN_CTL[bit 0] will cause #GP. If 0, an attempt to read MSR_PPIN will cause #GP. Default is 0.
		63:2		Reserved
4FH	79	MSR_PPIN	Package	Protected Processor Inventory Number (R/O)
		63:0		Protected Processor Inventory Number (R/O) A unique value within a given CUID family/model/stepping signature that a privileged inventory initialization agent can access to identify each physical processor, when access to MSR_PPIN is enabled. Access to MSR_PPIN is permitted only if MSR_PPIN_CTL[bits 1:0] = '10b'.
79H	121	IA32_BIOS_UPDT_TRIG	Core	BIOS Update Trigger Register (W) See Table 2-2.
8BH	139	IA32_BIOS_SIGN_ID	THREAD	BIOS Update Signature ID (RO) See Table 2-2.
C1H	193	IA32_PMC0	THREAD	Performance Counter Register See Table 2-2.
C2H	194	IA32_PMC1	THREAD	Performance Counter Register See Table 2-2.
CEH	206	MSR_PLATFORM_INFO	Package	Platform Information Contains power management and other model specific features enumeration. See http://biosbits.org .
		7:0		Reserved
		15:8	Package	Maximum Non-Turbo Ratio (R/O) This is the ratio of the frequency that invariant TSC runs at. Frequency = ratio * 100 MHz.
		27:16		Reserved
		28	Package	Programmable Ratio Limit for Turbo Mode (R/O) When set to 1, indicates that Programmable Ratio Limit for Turbo mode is enabled. When set to 0, indicates Programmable Ratio Limit for Turbo mode is disabled.
		29	Package	Programmable TDP Limit for Turbo Mode (R/O) When set to 1, indicates that TDP Limit for Turbo mode is programmable. When set to 0, indicates TDP Limit for Turbo mode is not programmable.
		39:30		Reserved

Table 2-43. Selected MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon Phi™ Processors with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel Signatures 06_57H and 06_85H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		47:40	Package	Maximum Efficiency Ratio (R/O) This is the minimum ratio (maximum efficiency) that the processor can operate, in units of 100MHz.
		63:48		Reserved
E2H	226	MSR_PKG_CST_CONFIG_CONTROL	Package	C-State Configuration Control (R/W)
		2:0		Package C-State Limit (R/W) Specifies the lowest C-state for the package. This feature does not limit the processor core C-state. The power-on default value from bit[2:0] of this register reports the deepest package C-state the processor is capable to support when manufactured. It is recommended that BIOS always read the power-on default value reported from this bit field to determine the supported deepest C-state on the processor and leave it as default without changing it. 000b - C0/C1 (No package C-state support) 001b - C2 010b - C6 (non retention)* 011b - C6 (Retention)* 100b - Reserved 101b - Reserved 110b - Reserved 111b - No package C-state limit. All C-States supported by the processor are available. Note: C6 retention mode provides more power saving than C6 non-retention mode. Limiting the package to C6 non retention mode does prevent the MSR_PKG_C6_RESIDENCY counter (MSR 3F9h) from being incremented.
		9:3		Reserved
		10		I/O MWAIT Redirection Enable (R/W) When set, will map IO_read instructions sent to IO registers at MSR_PMG_IO_CAPTURE_BASE[15:0] to MWAIT instructions.
		14:11		Reserved
		15		CFG Lock (R/O) When set, locks bits [15:0] of this register for further writes until the next reset occurs.
		25		Reserved
		26		C1 State Auto Demotion Enable (R/W) When set, the processor will conditionally demote C3/C6/C7 requests to C1 based on uncore auto-demote information.
		27		Reserved

Table 2-43. Selected MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon Phi™ Processors with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel Signatures 06_57H and 06_85H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		28		C1 State Auto Undemotion Enable (R/W) When set, enables Undemotion from Demoted C1.
		29		PKG C-State Auto Demotion Enable (R/W) When set, enables Package C state demotion.
		63:30		Reserved
E4H	228	MSR_PMG_IO_CAPTURE_BASE	Tile	Power Management IO Capture Base (R/W)
		15:0		LVL_2 Base Address (R/W) Microcode will compare IO-read zone to this base address to determine if an MWAIT(C2/3/4) needs to be issued instead of the IO-read. Should be programmed to the chipset Plevel_2 IO address.
		22:16		C-State Range (R/W) The IO-port block size in which IO-redirection will be executed (0-127). Should be programmed based on the number of LVLx registers existing in the chipset.
		63:23		Reserved
E7H	231	IA32_MPERF	Thread	Maximum Performance Frequency Clock Count (RW) See Table 2-2.
E8H	232	IA32_APERF	Thread	Actual Performance Frequency Clock Count (RW) See Table 2-2.
FEH	254	IA32_MTRRCAP	Core	Memory Type Range Register (R) See Table 2-2.
13CH	52	MSR_FEATURE_CONFIG	Core	AES Configuration (RW-L) Privileged post-BIOS agent must provide a #GP handler to handle unsuccessful read of this MSR.
		1:0		AES Configuration (RW-L) Upon a successful read of this MSR, the configuration of AES instruction set availability is as follows: 11b: AES instructions are not available until next RESET. Otherwise, AES instructions are available. Note, the AES instruction set is not available if read is unsuccessful. If the configuration is not 01b, AES instructions can be mis-configured if a privileged agent unintentionally writes 11b.
		63:2		Reserved
140H	320	MISC_FEATURE_ENABLES	Thread	MISC_FEATURE_ENABLES
		0		Reserved

Table 2-43. Selected MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon Phi™ Processors with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel Signatures 06_57H and 06_85H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		1		User Mode MONITOR and MWAIT (R/W) If set to 1, the MONITOR and MWAIT instructions do not cause invalid-opcode exceptions when executed with CPL > 0 or in virtual-8086 mode. If MWAIT is executed when CPL > 0 or in virtual-8086 mode, and if EAX indicates a C-state other than C0 or C1, the instruction operates as if EAX indicated the C-state C1.
		63:2		Reserved
174H	372	IA32_SYSENTER_CS	Thread	See Table 2-2.
175H	373	IA32_SYSENTER_ESP	Thread	See Table 2-2.
176H	374	IA32_SYSENTER_EIP	Thread	See Table 2-2.
179H	377	IA32_MCG_CAP	Thread	See Table 2-2.
17AH	378	IA32_MCG_STATUS	Thread	See Table 2-2.
17DH	390	MSR_SMM_MCA_CAP	Thread	Enhanced SMM Capabilities (SMM-RO) Reports SMM capability Enhancement. Accessible only while in SMM.
		31:0		Bank Support (SMM-RO) One bit per MCA bank. If the bit is set, that bank supports Enhanced MCA (Default all 0; does not support EMCA).
		55:32		Reserved
		56		Targeted SMI (SMM-RO) Set if targeted SMI is supported.
		57		SMM_CPU_SVRSTR (SMM-RO) Set if SMM SRAM save/restore feature is supported.
		58		SMM_CODE_ACCESS_CHK (SMM-RO) Set if SMM code access check feature is supported.
		59		Long_Flow_Indication (SMM-RO) If set to 1, indicates that the SMM long flow indicator is supported and a host-space interface available to SMM handler.
		63:60		Reserved
186H	390	IA32_PERFEVTSELO	Thread	Performance Monitoring Event Select Register (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		7:0		Event Select
		15:8		UMask
		16		USR
		17		OS
		18		Edge
		19		PC

Table 2-43. Selected MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon Phi™ Processors with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel Signatures 06_57H and 06_85H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		20		INT
		21		AnyThread
		22		EN
		23		INV
		31:24		CMASK
		63:32		Reserved
187H	391	IA32_PERFEVTSEL1	Thread	See Table 2-2.
198H	408	IA32_PERF_STATUS	Package	See Table 2-2.
199H	409	IA32_PERF_CTL	Thread	See Table 2-2.
19AH	410	IA32_CLOCK_MODULATION	Thread	Clock Modulation (R/W) See Table 2-2.
19BH	411	IA32_THERM_INTERRUPT	Module	Thermal Interrupt Control (R/W) See Table 2-2.
19CH	412	IA32_THERM_STATUS	Module	Thermal Monitor Status (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		0		Thermal Status (RO)
		1		Thermal Status Log (R/WCO)
		2		PROTCHOT # or FORCEPR# Status (RO)
		3		PROTCHOT # or FORCEPR# Log (R/WCO)
		4		Critical Temperature Status (RO)
		5		Critical Temperature Status Log (R/WCO)
		6		Thermal Threshold #1 Status (RO)
		7		Thermal Threshold #1 Log (R/WCO)
		8		Thermal Threshold #2 Status (RO)
		9		Thermal Threshold #2 Log (R/WCO)
		10		Power Limitation Status (RO)
		11		Power Limitation Log (R/WCO)
		15:12		Reserved
		22:16		Digital Readout (RO)
		26:23		Reserved
		30:27		Resolution in Degrees Celsius (RO)
31		Reading Valid (RO)		
63:32		Reserved		
1A0H	416	IA32_MISC_ENABLE	Thread	Enable Misc. Processor Features (R/W) Allows a variety of processor functions to be enabled and disabled.
		0		Fast-Strings Enable

Table 2-43. Selected MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon Phi™ Processors with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel Signatures 06_57H and 06_85H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		2:1		Reserved
		3		Automatic Thermal Control Circuit Enable (R/W)
		6:4		Reserved
		7		Performance Monitoring Available (R)
		10:8		Reserved
		11		Branch Trace Storage Unavailable (RO)
		12		Processor Event Based Sampling Unavailable (RO)
		15:13		Reserved
		16		Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology Enable (R/W)
		18		ENABLE MONITOR FSM (R/W)
		21:19		Reserved
		22		Limit CPUID Maxval (R/W)
		23		xTPR Message Disable (R/W)
		33:24		Reserved
		34		XD Bit Disable (R/W)
		37:35		Reserved
		38		Turbo Mode Disable (R/W)
		63:39		Reserved
1A2H	418	MSR_TEMPERATURE_TARGET	Package	Temperature Target
		15:0		Reserved
		23:16		Temperature Target (R)
		29:24		Target Offset (R/W)
		63:30		Reserved
1A4H	420	MSR_MISC_FEATURE_CONTROL		Miscellaneous Feature Control (R/W)
		0	Core	DCU Hardware Prefetcher Disable (R/W) If 1, disables the L1 data cache prefetcher.
		1	Core	L2 Hardware Prefetcher Disable (R/W) If 1, disables the L2 hardware prefetcher.
		63:2		Reserved
1A6H	422	MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_0	Shared	Offcore Response Event Select Register (R/W)
1A7H	423	MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_1	Shared	Offcore Response Event Select Register (R/W)
1ADH	429	MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit of Turbo Mode for Groups of Cores (RW)
		0		Reserved
		7:1	Package	Maximum Number of Cores in Group 0 Number active processor cores which operates under the maximum ratio limit for group 0.

Table 2-43. Selected MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon Phi™ Processors with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel Signatures 06_57H and 06_85H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		15:8	Package	Maximum Ratio Limit for Group 0 Maximum turbo ratio limit when the number of active cores are not more than the group 0 maximum core count.
		20:16	Package	Number of Incremental Cores Added to Group 1 Group 1, which includes the specified number of additional cores plus the cores in group 0, operates under the group 1 turbo max ratio limit = "group 0 Max ratio limit" - "group ratio delta for group 1".
		23:21	Package	Group Ratio Delta for Group 1 An unsigned integer specifying the ratio decrement relative to the Max ratio limit to Group 0.
		28:24	Package	Number of Incremental Cores Added to Group 2 Group 2, which includes the specified number of additional cores plus all the cores in group 1, operates under the group 2 turbo max ratio limit = "group 1 Max ratio limit" - "group ratio delta for group 2".
		31:29	Package	Group Ratio Delta for Group 2 An unsigned integer specifying the ratio decrement relative to the Max ratio limit for Group 1.
		36:32	Package	Number of Incremental Cores Added to Group 3 Group 3, which includes the specified number of additional cores plus all the cores in group 2, operates under the group 3 turbo max ratio limit = "group 2 Max ratio limit" - "group ratio delta for group 3".
		39:37	Package	Group Ratio Delta for Group 3 An unsigned integer specifying the ratio decrement relative to the Max ratio limit for Group 2.
		44:40	Package	Number of Incremental Cores Added to Group 4 Group 4, which includes the specified number of additional cores plus all the cores in group 3, operates under the group 4 turbo max ratio limit = "group 3 Max ratio limit" - "group ratio delta for group 4".
		47:45	Package	Group Ratio Delta for Group 4 An unsigned integer specifying the ratio decrement relative to the Max ratio limit for Group 3.
		52:48	Package	Number of Incremental Cores Added to Group 5 Group 5, which includes the specified number of additional cores plus all the cores in group 4, operates under the group 5 turbo max ratio limit = "group 4 Max ratio limit" - "group ratio delta for group 5".
		55:53	Package	Group Ratio Delta for Group 5 An unsigned integer specifying the ratio decrement relative to the Max ratio limit for Group 4.

Table 2-43. Selected MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon Phi™ Processors with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel Signatures 06_57H and 06_85H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		60:56	Package	Number of Incremental Cores Added to Group 6 Group 6, which includes the specified number of additional cores plus all the cores in group 5, operates under the group 6 turbo max ratio limit = "group 5 Max ratio limit" - "group ratio delta for group 6".
		63:61	Package	Group Ratio Delta for Group 6 An unsigned integer specifying the ratio decrement relative to the Max ratio limit for Group 5.
1B0H	432	IA32_ENERGY_PERF_BIAS	Thread	See Table 2-2.
1B1H	433	IA32_PACKAGE_THERM_STATUS	Package	See Table 2-2.
1B2H	434	IA32_PACKAGE_THERM_INTERRUPT	Package	See Table 2-2.
1C8H	456	MSR_LBR_SELECT	Thread	Last Branch Record Filtering Select Register (R/W) See Section 17.9.2, "Filtering of Last Branch Records."
		0		CPL_EQ_0
		1		CPL_NEQ_0
		2		JCC
		3		NEAR_REL_CALL
		4		NEAR_IND_CALL
		5		NEAR_RET
		6		NEAR_IND_JMP
		7		NEAR_REL_JMP
		8		FAR_BRANCH
	63:9			Reserved
1C9H	457	MSR_LASTBRANCH_TOS	Thread	Last Branch Record Stack TOS (R/W) Contains an index (bits 0-2) that points to the MSR containing the most recent branch record. See MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP.
1D9H	473	IA32_DEBUGCTL	Thread	Debug Control (R/W)
		0		LBR Setting this bit to 1 enables the processor to record a running trace of the most recent branches taken by the processor in the LBR stack.
		1		BTF Setting this bit to 1 enables the processor to treat EFLAGS.TF as single-step on branches instead of single-step on instructions.
		5:2		Reserved
	6			TR Setting this bit to 1 enables branch trace messages to be sent.

Table 2-43. Selected MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon Phi™ Processors with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel Signatures 06_57H and 06_85H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		7		BTS Setting this bit enables branch trace messages (BTMs) to be logged in a BTS buffer.
		8		BTINT When clear, BTMs are logged in a BTS buffer in circular fashion. When this bit is set, an interrupt is generated by the BTS facility when the BTS buffer is full.
		9		BTS_OFF_OS When set, BTS or BTM is skipped if CPL = 0.
		10		BTS_OFF_USR When set, BTS or BTM is skipped if CPL > 0.
		11		FREEZE_LBRS_ON_PMI When set, the LBR stack is frozen on a PMI request.
		12		FREEZE_PERFMON_ON_PMI When set, each ENABLE bit of the global counter control MSR are frozen (address 3BFH) on a PMI request.
		13		Reserved
		14		FREEZE_WHILE_SMM When set, freezes perfmon and trace messages while in SMM.
		31:15		Reserved
1DDH	477	MSR_LER_FROM_LIP	Thread	Last Exception Record from Linear IP (R)
1DEH	478	MSR_LER_TO_LIP	Thread	Last Exception Record to Linear IP (R)
1F2H	498	IA32_SMRR_PHYSBASE	Core	See Table 2-2.
1F3H	499	IA32_SMRR_PHYSMASK	Core	See Table 2-2.
200H	512	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE0	Core	See Table 2-2.
201H	513	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK0	Core	See Table 2-2.
202H	514	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE1	Core	See Table 2-2.
203H	515	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK1	Core	See Table 2-2.
204H	516	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE2	Core	See Table 2-2.
205H	517	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK2	Core	See Table 2-2.
206H	518	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE3	Core	See Table 2-2.
207H	519	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK3	Core	See Table 2-2.
208H	520	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE4	Core	See Table 2-2.
209H	521	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK4	Core	See Table 2-2.
20AH	522	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE5	Core	See Table 2-2.
20BH	523	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK5	Core	See Table 2-2.
20CH	524	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE6	Core	See Table 2-2.

Table 2-43. Selected MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon Phi™ Processors with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel Signatures 06_57H and 06_85H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
20DH	525	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK6	Core	See Table 2-2.
20EH	526	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE7	Core	See Table 2-2.
20FH	527	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK7	Core	See Table 2-2.
250H	592	IA32_MTRR_FIX64K_00000	Core	See Table 2-2.
258H	600	IA32_MTRR_FIX16K_80000	Core	See Table 2-2.
259H	601	IA32_MTRR_FIX16K_A0000	Core	See Table 2-2.
268H	616	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_C0000	Core	See Table 2-2.
269H	617	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_C8000	Core	See Table 2-2.
26AH	618	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_D0000	Core	See Table 2-2.
26BH	619	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_D8000	Core	See Table 2-2.
26CH	620	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_E0000	Core	See Table 2-2.
26DH	621	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_E8000	Core	See Table 2-2.
26EH	622	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_F0000	Core	See Table 2-2.
26FH	623	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_F8000	Core	See Table 2-2.
277H	631	IA32_PAT	Core	See Table 2-2.
2FFH	767	IA32_MTRR_DEF_TYPE	Core	Default Memory Types (R/W) See Table 2-2.
309H	777	IA32_FIXED_CTR0	Thread	Fixed-Function Performance Counter Register 0 (R/W) See Table 2-2.
30AH	778	IA32_FIXED_CTR1	Thread	Fixed-Function Performance Counter Register 1 (R/W) See Table 2-2.
30BH	779	IA32_FIXED_CTR2	Thread	Fixed-Function Performance Counter Register 2 (R/W) See Table 2-2.
345H	837	IA32_PERF_CAPABILITIES	Package	See Table 2-2. See Section 17.4.1, "IA32_DEBUGCTL MSR."
38DH	909	IA32_FIXED_CTR_CTRL	Thread	Fixed-Function-Counter Control Register (R/W) See Table 2-2.
38EH	910	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS	Thread	See Table 2-2.
38FH	911	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL	Thread	See Table 2-2.
390H	912	IA32_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL	Thread	See Table 2-2.
3F1H	1009	MSR_PEBBS_ENABLE	Thread	See Table 2-2.
3F8H	1016	MSR_PKG_C3_RESIDENCY	Package	Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-states.
		63:0		Package C3 Residency Counter (R/O)
3F9H	1017	MSR_PKG_C6_RESIDENCY	Package	
		63:0		Package C6 Residency Counter (R/O)
3FAH	1018	MSR_PKG_C7_RESIDENCY	Package	

Table 2-43. Selected MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon Phi™ Processors with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel Signatures 06_57H and 06_85H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		63:0		Package C7 Residency Counter (R/O)
3FCH	1020	MSR_MC0_RESIDENCY	Module	Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-states.
		63:0		Module C0 Residency Counter (R/O)
3FDH	1021	MSR_MC6_RESIDENCY	Module	
		63:0		Module C6 Residency Counter (R/O)
3FFH	1023	MSR_CORE_C6_RESIDENCY	Core	Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-states.
		63:0		CORE C6 Residency Counter (R/O)
400H	1024	IA32_MC0_CTL	Core	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
401H	1025	IA32_MC0_STATUS	Core	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS."
402H	1026	IA32_MC0_ADDR	Core	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
404H	1028	IA32_MC1_CTL	Core	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
405H	1029	IA32_MC1_STATUS	Core	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS."
408H	1032	IA32_MC2_CTL	Core	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
409H	1033	IA32_MC2_STATUS	Core	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS."
40AH	1034	IA32_MC2_ADDR	Core	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
40CH	1036	IA32_MC3_CTL	Core	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
40DH	1037	IA32_MC3_STATUS	Core	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS."
40EH	1038	IA32_MC3_ADDR	Core	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
410H	1040	IA32_MC4_CTL	Core	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
411H	1041	IA32_MC4_STATUS	Core	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS."
412H	1042	IA32_MC4_ADDR	Core	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The MSR_MC4_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the MSR_MC4_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
414H	1044	IA32_MC5_CTL	Package	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
415H	1045	IA32_MC5_STATUS	Package	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS."
416H	1046	IA32_MC5_ADDR	Package	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs."
4C1H	1217	IA32_A_PMC0	Thread	See Table 2-2.
4C2H	1218	IA32_A_PMC1	Thread	See Table 2-2.
600H	1536	IA32_DS_AREA	Thread	DS Save Area (R/W) See Table 2-2.
606H	1542	MSR_RAPL_POWER_UNIT	Package	Unit Multipliers Used in RAPL Interfaces (R/O)

Table 2-43. Selected MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon Phi™ Processors with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel Signatures 06_57H and 06_85H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		3:0	Package	Power Units See Section 14.9.1, "RAPL Interfaces."
		7:4	Package	Reserved
		12:8	Package	Energy Status Units Energy related information (in Joules) is based on the multiplier, $1/2^{\wedge}ESU$; where ESU is an unsigned integer represented by bits 12:8. Default value is 0EH (or 61 micro-joules).
		15:13	Package	Reserved
		19:16	Package	Time Units See Section 14.9.1, "RAPL Interfaces."
		63:20		Reserved
60DH	1549	MSR_PKG_C2_RESIDENCY	Package	Note: C-state values are processor specific C-state code names, unrelated to MWAIT extension C-state parameters or ACPI C-states.
		63:0		Package C2 Residency Counter (R/O)
610H	1552	MSR_PKG_POWER_LIMIT	Package	PKG RAPL Power Limit Control (R/W) See Section 14.9.3, "Package RAPL Domain."
611H	1553	MSR_PKG_ENERGY_STATUS	Package	PKG Energy Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.3, "Package RAPL Domain."
613H	1555	MSR_PKG_PERF_STATUS	Package	PKG Perf Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.3, "Package RAPL Domain."
614H	1556	MSR_PKG_POWER_INFO	Package	PKG RAPL Parameters (R/W) See Section 14.9.3, "Package RAPL Domain."
618H	1560	MSR_DRAM_POWER_LIMIT	Package	DRAM RAPL Power Limit Control (R/W) See Section 14.9.5, "DRAM RAPL Domain."
619H	1561	MSR_DRAM_ENERGY_STATUS	Package	DRAM Energy Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.5, "DRAM RAPL Domain."
61BH	1563	MSR_DRAM_PERF_STATUS	Package	DRAM Performance Throttling Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.5, "DRAM RAPL Domain."
61CH	1564	MSR_DRAM_POWER_INFO	Package	DRAM RAPL Parameters (R/W) See Section 14.9.5, "DRAM RAPL Domain."
620H	1568	MSR_UNCORE_RATIO_LIMIT	Package	Uncore Ratio Limit (R/W) Out of reset, the min_ratio and max_ratio fields represent the widest possible range of uncore frequencies. Writing to these fields allows software to control the minimum and the maximum frequency that hardware will select.
		63:15		Reserved

Table 2-43. Selected MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon Phi™ Processors with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel Signatures 06_57H and 06_85H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		14:8		MIN_RATIO Writing to this field controls the minimum possible ratio of the LLC/Ring.
		7		Reserved
		6:0		MAX_RATIO This field is used to limit the max ratio of the LLC/Ring.
638H	1592	MSR_PPO_POWER_LIMIT	Package	PPO RAPL Power Limit Control (R/W) See Section 14.9.4, "PPO/PP1 RAPL Domains."
639H	1593	MSR_PPO_ENERGY_STATUS	Package	PPO Energy Status (R/O) See Section 14.9.4, "PPO/PP1 RAPL Domains."
648H	1608	MSR_CONFIG_TDP_NOMINAL	Package	Base TDP Ratio (R/O) See Table 2-24.
649H	1609	MSR_CONFIG_TDP_LEVEL1	Package	ConfigTDP Level 1 ratio and power level (R/O) See Table 2-24.
64AH	1610	MSR_CONFIG_TDP_LEVEL2	Package	ConfigTDP Level 2 ratio and power level (R/O) See Table 2-24.
64BH	1611	MSR_CONFIG_TDP_CONTROL	Package	ConfigTDP Control (R/W) See Table 2-24.
64CH	1612	MSR_TURBO_ACTIVATION_RATIO	Package	ConfigTDP Control (R/W) See Table 2-24.
690H	1680	MSR_CORE_PERF_LIMIT_REASONS	Package	Indicator of Frequency Clipping in Processor Cores (R/W) (Frequency refers to processor core frequency.)
		0		PROCHOT Status (R0)
		1		Thermal Status (R0)
		5:2		Reserved
		6		VR Therm Alert Status (R0)
		7		Reserved
		8		Electrical Design Point Status (R0)
		63:9		Reserved
6E0H	1760	IA32_TSC_DEADLINE	Core	TSC Target of Local APIC's TSC Deadline Mode (R/W) See Table 2-2.
802H	2050	IA32_X2APIC_APICID	Thread	x2APIC ID Register (R/O)
803H	2051	IA32_X2APIC_VERSION	Thread	x2APIC Version Register (R/O)
808H	2056	IA32_X2APIC_TPR	Thread	x2APIC Task Priority Register (R/W)
80AH	2058	IA32_X2APIC_PPR	Thread	x2APIC Processor Priority Register (R/O)
80BH	2059	IA32_X2APIC_EOI	Thread	x2APIC EOI Register (W/O)
80DH	2061	IA32_X2APIC_LDR	Thread	x2APIC Logical Destination Register (R/O)
80FH	2063	IA32_X2APIC_SIVR	Thread	x2APIC Spurious Interrupt Vector Register (R/W)

Table 2-43. Selected MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon Phi™ Processors with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel Signatures 06_57H and 06_85H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
810H	2064	IA32_X2APIC_ISR0	Thread	x2APIC In-Service Register Bits [31:0] (R/O)
811H	2065	IA32_X2APIC_ISR1	Thread	x2APIC In-Service Register Bits [63:32] (R/O)
812H	2066	IA32_X2APIC_ISR2	Thread	x2APIC In-Service Register Bits [95:64] (R/O)
813H	2067	IA32_X2APIC_ISR3	Thread	x2APIC In-Service Register Bits [127:96] (R/O)
814H	2068	IA32_X2APIC_ISR4	Thread	x2APIC In-Service Register Bits [159:128] (R/O)
815H	2069	IA32_X2APIC_ISR5	Thread	x2APIC In-Service Register Bits [191:160] (R/O)
816H	2070	IA32_X2APIC_ISR6	Thread	x2APIC In-Service Register Bits [223:192] (R/O)
817H	2071	IA32_X2APIC_ISR7	Thread	x2APIC In-Service Register Bits [255:224] (R/O)
818H	2072	IA32_X2APIC_TMR0	Thread	x2APIC Trigger Mode Register Bits [31:0] (R/O)
819H	2073	IA32_X2APIC_TMR1	Thread	x2APIC Trigger Mode Register Bits [63:32] (R/O)
81AH	2074	IA32_X2APIC_TMR2	Thread	x2APIC Trigger Mode Register Bits [95:64] (R/O)
81BH	2075	IA32_X2APIC_TMR3	Thread	x2APIC Trigger Mode Register Bits [127:96] (R/O)
81CH	2076	IA32_X2APIC_TMR4	Thread	x2APIC Trigger Mode Register Bits [159:128] (R/O)
81DH	2077	IA32_X2APIC_TMR5	Thread	x2APIC Trigger Mode Register Bits [191:160] (R/O)
81EH	2078	IA32_X2APIC_TMR6	Thread	x2APIC Trigger Mode Register Bits [223:192] (R/O)
81FH	2079	IA32_X2APIC_TMR7	Thread	x2APIC Trigger Mode Register Bits [255:224] (R/O)
820H	2080	IA32_X2APIC_IRR0	Thread	x2APIC Interrupt Request Register Bits [31:0] (R/O)
821H	2081	IA32_X2APIC_IRR1	Thread	x2APIC Interrupt Request Register Bits [63:32] (R/O)
822H	2082	IA32_X2APIC_IRR2	Thread	x2APIC Interrupt Request Register Bits [95:64] (R/O)
823H	2083	IA32_X2APIC_IRR3	Thread	x2APIC Interrupt Request Register Bits [127:96] (R/O)
824H	2084	IA32_X2APIC_IRR4	Thread	x2APIC Interrupt Request Register Bits [159:128] (R/O)
825H	2085	IA32_X2APIC_IRR5	Thread	x2APIC Interrupt Request Register Bits [191:160] (R/O)
826H	2086	IA32_X2APIC_IRR6	Thread	x2APIC Interrupt Request Register Bits [223:192] (R/O)
827H	2087	IA32_X2APIC_IRR7	Thread	x2APIC Interrupt Request Register Bits [255:224] (R/O)
828H	2088	IA32_X2APIC_ESR	Thread	x2APIC Error Status Register (R/W)
82FH	2095	IA32_X2APIC_LVT_CMCI	Thread	x2APIC LVT Corrected Machine Check Interrupt Register (R/W)
830H	2096	IA32_X2APIC_ICR	Thread	x2APIC Interrupt Command Register (R/W)
832H	2098	IA32_X2APIC_LVT_TIMER	Thread	x2APIC LVT Timer Interrupt Register (R/W)
833H	2099	IA32_X2APIC_LVT_THERMAL	Thread	x2APIC LVT Thermal Sensor Interrupt Register (R/W)
834H	2100	IA32_X2APIC_LVT_PMI	Thread	x2APIC LVT Performance Monitor Register (R/W)
835H	2101	IA32_X2APIC_LVT_LINT0	Thread	x2APIC LVT LINT0 Register (R/W)
836H	2102	IA32_X2APIC_LVT_LINT1	Thread	x2APIC LVT LINT1 Register (R/W)
837H	2103	IA32_X2APIC_LVT_ERROR	Thread	x2APIC LVT Error Register (R/W)
838H	2104	IA32_X2APIC_INIT_COUNT	Thread	x2APIC Initial Count Register (R/W)
839H	2105	IA32_X2APIC_CUR_COUNT	Thread	x2APIC Current Count Register (R/O)

Table 2-43. Selected MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon Phi™ Processors with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel Signatures 06_57H and 06_85H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
83EH	2110	IA32_X2APIC_DIV_CONF	Thread	x2APIC Divide Configuration Register (R/W)
83FH	2111	IA32_X2APIC_SELF_IPI	Thread	x2APIC Self IPI Register (W/O)
C000_0080H		IA32_EFER	Thread	Extended Feature Enables See Table 2-2.
C000_0081H		IA32_STAR	Thread	System Call Target Address (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0082H		IA32_LSTAR	Thread	IA-32e Mode System Call Target Address (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0084H		IA32_FMASK	Thread	System Call Flag Mask (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0100H		IA32_FS_BASE	Thread	Map of BASE Address of FS (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0101H		IA32_GS_BASE	Thread	Map of BASE Address of GS (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0102H		IA32_KERNEL_GS_BASE	Thread	Swap Target of BASE Address of GS (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0103H		IA32_TSC_AUX	Thread	AUXILIARY TSC Signature (R/W) See Table 2-2

Table 2-44 lists model-specific registers that are supported by Intel® Xeon Phi™ processor 7215, 7285, 7295 series based on the Knights Mill microarchitecture.

Table 2-44. Additional MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon Phi™ Processor 7215, 7285, 7295 Series with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel Signature 06_85H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
9BH	155	IA32_SMM_MONITOR_CTL	Core	SMM Monitor Configuration (R/W) This MSR is readable only if VMX is enabled, and writeable only if VMX is enabled and in SMM mode, and is used to configure the VMX MSEG base address. See Table 2-2.
480H	1152	IA32_VMX_BASIC	Core	Reporting Register of Basic VMX Capabilities (R/O) See Table 2-2.
481H	1153	IA32_VMX_PINBASED_CTL	Core	Capability Reporting Register of Pin-based VM-execution Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2.
482H	1154	IA32_VMX_PROCBASED_CTL	Core	Capability Reporting Register of Primary Processor-based VM-execution Controls (R/O)
483H	1155	IA32_VMX_EXIT_CTL	Core	Capability Reporting Register of VM-exit Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2.

Table 2-44. Additional MSRs Supported by Intel® Xeon Phi™ Processor 7215, 7285, 7295 Series with DisplayFamily_DisplayModel Signature 06_85H

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Scope	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
484H	1156	IA32_VMX_ENTRY_CTL5	Core	Capability Reporting Register of VM-entry Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2.
485H	1157	IA32_VMX_MISC	Core	Reporting Register of Miscellaneous VMX Capabilities (R/O) See Table 2-2.
486H	1158	IA32_VMX_CRO_FIXED0	Core	Capability Reporting Register of CRO Bits Fixed to 0 (R/O) See Table 2-2.
487H	1159	IA32_VMX_CRO_FIXED1	Core	Capability Reporting Register of CRO Bits Fixed to 1 (R/O) See Table 2-2.
488H	1160	IA32_VMX_CR4_FIXED0	Core	Capability Reporting Register of CR4 Bits Fixed to 0 (R/O) See Table 2-2.
489H	1161	IA32_VMX_CR4_FIXED1	Core	Capability Reporting Register of CR4 Bits Fixed to 1 (R/O) See Table 2-2.
48AH	1162	IA32_VMX_VMCS_ENUM	Core	Capability Reporting Register of VMCS Field Enumeration (R/O) See Table 2-2.
48BH	1163	IA32_VMX_PROCBASED_CTL52	Core	Capability Reporting Register of Secondary Processor-Based VM-Execution Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2.
48CH	1164	IA32_VMX_EPT_VPID_ENUM	Core	Capability Reporting Register of EPT and VPID (R/O) See Table 2-2.
48DH	1165	IA32_VMX_TRUE_PINBASE D_CTL5	Core	Capability Reporting Register of Pin-Based VM-Execution Flex Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2.
48EH	1166	IA32_VMX_TRUE_PROCBASED_CTL5	Core	Capability Reporting Register of Primary Processor-Based VM-Execution Flex Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2.
48FH	1167	IA32_VMX_TRUE_EXIT_CTL5	Core	Capability Reporting Register of VM-Exit Flex Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2.
490H	1168	IA32_VMX_TRUE_ENTRY_CTL5	Core	Capability Reporting Register of VM-Entry Flex Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2.
491H	1169	IA32_VMX_FMFUNC	Core	Capability Reporting Register of VM-Function Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2.

2.18 MSRS IN THE PENTIUM® 4 AND INTEL® XEON® PROCESSORS

Table 2-45 lists MSRs (architectural and model-specific) that are defined across processor generations based on Intel NetBurst microarchitecture. The processor can be identified by its CPUID signatures of DisplayFamily encoding of 0FH, see Table 2-1.

- MSRs with an "IA32_" prefix are designated as "architectural." This means that the functions of these MSRs and their addresses remain the same for succeeding families of IA-32 processors.
- MSRs with an "MSR_" prefix are model specific with respect to address functionalities. The column "Model Availability" lists the model encoding value(s) within the Pentium 4 and Intel Xeon processor family at the specified register address. The model encoding value of a processor can be queried using CPUID. See "CPUID—CPU Identification" in Chapter 3 of the *Intel® 64 and IA-32 Architectures Software Developer's Manual, Volume 2A*.

Table 2-45. MSRs in the Pentium® 4 and Intel® Xeon® Processors

Register Address		Register Name Fields and Flags	Model Avail- ability	Shared/ Unique ¹	Bit Description
Hex	Dec				
0H	0	IA32_P5_MC_ADDR	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 2.22, "MSRs in Pentium Processors."
1H	1	IA32_P5_MC_TYPE	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 2.22, "MSRs in Pentium Processors."
6H	6	IA32_MONITOR_FILTER_LINE_SIZE	3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 8.10.5, "Monitor/Mwait Address Range Determination."
10H	16	IA32_TIME_STAMP_COUNTER	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	Time Stamp Counter See Table 2-2.
					On earlier processors, only the lower 32 bits are writable. On any write to the lower 32 bits, the upper 32 bits are cleared. For processor family 0FH, models 3 and 4: all 64 bits are writable.
17H	23	IA32_PLATFORM_ID	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Platform ID (R) See Table 2-2. The operating system can use this MSR to determine "slot" information for the processor and the proper microcode update to load.
1BH	27	IA32_APIC_BASE	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	APIC Location and Status (R/W) See Table 2-2. See Section 10.4.4, "Local APIC Status and Location."
2AH	42	MSR_EBC_HARD_POWERON	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Processor Hard Power-On Configuration (R/W) Enables and disables processor features. (R) Indicates current processor configuration.
		0			Output Tri-state Enabled (R) Indicates whether tri-state output is enabled (1) or disabled (0) as set by the strapping of SMI#. The value in this bit is written on the deassertion of RESET#; the bit is set to 1 when the address bus signal is asserted.

Table 2-45. MSRs in the Pentium® 4 and Intel® Xeon® Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name Fields and Flags	Model Availability	Shared/Unique ¹	Bit Description
Hex	Dec				
		1			Execute BIST (R) Indicates whether the execution of the BIST is enabled (1) or disabled (0) as set by the strapping of INIT#. The value in this bit is written on the deassertion of RESET#; the bit is set to 1 when the address bus signal is asserted.
		2			In Order Queue Depth (R) Indicates whether the in order queue depth for the system bus is 1 (1) or up to 12 (0) as set by the strapping of A7#. The value in this bit is written on the deassertion of RESET#; the bit is set to 1 when the address bus signal is asserted.
		3			MCERR# Observation Disabled (R) Indicates whether MCERR# observation is enabled (0) or disabled (1) as determined by the strapping of A9#. The value in this bit is written on the deassertion of RESET#; the bit is set to 1 when the address bus signal is asserted.
		4			BINIT# Observation Enabled (R) Indicates whether BINIT# observation is enabled (0) or disabled (1) as determined by the strapping of A10#. The value in this bit is written on the deassertion of RESET#; the bit is set to 1 when the address bus signal is asserted.
		6:5			APIC Cluster ID (R) Contains the logical APIC cluster ID value as set by the strapping of A12# and A11#. The logical cluster ID value is written into the field on the deassertion of RESET#; the field is set to 1 when the address bus signal is asserted.
		7			Bus Park Disable (R) Indicates whether bus park is enabled (0) or disabled (1) as set by the strapping of A15#. The value in this bit is written on the deassertion of RESET#; the bit is set to 1 when the address bus signal is asserted.
		11:8			Reserved
		13:12			Agent ID (R) Contains the logical agent ID value as set by the strapping of BR[3:0]. The logical ID value is written into the field on the deassertion of RESET#; the field is set to 1 when the address bus signal is asserted.
		63:14			Reserved

Table 2-45. MSRs in the Pentium® 4 and Intel® Xeon® Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name Fields and Flags	Model Avail- ability	Shared/ Unique ¹	Bit Description
Hex	Dec				
2BH	43	MSR_EBC_SOFT_POWERON	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Processor Soft Power-On Configuration (R/W) Enables and disables processor features.
		0			RCNT/SCNT On Request Encoding Enable (R/W) Controls the driving of RCNT/SCNT on the request encoding. Set to enable (1); clear to disabled (0, default).
		1			Data Error Checking Disable (R/W) Set to disable system data bus parity checking; clear to enable parity checking.
		2			Response Error Checking Disable (R/W) Set to disable (default); clear to enable.
		3			Address/Request Error Checking Disable (R/W) Set to disable (default); clear to enable.
		4			Initiator MCERR# Disable (R/W) Set to disable MCERR# driving for initiator bus requests (default); clear to enable.
		5			Internal MCERR# Disable (R/W) Set to disable MCERR# driving for initiator internal errors (default); clear to enable.
		6			BINIT# Driver Disable (R/W) Set to disable BINIT# driver (default); clear to enable driver.
		63:7			Reserved
2CH	44	MSR_EBC_FREQUENCY_ID	2,3, 4, 6	Shared	Processor Frequency Configuration The bit field layout of this MSR varies according to the MODEL value in the CPUID version information. The following bit field layout applies to Pentium 4 and Xeon Processors with MODEL encoding equal or greater than 2. (R) The field Indicates the current processor frequency configuration.
		15:0			Reserved
		18:16			Scalable Bus Speed (R/W) Indicates the intended scalable bus speed: <u>Encoding Scalable Bus Speed</u> 000B 100 MHz (Model 2) 000B 266 MHz (Model 3 or 4) 001B 133 MHz 010B 200 MHz 011B 166 MHz 100B 333 MHz (Model 6)

Table 2-45. MSRs in the Pentium® 4 and Intel® Xeon® Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name Fields and Flags	Model Availability	Shared/Unique ¹	Bit Description
Hex	Dec				
					133.33 MHz should be utilized if performing calculation with System Bus Speed when encoding is 001B. 166.67 MHz should be utilized if performing calculation with System Bus Speed when encoding is 011B.
					266.67 MHz should be utilized if performing calculation with System Bus Speed when encoding is 000B and model encoding = 3 or 4. 333.33 MHz should be utilized if performing calculation with System Bus Speed when encoding is 100B and model encoding = 6. All other values are reserved.
		23:19			Reserved
		31:24			Core Clock Frequency to System Bus Frequency Ratio (R) The processor core clock frequency to system bus frequency ratio observed at the de-assertion of the reset pin.
		63:25			Reserved
2CH	44	MSR_EBC_FREQUENCY_ID	0, 1	Shared	Processor Frequency Configuration (R) The bit field layout of this MSR varies according to the MODEL value of the CPUID version information. This bit field layout applies to Pentium 4 and Xeon Processors with MODEL encoding less than 2. Indicates current processor frequency configuration.
		20:0			Reserved
		23:21			Scalable Bus Speed (R/W) Indicates the intended scalable bus speed: <u>Encoding Scalable Bus Speed</u> 000B 100 MHz All others values reserved.
		63:24			Reserved
3AH	58	IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL	3, 4, 6	Unique	Control Features in IA-32 Processor (R/W) See Table 2-2. (If CPUID.01H:ECX.[bit 5])
79H	121	IA32_BIOS_UPDT_TRIG	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	BIOS Update Trigger Register (W) See Table 2-2.
8BH	139	IA32_BIOS_SIGN_ID	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	BIOS Update Signature ID (R/W) See Table 2-2.

Table 2-45. MSRs in the Pentium® 4 and Intel® Xeon® Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name Fields and Flags	Model Avail- ability	Shared/ Unique ¹	Bit Description
Hex	Dec				
9BH	155	IA32_SMM_MONITOR_CTL	3, 4, 6	Unique	SMM Monitor Configuration (R/W) See Table 2-2.
FEH	254	IA32_MTRRCAP	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	MTRR Information See Section 11.11.1, "MTRR Feature Identification."
174H	372	IA32_SYSENTER_CS	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	CS Register Target for CPL 0 Code (R/W) See Table 2-2. See Section 5.8.7, "Performing Fast Calls to System Procedures with the SYSENTER and SYSEXIT Instructions."
175H	373	IA32_SYSENTER_ESP	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	Stack Pointer for CPL 0 Stack (R/W) See Table 2-2. See Section 5.8.7, "Performing Fast Calls to System Procedures with the SYSENTER and SYSEXIT Instructions."
176H	374	IA32_SYSENTER_EIP	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	CPL 0 Code Entry Point (R/W) See Table 2-2. See Section 5.8.7, "Performing Fast Calls to System Procedures with the SYSENTER and SYSEXIT Instructions."
179H	377	IA32_MCG_CAP	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	Machine Check Capabilities (R) See Table 2-2. See Section 15.3.1.1, "IA32_MCG_CAP MSR."
17AH	378	IA32_MCG_STATUS	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	Machine Check Status (R) See Table 2-2. See Section 15.3.1.2, "IA32_MCG_STATUS MSR."
17BH	379	IA32_MCG_CTL			Machine Check Feature Enable (R/W) See Table 2-2. See Section 15.3.1.3, "IA32_MCG_CTL MSR."
180H	384	MSR_MCG_RAX	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	Machine Check EAX/RAX Save State See Section 15.3.2.6, "IA32_MCG Extended Machine Check State MSRs."
		63:0			Contains register state at time of machine check error. When in non-64-bit modes at the time of the error, bits 63-32 do not contain valid data.
181H	385	MSR_MCG_RBX	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	Machine Check EBX/RBX Save State See Section 15.3.2.6, "IA32_MCG Extended Machine Check State MSRs."
		63:0			Contains register state at time of machine check error. When in non-64-bit modes at the time of the error, bits 63-32 do not contain valid data.
182H	386	MSR_MCG_RCX	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	Machine Check ECX/RCX Save State See Section 15.3.2.6, "IA32_MCG Extended Machine Check State MSRs."

Table 2-45. MSRs in the Pentium® 4 and Intel® Xeon® Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name Fields and Flags	Model Availability	Shared/Unique ¹	Bit Description
Hex	Dec				
		63:0			Contains register state at time of machine check error. When in non-64-bit modes at the time of the error, bits 63-32 do not contain valid data.
183H	387	MSR_MCG_RDX	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	Machine Check EDX/RDX Save State See Section 15.3.2.6, "IA32_MCG Extended Machine Check State MSRs."
		63:0			Contains register state at time of machine check error. When in non-64-bit modes at the time of the error, bits 63-32 do not contain valid data.
184H	388	MSR_MCG_RSI	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	Machine Check ESI/RSI Save State See Section 15.3.2.6, "IA32_MCG Extended Machine Check State MSRs."
		63:0			Contains register state at time of machine check error. When in non-64-bit modes at the time of the error, bits 63-32 do not contain valid data.
185H	389	MSR_MCG_RDI	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	Machine Check EDI/RDI Save State See Section 15.3.2.6, "IA32_MCG Extended Machine Check State MSRs."
		63:0			Contains register state at time of machine check error. When in non-64-bit modes at the time of the error, bits 63-32 do not contain valid data.
186H	390	MSR_MCG_RBP	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	Machine Check EBP/RBP Save State See Section 15.3.2.6, "IA32_MCG Extended Machine Check State MSRs."
		63:0			Contains register state at time of machine check error. When in non-64-bit modes at the time of the error, bits 63-32 do not contain valid data.
187H	391	MSR_MCG_RSP	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	Machine Check ESP/RSP Save State See Section 15.3.2.6, "IA32_MCG Extended Machine Check State MSRs."
		63:0			Contains register state at time of machine check error. When in non-64-bit modes at the time of the error, bits 63-32 do not contain valid data.
188H	392	MSR_MCG_RFLAGS	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	Machine Check EFLAGS/RFLAG Save State See Section 15.3.2.6, "IA32_MCG Extended Machine Check State MSRs."
		63:0			Contains register state at time of machine check error. When in non-64-bit modes at the time of the error, bits 63-32 do not contain valid data.
189H	393	MSR_MCG_RIP	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	Machine Check EIP/RIP Save State See Section 15.3.2.6, "IA32_MCG Extended Machine Check State MSRs."
		63:0			Contains register state at time of machine check error. When in non-64-bit modes at the time of the error, bits 63-32 do not contain valid data.

Table 2-45. MSRs in the Pentium® 4 and Intel® Xeon® Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name Fields and Flags	Model Avail- ability	Shared/ Unique ¹	Bit Description
Hex	Dec				
18AH	394	MSR_MCG_MISC	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	Machine Check Miscellaneous See Section 15.3.2.6, "IA32_MCG Extended Machine Check State MSRs."
		0			DS When set, the bit indicates that a page assist or page fault occurred during DS normal operation. The processors response is to shut down. The bit is used as an aid for debugging DS handling code. It is the responsibility of the user (BIOS or operating system) to clear this bit for normal operation.
		63:1			Reserved
18BH- 18FH	395	MSR_MCG_RESERVED1 - MSR_MCG_RESERVED5			Reserved
190H	400	MSR_MCG_R8	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	Machine Check R8 See Section 15.3.2.6, "IA32_MCG Extended Machine Check State MSRs."
		63:0			Registers R8-15 (and the associated state-save MSRs) exist only in Intel 64 processors. These registers contain valid information only when the processor is operating in 64-bit mode at the time of the error.
191H	401	MSR_MCG_R9	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	Machine Check R9D/R9 See Section 15.3.2.6, "IA32_MCG Extended Machine Check State MSRs."
		63:0			Registers R8-15 (and the associated state-save MSRs) exist only in Intel 64 processors. These registers contain valid information only when the processor is operating in 64-bit mode at the time of the error.
192H	402	MSR_MCG_R10	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	Machine Check R10 See Section 15.3.2.6, "IA32_MCG Extended Machine Check State MSRs."
		63:0			Registers R8-15 (and the associated state-save MSRs) exist only in Intel 64 processors. These registers contain valid information only when the processor is operating in 64-bit mode at the time of the error.
193H	403	MSR_MCG_R11	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	Machine Check R11 See Section 15.3.2.6, "IA32_MCG Extended Machine Check State MSRs."
		63:0			Registers R8-15 (and the associated state-save MSRs) exist only in Intel 64 processors. These registers contain valid information only when the processor is operating in 64-bit mode at the time of the error.

Table 2-45. MSRs in the Pentium® 4 and Intel® Xeon® Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name Fields and Flags	Model Availability	Shared/Unique ¹	Bit Description
Hex	Dec				
194H	404	MSR_MCG_R12	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	Machine Check R12 See Section 15.3.2.6, "IA32_MCG Extended Machine Check State MSRs."
		63:0			Registers R8-15 (and the associated state-save MSRs) exist only in Intel 64 processors. These registers contain valid information only when the processor is operating in 64-bit mode at the time of the error.
195H	405	MSR_MCG_R13	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	Machine Check R13 See Section 15.3.2.6, "IA32_MCG Extended Machine Check State MSRs."
		63:0			Registers R8-15 (and the associated state-save MSRs) exist only in Intel 64 processors. These registers contain valid information only when the processor is operating in 64-bit mode at the time of the error.
196H	406	MSR_MCG_R14	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	Machine Check R14 See Section 15.3.2.6, "IA32_MCG Extended Machine Check State MSRs."
		63:0			Registers R8-15 (and the associated state-save MSRs) exist only in Intel 64 processors. These registers contain valid information only when the processor is operating in 64-bit mode at the time of the error.
197H	407	MSR_MCG_R15	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	Machine Check R15 See Section 15.3.2.6, "IA32_MCG Extended Machine Check State MSRs."
		63:0			Registers R8-15 (and the associated state-save MSRs) exist only in Intel 64 processors. These registers contain valid information only when the processor is operating in 64-bit mode at the time of the error.
198H	408	IA32_PERF_STATUS	3, 4, 6	Unique	See Table 2-2. See Section 14.1, "Enhanced Intel Speedstep® Technology."
199H	409	IA32_PERF_CTL	3, 4, 6	Unique	See Table 2-2. See Section 14.1, "Enhanced Intel Speedstep® Technology."
19AH	410	IA32_CLOCK_MODULATION	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	Thermal Monitor Control (R/W) See Table 2-2. See Section 14.7.3, "Software Controlled Clock Modulation."
19BH	411	IA32_THERM_INTERRUPT	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	Thermal Interrupt Control (R/W) See Section 14.7.2, "Thermal Monitor," and see Table 2-2.
19CH	412	IA32_THERM_STATUS	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Thermal Monitor Status (R/W) See Section 14.7.2, "Thermal Monitor," and see Table 2-2.

Table 2-45. MSRs in the Pentium® 4 and Intel® Xeon® Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name Fields and Flags	Model Avail- ability	Shared/ Unique ¹	Bit Description
Hex	Dec				
19DH	413	MSR_THERM2_CTL			Thermal Monitor 2 Control
			3,	Shared	For Family F, Model 3 processors: When read, specifies the value of the target TM2 transition last written. When set, it sets the next target value for TM2 transition.
			4, 6	Shared	For Family F, Model 4 and Model 6 processors: When read, specifies the value of the target TM2 transition last written. Writes may cause #GP exceptions.
1A0H	416	IA32_MISC_ENABLE	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Enable Miscellaneous Processor Features (R/W)
		0			Fast-Strings Enable. See Table 2-2.
		1			Reserved
		2			x87 FPU Fopcode Compatibility Mode Enable
		3			Thermal Monitor 1 Enable See Section 14.7.2, "Thermal Monitor," and see Table 2-2.
		4			Split-Lock Disable When set, the bit causes an #AC exception to be issued instead of a split-lock cycle. Operating systems that set this bit must align system structures to avoid split-lock scenarios. When the bit is clear (default), normal split-locks are issued to the bus.
					This debug feature is specific to the Pentium 4 processor.
		5			Reserved
		6			Third-Level Cache Disable (R/W) When set, the third-level cache is disabled; when clear (default) the third-level cache is enabled. This flag is reserved for processors that do not have a third-level cache. Note that the bit controls only the third-level cache; and only if overall caching is enabled through the CD flag of control register CR0, the page-level cache controls, and/or the MTRRs. See Section 11.5.4, "Disabling and Enabling the L3 Cache."
		7			Performance Monitoring Available (R) See Table 2-2.
8			Suppress Lock Enable When set, assertion of LOCK on the bus is suppressed during a Split Lock access. When clear (default), LOCK is not suppressed.		

Table 2-45. MSRs in the Pentium® 4 and Intel® Xeon® Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name Fields and Flags	Model Availability	Shared/Unique ¹	Bit Description
Hex	Dec				
		9			Prefetch Queue Disable When set, disables the prefetch queue. When clear (default), enables the prefetch queue.
		10			FERR# Interrupt Reporting Enable (R/W) When set, interrupt reporting through the FERR# pin is enabled; when clear, this interrupt reporting function is disabled.
					When this flag is set and the processor is in the stop-clock state (STPCLK# is asserted), asserting the FERR# pin signals to the processor that an interrupt (such as, INIT#, BINIT#, INTR, NMI, SMI#, or RESET#) is pending and that the processor should return to normal operation to handle the interrupt.
					This flag does not affect the normal operation of the FERR# pin (to indicate an unmasked floating-point error) when the STPCLK# pin is not asserted.
		11			Branch Trace Storage Unavailable (BTS_UNAVILABLE) (R) See Table 2-2. When set, the processor does not support branch trace storage (BTS); when clear, BTS is supported.
		12			PEBS_UNAVILABLE: Processor Event Based Sampling Unavailable (R) See Table 2-2. When set, the processor does not support processor event-based sampling (PEBS); when clear, PEBS is supported.
		13	3		TM2 Enable (R/W) When this bit is set (1) and the thermal sensor indicates that the die temperature is at the pre-determined threshold, the Thermal Monitor 2 mechanism is engaged. TM2 will reduce the bus to core ratio and voltage according to the value last written to MSR_THERM2_CTL bits 15:0. When this bit is clear (0, default), the processor does not change the VID signals or the bus to core ratio when the processor enters a thermal managed state. If the TM2 feature flag (ECX[8]) is not set to 1 after executing CPUID with EAX = 1, then this feature is not supported and BIOS must not alter the contents of this bit location. The processor is operating out of spec if both this bit and the TM1 bit are set to disabled states.

Table 2-45. MSRs in the Pentium® 4 and Intel® Xeon® Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name Fields and Flags	Model Availability	Shared/Unique ¹	Bit Description
Hex	Dec				
		17:14			Reserved
		18	3, 4, 6		ENABLE MONITOR FSM (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		19			Adjacent Cache Line Prefetch Disable (R/W) When set to 1, the processor fetches the cache line of the 128-byte sector containing currently required data. When set to 0, the processor fetches both cache lines in the sector.
					Single processor platforms should not set this bit. Server platforms should set or clear this bit based on platform performance observed in validation and testing. BIOS may contain a setup option that controls the setting of this bit.
		21:20			Reserved
		22	3, 4, 6		Limit CPUID MAXVAL (R/W) See Table 2-2. Setting this can cause unexpected behavior to software that depends on the availability of CPUID leaves greater than 3.
		23		Shared	xTPR Message Disable (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		24			L1 Data Cache Context Mode (R/W) When set, the L1 data cache is placed in shared mode; when clear (default), the cache is placed in adaptive mode. This bit is only enabled for IA-32 processors that support Intel Hyper-Threading Technology. See Section 11.5.6, "L1 Data Cache Context Mode." When L1 is running in adaptive mode and CR3s are identical, data in L1 is shared across logical processors. Otherwise, L1 is not shared and cache use is competitive. If the Context ID feature flag (ECX[10]) is set to 0 after executing CPUID with EAX = 1, the ability to switch modes is not supported. BIOS must not alter the contents of IA32_MISC_ENABLE[24].
		33:25			Reserved
		34		Unique	XD Bit Disable (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		63:35			Reserved
1A1H	417	MSR_PLATFORM_BRV	3, 4, 6	Shared	Platform Feature Requirements (R)
		17:0			Reserved

Table 2-45. MSRs in the Pentium® 4 and Intel® Xeon® Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name Fields and Flags	Model Availability	Shared/ Unique ¹	Bit Description
Hex	Dec				
		18			PLATFORM Requirements When set to 1, indicates the processor has specific platform requirements. The details of the platform requirements are listed in the respective data sheets of the processor.
		63:19			Reserved
1D7H	471	MSR_LER_FROM_LIP	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Exception Record From Linear IP (R) Contains a pointer to the last branch instruction that the processor executed prior to the last exception that was generated or the last interrupt that was handled. See Section 17.13.3, "Last Exception Records."
		31:0			From Linear IP Linear address of the last branch instruction.
		63:32			Reserved
1D7H	471	63:0		Unique	From Linear IP Linear address of the last branch instruction (If IA-32e mode is active).
1D8H	472	MSR_LER_TO_LIP	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Exception Record To Linear IP (R) This area contains a pointer to the target of the last branch instruction that the processor executed prior to the last exception that was generated or the last interrupt that was handled. See Section 17.13.3, "Last Exception Records."
		31:0			From Linear IP Linear address of the target of the last branch instruction.
		63:32			Reserved
1D8H	472	63:0		Unique	From Linear IP Linear address of the target of the last branch instruction (If IA-32e mode is active).
1D9H	473	MSR_DEBUGCTLA	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	Debug Control (R/W) Controls how several debug features are used. Bit definitions are discussed in the referenced section. See Section 17.13.1, "MSR_DEBUGCTLA MSR."
1DAH	474	MSR_LASTBRANCH_TOS	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record Stack TOS (R/O) Contains an index (0-3 or 0-15) that points to the top of the last branch record stack (that is, that points the index of the MSR containing the most recent branch record). See Section 17.13.2, "LBR Stack for Processors Based on Intel NetBurst® Microarchitecture"; and addresses 1DBH-1DEH and 680H-68FH.

Table 2-45. MSRs in the Pentium® 4 and Intel® Xeon® Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name Fields and Flags	Model Avail- ability	Shared/ Unique ¹	Bit Description
Hex	Dec				
1DBH	475	MSR_LASTBRANCH_0	0, 1, 2	Unique	Last Branch Record 0 (R/O) One of four last branch record registers on the last branch record stack. It contains pointers to the source and destination instruction for one of the last four branches, exceptions, or interrupts that the processor took. MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 through MSR_LASTBRANCH_3 at 1DBH-1DEH are available only on family 0FH, models 0H-02H. They have been replaced by the MSRs at 680H-68FH and 6C0H-6CFH.
					See Section 17.12, "Last Branch, Call Stack, Interrupt, and Exception Recording for Processors based on Skylake Microarchitecture."
1DCH	477	MSR_LASTBRANCH_1	0, 1, 2	Unique	Last Branch Record 1 See description of the MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 MSR at 1DBH.
1DDH	477	MSR_LASTBRANCH_2	0, 1, 2	Unique	Last Branch Record 2 See description of the MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 MSR at 1DBH.
1DEH	478	MSR_LASTBRANCH_3	0, 1, 2	Unique	Last Branch Record 3 See description of the MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 MSR at 1DBH.
200H	512	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE0	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Variable Range Base MTRR See Section 11.11.2.3, "Variable Range MTRRs."
201H	513	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK0	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Variable Range Mask MTRR See Section 11.11.2.3, "Variable Range MTRRs."
202H	514	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE1	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Variable Range Mask MTRR See Section 11.11.2.3, "Variable Range MTRRs."
203H	515	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK1	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Variable Range Mask MTRR See Section 11.11.2.3, "Variable Range MTRRs."
204H	516	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE2	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Variable Range Mask MTRR See Section 11.11.2.3, "Variable Range MTRRs."
205H	517	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK2	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Variable Range Mask MTRR See Section 11.11.2.3, "Variable Range MTRRs."
206H	518	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE3	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Variable Range Mask MTRR See Section 11.11.2.3, "Variable Range MTRRs."
207H	519	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK3	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Variable Range Mask MTRR See Section 11.11.2.3, "Variable Range MTRRs."
208H	520	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE4	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Variable Range Mask MTRR See Section 11.11.2.3, "Variable Range MTRRs."
209H	521	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK4	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Variable Range Mask MTRR See Section 11.11.2.3, "Variable Range MTRRs."

Table 2-45. MSRs in the Pentium® 4 and Intel® Xeon® Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name Fields and Flags	Model Avail- ability	Shared/ Unique ¹	Bit Description
Hex	Dec				
20AH	522	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE5	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Variable Range Mask MTRR See Section 11.11.2.3, "Variable Range MTRRs."
20BH	523	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK5	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Variable Range Mask MTRR See Section 11.11.2.3, "Variable Range MTRRs."
20CH	524	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE6	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Variable Range Mask MTRR See Section 11.11.2.3, "Variable Range MTRRs."
20DH	525	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK6	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Variable Range Mask MTRR See Section 11.11.2.3, "Variable Range MTRRs."
20EH	526	IA32_MTRR_PHYSBASE7	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Variable Range Mask MTRR See Section 11.11.2.3, "Variable Range MTRRs."
20FH	527	IA32_MTRR_PHYSMASK7	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Variable Range Mask MTRR See Section 11.11.2.3, "Variable Range MTRRs."
250H	592	IA32_MTRR_FIX64K_00000	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Fixed Range MTRR See Section 11.11.2.2, "Fixed Range MTRRs."
258H	600	IA32_MTRR_FIX16K_80000	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Fixed Range MTRR See Section 11.11.2.2, "Fixed Range MTRRs."
259H	601	IA32_MTRR_FIX16K_A0000	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Fixed Range MTRR See Section 11.11.2.2, "Fixed Range MTRRs."
268H	616	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_C0000	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Fixed Range MTRR See Section 11.11.2.2, "Fixed Range MTRRs."
269H	617	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_C8000	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Fixed Range MTRR See Section 11.11.2.2, "Fixed Range MTRRs."
26AH	618	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_D0000	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Fixed Range MTRR See Section 11.11.2.2, "Fixed Range MTRRs."
26BH	619	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_D8000	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Fixed Range MTRR See Section 11.11.2.2, "Fixed Range MTRRs."
26CH	620	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_E0000	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Fixed Range MTRR See Section 11.11.2.2, "Fixed Range MTRRs."
26DH	621	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_E8000	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Fixed Range MTRR See Section 11.11.2.2, "Fixed Range MTRRs."
26EH	622	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_F0000	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Fixed Range MTRR See Section 11.11.2.2, "Fixed Range MTRRs."
26FH	623	IA32_MTRR_FIX4K_F8000	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Fixed Range MTRR See Section 11.11.2.2, "Fixed Range MTRRs."
277H	631	IA32_PAT	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	Page Attribute Table See Section 11.11.2.2, "Fixed Range MTRRs."
2FFH	767	IA32_MTRR_DEF_TYPE	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Default Memory Types (R/W) See Table 2-2. See Section 11.11.2.1, "IA32_MTRR_DEF_TYPE MSR."

Table 2-45. MSRs in the Pentium® 4 and Intel® Xeon® Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name Fields and Flags	Model Avail- ability	Shared/ Unique ¹	Bit Description
Hex	Dec				
300H	768	MSR_BPU_COUNTER0	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.2, "Performance Counters."
301H	769	MSR_BPU_COUNTER1	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.2, "Performance Counters."
302H	770	MSR_BPU_COUNTER2	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.2, "Performance Counters."
303H	771	MSR_BPU_COUNTER3	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.2, "Performance Counters."
304H	772	MSR_MS_COUNTER0	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.2, "Performance Counters."
305H	773	MSR_MS_COUNTER1	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.2, "Performance Counters."
306H	774	MSR_MS_COUNTER2	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.2, "Performance Counters."
307H	775	MSR_MS_COUNTER3	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.2, "Performance Counters."
308H	776	MSR_FLAME_COUNTER0	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.2, "Performance Counters."
309H	777	MSR_FLAME_COUNTER1	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.2, "Performance Counters."
30AH	778	MSR_FLAME_COUNTER2	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.2, "Performance Counters."
30BH	779	MSR_FLAME_COUNTER3	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.2, "Performance Counters."
30CH	780	MSR_IQ_COUNTER0	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.2, "Performance Counters."
30DH	781	MSR_IQ_COUNTER1	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.2, "Performance Counters."
30EH	782	MSR_IQ_COUNTER2	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.2, "Performance Counters."
30FH	783	MSR_IQ_COUNTER3	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.2, "Performance Counters."
310H	784	MSR_IQ_COUNTER4	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.2, "Performance Counters."
311H	785	MSR_IQ_COUNTER5	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.2, "Performance Counters."
360H	864	MSR_BPU_CCCR0	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.3, "CCCR MSRs."
361H	865	MSR_BPU_CCCR1	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.3, "CCCR MSRs."
362H	866	MSR_BPU_CCCR2	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.3, "CCCR MSRs."
363H	867	MSR_BPU_CCCR3	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.3, "CCCR MSRs."

Table 2-45. MSRs in the Pentium® 4 and Intel® Xeon® Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name Fields and Flags	Model Avail- ability	Shared/ Unique ¹	Bit Description
Hex	Dec				
364H	868	MSR_MS_CCCR0	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.3, "CCCR MSRs."
365H	869	MSR_MS_CCCR1	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.3, "CCCR MSRs."
366H	870	MSR_MS_CCCR2	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.3, "CCCR MSRs."
367H	871	MSR_MS_CCCR3	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.3, "CCCR MSRs."
368H	872	MSR_FLAME_CCCR0	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.3, "CCCR MSRs."
369H	873	MSR_FLAME_CCCR1	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.3, "CCCR MSRs."
36AH	874	MSR_FLAME_CCCR2	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.3, "CCCR MSRs."
36BH	875	MSR_FLAME_CCCR3	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.3, "CCCR MSRs."
36CH	876	MSR_IQ_CCCR0	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.3, "CCCR MSRs."
36DH	877	MSR_IQ_CCCR1	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.3, "CCCR MSRs."
36EH	878	MSR_IQ_CCCR2	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.3, "CCCR MSRs."
36FH	879	MSR_IQ_CCCR3	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.3, "CCCR MSRs."
370H	880	MSR_IQ_CCCR4	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.3, "CCCR MSRs."
371H	881	MSR_IQ_CCCR5	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.3, "CCCR MSRs."
3A0H	928	MSR_BSU_ESCR0	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3A1H	929	MSR_BSU_ESCR1	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3A2H	930	MSR_FSB_ESCR0	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3A3H	931	MSR_FSB_ESCR1	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3A4H	932	MSR_FIRM_ESCR0	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3A5H	933	MSR_FIRM_ESCR1	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3A6H	934	MSR_FLAME_ESCR0	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3A7H	935	MSR_FLAME_ESCR1	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."

Table 2-45. MSRs in the Pentium® 4 and Intel® Xeon® Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name Fields and Flags	Model Avail- ability	Shared/ Unique ¹	Bit Description
Hex	Dec				
3A8H	936	MSR_DAC_ESCR0	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3A9H	937	MSR_DAC_ESCR1	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3AAH	938	MSR_MOB_ESCR0	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3ABH	939	MSR_MOB_ESCR1	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3ACH	940	MSR_PMH_ESCR0	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3ADH	941	MSR_PMH_ESCR1	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3AEH	942	MSR_SAA_T_ESCR0	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3AFH	943	MSR_SAA_T_ESCR1	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3B0H	944	MSR_U2L_ESCR0	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3B1H	945	MSR_U2L_ESCR1	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3B2H	946	MSR_BPU_ESCR0	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3B3H	947	MSR_BPU_ESCR1	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3B4H	948	MSR_IS_ESCR0	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3B5H	949	MSR_IS_ESCR1	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3B6H	950	MSR_ITLB_ESCR0	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3B7H	951	MSR_ITLB_ESCR1	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3B8H	952	MSR_CRU_ESCR0	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3B9H	953	MSR_CRU_ESCR1	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3BAH	954	MSR_IQ_ESCR0	0, 1, 2	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs." This MSR is not available on later processors. It is only available on processor family 0FH, models 01H-02H.
3BBH	955	MSR_IQ_ESCR1	0, 1, 2	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs." This MSR is not available on later processors. It is only available on processor family 0FH, models 01H-02H.

Table 2-45. MSRs in the Pentium® 4 and Intel® Xeon® Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name Fields and Flags	Model Avail- ability	Shared/ Unique ¹	Bit Description
Hex	Dec				
3BCH	956	MSR_RAT_ESCR0	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3BDH	957	MSR_RAT_ESCR1	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3BEH	958	MSR_SSU_ESCR0	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3COH	960	MSR_MS_ESCR0	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3C1H	961	MSR_MS_ESCR1	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3C2H	962	MSR_TBPU_ESCR0	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3C3H	963	MSR_TBPU_ESCR1	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3C4H	964	MSR_TC_ESCR0	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3C5H	965	MSR_TC_ESCR1	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3C8H	968	MSR_IX_ESCR0	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3C9H	969	MSR_IX_ESCR1	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3CAH	970	MSR_ALF_ESCR0	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3CBH	971	MSR_ALF_ESCR1	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3CCH	972	MSR_CRU_ESCR2	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3CDH	973	MSR_CRU_ESCR3	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3E0H	992	MSR_CRU_ESCR4	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3E1H	993	MSR_CRU_ESCR5	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3F0H	1008	MSR_TC_PRECISE_EVENT	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 18.6.3.1, "ESCR MSRs."
3F1H	1009	MSR_PEBS_ENABLE	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	Processor Event Based Sampling (PEBS) (R/W) Controls the enabling of processor event sampling and replay tagging.
		12:0			See Table 19-36.
		23:13			Reserved
		24			UOP Tag Enables replay tagging when set.

Table 2-45. MSRs in the Pentium® 4 and Intel® Xeon® Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name Fields and Flags	Model Availability	Shared/Unique ¹	Bit Description
Hex	Dec				
		25			ENABLE_PEBS_MY_THR (R/W) Enables PEBS for the target logical processor when set; disables PEBS when clear (default). See Section 18.6.4.3, "IA32_PEBS_ENABLE MSR," for an explanation of the target logical processor. This bit is called ENABLE_PEBS in IA-32 processors that do not support Intel Hyper-Threading Technology.
		26			ENABLE_PEBS_OTH_THR (R/W) Enables PEBS for the target logical processor when set; disables PEBS when clear (default). See Section 18.6.4.3, "IA32_PEBS_ENABLE MSR," for an explanation of the target logical processor. This bit is reserved for IA-32 processors that do not support Intel Hyper-Threading Technology.
		63:27			Reserved
3F2H	1010	MSR_PEBS_MATRIX_VERT	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Table 19-36.
400H	1024	IA32_MCO_CTL	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
401H	1025	IA32_MCO_STATUS	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS."
402H	1026	IA32_MCO_ADDR	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The IA32_MCO_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the IA32_MCO_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
403H	1027	IA32_MCO_MISC	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." The IA32_MCO_MISC MSR is either not implemented or does not contain additional information if the MISC_V flag in the IA32_MCO_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
404H	1028	IA32_MC1_CTL	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
405H	1029	IA32_MC1_STATUS	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS."

Table 2-45. MSRs in the Pentium® 4 and Intel® Xeon® Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name Fields and Flags	Model Avail- ability	Shared/ Unique ¹	Bit Description
Hex	Dec				
406H	1030	IA32_MC1_ADDR	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The IA32_MC1_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the IA32_MC1_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
407H	1031	IA32_MC1_MISC		Shared	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." The IA32_MC1_MISC MSR is either not implemented or does not contain additional information if the MISC_V flag in the IA32_MC1_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
408H	1032	IA32_MC2_CTL	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
409H	1033	IA32_MC2_STATUS	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS."
40AH	1034	IA32_MC2_ADDR			See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The IA32_MC2_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the IA32_MC2_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
40BH	1035	IA32_MC2_MISC			See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." The IA32_MC2_MISC MSR is either not implemented or does not contain additional information if the MISC_V flag in the IA32_MC2_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
40CH	1036	IA32_MC3_CTL	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
40DH	1037	IA32_MC3_STATUS	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS."
40EH	1038	IA32_MC3_ADDR	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The IA32_MC3_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the IA32_MC3_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.

Table 2-45. MSRs in the Pentium® 4 and Intel® Xeon® Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name Fields and Flags	Model Avail- ability	Shared/ Unique ¹	Bit Description
Hex	Dec				
40FH	1039	IA32_MC3_MISC	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." The IA32_MC3_MISC MSR is either not implemented or does not contain additional information if the MISCV flag in the IA32_MC3_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
410H	1040	IA32_MC4_CTL	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
411H	1041	IA32_MC4_STATUS	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Shared	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs."
412H	1042	IA32_MC4_ADDR			See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The IA32_MC2_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDRIV flag in the IA32_MC4_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
413H	1043	IA32_MC4_MISC			See Section 15.3.2.4, "IA32_MCi_MISC MSRs." The IA32_MC2_MISC MSR is either not implemented or does not contain additional information if the MISCV flag in the IA32_MC4_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
480H	1152	IA32_VMX_BASIC	3, 4, 6	Unique	Reporting Register of Basic VMX Capabilities (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.1, "Basic VMX Information."
481H	1153	IA32_VMX_PINBASED_CTL	3, 4, 6	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of Pin-Based VM-Execution Controls (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.3, "VM-Execution Controls."
482H	1154	IA32_VMX_PROCBASED_CTL	3, 4, 6	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of Primary Processor-Based VM-Execution Controls (R/O) See Appendix A.3, "VM-Execution Controls," and see Table 2-2.
483H	1155	IA32_VMX_EXIT_CTL	3, 4, 6	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of VM-Exit Controls (R/O) See Appendix A.4, "VM-Exit Controls," and see Table 2-2.

Table 2-45. MSRs in the Pentium® 4 and Intel® Xeon® Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name Fields and Flags	Model Avail- ability	Shared/ Unique ¹	Bit Description
Hex	Dec				
484H	1156	IA32_VMX_ENTRY_CTL5	3, 4, 6	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of VM-Entry Controls (R/O) See Appendix A.5, "VM-Entry Controls," and see Table 2-2.
485H	1157	IA32_VMX_MISC	3, 4, 6	Unique	Reporting Register of Miscellaneous VMX Capabilities (R/O) See Appendix A.6, "Miscellaneous Data," and see Table 2-2.
486H	1158	IA32_VMX_CR0_FIXED0	3, 4, 6	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of CR0 Bits Fixed to 0 (R/O) See Appendix A.7, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CR0," and see Table 2-2.
487H	1159	IA32_VMX_CR0_FIXED1	3, 4, 6	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of CR0 Bits Fixed to 1 (R/O) See Appendix A.7, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CR0," and see Table 2-2.
488H	1160	IA32_VMX_CR4_FIXED0	3, 4, 6	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of CR4 Bits Fixed to 0 (R/O) See Appendix A.8, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CR4," and see Table 2-2.
489H	1161	IA32_VMX_CR4_FIXED1	3, 4, 6	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of CR4 Bits Fixed to 1 (R/O) See Appendix A.8, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CR4," and see Table 2-2.
48AH	1162	IA32_VMX_VMCS_ENUM	3, 4, 6	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of VMCS Field Enumeration (R/O) See Appendix A.9, "VMCS Enumeration," and see Table 2-2.
48BH	1163	IA32_VMX_PROCBASED_CTL52	3, 4, 6	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of Secondary Processor-Based VM-Execution Controls (R/O) See Appendix A.3, "VM-Execution Controls," and see Table 2-2.
600H	1536	IA32_DS_AREA	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 6	Unique	DS Save Area (R/W) See Table 2-2. See Section 18.6.3.4, "Debug Store (DS) Mechanism."
680H	1664	MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 0 (R/W) One of 16 pairs of last branch record registers on the last branch record stack (680H-68FH). This part of the stack contains pointers to the source instruction for one of the last 16 branches, exceptions, or interrupts taken by the processor.

Table 2-45. MSRs in the Pentium® 4 and Intel® Xeon® Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name Fields and Flags	Model Avail- ability	Shared/ Unique ¹	Bit Description
Hex	Dec				
					The MSRs at 680H-68FH, 6C0H-6CfH are not available in processor releases before family 0FH, model 03H. These MSRs replace MSRs previously located at 1DBH-1DEH, which performed the same function for early releases. See Section 17.12, "Last Branch, Call Stack, Interrupt, and Exception Recording for Processors based on Skylake Microarchitecture."
681H	1665	MSR_LASTBRANCH_1_FROM_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 1 See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 at 680H.
682H	1666	MSR_LASTBRANCH_2_FROM_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 2 See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 at 680H.
683H	1667	MSR_LASTBRANCH_3_FROM_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 3 See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 at 680H.
684H	1668	MSR_LASTBRANCH_4_FROM_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 4 See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 at 680H.
685H	1669	MSR_LASTBRANCH_5_FROM_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 5 See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 at 680H.
686H	1670	MSR_LASTBRANCH_6_FROM_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 6 See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 at 680H.
687H	1671	MSR_LASTBRANCH_7_FROM_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 7 See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 at 680H.
688H	1672	MSR_LASTBRANCH_8_FROM_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 8 See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 at 680H.
689H	1673	MSR_LASTBRANCH_9_FROM_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 9 See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 at 680H.
68AH	1674	MSR_LASTBRANCH_10_FROM_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 10 See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 at 680H.
68BH	1675	MSR_LASTBRANCH_11_FROM_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 11 See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 at 680H.
68CH	1676	MSR_LASTBRANCH_12_FROM_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 12 See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 at 680H.

Table 2-45. MSRs in the Pentium® 4 and Intel® Xeon® Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name Fields and Flags	Model Availability	Shared/Unique ¹	Bit Description
Hex	Dec				
68DH	1677	MSR_LASTBRANCH_13_FROM_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 13 See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 at 680H.
68EH	1678	MSR_LASTBRANCH_14_FROM_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 14 See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 at 680H.
68FH	1679	MSR_LASTBRANCH_15_FROM_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 15 See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 at 680H.
6C0H	1728	MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 0 (R/W) One of 16 pairs of last branch record registers on the last branch record stack (6C0H-6CFH). This part of the stack contains pointers to the destination instruction for one of the last 16 branches, exceptions, or interrupts that the processor took. See Section 17.12, "Last Branch, Call Stack, Interrupt, and Exception Recording for Processors based on Skylake Microarchitecture."
6C1H	1729	MSR_LASTBRANCH_1_TO_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 1 See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 at 6C0H.
6C2H	1730	MSR_LASTBRANCH_2_TO_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 2 See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 at 6C0H.
6C3H	1731	MSR_LASTBRANCH_3_TO_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 3 See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 at 6C0H.
6C4H	1732	MSR_LASTBRANCH_4_TO_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 4 See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 at 6C0H.
6C5H	1733	MSR_LASTBRANCH_5_TO_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 5 See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 at 6C0H.
6C6H	1734	MSR_LASTBRANCH_6_TO_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 6 See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 at 6C0H.
6C7H	1735	MSR_LASTBRANCH_7_TO_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 7 See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 at 6C0H.
6C8H	1736	MSR_LASTBRANCH_8_TO_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 8 See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 at 6C0H.

Table 2-45. MSRs in the Pentium® 4 and Intel® Xeon® Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name Fields and Flags	Model Availability	Shared/Unique ¹	Bit Description
Hex	Dec				
6C9H	1737	MSR_LASTBRANCH_9_TO_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 9 See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 at 6COH.
6CAH	1738	MSR_LASTBRANCH_10_TO_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 10 See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 at 6COH.
6CBH	1739	MSR_LASTBRANCH_11_TO_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 11 See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 at 6COH.
6CCH	1740	MSR_LASTBRANCH_12_TO_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 12 See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 at 6COH.
6CDH	1741	MSR_LASTBRANCH_13_TO_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 13 See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 at 6COH.
6CEH	1742	MSR_LASTBRANCH_14_TO_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 14 See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 at 6COH.
6CFH	1743	MSR_LASTBRANCH_15_TO_IP	3, 4, 6	Unique	Last Branch Record 15 See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0 at 6COH.
C000_0080H		IA32_EFER	3, 4, 6	Unique	Extended Feature Enables See Table 2-2.
C000_0081H		IA32_STAR	3, 4, 6	Unique	System Call Target Address (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0082H		IA32_LSTAR	3, 4, 6	Unique	IA-32e Mode System Call Target Address (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0084H		IA32_FMASK	3, 4, 6	Unique	System Call Flag Mask (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0100H		IA32_FS_BASE	3, 4, 6	Unique	Map of BASE Address of FS (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0101H		IA32_GS_BASE	3, 4, 6	Unique	Map of BASE Address of GS (R/W) See Table 2-2.
C000_0102H		IA32_KERNEL_GS_BASE	3, 4, 6	Unique	Swap Target of BASE Address of GS (R/W) See Table 2-2.

NOTES

1. For HT-enabled processors, there may be more than one logical processors per physical unit. If an MSR is Shared, this means that one MSR is shared between logical processors. If an MSR is unique, this means that each logical processor has its own MSR.

2.18.1 MSRs Unique to Intel® Xeon® Processor MP with L3 Cache

The MSRs listed in Table 2-46 apply to Intel® Xeon® Processor MP with up to 8MB level three cache. These processors can be detected by enumerating the deterministic cache parameter leaf of CPUID instruction (with EAX = 4 as input) to detect the presence of the third level cache, and with CPUID reporting family encoding 0FH, model encoding 3 or 4 (see CPUID instruction for more details).

Table 2-46. MSRs Unique to 64-bit Intel® Xeon® Processor MP with Up to an 8 MB L3 Cache

Register Address	Register Name Fields and Flags	Model Availability	Shared/Unique	Bit Description
107CCH	MSR_IFSB_BUSQ0	3, 4	Shared	IFSB BUSQ Event Control and Counter Register (R/W) See Section 18.6.6, "Performance Monitoring on 64-bit Intel Xeon Processor MP with Up to 8-MByte L3 Cache."
107CDH	MSR_IFSB_BUSQ1	3, 4	Shared	IFSB BUSQ Event Control and Counter Register (R/W)
107CEH	MSR_IFSB_SNPQ0	3, 4	Shared	IFSB SNPQ Event Control and Counter Register (R/W) See Section 18.6.6, "Performance Monitoring on 64-bit Intel Xeon Processor MP with Up to 8-MByte L3 Cache."
107CFH	MSR_IFSB_SNPQ1	3, 4	Shared	IFSB SNPQ Event Control and Counter Register (R/W)
107D0H	MSR_EFSB_DRDY0	3, 4	Shared	EFSB DRDY Event Control and Counter Register (R/W) See Section 18.6.6, "Performance Monitoring on 64-bit Intel Xeon Processor MP with Up to 8-MByte L3 Cache."
107D1H	MSR_EFSB_DRDY1	3, 4	Shared	EFSB DRDY Event Control and Counter Register (R/W)
107D2H	MSR_IFSB_CTL6	3, 4	Shared	IFSB Latency Event Control Register (R/W) See Section 18.6.6, "Performance Monitoring on 64-bit Intel Xeon Processor MP with Up to 8-MByte L3 Cache."
107D3H	MSR_IFSB_CNTR7	3, 4	Shared	IFSB Latency Event Counter Register (R/W) See Section 18.6.6, "Performance Monitoring on 64-bit Intel Xeon Processor MP with Up to 8-MByte L3 Cache."

The MSRs listed in Table 2-47 apply to Intel® Xeon® Processor 7100 series. These processors can be detected by enumerating the deterministic cache parameter leaf of CPUID instruction (with EAX = 4 as input) to detect the presence of the third level cache, and with CPUID reporting family encoding 0FH, model encoding 6 (See CPUID instruction for more details.). The performance monitoring MSRs listed in Table 2-47 are shared between logical processors in the same core, but are replicated for each core.

Table 2-47. MSRs Unique to Intel® Xeon® Processor 7100 Series

Register Address	Register Name Fields and Flags	Model Availability	Shared/Unique	Bit Description
107CCH	MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL0	6	Shared	GBUSQ Event Control and Counter Register (R/W) See Section 18.6.6, "Performance Monitoring on 64-bit Intel Xeon Processor MP with Up to 8-MByte L3 Cache."

Table 2-47. MSRs Unique to Intel® Xeon® Processor 7100 Series (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name Fields and Flags	Model Avail- ability	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
107CDH		MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL1	6	Shared	GBUSQ Event Control and Counter Register (R/W)
107CEH		MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL2	6	Shared	GSNPQ Event Control and Counter Register (R/W) See Section 18.6.6, "Performance Monitoring on 64-bit Intel Xeon Processor MP with Up to 8-MByte L3 Cache."
107CFH		MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL3	6	Shared	GSNPQ Event Control and Counter Register (R/W)
107D0H		MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL4	6	Shared	FSB Event Control and Counter Register (R/W) See Section 18.6.6, "Performance Monitoring on 64-bit Intel Xeon Processor MP with Up to 8-MByte L3 Cache."
107D1H		MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL5	6	Shared	FSB Event Control and Counter Register (R/W)
107D2H		MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL6	6	Shared	FSB Event Control and Counter Register (R/W)
107D3H		MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL7	6	Shared	FSB Event Control and Counter Register (R/W)

2.19 MSRS IN INTEL® CORE™ SOLO AND INTEL® CORE™ DUO PROCESSORS

Model-specific registers (MSRs) for Intel Core Solo, Intel Core Duo processors, and Dual-core Intel Xeon processor LV are listed in Table 2-48. The column "Shared/Unique" applies to Intel Core Duo processor. "Unique" means each processor core has a separate MSR, or a bit field in an MSR governs only a core independently. "Shared" means the MSR or the bit field in an MSR address governs the operation of both processor cores.

Table 2-48. MSRs in Intel® Core™ Solo, Intel® Core™ Duo Processors, and Dual-Core Intel® Xeon® Processor LV

Register Address		Register Name	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
0H	0	P5_MC_ADDR	Unique	See Section 2.22, "MSRs in Pentium Processors," and see Table 2-2.
1H	1	P5_MC_TYPE	Unique	See Section 2.22, "MSRs in Pentium Processors," and see Table 2-2.
6H	6	IA32_MONITOR_FILTER_SIZE	Unique	See Section 8.10.5, "Monitor/Mwait Address Range Determination," and see Table 2-2.
10H	16	IA32_TIME_STAMP_COUNTER	Unique	See Section 17.17, "Time-Stamp Counter," and see Table 2-2.
17H	23	IA32_PLATFORM_ID	Shared	Platform ID (R) See Table 2-2. The operating system can use this MSR to determine "slot" information for the processor and the proper microcode update to load.
1BH	27	IA32_APIC_BASE	Unique	See Section 10.4.4, "Local APIC Status and Location," and see Table 2-2.

Table 2-48. MSRs in Intel® Core™ Solo, Intel® Core™ Duo Processors, and Dual-Core Intel® Xeon® Processor LV

Register Address		Register Name	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
2AH	42	MSR_EBL_CR_POWERON	Shared	Processor Hard Power-On Configuration (R/W) Enables and disables processor features; (R) indicates current processor configuration.
		0		Reserved
		1		Data Error Checking Enable (R/W) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled Note: Not all processor implements R/W.
		2		Response Error Checking Enable (R/W) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled Note: Not all processor implements R/W.
		3		MCERR# Drive Enable (R/W) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled Note: Not all processor implements R/W.
		4		Address Parity Enable (R/W) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled Note: Not all processor implements R/W.
		6: 5		Reserved
		7		BINIT# Driver Enable (R/W) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled Note: Not all processor implements R/W.
		8		Output Tri-state Enabled (R/O) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled
		9		Execute BIST (R/O) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled
		10		MCERR# Observation Enabled (R/O) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled
		11		Reserved
		12		BINIT# Observation Enabled (R/O) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled
		13		Reserved
		14		1 MByte Power on Reset Vector (R/O) 1 = 1 MByte; 0 = 4 GBytes
		15		Reserved
		17:16		APIC Cluster ID (R/O)
		18		System Bus Frequency (R/O) 0 = 100 MHz 1 = Reserved
		19		Reserved
		21: 20		Symmetric Arbitration ID (R/O)
26:22	Clock Frequency Ratio (R/O)			

Table 2-48. MSRs in Intel® Core™ Solo, Intel® Core™ Duo Processors, and Dual-Core Intel® Xeon® Processor LV

Register Address		Register Name	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
3AH	58	IA32_FEATURE_CONTROL	Unique	Control Features in IA-32 Processor (R/W) See Table 2-2.
40H	64	MSR_LASTBRANCH_0	Unique	Last Branch Record 0 (R/W) One of 8 last branch record registers on the last branch record stack: bits 31-0 hold the 'from' address and bits 63-32 hold the 'to' address. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Last Branch Record Stack TOS at 1C9H ▪ Section 17.15, "Last Branch, Interrupt, and Exception Recording (Pentium M Processors)."
41H	65	MSR_LASTBRANCH_1	Unique	Last Branch Record 1 (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0.
42H	66	MSR_LASTBRANCH_2	Unique	Last Branch Record 2 (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0.
43H	67	MSR_LASTBRANCH_3	Unique	Last Branch Record 3 (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0.
44H	68	MSR_LASTBRANCH_4	Unique	Last Branch Record 4 (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0.
45H	69	MSR_LASTBRANCH_5	Unique	Last Branch Record 5 (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0.
46H	70	MSR_LASTBRANCH_6	Unique	Last Branch Record 6 (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0.
47H	71	MSR_LASTBRANCH_7	Unique	Last Branch Record 7 (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0.
79H	121	IA32_BIOS_UPDT_TRIG	Unique	BIOS Update Trigger Register (W) See Table 2-2.
8BH	139	IA32_BIOS_SIGN_ID	Unique	BIOS Update Signature ID (RO) See Table 2-2.
C1H	193	IA32_PMC0	Unique	Performance Counter Register See Table 2-2.
C2H	194	IA32_PMC1	Unique	Performance Counter Register See Table 2-2.
CDH	205	MSR_FSB_FREQ	Shared	Scaleable Bus Speed (RO) This field indicates the scaleable bus clock speed:
		2:0		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ 101B: 100 MHz (FSB 400) ▪ 001B: 133 MHz (FSB 533) ▪ 011B: 167 MHz (FSB 667) 133.33 MHz should be utilized if performing calculation with System Bus Speed when encoding is 101B. 166.67 MHz should be utilized if performing calculation with System Bus Speed when encoding is 001B.
		63:3		Reserved

Table 2-48. MSRs in Intel® Core™ Solo, Intel® Core™ Duo Processors, and Dual-Core Intel® Xeon® Processor LV

Register Address		Register Name	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
E7H	231	IA32_MPERF	Unique	Maximum Performance Frequency Clock Count (RW) See Table 2-2.
E8H	232	IA32_APERF	Unique	Actual Performance Frequency Clock Count (RW) See Table 2-2.
FEH	254	IA32_MTRRCAP	Unique	See Table 2-2.
11EH	281	MSR_BBL_CR_CTL3	Shared	Control Register 3 Used to configure the L2 Cache.
		0		L2 Hardware Enabled (RO) 1 = If the L2 is hardware-enabled 0 = Indicates if the L2 is hardware-disabled
		7:1		Reserved
		8		L2 Enabled (R/W) 1 = L2 cache has been initialized 0 = Disabled (default) Until this bit is set the processor will not respond to the WBINVD instruction or the assertion of the FLUSH# input.
		22:9		Reserved
		23		L2 Not Present (RO) 0 = L2 Present 1 = L2 Not Present
		63:24		Reserved
174H	372	IA32_SYSENTER_CS	Unique	See Table 2-2.
175H	373	IA32_SYSENTER_ESP	Unique	See Table 2-2.
176H	374	IA32_SYSENTER_EIP	Unique	See Table 2-2.
179H	377	IA32_MCG_CAP	Unique	See Table 2-2.
17AH	378	IA32_MCG_STATUS	Unique	Global Machine Check Status
		0		RIPV When set, this bit indicates that the instruction addressed by the instruction pointer pushed on the stack (when the machine check was generated) can be used to restart the program. If this bit is cleared, the program cannot be reliably restarted.
		1		EIPV When set, this bit indicates that the instruction addressed by the instruction pointer pushed on the stack (when the machine check was generated) is directly associated with the error.

Table 2-48. MSRs in Intel® Core™ Solo, Intel® Core™ Duo Processors, and Dual-Core Intel® Xeon® Processor LV

Register Address		Register Name	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		2		MCIP When set, this bit indicates that a machine check has been generated. If a second machine check is detected while this bit is still set, the processor enters a shutdown state. Software should write this bit to 0 after processing a machine check exception.
		63:3		Reserved
186H	390	IA32_PERFEVTSELO	Unique	See Table 2-2.
187H	391	IA32_PERFEVTSEL1	Unique	See Table 2-2.
198H	408	IA32_PERF_STATUS	Shared	See Table 2-2.
199H	409	IA32_PERF_CTL	Unique	See Table 2-2.
19AH	410	IA32_CLOCK_MODULATION	Unique	Clock Modulation (R/W) See Table 2-2.
19BH	411	IA32_THERM_INTERRUPT	Unique	Thermal Interrupt Control (R/W) See Table 2-2. See Section 14.7.2, "Thermal Monitor."
19CH	412	IA32_THERM_STATUS	Unique	Thermal Monitor Status (R/W) See Table 2-2. See Section 14.7.2, "Thermal Monitor".
19DH	413	MSR_THERM2_CTL	Unique	Thermal Monitor 2 Control
		15:0		Reserved
		16		TM_SELECT (R/W) Mode of automatic thermal monitor: 0 = Thermal Monitor 1 (thermally-initiated on-die modulation of the stop-clock duty cycle) 1 = Thermal Monitor 2 (thermally-initiated frequency transitions) If bit 3 of the IA32_MISC_ENABLE register is cleared, TM_SELECT has no effect. Neither TM1 nor TM2 will be enabled.
		63:16		Reserved
1A0H	416	IA32_MISC_ENABLE		Enable Miscellaneous Processor Features (R/W) Allows a variety of processor functions to be enabled and disabled.
		2:0		Reserved
		3	Unique	Automatic Thermal Control Circuit Enable (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		6:4		Reserved
		7	Shared	Performance Monitoring Available (R) See Table 2-2.

Table 2-48. MSRs in Intel® Core™ Solo, Intel® Core™ Duo Processors, and Dual-Core Intel® Xeon® Processor LV

Register Address		Register Name	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
		9:8		Reserved
		10	Shared	FERR# Multiplexing Enable (R/W) 1 = FERR# asserted by the processor to indicate a pending break event within the processor 0 = Indicates compatible FERR# signaling behavior This bit must be set to 1 to support XAPIC interrupt model usage.
		11	Shared	Branch Trace Storage Unavailable (RO) See Table 2-2.
		12		Reserved
		13	Shared	TM2 Enable (R/W) When this bit is set (1) and the thermal sensor indicates that the die temperature is at the pre-determined threshold, the Thermal Monitor 2 mechanism is engaged. TM2 will reduce the bus to core ratio and voltage according to the value last written to MSR_THERM2_CTL bits 15:0. When this bit is clear (0, default), the processor does not change the VID signals or the bus to core ratio when the processor enters a thermal managed state. If the TM2 feature flag (ECX[8]) is not set to 1 after executing CPUID with EAX = 1, then this feature is not supported and BIOS must not alter the contents of this bit location. The processor is operating out of spec if both this bit and the TM1 bit are set to disabled states.
		15:14		Reserved
		16	Shared	Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology Enable (R/W) 1 = Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology enabled
		18	Shared	ENABLE MONITOR FSM (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		19		Reserved
		22	Shared	Limit CPUID Maxval (R/W) See Table 2-2. Setting this bit may cause behavior in software that depends on the availability of CPUID leaves greater than 2.
		33:23		Reserved
		34	Shared	XD Bit Disable (R/W) See Table 2-2.
		63:35		Reserved
1C9H	457	MSR_LASTBRANCH_TOS	Unique	Last Branch Record Stack TOS (R/W) Contains an index (bits 0-3) that points to the MSR containing the most recent branch record. See MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP (at 40H).

Table 2-48. MSRs in Intel® Core™ Solo, Intel® Core™ Duo Processors, and Dual-Core Intel® Xeon® Processor LV

Register Address		Register Name	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
1D9H	473	IA32_DEBUGCTL	Unique	Debug Control (R/W) Controls how several debug features are used. Bit definitions are discussed in Table 2-2.
1DDH	477	MSR_LER_FROM_LIP	Unique	Last Exception Record From Linear IP (R) Contains a pointer to the last branch instruction that the processor executed prior to the last exception that was generated or the last interrupt that was handled.
1DEH	478	MSR_LER_TO_LIP	Unique	Last Exception Record To Linear IP (R) This area contains a pointer to the target of the last branch instruction that the processor executed prior to the last exception that was generated or the last interrupt that was handled.
200H	512	MTRRphysBase0	Unique	Memory Type Range Registers
201H	513	MTRRphysMask0	Unique	Memory Type Range Registers
202H	514	MTRRphysBase1	Unique	Memory Type Range Registers
203H	515	MTRRphysMask1	Unique	Memory Type Range Registers
204H	516	MTRRphysBase2	Unique	Memory Type Range Registers
205H	517	MTRRphysMask2	Unique	Memory Type Range Registers
206H	518	MTRRphysBase3	Unique	Memory Type Range Registers
207H	519	MTRRphysMask3	Unique	Memory Type Range Registers
208H	520	MTRRphysBase4	Unique	Memory Type Range Registers
209H	521	MTRRphysMask4	Unique	Memory Type Range Registers
20AH	522	MTRRphysBase5	Unique	Memory Type Range Registers
20BH	523	MTRRphysMask5	Unique	Memory Type Range Registers
20CH	524	MTRRphysBase6	Unique	Memory Type Range Registers
20DH	525	MTRRphysMask6	Unique	Memory Type Range Registers
20EH	526	MTRRphysBase7	Unique	Memory Type Range Registers
20FH	527	MTRRphysMask7	Unique	Memory Type Range Registers
250H	592	MTRRfix64K_00000	Unique	Memory Type Range Registers
258H	600	MTRRfix16K_80000	Unique	Memory Type Range Registers
259H	601	MTRRfix16K_A0000	Unique	Memory Type Range Registers
268H	616	MTRRfix4K_C0000	Unique	Memory Type Range Registers
269H	617	MTRRfix4K_C8000	Unique	Memory Type Range Registers
26AH	618	MTRRfix4K_D0000	Unique	Memory Type Range Registers
26BH	619	MTRRfix4K_D8000	Unique	Memory Type Range Registers
26CH	620	MTRRfix4K_E0000	Unique	Memory Type Range Registers
26DH	621	MTRRfix4K_E8000	Unique	Memory Type Range Registers
26EH	622	MTRRfix4K_F0000	Unique	Memory Type Range Registers
26FH	623	MTRRfix4K_F8000	Unique	Memory Type Range Registers

Table 2-48. MSRs in Intel® Core™ Solo, Intel® Core™ Duo Processors, and Dual-Core Intel® Xeon® Processor LV

Register Address		Register Name	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
2FFH	767	IA32_MTRR_DEF_TYPE	Unique	Default Memory Types (R/W) See Table 2-2. See Section 11.11.2.1, "IA32_MTRR_DEF_TYPE MSR."
400H	1024	IA32_MCO_CTL	Unique	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
401H	1025	IA32_MCO_STATUS	Unique	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs."
402H	1026	IA32_MCO_ADDR	Unique	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The IA32_MCO_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the IA32_MCO_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
404H	1028	IA32_MC1_CTL	Unique	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
405H	1029	IA32_MC1_STATUS	Unique	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs."
406H	1030	IA32_MC1_ADDR	Unique	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The IA32_MC1_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the IA32_MC1_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
408H	1032	IA32_MC2_CTL	Unique	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
409H	1033	IA32_MC2_STATUS	Unique	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs."
40AH	1034	IA32_MC2_ADDR	Unique	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The IA32_MC2_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the IA32_MC2_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
40CH	1036	MSR_MC4_CTL	Unique	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
40DH	1037	MSR_MC4_STATUS	Unique	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs."
40EH	1038	MSR_MC4_ADDR	Unique	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The MSR_MC4_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the MSR_MC4_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
410H	1040	IA32_MC3_CTL		See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
411H	1041	IA32_MC3_STATUS		See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs."
412H	1042	MSR_MC3_ADDR	Unique	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The MSR_MC3_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the MSR_MC3_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.

Table 2-48. MSRs in Intel® Core™ Solo, Intel® Core™ Duo Processors, and Dual-Core Intel® Xeon® Processor LV

Register Address		Register Name	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
413H	1043	MSR_MC3_MISC	Unique	Machine Check Error Reporting Register - contains additional information describing the machine-check error if the MISCV flag in the IA32_MCI_STATUS register is set.
414H	1044	MSR_MC5_CTL	Unique	Machine Check Error Reporting Register - controls signaling of #MC for errors produced by a particular hardware unit (or group of hardware units).
415H	1045	MSR_MC5_STATUS	Unique	Machine Check Error Reporting Register - contains information related to a machine-check error if its VAL (valid) flag is set. Software is responsible for clearing IA32_MCI_STATUS MSRs by explicitly writing 0s to them; writing 1s to them causes a general-protection exception.
416H	1046	MSR_MC5_ADDR	Unique	Machine Check Error Reporting Register - contains the address of the code or data memory location that produced the machine-check error if the ADDRV flag in the IA32_MCI_STATUS register is set.
417H	1047	MSR_MC5_MISC	Unique	Machine Check Error Reporting Register - contains additional information describing the machine-check error if the MISCV flag in the IA32_MCI_STATUS register is set.
480H	1152	IA32_VMX_BASIC	Unique	Reporting Register of Basic VMX Capabilities (R/O) See Table 2-2. See Appendix A.1, "Basic VMX Information". (If CPUID.01H:ECX.[bit 5])
481H	1153	IA32_VMX_PINBASED_CTL	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of Pin-Based VM-Execution Controls (R/O) See Appendix A.3, "VM-Execution Controls". (If CPUID.01H:ECX.[bit 5])
482H	1154	IA32_VMX_PROCBASED_CTL	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of Primary Processor-Based VM-Execution Controls (R/O) See Appendix A.3, "VM-Execution Controls". (If CPUID.01H:ECX.[bit 5])
483H	1155	IA32_VMX_EXIT_CTL	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of VM-Exit Controls (R/O) See Appendix A.4, "VM-Exit Controls". (If CPUID.01H:ECX.[bit 5])
484H	1156	IA32_VMX_ENTRY_CTL	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of VM-Entry Controls (R/O) See Appendix A.5, "VM-Entry Controls". (If CPUID.01H:ECX.[bit 5])
485H	1157	IA32_VMX_MISC	Unique	Reporting Register of Miscellaneous VMX Capabilities (R/O) See Appendix A.6, "Miscellaneous Data". (If CPUID.01H:ECX.[bit 5])
486H	1158	IA32_VMX_CRO_FIXED0	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of CRO Bits Fixed to 0 (R/O) See Appendix A.7, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CRO". (If CPUID.01H:ECX.[bit 5])

Table 2-48. MSRs in Intel® Core™ Solo, Intel® Core™ Duo Processors, and Dual-Core Intel® Xeon® Processor LV

Register Address		Register Name	Shared/ Unique	Bit Description
Hex	Dec			
487H	1159	IA32_VMX_CR0_FIXED1	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of CR0 Bits Fixed to 1 (R/O) See Appendix A.7, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CR0". (If CPUID.01H:ECX.[bit 5])
488H	1160	IA32_VMX_CR4_FIXED0	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of CR4 Bits Fixed to 0 (R/O) See Appendix A.8, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CR4". (If CPUID.01H:ECX.[bit 5])
489H	1161	IA32_VMX_CR4_FIXED1	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of CR4 Bits Fixed to 1 (R/O) See Appendix A.8, "VMX-Fixed Bits in CR4". (If CPUID.01H:ECX.[bit 5])
48AH	1162	IA32_VMX_VMCS_ENUM	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of VMCS Field Enumeration (R/O) See Appendix A.9, "VMCS Enumeration". (If CPUID.01H:ECX.[bit 5])
48BH	1163	IA32_VMX_PROCBASED_CTL2	Unique	Capability Reporting Register of Secondary Processor-Based VM-Execution Controls (R/O) See Appendix A.3, "VM-Execution Controls". (If CPUID.01H:ECX.[bit 5] and IA32_VMX_PROCBASED_CTL2[bit 63])
600H	1536	IA32_DS_AREA	Unique	DS Save Area (R/W) See Table 2-2. See Section 18.6.3.4, "Debug Store (DS) Mechanism."
		31:0		DS Buffer Management Area Linear address of the first byte of the DS buffer management area.
		63:32		Reserved
C000_0080H		IA32_EFER	Unique	See Table 2-2.
		10:0		Reserved
		11		Execute Disable Bit Enable
		63:12		Reserved

2.20 MSRS IN THE PENTIUM M PROCESSOR

Model-specific registers (MSRs) for the Pentium M processor are similar to those described in Section 2.21 for P6 family processors. The following table describes new MSRs and MSRs whose behavior has changed on the Pentium M processor.

Table 2-49. MSRs in Pentium M Processors

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Bit Description
Hex	Dec		
0H	0	P5_MC_ADDR	See Section 2.22, "MSRs in Pentium Processors."

Table 2-49. MSRs in Pentium M Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Bit Description
Hex	Dec		
1H	1	P5_MC_TYPE	See Section 2.22, "MSRs in Pentium Processors."
10H	16	IA32_TIME_STAMP_COUNTER	See Section 17.17, "Time-Stamp Counter," and see Table 2-2.
17H	23	IA32_PLATFORM_ID	Platform ID (R) See Table 2-2. The operating system can use this MSR to determine "slot" information for the processor and the proper microcode update to load.
2AH	42	MSR_EBL_CR_POWERON	Processor Hard Power-On Configuration (R/W) Enables and disables processor features. (R) Indicates current processor configuration.
		0	Reserved
		1	Data Error Checking Enable (R) 0 = Disabled Always 0 on the Pentium M processor.
		2	Response Error Checking Enable (R) 0 = Disabled Always 0 on the Pentium M processor.
		3	MCERR# Drive Enable (R) 0 = Disabled Always 0 on the Pentium M processor.
		4	Address Parity Enable (R) 0 = Disabled Always 0 on the Pentium M processor.
		6:5	Reserved
		7	BINIT# Driver Enable (R) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled Always 0 on the Pentium M processor.
		8	Output Tri-state Enabled (R/O) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled
		9	Execute BIST (R/O) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled
		10	MCERR# Observation Enabled (R/O) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled Always 0 on the Pentium M processor.
		11	Reserved
		12	BINIT# Observation Enabled (R/O) 1 = Enabled; 0 = Disabled Always 0 on the Pentium M processor.
13	Reserved		

Table 2-49. MSRs in Pentium M Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Bit Description
Hex	Dec		
		14	1 MByte Power on Reset Vector (R/O) 1 = 1 MByte; 0 = 4 GBytes Always 0 on the Pentium M processor.
		15	Reserved
		17:16	APIC Cluster ID (R/O) Always 00B on the Pentium M processor.
		18	System Bus Frequency (R/O) 0 = 100 MHz 1 = Reserved Always 0 on the Pentium M processor.
		19	Reserved
		21:20	Symmetric Arbitration ID (R/O) Always 00B on the Pentium M processor.
		26:22	Clock Frequency Ratio (R/O)
40H	64	MSR_LASTBRANCH_0	Last Branch Record 0 (R/W) One of 8 last branch record registers on the last branch record stack: bits 31-0 hold the 'from' address and bits 63-32 hold the to address. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Last Branch Record Stack TOS at 1C9H. ▪ Section 17.15, "Last Branch, Interrupt, and Exception Recording (Pentium M Processors)".
41H	65	MSR_LASTBRANCH_1	Last Branch Record 1 (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0.
42H	66	MSR_LASTBRANCH_2	Last Branch Record 2 (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0.
43H	67	MSR_LASTBRANCH_3	Last Branch Record 3 (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0.
44H	68	MSR_LASTBRANCH_4	Last Branch Record 4 (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0.
45H	69	MSR_LASTBRANCH_5	Last Branch Record 5 (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0.
46H	70	MSR_LASTBRANCH_6	Last Branch Record 6 (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0.
47H	71	MSR_LASTBRANCH_7	Last Branch Record 7 (R/W) See description of MSR_LASTBRANCH_0.
119H	281	MSR_BBL_CR_CTL	Control Register Used to program L2 commands to be issued via cache configuration accesses mechanism. Also receives L2 lookup response.
		63:0	Reserved
11EH	281	MSR_BBL_CR_CTL3	Control register 3 Used to configure the L2 Cache.

Table 2-49. MSRs in Pentium M Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Bit Description
Hex	Dec		
		0	L2 Hardware Enabled (RO) 1 = If the L2 is hardware-enabled. 0 = Indicates if the L2 is hardware-disabled.
		4:1	Reserved
		5	ECC Check Enable (RO) This bit enables ECC checking on the cache data bus. ECC is always generated on write cycles. 0 = Disabled (default) 1 = Enabled For the Pentium M processor, ECC checking on the cache data bus is always enabled.
		7:6	Reserved
		8	L2 Enabled (R/W) 1 = L2 cache has been initialized 0 = Disabled (default) Until this bit is set the processor will not respond to the WBINVD instruction or the assertion of the FLUSH# input.
		22:9	Reserved
		23	L2 Not Present (RO) 0 = L2 Present 1 = L2 Not Present
		63:24	Reserved
179H	377	IA32_MCG_CAP	Read-only register that provides information about the machine-check architecture of the processor.
		7:0	Count (RO) Indicates the number of hardware unit error reporting banks available in the processor.
		8	IA32_MCG_CTL Present (RO) 1 = Indicates that the processor implements the MSR_MCG_CTL register found at MSR 17BH. 0 = Not supported.
		63:9	Reserved
17AH	378	IA32_MCG_STATUS	Global Machine Check Status
		0	RIPV When set, this bit indicates that the instruction addressed by the instruction pointer pushed on the stack (when the machine check was generated) can be used to restart the program. If this bit is cleared, the program cannot be reliably restarted.
		1	EIPV When set, this bit indicates that the instruction addressed by the instruction pointer pushed on the stack (when the machine check was generated) is directly associated with the error.

Table 2-49. MSRs in Pentium M Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Bit Description
Hex	Dec		
		2	MCIP When set, this bit indicates that a machine check has been generated. If a second machine check is detected while this bit is still set, the processor enters a shutdown state. Software should write this bit to 0 after processing a machine check exception.
		63:3	Reserved
198H	408	IA32_PERF_STATUS	See Table 2-2.
199H	409	IA32_PERF_CTL	See Table 2-2.
19AH	410	IA32_CLOCK_MODULATION	Clock Modulation (R/W). See Table 2-2. See Section 14.7.3, "Software Controlled Clock Modulation."
19BH	411	IA32_THERM_INTERRUPT	Thermal Interrupt Control (R/W) See Table 2-2. See Section 14.7.2, "Thermal Monitor."
19CH	412	IA32_THERM_STATUS	Thermal Monitor Status (R/W) See Table 2-2. See Section 14.7.2, "Thermal Monitor."
19DH	413	MSR_THERM2_CTL	Thermal Monitor 2 Control
		15:0	Reserved
		16	TM_SELECT (R/W) Mode of automatic thermal monitor: 0 = Thermal Monitor 1 (thermally-initiated on-die modulation of the stop-clock duty cycle) 1 = Thermal Monitor 2 (thermally-initiated frequency transitions) If bit 3 of the IA32_MISC_ENABLE register is cleared, TM_SELECT has no effect. Neither TM1 nor TM2 will be enabled.
		63:16	Reserved
1A0H	416	IA32_MISC_ENABLE	Enable Miscellaneous Processor Features (R/W) Allows a variety of processor functions to be enabled and disabled.
		2:0	Reserved

Table 2-49. MSRs in Pentium M Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Bit Description
Hex	Dec		
		3	<p>Automatic Thermal Control Circuit Enable (R/W)</p> <p>1 = Setting this bit enables the thermal control circuit (TCC) portion of the Intel Thermal Monitor feature. This allows processor clocks to be automatically modulated based on the processor's thermal sensor operation.</p> <p>0 = Disabled (default).</p> <p>The automatic thermal control circuit enable bit determines if the thermal control circuit (TCC) will be activated when the processor's internal thermal sensor determines the processor is about to exceed its maximum operating temperature.</p> <p>When the TCC is activated and TM1 is enabled, the processors clocks will be forced to a 50% duty cycle. BIOS must enable this feature.</p> <p>The bit should not be confused with the on-demand thermal control circuit enable bit.</p>
		6:4	Reserved
		7	<p>Performance Monitoring Available (R)</p> <p>1 = Performance monitoring enabled.</p> <p>0 = Performance monitoring disabled.</p>
		9:8	Reserved
		10	<p>FERR# Multiplexing Enable (R/W)</p> <p>1 = FERR# asserted by the processor to indicate a pending break event within the processor.</p> <p>0 = Indicates compatible FERR# signaling behavior.</p> <p>This bit must be set to 1 to support XAPIC interrupt model usage.</p>
			<p>Branch Trace Storage Unavailable (RO)</p> <p>1 = Processor doesn't support branch trace storage (BTS)</p> <p>0 = BTS is supported</p>
		12	<p>Processor Event Based Sampling Unavailable (RO)</p> <p>1 = Processor does not support processor event based sampling (PEBS);</p> <p>0 = PEBS is supported.</p> <p>The Pentium M processor does not support PEBS.</p>
		15:13	Reserved
		16	<p>Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology Enable (R/W)</p> <p>1 = Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology enabled.</p> <p>On the Pentium M processor, this bit may be configured to be read-only.</p>
		22:17	Reserved
		23	<p>xTPR Message Disable (R/W)</p> <p>When set to 1, xTPR messages are disabled. xTPR messages are optional messages that allow the processor to inform the chipset of its priority. The default is processor specific.</p>
		63:24	Reserved

Table 2-49. MSRs in Pentium M Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Bit Description
Hex	Dec		
1C9H	457	MSR_LASTBRANCH_TOS	Last Branch Record Stack TOS (R/W) Contains an index (bits 0-3) that points to the MSR containing the most recent branch record. See also: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP (at 40H). ▪ Section 17.15, "Last Branch, Interrupt, and Exception Recording (Pentium M Processors)".
1D9H	473	MSR_DEBUGCTLB	Debug Control (R/W) Controls how several debug features are used. Bit definitions are discussed in the referenced section. See Section 17.15, "Last Branch, Interrupt, and Exception Recording (Pentium M Processors)."
1DDH	477	MSR_LER_TO_LIP	Last Exception Record To Linear IP (R) This area contains a pointer to the target of the last branch instruction that the processor executed prior to the last exception that was generated or the last interrupt that was handled. See Section 17.15, "Last Branch, Interrupt, and Exception Recording (Pentium M Processors)" and Section 17.16.2, "Last Branch and Last Exception MSRs."
1DEH	478	MSR_LER_FROM_LIP	Last Exception Record From Linear IP (R) Contains a pointer to the last branch instruction that the processor executed prior to the last exception that was generated or the last interrupt that was handled. See Section 17.15, "Last Branch, Interrupt, and Exception Recording (Pentium M Processors)" and Section 17.16.2, "Last Branch and Last Exception MSRs."
2FFH	767	IA32_MTRR_DEF_TYPE	Default Memory Types (R/W) Sets the memory type for the regions of physical memory that are not mapped by the MTRRs. See Section 11.11.2.1, "IA32_MTRR_DEF_TYPE MSR."
400H	1024	IA32_MCO_CTL	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
401H	1025	IA32_MCO_STATUS	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS."
402H	1026	IA32_MCO_ADDR	See Section 14.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs". The IA32_MCO_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the IA32_MCO_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
404H	1028	IA32_MC1_CTL	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
405H	1029	IA32_MC1_STATUS	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS."
406H	1030	IA32_MC1_ADDR	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs". The IA32_MC1_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the IA32_MC1_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
408H	1032	IA32_MC2_CTL	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
409H	1033	IA32_MC2_STATUS	See Chapter 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRS."

Table 2-49. MSRs in Pentium M Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Bit Description
Hex	Dec		
40AH	1034	IA32_MC2_ADDR	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The IA32_MC2_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the IA32_MC2_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
40CH	1036	MSR_MC4_CTL	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
40DH	1037	MSR_MC4_STATUS	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs."
40EH	1038	MSR_MC4_ADDR	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The MSR_MC4_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the MSR_MC4_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
410H	1040	MSR_MC3_CTL	See Section 15.3.2.1, "IA32_MCi_CTL MSRs."
411H	1041	MSR_MC3_STATUS	See Section 15.3.2.2, "IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs."
412H	1042	MSR_MC3_ADDR	See Section 15.3.2.3, "IA32_MCi_ADDR MSRs." The MSR_MC3_ADDR register is either not implemented or contains no address if the ADDR_V flag in the MSR_MC3_STATUS register is clear. When not implemented in the processor, all reads and writes to this MSR will cause a general-protection exception.
600H	1536	IA32_DS_AREA	DS Save Area (R/W) See Table 2-2. Points to the DS buffer management area, which is used to manage the BTS and PEBS buffers. See Section 18.6.3.4, "Debug Store (DS) Mechanism."
		31:0	DS Buffer Management Area Linear address of the first byte of the DS buffer management area.
		63:32	Reserved

2.21 MSRS IN THE P6 FAMILY PROCESSORS

The following MSRs are defined for the P6 family processors. The MSRs in this table that are shaded are available only in the Pentium II and Pentium III processors. Beginning with the Pentium 4 processor, some of the MSRs in this list have been designated as "architectural" and have had their names changed. See Table 2-2 for a list of the architectural MSRs.

Table 2-50. MSRs in the P6 Family Processors

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Bit Description
Hex	Dec		
0H	0	P5_MC_ADDR	See Section 2.22, "MSRs in Pentium Processors."
1H	1	P5_MC_TYPE	See Section 2.22, "MSRs in Pentium Processors."
10H	16	TSC	See Section 17.17, "Time-Stamp Counter."

Table 2-50. MSRs in the P6 Family Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Bit Description
Hex	Dec		
17H	23	IA32_PLATFORM_ID	Platform ID (R) The operating system can use this MSR to determine “slot” information for the processor and the proper microcode update to load.
		49:0	Reserved
		52:50	Platform Id (R) Contains information concerning the intended platform for the processor. 52 51 50 0 0 0 Processor Flag 0 0 0 1 Processor Flag 1 0 1 0 Processor Flag 2 0 1 1 Processor Flag 3 1 0 0 Processor Flag 4 1 0 1 Processor Flag 5 1 1 0 Processor Flag 6 1 1 1 Processor Flag 7
		56:53	L2 Cache Latency Read.
		59:57	Reserved
		60	Clock Frequency Ratio Read.
		63:61	Reserved
		1BH	27
7:0	Reserved		
8	Boot Strap Processor Indicator Bit 1 = BSP		
10:9	Reserved		
11	APIC Global Enable Bit - Permanent till reset 1 = Enabled 0 = Disabled		
31:12	APIC Base Address.		
63:32	Reserved		
2AH	42	EBL_CR_POWERON	Processor Hard Power-On Configuration (R/W) Enables and disables processor features; (R) indicates current processor configuration.
		0	Reserved ¹
		1	Data Error Checking Enable (R/W) 1 = Enabled 0 = Disabled
		2	Response Error Checking Enable FRCERR Observation Enable (R/W) 1 = Enabled 0 = Disabled
		3	AERR# Drive Enable (R/W) 1 = Enabled 0 = Disabled

Table 2-50. MSRs in the P6 Family Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Bit Description
Hex	Dec		
		4	BERR# Enable for Initiator Bus Requests (R/W) 1 = Enabled 0 = Disabled
		5	Reserved
		6	BERR# Driver Enable for Initiator Internal Errors (R/W) 1 = Enabled 0 = Disabled
		7	BINIT# Driver Enable (R/W) 1 = Enabled 0 = Disabled
		8	Output Tri-state Enabled (R) 1 = Enabled 0 = Disabled
		9	Execute BIST (R) 1 = Enabled 0 = Disabled
		10	AERR# Observation Enabled (R) 1 = Enabled 0 = Disabled
		11	Reserved
		12	BINIT# Observation Enabled (R) 1 = Enabled 0 = Disabled
		13	In Order Queue Depth (R) 1 = 1 0 = 8
		14	1-MByte Power on Reset Vector (R) 1 = 1MByte 0 = 4GBytes
		15	FRC Mode Enable (R) 1 = Enabled 0 = Disabled
		17:16	APIC Cluster ID (R)
		19:18	System Bus Frequency (R) 00 = 66MHz 10 = 100MHz 01 = 133MHz 11 = Reserved
		21:20	Symmetric Arbitration ID (R)
		25:22	Clock Frequency Ratio (R)
		26	Low Power Mode Enable (R/W)

Table 2-50. MSRs in the P6 Family Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Bit Description
Hex	Dec		
		27	Clock Frequency Ratio
		63:28	Reserved ¹
33H	51	TEST_CTL	Test Control Register
		29:0	Reserved
		30	Streaming Buffer Disable
		31	Disable LOCK# Assertion for split locked access.
79H	121	BIOS_UPDT_TRIG	BIOS Update Trigger Register.
88H	136	BBL_CR_D0[63:0]	Chunk 0 data register D[63:0]; used to write to and read from the L2
89H	137	BBL_CR_D1[63:0]	Chunk 1 data register D[63:0]; used to write to and read from the L2
8AH	138	BBL_CR_D2[63:0]	Chunk 2 data register D[63:0]; used to write to and read from the L2
8BH	139	BIOS_SIGN/BBL_CR_D3[63:0]	BIOS Update Signature Register or Chunk 3 data register D[63:0] Used to write to and read from the L2 depending on the usage model.
C1H	193	PerfCtr0 (PERFCTR0)	Performance Counter Register See Table 2-2.
C2H	194	PerfCtr1 (PERFCTR1)	Performance Counter Register See Table 2-2.
FEH	254	MTRRcap	Memory Type Range Registers
116H	278	BBL_CR_ADDR [63:0]	Address register: used to send specified address (A31-A3) to L2 during cache initialization accesses.
		BBL_CR_ADDR [63:32]	Reserved,
		BBL_CR_ADDR [31:3]	Address bits [35:3]
		BBL_CR_ADDR [2:0]	Reserved Set to 0.
118H	280	BBL_CR_DECC[63:0]	Data ECC register D[7:0]; used to write ECC and read ECC to/from L2
119H	281	BBL_CR_CTL	Control register: used to program L2 commands to be issued via cache configuration accesses mechanism. Also receives L2 lookup response
		BL_CR_CTL[63:22]	Reserved
		BBL_CR_CTL[21]	Processor number ² Disable = 1 Enable = 0 Reserved

Table 2-50. MSRs in the P6 Family Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Bit Description
Hex	Dec		
		BBL_CR_CTL[20:19] BBL_CR_CTL[18] BBL_CR_CTL[17] BBL_CR_CTL[16] BBL_CR_CTL[15:14] BBL_CR_CTL[13:12] BBL_CR_CTL[11:10] BBL_CR_CTL[9:8] BBL_CR_CTL[7] BBL_CR_CTL[6:5]	User supplied ECC Reserved L2 Hit Reserved State from L2 Modified - 11, Exclusive - 10, Shared - 01, Invalid - 00 Way from L2 Way 0 - 00, Way 1 - 01, Way 2 - 10, Way 3 - 11 Way to L2 Reserved State to L2
		BBL_CR_CTL[4:0] 01100 01110 01111 00010 00011 010 + MESI encode 111 + MESI encode 100 + MESI encode	L2 Command Data Read w/ LRU update (RLU) Tag Read w/ Data Read (TRR) Tag Inquire (TI) L2 Control Register Read (CR) L2 Control Register Write (CW) Tag Write w/ Data Read (TWR) Tag Write w/ Data Write (TWW) Tag Write (TW)
11AH	282	BBL_CR_TRIG	Trigger register: used to initiate a cache configuration accesses access, Write only with Data = 0.
11BH	283	BBL_CR_BUSY	Busy register: indicates when a cache configuration accesses L2 command is in progress. D[0] = 1 = BUSY
11EH	286	BBL_CR_CTL3 BBL_CR_CTL3[63:26] BBL_CR_CTL3[25] BBL_CR_CTL3[24] BBL_CR_CTL3[23] BBL_CR_CTL3[22:20] 111 110 101 100 011 010 001 000 BBL_CR_CTL3[19] BBL_CR_CTL3[18]	Control register 3: used to configure the L2 Cache Reserved Cache bus fraction (read only) Reserved L2 Hardware Disable (read only) L2 Physical Address Range support 64GBytes 32GBytes 16GBytes 8GBytes 4GBytes 2GBytes 1GBytes 512MBytes Reserved Cache State error checking enable (read/write)

Table 2-50. MSRs in the P6 Family Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Bit Description
Hex	Dec		
		BBL_CR_CTL3[17:13] 00001 00010 00100 01000 10000 BBL_CR_CTL3[12:11] BBL_CR_CTL3[10:9] 00 01 10 11 BBL_CR_CTL3[8] BBL_CR_CTL3[7] BBL_CR_CTL3[6] BBL_CR_CTL3[5] BBL_CR_CTL3[4:1] BBL_CR_CTL3[0]	Cache size per bank (read/write) 256KBytes 512KBytes 1MByte 2MByte 4MBytes Number of L2 banks (read only) L2 Associativity (read only) Direct Mapped 2 Way 4 Way Reserved L2 Enabled (read/write) CRTN Parity Check Enable (read/write) Address Parity Check Enable (read/write) ECC Check Enable (read/write) L2 Cache Latency (read/write) L2 Configured (read/write)
174H	372	SYSENTER_CS_MSR	CS register target for CPL 0 code
175H	373	SYSENTER_ESP_MSR	Stack pointer for CPL 0 stack
176H	374	SYSENTER_EIP_MSR	CPL 0 code entry point
179H	377	MCG_CAP	Machine Check Global Control Register
17AH	378	MCG_STATUS	Machine Check Error Reporting Register - contains information related to machine-check error if its VAL (valid) flag is set. Software is responsible for clearing IA32_MCi_STATUS MSRs by explicitly writing 0s to them; writing 1s to them causes a general-protection exception.
17BH	379	MCG_CTL	Machine Check Error Reporting Register - controls signaling of #MC for errors produced by a particular hardware unit (or group of hardware units).
186H	390	PerfEvtSel0 (EVNTSEL0)	Performance Event Select Register 0 (R/W)
		7:0	Event Select Refer to Performance Counter section for a list of event encodings.
		15:8	UMASK (Unit Mask) Unit mask register set to 0 to enable all count options.
		16	USER Controls the counting of events at Privilege levels of 1, 2, and 3.
		17	OS Controls the counting of events at Privilege level of 0.

Table 2-50. MSRs in the P6 Family Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Bit Description
Hex	Dec		
		18	E Occurrence/Duration Mode Select 1 = Occurrence 0 = Duration
		19	PC Enabled the signaling of performance counter overflow via BPO pin
		20	INT Enables the signaling of counter overflow via input to APIC 1 = Enable 0 = Disable
		22	ENABLE Enables the counting of performance events in both counters 1 = Enable 0 = Disable
		23	INV Inverts the result of the CMASK condition 1 = Inverted 0 = Non-Inverted
		31:24	CMASK (Counter Mask)
187H	391	PerfEvtSel1 (EVNTSEL1)	Performance Event Select for Counter 1 (R/W)
		7:0	Event Select Refer to Performance Counter section for a list of event encodings.
		15:8	UMASK (Unit Mask) Unit mask register set to 0 to enable all count options.
		16	USER Controls the counting of events at Privilege levels of 1, 2, and 3.
		17	OS Controls the counting of events at Privilege level of 0.
		18	E Occurrence/Duration Mode Select. 1 = Occurrence 0 = Duration
		19	PC Enabled the signaling of performance counter overflow via BPO pin.

Table 2-50. MSRs in the P6 Family Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Bit Description
Hex	Dec		
		20	INT Enables the signaling of counter overflow via input to APIC. 1 = Enable 0 = Disable
		23	INV Inverts the result of the CMASK condition. 1 = Inverted 0 = Non-Inverted
		31:24	CMASK (Counter Mask)
1D9H	473	DEBUGCTLMR	Enables last branch, interrupt, and exception recording; taken branch breakpoints; the breakpoint reporting pins; and trace messages. This register can be written to using the WRMSR instruction, when operating at privilege level 0 or when in real-address mode.
		0	Enable/Disable Last Branch Records
		1	Branch Trap Flag
		2	Performance Monitoring/Break Point Pins
		3	Performance Monitoring/Break Point Pins
		4	Performance Monitoring/Break Point Pins
		5	Performance Monitoring/Break Point Pins
		6	Enable/Disable Execution Trace Messages
		31:7	Reserved
1DBH	475	LASTBRANCHFROMIP	32-bit register for recording the instruction pointers for the last branch, interrupt, or exception that the processor took prior to a debug exception being generated.
1DCH	476	LASTBRANCHTOIP	32-bit register for recording the instruction pointers for the last branch, interrupt, or exception that the processor took prior to a debug exception being generated.
1DDH	477	LASTINTFROMIP	Last INT from IP
1DEH	478	LASTINTTOIP	Last INT to IP
200H	512	MTRRphysBase0	Memory Type Range Registers
201H	513	MTRRphysMask0	Memory Type Range Registers
202H	514	MTRRphysBase1	Memory Type Range Registers
203H	515	MTRRphysMask1	Memory Type Range Registers
204H	516	MTRRphysBase2	Memory Type Range Registers
205H	517	MTRRphysMask2	Memory Type Range Registers
206H	518	MTRRphysBase3	Memory Type Range Registers
207H	519	MTRRphysMask3	Memory Type Range Registers
208H	520	MTRRphysBase4	Memory Type Range Registers
209H	521	MTRRphysMask4	Memory Type Range Registers
20AH	522	MTRRphysBase5	Memory Type Range Registers

Table 2-50. MSRs in the P6 Family Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Bit Description
Hex	Dec		
20BH	523	MTRRphysMask5	Memory Type Range Registers
20CH	524	MTRRphysBase6	Memory Type Range Registers
20DH	525	MTRRphysMask6	Memory Type Range Registers
20EH	526	MTRRphysBase7	Memory Type Range Registers
20FH	527	MTRRphysMask7	Memory Type Range Registers
250H	592	MTRRfix64K_00000	Memory Type Range Registers
258H	600	MTRRfix16K_80000	Memory Type Range Registers
259H	601	MTRRfix16K_A0000	Memory Type Range Registers
268H	616	MTRRfix4K_C0000	Memory Type Range Registers
269H	617	MTRRfix4K_C8000	Memory Type Range Registers
26AH	618	MTRRfix4K_D0000	Memory Type Range Registers
26BH	619	MTRRfix4K_D8000	Memory Type Range Registers
26CH	620	MTRRfix4K_E0000	Memory Type Range Registers
26DH	621	MTRRfix4K_E8000	Memory Type Range Registers
26EH	622	MTRRfix4K_F0000	Memory Type Range Registers
26FH	623	MTRRfix4K_F8000	Memory Type Range Registers
2FFH	767	MTRRdefType	Memory Type Range Registers
		2:0	Default memory type
		10	Fixed MTRR enable
		11	MTRR Enable
400H	1024	MCO_CTL	Machine Check Error Reporting Register - controls signaling of #MC for errors produced by a particular hardware unit (or group of hardware units).
401H	1025	MCO_STATUS	Machine Check Error Reporting Register - contains information related to a machine-check error if its VAL (valid) flag is set. Software is responsible for clearing IA32_MCI_STATUS MSRs by explicitly writing 0s to them; writing 1s to them causes a general-protection exception.
		15:0	MC_STATUS_MCACOD
		31:16	MC_STATUS_MSCOD
		57	MC_STATUS_DAM
		58	MC_STATUS_ADDRV
		59	MC_STATUS_MISCV
		60	MC_STATUS_EN. (Note: For MCO_STATUS only, this bit is hardcoded to 1.)
		61	MC_STATUS_UC
		62	MC_STATUS_O
63	MC_STATUS_V		
402H	1026	MCO_ADDR	
403H	1027	MCO_MISC	Defined in MCA architecture but not implemented in the P6 family processors.

Table 2-50. MSRs in the P6 Family Processors (Contd.)

Register Address		Register Name / Bit Fields	Bit Description
Hex	Dec		
404H	1028	MC1_CTL	
405H	1029	MC1_STATUS	Bit definitions same as MCO_STATUS.
406H	1030	MC1_ADDR	
407H	1031	MC1_MISC	Defined in MCA architecture but not implemented in the P6 family processors.
408H	1032	MC2_CTL	
409H	1033	MC2_STATUS	Bit definitions same as MCO_STATUS.
40AH	1034	MC2_ADDR	
40BH	1035	MC2_MISC	Defined in MCA architecture but not implemented in the P6 family processors.
40CH	1036	MC4_CTL	
40DH	1037	MC4_STATUS	Bit definitions same as MCO_STATUS, except bits 0, 4, 57, and 61 are hardcoded to 1.
40EH	1038	MC4_ADDR	Defined in MCA architecture but not implemented in P6 Family processors.
40FH	1039	MC4_MISC	Defined in MCA architecture but not implemented in the P6 family processors.
410H	1040	MC3_CTL	
411H	1041	MC3_STATUS	Bit definitions same as MCO_STATUS.
412H	1042	MC3_ADDR	
413H	1043	MC3_MISC	Defined in MCA architecture but not implemented in the P6 family processors.

NOTES

1. Bit 0 of this register has been redefined several times, and is no longer used in P6 family processors.
2. The processor number feature may be disabled by setting bit 21 of the BBL_CR_CTL MSR (model-specific register address 119h) to "1". Once set, bit 21 of the BBL_CR_CTL may not be cleared. This bit is write-once. The processor number feature will be disabled until the processor is reset.
3. The Pentium III processor will prevent FSB frequency overclocking with a new shutdown mechanism. If the FSB frequency selected is greater than the internal FSB frequency the processor will shutdown. If the FSB selected is less than the internal FSB frequency the BIOS may choose to use bit 11 to implement its own shutdown policy.

2.22 MSRS IN PENTIUM PROCESSORS

The following MSRs are defined for the Pentium processors. The P5_MC_ADDR, P5_MC_TYPE, and TSC MSRs (named IA32_P5_MC_ADDR, IA32_P5_MC_TYPE, and IA32_TIME_STAMP_COUNTER in the Pentium 4 processor) are architectural; that is, code that accesses these registers will run on Pentium 4 and P6 family processors without generating exceptions (see Section 2.1, "Architectural MSRs"). The CESR, CTR0, and CTR1 MSRs are unique to Pentium processors; code that accesses these registers will generate exceptions on Pentium 4 and P6 family processors.

Table 2-51. MSRs in the Pentium Processor

Register Address		Register Name	Bit Description
Hex	Dec		
0H	0	P5_MC_ADDR	See Section 15.10.2, "Pentium Processor Machine-Check Exception Handling."
1H	1	P5_MC_TYPE	See Section 15.10.2, "Pentium Processor Machine-Check Exception Handling."
10H	16	TSC	See Section 17.17, "Time-Stamp Counter."
11H	17	CESR	See Section 18.6.9.1, "Control and Event Select Register (CESR)."
12H	18	CTRO	Section 18.6.9.3, "Events Counted."
13H	19	CTR1	Section 18.6.9.3, "Events Counted."

2.23 MSR INDEX

MSRs of recent processors are indexed here for convenience. IA32 MSRs are excluded from this index.

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
MSR_ALF_ESCR0	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_ALF_ESCR1	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_ANY_CORE_C0	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_ANY_GFXE_C0	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_BO_PMON_BOX_CTRL	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_BO_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_BO_PMON_BOX_STATUS	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_BO_PMON_CTRO	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_BO_PMON_CTR1	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_BO_PMON_CTR2	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_BO_PMON_CTR3	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_BO_PMON_EVNT_SELO	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_BO_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
MSR_BO_PMON_EVNT_SEL2 06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_BO_PMON_EVNT_SEL3 06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_BO_PMON_MASK 06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_BO_PMON_MATCH 06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_B1_PMON_BOX_CTRL 06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_B1_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL 06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_B1_PMON_BOX_STATUS 06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_B1_PMON_CTRL0 06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_B1_PMON_CTRL1 06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_B1_PMON_CTRL2 06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_B1_PMON_CTRL3 06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_B1_PMON_EVNT_SELO 06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_B1_PMON_EVNT_SEL1 06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_B1_PMON_EVNT_SEL2 06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_B1_PMON_EVNT_SEL3 06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_B1_PMON_MASK 06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_B1_PMON_MATCH 06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_BBL_CR_CTL 06_09H	See Table 2-49
MSR_BBL_CR_CTL3 06_0FH, 06_17H	See Table 2-3
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H	See Table 2-4
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH	See Table 2-7
06_0EH	See Table 2-48
06_09H	See Table 2-49

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
MSR_BPU_CCCR0 OFH	See Table 2-45
MSR_BPU_CCCR1 OFH	See Table 2-45
MSR_BPU_CCCR2 OFH	See Table 2-45
MSR_BPU_CCCR3 OFH	See Table 2-45
MSR_BPU_COUNTER0 OFH	See Table 2-45
MSR_BPU_COUNTER1 OFH	See Table 2-45
MSR_BPU_COUNTER2 OFH	See Table 2-45
MSR_BPU_COUNTER3 OFH	See Table 2-45
MSR_BPU_ESCR0 OFH	See Table 2-45
MSR_BPU_ESCR1 OFH	See Table 2-45
MSR_BR_DETECT_COUNTER_CONFIG_j 06_66H.....	See Table 2-41
MSR_BR_DETECT_CTRL 06_66H.....	See Table 2-41
MSR_BR_DETECT_STATUS 06_66H.....	See Table 2-41
MSR_BSU_ESCR0 OFH	See Table 2-45
MSR_BSU_ESCR1 OFH	See Table 2-45
MSR_CO_PMON_BOX_CTRL 06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_CO_PMON_BOX_FILTER 06_2DH	See Table 2-23
MSR_CO_PMON_BOX_FILTER0 06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_CO_PMON_BOX_FILTER1 06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_CO_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_CO_PMON_BOX_STATUS	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_CO_PMON_CTR0	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_CO_PMON_CTR1	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_CO_PMON_CTR2	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_CO_PMON_CTR3	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_CO_PMON_CTR4	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_CO_PMON_CTR5	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_CO_PMON_EVNT_SELO	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_CO_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_CO_PMON_CTR1	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_CO_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_CO_PMON_CTR2	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_CO_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_CO_PMON_EVNT_SEL4	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_CO_PMON_EVNT_SEL5	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C1_PMON_BOX_CTRL	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C1_PMON_BOX_FILTER	
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
MSR_C1_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C1_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C1_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C1_PMON_BOX_STATUS	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C1_PMON_CTRL0	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C1_PMON_CTRL1	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C1_PMON_CTRL2	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C1_PMON_CTRL3	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
MSR_C1_PMON_CTR4	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C1_PMON_CTR5	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C1_PMON_EVNT_SEL0	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C1_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C1_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C1_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C1_PMON_EVNT_SEL4	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C1_PMON_EVNT_SEL5	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C10_PMON_BOX_FILTER	
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
MSR_C10_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C10_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C11_PMON_BOX_FILTER	
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
MSR_C11_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C11_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C12_PMON_BOX_FILTER	
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
MSR_C12_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	
06_3FH	See Table 2-32

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
MSR_C12_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C13_PMON_BOX_FILTER	
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
MSR_C13_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C13_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C14_PMON_BOX_FILTER	
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
MSR_C14_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C14_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C15_PMON_BOX_CTL	
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C15_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C15_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C15_PMON_BOX_STATUS	
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C15_PMON_CTR0	
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C15_PMON_CTR1	
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C15_PMON_CTR2	
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C15_PMON_CTR3	
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C15_PMON_EVNTSELO	
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C15_PMON_EVNTSEL1	
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C15_PMON_EVNTSEL2	
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C15_PMON_EVNTSEL3	
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C16_PMON_BOX_CTL	

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
MSR_C16_PMON_BOX_FILTER0 06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C16_PMON_BOX_FILTER1 06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C16_PMON_BOX_STATUS 06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C16_PMON_CTR0 06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C16_PMON_CTR3 06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C16_PMON_CTR2 06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C16_PMON_CTR3 06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C16_PMON_EVNTSELO 06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C16_PMON_EVNTSEL1 06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C16_PMON_EVNTSEL2 06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C16_PMON_EVNTSEL3 06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C17_PMON_BOX_CTL 06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C17_PMON_BOX_FILTER0 06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C17_PMON_BOX_FILTER1 06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C17_PMON_BOX_STATUS 06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C17_PMON_CTR0 06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C17_PMON_CTR1 06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C17_PMON_CTR2 06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C17_PMON_CTR3 06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C17_PMON_EVNTSELO 06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C17_PMON_EVNTSEL1 06_3FH	See Table 2-32

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C17_PMON_EVNTSEL2	
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C17_PMON_EVNTSEL3	
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C2_PMON_BOX_CTRL	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C2_PMON_BOX_FILTER	
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
MSR_C2_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C2_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C2_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C2_PMON_BOX_STATUS	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C2_PMON_CTRL0	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C2_PMON_CTRL1	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C2_PMON_CTRL2	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C2_PMON_CTRL3	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C2_PMON_CTRL4	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C2_PMON_CTRL5	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C2_PMON_EVNT_SELO	

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C2_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C2_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C2_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C2_PMON_EVNT_SEL4	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C2_PMON_EVNT_SEL5	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C3_PMON_BOX_CTRL	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C3_PMON_BOX_FILTER	
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
MSR_C3_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C3_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C3_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C3_PMON_BOX_STATUS	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C3_PMON_CTRL0	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C3_PMON_CTRL1	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C3_PMON_CTR2	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C3_PMON_CTR3	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C3_PMON_CTR4	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C3_PMON_CTR5	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C3_PMON_EVNT_SEL0	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C3_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C3_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C3_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C3_PMON_EVNT_SEL4	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C3_PMON_EVNT_SEL5	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C4_PMON_BOX_CTRL	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C4_PMON_BOX_FILTER	
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
MSR_C4_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C4_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C4_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C4_PMON_BOX_STATUS	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C4_PMON_CTRL0	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C4_PMON_CTRL1	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C4_PMON_CTRL2	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C4_PMON_CTRL3	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C4_PMON_CTRL4	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C4_PMON_CTRL5	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C4_PMON_EVNT_SELO	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C4_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C4_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C4_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C4_PMON_EVNT_SEL4	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C4_PMON_EVNT_SEL5	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C5_PMON_BOX_CTRL	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C5_PMON_BOX_FILTER	
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
MSR_C5_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C5_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C5_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C5_PMON_BOX_STATUS	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C5_PMON_CTRL0	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C5_PMON_CTRL1	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C5_PMON_CTRL2	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C5_PMON_CTRL3	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C5_PMON_CTRL4	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C5_PMON_CTRL5	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C5_PMON_EVNT_SELO	

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C5_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C5_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C5_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C5_PMON_EVNT_SEL4	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C5_PMON_EVNT_SEL5	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C6_PMON_BOX_CTRL	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C6_PMON_BOX_FILTER	
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
MSR_C6_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C6_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C6_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C6_PMON_BOX_STATUS	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C6_PMON_CTRL0	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C6_PMON_CTRL1	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C6_PMON_CTR2	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C6_PMON_CTR3	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C6_PMON_CTR4	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C6_PMON_CTR5	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C6_PMON_EVNT_SELO	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C6_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C6_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C6_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C6_PMON_EVNT_SEL4	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C6_PMON_EVNT_SEL5	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C7_PMON_BOX_CTRL	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C7_PMON_BOX_FILTER	
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
MSR_C7_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C7_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C7_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C7_PMON_BOX_STATUS	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C7_PMON_CTRL0	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C7_PMON_CTRL1	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C7_PMON_CTRL2	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C7_PMON_CTRL3	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C7_PMON_CTRL4	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C7_PMON_CTRL5	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C7_PMON_EVNT_SELO	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C7_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C7_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C7_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
06_2DH	See Table 2-23

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C7_PMON_EVNT_SEL4	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C7_PMON_EVNT_SEL5	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_C8_PMON_BOX_CTRL	
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C8_PMON_BOX_FILTER	
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
MSR_C8_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C8_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C8_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
MSR_C8_PMON_BOX_STATUS	
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C8_PMON_CTRL0	
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C8_PMON_CTRL1	
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C8_PMON_CTRL2	
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C8_PMON_CTRL3	
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C8_PMON_CTRL4	
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
MSR_C8_PMON_CTRL5	
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
MSR_C8_PMON_EVNT_SELO	

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C8_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C8_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C8_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C8_PMON_EVNT_SEL4	
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
MSR_C8_PMON_EVNT_SEL5	
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
MSR_C9_PMON_BOX_CTRL	
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C9_PMON_BOX_FILTER	
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
MSR_C9_PMON_BOX_FILTER0	
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C9_PMON_BOX_FILTER1	
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C9_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
MSR_C9_PMON_BOX_STATUS	
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C9_PMON_CTRL0	
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C9_PMON_CTRL1	
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
06_3EH	See Table 2-27

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C9_PMON_CTR2	
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C9_PMON_CTR3	
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C9_PMON_CTR4	
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
MSR_C9_PMON_CTR5	
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
MSR_C9_PMON_EVNT_SELO	
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C9_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C9_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C9_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
06_3EH	See Table 2-27
06_3FH	See Table 2-32
MSR_C9_PMON_EVNT_SEL4	
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
MSR_C9_PMON_EVNT_SEL5	
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
MSR_CC6_DEMOTION_POLICY_CONFIG	
06_37H	See Table 2-9
MSR_CONFIG_TDP_CONTROL	
06_3AH	See Table 2-24
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-28
06_57H	See Table 2-43
MSR_CONFIG_TDP_LEVEL1	
06_3AH	See Table 2-24
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-28

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_57H	See Table 2-43
MSR_CONFIG_TDP_LEVEL2	
06_3AH	See Table 2-24
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-28
06_57H	See Table 2-43
MSR_CONFIG_TDP_NOMINAL	
06_3AH	See Table 2-24
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-28
06_57H	See Table 2-43
MSR_CORE_C1_RESIDENCY	
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH, 06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-6
06_66H	See Table 2-41
MSR_CORE_C3_RESIDENCY	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH, 06_25H, 06_2CH, 06_2FH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH, 06_3AH, 06_3CH, 06_3EH, 06_3FH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-19
MSR_CORE_C6_RESIDENCY	
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH, 06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-6
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH, 06_25H, 06_2CH, 06_2FH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH, 06_3AH, 06_3CH, 06_3EH, 06_3FH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-19
06_57H	See Table 2-43
MSR_CORE_C7_RESIDENCY	
06_2AH, 06_2DH, 06_3AH, 06_3CH, 06_3EH, 06_3FH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-19
MSR_CORE_GFXE_OVERLAP_CO	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_CORE_HDC_RESIDENCY	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_CORE_PERF_LIMIT_REASONS	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-29
06_3F	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH	See Table 2-35
06_57H	See Table 2-43
MSR_CORE_THREAD_COUNT	
06_3FH	See Table 2-31
MSR_CRU_ESCR0	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_CRU_ESCR1	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_CRU_ESCR2	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_CRU_ESCR3	

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_CRU_ESCR4	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_CRU_ESCR5	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_DAC_ESCR0	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_DAC_ESCR1	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_DRAM_ENERGY_STATUS	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_2DH	See Table 2-22
06_3EH, 06_3FH	See Table 2-25
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-28
06_3F	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH	See Table 2-35
06_57H	See Table 2-43
MSR_DRAM_PERF_STATUS	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_2DH	See Table 2-22
06_3EH, 06_3FH	See Table 2-25
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-28
06_3F	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH	See Table 2-35
06_57H	See Table 2-43
MSR_DRAM_POWER_INFO	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_2DH	See Table 2-22
06_3EH, 06_3FH	See Table 2-25
06_3F	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH	See Table 2-35
06_57H	See Table 2-43
MSR_DRAM_POWER_LIMIT	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_2DH	See Table 2-22
06_3EH, 06_3FH	See Table 2-25
06_3F	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH	See Table 2-35
06_57H	See Table 2-43
MSR_EBC_FREQUENCY_ID	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_EBC_HARD_POWERON	

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_EBC_SOFT_POWERON	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_EBL_CR_POWERON	
06_0FH, 06_17H	See Table 2-3
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H	See Table 2-4
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH, 06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-6
06_0EH	See Table 2-48
06_09H	See Table 2-49
MSR_EFSB_DRDY0	
0F_03H, 0F_04H	See Table 2-46
MSR_EFSB_DRDY1	
0F_03H, 0F_04H	See Table 2-46
MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL0	
06_0FH, 06_17H	See Table 2-3
0F_06H	See Table 2-47
MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL1	
06_0FH, 06_17H	See Table 2-3
0F_06H	See Table 2-47
MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL2	
06_0FH, 06_17H	See Table 2-3
0F_06H	See Table 2-47
MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL3	
06_0FH, 06_17H	See Table 2-3
0F_06H	See Table 2-47
MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL4	
06_0FH, 06_17H	See Table 2-3
0F_06H	See Table 2-47
MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL5	
06_0FH, 06_17H	See Table 2-3
0F_06H	See Table 2-47
MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL6	
06_0FH, 06_17H	See Table 2-3
0F_06H	See Table 2-47
MSR_EMON_L3_CTR_CTL7	
06_0FH, 06_17H	See Table 2-3
0F_06H	See Table 2-47
MSR_EMON_L3_GL_CTL	
06_0FH, 06_17H	See Table 2-3
MSR_ERROR_CONTROL	
06_2DH	See Table 2-22
06_3EH	See Table 2-25

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_3F	See Table 2-31
MSR_FEATURE_CONFIG	
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH, 06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-6
06_25H, 06_2CH	See Table 2-17
06_2FH	See Table 2-18
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
06_57H	See Table 2-43
MSR_FIRM_ESCR0	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_FIRM_ESCR1	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_FLAME_CCCR0	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_FLAME_CCCR1	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_FLAME_CCCR2	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_FLAME_CCCR3	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_FLAME_COUNTER0	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_FLAME_COUNTER1	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_FLAME_COUNTER2	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_FLAME_COUNTER3	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_FLAME_ESCR0	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_FLAME_ESCR1	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_FSB_ESCR0	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_FSB_ESCR1	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_FSB_FREQ	
06_0FH, 06_17H	See Table 2-3
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H	See Table 2-4
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH	See Table 2-7
06_4CH	See Table 2-11
06_0EH	See Table 2-48
MSR_GQ_SNOOP_MESF	

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_25H, 06_2CH	See Table 2-15
MSR_GRAPHICS_PERF_LIMIT_REASONS	
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-29
MSR_IFSB_BUSQ0	
0F_03H, 0F_04H	See Table 2-46
MSR_IFSB_BUSQ1	
0F_03H, 0F_04H	See Table 2-46
MSR_IFSB_CNTR7	
0F_03H, 0F_04H	See Table 2-46
MSR_IFSB_CTL6	
0F_03H, 0F_04H	See Table 2-46
MSR_IFSB_SNPQ0	
0F_03H, 0F_04H	See Table 2-46
MSR_IFSB_SNPQ1	
0F_03H, 0F_04H	See Table 2-46
MSR_IQ_CCCRO	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_IQ_CCCR1	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_IQ_CCCR2	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_IQ_CCCR3	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_IQ_CCCR4	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_IQ_CCCR5	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_IQ_COUNTER0	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_IQ_COUNTER1	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_IQ_COUNTER2	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_IQ_COUNTER3	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_IQ_COUNTER4	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_IQ_COUNTER5	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_IQ_ESCR0	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_IQ_ESCR1	

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_IS_ESCR0	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_IS_ESCR1	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_ITLB_ESCR0	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_ITLB_ESCR1	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_IX_ESCR0	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_IX_ESCR1	
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_0	
0FH	See Table 2-45
06_0EH	See Table 2-48
06_09H	See Table 2-49
MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_FROM_IP	
06_0FH, 06_17H	See Table 2-3
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H	See Table 2-4
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH	See Table 2-7
06_5CH	See Table 2-12
06_7AH	See Table 2-13
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_0_TO_IP	
06_0FH, 06_17H	See Table 2-3
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H	See Table 2-4
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH	See Table 2-7
06_5CH	See Table 2-12
06_7AH	See Table 2-13
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_1_FROM_IP	
06_0FH, 06_17H	See Table 2-3
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H	See Table 2-4
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH	See Table 2-7
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_1_TO_IP	
06_0FH, 06_17H	See Table 2-3
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H	See Table 2-4
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH	See Table 2-7
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_10_FROM_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_10_TO_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_11_FROM_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_11_TO_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_12_FROM_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_12_TO_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_13_FROM_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_13_TO_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_14_FROM_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_14_TO_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_15_FROM_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_15_TO_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_16_FROM_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_16_TO_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_17_FROM_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_17_TO_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_18_FROM_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
MSR_LASTBRANCH_18_TO_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_19_FROM_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_19_TO_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_2	
0FH	See Table 2-45
06_0EH	See Table 2-48
06_09H	See Table 2-49
MSR_LASTBRANCH_2_FROM_IP	
06_0FH, 06_17H	See Table 2-3
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H	See Table 2-4
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH	See Table 2-7
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_2_TO_IP	
06_0FH, 06_17H	See Table 2-3
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H	See Table 2-4
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH	See Table 2-7
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_20_FROM_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_20_TO_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_21_FROM_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_21_TO_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_22_FROM_IP	

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_22_TO_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_23_FROM_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_23_TO_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_24_FROM_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_24_TO_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_25_FROM_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_25_TO_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_26_FROM_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_26_TO_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_27_FROM_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_27_TO_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_28_FROM_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_28_TO_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_29_FROM_IP	

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_29_TO_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_3	
0FH	See Table 2-45
06_0EH	See Table 2-48
06_09H	See Table 2-49
MSR_LASTBRANCH_3_FROM_IP	
06_0FH, 06_17H	See Table 2-3
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H	See Table 2-4
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH	See Table 2-7
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_3_TO_IP	
06_0FH, 06_17H	See Table 2-3
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H	See Table 2-4
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH	See Table 2-7
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_30_FROM_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_30_TO_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_31_FROM_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_31_TO_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_LASTBRANCH_4	
06_0EH	See Table 2-48
06_09H	See Table 2-49
MSR_LASTBRANCH_4_FROM_IP	
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H	See Table 2-4

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH	See Table 2-7
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_4_TO_IP	
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H	See Table 2-4
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH	See Table 2-7
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_5	
06_0EH	See Table 2-48
06_09H	See Table 2-49
MSR_LASTBRANCH_5_FROM_IP	
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H	See Table 2-4
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH	See Table 2-7
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_5_TO_IP	
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H	See Table 2-4
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH	See Table 2-7
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_6	
06_0EH	See Table 2-48
06_09H	See Table 2-49
MSR_LASTBRANCH_6_FROM_IP	
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H	See Table 2-4
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH	See Table 2-7
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_6_TO_IP	
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H	See Table 2-4
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH	See Table 2-7

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_7	
06_0EH	See Table 2-48
06_09H	See Table 2-49
MSR_LASTBRANCH_7_FROM_IP	
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H	See Table 2-4
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH	See Table 2-7
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_7_TO_IP	
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H	See Table 2-4
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH	See Table 2-7
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_8_FROM_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_8_TO_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_9_FROM_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_9_TO_IP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
0FH	See Table 2-45
MSR_LASTBRANCH_TOS	

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_0FH, 06_17H	See Table 2-3
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H	See Table 2-4
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH	See Table 2-7
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
06_57H	See Table 2-43
06_0EH	See Table 2-48
06_09H	See Table 2-49
MSR_LASTBRANCH_INFO_0	
06_7AH	See Table 2-13
MSR_LBR_INFO_1	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
06_7AH	See Table 2-13
MSR_LBR_INFO_10	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
06_7AH	See Table 2-13
MSR_LBR_INFO_11	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
06_7AH	See Table 2-13
MSR_LBR_INFO_12	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
06_7AH	See Table 2-13
MSR_LBR_INFO_13	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
06_7AH	See Table 2-13
MSR_LBR_INFO_14	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
06_7AH	See Table 2-13
MSR_LBR_INFO_15	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
06_7AH	See Table 2-13
MSR_LBR_INFO_16	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
06_7AH	See Table 2-13
MSR_LBR_INFO_17	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
06_7AH	See Table 2-13
MSR_LBR_INFO_18	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
06_7AH	See Table 2-13

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
MSR_LBR_INFO_19	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H.....	See Table 2-38
06_7AH.....	See Table 2-13
MSR_LBR_INFO_2	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H.....	See Table 2-38
06_7AH.....	See Table 2-13
MSR_LBR_INFO_20	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H.....	See Table 2-38
06_7AH.....	See Table 2-13
MSR_LBR_INFO_21	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H.....	See Table 2-38
06_7AH.....	See Table 2-13
MSR_LBR_INFO_22	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H.....	See Table 2-38
06_7AH.....	See Table 2-13
MSR_LBR_INFO_23	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H.....	See Table 2-38
06_7AH.....	See Table 2-13
MSR_LBR_INFO_24	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H.....	See Table 2-38
06_7AH.....	See Table 2-13
MSR_LBR_INFO_25	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H.....	See Table 2-38
06_7AH.....	See Table 2-13
MSR_LBR_INFO_26	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H.....	See Table 2-38
06_7AH.....	See Table 2-13
MSR_LBR_INFO_27	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H.....	See Table 2-38
06_7AH.....	See Table 2-13
MSR_LBR_INFO_28	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H.....	See Table 2-38
06_7AH.....	See Table 2-13
MSR_LBR_INFO_29	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H.....	See Table 2-38
06_7AH.....	See Table 2-13
MSR_LBR_INFO_3	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H.....	See Table 2-38
06_7AH.....	See Table 2-13
MSR_LBR_INFO_30	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H.....	See Table 2-38
06_7AH.....	See Table 2-13

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
MSR_LBR_INFO_31	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H.....	See Table 2-38
06_7AH.....	See Table 2-13
MSR_LBR_INFO_4	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H.....	See Table 2-38
06_7AH.....	See Table 2-13
MSR_LBR_INFO_5	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H.....	See Table 2-38
06_7AH.....	See Table 2-13
MSR_LBR_INFO_6	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H.....	See Table 2-38
06_7AH.....	See Table 2-13
MSR_LBR_INFO_7	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H.....	See Table 2-38
06_7AH.....	See Table 2-13
MSR_LBR_INFO_8	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H.....	See Table 2-38
06_7AH.....	See Table 2-13
MSR_LBR_INFO_9	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H.....	See Table 2-38
06_7AH.....	See Table 2-13
MSR_LBR_SELECT	
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH.....	See Table 2-7
06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH.....	See Table 2-19
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H.....	See Table 2-28
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
MSR_LER_FROM_LIP	
06_0FH, 06_17H.....	See Table 2-3
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H.....	See Table 2-4
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH, 06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-6
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH.....	See Table 2-19
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
06_0EH.....	See Table 2-48
06_09H.....	See Table 2-49
MSR_LER_TO_LIP	
06_0FH, 06_17H.....	See Table 2-3
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H.....	See Table 2-4
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH, 06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-6

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH	See Table 2-19
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
06_0EH.....	See Table 2-48
06_09H.....	See Table 2-49
MSR_MO_PMON_ADDR_MASK	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_MO_PMON_ADDR_MATCH	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_MO_PMON_BOX_CTRL	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_MO_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_MO_PMON_BOX_STATUS	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_MO_PMON_CTRL0	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_MO_PMON_CTRL1	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_MO_PMON_CTRL2	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_MO_PMON_CTRL3	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_MO_PMON_CTRL4	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_MO_PMON_CTRL5	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_MO_PMON_DSP	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_MO_PMON_EVNT_SELO	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_MO_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_MO_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_MO_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_MO_PMON_EVNT_SEL4	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_MO_PMON_EVNT_SEL5	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
MSR_M0_PMON_ISS 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M0_PMON_MAP 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M0_PMON_MM_CONFIG 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M0_PMON_MSC_THR 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M0_PMON_PGT 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M0_PMON_PLD 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M0_PMON_TIMESTAMP 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M0_PMON_ZDP 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M1_PMON_ADDR_MASK 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M1_PMON_ADDR_MATCH 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M1_PMON_BOX_CTRL 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M1_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M1_PMON_BOX_STATUS 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M1_PMON_CTR0 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M1_PMON_CTR1 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M1_PMON_CTR2 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M1_PMON_CTR3 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M1_PMON_CTR4 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M1_PMON_CTR5 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M1_PMON_DSP 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M1_PMON_EVNT_SELO 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
MSR_M1_PMON_EVNT_SEL1 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M1_PMON_EVNT_SEL2 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M1_PMON_EVNT_SEL3 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M1_PMON_EVNT_SEL4 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M1_PMON_EVNT_SEL5 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M1_PMON_ISS 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M1_PMON_MAP 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M1_PMON_MM_CONFIG 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M1_PMON_MSC_THR 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M1_PMON_PGT 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M1_PMON_PLD 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M1_PMON_TIMESTAMP 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_M1_PMON_ZDP 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
IA32_MCO_MISC / MSR_MCO_MISC 06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
MSR_MCO_RESIDENCY 06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
IA32_MC1_MISC / MSR_MC1_MISC 06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
IA32_MC10_ADDR / MSR_MC10_ADDR 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-36
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC10_CTL / MSR_MC10_CTL 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-36
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC10_MISC / MSR_MC10_MISC	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-36
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC10_STATUS / MSR_MC10_STATUS	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-36
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC11_ADDR / MSR_MC11_ADDR	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC11_CTL / MSR_MC11_CTL	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC11_MISC / MSR_MC11_MISC	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC11_STATUS / MSR_MC11_STATUS	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
IA32_MC12_ADDR / MSR_MC12_ADDR	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC12_CTL / MSR_MC12_CTL	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC12_MISC / MSR_MC12_MISC	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC12_STATUS / MSR_MC12_STATUS	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC13_ADDR / MSR_MC13_ADDR	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC13_CTL / MSR_MC13_CTL	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC13_MISC / MSR_MC13_MISC	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
IA32_MC13_STATUS / MSR_MC13_STATUS	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC14_ADDR / MSR_MC14_ADDR	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC14_CTL / MSR_MC14_CTL	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC14_MISC / MSR_MC14_MISC	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC14_STATUS / MSR_MC14_STATUS	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC15_ADDR / MSR_MC15_ADDR	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC15_CTL / MSR_MC15_CTL	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
IA32_MC15_MISC / MSR_MC15_MISC	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC15_STATUS / MSR_MC15_STATUS	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC16_ADDR / MSR_MC16_ADDR	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC16_CTL / MSR_MC16_CTL	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC16_MISC / MSR_MC16_MISC	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC16_STATUS / MSR_MC16_STATUS	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC17_ADDR / MSR_MC17_ADDR	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-36

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC17_CTL / MSR_MC17_CTL	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-36
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC17_MISC / MSR_MC17_MISC	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-36
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC17_STATUS / MSR_MC17_STATUS	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-36
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC18_ADDR / MSR_MC18_ADDR	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-36
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC18_CTL / MSR_MC18_CTL	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-36
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC18_MISC / MSR_MC18_MISC	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-36

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC18_STATUS / MSR_MC18_STATUS	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-36
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC19_ADDR / MSR_MC19_ADDR	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-36
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC19_CTL / MSR_MC19_CTL	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-36
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC19_MISC / MSR_MC19_MISC	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-36
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC19_STATUS / MSR_MC19_STATUS	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-36
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC2_MISC / MSR_MC2_MISC	
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
IA32_MC20_ADDR / MSR_MC20_ADDR	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC20_CTL / MSR_MC20_CTL	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC20_MISC / MSR_MC20_MISC	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC20_STATUS / MSR_MC20_STATUS	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC21_ADDR / MSR_MC21_ADDR	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4F.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC21_CTL / MSR_MC21_CTL	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4F.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC21_MISC / MSR_MC21_MISC	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4F.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC21_STATUS / MSR_MC21_STATUS	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4F.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC22_ADDR / MSR_MC22_ADDR	
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
IA32_MC22_CTL / MSR_MC22_CTL	
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
IA32_MC22_MISC / MSR_MC22_MISC	
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
IA32_MC22_STATUS / MSR_MC22_STATUS 06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
IA32_MC23_ADDR / MSR_MC23_ADDR 06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
IA32_MC23_CTL / MSR_MC23_CTL 06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
IA32_MC23_MISC / MSR_MC23_MISC 06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
IA32_MC23_STATUS / MSR_MC23_STATUS 06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
IA32_MC24_ADDR / MSR_MC24_ADDR 06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
IA32_MC24_CTL / MSR_MC24_CTL 06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
IA32_MC24_MISC / MSR_MC24_MISC 06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
IA32_MC24_STATUS / MSR_MC24_STATUS 06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
IA32_MC25_ADDR / MSR_MC25_ADDR 06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
IA32_MC25_CTL / MSR_MC25_CTL 06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
IA32_MC25_MISC / MSR_MC25_MISC 06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
IA32_MC25_STATUS / MSR_MC25_STATUS 06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
IA32_MC26_ADDR / MSR_MC26_ADDR 06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
IA32_MC26_CTL / MSR_MC26_CTL 06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
IA32_MC26_MISC / MSR_MC26_MISC 06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
IA32_MC26_STATUS / MSR_MC26_STATUS 06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
IA32_MC27_ADDR / MSR_MC27_ADDR 06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
IA32_MC27_CTL / MSR_MC27_CTL 06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
IA32_MC27_MISC / MSR_MC27_MISC 06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
IA32_MC27_STATUS / MSR_MC27_STATUS 06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
IA32_MC28_ADDR / MSR_MC28_ADDR	
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
IA32_MC28_CTL / MSR_MC28_CTL	
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
IA32_MC28_MISC / MSR_MC28_MISC	
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
IA32_MC28_STATUS / MSR_MC28_STATUS	
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
IA32_MC29_ADDR / MSR_MC29_ADDR	
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-26
IA32_MC29_CTL / MSR_MC29_CTL	
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-26
IA32_MC29_MISC / MSR_MC29_MISC	
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-26
IA32_MC29_STATUS / MSR_MC29_STATUS	
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-26
IA32_MC3_ADDR / MSR_MC3_ADDR	
06_0FH, 06_17H.....	See Table 2-3
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H.....	See Table 2-4
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH, 06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-6
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
06_0EH.....	See Table 2-48
06_09H.....	See Table 2-49
IA32_MC3_CTL / MSR_MC3_CTL	
06_0FH, 06_17H.....	See Table 2-3
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H.....	See Table 2-4
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH, 06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-6
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
06_0EH.....	See Table 2-48
06_09H.....	See Table 2-49
IA32_MC3_MISC / MSR_MC3_MISC	
06_0FH, 06_17H.....	See Table 2-3
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_0EH.....	See Table 2-48
IA32_MC3_STATUS / MSR_MC3_STATUS	
06_0FH, 06_17H.....	See Table 2-3
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H.....	See Table 2-4
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH, 06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-6
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_0EH.....	See Table 2-48
06_09H.....	See Table 2-49
IA32_MC30_ADDR / MSR_MC30_ADDR	
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-26
IA32_MC30_CTL / MSR_MC30_CTL	
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-26
IA32_MC30_MISC / MSR_MC30_MISC	
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-26
IA32_MC30_STATUS / MSR_MC30_STATUS	
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-26
IA32_MC31_ADDR / MSR_MC31_ADDR	
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-26
IA32_MC31_CTL / MSR_MC31_CTL	
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-26
IA32_MC31_MISC / MSR_MC31_MISC	
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-26
IA32_MC31_STATUS / MSR_MC31_STATUS	
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-26
IA32_MC4_ADDR / MSR_MC4_ADDR	
06_0FH, 06_17H.....	See Table 2-3
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H.....	See Table 2-4
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH, 06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-6
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
06_0EH.....	See Table 2-48
06_09H.....	See Table 2-49
IA32_MC4_CTL / MSR_MC4_CTL	
06_0FH, 06_17H.....	See Table 2-3
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H.....	See Table 2-4
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH, 06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-6
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
06_0EH.....	See Table 2-48
06_09H.....	See Table 2-49
IA32_MC4_CTL2 / MSR_MC4_CTL2	
06_2AH, 06_2DH.....	See Table 2-19
IA32_MC4_STATUS / MSR_MC4_STATUS	
06_0FH, 06_17H.....	See Table 2-3
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H.....	See Table 2-4
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH, 06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-6
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_0EH.....	See Table 2-48
06_09H.....	See Table 2-49
MSR_MC5_ADDR / MSR_MC5_ADDR	
06_0FH, 06_17H.....	See Table 2-3
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH, 06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-6
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
06_0EH.....	See Table 2-48
IA32_MC5_CTL / MSR_MC5_CTL	
06_0FH, 06_17H.....	See Table 2-3
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH, 06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-6
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
06_0EH.....	See Table 2-48
IA32_MC5_MISC / MSR_MC5_MISC	
06_0FH, 06_17H.....	See Table 2-3
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
06_0EH.....	See Table 2-48
IA32_MC5_STATUS / MSR_MC5_STATUS	
06_0FH, 06_17H.....	See Table 2-3
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH, 06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-6
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
06_0EH.....	See Table 2-48
IA32_MC6_ADDR / MSR_MC6_ADDR	
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-36
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC6_CTL / MSR_MC6_CTL	
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-36
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
MSR_MC6_DEMOTION_POLICY_CONFIG	
06_37H.....	See Table 2-9
IA32_MC6_MISC / MSR_MC6_MISC	
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-36
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
MSR_MC6_RESIDENCY_COUNTER	
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH.....	See Table 2-7
06_37H.....	See Table 2-9
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
IA32_MC6_STATUS / MSR_MC6_STATUS	
06_0FH, 06_17H.....	See Table 2-3
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-36
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC7_ADDR / MSR_MC7_ADDR	
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-36
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC7_CTL / MSR_MC7_CTL	
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-36
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC7_MISC / MSR_MC7_MISC	
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-36
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC7_STATUS / MSR_MC7_STATUS	
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-36
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC8_ADDR / MSR_MC8_ADDR	
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC8_CTL / MSR_MC8_CTL	
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC8_MISC / MSR_MC8_MISC	
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC8_STATUS / MSR_MC8_STATUS	
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC9_ADDR / MSR_MC9_ADDR	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-36
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC9_CTL / MSR_MC9_CTL	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-36
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC9_MISC / MSR_MC9_MISC	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-36
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
IA32_MC9_STATUS / MSR_MC9_STATUS	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-36
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
MSR_MCG_MISC	
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MCG_R10	
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MCG_R11	
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MCG_R12	
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MCG_R13	
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MCG_R14	
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MCG_R15	

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
OFH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MCG_R8	
OFH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MCG_R9	
OFH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MCG_RAX	
OFH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MCG_RBP	
OFH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MCG_RBX	
OFH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MCG_RCX	
OFH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MCG_RDI	
OFH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MCG_RDX	
OFH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MCG_RESERVED1 - MSR_MCG_RESERVED5	
OFH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MCG_RFLAGS	
OFH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MCG_RIP	
OFH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MCG_RSI	
OFH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MCG_RSP	
OFH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MISC_FEATURE_CONTROL	
06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH.....	See Table 2-19
MSR_MISC_PWR_MGMT	
06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH.....	See Table 2-19
MSR_MOB_ESCRO	
OFH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MOB_ESCR1	
OFH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MS_CCCRO	
OFH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MS_CCCR1	

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MS_CCCR2	
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MS_CCCR3	
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MS_COUNTER0	
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MS_COUNTER1	
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MS_COUNTER2	
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MS_COUNTER3	
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MS_ESCRO	
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MS_ESCR1	
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_MTRRCAP	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H.....	See Table 2-38
MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_0	
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH, 06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-6
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH.....	See Table 2-19
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
MSR_OFFCORE_RSP_1	
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH, 06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-6
06_25H, 06_2CH.....	See Table 2-17
06_2FH.....	See Table 2-18
06_2AH, 06_2DH.....	See Table 2-19
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
MSR_PCIE_PLL_RATIO	
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-31
MSR_PCU_PMON_BOX_CTL	
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-23
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_PCU_PMON_BOX_FILTER	
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-23
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_PCU_PMON_BOX_STATUS	
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-27
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_PCU_PMON_CTRL0	

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-23
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_PCU_PMON_CTR1	
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-23
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_PCU_PMON_CTR2	
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-23
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_PCU_PMON_CTR3	
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-23
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_PCU_PMON_EVNTSELO	
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-23
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_PCU_PMON_EVNTSEL1	
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-23
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_PCU_PMON_EVNTSEL2	
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-23
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_PCU_PMON_EVNTSEL3	
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-23
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_PEBS_ENABLE	
06_0FH, 06_17H.....	See Table 2-3
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H.....	See Table 2-4
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH.....	See Table 2-7
06_5CH.....	See Table 2-12
06_7AH.....	See Table 2-13
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH.....	See Table 2-19
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-26
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_PEBS_FRONTEND	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H.....	See Table 2-38
MSR_PEBS_LD_LAT	
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH.....	See Table 2-19
MSR_PEBS_MATRIX_VERT	
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_PEBS_NUM_ALT	

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
MSR_PERF_CAPABILITIES	
06_0FH, 06_17H.....	See Table 2-3
MSR_PERF_FIXED_CTR_CTRL	
06_0FH, 06_17H.....	See Table 2-3
MSR_PERF_FIXED_CTR0	
06_0FH, 06_17H.....	See Table 2-3
MSR_PERF_FIXED_CTR1	
06_0FH, 06_17H.....	See Table 2-3
MSR_PERF_FIXED_CTR2	
06_0FH, 06_17H.....	See Table 2-3
MSR_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL	
06_0FH, 06_17H.....	See Table 2-3
MSR_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL	
06_0FH, 06_17H.....	See Table 2-3
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
MSR_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS	
06_0FH, 06_17H.....	See Table 2-3
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
MSR_PERF_STATUS	
06_0FH, 06_17H.....	See Table 2-3
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H.....	See Table 2-4
06_2AH, 06_2DH.....	See Table 2-19
MSR_PKG_C10_RESIDENCY	
06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-12
06_45H.....	See Table 2-29 and Table 2-30
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
MSR_PKG_C2_RESIDENCY	
06_27H.....	See Table 2-5
06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-12
06_2AH, 06_2DH, 06_3AH, 06_3CH, 06_3EH, 06_3FH, 06_45H, 06_46H.....	See Table 2-19
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
MSR_PKG_C3_RESIDENCY	
06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH, 06_25H, 06_2CH, 06_2FH.....	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH, 06_3AH, 06_3CH, 06_3EH, 06_3FH, 06_45H, 06_46H.....	See Table 2-19
06_66H.....	See Table 2-41
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
MSR_PKG_C4_RESIDENCY	
06_27H.....	See Table 2-5
MSR_PKG_C6_RESIDENCY	

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_27H.....	See Table 2-5
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH.....	See Table 2-7
06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH, 06_25H, 06_2CH, 06_2FH.....	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH, 06_3AH, 06_3CH, 06_3EH, 06_3FH, 06_45H, 06_46H.....	See Table 2-19
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
MSR_PKG_C7_RESIDENCY	
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH, 06_25H, 06_2CH, 06_2FH.....	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH, 06_3AH, 06_3CH, 06_3EH, 06_3FH, 06_45H, 06_46H.....	See Table 2-19
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
MSR_PKG_C8_RESIDENCY	
06_45H.....	See Table 2-30
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
MSR_PKG_C9_RESIDENCY	
06_45H.....	See Table 2-30
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
MSR_PKG_CST_CONFIG_CONTROL	
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH.....	See Table 2-7
06_4CH.....	See Table 2-11
06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH.....	See Table 2-19
06_3AH.....	See Table 2-24
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H.....	See Table 2-29
06_45H.....	See Table 2-30
06_3F.....	See Table 2-31
06_3DH.....	See Table 2-34
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-35
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
MSR_PKG_ENERGY_STATUS	
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH.....	See Table 2-8
06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-12
06_2AH, 06_2DH, 06_3AH, 06_3CH, 06_3EH, 06_3FH, 06_45H, 06_46H.....	See Table 2-19
MSR_PKG_HDC_CONFIG	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H.....	See Table 2-38
MSR_PKG_HDC_DEEP_RESIDENCY	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H.....	See Table 2-38
MSR_PKG_HDC_SHALLOW_RESIDENCY	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H.....	See Table 2-38
MSR_PKG_PERF_STATUS	
06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-12

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH, 06_3FH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H.....	See Table 2-29
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
MSR_PKG_POWER_INFO	
06_4DH.....	See Table 2-10
06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-12
06_2AH, 06_2DH, 06_3AH, 06_3CH, 06_3EH, 06_3FH, 06_45H, 06_46H.....	See Table 2-19
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
MSR_PKG_POWER_LIMIT	
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH.....	See Table 2-8
06_4DH.....	See Table 2-10
06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-12
06_2AH, 06_2DH, 06_3AH, 06_3CH, 06_3EH, 06_3FH, 06_45H, 06_46H.....	See Table 2-19
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
MSR_PKGC_IRTL1	
06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-12
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H.....	See Table 2-28
MSR_PKGC_IRTL2	
06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-12
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H.....	See Table 2-28
MSR_PKGC3_IRTL	
06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-12
06_2AH, 06_2DH.....	See Table 2-19
MSR_PKGC6_IRTL	
06_2AH, 06_2DH.....	See Table 2-19
MSR_PKGC7_IRTL	
06_2AH.....	See Table 2-20
MSR_PLATFORM_BRV	
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_PLATFORM_ENERGY_COUNTER	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H.....	See Table 2-38
MSR_PLATFORM_ID	
06_0FH, 06_17H.....	See Table 2-3
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H.....	See Table 2-4
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH.....	See Table 2-7
06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
MSR_PLATFORM_INFO	
06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH.....	See Table 2-19

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_3AH.....	See Table 2-24
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H.....	See Table 2-28 and Table 2-29
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-35
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
MSR_PLATFORM_POWER_LIMIT	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H.....	See Table 2-38
MSR_PMG_IO_CAPTURE_BASE	
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH, 06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-6
06_4CH.....	See Table 2-11
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH.....	See Table 2-19
06_3AH.....	See Table 2-24
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
MSR_PMH_ESCRO	
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_PMH_ESCR1	
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_PMON_GLOBAL_CONFIG	
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-27
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_PMON_GLOBAL_CTL	
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-27
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_PMON_GLOBAL_STATUS	
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-27
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_POWER_CTL	
06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH.....	See Table 2-19
MSR_PPO_ENERGY_STATUS	
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH.....	See Table 2-8
06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-12
06_2AH, 06_2DH, 06_3AH, 06_3CH, 06_3EH, 06_3FH, 06_45H, 06_46H.....	See Table 2-19
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
MSR_PPO_POLICY	
06_2AH, 06_45H.....	See Table 2-20
MSR_PPO_POWER_LIMIT	
06_4CH.....	See Table 2-11

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_2AH, 06_2DH, 06_3AH, 06_3CH, 06_3EH, 06_3FH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-19
06_57H	See Table 2-43
MSR_PP1_ENERGY_STATUS	
06_5CH, 06_7AH	See Table 2-12
06_2AH, 06_45H	See Table 2-20
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-29
MSR_PP1_POLICY	
06_2AH, 06_45H	See Table 2-20
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-29
MSR_PP1_POWER_LIMIT	
06_2AH, 06_45H	See Table 2-20
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-29
MSR_PPERF	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_PPIN	
06_3EH	See Table 2-25
06_56H, 06_4FH	See Table 2-35
MSR_PPIN_CTL	
06_3EH	See Table 2-25
06_56H, 06_4FH	See Table 2-35
MSR_PRMRR_PHYS_BASE	
06_8EH, 06_9EH	See Table 2-40
MSR_PRMRR_PHYS_MASK	
06_8EH, 06_9EH	See Table 2-40
MSR_PRMRR_VALID_CONFIG	
06_8EH, 06_9EH	See Table 2-40
MSR_RING_RATIO_LIMIT	
06_8EH, 06_9EH	See Table 2-40
MSR_RO_PMON_BOX_CTRL	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_RO_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_RO_PMON_BOX_STATUS	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_RO_PMON_CTRL0	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_RO_PMON_CTRL1	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_RO_PMON_CTRL2	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_RO_PMON_CTRL3	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
MSR_RO_PMON_CTR4 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_RO_PMON_CTR5 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_RO_PMON_CTR6 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_RO_PMON_CTR7 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_RO_PMON_EVNT_SELO 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_RO_PMON_EVNT_SEL1 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_RO_PMON_EVNT_SEL2 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_RO_PMON_EVNT_SEL3 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_RO_PMON_EVNT_SEL4 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_RO_PMON_EVNT_SEL5 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_RO_PMON_EVNT_SEL6 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_RO_PMON_EVNT_SEL7 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_RO_PMON_IPERFO_P0 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_RO_PMON_IPERFO_P1 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_RO_PMON_IPERFO_P2 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_RO_PMON_IPERFO_P3 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_RO_PMON_IPERFO_P4 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_RO_PMON_IPERFO_P5 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_RO_PMON_IPERFO_P6 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_RO_PMON_IPERFO_P7 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_RO_PMON_QLX_P0 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
MSR_R0_PMON_QLX_P1 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R0_PMON_QLX_P2 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R0_PMON_QLX_P3 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R1_PMON_BOX_CTRL 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R1_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R1_PMON_BOX_STATUS 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R1_PMON_CTR10 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R1_PMON_CTR11 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R1_PMON_CTR12 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R1_PMON_CTR13 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R1_PMON_CTR14 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R1_PMON_CTR15 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R1_PMON_CTR8 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R1_PMON_CTR9 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R1_PMON_EVNT_SEL10 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R1_PMON_EVNT_SEL11 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R1_PMON_EVNT_SEL12 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R1_PMON_EVNT_SEL13 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R1_PMON_EVNT_SEL14 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R1_PMON_EVNT_SEL15 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R1_PMON_EVNT_SEL8 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
MSR_R1_PMON_EVNT_SEL9 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R1_PMON_IPERF1_P10 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R1_PMON_IPERF1_P11 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R1_PMON_IPERF1_P12 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R1_PMON_IPERF1_P13 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R1_PMON_IPERF1_P14 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R1_PMON_IPERF1_P15 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R1_PMON_IPERF1_P8 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R1_PMON_IPERF1_P9 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R1_PMON_QLX_P4 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R1_PMON_QLX_P5 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R1_PMON_QLX_P6 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_R1_PMON_QLX_P7 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_RAPL_POWER_UNIT 06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH.....	See Table 2-8
06_4DH.....	See Table 2-10
06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-12
06_2AH, 06_2DH, 06_3AH, 06_3CH, 06_3EH, 06_3FH, 06_45H, 06_46H.....	See Table 2-19
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-35
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
MSR_RAT_ESCR0 0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_RAT_ESCR1 0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_RING_PERF_LIMIT_REASONS 06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H.....	See Table 2-29
MSR_SO_PMON_BOX_CTRL 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_SO_PMON_BOX_FILTER	
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_SO_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_SO_PMON_BOX_STATUS	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_SO_PMON_CTRL0	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_SO_PMON_CTRL1	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_SO_PMON_CTRL2	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_SO_PMON_CTRL3	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_SO_PMON_EVNT_SELO	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_SO_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_SO_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_SO_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_SO_PMON_MASK	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_SO_PMON_MATCH	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_S1_PMON_BOX_CTRL	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_S1_PMON_BOX_FILTER	
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_S1_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
MSR_S1_PMON_BOX_STATUS	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_S1_PMON_CTRL0	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_S1_PMON_CTRL1	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_S1_PMON_CTRL2	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_S1_PMON_CTRL3	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_S1_PMON_EVTN_SEL0	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_S1_PMON_EVTN_SEL1	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_S1_PMON_EVTN_SEL2	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_S1_PMON_EVTN_SEL3	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_S1_PMON_MASK	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_S1_PMON_MATCH	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_S2_PMON_BOX_CTL	
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_S2_PMON_BOX_FILTER	
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_S2_PMON_CTRL0	
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_S2_PMON_CTRL1	
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_S2_PMON_CTRL2	
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_S2_PMON_CTRL3	
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
MSR_S2_PMON_EVTNSELO 06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_S2_PMON_EVTNSEL1 06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_S2_PMON_EVTNSEL2 06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_S2_PMON_EVTNSEL3 06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_S3_PMON_BOX_CTL 06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_S3_PMON_BOX_FILTER 06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_S3_PMON_CTRL0 06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_S3_PMON_CTRL1 06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_S3_PMON_CTRL2 06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_S3_PMON_CTRL3 06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_S3_PMON_EVTNSELO 06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_S3_PMON_EVTNSEL1 06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_S3_PMON_EVTNSEL2 06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_S3_PMON_EVTNSEL3 06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_SAAT_ESCR0 0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_SAAT_ESCR1 0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_SGXOWNEREP0CH0 06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H.....	See Table 2-38
MSR_SGXOWNEREP0CH1 06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-12
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H.....	See Table 2-38
MSR_SMI_COUNT 06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH, 06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-6
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH.....	See Table 2-19

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
MSR_SMM_BLOCKED	
06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-12
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H.....	See Table 2-29
MSR_SMM_DELAYED	
06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-12
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H.....	See Table 2-29
MSR_SMM_FEATURE_CONTROL	
06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-12
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H.....	See Table 2-29
MSR_SMM_MCA_CAP	
06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-12
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H.....	See Table 2-29
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-35
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
MSR_SMRR_PHYSBASE	
06_0FH, 06_17H.....	See Table 2-3
MSR_SMRR_PHYSMASK	
06_0FH, 06_17H.....	See Table 2-3
MSR_SSU_ESCR0	
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_TBPU_ESCR0	
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_TBPU_ESCR1	
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_TC_ESCR0	
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_TC_ESCR1	
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_TC_PRECISE_EVENT	
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_TEMPERATURE_TARGET	
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH, 06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-6
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
06_2AH, 06_2DH.....	See Table 2-19
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-35
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
MSR_THERM2_CTL	
06_0FH, 06_17H.....	See Table 2-3
06_1CH, 06_26H, 06_27H, 06_35H, 06_36H.....	See Table 2-4

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
06_0EH.....	See Table 2-48
06_09H.....	See Table 2-49
MSR_THREAD_ID_INFO	
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-31
MSR_TRACE_HUB_STH ACPIBAR_BASE	
06_8EH, 06_9EH.....	See Table 2-40
MSR_TURBO_ACTIVATION_RATIO	
06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-12
06_3AH.....	See Table 2-24
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H.....	See Table 2-28
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
MSR_TURBO_GROUP_CORECNT	
06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-12
MSR_TURBO_POWER_CURRENT_LIMIT	
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH.....	See Table 2-14
MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT	
06_37H, 06_4AH, 06_4DH, 06_5AH, 06_5DH, 06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-6
06_4DH.....	See Table 2-10
06_5CH, 06_7AH.....	See Table 2-12
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_2EH, 06_25H, 06_2CH.....	See Table 2-14
06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_25H, 06_2CH.....	See Table 2-15
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
06_25H, 06_2CH.....	See Table 2-17
06_2FH.....	See Table 2-18
06_2AH, 06_45H.....	See Table 2-20
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-22
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25 and Table 2-26
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H.....	See Table 2-29
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-31
06_3DH.....	See Table 2-34
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-35
06_55H.....	See Table 2-42
06_57H.....	See Table 2-43
MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT1	
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-25 and Table 2-26
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-31
06_56H, 06_4FH.....	See Table 2-35
MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT2	
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-31

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT3	
06_56H.....	See Table 2-36
06_4FH.....	See Table 2-37
MSR_TURBO_RATIO_LIMIT_CORES	
06_55H.....	See Table 2-42
MSR_U_PMON_BOX_STATUS	
06_3EH.....	See Table 2-27
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_U_PMON_CTR	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_U_PMON_CTR0	
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-23
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_U_PMON_CTR1	
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-23
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_U_PMON_EVNT_SEL	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_U_PMON_EVNTSELO	
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-23
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_U_PMON_EVNTSEL1	
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-23
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_U_PMON_GLOBAL_CTRL	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_U_PMON_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_U_PMON_GLOBAL_STATUS	
06_2EH.....	See Table 2-16
MSR_U_PMON_UCLK_FIXED_CTL	
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-23
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_U_PMON_UCLK_FIXED_CTR	
06_2DH.....	See Table 2-23
06_3FH.....	See Table 2-32
MSR_U2L_ESCR0	
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_U2L_ESCR1	
0FH.....	See Table 2-45
MSR_UNC_ARB_PERFCTRO	
06_2AH.....	See Table 2-21

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-29
06_4EH, 06_5EH	See Table 2-39
MSR_UNC_ARB_PERFCTR1	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-29
06_4EH, 06_5EH	See Table 2-39
MSR_UNC_ARB_PERFEVTSELO	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-29
06_4EH, 06_5EH	See Table 2-39
MSR_UNC_ARB_PERFEVTSEL1	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-29
06_4EH, 06_5EH	See Table 2-39
MSR_UNC_CBO_0_PERFCTR0	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-29
06_4EH, 06_5EH	See Table 2-39
MSR_UNC_CBO_0_PERFCTR1	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-29
06_4EH, 06_5EH	See Table 2-39
MSR_UNC_CBO_0_PERFCTR2	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
MSR_UNC_CBO_0_PERFCTR3	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
MSR_UNC_CBO_0_PERFEVTSELO	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-29
06_4EH, 06_5EH	See Table 2-39
MSR_UNC_CBO_0_PERFEVTSEL1	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-29
06_4EH, 06_5EH	See Table 2-39
MSR_UNC_CBO_0_PERFEVTSEL2	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
MSR_UNC_CBO_0_PERFEVTSEL3	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
MSR_UNC_CBO_0_UNIT_STATUS	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
MSR_UNC_CBO_1_PERFCTR0	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-29
06_4EH, 06_5EH	See Table 2-39
MSR_UNC_CBO_1_PERFCTR1	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-29
06_4EH, 06_5EH	See Table 2-39
MSR_UNC_CBO_1_PERFCTR2	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
MSR_UNC_CBO_1_PERFCTR3	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
MSR_UNC_CBO_1_PERFEVTSELO	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-29
06_4EH, 06_5EH	See Table 2-39
MSR_UNC_CBO_1_PERFEVTSEL1	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-29
06_4EH, 06_5EH	See Table 2-39
MSR_UNC_CBO_1_PERFEVTSEL2	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
MSR_UNC_CBO_1_PERFEVTSEL3	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
MSR_UNC_CBO_1_UNIT_STATUS	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
MSR_UNC_CBO_2_PERFCTR0	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-29
06_4EH, 06_5EH	See Table 2-39
MSR_UNC_CBO_2_PERFCTR1	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-29
06_4EH, 06_5EH	See Table 2-39
MSR_UNC_CBO_2_PERFCTR2	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
MSR_UNC_CBO_2_PERFCTR3	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
MSR_UNC_CBO_2_PERFEVTSELO	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-29
06_4EH, 06_5EH	See Table 2-39
MSR_UNC_CBO_2_PERFEVTSEL1	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-29
06_4EH, 06_5EH	See Table 2-39
MSR_UNC_CBO_2_PERFEVTSEL2	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
MSR_UNC_CBO_2_PERFEVTSEL3	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
MSR_UNC_CBO_2_UNIT_STATUS	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
MSR_UNC_CBO_3_PERFCTR0	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-29
06_4EH, 06_5EH	See Table 2-39
MSR_UNC_CBO_3_PERFCTR1	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-29
06_4EH, 06_5EH	See Table 2-39
MSR_UNC_CBO_3_PERFCTR2	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
MSR_UNC_CBO_3_PERFCTR3	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
MSR_UNC_CBO_3_PERFEVTSELO	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-29
06_4EH, 06_5EH	See Table 2-39
MSR_UNC_CBO_3_PERFEVTSEL1	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-29
06_4EH, 06_5EH	See Table 2-39
MSR_UNC_CBO_3_PERFEVTSEL2	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
MSR_UNC_CBO_3_PERFEVTSEL3	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
MSR_UNC_CBO_3_UNIT_STATUS	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
MSR_UNC_CBO_4_PERFCTR0	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
MSR_UNC_CBO_4_PERFCTR1	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
MSR_UNC_CBO_4_PERFCTR2	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21
MSR_UNC_CBO_4_PERFCTR3	
06_2AH	See Table 2-21

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
MSR_UNC_CBO_4_PERFEVTSELO 06_2AH	See Table 2-21
MSR_UNC_CBO_4_PERFEVTSEL1 06_2AH	See Table 2-21
MSR_UNC_CBO_4_PERFEVTSEL2 06_2AH	See Table 2-21
MSR_UNC_CBO_4_PERFEVTSEL3 06_2AH	See Table 2-21
MSR_UNC_CBO_4_UNIT_STATUS 06_2AH	See Table 2-21
MSR_UNC_CBO_CONFIG 06_2AH	See Table 2-21
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-29
06_4EH, 06_5EH	See Table 2-39
MSR_UNC_PERF_FIXED_CTR 06_2AH	See Table 2-21
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-29
06_4EH, 06_5EH	See Table 2-39
MSR_UNC_PERF_FIXED_CTRL 06_2AH	See Table 2-21
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-29
06_4EH, 06_5EH	See Table 2-39
MSR_UNC_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL 06_2AH	See Table 2-21
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-29
06_4EH, 06_5EH	See Table 2-39
MSR_UNC_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS 06_2AH	See Table 2-21
06_3CH, 06_45H, 06_46H	See Table 2-29
06_4EH, 06_5EH	See Table 2-39
MSR_UNCORE_ADDR_OPCODE_MATCH 06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_25H, 06_2CH	See Table 2-15
MSR_UNCORE_FIXED_CTR_CTRL 06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_25H, 06_2CH	See Table 2-15
MSR_UNCORE_FIXED_CTR0 06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_25H, 06_2CH	See Table 2-15
MSR_UNCORE_PERF_GLOBAL_CTRL 06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_25H, 06_2CH	See Table 2-15
MSR_UNCORE_PERF_GLOBAL_OVF_CTRL 06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_25H, 06_2CH	See Table 2-15
MSR_UNCORE_PERF_GLOBAL_STATUS 06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_25H, 06_2CH	See Table 2-15

MODEL-SPECIFIC REGISTERS (MSRS)

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
MSR_UNCORE_PERFEVTSELO 06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_25H, 06_2CH	See Table 2-15
MSR_UNCORE_PERFEVTSEL1 06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_25H, 06_2CH	See Table 2-15
MSR_UNCORE_PERFEVTSEL2 06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_25H, 06_2CH	See Table 2-15
MSR_UNCORE_PERFEVTSEL3 06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_25H, 06_2CH	See Table 2-15
MSR_UNCORE_PERFEVTSEL4 06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_25H, 06_2CH	See Table 2-15
MSR_UNCORE_PERFEVTSEL5 06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_25H, 06_2CH	See Table 2-15
MSR_UNCORE_PERFEVTSEL6 06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_25H, 06_2CH	See Table 2-15
MSR_UNCORE_PERFEVTSEL7 06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_25H, 06_2CH	See Table 2-15
MSR_UNCORE_PMC0 06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_25H, 06_2CH	See Table 2-15
MSR_UNCORE_PMC1 06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_25H, 06_2CH	See Table 2-15
MSR_UNCORE_PMC2 06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_25H, 06_2CH	See Table 2-15
MSR_UNCORE_PMC3 06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_25H, 06_2CH	See Table 2-15
MSR_UNCORE_PMC4 06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_25H, 06_2CH	See Table 2-15
MSR_UNCORE_PMC5 06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_25H, 06_2CH	See Table 2-15
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_UNCORE_PMC6 06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_25H, 06_2CH	See Table 2-15
MSR_UNCORE_PMC7 06_1AH, 06_1EH, 06_1FH, 06_25H, 06_2CH	See Table 2-15
MSR_UNCORE_PRMRR_BASE 06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_UNCORE_PRMRR_MASK 06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MSR_UNCORE_PRMRR_PHYS_BASE 06_8EH, 06_9EH	See Table 2-40
MSR_UNCORE_PRMRR_PHYS_MASK 06_8EH, 06_9EH	See Table 2-40
MSR_W_PMON_BOX_CTRL	

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_W_PMON_BOX_OVF_CTRL	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_W_PMON_BOX_STATUS	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_W_PMON_CTR0	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_W_PMON_CTR1	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_W_PMON_CTR2	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_W_PMON_CTR3	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_W_PMON_EVNT_SELO	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_W_PMON_EVNT_SEL1	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_W_PMON_EVNT_SEL2	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_W_PMON_EVNT_SEL3	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_W_PMON_FIXED_CTR	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_W_PMON_FIXED_CTR_CTL	
06_2EH	See Table 2-16
MSR_WEIGHTED_CORE_CO	
06_4EH, 06_5EH, 06_55H, 06_8EH, 06_9EH, 06_66H	See Table 2-38
MTRRfix16K_80000	
06_0EH	See Table 2-48
P6 Family	See Table 2-50
MTRRfix16K_A0000	
06_0EH	See Table 2-48
P6 Family	See Table 2-50
MTRRfix4K_C0000	
06_0EH	See Table 2-48
P6 Family	See Table 2-50
MTRRfix4K_C8000	
06_0EH	See Table 2-48
P6 Family	See Table 2-50
MTRRfix4K_D0000	
06_0EH	See Table 2-48
P6 Family	See Table 2-50

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
MTRRfix4K_D8000	
06_OEH	See Table 2-48
P6 Family	See Table 2-50
MTRRfix4K_E0000	
06_OEH	See Table 2-48
P6 Family	See Table 2-50
MTRRfix4K_E8000	
06_OEH	See Table 2-48
P6 Family	See Table 2-50
MTRRfix4K_F0000	
06_OEH	See Table 2-48
P6 Family	See Table 2-50
MTRRfix4K_F8000	
06_OEH	See Table 2-48
P6 Family	See Table 2-50
MTRRfix64K_00000	
06_OEH	See Table 2-48
P6 Family	See Table 2-50
MTRRphysBase0	
06_OEH	See Table 2-48
P6 Family	See Table 2-50
MTRRphysBase1	
06_OEH	See Table 2-48
P6 Family	See Table 2-50
MTRRphysBase2	
06_OEH	See Table 2-48
P6 Family	See Table 2-50
MTRRphysBase3	
06_OEH	See Table 2-48
P6 Family	See Table 2-50
MTRRphysBase4	
06_OEH	See Table 2-48
P6 Family	See Table 2-50
MTRRphysBase5	
06_OEH	See Table 2-48
P6 Family	See Table 2-50
MTRRphysBase6	
06_OEH	See Table 2-48
P6 Family	See Table 2-50
MTRRphysBase7	
06_OEH	See Table 2-48
P6 Family	See Table 2-50

MSR Name and CPUID DisplayFamily_DisplayModel	Location
MTRRphysMask0	
06_OEH	See Table 2-48
P6 Family	See Table 2-50
MTRRphysMask1	
06_OEH	See Table 2-48
P6 Family	See Table 2-50
MTRRphysMask2	
06_OEH	See Table 2-48
P6 Family	See Table 2-50
MTRRphysMask3	
06_OEH	See Table 2-48
P6 Family	See Table 2-50
MTRRphysMask4	
06_OEH	See Table 2-48
P6 Family	See Table 2-50
MTRRphysMask5	
06_OEH	See Table 2-48
P6 Family	See Table 2-50
MTRRphysMask6	
06_OEH	See Table 2-48
P6 Family	See Table 2-50
MTRRphysMask7	
06_OEH	See Table 2-48
P6 Family	See Table 2-50

